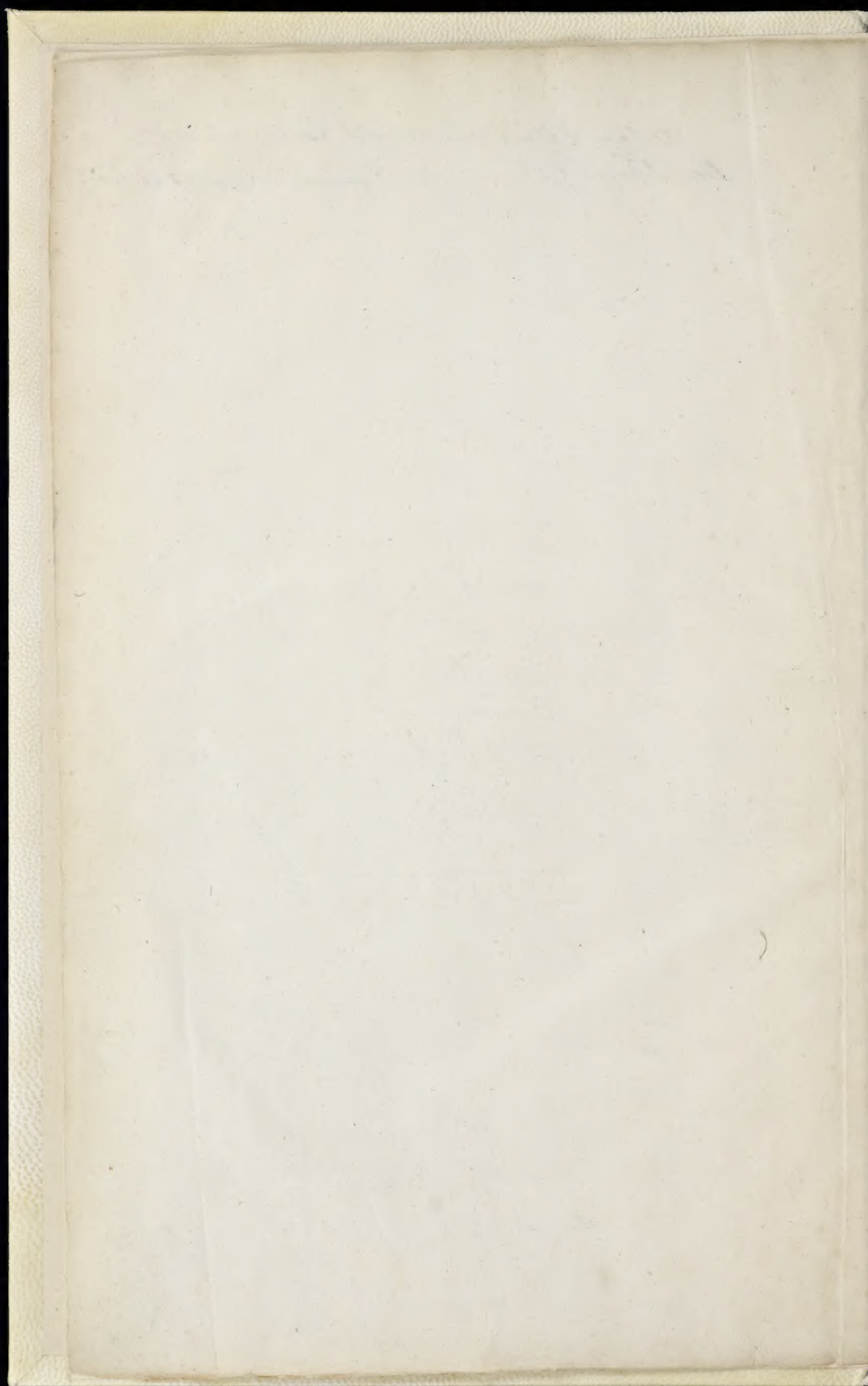


A Copy of this Book was sold (at the sale of the
How Library) Jan^y. 1849, for 10 guineas - represented as two



Charles the Second by the Grace of God King of England
 Scotland France and Ireland Defender of the Faith &c.
 To all Our loving Subjects of what degree condition or
 quality soever within Our Kingdom and Dominion Greeting
 Whereas it hath been manifest unto Us that Our trusty and well-
 beloved Elias Almoner Esq; Warden of Her Majesty's Exchequer
 for fifteen years past applied himself to the search and study of things
 relating to the Honor of Our most Noble Order of the Garter and
 hath at his great charge and expence of time now comprised
 in a Book Entituled The Institution Laws and Ceremonies of
 the said most Noble Order collected and digested into one Body
 and adorned with variety of Sculptures; whose pains therein we do
 in every to Our satisfaction so can we no less for his past industry
 and future encouragement in his further progress of these Studies
 but express Our good liking and approbation thereof: Know ye
 therefore that it is Our Royal Pleasure and We do by these pre-
 sents upon the humble request of the said Elias Almoner not only
 give him leave and license to Print the said Book but likewise
 charge prohibit and forbid all our Subjects to reprint within the
 Our Kingdom the said Book in any Volume or any part thereof
 or any Abridgement of the Laws or Ceremonies therein contain-
 ed or to copy or counterfeit any the Sculptures or Ingravements
 belonging thereto or to import buy vend hire or distribute
 any Copies or Abridgements of the same reprinting beyond the Seas
 within the term of fifteen years next ensuing the publishing thereof
 without the consent and approbation of the said Elias Almoner his
 Heirs Executors or Assigns as they and every of them so offend-
 ing will answer the contrary at their utmost perils: Whereof of-
 well the Wardens and Company of Stationers of our City of
 London the Farmers Commissioners and Officers of Our Cu-
 stoms as all other Our Officers and Ministers whom it may con-
 cern us to take particular notice that due obedience be given to
 this Our Royal Command herein declared Given under Our sig-
 nificant Sign Manual at Our Court at Whitehall the 31. day of
 March in the 25. Year of Our Reign 1650.

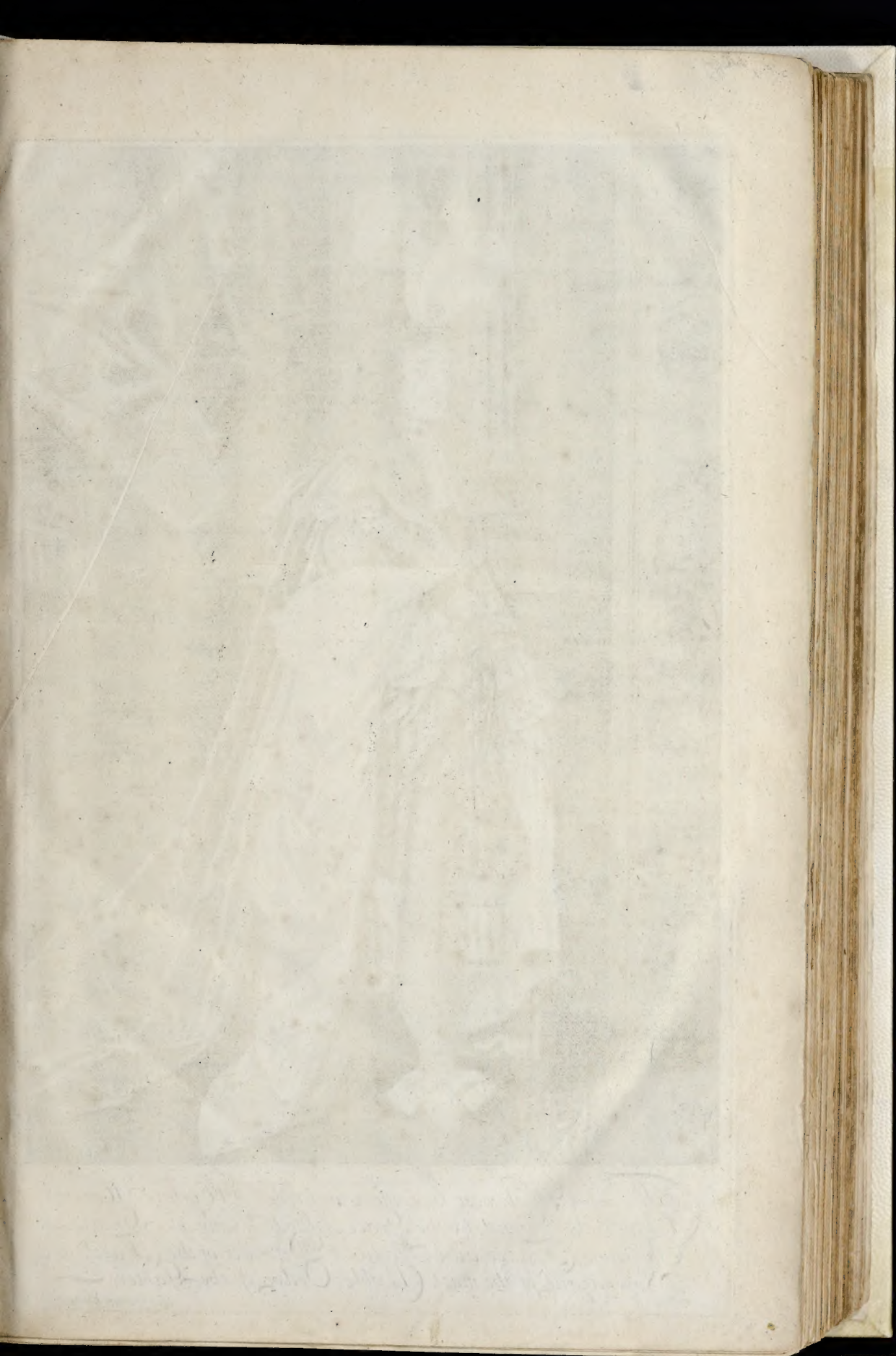
By his Majesty's Command
 Arlington

Charles R.

CHarles the Second, by the Grace of God, King of England, Scotland, France, and Ireland, Defender of the Faith, &c. To all Our loving Subjects, of what degree, condition, or quality soever, within Our Kingdoms and Dominions, Greeting: Whereas it hath been manifested unto Us, that Our trusty and well-beloved Elias Ashmole Esq; Windesor Herald at Arms, hath for fifteen years past applyed himself to the search and study of things, relating to the Honor of Our most Noble Order of the Garter, and hath at his great charge, and expence of time, now compleated a Book, Entituled, The Institution, Laws, and Ceremonies of the said most Noble Order; collected and digested into one Body, and adorned with variety of Sculpture; whose pains therein, as it is greatly to Our satisfaction, so can We no less, for his past industry and future incouragement, in his further progress of these Studies, but express Our good liking and approbation thereof: Know ye therefore, That it is Our Royal Pleasure, and We do by these presents, upon the humble request of the said Elias Ashmole, not only give him leave and license to Print the said Book, but strictly charge, prohibit, and forbid all our Subjects, to reprint within this Our Kingdom, the said Book in any Volume, or any part thereof, or any Abridgment of the Laws or Ceremonies therein contained, or to copy or counterfeit any the Sculptures or Ingravements belonging thereunto, or to import, buy, vend, utter, or distribute any Copies or Exemplaries of the same, reprinted beyond the Seas, within the term of fifteen years, next ensuing the publishing thereof, without the consent and approbation of the said Elias Ashmole, his Heirs, Executors, or Assigns, as they and every of them so offending, will answer the contrary at their utmost perils: Whereof, as well the Wardens and Company of Stationers of our City of London, the Farmers, Commissioners, and Officers of Our Customs, as all other Our Officers and Ministers whom it may concern, are to take particular notice, that due obedience be given to this Our Royal Command, herein declared. Given under Our Signet and Sign Manual, at Our Court at Whitehall, the 31. day of March, in the 22. Year of Our Reign, 1670.

By his Majesty's Command

Arlington.





*The most High, most Excellent, and most Mighty Monarch
Charles the Second, by the Grace of God King of Great
Britaine France and Ireland Defender of the Faith and
Soveraigne of the most Noble Order of the Garter.*

(W. Sherwin Sculpsit)

THE
INSTITUTION,
Laws & Ceremonies
Of the most NOBLE
ORDER
OF THE
GARTER.

Collected and digested into one Body

BY

ELIAS ASHMOLE of the *Middle-Temple* Esq;

WINDSOR Herald at Arms.

A Work furnished with variety of matter, relating to
HONOR and *NOBLESSE*.

LONDON,

Printed by *J. Macock*, for *Nathanael Brooke* at the *Angel*
in *Cornhill*, near the *Royal Exchange*, *MDC LXXII.*

THE HISTORY OF THE

OF

18

AUGUSTISSIMO POTENTISSIMOQUE
MONARCHÆ
CAROLO II

D. G.

MAGNÆ BRITANNIÆ
FRANCIÆ ET HIBERNIÆ

REGI

FIDEI DEFENSORI

ET

SUPREMO

NOBILISSIMI MILITARIS ORDINIS

GARTERII

HOS ORDINIS COMMENTARIOS

HUMILLIME

D. D.

ELIAS ASHMOLE

FECIALIS WINDESOR.

THE HOLY

OF THE

OF THE

P R E F A C E.

IT is not to be attributed only to Custom, but sometimes it's necessary, in order to the Readers greater convenience, that Books are commonly recommended to their perusal, by somewhat prefatory, as Epistles, &c. the use of them being chiefly, to render an account of what they contain, and by a short Antipast, to represent to them, what they are likely to find in the Entertainment of the whole Work. This consideration hath obliged me to a compliance with others, and to acquaint my Reader, what occasioned my engaging upon this Subject, and what I have done therein.

As I ever had a great veneration for the most Noble Order of the Garter, so must it needs be imagined, that I was accordingly much concerned, in the late unhappy times, to see the honor of it trampled on, and it self sunk into a very low esteem among us. That reflection put me upon thoughts, not only of doing something, that might inform the world of the Nobleness of its Institution, and the Glory which in process of time it acquired, both at home and abroad; but also of drawing up, in the nature of a Formulary, both the Legal and Ceremonial part thereof, for the better conduct of such as might be therein afterwards concerned, in case the Eclipse, it then waded under in our Horizon, should prove of so long continuance, as that many occurrences, worthy of knowledge, might come to be in a manner forgotten.

Upon the first communication of my design, to the late Reverend Doctor Christopher Wren, Register of the said Order, it received not only his full approbation, but also his ready assistance in the use of the Annals thereof, then in his custody: From those, and other authentick Manuscripts and Autographs, particularly relating to the Order, and a painful and chargeable search of our publick Records, I had collected the greatest part of my Materials, before the happy Restauration of his now Majesty the present Sovereign of this most Noble Order; who, being afterwards acquainted with what I had done, was most graciously pleased to countenance it, and encourage me in the prosecution thereof.

The Work in general contains an Historical account of the Laws and Ceremonies of the said most Noble Order; but more particularly, its Institution, the manner and order observed in Elections, Investitures, and Installations of Knights, the Holding of Chapters, Celebration of Festivals, the Formality of Proceedings, the Magnificence of Embassies sent with the Habit, to Stranger Kings and Princes; in sum, all other things relative to the Order. In the illustration whereof, I have inserted (where they properly occur'd) the most eminent and considerable Cases, which have required and received discussion in Chapters, the determinations thereupon becoming Rules and Laws; Whence it may be observed, that the Foundation and Superstructures of the Order, were laid and raised upon the exactest Rules of Honor. And to supply the failer and defects of the Annals, I have been forced to make use of Memorials and Relations, yet such as were taken notice of, and committed to writing, either by some of the Officers of the Order, or those of Arms, during the times of their attendance on the Service of the Order, and consequently of sufficient authority for me to rely on.

To usher in those, I have given a Prospect of Knighthood in General, of the several Orders of Knighthood, as also of the Antiquity of the Castle and Colledge of Windesore; and closed all, with the Honors, Martial Employments, and famous Actions, the Matches and Issues of the Founder, and first Knights-Companions, as also a perfect Catalogue of their Successors to this very present. All which are adorned with variety of Sculptures, properly relating to the several parts of the Work: But the following Synopsis of its whole Contexture, and the Heads of the Chapters, will excuse a further enlargement here.

I shall with submission add, That this noble Subject, having not been (at some times)

P R E F A C E.

times) heedfully looked into, some irregularities have happened, on which I have made the less admidverſion, in regard it was my deſire, by proceeding upon what is purely derived from the Root, to ſhew wherein the right Rule, either Legal or Ceremonial, hath been obſerved (that it may ſtill be purſued, till thought fit to be altered) and as little as may be, where broken: to the end alſo, that a careful diſtinction may be made between matter of Law, and matter of Fact; leſt otherwiſe, an Error may hereafter come to be vouched for a Precedent.

And whereas ſome paſſages may ſeem of little importance, it is to be conſidered, That the enſuing Diſcourſe, is limited to an account only of certain peculiar Laws and Ceremonies of Honor, wherein ſundry minute things (occasionally falling in) are not only pardoned, but alſo allowable, yea very neceſſary to be mentioned; in regard they promote their ſatisfaction, who are more particularly concerned therein. And this will be yet the rather excuſable, if another thing, which hath occaſioned no ſmall inconvenience, be reflected on: to wit, The omiſſion or negligence of many Writers in ſetting down Occurrences, meerly upon the ſcore of their being then freſh in moſt mens memories; by which means, Poſterity hath not only been deprived of many paſſages, whereof it would gladly have been informed, but the elaborate diſquiſitions of both Criticks and Antiquaries have proved fruitleſs, and of little advantage, and the things themſelves lye yet buried in obſcurity.

Laſtly, to explicate ſome few Abbreviations in the Margent, it is to be obſerved, that where I cite the Annals of the Order, they are thus noted. Lib. N. to be read Liber Niger, Lib. C. Liber Cæruleus, R. Rubens, and Carol. Carolinus. So alſo the Collections or Manuſcripts of ſome that have been, or now are Officers of Arms (whoſe frequent quotations would otherwiſe have too much ſwell'd the Margent) being thus abbreviated. E. W. G. ſignifie Edwardus Walker Garter, R. C. Cl. Robertus Cook Clarenceux, W. le N. Cl. Willielmus le Neve Clarenceux, W. D. N. Willielmus Dugdale Norroy, A. V. W. Auguſtinus Vincent Windeſor, and G. O. Y. Georgius Owen Tork. The reſt may be eaſily underſtood.

E. A.

THE

THE CONTENTS

Of the CHAPTERS.

CHAP. I.

Of Knighthood in general.

Sect.	
I. <i>Of Vertue and Honor.</i>	Page 1.
II. <i>The Antiquity of Knighthood.</i>	5.
III. <i>Of the Foundation of the Equeſtrian Order among the Romans.</i>	6.
IV. <i>Of the Modern Degrees of Knighthood.</i>	12.
V. <i>The Etymology of Eques, Miles, Chevalier, Ritter, and Sir.</i>	17.
VI. <i>The Enſigns of the Equeſtrian Order among the Romans.</i>	21.
VII. <i>The Enſigns and Ornaments of Knighthood among other Nations.</i>	27.
VIII. <i>Qualifications for Knighthood.</i>	31.
IX. <i>The various Ceremonies uſed at the conferring of Knighthood.</i>	36.
X. <i>Of the Dignity, Honor, and Renown of Knighthood.</i>	43.

CHAP. II.

Of the Religious Orders of Knighthood in Chriſtendom.

Sect.	
I. <i>Of ancient Societies, analogous to the Orders of Knighthood.</i>	Page 47.
II. <i>The Chriſtian Inſtitution of Knightly Orders.</i>	48.
III. <i>The Diviſion of Knightly Orders into Religious and Military.</i>	49.
IV. <i>Of Eccleſiaſtical Foundations dependant upon Military Orders.</i>	50.
V. <i>A brief account of the Religious Orders of Knighthood.</i>	51.

CHAP. III.

An Account of the Orders abſolutely Military.

Sect.	
I. <i>The Order of Knights of the Round Table.</i>	Page 94.
II. <i>Of Knights in the Weſt-Indies.</i>	124.
III. <i>The Feminine Cavaliers of the Torch in Tortola.</i>	125.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Caſtle, Chappel, and Colledge of Windeſor.

Sect.	
I. <i>Of the Caſtle of Windeſor.</i>	Page 127.
II. <i>Of the Chappel of St. George.</i>	135.
III. <i>The Foundation of the Colledge within the Chappel.</i>	152.
IV. <i>Of the Dean, Canons, Petty-Canons, Clerks and Chorifters.</i>	153.
V. <i>Of the Alms-Knights.</i>	158.
VI. <i>Of other Officers of the Colledge.</i>	166.
VII. <i>Of the Endowment of the Colledge.</i>	167.
VIII. <i>Of the Priviledges of the Chappel and Colledge.</i>	174.

CHAP. V.

The Inſtitution of the moſt Noble Order of the Garter.

Sect.	
I. <i>The ſeveral Opinions touching the Occaſion of its Inſtitution.</i>	Page 178.
II. <i>The true Cauſe aſſerted.</i>	181.
III. <i>The Time when the Order was Inſtituted.</i>	185.
IV. <i>Of the Patrons of the Order.</i>	187.
V. <i>The Honor and Reputation thereof.</i>	189.

CHAP. VI.

The Statutes and Annals of the Order.

Sect.	
I. <i>Of the Statutes of Inſtitution.</i>	Page 190.
II. <i>Of thoſe other Bodies of Statutes ſince eſtabliſhed.</i>	191.
III. <i>Several Endeavours for Reforming the Statutes, ſince the Reign of King Henry the Eighth.</i>	194.
IV. <i>Of the Annals of the Order.</i>	198.

CHAP. VII.

The Habit and Enſigns of the Order.

Sect.	
I. <i>Of the Garter.</i>	Page 202.
II. <i>Of the Mantle.</i>	208.
III. <i>Of</i>	

The CONTENTS.

III. <i>Of the Surcoat.</i>	211.
IV. <i>Of the Hood and Cap.</i>	214.
V. <i>The Robes anciently assigned to the Queen and great Ladies.</i>	217.
VI. <i>Of Collars in general.</i>	218.
VII. <i>The Collar of the Order.</i>	220.
VIII. <i>Collars of SS.</i>	224.
IX. <i>The lesser George.</i>	226.
X. <i>When the Habit, or part of it, ought to be worn.</i>	231.

CHAP. VIII.

The Officers appointed for the Service of the Order.

Sect.	
I. <i>The Prelate's Institution, his Oath, Robe, and Privileges.</i>	Page. 234.
II. <i>The Institution of the Chancellor's Office, his Oath, Robe, Badge, and Pension.</i>	237.
III. <i>The Register's Institution, Oath, Mantle, Badge, Privileges, and Pension.</i>	248.
IV. <i>Garter's Institution, Oath, Mantle, Ensign, Badge, Privileges, and Pension.</i>	252.
V. <i>Institution of the Black Rod's Office, his Oath, Habit, Ensign, Badge, Privileges, and Pension.</i>	256.
VI. <i>The Payment of the Officers Pensions upon the new Establishment.</i>	258.
VII. <i>The Execution of these Offices by Deputies.</i>	260.

CHAP. IX.

The Election of a Knight into the Order.

Sect.	
I. <i>Of Summons to the Election.</i>	Page 262.
II. <i>The Place of Assembly.</i>	264.
III. <i>The Number of Knights that constitute a Chapter.</i>	265.
IV. <i>Dispensation for want of a full Number.</i>	266.
V. <i>Of Opening the Chapter.</i>	268.
VI. <i>That Knights only present in Chapter ought to nominate.</i>	269.
VII. <i>Of the Number, Qualifications, and Degrees of the Persons to be nominated.</i>	271.
VIII. <i>Of the Scruteny, and by whom it ought to be taken.</i>	276.
IX. <i>The Time when.</i>	278.
X. <i>The Manner and Order of it.</i>	279.
XI. <i>The Presentation of it to the Sovereign.</i>	283.
XII. <i>His Considerations thereupon referring to the Qualification of each Person to be Elected.</i>	284.
XIII. <i>Of other Inducements for Election.</i>	290.
XIV. <i>That the Sovereign only doth Elect.</i>	291.
XV. <i>The Scruteny ought to be entred among the Annals.</i>	292.
XVI. <i>The Scruteny ought not to be viewed until it be entred.</i>	293.

XVII. <i>Of Scrutenies taken, yet no Election made.</i>	294.
XVIII. <i>The Penalties inflicted on Knights-Companions, who appear not at an Election.</i>	295.

CHAP. X.

The Investiture of a Knight-Subject with the Garter and George.

Sect.	
I. <i>The Notice given to a Knight Subject of his Election.</i>	296.
II. <i>His Reception into the Chapter-house.</i>	298.
III. <i>The Ceremonies of Investiture with the Garter and George.</i>	299.
IV. <i>Of sending the Garter and George to an Elect Knight-Subject.</i>	302.
V. <i>The Manner of a Knights Investiture.</i>	308.
VI. <i>Allowances and Rewards given to Garter for his Service in this Employment.</i>	311.

CHAP. XI.

Of Preparations for the Personal Installation of a Knight.

Sect.	
I. <i>That Installation gives the Title of Founder.</i>	Page 312.
II. <i>Of the Time and Place appointed for Installation.</i>	313.
III. <i>Of Commissions for Installation.</i>	314.
IV. <i>Letters of Summons.</i>	315.
V. <i>Warrants for the Livery of the Order.</i>	316.
VI. <i>The Removal of Achievements and Plates.</i>	ibid.
VII. <i>Preparations made by the Knight Elect.</i>	334.

CHAP. XII.

The Personal Installation of a Knight-Subject.

I. <i>Of the Cavalcade to Windesfor.</i>	Page 338.
II. <i>The Offering in the Chappel, on the Eve of the Installation.</i>	342.
III. <i>The Supper on the Eve.</i>	344.
IV. <i>The Order in Proceeding to the Chapter-house.</i>	ibid.
V. <i>The Ceremonies performed in the Chapter-house.</i>	350.
VI. <i>The Proceeding into the Chaire.</i>	352.
VII. <i>The Ceremonies of Installation.</i>	354.
VIII. <i>The Order observed when two or more Knights are Installed in one day.</i>	360.
IX. <i>The Offering of Gold and Silver.</i>	364.
X. <i>Of the Grand Dinner at the Installation.</i>	ib.
XI. <i>Of setting up the Knights Achievements.</i>	367.

CHAP.

The CONTENTS.

CHAP. XIII.

The Installation of a Knight Subject by Proxie.

- Sect.
 I. *The Original Cause of making Proxies.* 372.
 II. *Letters of Procuration.* Page 373.
 III. *Qualifications of a Proxie.* 375.
 IV. *Preparations for Installation.* *ibid.*
 V. *Proceeding to the Chapter-house.* 377.
 VI. *Transactions in it.* *ibid.*
 VII. *Proceeding to the Chaire.* 378.
 VIII. *Ceremonies performed there.* *ibid.*
 IX. *The Grand Dinner.* 380.

CHAP. XIV.

The Signification of Election to Strangers.

- Sect.
 I. *Within what time, and in what manner Certificate is made of their Election.* 381.
 II. *Of Notice given of an Election, before sending the Habit.* 384.
 III. *Notice of Election sent with the Habit.* *ibid.*
 IV. *Certificate of Acceptation.* 386.
 V. *Of an Election not accepted of.* 387.

CHAP. XV.

The Investiture of Strangers with the Habit and Ensigns of the Order.

- Sect.
 I. *The Time for sending the Habit and Ensigns unlimited.* Page 389.
 II. *Preparations made for the Legation.* 390.
 III. *The Ceremonies of Investiture.* 399.
 IV. *Certificates of having received the Habit and Ensigns of the Order.* 432.

CHAP. XVI.

The Installation of a Stranger by Proxie.

- Sect.
 I. *Touching the Choice and Nomination of a Proxie.* Page 434.
 II. *The Proctor's Qualifications.* 437.
 III. *His Letters of Procuration.* 439.
 IV. *Of the Proctor's Reception.* *ibid.*
 V. *The Preparations for Installation.* 440.
 VI. *The Proctor's Cavalcade to Windesfor.* 441.
 VII. *Supper after his Arrival there.* 442.
 VIII. *Of the Proceeding to the Chapter-house.* 443.
 IX. *The Ceremonies performed therein.* 444.
 X. *Of the Proceeding to the Chaire.* 447.
 XI. *The Ceremonies of Installation.* 448.

- XII. *The Proctor's Offering.* 452.
 XIII. *The Dinner.* 454.

CHAP. XVII.

The Duties and Fees Payable by the Knights-Companions at their Installations.

- Sect.
 I. *Touching the Fees due to the Colledge of Windesfor.* Page 455.
 II. *Fees due to the Register, Garter, Black-Rod and Officers of Arms.* 458.
 III. *Fees belonging to other of the Sovereign's Servants.* 462.
 IV. *Fees payable for Strangers.* 463.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the Grand Feast of the Order.

- Sect.
 I. *The Grand Feast appointed to be annually celebrated on St. George's day.* Page 467.
 II. *The Anniversary of St. George fixed by the Church unto the 23. of April.* 468.
 III. *St. George's day made Festum duplex.* 469.
 IV. *The Place for celebrating the Grand Feast, assigned to Windesfor-Castle.* 471.
 V. *St. George's day kept apart from the Grand Feast, and how then observed.* *Ibid.*
 VI. *The Grand Feast neglected by King Edward the Sixth.* 473.
 VII. *Removed from Windesfor by Queen Elizabeth.* 474.
 VIII. *Of Prorogation of the Grand Feast.* 475.
 IX. *Of Commissions for Prorogation.* 480.
 X. *That the Grand Feast ought to be celebrated once every year.* 482.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Preparations for the Grand Feast of the Order.

- Sect.
 I. *Of Letters giving notice of the Time and Place.* Page 484.
 II. *Of Dispensations for not attending at the Grand Feast.* 485.
 III. *Of Commissions of Lieutenancy and Assistance.* 487.
 IV. *Warrants for the Removal of Achievements.* *Ibid.*
 V. *Scutcheons of Arms and Stiles.* *Ibid.*
 VI. *Of adorning the Chappel.* 490.
 VII. *The furnishing of St. George's Hall.* 500.
 VIII. *Officers and Servants appointed to attend at the Grand Feast.* 502.

CHAP.

The CONTENTS.

CHAP. XX.

The Order of the Ceremonies on the Eve of the Grand Feast.

- Sect.
 I. Of the beginning of the Grand Feast. Page 504.
 II. Of sitting the Proceeding in order. 509.
 III. Of Proceeding to the Chapter-house. 516.
 IV. Of the Opening of the Chapter. 519.
 V. Transactions in the Chapter held before the first Vespers. 520.
 VI. The Ceremonies relating to the first Vespers. 528.
 VII. The Supper on the Eve. 544.

CHAP. XXI.

The Order of the Ceremonies on the Feast Day.

- Sect.
 I. The Proceeding to the Chappel in the Morning. Page 547.
 II. The Proceeding to the second Service. 550.
 III. Of the Grand Procession. 551.
 IV. The Order of the second Service. 570.
 V. The Offering of Gold and Silver. 580.
 VI. The Return to the Presence. 587.
 VII. Of the Dinner on the Feast Day. 588.
 VIII. The Ceremonies belonging to the second Vespers. 597.
 IX. Of the Supper on the Evening of the Feast Day. 598.

CHAP. XXII.

The Ceremonies observed on the last Day of the Feast.

- Sect.
 I. Of Proceeding to the Chapter-house in the Morning. Page 599.
 II. Of the Elect Knights Proceeding into the Choir. 600.
 III. Of the Ceremonies performed at Divine Service. 601.
 IV. The Diets at some of the Grand Feasts. 602.

CHAP. XXIII.

The Observation of the Grand Feast by Absent Knights.

- Sect.
 I. Absent Knights enjoyed to observe the Grand Feast. Page 613.

- II. More particular Directions for their Observation of it. 614.
 III. How to be observed in case of Sicknels. 616.
 IV. In what manner the Feast hath been observed by Absent Knights. ibid.
 V. Dispensation for Absence granted during life. 619.

CHAP. XXIV.

The Degradation of a Knight-Companion.

- Sect.
 I. Of the Degradation of a Knight-Batchellor. Page 620.
 II. The manner of Degradating a Knight-Companion of the Garter. 621.
 III. Of Restauration into the Order after Degradation. 622.

CHAP. XXV.

Honors paid to Deceased Knights-Companions.

- Sect.
 I. Of the Celebration heretofore of Masses, for defunct Knights-Companions. Page 623.
 II. Of fixing on the Stalls, Plates of their Arms, and Stiles. 627.
 III. The Offering of Atchievements. 629.
 IV. Of depositing the deceased Knights Mantles in the Chapter-house. 636.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the Founder, the first Knights-Companions and their Successors.

- Sect.
 I. Of what Number they consisted. Page 642.
 II. A short view of the Founder's Wars. 643.
 III. Some account of the first 25 Knights-Companions. 670.
 IV. A Catalogue of their Successors. 708.



CHAP. I.

OF

Knighthood in general.

SECT. I.

Of Virtue and Honor.



It hath been the Practice of all well-govern'd Kingdoms and States, to encourage *Merit* by *Reward*. *Merit* consists in the performance of some virtuous Action, directed to the Publick good. As *Virtue* is either *Military* or *Civil*; so *Reward* is differently distributed, either by *Honor* or *Profit*: to the end, each sort of *Virtue* may have its proper and suitable *Reward*. Virtue is encouraged by Reward.

And though in a moral and strict sence, *Virtue* is to be accounted its own *Reward*; yet in regard there are very many, who not so much from a virtuous Principle, as to obtain *Wealth* or *Honor*, are drawn off-

times to act meritoriously; therefore it was provided, by the wisest *Founders* of Empires, and Common-wealths, to take special care, no less for the encouragement of well-doing (by setting up *Reward* as a Prize, for brave endeavours to aim at, prosecute and carry; and consequently to exalt men according to their merit) then for the punishment of vitious and ignoble actions: insomuch that *Socrates* justly concluded that City to be best governed, where-

in, *the good are cherish'd, and the bad chastis'd.* (a) Bras. in Platonem, l. 9. c. 8.

B

Nor

Nor doth it a little concern the interest of a *Nation*, that noble incitements to *Vertue* be proposed to valiant minds, wherewith being inflamed, they may always shine forth, in some action, worthy themselves: since *Rewards* are powerful (even to wonder) to excite and stir up the force and vigour of gallant Spirits, to very high degrees of performance; and from the example of our *Ancestors*, every one is apt to persuade himself, that there is nothing which may not be attempted, and effected by endeavour and manly courage.

As touching civil *Vertues* or *Faculties* (to wit, *Justice*, *Gravity*, *knowledge in the Laws*, and the like) they being *Qualifications* in order to *Magistracy*, and *Offices of Trust* and *Credit*, and rewardable by the advantages, estimation, and authority accruing thereby; come not directly within the limits of our present discourse.

Honor the reward of military *Vertue*. *Vertue* (in the opinion of ^b *Phaleris*,) is alone excellent, and all other things but merely *Fortune*. Its reward and end (saith ^c *Aristotle*) is something excellently good, divine and blessed, according to that of ^d *Dionysius Afer*, *Vertue immortal honor ever gains*. But the proper Reward of military *Vertue* (which comprehends both *Fortitude* and *Conduct*, and of which we only treat) is *Honor*:

^e *Arist. Ethic. ca. l. 4.*

Honor is the greatest of exterior goods, and being the object of a nobler ambition, than *Wealth* or *Profit*, is therefore the aim of that *Vertue*, to wit *Valour*, which springs from a more generous Spirit. For all men of *Courage* (nay even the *Puſillanimous* themselves) are, in some sort, toucht with a sense and desire of *Glory* and *Fame*.

So that (as is already intimated) of all vertuous Acts, *military Prowess*, and *valiant Achievements*, have rendred men capable of the highest *Honors* and *Advancements*: they being principally invited, by the allurements of such *Rewards*, to make the greater discoveries of their *Vertue* and *Fortitude*, in the performance of noble *Exploits*.

But that *Fame* might not lose it self, in a general and unbounded Notion, therefore at length it was thought fit, to reduce *Honor* into *Form* and *Order*, by investing the Person meriting with some particular term, title, or appellation of *Excellence*; and this is the very source and original of all *Nobility*, and of all those *Dignities* and honourable *Titles*, which being transmitted from the first Achievers to their Successors, through several Ages, remain at this day in their posterity, as lasting *Monuments* of the glory of their *Ancestors*. Among which, *Knighthood*, as it hath been esteemed the *Reward* most suitable to worthy and great *Vertue*, so hath it been accounted the chief and primary *Honor* among many *Nations*.

Vertue and *Honor* deified by the Romans, who built them Temples.

^g *Liv. l. 27. c. 27. edit. Francf. a. l. Mon. 1628.*

^h *Vide etiam Plutarch, in vita ipsius Marcelli. h. Item Plutarch, in vita pref. Marcell. i. Guld. Panciroll. de 14 Reg. Urbis Romae. k. Topograph. Romae, ex Maliano. c. 73. Et 133. Vide porro Job. Robin. Antiq. Rom. cap. 18. l. Vides Virtutis Templum, vides Honoris, à Marco Marcello renovatum, quod multis ante annis erat bello Ligustico à Quinto Maximo dedicatum. De Nat. Deor. l. 2. p. 192. edit. Basil. 1534. m. Pius et Ailius Priscus, qui Honoris et Virtutis ades Imperatori Vespasiano Augusto restituerunt pinxerunt. Plin. l. 35. c. 10. sub fine.*

The *Romans* had so great an esteem of *Honor* and *Vertue*, that they deified them, and dedicated *Temples* to their *Worship*; the chief and principal was that which ^h *Marcellus* vowed to erect, when he was at *Clastidium*, in the *Gaulick War*: (and afterwards built, with the ^b spoils he got in the *Wars of Sicilie*) but the *Dedication* thereof was hindered by the *Priests*, who affirmed that one *Temple* could not be rightly dedicated unto two *Deities*; and thereupon there was another *Chapel* built for *Vertue*, and joyned to the fore-end thereof: and albeit *Marcellus* hastned the erection, yet he lived not to dedicate the same, nevertheless that was afterwards done by his *Son*.

This *Temple* stood neer to the Gate ^k *Capena*, upon the *Appian way*, and was rather according to ^l *Cicero*, but renewed or re-edified by *Marcellus* (as his was by the Emperour ^m *Vespasian*) for that many years before, it had been dedicated by ^{Q.} *Maximus*.

In this structure, the *Temple of Vertue* was contiguous to that of *Honor*, and so situate, that there was no other passage thereunto, but through the *Temple of Vertue*; thereby mystically shewing and admonishing, That *Honor* was not to be attained by any other ways then by *Vertue*; That *Vertue* was as the *Guardian* of

of Honor; and those that undertook any notable Action, unless they carried n *Neminem honoris Templum ingredi posse, nisi prius istum esse ingressus. Augusti de civit. Dei.* themselves valiantly, and squared their actions by the Rule of *Vertue*, could make no entrance into future *Honor*.

And because the Structure of this Temple, and the order of the Buildings may be beheld, we shall here exhibit a Prospect thereof, as it is set forth by *Jacobus Laurus*.

o Antiq. Urbis Splendor.



There was another Temple built to *Honor*, without the Gate *Collina* (which according to some was called also *salaria*) and the reason of its Dedication there, was (as *Cicero* tells us) the finding of a Plate of Metall in that place, bearing this Inscription,

DOMINA HONORIS.

About an hundred years after the death of *Marcellus*, *C. Marius* consecrated a little Chappel to *Honor* and *Vertue*, as appears by this following Inscription,

*C. MARIUS C. F. COS. VII.
PR. TR. PL. Q. AVGV. R. &c.
DE MANVBIIS CIMBRICEIS ET TEVTONICEIS AEDEM
HONORI ET VIRTVTI VICTOR FECIT VESTE
TRIUMPHALI CALCEIS PVNICIEIS.....*

The Symmetry and Proportion of the Columes, and what they supported, were perfected by *C. Mucius*, as *Vitruvius* informs us, and that according to the exact Rules of Architecture; Moreover it was adorned within and without with Images, most artificial for Sculpture, and beautiful for Painting; but the place where this Chappel was erected, is not now certainly known.

How *Honor* and *Vertue* were represented by the *Romans*, and after what manner their Images (set up in their Temples) were designed and fashioned, may be seen in some of their *Coin*s, the Ecstyp of a few we have placed here, from that large and choice Collection, now in the Cabinet of His Majesty, the present Sovereign of the most noble Order of the *Garter*: the first represents the heads of *Honor* and *Vertue*.

p Cic. l. 2. de Legib. p. 288. q Top. Rom. Marlian cap. 130. q Alex. Donat. de Urbe Roma, lib. 3. p. 67.

¶ Videtur Inscript. 3. apud Jan. Grut. p. 436.

¶ Lib. 7.

¶ Alex. Donat. de Urbe Roma, l. 3. p. 256.

Their Images variously represented.

the : where *Honor* is set forth with a youthful face, crowned with Laurel, having long and curled hair : *Vertue*, wearing an *Helmet*, but without any attire, or other ornament.



The Face of *Honor* so shadoweth that of *Vertue*, that but a little of it appears ; and this is observed to have been, not without good reason so designed, inasmuch as ^u *Honor* is the more illustrious of the two, and where we behold any person outwardly adorned with *Honor*, we are to judge him inwardly indued with *Vertue* : forasmuch as *Honor* is his due, and justly bestowed upon him.

Such another representation of the heads of these *Deities*, may be found in ^w *Hubertus Goltzius* ; and not unlike, but it was upon this account, that *Postumus*, ^{II} one of the Tyrants in *Gallienus* his Reign, placed her head behind his OWN.

In the Reverse of the first of these, we see the figures of *Italy* and *Rome* drawn at full length ; that which represents *Italy*, seems to deliver a *Cornucopia* (the Emblem of her Wealth) into the hands of *Rome*, in acknowledgment of the Peace she thence enjoyed ; and *Rome*, setting her right foot on the Globe of the World, which she had, or hoped to overcome.

In a Coyn, relating to the Emperour *Galba*, ^{III} *Honor* is exhibited with an *Hafta pura* (which was a ^{*} *Spear-staff* not armed with Iron) in one hand, and in the other a *Cornucopia* ; and is in the same manner set forth by the Emperour [†] *Aurelius Antoninus*.

But because the *Romans* placed their chiefest glory in *military Vertue* ; *Vertue* is designed in the Reverse like an *Amazon*, wearing an ^{*} *Helmet*, and her Vest ^{*} girded about her ; having an *Hafta pura* in her left hand, a *Parazone*, or short Sword in her right, and booted according to the military manner ; in which posture and habit, she is likewise represented in some Coyns of [‡] *Hadrianus*, *Antoninus Pius*, and *Severus*.

In a Coyn referring to [†] *Titus*, *Honor* is set forth after the manner in that of *Galba* ; yet not with a youthful, but a bearded face. How at other times represented, appears among the Coyns of *Antoninus Pius* ^{IV} being there vested, both in a *Toga* and *Tunica*, and holding a Laurel-branch : but in those of ^a *Arrelus Antoninus*, exhibited sometimes with an *Hafta pura*, at other times with a Laurel.

Galba, we see, joyned *Honor* and *Vertue* together in one Reverse ; to shew that by [†] *Vertue* he gained his Honors and Imperial Command ; the like did [¶] *Vinelius*.

^u *Ant. August. Antiq. Roman. Dialog. 11. p. 36. Edit. Antwerp. anno 1653.*
^w *Tom. 1. p. 221. num. 3.*

^x *Tafte Servio ad 6. Aneid.*
^y *Tab. 45. Nummi Ducis Crojaci ex Arseboi. num. 14. edit. Antwerp. anno 1654.*
^z *Virius fortitudinem robore designet.*
^a *Solet virtutis simulacrum depingi succinillum Lucat. ad 10. Thebaid.*
^b *Crojiac. Numis. Tab. 37. num. 22.*
^c *Idem Tab. 28. num. 5.*
^d *Crojiaca Numis. Tab. 45. num. 12. 14.*
^e *Comment super Tab. Num. Duc. Crojiaci. p. 20.*
^f *Enz. Vic. in Avel. nek. 11.*

ius. So *Galerius Maximianus* seems to express the attaining of his greatness, by a compact and agreement (as it were) with *Vertue*, which he signified by joining his hands with hers. g Crojiaca Numif. Tab. 64. num. 20.

Some other difference hath been now and then put in the representation of *Vertue*, as may be observed in the *Ectyps* above; for in one of *Galba's* Coyns [V] she is found standing, holding a Parazone, and a little Victory. The same is done in a Coyn of *Severus*, where she is only differenced by a fitting posture. h Videtis Hist. August. illustr. per Fr. Angelon. p. 243.

But *Commodus* [VI] thought fit to arm her compleatly, bearing a little Victory in her right hand, and holding a Spear and Shield in her left; the like did *Severus*, *Caracalla*, and *Valerianus*. Yet sometimes the Shield was omitted [VII] and the little Victory changed for a Laurel-branch: for so she appears in the Coyns of *Gordianus tertius* [IX] *Philippus Arabs*, *Trajanus Decius*, *Tetricus*, and *Claudius Gothicus*.

In the last place, *Vertue* is now and then seen armed, as before, holding only a Spear and a Shield; as in the Coyns of *Alexander Severus*, [VIII] and many others. And all of them by these Symbolical devices, pointing at the *military Vertue*, not only of that most accomplished and famous *Roman Nation*, but of the *Emperours* themselves.

SECT. II.

Of the Antiquity of Knighthood.

IN tracing out the beginning and original of *Knighthood*, though we are not so vain, as to offer at the deriving this degree or order from before the Creation, and say, that *Saint Michael* the Archangel is *premier Chevalier*, being so styled in the Preamble to the Statutes of the Order of *Monsieur Saint Michael*; or *Premier Chevalier de l'ordre de Paradis*, as he is called in the Instrument of Election of our King *Henry the Eighth*, into the said Order of *Saint Michael*, by the French King *Francis* the first: Yet may we very well affirm, *Knighthood* to be neer as ancient as *Valour* and *Heroick Vertue*; albeit the Ceremonies and Circumstances thereof, have been much varied and transformed in several Ages, and among the several Nations, where this Dignity hath at any time flourished. And therefore with much probability, and some justice, may we derive the Original of *military Honor*, whence most of our *Europeans* account it their greatest honor to derive their Original, namely, from *Troy*. Knighthood among the Greeks. Penes Catie-tar. Scaccaril.

For of how great renown its *Knights* were of old, namely, *Heſtor*, *Troilus*, *Aeneas*, *Antenor*, with many others, for their Knightly deeds; and how great glory they acquired by their *military Vertue*, may be sufficiently learnt from those things, which are recorded in the Histories of them.

So among the *Greeks*, *Agamemnon*, *Menelaus*, *Peleus*, *Hercules*, *Diomedes*, *Telamon*, *Ulyſſes*, *Patroclus*, and several others, were such, as left behind them, an everlasting Memorial of their Knightly actions; to inflame the young Nobility that was growing up, by the examples of *Achilles*, and themselves, to the imitation and pursuit of their virtues and valiant enterprises.

But lest this may be thought too much to be granted, we shall endeavour to strengthen our conjecture, with some observations out of *Homer*, by whom we often find the word *ἰππῶν*, used in the same sense, as *Equus* was afterwards among the *Latins*, as will appear in these following Verses of his,

Ἐτοίχῃ δὲ καὶ μετόπισθε γυγνῆτος ἰππῶτα Νέστωρ.

'Mong whom thus Nestor spake, that honor'd Knight.

h Iliad. β. Catalog. 336.

And

And in many other places of the *Iliads* (almost all, where he speaks of *Nestor*) he mentions him by the same Title; which is as much as if he had said, *Chevalier Nestor*, as in the 108. *Versè* of the Catalogue of the second Book of the *Iliads*, and *Iliad* n. ver. 170. 181. 0 112. 151. a 52. 163. x 128. 157. &c.

And that this Title of *Knight* seems to be of more ancient date among the *Grecians*, then the *Trojan War*, may be collected from the same *Homer*, who bestows it on other brave *Heroes*, that lived some time before these Wars began: For in the 135. *Versè* of the aforesaid Catalogue, *Phyleus*, among the rest of the *Greek Commanders* (whom he there reckons up) is thus mentioned,

Φυλίδης δὲν τίκετ' αἰὶ φίλος ἱππῖτα Φυλεύς.

Phylides Son of Phyleus, Heav'n-lov'd Knight.

Likewise to the famous *Tydeus*, King of *Ætolia*, Father of *Diomedes*, he attributes the same Title.

Ἐν γὰρ τοι στήθεσσι μένος πατρὸς ἴκα

* Ἀτρεΐδην, ὅς ἐν ἔχρ' αὖτε σκεῖπτατος ἱππῖτα Τυδεύς,

Thy Father Tydeus, that stout Knight, his fire
Into thy manly heart I will inspire.

In after-times the *Grecians* had among them this Degree and Title, considerable both for reputation and dignity.

1 In Gen. Dier.
l. 2. c. 29.
m Ibid.
n Herod. in
Terpsichore.

The *Knightly Honor* (saith *Alexander ab Alexandro*) always excelled among the *Achaïans*, as being the chiefest charge. Those of ^m Crete also had it in great esteem, as the most principal among them, for its antiquity and dignity. ⁿ Herodotus tells us, that among the *Chalcedonians* (as after among the *Romans*) Wealth was so much regarded, that those who were rich, bore the title of ἱπποδάμῃ, i. e. Equites. And as a testimony, that the ambition of the Equestrian Name was very ancient,

o De Milit. F.
quellii, lib. 5.
c. 1. in princ.
p Ex Strabone,
lib. 10.

^o *Hermannus Hugo* saith, the *Lacedemonians* constituted a second Order of Knights, and that the same *Lacedemonians* had an ^p Order of Knights, who had no Horses. Not much unlike some of the *Equestrian Order*, in succeeding times, among the *Romans*, who were only honor'd with gold Rings, but not with a publick Horse, until they actually entred into military Service.

SECT. III.

Of the Foundation of the Equestrian Order among the Romans.

Institution of
the Celeres,
whence
sprung the
Equestrian
Order.
q Lib. 1. edit.
Franc. ad
Museum. 1528.

BUT to raise the Structure of *Knighthood* upon a more substantial Foundation, we shall with greater certainty descend to the *Romans*; among whom we find, there was from the very infancy of their military glory, an instituted Body and Society of *Knights*, consisting of a select number; and this is recorded by ^q *Livy*, who (speaking of the time immediately after the *Romans* and *Sabins* were united under one Common-wealth) saith, that then there were inrolled *Centuries* tres Equitum, three Centuries of *Knights*.

This inrollment was ordained by *Romulus*, and did follow soon after his division of the City into three Tribes; and the Institution consisted of three hundred in number; for each Tribe was divided into ^r ten parts, which were called *Curie*, and every *Decuria* set forth ten *Knights*; so that in every Tribe there were ten *Decurie*, or one hundred *Knights*. Moreover, each of these *Centuries* were particularly distinguished by several Titles; one being called ^r *Rammenfes*, another *Tacles*, and the third *Luceres*.

A little after, *Livy* (speaking of *Romulus*) tells us, ^r that he appointed these three hundred to attend him as a Life-guard, both in Peace and War, and called them *Celeres*;

r Claud. Sal.
mas. de re mil.
lit. Rom. c. 20.
p 220.
Videtur Rosin.
Antig. Rom.
l. 10. c. 5.
s Livy loco citato.
t Idem, lib. 1.
c. 15.

leres ; and so called (as some write) ^a à celeritate, from their active and dextrous u Plutarch. in
dispatch in martial affairs. But Claudius Salmasius derives Celeres from the Greek uita Romuli.
word κῆρας, which (saith he) among the *Eolians* signifies a Horse ; and from a Videbis Dic-
Horse, did the ancient *Romans* derive the Title of *Eques* ; of which more anon. Halicarnass.
Hereupon, not only those of *Romulus* his institution are by *Livy* called *Equites* l. 2. p. 86. Edit.
(as is before noted) but when he speaks of the addition which *Tarquinius Priscus* Francos. anno
made to those three Centuries, he again calls them ^w Centurie Equitum ; and to w Livy l. 1.
the twelve Centuries, listed afterwards by *Servius Tullus*, doth he afford the c. 36.
the same Title, making frequent use of it, in divers other places, as their common x Ibid. c. 44.
appellation.

And because the *Celeres* or *Equites* were at first appointed ^y to attend *Romulus* y Halicarnass.
through the City (in the quality aforesaid) armed with Javelins and Spears, are eod. lib. & la-
therefore (in the esteem of ^z some) placed within the degree of service, and con- co cit.
sequently thought inferior to the *Equestrian Order* ; we shall here (to remove z Th. Godwin,
this mistake) note, That in their Election, not only Courage and personal Val- Romana Hist-
lour was required, but Nobleness of Extraction no less regarded ; they being ris Anthologia,
also such as were descended from the best Families in *Rome* : and this is fully p. 28.
testified by *Dionysius Halicarnassensis*. ^a *Romulus* (saith he) chose three hundred stout a Lib. 2. p. 86.
and personable men out of the chiefest Families, or (in the words of ^b *Livy*) ex pri- b Lib. 1. c. 43.
moribus Civitatis.

Within a short time after the Institution of the *Celeres*, *Servius Tullus* ordain-
ed, that those who did succeed in that Body, should be elected *ex Censu* ; to wit,
from a considerable and certain valuation of their Estates, entered in the *Censors*
Book, called the *Equestrian Cense*.

This is confirmed by *Dionysius* (ex *Pisone in primo Annalium*) ^c *Servius* (saith c Lib. 4. p.
he) chose the number of Knights out of the Citizens who had the greatest Cense, and 222.
were of the most noble Families.

Wherefore it cannot be denied, that *Eques* was at this time (which was even
in the infancy of the City) ^a a Title, not only of Dignity, but also that the *Equites*
were then chosen from among those *Romans*, eminent both for Nobleness of Ex-
traction and Estate ; Neither were more considerable Qualifications required
of any, who were admitted into the *Equestrian Order*, in the following times.

The *Roman State* was at first constituted (as at this day is the *Venetian*) of ^d two d Res. Anti q.
degrees only, namely, *Patritians* and *Plebeians* : For neither the three Centuries, Rom. l. 1. c. 17.
instituted by *Romulus*, nor their increased number, appointed by *Tarquinius Priscus*,
nor those chosen by *Servius Tullus* from the Cense, and added to the former,
were moulded into a peculiar degree, while *Rome* was governed by *Kings* ; but
soon after the *Equestrian Order* began to be formed, and constituted one of the three
Orders in the *Common-wealth* : the *Celeres* then in being, were the very per-
sons of whom was composed and made up the Body of that Society, which then, &
thenceforward, was called *Ordo Equester* or *Equestris*, (for both words are found
to be indifferently used among the *Ancients*) from whence it appears, that the Ori-
ginal and Foundation of the *Equestrian Order*, is plainly deducible from (if not
the same with) the *Celeres*, since all the alteration lay, not in dissolving and taking
away, but in making them known by a new Title. Nay so little, or no difference,
is put by *Salmasius* between those of *Romulus* his Institution, and the *Equestrian*
Order, that speaking of the *Celeres*, he saith, ^e The whole Equestrian Order did then e De Re Mil.
consist in them : and *Rostatus* having shewn, that the *Ordo Equestris* was ranked in Rom. c. 20.
the second of the three degrees, positively affirms, ^f That in this division those three p. 236.
hundred are to be understood, who had been elected by *Romulus*, and whom he called f Antiq. Rom.
Celeres. l. 1. c. 17.

And now, to the end the Reader may take a short prospect into the Glory of this
Equestrian Order, (indeed the flower of the *Roman Chivalry*) together with some
other Dignities annexed unto that Degree, we shall first observe,

That the *Roman Citizens*, being thus distributed into three degrees, are ranked The Equestri-
by ^a *Livy* in this Order, *Senatus Ordo*, & *Plebs* : *Alexander ab Alexandro* an Order was
(from ^b *Appianus*) placeth also the *Equites* in the ^c middle, between the *Senators* and the middle
Degree.

^a Lib. 26. c. 36. ^b Lib. 2. Bell. Civil. ^c Gen. Dier. l. 2. c. 29.

Plebeians :

d Reginus, l. v. *Plebeians* : and this is further confirmed by that most noted *Flogie*, ^d *Consensu Senatus, & Equestris Ordinis, Populiq; Romani*, which among the Roman literal Notes

c 17. by ^e *Valerius Probus*, is set down after this manner, CON. SEN. E. ORD. P. Q. R.

e Do Interpret. Agreeable hereunto is that of *Cicero*, ^f *The Knights are next in dignity to the Senatorian Order* : The same is affirmed by ^g *Pliny*, and divers ^h others.

f Pro Client. And forasmuch as this degree was placed between the *Patritians* or *Senators*,

g Lib. 23. c. 1. in fine. and the *Plebeians* or *Common-people*, therein it is resembled by the *Knightly* degree

h Traj. ad de Nobilit. c. 27. nam 173. Sal. math. notis

i Alex ab Alex. Gen. Diocet. 2. c. 29. But though the *Equestrian Order* (ranked as before) was somewhat inferior to

k Salmat. de Re mil. Rom. c. 20 p. 227. that of the Senate, ⁱ yet had it the esteem of great authority and power, forasmuch

l Livy l. 2. c. 1. as it was intersted with most ample Honors, and almost equal to the Senatorian de-

m In stat. ab Scruis. c. 2. gree. And ^k from this Order to the height of Nobility (which relided in the Senators)

n Alex ab Alex. and upon this ground, the Emperour *Alexander Severus* (as ^o *Lampridius* reports)

o Epit. de Jul. Flav. c. 2. did call this Degree, *The Seminary or Nursery of Senators*, so did ^p *Persius* King of

p De Re Mil. Rom. c. 21. p. 240. *Macedon* long before ; and for the very same reason, may we further parallel it

q Mart. lib. 12. Epig. 4. with that of *Knighthood* among us in *England*, which is the next in dignity to the

r Turneb. in Comment. in Orationem Cicer. pro Caio Rabirio, p. 11 Ad L. ult. c. 1. de Senatoribus. *Baronage*, and generally persons of their rank and quality are made choice of to

s Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. sub finem. ascend unto that Honor.

t Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. sub finem. It was a Constitution as ancient as the Reign of *Tiberius* the Emperour, that no

u Gen. Diocet. l. 2. c. 29. man should be admitted into the *Equestrian Order*, nor have given unto him the

w Ambr. Cale. p. 1. verbis Equestris. right of a *Gold Ring*, ^u unless he was free-born, or a Gentleman, and his Father and

x Plin. Epist. 1. c. 1. Grandfather had been so : and indeed for a long time none were elected *Knights*,

y Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. but the best sort of Gentlemen, and Persons of noble, nay sometimes Kingly Ex-

z Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. traction, as was the illustrious ^o *Mecenas*, concerning whom ^v *Vell. Paternulus*

aa Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. giveth this Character ; That he aspired no higher than the *Equestrian Order*, not out

ab Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. of an incapacity of attaining greater matters, but that he desired them not.

ac Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. Yet at length, through the corruption of times, *Plebeians*

ad Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. and *Freed-men* were too frequently received into this De-

ae Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. gree ; the *Equestrian* *Conse* alone, to wit, their attaining to

af Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. such a degree of Wealth, as reached the valuation of a

ag Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. *Knight*, was that which gained them this Honor, which

ah Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. *Salmatius* thus affirms (in his Exposition of a piece of *Polybius*) ^a Whomsoever

ai Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. the *Conse* did elect into the *Equestrian Order*, he considered nothing in him but

aj Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. the *Equestrian* *Conse* ; which for the general, will likewise find but too near a

ak Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. parallel among the *Knights* of this Age.

al Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. To add to the lustre of the *Equestrian Order*, let us next consider, that the civil

am Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. affairs of the *Roman Common-wealth* were sometimes put under their management,

an Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. and the chiefest of the *Knights* made *Judges* : which *Cicero* thus confirms : ^a Before

ao Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. the *Knights*, *Judges* at Rome, the *Causés* were pleaded and debated. And what

ap Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. esteem was generally set upon their uprightness and justice, *Turnebus* sets forth,

aq Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. who explicating some Pieces of *Cicero* (wherein several of their excellent Judg-

ar Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. ments are reported) saith, ^a There was then a great opinion of the Vertue of the Ro-

as Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. man *Knights*, from the integrity of their Judgments. Nor was there any other

at Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. cause (as *Budæus* notes) wherefore they were called *Judges*, ^a Then that the *Decu-*

au Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. ria of the *Judges* were chosen from amongst those of the *Equestrian Order*.

av Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. And though (by assuming this additional dignity) they bore the Title of

aw Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. *Judges*, and not of *Knights* ; (for in those times, ^a The Title of *Knights* continued

ax Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. appropriate to the *Troops* of those who served with Publick *Horses*) yet nevertheless,

ay Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. without all doubt (saith *Alexander ab Alexandro*) ^a The *Judges* continued still of

az Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. the *Equestrian Order*, and were reckoned among the *Knights* : for that they used the

ba Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. *Gold Ring* as *Knights*, and had the same *Ensigns* of Honor, and executed the said

bb Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. Offices : Though it was otherwise, where a *Knight* was elected into the Senate,

bc Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. for then (having assumed the Name of the more noble Order) the Title of his

bd Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. former degree was extinguished, albeit he still retained the *Ensigns* thereof.

be Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. ^a *Gracchus* (Brother to *Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus*) being Tribune of the

bf Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. Commons, and studying how to curry favour with the People, concluded it

bg Plin. lib. 22. c. 1. would

would best be brought about, by abating or clipping the authority of the *Senate*: * *Flor. Epit.*
 He thereupon preferred (amongst others) a *Law*, that *seven hundred should be* *Hist. R. m. l.*
chosen out of the Equestrian Order, into the Senate (which then consisted but of *60. vide*
three hundred) * *out of design to make the Votes of the Knights double to those of the* *etiam Plin. l.*
Senators; by which means, he *took away from the Senate their authority of sit-* *33. c. 2. circa*
ting in judgment, and appropriated it to the Equestrian Order. But *Florus* *finem.*
notes withal, that this proved a means to corrupt the Knights; between whom *Godwin. An-*
 and the *Senate*, there was at that time a good correspondence. *thologia p. 236.*
ex Curiis in O-
rat pro Scauro.
In Cap. grad.

For it seems, those who were hereupon chosen into the *Senate*, did so misbe-
 have themselves in the execution of their powers, at least, so kept under the
Senators authority, that they gave very great distast unto them; insomuch, as
 not long after by the *assistance of M. Lucius Drusus*, then Tribune of the People, *Flor. Epitom.*
 their former prerogative was again translated, from the *Equestrian Order*, to them- *l. 70.*
 selves; for he made *Legem Judicariam*, whereby not only an *equal number of* *Godwin. An-*
 Judges should be elected, *out of both Orders*; but that *all judgments should* *thol. p. 237. ex*
 pass, indifferently and equally, by the *Senate* and *Equestrian Order.* Hereupon *Cicero. de Orat.*
 the power of the *Knights* grew less and less, until it shrunk to nothing; so that *71.*
 at length, the *Judges* places which they before had executed, became conferrable *Flor. Epit.*
 upon the *Publicans.* *lib. 71.*

But half a Century of years pass'd not, ere *M. Cicero* when *Consul* (which *Plin. l. 23. c. 1.*
 was *Anno ab Urbe Condita 690*) re-established the *Equestrian Order*, and recon- *Flor. Epitom.*
 ciled the *Senate* to it. And *from hence* the *Knights* were (a second time) esta- *l. 1. sub finem.*
 blished the *third degree in Rome*, and all *Acts* passed in the name of the *Senate*, the *Idem Plin.*
People of Rome, and the *Equestrian Order*; the same *Pliny* giving the reason why *l.*
 the *Knights* were then so placed after the *People*, in all publick instruments, *because*
they were last of all incorporated into the body of the Common-wealth.

As to the Dignities and Honors the *Ordo Equestris* enjoyed abroad, we find,
 that many *Provinces* were governed *by some of the Equestrian Order alone*, in- *Alex. ab A-*
 stead of *Presidents*; for in *Cappadocia*, *Egypt*, and other *Countries*, those of the *Eque-* *lex Gen. Dier.*
strian Order did for a long time rule; among whom *Egypt* had this peculiar, and *l. 2. c. 29.*
 proper to it self, that none of the *Senators* were admitted to be her *Presidents*,
but only those of the Equestrian Order. Whole *Decrees* *Augustus* commanded *to be*
 to be had in like esteem, *as if the Magistrates of Rome, or Kings, or Consuls, or* *Ibid.*
Pretors, had pronounced them.

As a note of Eminence, to their Names and Honors, they had the Titles of *They were cal-*
splendidi and *Illustres*, bestowed upon them; both which are equivalent to that *led Splendidi*
 of *Nobiles.* For *Oppian* calls them *splendidi*, & *Illustres.* *Tacitus* describing the *and Illustres.*
 affairs of *Claudius*, styles them also *Illustres.* *Pliny* gives them the Title of *splendi-* *De Bellis Cio-*
di, and so doth *Cicero.* There is an inscription neer *Præneste* which puts it in the *vil*
 superlative, for so *Scaliger* reads it, in his Index to *Jannus Gruterus Inscriptions.* *Lib. Epistola.*
5. Epist. 1. & l.
Epist. 6.
Epist. 25.
L. 2. De Fini-
bus.
Vid. Inscript.
Antiq. Urbis
Rom. per Jann.
Gruter. p. 440.
num. 1.

A. MUNIO. A. F.
 MIN. EVARISTO.
 SPL. EQ. R. PAT. COL.
 OMNIBUS. HONOR.
 NITIDE. FUNCTO. &c.

And in the Oration of *Caius Claudius* the *Consul*, touching a Sedition raised
 by *Cæso Quintius*, they are called *most sacred Knights.*

But besides other privileges belonging to the *Equestrian Order*, whereby it
 was advanced above the *Plebeian*, there is yet this one to be here remembered, to
 wit, that of their *seats* in the *Theatre.*

Of this privilege, the chiefest Author is thought to be *Julius Cæsar*, or *Augu-*
stus; that Law being called *Julia.* But it is more probably affirmed by others,
 that long before them, *L. Roscius*, being Tribune of the People, brought in a Law, *Flor. Epit.*
 that the fourteen next *seats* (i. e. next to those of the *Senators*) should be assigned to *l. 99.*
 the Roman *Knights*; which is further confirmed by *Cicero* who calls it *Roscian* *Philipp. 2.*
 Law. And yet far more ancient is it (even in the reign of *Tarquinius Priscus*)
 that *Livy* assigns them *seats* with the *Senators*, in the *Circus Maximus*, and *L. l. c. 39.*
 for

for the very same use and end; namely, to fit and view the Plays and Shews there exhibited.

They had a Colledge.

As an Honor to their Society, the *Roman Knights* had a Colledge belonging to them, called *Collegium Equitum*; as it appears by an Altar of Stone at *Coloigne* in *Germany*, which one of their Order, who bore the title of *Moderator* of that Colledge (as *Scaliger* reads it) had dedicated to *Hercules*, and thus inscribed.

⁷ *Jen. Cruter.*
Inscr. Rom. p.
47. CRUT. 1.

HERCULI
IANVARINIVS
MODERAT. COL.
EQVITVM. D. D.

¹ *Temples*

² *Equestrian*

³ *Fortune*

⁴ *Alex. ab Alex.*

⁵ *Gen. Diet. l. 1.*

⁶ *Annal. l. 3. sub*

⁷ *finem.*

We find that in several places there were Temples dedicated to the Goddess *Fortune*, under the Title of this Order, viz. *Equestri Fortune*.

That anciently at *Rome*, was erected ² near the *Marble Theatre*: but it seems to have been decayed, or at least not visited, in *Tiberius* his days: for *Tacitus* taking notice of a Present, which the *Roman Knights* had vowed to the *Equestrian Fortune*, for the health of the Empress, saith, ³ *Although there were many Temples dedicated to that Goddess in Rome, nevertheless there was none which bore that Name; but there was one found at Antium so called, where she was worshipped under that Title.*

⁸ *Lib. 42. c. 3.*

⁹ *Annal. V. c. 57.*

⁸ *Livy* also makes mention of another Temple, consecrated to the *Equestrian Fortune* by *Fulvius Flaccus*, *Proconsul* in *Spain*: because through the extraordinary Valor of some of the *Equestrian Order*, under his command, he had obtain'd a memorable Victory over the *Celtiberians*.

¹⁰ *Their Title*

¹¹ *preserved by*

¹² *Inscriptions*

¹³ *and Coins.*

In the last place let us observe, that as it was the great ambition of the *Romans* to make use of all means they could invent, to eternize the glory of their *Re-nown*: so in particular did the *Equites* among them, account the Honor of their order worthy remembrance in their publick Marbles; as is most apparent from sundry *Inscriptions* thereupon, to the end that the Honor of their Dignity might not only spread, but happily be transmitted and revived to future Ages, when themselves should be forgotten, or all other Writings perish.

One of which Marbles (though defective in the name of the *Person* to whom it related, yet compleat enough in the memorial of his *Dignities*) remaineth in a private House at *Picenum*, or in modern language *Sinigaglia*, in *la Marca dell' Ancona*, bearing this Inscription.

¹⁴ *Videfis Num.*
¹⁵ *q. 32. ad Cruter.*
¹⁶ *Inscrip. p. 493.*

P. F. ----- A. PRIMOPILO.
SPECTATAE. VIRTVTIS.
EQUESTRIS. ORDINIS. V.
PATRIBVS ET PLEBI GRATO.
OB GRATAM ADOLESCENTIS INDOLEM.
BENE MERITAM SAXVM DEDIT.

By this Inscription it further appears, that this Noble *Person* was not only of the *Equestrian Order*, but also an Officer of principal credit, namely the *Primopilus*, or ¹⁷ a first *Centurion* or *Captain* of the ten Ensigns among the *Triarii* (who were the chiefest of the four divisions that composed a *Legion*) and indeed, the very last reserve, and refuge of the whole Army; and consequently, that this *Person* was the chief *Captain* of the whole *Legion*.

¹⁸ *Vide Rosin.*
¹⁹ *Antiq. Rom.*
²⁰ *l. 10. c. 7.*

²¹ *P. Salmasius*
²² *alterius p. 42*
²³ *annal. & Tri-*
²⁴ *bunus militum*
²⁵ *& primus Cen-*
²⁶ *turion erat, quem*
²⁷ *nunc Primopili*
²⁸ *appellant, l. 7.*
²⁹ *c. 41.*

To this Officers charge was committed the principal Ensign called the *Eagle*: and that we may understand the greatness of his trust, he was of the *Generals* Council, and, as may be collected from a passage out of ³⁰ *Livy*, equal, if not of higher Dignity, than the *Tribune*, though otherwise the *Centurion* or *Captain* was subordinate to him.

Another *Inscription*, we conceive, may not improperly be inserted here, which is to be seen at *Rome*, in the *Flaminian way*, and is as followeth.

M. VA-

† M. VALERIO. M. F. PAL.

AMERIMNIANO.

VIXIT ANNIS XVII. MENSIB.

VIII. DIEBUS DVOBVS. HOR. X.

M. VALERIVS. M. F.

AMERIMNVS.

PATER INFELICISSIMVS.

FILIO SANCTISSIMO ET PIENTISSIMO FECIT.

NATVS EQVES ROMANVS IN VICO IVGARIO.

† Inscript. Græc.
p. 478.

What is herein observable to our purpose, is only out of the words *Natus Eques Romanus*, which tells us, that this young *M. Valerius*, for whom the Inscription was made, was born a *Roman Knight*.

And to give light to this phrase, give us leave to borrow the assistance of *Ca- lippine* (being next at hand) who notes, that the *Romans* did call those, who were advanced to the *Equestrian Dignity*, or were descended from some of the *Equestrian Order, Knights*. And lest this be not clear enough spoken by him, or that the words need further explication, he (in the same place) tells us, that the *Latine Writers*, in relation to the *Knighthly Dignity*, used three kinds of speech, viz. (1.) *Eques* [for a *Knight*.] (2.) *Equestris Ordo* [for one of the *Equestrian Order*.] (3.) *Equestri loco natus* [for one born or descended from an *Equestrian Family*.] which, whether they do signify the same, or whether they differ, and how far, we (saith he) must consider.

For the first, whosoever is called a *Knight*, the same is, and is called one of the *Equestrian Order*; and contrariwise, whosoever is, and is said to be of the *Equestrian Order*, is, and is said to be a *Knight*. But if a *Knight* is born from a Father, being a *Knight*, and who never was a *Senator*, such a one is said to be of *Equestrian extraction*: but if the same *Knight* be born of a Father that is a *Senator*, he is a *Knight* indeed, but not extracted from an *Equestrian Family*.

Idem habet Manutius inter Comment. Salustii, his verbis Different Eques, Equestris Ordo, & Equestri loco natus. Eques & Equestris Ordo, idem sunt, quod si Eques patre natus est qui nunquam Senator fuit, Equestri loco natus est, si natus est Senatore, Equestri loco non recte natus dicitur.

And hence it is evident, that *M. Valerius* the Father (who caused this *Epitaph* to be inscribed) was then no *Senator*, but a *Knight*, and of the *Equestrian Order*; though not noted with that Title in the Inscription; and consequently, that his Son *Valerius* might therefore justly be said to be *Natus Eques Romanus*. For when once a man was admitted into the *Equestrian Dignity*, the appellation of *Eques* belonged, and was accustomedly given to all his male issue, who kept that Title, until they were advanced into the *Senate*, or degraded for some misdemeanour.

And as in *Marbles*, so in *Coyns*, are there memorials left us, of this ancient Order.

^a *Octavius Strada* exhibits one of *Drusus*, the Son of the Emperor *Tiberius*, by ^b *De Vitis Imperat. pag. 24.* *Agrippina*; on the one side is the Effigies of this *Drusus*, thus circumscribed, NERONI CLAUDIO DRUSO GERM. COS. DESIGNAT. And on the reverse is this Inscription (which takes up all the middle of the Coyn) EQVESTER ORDO PRINCIPI JUVVENTVTIS. From whence we learn, that the body of the *Equestrian Order* did at this time offer their service to *Drusus*; he having then obtained the appellation of *Princeps Juventutis*.

(^c) *Adolphus Occo* sets forth two Coyns, the one of Gold, the other of Silver, both which are in all particulars the same with this already discoursed of, and inserts them among those belonging to the Emperor *Nero*; and so doth *Hubertus Goltzius* in his ^d *Theſaurus*.

We doubt that *Strada* hath misplaced that Coyn above-mentioned, in regard we meet with no Inscriptions upon Coyns, or other publick Monuments, either in *Occo*, *Goltzius*, *Angelomus*, or elsewhere, that gives to *Drusus* the Son of *Tiberius*, any other Name or Title, than *Drusus Caesar Tiberii Augusti Filius*; but to *Nero* (before he was made Emperor) the names of *Nero Claudius Drusus Germanicus*, are frequently attributed.

^c Imper. Rom. Numism. p. 118

^d Sub nomine Neronis.

¹ Vid. Numism.
Imp. Rom. Ca-
rol. Ducis Cro-
tiaci & Arsebot.
Tab. 17. Num.
17. vide etiam
Numism. eiusdem
ducis Crotiaci
per Hemelar.
edit. Antwerp.
1627. Tab. 4.
Num. 8.
² Imp. Rom.
Numism. p. 311.
³ La Historia
Ang. p. 217.

'Tis true, the very same names of *Nero Claudius Germanicus* are all stamped upon the Coyns of *Drusus*, Brother of *Tiberius* the Emperor; but there the Head is crowned with¹ Laurel, which *Drusus* the Son of *Tiberius* wanted, and the Face made older in all places, than that set forth by *Oct. strada*, (which indeed is a perfect juvenile Effigies) nor hath this *Drusus* the Brother of *Tiberius*, the Title of *Princeps juventutis*, any where given to him, but that of *Imperator* only, added at the end of his Names.

^m Besides these, we are beholding to *Occo*, for the description, and to ⁿ *Fr. Angelomus*, for the Ectyp of another Coyn, appertaining to *Commodus*, the Son of *Marcus Aurelius Antoninus*, on whose Reverse is to be seen the aforementioned Inscription, viz. *EQVESTER ORDO PRINCIPI IVVENTVT*. it being stamped when *Commodus* had the like address made to him from the *Equestrian Order*, he having then also attained that attribute of *Princeps juventutis*.

And thus have we let in a glimpse of the *Equestrian Order*, established among the *Romans*, with its Dignity and Honors, which for many Ages flourished in great glory and reputation; it being the continual care of that famous Nation, to preserve, partly, the Fame of valiant men to posterity, by the memory of their noble Acts; and partly, to stir up the spirits of the younger sort, to the imitation of their *Virtue*; upon whom the glory of their Ancestors might have such an influence, as to make them eagerly contend for the attainment of a like degree of *Honor*, by proportionate degrees of *Virtue* and *Noble deeds*. All which we have thought requisite to bring in by way of Introduction, to those *Knightly Honors*, that afterwards succeeded in the world.

What we have further to say in this Chapter, shall be to touch upon those degrees of *Knighthood*, which have been personal, and obtained by Creation only, (after such time as the *French Empire* took beginning) and are, or may be comprehended, under the modern Title of *Equites Aurati*, or *Milites simplices*, (being indeed all of one nature, albeit they received several denominations, from those various Ensigns of Honor, and Ceremonies of Creation, wherewith the *Dignity* hath been in several Ages since particularly bestowed) and as this *Equestrian Dignity* is distinguished from the several *Orders of Chivalry* instituted in Christendom, whether they be of greater or less note, who have received their Titles as *Knights*, used together with that of their peculiar *Orders*, which distinguisheth them from those we call *Milites simplices*. In the circumstances of whose Creation, we confess that nothing in the *Ordo Equestris* among the ancient *Romans* hath place, though that might well be the ground and original of the *Dignity*, and one common end in both; namely, the pursuit of military exploits and service in the Wars.

SECT. IV.

Of the modern Degrees of Knighthood.

Knights gire
with the mili-
tary Belt.

^a Glossar. Ar-
chæolog. verbo
Miles.

^b Titles of Ho-
nor. p. 451.

AND first, concerning those whom some call *Monoxoni*, that is, *Knights be- girt with the Military Girdle*; a custom devolved to the *Germans*, and *Gauls*, from ancient time, and from them to later Ages.

Our learned Countryman Sir Henry Spelman notes, ^a *That the later Emperors conferr'd the Dignity of Knighthood with the military Girdle, instead of all other Arms; because that part, more eminent amongst them, girdeth, supporteth, and adorneth the rest.* Whence our learned Selden calls this girding, ^b *the most essential part of the Ceremony.* Nor do we find, that among the various Ceremonies belonging to *Knighthood*, there have been any (to the later ages) that hath continued so constant and frequent in practice, as the endowing with *Girdle* and *Sword*: Ornaments indeed most proper to the *Knightly Dignity*, and marks of *Honor* and *Virtue*, with

with which the Statues and Portraits of *Knights* have been adorned after death; as may be seen on divers of their Monuments and Grave-Stones.

For as at this day, *Knights* are in some places stiled *Equites Aurati*, from the golden spurs, heretofore put on at their Creation; so were they more anciently

by *Bracton* ¹ *Ringæ Gladiis*; in regard that when any one was knighted, he was not (as in this Age) only smitten with the sword, but invested with sword and Belt. Nor is this Ceremony wholly lost, since it is retained among those, appointed to be used at the creating our *Knights of the Bath*; who are to be girt with a sword and Belt, when they receive the aforesaid Honor, as the old *Formulary* thus hath it. **Then shall the King, of his great favour, take the Sword, and gird the Esquire therewith.**

In the second place (taking leave to rank those following degrees of *Knight-hood* here mentioned, according to their antiquity, not the precedence they have since gained) the *Baccalarii* or *Knights Bachelors*, are to be considered; who are also indifferently stiled *Chevaliers*, *Milites*, *Equites Aurati*, and *Knights*.

This degree is truly accounted with us, ^a *the first of all military dignity, and the basis and foundation of all Honors in our Nation*; and is certainly derived from if not the same, with that immediately preceding. For as the Ceremony of a gentle touch on the shoulder, with the blade of the sword, hath been since used, instead of endowing with the sword and Belt (especially in times of War, or in haste) as an initiation into the *Military Order*; so on the contrary, it is not unusual, now adays, for the Prince, at least *Gladio*, if not *Cingulo donare*; for he oftentimes bestows the sword upon the person whom he knighteth.

The *Equites* had the Epithete of ^w *Aurati* given them, from the privilege of wearing Gold upon their swords and spurs; and the 265 *Knights*, created upon *Hadrian's Bridge at Rome*, by *Frederick the Third, Emperor of Germany*, the 18. of March, Anno Dom. 1451. as he proceeded to the Cathedral Church of *St. John de Lateran* to be crowned, are by ^a *Cicconius* called *Equites Aurati*; and were indeed noother than *Knights Bachelors*; such were also the *Italian and German Knights*, created in the same place, by *Sigismund the Emperour*, on *Whitsunday* 1432. as he went to the *Lateran* from the *Vatican*, where he had received his Crown from *Pope Eugenius the Fourth*.

And here we have an occasion offer'd, to insert the distinction which *Andrew Tiraguel* puts between those *Knights*, who are, and who are not noble before they receive that dignity; allowing the later the Title of *Equites Aurati*, and to the former that of *Milites*. ^a *For (saith he) it is to be observed, that those whom we in the French Tongue call Chevaliers, were made noble as soon as they attain'd that dignity, even though they were not such before, yet they were not called Milites, contrary to the position of all Interpreters of the Law: but such as speak properly, have called them Equites Auratos. Which appellation* ^b *Franciscus Philolophus did first of all find out, and Bebellius in his Commentary De abusone lingue, brings many things against the Interpreters, who call those (that are not noble before their Creation) Milites.*

Somewhat to like purpose would our learned *spelman* deduce from the addition of ^a *Aurati*, conceiving it introduced ad distinguendum Equitem ritu honorario institutum, ab inhonorato istiusmodi; and by him made applicable to the *Neapolitan Gentlemen*, (usually called *Cavalieri*) who are all stiled *Equites*, though they never have attained the *Knightly* dignity.

Thirdly, concerning the *Knights Banerets*, a Title bestowed on such who had so well deserved in the Wars, that they were afterwards permitted to use the *Vexillum quadratum*, or a square Banner; whence they were truly called *Equites Vexillarii*, or *Chevaliers à Baniere*, from the Dutch word ^a *Banethert*, Lord, or Master of the Banner.

Our learned ^a *Cambden* derives the original of this *Knightly* dignity among us, not higher than the reign of King *Edward the Third*, and believes him to be the first

¹ Ringæ enim dicuntur, ex eo quod Renes gyant & circumdant, & inde dicitur accingere Gladio tuo. Bracton de Legibus & Consuetud. regni Angliæ, lib. 1. cap. 8. num. 2.

^a Dugdale's Antiq. of Warw. p. 539.

^b Knights Bachelors.

^w Primus [Equites Baccalarii] apud Britannos dignitatis omnis Militaris gradus est, Honorum omnium in Republica basis. L.R. p. 143.

^a Ab ornamentis aureis. Miræus, Origines Ord. Equestris, p. 1. juxta impressionem 1638.

^b Viri & Gesta summ. Pontif. 12. p. 925.

^c Platina de vitis Pontif. p. 262.

^a De Nobil. c. 8. sect. 13.

^b Lib. Epist. 24. Epist. 1. ad Alb. Parisium.

^c Gloss. Archæolog. verbo Eques.

^a Knights Banerets.

^b Ibid. verbo Baneret.

^c In Brit. p. 124. Edit. Lond. 1608.

first Inſtitutor thereof, and this honorable Title to be then firſt deviſed, in recompenſe of martial prowels; a recital of which dignity received, is mention'd in
^{† Pat. 20. E. 3. a} Patent, whereby that King grants to *John Coupland*, for the maintenance thereof, five hundred pounds *per annum* out of his Exchequer, to be received by him and his Heirs; and this was for his good ſervice performed, in taking ^{‡ Speedi Chron. p. 592.} *David* the Second, King of *ſcots*, Priſoner, at the Battel of *Newils Croſs*, near *Durham*. But ſome few years before the Creation of Sir *John Coupland*, there is mention alſo in the Patent Rolls of ^{* 10. E. 3. pars 2. m. 7.} *Sir Reignald Cobham*, and ^{† 13. E. 3. m. 13.} *Sir William de la Poole*, both Banerets: And doubtleſs the Title and Dignity was much more ancient with us (as well as in ^{‡ Vide Seld. Tit. of Honor. p. 543.} *France*) for in our peruſal of the Accounts of the great *Wardrobe*, we find ſuch like *Robes* allowed to ſeveral perſons made Knights, as were appointed uſually for the Creation of Banerets; and this before the reign of King *Edward* the Third, which implies, that there was then a Degree of Knighthood, ſo called, amongſt us. For inſtance, ^{† Ex Rotul. Compoti Tho. Uſſet de an. 20. E. 2.} *Gerardo de la Bret*, *ad apparatus ſuum pro Militia, tanquam pro Baneretto, à Rege ſuſcipienda, &c. viz. ad unam Tunnicam, &c.* after which is ſet down the particular *Robes*, and other Ornaments, appointed for his Creation; and then it follows, *Conſimilem apparatus habuerant ſubſcripti, viz.*

Hug. de Courtney.
Rad. de Wyllington.
Rad. Daubeney.
Job. de Willouby.
Edw. Stradling.
Rad. Baro de Stafford.
Job. de Meules.
Will. de Percy.
Gerard de Inſula.

Pet. Ereton.
Rog. le Straunge.
Ernone de Potes.
Job. de Neville.
Gerard de Traſſyns.
Willeſt de Cipl.
Mulleſt de Elekey.
Diſram de Keney.

Viz. Singuli eorum tanquam pro Baneretto.

In like manner in the preceding year have we met with an account of *Robes*, given to ^{† Ex Comp. p. 1. penes Rem. Regis in Scacc.} *James Botiller* of *Ireland*, *ad apparatus ſuum, pro ſe novo Milite faciendo, tanquam Baneretto*; as alſo to *William Mountacute*. *Ebulole Strange*. and others. So alſo *An. 18. E. 2.* to *Hugo de Poynts*, and *Hugo de Pleſey*; and ^{† Ann. 16. r. 2. to Raymund Durant.} And our learned *ſchelman* (in *Pellæ exitus An. 8. E. 2.*) doth find ^{† Gloſſ. Archai. verbo Banerett. vide etiam 4. part. Inſtit. p. 6.} *John de Crumbwell*, written with the addition and Title of Baneret. But that this Dignity was yet more ancient in *England*, is ſufficiently apparent from a Writ of King *Edward* the Firſt, under the Privy Seal, directed to the *clerk* of the *Wardrobe*, to furniſh *Thomas Bardolf* with *Robes*, ſuch as were uſually allowed to a Baneret; he being to receive the honor of Knighthood, at that eminent ſolemnity, when *Edward of Caernarvon*, the Kings eldeſt Son, was made Knight; which Writ runs thus.

^{† Ex Brevi R. Ed. 1. penes Rem. Regis in Scacc.} *Edwardus Dei gratia Rex Angliæ Dominus Hiberniæ & Dux Aquitaniæ, Diſſeſſo nobis Radulpho de Stoke, Clerico magne Garderobiæ noſtræ ſalutem, Mandamus vobis, quod dilecto nobis Thoma Bardolf tanquam Baneretto, decentem apparatus, pro ſe novo Milite faciendo ad feſtum Pentecoſtes proximè futurum, in Comitatu Edwardi filii noſtri kariffimi habere, de dono noſtro faciamus. Et nos vobis inde in compoto reſtro debitam allocationem habere faciamus. Datum ſub privato Sigillo noſtro apud Wolveseye tertio die Maii, Anno Regni noſtri Triceſimo quarto.*

This Degree of Honor is eſteemed the laſt among the greateſt, *viz. Nobilitum majorum*, or the firſt with thoſe of the ſecond rank, and is placed in the middle between the *Barons* and the other *Knights*; in which reſpect, the Baneret may be called *ſexillarius minor*, as if he were the leſſer Banner-Bearer, to the end he might be ſo differenced from the greater, namely, the *Baron*, to whom properly the right of bearing a ſquare Banner doth appertain.

But there are ſome remarkable differences between theſe *Knights*, and *Knights Batchelors*; to wit, as to the occaſion and circumſtances of their Creation; the Baneret being not created, unleſs at a time when the Kings Standard is erected and diſplayed; beſides, he bears his own Banner in the field, while the *Knights Batchelor*

Batchelor follows that which is anothers, which evidently shews the Dignity to be of a higher nature; nevertheless, Sir *Henry Spelman* notes, this not to be dishonourable, since the Emperor *Maximilian* was pleased to serve in the Wars, under the *Banner* of our King *Henry* the Eighth, in the "quality of his Soldier, in the Camp before *Terwin* in France, wearing the Cross of *St. George*, and receiving the pay of one hundred Crowns a day.

This further difference is observed between them, by *Andrew Favin*, to wit, ^w that the *Knight Banneret* was he who had so many Gentlemen, his servants, at command, as that he could raise a Banner, and make up a Company of Soldiers to be maintained at his Table, and their wages paid out of his own Purse: But the *Knight Batchelor* he, who had not servants sufficient to lead to the War, at his own charge, but marched under the Banner of some other. * These two degrees of Honor (saith he) were also distinguished by their Wages, in regard that a *Knight Banneret* had twenty Sols *per diem* to dispend, the *Knight Batchelor* ten, and the *Esquire* but five; proportionable hereunto is that which *Mr. Selden* notes out of the *Wardrobe accounts*, an. 4. E. 2. * That the *Bannerets* wages by the day was four shillings, the *Knights* two shillings, and the *Esquires* one shilling.

Next unto the *Knights Bannerets*, we shall speak of *Knights of the Bath*; which is a degree that hath the *Investiture* and Title of a *Knight*, with an additional denomination, derived from part of the Ceremony of his Creation.

It is the most received opinion, that our King *Henry* the Fourth, first instituted these *Knights*; and true it is, according to ^a Sir *John Froisford*, He at his Coronation (to adde to the lustre and magnificence or it) created ^b six and forty of them; making an especial choice of such as he favoured, either out of an inward affection, or consideration of their service or deserts.

And as he designed them to attend him in the Ceremonies of his Coronation, then at hand, so did he retain them neerer unto his person; thereby seeming to honor them with a more familiar consociation, than he vouchsafed to the *Knights Batchelors*.

But if the Ceremonies and circumstances of their Creation be well considered, it will appear that this *King* did not institute, but rather restore, the ancient manner of making *Knights*; and consequently, that the *Knights of the Bath* are in truth no other than *Knights Batchelors*, that is to say, such as are created with those Ceremonies wherewith *Knights Batchelors* were formerly created by *Eccllesiasticks*; but some of them having been for a long time laid aside with us, were then brought again into use, and made peculiar to the Degree of *Knights of the Bath*, and since continued to them, upon some solemn and great occasion.

At the first view, this Degree looks like a peculiar and distinct Order of *Knighthood*, and may perhaps (by some) be thought more fit to be spoken of in the third Chapter rather than here: But it cannot properly and justly be so accounted, if we consider, that they have not either Statutes or Laws assigned them, nor are they in case of vacancy supplied; (which are the essentials of distinct Orders) nor do they wear their Robes beyond the time of that occasion upon which they were created; as chiefly the Coronation of Kings and Queens of England, or otherwise the Creation of a *Prince of Wales*, Duke of *Tork*, and the like, whereto also is to be considered, that their Number hath been uncertain, and always at the pleasure of the *King*.

Andrew Favin will have these *Knights* to be otherwise called * *Knights of the Crown*, because (saith he) to distinguish them from *Esquires*, they wear upon their left shoulders an Escutcheon of Black Silk, with three Crowns of Gold embroidered thereon. But this is a great mistake, for it is not found that such, or indeed any other Badge, was at any time (after that manner) used by them, save only a Silk Lace; but the Jewel worn, to be known by, is made of Gold, containing three Crowns, with this Motto, *Tria juncta in una*, and hanging down under the left arm at a Carnation Ribbon worn cross the body.

This leads us to the consideration of another Degree among us here in England, namely, *Baronets*, who seem to be allied to *Knighthood*, by having granted

^a Lord Herbert's Hist. of Hen. 8. M.S. fo. 47. w In le Theatre d' Honneur l. 1. c. 6.

Vexillarius, qui Vassallos suos habebat etiam Vexillo; & Baccalaureus, qui sub alieno vexillo procedebat. Jo. Tilius Commentar. de reb. Gall. l. 2. p. 180. * Idem Favin. loco cit. * Titles of Honor, p. 291.

Knights of the Bath.

^b Chronic. l. 2. p. 243.

^c En le Theatre d' Honneur l. 5. c. 2.

to them the addition of *Sir* to be set before their Names; but this Title gives not the Dignity of *Knighthood*, nor can any of them be properly stiled *Knights*, until they be actually knighted.

It is a Degree but of a late erection, to wit, in the ninth year of King *James*, and the grant thereof made only by Letters Patents under the Great Seal of *England*, a Copy of one of which is transcribed into the *Titles of Honor*. This Honor is made hereditary to them, and the Heirs males of their bodies lawfully begotten, for ever; and by a subsequent Decree of the said King, precedence is granted to them before all *Baronets*, except such as should be made by the King, his Heirs, and Successors, under his or their Standard displayed in an Army royal, in open War, and the King personally present; and next unto and immediately after the younger Sons of *Viscounts* and *Barons*.

⁴ Pag 821.

⁵ Rot. Pat. an.
10. Jac. pars
10 m. 8.

⁶ Seld. Tit. of
Hon. p. 827.

The ground for erecting this Degree (as appears by the Instructions given to the Commissioners appointed to treat about this affair) was partly Martial; for though themselves were not enjoined personal service in the Wars, yet the motive of this Honor was a certain contribution from each *Baronet*,⁶ to maintain thirty Foot Soldiers, for three years in *Ireland* (after the rate of eight pence a day) for the defence of that Kingdom; and chiefly to secure the Plantation in the Province of *Ulster*.

Their Qualifications were, that at least they should be descended from a Grandfather, on the Fathers side, that bore Arms, and had a Revenue of one thousand pounds per annum, of Lands of inheritance in possession, or Lands of old Rents, as good as one thousand pounds a year of improved Lands; or at least two parts of three, to the said value in possession, and the other third part in reversion expectant, upon one life only held in Jointure.

⁷ Rot. Pat. 10.
Jac. pars 10.
m. 8.

The year after the first Patent past, King *James* was pleased to adde some new Privileges and Ornaments to this Degree, namely, to Knight those *Baronets* already made, that were no Knights, as also such as should be afterwards created, and the Heirs males of their bodies, when they attained the age of one and twenty years; that the *Baronets* and their Descendants might bear either in Canton, or in an Inescutcheon the Arms of *Ulster*, and further, to have place in the Armies of the King, and his Heirs and Successors, in the groſs, neer about the Royal Standard, for defence of the same.

Since the Institution of *Baronets* in *England*, there have been made divers in *Ireland*, after the like form. And the *Knights* of *Nova Scotia* in the *West-Indies*, were ordained, in imitation of *Baronets* in *England*, by the said King *James*, anno Dom. 1622. and upon a like design; to wit, the planting of that Country by *Scotch Colonies*, and the Degree made likewise hereditary.

⁸ Titles of Hon.
may p. 842.
⁹ Heylins Conf.
mngl. printed
1652. l. 1. p.
305.

¹⁰ Ex MS. in Of-
fic. Armor.
[L. 2.] fol. 23.

These later have the privilege to wear an *Orange-tawny Ribbon*, as a Badge of Honor, to distinguish them from other *Knights*: and it appears by a Letter from *Henry Earl of Holland*, dated the 29. of *June* 1627. and directed to the *Officers of Arms*, that there was some intention to move his then Majesty to declare his pleasure, that all *Baronets* and *Knights Bachelors* might wear in Ribbons of several colours, some Badge or Jewel, to distinguish the one from the other, and both from persons of inferior quality, in such sort as did the *Knights of the Bath*; to which end, he desired their opinion, touching the fitness and convenience thereof.

Which *Officers*, from precedents of the differences and marks set upon Robes belonging to several Degrees of Nobility and Honor, and from the Ensigns and Ornaments of *Knighthood*, used for distinctions sake, both at home and abroad, being esteemed as peculiar marks of *Sovereignty* in the Giver, and eminent tokens of Honor in the Receiver; grounded their opinion, that such Ornaments for distinction of those two Degrees, namely of *Baronets* and *Knights Bachelors*, were no way unfit or inconvenient, either to his said Majesty, or to his Subjects: But it seems, there was nothing further done in this matter.

We shall conclude this section with a general observation, which relates to the conferring of *Knightly Honor*; That *Kings* and *Princes* have in no Age limited themselves, or confin'd their bestowing of this Dignity to *Martialists* alone,

alone, who profess Arms, and give themselves to the exercise of Military Virtue, as it was in its original Institution, viz. a *Military Employment*; inasmuch as men of the *long Robe*, and such as have dedicated themselves to the managery of Civil Affairs, through their great worth and desert in that kind, have so well merited of their *Prince and Country*, as to be thought worthy to share with those of the *short Robe*, in having this Honor conferr'd on them.

SECT. V.

The Etymologie of Eques, Miles, Chevalier, Ritter, and Sir.

WE have observed before, that the *Grecian Captains* had a Title of Honor in their Language, equivalent to the signification of *Eques* in the *Latin*, to which a *Horse* gave the denomination; we shall here further add (it being testified by ¹ *Pliny*) that the Title of *Eques*, given and appropriate to the *Ordo Equestris* among the ancient *Romans*, as a name of Title and Dignity, was at first likewise derived from *Equus* a *Horse*; and indeed it is a proper and significant term since among them, they were esteemed *Equites*, ² who having a publick ¹ *Lib. 33. c. 1. sub finem.* ³ *m Demster in Rosin. p. 94.* ⁴ *n Turneb. animadv. in Rul. lum: Petri Rami Comment. p. 76.* ⁵ *o L. 33. c. 2. p De re mil. Rom. p. 231.* ⁶ *in the Wars:* because one part of the Ceremony, whereby this Honor became conferred, was the giving of a *Horse*, bestowed on them at the Publick Charge; of which more anon. ⁷ *In the ancient times* (saith ⁸ *Turnebus*) *they who received pay, upon the account of a publick Horse, were called Equites.* And the *Legionary Soldiers*, which ⁹ *Pliny* saith were sometimes called *Fluxumines*, ¹⁰ *Salmasius* calls *Fluxutes*, and derives the word à *fle-* ¹¹ *Hendis Equis in Gymn.*

It is also to be noted, that the word used to denote the Degree of *Knighthood*, in the several Dialects of other *Nations*, hath the same derivation, to wit, from a *Horse*; for in the *French*, a *Knight* is called *Chevalier*; in the *German*, *Ritter*; in the *Italian*, *Cavalliero*; nay even in the ancient *British*, *Morchog*; concerning some of which, hear also one of *Geoffry Chaucer's* Scholars.

*Eques, ab Equo, is said of very ryght,
And Chevalier, is said of Chevalerie,
In which a Rider called is a Knight,
Arogons done also specifie,
Caballiero through all that partie,
Is name of worship, and so took his ginning,
Of Spurs of Gold, and chiefly Riding.*

*(Jo. Lydgate
MS of the
Horse, Sheep,
and Gent.*

And albeit the Latin word *Miles*, and the English word *Knight*, had not their derivation from a *Horse*, as have those before enumerated; nevertheless they are now restrained to a Title of *Honor* (though heretofore they had other significations) and ordinarily used to express a dubbed *Knight*.

According to the opinion of our learned *Spelman*, *Miles* (in a general sense) ² *Miles;* is he ³ *who is legally inrolled for the War:* which Inrollment he also saith was two- ⁴ *Gloss. Archald* fold, *Honoraria, & Vulgaris.* This pertaining to the Foot, or common Soldiers; ⁵ *verbo Miles.* that to persons more renowned and famous. To the admittance of a Foot Soldier, the bare entrance of his Name upon the Military Tables sufficed; but at the creating of the other, some solemnity was used, for he was adorned with Arms; not of his own choice, but given and granted, upon the account of *Honor*, from the Prince, and that after a certain kind of ceremonious Pomp. Thus he.

But though the word *Miles* anciently among the *Romans*, and hitherto in a strict sense, is allowed by all to signifie a *Foot Soldier*, whence *Miles, à Militia;*

yet how this word became usurped, continued in use, and in tract of time naturalized, to signify the same which *Eques* did, we could no where receive so clear satisfaction, as from the learned Pen of *Claudius Salmasius*, who in his Treatise *De Re Militari Romanorum* gives this following account.

u Pag. 2.

“It is manifest (saith he) that there was one kind of Military Discipline among the *Romans*, when their publick Affairs were first settled by *Kings*; another, when in the flower of their Government *Liberty* was established; another, when the *Cæsars* and *Augustus*’s were Masters of the Empire; and lastly, another, under the Successors of *Constantine*, when upon the translation of part of the Empire to *Constantinople*, the Militia was changed from Foot to Horse. For the new *Romans* of that time being continually engaged against *Nations* powerful and abounding in Horse, and reposing no further confidence in the *Legionary Militia*, the rigour of the ancient Discipline being wholly lost, began to exercise and train up only the *Horse Militia*, deserting that of the *Foot*, whereof there was hardly any advantage to be made against the innumerable Forces of the *Alani*, *Goths*, *Vandals*, *Perfians*, *Saracens*, and *Sarmatians*, which consisted in Horse.

“In those times the *Greeks*, who writ ought concerning that part of Military Discipline, which relates to *Tacticks*, taking all things from the Ancients, expressed the Affairs of their own Age (by reason of the alteration of the Militia) in words proper to the ancient Militia. What the former had said of the *Foot Soldier*, these later applied the same things in their writings to the *Cavalry*. And what is more to be admired, the names whereby the ancient *Greeks* and *Latins* called the *Foot*, these transferr’d to the *Horse* of their time. Hence *Equarius*, which before was said of the *Foot Soldier*, was by these later *Greeks* and *Constantinopolitans*, properly attributed to the *Horseman*. So also among the *Romans* of the same Age, the word *Miles* was no longer said of him that serv’d afoot in the Wars, but began to be properly spoken of the *Horseman*.

“Whence it came into vogue (as the same *Author* concludes) that among the *Titles* of *Nobility*, he who had that of *Miles* bestowed on him (whether in publick Monuments and Archives of Courts, or in the private Instruments and Tombs of illustrious Families) was understood to be a *Horseman*, or *Eques*, that is of the *Equeſtrian Dignity*, or descended from it.

w Tit. of H.
x 3 nor p. 435.

Our learned *Selden* also notes the word *Miles* to be equivocal, and that in the old Feodal Laws of the *Empire* it signifies a *Gentleman*, as the word *Gentleman* is signified in *Nobilis*: and with us the word hath been frequently and indifferently used, to denote both a *Gentleman* and a *Knight*: as for instance, *Milites* signifieth *Gentlemen*, or great *Freeholders* of a County, and not dubbed *Knights*, viz. such who hold by *Knights-service* from a Lord of a *Mannor*, they being also called *Milites* or *Knights* in our Laws, that concern either choice of *Coroners*, or who are chosen from the several Counties of this *Kingdom*, to serve in the High Court of *Parliament*; although they be not advanced into the Degree of *Knighthood*.

a Ibid. p. 770.

That *Miles* with us hath denoted the dignity of *Knighthood* (which is indeed the chiefest of Military professions) even in the *Saxons* times, *Mr. Selden* not only believes, but fortifies his opinion from the authority of several *Charters* of that Age, wherein this Title is given to sundry persons, as may be there seen to satisfaction; observing withal, that the *ancientest* use of it, in the *German Empire*, as a Title of Honor, that he finds it had, was about the Year of our Lord 1064. but *Albertus Miræus* (in *4 Cod. donat. pier.*) exhibits an ancient diploma, in which the Title *Miles* is mentioned, in charta *Gerardi Cameracensis Episcopi, de anno 1046*. Since which it is become more frequently used, in all publick Instruments written in Latin, and most generally appropriate in our Law, to persons who have received the Order of *Knighthood*, and to signify the same with *Eques* and *Chevalier*, though indeed it may seem less properly to signify a *Knight*, than that of *Eques*; in regard *Knighthood* is by some called the dignity of *Horsemanship*, and the tenure of Lands by *Knights Fees* here in *England*, is in truth a

c Ferns Glory
of Generosity,
p. 108.

Horse-

Horse-service, and the Tenants such as served the King on Horseback in Wars, and Gentlemen at least, if not persons of noble extraction: besides, to note the dignity of this Tenure, it is anciently called *Regale Servitium*, because due to and for the King and the Realm.

Escoes preface ad lib. 3. fo. 3. d.

As the Greeks and Romans derived a Title of Honor from *Horses* of service, and conferr'd the same upon their men of Arms, so did the French; among whom, the word *Chevalier* hath the like signification and relation: For at first, it properly signified a *Horseman*, or one that rides a *Horse*; but at length it came to be used among them, more peculiarly to express one, upon whom the Honor of *Knighthood* had been bestowed.

3. Chevalier.

And this clearly appears from *Claude Fanchet*, a French Writer of good account; who speaking of the original of *Knighthood*, and the Etymologie of the word *Chevalier*, saith, & it is evident that the Chevaliers derive their name from Cheval [a Horse] which (to say truth) is the properest Animal that can be found for War; and which by reason of the swiftness thereof, is by the Poet ascribed to Neptune, at the contention he had with Pallas for the invention of profitable things.

g Origines de Chevaliers Armoir. by H. raux. f. 1. h Vide Com. Servit ad Virgilii primum Georgicon.

The skilful management of a *Horse*, hath been heretofore accounted one of the principal marks and properties of a *Knight*; and so greatly delighted were the active and warlike youths, among the old Gauls (to wit, the ancient Inhabitants of France) with gallant Horses, that no Present could be more acceptable to them.

It is evident, that with the nobler sort among us, the Title of *Eques* or *Chevalier* hath been esteemed more honorable than *Miles* (though *Miles* had before much prevailed in England, even to a general Title and Appellation) which may be proved out of those Records, instanced in the fourth part of the *Institutes*, by which it appears that the Barons in Parliament, who had been *Knighted*, liked to be called *Chevaliers*, rather than *Milites*. And in Writs of Summons they were more usually stiled *Chevaliers*, than by the Titles of their *Baronies*; or if these were used, nevertheless, that of *Chevalier* followed at the end of the style. Anno 7. E. 4. all the Barons in Parliament have the addition of *Chevaliers*, and therefore they subscribed thus—*Equites aurati omnes*. And about King Henry the Eighth's Reign, the Custom began, to stile all the temporal Barons in their Writs of Summons, *Chevaliers*; whether they were *Knighted* or not, which is hitherto continued in practice; all which are considerable proofs of the estimation they had of the Title of *Chevalier*, above that of *Miles*.

k Pag. 4.

Among the modern Germans, the Title of *Knight* is understood by the word *Ridder*, which in English is the same with *Rider* or *Horseman*, and equivalent both to the ancient Title *Eques*, and the modern *Chevalier*; and the Order of *Knighthood* or *Equestrian Dignity*, is in high Dutch called *Ritterschafft*, in low Dutch, *Ridderchap*.

l Seldens Tit. of Honor. p. 74.

As the German *Ridder* or *Ritter*, is observed by our learned *Selden*, to be the same with *Miles* (viz. a Gentleman) so the *Che-lagen Ridder*, is interpreted by *Eques Auratus*, viz. *Miles factus*, or the *dubbed Knight*, he being created by the Ceremony of a gentle stroke, or light touch with a naked Sword, upon the shoulder (*Che-laeghen*, signifying but as *percussus*) for albeit *Lewis du May* tells us, that in Germany the Gentlemen to this day, writing in Latin, stile themselves *Equites*; yet no man among them is accounted a *Ritter* or *Ridder*, in the same sense as *Eques Auratus*, or *Cingulo Militie donatus*, denotes it, unless he be actually *Knighted*.

4. Ridder. in Corn. Kilian. Diss. Teutonico-Lat. lit. R. Versteig. Antiq. p. 314. n Frisius Diss. Latino-Germ. lit. R. o Jurisprudencia Heroica. p. 389. a. p Tit. Hon. p. 436. q Kilianus in lit. R. r The Estate of the Empire, Dialog. 8. in princ. s Tit. of Honor loco cit. t Eod. Dialog.

And besides, the said *Lewis du May* notes down these manifest differences, between them and the *dubbed Knight*: as first, that the *Knight* hath been always more privileged than the Gentleman. 2. That the chance of Birth makes the Gentleman, without his contributing any thing to it; but Worth and Valour raises the *Knight* to that degree of Honor. 3. Princes and Lords do not seek for the Title of a Gentleman, as they do very earnestly for that of a *Knight*: And 4. The Gentleman is born so, the *Knight* comes to be so; that is, a Gentleman begets a Gentleman, but a *Knight* begets not a *Knight*.

The Saxon word *Cniht* (from whence our *Knight*) is by our learned Country-

5. Knight.

^a Gloss. Archai.
verbo Knight.
^b Titles of Ho-
nor. p. 769.
^c Ditt. Saxon.
verbo Cuiht.

^a Saxon. ditt.
loco cit.

b^g Inter Cod.
cl. MS. a Gull.
Archiep. Cant.
Bibl. Oxon. do-
natus [E. 80.
fo. 64. b.]

d Antiq. p. 314.
Impr. London.
1629.

e Verbo Knight.

f Brit. p. 125.

6. Sir.

g Lib. N. p. 38.

h Idem p. 30.

i Pat. 9. Jac.
p. 45.

men, ^a Spelman, ^b Selden, and ^c Somner, rendred a Boy, a Servant, or an Attendant, and also a Soldier. We shall not meddle with the word, as it barely signifies Puer, Puerilis, Juvenis, or Puber, as making nought to our purpose; but as it hath signified Servus or Famulus, a Servant or Attendant (being not otherwise used at this day among the Dutch) and also, as it imports the dignity of Knighthood (to which purpose we now commonly use it) it will deserve observation; and this chiefly in the words of Mr. Somner, that painful Inquisitor into the so much neglected, and almost forgotten Saxon Tongue. ^a Witnes (saith he) that use of it remaining in our Knights of the Shire; which although no Knights by dignity or place, as indeed but few of them are, or need to be, yet are so called, but why? under favour, in regard of that service which is required and performed of them in Parliament, for their several Countries, whose servants for the time they are.

But that we may know it was used with us, as an honorary Title and Appellation, shortly after the Conquest, there is an ^b old Manuscript yet extant in Bibliotheca Bodliana, in which the Annals are continued down to King Stephens Reign, wherein the Annalist having told us, that King William the Conqueror accustomedly wore his Crown at the Feasts of Easter, Whitsontide, and Christmas, he further noteth þen þepon mid him ealle pa rice men oþer ealle Englanbe, Arcebisceopas, J Leobis, Abbodas, J Eoplas, Degenas, J Cnihtas. Then were with him all the wealthy (or potent) men throughout England, viz. Arch-Bishops, Bishops, Abbots, Earls, Barons, and Knights.

^d Verslegan is of opinion, that this word began to be made use of among our Ancestors, as a Title of Honor, from such as were admitted for their merit to be Knights to the King; viz. his own Servants and Reteyners, and such as were appointed to ride with or attend on him; to whom our industrious Minshew agrees, the ^e Equites (saith he) which heretofore followed and accompanied the Emperor, are in the German Tongue called Knechtes, that is, Servitors or Ministers. But our learned Camden is of opinion, that the word Knecht, ^f was in far more ancient times used and accepted as an honorary Title, and among the old Germans, signified a person armed with spear and Lance (the Ensigns of their Knighthood) as in after times such were among other Nations, adorned with a Girdle and Belt, who are since called Equites Aurati, and sometimes simply Milites.

In the last place, we think it not amiss to say something here, touching the usual and accustomed English word, with us added to the names of Knights, viz. Sir: We note then, that since Titles and honorary Appellations have been in use, (for anciently no other Appellations were used, but only the persons names) the word Sire in old French was taken to signifie seigneur or Lord; and though in Latin the word Dominus hath been indifferently attributed to all Degrees of Nobility, yet in the Registries of the most noble Order of the Garter, it is us'd with a distinction. For wherever the Names of any of the Knights Companions are recorded, if he be a Baron of the Kingdom, it is exprest by Dominus, and his Surname only added thereunto; as for instance, the Lord Cameux is termed Dominus de Cameux, and so others; whereas a Knight Baneret or Batchelor hath his Christian Name adjoined, as Sir John Chandos (who was one of the first Founders of this most noble Order) is stiled Dominus Johannes Chandos, Sir Walter Panely, another of those Founders, is written, Dominus Gualterus Panely, and so of others.

Now this addition Sir, is properly attributed to the Names of all Knights Bannets, Knights of the Bath, and Batchelor Knights; the words sometimes pronounced at the time when they are dubbed being with this compellation to their Christian Names, Arise Sir John, or Sir Thomas, or whatsoever else is his Christian Name, and therefore is accounted parcel of their stile, as among the French Messire is used in the same nature. But to Knights Baronets the addition of Sir is ⁱ granted by a peculiar clause in their Patents of Creation, to be prefix to their Christian Names, albeit they be not dubbed Knights.

How it came to be first given we cannot find, but Custom from former times hath continued it to ours, upon the Degrees before mentioned, and divers of our old English Writers have bestowed it upon the major Nobility, after they had been

been received into the Order of *Knighthood*. Nevertheless, though it be wholly uncertain when it first began to be used with us, yet our learned *Selden* hath observed it in an *Hebrew Star*, of King *Edward* the First's time. And in the life of *Saint Thomas Becket*, written also about that Age, we meet with the Title prefixt to the Names of the four *Knights* (there called *Luther Knights*) who slew the said *Saint Thomas*.

*h Additions and
Amendments to
the Titles of
Honor. p. 939.*

*' His knyghts tho bi i huade this, bi thode some stille,
bi bethoghte stillelich, to pay the kyng at wille,
thour that mell dretwen wer, bihoghte of one gile,
Sir Renaud le fiz Durs, and Sir Hewe de Hozbile,
And Sir William Craci, and Sir Richard le But.*

*1 MS. penes
Sylam Taylor
gen. fo. 253.*

SECT. VI.

The Ensigns of the Equestrian Order among the Romans.

THE *Equestrian Order* among the ancient *Romans* was conferr'd by particular Ceremonies, to wit, the donation of a *Horse*, or giving of a *Ring*; and these were accounted the two chief and principal *Ensigns* and *Ornaments* of that Order, as appears out of *Pliny* and other *Writers*; and both bestowed upon the publick account.

The giving of the publick or military *Horse* was a far more ancient Ceremony, than that of bestowing the *Ring*: there being a time when only those who received the publick *Horse*, were of the *Equestrian Order*, and none other; and this was long before the *Gold Ring* was used, as a mark of this Honor.

For it appears out of *Livy*, that upon *Servius* his Institution of the *Cense*, and his inrolling the *Knights* by it, he forthwith took care to pay them out of the publick Treasury, *Ten thousand pieces of Brass Money* to buy them *Horses*: and certain *Widows* were assigned to pay *two thousand pieces of like money* annually, towards the keeping of them. Therefore (saith the learned *Salmasius*) no other were then enrolled in the *Equestrian Order*, but such as had the *Equestrian Cense*, and to whom a publick *Horse* was assigned. And this is further evident from this passage in *Pliny*; That the Name (to wit *Equites*) which was heretofore (saith he) derived from the military *Horses*, now the *Judges* upon the account of money (viz. the *Censors*) bestow.

But here instead of the word *Judices*, the learned Critick *Justus Lipsius* is rather willing to read *Indices* (and we find the Letters *n* and *u* are frequently mistaken by Transcribers, the one for the other) which indeed seems as well suitable to the meaning, which the whole sentence aims at; for the former part thereof declares, that the *Rings* were the *Notes* or *Ensigns* of the middle (viz. *Equestrian*) Degree; and then according to *Lipsius* his correction of the word, the latter part runs thus; that the Name which formerly the military *Horses* gave, the *Notes* and *Indices* of wealth did afterwards (to wit in *Pliny's* time) bestow.

And as the donation of a *Horse* was the ancients badge of *Knighthood*, so were those to whom it was given, (saith *Justus Lipsius*, most anciently, properly, and alone in times past called *Equites*. The same *Lipsius* (reflecting on the twofold *Ensigns* of *Knighthood* among the *Romans*) makes a dichotomy of the *Equestrian Order*, into *those who had a publick Horse*, and *others who had none*; but only the honor of wearing of a *Gold Ring*.

In succeeding times, when the Custom was received of electing *Knights*, as well by bestowing of a *Gold Ring*, as formerly had been used by the single Ceremony of giving a publick *Horse* (yet still to those who had the *Equestrian Cense*) then was the number of these *Knights* very much increased; whereupon no publick *Horses* were afterwards assigned, but unto such as were ready to enter into the

*1. A Publick
Horse.*

*m Lib. 33. c. 1.
sub finem. Ro.
sin. de Antiq.
Rom. l. 1. c. 17.*

*n Livy. l. 1.
c. 43.
p De re mil.
Rom. p. 239.
circa medium.*

*q Quod antea
militares Equi
nomen dede-
rant, hoc nunc
Pecunia Judi-
ces tribuunt. l.
33. c. 1.
De militia
Romana. p. 32.
Dialog. 5.*

*g Lips. loc.
citato.*

the military service, and to fight in the Legions; and then also to such persons only, who were chosen ^a out of the Body, Number, and Order of the Knights, to wit, ^b such as to whom there had not yet any publick Horse been assigned, but were only known to be of that Order, by wearing of a Gold Ring. Those therefore to whom the publick Horse was then assigned, were thenceforth called *Legionary Knights*, from being ^c annexed and joined to the Legions by such donation; and likewise to distinguish them from the rest of the *Equestrian Order*, who had only received the honor of a *Gold Ring*; though they had not as yet taken upon them any martial employment.

Hence we may observe, that all those who were of the *Equestrian Order*, were not employed in military service, or rather very few, in respect of the whole Body; but only such of them to whom a publick Horse was assigned, and had the peculiar Title given them of *Legionary Knights*, as aforesaid; being chosen from the entire body of the *Ordo Equestris*, to the end they might forthwith serve in the Legions.

Nor was every Citizen, whose wealth could entitle him to the *Equestrian Cense*, received into the *Equestrian Order*, for doubtless many concealed the just value of their Estates from the Censor, and so escaped the admission and inrollment; but whosoever were found possess'd of such a proportion of Riches and Substance, as would reach the *Equestrian Cense*, were constrain'd (if debauchery and viciousness hindred not) to enroll themselves within that Order, and thereby become capable of receiving a publick Horse; as is evident from ^d Livy, in that which he relateth concerning *P. Æbutius*, the Son of a Roman Knight, where in favour to him, and recompence of his service, by whose (together with ^e *His-palo Fessenia's*) means, the abominable Ceremonies, used in the nocturnal Feasts of *Bacchus*, were first discovered, the Senate decreed, ^f that the Consul should mind the Tribunes of the Commons, to prefer a Bill to the people for his exemption from all military service, and notwithstanding to allow him his Pension, as if the time of service which the Law required, had been accomplished; and moreover ^g to prohibit the Censor from assigning to him a publick Horse, or compelling him to serve in the Wars, against his will. By which it is manifest, that the Censor might force any man (in that time) who had the *Equestrian Cense*, to accept of a Horse, and constrain him to serve out (in the Legions) the time appointed by the Law; otherwise what needed so great endeavour to obtain such a prohibition? Howbeit *Salmasius* adds, ^h that in the more ancient method of Election, constraints was not used.

^c De re mil. Rom. p. 238.

^d Godw. Antbol. Rom. Hist. p. 29

^e Fastorum Rom. l. i. c. 10. Liv. l. i. c. 7. & Rosin. Antiq. Rom. l. c. 10. f Idem Rosin. l. i. c. 10.

^g De mil. Rom. p. 23. dial. 5. h Rosin. l. 7. c. 10. wide etiam Dion. Halicar. l. 4.

This Horse (which first gave name to the Knights, as hath been before noted out of *Pliny*) was in relation to his service called ⁱ *Equus Militaris*, and from the annual allowance to keep him, *Equus publicus*. And after such time as the Office of Censor was instituted (which was in the ^j 310. year after the foundation of the City) this Horse was bestowed by the Censor (which also is apparent from the case of *P. Æbutius*, cited by *Livy*, and mentioned a little before) and not as yet by the Emperors, who (it is true) in succeeding times gave the same, (which ought nevertheless to be distinguished from the Horse that the said Emperors gave among the *Premia militaria*, and by and by touched upon) And it was so assigned by the Censors, as they were Judges of manners (as is well observed by ^k *Lipinus*,) for it was part of the Censors duty, ^l to observe the lives and manners of every man, even of those who were of the Senatorian and Equestrian Order; and to brand (if they saw cause) any Citizen whatsoever with infamy. And therefore were neither all persons, or those unadvisedly, inrolled for a publick Horse, but such only as could endure the test and examination of their reputation and good behaviour, and whose fair conversation and carriage, had given proof of their good and commendable life.

Wherefore, as the aforesaid *Salmasius* observes, *Polybius* useth in this kind of Election, the word *δοκιμαζεν*, which comes from *δοξω*, signifying to be in good repute and esteem, and *δοκιμαζω*, which signifies to prove, to examine, to enquire, &c. ^m because they chose from the Equestrian Order, and from all the number of Knights, those of known virtue and of approved life, who might take Horsemen's pay, and serve with publick Horses, and be inrolled in the Legions. And

ⁱ De re mil. Rom. p. 238.

And as this power in judging of mens manners and behaviour in general, was placed in the *Censors*, so also did they of censuring, in particular, the *Knights* debaucheries and miscarriages, if they were chargeable with any such, after their Election into the *Ordo Equestris*; for if they observed any thing in their lives, ^{For what cause withdrawn.} *contrary to honesty and good report, they took away from them both Horse and Ring,* than which a greater disgrace and dishonor could not befall them.

The *Knights* were not only to be circumspect, as to their own demeanour, but also obliged to be careful of their *Horses*; for if upon the *Censors* review of the publick *Horses*, any were found poor and lean, or that the *Knight* kept him not well drest, and in good order, he who owned him ^{k Rosin. l. 7. c. 10.} *was noted for negligence and carelessness; and if the Censors saw any blemish or impediment in them, they forthwith took them away.*

But such might be their Crime, that withdrawing the *Horse* was not thought an agreeable punishment, for we read in *Livy*, that the *Censors* did not only take away the publick *Horses* from the *Knights* who came off safe, after the defeat at *Canne*, but ^{l A. Gell. Noct. Attica. l. 4. c. 12 m Lips. de re mil. Rom p. 33. Dial. 5.} *they removed them all from their own Tribes, and wholly dis-franchised them.* The like did the *Emperors*, when, in succeeding times, they took upon them to bestow the publick *Horses*, in such manner as the *Censors* had formerly used; among whom we find, that *Augustus* (after he had obtained his ten Coadjutors) exercised at one time, several of the powers belonging to the *Censors*, for ^{n Lib 4. c. 18.} *he compelled every Knight to give an account of his life, and of those whose manners he approved not, he punished, some, and noted others with reproach and infamy, and many with admonition, but after various kinds.* So also *Caius Caligula*, who not only reviewed with some severity, the *Musters* of the *Equestrian Order*, but ^{o Sueton. in vita Aug. c. 39. p Idem in vita Caii Cal. c. 46.} *openly took from them their Horses, in whom was found any foul reproach or infamy.* And those who were less guilty, and culpable but of smaller faults, lost also their dignity, together with their *Horses*, albeit they avoided that publick note of disgrace, which the former underwent, from whom (as it is shewn) he openly, and in the face of all took away their *Horses*; for concerning these, the said *Suetonius* adds, ^{q Ibid.} *He only passed over their Names in reading the Roll.* Now *Rosinus*, in laying down the manner and order used in ejecting such *Knights*, saith it was thus: A recital being made by the *Censor* of all the *Knights*, that were inrolled in the *Ordo Equestris*, those whose names he omitted, ^{r Lib. 7. c. 10.} *were thereby understood to be deprived of that dignity.*

In the last place, where any of this *Order* had consumed their *Patrimony*, and had not an *Estate* left answerable to the *Equestrian Cense*, they were reduced to the same condition with those, who (for some great mis-behaviour) were deprived of the publick *Horse*, and *Gold Ring*, and cast into the lowest rank and *Order*, being thenceforth reckon'd among the *Plebeians*.

When the *Legionary Knights* had accomplished the full time of service in the Wars, appointed by the Law, and that the publick *Horse* had not for any crime or mis-demeanour of the Owner (all that while) been taken away from him, then was he delivered back to the *Censor*; the manner whereof is thus taken notice of by ^{t Rosin. l. 1. c. 17.} *Plutarch.* *It was the custom (saith he) with the Knights of Rome, when they had served in the Wars the time appointed by the Law, to bring their Horses into the Forum, before the Duumvirs (who were called Censors) and giving an account under whom, and what Generals, or Captains, they had served, thereupon to be dismissed from further service in the Wars: an example whereof, the same Plutarch relates to have been given by Pompey himself, which was briefly thus.*

^{u In vita Pompeii.} When the two *Censors Gellius* and *Lentulus* had placed themselves in the *Forum*, to view the *Knights* that were to appear before them, *Pompey* came from the farther end thereof, leading his *Horse* in his hand by the Bridle (all the Ensigns of a *Consul* being carried before him) and passed by the Bars where the *Censors* sat, who seeing him so obedient in the observation of the Law, gave him great respect, after which the senior *Censor* thus examined him. *Pompey the Great, I desire you to tell me, whether you have served so long in the Wars as the Law doth enjoin? To which he answered, that he had, and under no other Captain than himself; whereupon the Censors rose up from their Seats, and accompanied him home to his Houle.*

Justus

x De mil. Rom.
p. 35. Dial. 5.

*Justus Lipsius** exhibits the Reverse of a *Cogn*, which he refers to the Emperor *Claudius*, as made upon his reviewing of the *Legionary Knights*, whereon is drawn the *Censor* sitting in the *Forum*, and a *Knight* leading his *Horse* up to him, and underneath is this word *CENSOR* inscribed; which since I have not met with in any other *Author*, who writes concerning the *Roman Cogns*, I thought necessary to mention in this place; together with another *Roman Cogn* given us by

y Rom. & Grec.
Monumenta
p. 165.
z *Fastorum*
Rom. l. 1. sub
finem.

† *Hubertus Goltzius*. This latter might possibly be stamped by *M. Tullius Decula*, who was *Consul* with *Cneus Cornelius Dolabella*, in the 672. year after the foundation of the *City*.

And although on the Reverse the *Censor* is not to be seen sitting in the *Forum*, as in the former, yet there is a *Figure* representing a *Knight* leading his *Horse*, and in the very same posture as before, which doubtless was design'd by *Tullius Decula*, to represent the manner of bringing a *publick Horse* to a review before the *Censors*; and to strengthen this conjecture, there is insculped on the other side, the Effigies of *Servius Tullus*, the Sixth King of *Rome*. For in regard the *Tullian Family* is said to be descended from *Servius Tullus*, in remembrance thereof, his head was stamped thereupon. Yet certainly this was not all, but that as well the Reverse was designed, to perpetuate the memory of the same King's instituting the *Cense*, and ordaining a *publick Horse* to be given to the *Roman Knights*, whereon to serve in the Wars. Albeit I am not ignorant that the learned Commentator upon the Duke of *Croy's* *Cogns* (among which is set forth the very same piece) likes rather to have it represent a *consular Horse*, led by a Groom; but he gives neither remarque nor observation of the use, custom, or occasion for a *Consular Horse* to be soled.

We shall close our discourse concerning the *publick Horse*, as it was the principal *Ensign* of the *Equestrian Degree*, with this observation; That amongst the *Roman Inscriptions*, collected by the great industry of *Janus Gruterus*, there are several written thus, *Equo publico honoratus*, *Equo publico donatus*, *ornatus*, *exornatus*, which at first sight may seem to infer, that this *publick Horse* was bestowed as an *Ensign* of *Knighthood*, and the person thereby admitted into the *Equestrian Dignity*.

But these expressions ought more rightly to be refer'd to the *præmia militaria*, with which the *Emperors* used to recompense some particular service done, by the honor of such a gift; and therefore we conceive it necessary here to insert that cautionary note, which *Salmasius* gives in this very case. ^b *Wheresoever we read of any that have been honor'd or adorn'd with a Publick Horse, it must be understood not of him who served with a publick Horse, and really took Horsemen's pay, but of him on whom this honor had been bestowed by the Emperor.*

From this learned *Author* we shall add a further observation; that *Equus publicus* (which doth often occur in old Monuments and Inscriptions) is by a wondrous, but nevertheless an accustomed speech among the *Romans*, taken for the person himself, ^c *qui Equo publico meret*, that is, for one of the *Equestrian Order*, or that served with a *publick Horse*; but *qui Equo publico donatus*, for one, to whom a *publick Horse* had been given by the *Emperor*, as an honorary reward.

Another *Ensign* of the *Equestrian Order* was a *Ring*: a *Ring* in *Latin* is called *Annulus*, à *Circuitu*, from the roundness of its figure, whereby the *Finger*, as with a *Crown* is incircled; It is also taken diminutively from *Annus* the year, from its circulating within it self; but the *Græcians* have derived its name from the *Finger*, viz. that part of the body whereon it is worn, and called it *δακτύλιον*.

That it hath been very anciently used, is undeniable, seeing the *Author* of the Book of ^d *Genesis* hath noted *Pharaoh* to have taken off his *Ring* (then esteemed one of his *Kingly Ensigs*) and put it upon *Joseph's* hand.

We shall not need here to exhibit the (even almost innumerable) forms and fashions of *Rings*, or other their various uses, as little relating to our present purpose: But forasmuch as the *Gold Ring* hath been used and taken as an *Ensign* of the *Equestrian Order*, and consequently reputed as a *Symbol* of *Honor*, among the *Romans*; as such, it falls within what we design, and therefore we shall here note a few things in relation thereunto.

When

When the custom of wearing *Rings* began first to be taken up at *Rome*, *Pliny* affirms, that the ancient *Romans* wore only the *Iron Ring*, ^e it being accounted by them the *Ensign* of Military Virtue. Nor were then *Rings* worn by any other, but by those ^f who had received them upon a publick account. This use of *Iron Rings* continued a great while amongst them, as is manifest from the same Author, who also saith, ^g that it was a long time ere the *Roman Senators* did wear any of *Gold*. And therefore all the while the *Senate* wore only *Iron Rings*, it cannot be supposed, that any of the *Equestrian Order* should wear those of *Gold*; and consequently in those elder Ages, the *Gold Ring* was not received, or reputed as an *Ensign* of their *Knightly Degree*.

Howbeit in process of time, we find *Gold Rings* were also drawn into use among the *Romans*; yet when they were so, we observe it was not lawful for men of any Degree to wear them, but only those to whom their use was restrained; as appears from *Dion* the Historian, who alledgeth, ^h That none of the ancient *Romans*, except the *Senators* and *Knights*, were permitted to wear *Gold Rings*. And now was it that the *Gold Ring* became enobled among them, when assumed by these two Orders, which included all the *Roman Nobility*.

These *Rings* (saith *Isidore*) were given at the publick charge, ⁱ but not without manifest distinction; ^k for to the *Senators* *Rings* were given, set with precious stones, to others (to wit the *Knights*) those made of massie *Gold*: which were so called (saith *Licetus*) ^l because they were not made hollow to receive *Gems* into them.

But more particularly, the *Gold Ring* was another *Ensign* of the *Equestrian Order*; ^m *Annuli* planè medium ordinem *Plebi* & *Patribus* infernere. Here *Pliny* notes it for the Symbol of the middle Degree, inserted between the *Senators* and *Plebeians*, which was that of the ⁿ *Equites*, as hath been before shewed.

The Learned *salmasius* interpreting a place in *Pliny*, immediately following that before cited, to wit, ^p *Quod antea militares Equi nomen dederunt, hoc nunc pecunia Judices tribuunt*, saith, that his meaning can be only this, ^q That all persons who had an *Equestrian Censè*, that is, an Estate of *Equestrian* value, did comport themselves as *Knights*, and (when afterwards they) were elected into that Order (it was) from and by virtue of the *Censè* alone, ^r whose *Ensign* was a *Gold Ring*. Hereupon the *Ordo Equestris* became conferr'd by the publick Donation and acceptance of a *Gold Ring*, as formerly was wont to be done by the giving of a *Horse*.

And we also observe, that *Tacitus* doth use the phrase promiscuously, *Equestri dignitate donare*, and *Annulo honorare*, to give the Dignity of *Knighthood*, and to bestow honor with the gift of a *Gold Ring*: as where he tells us, ^s that when the Army intreated *Vitellius* to make *Asiaticus*, his Freedman, a *Knight*, he repress their unbecoming flattery; but soon after (such was the fickleness of his mind) at a private Banquet (which ^t *Suetonius* saith was in Supper-time, on the first day of his Empire) he gave him what before he had deny'd, and honor'd him with *Gold Rings*.

Thus we see that at length *Slaves* were created *Knights*, and the *Jus Annulorum*, to wit, the right of wearing a *Gold Ring*, was given to *Freedmen*, no less than to *Freeborn men*.

But if it be inquired, why *Tacitus* here useth the word *Annulis* in the plural, *Turnebus* will give the reason, viz. ^u That some of the Ancients who were more sumptuous and gallant, had two kinds of *Rings*; to wit, one for *Summer*, and another for *Winter*; and I (saith he) should judge those for *Winter* to have been of greater weight, the other for *Summer* more light; and he groundeth his opinion upon the first and seventh Satyrs of *Juvenal*, who in the one calls such *Rings* *Æstivos*, or *Summer Rings*, and in the other *semestres*, or six Months *Rings*.

Statius shewing that mean extraction hindred no man from attaining to Honor, and that *Freedmen* and *Servants* (known by wearing of an *Iron Ring*) had assumed at their manumission the *Gold Ring* and *Equestrian Dignity* (whereby they became equal to others of high birth) and left off the use of the *Iron Ring*, hath these elegant Verses.

^e Lib 33.c.1.
^f in princ.
^g

^h Vide Cel.
Rhod. Leff.
Antiq 1.6.c.12.
prope finem, ex
Dione.

ⁱ In Origini-
bus. l. 19.
c. 32.
^j De Annul.
Antiq. c. 137.

^k Plin. l. 33.
c. 1. in fin m.
^l O Anpian l. 2.
de B. illi G.
vi. ibus.

^m L 33. c. 1.
sub finem.
ⁿ Salm. de re
milit Rom.
p. 239.
^o Idem. in fine;
q in proxima
pag. qui design-
nabuntur An-
nuli aurei ge-
stamine.

^p Hist. l. 2. c. 20.

^q In vita Vi-
tel. c. 12.

^r Advers. l. 20.
c. 2.

w Lib. 2. Syl-
var. de Lachr.
Herculei.

—^m Tenuesq; nihil minvere parentes,
Atque idem in Cuneos populusq; cum dixit Equestres,
Mutavitq; genus, Lavasq; ignobile ferrum
Exit, & celsatorum aequavit honore.

* Domitius.

Whereupon, one of his learned * Commentators gives an instance in *Claudius Etruscus*, (whom *Vespasian* had advanced from the condition of a Freedman, to the Equestrian Order) and notes, that the said Emperor caused him to put off the Iron Ring, which servants and Freedmen used to wear, and to put on a Gold Ring, the note or mark of Knightly Dignity.

x Hist. Aug.
Scriptor.
p. 463.

Salmatus upon the words of *Aurelius Victor*, cited by *Julius Capitolinus* in the life of *Macrinus*, viz. *donatum Annulis aureis*, saith thus, * Freedmen (and such a one was *Macrinus*) upon whom Gold Rings were bestowed, were thereby made Knights: besides he there cites the above-mentioned Verses of *Statius*, and thence infers, that *Claudius Etruscus*, the person of whom the Poet spake, was a Freedman, whose condition the Emperor had so changed, that of a Freedman he became a Knight, and for † Iron Rings, such as Freedmen did wear, he gave those of Gold, which were the proper Ensigns of Knights. At length he positively concludes; † That whereas Knights were high-born, nevertheless he, who having laid aside his Iron Rings, and put on those of Gold bestowed on him by the Emperor, was equal to them in honor. Agreeable hereunto is that of *Fremissemus*, * the Gold Ring was the proper Ornament of Knights, to the end they that were honored therewith from the Emperor, should be understood to be taken and received into the Equestrian Order.

y § Ibid.

† Notib. L.
Flor. l. c. 5.

For the donation of the Gold Ring did bestow upon slaves such Priviledges and Immunities, as if they had been free-born; who being now freed from service, ^b *ingenuitatis jura consequantur*, did thereby not only obtain the rights of Freeborn men, but encrease of Honors; ^c living in such sort, that they were to bear Magistracy and Honors, and to sustain all Offices of freeborn Citizens, like other Free-men. And more particularly, ^d were also esteemed to have attained unto the Equestrian Order, or enjoyed the Priviledges equal thereunto. And all this merely from the donation and permission of the use of the Gold Ring, upon receiving of which they ^e left off wearing the Iron Ring, that being then (though not anciently) ^f a badge of servitude and slavery; and ^g rejecting their old name also, they assumed that of Knight.

b Salmuth. in
Panciroli. Tit.
58. p. 313.
c Alex. ab A-
lex. in Genial.
Dier. l. 2. c. 19.
in fine.
d Salmuth.
e Loco cit.
f Idior. in O-
rig. l. 10. c. 32.
g Alex. ab A-
lex loco cit.

It distinguish-
ed the Knights
from the Sena-
torians and
Plebeians.

But as this noble Symbol, the Gold Ring, was an Ensign of the Equestrian Order, so was it also one of the notes or signs of distinction, to difference them from the two other Degrees, namely, Senatorian and Plebeian.

And first, though anciently while the Senators wore plain Gold Rings, we confess the Knights Rings being plain also, carried not a sufficient distinction; nevertheless after such time as the Senators began to adorn their Rings with Gems and precious Stones, (as is before noted) was the difference evident enough.

Secondly, they were also worn to distinguish the Equestrian Order from the Plebeian; and that the Knights used them to that end, is evident from ^b many Authors, in regard the Plebeians had permission to wear no other than Rings of Iron. The difference among the Rings of these three Orders is thus observed by *Licetus*, ⁱ Gold Rings set with precious stones were given to the Senators only, plain Rings without stones to the Knights, and Iron Rings to the Plebeians, which the said Author here calls *Ferrei Militares*, because the aforesaid Degrees at first used the Iron Ring, ^k to shew themselves good Soldiers and expert in Arms. But after such time as the Gold Ring was appropriate to the Equestrian Order, the people continued the custom of wearing the Iron Ring only; for albeit they enjoy'd the priviledge of free birth, yet because they wanted Nobility they might not wear Gold Rings, but rest contented with those of Iron.

h Plin l. 33. c.
1. sub fine, Ro-
sin. de Antiq.
Rom. c. 17.
Salmuth. in
Panciroli. Tit.
58. Salmuth de
re mil. Rom. p.
240. Cl. Fau-
cher. Crigines
de: Ceval. Ar-
mories of He-
raax. p. 2.
i De Assensu
Antiq. p. 130.
k Ibid.

But at length
grew into
common use.

We are informed by *Appian*, that one of the Ornaments of a Tribune, was likewise a Gold Ring; the Tribunes (saith he) wore Gold Rings, among the Soldiers, when other inferiors wore those of Iron; and lest it should be doubted that the word

word *ἐπαιτιῶν* might refer to those of the Equestrian Order; *Justus Lipsius* clears this place, saying, ¹that the words of Appian were meant only of the Infantry, in regard the Knights were of equal rank and dignity with the Tribunes. 1 De mil. Rom. l. 2. p. 87.

At length, in the middle times of the Empire, it appears that the Foot Soldiers were also allowed the honor of wearing Gold Rings, no less than Knights; for ²*Herodian* affirms, that *Severus* (among other Privileges granted by him to his Soldiers) was the first, of all the Roman Emperors, who permitted them the use of Gold Rings: And afterwards, in times of greater liberty, the use of them grew far more frequent and promiscuous; inasmuch (as *Alexander ab Alexandro* noteth) that not only the Roman Soldiers without distinction, but at length the Freedmen, as also Women, and the meanest slaves, were allowed to wear Gold Rings, which formerly was not lawful. m L. 3. c. 25; n In Genial. Dier. l. 2. c. 10.

Among the Interpreters of *Lucius Florus*, we find that *Zevcotius* upon these words *Modii duo Annulorum Carthaginem missi, dignitasq; Equestris taxata mensura*, whereby *Florus* observes, that from these two measures of Rings, the Carthaginians did judge how many Roman Knights were slain at the Battel of *Cannæ*; we say the said *Zevcotius* hath this observation; for the dishonor received at this overthrow, unto the time of *Severus* the Emperor, the use of Gold Rings was not granted in warlike Expeditions, but only to the Tribunes; and to others those of Iron, which exclusion of the Roman Knights, he conceives included in the word *ceteris*; but what ground he hath for this opinion we know not, since we find no such remark in any ancient Author. o Lib. 2. c. 1.

For had the Equestrian Order, after the said Battel, been prohibited the use of Gold Rings abroad, until the time of *Severus*, doubtless *Herodian* had then mentioned them to have received, not a donation, but restoration of this privilege from *Severus*; besides, those he speaks of were *ἐπαιτιῶν* only the Foot Soldiers, not Knights; moreover it was the donation of a thing *ἀ μὴ πρότερον ἔχον*, which they never before enjoyed. And therefore most certain it is, he could not intend the Knights here; since they from ancient time had enjoy'd, and (for ought we can find to the contrary) did to this time, and beyond, continue the wearing of Gold Rings abroad, no less than at home.

To conclude, that which seems very much to persuade, that the use of Gold Rings was grown promiscuous, long ere these times, to wit, before the Battel of *Cannæ*, is this following passage of *Pliny*; ³That there was a promiscuous use of Gold Rings in the second Punic War; and his reason is this, ⁴If they had not been at that time worn by others, as well as Knights, Hannibal could not have sent those three Measures of Rings to Carthage. p 1. l. 33. q 1. cap. 1.

But *L. Florus*, an ancient Author than *Pliny*, is clear (in the place above cited) that it was only they of the Equestrian Order, who (by those Measures of Rings) were known to be slain near *Cannæ*; and not any other; and that there were but two Measures of them, not three, as *Pliny* reporteth; so that *Pliny* grounding his opinion for the confused or indifferent use of Gold Rings, upon the number of those Measures they are said to fill, which number by an Author more ancient is affirmed to be less; we conceive, this deduction of his hath not weight enough to be relied on.

SECT. VII.

The Ensigns and Ornaments of Knighthood among other Nations.

FROM the Romans we shall pass to other Nations, and first to the Germans; among whom, as *Tacitus* affirms, the shield and Lance were accounted the grand Badges of Military Honor, or Knighthood, and accordingly given their young Gentlemen that were to be admitted to so honorable a Dignity: ¹for it was not the custom (saith he) for any one among them to take Arms, before the State had 1. Shield and Lance. Tacit. de morib. Germ. c. 21.

had approved him able to manage them; but then in their publick Assemblies, some France, or the Father, or else a Kinsman of the young man, adorn'd him with a Shield and Lance (and whom they termed in their Language *Kinecht*) to which Tacitus also adds, *That this Investiture was the Gown among them; and the first honor bestowed upon their youth.*

This also saith *Cambden*, was the first and most simple manner of creating a Knight. This the *Lombards*, this the *Franks*, and this our *Country-men*, all descending out of *Germany*, in old time used: and was to us (in the opinion of the learned *Sir Henry Spelman*) the Foundation of the *Knightly Order*.

Much like that of the ancient *Germans*, was the custom of making *Knights* among the old *Irish*: for either the *King*, or *Father* of the young man created him a *Knight*; and if his *Father* were dead, then the next of *Kin* did it; and the manner of creation was thus: *A Shield* was hung upon a *Pole* or *Stake*, fixt in the ground, and a small *Lance* or *Spear* (such as the *Youth* design'd to this honor could weild) was given to him, and therewith he ran a *Tilt* at the *Shield*, and the more he broke of these *Launces*, the greater reputation he gain'd.

Andrew Favyn notes, that the *Shield* and *Lance* were the proper Arms appertaining heretofore to a *French Knight*, and therefore in their *Capitularies*, called *Arma Patria*; these, *Esquires* carried always after their Masters, wheresoever they went, and what occasion soever they were engaged in.

And it is an Observation of *Cl. salmasius*, in relation to the Nobility and Gentry of *France*,^a that at this day all the Ensigns and Marks of *Honor*, appertaining to persons of highest extraction, are *Equestrian*, and take denomination from the *Equestrian Militia*: and that the *Shields* and *scutes* (as they are vulgarly called) in which the Arms of the Nobility are exprest, are *Equestrian Targets*, not *Shields* or *Bucklers* of Foot Soldiers.

The form of the *Equestrian Targets* among the *Romans*, were inclining to an Oval, as may be seen by those cut upon *Trajan's Column* at *Rome*; after which Figure, divers of our Nobility and Gentry have of late times also fashioned the *Escotcheons*, whereon their Arms are born: but the figure of our more ancient *Escotcheons*, came neerer that description which *Livy* gives us of the *Samnites Shields*, whose upper parts were broader, and the head of an even height, for defence of the breast and shoulders, but growing narrower and narrower, towards the bottom, finished in a point.

Another Ensign and Ornament of *Knightly Honor* is the *Cingulum militare*, or *Military Belt*, called also *Balteus*, or *Balticus*, which *Varro* saith is a *Tuscan* word, and signifies a *Military Girdle*. That which the *Roman Soldiers* wore, was made of *Leather*, and adorn'd with *Studs* or *Bolles* (from whom it devolv'd to the *Germans* and *Franks*) and is in like manner described by *Favin*, to be made of a large Thong of white *Leather*, having the ends pure *Gold*, covered and fastened with *Studs* of the same metall, to which the *Sword* was made fast on the left side.

With him doth another *French Writer* concur, saying, that the *Incincture* was made of a large Thong of *Leather*, and was termed *Balteus*, and by the *French* a *Baudrier*, which *Favin* affirms to be so called of the old *French* also.

Rudolphus Abbot of *St. Truden* in *Germany*, speaking concerning the finding of the Body of *St. Gereon* Knight and Martyr, at *Colen*, in the Monastery of *St. Pant leon*, saith that his *Military Girdle* was found to that time whole and entire, and that it was of black *Leather*, almost an Ell long: But his *Sword* was consumed, and only the pomel (of the form of an Egg) almost eaten up with rust, was likewise found at his left side nigh to his *Belt*.

This Ensign of Honor came in time to be richly adorned both with *Gold* and precious *Stones*, as *Favin* also notesⁱ in another place of his *Theatre of Honor*, out of *St. Gregory Vislor* Arch-Bishop of *Tours*: as also that it was not the common wearing *Girdle*, inasmuch as the *French* in general used golden *Girdles*; but that the *Knights* wore such as were garnished with great *Buckles*, *Studs*, and *Rings* of pure *Gold*, being of great price and value; to shew their dignity and power in *Military Commands*: and with such a *Belt*^k set with *Pearls* and precious *Stones*, was young *Athelstan* (afterwards one of our *Saxon Kings*) girded, when he received *Knighthood* from his Grandfather *Alfred*. It

^f Camb. Brit.
p. 125.
^t Loco cit.

^u Loco super
relat.

^w G'ossar. ver-
bo Milles.

^x *Erasmiod.*
^y *Hist* l. 3.
c. 63.

^z In le Thea-
tre d' Hon. l.
c. 2.

^a De re milit.
Rom p. 227.
in princ.

^b Ibid.

^c Lib 9. circa
finem.

² Belt.
d L. 18. Rom.
hum.

^e Varro l. 4. de
Lingua Lat.
^f Theat. d' Hon.
l. 1. c. 6.

^g Claude Fau-
chet, en les O-
rigines des Che-
valiers, &c.
fo. 2.

^h Apud Jo. Jac.
Christum ni
Angst. Childeri-
ci Regis. p. 157.

ⁱ L. 3. c. 1.

^k Malmsh. de
gest. Reg. l.
2. c. 6.

It is to be further noted, that by this *Badge of Knighthood*, were our *Knights* anciently known, no less than by their gilt Swords, Spurs, and golden Collars of SS. howbeit it hath not for a long time been used with us, at the creation of a *Knight*, save only of the *Baths*; but instead thereof, the dubbing with a naked Sword sufficeth.

To this *Belt* was also added a *Sword*, and such a one, as in the esteem of some, ^{3. Sword.} was different from the ordinary use, and therefore is by *Favin* termed ^{1. the Sword} *the Sword of a Knight*. In time of Christianity this *Sword* came to be *hallowed* with great Ceremony, either by some great Prelate, or other Ecclesiastical Person: the form of the *Benediction* is to be found in the ^m *Titles of Honor*, and in *Favins* ⁿ *Thea-* ⁿ *Loco cit.* ^{3. Theat. d'Hon- neur. l. 1. c. 6.} ^m *Pag. 781.*

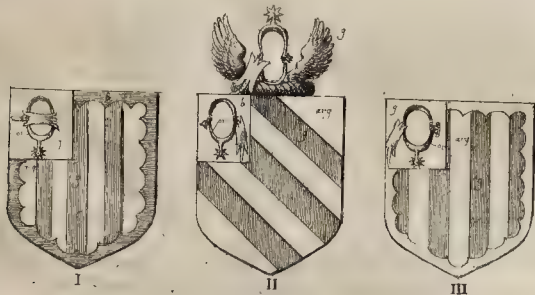
This among the *Ensigns of Knightly Honor* hath obtained the principal place ^o *Francisc. de Rades y Andrada en Chronico. Sanctia- of st. James in Spain* for their *Badge of Honor*, is drawn in the fashion of a ^{g. c. 1. p. 1. b.} *Sword*. And the *Collar of the Order of the Sword and Belt in Sweden* is composed of *swords* bloody at the point, and encompassed about with *Leathern Belts*; the manner and order whereof may be seen in the *Plate* prefix to the third Chapter ensuing.

Another eminent *Badge of Knighthood* (which succeeded in the place ^{p. 9. b.} of the *Gold Ring*) is the *Golden spur*, wherewith at the time of their *Crea-* ^{4. Spurs.} *tion Knights* were wont to be adorn'd; and these (a little after the Conquest) ^{1. Fr. Menen. Delic. Equeſt. Edit. Colon. Agrip. p. 13.} were added to the other *Ensigns*, for more and greater Ornament, and are usually carried by a Nobleman at the Coronation of our *Kings*, to signify their *Knighthood*.

Those *spurs* appointed to be made against Christmas, *Anno Domini 1252.* and sent to *York*, to be used there, at the *Knighthood of Alexander the Third, King of Scots*, were of *Silver*, gilt over, and the *Straps* curiously wrought of *Silk*, instead of *Leather*. ^{1. Claus. an. 36. H. 3. m. 30.}

They were usually put on after the person had been conducted and presented to the *King* or *Prince*, who gave the *Honor*, beginning with the right *Heel*; and given to signify, that the new made *Knight* should not only declare his valour by ^u *his Sword*, but also by the management of his *Horse*; which he should encourage ^{Theat. d'Hon- neur. l. 1. c. 6.} and excite with his *Spurs* to the carrying on of his valiant designs.

Of so great an esteem hath the *Knighthly Spurs* been, that from thence, ^w *Knights* w ^{Seld. Tit. of Batchellors} are generally called in *Latin Equites Aurati*, among the *Germans* ^{Honor. p. 437.} *Bitterfels Gilden Sporns*, and with us heretofore ^x *Knights of the spur*. Nay ^x *Rot. Parl.* one of the *Military Orders* was instituted under this Title: and the ^{3. E. 4.} *Collar* of the *Order of the Elephant in Denmark*, is (according to ² *Franciscus Mennenius*) ^y *Delic. E-* composed of *Elephants* and *spurs*. It was conceived so proper and suitable a ^z *quest. p. 150* *Badge of Knighthood*, that it has been thought fit to be given for *Coat Arm-* ^a *Registrum Armor. partium borealium Anglia, tempore Regis Hen 8. penes Thom. nuper Com. Arundell & Sur.* ^b *Inter Collect. Concess.* ^c *Ibid.* ^{1. Knight of Stremsbury [I.]} ^{2. Knight of Charwelton} ^{3. Knight of St. Dennis} in the County of *Northampton* [II.] and *Hampshire* [III].



d MS. in Offic.
Armor.
e See the de-
gradation of
Sir Andr. Har-
clay in Seldens
Titles of Ho-
nor. p. 88.
f Collar.

We further have it certified by the *Kings and Herald's of Arms*, Anno 10. Jac. Regis, among other rights belonging to the Degree of a *Knight Baneret*, that he ^a upon the account of his *Knighthood*, might wear *gilt Spurs*, as well as a *gilt sword*: and that they have been accounted an *Essential Badge of Knighthood*, may be collected from the Ceremony of the degradation of a *Knight*, where his *gilt Spurs* are ^e first cut off with a Hatchet.

In the last place, although the use of wearing *Collars* of Gold hath been most ancient, and one of the usual causes for which they were bestowed, was to honor *Military Virtue*; and though among the *Romans*, the *Collar* gave a Sur-name to one of their chiefest *Families*, and consequently became of much esteem among them: yet do we nowhere find it reckoned among the *Ensigns* of their *Equestrian Order*: But among some other *Nations* it was accounted a *Badge and Mark of Knighthood*.

g De Antiquo-
rum Torquibus
p. 37.
h i. varior.
c. 10.
i f Scheffer de
i Antiq. Torq.
p. 38.
k Ibid. p. 41.

^f John Scheffer, from a passage out of ^g Pancirollus, which tells us that *Golden Collars* were reckon'd among the *Ornaments*, worn by the *Roman Presidents of Provinces*, would likewise have it an *Ensign of h* *Knighthly Dignity* among the *Germans*, affirming withall, ⁱ that the more ancient *Statues and Images of their Knights*, were adorned with *Collars*.

He also notes, as a thing observable, ^k that this custom of bestowing *Collars* upon *Martialists*, was very much practised by the *Germans*, especially as to their *Knights*; and that in ancient times, such as were in repute for their gallantry and valour, were adorned therewith.

It may be safely presumed, that *Collars* were *Badges of Knighthood* among the ancient *Gauls*, since they were bestowed upon valiant men, and such as had rendered themselves conspicuous by acts of Prowess and Chivalry, as a worthy recompence of their *Virtue*: And from *Pliny* it appears, that the ancient *Gauls* were wont to wear them in Fight, for as the said Scheffer notes upon ^m his words, no other thing can be understood by the word *Auro* than *Torques*.

m Gallos cum
auro pugnare
solitos, Torque-
sus indicio est.
Plin. l. 33. c. 1.
n Scheff. Syn-
tag. p. 56, 57,
et 58.

The like may be said of the ancient ⁿ *Britans*, *Danes*, and *Goths*, among whom it was customary to wear them, as denoting such as were remarkable for their valour.

But in later times, it was the peculiar Fashion of *Knights* among us, to wear *Golden Collars*, composed of *ss*, or other various works; so that those *Monuments* are known to belong to *Knights*, on whose Portraictures such *Ornaments* are now found.

o Catalogue
p. 1 des Cheva-
liers de l'Or-
dre du Collier
de Savoy d'eff.
de l'annuciade.

To conclude, we must acknowledge that this noble *Ensign* hath been likewise honored with a particular and high estimation among the *Founders of Military Orders*, since it is manifest from ^o Francis Capre, that the *Order of Savoy* was at first called, *The Order of the Collar*, and not by the Title of the ^p *Annuciade*, until the year 1518. as will more amply appear by and by.

So that if we sum up the principal *Ensigns* of *Knighthood*, ancient, and modern, we shall find them to have been, or are, a *Horse*, *Gold Ring*, *Shield*, and *Launce*, a *Belt* and *Sword*, *gilt Spurs*, and a *Gold Chain or Collar*.

But from these have later Ages, more especially, selected the *Belt*, or *golden Girdle*, *Sword*, *Collar*, *Spurs*, and *Rings*; all which we find innumrated, and particularly called the *Ornaments* and *Ensigns* appertaining to *Knighthood*, in some Imperial Diplomas, and wherewith the Emperor is therein said to have adorned and invested his new created *Knight*, according to Custom; as for instance, that of *Rodolph the Second*, granted to Sir *Robert Sherley*, and dated at *Prague*, the second of *June 1610*. of which a fuller account may be taken in ^q Purchas his *Pilgrimage*, where the Imperial Instrument (containing also the creating of him an *Earl Palatine of the Empire*, and bestowing sundry Priviledges and Prerogatives therewith, worthy of knowing) is translated *verbatim*.

q Part. 2. l. 10.
p. 4806.

r Pag. 403;

The Author of the *Jurisprudentia Heroica* has afforded an Example in this kind, in another Diploma of the same Emperors, made to ^r Sir *Charles Billebe*, dated at *Vienna* the eleventh of *February*, anno 1594. And there is a priviledge usually granted in these Diplomas, that the *Knights* shall in all Exercises, Actions, and

and Enterprises, use and wear *Chains, Swords, Spurs, Robes, Trappings*, and whatsoever Furniture else belonging to *Horses*, either all Gold or gilt.

The *Trappings* here mentioned put us in mind of a passage in *Pliny*, whence it may be conjectured, that *Horse-Trappings* were sometime heretofore accounted part of the *Ensigns* of a *Roman Knight*; for, having told us that one *Flavius* a man of mean birth, had ingratiated himself with the *Commons*, by publishing the Mystery of the whole course of days, pleadable and not pleadable, which his Master *Appius Claudius Cæcus* had discovered to him; he adds, that a Bill passed by general consent, to create him *Ædilis Curulis*, together with *Q. Anicius*, without any regard had to those other, who, being nobly born, had likewise stood for that *Dignity*: And that at the same time he was also made *Tribunus Plebis*, at which the whole *Senate* took such offence, that they laid aside their *Rings*, and some thought (but were mistaken) that the *Knights* did the like, nay believed further, that they left off their *Horse-Trappings*, as if from them the name of *Knight* had been bestowed; and consequently the *Phalera*, no less than the *Annuli*, or *Equi*, were accounted *Badges* of the *Equeſtrian Order*, after they were drawn into fashion and use.

However we may suppose, that the publick *Horse*, if at first, was not afterwards given naked; but with such accoutrements and furniture, as were both for use and ornament in War: the fashion whereof may be observed among those Sculptures upon *Trajan's Column* at *Rome*, a Draught whereof was first made by *Julio Romano*, then corrected by *Franciscus Villamena*; and last of all, after a long and retchless neglect (these Plates being thrown by, and welnigh spoil'd with rust and carelessness) were happily brought to light and repaired, by the care and expence of my noble Friend, accomplished with great variety of useful and ingenious knowledge, *John Evelyn* Esquire, during his residence at *Rome*.

SECT. VIII.

Qualifications for Knighthood.

AS touching the *Qualifications* which formerly made persons capable of this Honor of *Knighthood*, the principal and most remarkable were these three, *Merit, Birth, and Estate*.

In the right distribution of this Honor and Dignity, *Merit* has been by all allowed to challenge a principal share; and the deserving judged fittest to be preferred, before those who wanted that Qualification.

Among the *Romans*, no Soldier was denied or envied his part in the Prizes of Honor or Recompence, to wit, that sort of *Crown*, or such other of the *Military Rewards* which their valour had deserved; and not only their Emperors, but all other Princes found the advantage of conferring benefits on the meritorious, in being thereby best served: For those who have shewed themselves inclined to noble and valiant Actions, having once tasted the sweet of Reward, are generally so encouraged, as no danger hath seem'd too great to attempt, no enterprize so difficult but might be made feasible. But of this subject there is so much spoke, and to be met with almost every where, that we need not add more.

As to the second Qualification, namely, *Birth*; there was so great care taken, that (saith *Andrew Favyn*) to prevent the admittance of any, not of eminent and generous Extraction, into this Dignity; of the *Ordinances* made concerning the Order of *Knighthood*, the first Article is, That the parties who enter therein, ought first to make it appear they be Gentlemen of three paternal descents; and that the Arms they bear have been born by their Fathers, Grandfathers, and great-Grandfathers.

It was also the Law of the Empire, That no man should be capable of this Dignity, but

z Pag. 436.

y Jo. Tilium
Comment. de
Rebus Gallicis
l. 2. p. 181. vide
Mennen, Delic.
Equestr. p. 23.
z In Servum
autem non can-
dit Equestris
Dignitas. lb.

a Jo. Tilium
Comment.
p. 182.

b s Mennen.
c 2 Delic. E-
questr. p. 25.

d s Jo. Tilium
c 2 Comment.
de Reb. Galli-
cis. l. 2. p. 181.

3. Estate.

f Lib. 4.
g Arrianus, ad-
versus Gentes.
lib. 4.
h L. 9 c. 19.

i Plin. l. 33. c. 1.
vide porro Ber-
neger in Sue-
zon, in Caesar.
c. 23.

k Titles of Ho-
nor. p. 438.
l Brit. p. 126.

m Tir. of Honor.
p. 691.

but he that was descended from one, who was Miles (which Mr. Selden interprets not by Knight, but Gentleman, or Nobilis) as appears by the Constitution of Frederick the Second, elected Emperor anno 1212. and mentioned in the ^aTitles of Honor; and perhaps there was an Eye had to this Law, in the Sentences upon the following Cases.

Nor hath it been (by some) accounted sufficient, that the person Knighted should be a Gentleman by the Fathers side, unless he were to also by the Mothers, at least she was to be a Free-woman, and not a Servant: ^y for if she were a Servant or Bond-woman, though the Father were a Gentleman, the Children were still ranked within the Degree of Servitude, and ^zcounted incapable of the Knightly Dignity.

Heretofore the conferring of Knighthood was not restrained to the Sovereign power, as now it is; but that the greater Subjects did sometime make Knights: But where the honor hath been given by such, to those who were Vassals to another, the bestowing thereof was accounted illegal, and they that took upon them to give it, were liable to censure; because by this action they took anothers Villain or Bondman from him, which was a manifest wrong, and ought not to be done. As in the case of the two Sons of ^aPhilip de Bourbon, one whereof was Knighted by the Earl of Flanders, the other by the Earl of Newers: Whereupon by an Order dated on All-Saints day, Anno Domini 1279. and another at Whitsonside following, both the said Earls were fined, and the two Brethren condemned to pay one thousand pounds apiece, though by the Kings grace and favour they kept their Knighthoods.

And to shew that this Law was elsewhere observed more strictly, and the breach thereof liable to more severe sentences, those among the ^bAragonians that descended from Knights in a direct line by the Fathers side (which were called Infançones, and accounted Gentlemen, whether legitimate or illegitimate) were capable of being Knights, and no other: ^c So that if one, not an Infançon, were promoted to Knighthood, by a Rico Hombre (which seems to be a higher Degree of Nobility) both the Rico Hombre was to lose the Honor he had, and the person whom he pretended to promote, remained still a Villain or Plebeian.

But it was otherwise where a Nobleman Knighted his own Vassal, as in the case reported by ^dPhilip de Beau-manoir in his Customary of the Year 1283. where the Son of a Gentleman and a Woman-Servant, was Knighted by him, whose Servant the Woman was: and his condition being afterwards discovered, the Nobleman would have challenged him for his Slave, but in regard his Knightly Dignity had vindicated him from servitude and vassallage (though his Lord was deceived in conferring the Honor) he was adjudged to remain free and a Knight; which he could not have done, if any other but his Lord had Knighted him: for which this reason is there given, ^ebecause no other person had sufficient power to enfranchise him.

The third and last of those Qualifications, which we have thought fit to take notice of here, is that of Estate or Wealth, which serves to support the Dignity of Knighthood: for we find that in all Times and Countries, when men were grown wealthy, they thereby (as by Merit or Birth) became capable of Honors.

Thus Wealth was so much regarded among the Chaldeonians, as ^fHerodotus tells us, that those who were rich, bore the name of Knights. It was ^gEstate that intitled a man to this Honor among the Romans: for the Censor (as hath been before observed out of ^hLivy) might compel any Citizen, who had an Estate equal to the Equestrian Cense, to enter into the Equestrian Order, and this old Roman Cense consisted of ⁱ400000 sesterces, which according to our learned Seldens computation amounts to ^k3025 l. of our Money.

And anciently in old Rome, so not long after the Conquest here in England (as ^lCambden observes) were Knights dignified for their wealth, and state of living. For they who had a Knights Fee, to wit (saith he) six hundred and fourscore Acres of Land, might claim as their right the Ornaments and Badges of Knighthood.

But by the way it appears from ^mMr. Selden, that not any certain number, or extent

extent of Acres made a *Knight's Fee*: and by several Writts directed to the *Sheriffs* of all *Counties* in *England*, to make Proclamation for receiving the Honor of *Knighthood*, in the Reigns of *Hen. 3. & Ed. 1.* as also by the *Act de Militibus*, anno 1. *Ed. 2.* it appears that the *Census Militis*, or valuation of the Estate of a *Knight*, was measured by *Twenty Pounds Land* by the year (and sometimes more) and this was counted the most reasonable way of Estimation, because one Acre might be more or less in value than another.

And the Parallel yet held as to the matter of enforcement and compulsion, to take this Honor; for by an ancient Prerogative, several of our *Kings*, have at their pleasures compell'd such persons who held a whole *Knight's Fee*, or so much Land, whose annual value, as aforesaid, answered thereto, to take this Dignity upon them; and to that purpose sent forth their Mandates in Writts, directed to the *Sheriffs* of each County, to make Proclamation, "That all those, within their several Bailiwicks, who were of full age, and had one whole *Knight's Fee*, and were not *Knighted*, should appear before the King (on a certain day, in the Writ set down) ready fitted and prepared to receive the Honor of *Knighthood*."

Sometimes these Writts included, both such as were possessed of Lands worth *Twenty pounds per annum*, and such as held a whole *Knight's Fee*, valued at that annual sum: but the yearly value set by the King was not always certain, for sometimes we find it to be *15* fifteen pounds, then *20* twenty pounds, at other times *30* thirty pounds, then *40* forty pounds, and sometimes *50* fifty pounds.

Anno 40. *Hen. 3.* "The *Sheriffs* in *England* were amerced, because they had not distrained all those who had such Estates in Land, as the Law limited to take the Order of *Knighthood*, or otherwise to pay their Fines; and we observe the Command in the *Kings* Writ to be now and then accompanied with much severity, in case the *Sheriff* should be negligent in the discharge of his duty, or connive with any for lucre of a Bribe; as appears in that directed to the *Sheriff* of *Northamptonshire*, the words whereof are.

"*Rex Vicecom. Northt. salutem. Præcipimus tibi quod sicut teipsum & omnia tua diligis, omnes illos in Balliva tua, qui habeant viginti libratas terre distringas, quod si Milites faciendos, citra Nativitatem sancti Johannis Baptiste proxime futur. Sciturus pro certo, quod si pro munere, vel aliqua occasione, aliquam relaxationem eis feceris, vel aliquem respectum dederis, Nos ita graviter ad te capiemus, quod omnibus diebus vite tue te senties esse gravatum. T. R. apud Wyndesfor decimo quarto die Aprilis.*"

Where, upon appearance, after such Proclamation, a reasonable or lawful excuse hath been alledged, as *old age*, *irrecoverable weakness*, *loss of Limbs*, being *in holy Orders*, or the like, whereby the Body was wholly disabled to perform personal service; there, the allegations have been admitted by the King, the persons acquitted, and by *Letters Patents* exempted from taking this *Military Order* during life.

But there were many other causes and reasons which usually obtained a suspension for some certain time, (besides those set down in the *Act of Parliament* Anno 1. *Ed. 2.*) as where a man was at present greatly indebted, or bound to attend some necessary employment, as a *Serjeant* at Law in the *Common Pleas Court*, for which nevertheless, the party suing for such favour, paid a Fine, and therefore in some Writts we have seen a clause added, to give intimation, that (where any reasonable cause could be made appear, at the time of *Knighthood*, to impede the receiving of the Order) the person might be admitted to make a Fine for the respite thereof.

Yet was not this Fine constant or certain, but estimated and set according to the nature of the excuse, or length of time given: for instance, *Robert de Menevil* of *Northumberland*, having obtained respite for two years, was set at *5* five Marks, and *Peter Fonden* at *40* forty eight Shillings and eight Pence, for three years respite; but *John de Drokensford* paid *10* ten Pounds for a suspension of his *Knighthood*, only

o Qui habeant 20 l. libratas terra, vel feodum unius militis integrum valens 20 l. per annum. Claus. 37. H. 3. m. 25. dorso. p. Stroms Abr. p. 260. an. 40. H. 3. Camb. Brit. p. 126. q. Claus. 28. H. 3. m. 12. dorso. 1. Claus. 5. E. 3. pars 1. m. 12. 1. Rot. Parl. 20. E. 1. Claus. 17. E. 2. m. 8. & 19. E. 2. m. 16. dorso. Claus. 7. E. 3. pars 1. m. 22. dorso. Brevia Regis an. 2. R. 2. pars 1. & par. 2. Pat. 15. E. 3. pars 1. m. 15. dorso. & Claus. 12. H. 4. m. 10. dorso. t. Claus. 9. E. 2. m. 13. dorso. de decreto Parl. u Speeds Chron. p. 533.

w Claus. 28. H. 3. m. 12. dorso.

x Pat. an. 20.

E. 3. pars 2.

m. 29.

y Pat. 15. E. 3.

p. 1. m. 16.

y Pat. 7. E. 3.

pars 2. m. 30.

z Claus. 25. H.

3 pars 1. m. 7.

dorso.

a Claus. an. 36.

H. 3. m. 23.

b Communia

de Term. Mich.

9. H. 6. Rot. 14.

dorso.

c Quod sint ad

Nos, &c. para-

ti, ad capien-

dum Arma mi-

litaria, vel ad

finem nobiscum

faciendum pro

respectu habendi

de de militia

sua.

d Orig. 51. H. 3.

m. 6.

e 15. m. 5.

f Orig. 7. E. 3.

for

g. Claus. 35. H.
3 m 2. d. r. f. &
Claus. 36. H. 3.
m 23.
h. Placita cor-
na in Com.
Derb. coram J.
de Vallibus,
E. c. anno 9. E. 1.

i Orig. de anno
51. H. 3. m. 4.

k Communia
Finet, E. c.
Term. Mich. 9.
E. 3. 20. 2.
Ebor.
l Com. de Term.
Hill. 14. H. 3.
Somerfet.
m Communia
de Term. Mich.
56. H. 3. incipi-
ent 57. Warr.
n Commun. de
Term. Mich. 23.
E. 3. 23. 3. d. r. f.
o Communia
de Term. Pasche.
31. E. 3. finet.
E. Rot. 2. Ebor.

p Pat. 33. E. 3.
pars prima
m. 22.

q Communia
de Term. Trin.
15. E. 3.

r Pat. 8. R. 2.
pars prima
m. 8.

for the same time. And in these cases the *Kings* Writ usually issued to the *Sheriff*, with command to ^s permit the person to have that respite, and to forbear taking any distress, till the time compounded for should be expired, and if, nevertheless, the person happened to be impleaded for not having received *Knighthood*, the *Kings* Letters Patents (granting him the time of respite being produced) have been ^h allowed.

If any person had been distrained by the *Sheriff*, and a return thereof made to the *King*, and did not appear at the time and place, in the Writ nominated, to receive the Honor of *Knighthood*; in such case we sometimes find that a Writ hath issued, giving command to the *Sheriff*, forthwith to ⁱ seize all his Lands and Tenements into the *Kings* hands, and answer the profits thereof into the Exchequer.

The Fines and Amerciaments set upon such contempt, seem to have been arbitrary, and the Court swayed, according as the nature of the default appeared: *William* the Son of *Gilbert de Alton*, paid ^k twenty shillings for not appearing and receiving *Knighthood*, according to the command of the *Kings* Proclamation; *Thomas Paucefoot* paid ^l four Nobles, *John de Lodbroke* ^m forty shillings, the ⁿ like Fine was set upon *Simon de Bradeney* and *Thomas Trivet*, both of *Somersetshire*, and *John de Neirvot* in the County of *Bucks*; and lastly, *William Lassels* paid ^o four pounds, for that he had not received *Knighthood* before *Michaelmas*, Anno 30. E. 3. and for obtaining respite for three years from thence.

But albeit in the promiscuous course of bestowing of *Knighthood*, where the men of *Wealth* and *Estate* (whether otherwise worthy or not) became dignified, yet was not the gate of Honor then shut against those, who wanting Riches sought her out, by the paths of *Virtue* and *Merit*: For where men of low Fortunes deserved well of their Country, and that for their good services the *King* had judged them worthy of Honor; He was accordingly pleas'd to bestow such annual Pension, or Lands upon them, as He esteemed sufficient to maintain that degree of Dignity (whatsoever it was) so conferr'd. And this is agreeable to the judgment of the Author of the *Division du Monde*, who saith, That the Honor of *Knighthood* is not to be given to any person who hath not a considerable Estate; unless sufficient means to support the Honor of that Order be also given with it.

Hence it is, that the *Kings* of *England* have allowed Pensions (and frequent mention of them is made in the Rolls) sometimes during pleasure, and then again during the lives of those on whom they have thought fit to confer the Honor, for their better support: as for instance, *King Edward* the Third granted by Letters Patents ^p forty Pounds per annum, out of his Exchequer, to *John atte Lee*, *Queen Isabel's* Steward; in auxilium status sui manutenendi, first during pleasure, and afterwards for his life.

But the case is more remarkable of *Sir Nele Loring* (who afterwards attained the Honor to be one of the first Founders of the most noble Order of the *Gar-ter*) for whose valiant performances, in the Naval Fight against the *French* at *Sluce*, the *King* conferr'd the Dignity of *Knighthood* upon him, and immediately after granted to him and his Heirs Males ^q twenty Pounds per annum, that he might better maintain that Honor, until he could settle on him and them, so much in value of Lands, or yearly Rents in Fee.

And here the following Grant made by *King Richard* the Second to *Sir John Walsby*, of forty Marks per annum for life, to support that Dignity of *Knighthood* he had given him, may very well be inserted.

* Rex omnibus ad quos, &c. salutem. Sciatis quod cum nos pro eo quod dilectus & fidelis noster Johannes Walsby, nuper in presentia nostra pro defensione sua multum strenue fecit, prout satis est notorium, ipsum Ordinem Militarem suscipere facerimus, & Ordinem illum ei de manibus nostris dederimus, & eum penes nos ipsos retinuerimus: Et quia ipse sufficienter non habet unde Onus cum honore valeat supportare, Dedimus & Concessimus ei Quadraginta Marcas per annum, ad terminum vite sue, percipiend. per manus Vicecomitis nostri Lincolnienfis qui pro tempore fuerit, de exitibus baliwe sue, ad terminos Pasche & Sancti Michaelis, per aequales portiones. In cuius, &c. Teste R. apud Westmynst. quinto die Decembris.

The

The *Kings of England*, upon the same account, did usually bestow like annual rewards on such whose merit raised them to the Degree of *Baneret*; and in the Letters Patents, whereby such Pensions are granted, we observe it usually exprest, *ad manutenedum statum Baneretti*, or words to the like effect.

Hereupon King *Edward the Third* gave to Sir *Reginald Cobham* four hundred Marks *per annum*, during his life, to be paid him out of the Exchequer; afterwards the Mannor of *Tippenham*, in *Buckinghamshire*, for life; and a Mill under *Oxford Castle*, with a Meadow there, called *Kings Meade*.

We find moreover, that *Thomas de Rokley*, who in the service of this King had received the Degree of *Baneret*, had two hundred Marks *per annum* granted unto him, *pro sustentatione sua*, during life. To Sir *John Lysse* (one other of the Founders of the said most noble Order) *ut ipse statum Baneretti* (which the King had before conferr'd on him) *melius manuteneat possit*, he gave two hundred pounds a year during life; and upon *Roger de Swynerton Baneret*, He bestowed for life *pro statu suo manutenedo*, all the Mannors, Lands, &c. which, lying in the Counties of *Stafford* and *Chester*, came to the Kings hands, by the forfeiture of *Hugh le Despenfer*, as likewise the Mannor of *Barew* in the County *Palatine* of *Chester*, to him and his Heirs.

And it is worthy of note, that sometimes such like Grants have been made by the consent of Lords and Commons assembled in Parliament; for so were the two hundred Marks *per annum* given to *Geoffry le Scoop Baneret*, in the Reign of King *Henry the Sixth*.

Thus far we have spoken of the *Qualifications*, which capacitate him, who receives the Degree of *Knighthood*; it will not now be amiss to touch upon one particular relating to the *Person*, who confers this Honor, before we leave this section.

It hath been thought by divers, that no man can make a *Knight* unless himself be first *Knighthood*, and because that some have not given this Honor before they received it, they thence would imply, that no man ought: for so Prince *Edward of Carnarvan*, having been first *Knighthood* by his Father, King *Edward the First*, forthwith *Knighthood* a great number more in *Westminster Abbey*. So Anno 20. E. 3. the King being landed at *Hoggs* in *Normandy*, *Knighthood* his eldest Son, and immediately the said Prince made *Mortimer*, *Montacute*, *Ros*, and others, *Knights*. And King *Edward the Sixth*, being *Knighthood* by the *Earl of Hertford*, in the *Tower of London*, as soon as the Ceremony was over, *Knighthood* *Henry Hoblethorn* Lord Mayor of *London*, with the same Sword, wherewith himself received this Military Honor.

But it is apparent enough, that they who never were, and others who never could be *Knights*, have conferr'd this Dignity; and we are to understand that necessity and custom hath in this case the force of a Law; for anciently *Bishops* and *Priests* made *Knights*, so also do the *Popes*, and some *Common-wealths*, nay *Women*, in whom the supreme Power is vested, may, and have done the like, witness our *Queens*, *Mary* and *Elizabeth*, and we find it to be the ancient Law in *Spain*, That the King or his Son and Heir, though they be no *Knights*, may nevertheless make *Knights*, by reason that they possess the Kingdom, and are therefore the Head and Chief of *Chivalry*, and consequently all the power thereof, is closed up and contained in the Kings command.

To conclude, in all the instances and examples, where the creation of a *Knight* hath been performed, either with Ceremony, or by Diploma (of which we shall speak in the next section) it may be observed, that the Dignity was always given by, and received from the hands of another Person, except only the Kings of *Spain*, who 'time out of mind have made themselves *Knights*, and this by virtue of an old Law written in the *Aragonian* Tongue, as *Ambrosius Morales* reports, which saith thus: *The whole night preceding the Ceremony (viz. of Knighthood) the King shall watch in the Church, in the morning he shall hear Mass, and offer both Purse, and some of his Money, and after he shall receive the sacrament: And when they are going to raise him, he shall ascend upon his Shield, the Noblemen holding and supporting him: Then shall all cry with a loud voice three times, Real, Real, Real* This done.

r Par. 10. E. 3.

part. 2. m. 7.

f Par. 11. E. 3.

par. 1.

* Par. 14. E. 3.

p. 1. m. 23.

r Claus. 20. E.

3. par. 1. 2.

u Par. 29. E. 3.

pars prima

m. 29.

y Par. 8. E. 3.

pars prima. m. 1

z Claus. 30. R.

6. m. 21.

Who can

make Knights.

a Matb. West-

mest. anno

1306.

b Stows Chron.

fo. 377.

c Hist. fo. 106b.

d L. 11. tit. 21.

partida 2.

e Jo Jac. Chif-

fet. in suis lu-

minibus novis

prærogativis,

ad vindictas

Hispaniar, Lu-

mine 13. p. 395.

f Lex Sapar-

briensis.

g In Chron. Hi-

span. l. 13. c. 2.

done, he shall command to scatter more of his Money, to the quantity of one hundred Shillings among the People; and to shew that no man upon earth hath any power over him, he shall gird himself with the Sword, made after the form of a Cross, and that day can no other man be Knighted.

^h In suis Lu-
min. p. 397.

One Example of this ancient Rite is remembered by the said^h Chiffletius, at the Coronation of King *Ferdinando* the Third, who took from the high Altar the regal Sword, and with his own hand girt himself therewith; to the end being so girded, he might shew himself openly to the People, and declare, that he received the power of Governing and making War from none but God alone, and that he owed not his Kingdoms to the gift of any mortal man.

And it seems this manner of *Knighting* was a thing of such remarque, that it was sometime taken notice of and entred for a memorable note of time; as for

ⁱ Anno 1220 facta Charta apud Segoviam quinto Kal. Febr. Era 1258. anno regni mei tertio, qui ego memoratus Rex Ferdinandus, in Monasterio Sancte Marie Regalis de Burgo, manu propria me acinxi cingulo militari. ^k Seldens Tit. of Honor. p. 577.

instance in the Teste of aⁱ Charter, which this *Don Ferdinando* made to the Monastery of *De solos alvos*, in the third year of his Reign, and is reported by the said Chiffletius, out of *Colmenars History of Segovia*, c. 20. as also by another Charter, wherein the^k *Knighting Prince Edward* eldest Son to our King *Henry* the Third, by *Alphonso* King of *Castile*, at *Bruges* anno Domini 1255. is remembered after the same manner.

SECT. IX.

The various Ceremonies used at the conferring of Knighthood.

BESIDES the donation of the before-mentioned honorary *Ensigns*, there were several Ceremonies and Formalities, begun to be used in the middle Ages, at the investiture of *Knights*; some of which we shall here set down by way of Instance.

^l Girding with
the Sword and
Belt.

The most ancient of these, is the investing of the *Knight* with a *Belt* and *Sword*; and this was performed, either by putting the *Belt* loose over the shoulder, or girding it close about the waste: the *Bend* in *Armory* represents the one, and the *Fess* the other. Of this kind of Honor we have spoken before.

^l See 4.
m Theatre d'
Honneur l. 1.
c. 6.

The first Christian *Kings* and *Princes* (saith ⁿ *Favin*) at the giving of the *Cingulum militare*, kissed the new *Knight* on the left cheek, and used these words, *In the honor of the Father, of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, I make you a Knight*. And this was called *Osculum pacis*, the kiss of Favour or Brotherhood.

ⁿ *Aymonius de*
gestis Francor.
l. 5. c. 17.

Some think this to be the same with the *Accollade*, or Ceremony of imbracing, which was performed by *Charles* the Great, who (before his expedition against the *Hungarians*) Knighted his Son *Lewis* the *debonair*, at the City of *Ratisbone*; for upon the girding him with the Military Belt and Sword, he gave him the *Accollade*, that is, he imbraced him, (though it be rendred for kissing by the^o Translator of *Favin*) and this was the first time we observe the Ceremony of the *Accollade* to have been used.

^o L. 1. c. 6. p. 51.

It was in the time of the same Emperor that the way of *Knighting* by the *Colaphum*, or giving a blow on the Ear was used, in sign of sustaining future hardships and indurances; which is thought to have been derived from the manner of manumission of a Slave among the *Romans*, where first the *Pretor* gently struck him on the head with the *Vindicta*, a Rod so called, after which the *Litlor* did the like, and moreover struck him on the Face and Back with his hand, in token of full liberty and freedom.

^p *Roffa. Antiq.*
l. 1. c. 20.

This Custom was retained long after both in ^q *Germany* and *France* (much like the *Pescosada*, or blow on the neck, given in *Spain* at the Creation of the *Cavaleros de Espuela d'orada*, or *Knights of the Golden spur*) as appears from a clause,

^q *Theat. d' Hon-*
neur, l. 1. c. 6.
^r *Seld. Tit. of*
Honor, p. 577.

in

in the Instrument of the *Frizon's* Infranchisement to this effect. 'That the *Constable* or *Governor* of the *Country* should gird the *Sword* about him, who was to be Knighted, and then give him a *Box* on the *Ear* with his hand, with which Ceremony he was made a *Knight*, he also gave him special charge and command, that thenceforth he should go armed after the manner of *Knights* of the sacred *Empire*, or of the *Kingdom of France*.

It is also said this *Emperor* ordain'd, that no *King* should succeed to the *Empire*, if he were not *Knighted*, as aforesaid, before his *Coronation*. And there is an eminent example of this formality in *William Earl of Holland*, who when he came to be chosen *King of the Romans*, Anno Domini 1247. preparation was first made to create him *Knight*,^w according to the custom of other Christian *Emperors* (before they were admitted to take upon them the Imperial *Diadem*) to which purpose he was presented by *John King of Bohemia* before *Petrus Capicius* Cardinal of *St. George*, the *Pope's* Legate, whom the *King* besought on the behalf of this elected *Esquire* (for so *Earl William* was yet called) that he might have the *Oath* of his profession administred unto him, and be inscribed into the *Military Colledge*: which he having taken, the *King of Bohemia* gave him the blow on the *Ear*, and then pronounced the words of *signification*,^x after which he was girt with the *Sword*.

The Ceremony at large is to be found in *Seldens Titles of Honor*. pag. 442. 443. and 444. as also in *Jurisprudentia Heroica*. p. 400. 401.

In the time of the *Saxons* here in *England*, *Knights* received their Institution at the hands of great *Prelats* or *Abbots*; it being the opinion of our Ancestors, that nothing so happily succeeded, as that which was performed by religious persons; in the accomplishing of which solemnity they were very punctual, by adding divers religious Ceremonies, as *Watching*, *Fasting*, *Bathing*, *Consecrating of the Sword*, and the like: and how solemnly these things were observed, will appear in that famous *Constitution*, mentioned by *Ingulphus* (speaking of *Heward Lord of Brune*, in *Lincolnshire*, who coming into *England* from *Flanders* (where he had lived in exile) with a considerable assistance, and force of his Friends and Followers to recover his Fathers possessions; received the Honor of *Knighthood* from *Brand*, Abbot of *Saint Edmunds-bury*) which being thence transcribed by our learned *Selden*,^b *Cambden*, and *Mr. Dugdale*, upon a like occasion, we here omit it.

Shortly after the Conquest, the Custom of receiving *Knighthood* from religious persons began to be restrained here in *England*, insomuch that at a Synod held at *Westminster* in the year of our Lord 1102. viz. anno tertio Hen. primi it was among other things ordained, ^d Ne Abbates faciunt Milites; by which word *Abbatess*, we suppose is understood all sorts of spiritual persons.

However, the religious Ceremonies for the most part continued, especially the *Vigils* and *Bathings*; an eminent example whereof, we have not long after in the time of *King Edward the First*, who to adorn the splendor of his Court, and augment the glory of his intended Expedition into *Scotland*, did at *Whitfontide* in the four and thirtieth year of his Reign, begirt *Edward of Carnarvan* his eldest Son, with the *Military Belt*, and this young Prince, immediately, at the high Altar in *Westminster Abbey*, conferr'd the same Honor upon near three hundred Gentlemen, the Sons of *Earls*, *Barons*, and *Knights*. The *Habit*, *Equipage*, *Attendants*, and Ceremonies of which grand solemnity, being already transcribed at large, out of *Matthew of Westminster*, both by *Mr. Selden* and *Mr. Cambden*, we shall thereunto refer our Reader.

But in regard their *Author* tells us, that the number of these *Knights* were about three hundred, and the old *Annals of Ireland*, cited by *Mr. Selden*, add one hundred more, which was further wide of the mark; we will here out of a respect to truth, and the memory of those Noble persons, with such as are descended from them, take occasion to give a perfect Catalogue of their Names, which amount to no more than 267.

Only first, we shall take notice, because that part of the Ceremony, namely, *Bathing*, is not remembred by *Matthew of Westminster*, that it is not only imply'd

*Menenius de
Dei et Equi-
strum. p. 7.*

*Jos. Micheli,
Maurice, in le
Teforo militar.
fo 16. b.
u { Delle, E-
w { queji p. 8.*

*x Tesoro Militar.
fo. 17.*

*a. Watching
and Bathing.*

*y Ingulph. Hist.
inter Rerum
Anglic. Scrip-
tores. London.
excus. anno
1496 fo. 512. b.
a Titles of Hon.
p. 780.*

*b Brit. 125.
c Antiq. of
Warw. p. 531.*

*d Concil. Brit.
Tom. 2. p. 22.*

*e Tit. of Honor.
p. 776.
f Brit. p. 127.*

*g Pag. 458. ed.
Lond. anno
1570.
h Loco cit.*

in the solemnity of the *Vigils* then held, but we find in the Accounts of the great Wardrobe, for the aforesaid year, among the Robes and other Ornaments appointed to be prepared for the young Prince, that there were six Ells of Cloth delivered out for the covering of his Bath.

The religious Ceremonies of *Bathing, Watching, and offering up the sword* at the high Altar, are retained amongst us at this day, but restrained only to that peculiar Degree of *Knighthood*, which from hence hath the denomination of *Knights of the Bath*.

The Names of all the Knights made at Whitsonide, anno 34. E. 1.

i Ex Rot. Com-
pat. Jo de Dro-
kenesford Casto-
dis mag. Gard-
roba Regis, Pe-
nes Rememo-
rat. R. in Scac-
cario remanen-
tibus.

Dominus Edwardus
Principes Wallie.
Johannes de Warena.
Edmundus de Arundel.
Thomas de Greilly.
Johannes de la Ware.
Thomas de Ferers.
Bartholomeus de Enfeld.
Johannes de Monbray.
Alanus Flokenet.
Aungerus filius Henrici.
Gilbertus de Clare filius
Domini Thome de Clare.
Edmundus de Cornubia.
Johannes de Frivill.
Willielmus de Preigne.
Amaricus de Fossid.
Fulcius filius Warini.
Walterus de Hugesford.
Stephanus de Burghalsh.
Jacobus de Norwode.
Hamfridus de Waldene.
Rogerus de Chaundos.
Johannes de Deen.
Willielmus de la Zouche.
Ricardus Lovel.
Rogerus de Mortuomari.
Walterus Hakelut.
Rogerus de Banfou.
Galfridus de Seye.
Richardus Portefcie.
Egidius de Brebens.
Walterus de Mollesworth.
Rethoricus de Ispania.
Petrus de Gavtston.
Thomas de Verden.
Hamfridus de Bassingbourn.
Nicholaus Kryell.
Rogerus filius Roberti fi-
lii Pagani.
Johannes de Harecourt.
Johannes filius Domini
Johannis de Sulleye.
Willielmus Tracy.

Hugo filius Domini Hugo-
nis le Despenfer.
Willielmus de Huntingfend.
Thomas Bardolp.
Nicholaus Malemeys.
Robertus de Scales.
Willielmus Trussel.
Johannes de Hants.
Willielmus de Monteacute.
Thomas de Multon.
Walterus de Montgomeri.
Rogerus filius Domini Ro-
geri de Mortuomari.
Eustachius de Whyteneye.
Johannes Mantravers.
Thomas de Veer filius Co-
lmitis Oxoniensis.
Thomas de Lodelawe.
Willielmus de Bernyngham.
Griffinus filius Griffini de
La Pole.
Willielmus de Lodelawe.
Philippus de Courtenay.
Orianus de Sancto Petro.
Warinus de Bassingburn.
Johannes le Blount Major
London.
Johannes Denre.
Johannes de Insula.
Thomas de Lucy.
Radulphus de Botetourte.
Hugo de Mailly.
Radulphus de Kamoys.
Petrus filius Domini Petri
de Malolacu.
Edmundus de Willington.
Robertus de Kendale.
Henricus de Den.
Johannes de Nevill.
Rogerus de Ingelsfeld.
Hugo Braboef.
Johannes de Weston.
Johannes filius Warini.
Thomas de Ponnyges.

Johannes de Foxley.
Johannes de Walkingham.
Willielmus de Harden.
Radulphus de Weden.
Johannes de Mergeth.
Radulphus de Rolleston.
Johannes de Manduit.
Thomas de Boiville.
Willielmus Corbet.
Willielmus Brabason.
Georgius de Thornetone.
Johannes de la Fenne.
Johannes de Bykebyry.
Willielmus de Cossington.
Radulphus Bagot.
Willielmus de Bassinges.
Andreas de Sakeville.
Nicholaus Pershot.
Morganus ap Merceduk.
Umsfridus de Dune.
Walterus de Skydemore.
Johannes Chaundos.
Walterus de Derlyngham.
Walterus de Stirkelonde.
Johannes de Clyndon.
Ingelramus Belet.
Laurentius de Hollebeche.
Johannes de Stauntone.
Johannes de Wachelesham.
Johannes de la Mare.
Hugo Howel.
Willielmus de Menymrate.
Socius Amenrey de Fossid.
Willielmus Pyrot socius
Stephani de Burways.
Johannes Sauvage.
Philippus de Vyreley.
Robertus Lovel.
Adam Walran.
Johannes de Penbong.
Rogerus Pychard.
Henricus le Moigne.
Robertus de Lacy.
Johannes de Boillaunde.
Johannes

Johannes de Gysse.	Johannes de Lyngeyne.	Willielmus Dautrie.
Willielmus Motoun.	Rogerus de Bavent.	Johannes de Lanney.
Rogerus Waleys.	Galfridus de Colevill.	Johannes de Ryson.
Philippus le Lou.	§ Johannes filius Johannis	Henricus Beaufun.
Johannes de Hinton.	{ Mastravers.	§ Rogerus filius Domini
Johannes de Twyford.	Johannes Conquest.	{ Thoma Corbet.
Richardus de Brebens.	Willielmus de Stopham.	Hugo de Pykeworth.
Stephannus de Cobbeham.	Radulphus de Dryby.	Baldewinus de Colne.
Johannes de Hauilo.	Thomas de Grey.	Robertus de Skale.
Thomas de Sanwico.	Robertus de la Mare.	Henricus de Birg.
Johannes de Mounteney.	Thomas Corbet.	Richardus de Bermyngham.
Robertus le Conestable.	Johannes de Heryk.	Walterus le Pour.
Johannes Marteyn.	Robertus de Hoo.	Thomas de Bechum.
Johannes de Bello Campo.	Johannes de Lacy.	Walterus filius Humfridi.
Robertus de Ros.	Willielmus de Manneby.	Edmundus Pecche.
Radulphus Basset.	Johannes de Mortone.	Johannes de Treiagu.
Petrus de Grisse.	Gerardus de Aillesford.	Richardus Foliot.
Thomas Malorie.	Gilbertus de Aton.	Richardus de Echebaston.
Richardus de Sculton.	Ricardus de Berley.	Robertus de Godemunst.
Willielmus de Haundesacre.	Johannes de Neubourgh.	Adam de Everingham.
Johannes de Thouthorp.	Johannes de la Poille.	Johannes de Wassingbourn.
Walterus de Romefey.	Robertus filius Guidonis.	Adam de Wanerville.
Johannes de Rinda.	Hugo Hofe.	Willielmus de Somercotes.
Petrus de Bosoun.	Willielmus de Goldington.	§ Thomas filius Domini T.
Nicholaus de Geneville.	{ Walterus filius Domini J.	{ de Chaworth.
Johannes de Knorville.	{ de Insula.	Radulphus de Kele.
Johannes de Lacy.	Thomas de Brompton.	Petrus de Lekeburne.
Willielmus Bernak.	Willielmus de Wrotefle.	Hugo filius Henrici.
Richardus Daniel.	Richardus Hurreys.	Johannes de Salsbiri.
Robertus de Wygkham.	Robertus de Hildyard.	Richardus de Ryvers.
Robertus Achard.	Johannes de Kyrkeby.	§ Johannes filius Johannis
Willielmus de Herppeden.	Thomas de Leukenore.	{ de Wegetone.
Jacobus de Lambourne.	Petrus de Eovercy.	Johannes le Rous.
Johannes Mancel.	Warinus de Scartil.	Georgius du Chastel.
Robertus de Wyvill.	Gerardus de Ufflet.	Willielmus de la Motefastio.
Philippus le Rous.	Petrus de Eurgate.	Willielmus de Bayons.
Johannes Comyn.	Robertus de Fandon.	Willielmus Marmyon.
Johannes de Somery.	Willielmus de Saustone.	Willielmus Rosel.
Johannes de Lungevill.	Johannes Mauleverer.	Johannes de Langeton.
Johannes de Harpefeld.	Willielmus de Lurg.	Willielmus Littebon.
Egidius de Afele.	Rogerus de Chedle.	Johannes de Pabenham.
Johannes de Bozivill.	Hugo de Dulton.	Thomas Morduc.
Henricus filius Conani.	Johannes de Haverlyngton.	Jacobus de Norton.
Rogerus de Burton.	Rogerus de Somerville.	Johannes de Belhous.
Johannes de Multon.	Adam de Walton.	Brankaleo de Boloigne.
Godefridus de Meaux.	Nicholaus de Sheldon.	Johannes Pykard.
Johannes de Plefcis.	Willielmus de Weilonde.	Walterus de Kyngeshevede.
Edmundus de Plefcis.	Walterus de Fancumberg.	Robertus de Watervill.
Willielmus de Hollinde.	Nicholaus de Rye.	Rogerus de Kerdeston.
Henricus de Rypsford.	Rogerus de Grymeston.	Johannes de Daventre.
Thomas de Zedejen.	Henricus de Erdyngton.	

These Religious Ceremonies were not alone observed here in England, by the Saxons and Normans; but also by the French, Spaniards, and other Nations abroad.

Concerning the first of these Jean du Tillet, a French Writer in his *Memoirs* saith, That the old French, being observers of Forms and Ceremonies, in most of their actions, brought in many Customs to be observed at the making of Knights, enjoining them before the Solemnities, to Watch, Bath, and do other things, to teach

le Favin. *Theat.*
d' Honn. l. 6.
c. 14.
lib. 2. f. 277. a
vide Jo. Tilus
Comment. de
reb. Gall. l. 2.
p. 180.

teach them, that upon their taking of this Order, it did bebove them to be pure of heart and mind, and of virtuous inclinations, valiantly to suffer for virtues sake, all manner of pains and necessities, to be circumspect in word and deed, and above all to observe Faith and Truth.

And much to the same effect, but more particularly to the Ceremonies used, *Favin* tells us, That the proof of Nobility being made (after the manner which a little before he sets down) the Esquire prepared himself to receive the Order of Knighthood, watching the night before in the Church or Chappel, with devout Prayers and Meditation: When morning came, he entred into his Bath, to wash and make clean his whole Body, whereby he was given to know and understand, that in all his following life time, he ought to be neat and clean, as well of Body as Soul, honest in his Manners, and behaviour of life, wholly disposed to imbrace Virtue, and to use in all his actions, Modesty, Providence, and Wisdom.

m In le Theat.
we d' Hon. l. 1.
c. 6.

And that the like religious Ceremonies were heretofore (about the time of *Alphonfus* the Tenth) observed in Spain at the Creation of Knights, whether they were *Cavalleros de Espuela d' Orada*, or *Armados* (which are no other than our *Equites Aurati*, or Knights Batchellors) may be seen in the *Titles of Honor*, our learned *Selden* having collected and transcribed thither the manner of such Creation, from the Spanish *Partidas*; and is briefly thus.

n Pag. 576.

The Person that was to be Knighted was Bathed on the Evening, and presently laid in Bed, then clothed in rich Robes, and led to the Church, to perform his Vigils; that being over, and Mass heard, his spurs were put on, and his Sword girt unto him, then drawn out, and put into his right hand; whereupon the Oath was forthwith administred to him, which taken, he that bestowed the Dignity, gave him *una Pescoçade*, a blow or stroke on the neck, saying, *God assist you in the performance of that which you have promised.*

3. Taking an
Oath.

u Honor Milit.
ary and Civil.
l. 1. c. 5.
o Theat. d' Hon.
neur. l. 1. c. 6.

To the aforesaid Ceremonies of creating a Knight, an Oath was for the most part adjoined, which drew its original from the Military Oath, imposed anciently upon the Roman Soldiers, several particulars of which are collected by *Sir *William Segar*, sometime *Quarter*, principal King of Arms.

This Oath or vow of Profession *Favin* observes to have been at all times, and in all places, continually uniform and alike; and to the same purpose cites a passage out of *Saint Hierom*, relating to *Nepotianus*, who had the Military Belt bestowed upon him, to the end, That he should relieve and protect Widows, Fatherless, the oppressed and miserable, and these particulars, together with the defence of the Church of God, made up afterwards the substance of the general Vow, which for a Knight to observe and keep, and to perform all that belongs to the Order of Knighthood, was (as *Mr. Selden* observes) esteemed as meritorious, as to do all that a Monk, Friar, or Canon regular should.

p Titles of Hon.
our. p. 851.

In the aforesaid Example of *William* Earl of Holland, it is particularly mentioned, that at the request of the King of *Bohemia*, he might have the Vow of his profession administred; whereupon the Cardinal *Petrus Capucinus*, gave him admonition, what a Knight ought to be, in an *Acrostick*, according to the Etymology of his name *Miles*, thus,

q Mennen. De-
lic. Equell. p. 9:

9 Magnanimus in adversitate,
I ngenuus in consanguinitate,
L argissimus in honestate,
E gregius in cavalitate, &
S trenuus in virili probitate.

Among the religious Ceremonies of making a Knight (called sometimes *consecrare Militem*) set down by *Mr. Selden*, *Favin*, and *Petrus Blesensis*, there is particular mention made of consecrating the Sword, offering it at the Altar, and receiving it again from thence; which manner of reception from the Altar, was an implicate kind of taking an Oath, as may be deduced from the said *Petrus Blesensis*, who saith, *That Candidates in his time received their Swords from the Altar, that they might profess themselves the Sons of the Church, and that they received the Sword, to*

r Epist. 94.

the

the honor of the Priesthood, defence of the poor, punishment of Malefactors, and deliverance of their Country.

Lastly, at the institution of those *Christian Orders of Knighthood*, erected for the defence of the *Holy-Land* (which we shall in the next Chapter discourse of) the *Knights* entered into a solemn *Vow* and *Oath*, chiefly to propagate, and fight in defence of the *Christian Faith*, and to repel the violence and cruelties of *Pagans* and *Saracens*.

In fine, among the various Ceremonies performed at the admission of *Knights*, in all the several *Orders* and *Societies of Knighthood*, whether Religious or Secular, which have been erected; there are none esteemed greater, or ought more solemnly to be observed, than the taking of an *Oath*.

It was in the times of Peace and great leisure, that the before-mentioned solemn and tedious Ceremonies, used at the making of *Knights*, were observed; whether by great *Princes* in their own Courts, or by *Ecclesiasticks* in the Church: but much otherwise in times of War; or on a day of *Battel*, where the hurry and throng of Affairs, gave not time for so long and troublesome Ceremonies: And therefore, as well before the joining of *Battel*, as after *Victory* obtain'd (the one to encourage and stir up the Valor and Virtue of gallant men to overcome, or if they dyed in fight, to give their bodies the Honor of *Knightly* Entertment: the other to reward the eminent prowess, and valiant performances of those that happened to survive) it was usual for the *Prince* or *General*, in the Field and sight of the whole Army, to give those whom he thought fit to advance to the Honor of *Knighthood* (they humbly kneeling before him) a stroke with a naked sword, flat-wise upon their shoulders, or else to touch their heads or shoulders lightly as aforesaid, without any other Ceremony, except pronouncing the words of *Creation*, which latter kind of Ceremony is used in *Europe* at this day, it supplying all the rest: and this we commonly call *Dubbing*, the old *English* word used for creating of a *Knight*.

As touching those Ceremonies, used at the making of a *Knight* in *Scotland*, which are chiefly dubbing with a sword, and putting on spurs, together with the particulars which the *Knights Oath* contains, see our learned *Seldens* *Titles of Honor*, they being for substance, much the same, with what the *Knights* of former Ages either swore or profest.

The Benediction of a new *Knight*, at the time of his *Creation* by the *Pope*, or those, whose power in this particular is derivative from him, as it is set down in the *Pontificale Romanum*, may be found there; or in the said *Titles of Honor*, whether it is transcribed.

But there is another manner of creating of *Knights* abroad, namely, by *Royal Codicils*, or *Letters Patents* (these the *Spaniards* call *Privilegios de Cavalleria*) and thereupon such *Knights* are intituled, *Equites Codicillares*; and this without any actual Ceremony or Solemnity; for the *Codicils* were chiefly design'd, to supply the ordinary way of *Dubbing*, to those who dwelt in remote Countries, yet under the Dominion of the *Prince* that bestowed the Honor.

In these Instruments, the *Emperor* or *King* is said thereby, to make and create them *Knights*, willing and intending that thence-forward they should be held and reputed for such; and moreover grants, that they shall, in all their acts and affairs, enjoy all the *Rights*, *Liberties*, and *Franchises*, accustomably due to all other *Knights*, throughout all his Dominions, as well also in the same form and manner, as if the person had been actually *Knighted* by his own hand.

Of this manner of *Creation*, two *Presidents* are exhibited by the *Author* of the *Jurisprudentia Heroica*, the one granted by *Philip* the Fourth *King of Spain*, to *Sir Philip Ryckewaert*, Councillor of his Council of *Brabant*, dated at *Madrid* the twenty seventh of *October* 1663. and the other by the present *King*, namely, *Charles* the First, and *Mary Anne* *Queen* Regent, to *Leon Jean de Pape*, Councillor also, and Advocate of the *Exchequer*, of his said Council of *Brabant*, dated likewise at *Madrid* the sixteenth day of *December* Anno Domini 1665.

These *Royal Codicils* have sometimes (though very rarely) extended so far, as to make this *Knightly Degree* hereditary, which being unknown among us, in

4. Dubbing with a sword. Instances in both are to be found in Jurisprudentia Heroica. p. 391. 392. 393. 394. 395. Titius Commentar. de Rebus Gall. l. 2. p. 181. u. Flelli genu ante Principem Candidatus, ne eoque leniter nudo Ense in humero percussus; addit verbis solenni more conceptis. Aub. Miraeus, Orig. Ord. Equest. p. 1. Vide Sander. in Fland. illustrat. Tom. 1. p. 12. w. Si Eques in nomine Dei, & postea addit, Surge Eques, or as in French Sur vel suis Chevalier au nom de Dieu. x. p. 850. 851. y. p. 445. s. Bestowing of Royal Codicils. z. Quos à suo diplomate (quod suae dignitatis fidem facit) Codicillares appellare poter. Vinc. Lupanus de Magistrat. Francorum. l. 1.

the Dignity of *Knighthood* (though that of *Baronet* comes something near it) a few Examples may be worth mentioning.

We have met with two of these *Diplomas* in the time of *Charles* the Fifth, Emperor of *Germany*, whereby this Dignity or the Degree of *Knight* of the *Roman Empire* (as therein it is called) is granted by him (20. Nov. 1553.) to *Sir Stephen Prats* of *Barcelon*, and made to reach to his posterity, which then, or afterwards, should be born. As also another of the same *Emperors*, made to *Lucas de Broyart*, the twenty fourth day of *September* 1540. that extends much farther, to wit, not only to himself and Children, born or to be born; their Successors and Heirs, and the Successors and Heirs of their Children, born in lawful Matrimony, and carrying the Surname of *Broyart*; but also to all those who should marry any of the Daughters of the said *Luke*, or the Daughters of his Sons, their Successors or Heirs.

There are besides Examples of *Grants* in this nature, which take in the *Collateral Lines*, as in that ancient *Diploma*, which *Sir Edward Byshe* Knight, *Clarenceux* King of Arms, hath transferr'd to his *Notes upon Upton*, where it appears, that *Raymond* Viscount of *Turine*, anno 1219. granted to *Rodolph de Bessa*, that he and his Nephews (Sons to his Brother *Ademar*) and their Successors should be *Knights*, and enjoy all the *Privileges* and *Honors* of *Knights*: This is the ancientest that I have met with of this sort; to which there is another in that place adjoined, whereby *Maximilian* the Emperor granted the Dignity of *Knighthood* to *Thomas Salernitana*, President of the Council of *Naples*, and to his seven Brothers therein named, and their Sons born or to be born, and their Male descendants in infinitum.

But there is one Example of greater rarity, in relation to the creating of *Knights*, than any yet remembred, viz. by the bare signification of a *Kingly Letter*, without using either any of the afore-mentioned *Ceremonies*, or granting *Letters Patents* under Seal to that purpose. Of which kind the *Author* of the *Jurisprudentia Heroica*, gives an instance worthy taking notice of: where *Philip* the Fourth King of *Spain*, the fifteenth of *January* 1633. conferr'd upon all the *Captains* that had behaved themselves valiantly in the defence of *Mastricht* (then lately besieged by the *Hollanders*) and remained faithful to the *Spanish* interest, to wit, to those of them that were *Gentlemen*, the title of *Knights*; and to others that of *Gentlemen*.

Having thus briefly shewed the various forms of Creation of *Knights* *Batchelors*, if any be further desirous to know, what were the ancient *Rites* and *Ceremonies*, used at the making of *Knights* *Banerets* among us, the Example of *Sir John Chandos*, in the Reign of King *Edward* the Third, will give sufficient information, which being at large recorded by *Sir John Froissard*, and from him by *Cambden*, and *Selden*, it will be needless to transcribe them hither. With what Ceremony also the Duke of *Burgundy* made the *seigneur de Sans* Baneret in *Flanders*, is reported by *Andrew Favin*.

But in later times it appears, that he that was advanced to this Honor in the *Field*,^a went between two senior *Knights*, with Trumpets before them, the *Heralds* carrying a long Banner called a *Penon*, with his Arms painted thereon; and so was brought unto the *King* or his *Lieutenant*, who bidding him good success, commanded the end or tip of the Banner to be cut off, that of an oblong it might become a square, like the Banner of a *Baron*: this done, he returned back to his Tent, conducted as before.

In the last place, there are many and various *Ceremonies* performed at the Creation of a *Knight of the Bath*, as appears by the *Formulary* thereof in old French, inserted by *Sir Edward Byshe*, among his *Notes upon Upton*, and in English by *William Dugdale* Esquire, *Norroy* King of Arms, into his *Antiquities of Warwickshire*; to which we refer our Reader for a full view, as we do in all other like Cases, where things at large may be readily had, purposely to avoid the swelling of this discourse, beyond what is necessary. We shall therefore close with this observation, that the *Knights of the Bath*, made by the present *Sovereign* of the most Noble Order of the *Garter*, to attend him at his *Coronation*, were created with the principal of all those

c *Jurispr. Heroica*, p. 64.

d *Page*. 410.

e *Page*. 14.

f *Page*. 25.

g *Page*. 28.

i *Chron.* l. 1.

c. 137.

k *Brit. lib.* p. 124.

l *Tr. of Honor*.

p. 790 & 791.

m *En le Theatre d' Honneur*.

l. 7. c. 12.

n *Vide Sir Camb.*

Brit. lib. cit.

Seld. *Tr. of Honor*.

p. 790. Gloss.

Spelm. in verbo

Baneret. vide

etiam Collet 4.

part of Instit.

tw. p. 6. & 7.

lib. E. in Of.

fic. *Armor.*

fo. 89.

o *Page*. 21.

p *Page*. 331.

those Ceremonies noted in this Section, and appointed to *Knights Batchellors*, both in former and later times, which to compleat their Honor, were jointly united and placed upon them: for they *Watched* and *Bathed*, they took an *Oath*, they were *girded* with a *Sword* and *Belt*, and lastly *Dubbed* by the *King*, with the *Sword* of *State*.

SECT. X.

Of the Dignity, Honor, and Renown of Knighthood.

BEFORE we conclude this *Chapter*, it will be necessary to subjoin something concerning the *Dignity*, *Honor*, and *Renown* appropriate to the *Knightly Order*; whereunto, though enough might be said to fill a *Volume*, yet to avoid tediousness, we shall touch only upon the principal and most material.

Of all *Virtues* those that have gain'd the highest honor and repute, are the *Military*, hereupon saith ^qG. *Acacius Evenkelius*, a Noble modern Writer; *It is not without great reason, that in all renowned and famous Common-wealths, which ever were, great honors and profits have been proposed to military persons, and in consequence we hear of several Prerogatives, Priviledges, and proper Rights granted to them, above other men; yea it will appear, not only living, but also after death, having died for the Common-wealth, they are still honored, in a high degree, and ever to be honored.* And to the great honor of *Baldwinus Pulchrobarbus*, Earl of *Flanders*, it is remembred, that he conferr'd many *Prerogatives* upon the *Knightly Dignity*. ^{r Sander. in Flandr. illust. Tom. 1. p. 12.}

But of all the *Titles* of *Honor*, *Knighthood* (being a *Degree* above common *Honor*) must be acknowledged the first and most principal, derived from the field and military services; whose very *Name* and *Title* (as ^tMennenius affirms) seemed to include somewhat of magnificence, beyond what he was able to express, and something more excellent than *Nobility* it self; and which, as it were, mounting the *Royal Throne*, becomes the assertor of civil *Nobility*, and sits as *Judge* at the *Tribunal* thereof. ^{f Delic. Equest. p. 1.}

Our learned ^uCamden notes from some of our *Law Books*, that *Knight* is a Name of *Dignity*, but *Baron* is not so: and he there adds the reason, ^uFor if heretofore a *Baron* had not received the *Order* of *Knighthood*, he was written simply, and plainly, by his *Christian Name*, and the *Name* of his *Family*, without any addition, but that of *Dominus*; which term is as much attributed to a *Knight*: But the *Title* of *Knight* seems to be an adjunct of *Honor*, since *Kings*, *Dukes*, *Marqueßes*, *Earls*, and *Barons* have coveted the *Dignity*, together with the *Name*. And to this the aforesaid *Mennenius* (for the greater *Honor*) observes, that in ancient *Charters*, the ^wTitles and *Names* of *Knights* may be seen to be set before *Barons*. ^{w Delic. Equest. p. 17.}

^xThe *Degree* of *Knighthood* is of so great *splendor* and *fame*, that it bestows *Generality*, not only upon a man meanly born, but also upon his descendants, and very much increaseth the honor of those who are well descended. ^xTisa Maxim laid down by a learned *Civilian*, ^yThat *Knighthood* enobles, inasmuch, that whosoever is a *Knight*, it necessarily follows, that he is also a *Gentleman*. For where a *King* gives the *Dignity* to an ignoble person, whose merit he would thereby recompence; ^yHe is understood to have conferr'd whatsoever is requisite, for the compleating of that which he bestows. And therefore in some instances ^zbefore, where though this *Honor* had been conferr'd on *Vassals*, no way capable thereof, and for which both the *Givers* and *Receivers* were put to *Fine*, the *Knights* were esteemed so enobled by the action, as to be adjudged fit to keep, and retain the *Dignity*, and to remain free from *Vassalage* and *Servitude*. Hereto also agrees the *Common Law* of *England*, which saith, ^zIf a *Villain* be made a *Knight*, he is thereby immediately *infranchised*, and consequently accounted a *Gentleman*: And this is the same with the ^bRoman ^bGlanvill. l. 5. c. 5. Bract. l. 4. f. 193. b.

Roman Law, where the donation of a Gold Ring (the Symbol of Knighthood) to a slave, enobled him with all the Priviledges, belonging to one Free-born, as hath been^c before observed.

It is manifest of what reputation and esteem the Equeſtrian Dignity among the Romans, was with *Mecenas*, who though his deſcent was great and high, and though the^a Cuſtody of the City, was for a long time committed to him by *Auguſtus*, whole^b Chancellor he alſo was, and that he lived his chief Favorite; yet would he not riſe beyond that Dignity, but dyed a Companion of that noble Order: and is by *Horace* called^b the honor and glory of the Roman Knights.

In later Ages it hath been accounted ſo full, and ſo compleat an Honor, that men were not ſo often advanced from Knighthood, as from a meaner degree, to higher Titles and Dignities; and that thoſe of the chiefſt quality and rank, even Kings and Princes, have been ſo far from taking it to be a diminution to their Honor, that ſuch of them, as this Order, took it as an acceſſion thereunto, their other Titles ſhewing more their Dominion and Power, this their Valor and Courage, as may be properly inſtanced inⁱ *Ceyſa* King of Hungary, who waging War with the *Auſtrians*, was by the Biſhops (when he came into the field) *Armis accinſus*, girded with Arms, that is Knighted; and in like manner, *Leopold* Marqueſs of *Auſtria*, *Ottacher* Duke of *ſtiria*, and *Frederick* Duke of *Auſtria* and *ſtiria*, ſo alſo *Godfrey* Duke of *Brabant* (with *Henry* his Son) ſolemnly received the Order of Knighthood, before his Expedition to *Hieruſalem*. So^m *Peter* King of *Aragon*, was girt with the Military Girdle, from *Pope Innocent* the Third anno Domini 1204. the Emperorⁿ *Henry* the Third, was made Knight by the Biſhop of *Breme*, and ourⁿ *William Ruſus* by *Laufſtanke* Arch-Biſhop of *Canterbury*.

But to proceed yet a little farther in Examples of this nature. Kings themſelves have been Knighted, not only by inferior Princes, but ſometimes by their own Subjects, as *Lewis* the Eleventh of *France*, at his Coronation, by^p *Philip le bon*, Duke of *Burgundy*. *Francis* the Firſt, immediately after the memorable Fight at *Marignan*, near *Millan*, by^p *Peter* Earl of *Lancaster*, King *Henry* the Sixth, by his Uncle^r *John* Duke of *Bedford*; King *Henry* the Seventh, by the Earl of^r *Arundel*, and laſtly, King *Edward* the Sixth by^r *Edward Seymour*, Earl of *Hertford*, afterwards created Duke of *Somerſet*.

And though it is commonly ſaid, ^w That all the ſons of the French King are Knights, aſſoon as they receive their Baptiſm; nevertheless^{*} *Sir Henry Spelman* (from *Goropus*) ſeems to contradict this opinion, by informing us; that they were not judged worthy of the Kingdom, unleſs they had been firſt ſolemnly admitted into the Knightly Order. And we elſewhere find, that the^{*} Royal Heirs of *Aragon* were ſuſpended from the Crown of that Kingdom, until they had received the Honor of Knighthood.

To this purpoſe, the uſage and faſhion of the timè ſhortly after the Norman Conqueſt is conſiderable, when our young Princes were ſent over to neighbouring Kings, that from them they might receive this Honor; Thus was our^y *Henry* the Second, ſent to *David* King of *ſcots*, and Knighted by him in *Carlisle*, and^{*} *Edward* the Firſt, at the Age of fifteen years, to *Alphonſus* the Eleventh King of *Caſtile*, for the ſame Dignity.

In like manner did Foreign Princes repair hither to receive the Honor from our Kings; as^a *Malcolme* King of *ſcotland*, and^b *Alexander* Son of *William* King of *ſcotland*, Knighted by our King *John*, anno Domini 1212. So was^c *Alexander* the Third, by our King *Henry* the Third, on Chriſtmas day at *Tork* anno 1252. and^d *Magnus* King of the

Iſle

d *Mecenas* atavū edito, *Regibus*. *Hor. Carm.* l. 1. Ode 1.
e *Tunc Urbis Cuſtodis Præpoſitus. C. Mace-*
nas, Equeſtri, ac ſplendido genere natus vir.
Velleius Patere. l. 2. c. 88. *ἵππεος ἀντιπρό-*
ῶντος, τὸ ἀπὸ ἐπὶ πολλῶν χεῖρας ἐκτρέφε-
σθαι. l. 55.

Auguſtus bellū civitilibus Cſitium Mace-
nam Equeſtris Ordinis cunctis apud Romanos
Italian Præpoſuit. Tacit. l. 6. in princ.

f *Salmuſi. Notis ad Panciroll. de Novis*
republicis p. 215.

g *ἵππεος ἀντιπρόῶντος τέλει κατεβίβω.*

h *Mecenas Equitum decus.* l. 3 Ode 16.
Mecenas Caſarſianus Eques. *Mart. lib.* 10.
Epig. 75.

were inveſted with
Titles ſhewing more their Dominion and Power, this their Valor and Cou-
rage, as may be properly inſtanced inⁱ *Ceyſa* King of Hungary, who waging
War with the *Auſtrians*, was by the Biſhops (when he came into the field)

i *Otho. Friſin-*
genſis. l. 1. c. 32.

m *Hier. Blancus*
in Hiſt. verum
Hiſpanic.

n *Lamb. Schöſnaburg. in Chronico.* o *Malmſb.*
de geſt. Regum. l. 4. p. 67. b. Edit. Lond.
1596. p. *Renat. Chopin. de domania Fran-*
ſie. l. 3. tit. 26 Sect. 13. s. *Malmſb. de la Ma-*
ſon de France. l. 1. p. 650. q. *Petrus Ter-*
raſius Baſilii Dominus Juſſus ſub ſig-
illo. l. 1. p. 38. v. 130. v. 131. H. l. d.
France p. 390. *ſy Jo. Tillius Commentarior.* de
reb. Gall. l. 2. p. 181.

* *Sir Rich. Ba-*
ter Baiarde: Of our own Nation, King *Edward* the Third, by^{*} *Henry* Earl of *Lan-*
caſter, King *Henry* the Sixth, by his Uncle^r *John* Duke of *Bedford*; King *Henry*
the Seventh, by the Earl of^r *Arundel*, and laſtly, King *Edward* the Sixth by^r *Ed-*
ward Seymour, Earl of *Hertford*, afterwards created Duke of *Somerſet*.
And though it is commonly ſaid, ^w That all the ſons of the French King are
Knights, aſſoon as they receive their Baptiſm; nevertheless^{*} *Sir Henry Spelman*
(from *Goropus*) ſeems to contradict this opinion, by informing us; that they
were not judged worthy of the Kingdom, unleſs they had been firſt ſolemnly ad-
mitted into the Knightly Order. And we elſewhere find, that the^{*} Royal Heirs of
Aragon were ſuſpended from the Crown of that Kingdom, until they had received
the Honor of Knighthood.

To this purpoſe, the uſage and faſhion of the timè ſhortly after the Norman
Conqueſt is conſiderable, when our young Princes were ſent over to neighbour-
ing Kings, that from them they might receive this Honor; Thus was our^y *Henry*
the Second, ſent to *David* King of *ſcots*, and Knighted by him in *Carlisle*, and^{*} *Edward*
the Firſt, at the Age of fifteen years, to *Alphonſus* the Eleventh King of *Caſtile*,
for the ſame Dignity.
In like manner did Foreign Princes repair hither to receive the Honor from our
Kings; as^a *Malcolme* King of *ſcotland*, and^b *Alexander* Son of *William* King of
ſcotland, Knighted by our King *John*, anno Domini 1212. So was^c *Alexander* the
Third, by our King *Henry* the Third, on Chriſtmas day at *Tork* anno 1252. and^d
Magnus King of the

y *Rog. Hoved. Annales.* p. 280: b. Edit.
Lond. 1596. vide *J. Leſſeus de Reb. geſt.*
ſcot. l. 6. p. 223. Edit. Rom. 1578. 4^o.
z *Math. Pariſ. Hiſt. Anglicana.* p. 890. Edit.
Lond. 1654. *Wolſingham in Iſtadigma Noſſſſie.*
anno 1254. a Anno 6. Hen. 7. vide *Rog.*
Hoved. p. 281.

b *Math. Pariſ. ſcotland,* and b *Alexander* Son of *William* King of *ſcotland*, Knighted by our
King *John*, anno Domini 1212.

c *ib.* p. 829. King *John*, anno Domini 1212. So was^c *Alexander* the Third, by our King
d *Stow. Abrev.* *Henry* the Third, on Chriſtmas day at *Tork* anno 1252. and^d *Magnus* King of the

Ile of Man, by the same King. All which sufficiently demonstrate the great Renown of Knighthood, and the honor and esteem which was ever had for that Order.

The estimation of Knighthood may be yet further manifest from divers expressions, in that part of an Edict (transcribed by ^eMr. Selden, out of *Goldastius*) which *Conrade King* of the *Romans* sent to those of *Palermo*, to give them notice he had received the Order of Knighthood; which he did after this manner, ^f*That although he ought not to want the Ensigns and Tokens of Military Honor, considering the nobleness of his Birth, and greatness of his Dignity* (he at that time swaying two Scepters) yet because he had not as then received the Military Girdle (established by venerable Antiquity) he did chuse to adorn himself therewith in that Month of August (wherein the said Edict passed) to the end, that from thence the flower of his victorious years might put on the Ensigns of greater valor, and the excellency of this new Militia renew the lustre of original Nobility. What peculiar respects Knights have had paid them in our own Nation, Mr. Selden hath collected from our legal proceedings, and set down in his *Titles of Honor*, pag. 783, 784, 785, and 786.

^eTit. of Honor p. 115.

In the close of this Chapter, we think fit to insert a few memorials of that additional favour (in augmentation of the *Knightly Honor*) which some of our Kings have pleas'd to afford those Strangers, on whom they have conferr'd the Dignity of Knighthood; and to make it more known and publick, given Declarations thereof under the Great Seal of England (where the person so honored made sute for the same) whereby they have declared and attested, that willingly, and of their own accord, they have given and conferr'd on them the Degree, Honor, and Title of a Knight, as due to their Virtues and Merits; to the end, that those persons should be esteemed and ranked in the place and number of Knights, as well among their own Subjects, as in their own Countries, and also by all persons elsewhere; no less than themselves should esteem any other honorable and worthy men, adorned with the like Honor from other Kings and Princes.

Declarations of Knighthood

The first that we have met with in this kind, was given by King *Henry* the Eighth, to Sir *Gregory de Caalis*, born of a Noble Family in *Rome*, on whom in consideration of his Virtues and Merits, the King had bestowed the Honor of Knighthood; as may be collected from a ^gWarrant directed to the Cardinal Archbishop of *Tork* his Chancellor, to make out Letters Patents under the Great Seal, as well of the said Order of Knighthood, as of the Grant of an annual Pension, of two hundred Crowns of Gold per Annum, during his life; for the better and more honorable maintenance of that Dignity.

^gBilla signata an. 11. H. 8.

His late Majesty of ever blessed memory, King *Charles* the First, having Knighted Sir *James Cats*, Doctor of Law, Syndick of *Dort*, and Ambassador extraordinary to his said Majesty from the *States General* of the *United Provinces*; was also pleas'd (26^o Jan. 1627.) to give him a ^hDeclaration thereof, under the Great Seal of England, to notifie his being such, not only with us here, but in his own Country, and elsewhere.

And sometimes there hath past in these Letters Testimonial, a kind of *Ennoblement* to their Posterity (where that hath been before wanting to the Family) which the King in regard of the Knights great Virtue and Merits, hath thereby rais'd into that Degree, Title, and Dignity of Gentleman; as may be seen by those ⁱLetters Patents, granted to Sir *Lewis Van Alteren*, eldest Son to *Simon Van Alteren*, Lord of *Jaersvelt*, and Councillor in the Court of Admiralty of *Amsterdam*, dated the twenty ninth of January anno, 4. Car. 1.

^hEx R. A. penes W. k Hutchinso l Gen. An 6 m 1641.

The like ^kLetters Patents of Declaration of Knighthood and Ennoblement of Posterity, were shortly after (*viz.* 26. Feb. following) given to Sir *Peter Pau*, Son of Sir *Adrian Pau*, Lord of *Hemsted*, and then extraordinary Ambassador from the aforesaid *States General*.

But in some others, this declarative Clause, of having bestowed the Dignity of Knighthood, hath been much more contracted, then in the Precedent before remembred, and the testimony of donation only, and that briefly express'd: as in those Letters Patents made forth to Sir ^l*Aloysius Contareni*, Leiger Ambassador for the State

State of *Venice*, to King *Charles* the First, 2c. July 1629. as also to Sir^m *Peter Paul Rubens*, Secretary to the King of *Spain*, and one of the Privy Council in *Flanders*, 15. December 1630. to both of whom he thereby also gave augmentation of Arms.

With these before mentioned, may be here also inserted a few Examples, testifying the Creation of a *Knight* from abroad; such like Royal Declarations being oftentimes granted by the Emperors of *Germany*, and other Foreign *Princes*, to the *Knights* they have Created, both for the same reason, and upon the like ground, as is before noted.

Such was that Imperial Diploma of *Rodolph* the Second, Emperor of *Germany*, given at his Court at *Prague*, the second of June 1610. whereby he declared to haveⁿ created and ordained Sir *Robert Sherley* (our Countryman) a true and lawful *Knight*, to have received him into the *State*, *Degree*, and *Honor* of *Knighthood*, to have girt him with the *Sword* of *Valor*, and adorn'd and invested him with the *Robes*, *Ensigns*, and all other *Arms* and *Ornaments*, appertaining to the Order of *Knighthood*, according to the Imperial Custom: Decreeing moreover, by his said Imperial Authority, that for the future he should be esteemed, reputed, named, and honored for a true and lawful *Knight*, without lett or contradiction, and might use, possess, and enjoy all whatsoever *Honors*, *Prerogatives*, *Ensigns*, *Priviledges*, *Freedoms*, *Favors*, and *Liberties*, which the rest of his *Knights*, the *Knights* of the *Roman Empire*, as also the *Knights* of *S. John* of *Hierusalem* used, possessed, and enjoyed, in what manner soever; either of right or custom, none whatsoever forbidding the contrary.

ⁿ See the Diploma at large in Purchas Pilgrimage part. 2. l. 10. p. 1806.

^o Pag. 403.

^p Pag. 405.

There is transcribed into the *Jurisprudentia Heroica*, a like Diploma at large, and almost in the same words, granted to Sir *Charles Bellehe* by the same Emperor; in which it is also testified, that he had by the stroke of his *Sword*, and Imperial word, made, created, nominated, and constituted him a *Knight*, and invested him with the *Ensigns* of the *Equeſtrian Order*, and other *Ornaments* appertaining thereto; and by virtue and force thereof, did decree unto him the *Honors*, *Ensigns*, and *Priviledges*, which other *Knights* did use, possess, and enjoy, without any impediment or contradiction.

^q See the Titles of Honor. p. 459

Lastly, the Diploma of *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, made to Sir *Henry St. George* Knight, late *Richmond Herald* at Arms, when he was employed to carry the *Ensigns* of the most Noble Order of the *Garter* to that King (and transcribed by a Mr. *Selden*) is worthy of mention here: Wherein his Creation into the Dignity of *Knighthood*, is testified to have been solemnly performed in the view of the whole Army, and thereby is given and confer'd upon him all *Honors*, *Priviledges*, *Immunities*, *Liberties*, *Rights*, *Preheminences*, and *Ensigns* whatsoever, which at any time, according to the Custom of any Place, had been granted to this Order of *Knighthood*; so that he might publicly use, possess and enjoy the same, in the presence of all men, and among all *Emperors*, *Kings*, &c. without any prohibition, either in word or deed. And moreover, this King, as a greater testimony of his favour, did thereby grant unto the said Sir *Henry*, an augmentation of the Royal Arms of *Sweden*, to be born and used by him and his descendants.

Certificates of Knighthood.

Something like the *Royal Declarations* before remembred, are those *Attestations* and *Certificates* of *Knighthood*, made, as occasion requires, instead of *Codicals*, by some of the *Kings*, and *Heralds* of Arms in *Flanders*, for manifestation and truth, no less than perpetual memory of the Creation, and the Honor thereby accruing to them, and their descendants, who have actually received the Dignity of *Knighthood*, to the end they might be acknowledged and reputed for *Knights*, and enjoy and use the *Honors*, *Priviledges*, and *Prerogatives*, due to that Degree, with other *Knights*.

^r Pag. 397. 398.

Two such Declarations are set down in the *Jurisprudentia Heroica*, the one made on the behalf of Sir *Hierom Sandelin* (Knighthed at the solemn entrance and inauguration of *Philip* then Prince of *Spain* into *Antwerp*) the twelfth day of September in the year 1549. and subſigned by *Jean de Arroyo*, *Claude Marion*, and *Gerard de Marbais*, *Heralds* of Arms to the said Prince; the other by Sir *Anthony Beaulincourt* Knight, *Toison d'or*, Principal King of Arms, *Henry de la Tour*,

Tour, Brabant, Estienne de Morez, Haynau, Claude Marion, Bourgoigne, Jean de Demedrano, and Pierre de Vernois, also Kings of Arms to Philip the Second, King of Castile and England, for Sir Roland Longin, who was Knighted by the said King at Antwerp, the twenty third day of January, Anno Domini 1555. where a Chapter was then held, for the Election of Knights into the Order of the Golden Fleece.

CHAP. II.

OF THE

Religious Orders

OF

KNIGHTHOOD in CHRISTENDOM.

SECT. I.

Of ancient Societies analogous to the Orders of Knighthood.

ALthough the Orders remembred in this and the next Chapter, may seem to have had their original from the Equestrian Order among the Romans; nevertheless, we may observe from Stories yet more ancient, some things bearing proportion or resemblance to these modern Societies of Knighthood. And this, though we do not take any great notice of certain old Rabinical Comments, concerning the *Anakim*, or Sons of *Anak*, who (according to ^a *Bouldouchius*) were a Society of valiant men, imagined to have been so called, not from *Anak*, as being the name of any person, but as they were *Torquati*, Knights, endowed with a Chain or Collar, *Anak* signifying as much as *Torquis*; and the Order thereof to have been instituted at the building of the City of *Hebron*, which City was before called ^b *Kiriath Arba*, i. e. the City of *Arba*; who is said to have been the Father of *Anak*, namely the Father or first Institutor of *Anak*, or the Order of the Collar.

^a *De Ecclesia ante Legem. l. 2. c. 8. p. 207. Edit. Paris. 1630. 4^{to}.*

^b *Joshua. c. 14^{to} v. 15. c. 15. v. 13.*

What will such, as are apt to give way to ingenious Fictions and Conceits, fancy of the *Argonauts*, who went in quest of the *Golden Fleece* (a Catalogue of whom you have in *Apollonius Rhodius*, *Orpheus*, and *Valerius Flaccus*) but that they were a Company of *Grecian Knights* (the principal whereof were *Castor* and *Pollux*, *Telamon*, *Orpheus*, *Hercules*, and *Hylas*) who entering into a most honorable Fraternity, or Association, made an Expedition to *Colchi*, under *Jason* their supreme?

pream? What of the *Argolic Touths*, that hunted the *Caledonian Boar*; but a Society of *Knights* combin'd under *Meleager* their head or chief? Much like to which, of later times, were those Martial Followers of *Charles* the Great (first Emperor of the *Western Franks*) in his Expedition against the *Saracens* that invaded *Aquitain*, who (especially the chief of them, *Orlando*) are so renowned by that excellent Poem of *Lodovico Ariosto*; as also those that accompanied *Godfrey of Bulloign*, to the Conquest of *Jerusalem*, celebrated by that Heroic Poet *Torquato Tasso*, in his *Jerusalem Liberata*: both which Stories are true in the main, however flourish'd over and interlac'd with Fancy and Fiction.

SECT. II.

The Christian Institution of Knightly Orders.

BUT waving further instances of this nature, we shall touch upon the occasion of founding Societies and Orders of Knighthood, in the times of Christianity. The grounds of their Erection were several and different (though all terminated in one common end) among which the principal were these that follow.

First, a perfect and sincere love to Honor; and a regard had to the prudent management and continual advancement of Military Affairs; and therein chiefly to excite and promote Virtue, and to confer on it a suitable Reward.

c Prefatio ad
Lib. Nigrum.

Such was the Design of King *Arthur* of *Britain*; who (being wonderfully delighted with the valiant emulation and military experience of gallant and worthy men (in whose policy, strength, and industry he might confidently and safely rely, if need required, in all urgent and hazardous enterprizes) enjoined such as had especially signalized themselves by their Martial Actions, a freedom and familiarity, not only with one another, but even with himself: And further, to honor and reward their valour and desert; he formed himself and them into a Body and Fellowship, which he stiled *Knights of the Round Table*.

Upon which account also the Military Orders of the *Oak* in *Navarr*, the *Gennet* in *France*, the *Crown Royal* among the *Frizons*, the *Dove* in *Castile*, and the *Bear* in *Switzerland*, took their beginning: and hitherto may be refer'd the foundation of the most Noble Order of the *Garter*, as shall appear anon.

Secondly, it is not altogether from our purpose, that the generality of Romances, and several modern and heroic Poems (some of which are before remembred) make such frequent mention of *Knights Errant*, riding up and down to encounter *Pagans*; for another famous cause of erecting Knightly Orders, sprung from this occasion, namely, the Incursions and Robberies of the *Saracens* and *Barbarians*: to repel the violence and cruelty whereof, to vindicate the oppressed, redeem the injured and enslaved, to give entertainment and relief to Pilgrims and Strangers, were part of the Duties to which the *Knights Hospitallers*, *Templers*, and those of *Saint James* in *Gallicia*, stood engaged by their first foundation.

A third reason was to fight in defence of the Christian Faith, against *Pagans* and *Infidels*, to propagate the Christian Territories, and to promote the service of the Catholic Church; which was the chief cause why the Orders last mentioned were instituted, as also those other of the *Holy Sepulchre*, *Calatrava*, *Alcantara*, *St. Saviour* of *Mount Royal*, our *Lady of Montesa*, of *Christ* in *Portugal*, and the *Sword-Bearers* in *Livonia*.

And indeed, these were the main inducements that engaged them, and many other Orders of Knighthood (instituted in the Christian world) to do famous things in the cause of Religion: So that their holy zeal may be said to have very far contributed to the propagation and advancement of the Christian Profession; since generally the *Knights* of these Orders have employ'd themselves in the service of God, and spent their blood in the defence of his Faith, against *Saracens*, *Turks*, and *Unbelievers*.

Lately,

Lastly, when *Sovereign Princes* found themselves imbroiled in Wars or dangerous Factions, a fourth reason of erecting such *Orders*, was, that they might by such a Tye (as the Combination of many valiant *Knights* into a Fraternity) restore Peace, quiet all Jealousies, unite Affections, and secure unto themselves the alliance of lasting friendship and powerful assistance, both for their own, and their Countries safety and defence. Hereupon do the *Orders* of the *Dragon* in *Hungary*, of the *Ermin*, as also the *Knot* in *Naples*, and of *St. Michael* in *France*, seem to have been erected.

And to what end were the *Badges* of such several *Orders* devised, but to be distributed as Pledges of remembrance, that thereby the sincerity of their love who had united themselves into a *Brotherhood* (if at any time it should grow cold) might be quickned and renewed, and their Friendship increased and established? So that though humane occurrences might occasion a distance between them, as to their persons, yet were these *Ornaments* as so many Remembrances of the Faith and Oath whereby they were contracted into one Body; and consequently of the harmony of minds and affections that ought to be among them.

SECT. III.

The division of Knightly Orders into Religious and Military.

HAVING thus briefly toucht upon some general grounds and causes, for instituting *Orders* of *Knighthood* in *Christendom*; before we proceed to a particular account of the *Orders* themselves, it will be further necessary to acquaint our Reader, that the *Knights* of these *Orders* have been more especially divided into two kinds, namely, *Religious* or *Ecclesiastical*, and *Military* or *Secular*; which division we shall likewise follow in this place, beginning with the *Religious*, for the same reasons, that in all Degrees of Honor, which are esteemed of an equal rank, the *Ecclesiastick* hath been allowed to precede the *Temporal*.

But we find, that there hath risen much dispute among the *Canonists*, touching several of those which we are to marshal under the title of *Religious* (or as generally they are called *Cruciferi*) to wit, whether they be truly and properly *Religious* or not. The Arguments on both sides are numerous, and therefore we shall refer such as are desirous of a particular satisfaction in the case, to a late Treatise, written by *Andreas Mendo*, a *Jesuit*, who hath judiciously contracted the Arguments; and cited the several *Authors* both of the Affirmative and Negative part; thinking it enough here, to give this following short account thereof.

Those *Knights* who have taken upon them the three solemn and substantial Vows of Religion, namely *Poverty*, *Chastity*, and *Obedience*, (that is, (1.)^b Not to hold or possess any thing properly or peculiarly their own, nor to dispose thereof, but with the licence or allowance of the Master, or Chief of the Order. (2.) To keep themselves single, chaste, and undefiled with Women. And (3.) to submit to the commands of their Master, and to the Rules and Statutes of their Order) they are (we say) without contradiction truly and properly accounted *Religious*, and have been numbred among Religious and Ecclesiastical persons, and consequently in spiritual concerns, exempt from all spiritual, or other Jurisdictions (except the *Masters* or *Prelates* of their own Order) as are the *Knights* of *St. John* of *Jerusalem*.

But such of these as have permission to contract marriage, and are either married or may marry, and do profess Conjugal Chastity, viz. ^kto enjoy only their own Wives; are not by some, simply and absolutely, called or esteemed Re-

H

ligious,

^b Obedientia prestanda Magistro, nihil proprii tenendum, atq; Castitas quantum fieri potest tenenda. Pantaleon de Ord. Joannit. reb. gest. l. 1. p. 19.

Vide etiam la Regla y Establecimientos de la Cavalleria de Santiago de Espada fo. 65. a.

ⁱ Hic, Anton. Frances de Eccle. Castellan. l. 5. n. 248.

^k La Castidad conugal ha de ser, que con sola su mujer, &c. convengan. La Regla de Santiago. l. 65. a.

^e De Crucia insigni.

^g De Ordin. Militar. Disquis. 2. Quest. 2. sect. 2. & 3. Edit. Lugduni. 1668.

18. Thomas. 2. 2. Q. 184. Art. 4. resp. ad tertium.
Vide M. A. Frances de Eccles. Cathedra-
lib. loco citato.
in Flav. Cherubinus Compens. Bullar.
Tom. 3. p. 50. Constit. 41. Schol. 2. Et Tom.
1. p. 7. Constit. 5. Schol. 2.

ligions, but ¹ *secundum quid*, and improperly; of which sort are those of the Orders of *St. James*, *Calatrava*, *Alcantara*, and *Montesa*, in Spain, and many others. Nevertheless, ² others conceive these alwel truly Religions, seeing they vow Conjugal (though not strict and absolute) Chastity; and this is the opinion of most.

And in truth, the Vow of severe Chastity is not in this case wholly discharged, but only dispensed with; and that of Conjugal imposed instead thereof. For the *Popes* never changed or abolished the religious state of *Knights*, but only dispensed with them as to Marriage; whilst in other things they made no alteration, but left them whole and entire.

And therefore, since we observe those *Knights*, who vow absolute Chastity, and those who profess Conjugal, have alike received their approbation from the Papal See, and that some *Knights* have not been accounted ⁿ Religions, before such time, and until their rule of living hath been confirm'd to them from thence (as is noted by those of *St. Lazarus*) after which Confirmation, all that enter into any Order, are subject to the particular Rule, so approved of, unless for good cause, they be ^o dispensed with: For these reasons we shall place both under the Title of *Religious* or *Ecclesiastical Knights*, in the following Discourse.

ⁿ Ibid. Tom. 1. p. 21. Constit. 1. Schol. 2.
^o Si in votis aliquis est laxatus, id ex Pontificis dispensatione dimittat, qui potuit Religionis vocem naturam conservare adhuc post praestitam dispensationem. Andr. Mendo de Ord. milit. Disq. 2. Quest. 2. sect. 2. n. 44.

SECT. IV.

Of Ecclesiastical Foundations dependant upon Military Orders.

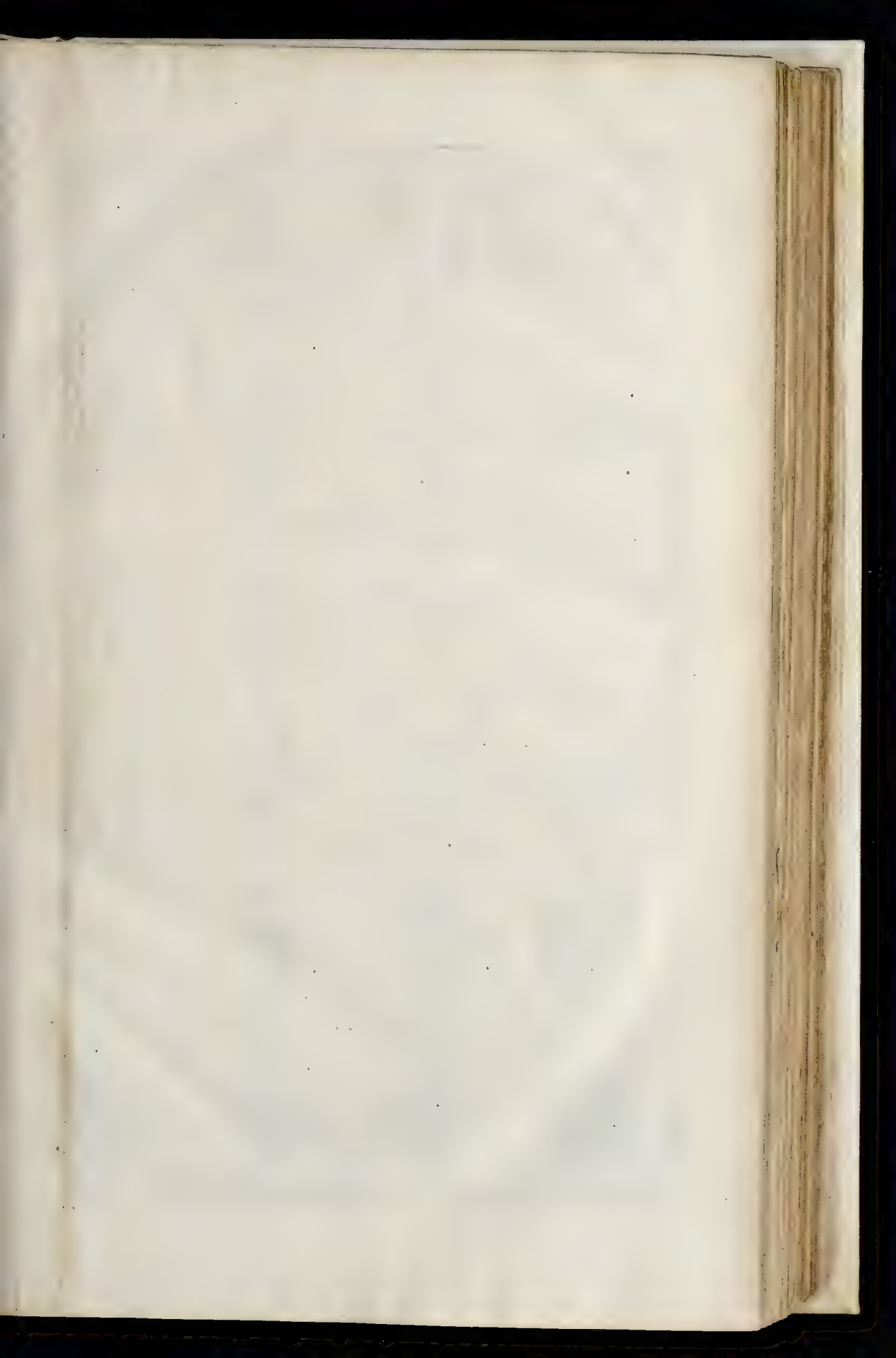
BUT the Institutions of those Orders, purely Military, were after a while thought too weak to continue long, if not sustained by Religion and Piety, and too defective, without adjoining Ecclesiastical persons thereunto. Therefore the *Founders*, considering, that in all Councils and Affairs, there should be a concurrence of Divine assistance and Military industry, began to dedicate them principally to the Honor and Worship of God, or to our Saviour, or to the blessed Virgin, or some other of the saints; thereby to gain no less the protection and favour of the Divine goodness, on the behalf of the *Founders*, and *Knights Companions* of such Orders in general, than its especial assistance in their Councils, Affairs, or particular Enterprises: And this they supposed more easily obtainable by the interposition of men eminent for their sincerity, piety, humility, and devotion, set apart and appointed to say Prayers, sing Psalms, and perform other Ecclesiastical Duties (the efficacy of Religion, consisting in the Offices of the Priests) for the glory, fidelity, peace, and safety of their Kingdoms and Subjects, and the good success of their Military Undertakings.

Hereupon some of them, at their first Institutions, joined *sacred Orders* to their *Militia*, and made provision for Ecclesiastical persons, whose assigned Duty was to undertake the spiritual warfare, and spend their time in Divine Offices and Devotions at home, in their several Foundations, for the prosperity of those undertakings, wherein the *Knights Companions* themselves were engaged abroad, either as to the defence of Christian Religion, their Prince, or Country.

¹ Ord. Stat. Garteri Art. 4.
² Catalog. u. l. des Chevaliers de l'Ordre de Coller de Savoy, dist. de l'Annunciade. a Turin. 1654.

Hence was it, that our King Edward the Third, at the first Institution of the most Noble Order of the *Garter*, appointed, within the Chappel of Saint George at *Wyndesfor*, thirteen secular Canons, and thirteen Vicars, there to attend the celebration of Divine Offices. In like manner did *Amadis* the Sixth, Earl of *Savoy*, who, when he had instituted the Order of the *Collar* (since called of the *Annunciade*) founded also the *Chartreuse* of *Pierre Chastle* in *Eugey*, wherein were entertained ^d fifteen Priests, and they obliged to celebrate, every day, fifteen Masses.

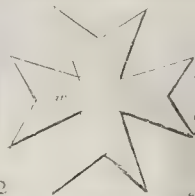
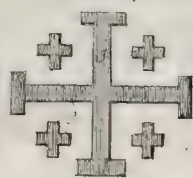
Upon



THE
Severall ENSIGNES of the
RELIGIOUS ORDERS of
KNIGHTHOOD
mentioned in the second
Chapter.

The Holy Sepulchre

S^t John in Ierusalem

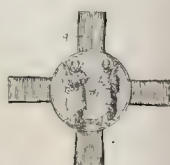
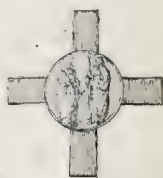


S^t John of Acon

S^t Thomas

S^t Olave in Palestino

Knights in Palestino

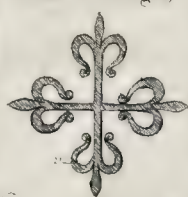


S^t Saviour in Aragon

S^t Avie in Portugal

Wing of S^t Michael

S^t Geron

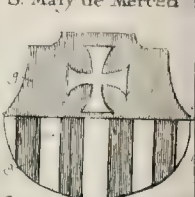
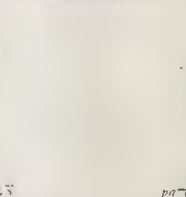


S^t George d^e Alfania

Sword bearers in Livonia

S^t Dominek

S^t Mary de Merced

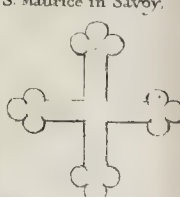
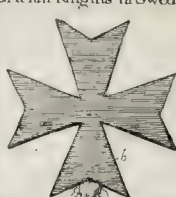


S^t Christ in Portugal

Passion of Iesus Christ

Brician knights in Sweden

S^t Maurice in Savoy




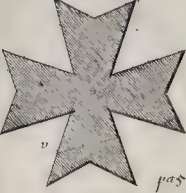
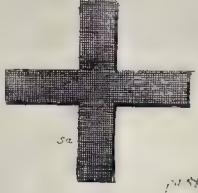

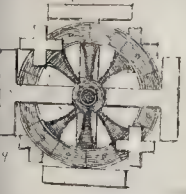
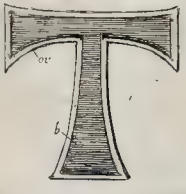


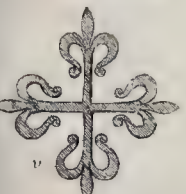
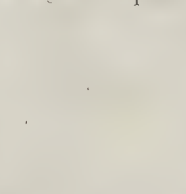



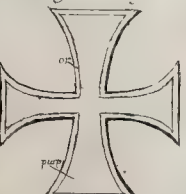
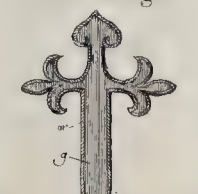
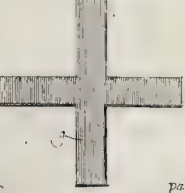
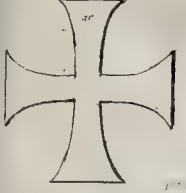
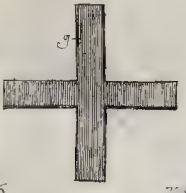
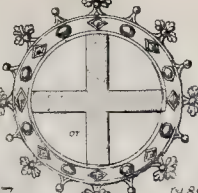



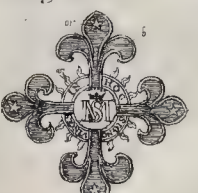

S^t Paul at Rome

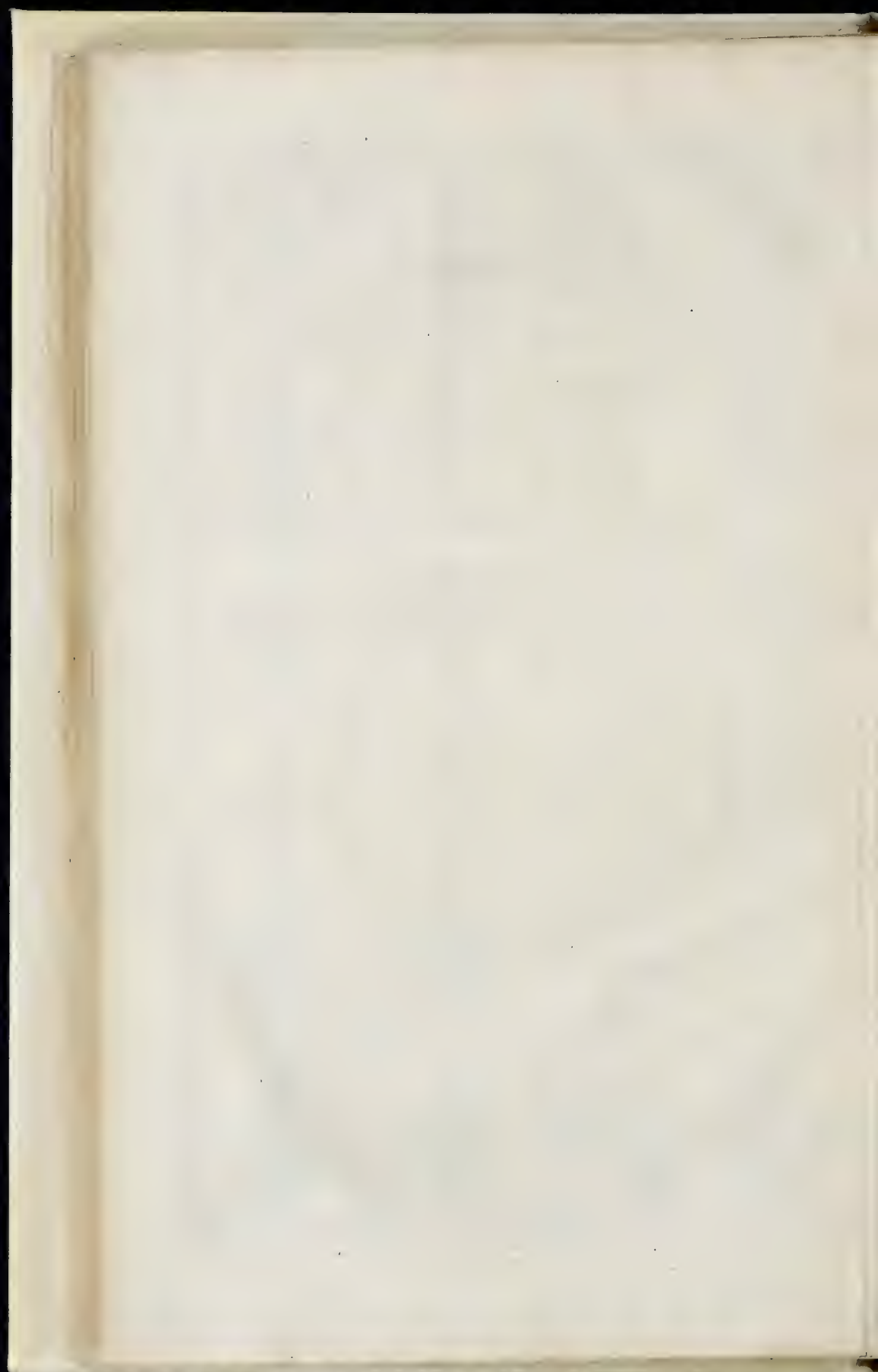
The Pope of Rome

S^t Stephen at Florence

S^t Maurice & S^t Lazarus



Knights Templars  pa 85	S. Lazarus.  pa 86	Teutonic Knights.  pa 88	Mount Eloy in Palestine  pa 89
S. Catharine of Mount Sinai  pa 87	S. Anthony in Ethiopia  pa 82	Constantinian Angelick knight  pa 85	S. James in Galicia  pa 89
Iulian & Alcantara  pa 71	De Trugallo in Spaine  pa 73	Calatrava in Spaine,  pa 75	Holy Ghost in Saxia  pa 77
Rosary in Toledo  pa 80	S. Mary in Italy.  pa 80	S. James in Portugal.  pa 80	Montesa in Valencia  pa 81
Holy Ghost at Rome  pa 80	S. George in Carinthia  pa 88	S. George at Rome.  pa 89	S. Peter at Rome  pa 81
Knights of Loreto.  pa 81	S. Mary of Mount Carmel  pa 91	S. Mary at Rome  pa 92	Christian Malta in Moravia  pa 93



Upon the same account were erected certain ^w foundations of Divine Service, in the Ducal Chappel of *Dion*, in the Dutchy of *Burgundy*, by *Philip Duke of Burgundy*, Founder of the Order of the *Golden Fleece*; and likewise in the Church of *le Mont. S. Michel* in *Normandy*, did ^x *Lewis the Eleventh of France*, ordain to be celebrated the Divine Service, and other Ecclesiastical Ceremonies, relating to the foundation of the Order of *Saint Michael*, by him instituted.

^w Statut. Toj.
son d'or. Art.
20.
^x Stat. de l'Or-
dre Monsieur
S. Michel
Archang. Art.
19.

SECT. V.

A brief account of the Religious Orders of Knighthood.

NOW come we to deliver a short account of the *Religious or Sacred Orders of Knighthood*, to which shall succeed those that are purely and compleatly *Military*; in both which we shall principally take notice (1.) Of the *Time of their Institution*, (2.) By *whom* founded, and (3.) The *Habit*, and *Ensigns*, bestowed upon each of them; proceeding according to the antiquity of each Order's Foundation, as we can best discover it, and allowing their Precedency here, for that cause rather than any other.

But so far as the *Institutions* of some of these Orders of Knighthood, are endeavour'd to be made more ancient than there is good ground to believe; we have therefore thought it needless (having for the most part confin'd our Discourse to the three particulars now mentioned) to engage our Pen too far, where 'tis almost impossible to set the Chronological part right, and may very possibly give an occasion of Offence.

We have taken in all the Orders that we could meet with, though some were obscure, and but short-liv'd, and others, for other reasons, may be thought inconsiderable; judging them worthy of a place here, with the most famous and known, seeing once they had such in the Register of Honor.

Lastly, where the occasion is insert'd, whence (as is affirm'd) some of them took their Original, and this lookt upon as fabulous and romantick: We must inform our Reader, that we take not upon us to justify all that is spoken to this point; but suppose we have dealt fairly and candidly with him, in placing our Authorities in the Margent, and there left them to be consider'd of, where we hope they will be of strength, at least sufficient to support the Text, and justify our integrity.

The Order of the Knights of the Holy Sepulchre in Jerusalem.

(I.)

This Order of Knighthood, though not so ancient as some would make it (who refer the Original to ^a *St. James Bishop of Jerusalem*, to ^b *Constantine the Great*, and to ^c *Charles the Great*) nor so late as ^d others would have it, who say this Order was founded in the year of our Lord 1110. yet is it accounted the most ancient of all those Orders which took beginning in the Holy Land; and as a judicious Divine of our Nation reports, was instituted in the year ^e 1099. at such time as the Temple of Jerusalem was regained from the *Saracens*: which account perhaps he ground-
ed upon the date given to the ancient statutes of this Order, established at Jerusalem on ^f *New-years-day* in the year aforesaid, and published by *Mennerius*.

As to the person by whom this Order was founded, he refers it to ^g *Philip King of France*, but ^h *Andrew Favin* will have it to be *Baldwin the First, King of Jerusalem*: For there having been (while the *Saracens* possess that City) certain

^a Barthol. de Salernitano in Itinerario suo terra sancta.

^b Jos. Micheli Marquez in Tesoro Militar, de Cavalliera. fol. 14. b. & fol. 19. a.

^c Mennen. Delic. Equest. p. 197.

^d Andr. Mendo, de Ord. Milit. Dis. 13.

^e Quest. 2. Sect. 3. n. 22.

^f Heylins Cosmogr. l. 3 p. 109.

^g Delicia Eques.

^h Arim. p. 213.

ⁱ Cosmogr. loc.

^j cit.

^k En le Theat.

^l d' Honneur. l.

^m p. c. 4.

ⁿ Canons

ment of Men, and that other of *St. Mary Magdalen*, for the reception of Women. And not long after, to wit, in the year of our Lord ^d 1048. they restored the Church of the *Holy Sepulchre*.

But the confluence of Pilgrims and Travellers, growing very great, and these places already built, too narrow for their reception, they ^e erected a large Hospital in that very place ^f where our *Saviour* celebrated the last Supper with his Disciples, for the better entertainment of Strangers, that travelled thither upon the account of Devotions; (who for want of a place to lodge in, did usually, in the night time, fall into the hands of the *Saracens*, that ^g rob'd and murder'd them) as also to relieve and cure the diseased among them. So that at length, in regard of their great Charity, and friendly Hospitality, as also for that these religious persons took *St. John Baptist* for their Patron (to the honor of whose Name, a Chappel or Oratory was built there also) they obtained the Title of ^h *Brethren Hospitalars, of St. John Baptist of Jerusalem*. But some are of opinion, that this Hospital was dedicated to the memory of ⁱ *St. John of Cyprus*, who in the Reign of *Phocas the Emperor*, was Bishop of *Alexandria*, and so charitable and liberal in bestowing Alms, that he obtained the name of *Johannes Eleemosynarius*.

Calvisius in his Chronology sets down the Institution of this Order, to be in the year 1092. Others refer it to the year ^k 1099. when one *Gerard*, a Native of the Province of ^l *Tholouse*, and a man of holy life and piety, came to *Jerusalem*, in the time of *Godfrey of Bouillon*, and out of zeal upon sight of the places trodden by the feet of our *Saviour*, and sprinkled with his blood, built this Hospital (which became the first and chief Seat of this ancient Order) and devoutly ministered to the necessities of the poor. After a while he ^m adjoined to himself some honest and religious men, and received the regular Habit of Black, wearing on the outside thereof a White Cross.

King ⁿ *Baldwin the First*, conferr'd on them large Privileges and Franchises, permitting them to manage Arms, as did the *Canons Regulars*, Guardians of the *Holy Sepulchre*, and anno ^o 1104. instituted them to be *Knights*. So that they, who before were pious and liberal towards Pilgrims and diseased persons, became at length the examples of true and Christian generosity: Their ^p duty now engaging them personally to fight against the *Saracens* and *Infidels*, in defence of the Christian Faith.

These *Knights* then acknowledged obedience to the Patriarch of *Jerusalem*, who ^q first approved their Order, but afterwards ^r when their Revenues increased, it begat a neglect of their former religious and humble carriage; and forthwith they laboured with the Pope to be absolved from their obedience to the Patriarch, which ^s they obtain'd, though he, and several other Bishops of *Palestine*, travelled to *Rome* to oppose them, and manifest the injuries they sustained from the *Knights*.

This Order had its ^t second approbation and rule of living confirmed from Pope *Gelasius* the Second, but ^u *Andr. Mendos* faith, from *Calixtus* the Second, anno 1120. and was by *Adrian* the Fourth ^v received under the protection of the Papal See; being likewise endowed with ample Privileges, and exemption from payment of Tythes, by succeeding Popes, chiefly by ^w *Pius* the Fourth.

The *Knights* of this Order then took the ^x black Habit of Hermits of *St. Augustine*, and lived under his rule by the grant of *Honorius* the Second, anno ^y 1125. vowing ^z Obedience, Poverty, and Chastity; and on the ^a Breast of this Habit wore, at first, a plain Cross of white Cloth, since changed to one with ^b eight points: but in the ^c time of War they used a Red Cassock, bearing the White Cross upon it.

After the death of *Gerard*, the Founder of this Hospital,

^e *Cassan. Catalog. gloria mundi, pars 9. Confid. 4.*

^f *Canavit Dominus cum Apostolis, & nunc ibi domus illa, à qua incepit Ordo, qui dicitur Hospitalarium. Abulenſis in Comment. Epist. D. Hieronymi ad Paulam. c. 7.*

^g *Pantal. de Ord. Joannit. l. 1. p. 41.*

^h *Andr. Ravin. Theat. d' Honneur. l. 9. c. 5.*
ⁱ *Pantaleon loco citato.*

^k *A. Miraeus Orig. Ord. Equeſt. p. 3.*

^l *Sanſovin. Orig. de Cavalieri. fo. 13. a. Gio. Pietro de Crescenſi Preſid. Roman. parte 3. l. 1. p. 496.*

^m *A. Mendo de Ord. Milit. Diſq. 1. Quest. 3. n. 108.*

ⁿ *Vitriac. à pud Miraeum. n. 3. Faxin. en. o. 1. le Theat. d' Honneur. l. 9. c. 5.*
^o *Cassan. Catalog. glor. mundi, pars 9. Confid. 4. f. 172. & pars 5. Confid. 64.*

^p *Pantaleon de Ord. Joannit. l. 1. p. 19.*
^q *Monast. Anglic. Tom. 2. p. 459.*

^r *Hospitalarii praevenientes, per dona maxima totam Curiam (Romanam) corruperunt, sic quod Patriarcha, ipso infecto negotio, ad patriam suam rediit. Ib.*

^s *Mennen. Delicta Equeſt. p. 69.*
^t *De Ordin. milit. loco nuper cit.*
^u *Flav. Cherubin. Compend. Ballar. Tom. 1. p. 6. Conf. 2.*

^v *Tom. 2. p. 3. Conf. 9.*
^w *Pantal. de Ord. Joannit. l. 1. p. 18.*
^x *A. Mendo de Ord. Milit. loc. cit.*

^y *Pantaleon. l. 1. p. 18. Aub. Miraeus. p. 7.*
^z *Clacon de vita Paschal. 2. l. 1. p. 35. Cassan. Catalog. glor. mundi, pars 9. Confid. 4.*

^a *Item omnes Fratres Crucem in honorem Dei, & ejusdem Sanctae Crucis, in Cappis & Mantellis secum different ante pectus. Regula Ord. Joan. Jerus. Art. 29. Vide Monast. Anglican. Tom. 2. p. 497.*

^b *Crux, blanca de ocho puntas, abito negro. El Conde de Lanſerote en Nobleza del Andalucia. l. 1. c. 22.*

^c *Pantaleon de Ord. Joannit. loc. cit.*

having

having increas'd in Men and Revenues, elected out of their own Body another Governor or Head, namely, *Raimund de Podio*, or *Poggio a Florentine*, who digested and enlarged their Laws and Institutions, and divided the Body of the Order into * three Classes, viz. *Knights, servants, and Ecclesiastics* (which hath since received, from the succeeding Great Masters, many additions.) This Body of Laws was confirmed by Pope *Boniface* the Ninth, 7. Idus Apr. in the sixth year of his Popedom, the Composers style in it runs thus, *Ego Raimundus Dei gratia, servus pauperum Jesu Christi, & Custos Hospitalis Jerusalemiani*. But afterwards he had the Title of *Great Master* of the Order given him, which continued to his Successors, ^b the Adjective [*Great*] being added to denote his power and authority; the Government and Administration of the whole Militia, being lodged in him for the time being.

This great Master is a free Lord, he hath at this day the Title of *Prince of Malta* and *Goza*, and had that of *Illustrious* first given him by *Ferdinand* the Second, Emperor of *Germany*: Among sundry great privileges wherewith he is invested, he hath power to Seal in Lead, as doth the Pope and Duke of *Venice*. He acknowledges the Pope for his Head, and the King of *Spain* for his Patron.

Under this Great Master, there are many of the *Knights* in several Kingdoms and Provinces, called *Priors*, some of whom have also the addition of *Great*; With us in *England* he was stiled *Prior Hospitalis Sancti Johannis Jerusalem in Anglia*, and by that ^k Title was he summoned to the Parliament as a *Baron* of this Kingdom: At length he became ranked the first *Baron*, and had place and precedence accordingly above all the *Barons* of Parliament. There is a Memorandum of making his Oath of *Faalty* to the King, which I find thus recorded.

Memorandum quod Frater Johannes de Radyngton Prior Hospitalis Sancti Johannis Jerusalem in Anglia vicesimo tertio die Septembris anno presentis apud Mansum Fratrum Predicatorum London. fecit fidelitatem suam Domino Regi debitam coram Consilio dicti Domini Regis ibidem tunc existente, sub hac forma; Jeo sera foial & foie & loialtie portera a nostre Seigneur le Roi Richard & a ses heirs Rois D'engleterre de vie de membre & de terrien honour a vivre & morir contre toutz gentz & diligiamment seray entendant as busoignes nostre Seigneur le Roy solonc mon sen & poair & le conseil nostre Seigneur le Roy celera & a lui & a ses maundementz en quantque a moy attient sera obeissant si Dieu moi eide & ses Seintz. Protestando quod hoc non cederet in prejudicium Hospitalis predicti temporibus futuris.

This Order grew in time to such greatness in Possessions and Lands, that in the Reign of King *Henry* the Third, they had in Christendom, no fewer than * nineteen thousand Mannors.

When *Saladine* had taken *Jerusalem* (after it had been posses'd eighty nine years by the *Christians*) these *Knights* retreated to the City of || *Acre*, called *Stolomais*; and that being also taken, they seized upon the ^l Island of *Rhodes*, and gained the chief City there, ^m 18. Calend. sept. in the year of our Lord 1308. which Pope ⁿ *Clement* the Fifth confirmed to them, and thereupon they began to be called ^o *Knights of Rhodes*.

At *Rhodes* they remained 214. years, even until anno ^p 1522. when *Solyman* the Great took the Island by force, and made his publick entry thereinto on ^q Christmas-day, after which they betook themselves to the ^r Island of *Malta*, which with *Tripoli* and *Goza* were granted to them in ^s Fee, by the Emperor *Charles* the Fifth, the ^t 23. of March anno 1530. under the tender of one Falcon to the Viceroy of *Sicily*, upon the 25. day of April yearly, and on condition to acknowledge the King of *Spain* and *Sicily* for their Protectors. This Donation was confirmed by ^u Pope *Clement* the Seventh, on the 9. of May in the same year. In which Isle they yet continue the Bulwark and Fortreiss of Europe, chiefly to shelter *Sicily*, and guard the Coasts of *Italy*: and from this settlement of theirs in this place, they have been ever since called *Knights of Malta*.

The Order of Knights Templars.

(3.)

About the years ^a1117. ^b1118. ^c1119. or ^d1120. this Order took beginning (Baldwin the Second then reigning in Jerusalem, and ^eGelasius the Second possessing the Roman Chair) when ^fnine Gentlemen, urged by zealous devotion, passed the Seas to the Holy Land, the chief of which (though the rest are forgotten) were ^gHugo de Paganes, and Godfrey de Saint Omer, two Knights of Noble Extraction. The King, because these Knights at first had no habitation, assigned to them part of his ^hown Palace, near the South-gate, adjoining to the Temple of Solomon in Jerusalem; and gave them leave to build a small House of residence, within the inclosure thereof; and hereupon they became called ⁱBrothers of the Militia of the Temple, or more ordinarily, in one word, *Knights Templars*.

And as they began to increase in number (which they did not till after ^knine years, from their Institution) so their first undertaking and profession (to which they were enjoined by the Patriarch of Jerusalem) was chiefly to guard the most dangerous High-ways about Jerusalem; whereupon they became safe conductors to Pilgrims and Travellers (who came to visit the holy places in that City) both in coming thither, and returning thence, against the violence and robberies of the *saracens*; which charitable service made them acceptable to all, and for which they obtained of the ^mPatriarch and Bishops, remission of their sins.

But they were yet so poor, that for the first nine years, they liv'd upon the ⁿAlms of others, and wore such Clothes, as good men, for Charities sake bestowed on them: They also rode two on one Horse; in memory of which primitive poverty, there was engraven on the Seal of their Order, the Figure of two of their Knights riding upon one Horse; which is exactly represented in ^oMath. Paris.

At the Council held at Troyes in Champagne, anno 1127. they had certain Rules assigned to them, drawn up by ^pSt. Bernard, Abbot of Clairvaux (a French Gentleman, Lord of Fontaines, a Village and Castle distant about half a mile from Dion) by the appointment of Pope Honorius the Second, and Stephen Patriarch of Jerusalem; in the presence of which Patriarch, they made their Vows of Obedience, Poverty, and Chastity, and to live under the rule of ^qCanons Regular of St. Augustine. They were also enjoined to wear a *White Habit*, to which (but not till the time of Eugenius the Third) they assumed the ^rRed Cross, and of the ^ssame form that the *Knights Hospitallers of St. John of Jerusalem* wore, (though ^tFavin saith it was a *Patriarchal Cross*) and sewed it on the left shoulder of their Mantles, to distinguish them from the *Knights of other Orders in the Holy Land*. And thus as by their *White Habit* their innocency was notified, so by the *Red Cross*, their resolution to spend their blood in defence of the Christian Faith.

These *Knights*, with those other of the *Holy Sepulchre*, *Hospitallers*, and *Tentmakers*, were the principal Columns which supported the Kingdom of Jerusalem, for a long time; and therefore their valiant encounters with the Infidels, and forwardness to sacrifice their lives, for the honor of God, and defence of the Holy Land, ought to be had in everlasting remembrance. But ^uwhen Riches increased, and their Revenues were augmented, they grew proud, and withdrew themselves from the obedience of the Patriarch of Jerusalem, to join with the Pope.

So that at last, upon ^vFriday after the Feast-day of St. Denys, in the year of our Lord 1307. all the *Knights* of this Order in France, were (in one and the same hour) seized on and imprisoned, by the command of Philip le Bel, King of France,

^a Cassan. Catalog. gloria mundi. pars 9. Confid. 5.

^b Ex Chron. Rogeri de Wendover. Math. Paris. Hist. Angl. p. 67. Histor. Anglie. Script. Edit. Lond. 1652. Col. 1008.

^c Aub. Miras Orig. Ord. Eq. p. 11.

^d Andr. Favin. Theat. d' Hon. l. 9. c. 7.

^e Monast. Anglie. Tom. 2. p. 517. Ex Histor. Antiochena. l. 12. c. 7.

^f Platina in vita Gelasii. 2. p. 166. Alf. Ciaron. in vita prael. Gelasii. l. 1. p. 285.

^g Cassan. in Catal. glor. mun. loc. cit. Pantaloon de Ord. Joannit. l. 1. p. 23. S. Maurilio in Mare Oceani Religionum. p. 216.

^h Sanftm. Origine de Cavalerie. fo. 17. b. Menn. Delic. Equest. p. 75. Francis. de Radez de Andrada (by mistake) calls him Don Hugo de Campanes. Chron. de Calatrava. l. 3. b.

ⁱ Panial. de Ord. Joannit. loc. citato.

^j Fratres militiae Temp. Cassan. loc. cit.

^k Mennen. ut supra. Miscus. p. 13.

^l Pl. Cherub. Comp. Bull. Tom. 1. p. 37.

^m Conf. 1. Schol. 2. S. Maurilio. loc. cit.

ⁿ Gotsfred. Archont. Cosm. l. 2. p. 4.

^o Stows abbrev. p. 281.

^p Monast. Ang. Tom. 2. p. 518.

^q Ad Calcem Adversarium. vide Antiq. War. p. 704.

^r Math. Paris. Hist. Angl. p. 67.

^s Phil. Brie. 111. Anal. mun. di. pars 3. Tom. 2. p. 30.

^t Andr. Favin. en le Theat. d' Hon. l. 9. c. 8.

^u Menn. p. 230.

^v Th. 6. c. 14.

^w Ex Chron. Reg. de Wendover.

^x Mennen. De lic. Equest. p. 76.

^y Cherub. Comp. pend. Bull. Tom. 1. p. 37.

^z Confid. 1. Schol. 2.

^{aa} Math. Paris. loc. citato.

^{bb} Dugdales Antiq. of Warwick. sh. p. 705.

^{cc} Lib. 9. c. 7.

^{dd} Ad tantam rerum opulentiam deveniunt, ut filia divata, matrem sufficere, & supergredi videretur. Hist. Anglie. Script. antiq. Col. 1008.

^{ee} Fav. Theat. d' Hon. l. 9. c. 7.

ry Alf. Ciacon lib. x. p. 674. de vita Clem. 5.
Fl Cherub. Comp. Bull. Tom. 1. p. 37. Const. 2.
Schol. 3. Pantaleon. de Ord. Joannit. l. 3. p. 94.
2 loco cit. p. 404.
a Hist. Anglic. Script. antiq. fol. 2494.
c 2521.
4. Idus Januarii. Ibid. Col. 1730. littera
dominicali G. Luna currente per 17 die Mer-
curii proxime post festum Epiphan. Ib. Col.
2494.
* Ibid. Quamvis in multis essent accusati,
nihil tamen inventum est, quod de jure vi-
deretur statum illorum annullare. Ibid.

France, with the consent of Pope Clement the Fifth, being charged with most infamous and damnable Crimes; the Articles confessed are set down by ^a Andr. Favin. But in England their apprehension was on ^a Wednesday next after the Feast of Epiphany, in the first year of the Reign of our King Edward the Second. Shortly after, a * solemn examination of their Crimes (upon the Articles exhibited against them) was by the special Commission of the said Pope, committed to William de Grenesfeld Arch-Bishop of York, and Ralph Baldock Bishop of London, in the presence of the ac-

cused Templars, who sufficiently answered all the objections. Howbeit they were afterwards convicted in a Council held at London, and all their Lands and Goods seized into the Kings hands. Upon this, the aforesaid Arch-Bishop very greatly commiserating the sad state and condition of the Templars, within his Diocese, thus left destitute of maintenance, most charitably disposed of them in several Monasteries under his Jurisdiction, where they were provided for during their lives.

Two years after, many of these Knights were burnt in France, nay some of the Bones of John de la Tur (who had been long buried) were taken up, and in like manner burnt.

Upon ^a Munday Sennight after Easter, anno 1312. in the second Session of the Council, called at ^a Vienna in Dauphine the year before, this Order was by Papal Authority condemned, and perpetually dissolved; and in March of the following year, the last Great Master, Jacques de la Mothe, a Bourguendian, burnt at Paris.

Their ^f Lands, Possessions, and Goods, by a Decree of the said Pope, dated at ^g Vienna 6. Non. Maii, in the seventh year of his Papacy, were annexed to the Knights Hospitallers of St. John of Jerusalem (except those within the Kingdoms of ^h Castile, Arragon, Portugal, and Majorca, which were reserved to the disposition because they had constantly hazarded their lives in the defence of the Christian Faith, and continually suffered great dangers, and undergone vast expences in transmarine parts, as also for ^k five years before, with exceeding great charge, and signal valor, had maintain'd the Isle of Rhodes against the Turkish power. Thus fell this Noble Order, no less famous for Martial Achievements in the East, than ^l their wealthy Possessions in the West. For, according to Doctor Heylins account, they enjoyed no less than ^m 16000 Lordships in Europe; and a Spanish Author tells us, their Revenue was ⁿ two Millions annually, and had in possession 40000 Comanderies. Which gave occasion to many sober men to judge, that their Wealth was their greatest crime. And there are several Authors remembered by ^o Alfonsus Ciaconius, who are of opinion, they were falsely accused, and by suborned Witnesses, merely upon the ambition and covetous design

of Philip King of France, who gaped after their Lands, but nevertheless the moral fell beside his mouth.

The Statutes of this Order are recorded by ^p Favin.

Knights of the Order of St. Lazarus.

(4.)

We are here to note, that this Order was at the first Institution only a Fraternity of Religious Monks, not Ecclesiastick Knights, whose Weapons in the Christian warfare were Prayers and Tears, not the Military Sword. And albeit the time is uncertain, when they first began to be an Order of Knighthood, yet it cannot be presumed to be before the Knights of the Holy Sepulchre, took upon them

b ^g An. Favin.

c ^h loco cit.

2. Apr. vide

Histor. An-

glic. Script.

pref. Col. 1730

d Fl. Cherub.

Comp. Bull.

Tom. 1. p. 37.

Const. 3. Tho.

Walsingham.

p. 72. n. 40.

vide etiam

Chron. Jo.

Rampton inter

Script. pref.

Col. 1008. c

Hen. Knighton.

of the Roman See.

Col. 2382.

e Favin. loc. cit.

f Pantale. de Ord. Joannit. l. 3. p. 95. Cas-

san in Catalog. glor. mundi. pars 9. Confid. 5.

Platina in vita Clem. 5.

g Claus. 7. E. 2. Dorf. m. 11.

h Fl. Cherub. Comp. Bull. Tom. 2. p. 37.

Const. 3.

i Ibid.

k Alf. Ciacon. in vita Clem. 5. Tom. 2. p. 674.

l Possessiones, tam citra, quam ultra mare,

adeo immensas habere dicuntur, ut jam non

sit in orbe Christiano provincia, qua eis bo-

norum suorum portionem non contulerit, c

Regis hodie ditionis praestantiores existunt.

Marb. Paris. Hist. Anglic. p. 67.

m Cosmogr. l. 3. p. 110.

n Andr. Mendo de Ord. Milit. Disq. 1.

Quest. 2. sect. 6. n. 27.

o In loc. citato. vide etiam Sylvest. Mau-

rylico in Oceano Religionum. p. 218.

p En le Theat.

d Hon. l. 9. c. 8.

them that Military profession, since to them is generally attributed the beginning of that Custom, for Ecclesiasticks to make use of Arms in defence and propagation of the Christian Religion; nor was there indeed occasion administered for it, until the Christian Princes set on foot the *Holy War* in *Palestine*.

This Order then is accounted the most ancient of all others in *Christendom*, (which occasioned Pope *Pius* the Fifth, in two Bulls given in the year 1572. to

style it *Antiquissimum Charitatis & Militie Christi Ordinem*) but that (as hath been said) must be understood as an Order of Monks, and before they were made Ecclesiastick Knights: The Original of such their foundation, being by *St. Gregory Nazianzen*, attributed to *St. Basil*, about the years 366. or 370. or between both, viz. anno 366. about the time of *Julian* surnamed the *Apostate*.

The first Institution of this Order was upon a most charitable account; namely, to take care of persons infected with incurable Leprosie (a Disease frequent in the Eastern Countries) by which Malady they became separated, even from the conversation and society of men.

And albeit, through the Incursion of *Barbarians* and *Saracens*, and the injury of time, this Order lay, as it were, extinguished, for a great while; yet was it revived when the *Latin Princes* joined together in a holy League, to expel the *Saracens* out of the *Holy Land*; and a famous Hospital was then erected in *Jerusalem*, under the Title of *St. Lazarus*, for the reception and entertainment of *Lepers*. For in that time the Monks of this Order added Martial Discipline to their knowledge in Physick, and became very skilful both at their Weapons, and in feats of Arms; insomuch as their services against the Infidels, begat a great esteem and value with *Baldwin* the Second, King of *Jerusalem*, and some of his Successors, and other Princes enumerated by *Aubertus Mirans*; in which Age this Order flourished with great lustre, under the Government of a Great Master.

In the year of our Lord 1120. Pope *Innocent* the Third, and after him *Honorius* the Third, granted very great privileges to this Order, and received it under the protection of the Papal See. The Knights wore a *Green Cross* anciently plain, afterwards of eight points, and Pope *Gregory* the Ninth prescribed the form of creating their Great Master.

About the year 1150 they made their Vows of Obedience, Poverty, and Chastity, before *William* Patriarch of *Jerusalem*, and submitted themselves to the Rule of *St. Benedict*; receiving his black habit: But seven years after, Pope *Alexander* the Fourth, commanded them to observe the Rule of *St. Aug.* and approved the donation of the Emperor *Frederick*, who had given great Revenues in *Calabria*, *Apulia*, and *Sicily*, to this Order. *Nicholas* the Third exempted them from payment of Tythes, and several of the succeeding Popes indulged them with divers privileges.

These Knights were so admired and favoured by *St. Lewis* of *France*, that he brought twelve of them with him out of *Palestine*, and placed them at *Boigny*, in the Diocese of *Orleans*, where he established a Colledge, anno Domini 1154. which (as *Favin* affirms) was acknowledged for the chief Seat of this Order in *Europe*.

In process of time the dignity of this Order sunk, being suppressed by Pope *Innocent* the Eighth, who united it to the Order of Hospitalars at *Rhodes*, by virtue of his Bull, dated anno 1490. and all the goods which they possessed in *France*, were carried away thither; so that shortly after the memory of this Order, as well in *Italy* as *France* was wholly obscured.

Nevertheless Pope *Pius* the Fourth, did again restore and re-establish the same, by his Bull dated at *Rome* anno 1565. confirming all former Privileges, and granting many new; he also ordained Rules and Statutes, both for the Election of their Great Master, and reformation and better Government of the Order. Moreover he made *Don Janot de Chastillon*, a Gentleman of *Millan* (his Kinsman) Great Master thereof.

q *Favin*, Theat. d' Henn. l. 9. c. 9.
r *Serm.* 25. in laudem S. Basilii. Flatau.
Cherubin. Comp. Bull. Tom. 2. p. 42. Const.
28. Schol. 1. vide etiam Hist. Genealog. de
la Maison de Savoy, par Sam. Guichenon. l. 1.
p. 114. Edit. Lyon, 1660.
s *Jof. Mich.* en Tesoro Milit. de Caval. f. 48. b
t *S. Maurilio* in Oceano Religiosum. p. 207

u *Mennen*.
w *Delicia Equestr.* p. 50.

x *In Orig. Ord. Equestr.* p. 48.

y *Tesoro Militar. de Caval. loc. cit.*
z *El Cherub. Comp. Bull. Tom. 2. p. 28.*
Const. 95. vide etiam Sam. Guichenon, in Hist. Genealog. de la Maison de Savoy. p. 113.
p. 114.
* *Mennen. Delic. Equestr.* p. 52.

a *Favin*, Theat. d' Honneur. l. 9. c. 9.
b *Mendo de Ord. Milit. Dissq. 1. Quest. 2. Sect. 15.*
c *Compend. Bull. loc. citato.*

d *Fav. Theat. c. d' Hon. l. 9. f. c. 9. vide Mennen. p. 51.*
e *Mirans p. 48 g. Compend. Bullar. Tom. 2. p. 29. Const. 95. Schol. 1.*
f *Favin. loc. cit. Mennen. p. 52.*

i *Compend. Bull. Tom. 2. p. 28. Constitut. 95.*
k *Samuel Guichenon in Hist. Genealog. de la Maison de Savoy. l. 1. p. 114. ex Thname.*

1 Compend. Bull.
Tom. 2. f. 42.
Constitut. 28.

111 Histor. de
Monf. de Thou.
Tom. 2. l. 38.
p. 876.
112 Favini. l. 8.
c. 6. vide l. 3.
c. 10.

The Priviledges of this Order were afterwards enlarged by ¹Pius the Fifth, in the year 1567. who permitted them to take one Wife only, to wit, a Virgin, not a Widow.

Lastly, Pope^m Gregory the Thirteenth, anno 1572. bestowed the Great Mastership of this Order, upon Emanuel Philibert, Duke of Savoy and his Successors, Dukes of his Line; and prescribed to them the Cistercian Rule. Furthermore, he ordained, "that all Commanderies of this Order, under all Christian Princes, should be left freely to the said Duke and his Successors; and accordingly he had the Investiture and Collation of the Commanderies in Spain, and Italy: But Henry the Fourth of France hindered the effecting thereof in his Kingdom, conceiving the right of Great Mastership appertained to him, in regard the chief Seat of this Order in Europe, was (according to Favini) within his Kingdom.

Knights of the Teutonick Order, or of Prussia.

(5.)

2 Cassan. in Ca-
talog. glor. mun-
di. pars 9. Con-
sid. 6. Pania-
leon de Ord. Jo-
annit. l. 1. p. 13.
Sanjoan. Ori-
gine de Cavali-
eris. f. 20. b.
b Segars Ho-
nor Milit. &
Civil. l. 2.
p. 104.
c Equeires Ma-
riani Mennen.
p. 78.
d And. Favini.
Theat. d' Hon-
neur. l. 7. c. 12.
e Catalog. glor.
mundi. Ord.
Joannit. loci
cit. Aub. Mi-
raus Orig. Ord.
Equest. p. 10.
f Favini. loc.
cit.

In the time of the Holy War, a^a wealthy Gentleman of Germany, who dwelt at Jerusalem, commiserating the condition of his Countrymen coming thither upon Devotion, and not understanding the Language, or knowing where to inhabit; made his House a receptacle for these Pilgrims, where they received lodging and entertainment. Afterwards, gaining Authority and Licence from the Pairiarch, he erected a Chappel neer unto this Hospital, and^b dedicated it to the honor of the blessed Virgin Mary, whence they had also the Title of^c Mari-

To him^d associated other German Gentlemen, who contributing to maintain this charitable work thus begun, and in short time, encreasing in Number, Piety, Wealth, and Esteem (though yet they had no rule of living assigned) gave themselves to the^e professions, both of the Knights Hospitalars, and Templars; imitating the later in their military Employments, and emulating the former in their acts of Piety and Charity: albeir the year, wherein they first assumed Arms, and entred into a Society, we do not find remembered.

But afterwards, to wit, in the year of our Lord * 1190 (or^f 1191.) they elected their first Master, namely Henry Walpott, and on the 22. of February in the following year, (upon the request of Frederick the Emperor) received confirmation of their Order, from the Bull of Pope^g Celestine the Third,

1 Pontanus in rerum Danicarum Historia.
pag. 284.
2 Aub. Miraus Orig. Ord. Equest. p. 8.
3 Nomen Pontifex Militum beate Marie Virginis domus Theautonicorum dedit, Barbaranz; aleva jussit. Pantaleon. de Ord. Joannit. l. 2. p. 58.

being the first year of his Papacy, under the Title of^h Knights Teutonicks, or Dutch Knights of the Hospital of St. Mary the Virgin; vowing Poverty, Obedience, and Chastity; He also prescribed to them the Rule of St. Augustine.

4 Cassanens, loc. citato.
5 Pantaleon l. 1. p. 23. & l. 2. p. 58.
6 Segars. loc. cit. Crux nigra, cum limbo argenteo in veste candida, & Magistro Ordinis, Crux nigra, cum alia Cruce aurea cum intersecante. Mendo de Ord. Mil. Dilect. 1. Quæst. 2. Sect. 9. n. 32.

Their Statutes were composed by the Model of the Knights Hospitalars, and of the Knights Templars; among which one Article was, that none butⁱ Germans should be admitted into this Order. But to difference them from those Orders, their Habit was ordained to be a^k White Mantle, on the breast whereof a plain black Cross (but some^l others make it a black Cross, voided with a Cross Potence) for their Ensign.

7 Theat. d'
8 Honnænt.
l. 7. c. 12.
9 Pantaleon, de
p. 13. p. 14.
10 Cassanens, loc. cit.
11 Chron. Chro-
nicorum. p. 7.
12 Miraus ex lib.
O. d. n. Prussia

In the year when this Order received Confirmation from the Papal See, there^m joined to them some rich Citizens of Breme and Lubek; by whose united Contributions anotherⁿ Hospital was erected in the City of Acon.

But after that City was^o taken by Saladin, one Hermannus then Master, and the remaining Knights removed into Germany: on whom the Emperor Frederick the Second, anno 1229. and Pope Honorius the Third, bestowed the Province of Prussia (or as some say^p Conrad Duke of Massovia anno 1226.) where having conquered that Nation, and reduced it from Paganism to Christianity, they built the City

City of *Mary-burgh*; and there anno 1340. fixed the chief Seat and Residence of their Great Master. † *Heyl Cosmogr. l. i. p. 180.*

This Country they enjoyed, till the year 1525. that *Albertus Brandenburg*, the last Great Master, made solemn renunciation of the Order, and became Feudatory to *Sigismund* the First, King of *Poland*, who raised *Prussia* into a Dukedom, and created this *Albert* first Duke thereof. The Conditions upon his Surrender, and the Ceremony of his Investiture into this new Dukedom, are set down in the Theatre of Honor. † (*Fau. Theat. t. d' Honn. l. u.*) 7. c. 12. u. w. (*de Menn. Delic. F. quest. 81. 82. & 83.*)

Some of the *Knights* disrelishing this Action, did afterward elect another Great Master, namely *Albert Wolfgang*, and leaving *Prussia*, seated themselves in *Germany*, where they now reside, though of no great account; only the younger Sons of the *German Princes*, being for the most part received into this Order, give the greatest reputation thereunto.

There were some other *Military Orders* of lesser note instituted in the *Holy Land*, under the first *Latin Kings* of *Jernusalem*, in imitation or rather emulation of those more famous Orders before remembred, of which there now remains only an obscure memorial: and seeing their Histories are all defective, as to the year of Institution, we think best to muster them up here in the following order.

The Order of the Knights of Mount-Joy.

(6.)

These *Knights* were so called from a Castle in the *Holy Land*, where this Order was Instituted, built on the point of a Mountain, not far from *Jernusalem*, whence the Pilgrims first viewed the *Holy City*, and where these *Knights* lay in Garrison. a *Andr. Favin. Theat. d' Honneur. l. 9. c. 11.*
b *Fr. de Rades y Andrada en Chron. de Calatrava f. 38 a.*
c *Favin, loc. cit.*

They were employed in *Military Services*, for defence of that Castle and the *Holy Land*, against the *Saracens* and *Pagans*; and received for their Habit, short Mantles, and a *White Star*, with five rayes issuing out of it, fixt upon their breasts. Others say, the Habit of this Order was *White*, and the Badge thereof an Octogonal Cross *Red* (but this might haply be after they left the *Holy Land*, and settled in *Spain*.) They vowed Poverty, Chastity, and Obedience, and observed the Rule of St. Basil. d *Jos. Micheli en Tesoro milit. de Cavalleria. f. 36. b.*
e *And Mondo de Ord. milit. Diss. 1. Quass. 2. Sect. 8.*
f *Tesoro Milit. de Cavall. loc. cit.*
g *Mennen. de Delic. Equest. p. 85.*
h *Vide Fr. Rades y Andrada loc. citato.*
i *Equites de Monte Gaudin. k *Mennen. l. loc. cit.*
m *Fr. de Rades loc. cit.*
n *des. loc. cit.**

Pope Alexander the Third, by his Bull approved this Order, and changed their Rule to that of St. Augustine, in the year of our Lord 1180. In this Bull (remaining in the Archives of the Order of *Calatrava*) is mention made of several Towns and Castles, which these *Knights* held in the *Holy Land*, as also what they possessed in *Spain*.

After the loss of the *Holy Land*, these *Knights* retired into *Spain*, and fought against the *Moors*, and according to the several names of the places, where they resided, were they denominated, though the general Title was of Mount-Joy. In *Catalonia* and *Valentia*, they were called *Equites de Mongoia* (which is the same with *Mount-Joy*) but in *Castile* *Knights of Monfrac*, from a Castle so called in that Kingdom, it being their chief place of residence; and after when this Order was fallen into great decay, it was given unto Don Gonzalez, Master of the Order of *Calatrava*, by King Ferdinand the Saint, in the year of our Lord 1221.

by whose consent they were afterwards incorporated into the Order of *Calatrava*. Moreover in the Instrument, by which Alphonso the Ninth, King of *Castile*, gave the Lands to this Order, which the *Knights* took from the *Moors*, the Donation is thus, To you Don Rodrigo Gonzalez Master of Monfrac, of the Order of Mount-Joy. They were also called (saith Favin) *Equites de Truxillo*, or de *Truxillo*, from a City of that name, where they sometime resided; but this will appear by and by, to be a distinct Order, united afterward to the *Knights of Alcantara*. o *And. Mendo. loc. practato.*
p *Maestre de Monfrac de la Orden de Monte Gaudin. Fr. de Rades loc. cit.*
q *En le Theat. d' Honneur, loc. cit.*

Knights of St. John of Acon, or Acres.

(7.)

Under the Patronage of this Saint was this Order erected, but the Original, as to time, uncertain. The *Knights* thereof exercised all Duties of Charity towards those who went on Pilgrimage, to visit the *Holy Land*; and assumed the exercise of Arms, in imitation of the *Knights Hospitalars*, whence they became I amongst the Religious or Sacred Orders: They followed the Rule of St. *Augustine*, and according to *Favin* had a *black Habit* assigned them, upon which they wore a *White Cross Pattee*.

After the City of *Acon* was taken, they removed into *Spain*, and flourished in that Kingdom, in the Reign of *Alfonso* the *Astrologer*, King of *Castile*, about which time, Pope *Alexander* the Fourth approved the Order, under the common joined Title of St. *Thomas* and St. *John of Acon*. This King gave unto them by his Will, all the Furniture of his House, and very much Money, but afterward they by little and little decayed, until at length they were united with the *Knights Hospitalars*.

The Ensign of their Order (saith *Jos. Micheli Marquez*) was a *Red Cross* (y like to that of the Order of *Montesa*) in the middle whereof stood the Figures of St. *John*, and St. *Thomas*, which differs from what *Favin* hath before assigned; but perhaps the colour of the Cross was changed to Red, after their coming into *Spain*.

Knights of St. Thomas.

(8.)

There was another Order which (as may be collected from *Mennenius*, and *Jos. Micheli*) was distinct from the former, bearing the Title of St. *Thomas*; but *A. Mendo* supposeth, they were rather some of those which joined themselves to the *Knights Hospitalars*; and the rather, because they wore the same Habit with the *Knights of St. John of Acon*; they also made the same Professions, followed the same Rule, observed the same Constitutions, and were approved and confirmed by Pope *Alexander* the Fourth and Fifth, and *John* the 22. Their Badge was a || saltire gules, yet *Micheli* makes it the same with that of St. *John of Acon*, wanting the Figures in the middle. But *Andr. Favin* reports (though we meet with nothing in our *English* Histories to back him) that this Order was Instituted by our King *Richard* the First, after the surprisal of *Acon*, and that these *Knights* were of the *English* Nation; who wore a *White Habit*; and a *Red Cross*, charged in the middle with a *White Escallop*: and lastly, that they had for their Patron, St. *Thomas Becket*.

This gives us occasion to remember here, that we have some more Honor of this kind done our Nation by Strangers (if it can be called an Honor, to report those things of us, which want ground and authority from our own Histories and Chronicles to support them) viz. That *Henry of England* (which by the note of time afterwards mentioned, must be understood of our King *Henry* the Second) visiting the Holy places in *Jerusalem* (but we find not that he was ever there) being moved with a pious zeal, by the example of the *Knights of the Sepulchre*, instituted the Order of *Jesus Christ of the holy Sepulchre* in *England*, in the year of our Lord 1174. giving to the *Knights* thereof the same Rules, as had those of the *Holy Sepulchre* in *Jerusalem*; which Order (saith the same Author) was confirmed by Pope *Alexander* the Third, under the Rule of St. *Basil*. Howbeit after the Christians were driven out of the *Holy Land*, the *Knights* of this Order were joined to the *Knights Hospitalars*.

But we give the less credit to this formal account, because we find no mention made

r *Jos. Micheli*
en Tesoro milit.
de Cavalleria.
f. 61. a.
cavall. f. 61.
l. 2. p. 5.
f. in le Theatre
d' Honneur.
l. 9. c. 11.
t. 1. mil. de
Cavall. f. 61.
ex Hieron. Ro-
mano.
u *Mennen*. *Delic. Equest.* p. 84. A. *Mendo*
de Ord. milit. *Disq.* 1. Q. 2. Scil. 23.

w A. *Mendo*, loc. cit.

x La Insignia era una Cruz colorada lisa,
y en medio san Juan, y santo Tomas. Tesoro
militar. de Cavall. loc. cit.
y *Andr. Mendo*, loco super cit.

* *Delic. Equest.*
p. 84.
a Tesoro Milit.
de Cavall. fol.
61. b.
b De Ord. milit.
Disq. 1. Q. 2.
scil. 24.

h *Mennen*. *Delic.*
l. 9. c. 11.
p. 263.
c *Theat. d' Hon-*
neur, l. 9. c. 11.

d *Jos. Micheli*
en Tesoro mi-
lit. de Cavall.
f. 61.

made thereof in any of our *English* Writers or Records: Perhaps the Relator mistook them for the *Canons regular* (but not *Knights*) of the *Holy Sepulchre*, who about that time lived amongst us, and of whom the *Antiquities of Warwick-shire* c. Page. 362. give some account.

Knights of St. Blase.

(9.)

These were called also *Knights de sancta Maria*, and founded under the Rule of St. Basil. They were Officers and Servants to the Kings of *Armenia*, and had assigned them for their Habit *skie-colour*, with a *Cross gold*, worn before their breasts. Others say a *Red Cross*, and in the middle thereof the Picture of St. Blase their Patron.

This Order was at the height, when the *Armenian* Kings, of the House of *Luzignan*, kept their Court in the City of *Acon*.

¹ Knights of the Martyrs in Palestine.

(10.)

By the pious affection of some Noblemen, there was erected in the Holy Land an *Hospital* dedicated to the holy Martyrs St. Cosmas, and St. Damianus, where all acts of charity were exercised towards sick strangers. Their profession also obliged them to other works of mercy towards the poor, to redeem Captives taken by the *Saracens*, and to bury the dead.

These *Knights* followed the Rule of St. Basil, which was confirmed to them by Pope John the 22. They wore for the Badge of their Order, a *Red Cross*; and in the middle thereof, within a Circle, the Figures of the Saints *Cosmas* and *Damianus* were described.

² *Mennenius* informs us, that *Hieron. Romanus* had seen some of these *Knights* wearing for their chief Ensign a *Red Cross*; and professing the Rule of St. Augustine; which perhaps was so changed when they retired into *Enrope*.

Knights of St. Katharine at Mount Sinai.

(11.)

This Order received its Institution, saith ³ *Jos. Micheli*, in the Year of our Lord 1063. under the Title and Patronage of St. Katharine, whose body is reported to be deposited in Mount Sinai, and the high Altar in the Church of the Monastery, there (dedicated to her name) erected near to the place where she was interred.

The end for which these *Knights* were at first Instituted, and the sum of their profession, was to guard and keep safe the Sepulchre of St. Katharine, to secure the ways for Travellers, to defend and protect the *Græcian* Pilgrims, who came thither for devotions sake, and to relieve and entertain them with convenient Hospitality.

Their Habit was *White*, and they lived under the Rule of St. Basil the Great; making their Vows of conjugal chastity and obedience to the Abbot of this Monastery, who was their Superiour or Master.

But when those Countries fell into the hands of the *Turks*, the *Knights* of this Order were ill entreated and driven away, and the Order it self almost abolished. Nevertheless, some shadow thereof does still continue; for such as travel to visit the *Holy Sepulchre* at *Jerusalem*, do now and then likewise pass to this Monastery at Mount Sinai; where (in imitation of the *Padre Guardian* of *Jerusalem*) the principal of the Monks of this Convent, makes them *Knights* of the Order of St. Katharine; the Ceremony being performed upon her Sepulchre or Tomb; and the same Questions and Formulary are here used, as are accustomed at the *Holy Sepulchre* in *Jerusalem*.

¹ *Mennen. Delic. Equestr. p. 84.*
² *Jos. Mich. Tesoro milit. de Cavalleria. fo. 77. b.*
³ *Fav. Theat. d'Hon. l. 9. c. 11.*
⁴ *Tesoro milit. de Caval. loc. cit.*
⁵ *Fav. loc. cit.*
⁶ *Cavalleros de los Martires en Palestina y Jerusalem. Tesoro milit. de Cavall. f. 53. a.*
⁷ *Ordo Pannonicus 38. Martyrum. Mennen. p. 84.*
⁸ *Ibid. vide n. scilicet.*
⁹ *And. Mendo de Ord. Milit. Disq. 1. Quæst. 2. Selt. 17.*
¹⁰ *Mendo ut supra.*
¹¹ *Delic. Equestr. p. 84. 85.*

¹² *In Tesoro milit. de Cavalleria. f. 18. b.*
¹³ *Fav. Theat. d'Hon. l. 9. c. 10.*

¹⁴ *A. Mendo de Ord. Milit. Disq. 1. Quæst. 2. Selt. 5.*

¹⁵ *A. Miram in Orig. Ord. Equestr. p. 56.*

¹⁶ *Mendo, loc. cit.*

¹⁷ *Fav. loc. supra citato.*

These

These *Knights* do now wear * upon the left side of their *White Habit*, the *Cross* of *Jerusalem*, and Instrument of *St. Katharines* Martyrdom, which I have caused

z *Et in mediam rubei coloris Rotam Gladii transfixo pro insignibus præferre. Menn. p. 49.*

Ac in pectore dimidium Rotæ rubræ, quam Ensis intæsecabat, Mendo loco præcitato.

to be engraven, after the form of that Badge bestowed upon *Andr. Favin*, by *Mesiere Claude Daubray*, a *Knight* both of the *Holy Sepulchre*, and of *St. Katharine*: but according to others, the z middle of the *Wheel* is pierced with a *Sword*.

The Order of Knights of St. Anthony in Æthiopia.

(12.)

a *MS. p. 62*
b *nes Joh. Knight Ar. Principal. Chirurg. Reg. Car. Secund. vide etiam Jos. Micheli in Tes. milit. de Caval. fol. 10. a. f. o. b. Cy Mendo Disq. 1. 2. q. 8. f. 2. Sess. 2. n. 20.*

a Shortly after the death of *St. Anthony* the Hermite, (which fell out about the years of our Lord 357. or 358.) many of his Disciples remaining in *Thebais* (a Country bordering upon *Æthiopia*) followed the Example, Rule, and manner of life which he had left them: and both they and their Successors lived for some time in great austerity and solitariness in the Desert, and therefore called *Anchorites*, until they were at length reduced to a more convenient and rational life, by submitting to the monastical Rule of *St. Basil*, and cohabiting in Monasteries, but still under the Title and Habit of *St. Anthony*.

c *Menn. Delic. Eques. p. 177.*

d *Jos. Micheli Tes. milit. de Caval. fol. 10. a. f. o. b. Cy Mendo Disq. 1. 2. q. 8. f. 2. Sess. 2. n. 20.*

It is said, that about the year of our Lord 370. *John* Emperor of *Æthiopia* (commonly called *Prester John*) erected these Monks into a Religious Order of Knighthood, under the Title and Protection of *St. Anthony*, Patron of his Empire; and bestowed upon them great Revenues and many Priviledges. And being thus instituted *Knights*, they received the aforesaid Rule of *St. Basil*, and submitted to his Constitutions. The Habit of the Order is Black, and the Cross, Blue; much like the form of the Latine Letter T, but not like either the *Samaritan* or *Hebrew* Letter Tau, (which some say is like a Cross) for the fashion and shape of either hath no likeness or similitude to a Cross at all, as hath been observed by the Learned *Joseph Scaliger*.

g *Animadu. in Chron. Euseb. p. 109.*
h *Ex MS. i. penes eund. k. Jo. Knight, Cy Tesoro milit. de Caval. fol. 11. a.*

The chief Seat of this Order is in the Isle of *Merroe*, where the Abbots both spiritual and temporal have their residence; but in other parts of *Æthiopia* they have a very great number of Convents and Monasteries, and not less than two Millions of annual Revenue.

The eldest Sons of Noblemen and Gentlemen cannot be admitted into this Order, but the second Sons may; and if a man have three Sons, he is bound to assign one of them to be of the Order; from which Law none are exempt but Physicians.

l *Tesoro milit. de Caval. fol. 11. a.*

The effect of the Vow and Profession which these *Knights* make, is to observe conjugal chastity, to dye in defence of the Christian Faith, to guard the Confines of the Empire, to yield obedience to their natural Laws, and their Superiors, and to go to War, whensoever and wheresoever they are commanded. Moreover they take an Oath before the spiritual Abbot, not to fight in Wars between *Christians*, nor to receive any holy Orders, or to marry without express Licence first obtained.

m *Ibid. fol. n. 10. a.*

There are in this Order, two sorts of *Knights*; the one employed in the Wars, the other being old, are exempted from Military services, and retire themselves under the Title and Profession of *Monks*, to the Abbies where first they took their Habit. Of these there can be no more but five and twenty in one Abbey (albeit while they remain *Military Knights* they have no certain number) out of whom the most ancient in the Habit is chosen Abbot, by the voices of his Fellows, and called the *Spiritual Abbot*.

The Novices are taken in about sixteen or seventeen years of age, and employed nine years in the Wars; to wit, three years in the Garrisons about the *Red Sea*, against the *Arabian Pirates*; other three years in the Isle of *Merroe*, against the incursions of the *Turks*; and the last three years upon the Borders of *Borno*, a neighbour Kingdom of the *Moors*.

These nine years being compleated, they obtain Letters from their last Captain, testifying the fulfilling those years in the Wars, with honor and worthiness; wherewith

wherewith the great *Abbot* being made acquainted, he directs his Letters to the *Abbot*, where they are to receive their *Habit*, to give them admittance accordingly. But in case the Certificate of life and services be not sufficient (which seldom happens) their admission is prolonged to a further time.

When they come to be admitted into their *Abbey*, they are introduced in their military *Habit*, of which being disrobed, and the religious *Habit* put on, to wit, a *Black Gown* reaching down to the ground, lined with *Blue* (described p. Ibid. fo. 11. a.) to be a Garment made with many Plaits in the neck, and large sleeves, such as the *Basilians* wear) having a *Blue Cross* fixed to the Breast, and over that a *Black Cowle*, they then are led to the Church, and before the Altar make their Profession.

^a *Philip* the Seventh of that Name, Son to the Founder, very much increased q. Fol. 10. b. their Lands and Privileges; and gave command that the Badge of the *Blue Cross* should be bordered with Gold, which is observed at this day.

Such as are inquisitive after a further Account of this Order in *Ethiopia*, may receive it from the afore-cited Author *Jos. Micheli Marquez*, who is very large and particular upon this Subject.

In ^r *Italy*, *France*, and *Spain*, there are a sort of Monks that from ^r some have the Title of *Knights* of *St. Anthony*; these were commanded to observe the Rule of ^r *St. Augustine* by Pope *Boniface* the Eighth, and appointed to wear a plain *Blue Cross* like that in *Ethiopia*; the Principals of these (according to ^r *Favin*) wear a double *St. Antonies Cross* of *Blue Satin*, the one above the other, but the rest of them, only a single *Cross*. r. Fol. 14. b. f. Et quamvis gladio minime accinguntur, Equitum tamen numero confertur. Mennen. p. 176. t. Fl. Cherub. in Compend. Bullar. Tom. 1. p. 35. Conf. 5. u. f. Isle Theat. w. d. Honn. 1. 8. c. 1. x. Comp. Bullar. l. 60. cit. y. Baron. Annal. Eccl. Tom. 11. Col. mibi 642. sub anno 1084. z. Compend. Bull. Tom. 1. p. 107. Conf. 2. b. In Orig. Ord. Equest. p. 45. c. Annal. Eccles. Tom. 11. col. 694. sub anno 1095. d. In vita Urbin. 2. l. 1. p. 354

Their chief Seat is at ^r *Vienna* in *Daulphine*, of which place the General of the Order beareth the Title of *Abbot*, the Monastery there having been erected into an ^r *Abbey*, by the said Pope *Boniface*, anno 1297. in honor of *St. Anthony*, whose body is reported to have been translated thither from *Constantinople*: and all other places, built in honor of his name, were made subject to this *Abbot* by Pope ^r *Clement* the Seventh, anno 1523. ^b *Aub. Miræus* takes notice of this Order, calling it the Order of *Hospitalars* of *St. Anthony*, and to have taken beginning in *France*, in the year 1121. from one *Gaston*, a Nobleman of *Vienna*. But ^r *Baronius* saith it was in the year 1095. that this *Gaston* with his Son *Gerin*, taking eight other persons to them, instituted this Order; who before they took upon them the *Habit* of Religion, assumed to themselves, the Letter *Thau*, for the Badge or *Ensign* of their Order. Yet ^d *Alfonsus Ciaconius*, makes this Order more ancient, affirming that *Gaston* and *Guind* (whom *Baronius* calls *Gerin*) instituted it before the year of our Lord 1092.

The Order of the Constantinian Angelick Knights of St. George, in Greece, but now in Italy.

(13.)

We shall be somewhat large in the account of this Order, because we have met with little of it besides what is delivered by *Joseph Micheli Marquez* a Spanish Writer, in his *Tesoro Militar de Cavalleria* (from whom *And. Mendo* hath collected all he saith of it) as also for that it appears he was *Vice-Chancellor* thereof, which makes us presume, he might be enabled to give a fuller and more particular account of it to the world than others; and to say truth, the History of it, set down by him, is large enough.

Nor do we call in question the authority of his attestations, from the time of *Angelus Flavius Comnenus*, and the Confirmation given this Order by Pope *Leo* the First, under the Rule of *St. Basil*, which perhaps should be understood, as they were *Monks*, rather than *Knights*.

But our Author not content with an original of that Age, which if granted to him, will make this Institution elder than either the *Knights* of the *Sepulchre*, *Hospitalars*, or *Templars*, and consequently high enough, to be one of the first military Orders in *Christendom*; must needs derive a formal Institution, Rules, and Laws from *Constantine the Great*, and vouch for it an *Inscription* (not mentioned by

by any other) in the Capitol at Rome. From which account of his, though it appears little better than a fabulous story, grounded, at best, upon some uncertain Tradition, and in several things smelling of novelty, we shall nevertheless extract what is most material to our purpose.

c In Tesoro Mil.
li. de Caval.
fol. 1. b.
Vide etiam
Crescenzi del
suo Presidio
Romano. part.
2. l. 1.
f. Fol. 2. b.

This ancient, and (as our Author calls it) the first Military Order in *Christendom*, took beginning from the Emperor *Constantine the Great*, and from him was entituled, the *Military Order of Constantine the Emperor*.

g Lib. 1. c. 22.

It was called also *Angelical*, because the Cross with this Inscription, *In hoc signo vinces*, was shewed from Heaven to that Emperor by an Angel; and thence, they of the Family descended from him (among whom were the Great *Masters of the Order*) took the name *de Angelis*.

* Cap. 25.

i Cap. 24.

|| Lib. 4. c. 21.

As to the description of this Cross and the form thereof, *Eusebius* may be consulted, who in the Life of *Constantine*, not only affirms, that this Emperor himself vouched the truth of this Miracle to him with an Oath, but * describes the Figure thereof, which the Emperor gave directions to be made of Gold and precious Stones, according to the Pattern he had seen in the Skie, and thenceforward caused the || Figure of this Cross to be carried before his Army, instead of the golden Standard, formerly used, and to be engraven upon the Armour of the Legionary Soldiers.

k Lib. 1. c. 33.

He also reports, that upon *Constantine's* triumphal entrance into Rome, after his Victory over *Maxentius*, he erected many Crosses with Inscriptions, to indear the Sign thereof, into all mens affections; and amongst the rest, commanded his own Statue to be placed in the chiefest part of the City, holding a Banner of the Cross with the following Inscription, engraven below it.

HOC SALVTARI SIGNO, VERO FORTITVDINIS
INDICIO, CIVITATEM VESTRAM TYRANNIDIS
IUGO LIBERAVI. ET S.P.Q.R. IN LIBERTATEM
VINDICANS, PRISTINÆ AMPLITVDINI,
ET SPLENDORI RESTITVI.

l J. f. Micheli
Marquez en
Tesoro mil. de
Caval fol. 3.

This Order had also the Epithet *Golden* adjoin'd, because, that instead of the Collar of Gold, which the ancient Emperors his Predecessors used to give in reward of Virtue, and military Service, this Emperor gave a Collar of Gold, composed of these three Characters *ΑΧΑ*, at which was fastned a Cross, like that which appeared to him, and thereunto the Image of *St. George*; to confirm which (saith our Author) there is to be seen (but we much doubt) in the Capitol at Rome, a Marble, whereon are armed Knights engraven, and an Inscription speaking thus,

Constantine the Great, Emperor, after he was cleansed of his Leprosie, by the means of sacred Baptism; thus created Golden Knights, with the Cross for defence of the Christian name.

m Fol. 79. b.

He further informs us, that *Constantine* elected fifty illustrious Grandees of his Empire, to be *Knights* of this Order, to whom he gave the Standard of the *Labarum* and likewise a Collar of Gold, to which the Figure of the *Labarum*, and a Cross were dependant, together with several Constitutions and Laws; and that he instituted this Order, with the consent and approbation of Pope *Sylvester*.

n Fol. 2. b.

o Fol. 4.

As also, that it was confirmed by Pope *Leo the First*, whose Bull for assigning to the Knights thereof, the Rule of *St. Basil*, dated the 20. of July anno Domini 456. (Prince *Alexius Angelus* being then Great Master) he transcribes at large.

p Fol. 3. a.

That it received further confirmation and approbation, from the Popes *Julius the Third*, *Calixtus the Third*, *Pius the Second*, *Sixtus the Fourth*, *Innocent the Eighth*, *Paul the Third*, *Sixtus the Fifth*, *Clement the Eighth*, *Pius the Fifth*, *Gregory the Fifteenth*, and *Urban the Eighth*. And whilst it flourished in Greece, was confirmed and augmented with large Priviledges by divers succeeding *Grecian* Emperors, namely *Leo the First*, *Isaac Angelus anno Dom. 1191.* whose Diploma this Author also gives us, dated the 13. of Sept. in the year aforesaid; and of his

q Fol. 80. a.

Empire

Empire the Seventh, by *Michael Paleologus* anno 1294. by *Isaac Angelus* anno 1295. ¶ Fol. 3. b.
and lastly, by *Ferdinand* the Second, Emperor of Germany, at *Ratisbone*, anno 1630. who recommended to his *Catholique Majesty*, the restoration of this Order, because those who had been Great Masters thereof, were allied to him, and of the Family of *Angelus Flavius Comnenus*; which recommendation was sent to that King, by the then Great Master *Don John Andrea Angelo Flavio Commeno*.

The Great Masters of this Order, have their chief Seat and Convent now at *Briançon*, a Town nigh to *Venice*, the Dignity yet continuing in the Line of *Angelo Flavio Commeno*; howbeit among the Priviledges granted by the Emperor *Isaac Angelus*, one is, ^c That if the Family of *Angelus Flavius Comnenus* should be extinguished, the ^c Collared Knights may elect from among themselves a Great Master. ¶ Fol. 80. b.

Among the many Prerogatives granted to this Order, by the Imperial Priviledges and Papal Bulls, we shall mention a few, by which may be understood, something of the grandeur thereof; to wit, that the Great Masters are ^a *Commensales Pontificum*, and have the priviledge of sitting at the Table with the Pope, by whom they are defended and supported, as Benefactors to the Church, and Founders of the *Lateran Cathedral* in *Rome*. They are persons of great note and authority, in that they are subject to no Prince, and therefore have the power of coining Money. They give titles of Counts, Princes, and such others, and of Reverend to their own Fraternity. They have also the faculty of restoring to Honors, of legitimating Bastards, of giving Degrees with the Title of Doctors, creating Poet Laureats, and making publick Notaries. ¶ Fol. 3. b.

This Order is under the protection of the *Blessed Virgin*, and patronage of *St. George*, the titular Saint and Guardian of military men in general, and of these *Knights* in particular, who profess obedience, and conjugal Chastity. ¶ Fol. 6. d.

The Formulary prescribed for entrance into the Order, the manner of receiving the Habit, taking the Oath, the benediction of the Mantle, Cross, and Sword, the admittance of the *Knights*, *Priests*, and *Novices*, are at large laid down by this ^{*} Author.

The Habit of this Angelick Order is ^a White, on the left side whereof is sewed ^a Red or Crimson Velvet Cross Flory, in the middle is the *Labarum* imbroidered after the form of the Letter X, with the Letters A upon the one arm of the Cross, and *o* on the other: the sides are wrought with Gold and Silk, but the *Labarum* all with Gold. ¶ 2 fol. 3. u. q. 3. ad 10. 2 fol. 3. b. c. 5. Mendo de Ord. militi. Dissq. 1. Quest. 2. sect. 1. m. 17.

Amongst these *Knights* there are three Degrees, the ^c first are called *Collared*, or *Grand Crosses*; these wear a Collar, formed of *Labarums*, whereat depends the Figure of the Cross, and *St. George*: The second are the *Knights*, and these wear the Cross as is above described: The third are *servants*, and they bear the Cross, only wanting the upper arm of it, and the *Labarum*. ¶ Testor. milit. de Cavall. fol. 3. b.

The *Priests* wear the like Cross with the *Knights*.

The ^a Grand Priorates and Promotions, or *Commanderies*, belonging to this Order, shew how great it hath been, and how far its jurisdiction extended; since to them were joined very great Revenues and Rents which the *Knights* of this Order held, and they were these (saith mine Author) though I suppose divers of them are miswritten. The grand *Priorates* of *Mistra*, and of *Bosnia*, of *Cappadocia*, *Calcede*, *Naples*, *Antiochia*, *Constantinople*, *Jerusalem*, *Natolia*, *Julia Casaria*, and the *Priories* of *Barlada*, *Sciome*, *Anfiboli*, *Damascus*, *Mileto*, *Pergamo*, *Sinope*, *Ephesus*, *Argo*, *Odeso*, *Egena*, *Nicepoli*, *Corinthus*, *Nicomedia*, *Apollonia*, *Erapoli*, *Engada*, together with several *Baliato's* or *Balivicks*. ¶ Ibid. f. 80. 2 fol. 8. 21.

The ^c Bulls and Priviledges are to be seen in the Constitutions of the Order, published by the eloquent and learned Knight *Majolini Bisachioni*, grand Prior of *Bosnia*, Earl of *Galicia*, great Chancellor and Administrator of the Order; as also in *Malvezzi*, and other Authors, *Knights* of this Order.

To conclude, this Author gives a Catalogue of the Names of 34 Great Masters ¶ Fol. 80. (whom he affirms were all true descendants of the Family of *Angelus Flavius Comnenus*) beginning with *Constantine* the Great, but between him and *Alexius Angelus Flavius* (whom he reckons to be the third Great Master, and who was he that drew all the *Knights* into a Fraternity) is doubtless a very great Chasm: As to

others, either the chain of succession is broken in several places, or the Order hath suffered some discontinuance.

Knights of the Order of St. James in Galicia.

(14.)

There were several Orders of Knighthood, to which the Spanish piety gave a being, protection, and support, and amongst them that of St. James the Apostle, (commonly called *Sanctiago*) was the first and principal.

There are some^a Spanish Writers (reckoned up by *Franciscus Mennenius*) that say this Order took beginning in the time of *Don Ramiro* King of *Leon*, who began his Reign in the year of our Lord^b 821. and at the Battel of *Clavijo*, or *Clavivide* Flav. Ch. 870, anno^c 826. (or as some say anno^d 837.) against the *Moors*, did by the assistance of St. James the Apostle (said to have then appeared upon a white Horse, bearing a Banner with a Red Cross upon it) gain a mighty Victory over an innumerable multitude of them; whereupon in all Battels thenceforth his patronage was implor'd.

That this was the occasion of the Orders Foundation, is not believed or approved of by all, as may be collected from *Johannes Mariana*, *Franc. Alphon. Venerius*, and others of that Country, some of them placing the Institution thereof about the year 1160, and some others upon a clear mistake, confounding the time of Institution, with that Confirmation, by Pope *Alexander* the Third, anno 1175. in which the first rule of living is prescribed to the *Knights* of this Order.

But though there be no certainty, that this Order was instituted, in memory of the appearance of St. James, after the manner before related, and in the Reign of *Don Ramiro*; yet, that there was a Fraternity or Military Order in Spain under that Title, at least^b 145 years before Pope *Alexander* gave his Confirmation, (though how much elder is hitherto not known) is a thing out of all dispute. For it evidently appears, from the original Priviledge granted to the Nuns of the Monastery of St. *Esprit* in *Salamanca*, dated the 15. of Nov. anno Dom. 1030. under the royal hand of *Don Fernando* the First, who began his Reign anno Dom. 1017. and is therein stiled King of *Castile*, *Leon*, *Galicia*, *Portugal*, and Lord of *Biscay* (for in his time were the Kingdoms of *Castile* and *Leon* first united) that there was then in being a Fraternity and Order of Knights or *Comendadores*, as also a Superior, bearing the Title of^k Master and Governor thereof, and that these Knights had then also Castles, Lands, Rents, and Possessions to support them; for of all these is there express mention made in that Grant.

Moreover in an ancient^l Original of a very old Letter, written long before they received any Rule or Form of Religion, and pen'd in corrupt and barbarous Latine, which contains certain Rules and Orders to be observed by them, as also mulcts and forfeitures, for neglects and offences therein set down; they are called^m Brothers of the Fraternity of St. James.

And albeit the *Knights* of this Order did atⁿ first dispose themselves to virtuous courses, and valiantly encountred the *Moors*, Enemies to the Cross of *Christ*, that being the chief end of their Foundation; yet in tract of time, they fell from the honor of their first Institution, and grew so strangely debauch'd, and gave so great occasion of scandal, that the Order was thereby so much perverted,

ed, as it could scarce be accounted an Order.

But afterwards the *Knights* (being by the divine goodness reclaimed) grew desirous to be reduced to a better life, and to submit themselves to regularity and order, and upon^o Cardinal *Jacinta's* arrival in Spain, and their application to him, he (as much as in him lay) first confirmed their Order, in the year of our Lord^p 1170, under the Rule of St. *Augustine*, and upon his return to *Rome*, ^q *Fernando* de *Fuente Encalada*, and others, *Knights* and *Canons* of this Order, attended him

^a *Lucas Tuden-*

^b *Jo. Vafew.*

^c *Diego Valera.*

^d *Ant. Morales.*

^e *Flav. Ch. 870.*

^f *rub. in Schol.*

^g *ad Constitut. 30. Gregor. 13. Schol. 2.*

^h *Francisc. de Rades y Andrada en Chron.*

ⁱ *Sanctiago. fo. 4. b. & fo. 5.*

^j *Heyl. Cosmog. l. 1. p. 220.*

^k *d. S. Maurilio in Oceano Religio. p. 209.*

^l *c. Schivene Cavall. Blanco, y con una Cruz colorada por fenna. Rades in Chron. hujus*

^m *Ordin. fol. 5. a.*

ⁿ *Sanctiago Sanctiago. Ibid.*

^h *La Regla y e-*

ⁱ *stablecimientos*

^j *de la Cavalle-*

^k *ria de Sancti-*

^l *ago del Espada.*

^m *Ibid. fol. 3. b.*

ⁿ *vide Fr. de Ra-*

^o *des en Chron.*

^p *Sanctiago. fol.*

^q *3. b.*

^r *k El Maestre y*

^s *Governador*

^t *de la Orden,*

^u *Ibid.*

^v *l Que adhuc*

^w *asseruatur in*

^x *archivo de*

^y *Ucles.*

^z *m Confrades*

^{aa} *de la Confr-*

^{ab} *adia de Sancte*

^{ac} *Jacobo. Rades*

^{ad} *en Chron. San-*

^{ae} *ctiago. f. 5. a. vide Fr. Caro de Torres*

^{af} *en Hist. de las Ord. milit. fo. 1. b.*

^{ag} *n Franc. de Rades y Andrada, en Chron.*

^{ah} *de Sanctiago. fo. 4. b.*

^{ai} *o La Regla y e-*

^{aj} *stablecimientos*

^{ak} *de la Cavalle-*

^{al} *ria de Sancti-*

^{am} *ago. fo. 4. b.*

^{an} *p Alphon. Ciaccon.*

^{ao} *i. l. v. a. Alex. 3.*

^{ap} *l. 1. p. 460.*

^{aq} *o La Regla,*

^{ar} *&c. loccit.*

him thither, whom he presented to Pope Alexander the Third, and from him obtained approbation and confirmation. He also received this Order under the protection of the Papal See, prescribed to these Knights, the Rule and manner of living, the form of holding Chapters, of electing their Master, of the Treasurers, and thirteen Comendadores of Houses, and of the Visitors; In brief, this Bull gives them very large Privileges, is fitted with exceeding good Precepts and Laws, both for Government and Conservation of the Order, and bears date the 13. of July anno Dom. 1175. which hapned in the beginning of the Reigns of Don Alonso the Ninth, King of Castile, of Don Fernando the Second, King of Leon, and Don Alonso the Second, King of Aragon. And hereupon (saith ^rFrancisco de Rades y Andrada) do some of the Chronicles of Spain, call this an Institution (which was indeed but a Restauration) because the Knights of that time were the first that entered into the Vow of Obedience, poverty of Spirit, and Conjugal Chastity; wherein consisted the substance of this Religious Order.

It being observed out of the Confirmation, that Pope Alexander the Third, had (among other things) granted to these Knights, the Monastery of Saint Loyo, situate in Galicia near Santiago, and that the Prior and Canons thereof, (being Regulars of St. Augustine) were thereby incorporated to the Knights of this Order; it is thence concluded, that this Order was rather founded in the Kingdom of Galicia than Leon.

And though it appears by King Don Fernando's Privileges to the Monastery of St. Esprit, that there was in ancient time, a Master of this Order, yet is no notice taken either of him, or any of his Successors, till after Pope Alexander's Confirmation, and then Don Pedro Fernandez de Fuente Encalada (Encalada being a place in the Diocess of Astorga) is reckoned the first, in the Catalogue of Masters.

At the beginning, the Knights of this Order were employed to assist the Canons Regular of Saint Loyo, who had built Hospitals (the first of which was that of St. Mark in the Suburbs of Leon) for the relief of Pilgrims who daily resorted from all parts to visit the shrine of St. James of Compostella; and to guard the high ways, frequented by the concourse of them, against the infolencies of the Moors, and Robbers of Spain.

The Ensign of this Order, is a Cross, (which the Knights wore upon their Breasts) finishing like the blade of a Sword, the Hilt crosstet, and fashioned after the ancient manner; whereupon it was called La Orden de Santiago de la Espada, as also Ordo militaris Sancti Jacobi Ensigneri, à qualitate insignium. And the reason why this Ensign is always painted Red, rather than any other colour; is thus given by Don Rodrigo Ximenes, Arch-Bishop of Toledo.

Rubet ensis sanguine Arabum.

But these Knights assumed not only the Sword in form of a Cross, but also the Symbol of St. James, which though it cannot be directly determined (saith Rades y Andrada) what it is, yet it seems to be the Escallop shell: For that the Escallop is generally among the Spaniards taken for the Badge of St. James, and worn by Pilgrims, in their Voyages to his Sepulchre at Compostella (the place where his body was found about the year of Christ 800.) the day of whose Translation is the 30. of December. And in all the ancient Seals of the Order, as well of the Masters, as of the Convent, there is to be seen an Escallop shell, placed under the handle of the Sword, at the closing thereof to the Hilt.

But it seems the honor of the Escallop is such, that the use thereof is not permitted to all; for by a Bull of Pope Alexander the Fourth, among other things, it is ordained, that none of this Order shall wear the Escallop shell for Ensign, but such Knights, Priests, and Nuns as are nobly descended.

In the year of our Lord 1560. King Philip the Second declared, (that the Knights of this Order might wear an Escallop shell (hanging in a Chain of Gold, not a Ribbon or Cordon) made of Gold or Silver, as big as a piece of Eight, but not of Chrystal, or any Stone of what kind soever; and wearing this, they were permitted the use of a Coat, without

La Regla de Santiago. f. 9.

En Chron.

Santiago, loco

pred.

La Regla y

Establec. de

Santiago. fo.

1. b. 6. f. 5. b.

u Lodium.

Fr. de Ra-

des en Chronic.

Santiago fol.

6. b. vide Cas-

tan. in Catalog.

gloria mundi

part 9. Confid.

7. Marian. de

reb. Hispan. l.

11. c. 13.

Idem de Ra-

des fo. 6. a. 6.

11. b. Item Fr.

Caro de Torres

in Histor. de

las Ordin. mi-

litares. f. 10. b.

La Regla de

Santiago.

fol. 16. b.

2. Aub. Mireus

de Orig. Ord.

Equest. p. 23.

Favin. in le

Theat. d' Hon-

neur. l. 6. c. 5.

a Chron. de

Sancti Jacobi

p. 1. b. 6. p. 6. b.

En Senal es la

Espada Raza,

que el vulgo

Llama Lagar-

to. Lancerote

en Nobleza

del Andaluzia.

l. 1. c. 32.

Historia de

las Ordenes Mi-

litares, per Fr.

Caro de Torres.

l. 1. p. 9. b.

d Compend.

Bull. Tom. 1.

p. 7. Const. 5.

Schola. videsis

Ciacom. de vit.

Pontif. l. 1.

p. 469.

En su Cbra-

nica. l. 17.

f En Chronic. de Santiago. fo. 6. b.

g Veneres, qui in Hispania pro Tesserâ D. Jacobi semper est habita. Mennen. De-lic. Equell. p. 97.

Las Veneros son insignias del Apostol. Lan- cerote. loc. cit.

* Jo. Mariana de reb. Hispan. l. 7. c. 10. pag. 328.

h La Regla de Santiago. fo. 72. b.

i Fr. de Rades en Chron. de Santiago.

k l fol. 7. a.

l La Regla de Santiago. fo. 74. b.

the Badge of the Order, nevertheless their upper Robe or Mantle, was not to be worn without it.

The *Habit* of these *Knights* is a ^m *White Mantle* of Cloth or Serge, close before, on the breast whereof is set a *Cross* of Cloth or Sattin, in the form before described. The Figure of which *Habit*, adorning a *Knight* of this Order, is to be seen in ⁿ *Jurisprudencia Heroica*. This *Cross* made of ^o Silk or Cloth, they are obliged to wear upon their Garments, Coats, or Cloaks, though they use *Crosses* of Gold like ^o *Crosses*.

When the *Moors* were driven out of *Spain*, the principal end for which this Order with those of *Calatrava* and *Alcantara*, were instituted, ceased; and thereupon it came to be considered, how the *Administration* of these Orders might be placed in the Crown of *Castile*.

Upon the death therefore of *Don Rodrigo Manrique* (elected Master at *Vcles* in ^f *Pr. de Rades* Competitor to *Don Alonso de Cardenas*, elected Master at *Leon*) ^y *Isabella* came to the *Covent* of *Vcler* (whither *Don Alonso* had drawn a considerable power, to force his Election there also) and commanded to assemble all the *Knights* of this Order, that then were thereabouts) upon whose appearance she told them, 'That in regard the *Knights* of this Order, had many Fortresses upon the Frontiers, for which reason her Predecessors had in former times taken the *Administration* of this Order upon themselves, and given it to their Sons; upon great deliberation therefore was it thought fit, that the King *Don Fernando* her Husband should now be *Administrator*; and intimating, that a desire was sent to the Pope for a Grant thereof, she commanded them to surcease in their Election, to which all the *Trezes* submitted.

Afterwards, the King had the *Mastership* of this Order, under the Title of *Administrator* granted him by the Pope, nevertheless finding that *Don Alonso de Cardenas* had been very faithful to him, and greatly deserving, he waved the Papal Grant, and gave leave for a new Election; whereupon *Don Alonso* was elected a second time, in the year 1477.

But ^w *anno Dom. 1499.* the *Mastership* of this Order becoming again vacant, by the death of this *Don Alonso*, King *Ferdinando* and *Isabella* obtained another Bull from Pope *Alexander* the Sixth, to hold the *Administration* thereof during their lives: After their death, *Charles* the Fifth succeeding, obtained a ^x Grant from Pope *Adrian* the Sixth, whereby the perpetuity of the *Mastership* (together with those others of *Calatrava* and *Alcantara*) became annexed to the Crowns of *Castile* and *Leon*, and thereunto in most ample manner were transferred all Rights, &c. which the *Masters* of those Orders did formerly enjoy or exercise. Since which time the Kings of *Spain* have enjoyed the *Administration* of this Order, and carried that title and stile in the Inscription upon the Great Seal thereof, which holds the *Royal Arms* of *Spain*, upon a *Cross* that filleth all the Shield, with a *Sword* at each of the four Corners.

Philip the Third, King of *Spain*, called a Chapter of this Order in *Madrid*, the 16. of April, anno 1600. which ended the 30. of November following. In which it was ordained, that the Book intituled *La Regla y Establecimientos de la Cavalleria de Santiago del Espada*, &c. should be printed. This Book contains the Institutions, whereby the *Knights* of the Order are to be governed, together with all the Statutes, Laws, Rules, and Ceremonies, appertaining thereunto, and now in use; and at this Chapter, many of the former Laws were abolished, others amended, and some new added.

The Order of Knights of St. Saviour in Aragon.

(15.)

^a *Mennen. De-
lic. Equit. p. 85*

About the year of our Lord ^a 1118. was this Order erected by *Don Alphons* (called Emperor of *Spain*, King of *Navarr*, *Aragon*, *Leon*, *Castile*, and *Toledo*) who chose out of those *Spanish* and *French* Nobility, that assisted him in his Wars against the *Moors*, a certain number whereof he formed this Society; and to the

in *Wid. f. 72. b.*
vide etiam *Fr.
de Rades*, in
*Chronie hujus
Ordinis. f. 6. b.*
n *Pag. 521.*
o *Regla de
Santiago loc.
cit. c. 1. p. 4. a.*

^f *Pr. de Rades*
^y *Andrada en
su Chronic.*
Santiago. f.
69. a.

^t *F. l. 82. b.*

^u *Fol. 70. a.*

^w *Fol. 73. a.*

^x *Que Bulla
incipit, Cum
intra nostrae
mentis arca-
na, &c. Et est
prima inter
Constitutiones
Adriani 6. ex-
peditaq; fuit
anno 1522. &
effertur in Ju-
risprudencia
Heroica. p. 514.*
^y *Fr. de Ra-
des en Chronic.
de Santiago.
fo. 10. b.*

the end he might be the better enabled to drive the *Moors* out of *Saragosa*, and the whole Territory of *Aragon*, he engaged them by this Honor, to pursue the War against them to the utmost of their power.

^a *Favin* seems to place the Institution of this Order to the year 1120. but ^b that ^c *Thien d'Al-* was the year of King *Alphonso's* great Expedition against the *Moors*, whom he vanquished and destroyed, and for which Victory he had the Title of *Conqueror* given to him: besides, these *Knights* were Instituted upon design to engage with this King in that War; of whose assistance he had not so great need, as to give Institution to them, if he had before overcome the *Moors*.

Some may possibly take this Order to be rather *Military* than *Religious*: but if it be considered, that these *Knights* succeeded the *Templars* in *Montreall*, being by King *Alphonso* established in that place, and had a Rule of living somewhat conformable to the *Knights Templars* (save only the privilege to marry) which Rule ^e *Jo. Mariana* (a *Spanish* Author of very great credit) saith expressly was the ^f *Rebus Hi-* *Cistercian*, and for that ^g *Jos. Mich. Marquez* (another *Spanish* Writer) informs us, that they profess conjugal Chastity and Obedience, and were obliged to support the holy Church and Christian Faith against the *Moors*, we need not scruple to place them in the ranks of *Religious Knights*.

Their Habit was a ^h *White Manile*, on the breast whereof they wore a *Red Cross* ⁱ *Ancree*, but ^j *A. Mendo* saith, it was the Figure of our *Saviour*.

At length the like Fate attended this Order, as did the *Knights* of *St. James*, *Alcantara*, and *Calatrava*; for the *Moors* being driven out of *Spain*, and the chief end for which they were instituted ceasing, their rich *Commanderies* were at length united to the Crown.

The Order of Knights d' Avis in Portugal.

(16.)

^a *Don Alphonso Henriquez*, first King of *Portugal*, took from the *Moors* (in the year of our Lord ^b 1147.) the City of *Evora*, and to strengthen this Garrison, he sent thither several gallant Commanders, who assumed the Title of ^c *Knights of St. Mary of Evora*, as well from putting themselves under the protection of our blessed Lady, as from the place where they were first seated. Their first Great Master was *Don Fernando de Moncira*.

Not long after, they came to be called ^d *Knights d' Avis*, from a Castle of that name, situate on the Frontiers of *Portugal*, which being conquered from the *Moors*, by the said King *Don Alphonso*, he gave it to ^e *Fernando de Tinner*, Master of *Evora*, in the year 1161. (but ^f *Fr. de Rades* saith it was 1181.) to which Castle, he and his Brethren forthwith transplanted themselves from *Evora*.

This Order was confirmed by Pope *Innocent* the Third, anno 1204. in the Reign of *Sancho* the First, Son to King *Don Alphonso*, under the Rule of *St. Benedict*, and therefore in some Papal Bulls, the Order is called of ^g *St. Benedict d' Avis*, but ^h others say, this Order had confirmation anno Dom. 1162. by a power which the Bishop of *Hosia*, Legat in *Spain*, for Pope *Alexander* the Third, gave to *Jo. Zerita* Abbot of *St. Jo. Tarroca*. The *Knights* profess ⁱ *Conjugal Chastity* and Obedience.

In the year of *Christ* 1213. ^m *Don Rodrigo Garcez de Assa*, then seventh Master of *Calatrava*, gave to the Great Master and Brethren *Knights d' Avis*, their two Fortresses in *Evora*, and some other lands possessed by them in the Kingdom of *Portugal*, upon which Donation they submitted themselves to the Rule, Statutes, Visitation, and Correction of the Order of *Calatrava*, and their Successors; but in the time of ⁿ *Don John* of *Portugal* (natural Son of *Pedro* the Eighth, King of *Portugal*) seventh Great Master d' *Avis* (after he had gained the Victory of *Aljubarroto*, against *Don John* the First of *Castile*) he commanded this Order, to cast off their acknowledgments to that of *Calatrava*, which they

^a *Fr. de Rades y Andradá en su Chronica de Calatrava*, f. 3. ^b *El Conde de Luncano en Noblez a del Antologia* l. 1. c. 22. ^c *vide etiam Rades, Lustran. T. m. 1. Quasi. Regal. Quasi. o. Ant. 6. in principio.* ^d *Cavalleros de Evora*. ^e *Rades* ut supra. ^f *Ibidem etiam ad fol. 32. b.*

^g *Favin. Theat. d' Honn. l. 6. c. 18.* ^h *Loc. cit.* ⁱ *Flav. Cherub. in Compend. Bullar. Tom. 2. p. 90. Constitut. 32. Innoc. 3. Schol. 2.* ^j *Ibid. Tom. 3. p. 45. Const. 24.* ^k *Ant. Bigandon Lusitan. Monarch. pars 3. l. 11. c. 1.* ^l *Jos. M. Marquez en Tesoro milit. de Cavall. f. 25.* ^m *Fr. de Rades in Chronica de Calatrava*, f. 32. b. ⁿ *Fr. Micheli. f. 25. b.* ^o *vide Favin. in Theat. d' Hon. l. 6. c. 18.*

they thereupon did; and afterwards refused to receive *Don Gonfalo Nunez de Guzman* Master of *Calatrava*, who went to visit them. Hereupon the Order of *Calatrava* complained to the Council of *Basil*, who decreed that this Order d' *Avis* should continue subject to that of *Calatrava*, and receive their Visits and Reformation, to which purpose a Bull issued, which yet remains preserved in the Archives of *Calatrava*, but the *Portuguese* never submitted to it, albeit those of *Calatrava*, to preserve their preheminance, have still nominated Visitors. Nay afterwards, when that Crown fell into the hands of *Philip* the Second King of *Spain*, this Order d' *Avis* did nevertheless remain governed according to the Statutes of *Portugal*, nor did the Council of the other three Orders of *Castile*, take upon them to proceed in any Cause where this Order was concern'd.

f Fr. Caves de
Tayes en la Hi-
stor. de las Or-
dines milit. f.
83. b.

q Lancerote en
Noblexa del
Andaluzia.
h. 1. c. 22.
r Tesoro Milit.
de Cavall. fo.
25. b.
s Rades en
Chron. de Ca-
latrava loco
supra cit.

The Badge of this Order is a *Green Cross Flory*, such as the *Knights* of *Alcantara* wear, and said to be given them by *Don Pedro*, but before they used the like Cross with those of the Order of *Calatrava*, two *Birds* being added at the foot thereof, in allusion to the later name given to this Order; as appears from the ancient Seal.

The Royal Council of *Portugal* make examination of the Extraction of such as are to be admitted into this Order, that is of the Fathers and Grand-fathers Gentility, both of the Fathers and Mothers side. The manner of giving the *Habit*, and making *profession*, is agreeable to that of the *Knights* of *Calatrava*.

The Order of Knights of the Wing of St. Michael in Portugal.

(17.)

m Jos. Mich.
n Marquez
o en Tesoro
Militar. f. 35. a
vide Ant. Bran-
don en la 2.
part de la Mo-
narch Lusitan.
l. 11. c. 22.

Don Alphonso Henriquez King of *Portugal*, (in whose Reign the Order d' *Avis* was instituted) being very much oppress'd by *Albara* the Moor, King of *Sevil*, raised an Army to free his Country; and being ready to give Battel, he commanded all his Soldiers in a devout manner to address themselves to their particular Saints, for the obtaining of good success: himself imploring *St. Michael* the Archangel, to whom he was greatly devoted.

When the Battels were joined, *St. Michael* the Archangel, appeared on the Kings right side, and fought against the *Moors*; whence followed a very great and notable Victory over them.

Alloon therefore as the King was returned home, he Instituted this Order of Knighthood, in the year of our Lord 1171. (but *Mendo* placeth the Institution earlier, to wit, in the year 1165. and *Mirans* the year after) which he called the Order of *St. Michaels Wing*: These *Knights* had for the Badge of their Order a Red sword crost with Flowers de lis, and this Motto, *Quis ut Deus?* but more agreeable to the Name of the Order is that Badge assigned by *Mendo*, to wit, a Purple Wing, irradiated with beams of Gold.

p De Ordin.
Milit. Disq. 1.
Quest 4. n 97.
q Orig. Ord. E-
quest p. 38.
r Del Ala de
San Migu-
el. Tes. Milit.
de Cavalleria.
t Insigne erat
Ala (qua S.
Michael orna-
tus depingitur)
purpurea, in-
termicantibus
radiis aureis.
Mend. loc. cit.
u Mendo ut
supra.
w Tes. Milit.
x de Cavall.
p. 35. a.

They were of the *Cistercian Order*, and followed the Rule of *St. Benedict*. The manner of their Investiture was the same as is used in the Order d' *Avis*. Their Obligation was chiefly to defend the Christian Religion, to secure the Borders of the Country against the inroads of the *Moors*, and to relieve the Widows and the Fatherless.

This Order is now grown out of use, but the Mastership thereof hath since remained with the Kings of *Portugal*.

Knights of St. Gereon.

(18.)

y Favin. Theat.
d' Hon. l. 9. c. 11
z Menn. Delic.
Equestr. p. 263.

This Order was instituted by *Frederick Barbarossa* the Emperor (others say by *Frederick* the Second) and consisted only of Gentlemen of the German Nation, who followed the Rule of *St. Augustine*, and wore a *White Habit*, whereon was sewed a *Black Patriarchal Cross* set on a little green Hill.

The Order of St. Julian de Pereyro, or of Alcantara.

(19.)

This Order of Knighthood hath assumed two appellations, upon what occasion we shall here shew.

The first and ancient Title was of ^a St. Julian de Pereyro, because at a Town so called in the Kingdom of Leon, in the ^b Diocess of Ciudad Rodrigo, upon a small branch of the River Coa, a Monastery was built for these Knights by the favour of Don Fernando the Second, King of Leon and Galicia, who in his Diploma of Privileges granted thereunto, dated in December the Era of Caesar 1214. (which agrees with the year of our Lord 1176.) stiled himself Protector of this Fraternity and Society of Knights.

An approbation thereof was obtained from Pope Alexander the Third, the following year being the 18. of his Popedom, at the supplication of Don Gomez Fernandez, therein called Prior; but Pope Lucius the Third (confirming this Order anno Dom. 1183.) stiled him Master of Pereyro.

This Bull of Pope Alexander the Third makes not any mention of the Habit, these Knights of St. Julian should wear, nor is it known what it was, more than that they used a ^d secular Habit, modest and grave, and the Ecclesiasticks a clerical Habit: Only to make a difference of these Knights from other Seculars, and the Clergy from other Ecclesiasticks, they wore a * shred of Cloth, and a Scapulary.

Nor doth the said Bull take notice of the Rule they were obliged to observe, but by several other Bulls it appears, that from the beginning of this Orders Foundation, it was of the ^e Cistercian Order, and the Knights thereof observed the Rule of St. Benedict, moderated and limited as it was convenient for the exercise of Arms against the Moors, for which end it was instituted.

The ancient Badge of this Order was a ^f Pear-tree vert, assumed in allusion to the Name of the Order.

The occasion of altering the first appellation, was upon changing their place of habitation: For when ^g Don Alphonso the Ninth, King of Leon, had taken from the Moors, Alcantara, a Town in Castile, anno Dom. 1213. he afterwards gave it to Don Martin Fernandez de Quintana, the twelfth Great Master of the Order of Calatrava, which Town ^h anno 1218. (with the consent of the said King) was given to Don Nunno Fernandez, the third Master of St. Julian de Pereyro, and his Fellows, as well Knights as Ecclesiasticks; and to the end there might follow an union of these Societies, (in like manner as was between Calatrava and the Order d' Avis in Portugal, some few years before) they consented to become subject to the Order of Calatrava, under the agreement and conditions following.

ⁱ First, that the Master and Convent of Pereyro should receive with all obedience the Visitation which the Master of Calatrava should make according to the Cistercian Order.

^j That they should not be obliged to receive a Monk for their Prior, against their consent and will, but rather when they were to chuse one, it should be of their own House, or of that of Calatrava, or of any other Houses, Daughters to Calatrava, provided he were not a Monk.

^k That the Master and Convent of Calatrava should give to the Master of Pereyro the Town of Alcantara, and all its Possessions, with all their Charters and Privileges, and all the moveable Goods which they held in the Kingdom of Leon, as well by royal gift, as any other way.

^l That when it should happen, that the Master of Calatrava should dye, or be removed, the Master of Pereyro should be called to the Election of the future Master.

^m Lastly, that the Master of Calatrava should not have power to give away any thing belonging to Pereyro, without consent of the Master and Convent thereof;

a Fr. de Rades
y Andrada in
su Chronic. de
Alcantara, fo.
1. a. Menen.
Delle. Equest.
p. 102. Favín.
in le Theat. d'
Honn. 1.6. c.5.
b Fr. Caro de
Torres en Hi-
stor. de las Ord.
milit. f. 51. b.
c Rades en
Chronic. de Al-
cantara, fo. 2. a.

d Ibid. f. 2. b.
e f. 6. b.
* Chias de pa-
no. Ibid.

e A. Miram,
Orig. Ord. E-
quest. p. 31.
Fr. Caro de
Torres, loc. cit.
f. inf. 52. b.
f Un Perat ver-
de, Lanceroto
1. 1. c. 23.
g Fr. de Rades
en Chronic. de
Alcantara, fol.
5. a.
* Idem de Ra-
des en Chro-
nic. de Cala-
trava, f. 33. b.

h Ibid. f. 33. b.
i f. 34. a.

thereof; and in case he did, then the King of *Leon* should have power to vacate such Donation.

These Conditions and Capitulations were made, *en Ciudad de Rodrigo*, the 16. of July anno Dom. 1218. and confirmed by King *Don Alphonso*, and the Masters of both Orders.

Hereupon the Convent of *St. Julian*, transferred their Seat from *Pereyro* to *Alcantara*, and *Don Diego Sanchio* the fourth Master of *Pereyro*, assumed the Title of Master of *Pereyro* and *Alcantara*,ⁱ which Title his Successors held until the Church of *St. Julian de Pereyro* was made an *Encomienda*; and thenceforward, the Masters used only the Title of *Alcantara*, and the Fraternity in like manner relinquishing their ancient Name, were afterwards called^k Knights of *Alcantara*, from this their new place of abode. And whereas the Masters of *Pereyro* did formerly bear for the Ensign of the Order a Pear-tree only, they after this Union^l added two *Travars* to the Pear-tree.

But albeit this Order of *Alcantara*, was by this agreement, put under the subjection of that of *Calatrava*, and accordingly visited and corrected by them; yet nevertheless, they have since pretended to be^m freed therefrom, for that the Masters of *Calatrava* broke the agreement made between them, by not admitting the Master of *Pereyro* to the Election of their Master, as was contained in their Articles.

Whereupon this Order of *Alcantara* obtained a Bull from Popeⁿ *Julius* the Second, by which they pretend to be freed from that ancient subjection: Though this Bull was given without knowledge of any cause, or making any necessary mention of the subjection. And therefore notwithstanding this Bull, the Order of *Calatrava* doth still in all general Chapters, nominate Visitors of their own Order to visit that of *Alcantara*, as well as that of *Montesa*, according to their ancient Capitulations; but they of *Alcantara* make always their protestation against it, and so this matter rests still undecided.

After this pretension of being exempted from obedience to the Order of *Calatrava*,^p *Benedict* the Thirteenth (one of the Anti-Popes) changed their Badge into a *Cross Flory vert*, in the year of our Lord 1411. and this they wore upon the left shoulder of their Scapulary, for the Badge of their Order.

The Examination of the Candidates, and in what manner they receive the Habit; is related at full by^q *Joseph Micheli Marquez*.

The Catholick Kings *Don Fernando* and *Donna Isabella*, having about three years before obtained the Administration of the Order of *Calatrava* for their lives, had an eye also upon this of *Alcantara*; and therefore^r endeavoured, that at the first time the Mastership thereof should fall vacant, to gain it likewise, with the like Title of *Administrator*; to avoid several inconveniences that had happened to the Crown of *Castile*, when the Master of *Alcantara* did confederate with the King of *Portugal*.

Hereupon^s in the year of our Lord 1492. they made their address to Pope *Innocent* the Eighth, that he would reserve to himself the provision of the supreme Dignity of this Order, whensoever it became vacant, either by the death or renunciation of the then Master, *Don John de Cuniga*; or after any other manner.

Upon this address the Pope did^t accordingly reserve the disposing thereof as was desired, and then gave it in Administration to the said Kings; that they two should govern this Order under that Title, until such time as his Holiness should provide a Master.

A little after Pope *Innocent* dyed, and *Alexander* the Sixth succeeded, who at the like supplication of these Kings, confirmed and of new granted, what his Predecessor had granted them before. Upon which (anno 1494.) they treated with *Don John de Cuniga*, for the renunciation of his Mastership, yet with condition to reserve to himself all the Rents of the Masters Table, that he held in that part of *Serena*, to which he consented. Whereupon he resigned and surrendered his Dignity of Master of this Order into the hands of the Pope, which the Bishop of *Valencia* received by Commission back from him, and gave the Possession thereof in administration to the said Catholick Kings. After this

ⁱ *Rades Chron. Alcántara*, f. 8. u.

^k *Flav. Cherubin. in Compend. Bull. Tom. 2. p. 105. Confit. 44. Schol. i. vide Sanjoan. Orig. de Caval. f. 22. l Fr. de Rades en Chron. de Alcántara. f. 6. b.*

^m *Ibid. in Chron. o f. 7. a.*

^p *Jo. Mariana de reb. Hisp. l. 12. c. 5. p. 507. Portano la Croce verde. Santovini. fol. 21. b. q Tzuro milit. de Cavall. fol. 22. a. r Fr. Rades l. en Chron. t de Alcántara fo. 54. b. vide Fr. de Torres in Hist. de las Ord. milit. f. 85.*

^u *Id. Fo. 55. a.*

in this manner it was that these Kings succeeded in the Administration of the Mastership of *Alcantara*, in the year of our Lord 1494. which they held during their lives.

But it was not long ere Pope *Adrian* the Sixth, annexed this Mastership, together with those other of *St. James* and *Calatrava*, to the Royal Crown of *Castile*, for ever, as hath been before observed.

Knights of Trugillo or Truxillo in Spain.

(20.)

^a *Joseph Micheli Marquez* professeth, that it had been his great endeavour, to satisfy himself about the Foundation of this Order; notwithstanding which, neither by information from the Natives of the City of *Trugillo* (a Town situate in *Ejremadura* in Spain) nor otherwise from History, could he understand when, or by whom it was erected.

Evident it is, these *Knights* were in being in the year of our Lord 1227. though it be unknown how long before they had their beginning: But because it is found in some slight memorials of the Order of *Alcantara*, That ^o *Don Arias Perez Gallego*, elected Master of that Order, in the year before mentioned, took *Trugillo* from the *Moors*, and there placed a Fraternity or Brotherhood of *Knights* and *Priests*, who lived after the manner of a Convent; therefore it is presumed, that they were no other than of the Order of *Alcantara*.

Now it is certain, that there was a Convent and Order of the Fraternity of *Trugillo*; but it is not so certain, that these were of *Alcantara*. It rather seems to be the opinion of ^a *Fr. Rades y Andrada* that these had been some other, and a distinct Order of *Knighthood* by it self; which he collects from a Donation of Lands, that King *Don Alonso* the Ninth gave them some years after (*viz.* in the *Era* of *Cæsar* 1233.) of the Towns of *Trugillo*, *Sancta Cruz*, *Zuñerola*, *Canaba*, and *Albala*: in which it appears, that several years before the time of *Don Arias* there were ^r *Fræyles Trugillensis*, or *Knights* of *Trugillo*.

It is not unlikely therefore, that this Order might be incorporated into that of *St. Julian de Pereyro*, and by this means the Order of *Alcantara* pretend these Towns to be theirs, which in the Reign of King *Don Alonso* the Ninth, of *Castile*, and King *Don Fernando* of *Leon*, were taken by force of Arms from the *Moors*, and given to the Fraternity of *Knights* who kept their Convent in *Trugillo*.

^a *Hieronymus Romanus* saith, that these *Knights* were of noble descent, and that no man was admitted into this Order, unless he first made proof of his Gentility. But there is not any Writer that gives an account what was the *Ensign* or *Badge* of their Order. It is guessed by ^a *Marquez*, that their Institution obliged them to be near the person of the King, and upon every martial Expedition, that he undertook, to attend him armed and well provided; maintaining always two *Horses* and *Servants* to be in readiness such for services.

The Order of Knights of Calatrava in Castile.

(21.)

This ancient Order of *Knighthood*, was instituted in *Castile*; and took ^a beginning under the Reign of *Don Sanchio* the Third, and ^b appellation from the Castle *Calatrava*, being a Frontire both of *Castile* and *Toledo*; which Castle the ^c *Moors* took upon their Victory over *Don Rodrigo* King of *Spain*, anno Dom. 714.

The word is compounded of *Cala*, signifying in Arabick a Castle, and of the Spanish word *Travas*, which signifies *Manacles*, *Gives*, or *Irons*, to fasten about the feet and wrists of Captives; for with such as these the *Moors* lockt up and fettered the Christians, whom they held Prisoners in that Castle.

^a En Conde de Lancerote in Noblex del Andaluzia. l. 1. c. 32.
^b Fr. de Rades y Andrada en Chronic. de Calatrava. fol. 2. a.
^c Lancerote en Noblex del Andaluzia loc. cit.
^d Favon, in le Theat. d' Honneur. l. 6. c. 10.

After its recovery from the *Moors* (who had held it above 400 years) it was given by ^e *Don Alphonso*, surnamed the Emperor of Spain, to the *Knights Templars* (of whose virtue that Age had a great opinion) to be made a Bulwark against the Inroads of the *Moors*, being the very ^f Key into the Kingdom of *Toledo*; but they no way able to hold it, withdrew their Garrison; and what with the *Knights Templars* deserting it, and the approach of the *Moors*, all others were disheartened from accepting the place, although the foresaid King ^g *Sancho* (Son of *Don Alphonso* the Emperor) had caused it to be proclaimed at his Court, that whosoever would take upon them the defence thereof, to them he would freely give it, and to their Heirs for ever.

At length one *Don Raymond* (native ^h of *Barcelona*) formerly a Knight of great renown, then Abbot of the Monastery of *St. Mary de Fitero* (of the *Cistercian Order*) in the Kingdom of *Nawarr* (by the advice of *Diego Velasquez*, of the same Order, being then at Court) accepted of the Kings proffer, and took upon him the fortifying and maintaining this Castle; and hereupon the King made his Charter of Donation, dated at *Almazon* in January, in the Era of *Cesar* 1196. (to wit of *Christ* 1158.) whereby he gave to God, to the blessed *Virgin Mary*, to the Congregation of *Cistercians*, and to *Don Raymond*, and all his Brethren, as well present as future, the Village called *Calatrava*, with all its Bounds and Territories, (particularly described in the Grant) to possess and enjoy by right of inheritance for ever.

This *Don Raymond* (after he had received possession according to the tenor of the Charter) together with his Associates, and other ^k assistance from *Castile* and *Toledo*, fell to fortifying of the Castle; and hence arose the Order of *Knights* of *Calatrava*, Instituted by King *Don Sancho* in the year of our Lord 1158. in the Town of *Calatrava*, and therefore called at first ^m *Militia de Calatrava*: the foresaid *Don Raymond* and *Don Velasquez*, being the first movers of this excellent work; of whom the former is in another place called also ⁿ a joint Founder with King *Sancho*.

After this ^o *Don Raymond* considering the richness and fertility of the Soil, returned to his Monastery, and from its neighbouring Countries drew 20000 men, with their Families and Goods, to plant in and about *Calatrava*; which so greatly strengthened the Country, that the *Moors* durst never after attempt besieging of the Castle.

This Order was approved by Pope ^p *Alexander* the Third, the 25. of September, anno Dom. 1164. under the Discipline of the *Cistercian Order*. It was confirmed afterwards by Pope ^q *Innocent* the Third, in the year 1199. and at length grew on, till it gained exceeding great reputation in Spain.

At the first Institution, the *Knights* wore their Robes and Scapulars, of a ^r White Colour (^s *Sansfovin*, and ^t *Genebrand* saith Black) as did the *Cistercian Monks*; and on the breast thereof a plain Red Cross, but Pope *Benedict* the Thirteenth, anno 1396. dispensed with that Monastick Habit, and assigned them a ^u Cross Flory: So anciently they were prohibited Marriage, yet *Paul* the Third permitted them ^v one Wife, but not a second.

^w After the death of the last Master *Don Lopez de Padilla*, anno 1487. *Don Diego Garcia de Castillo* (being the Commendador Major) caused a general Chapter to be summoned in the Convent of *Calatrava*, for the Election of another Master; in which there fell out great contest among the Electors, and the chief that stood, was the said *Commendador Major*, and *Don Alonso Pacheco*, *Commendador de Villa Franca*.

Upon notice of this, the Catholick Kings, *Don Ferdinando* and *Donna Isabella*, sent to the Convent a Knight of their Court, with a Bull from Pope *Innocent* the Eighth, wherein he declared that he had reserved to himself the providing of a Master; and therewith ^x required them not to proceed in the Election, until his further Commands were made known: in obedience to which the Election ceased.

Afterwards (^y anno Dom. 1489.) the ^z Pope gave the Mastership of this Order in Administration to King *Don Ferdinando* during life; but he did not give it with

e Rades y Andradas, fo. 3. b. Mennen. Delic. 2. ju. li. p. 99. f Ibid. in Chron. fo. 5. a.

g Ibid. f. 4. b.

h Ibid. f. 8. b. Jo. Mariana de reb. Hispania. l. 11. c. 6.

i De Rades en Chron. f. 5. Jo. Mariana loc. cit.

k Idem de Rades, f. 6. b. Jo. Mariana, ut supra. l Insuayola el dicho Rey Don Sancho. Rades f. 6. b. vide Lancerote, l. 1. c. 22.

m De Rades. loc. cit.

n Ibid. f. 8. b. o Pol. 6. b. vide Mennen. p. 100. Cy Favin. l. 6. c. 10.

p Idem de Rades, fo. 13. b. r Favin. Theat. d' Honneur. l. 6. c. 10.

s Aub. Miraeus, Orig. Ord. Equest. p. 30. Favin. Theat. d' Hon. l. 6. c. 10.

t Vanno restit de Nero, Cy partano la Croce rosa nel petto. f. 21. a.

u Chron. p. 614. v Aub. Miraeus Orig. loc. cit.

x Mennen. Delic. Equest. p. 101.

y Fr. de Rades en Chron. de Calatr. f. 82. b.

z Ibid. f. 83. a. c Mennen. Cy Favin. loc. supra citatis.

d Rades, fol. 83. v.

with the Title of *Master*,^e because the King had never received the *Habit* of this Order, neither was he capable of it, being a married man; but chiefly because the King then endeavoured to obtain the other two Masterships of St. James and *Alcantara*, and he could not hold them all three with the Title of *Master*.

King Don Ferdinand and Isabella his Wife governed this Order with the Title of Administrators very worthily, and reformed the state thereof; visiting it by the Abbot of *Clavavalle* of the *Cistercian* Order, then called Don Pedro, who came on that employment with a Commission from Pope Innocent (at the desire of the said Kings) and of the general Chapter, in the year of our Lord 1491.

Upon the death of King Don Ferdinand (anno 1516.) the Chapter of this Order met at *Guadalupe*, with intention to elect a new Master, of which Cardinal Adrian having notice (who then governed the Kingdoms) first sent, then went to the Electors, to desire they would not proceed, because the Pope had given the Administration of the Order to Prince Charles (afterwards Emperor by the name of Charles the Fifth) but they seemed unwilling to depart, before they had made an Election, and thereupon elected that Prince, Master, or Administrator of their Order, which was afterwards confirmed by Pope Leo the Tenth.

But it seemed much for the interest of the Crowns of *Castile* and *Leon* to have the Mastership or Administration of this Order, and those other of St. James, and *Alcantara* for life, made perpetual, and annexed to them for ever; hereupon, great suit was made to the Pope by the Emperor for obtaining thereof: and among the inducements some of them were these.

That great alteration often hapned in those Kingdoms upon the Election of these Masters, to the damage of persons of all sorts relating to those Orders.

That in regard the Masters were so powerful in those Kingdoms, they several times, gave aid and assistance to particular Factions that arose; so that Civil War often followed.

That the Peace and Quiet since the Administration was in the hands of the King, much exceeded that which was in the times of the Masters. These and other things being considered of, Pope Adrian the Sixth granted the Emperors desire, and annexed the Mastership of these three Orders perpetually to the Crowns of *Castile* and *Leon*.

The form of admittance into this Order, and manner of their profession, is set down at large by^m Marquez.

^m Tesoro Milit.
de Cavall. fo.
28. 6^{ta}.

The Order of the Holy Ghost in Saxia, at Rome.

(22.)

They are called by^a Marquez, the Brothers of the Hospital of the Holy Ghost; who though not invested with Sword and Spurs, as other Knights be, are nevertheless reckoned among the Military Orders, because bound to bring Certificate of their Gentility, before they can be accepted or admitted.

Their chief Seat is the sumptuous Hospital of the Holy Ghost, founded neer the Church of St. Mary in Saxia by the River Tyber in Rome (a place so called from the Saxons, a People of Germany, who anciently inhabited there) by Pope Innocent the Third, in the year of our Lord 1198. or 1201. But it appears by another of this Popes Bulls, dated anno 1204. for uniting of the Hospital of the Holy Ghost at Montpelier in France, unto this at Rome, that the ancient Foundation was at Montpelier, though in process of time this other became the principal.

They of this Fraternity profess Chastity, Poverty, and Obedience, as also the service of the Poor; living under the Rule of St. Augustine, and have a Preceptor or Master.

The Ensign of this Order, is a White Patriarchal Cross, with twelve points, sewed to their Breast, and on the left side of their Black Mantle.

The manner of giving the Habit, and making their Profession, is recorded by^b Jos. Mich. Marquez.

In this Hospital care is taken for the nursing and bringing up exposed Children,

^a En Tesoro Milit.
de Cavall. fo.
61. b.
b F. Lud. Gothofrid. Archont. Cosmica. l. 3. p. 51.
c Platina in ejusd. Papae vita.
d S. Maurolico in Oceano Religionum. p. 233.
e A. Miraeus Orig. Ord. Equest. p. 43.
f Tesoro Milit. de Cavall. loc. supra cit.
g La Insignia es une Cruz blanca Patriarcal, y los brazos Otorgados. Ibid.
h Ibid. fol. 62.
i S. Maurolico. p. 234.

the curing of all manner of Infirmities, entertainment of Strangers for three days with meat and lodging, relieving the Poor, and other works of the like kind.

k *Ibid.*

The ^k *Revenne* belonging thereto, is about 24000 Duckets every day; it having great Commanderies in *Italy, Sicily, Spain, France, Burgundy, Germany,* and elsewhere.

The Order of St. George d' *Alfama*.

(23.)

* In *Mare Oceano di tutte le Religioni del Mondo*, p. 229.

We are informed from ^{*} *Sylvester Maurolico*, that there was an Order of *Knights* called the Order of *St. George d' Alfama*, instituted in the year of our Lord 1201. in a Town of that name situate in the Diocess of *Tortosa*, which afterwards in the year 1363. received approbation from the Papal See, but we find no other mention thereof, save that it was united to the Order of our *Lady of Montesa*, anno Dom. 1399.

l *Portglave and Sword. Heyl Cosmog.* l. 2. p. 168.

The Order of Knights of Christ in *Livonia*, or of the ^l *Sword-Bearers*.

(24.)

m *Munster. Chron. Univerf.* l. 3. p. 423. de *Germania*.

In the year of our Lord ^m 1186. one *Meinardus* a holy and devout man, began to preach the Gospel in *Livonia*, and erected the Bishoprick of *Riga*. But this good man and his Successors met with great difficulties and opposition, in the propagation of Christianity, until the year 1200. about which time many of that Country embraced the Christian Faith; and one ⁿ *Albert*, being then Bishop of *Livonia*, instituted this Order, in imitation of the *Knights Tentonicks*, with design to extirpate Idolatry, and propagate the Christian Religion in those Territories, as the other had undertaken to do in *Prussia*.

He prescribed to the *Knights* the *Cistercian* Rule and Habit, namely, a long *White Mantle* and *Black Hood*, on the breast was sewed the Figure of a ^o *Red Sword*, or rather two *Red Swords*, crossing one another in form of a *Salire*, whence they had the Title ^o *Ensisferi, vel Gladiferi Fratres*, or Brethren *Sword-Bearers*.

This Order had their ^o *statutes* something like those of the *Knights Templars*, and the *Knights* thereof took on them the Vow both of Obedience and Chastity.

Pope ^o *Innocent* the Third gave approbation and confirmation to this Order, which became fully Instituted in the year of our Lord 1203.

And ^w because they could not of themselves accomplish the end for which they were instituted, they in the year ^{*} 1237. or 1239. united to the *Tentonick Order*, and submitted to their Rule and Habit, by whose help and assistance, they afterwards overcame the Idolatrous *Livonians*, and brought them to submit to the Christian Faith: thenceforward the ^o *Great Master* of *Livonia* acknowledged him of *Prussia* for his Superior; and so continued until ^{*} *Walter de Pletemberg* their *Great Master*, contemporary with *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, *Great Master* of *Prussia*, separated this Order from its obedience to the *Tentonick*.

Finally, in the year 1561. *Gothard de Ketler*, the last *Great Master* of this Order, following the example of *Albert* *Great Master* of *Prussia*, became a Subject to the Crown of *Poland*; for on the ^{*} 5. of *March* in the year aforesaid, he (in the Castle of *Riga*) surrendered to the use of King *Sigismund* the Second (surnamed *Augustus*) all the Lands belonging to this Order, together with his Cross, the Seal of the Order, the Charters and Grants of several Popes and Emperors, which concern'd the same; the Keys of the City and Castle of *Riga*, the Office of *Great Master*, the rights of Coynage, and all the Powers and Priviledges appertaining to it; receiving back again from *Radzevill* the Kings Commissioner, the Dukedom of *Curland* to him and his Heirs for ever.

In this manner this Order became extinguish'd, after it had flourished 357

years.

l. 2. p. 169.

The

The Knights of Jesus Christ, in Italy and France, or Brothers of the Militia of St. Dominick.

(25.)

St. Dominick (descended of the^a Family of the *Guzmans* in Spain) was^b Founder of this Order, which he instituted in the year^{*} 1206. principally to fight against the *Albigenses* then called Hereticks, and the *Knights* thereof were stiled *Fratres de Militia S. Dominici*.

He prescribed to them a^c *White Habit*, and for the Badge of their Order a *Cross* Flory quarterly *Sable* and *Argent*, to be worn upon their Breasts.

Pope^e Innocent the Third approved of this Order^{*} anno Dom. 1215. under the Rule of the said St. Dominick, and gave privilege, that the *Knights* from among themselves should elect a *Master*. They professed Obedience and conjugal Chastity.

The work being done for which these *Knights* were instituted, they laid aside their Arms, and devoted themselves wholly to the^f spiritual warfare.

Afterwards there were Widows and Virgins joined to this Order, and thereupon they became called *Fratres seu Sorores de Penitencia B. Dominici*; whose Rule was approved by Pope^g Innocent the Sixth, about the year of our Lord 1360.

^a Nich. Janssenius in vita ipsius S. Dominici Edit. Anuerp. 1622. p. 1.
^b Favyn. Theat. d' Honneur.
^c l. 6. c. 8.

^{*} Briet. Annal. Mundi pars 3. Tom. 2. p. 93.

^c Habitus erat albus, & insignie Crux partim nigra, partim alba liliata; qua nunc Ministri Tribunalium Sancte Fidei utuntur. Mendo de Ord. Milit. Disq. 1. Quest. 2. Sect. 13.

^e Jof. Mich. Marquez in Tes. Milit. f. 47. b.
^{*} Briet. Annal. Mundi pars 3. Tom. 2. p. 101.
^f A. Miram, p. 46.

^g Mennés. p. 106.

The Order of Knights of St. Mary de Merced in Aragon.

(26.)

^a James the First of Aragon surnamed the Invincible (who conquered from the *Moors* the Kingdom of *Murcia*, *Valencia*, and the *Bahares*) was sometime Prisoner to Simon Earl of Montfort in France, where he suffered much hardship and many troubles; and being thoroughly moved with the insufferable miseries the *Christians* endured, under the slavery of the *Moors*; made a Vow to the blessed Virgin, that when he should be delivered from his Captivity, he would endeavour the redemption of such *Christians* as the *Moors* had made Captives. Thus far his Vow: but it extended not to the^b erecting of an Order, which should oblige the Companions thereof, to engage in that affair, as some would have it.

This King being freed from his Imprisonment, laid up great sums of money to be employed in performance of his Vow; and afterwards by the advice and counsel of Raymond de Penafort his Confessor (a Dominican Friar) and of Pedro Nolasco, a noble Cavalier, (descended from the ancient Family of Nolasco in France, resident at a Town called *les Saintes Pucelles*, in the Diocess of St. Paul, under the Arch-Bishop of Arles) he^d founded an Order of *Knights*, in the City of Barcelona, called *La Nueva Merced*, so named (saith our Author) by the blessed Virgin, who in a Vision^e appeared to this King, and to Raymond and Nolasco one night, in one and the same hour, directing the whole Institution, and giving it that Name, because of the mercy and liberty which the Christian Captives should receive by this means.

But it appears by the Bulls of Popes^f Gregory the Ninth, and^g Alexander the Fourth, as also by a Charter made by Don Pedro King of Aragon, dated the eleventh of January, anno 1358. to have been likewise called *Ordo beata Eulalia* from^h St. Eulalia the Virgin and Martyr, buried at Barcelona, in the Church there dedicated to her name.

There are various opinions concerning the year wherein this Order was founded; but it is with certainty determined to have been anno Dom. 1218. on the Feast-day of St. Lawrence the Martyr in August (on which day annually the commemoration of the Foundation of this Order is commanded to be celebrated

^a Alonso Remon. Historia General de la Orden de la Merced, l. 1. c. 4. f. 10. vide etiam Marquez en Tesoro milit. de Cavall. f. 58. a. & Mennés Delic. Equest. p. 107.
^b Alon. Remon. in Histor. prad. l. 1. f. 1. a.

^c Ibidem l. 2. c. 1. f. 37.
^d Ibid. l. 1. c. 6. p. 17.
^e Fl. Cherub in Compend. Bullar Tom. 1. p. 15.
^f Constitut. 9. Schol. 2.

^g Alon. Remon. l. 1. c. 8. f. 21. b.
^h Lib. 2. c. 18. f. 84. b.
ⁱ Ibid. l. 9. c. 5. f. 426.

ⁱ Lib. 1. c. 8. p. vide Tesoro milit. de Cavall. f. 58. a.

by

k Compend.
Bullar. T. m. 2.
p. 21. c. 68.
l Alon. Remon.
l. 1. c. 8.

by the^k Bull of Pope *Clement* the Eighth) in the fifth year of the Reign of this King *James*; as is manifest from several authentick testimonies, collected and alledged by *Alphonfus Remon*, in his ¹History of this Order.

The end of its Institution, and the Profession and Obligation of the *Knights*, was in effect the same with that vowed by King *James* in his Captivity, to wit, to gather Alms, and to go in person to redeem Christian Slaves, who either by Piracy, the chance of War, or other sad accident, had fallen into the hands of the *Moors*. This work prospered so well, that ^m*Pedro Nolasco* (being first sent into the Kingdom of *Valentia*, to make redemption of Captives) redeemed four hundred within the space of six years after the Foundation of the Order.

This *Pedro Nolasco* was by the Founder constituted the first *General* or *Head* of the Order; but as concerning the person that gave the *Habit* to him, there are these three opinions.

First, That it was by the hands of King *James* the Founder. Secondly, That *Berengario Pallovalino*, Bishop of *Barcelona* gave it. Thirdly, That he received it from *Raymond de Penafort*; all which our^a Author sets down, but there determines nothing; only seems inclinable to the first opinion, as most rational, because the King was *Founder*, and was so called by the blessed *Virgin* in the Vision, and for that the Order it self was at first composed merely of ^o*Laymen*, and wholly military, and so declared by the Popes^r *Boniface* the Eighth, and *Clement* the Fifth: Besides their Laws are in favour of those that are of this opinion, and exclude out of this Act, judicially Kingly, all Ecclesiastical ones, and by the same reason the Bishop: for saith the Canon of their Law, ^q*A Priest ought not to make Knights*. But afterwards^r in another place, he absolutely concludes, that the King himself gave the *Habit* to *Nolasco*, from the evidence he exhibits out of a Letter which King *Don Pedro* the Fourth sent to Pope *Innocent* the Sixth.

Such a like *Habit* as was given to *Nolasco*, was also prescribed to the first *Knights*, viz. a Coat and *Scapular* of a common sort of coarse *White Cloth*. Their Coat was garnished with Cordons and Ribbons, wherewith they fastned it about their necks, and from the upper end thereof issued a Cap that covered half their head. The *Monks* wore their^t Coats and *Scapulars* reaching down to their feet (but those of the *Knights* were much^u shorter) and the form of their Coat (or rather *Mantle*) and Cap, was the same as they now wear.

When the Government of the Order became both spiritual and temporal, as well the^w *Knights* as *Monks*, were commanded by order of Chapter to keep the manner and form of their *Habit* apart, according to the intention of the first appointment.

In the time, and upon request of *Gulielmo de Bas*, the second *General* of this Order, ^xKing *James* the Founder, by his Diploma, dated at *Saragoza* the 15. of July anno 1251. granted unto him, and all the Fraternity of the Order, That they should wear upon their *Scapulars* an^y Escotcheon of^z *Aragon*, viz. Or, four Pales *Gules*, and above that, the¹ *White Cross* of the Church of *Barcelona*, in a *Red Field*; which two Coats being joined together, per *Fess*, in one shield, were so born for some time, but afterwards came to be encompassed with a Border. The² *Knights* wore their Escotcheon of Arms, fixt on their *Scapulars*, but the *Monks* on their *Mantles*, and both before upon their Breasts.

The Founder by his³ Diploma dated at *Valentia* the 14. of March, anno Dom. 1254. granted particular Priviledges to the Order, which he⁴ confirmed by another royal Instrument, dated at *Lirida* the third of March, anno 1275.

Besides these Royal Grants, this Order received approbation from the Papal See, namely, from Pope⁵ *Gregory* the Ninth, in the eighth year of his Papacy (on the day of St. *Anthony* the Abbot) who prescribed to the Master and Fraternity the Rule of St. *Augustine*. It was afterwards confirmed by⁶ *Alexander* the Fourth, as appears by a Bull of his, wherein he granted them several Indulgences, and dated at *Naples* the 10. of April in the first year of his Papacy. These *Knights* professed⁷ conjugal Chastity, and Obedience to their Superiors.

In

m Lib. 2. c. 8.
f. 54. b.

n Lib. 1. c. 10.
f. 29. b.

o Lib. 5. c. 6.
f. 238. b.
p Lib. 7. c. 2.
f. 328. b.

q Otros si el
Clerigo un
home de reli-
gion, non tu-
vieron que
podrian fazer
Cavalleros.
l. 1. tit. 21.
partida 2.
r Alon. Remon.
l. 5. c. 6. f.
237. b. &
f. 238.
s (1b. f. 236.
t Sanfou.
u f. 21. b.
w (

x See the Di-
y ploma in
z Alon. Remon.
l. 1. c. 12.
fol. 177. b.
Scutum cum
Cruce albe in
campo ruber,
in parte supe-
riori, cum in-
signis Regni
Aragonie in
inferiori. F.
Cherub. in
Compend.
Bullar. Tom.
1. p. 34. Con-
stit. 6. Schol. 2.

b Remon. Histor. General hujus Ord. l. 1.
c. 9. f. 29.
c Lib. 5. c. 6 f. 236.
d Lib. 4. c. 12. f. 179.
e
f Lib. 1. c. 8. f. 22. b. vide Clacon. in vi-
ta hujus Pontif. l. 1. p. 558.
g Alon. Remon. l. 2. c. 18. fol. 84. b.
h Marquez en Tesoro milit. de Cavall.
f. 58. a.

In time this Order also, which was at first solely under the Government of *Knights*, came to be as well Spiritual as Temporal, and at length fell into the power of the *Monks* and *Priests*.

For, the *Knights* and *Priests* falling at variance about the election of a *General* of their Order, (upon the death of ^k *Arnoldo Rosniol*, their seventh General, who died anno 1317.) the *Knights* having chosen *Berengario Hostales*, and the *Priests* *Raimundo Alberto*, they appealed to the Pope (*John* the 22. then holding the Chair) who it seems the 17. of November, in the year aforesaid, declared, That (the Order seeming inclinable to be governed after the manner of *Monks*) he thought it convenient for them to have a *Master General*, which should be a *Priest*, and that for the future no *Lay-man* should be elected General; and so determined the controversy on the behalf of the *Priests*.

This Judgment gave the *Knights* so great discontent, that ^m one of them, being ⁿ *Kinsman* to the Governor of the new erected Order of *Montesa*, offered to bring over to that Society, all the *Knights* of *Merced*, being then threescore in number, which being accepted of, he did so, and from henceforth they became incorporated with the *Knights* of *Montesa*: So that ever since, the whole Fraternity have been only *Priests*, and no *Lay* or Military person among them, and therefore ⁿ *Andr. Mendo* reckons this Order among those that are extinct. The *Master General* is also a *Priest*, and hath his residence at *Barcelona*, by the Decrees of Popes *Clement* the Fifth, and *John* the 22.

^p *Raymond de Penafort*, the Founder's Confessor (called also *Raymond* of *Barcelona*, because it was the place of his Birth) who had a powerful hand in the Institution of this Order, and ^q devised the Statutes, lived neer to the age of an hundred years; he was ^r canonized for a *saint*, and the 7. of *January* appointed for his Anniversary, by the ^s Bull of Pope *Clement* the Eighth.

On the 12. of *July*, anno 1664. the approbation of the Colledge passed, for making the 29. of *January*, the Anniversary of *Petro Nolasco* Confessor, the other great assiter, and first General of the Order. The Office appointed for that day, may be seen in the *Missale Romanum*, printed lately at *Paris*, in the large Volume.

This way of Canonizing holy men by the Popes, is said to have been first used by ^t *Leo* the Third, anno Dom. 803. who then solemnly Canonized *Suibert* Bishop of *Werden*.

To conclude, the charitable and pious work, for which this Order was erected, hath been carried on from the time of its Institution, and managed by the Fraternity thereof, with all religious care and faithfulness; very great sums of Money being yearly collected and put into their hands, for that use and purpose, in manner following. They send their Agents yearly abroad, chiefly to *Algiers* and *Fes*, to return them an account of the age, quality, and number of those who are in Captivity; and upon consideration had thereof, order them to contract for their redemption: the general course being to ransom the religious persons first, next the *Laiety*; and among them the young, and such as appear most likely to do service before others.

Few dye in *Spain*, who bequeath not some Legacy to this Order, which greatly encreaseth its Revenue: and here, though she was no Benefactress to this Order, nor left her Legacy to be disposed of by that Fraternity, most deservedly may be recorded, of our Nation, the illustrious Lady *Alice* Dutchess *Dudley*, created into that Dignity by his late Majesty, of ever blessed memory, King *Charles* the First, by ^w Letters Patents under the Great Seal of *England*, bearing date at *Oxford* the 23. of *May*, in the twentieth year of his Reign; who dyed the 22. day of *January* in the year of our Lord 1668. being the 90. year of her age, and bequeathed by her last Will and Testament, one hundred pounds per annum for ever, to be employed for redemption of Captives of the *English* Nation.

^k *Alon. Remon.*
^l 6. c. 20.
^f 312.

^{Lib. 7. c. 7.}
^f 328. b.

^m *Lib. 6. c. 20.*
^f 313.

ⁿ *De Ord. Mi.*
<sup>lin. Disq. 1.
^{Ruesq. 4 n 99.}</sup>

^p *Remon en*
^{Hist. de la Mer-}
^{ced. l. 1. c. 5.}
^{f. 15. b. & c. 8.}
^{f. 25.}

^q *Fr. Cherub.*
^r *Comp. Bul.*
^{lar. Tom. 3.}

^{p. 24. & 25.}
^{Constit. 77.}
^s *Expediua fuit*
<sup>3. Kal. Maii,
^{anno 1601.}</sup>

^u *Compend.*
^{Bull. Tom. 3.}
^{p. 25. Constit.}
^{77. Schol. 1.}
^{Bellarmino de}
^{Sanct. Beatit.}
^{l. 1. c. 8.}

^w See a Copy of
the Patent en-
tered in the Earl
Marshal's Book
in the Office of
Arms. fol. 80.

Knights of the Rosary in Toledo.

(27.)

^a Jof. Mich.
Marquez Tef.
Milit. de Ca-
vall. f. 58. b.

^a Roderick Arch-Bishop of Toledo in Spain, seeing the Country fore oppressed by the *Moors*, called the *Nobles* of the City together, and propounded the great necessity of their appearance and assistance in its defence, and extirpation of the *Moors*; whereto they being unanimously inclined, he gave beginning to this Order of the *Rosary*, into which entred many of the *Nobles*.

This Order had Statutes, which chiefly obliged them to the defence of the *Catholic Religion*, to fight against the *Moors*, and to say continually a *Rosary* of our blessed Lady: Our Author finds not that it had been approved by any of the Popes, but conceives the Arch-Bishop, being *Metropolitan* of Spain, was of sufficient power to give it approbation; besides, he framed the Statutes for the *Knights*, and prescribed to them the Rule of living, to wit, that of *St. Dominick*.

The Ensign of this Order was the Figure of our Lady of the *Rosary*, upon a *Cross* Flory, quarterly *Argent* and *Sable*.

^b Yssera fait
officier B. Ma-
ria del Rosa-
rio, & infra
ipsam Cruz al-
ba, & nigra;
inftar ejus,
quam gestant
Ministri Tribu-
nallium Sancte
Fidei. Mendo
Disq. 1. Quest.
4. Sect. 100.

Knights of St. Mary the Glorious in Italy.

(28.)

^a Carol. Sig-
nino de regno
Italia. l. 17.
p. 45.
^b Sylv. Mauro-
lico in Oceanis
Religionum.
l. 232.

The Author of this Institution, was ^a Bartolemeo de Vincenza, of the Order of *Friers Preachers* or *Dominicans*, afterwards made Bishop of that City, a man that did much both in word and example: and the end he chiefly design'd, was to procure peace to the Cities of *Italy*, then much disquieted by Civil Wars, among the Princes thereof.

This Order received Institution anno Dom. ^c 1233. a year famous and renowned in that Age, for very great piety, and therefore called *generalis devotionis Annus*. It was approved and confirmed by ^e Pope Urban the Fourth, anno 1262. and the ^b Rule of *St. Dominick* prescribed to the *Knights*, who are obliged to take into their care and protection Widows and Orphans, and use their endeavour to beget concord among such as are at variance.

^c Jof. M. Mar-
quez en Tesoro
milit. de Ca-
vall. f. 37. b.
^f Bricetti Anna-
les Mandi. par.
3. Tom. 2. p. 118
^g Sigon. in regno
Italia. l. 19.
p. 97.
^h Eavin. Theat.
d' Honn. l. 8.
c. 1.

The Habit is a ^k White Tunick or Cassock, and a Mantle of *Russet* Colour; but there is some difference among those that mention the Badge, ⁱ Sansovin and ^m Maurolico say, they wore before their breasts a purple *Cross* patee, bordered with Gold; ⁿ Gothofridus saith, it is a purple *Cross* patee, with two Stars in chief; but

ⁱ Sigonius & Marquez, loca cit.
^k Gothofrid. in Archont. Cosm. l. 3. p. 7.
^l Orig. de Cavalieri. f. 22.
^m In Mare Oceano Relig. p. 232.
ⁿ Loco cit.
^o Loco supra cit.
^p Marquez in Tesoro Milit. de Cavall.
fol. 38. b.
^q Ibid. f. 37. b.
^r S. Maurolico, loco cit.

^o Marquez gives it an *Octogonal Cross*, like that of *Malta*, and four Stars, to wit, one at every side thereof.

The manner of giving the Habit, and making Profession, is with the Ceremony used by the *Knights of Malta*. The *Knights* profess ^s Obedience to their Great Master, and conjugal Chastity, but are ^t forbid to wear Spurs or Bridles of Gold. They are commonly called *Cavalieri de Madona*, and reside at *Bolonia*, *Modena*, and other Cities of *Italy*: and because they have no Monasteries, but dwell in their own Houses, together with their Wives and Children, at ease and in plenty, they were called ^v *Fratres Gaudentes*, or ^w *Hilares*.

The Order of Knights of St. James in Portugal.

(29.)

We have not met with any who make mention of this Order as distinct from that of *St. James* in *Galicia*, save only *J. Mich. Marquez*, but such as rather take it to have been sometime a member thereof; and that the *Knights of St. James* in *Galicia*, who had anciently Commanderies in *Portugal*, were only exempted from obedience

obedience and subjection to their Great Master, and not received upon the account of a new Institution, for so much doth *Andrew Favin* affirm; but *Jos. Micheli*, from *Portugal* Writers, reports the contrary, and gives this further account of the Order, to wit, ^a That the troubles the *Moors* gave daily to *Portugal*, and the great zeal of their Kings, seeing their Subjects so exceedingly oppressed by them, was such, that they endeavoured by all means to cut off those mischiefs, and to secure and quiet the Confines of their Kingdom.

Among whom King *Don Denys* the Sixth, moved with a like tender regard towards his People, did in the year of our Lord ^b 1310. institute this Order of *St. James*, under whose protection he became victorious in divers Battels against the *Moors*, and at length quieted his Kingdom, by the assistance of these Knights. And it was not long after the Institution, ere this Order flourished, through the favour of those Privileges bestowed on it by the Founder.

It received approbation first, from Pope ^c *Nicholas* the Fourth, after from Pope *Celestine* the Fifth, and again from other of his Successors.

The *Knights* profess conjugal Chastity, Hospitality and Obedience, and none are admitted before they make proof of their Gentility by blood.

The *Ensign* of this Order is a ^d Red Sword, formed like that of *St. James* in *Galicia*, the Habit *White*: only the difference between them lies in a little Twist of Gold, which these of *Portugal* draw about their Sword.

At the Town of *Alcasar de sul*, was the principal Convent of this Order first seated, afterward removed to *Palmela*, where it yet continues: and whiles *Portugal* remained under the Crown of *Spain*, and the Administration of this Order under that King, it was no less illustrious, than whilst their own Kings governed.

The *statutes* ^f are much the same with those of *St. James* in *Galicia*, so also is the manner of giving the Habit, Benediction, and Profession.

The Order of our Lady, and of St. George of Montesa in Valentia.

(30.)

This Order did succeed into the Lands and Possessions of the *Knights Templars* in *Valentia*, as the *Knights Hospitalars* did into those of the *Templars* in *France*, *Italy*, and other places. For ^h after the *Templars* were dissolved, *James* the Second, King of *Aragon* and *Valentia*, refused to grant their Revenues (lying in his Kingdom) to the Order of *St. John* of *Jerusalem*, as other Princes had done; nevertheless within few years sent an Embassy to Pope *John* the 22. to give him his reasons why he did not.

These the Pope considering of, as also that the *Moors* were very neer to *Aragon*, gave way that these Revenues of the exaucterated *Templars* should be applied to the Convent of *Montesa*, where had been placed both *Knights* and *Friars* of the Order of *Calatrava*.

Hereupon this King, in the year of our Lord ^k 1317. Instituted this Order, in the City of *Valentia* (nevertheless subject to that of *Calatrava*, as a member thereof) and made choice of the Town of *Montesa*, to give the Knights both name and habitation: whom he obliged to defend his Kingdoms, against the incursions of the *Moors*.

Their ^m Colledge (dedicated to the honor of *St. George*) was built in the following year by the Pope at *Montesa*, at the instance of King *James*, ⁿ *Gulielmus de Eril*, a valiant Soldier being constituted the first Master in the Convent of *St. Mary* and *St. George*.

The ^o Statutes of the Order (almost the same with those of *Calatrava*) were confirmed by the said Pope *John*, who gave to these Knights the ^p *Cistercian Rule*. They vowed conjugal Chastity, and the manner of their Investiture is as in the Order of *Calatrava*.

Their Habit is ^q *White*, and the Badge of the Order a ^r plain Red Cross; that is, the Cross of *St. George*, Patron of the Kingdoms of *Navarr* and *Aragon*.

M

^a Ensa Tejo-
ro milit.
^b de Cavall.
^c f. 48. a.

^d f. ^e *Ibid.*

^g Menen. De-
lic. Equest.
^h p. 112.
ⁱ Tejo milit. de
Cavall. f. 72. a.

^k Jo. Mariana
de reb. Hisp. l.
15. c. 16. vide
Fr. de Rades
Andrada en
Chron. de Ca-
latrava. f. 49. b.
^l Idem de Re-
des.

^m Ibidem.
ⁿ Menenn.
^o p. 113.
^p Favin. en le
Theat. d' Hon-
neur. l. 6. c. 15.
^q Sanjoo. Orig.
de Cavallieri.
^r f. 21. b.

^s q Sanjoo in ut
supra, & Ge-
thofrid. Ar-
chont. Gofm.
^t l. 3. p. 7.
^u Una Crux
Liana Roxa,
Lancerote l. 1,
c. 32.

^v Favin. l. 6.
c. 16.

Aragon. This Cross was worn upon the breast, by a privilege granted to the Knights from Pope Benedict the Thirteenth.

^t Silo. Mauro-
lico in Mare
Oceano Relig.
p. 229.
^u En Tesoro mi-
lit. de Caval.
loc. cit.

To this Order of Montesa was incorporated that of ^t St. George d' Alfama, anno Dom. 1399. which union received confirmation from the Council of Constance.

A Catalogue of the Masters are recorded by ^u Jo. Micheli; which great Office continues to this time in the King of Spain; so doth the Revenue of thirteen Commanderies belonging thereunto, amounting to 23000 Duckets per annum.

The Order of Knights of Christ in Portugal.

(31.)

^a Alex. Rofa his
continuation of
Sir W. Rave-
leighs Hist.
sub finem.

^b Jo. Micheli
en Tesoro milit.
de Cavall. f.
63. b.
Pantaleon de
Ord. Joannit.
reb. gest. l. 1.
p. 95.
Mém. p. 114.

As the Knights of Montesa sprung from the ruine of the Knights Templars in Valentia, so did this Order of Christ (or of the Warfare of Christ) succeed them in the Kingdom of Portugal. For the Knights Templars having been very serviceable to the Kings of Portugal, in their Wars against the Moors, the Kings gave unto them divers Lands and Revenues, which when their Order came to be dissolved, and their Estates confiscated, King ^b Don Denys, surnamed Perioca, sent to Pope John the 22. (then at Avignon) to desire that the Knights Templars Lands might not be disposed of, out of his Kingdom; which though he did not readily grant, yet he gave way for the King, to render him the reasons of his request.

Hereupon King Denys sent his Embassadors to the Pope, in the year 1316. not only to back his desire, but withal to declare to his Holiness the great vexations and evils, the neighbouring Moors in Algarves did to his Kingdom. And forasmuch as the Town of Castro Marin was a Frontier of the Enemy, and the site thereof very commodious for the building of a Fort to resist them, he farther moved the Pope for Licence, that an Order of Knights might be Instituted in that Town, and withal offered to him the Rents and Jurisdiction thereof, and all Dominion over it.

This request being thought just, and the remedy so necessary, the Pope did afterwards (namely in the year of our Lord 1319.) give Foundation to this new Order, dedicating it to the honor of God, and the exaltation of the Catholick Faith, under the Title of the Military Order of our Lord Jesus Christ, because of the miraculous apparition, which this King had seen of Christ crucified, when he went out to fight against the Moors.

He further commanded, that the Knights of this Order should observe the same Rule, with those of the Order of Calatrava, which was Cistercian, and enjoy the same Privileges and Indulgences, formerly granted to their Great Master and Knights. In which respect he nominated Don Gil. Martinez, for their first Master, because he was a Knight profest, and Master of the Order of St. Benedict d' Aviz; and appointed for their Visitor, the Abbot of Alcobaza, of the Cistercian Order.

^c Egidius Mar-
tinus.

^e Ibid. f. 64. a.

^d Platina in
v. 23.
^e Gualfrid.
Archona. Con-
s. 12. p. 71.
Cosmogr.
244.
Mariana.
c. 16.
milit. de
63. b.
Dizceff.

This Abbot or his Lieutenant in succession was impowred to receive of the Master of this Order, in the name of the Pope and Church of Rome, the Oath of fidelity; it being directed to be taken in the presence of the Kings of Portugal, before he should enter upon the administration of his Mastership, and the King was obliged to receive this Oath within ten days, after the Master should tender it to him, and in case the King did not in that time receive it from the Master, then he might take on him the administration of his Office without it: and further that each Knight before his admittance should take the same Oath of Fidelity, before the Master of this Order.

All the ^d Goods and Possessions formerly belonging to the Knights Templars, within the Kingdom of Portugal, were hereupon granted unto this Order, and the Knights thereof particularly obliged to make War against the Moors in Batica, next neighbour to Portugal. They had appointed to them for their chief Seat, ^e Castro Marin, where their first Convent was erected, but afterwards it was removed into the City of Tomar.

They

They went clothed in *Black*, wearing upon their breasts a *Cross* Patee of *Red Silk*, and upon that another of *White*.

This Order (as that d' *Avis*) became at length annexed to the Crown of *Portugal*; whose Kings have ever since taken upon them the title of perpetual Admirators of both.

8 *P. v. m. l. 6.*
c. 8. vide *Ju-*
risprud. Heroic.
p. 562. & *A.*
Mem. Disq. 1.
Quest. 11.
n. 156.

The Order of Knights of the Passion of Jesus Christ.

(32.)

Some years after the Institution of the precedent *Order*, and towards the latter end of the thirteenth Century, there was erected a religious *Order of Knighthood*, by *Charles* King of *France*, and our King *Richard* the Second, which bore the Title of the *Order of the Passion of Jesus Christ*. And though we do not find any further progress thereof, after it had received its Foundation, yet considering the grounds whereon it was instituted, and the nobleness and largeness of the design (exceeding all other *Religious Orders of Knighthood*, except those of the *Knights of St. John of Jerusalem*, and *Knights Templars*) as also because one of our *English* Kings was a Co-founder thereof; we conceived it worthy our pains to make an extract, particularly relating to the causes why it was erected, the frame of its Constitution, its principal Structures, and the *Habit* and *Ensigns* thereof, out of an old *French Manuscript*, written by *Philip de Muisere*, Chancellor of *Cyprus*, wherein it is thus prefaced.

Forasmuch as by reason of the three deadly sins, which began to reign among the *Christians*, namely, *Pride*, *Covetousness*, and *Luxury*, God permitted the *Saracens*, Enemies of the Faith, to overcome *Jerusalem* and the *Holy Land*, to the shame and disgrace of *Christendom*; therefore to renew the memory of the *Passion of Christ*, thereby to extirpate those deadly sins, and to make way for the reconquest of *Jerusalem*, and the *Holy places*, the overthrow and confusion of the Enemies of the Faith, this *Order* was erected.

There are^b twenty causes reckoned up by this Author, for the necessity of Instituting this *Order of the Passion*.

a Ex vet. MS.
in Bibliotheca
Arundeliana,
f. 1. 2. 3.

b Ibidem.
fol. 3. a.

1. To stir up the Soldiery to amendment of life, by the example of so new and solemn a devotion.
2. To renew the memory of the *Passion of Christ* among *Christians*, by the example of this holy Order.
3. For the speedy sending of relief and succour to the *Christians* of the *East*, that stood in great need of it.
4. For the regaining of the *Holy Land*, out of the hands of the Enemies of the Faith.
5. For the propagation of the holy Catholick Faith, among the people of the *East*.
6. For resisting of those that were disturbers of the Catholick Faith; as Heretics, Tyrants, and Schismatics.
7. That the rents and divisions of the Church through *Italy*, might by the passage of this holy Order be healed and reunited, under one universal Shepherd of Souls.
8. That when the Kings of *France* and *England* should arrive in the Continent, this Order might go before them, as a valiant precursor, to make way for, and attend them in all things.
9. To serve as a Life-Guard, for the defence of the two Kings persons, and a forlorn hope, to give example and encouragement to the whole Army.
10. That those Volunteers that served in the Army, being without head, and not under Rule (if they should venture extravagantly and rashly into the Battel without Guide) might be regulated by the *Cavaliers* of this holy Order.
11. That if the Victory should at any time incline to the adverse party, these *Cavaliers*, by reason of their expertness in the feats of Arms, might serve for a reserve to recover the declining Fortune of the day, and to rescue the dead and wounded out of the hands of the Enemy.

c Fol. 4.

12. That if at any time either of the two Kings should be left destitute of a Guard to their persons, they might be attended by some of the most valiant of this Order.

13. That if any Towns or Fortresses taken by either of the two Kings, should be found dangerous and difficult to be kept; that such should be committed to the *Cavaliers* of this Order, who were to be ready to undergo all kind of dangers and difficulties.

14. That by the vigilance and industry of these *Cavaliers* (if they should be set as Spies upon the Enemies actions) the two Kings might be informed of the secrets of the Enemies Camp.

d Fol. 5.

15. ^a That if a Treaty should happen to be between the two Kings and the Enemy, the Prince of the *Chevalry* in person, or some of his chosen *Cavaliers* in his stead, should labour indefatigably in this affair, especially either of the Kings so commanding.

16. That if either of the Kings should be at any Siege, within the Enemies Territories, certain of the *Chevalry* ought humbly to visit the Host, to be watchful over it, and to guard it by night from the attempts and Spies of the Enemy, or of false brethren.

17. That if any false rumors or tales should be spread in the Army of the Catholick Kings, with design to raise dissentions or debates; the Prince of the *Chevalry* in person, or any of his grand Officers for him (according to the dignity of the persons at odds) should labour to the utmost of their power to take up the Controversie, and bring the persons to a reconciliation.

18. That if any of the *Christians* of the *West*, should have any obligation to take upon them a passage into the *Holy Land*, a certain number of the *Chevalry* might be ready to accompany them to the performance of their Vows or Obligations.

19. That if any of the younger Sons or Brothers of Noblemen, having little or no portions of their own, should be willing to serve in the *Chevalry*; they might so long as they behaved themselves well, be nobly and handsomely provided for.

20. That if either of the Kings should be hindered from passing into the *Holy Land*, about the performance of any Vow or Obligation from their Forefathers, the *Chevalry* might be ready at a speedy warning to perform whatsoever was committed to their charge, in behalf of the Kings.

e Fol. 16. b.

- ^a And although this Order was principally dedicated to the honor of our blessed Saviour, yet saith our Author, the blessed Virgin Mary was lookt upon as a principal Mediatress and Advocate of this holy *Chevalry*; representing the passion of her Son, and also guarding and defending the *Cavaliers*, against the Enemies of the Faith, as a Mother doth a Child.

f Fol. 19. b.

§ As to the Government of this Order, it is to be noted, that in the principal Convent of the holy *Chevalry*, all things of publick concernment were to be debated by five authentick Councils in the presence of the Prince.

The first was to be called the *Quotidian Council*, consisting of four and twenty Councillors. The second was the *Particular, or singular Council*, consisting of about forty persons, to wit, four and twenty grand Councillors, eight Executors of Justice, four Commissaries of Treppasses, and three or four Doctors of Divinity and Law. The third the *Grand Council*, consisting of fourscore persons, viz. forty such as were mentioned in the second Council, and other authentick Officers, and a certain number of *Brothers*, valiant and sage persons, amounting in all to the abovesaid number. The fourth Council was to be called the *General Chapter*, and held every year; consisting of all the above-named Officers, with the Presidents and Deputies of Provinces. The fifth Council was the *Universal Chapter*, to be held from four to six years; consisting of a thousand *Knights* of the *Chevalry*, by which Universal Chapter, any of the *Chevalry*, or grand Officers were to be reformed, or, if occasion required, punished according to the Statutes of the *Chevalry*.

The principal Officer of the *Chevalry*, was the *Grand Justiciary*, to whom belonged the Judgment of all the criminal Affairs, and the disposal of all chief Offices and Places.

The

The next chief Officer was called the *Grand Bailiff*; that is to say, only in the principal Convent, to administer Justice both Civil and Criminal in that Convent to all sorts of persons.

^h In the principal City, as also in every City and Castle belonging to the *Chevalry*, one of the Order was to be chosen to administer all sorts of Justice in that place; who was to go under the name of *Potestate*. h Fol. 20. a.

Also in the General Chapter, there was to be chosen every year one of the Order, who should be called the *Senator* of the *General Chapter*, and four and twenty discreet persons of the *Chevalry* with him, who should hold a general Chapter, or principal Convent, upon any Expedition of War.

In the Universal Chapter, there was to be chosen one of the Order, who should be called *Dictator* of the *Universal Chapter*; and with him twelve Fathers Conscript, with twelve Coadjutors, who should hold an universal Chapter, from four years to six.

Also in the principal Convent, there were to be chosen ten of the *Chevalry*, courageous and of holy life, who should be called the *Ten Executors of Justice*, i Fol. 20. b. which should be decreed by the Grand Justiciary upon the persons of the chief Officers being delinquent; they were also to be called the Conservators of the holy Rule of the *Chevalry*, and also to be assistant to the grand Advocate, and the grand Protectors and Promoters of Divine Charity.

Also in the principal Convent there were to be chosen four of the *Chevalry*, devout and good men, who should be called the *Charitable Commissaries* of the *-----* whose Office it was to provide for the Widows and Orphans, committed to their care.

And whereas this Order was made up of eight several Languages, there was to be always appointed in the principal Convent, eight Notaries using the Habit of the *Brothers*, and also for every language a several Notary, and so the like in the Convents of other Regions and Cities.

Also, to the end the *Knights* of this Order might live according to the Rules of the Order, in the perfection of their Estates and Degree, they were to bind themselves by Oath to three things, *viz.* Obedience to their Sovereigns, poverty of Spirit, and conjugal Chastity.

^k Also the *Chevalry* were to have for their sustentation, the possession of Cities, Castles, Fortresses, Gold, Silver, and all kind of moveables, as God should bestow upon them; nevertheless all to be in common among them, that they might the better intend the exercise of their Arms and other Duties. k Fol. 21. b.

Also to the end that any of the *Chevalry*, having possessions in the *West*, might not return thither, to the personal enjoyment of them, thereby leaving the duties that belonged to their Order in the *East*; such possessions were appointed to be managed by certain Merchants and honest Citizens, deputed to that purpose.

Also the *holy Chevalry*, were to observe Justice, both Civil and Criminal, rendering to every one according to his deserts, whether reward or punishment.

^l Also the *Prince* of the *Chevalry* was to summon the principal Convent, at the Castle of the principal City; where he should assemble the President of the City and of the Convent, and three or four other Presidents, each having under them four and twenty *Knights*, and four and twenty *Brothers* of the *Chevalry*, with fifty Serjeants, so as to make up in the whole, with Officers and others, to the number of about 500 or 600 *Combatants* to be ready upon all occasions. l Fol. 22. a.

Moreover there was to belong to the principal Convent, a *Church* of so marvelous a structure, that the like hath not been seen or known: it was designed to be 50 Cubits in breadth, without any Pillars, 100 Cubits long, and in height 25.

Also in the Castle and principal Convent, there was to be an *Hospital*, in which the Widows of the holy *Chevalry*, should attend upon the sick and infirm, ^m still employing themselves in the holy work of Charity, which also was to be the business of the *Prince*, the *Grand Officers* and all the *Knights*. m Fol. 22. b.

Also there should belong to the Convent a *Baptistry* or *Font*, round, large, and curiously made for the baptizing of the Sons and Daughters of the *Knights*.

Also there was appointed to belong to the principal Convent, a large and stately

stately *Palace*, with a great Hall, and large Consistories, to contain the Prince and Council with their Retinue, and for a habitation for the Prince, with his Princess and Family.

Also in the Convent there was to be a *Cloister*, for the Canons and Clerks, large and delightful, and a great Hall with Galleries; which habitation should be near the Church, and inclosed with high Walls.

Also there was to belong to the said Castle a very fair *Palace*, to entertain the Princes of the *West*, when at any time they came that way, either to War, or upon Pilgrimage.

Also in the said Castle there were to be distinct lodgings and habitations for the grand Officers of the *Chevalry*, as well Natives as Foreigners, for the *Knights Companions*, and *Serjeants* of the *Chevalry*, and for their Wives.

Also there were to be in the said Castle, Wine-Cellars, Granges, Granaries, Stables for Horses and Cattel, Easements, Mills, Cisterns, Baths, and all other necessaries for the *Chevalry*.

n Fol. 23. a.

Also in the principal Convent there were to be three chief Halls; first the great Hall of the *Prince*, where he and all the *Knights* and *Brothers* of the *Chevalry* were to dine on Festival days: The second, where the *Canons* should daily sit at meat with the *Forreign Prelates* and Clerks, and also all the *Knights* and *Brothers* of the *Chevalry* that were unmarried: The third, for the grand Commandor of the Horse to eat in, and with him all the lesser Officers of the principal Convent, all the Valets of the Horse, and the Servitors belonging to the said Commandor.

The Habit of the *holy Chevalry* of the *Passion* of *Jesus Christ*, was to be established according to the intention of the holy Rule; that is to say, representing in its Vestments the *Passion* of *Jesus*.

The *Knights* were appointed to wear a handfom cloth Coat, of a civil colour, reaching down half way the leg, which should be called the *principal Coat* of the *Chevalry*; this was to be girt with a large *Girdle* of Silk or Leather, two fingers broad, the Buckle round, of black Horn, as also the Tongue and the garnishing of the holes were to be of Tin. They should also wear *Red Chaperons* or *Caps*, representing the blood of *Jesus Christ*, and over the principal Coat a *Mantle* of *white Cloth* or *serge*, which *Mantle* from the shoulders downward, was to be open on both sides along the arms; and in that part between the two openings before the breast, there was to be a *Cross* of Cloth or Serge, two fingers broad; this *Cross* was to proceed in traverse as far as the openings of the *Mantle*, only the *Cross* upon the *Prince* his *Mantle* was to be edged round about with a *Gold Fringe*, half an Inch broad, or thereabout: Some small difference also there was to be between the Habits of the *Knights*, the *Brothers* and the *Serjeants*; that of the *Knights* was to be a little more solemn, and more cleerly representing the *Passion* of the holy *Jesus*, than either that of the *Brothers* or *Serjeants*; but the Habit of them all was to be *White*, only in the *Cross*, and in the shape there was to be some difference.

o Fol. 23. b.

p Ibid.

The *Arms* of the *holy Chevalry* were these, the field of the Banner (following the description in the Constitution) was to be *White*, in the midst of it a *Red Cross* four fingers broad, or thereabouts, extending along the field: in the middle of the *Cross* there was to be a compass with four rounds and four little angles between the rounds, this compass was to be filled with a black colour, representing the agony and passion of our Lord, which compass in the middle of the *Cross* was to be four inches about, and within it an *Agnus Dei*, well shapt, and of a resplendent golden colour, representing the glory of *Jesus* after his resurrection: the *Cross* and Compass was to be edged about with a bordure of Gold, one finger broad, or a little less, and about the sides there was to be a little red bordure of the breadth of half a finger.

There was also to belong to this *holy Chevalry*, another singular and solemn Banner, yet not to be born, but at great Battels, and in times of extraordinary danger and difficulty. The *Cross* and *Agnus Dei*, was to be born by the *Prince* armed, the armed *Chevaliers* and the *Brothers*, upon their great *White* Gippos or loose Coats, both before and behind; excepting that in lieu of the Gold

Habits and Ensignes, belonging to the Order
of the Passion of Ihesus Christ.



Squires of Honour,

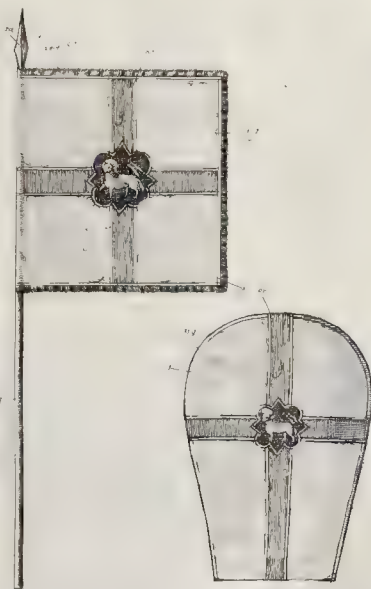
The Prince of the Knights,

A Knight of the Order,



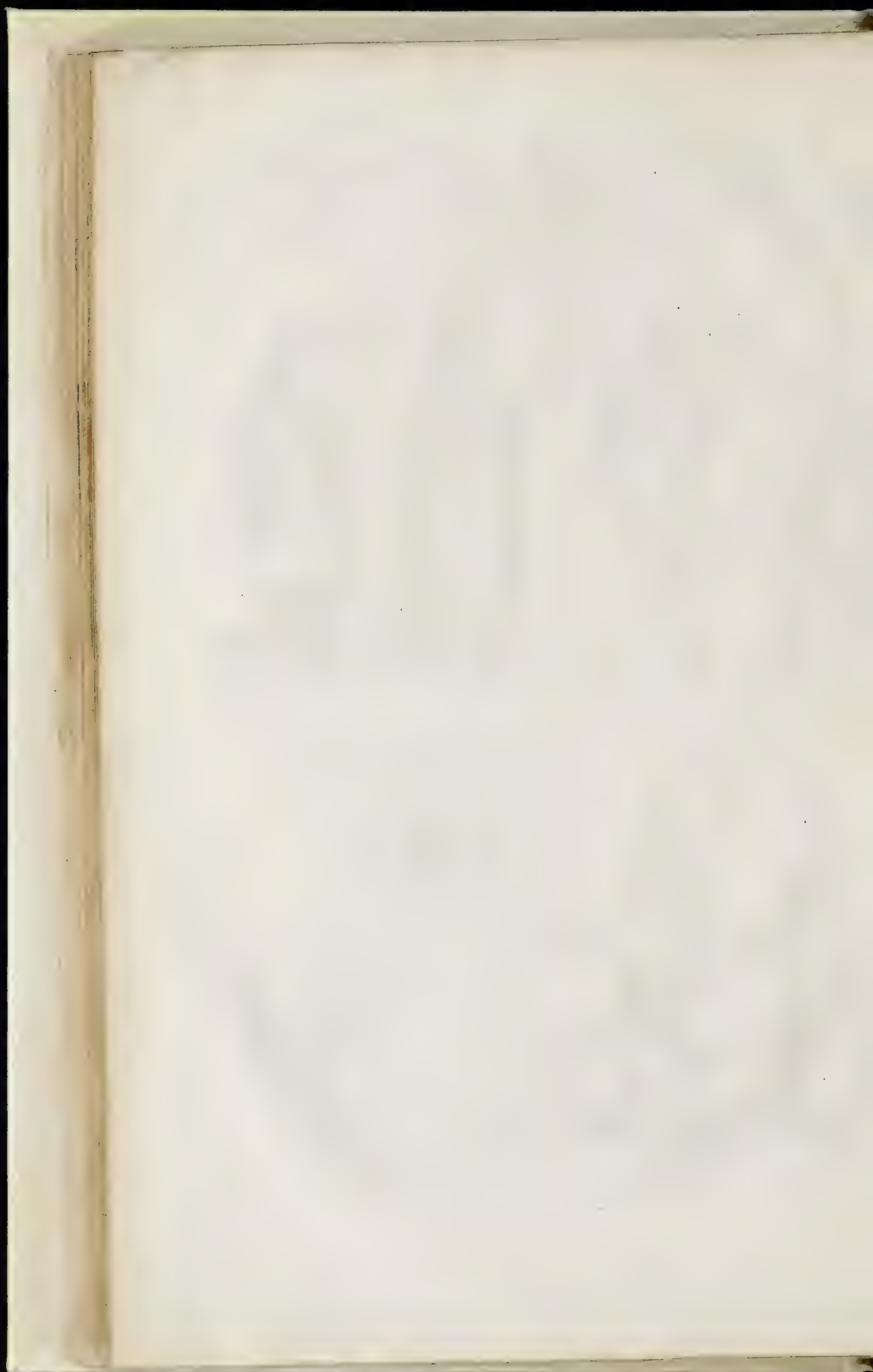
Woman of the Order,

A Knight Completely Armed



The Great Banner

A Shield of the Arms



Gold bordure about the Cross, the *Brothers* were to have a bordure of black Silk.

¹ Every *Knight* was to have his *Esquire* armed at all points, and a little Valet to carry his Launce and Helmet, beside another bigger Valet habited in a loose Coat, to carry his Mail, and a third on foot, to lead his Sumpter. For any warlike Expedition, he was to have his five Horses and four Servants, and in all times of peace, two or three Horses, according as the means of the Chevalry should be able to allow.

Also each *Brother* of the Chevalry was to have toward warlike Expeditions three Horses or four, according as his merits and abilities were, and three Servants, whereof one or two were to be fighting men; and in times of peace, one or two according to the Chevalry's ability of allowance.

The number of *Knights* of the *Holy Chevalry*, was a thousand; or a thousand, one hundred, or thereabouts.

*The Order of the * Brician Knights in Sweden.*

(33.)

^a *Jof. Micheli Marquez* from *Marcus Ant. Vianus*, in his Description of *Sweden*, informs us, that a holy and famous *Queen* of that Kingdom, (whom ^b *Andr. Mendo* saith, was St. || *Bridget*) being very zealous for the honor of our Saviour *Jesus Christ*, Instituted this *Order* in the year of our Lord 1396. which we rather think is mistaken for 1366. because he saith it was approved by Pope *Urban* the Fifth, who then posselt the Roman Chair, and gave to the *Knights* the Rule of St. *Augustine*, beside St. *Bridget* dyed the * 23. of July 1373.

The sum of their Profession was to defend Christian Religion against Hereticks, to secure the Confines of that Kingdom, to bury the dead, to succour the Widows and Fatherless, and to keep up Hospitality; to which end the *Queen* endowed this *Order* with large Possessions; so that during her Reign, it exceedingly flourished.

The chief *Ensign* of this *Order*, was a Blue *Octogonal Cross*, and under it a Tongue of Fire, this being accounted the Symbol of Love and Charity; in regard they were to be zealous in defence of the holy Faith, and in maintaining the Statutes of the *Order*.

The manner observed at the Investiture of the *Knights*, as also the Benedictions and Professions, were the same with those of *Malta*.

But one thing is observable in this *Order* above others, that after admission thereinto all were advanced according to their seniority: so that there was a possibility for the *junior Knight* to arrive at the dignity of *Master* of the *Order*.

* *Cavalleros Bricianes en Suecia. Jo. Micheli Marquez en Tesoro milit. de Cavall.*

p. 57. b.

^a *Ibid.*

^b *De Ord. Milit. Dissq. 1.*

Quest. 2.

Sect. 20.

|| Should not the *Knights*

then be rather called of St. *Bridget*.

* *Jo. Bapt. Ricciolus Chronolog. reformat. Tom. 4. Index 2. p. 208.*

c *Cruz Octogona, abaxo una lingua de fuego colorada. Test. milit. loco cit.*

Tessera Cruz Cerulea ad insar Militensis, sub qua lingua ignea jacet. Mend. loc. cit.

The Order of Knights of St. Maurice in Savoy.

(34.)

The ^e *Order* of *Knights Hermits* of St. *Maurice*, had their beginning upon the retreat of *Amadis* the Eighth, Duke of *Savoy*, into the desert of *Ripaille*, near the Lake of *Geneva*, and was bestowed by him, in the year of our Lord 1434. on those ten *Knights* of his Court, who had retired with him thither; as well to preserve the memory of St. *Maurice*, honored as titular Patron of *Savoy*, for many Ages past; as of his Launce (some say ^f *Sword*) and Ring, the essential Symbols of *Knighthood*, passing from hand to hand, from the Kings of *Burgoyne* to the Princes of *Savoy*; by whom they have been preserved, with great honor and veneration: and are as a pledge of Dominion, delivered to them with great solemnity, at their Inauguration.

Nine years after the Institution of this *Order*, the Founder was prevailed with, to accept of the Popedom, after the deposition of Pope *Eugenius* the Fourth: and the Council of *Basil* sitting, he was elected Pope, the ^h 5. of November,

^e *Sam. Guichenon in le Histoir. Genealog. de la royal Maison. de Savoy. l. 1. p. 113. Crescenzi Presid. Rom. par. 3. l. 1. g. Memen. De. lic. Equest. p. 54.*

^h *Alfon. Ciacon. l. 2. p. 910.*

ember, anno 1439. by the name of *Felix* the Fifth: Nine years after he freely resigned the Chair, the Instrument of Renunciation, bearing date at *Lausanna*, the 1st sixth day of *April*, anno 1449. to whom succeeded *Nicholas* the Fourth, and immediately he^r retired again to his solitude in *Ripaille*, where he dyed the 1st seventh of *January* anno 1451. and lies buried in the^m Cathedral Church of *Lausanna*.

i *Guichenon* en
mesme Hist.
Genealog. de la
Maison de Sa-
voy. l. 6. p. 322.
k *Ibid.* p.
l 333.
m *Clacon*. l. 2.
p. 916.
n *Favin*.
o *Theat.* d'
Honneur. l. 8.
c. 6.
p *Guichenon*.
Hist. Genealog.
l. 1. p. 114.
q In Origin. Or-
dinum Eque-
strium p. 51. 52.
53. vide porro
Guichenon. l. 6.
p. 524. & Cle-
ruch. in Com-
pend. Bull. T. m.
2. p. 80. Con-
stitut. 6.

This Order of *St. Maurice* was made subject to the Rule of *St. Augustine*: and the *Knights* had assigned them for their Habit, a^o *Grey* or *Ash-colour Gown* and *Chaperon*, a *Vest* of the same, girded with a golden Girdle, the *Chaperon* and *Sleeves* faced with *Red Chamlet*, and on the breast of the *Mantle* a *White Cross Pommette* of *Taffaty* or *Cloth*; but the *Cross* which the *Master* or *Chief* of the Order wore, was made of *Gold*, or rich *Embroidery*.

This Order continued not long after the death of the Founder. But Duke *Emanuel Philibert* to renew the devotion, which his Predecessors always bore to *St. Maurice*, restored the same, and obtained a Bull from Pope *Gregory* the Thirteenth, dated the 17. of *October* 1572. for erecting and instituting thereof, under the *Cistercian Rule*, and the perpetual protection of the Duke of *Savoy*, its *Grand Master*; which Bull is set forth by^a *Albertus Miræus*, who thence collects that this Order was then first Instituted, and not by Count *Amadis* the Eighth, as is before noted.

Knights of the Holy Ghost at Rome.

(35.)

r *Favin*.
s *Theat.* d'
Honneur. l. 8.
c. 1.

This Order was Instituted by Pope^s *Paul* the Second, anno Dom. 1468. under the Title of *Brethren of the Hospital of the Holy Ghost*: The *Knights* wore upon their Habits a^t *White Cross Forme*.

The Order of Knights of St. George in Austria and Carinthia.

(36.)

a *Lib. 3. de re-
bus Viennens.*
b *Gotofrid. Ar-
chont. Cosmica.*
l. 3. p. 13.
c *Favin*.
d *Theat.* d'
Honneur.
e *Ibid.* 7. c. 3.

^a *Wolfgangus Lazius* informs us, that *Frederick* the Third, Emperor of *Germany* (others that *Rudolphus* of *Hapsburgh*, first raiser of the House of *Austria*) instituted this Order of *Knights* of *St. George*, in the year of our Lord 1470. chiefly to guard the Frontiers of *Germany*, *Hungary*, *Austria*, *Stiria*, *Carinthia*, and to suppress the insolency of the *Turks*, by whose Incursions the Marches of these Countries were (about that time) miserably wasted: since which, these *Knights* have so gallantly behaved themselves, that they have often born away great *Trophies* and *Ensigns* of *Victory* from their *Enemies*.

The^d *Great Master* of this Order was advanced to the Title and Honor of a *Prince*, and for a Seat and Residence to him and his Successors, the Castle of *Mildstadt* in the Dukedom of *Carinthia* was appointed, where also was founded a Cathedral Church of *Canons*, under the Rule of *St. Augustine*.

The *Knights* bear for the *Ensign* of their Order the Arms of *St. George*, viz. ^f a plain *Red Cross*. Their^s *Habit* is *White*, they profess^b conjugal Chastity, and Obedience to their *Master*, and have the^d *Emperors* for their *Protectors*.

But there is mention made by^k *Fr. Menenius* (from *Bernardus Luceburgius*, in his Book *De Ordinibus Militaribus*) as also by^l *Alb. Miræus*, of an Order of *Knights* of *St. George* (which^m *Jos. Micheli* calls *Cavalleros de San Jorge en Alemania*) erected by *Maximilian* the Emperor, upon the like design with the former, he being greatly devoted to that Patron of all military Professors.

This Order was confirmed byⁿ Pope *Alexander* the Sixth, under the same Rule and Profession as the other, having the *Emperors* also their *Protectors*, though it be not much extended. The *Knights* elect their *Master* from among themselves, and the *Ensigns* of the Order is a^o *Red Cross*, with a *Crown* of *Gold* on the top of it.

g *A. Mendo-
la de Ord. Mi-
i lin. Diss. 1.*
h *Quæst.* 2.
i *Sess.* 27.
k In *Delic. E-
questr.* p. 173.
l *Origin. Ord.*
m *Equest.* p. 47.
n *Tesoro Milit.*
de *Cavali.*
f. 59. b.
o *Ibid.* f. 60. a.
p *Mera. Delic.*
Equest. p. 173.
q *A. Miræus, loco
cit.*

We observe elsewhere, that this Order runs under the Title of *Crowned Knights*, and is said to have been instituted among the *Austrians*, by the said Emperor *Maximilian*, anno 1494. in which respect the *Knights*, after they have served their Prince for a year, do enjoy a peculiar right (which is transmitted to their Heirs) of adorning their Shields and Helms with a Crown.

Jos. Micheli writeth, that this Emperor *Maximilian* joining in Battel with these *Knights* against the *Turks*, obtained a notable Victory; and that the *Turks* confessed, that a man on Horseback (supposed to be *St. George*, Patron of this Order) put them into so great fear, that they longed for the hour to flye and leave the Field.

*Confessio-
uan los Tur-
cos, que un
Cavallero solo
a Cavallo,
Idem Micheli
p. 60.*

The Order of Knights of St. George at Rome.

(37.)

Alexander the Sixth, anno Dom. 1498. Instituted the *Knights* of *St. George*, who wore a *Cross* of Gold, entwored with a circle of the same made in the form of a Crown.

But ** Micheli* saith, that the Order of *St. George*, which had the foresaid *Cross* for Ensign assigned to it, was instituted by Pope *Paul* the Third, at whose death it became extinct, and that the *Knights* of this Order dwelt at *Ravenna*, and were obliged to secure the Confines of the *Adriatic* Sea from *Pyrats*. But that the Order, which Pope *Alexander* the Sixth erected, had for Ensign the Figure of *St. George* hanging at a Collar.

*as Mennen.
b Apud Luce-
burgium, in lib.
de Armorum
militar. Myste-
riis. Vitis
vin
* Ensign
p. 6.*

Knights of St. Peter at Rome.

(38.)

Pope Leo the Tenth, anno 1520. Instituted this Order to fight against the *Turks*, and to guard and defend the Sea-Coasts. The number of these *Knights* at first was 400.

They wore the Image of *St. Peter* within an Oval of Gold, hanging at a Gold Chain: This Order was confirmed by *Paul* the Third.

*c Pavin, loco
nuper cit.
d Alph. Ciacon.
in vit. Pont. I.
2. p. 1070.
e A. Meno de
Ord. Mil. Diss.
1. Quasi. 2.
Sect. 26. n. 53.*

Knights of St. Paul at Rome.

(39.)

They were Instituted by Pope *Paul* the Third, anno 1540. and while he sat in the Papal Chair (which was about ten years after) he made 200 of these *Knights*.

The Ensign of this Order is the Image of *St. Paul*, hanging at a Chain of Gold.

*f A. Miram O.
rig. Ord. Equest.
p. 84.
g Palliar en la
science des Ar-
moiries. p. 504.*

The Order of Knights called Pios at Rome.

(40.)

In the year of our Lord 1560. Pope *Pius* the Fourth, erected this Order, and gave to the *Knights* thereof the Title of *Pios*. He created of them at first 375. but they encreased to the number of 535. *Ciaconius* styles them *Imperiales*, but they were more usually called *Commensales*.

Jos. Micheli Marquez calls them *Knights* of the *Golden Spur* in Italy, and not getting any certain knowledge of the original of this Order, under that Title, he is content to believe a Relation of some of the *Roman* Courtiers, who told him that it took beginning in the time of *Constantine* the Great, and that the *Knights* had their Title from the nature of their Office, which was to take off the Emperors Spurs; they were also employed neer his Person, in the quality of a Life-Guard.

*h Men. de Des-
sic. Equest.
p. 775.
i Ciacon. de
vit. Pontif. 1. 2.
p. 1179.
k Tesoro mil.
de Caval.
p. 74. b.*

^m Favin, lib.
4. 1.

This Pope endowed them very considerably, and gave them ^l precedence before the *Knights* of the *Empire*, and of *Malta*, because they were his Courtiers, and had the care and charge of carrying the Popes Chair on their shoulders, at such times as he went abroad in publick.

ⁿ De Orig.
Equest. p. 84.
ⁿ Tesoro mil.
de Caval. lo-
co cit.

^m *Miræus* saith, the *Ensign* of this Order is the Figure of St. *Ambrose*, hanging at a Chain of Gold about their necks; but ^a *Marquez* will have it a *Cross* of Cloth of Gold, of eight points, like that of *Malta*, and a little Spur linkt to the foot of it.

The Order of Knights of St. Stephen at Florence.

(41.)

^a Scipio Am-
brosi Mirato in
Historie Florent.
pars 2. p. 531.
ⁿ Sanjovanni Orig.
de Cavalier. f.
92. b.
^m Favin. Theat.
d' Honn. l. 8.
c. 7.

This Order was founded in the year of our Lord 1561. by ^a *Cosmo de Medicis*, second Duke of *Florence* (created afterwards first Great Duke of *Tuscany*) in ^b honor of St. *Stephen*, Pope and Martyr (of that name the Ninth) Patron and Protector of the City of *Florence*, to ^c revive and continue the memory of that fortunate Battel at *Murciano*, at which, overthrowing the assertors of Liberty, he laid the foundation of his grandeur. This Battel was fought on the sixth of *August*, being the Feast-day of the said St. *Stephen*.

^c Mennen. Delic. Equest. p. 124. Histoire
de Monsi. de Thou. T. m. 2. l. 26. p. 23.
^d Statut de l'Ord. de Cavalier. S. Stef-
fan. p. 5. edit. in Firenze 1620.
^e Ibid. p. 8.
^f Pag. 14.
^g Pag. 39. 44. & 52.
^h Pag. 62.

Pope *Pius* the Fourth ^d approved and confirmed this Order, under the Rule of ^e St. *Benedict* (his Bull to that effect, being dated at *Rome* the first of *February* next following the Institution) which was afterwards enlarged with many Privileges, by another Bull of the said ^f Pope *Pius*, as also by the Bulls of ^g *Sixtus* the Fifth, and ^h *Paul* the Fifth.

^m Histoire de Monsieur de Thou. loco cit.
ⁱ Scip. Ammirato, loco super relato.

The Institution of these *Knights* much resembles those of the *Knights* of *Malta*, and was erected in ^{*} imitation of that Order; they having the same Privileges granted unto them. They vow ⁱ Chastity, but conjugal (for they have li-

berty to marry) Charity in relieving their neighbour and afflicted, and Obedience to the Commands of their Grand Master: which Dignity was vested in the Founder, and descends to his Successors, Great Dukes of *Tuscany*.

^k Mennen. De-
lic. Equest.
p. 185.

The principal Seat of this Order was settled at *Pisa*, where the Founder ^k built a Church and a Convent, designing it for a Nursery, to breed up persons skilful in Maritime Affairs; that City having a commodious Haven for the Gallies, wherein the *Knights* of this Order are to serve, either in checking the Inroads of the Turkish Pirates, or setting forth a Navy on any other Expedition, if occasion require it. But since, it hath been transferr'd to ^l *Cosmopolis*, in the Isle of *Ithoa*; a place where the Founder, it seems, designed and intended it to have been first settled; for which *A. Miræus* cites *Onuphrius Panvinus*.

^l Heslin. Cos-
mogr. l. 1. p. 113
^m In Orig.
Equest. p. 43.

The *Habit* of this Order, is a long *Mantle* of *White Chamlet*, beautified with Red Trimmings, and on the left part of the breast a ⁿ *Cross* (like that of *Malta*) of Red or *Crimson Satin*, bordered with Gold. This ^o *Cross* is daily worn by the *Knights* on their Cloaks, as also on their military Garments, and about their necks in a Ribbon on Festival days.

ⁿ Crux rubra
cum Limbo
aureo. And.
Mendo de Ord.
Milit. Disq. 1.
Quest. 2. Sect.
19 n. 44.
^o Favin. in
p^l le Theat.
d' Honneur.
l. 8. c. 7.

Moreover this Order (like that of *Malta*) consists of *Knights*, *Priests*, and *Servants*; the ^p *Priests* wear the *Cross* of *Red Tassaty* without a border; and the *Servants* the *Cross* of St. *Anthony* only.

The *Statutes* and *Constitutions* were reformed by *Ferdinand* Great Duke of *Tuscany*, Son to the Founder, and approved in a Chapter of the Order, anno 1590. and since printed at *Florence*, anno 1628.

The Order of Knights of St. Maurice, and St. Lazarus in Savoy.

(42.)

Pope Gregory the Thirteenth, having at the solicitation of *Emanuel Philibert* Duke of *Savoy*, restored and instituted anew the Order of St. *Lazarus*, as also the

the Order of St. Maurice, anno 1572. and constituted this Duke Grand Master of both; shortly after, by his Bull dated the 13. of November in the same year, he united the Order of St. Lazarus to that of St. Maurice, for their greater honor: and thereby ordained, that this new Institution should be thenceforth called the Order of St. Maurice and St. Lazarus. He also constituted the said Duke and his Successors Dukes of Savoy, Grand Masters thereof; and obliged them to furnish out two Gallies, for the service of the Papal See, to be employed against Pyrats.

Upon this Union (permission being given by the last mentioned Bull, to assume a new Habit) the Knights of this Order had assigned them a Gown of Crimson Tabby, with wide sleeves, a long train, and edged about with White Taffaty, as also a Cordon, having a Tassel of White and Green, fixed to the Collar thereof.

The Badge of this Order is agreeable to the form engraved in the Plate set before this Chapter, to wit, the Green Cross of St. Lazarus, charged in the heart with the White Cross of St. Maurice, which the Knights wear either in a Gold Chain or Silk Ribbon, the Colour being at their own choice. This double Cross was granted to be the Ensign of this new Order, by another Bull of the said Pope Gregory, given at Rome the 15. of January 1573.

In which year, to wit, in the Month of April, Duke Emanuel, in pursuance of this Union and new Foundation, assembled all the Knights, in the City of Nice; where meeting, he was by them received and acknowledged for their Grand Master, and took the Oath, recorded by Sam. Guichenon.

Afterwards this Duke did erect two fair Houses or Convents, for the Knights of this new Order to inhabit in, the one at Nice, and the other at Turin; and with the Popes approbation, bestowed all the Lands and Revenues formerly belonging to the Order of St. Lazarus (lying within his Territories) upon them.

So that at this day, both the Orders of St. Lazarus and St. Maurice, being united, rest under the Patronage of one Grand Master, and chief of the Order, namely the Duke of Savoy; whose title used in all Affairs, relating to this new instituted Order, is as followeth.

* *Totius Religionis & Militiæ Sanctorum Mauricii & Lazari, Betleem, Nazareth, Hierosolymitan. Ordinis Sancti Augustini, Conventuum, Hospitalium, Domorum, Preceptoriarum atq; piorum locorum omnium, citra & ultra Marc, cis & trans Alpes, per universum Orbem, Humilis & Generalis Magnus Magister.*

Knights of Loretto.

(43.)

* Sixtus Quintus instituted this Order, anno Dom. 1587. but Jos. Micheli placeth it in the year before; for which he erected the Church of our Lady at Loretto into a Cathedral and a Bishops See: and gave the Knights for Ensign the Image of our Lady of Loretto, hung in a golden Chain.

The splendor of this Order continued but a while, yet is it not quite extinguished.

The Order of Knights of the blessed Virgin Mary of Mount Carmel.

(44.)

Though the Grand Mastership of St. Lazarus, and the Commanderies thereunto belonging, lying within the Dominions of all Christian Princes, were conferr'd upon Emanuel Philebert Duke of Savoy, by Pope Gregory the Thirteenth (as hath been before remembered) yet the Duke did not gain the investiture of the Commanderies lying in France, being opposed by King Henry the Third; whereupon some Knights of that Order, refusing to join with their Fellows, under the obedience of the Duke, maintained themselves in that Kingdom, until the Reign of King Henry the Fourth; who being desirous to have a new Order

f Guichenon in Hist. Gen. de la Mais. de Savoy, l. 6. p. 526. & Compend. Bull. Tom. 2. p. 81. Conf. 7.

g Exrelatio- u ne Com de Montoux hujus Ordinis Cancellar.

w Idem Guichenon. l. 6. p. 529. x Fav. l. 8. c. 6

y Lib. 6. p. 529.

z Guichenon. l. 1. p. 114.

u Ciacon. de vir. Pontif. l. 2. p. 1243. u Theat. de Hon. l. 8. c. 1. w Tes. milit. de Caval. f. 62. a. x Mendo de Ord. milit. Disq. 1. Quest. 2. sect. 26. n. 56.

* Pag. 58. a Fav. Theat. d' Hon. l. 9. c. 9. Menen. Delic. Eques. p. 55. b Fl. Cherab. in Compend. Bull. Tom. 3. p. 50. Conf. 41.

of *Knighthood* instituted, under the Rule and denomination of the *blessed Virgin Mary of Mount Carmel*, applied himself to Pope *Paul* the Fifth for that purpose.

c *Ibid.*

Hereupon the Pope (the 7. of *February* 1608.) confirmed the same, and prescribed several things necessary to the Institution; according to the mind of the King, ordaining also Pensions to the *Great Master* and *Knights* of this Order, out of certain Ecclesiastical Benefices, in several places, within the Kingdom of *France*.

d *Favin. l. 3. c. 10. vide item Briet. Annal mundi. pars 3. l. 7. c. 12. p. 263. c. 7. p. 473.*

After this the *a* *Commanderies* and *Hospitals* of *St. Lazarus*, lying in *France*, were disposed of likewise for the support of the *Knights* of this new Order; and the *Knights* of *St. Lazarus* that remained in that Kingdom, were joined to these of the new Institution; thus they became acknowledged to be one Body, under two Titles, which we find inscribed round the Seal of their Order,

e *Idem Favin. l. 3. c. 10. vide item Briet. Annal mundi. pars 3. l. 7. c. 12. p. 263. c. 7. p. 473.*

viz. Sigillum Ordinis & Militie beate Mariæ Virginis de Monte Carmeli, & sancti Lazari in Hierusalem.

So that at this time, we find the Order of *St. Lazarus* to be divided between two other Societies; namely the Order of *St. Maurice* in *Savoy*, and of *St. Mary of Mount Carmel* in *France*.

g *Compend. Bull loc. p. ad. h. Item Favin. l. 3. c. 10. vide item Briet. Annal mundi. pars 3. l. 7. c. 12. p. 263. c. 7. p. 473.*

This Order consists of one hundred choice Gentlemen of *France*, and all appointed to attend on the Kings person, upon every warlike Expedition. They vow Obedience and Chastity, and profess to fight against the Enemies of the *Roman Church*. The Feast of their *Patroness* is annually celebrated on the 16. of *July*. Their first Master was *Philibert Nerefang*, sometimes one of the *Knights* of *St. Lazarus*, a valiant Gentleman, and famous in all military Discipline; for which cause he was thought worthy to be prefer'd to this Dignity, and accordingly nominated by *Henry* the Fourth, in *April* 1608. The 30. of *October* following he took the Oath as *Great Master*, and of Fidelity to the *French King*.

k *Favin, ut supra. l. 3. c. 10. vide item Briet. Annal mundi. pars 3. l. 7. c. 12. p. 263. c. 7. p. 473.*

The Badge of this Order is a *Cross* of eight points, of *Tawney Velvet* or *Satin* (but some say of a *Violet colour*) with a white *Bordure*, sewed on the left side of their Cloaks, and the Image of the *Virgin Mary* of *Mount Carmel*, placed in the middle within a *Rundle* encompassed with beams or rays of *Gold*, all wrought in curious *Imbrodery*: besides this, the *Knights* wear about their necks, in a *Tawny Silk Ribbon*, the like *Cross* of *Gold*, but the Image of the said *Virgin* is enameled on both sides.

The *Statutes* of this Order are exhibited by *A. Favin*, and the solemn Rites used at the investiture of these *Knights*, are much after the manner of those of *Malta*.

Knights of the Order of the most glorious Virgin Mary of Rome.

(45.)

a *Andr. Favin. l. 3. c. 10. vide item Briet. Annal mundi. pars 3. l. 7. c. 12. p. 263. c. 7. p. 473.*

It was but of late years, *viz. a* 1618. that three Brethren of *Spella* in *Italy*, namely *Pedro*, *John Baptista*, and *Bernardo*, surnamed *Petrignanoes*, invented this Order of *Knighthood*, to which was given the Rule of *St. Francis d'Assise*, and whereof the Pope and his Successors are *Great Masters*.

b *Paul* the Fifth approved this Order, and gave these *Knights* the Palace of *St. John de Laterane*, for their Convent, the City and Port of *Civita Vecchia*, to make their Arsenal of Gallies; as also an *Island* adjacent to that Port, together with the Government of his Gallies.

c *Ibid.*

The cause of its Institution, was for the exaltation of the *Roman Church*, and to repress the insolence of the *Turks*, roving on the *Mediterranean Sea*.

In this Institution there are *d* three kinds of *Knights*, who are differenced by their Habits: The first are *Knights Gentlemen Laicks*, who wear a *Mantle* of *White double Tussaty*, having great sleeves and a long train, the *Cordons* of *White Silk*, with *Knots* and *Tassels* of *White* and *Blue silk*; the second are *Knights Gentlemen Priests*, and beneficed, who wear the like *Mantle*, but something shorter; and both these wear about their necks in a *Blue Ribbon*, a *Cross* of *Gold*, enameled *Blue*: The third are *Knights Chaplains*, or *Servants of Arms*, and their *Mantle* is of *White*

Serge,

Serge, with strait long sleeves, reaching down to the ground, and Cords of *Blue Silk*.

All these Degrees wear on the left side of their Mantles, the *Cross* of the Order, as is here described; to wit, of *Blue Satin* embroidered with Silver, and bordered with Gold; in the middle is a round Circle, wherein is this Motto, *In hoc signo vincam*, and within that is composed a Cipher of the Letters *M* and *S*, (the initial Letters of *Sancta Maria*) crowned with a Chaplet of Flowers, and Stars of Gold set over the Chaplet; from the round Circle issue twelve rays, or beams of Silver, representing the twelve Apostles: the finishings of the *Cross* are fashioned like Flowers de Lis, and at the end of each Flower is a Star, set to signify the four Evangelists.

The Statutes and Rules of this Order are recorded by *Andrew Favyn* in his *Theater of Honor*.

*The Order of the Annunciade and St. Michael the Arch-Angel,
or of the Christian Militia in Moravia.*

(46.)

In the year of our Lord^h 1618. *Charles Gonzaga* Duke of *Mantua* and *Nevers*, together with *Adolph* Count of *Altham*, his Brother, and *John Baptist Petrig-Marchese*, did contrive the Institution of this Order; and to extend and amplify the same, divided the World amongst them. For Duke *Charles* took the North and West parts, his Brother the Eastern part, and to the other was given the South; where, in their own persons they were bound to found Convents, and invest Knights: And in prosecution of this design, we find, that Duke *Charles* began his Institution of this Order under the Rule of *St. Francis*, in the Monastery of the *Capuchins* in *Olmuntz*, the Metropolis of *Moravia*, on Saturday the 17. of November, in the foresaid year; and dedicated the same to the honor of the blessed *Virgin*, and *St. Michael*: But what the other two did in the Eastern or Southern parts of the world, we have not heard.

Job. Ludov. Gothofridus gives this Title to the Order, to wit, *Ordo Equitum Militie Christiane*. *Philipp Bristius* calls it, *Conceptionis Ordo*. *Andr. Mendo*, *n* *Militia Virginis Annuntiate*, and the Knights thereof are called by *Jos. Micheli Marquez*, *o* *Cavalleros de la Annunciada*, y *san Miguel Archangel en Mantua*.

This Order was afterwards (*viz.* the 8. of March 1619.) received at *Vienna*, by many Princes of divers Countries; whose names, together with the Statutes of the Order, are set down by the said *Gothofridus*, in the work above cited. It was approved by Pope *Paul* the Fifth, and the 6. of February 1624. it received confirmation from Pope *Urban* the Eighth.

From the preamble of the statutes of this Order, it appears, that it had for its Basis, the two chief Precepts of the Divine Law, to wit, to love God with our whole hearts, and with all our souls, and our Neighbour as our selves; and the end of its Institution, was to establish Peace and Concord between Christian Princes and their Subjects, to release Captives, and to deliver the oppressed out of the hands of the Infidels.

The *Habit* assigned to the Knights was *White*; upon which they wore a long *White Mantle*, and over that a shorter of *Blue Silk*, their *Buskins* were of *Blue*, and their *Caps* of *Black Silk*.

They bore two *Crosses* for the *Ensign* of this Order, the one of *Gold* of eight points enamel'd *Blue*, on the one side thereof was the Figure of the blessed *Virgin*, bearing our *Saviour* in her arms, and on the other the Portraiture of *St. Michael*, treading the *Dragon* under his Feet: This they wore about their necks in a *Blue Ribbon*.

The other *Cross* was made of *Blue Silk* and *Gold*, in the middle whereof was the Image of the blessed *Virgin*, surrounded with rays of the *Sun*, holding *Christ* in her left arm, and a *Scepter* in her right hand, crowned with 12 Stars, a *Crescent* placed

{ *Ibid.*

h Jos. Micheli
Marquez en la
Tesoro mili. de
Cavalleros. f.
71. a. Mireus
Orig. Ord. E-
quest. p. 85.

i Mireus. loc.
cit.
k A. Mendo de
Ord. milit.
Disq. 1. 2. 2.
Sect. 30. n. 63.

m Archont. Cosm.
1. 3. p. 16.
n Annal. mun-
di pars 4. Tom.
2. p. 440.
o Loco nuper
cit.
p Tesoro mil. de
Cavall. f. 71. a.
q Mellis. Hist.
par. 4. p. 1189.
r Lib. 3. p. 15.
s 16. 17.
t Tes. mil. loc.
cit.
u Brist. Annal.
mundi loc. cit.
f Art. 1.

u Art. 12.

w *Ibid.*

placed under her feet; all which were encompassed with the Cord of St. Francis, and the four angles of the *Cross*, cast forth four golden flames. This *Cross* was embrodered on the left side of their white Mantles.

x Art. 13:

Touching the ^x great *Collar* of this Order, it was composed of fifteen Cords of St. Francis, joined together with as many Stars; at the lower part whereof hung, at three Chainets, the golden *Cross* above described.

y *Testor milit.*
de Cavall.
f. 71. b.

But it seems, that in the height and glory of this Order, there grew some difference between the *Founders*, infomuch that in a short time it became ruined thereby; as if that notable *Comet*, which appeared within four days after it was instituted, shewed its sudden splendor and decay: which occasioned *Brietius* to say of it, ^z That the Mahumetans, for whose destruction it was instituted, heard only the name and report of it.

z *Loco supra-*
dicto.

CHAP. III.

A

BRIEF ACCOUNT

OF THE

Orders absolutely Military.

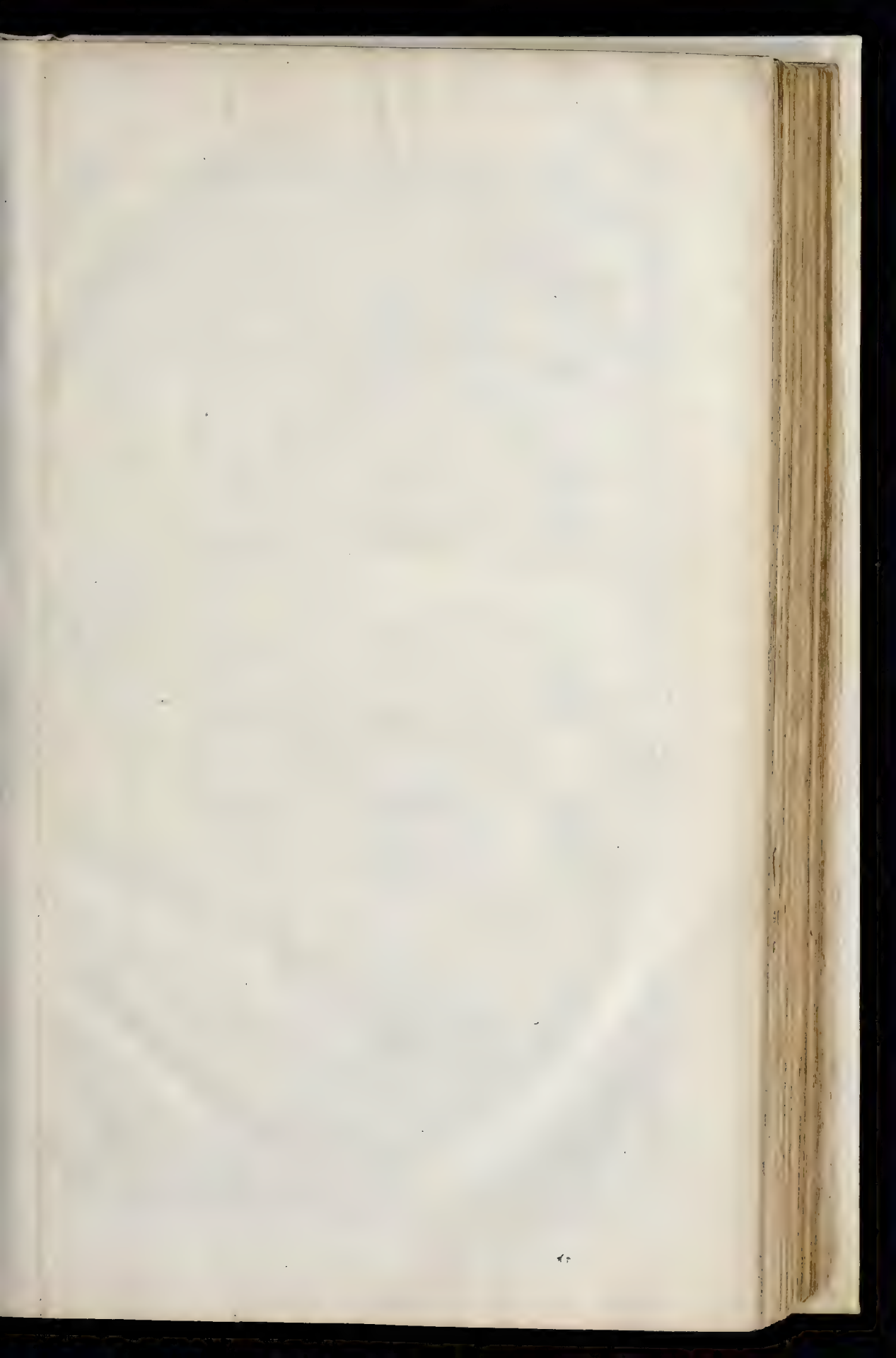
SECT. I.

The Order of Knights of the Round Table.

(I.)

HAVING thus given some account of the *Religious Orders* of *Knight-hood*, that is, of such whose *Knights* live under an Ecclesiastick Rule, and according to some Religious Profession or solemn Vows; we shall next proceed to those that are accounted *purely* and *completely Military*, among which that of the *Knights* of the *Round Table* may (for its Antiquity) challenge the first place.

And though we are not ignorant that the story of this *Orders* Institution (as also its *Founders* famous Exploits beyond Sea) is lookt upon as the issue of uncertain Tradition;



The
Severall ENSIGNES of the
ORDERS absolutely
MILITARY,
mentioned in the third
Chapter,

Knights of the Round Table

Oake of Navarr



Our Lady of the Star



p 100

The Lilly of Navar



p 101

The Sword in Cyprus.



p 102

The Beare in Switzerlan



p 103

Iesus at Rome.



15

p 104

The White Eagle in Poland



16

p 104

De la Banda in Castile



17

p 104

De la Calza in Venice,



18

p 105

Annunciate in Savoy.



23

p 108

Thistle of Bourbon.



24

p 110

Dove in Castile



25

p 111

Argonautes of S. Nichola



26

p 112

Eqvies Tusini



31

p 114

Ordo disciplinarum



32

p 114

Ordo de la Scania



33

p 114

Golden Fleece



34

p 115

S. Michael in Naples.



39

p 118

S. Michael in France



40

p 119

S. Hubert in Gulick.



41













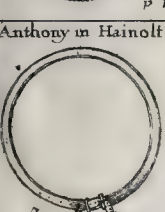
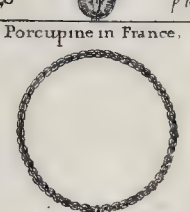





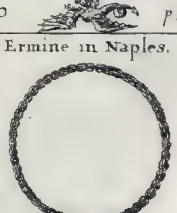


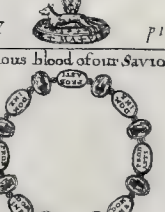

p 120

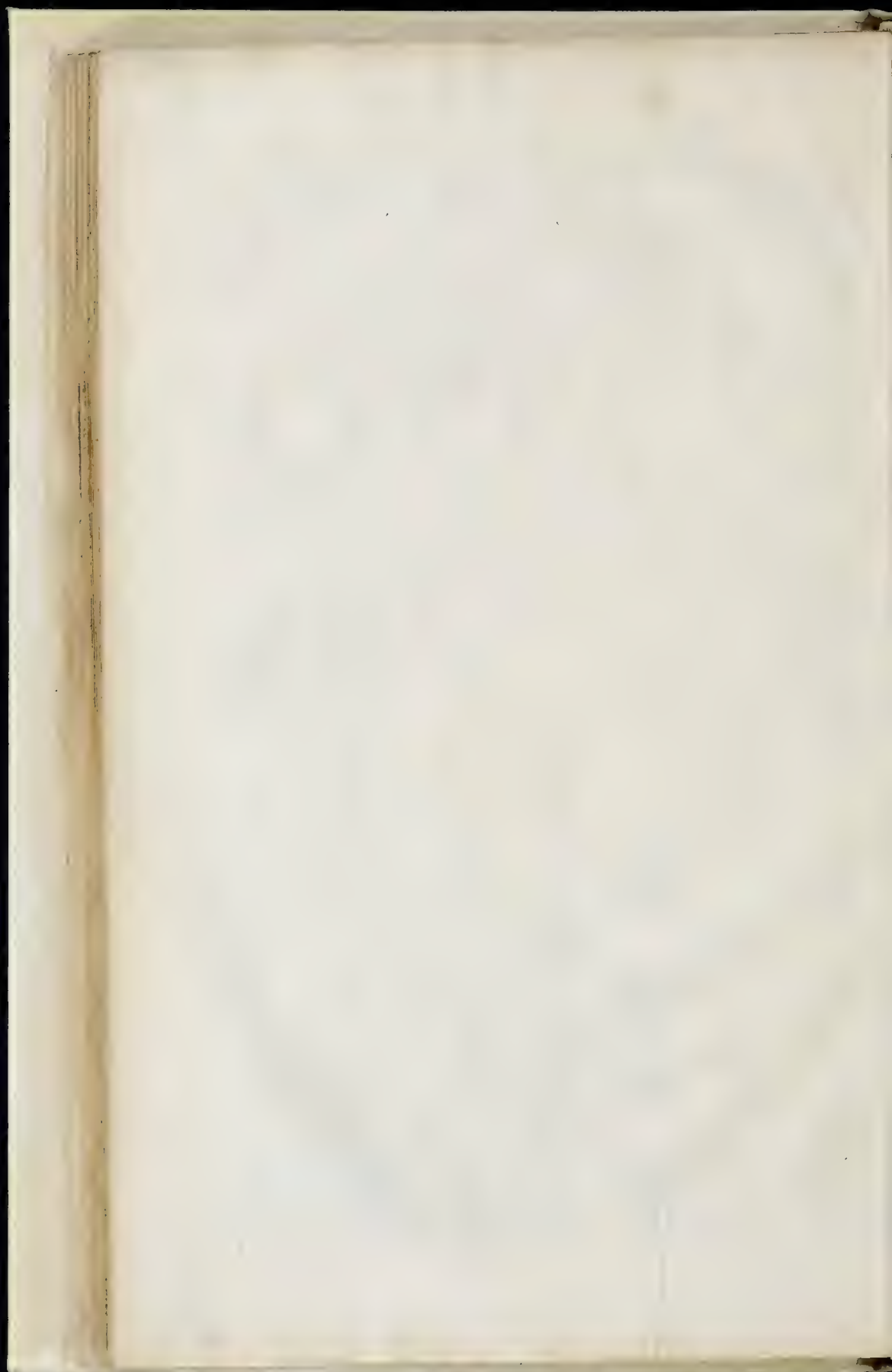
Elephant in Denmarke,



42

p 121

<p>Genet in France,</p>  <p>p. 97. 4</p>	<p>Crowne Royall.</p>  <p>p. 97. 5</p>	<p>Dog & Cock.</p>  <p>p. 98. 6</p>	<p>Thistle in Scotland.</p>  <p>p. 98.</p>
<p>Broome flower in France.</p>  <p>p. 103.</p>	<p>The Ship, & double Crescent</p>  <p>p. 103. 12</p>	<p>S. James in Holland.</p>  <p>p. 103. 13</p>	<p>The Swan in Cleveland</p>  <p>p. 104. 14</p>
<p>Marke in Venice</p>  <p>p. 106.</p>	<p>The Seraphins in Sweden.</p>  <p>p. 107. 20</p>	<p>The Sword & military Belt</p>  <p>p. 107. 21</p>	<p>The Knot in Naples.</p>  <p>p. 107. 22</p>
<p>Anthony in Hainolt.</p>  <p>p. 112. 28</p>	<p>Porcupine in France.</p>  <p>p. 112. 29</p>	<p>Lilly in Aragon.</p>  <p>p. 113. 30</p>	<p>Dragon overthrowne</p>  <p>p. 113. 31</p>
<p>S. George in Genoa</p>  <p>p. 117. 36</p>	<p>Croissant in France</p>  <p>p. 117. 37</p>	<p>Ermine in Bretagne</p>  <p>p. 118. 38</p>	<p>Ermine in Naples.</p>  <p>p. 118. 39</p>
<p>Burgundian Cross</p>  <p>p. 121. 44</p>	<p>Holy Ghost in France,</p>  <p>p. 121. 45</p>	<p>Precious blood of our Saviour</p>  <p>p. 123. 46</p>	<p>Amanta in Sweden.</p>  <p>p. 127. 47</p>



Tradition; yet considering, that not only the ^a *British Histories*, but some of our ^b *English* defend it, and many as well ^c *Poets*, as ^d *Historians* make mention thereof, we judge it may deserve room among the *Military Orders*.

The *Founder* of this most ancient Order, was ^e *Arthur King of Britain*, Crowned in the year of our Lord 516. at the age of ^f 15 years, concerning whom, though some with unbounded fancies have strained too far, in setting down his famous actions, inasmuch, as that what really is true of him can hardly be known; yet all allow him to have been a stout and successful Martialist, of incredible courage and gallantry, the most famous and renowned of all the *British Kings*, and as ^g *William of Malmsbury* judges, *right worthy to have been celebrated by true Story, not false Tales; seeing it was he that long upheld his declining Country, and even inspired martial courage into his Country-men*, having overcome the *Saxons* in ^h twelve several pitch'd Battels.

I have by me an old Chronicle in *Manuscript*, Entituled *Brute*, or the *Chronicles of England*, beginning at *Brute*, and ending the sixth year of King *Henry the Fifth*, wherein it is noted, That after King ⁱ *Arthur* had conquered divers Countries, he lived in so great renown, that many worthy *Knights* came from all parts to his Court, as to a Seminary of military Discipline, to give evidence of their valour, in the exercise of Arms.

This gave him occasion to select out of these, and his own Subjects, a certain number (some say ^k 24.) of the most valiant *Knights*, whom (himself being chief) he united into a Fellowship or Order; and to avoid controverſie about priority of place, when they met together at meat, he caused a Round Table to be made, whereat none could be thought to sit higher or lower than another; and thence they were called, *Knights of the Round Table*.

At the upper end of the great Hall in *Winchester Castle*, I remember to have seen a large Round Table hang against the wall, called *King Arthurs Round Table*, and affirmed by the Inhabitants (who had taken up the report upon vulgar Tradition) to have been as ancient as that Kings time; but it carried no very great show of antiquity to a judicious eye; however it seemed to have been set up, either in the room of one more ancient, or else by some who were perſwaded, there was once such an *Order of Knights*, which had been denominated thence. This old Monument was broken to pieces (being before half ruined through age) by the *Parliaments Soldiers*, in the beginning of the late unhappy War, because looked upon as a relique of Superſtition (as were those little gilded Coffers with Inſcriptions, that did preserve the bones of some of the ^{*} *Saxon Kings* and Bishops, ^{*} *Cambd. Brit. in Hants. p. 192* deposited by Bishop *Fox* in the top of the Walls on both sides the upper part of the Quire of the Cathedral Church of that City) though guilty of nothing but the crime of reverend Antiquity.

Into this noble Society of *Knights*, were admitted not only ^l *Britains*, but also *Strangers* of other Nations, who out of a desire of glory, came over hither, to make proof of their sufficiency in the exercise of Arms with the *British Knights*; and the general qualifications for Election were, that they should be persons of Nobility and Dignity, renowned for Virtue and Valour, and admirably well skill'd in the knowledge and use of Arms.

The place where the *Founder* first Instituted this Order, saith Sir *John Froissard*, was at ^m *Windsor*, and those other of note where he and his *Knights* usually assembled, were ⁿ *Carleon* in *Monmouthshire*, *Winchester* and *Camelot* in *Somersetshire*; and the time of the year for their meeting was *Whitſontide*.

The *Articles* of their profession are set down by ^o Sir *William Segar*, which are in number twelve; and if any be desirous to read the Names of the first twenty four *Knights*, he shall not only have them from *Monsieur Boisseau* in his ^p *Promptuaire Armorial*, but of 129 more of this Order, elected in seven following Chapters; may more than that, the formal blazon of all their Arms: but these particulars may be justly ranked with what is fabulous in King *Arthurs* story.

We read not of any *Badge* peculiarly assigned to these *Knights*, though ^q *Jos. Micheli*,

^a *Geof. Monmouth.*

^b *Leland. Asserio Arturi.*

^c *and White of Basingst. &c.*

^d *Harding.*

^e *Robert of Glouc.*

^f *John Lidgate.*

^g *Lilly.*

^h *Cambden.*

ⁱ *Heylin.*

^j *Archurus.*

^k *militaris disciplina & Or-*

^l *bicularis Menſe fundator. Geo. Lilius in*

^m *Chron. Angl. Regum. p. 44. vide Priſcum Hi-*

ⁿ *ſtor. Brit. Deſcripſio, edit. Lond. 1573. p. 139.*

^o *Segar, Honor Milit. & Civil. l. 2. c. 2.*

^p *Math. Weſtmiſt. p. 183. Edit. Lond. 1570.*

^q *De geſtis reg. Anglor. l. 1. p. 4.*

^r *H. Hen. Huntingd. l. 2. f. 180. Edit. Lond.*

^s *1596. J. Anglica, pars 2. l. 17. f. 89. MS.*

^t *Polyconicon. l. 5. c. 6.*

^u *i Cap. 76.*

^v *Jos. Micheli*

^w *Marquez en Te-*

^x *ſoro milit. de*

^y *Cavall. f. 52. b.*

^z *Jean Boiſſeau*

^{aa} *in le Promptua-*

^{ab} *ire Armorial.*

^{ac} *Cambd. Brit.*

^{ad} *in Hants. p. 192*

^{ae} *Enderbies*

^{af} *Cambria Tri-*

^{ag} *umphans. part*

^{ah} *2. p. 199.*

^{ai} *Chron. l. 1.*

^{aj} *c. 100.*

^{ak} *Leland. As-*

^{al} *ſerio Arturi.*

^{am} *f. 10. Seldens*

^{an} *notes upon Po-*

^{ao} *liſb. Song. 4.*

^{ap} *a Honor Milit.*

^{aq} *& Civil. l. 2.*

^{ar} *c. 5.*

^{as} *o la P Inſtitu-*

^{at} *tion de l'ordre*

^{au} *de la Jarriere.*

^{av} *En Teſ. milit.*

^{aw} *de Cavall. f.*

^{ax} *52. b.*

Micheli, in allusion to their Title, takes upon him to give the Figure of a *Round Table*, furnished with Cloth, Bread, Salt, Knives, Bottle and Bowl, but we have not authority enough to follow him: However it gives us occasion here to acquaint our Reader, that King *Arthur* himself is reported to bear a *shild* called *Tridwen*, whereon was painted the Image of the *bleſſed Virgin*; his *sword* and *Lance* alſo, were not without their names, for the one it ſeems was called *Caliburn*, the other *Trone* or *Rone*.

It is not remembred by any, that this Order ſurvived its *Founder*, but rather that it extinguished at his death; for it is related that^u moſt of thoſe *Knights*, whom he had drawn from ſeveral Countries, and advanced to a Companionship with himſelf, bore him company in death, and perished in that fatal Battel of *Mordred* his Enemy upon the place, yet, being forely wounded, he ſurvived him but a ſhort time, and dyed in the year of our Lord^v 542.

It may add ſome reputation to King *Arthurs* Round Table, if we here note, that the like *Round Table*, grew into great elimation and requeſt, ſhortly after the *Norman Conqueſt*, and continued long with us; being ordinarily ſet up at the grand martial Exercices, called *Haftiludes*, *Tilts*, or *Turnements*, permitted by King *Stephen*, and much encouraged by King^w *Richard* the Firſt (for the delight of men inclined to military actions, and increaſe of their ſkill in the management of Arms) and for the ſame end and purpoſe, as King *Arthur* made uſe of it; no leſs than in memorial and remembrance, that he had erected an Order of *Knighthood*, denominated therefrom: thoſe times being thoroughly perſwaded of the truth of that ſtory.

Besides, it is recorded, that^x *Roger Mortimer* Earl of *March*, held the celebration of the *Round Table* (conſiſting of an hundred *Knights*, and as many *Ladies*) with *Tilting* and *Turnements*, at *Kenelworth Caſtle* in *Warwickſhire*, anno 7.E.1. and that King *Edward* the Third having deſigned to^y reſtore the Honor of the *Round Table*, held a Juſte at *Windſor*, in the^z 18. year of his Reign (but there is an old *Manuſcript Chronicle* that hath theſe words, King *Edward* in his^a nineteenth year firſt began his *Round Table*, and ordain'd the day annually to be kept there at *Whitſontide*) and this meeting in truth occaſioned the *Foundation* of the moſt noble Order of the *Garter*, as ſhall be noted by and by.

But it was thought fit ſometimes, and upon divers accounts, to forbid theſe kind of Aſſemblies, upon very great penalties; as in particular^b anno 16.H.3. at *Shrewsbury*, when the King went to meet *Llewelyn* Prince of *Wales* (called in the Record Prince of *Aberſraw* and *Snowden*) and afterwards at *Walden*, in the 26. year of the ſaid Kings Reign, and at many other times.

The Order of the Oak in Navarre.

(2.)

The^c Kingdom of *Navarre* being oppreſſed by the *Moors*, the Inhabitants were forced to ſeek deliverance by Arms, to which end, though they had raiſed a great Army, yet were they deſtitute of an experienced Commander; at length, Don *Garcia Ximenes*, of the blood of the *Goths*, who had formerly retired from the world, to a ſolitary and religious life, was perſwaded to relinquish the ſame, and take upon him the Command of the Army.

As he was marching out of the City to encounter the *Moors* (in the year of our Lord^d 722.) there appeared to him from the top of an *Oak*, the ſign of the *Holy Croſs*, adored by an infinite number of Angels. Proceeding on, he gave battel to the *Moors*, and having gained a remarkable Victory, the people elected him their King; and upon this occaſion he became the firſt King of that Country.

Some few days after, in thankfulneſs to God for this great Victory, he^e inſtituted

^u Hen. Hunting.
Ann. l. 2. p. 13.
^v Mich. W. 3.
^w Miſt. p. 186.
^x Fabians Chron.
p. 92.
^y Chronic. of
Engl. cap. 88.
^z M. 5.

^a Cambd. Brit.
in Cornwall.

^b Malmesb. an-
tiq. Glaftonvi-
deſis Maſb.
Weſtmiſt.

^c p. 152. & Speeds Chron. l. 7. c. 12. f. 334.

Anno 542 Inclutus Arthurus obiit & ſepultus in Inſula Avalonia, in Domino requieſcit. Malmesb. antiq. Glafton.

^d Haſtiludium quod vulgariter Torneamentum dicitur, ſed potius Ludus militaris, qui Menſa rotunda dicitur. Maſb. Pariſ. p. 846.

^e Ex lib. Rubro in Scaccar. fol. 122. b. & ex Regiſtro Priorat. de Dunſtable, f. 8. a. vide Lamb. Peramb. p. 448.

^f Tho. Walfingh.
ſub an. 1280.

^g Ut Arturi memoriam reſtifieret, Vincem. Lupani de Magiſtrath.

^h p. 100. l. 1.

ⁱ Tho. Walfingh.

^j ſub an. 1344.

^k Cap. 226.

^l y Rot. Pat. de eodem an. m. 3.

^m z Clauſ. de eod. anno m. 5. Dorſ.

ⁿ J. J. Micheli
^o Mar. juex in
e Teſor. milit.
de Cavall.
f. 16. a. &
Hier. Blancus,
in Regum Ara-
gon. Serie.

tuted this Order, investing therewith even all the Nobles of his Kingdom; whom he obliged to defend the Christian Faith, and acknowledge Obedience to his Successors Kings of Navarre.

He ordained the *Habit* of the Order to be *White*, and the *Ensign* thereof a plain Red Cross, set on the top of a green Oak (which gave the Title) after the same manner as it appeared to him: but time hath darkned this Order, not only in its heroick actions, but laudable Foundation, since we find no further memorial of it.

d Tesserâ fuit hæc ipsa Arbor, & supra eam Crux rubra, instar Crucis de Montefla. Men. do Diss. 1. Quest. 4. n. 94.

The Order of the Gennet in France.

(3.)

To preserve the memory of that famous Battel fought neer *Tours*, anno Christi 726. (or as *Menenius* margins it, about the year 738.) where 385000 *Saracens* and *Moors*, together with their General *Abdiramo*, fell by the conquering Sword of *Charles Martel*; and to reward those who had behaved themselves valiantly in that action; the said *Charles* instituted an Order of *Knighthood*, under the Title of the *Gennet*. The great number of rich *Gennet Furs* (anciently esteemed among them the most excellent, though since the *Ermine* hath gained a better value) as also of the Creatures themselves alive, taken among the Spoils of that Victory; giving him occasion to bestow that name upon his new erected Order.

But others, not improperly, impute the reason of this appellation to a kind of neat shap'd Horses; of which not unlikely, a great part of the Founders Cavalry might consist.

The *Knights*, saith *Favin*, were sixteen, whose *Collars* were made of three Chains of Gold, interwoven or linked with Red Roses, at the end of which Collar hung a *Gennet* of Gold, Black and Red; sitting on a flowry bank, all enamell'd with variety of Colour and Art.

And in further honor of this Institution, the *Founder* not only renewed the use of Gold Rings (so peculiar of old, to the *Equestrian Order* among the *Romans*) but caused them, and all other Ornaments of this Order, to be engraven and wrought with the Effigies of a *Gennet*.

This is accounted by *Favin*, the first Order of *Knighthood* among the *French*; which is to be understood of a distinct Order, acknowledged by a particular and peculiar Title; and continued in glory, until the institution of the Order of the *Star*, (some say but till the Reign of *St. Lewis*) after which time it was laid aside.

But though *Favin* be thus particular, as to the Institution of this Order, and the occasion thereof, the exact number of *Knights*, and especially in assigning a Collar, with the *Ensign* hanging at it, sutable to the mode of later times; yet some other of his Countrymen, wanting the assurance and authority of ancient Writers to back them, are not confident enough to persuade the world, that there was ever any such.

cf Favin. Theat. Honn. d. 3. c. 1.

g Mennen. De. lic. Equest. p. 56.

h Loco cit.

i Sic Mennen. p. 63.

k Loco supra cit.

l Gotofrid. Archont. Cosmica. l. 3. p. 3.

Heyl. Cosmogr. l. 1. p. 204.

m Seevol. de

Louis de sainte

Marthe en le

Hist. Genea-

log. de la Ma-

ison de France.

Tom. 1. c. 13.

p. 58.

The Order of the Crown Royal among the Frizons.

(4.)

The erection of this Order is referred to *Charles* the Great, Son of King *Pepin*, in the year of Christ 802. (which more fully appears in his pragmatistical Sanction, then dated at the *Lateran Palace* in *Rome*) and instituted out of a design to honor and reward those among the *Frizons*, who had behaved themselves valiantly in his Armies, against the *seines* or ancient *Saxons*; or as others say, against the *Lombards*, in subduing that Kingdom, and to stir up and encourage others to emulate their virtue.

n Mart. Ham-

con. de rebus

Frisc.

o Favin en

Theat. d' Hon-

neur. l. 3. c. 1.

And. Mendo de

Ordin. Militar.

Diss. 1. Quest.

2. Sect. 4.

p Tesoro milit.

de Cavalier.

f. 15. b.

This

q Favin. loc.
cit.

This Order was so called, ^a from the *Ensign* appointed to the same, namely an *Imperial Crown*, embroidered with Gold, which the *Knights* used to wear upon the breasts of their Habit : and to perpetuate this Militia, he ordained, that the Governor of that Country (whom they then called *Potestut*) should confer the same upon such as had followed the Armies of *France*, as well in *Italy* as *Germany*, for five years together at their own expence ; by which means the Emperor was served at a less charge.

The *Knights* were invested with the Military Belt, and a box on the Ear ; of which we have spoken in the ^a first Chapter.

The Order of the Dog and Cock in France.

(5.)

The Institution of this Order of the *Dog* and *Cock*, is generally attributed to the Family of *Montmorency* in *France*, and it is more particularly affirmed by *Robertus Canalis*, to have been erected by the first Christian of that Family, called *Prothochristianus* & *Archibaro*, which causeth us to bring in this Order here, near to the Age he lived in ; but to say truth, as to the Institution it self, or to the time thereof, there is not any more certain, or more satisfactory account, than that anciently this Family carried a ^a *Dog* (the Embleme of fidelity and sincerity) upon their Helmet for a Crest ; and that ^a *Peter Montmorency* was a *Knight* of the Order of the *Cock*, which Bird was called by the Ancients the Bird of *Mars*.

But some make two distinct Orders of this, and after that of the *Dog*, they say, another Order, viz. of the ^w *Cock*, was also Instituted, whose Collar had the Comb of a Cock pendent thereat, the Motto being *Vigiles* ; howbeit afterwards, both these Orders came to be united, and hereupon the Ensign was then, the Effigies both of a *Dog* and *Cock* joined together.

^w *Na Jof. Micheli* in *Tesoro milit. de Caval.* f. 89. b. & *A. Mendo de Ord. milit. Disq.* 1. q. 2. *Self.* 31. ^x *Moræus* relates, that *Burchard Montmorency*, appeared at the Court of *Philip* the First, King of *France*, attended with many *Knights*, and all of them (like himself) adorned with *Collars* of Gold, composed of *Stag-heads*, whereat hung the Figure of a *Dog* : whence we may presume, that it had some relation to the more ancient Order, of which this was the Badge or Ensign.

The Order of the Thistle in Scotland.

(6.)

^a *Crux* in quam divus *Andreas* sublatu mortem oppetivit, in Cælo vivis quasi coloribus effecta, quam primum omnibus apparuit. De rebus Gestis *Scotor.* l. 5. p. 177. Edit. *Roma*, anno 1578. 4^o.

^b *Theat. d' Honneur*, l. 5. c. 3.

^c *G. Buchanan. Kerum Scot.* l. 5. c. 56.

^d Atq; ut tanta: victoriæ memoria nulla unquam vetustate deleatur, effigiem *Crucis* (cui *D. Andreas* affixus est) in armis & insignibus efformatam, cum Hostibus congressurus, semper postea gestabat, id quod *Scoti* omnes in memoriam victoriæ à *Pi-ctis* divi *Andree* auxilio reportatæ, etiamnum religiosissime observant. *Lestius* in loco supra cit.

^e In *Delic. Equestr.* p. 146.

Heyl. Cosmogr. l. 1. p. 306.

^f *Ubi supra.*

^a *John Lesley* Bishop of *Ross*, reports that a bright ^a *Cross* appeared from Heaven, in fashion of that whereon *St. Andrew* suffered Martyrdom, to *Hungus* King of the *Picts* (but ^b *Favin* saith to the *Scots*, whom *Achairs* King of *Scotland* sent to his assistance) the night preceding the Battel with *Athelstan* King of *England*, (or rather of ^c *Denmark*, to whom King *Alured* had given the Kingdom of *Northumberland*) over whom *Hungus* prevailing, bore the Figure of that *Cross* at all times after in his Ensigns and Banners : and from this time and occasion hath the like bearing thereof been religiously observed by all succeeding Kings of *Scotland*.

Hence also it is believed (saith ^e *Mennenius*) that the Equestrian Order of *St. Andrew*, vulgarly called of the *Thistle*, took beginning. To this agrees the relation which I received from Sir *Charles Areskin*, now *Lyon, King of Arms* in *Scotland*, through the favour of the Right Honorable the Earl of *Landerdail*, who adds, that after this Victory obtained, which was as he saith, anno 819. (but according to ^f *George Buchanan*, *Achairs* dyed 9 years before) ^g *King* *Hungius* and *Achairs* (Confederates against *Athelstan*) went

“in solemn Procession bare-footed, to the Kirk of St. *Andrew*, to thank God and
 “his Apostle for their Victory, promising that they and their Posterity in time
 “coming, would ever use in their Ensigns the Cross of St. *Andrew*, whensoever
 “they undertook any warlike Expedition; which custom not only remained
 “among the *Picts*, but is still among the *Scots* to this day: And both these Kings,
 “after their solemn Procession, presently instituted an Order, naming it the Or-
 “der of St. *Andrew*.

But *Andr. Favin* reporteth the occasion to be otherwise, to wit, that *g*
Achais King of *Scotland*, having made that famous League offensive and defen- *h*
 sive, with *Charlemain* King of *France*, towards all and against all other Princes *i*
 (to preserve the memory of which alliance to posterity, the *scotch Lyon*^{*h*} assumed *k*
 before by King *Fergus*, became then enclosed with a *Treasure* of *Flowers de Lis*)
 he found himself thereby so strong and mighty, that he took for device the *Thi-*
stle and the *Rue*, which he composed into a *Collar* of his Order, and for his Motto
Pour ma defence: giving intimation thereby, that he feared not the powers of
 Foreign Princes, seeing he leaned on the succour and alliance of the *French*.

And though hence may be inferr'd, that these two Plants, were the united Sym-
 bols, but of one Order of Knighthood, yet doth *m* *Menenius* divide them into
 two, making one, whose chief Badge was the *Thistle*, (whence the *Knights* were so *n* *In Delic.*
 titled) and the Motto, *Nemo me impune lacessit*: and another vulgarly called *n* *Sertum* *Equest. p. 146.*
Ruta, or the *Garland of Rue*, whose *Collar* was composed of two Branches or *n* *Ibid. p. 147.*
 Sprigs thereof, or else many of its leaves: Nevertheless, that at both these Col-
 lars hung one and the same Jewel, to wit, the Figure of *St. Andrew* Patron of
 that Kingdom, bearing before him the Cross of his Martyrdom.

But there are some (saith the same *Author*) who refer the Institution of the
 Order of the *Thistle*, to later times, (albeit the *Thistle* *g* from the Reign of *Achais*
us, had been acknowledged for the Badge and Symbol of the Kingdom of *Scot-*
land, in like manner as the *Rose* was of *England*, the *Lilly* of *France*, the *Pome-*
granate of *Spain*, &c.) to wit, in the Reign of *Charles* the Seventh of *France*;
 when as the League of amity was renewed between those two Kingdoms, and
 especially for the succour and aid which *France* then received from *Scotland*, it
 being in a time of so extraordinary distress: and, last of all, others place the
 Foundation yet later, viz. in the year of our Lord *1500*.

I have done with what can be said as to the Foundation of this Order, and the
 time thereof; and shall now pass on to some other particulars, relating to the Or-
 der it self.

The chief and principal Ensign of this Order is a Gold Collar, composed
 of *Thistles*, interlink'd with anulets of Gold, and pendant thereunto the Image of
 St. *Andrew* with his Cross, and this Epigraph, *Nemo me impune lacessit*: the Figure
 whereof may be seen in a Picture of *James* the Fifth King of *Scotland*, now hang-
 ing in his Majesty's Gallery at *Whitchall*, on several great Seals of that Kingdom,
 on some Coyns and Medals, and lastly among the representations of the Military
 Ensigns, placed at the beginning of this Chapter.

The time of this Societies meeting, was heretofore very religiously observed
 and celebrated, upon the Feast day of St. *Andrew* the Apostle annually, in the
 Church of the Town dedicated to his name, and in testimony of the high esteem
 and reverence they bore unto him as their titular Saint and Patron: During the
 solemnity of the Feast, the *Knights* of this Order were habited in rich and costly
 Apparel, and wore their Parliament Robes, having fixt on their left shoulders,
 an *azure* *Rundle*, on which was embroidered St. *Andrews* Cross, environed in
 Center with a *Crown* composed of *Flowers de Lis*, Or.

For the ordinary and common Ensign, the *Knights* used a *Green Ribbon*,
 whereat hung a *Thistle* of Gold, crowned with an Imperial Crown, within a
 Circle of Gold, containing also the foresaid Epigraph; but for more satisfac-
 tion, we have caused the Figures of these two to be here exactly represented,
 from the draughts of them sent me from the before-mentioned Sir *Charles* *Ar-*
skin.

Thent. d
Honnewt. l.
5.63.

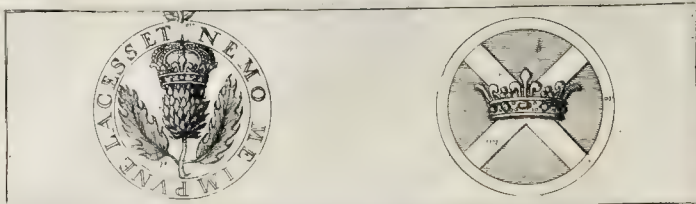
m *In Delic.*
Equest. p. 146.

n *Ibid. p. 147.*

o *In cuius* *pa-*
trocinio *gens*
Scotia *acqui-*
escit. Lesleus,
l. 5. p. 177.
p. Menen.
q. ubi nu-
r per.

f *A. Miraeus de*
Orig. Equest.
p. 78.

t *Ex re-*
u *lione.*
w *pres. Cat.*
x *Areskin*
y *mi.*



As to the number of the *Knights*, there is nothing remembered by any Author we have seen, but herein I was supplied by the Right Honorable the Earl of *Lauderdale*, who assured me he had met with (among his readings) from good authority, a memorial, that this Order consisted of 13 *Knights*, in allusion to the number of our blessed Saviour, and his twelve Apostles.

The Order of *Knights* of our Lady of the Star in France.

(7.)

a (Theat. d'
b Honneur.
c 13. 62.
d

The Institution of this Order is by *Andrew Favin* derived from a *Robert King of France*, surnamed the Devout, who, to manifest his particular devotion to the blessed *Virgin Mary*, and in her honor, gave Being thereunto, in the^b Month of *August*, Anno Domini 1022.

The *Knights* were in number c thirty, comprehending the King of France, the Chief or Sovereign; they had appointed for their *Habit*,^d Mantles of White Damask; their Mantlets and Lining, were of light Carnation Damask, their Surcoats of the same, and on their Mantles, as also on their Surcoats, to wit, upon the left side of the breast, was embroidered a *Star*, wrought in pure Gold, with five rays or pointed beams.

e f Laco disto.
g
h 5 Hiflor. Ge-
i nealog. de
la Maisn de
France. Tom. 1.
c. 13. p. 58.
f. 59.
k Dolic. Equest.
p. 129. 130.
l Tesoro milit.
de Cavalli.
f. 71. b.
m S. Marthe de
la Maisn de
France. 4. Men-
neng. locis cit.
n Jo. Tilly Com-
mentar. de
rebus Gall. l. 2.
p. 181. Cujus
nunc tantum
ruinosa muro-
rum vestigia
apparent.
Vinc. Lupan. l.
1. de Magistrat.
Francor.
o Tresor des
Chart. de
France. t. 3. Col-
tex. Beau-
mont. 52.
p Instituteur
de la Congre-
gation mite-
taire de l'E-
glise.

The great *Collar* (= faith he) was formed of three round Chains of Gold, much like that of the Order of the *Gennet*, and united at little distances, with enamelled Roses, interchangeably *White* and *Red*, at the end whereof hung the Figure of a *Star*. The^f Ceremonies of the Order began on the day of the Nativity of the blessed *Virgin Mary*, Patroness thereof, in the year before-mentioned.

In the^g Reign of *Philip de Valois*, this Order began to be intermitted by reason of the Wars, nevertheless it was restored by King *John* his Son, the eighth of September, anno 1356.

But albeit *Favin* hath thus formally set down the Institution of this Order, and assign'd it to King *Robert*, adding moreover Habit, Collar, and other specious circumstances thereunto, yet the^h *Sancte Marthe's* (his Countrymen) are not persuaded of the truth thereof, but ingeniously acknowledge, that there is not any thing of it mentioned by their ancient Writers, and coming to speak of the Order in particular, i they refer its first Institution (not renovation) to do^k *Mennenius*, 1 *Jos. Micheli*, and others) to King *John* Son of *Philip de Valois*, in the Month of October, anno 1352. in commemoration of that *Star* which directed the Wise men, who came from far, to adore the Saviour of the World at his Nativity; the^m Figure whereof crowned, King *John* caused to be embroidered on the Mantle or upper Garment of the Order, as also this Motto, *Monstrant Regibus Astra viam*.

The Seat of this Order (thus instituted by King *John*) and where the first Ceremonies were kept, was in the noble and ancient House of a *St. Owen*, called de *Clichey*, near *St. Denys* in France; and by an ancient deed of Exchange of Lands, situate in the Earldom of *Alanson*, in lieu of the House of *St. Owen* (made by King *John* to the Countess of *Alanson*, and dated at *St. Cler de Gomet* the 6. day of June 1256.) is the King called i *Institutor of the military Fraternity of the Star*; which sufficiently contradicts the fair-spun relation of *Favin*, who bestows the honor of Foundation upon King *Robert*, as before hath been said. To which

we

we may add, that the day assigned by *Favin* for holding the Chapter of Election of the first *Knights*, to wit, the eighth of September 1356. and at *Clichy* aforesaid, was (in all probability) too near the day of the Battel of *Poitiers*, (that being but eleven days after) and King *John* not only then at a great distance from *Clichy*, but on a *hasty March to engage the *Black Prince*, and consequently too little at leisure to enter upon the Formalities of such an Institution.

This Order was of no long continuance, for being much violated and dishonoured (during the confusion of the Civil and Foreign War) by the admission into it of mean and undeserving persons; it gave a fair occasion to King *Charles* the Seventh to take off the pretence of honor supposed in it, and to extinguish it.

Whereupon, in the year 1455. he contrived the holding of a Chapter, for giving away that Ensign thereof, which himself wore, to the Chevalier *du Guet*, Captain of the Night-watch in *Paris*, after whose example the Princes and Lords left the Order, thus disgraced, to the said Captain, and never after wore it.

This Story as to the time, though not the manner, doth *Favin* contradict, and renders his reasons for it: howbeit, upon what occasion soever, the Order became relinquished or dismist, certain it is, that upon (if not some time before) the Foundation of the Order of *St. Michael*, it grew out of request; as did that of the *Gennet* upon the erection of the *Star*.

* *Froiss. Chron.*
l. 1. c. 159.

qf *S. Mar-*
r 2 the en
mesme Histor.
Genealog. loco
citato. videlicet
Seld. Th. of
Honor. p. 552.

Theat. d' Hon.
l. 3. c. 2.
e *Ibid.* c. 3. &
c. 5. vide *Aten-*
nen. ubi supra.
p. 130.

The Order of the Lilly in Navarre.

(8.)

* *Garcias* King of *Navarre*, the Sixth of that name, lying under the extremity of a languishing sickness, sent to divers places of Devotion, to the end, that Prayers might be offered up for the recovery of his health. In which season there hapned to be found in the City of *Nagera*, where he kept his Court, an Image of the blessed *Virgin Mary*, issuing forth of a Lilly, and holding her Son between her arms, upon finding of which (if we may credit the story) he immediately recovered, and (to perpetuate his devotion to the said *Virgin*) instituted an Order of *Knighthood*, in the year of our Lord 1048. which consisted of 38 Knights, drawn out of the ancientest Families in *Navarre*, *Biscay*, and *old Castile*, and Entitled it, the Order of *Knights of St. Mary of the Lilly*.

But *Jos. Mich. Marquez* gives foundation to this Order 25 years before *Favin*, and draws the Institution from another ground. For whereas *Don Garcias* had succeeded his Father, King *Zancho* the Fourth, in the Kingdom of *Navarre*, the *Moors* made War against him, and he prevailing, made a Feast in honor of the blessed *Virgin Mary*, at which he instituted this Order, and adorned many Knights with the Ensign thereof, beginning with his Brothers and Sons.

Of this Order (esteemed the most illustrious of all *Spain*) King *Garcias* ordained himself, and after him his Successors Kings of *Navarre*, the Chiefs and Sovereigns. The *Knights* promised at their entrance into this Order, to expose their lives and fortunes in defence of the Christian Faith, conservation of the Crown of *Navarre*, and expulsion of the *Moors*.

The Badge or Symbol which the *Knights* wore daily on their breast, was a Lilly embroidered in Silver; but on solemn days, a double Chain of Gold, interlaced with the letter M. made after the fashion of a *Saxon Capital*; at the end whereof did hang a Flower de Lis of Gold, enamelled White, bearing the foresaid Letter M. crowned upon the head of its Flower. The Habit was White, wrought all over in Needle-work, with White Lillies.

But *Jos. Michels* differs in this also from *Favin*, for he assigns for the Badge, two Branches of Skie-coloured Lillies, one crossing another, and in the middle of them the Figure of the Annunciation of the blessed *Virgin*, but agrees that the Habit was White.

a *Andr. Fa-*
b *vin. in*
c *Theat. in*
d *Honneur.*
l. 6. c. 3.

e *Refors mi-*
f *lit. de CA-*
vall. f. 17. b.

g *Mennen. p. 65*
h *(Favin.*
i *loco ci-*
k *tato.*

l *Tes. milit. de*
Cavall. loc. cit.
Tessera fuit
supra Togam
albam effigies
Annuntiatio-
nis Deiparae
intra duo Li-
lia. A. Mendo
Disq. 1. Quest.
The 4. n. 95.

The Order of the Sword in Cyprus.

(9.)

m And. Favin.
Theat. d' Hon.
l. 9. c. 2.

"Guy of Lusignan, (and according to this Author, King of Jerusalem and Cyprus in right of his Wife Sibilla, Sister to Baldwin the Leper) shortly after his settlement in the Isle of Cyprus (which he had bought of Richard the First, King of England, for one hundred thousand Crowns of Gold) Instituted this Order in the year of our Lord 1195. in remembrance of so fortunate a Plantation of 15000 persons, whom he had brought thither.

n D. Delie. E-
quest. p. 152.
Gothofrid. Ar-
chont. Cosm.
l. 3. p. 11.

But "Mennenius, and some others, are so far from being of this opinion, as to affirm, that neither the name of the Founder, nor the time of this Order's Foundation, are certainly known; though it be conceived he was one of the Family of Lusignan, who gave beginning unto it.

o Theat. d' Hon.
loc. cit.
p Vide eum lo-
cupræd.

The Collar of the Order (called a Collar of Esses by "Mennenius) was composed (as Favin reports) of round Cordons of White Silk, woven into Love-knots, interlaced with the Letters S and K. Beneath this Collar hung an Oval of Gold, wherein was figured a Sword, the Blade enamelled Silver, and the Hilt Gold; and about the Oval was engraven this Motto, *Securitas Regni, Micheli* faith it was, *Pro fide servanda*; and "Gothofridus, *Pro integritate tuenda*.

q Tesoro milit.
de Cavall.
f. 2. b.

* Loco cit.

r Theat. d' Hon.
margat supra.

The day appointed for holding of the solemn Ceremonies of this Order, was Ascension-day, whereon the Founder gave it (in the Church of St. Sophia the Cathedral of Nicosia in Cyprus) to his Brother Amaury, Constable of Jerusalem and Cyprus, and to 300 Barons, which he had established in that his new Kingdom.

s Tesoro mi-
l. l. loco
relato.

There were eight Kings of Cyprus, of this House of Lusignan, Great Masters or Chiefs of this Order; and when the Isle fell into the hands of the Turks, this noble Institution ceased.

The Order of the Bear in Switzerland.

(10.)

u f Favin.
w Theat. d'
x Hon. l. 7.
c. 14. vide Mi-
raum in Orig.
Equest. p. 79.

The "Emperor Frederick the Second (in favour of the Abbot of St. Gall in Swaben, and several Noblemen of that Country, who had been active in his assistance for gaining to him the Empire) instituted this Order, in the year of our Lord 1213. and bestowed upon the elect Knights Collars of Gold, at the end whereof hung the Figure of a Bear, Gold, mounted on an Hillock enamelled with Black.

y Idem Favin.
loco nuper cit.

He ordained, that this Honor should be conferr'd by the Abbot of St. Gall, for the time being, and that on the Anniversary of their Patron St. Gall (a Gentleman of Scotland, and the Apostle of Swaben) being the 16. day of October, the Knights of this Order should assemble at the Abbey; on which day, such Candidates as were designed to receive the Honor, were girded with the military Belt (the Sword being first consecrated at the Altar) and adorned with the Collar of the Order; having kept their Vigils the preceding night, according to the ancient and accustomed manner.

z Miræu p. 79.

* Favin, ut
supra.

But it carried the Title of the "Order of the Bear, in memory of St. Ursus, of the Theban Legion, who was martyr'd before the Temple of the Sun, at Soleurre in Switzerland; as also of St. Gall, from the name of the Patron of the place, where it received Institution.

This Order continued among the Switzers, till they became a Commonwealth, and then the Castles and strong holds of the Noblemen and Gentry of the Country being dismantled, the use thereof was wholly laid aside.

The Order of the Broom Flower in France.

(11.)

^a Saint Lewis King of France (saith *Favin*) instituted this Order, to honor the Coronation of Margaret his Queen, eldest Daughter of Berengarius Count of Provence, anno Dom. 1234.

The ^b Habit appointed for the Knights, were Cassocks of White Damask, and Violet Chaperons; the Collar was composed of Broom Flowers, of the native colours, interlaced with Flowers de Lis, hanging thereat a Cross Florence Gold, to which was added this Inscription, *Exaltat humiles*, the Founder accounting it the Symbol of humility.

As to the number of the Knights, it was not made certain by the Founder, but wholly depended on the will of the Sovereign. This Order continued to the death of King Charles the Fifth.

Notwithstanding all that *Favin* thus relates, the *sainte Marthe's* are of opinion (for the reason before noted) that neither this St. Lewis, nor the before mentioned King Robert, nor King Charlemain, did ever institute any Military Order of Chevalry: And ^f *Mennenius* reports, that Charles the Sixth is said to have been the Founder of the Knights of the Broom Flower: if this be true, the Order will want many years of that antiquity which *Favin* bestows upon it.

^g Peter Bellay rather thinks this later Institution not to have been any Order of Knighthood, but a Company of young Esquires, the Sons of Noblemen, who attended King Charles's person as a Life-Guard, or as Esquires of the Body, and were oftentimes employed to interpret the messages of Embassadors from foreign parts.

The Order of the Ship, and double Crescent in France.

(12.)

^h *Mennenius* acknowledgeth, that of old, there was such an Order in France, erected in honor of the great achievements that Nation did by Sea; but by whom it was founded, or at what time, doth not appear from him. Yet ⁱ *Favin* is full in both, for he affirms, that the before mentioned St. Lewis, after the Institution of the Broom Flower, erected this likewise: for animating the Nobility of France, by this new prize of honor, to accompany him in his Voyage into Africa, 1269.

The ^k Collar was interlaced with double Escallops of Gold, and double Crescents of Silver, interwoven and fastned together with double Gold Chains, at which the Figure of a Ship was pendent in an Oval of Gold.

This Order continued in France (after the death of St. Lewis) no longer than those Knights lived, who were admitted therein by him: but it was retained by ^m Charles, Brother of the said St. Lewis, and by him settled in Sicily, where it remained in request with his Successors, until the Kings of Aragon gained that Kingdom.

Knights of St. James in Holland.

(13.)

ⁿ Albertus Miraus, from an old Dutch Register, called *Register der Ridderchap*, or the Register of the Order of Knighthood, informs us, That Florentius Earl of Holland and Zeland, and Lord of Friseland, in the year 1290. bestowed the Ensigns of his Order of St. James, in the Hall of his Palace at the Hague, upon twelve of his principal Nobility, whose names he sets down: among whom, the second in rank, is Lancelot Lord Hamilton, then Embassador from the King of Scots.

The

a⁵ Ibid. p.
p² 82.

The *Knights* of this Order were invested with a^o Collar of Gold, or *military Belt* of Silver and gilt, adorned with six Escallops, whereat was appended the Picture of St. *James* the Apostle.

All the *Knights Shields* (whereon were painted their proper Arms) were delivered to *John Paypaert*, Herald of *Holland*, and by him hung up in the great Hall of the Palace, at the *Hague*, in perpetual memory and testimony of this Institution.

Order of the Swan in Cleveland.

(14.)

If ever there was an Order there, under that Title, it hath been very ancient, and long since laid aside; yet ^a *Favin* says, the Princes of *Cleve* have born the *Swan* for their Order, Devise, Crest, and Supporters, to preserve the memory of the *Knight* of the *Swan*, the Romance of whose Adventures he also sets down; and further reports, that ^c *Charles Gonzaga* of *Cleve*, Duke of *Nivers* and *Retelois*, had it in design to re-establish this Order, peculiar to the House of *Cleve*.

The Knights of Jesus at Rome.

(15.)

a⁵ *Favin*.
b² *Theat. d'*
Honneur. l. 7. c. 11.
c. 1.

The Popes of *Rome*,^a as they are Lords Paramount of St. *Peters* Patrimony, are Temporal Princes; upon which account to^a honor the Nobles, principally of that Territory and others, they have erected and established certain Orders of *Knighthood*, as well Religious as Military, but all of them Stipendaries to the *Pa-pal* See: Of the former sort we have spoken before in the last Chapter, but this being esteemed a *Military* Order, we therefore place it here.

It was instituted by Pope^b *John* the 22. at *Avignon* in France, anno 1320. and much augmented by *Paul* the Fifth. The *Knights* wear for the Badge of this Order, a plain *Cross* gules, inclosed within a *Cross* Patee Or, hanging at a Gold Chain.

In the Month of *January* 1668. Pope *Clement* the Ninth, created three of the Ambassadors from the Catholick Cantons in *Switzerland*, with the accustomed Ceremony; himself putting on their Gold Chains, with the *Ensigns* appendant, and the Captain of his Guards, girding their *Swords* about them.

Order of the White Eagle in Poland.

(16.)

f⁵ *Theat. d'*
t² *Honneur*.
l. 7. c. 6.

The information we have of this Order, is from^c *Favin* also, who saith, that *Ladislaus* the Fifth, King of *Poland*, instituted the same, to honor the marriage of his Son *Casmire* the Great, with *Anne* Daughter of *Gedimir*, Duke of *Lithuania*, in the Month of *February*, in the year of our Lord 1325.

The *Ensign* hereof was a^c *White Eagle*, crowned.

The Order of Knights de la Banda in Castile.

(17.)

u *Banda*, vul-
gare Hispano-
rum lingua
cena est.
f⁷ *Mariana de*
rebus Hisp. l. 16.
c. 2.
w Ibid.
x In le *Theat.*
d' Honneur.
l. 6. c. 11.
y *Orig. de Ca-*
st. p. 37. b.

This Order of *Knights* called^u de la *Banda*, was erected by *Alphonfus* the Eleventh, King of *Leon* and *Castile*, in the^w City of *Victoria*, anno 1332. (but^x *Favin* from *Antonio de Guevara*, saith it was in the City of *Palencia*, anno 1330. and^y *Sanfovin* in *Burgos*, anno 1368.) For this King considering, that he had to do with many Enemies, could find no better way to secure himself, than by erecting

erecting this Order, and constituting himself *Master* thereof, which he did a little before his Coronation.

Shortly after (saith *Mennenius*) to wit, anno 1332. the Solemnity of this Order was celebrated in the City of *Burgos*, where, on the Eve thereof, in the Monastery of St. *Mary Royal*, each of the *Candidates* was conducted by the King to the Altar, and having there laid down his Arms, spent the whole night in watching and Prayer.

The next day after Mass, he was invested with a Red military Belt, or Ribband of four fingers broad, which came across the body, over the right Shoulder, and so under the left arm; And was the Ensign from whence the *Knights* took their denomination.

This Order was instituted chiefly to honor the Nobility, and therefore at first, none were admitted, but the younger Sons of Noblemen (excluding elder Brothers) or persons descended of the most noble Families in Spain; or else Esquires, who had served in the Court or Camp, ten years at the least: and to the end that greater honor might the more inflame them to valiant Exploits, Kings themselves, sometimes, vouchsafed to take the Ensign of this Order upon them.

It was anciently of very great esteem, but (such is the vicissitude of humane Affairs) at length it grew out of use.

The Laws and Constitutions are recorded by *Anth. de Guevera* (who also gives a Catalogue of the first *Knights*) *Jos. Micheli*, *Sanjovín*, *Favín*, and *Segar*; to whom we refer those that are desirous to be informed of them.

^a Mariana, loco cit.
^d Epist. ad Petrum Pimentelium, Com. Beneventanum.
^e Tesoro milit. de Caval. f. 50.
^f Orig. de Cavaliere, p. 38.
^g Theat. d'Honneur, loco supra cit.
^h Honor Milit. & Civil. lib. 2. cap. 22.

The Order de la Calza in Venice.

(18)

From the example of the *Knights de la Banda in Castile*, and about the year 1400. was instituted a Society at *Venice*, bearing the Title de la Calza, in honor of the Inauguration of Duke *Michèle Steno*.

Meeting with but a slender account hereof, among those Authors who have handled *Military Orders*, and some confounding it with that of St. Mark; I was at length, by the friendship of the deservedly honored Sir *Charles Cottierel* Knight, Master of the Ceremonies to his Majesty, furnished with better satisfaction, which he obtained for me from Signóre *Pietro Mocenigo*, the late *Venetian* Ambassador, at his Residence here in *England*; and from Signóre *Aberti* the present Resident for that State.

ⁱ Mennen De-lic. Equest. p. 118. videf. Mendo de Ord. milit. Disq. 1. Quest. 2. Sect. 28.

This Order consisted of a Society of particular Noblemen and Gentlemen, who at their voluntary choice met together, and entred into a Fellowship (among whom, some person of Eminence was elected their Chief) Nevertheless, upon the recommendation of their intention and design to the Council of Ten, who confirmed their Institution, and granted them Priviledges.

It hath appeared with so much the more reputation to the world, by having had the honor to receive into it several Princes of Italy, especially the Family of *Este* Dukes of *Ferrara*, of *Gonzaga* then Marquesses, now Dukes of *Mantua*, of the *Rovere*, *Urbino*, *Mirandula*, and others of the most conspicuous Families of that Country, namely, *Colonna*, *Orsini*, *Sanseverini*, *Visconti*, and others.

They were distinguished by wearing a *Stocking* quartered into different colours, embroidered with gold, and enriched with Jewels, which they at pleasure altered from the right to the left Leg; and in particular it is remembred, that an. 1529. the right *Stocking* then worn, was half the inside of Scarlet, and half the outside of Purple, and the other half gray, but the left *stocking* was all green: and as were the Husbands Stockings, such were the Wives Sleeves in all particulars.

On their solemn days, they first went to Church, and at Mass, took an Oath to observe the Articles of their Order. Among other things which this Society (for the honor of the City) was obliged to, splendid and noble Entertainments were part; at which were exhibited Musick, Dancings, and Theatral Representations:

ons : And with such magnificent and sumptuous Divertisements, have they given reception to divers foreign *Princes*, in particular to *Henry* the Third of *France*, when he pass'd by *Venice* in his way from *Poland* to *France*.

They wore for their *Habit* a *Crimson Senators Vest*, appearing therein very splendid, and reserved for solemn days ; at which times the Foreign *Princes*, that had been admitted into this *Order*, appeared clad after the same manner.

These *Knights* had for their *Ensign* a *Sun* on a *Shield* painted in their *Banners*, which they used also for a *Seal* ; perhaps as a happy *Omen* and *Prefage*, that the *Order* (being laid aside about the year 1590. for the excess it was growing into) should like the *Sun* from under a *Cloud*, rise again in after times (when better opportunity offered it self) in greater splendor than ever.

The Order of St. Mark in Venice.

(19.)

In this Seigniorship there is another Degree or Dignity of *Knighthood*, commonly called the *Order* of *St. Mark* ; and because it is generally reckoned among the *Orders* of *Knighthood*, and differs from the *Milites Simples* by wearing a peculiar Title, and being invested with a particular *Ensign* of Honor at their Creation, we have thought good rather to discourse of it here, though the Ceremony of Creation is performed after the manner of *Knights Batchellors*, viz. by Dubbing with a *Sword*, and their Title a bare mark of Honor only ; being by our Learned *Selden* affirmed to be, 'the known Degree of *Knighthood* given by *Supreme Princes*, or such as have a like power with them.

1 Additions to the Titles of Honor, p 935.

Besides, we have been informed thence, that those *Knights* are not governed by any *Laws* or *Statutes*, and are without any *Revenue* or *Indowment* of *Lands*: That they are not under any particular obligation or tie, except what is common to them with other Subjects, namely that of *Fidelity* to the *Prince*, being in all things else left to their own liberty. To this we add, that the Honor is also bestowed on absent persons, by *Letters Patent* or *Codicils* (as is the *Knightly Dignity* sometimes) among some of which, that to the learned *Sir Daniel Heinsius*, is given us by ^m Mr. *Selden*.

m Ibid.
n Platinus in vita Greg. 4. pag. 114.
o Alphons. Ciacconius de Vita Cy Gessu P. 11. tit. 1.1. p. 234.
p Plat. loco nuper cit.

It had its Title from *St. Mark* the *Evangelist*, whose ^a Body was translated to *Venice*, from *Alexandria* in *Aegypt*, in the year of our Lord 828. in the time of *Justinian* *Patritius* Duke of *Venice*, ever since which time this *Saint* hath been assumed and taken for the titular *Angel* and *Guardian* of this noble City, and his Picture very anciently painted upon their *Banners* and *Ensigns* ; but as to the Institution, it is not certainly determined, when, or by whom, it was first brought in use.

q Andr. Mendoza de Ord. Milit. Disq. 1. Quest. 2. Sect. 28.

The *Badge* of Honor, wherewith these *Knights* are adorned, is a *Gold Chain*, put over their shoulders, at the instant of their Creation, whereat depends a *Medal* ; on the one side is represented the *Symbol* of *St. Mark*, to wit, the ^a Figure of a *Lion*, having wings, holding in his right Paw a drawn *Sword*, and in his left a *Book*, spread open, in which, this Motto, *Pax tibi Marce Evangelista meus* ; on the other, the name of the *Duke* then living, beautified with a particular Impress ; but in the other, he is represented on his *Knee*, receiving a *Standard* from the hands of *St. Mark* : and sometimes this *Medal* is worn on a *Cross* enamel'd blue.

I was further informed from the hand of the noble Signóre *Pietro Mocenigo*, that the *Duke* of *Venice* bestows this Honor, either privately in his Chamber, or publickly in a full Colledge : Some also are made *Knights* by the *senate*, and those of the *Venetian Nobility*, at least persons of very eminent Quality and Character, who have merited well of this *Common-wealth*, by some extraordinary piece of Service, either at home or abroad, or upon whatever occasion the *senate* sees fitting : and forasmuch as the *senate* is a representation of the whole *Common-wealth*, and that the Creations of these *Knights* are confirmed by publick Decrees ; it is taken, that the *Knights* of their creating are of greater Dignity, than those made by the *Duke*. When the Creation is in a full Colledge, whether it be by the *Senate* or the *Duke* only, the *Collar* and *Medal* is bestowed at the publick Charge ; but when by the *Duke* privately, then upon his particular expence.

These *Knights* wear the Honor among other Titles of Dignity, as I have seen it

it inscribed about the Effigies of Sir *Daniel Heinsius*, thus, DANIEL HEINSIVS D. MARCI EQVES ILLVSTR. HOLLANDIÆ ORDINVM HISTORICVS, POLITICVS, ET HISTORIARVM PROFESSOR BIBLIOTHECARIVS ACADEMIÆ ET SECRETARIVS. And among those other Titles given to that famous Mathematician and Astrologer Sir *Andrew Argoll*, that of his Knighthood by this Title, is also thus inserted, ANDREAS ARGOLVS D. MARCI EQVES, ET IN CELEBERRIMO LYCEO PATAVINO PROFESSOR MATHEMATICVS.

The Order of Seraphins in Sweden.

(20.)

In the year of our Lord ^a1334. *Magnus* the Fourth, King of Sweden, in imitation of other Christian Princes, who had established Military Orders, instituted this of the *Seraphins*, or *Seraphick Knights*, otherwise surnamed of *Jesus*; in memory of the Siege laid to the Metropolitan City of *Upsala*.

The Collar of this Order was composed of ^b*Seraphins* and *Patriarchal Crosses*, the former of Gold, enamelled Red, the later also of Gold, but without any enamel: At the end thereof hung the ^cImage of *Christ* in an Oval. ^d*Favin* saith it was this Cipher *IHS* composed of three Letters, and signifying the name of *Jesus*, and in point four Nails. But ^eelsewhere 'tis said to be the Figure of the blessed *Virgin Mary*, and to make the thing yet more uncertain, ^fanother tells us, it was a *Patriarchal Cross* that hung thereat.

^a *Favin. in le Theat. d'Hist. new. J. 7. c. 10.*

^b *Mennen. p. 158.*
^c *Gothofrid. Archont. Cosm. l. 2. p. 12.*
^d *Loco cit.*
^e *Tessera Gen. i. l. 1. p. 637.*
^f *Tesoro milit. de Cavall. f. 92. b.*

The Order of the Sword and Military Belt in Sweden.

(21.)

We find mention made of another Order of Knights in Sweden, called of the ^g*Sword and Military Belt*, whose Collar consisted of *swords* and *Belts* conjoyn'd (the Symbols of Justice and Love) the Swords somewhat bending towards the point, and so joined point to point, round into a Circle: But by whom or when this Order was instituted, we are not yet informed.

^g *Mennen. p. 159. Archont. Cosm. loco cit. Mendo de Ord. milit. Disq. 1. Quæst. 2. Sect. 30. n. 71.*

The Order of the Knot in Naples.

(22.)

When ^h*Lewis* King of Hungary design'd a War against *Joane* Queen of Naples, he undertook an Expedition into Italy, not so much to deprive her of her Kingdom, as to revenge the death of his Brother *Andrew*; whom (as 'tis reported) Queen *Joane*, his Wife, had commanded to be strangled.

After many troubles and three years of War, they came to an accord, the first of April, anno 1351. and the 26. of May following (with the consent of Pope Clement the Sixth) the Queen, and *Lewis* Prince of Tarentum, were crowned King and Queen of that Realm; and that same day, in memory of such a happy Peace, and to take away all suspicions and enmities; the Prince instituted this Order of *Knights*, into which entred threescore and ten of the illustrious Lords in blood of Naples, and some other Strangers.

The Habit he appointed was *White*, and for the Orders chief Ensign, he gave a Knot (the Embleme of Love and Friendship) intermixt with Gold: and as the like Institutions in that Kingdom, commonly ended with the death of their Founders; so this Order expired in a short time.

^h *Tesoro milit. de Cavall. f. 38 b. videtur Pand. Collenucius Hist. Neap. l. 2. Angel Constantin. Hist. Neap. l. 6. Ann. Pacca de Ord. et Societ. militar.*

The Order of Knights of the Annunciade in Savoy.

(23.)

i (Fran. Capre en le Catalogue des Che-
k valiers de l'Ordre du Collier de Sa-
l 1705, dist. de l'Annonciade, Edit. Turin.
m 1654. vide etiam Samuel Guichenon
Histor. Genealog. de la royal Maisin de
Savoy. l. 1. p. 111. Memen. Delic. Equest.
p. 133. & Sanfovin. Orig. de Caval. f. 33.
n Theat. d' Honneur, l. 8. c. 5.

ⁱ Ame the Sixth of that name, Earl of Savoy, surnamed
Conte le Verde, instituted this Order under the Title of the
^k Collar, in the year of our Lord¹ 1362. in honor of the
15^m Divine Mysteries of the Rosary.

ⁿ Andrew Favin, on a mistaken ground, calls it the Order
of the Snares of Love, in regard (as he alledgeth) the
Founder had received of his Lady, the favour of a Brace-

let, made of the Tressles of her hair, knit or plaited in Love-knots, and that
the four Letters, afterward interlaced by the Founder, within such like Love-
knots should signifie, *Frappés, Entrés, Rompés, Tout.*

But Francis Capre (Councillor and Secretary of State to the present Duke of
Savoy) who hath given an account of the^o Institution, together with the several re-
stitutions of this Order, from the Records thereof (preserved in the Charter-house
in Pierre Chastle, appointed at the time of the Foundation, for the Seat of the
Order) confutes this error of Favin, and with him several others, who have un-
warily swallowed down the same mistake.

^q Menmenius and Miræus take not the least notice of its denomination from the
Collar, but call it the Order of the Annunciation in Savoy: But it is cleer enough
from the Founders' last Will and Testament, bearing date the 27. of February,
anno 1383. and from whatⁱ Capre and Guichenon alledge, as also from the^o Sta-
tutes of Ame the Eighth, that at the time of the Foundation, it was called the
Order of the Collar: under which name it continued, till the time of Charles the
Third, surnamed le Bon, Duke of Savoy, when (and not before) it had bestow-
ed on it the Title of the Annunciation, from the Picture of the History of the
blessed Virgin Mary, by him first made appendant to the Collar, in the year
1518.

The^v Founder appointed the number of his Knights (reckoning himself the
Chief and Sovereign for one) to be fifteen, (among whom we find^z Sir Richard
Alusford, an English Gentleman, recorded) agreeable to the number of the before
mentioned Divine Mysteries; but in the additional Statutes made by Ame the
Eighth (first Duke of Savoy) anno 1434. and by Duke Emanuel Philibert, 1568.
there is a permission given to augment their number, by adding five to the former
fifteen, but the Sovereigns have not always been confin'd to this number.

Besides the Institution of this Order, the Founder erected and founded the
Chartreuse of Pierre Chastle in Bugey, wherein were entertained 15 Priests, and
they obliged to celebrate every day 15 Masses, to the honor of the 15 Joys of
the blessed Virgin, to the Souls health of him, his Predecessors, and all who had
been, were, or should hereafter be Knights of this Order. So that the resem-
blance of this Institution, with the foundation of this religious house, is some
argument, that the Order, as well as the House, were founded upon a religious
and pious, not amorous or wanton account.

At Pierre Chastle were the Ceremonies observed, and the Chapters
held by the Sovereign and Knights, until the time that Charles Emanuel
First of that name, Duke of Savoy, exchanged it, and some other places, for the
Marquise of Saluces, upon the Treaty of Peace concluded at Lyons, 17. Jan.
1607. and then the Anniversary of the Feast, and celebrations of the Order (be-
ing fixt to the Feast-day of the Annunciation of our Lady) were translated from
hence, first to the Church of St. Dominick at Montmeillan, and afterwards by his
declaration, dated at Turin || 3. Dec. following, to the Hermitage of Camaldule,
situate upon the Mountain of Turin, vulgarly called l' Eremo Affir, where they
were performed, as formerly, at Pierre Chastle.

The^a ancient Collar (from which also the Order received its denomination)
was made of Gold, about three fingers breadth, as may best be collected from
the


o In Alois
p au Lellieur.

q Pag. 131.
r Pag. 39.
s Guichenon.
Hist. Geneal.
de la Maisin
de Savoy. l. 6.
p. 217.
t Locis supra
relatis.
u Sanfovin.
f. 33.

v Capre.
Guichenon.
Sanfovin. locis
p. 134.
x Guichenon.
l. 2. p. 414.
y Capre en le
Catalog. des
Cheval. d'or.
Porroit d'or,
a trois Pals
d'azur.
y Capre in ad-
v. au Lellieur.
Guichenon. l. 6.
p. 217.

z Guichenon. l.
1. p. 113. &
l. 2. p. 91.
* Item Guich.
l. 6 p. 548.

|| § Fr. Capre,
a & supra.

the Founders own Collar, which he ^b gave to the religious at *Hautcomb*, in whose Vestry it is yet preserved. Upon this Collar are engraved these Letters F.E.R.T. ^{b Guichenon. l. 1. p. 112.} represented in ancient barbarous Characters after this manner  and one Knot (commonly called the Knot of *Savoy*) at the end of each *Fert*, which with three other like Knots entwined one within another, made up the circumference depending at the Collar: nevertheless, without any Figure or Image within the Circle.

These old Characters (as hath been generally taken and supposed) were the initial Letters of this Epigraph, *Fortitudo ejus Rhodum tenet*, alluding to the glorious actions of *Conte Ame le Grand*, who gallantly defended the Isle of *Rhodes*, against the *Turks*, anno 1310.

But the world hath now received more light in this particular, from the industrious pains of *Monsieur Guichenon*; who has very fortunately cleared this so common a mistake from all obscurity.

^{d In Hist. Genealog. prae. l. 1. p. 847.}

For the Devise of the House of *Savoy*, consisting in the before noted word, or four Letters, appears to be more ancient, than the time of *Conte Ame le Grand*, in regard that *Lewis de Savoy*, Baron de *Vaud*, who dyed anno Dom. 1301. did always wear this Devise, as appears from some of his *Coins*, which this Author ^e inserts; and further, the Monument of *Thomas de Savoy*, the First of that name, Son of *Humbert* the Third, *Conte de Savoy*, de *Piemont*, & de *Manrienne*, who died the 20. of January, anno 1233. and lies interr'd in the Cathedral Church of *Aouffe*, hath (on the Draught of the ^f Monument which *Guichenon* exhibits) a Dog lying at the feet of his Portraiture, which (on a Collar about his neck) bears this word *Fert*, without pointing also, or distinguishing of Letters; and is besides a strong proof, that this was but one word.

^{e Idem ibidem.}

^{f Idem. l. 2. p. 251.}

But yet to add more strength to this assertion, he exhibits another convincing Testimony, from a ^g Brass Coyn of the same Earl *Thomas*, whereon is a bowing Escutcheon, charged with a Cross, and for the Crest, a Lyons head winged, and surmounted with a Peacocks Feather; on the one side of the Crest are these two Letters TS, being the initial and final Letters of his Christian name *Thomas*, and on the other side HI, the first and last Letters of the Surname *Humberti*, which signifies, *Thomas filius Humberti*: On the Reverse of this Coyn, is to be seen two Knots, of the fashion afore noted, and the word *Fert* in the midst.

^{g Lib. 1. p. 141.}

He moreover gives us the Estype of a ^h Silver Coyn, of *Peter de Savoy* (who ^h for some time abode in *England*, in the Reign of King *Henry* the Third, and built that stately Structure in the *Strand*, called the *Savoy*) in which is represented the Devise *Fert*, in *Gothick* Characters.

^{h Ib. p. 145.}

From all which it is fully evident, that this word, as also the *Knot* and *Cross* were used for the Devise, Badge, and Arms of the House of *Savoy*, long before Count *Ame le Grand* relieved *Rhodes*, against the power of the *Turks*, or the time of the Institution of the Order; though for how long before is not certainly known; nor is the true interpretation of the word left rendered to Posterity.

We may here not unfitly add, that though Historians generally report for a truth, that *Conte Ame le Grand*, relinquished the *Eagle*, the ancient Arms of *Savoy*, and assumed the *Cross* of *Rhodes*, to wit, *Gules*, a *Cross Argent*, in memory of the relief he gave to that City; yet doth this particular suffer much contradiction. For it is made clear enough by ⁱ *Guichenon*, that some of this Conte's Ancestors, Earls of *Savoy*, and other Princes of that House, did bear the said *Cross* for their Arms, long before that famous action at *Rhodes*: Nevertheless he determines not when it was first so assumed by the House of *Savoy*, but modestly interposeth his conjecture; ^k conceiving, that upon the return of *Ame* the Third, Earl of *Savoy*, out of the *Holy Land*, anno Dom. 1147. he might assume the *Cross* for his Arms (for in the like kind we have several instances in the Arms of Families here in *England*, when their Ancestors returned home from that Country) as well for the honor he bore to this Pledge of our redemption, as for a memorable Badge of that his Military Expedition. And seeing that in those times Arms were not become hereditary, the Earls of *Savoy*, did one while bear an *Eagle*, another

^{i Ib. l. 1. p. 126.}

^{k Pag. 127.}

another

another while the *Croß*, until *Conte Ame le Grand* established the later of these in his Family.

¹ *Idem* Guichenon, l. 1. p. 112. in *Fac. Theat. d' Honn.* l. 8. c. 5. videlicet *Histoire de Baras, in la blason des Armes* p. 44. *Marc. Gib. de Varennes en le Roy d' Armes.* p. 99. in *Guichenon in le Hist. General de la Maison de Savoy* l. 6. p. 21. ² *Capre loco supra relato.* Guichenon. l. 1. p. 113.

The ancient Collar had no ¹ *Rosé* on the Circle of its pendant, or *Image* either of our blessed Lady, or St. Maurice, as^m some relate: but was composed only of the aforesaid word, linked together by a single Knot, and three little Knots in the pendant; until the time of Duke Charles the Third, as may be proved by the ancient Collars of the *Sovereigns* of this Order, preserved in the Monastery at *Hautecombe* in *Savoy* (² founded by *Conte Ame* the Third, anno 1125.) where most of the *Sovereigns* are interred, with the Figure of which Collar, *Fr. Capre* hath encompassed the Arms of all the *Knights*, from the first foundation, unto the time of Duke Charles the Third; as may be seen in his *Catalogue* of the *Knights* of this Order.

This ancient Collar is still in use, and daily worn, but now called the *little Collar* of the Order, being made of Gold, or Silver and gilt, about an inch broad, and of different weight. The *Knights* wear it about their neck, close to the Collar of their Doublet, in which manner *Ame* the Tenth, Duke of *Savoy*, is represented, in his Picture at full length, now hanging in the Gallery at *Whitehall*, to which Collar (within a round formed of three Knots) hangs the Figure of the *Annunciation*.

³ *Id.* p. 9.

As Duke Charles the Third restored much of its decayed splendor to this Order, so anno 1518. did he introduce another larger Collar, and called it the *great Collar*, so that now the *Knights* use two Collars, the later being only worn upon days of Ceremony, and Festivals of the Order. This later and larger Collar weighs about 200 Crowns in Gold, and is composed of the word *Fert* interwoven with Knots, severed with *Rosés*, viz. 15 *Rosés* of Gold, whereof seven are enamell'd with White, and seven with Red, and bordered with two Thorns; as also the Figure of the *Annunciation* of the blessed Virgin, enamelled in various colours, pendant at three Chainets to another *Rosé*, coloured both White and Red.

We read not of any peculiar *Habit* assigned to the *Knights* of this Order, before the time of Duke Charles the Third, who brought into use the *great Mantle* of *Crimson Velvet*, his own being fur'd with *Ermins*, but the rest of the *Knights* with *Miniver*, fringed and bordered with Knots, (to wit, of the fashion of those that adorn the Collar) in fine Gold: Under this Mantle is worn a Surcoat, of white Damask.

⁴ *Capre.* ⁵ *Guichenon.*

⁴ Duke Emanuel Philibert his Son, changed afterwards the colour of the Mantle to Azure, and lined it with White Taffaty, of which Silk he also made the Surcoats.

But Charles Emanuel altered the Mantle unto an *Amaranthus* or Purple Colour, seeded with *Rosés*, and Flames, in embroidery of Gold and Silver, bordered throughout with the Symbols of the Order, fringed with Gold, and lined with Cloth of Silver, tissued Blue, which continues hitherto in use: Under which instead of the White Taffaty Surcoat, is now worn a White Satin suit, embroidered with Silk, the Hofs gathered upwards, in the fashion of Trousers.

⁶ *Capre. Guichenon.* l. 1. p. 113.

Concerning the statutes of this Order, the most ancient are those of ⁷ *Ame* the Eighth (for there are none of the Founders extant) made at *Chastillon* the 30. of May, in the year of our Lord 1410. the original whereof is lodg'd in the Archives at *Turin*, which he augmented in the year 1434. and both are printed by ⁸ *Sanfovin*. Duke Charles the Third, made new Statutes at *Chambery* the 11. of Sept. anno 1518. these were enlarged by Duke Emanuel Philibert, anno 1568. and published in the year 1577.

⁹ In *Origine de Cavall.* f. 33. b. c. 35. b.

The Order of the Thistle of Bourbon in France.

(24.)

¹⁰ *Fac. Theat. d' Honneur.* l. 3. c. 22.

At the solemnity of the ¹¹ marriage of *Lewis* the Second Duke of *Bourbon*, with *Anne* Daughter to the Count *Dauphine* of *Auvergne*, celebrated in the Town of *Arde*, on New-years day 1370. this Duke instituted the Order of *Knights* of our

our *Lady*, otherwise called the *Thistle*, and the^b first solemnities thereof were^b *Ibid.* performed at *Nostre Dame de Maulins* in *Bourbonnois*, where he founded a College of twelve Canons in honor of the blessed Virgin.

The ground of the Institution was^c to strengthen this Dukes power and interest, *c Menn. Delic. Equest. p. 142.* for the aid of *Charles Duke of Orleans*, and of his two Brothers *Philip* and *John*, against the Faction of the House of *Burgundy*: And by joining of Flowers de Lis and Thistles (the Symbols of hope and courage) emblematically to express the nobleness of his Spirit, against all power of Fortune.

He ordained a set number of *Knights* of this Society, to wit, ^d 26, therein comprehending himself and Successors Dukes of *Bourbon*, as Chiefs; and obliged ^e these to wear daily a *Belt* or *Girdle* made of *matchet colour Velvet*, lined with ^f *Crimson Sattin*, embroidered with Gold, in the midst of which embroidery was curiously wrought the word *ESPERANCE*. This *Girdle* was fastned with a Buckle and a Tongue of Gold, bearded and chequered with green enamel, in form like to the head of a *Thistle*. *f Favin. Theat. d' Hon. loc. cit.*

On the Anniverfary of the Festival (namely the day of the *Conception* of our *Lady* in *December*) the *Knights* wore *Cassocks* or *Surcoats* of *Carnation Damask*, with wide sleeves, girded with the *Girdle* before described.

The *Mantle* of this Order was of *Skie-coloured Damask*, having broad welts of Gold embroidered on the Collar, and lined with red Sattin; but the *Mantlet* of green Velvet.

The *Bonnet* was also of green Velvet, at the point of the band hung a fair Tassel of *Crimson Silk* and threads of Gold, the lining of *Crimson Taffaty*, and turned up after the antique manner, whereon they had embroidered the Golden Shield with the word *Allen*.

Whofo considers in this Constitution, the number of *Knights*, the principal colours of the *Mantle*, *Surcoat* and *Girdle* (with the injunction for wearing thereof) shall plainly see that this *Founder* took an exact pattern from the Order of the *Garter*, which he had observed in *England*, and acquainted himself with its Constitutions, while he was Prisoner in *Windfor Castle*: for here is little change or alteration, and only a *Belt* or *Girdle* made the chief *Ensign* of this, as the *Garter* was of that Order.

The greatⁱ *Collar* was of Gold, of the weight of ten Marks, enamelled with ^{i Idem Favin, loco praed.} Green, opened like Network, which was fill'd with Flowers de Lis of Gold, and each of them (together with the Letters of the Impress) placed in a Lozenge of red enamel. At the bottom of the Collar, in an Oval of Gold (the Circle whereof was enamelled with Green and Red) appeared the Figure of the Patroness, the blessed Virgin *Mary*, surrounded with rays of the Sun, crowned with twelve Silver Stars, a Crescent of the same under her feet, enamelled with Purple and Skie colour, lastly at the end of the Oval depended the head of a *Thistle* enamelled Green, but bearded White.

Some little difference is put by^k others in the fashion and composition of this *Collar*; namely, that it was made either of Gold or Silver, and framed of ^{k Mennen. in Delic. Equest. p. 142.} Flowers de Lis, and four leaves or Flowers of a *Thistle*, set in the form of a Cross.

The Order of the Dove in Castile,

(25.)

Was instituted by^l *John* the First of that name, King of *Castile*, in the City of *Segovia* Anno Dom. 1390. (so saith^m *Mennius* andⁿ *Miræus*, but^o *Favin* placeth it 1379.) and proposed to his Nobles, as a reward to encourage them to prosecute the noble acts of his Grandfather King *Henry* the Second.

The^p *Collar* of this Order was linked or enchaind with the resplendent beams of the Sun, both waved and pointed,

^l Jof. Micheli Marquez en la Tesoro Militar, de Cavalliera. f. 81. b. And. Mendo de Ord. milit. Disq. 1. Quest. 4. Sect. 4. n. 102.

^m Delic. Equest. p. 154.

ⁿ Orig. Equest. p. 73.

^o Theat. d' Honneur. l. 6. c. 12.

^p Mennius, loc. cit.

^q Favin. Cy Menn. locis nuper cit.

^r Tessera fuit Columba radiis circumdata

^s Torque dependens, Mendo loc. cit.

^rMicheli in *Tesoro Milit. de Caval.* f. 82. b. at which hung a golden Dove enamelled White, and encompassed with rays, the Eyes and Beak Red.

Herewith the Founder, saith *Favin*, adorned himself on *Whitsonday* (yet *Mennenius* and *Miræus* will have it the Feast-day of St. James) and at the Altar of the great Church in *Segovia*, distributed other the like *Collars* to his intimate Favourites, together with a Book containing the *statutes* of the Order. But he dying the very same year, before the Order had taken sufficient root, it became of small continuance.

The Order of the Argonautes of St. Nicholas in Naples.

(26.)

^r*Tesoro Milit. de Caval.* f. 60, vide etiam *Pandol. Colenduc. Hist. Resp. l. 9. Aug. Constant. l. 8. Anellum Paca de Ord. de Societ. Milit.*

^rCharles the Third, King of Naples, instituted this Order, in the year of our Lord 1382. and with the *Ensign* thereof invested several of the Nobility of that Kingdom; with which as by a Bond, he designed to tie them one to another in a brotherly obligation.

^u*Briet. Annal. mundi. par. 2. Tom. 2. p. 300. v. Mendo de Ord. Milit. Disq. 1. Quest. 2. Sect. 3. n. 77. x. Tesoro Milit. de Caval. cit. Saint.*

^u*Briet. Annal. mundi. par. 2. Tom. 2. p. 300. v. Mendo de Ord. Milit. Disq. 1. Quest. 2. Sect. 3. n. 77. x. Tesoro Milit. de Caval. cit. Saint.*

The end of its Institution, was to preserve amity among the Nobles, to compose enmities, and suppress seditions; Infomuch, as if any of the *Knights* of this Order, were at variance one with another, and refused to be reconciled, the *Ensigns* were then to be taken from him: but some say the ground and cause, was to advance Navigation, which the *Neopolitans* stood in need of. To which the principal *Ensign* of this Order seems rather to allude, it being a ship floating upon the waters, in the midst of a storm, having this Motto, *Non credo tempori.*

^{*}In the Convent of that sumptuous Church, which St. Nicholas Bishop of *Smyrna* caused to be built, was the grand Feast held, on the Anniversary of that

This King appointed a *White Habit* for the *Knights*, and prescribed laudable Constitutions to the Order; but because he settled no Revenue thereupon, the splendor thereof ceased at his death; nevertheless he obtained the end for which it was instituted.

Knights of St. Anthony in Hainolt.

(27.)

^a *Alb. Miræus Orig. Equest. p. 80 vide etiam Jusprind. Heroic. p. 390.*

^aAlbert of Bavaria, Earl of Hainolt, Holland, and Zeland, designing an Expedition against the *Turks* and *Moors*, instituted this Order, in the year of our Lord 1382.

The *Ensign* thereof was a golden *Collar*, wrought after the fashion of an *Hermits Girdle*: at which hung a walking Staff, and a little golden Bell.

The Order of the Porcupine in France.

(28.)

^b *Favin. in le Theat. d' Hon. l. 3. c. 11.*

^c *Ibid.*

^d *Apud Favini. In Delle. Equest. p. 129. f. Tes. Milit. de Caval. f. 95 b. g. Loc. supra cit.*

^bMonsieur Lewis of France, Duke of Orleans, instituted this Order, in the year 1393. to honor the Baptism of his eldest Son Charles, by *Valentina* his Wife, Daughter to *John Galeas* Duke of *Millan*; and made choice of the *Porcupine* for his Devise, with this Epigraph *Cominus & Eminus*; not only out of the high hopes he conceived of this Child, but also to intimate something of revenge against *John* Duke of *Burgundy*, his mortal Enemy, no less than self-defence, against all his designs and assaults, of which this Animal is a proper Emblem.

^d*Paradine*, ^e*Mennenius*, and ^f*Micheli*, make Charles, the Son of this Monsieur Lewis, the Founder anno Dom. 1430. in imitation or emulation of *Philip* Duke of *Burgundy*, Founder of the Order of the *Golden Fleece*; but ^g*Favin* strengthens his foresaid relation, from the authority of one *Hennotin de Cleriaux* an *Herald*, who

Equites Tufini in Bohemia.

(13.)

a In Delic. E.
quest. p. 156.
b Micheli.
f. 60. b.

We find but a bare mention thereof made by ^a *Mennenius*, and that it was erected in the Kingdom of *Bohemia* (or else both in ^b *Bohemia* and *Austria*) but he doth not in the least inform us either of the cause of its Institution, the Badge of the Order, or to what the Title refers.

The two first of these particulars *Jos. Micheli* supplies, but as to the third, we cannot give so perfect an account as we would; yet we remember to have read somewhere, that this Order had its name from *Toca*, a Cap or Coif.

c *Micheli*
d *Loco pra-*
e *ditto.*

The ^c Arch-Dukes of *Austria* (saith he) were Founders of this Order, which they instituted to ingage their Subjects in the defence of the Christian Religion, and expulsion of the *Turks*, and those they called Hereticks, out of their Dominions: for having about 200 years maintained a War with vast and excessive charge, by erecting this Order, and bestowing upon the *Knights* thereof all that they gained in War towards their supportation, they very much eased themselves in their Military Expences; and indeed this proved so great an encouragement to them, that in a few years (performing service wheresoever their Chiefs commanded them to ingage) they cleared their Provinces almost of both *Turks* and *Schismatics*.

The ^d *Ensign* of this Order was a plain *Green Cross*, and the *Habit* of the *Knights* *Red*.

f Menn. Delic.
E. quest. p. 156.

This and the following Order (saith the same ^e *Author*) were under the Rule of *St. Basil*, and profest conjugal Chastity and Obedience; but we see not from what ground he alledges this; for if so, then ought we to have placed it among the *Religious* rather than *Military Orders*, these being absolute notes and marks thereof. But inasmuch as we ^f elsewhere find, that *Albert* the Emperor adorned *Moses Didacus de Valera* in *Spain* (a Knight of known and approved courage) with the *Ensigns* of his three Orders, viz. of the *Dragon*, as he was King of *Hungary*; of the *Tusni*, as King of *Bohemia*; and with the *Collar de la Disciplinas*, as Duke of *Austria*, it is hence manifest, they were all compleat *Military Orders*, of which this Emperor was *Sovereign* or *Chief*: for no man can be admitted into more than one Order at a time (if it be of a religious Constitution) and whensoever he obtains leave to change that Order, he cannot be received into another, without relinquishing the former.

Ordo Disciplinarum in Austria.

(32.)

g En Tesoro
milit. de Ca-
ual. f. 59. b.
h Tessera erat
Aquila alba in
fidei Symbo-
lum. Mendo de
Ord. Milit.
Disq. x. Quest.
2. Sect. 31.
n. 75.
i Menn. loco
praed.

Bohemia (saith ^g *Micheli*) finding it self very much endangered by *Turks* and *Hereticks*, the Kings thereof instituted this Order, to suppress, or at least to keep them under, and to secure the Confines of that Kingdom. But I suppose, this *Author* means *Austria*, in regard it appears immediately before to have been conferr'd by the Dukes of that Country.

The *Collar* of the Order had a ^h *White Eagle* hanging thereat.

This, and the former Order, together with that of the *Dragon* in *Hungary*, are said to have flourished in *Germany*, in the Reigns of the ⁱ Emperors, *Sigismund* and *Albert*.

Ordo de la Scama in Castile.

(33.)

k Idem Menn.
p. 117.
l Jos. Micheli.
f. 38. a.

This Order received Institution from ^k *John* the Second, King of *Castile*, about the year of our Lord ^l 1420. to perswade and stir up his Nobility to fight against the

the *Moors*. For he being overcharged with War, designed this *Order* chiefly to awaken their courage, for the defence of his and their own Estates: which afterwards upon all occasions they performed so well, and gave so great demonstrations of their Valour, that in a short time the *Moors* were vanquished.

What their *symbol* or *Ensign* was, or the reason of the Title *de la scama*, happened to be so far worn out, that *Hieronymus Romanus* (who wrote the life of this King *John*) professeth he knew not what was meant or intended by it, though he had been very diligent in the search thereof.

Yet *Jos. Micheli* informs us, that their *Ensign* was a *Cross*, composed of *Scales of Fishes*, which does plainly enough demonstrate it to be derived from the Latin word *Squama*, from whence comes the Spanish word *scama*, that signifies the Scale of a Fish.

Some that speak of this *Order*, say nothing as to its beginning, being ignorant of the *Founder*; but it is generally believed to be Instituted by the forefaid King *John*, in whose time it flourished; inasmuch as there were few of his Nobility, but were also *Knights* thereof.

The duty to which they were obliged, was to defend the Kingdom of *Castile* against the *Moors*, and to dye in defence of the Christian Faith; besides which, upon every occasion, when the King went out to War, they march'd before him.

Their Privileges were given them by King *John*, as also Statutes and Rules to be governed by. Upon whose death the splendor of this *Order* was eclipsed; as many times it hath fared with other Foundations in the like case: the Successors, wanting the zeal and love for their continuance, equal to that of the Founders for their Institution.

The Order of Knights of the Golden Fleece in Flanders.

(34.)

Philip the Second, Duke of *Burgundy*, of the second and last Line, issuing out of the House of *France*, surnamed the Good, instituted this *Order*, under the Title of the *Golden Fleece*, in memory of the great Revenues he raised by the traffick of Wools with the *Low Countries*. Some will have it erected in commemoration of valiant *Gideon*, who with 300 men vanquished a numerous Army of *Midianites*. Or else (according to others) the *Founder* followed the example of *Jason*, and his *Argonauts*; whose Expedition to *Colchus* against *Aetes*, he perhaps might intend to imitate, by a Voyage into *Syria* against the *Turks*.

Whatsoever the occasion was, 'tis certain (from the preamble of the Statutes of Institution) that this Duke out of the perfect love he bore to the noble estate of *Knighthood*, founded this *Order*, to the glory of the Almighty Creator and Redeemer, in reverence of the Virgin *Mary*, and honor of *St. Andrew*, the Apostle and Martyr (whom he made *Patron* thereunto) to the advancement of the holy Faith, the service of the Catholick Church, and promoting of Virtue. For the maintaining and upholding of which, and for the increase of honor and fair renown, no less than the correction of Vice, several good orders, set down in the Institution, are appointed to be observed, at the Chapter held on the last day of every Annual Feast of the *Order*.

The day of Institution, was the 10. of *January*, anno Dom. 1429. on which very day the *Founder* solemnized his Marriage, with *Elizabeth*, Daughter to *John* King of *Portugal*, in the City of *Bruges* in *Flanders*.

The number of *Knights* first chosen, were 24. beside the Duke, Chief and *Supream*, who reserved to himself the nomination of six more at the next Chapter. But *Charles* the Fifth, anno 1516. encreased them to fifty.

And though the *Founder* at first resolved upon the Feast of *St. Andrew* annually, for holding the solemnities of the *Order*; nevertheless in consideration of the shortness of the days, at that time of the year, and how troublesome it would prove, especially to aged *Knights*, who lived at great distance, to take a Journey

h En su Testa
milit. de Ca-
vall. f. 28.
Insigne fuit
super togam
candidam
Cruz ex
squamis con-
fecta. Mendo
de Ord. milit.
Disq. 1. Quest.
4. n. 98.

i Micheli,
loc. cit.
m

o Pavin. in le
Theat. d' Honn.
l. 4. c. 5.

p Juris. Heroi-
ca. p. 429. apud
Joh. Germanum
primum Ordin.
Cancellar.

q Ibid. apud O-
livar. Marca-
num. vide Men-
delic. Equest.
p. 135. & 137.

r Ordin. hujus
Statuta Aurei
Velleris. Art.
31, 32, 33, 34
& 35.
s Prefatio ad
enad. Statut.

t Art. 18. Men-
nen. Delic. E-
quest. p. 136.
137. Jurispru d.
heroica p. 482
u Art. 22.

in so cold a season; it was afterwards ordained, that the Grand Feast and General Assembly, should be kept ^w from three years to three years, on the first of May, in such place as the Sovereign of the Order should beforehand give competent notice of.

As to the *Habit*, it was at first ordained, that at the Grand Solemnity, the Knights should wear three different *Mantles*; to wit, the first day of the Feast, of ^x *Scarlet Cloth*, richly embroidered about the lower end, with Flints struck into sparks of Fire, and Fleeces, with Chaperons of the same; and the same day after Dinner, to proceed to Vespers in ^y *Mantles of Black*, and black Chaperons: The day following, the Knights were to hear the grand Mass of our Lady, ^z clad as should seem good to themselves. But Duke Charles, Son to the Founder, appointed them *Mantles of White Damask*, for that days Ceremony, and changed their Cloth *Mantles* into Velvet.

The great *Collar* is composed of ^c *double Furs*, interwoven of equal bigness, in form of the Letter B. with *Flint-stones*, seeming to strike fire, and sparkles of fire between them, at the end whereof doth hang the resemblance of a *Fleece of Gold*, enamelled in its proper Colours. These ^d *Furs* are placed back to back, two and two together, thereby representing the Letter B both ways, intending to signify *Bourgoigne*, they are also intermingled with *Flint-stones*, in reference to the Arms of the ancient Kings of *Bourgoigne*; but it was the devise of the Founder to ingirt them with sparkles and flames of fire. To the *Flint*, *Paradine* (in his Heroical Devises) ascribes this Motto, *Ante Ferit, quam Flamma micet*, and to the *Fleece* this, *Pretium non vile laboris*.

The *Jewel* is ordinarily worn in a double Chainet or Males of Gold, linked together at convenient distances; between which runs a small Red Ribbon: and so is Philip the Fourth, King of Spain, represented, wearing his Jewel in a Picture at full length, hanging in his Majesty's Gallery at Whitehall; or otherwise it is worn in a Red Ribbon alone.

The Founder ordained ^e four Officers to attend and serve the Order, after the manner declared in the Ordinances for their Instructions, annexed to the Statutes, namely, a Chancellor, ^f a Treasurer, a Greffier or Register, and a King of Arms, called *Toison d'Or*.

^g Lewis the Eleventh of France refused to accept of this Order, because his Predecessors were not accustomed to receive the Orders of their Subjects; for such were the Dukes of Burgundy accounted, who held that Dutchy and other Seignories in homage leige to the Crown of France.

Albeit the Emperors of Germany are descended from Philip Arch-Duke of Austria, Duke of Burgundy, and Count of Flanders; nevertheless the power of conferring the Order is lodg'd in the Kings of Spain only, the Title of Head and Sovereign being solemnly resigned by the Emperor Charles the Fifth to his Son King Philip, the ^h 25. day of October anno Dom. 1556. in the Royal Chappel at his Palace in Bruxelles, and the Collar taken from his neck, and with his own hands put over his said Sons shoulders, in the presence of divers of the Knights, at which Ceremony he used this form of words, ⁱ *Accipe Fili mi, quem è Collo meo detraho, Tibi præcipuum Aurei Velleris Torquem, quem Philippus Dux Burgundiæ cognomine Bonus Atavus noster, Monumentum fidei sacræ Romanæ Ecclesiæ esse voluit, & hujusce Institutionis ac Legum ejus fac semper memineris.*

Afterwards, though Philip the Second, King of Spain, invested the Infanta his Daughter Isabella, in the Dominion of the Low Countries, upon the Contract of her marriage with the Arch-Duke Albert of Austria, yet he retained to himself, and Successors, Kings of Spain, and Dukes of Burgundy, the honor of being Chief of this Order, in which Crown it remains to this day.

The Statutes (ratified under the Founders Seal the 27. of Nov. 1431.) are printed in the ^k *Jurisprudencia Heroica*, together with those other additions and alterations which were since made by his Successors. So also are the ^m Priviledges granted to the Knights by the Founder, his Son Charles, and Maximilian, which received confirmation from King Philip the Second, anno Dom. 1556.

The

w Ibid.

x Art. 25 & 26.

y Art. 27.

z Art. 28.

c Joan. Tac. Chiffret. Insign. Gent. Equit. O. d. 1568. 6. 4. 5.

d Favon in le Theat. d. Hon. l. 4. c. 5.

e Ord. Statut. Art. 19.

f saintle Marth. de la Maison de France. Tom. 1. p. 291.

g Jurisprud. h Heroica. p. 433.

i Ibid.

k Pag. 445. l P. 452. m Pag. 470.

The Names of the first^a 24 Knights, and their Successors, to the number of ⁿ Pag. 483. 450. are there also registred, together with a Catalogue of the ^o Chancellors, Treasurers, Registers, and Kings of Arms, and lastly a ^q Figure of a Knight, vested in ^q Pag. 499. the Habit, may be there likewise seen.

The Original and Foundation of this Order is written at large in French by William Bishop of Tournay, Abbot of St. Bertin, and second Chancellor to the Order, in a Treatise of his called *The Golden Fleece*, dedicated to Charles Duke of Burgundy, Son to the Founder, and printed at Troyes, in the year of our Lord 1530. In this Work the Author treats of two manner of Golden Fleeces, viz. first of Jason's Fleece (of which he useth the testimony of Eusebius, to assert it for a true History) and by it represents the noble Virtue of Magnanimity, demonstrating several Virtues appertaining to the state of Nobility. Secondly, of Jacobs Fleece (viz. the party-coloured and streaked Fleece) by which he sets forth the Virtue of Justice, which Virtue principally appertaining to Kings, Knights, and noble persons, moved the heart of Duke Philip to institute this Order, under it comprehending the Virtues of both the other Fleeces.

The Order of St. George at Genoa.

(35.)

The Republick of Genoa have an Order of Knighthood among them, dedicated to the honor of St. George, their titular Saint and Patron; it was instituted by Frederick the Third, Emperor of Germany, and the Knights thereof are called, ^b Knights of St. George at Genoa.

The Ensign is a plain Cross Gules, and worn by the Knights at a Chain of Gold about their neck.

The Dukes of Genoa are Chiefs thereof, and in regard their Dignity lasts but two years, the Order is much impaired through the inconstancy and alteration of times.

^a Menn. Delic. Equestr. p. 118.

^b Equites Divi Georgii apud Genoveses. ib.

^c Favon. Theat.

^d Honn. l. 8. c. 3.

The Order of the Croissant in France.

(36.)

Rene, or Renatus, descended of the second Line of the House of Anjou, King of Jerusalem and Sicily, &c. Duke of Anjou, Count of Provence, &c. erected this Order, under the denomination of the Croissant, or half Moon, in the City of Anjou, anno Dom. 1464. But the Sainte Marthe's make it 16 years older, by placing the Institution in the year 1448.

Jos. Micheli reports, that Charles King of Sicily, and Jerusalem was the first Institutor, anno 1268. in the great Church at Messina in Sicily, on the day of St. Lewis King of France; but he by mistake confounds this Order with that of the double Croissant instituted by St. Lewis in France; and after his death retained and settled in Sicily by the said King Charles his Brother.

The end wherefore King Rene founded this Order, is noted to be in honor of God, support of the Church, and exaltation of Knighthood. Over which he declared himself and his Successors Dukes of Anjou, and Kings of Sicily Chiefs.

He also chose St. Maurice, Knight and Martyr, for Patron, and held the first Ceremonies in the Church of Angiers, dedicated to his name.

The Symbol which the Knights wore on the right side of their Mantle, was a golden Crescent, whereon, in red enamel, was this word L'oz, signifying (in the opinion of Peter Marthieu) L'oz en Croissant, whereby they were encouraged to search after the increase of valour and reputation.

At this Crescent was fastned as many small pieces of Gold, fashioned like Cornucopias and enamelled with red, as the Knights had been present in Battels, Sieges

^e Favon. Theat. d' Honn. l. 3. c. 14.

^f General. Hist. de la Maison de France, Tom. 1. p. 824.

^g Tesoro Milit. de Cavall. f. 54. a.

^h Favon. loc. cit.

ⁱ Saint. Marth. loco cit.

^k Menn. p. 163.

^l Favon. ut supra.

^m Heylin's Conf. m. g. l. 1. p. 170.

ⁿ Favon. loc. cit.

of

of *Ibid.*
p. 2.

of Towns, Cities, or Castles, which gave due intimation to all men, of their valour shewed in martial services; for none could be adopted into this Order, unless he had well merited in some of these kinds.

The *Knights*, who were 36 in number (but the *Sainte Marthe's* say 50) did wear for the *Habit*, & *Mantles* of red or *Crimson Velvet*, and a *Mantlet* of *White*, with the lining and Surcoat of the same.

The Order of the Ermine in Britagne.

(37.)

r *Favia. Theat.*
d' Honn 13.
c. 17.
Mém. p. 160.
f. S. Marthe
Hist. Genealog.
de la Maison
de Fr. Tom. 2.
p. 482.
t. J. Favin. loco
u. J. prad.
w. J. Ibid.
x. J.

In the year of Christ 1450. *Francis* the First of that name, Duke of *Bretagne*, in memory of his Grandfather *John*, surnamed the *Conqueror*, or else in imitation of other Princes of the blood in *France*, founded this Order, consisting of 25 *Knights*, and thereupon also, new-built his Castle of the *Ermine*.

He ordained the *Habit* to be *Mantles* of *White Damask*, lined with *Carnation*, and the *Mantlet* of the same.

The great *Collar* to be of *Gold*, composed of *Ears* of *Corn* in *Saltir*, bound above and beneath with two *Circles* of *Gold* (in imitation of the *Crown* of *Ceres*) hereby noting the care of Husbandry, which the ancient Counts and Dukes of *Bretagne* had, as also the fertility of that Province; and hence is this Order otherwise called of the *Ears* of *Corn*.

y *Generosum*
incontaminati
& sincerissimi
animi Exem-
plar. Mém.
p. 161.
z. S. Marthe,
loco prad.
w. Gotfrid. Ar-
chont. C. Smica.
l. 3. p. 12.

At the end of this *Collar* hung the *Mus Ponticus*, or *Ermine*, passing over a Turf of *Grass*, diaped with *Flowers*, at the edge whereof was imbossed this Epigraph in *French*, *A Ma Vie*, the devise of his Grandfather *John*, by which he made known the greatness of his courage, and rather than fail of his word, that he would undergo any misfortune.

This Order took ending, when the Dukedom of *Bretagne* became annexed to the *Crown* of *France*, by the marriage of *Anne* Dutches of *Bretagne* with *Charles* the Eighth, and he being dead, with *Lewis* the Twelfth, both *French Kings*.

The Order of the Ermyne in Naples.

(38.)

z. J. Micheli.
Marquez Telo-
ro milit. de Ca-
vall. f. 92. b.
vide porro Jo.
Pontan. de bel-
lo Neapol. l. 1.
Jo. Buxa Cava-
ja. l. 10. Angel.
Constant. l. 20.
Anelus Paca de
Ordinib. & So-
ciet. milit.

Ferdinand the First, King of *Naples*, after the end of the War which he had with *John* of *Lorain*, Duke of *Calabria*, erected this Order, in the year of our Lord 1463. being moved thereunto upon the Treason intended against him, by *Marinus Marcianus* Duke of *Sessa*, and Prince of *Rosiona*, his Brother-in-law; who raising a confederacy against him; intended to kill him, when they should be together, that so he might transfer the Kingdom to the Duke of *Calabria*.

But this Plot being discovered, and the Duke apprehended by the King (his Subjects expecting that he should have executed Justice upon him) he not only forbore it, but having instituted this Order of *Chevalry*, the first of many that were invested with the *Collar* thereof, was this his Brother-in-law, (whom he not only pardoned, but also honored) and besides whom, admitted all the Noblemen of Title in the Kingdom thereinto.

The *Collar* was of *Gold* intermixt with *Mud* or *Dirt*, to which depended an *Ermyne*, and this Motto, *Malo mori, quam fadari*.

The Order of St. Michael in Naples.

(39.)

b In Orig. E-
quest. p. 76.
c Pag. 77.

Albertus Mirans makes this King *Ferdinand* Founder of another Order of *Knighthood* in *Naples*, in memory of *St. Michael* the *Arch-Angel*, Patron of *Apulia*. The *Habit* of the *Knights* was a long *White Mantle*, embroidered with *Ermyns*,

Ermyns, and the Collar of Gold composed of the Letters O, to which was added for Symbol, this Epigraph, *Decorum*.

This Order is likewise taken notice of by the Author of the ^d *Jurisprudentia* d Pag. 350. *Heroica*; but perhaps it may be the same with that of the *Ermyns*; since we observe the *Habit* hereof is embroidered with *Ermyns*, and might be otherwise called of *St. Michael*, if so be it were dedicated to his honor.

The Order of Knights of St. Michael in France.

(40.)

^a Lewis the Eleventh of France, considering how much the Factions of the Nobility of his Realm had disordered his Affairs, to the end he might reunite their affections to himself, and confirm the same, by new obligations of Honor, instituted this Order in the year of our Lord 1469. to which he gave the Title of *St. Michael*, this Arch-Angel being esteemed the ^b titular Angel and Protector of the Realm of France; in reverence of whom the ancient Kings of France were wont to observe the Feast-day of this Saint with great solemnity, and keep an open Court.

This King Lewis by the foundational Statutes of the Order (which passed his Royal Assent at Amboise the ^d first of August in the Year afore said) ordained, ^e That the number of Knights should be 36. whereof himself and his Successors were to be Chief: but afterwards the number far exceeded, even to ^f 300.

The Collar of this Order is composed of ^g Scallop-shells of Gold, joined one with another and double banded, fastned on small Chains or Males of Gold; to the midst thereof is annexed an Oval of Gold, on which a rising hillock, whereon standeth the Picture of *St. Michael* combating with, and trampling upon the Dragon, all curiously enamelled, to which faith ^h *Menmenius* was adjoined this Epigraph, *Immensi tremor Oceani*.

The *Habit* appointed by the Founder, was a ⁱ Mantle of White Damask hanging down to the ground, furr'd with *Ermyn*, having its Cape embroidered with Gold, and the border of the Robe interwoven with Scallops of Gold, the Chaperon or Hood, with its long Tippet, was made of Crimson Velvet.

But afterwards King Henry the Second ordered, ^j That this Mantle should be made of Cloth of Silver, embroidered with three Crescents of Silver, interwoven with Trophies, Quivers, and Turkish Bows, semed and cantoned with Tongues and Flames of fire: and moreover that the Chaperons of Crimson Velvet, should be covered with the same embroidery.

The ^k grand Assembly was by the Sovereign and Knights directed according to the Statutes, to be held as a solemn Festival on *Michaelmas* day, and the ^l place appointed for celebration of these pompous Ceremonies, at the Church of ^m Mount *St. Michael* in *Normandy*, built by *St. Aubert*, upon *St. Michael's* appearing to him in a Vision, and liberally endowed by ⁿ *Rollo* Duke of *Normandy* and his Successors, but afterwards removed to *Bois de Vincennes* not far from *Paris*.

There is an Herald of Arms appointed to this Order called *Monsieur St. Michel*, whose duty is to attend the Solemnities thereof, and ^o who in most things is preceded by our Garter, King of Arms.

Such care and moderation was used by King Henry the Third of France, when he instituted the Order of the *Holy Ghost*, not only to preserve the honor of this Order in its full splendor (notwithstanding the example of former times, where the rising of a new Order hath commonly proved the setting of the old) but to reform some miscarriages which had crept into it, by bestowing it upon some mean and undeserving persons; that he not only continued the annual Solemnities thereof, and Election of Knights thereinto; but also declared, that neither

Strangers;

^a S. Marth. de la Maison de France, tom. 5. l. 1. p. 59. & l. 1. p. 656. Item Mennen. p. 168. & Miraus. p. 641.

^b Princeps Imperii Francorum. Gardien & Pro-

^c Recur du Royaume de France. S. Marthe loco supra cit.

^d Arthur de Monstier, in Neustria pia. pag. 382.

^e Vincent. Lupan, de Magistrat. Francort lib. 1.

^f In Statutis Ord. Art. 1.

^g Heyl. Cosmogr. l. 1. p. 204.

^h Stat. Ord. Art. 3.

ⁱ In Delic. E. quest. p. 169. h Art. 32.

^j Theat. d'Hon. l. 3. c. 7.

^k Stat. Ord. Art. 31. l Art. 19.

^m Mons in procella Maris, vel in periculo Maris, aut Mons in Tumba. Ar. Monstier in Neustria pia. p. 371.

ⁿ Idem, p. 375.

^o Heyl. Cosmogr. l. 1. p. 205.

^q Heylin, loci cit.

^r Stat, de l'Ordre du Saint Esprit. Art. 27. Strangers, nor the Natives of France, who before are *Knights* of any other Order, should enter into that of the *Holy Ghost*, except those only of St. Michael.

The Collar of which Order is thereby made lawful to be worn, with that of the *Holy Ghost*, and usually represented within it, that being esteemed the more worthy place: And we are told it is now 'customary for those that are design'd to be *Knights* of the *Holy Ghost*, to be admitted into the Order of St. Michael the Evening before they receive that Order.

^s Present State of France, Edit. Lond. 1671. p. 314.

Knights of St. Hubert in Gullick.

(41.)

^t Miræus Orig. Equesl. p. 82. Item Jurisprud. Henric. p. 390.

^t Gerard Duke of Gullick and Berg (or as the French call them *Juliers* and *Mont*) Instituted a *Military Order* in the year of our Lord 1473. in veneration of St. Hubert Bishop of Liege, who died anno 727.

The Statutes thereof were written in the Dutch Tongue, whereunto was added a Catalogue of the *Knights* and their Arms, to the year of our Lord 1487. But further mention of this Order, or what was the Badge thereof, we do not find.

The Order of the Elephant in Denmark.

(42.)

^u Menneviut, Ravin. Micheli, Gothofridus, Haylin, & others.

Observing some difference among *Writers* touching the Institution, Collar, and Ensign of this Order, I was in doubt what to say, till at length I haply met with better satisfaction from a Letter wrote anno 1537. by Avo Bilde Bishop of Arhusen, sometime Chancellor to John King of Denmark and Norway, unto John Fris Chancellor to King Christian the Third, a Copy whereof was most freely communicated to me by Monsieur Crisostof Lindenow Envoye from Christian the Fifth, now King of Denmark, to his sacred Majesty, the present Sovereign of the most noble Order of the Garter.

This Letter informs him of the Institution, and some other particulars relating to the Order, to wit, That King Christian the first being at Rome (whither he had travelled upon a religious account) Pope Sixtus the Fourth, among other Honors, invested him with this Order, in memory of the Passion of our Lord and Saviour; and withal ordained, that the dignity of Chief and Supream, should be continued as a successive right to the succeeding Kings of Denmark.

This King founded the magnificent Chappel of the three Kings in the Cathedral Church at Roschilt (four Leagues from Copenhagen) where the *Knights* were obliged to assemble, upon the death of any of their Fraternity. He also admitted thereinto divers Kings, Princes, and Noblemen.

The chief Ensign of this Order was the Figure of an Elephant, on whose side (within a Rundle) was represented a Crown of Thorns with three Nails, all bloody; in honor and memory of the Passion of our blessed Saviour.

The *Knights* were obliged to the performance of acts of Piety, Alms Deeds, and certain Ceremonies; especially upon those days, on which they wore the Ensigns of the Order: But King John set so high a value upon it, that he wore them on every solemn Festival.

He also advanc'd the honor of this Order to so great esteem, that it became accepted by both our King Henry the Eighth, and James the Fifth King of Scotland, his Sisters Son; with whom the Ensigns thereof, remained as a Pledge and assurance of constant and perpetual friendship; with these he likewise invested divers Ambassadors, Senators, and noble Danes.

There is one Ivarus Nicolai Hertholm, a learned Dane (as I am informed) who hath writen a particular Treatise of this Elephantine Order, but not yet printed; The scope whereof is to shew, that the beforementioned Epistle of the Bishop of Arhusen does not sufficiently make it appear, that it received its first Institution, when Christian the First had those many Honors conferr'd on him, by Pope Sixtus the Fourth.

And

And that the *Badge* was an Ensign meerly Military, anciently given as a memorial and incitement to the *Danish* Princes, who took upon them the defence of Christianity against the *Moors* and *Africans*. 'Tis greatly presumed that this Book (which we hope may shortly be published) will furnish the world with many choicethings relating to the antiquity and honor of the Institution, Ensigns and Ceremonies of this royal Order.

Heretofore the *Knights* wore a *Collar* of Gold, composed of *Elephants* and *Crosses*, fashioned something like *Crosses Ancees* (*Mennenius* calls them *w Spurs*) ^{w De Delic. Equest. p. 150.} at which hung the Picture of the Virgin *Mary* to the middle, holding Christ in her arms, and surrounded with a *Glory* of Sun-beams: but they have long since laid this *Collar* aside, and now wear only a *Blue Ribbon*, at which hangs an *Elephant* enamelled White, adorned with five large *Diamonds* set in the middle. Those *Elephants* worn by the *Knights* in the Reign of *Christian* the Fourth, had in the same place within a *Circle* the Letter *C*, and in the heart thereof the Figure of 4, made to signify *Christianus quartus*.

This Honor hath been most commonly conferr'd by the Kings of *Denmark*; on the day of their Coronation, both upon the Nobles and Senators of the Kingdom.

It seems *Frederick* the Third brought into use (in imitation of the most noble Order of the *Garter*) an embroidered *Glory* of Silver Purle, wrought upon the left side of their Cloak or Vest, on which was embroidered two Crowns within a Rundle, bearing his Motto, *Deus providebit*; for such a one did *Count Guldenlow* (Ambassador hither from that King) wear at his residing here in *England*, anno 1669. But we are to note, that the Motto hath changed with the King, for that of the present King is *Pietate & Justitia*; and this the *Knights* of his Election now wear, in the middle of the *Circle*. Nevertheless all the *Knights* created by his Father, are obliged still to continue the former Motto.

The Order of the Burgundian Cross at Tunis.

(43.)

* *Charles* the Fifth, Emperor of *Germany* and King of *Spain*, after he had restored *Mulleassers*, King of *Tunis*, to his Kingdom (who had been expelled thence by that famous Pyrate *Barbarossa*) on the day of his victorious entrade into *Tunis*, with solemn and magnificent Pomp, was apparelled in a Coat which he used to wear in Battel, whereon was embroidered the *Burgundian Cross*: and being desirous to gain the good respect of all, who had served in that War, was chiefly willing to adorn the *Commanders*, that had behaved themselves valiantly in the Victory, with some Badge or token of Honor, as a reward: and for this reason did he institute this Order in the year 1535. on * *St. Mary Magdalen's* day. ^{* July 22.}

To this *Burgundian Cross* he added a *Steel* striking sparks of fire out of Flint, with this Inscription *BARBARIA*, to be the Badge or Ensign thereof: And for an additional Ornament, gave a *Collar* of Gold, whereat hung the said Badge.

Some say this Order was instituted at ten of the Clock that day, it being also the hour of *Mercury*, in which respect the Character of that Planet is usually enamelled on the one side of the Jewel, as the *Burgundian Cross* is on the other. But it was of short continuance, for it expired long since.

^{a Mennen. Delic. Equest. p. 180.}
^{b Lud. Gotofrid. Archont. Cosm. l. 3. p. 12.}

^{b Jos. Micheli. f. 94. b. vide A. Mendo de Ord. milit. Disj. 1. Quasi. 4. n. 105.}
^{c Men. Delic. Equest. loco cit}

The Order of Knights of the Holy Ghost in France.

(44.)

This Order received Institution from the French King, *Henry* the Third, the first Chapter being held on the last day of the year 1578. The design thereof was chiefly to unite and tie his Nobility and Prelates more firmly to

^{a Favin. Theat. d' Honn. l. 3. c. 9. vide port. Delic. Equest. p. 187.}
^{b S. Marth. Hist. General de la Maison de France, Tom. 1. l. 1. p. 60. & l. 16. p. 789.}

R

their

c In Statut.
hujus Ordin.
Art. 12.

their natural obedience, as also to stir up and encourage them to persevere in the Romish Religion, to illustrate and adorn the state of the Nobility, and to restore its ancient splendor and dignity.

d Mennen.
p 228.

It had its denomination from the *Holy Ghost* (to whose power and assistance the *Founder* usually ascribed all his Actions and Councils, advanced with most glorious and fortunate successes) in remembrance that he was born on *Whitsunday* in the year of our Lord 1550. elected to the Crown of *Poland* on *Whitsunday* 1573. and lastly came to the Crown of *France* on *Whitsunday* 1574.

e Favin. Theat.
d' Honn. l. 3.
c. 7.

The number of *Knights* whereof this Order was to consist, is by the Statutes ordained to be one hundred, besides the *Sovereign* or *Great Master*, which Office and Dignity is inseparable from the Crown of *France*.

f Art. 40.

g Art. 2.

h { Art. 72.

A long *Mantle* of Black Velvet turned up on the left side, and opened on the right, was also appointed for the Habit of this Order, being at first embroidered round with Gold and Silver, consisting of Flowers de Lis and Knots of Gold, between three sundry Cyphers of Silver; and above the Flowers de Lis and Knots were thickly seeded or powdered Flames of Fire.

This great *Mantle* was garnished with a *Mantlet* of Cloth of Silver, covered with embroidery, made after the same fashion as was the great *Mantle*, excepting only, that instead of Cyphers there were wrought fair Doves of Silver; and both these robes double-lined with Satin of Orange-tawney colour.

k Favin. loci
nuper cit.

The great *Collar* of the Order (worn over the *Mantlet*) was at first composed of Flowers de Lis, cantoned or cornered with Flames of Fire, interwoven with three Cyphers, and divers Monograms of Silver, one was the Letter H, and a Greek Lambda, both double; the first of these belonging to the Kings own name, the other to the Queen his Wife, Madam *Louisa de Loraine*; the other two were reserved in the Kings own mind, but not without suspicion of referring to some wanton Amours.

l Briet. Annel.
Mundi, pars 4.
Tom. 2. p. 310.
m Favin. Theat.
d' Hon. l. 3. c. 9.

But these *Cyphers* were taken off from the *Collar*, and the embroidery of the Robes by *Henry* the Fourth his Successor, and for a mark of his Battels and Victories, Trophies of Arms were interlaced instead thereof, with the Letter H crowned (because it was also the initial Letter to his Christian name) whereout arose flames and sparks of Fire; and for the like reason hath this Letter H been since changed into the Letter *L*, both by *Lewis* the Thirteenth, and *Lewis* the Fourteenth.

n S. Marthe de
la Maison de
France, Tom. 1.
p. 54.
o Baitel. Histoir.
Relat. p. 40.

At this *Collar* hung a *Cross*, artificially wrought and adorned with a rich enamel, in the midst whereof was represented the form of a *Dove*, in a flying posture, as descending down from Heaven, with full spread Wings: and to the end an Epigraph might not be wanting, some have attributed to it this, *Duce & Auspice*, thereby to signify, that those who wear it, ought to hope for good success in their designs and enterprises, being guided and assisted by the happy conduct of the *Holy Ghost*.

p S. Marth.
Tom. 1. l. 1.
p. 51.

q Baitel. loci
cit.

Besides these Ornaments, the *Knights* wear a Black Velvet Cap adorned with a white Plume; their Breeches and Doublets are of Cloth of Silver, and their Shoes White, tied with Roses or Knots of Black Velvet.

r Stat. Ord.
Art. 82.

The *Badges* ordained to be ordinarily worn, are a *Cross* of Yellow or Orange colour Velvet, wrought in the fashion of a *Malta Cross*, fixed on the left side of the *Sovereigns* breast (but this at pleasure) and the like *Cross* sewed on the left side of the upper Garments of the *Prelates*, *Commanders*, and *Officers*; except in actions of Arms, and then they are permitted to wear them of Cloth of Silver, or White Velvet; having in the midst thereof a Dove embroidered in Silver, and at the angles or corners, Rays and Flowers de Lis of Silver.

t Art. 83.

Moreover a *Cross* of the Order made of Gold, like to the *Cross* of *Malta* also, with a Flower de Lis in each angle thereof, was appointed to be worn about their necks in a Blue Ribbon, and to be enamelled White about the sides, but not in the middle; such as are *Knights*, both of the Order of *St. Michael* and the *Holy Ghost*, are to bear the Figure of *St. Michael* on the one side, and of a *Dove* on the other.

u Art. 71.

The Anniversary of the grand *Fest* is ordained to be held on the first day of the

the new Year, but the first part of the Ceremony begins always on the ^wlast day of the old; the place for celebrating thereof is the Church of ^x*Augustine Friars* in *Paris*. An account of the first Solemnity, as also of some other which have succeeded in the Reign of King *Lewis* the Thirteenth, are set forth by *Monsieur Boitel*, in his historical relations of the Poms and Ceremonies used at the receiving of several *Knights* into this Order by this King, and Printed at *Paris* 1620.

The Order of the Precious Blood of our Saviour Jesus Christ of Mantua.

(45.)

^a*Vincenzio de Gonzago* the Fourth Duke of *Mantua*, and Second of *Montferat*, instituted this Order, anno Dom. 1608. for defence and propagation of the Christian Religion, and in honor of three drops of blood of our Saviour and Redeemer; as also the more nobly to set forth the Nuptials of his eldest Son *Fran-cisco* (who succeeded him in his Dukedoms) with *Margaret of Savoy*, Daughter to *Charles Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*, and *Catharine* of *Austria*.

It was allowed and approved by Pope ^b*Paul* the Fifth, and consisted of 20 *Knights*; the *Founder* declared himself *Great Master*, and after him his Successors Dukes of *Mantua* and *Montferat*.

The Collar is fill'd with variety of fancy and design, being ^ccomposed of Ovals of Gold, some extended in length, others in breadth, and interlinkt with small Annulets. On those Ovals in length, is raised in white enamel, these words, *Domine Probâsti*; on the other in breadth, upon flames of Fire on a Trever enamelled Black, a Crucible Grey, fill'd with small rods of Gold; he being desirous to intimate by this devise, that they who entred into this Society, should hold inviolable faith, and perpetual concord, in the greatest tryals and extremities.

At the end of this Collar is pendent a larger Oval of Gold, in which are exprest ^dtwo Angels standing upright, enamelled according to life, holding between them a Chalice crowned, in the Table whereof are figured three drops of blood, enamelled Red, and round the Oval, *Nihil isto triste recepto*.

On ^e*Whitsonday*, in the year 1608. were the first Ceremonies of this Order performed, in the Dukes Chappel of the Palace at *Mantua*.

The Order of Amaranta in Sweden.

(46.)

This Order of the *Knights* of *Amaranta*, was instituted by *Christina* Queen of *Sweden* about the year 1645. in honor of a Lady of that name of great beauty, courage, modesty, and charity: The chief *Ensign* is a Jewel of Gold, composed of two great AA, adorned with Diamonds on both sides, and joined together by reversing one of them, being set within a Circle of Laurel Leaves wreathed about with White, and on the four sides this Motto, *Dolce nella memoria*; which Jewel the *Knights* wear, either in a Gold Chain, or a Crimson or Blue Ribbon, as they best like of.

The Ceremony used at the Investiture of these *Knights* with this *Ensign*, is briefly this. The *Queen* being seated under her state, the designed *Knight* is brought up, with usual Reverences, and approaching neer the *Queen*, he kneels before her, then she in a short speech acquaints him with the inducements that invited her to bestow this honor, enumerating his services and merits; to which he makes a return of humble thanks.

This done, he takes his *Oath*, still kneeling and holding his hands between the *Queens* hands; the effect whereof is to defend the *Queens* person from harm, and the persons of the *Brothers* of the Order, to promote to his power, Justice, Virtue, and Piety, and to discountenance Vice, Injury, and Wickedness.

Having obliged himself to the performance of this Oath, the *Queen* puts about

^a Mennen. in
^b Delic. E.
^c quest. p. 192
^d videlicet Fa-
^e vin. in le
Theat. d' Hon.
1.8.c.8. Mira-
um. p. 74. Men-
do de Ord. Mil-
lit. Disq. 1.
Quest. 2.
sect. 29.

him (in the manner of a Baudrick) a *Crimson Silk Scarf*, with the *Jewel* fastned thereto, after which the *Knight* ariseth and retireth, with all futable reverence.

To an absent Prince or great Personage, whom the *Queen* intends to honor with this *Order*; she sends the *Jewel*, accompanied with her *Letter*, which serves instead of a personal Investiture.

Among many others admitted thereinto, were *Vladislaus Sigismundus* late King of *Poland*, *Carolus Gustavus* late King of *Sweden*, and *Adolphus Jobannes* his Brother, also *John George* Duke of *Saxony*, the Lantgrave of *Hesse*, several *German* Princes, the Count *Montecuculi* General of the *Horse* to the *Emperor*, *Don Antonio Pimentelli de Parada* Envoye Extraordinary from the King of *Spain*, as also divers great Lords of the Court of *Sweden*; and of our Nation, *Sir Bulstrode Whiteloke*, to whose friendly civility we are obliged for the foregoing Account.

SECT. II.

Of Knights in the West-Indies.

IF after all these we take some prospect of those Martial Honors, bestowed in the *West-Indies*, which the *Europeans* commonly call by the Title of *Knight-hood*; as having some resemblance to it from the nature of the Ceremonies, used at the entrance and admittance into that Dignity, and the end for which they were bestowed; we shall find they properly enough deserve mention here.

^a Purchas Pilgrimage, part 3. p. 1063.

The ^a *Mexicans* gave the first place of Honor to the profession of Arms; and therefore on such as had performed valiant services in Wars, they bestowed great recompence, and gave them sundry Priviledges, which none else might enjoy.

Valour and Courage were with them the steps by which a man of mean extraction, ascended to high dignity and honor; and therefore the chief of their Nobility commonly sprung from the Camp.

Mexican Knights.
^b Ibid.
Eagle Knights.

Among whom ^b *Moteczuma* set *Knight-hood* in highest splendor, ordaining certain *Military Orders*, with several *Badges* and *Ensigns*. The most honorable among the *Knights*, were those that carried the crown of their Hair tied with a little Red Ribbon, having a rich Plume of Feathers, from which did hang branches and rolls of Feathers upon their shoulders. They carried so many of these rolls, as they had done worthy deeds in War.

The King himself was of this *Order*, as may be seen in *Capultepec*, where *Moteczuma*, and his Sons are represented, attired with those kind of Feathers cut in the Rock.

Lyon & Tyger Knights.
^c Ibid.
^d Ibid.

There was another *Order* of *Knight-hood*, which they called of the *Lions* and *Tygers*; these *Knights* being commonly the most valiant, and most noted in the Wars, and always bore with them their *Badges* and *Armories*.

Grey Knights.

Other *Knights* there were, as the ^d *Grey Knights*, not so much respected as the rest, they had their Hair cut round about the ear. They went to the Wars, with *Ensigns* like the other *Knights*, yet not armed, but to the Girdle, while the most honorable were armed all over.

All *Knights* might carry Gold and Silver, wear rich Cotton, use painted and gilt Vessels, wear Shoes after their manner; but the common people only earthen Vessels, neither might they carry Shoes, nor attire themselves but in a gross stuff called *Nequen*.

^e Ibid. p. 1064.

Every *Order* of these *Knights* had their Lodging in the Palace, noted with their *Ensigns*; the first was called the Lodging of the Prince, the second of *Eagles*, the third of *Lions* and *Tygers*, and the fourth of *Grey Knights*.

Knights of Cinala.

They of the Province of *Cinala* (an Inland part near new Mexico) created their *Knights* by giving a Bow, then setting them to encounter a *Lyon*, or some other wild Beast; the death of which was accounted the life of their Gentility.

The

The ^c *Inguas* Lords of *Peru*, in their solemn Feasts at *Cusco*, dedicated their Childrento Honor, by adorning them with *Guarras* or *Ensigns*. They pierced their Ears, whipt them with Slings, anointed their Faces with Blood, and all in sign that they should be true *Knights* to the *Ingua*.

Those of the ^e blood royal in *Peru*, before they received the Degree of *Knighthood*, pass'd through sundry probations, but chiefly they performed some Military Exercises, and managed the Lance, Dart, and other Arms. The manner and order of tryal of their skill and courage, was both rigorous and severe; ^b as abstaining from all things for seven days, except a little raw Corn and Water, then being heartned again, their running of Races, afterwards, one day holding out, another besieging a Fort, then Wrestling, Leaping, Shooting, Slinging, throwing the Dart and Lance, exercising in all Weapons of War, and enduring to be beaten on the hands and legs with wands; all these things tending to discover whether they could bear the hard adventures of War, or not; which tryals if they could not manfully suffer, they were rejected and denyed *Knighthood*.

Next followed the Circumstances and Ceremonies of their Creation, as ⁱ boarding a hole in the Ears, putting on gallant Shoes, as also Breeches, which before they might not wear, adorning their heads with Flowers, and an Herb that none else might use; and lastly giving an Axe into their hands. All which Mr. *Purchas* having set down at large, we thought it less needful to be more particular.

These Knights are by ^k *Mennenius* called *Oreiones*, from the Spanish word *Orejas*, which signifies flap or loll-eared, and in Latin *Auriculares*, either from the Leaf which they carried hanging in their Ears, or as *Jos. Micheli* saith, ^l for that they were only to negotiate, and treat of great Affairs with the Emperor, and had his ear at all times.

To these we shall add the account we have of an Order of Knights in *Japan*, intituled ^m *Mengoras*, part of them are called *Bonzoes*, living in Fraternities, as do your religious Brotherhoods in *Europe*. Some of these relate to their Temples, and have the charge of their *Idols*, and the service appertaining to them; others are *Knights* and follow the Wars, accepting pay from any Lord that employs them.

Of this Order there are found to be about 30000. who in many things bear parallel with the Religious Knights in *Europe*: They profess Chastity with such severity, that into their Cities no Woman may enter. They have the Rule given them over those Kingdoms which they conquer, and are very rich; some of them having not less than 60000 Duckets per annum Revenue.

Every day they make and present five Arrows to the publick Armory, which is a very prudent provision, in regard no man is sensible of the charge; and thereby they find themselves well provided upon all occasions.

SECT. III.

The Feminine Cavaliers of the Torch in Tortosa.

AND now, in close of our Discourse of the Orders of *Knighthood*, give us leave to bring up the reere, with a memorial relating to Feminine Valour, and of the later Age (for we shall not need to instance in the *Amazons* of old, whose fame in Arms is so generally known) since some of that Sex, having acquired honor and renown, by their personal courage and valiant exploits; have had bestowed on them the priviledge of living after the manner, and in the esteem of *Knights*.

The Example is of the noble Women of *Tortosa* in *Aragon*, and recorded by *Jos. Micheli Marquez*, who plainly calls them ^a *Cavalleros*, or *Knights*; or may I not rather say *Cavalleras*, seeing I observe the words ^b *Equitisse* and *Militisse* (formed from the Latin *Equites* and *Milites*) heretofore applied to Women, and

^c *Purchas Pilgrim*, part 3. p. 1045.

^e *Knights of Peru*, *g. lb. part 4. p. 1474.*
^h *Ibid.*

^k *In Delic. E. quest. p. 196.*
^l *Tesoro Milit. de Cavall. f. 96. a.*

^m *Knights of Japan.* *Ibid. f. 77.*

^a *Cavalleros del Passatem-po del Hacha.*
^b *Tesoro Mil. de Cavall. f. 96. b.*
^c *Suris. Heroic. p. 413.*

and sometimes used to express *Madams*, or *Ladies*; though now these Titles are not known.

c *Tsf. Milit.*

loco cit.

** Hier. Blancin
in Serie Regum
Aragon.*

c *Don Raymond*, last Earl of *Barcellona* (who by an intermarriage with ** Petronilla*, only Daughter and Heir of King *Ramiro* the Monk, united that Principality to the Kingdom of *Aragon*) having, in the year 1149. gained the City of *Tortosa* from the *Moors*, they on the 31. of *December* following, laid a new Siege to that place, for the recovery of it out of the Earls hands. The Inhabitants being at length reduced to great streights, desired relief of the Earl; but he being not in a condition to give them any, they entertained some thoughts of making a surrender. Which the *Women* hearing of, to prevent the disaster threatening their City, themselves, and Children; put on mens Clothes, and by a resolute sally, forced the *Moors* to raise the Siege.

d *Don Ramon
Eserenguel ultimus Comes
Barchinonæ
carum Fœminarum
Cōgregationem,
ieu quasi militiam
formavit, dictam de la
Hacha, quia in
capite gestabant
purpuream Fasces
formam. Mench
de Ord. Milit.
Disq. 1. 2. 3.
num. 10. 5.*

The Earl, finding himself obliged, by the gallantry of the action, thought fit to make his acknowledgments thereof, by granting them several Privileges and Immunities; and, to perpetuate the memory of so signal an attempt, instituted an Order, somewhat like a *Military Order*, into which were admitted only those brave *Women*, deriving the honor to their Descendants, and assigned them for a Badge, a thing like a *Fryars Capouche*, sharp at the top, after the form of a *Torch*, and of a crimson colour, to be worn upon their Head-clothes. He also ordained, that at all publick meetings, the *Women* should have precedence of the *Men*; That they should be exempted from all Taxes; and that all the Apparel and Jewels, though of never so great value, left by their dead Husbands, should be their own.

These *Women* (saith our *Author*) having thus acquired this Honor by their personal Valour, carried themselves after the manner of *Military Knights* of those days.

e *L'Ordre de la Cordeliere, ou du Cordon. Nouveau Theatre du Monde. Tom. 2. p. 1413. Ordo Fungere vel Funis. Gotsfr. Archont. C. 1. 1. 3. p. 13. Ind.*

We may also, not unfitly, bring in here a word or two, of a more general Ornament of Honor, not long since made peculiar to this fair Sex, to wit, that of the *Cordon*; which some will have to be an Order, or somewhat equivalent thereto, under that Title. The Institution of it, is attributed to *Anne* of *Britane*, Wife to *Charles* the Eighth of *France*, who instead of the *Military Belt*, or *Collar*, bestowed a *Cordon* or *Lace* on several *Ladies*, admonishing them to live chastly and devoutly, always mindful of the Cords and Bonds of our Saviour *Jesus Christ*; and to engage them to a greater esteem thereof, she surrounded her Escoccheon of Arms with the like *Cordon*. From which Example, it is since drawn into use, that the Arms of unmarried *Ladies* and *Gentlewomen* (usually represented on Escoccheons made after the form of a *Lozenge*) are adorned with such a *Cordon*.

But if we look back into ancient times, we may see when *Women* among the *Romans* were first thought worthy of enjoying respect and peculiar favours; and in particular, out of a great honor to the Mother of *Marcus Coriolanus*, the liberty of wearing the *Segmenta aurea*, or bordures of Gold and Purple on their Garments (the latter of which the *Romans* raised to an high esteem) was first permitted to the *Roman Matrons*, since she had so extraordinarily deserved of that Common-wealth, by diverting the fury of her Son, and drawing off his Army from before the City, whose ruine he had threatned, upon a just resentment of the Citizens ingratitude towards him; in memorial of which preservation, was there also a Temple erected and dedicated to the *Female Fortune*. On this occasion also, other accessions of honor and respect were decreed to this Sex; namely to have place in passing on the way, and the permission of wearing golden Ear-rings. To all which the *Romans* willingly condescended for her sake, whose powerful persuasions, and rhetorical tears, had gain'd them so great a deliverance.

g *Caldernius ad Martialem annotat. h. 3. Liv. lib. 2. i. 3. c. 40. An. D. 16. Cond. 264. vide Plutarch. in vita Coriolani.*

kc *Hiacim L. 12. Observat. c. 24.*

CHAP. IV.

OF THE

Castle, Chappel,

AND

Colledge OF Windsor.

SECT. I.

Of the Castle of Windsor.

Although we intend hereafter (God assisting) to make publick a complete History of the Antiquities of the *Castle, Chappel, Colledge, and Town of Windsor* by it self (towards which we have already made some progress) nevertheless we are obliged to give a brief Account of such of them here, as bear a particular relation to our chief design unfolded in the succeeding Chapters: and more especially, for that the *Chappel of St. George* is situate in this stately *Castle*, made highly illustrious by those many pompous Solemnities of the most noble Order of the *Garter*, exhibited within its Walls.

To begin then with the Place; its ancient name [*Wynslerthorpa*] seems to claim no greater antiquity than of the *Saxon* times, and as our Learned ^a *Cambden* conjectures, received this denomination from the winding of the shore thereabouts; as did *Wandsworth* in *Surrey*, anciently written ^b *Windleworth*, and probably for the same reason.

The first authentick notice we have of it (for we rely not upon the reports of *Geofry of Monmouth*, or his Followers) is from that Instrument of Donation, which King *Edward the Confessor* made thereof, among other Lands, to the Monastery of *St. Peters at Westminster*, wherein it is declared, that this King, ^c *for the hope of eternal reward, the remission of all his sins, the sins of his Father, Mother, and all his Ancestors, to the praise of Almighty God, granted as an endowment and perpetual inheritance, to the use of the Monks there, that served God, Wyndlesore* (situate within, yet at the East point of the County of *Berks*) with all its appurtenances.

But it continued not long in their possession, for King *William the Conqueror*, the first year of his Reign, being greatly enamoured of the pleasant situation of the place, and ^d *for that it seemed exceeding profitable and commodious, because* situate

^a In *Attrebat.*

^b Rot. Cart. Antiq. tit. CC, num. 2.

^c Monast. Anglican. Tom. I. p. 61.

^d Ex pref. Rot. Cartar. antiq. loc. citate.

situate so near the Thames, the Wood fit for Game, and many other particulars lying there meet and necessary for Kings, yea a place very convenient for his reception;
 invited *Fadmir* the then Abbot and *Monks*, to accept in exchange for it *Wendune* in *Teaford* Hundred in the County of *Essex*, a Mansion called *Ferings*, with all its Members and Hamlets in *Lepedene* Hundred in the same County, together with fourteen Sokemen and their Lands, and one Freeholder in *Churestaple* Hundred, who held one yard Land, belonging to the said Mansion, with three Houses in *Coleradaura*; and hereupon was it again returned to the Crown, where it hath ever since remained.

f Werckia.

Terra Radulphi filii Seifridi.

Radulphus filius Seifridi tenet de Rege Clivis pro quingaginta Hidis, modo pro quatuor Hidis & dimid. Castellum de Wyndesore est in dimidia Hida.

g Hen. Hunt. fo. 217. b. Londini 1596.

h 2

i Spelman. Gloss. Archæolog. verbo Mota.

k A little Hill, or high place, a Seat for a Fort, or strong House.

l Claus. de anno 6. E. 2. mem. brana 22. Dorset.

m Pat. de anno 23. E. 3. pars 1. m. 10.

n Pat. 24. E. 3. pars 1. m. 23.

o Pat. 24. E. 3. p. 2. m. 21. Dorset.

p Pat. 25. E. 3. p. 2. m. 11.

q Pat. 25. E. 3. p. 1. m. 12.

r Pat. 27. E. 3. p. 2. m. 2 Dorset.

s Pat. 28. E. 3. p. 2. m. 20.

t Pat. 20. E. 3. p. 3. m. 21.

u Pat. 26. E. 3. p. 2. m. 11.

v Pat. 24. E. 3. p. 1. m. 22.

x f Pat. 33. p. 2. m. 22.

The King being thus possessor of *Windefor*, forthwith built a Castle upon the Hill, which we find by *Domesday Book*, contained half a Hide of Land, and that half Hide is there noted to be parcel of the Mannor of *Clure*.

This Castle King *Henry* the First re-edified, and beautified with many goodly buildings; and to entertain himself with the pleasure thereof, did in the tenth year of his reign, summon all his Nobility thither, where he held his *Whitsontide* with great state and magnificence.

Shortly after, we find this Castle called *Mota de Windefor*, the Fortrefs of *Windefor*, as the *Tower of London* is called *Turris de London*; both which are so termed in a Charter of Peace between King *Stephen* and Duke *Henry* (afterwards King of *England*, by the Title of *Henry* the Second) and this word *Mota*, is here used for what the *French* call *Mote*, or *Motte*, being the same with *Colles*, or *Colliculus*, and *Meta* in *Latin*, viz. a little Hill.

Within this Castle was King *Edward* the Third born (whence commonly called *Edward of Windefor*) and received his Baptism in the old Chappel. The native affection he bore to this place was exceeding great, insomuch as he constituted it the Head and Seat of that most noble Order of the *Garter*, whereof himself became the most renowned *Founder*; in honor to which he there also founded the Colledge of the Chappel of *St. George*, and much enlarged and beautified the Castle: To this work he appointed several *Surveyors*, whom he assigned to press *Hewers* of Stone, *Carpenters*, and such other Artificers, as were thought useful and necessary, so also to provide Stone, Timber, and other materials and Carriages for them; among these *Surveyors*, we find remembered *John Peyntour*,

Richard de Rochell, *William de Hurle*, *William de Herland*, *Robert de Bernham*, and some others.

And to the end this great undertaking might be honestly and substantially performed, the King assigned *John Brocas*, *Oliver de Burdeux*, and *Thomas de Foxle*, jointly and severally, with all care and diligence (at least together once a Month) to survey the Workmen and their works, and to encourage such as did their duty competently well, but to compel others that were idle and slothful.

He afterwards commissioned *John de Alkebull*, and *Walter Palmer* to provide Stone, Timber, Lead, Iron, and all other necessities for the work; and to impress Carriages for their conveyance to *Windefor*.

William de Wyckham (who attained to the Dignity of Bishop of *Winchester*, and was the second *Prelate* of the *Garter*) had a Supervisor's or Surveyor's place granted to him by Letters Patents bearing Teste at *Westminster* the thirtieth of *October* anno 30. E. 3. He had like powers given him with those Surveyors first above-named, and a grant of the same Fee as had been formerly allowed to *Robert de Bernham*, viz. "One shilling a day, while he stayed at *Windefor* in his employment, two shillings a day when he went elsewhere about that affair, and three shillings a week for his Clerk: which like allowances had been first of all made to

Richard de Rochell.
 Afterwards he had bestowed upon him the chief custody and surveyorship of this Castle, of the Mannors of *Old* and *New Windefor*, and of several other Castles, Mannors, and Houses enumerated in his Letters Patents, with power to appoint and dispose of all Workmen, buy necessities for Reparation, provide Carpenters, Masons, and other Artificers, Stone, Timber, &c. and in those Mannors to hold Leets and other Courts, Pleas of Trespass and Misdemeanors, to enquire of the Kings liberties, rights, and all things appertaining thereunto.

It

It may be preſumed, that about the thirty fourth year of this Kings Reign, the moſt conſiderable enlargement of the Caſtle was made, ſeeing there were then great ſtore of the beſt Diggers and Hewers of Stone, impreſt in *London*, and out of divers Counties in *England*, by virtue of ²Writs, directed to ſeveral Sheriffs (dated the 14. of *April* in that year) with command to ſend them to *Windeſor*, by the Sunday next after the Feaſt of *St. George* at the furtheſt, there to be employed at the Kings Wages, ſo long as was neceſſary, viz.

<i>London.</i>	40	<i>Kent.</i>	40
<i>Effex and Hertford.</i>	40	<i>Glouceſter.</i>	40
<i>Wilt.</i>	40	<i>Somerſet and Devon.</i>	40
<i>Leiceſt. and Worceſt.</i>	40	<i>Northampton.</i>	40
<i>Cambridge and Huntingd.</i>	40		

Herewith the Sheriffs were commanded to take ſufficient ſecurity of theſe Workmen, not to depart from *Windeſor* without the Liſenſe of *William de Wyckham* (who was appointed to return the ſame Securities into the Court of *Chancery*) and all this, under the penalty of one hundred pounds to each reſpective Sheriff.

And becauſe divers of theſe Workmen, for gain and advantage, had afterwards clandestinely left *Windeſor*, and were entertained by other perſons, upon greater Wages, to the Kings great damage, and manifeſt retarding of his Work, ^aWrits were therefore directed to the Sheriffs of *London*, with command to make Proclamation, to inhibit any perſon, whether Clerk or Layman, under forfeiture of all they had forfeitable, for employing or retaining any of them, as alſo to arreſt ſuch as had ſo run away, and commit them to *Newgate*, and from time to time to return their names into the *Chancery*.

But a great number of them dying of the great Peſtilence, other ^bWrits iſſued (30. of *March*, anno 36. E.3.) to the Sheriffs of ſeveral Counties (not of the former number) That under the penalty of two hundred pounds apiece, they ſhould ſend to *Windeſor*, able and ſkilful Maſons and Diggers of Stone, to be there on Sunday the Uſas of *Eaſter* at furtheſt, to be employed in the Works, namely to the Sheriffs of.

<i>York.</i>	60	<i>Nottingham.</i>	24
<i>Derby.</i>	24	<i>Lancaſter.</i>	24
<i>Salop.</i>	60	<i>Devon.</i>	60
<i>Hereford.</i>	50		

It was the thirty ſeventh year of this King, or e're the Buildings were ready for Glaſing, and then ^c*Henry de Stamerne* and *John Brampton*, were employed to buy Glaſs in all places of the Kingdom, where it was to be ſold: to preſs four and twenty Glaſiers, and convey them to *London*, to work there at the Kings Wages; and ^dtwelve Glaſiers for *Windeſor*, to be employed in like manner within the Caſtle.

In this year alſo, the work went effectually on, as may be gueſſ'd from the great ſtore of Workmen preſt for this ſervice, as alſo Carriages for Stone and Timber, much of the Stone being digg'd out of the Quarries of ^e*Wellesford*, *Helwell*, and *Careby*, and the next year, not only in theſe, but in the Quarries of ^f*Hefeſeberg*, and *Demelby*, and the following year out of the Quarry of ^g*Melton*.

From hence to the forty third year of this Kings Reign, we find Artificers were yearly preſt, and the buildings of the Caſtle ſeriously purſued; but after we meet with nothing in that kind mentioned to be done, until the eight and fortieth year, and thence not any thing during his Reign. So that its to be preſumed, this famous piece for magnificence and ſtrength, was for the greateſt part finiſhed in his ſaid forty third year, that is to ſay, the *Kings Palace*, the *great Hall* of *St. George*, the *Lodgings* on the Eaſt and South ſide of the upper Baili or Ward, the *Keep* or *Tower* in the middle Ward, the *Chappel* of *St. George*, the *Houſes* for the *Cuſtos* and *Canons* in the lower Ward, together with the whole circumference of the *Walls*, and their ſeveral *Towers* and *Gates*, as now they ſtand.

i *Ieland ad
Cygneam Can-
tionem verb.
Windesfora.
k Ex Lib. Com-
pit. penes
Harris nuper
de Windesfor
gen. an. 1560.
l Cambden in
Acrebat.*

In succeeding times, some other additions were made to the buildings within the Castle; in particular, King *Henry* the Seventh added that stately Fabrick, adjoining to the Kings Lodgings, in the upper Ward. King *Henry* the Eighth new built the great Gate, at the entrance into the lower Ward. King *Edward* the Sixth began, and Queen *Mary* perfected the bringing of Water from *Blackmore Park* in *Wingfield* Parish, into a Fountain of curious workmanship, erected in the middle of the upper Ward, which served all the Castle. Queen *Elizabeth* made a Terrace Walk on the North-side of the Castle, from whence there is a pleasant prospect down upon *Eaton Colledge*, the *Thames*, and neighbouring Country. And King *Charles* the First, an. 1636. built the Gate at the East end of the said Terrace, leading into the Park. Lastly, his now Majesty out of a particular regard to this princely place, hath issued great sums of money in its repair, and furnishing it with a curious and gallant Magazine of Arms; so well order'd and kept, that it is worthy the sight of every Traveller.

m *Cambden,*
loco cit.

And here our learned *Cambden's* elegant Description of this Castle's situation, must not be omitted; *For from an high Hill (saith he) that riseth with a gentle ascent, it enjoyeth a most delightful prospect round about; Foreright in the Front, it overlooketh a Vale, lying out far and wide, garnished with Corn-fields, flourishing with Meadows, dight with Groves on either side, and watered with the most mild and calm River Thames: behind it arise Hills every where, neither rough nor over high, attired as it were with Woods, and even dedicated, as one would say, by Nature to hunting Game.*

With this let us offer what Sir *John Denham's* ingenious Muse hath rarely limn'd out of its situation also and majestick fabrick.

n *Coopers Hill.*

*Windesfor the next (where Mars with Venus dwells,
Beauty with strength) above the Valley swells
Into my eye, and doth it self present
With such an easie and unforc'd ascent,
That no stupendious precipice denies
Access, no horror turns away our Eyes:
But such a Rise, as doth at once invite
A pleasure, and a reverence from our sight.
Thy mighty Masters Emblem, in whose face
Sat Meekness heightned with Majestick Grace;
Such seems thy gentle height, made only proud
To be the basis of that pompous load,
Than which, a nobler weight no Mountain bears,
But Atlas only that support the Spheres.*

And now to afford our Reader's Eye, yet more pleasure and satisfaction, than these verbal Descriptions can do his fancy; we shall here insert the exact Draughts of several Views and Prospects of this princely and magnificent Structure.

This Castle is under the government of a *Constable*, whose Office is of great antiquity, honor, and power, but of little profit.

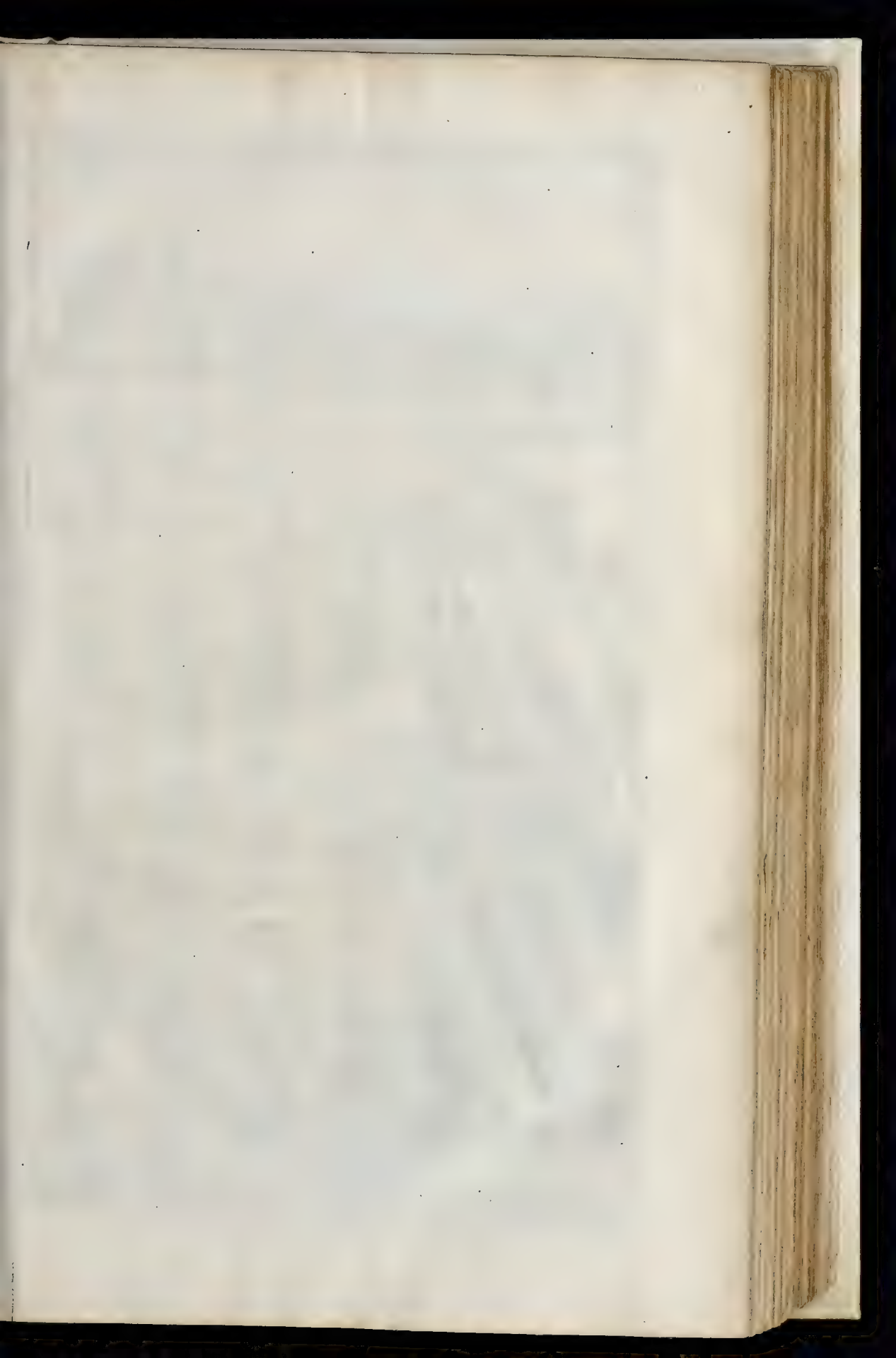
o *Gloss. Archai-
olog. verbo Con-
stabularius,*

The use and signification of the word *Constabularius* (with others of a neer spelling, and like sense, found in *Historians*) is shewed by the learned *Spelman*, and particularly applied to the Governour of a Castle, the *French* call him *Chastelain*, whom we call *Constable* of a Castle, but in the Rolls of King *John's* time (which is as high as we have any) the Governour of this Castle is called *Constable*, and under that title hath the Office ever since passed.

p *Ex relatione
Bulstrode
Whiteoke, Or-
dinis Amaran-
tini.*

His Office is mixt, partly *Military*, and partly *Civil*; as a *Military Officer*, pertains to him the sole Command of the place, and of any Garrison placed there, as also of the Magazine of Arms, Stores, and Houses. He is obliged to defend it against all Enemies, whether domestick or foreign, hath the charge of Prisoners brought thither; and is answerable for them, and for all that is in the Castle to the King, under whom he is *Captain* or *Governour* there.

As a *Civil Officer*, the *Constable* is Judge of a Court of Record, held there by Prescription, for the determination of Pleas between party and party, arising within



Prospect of th



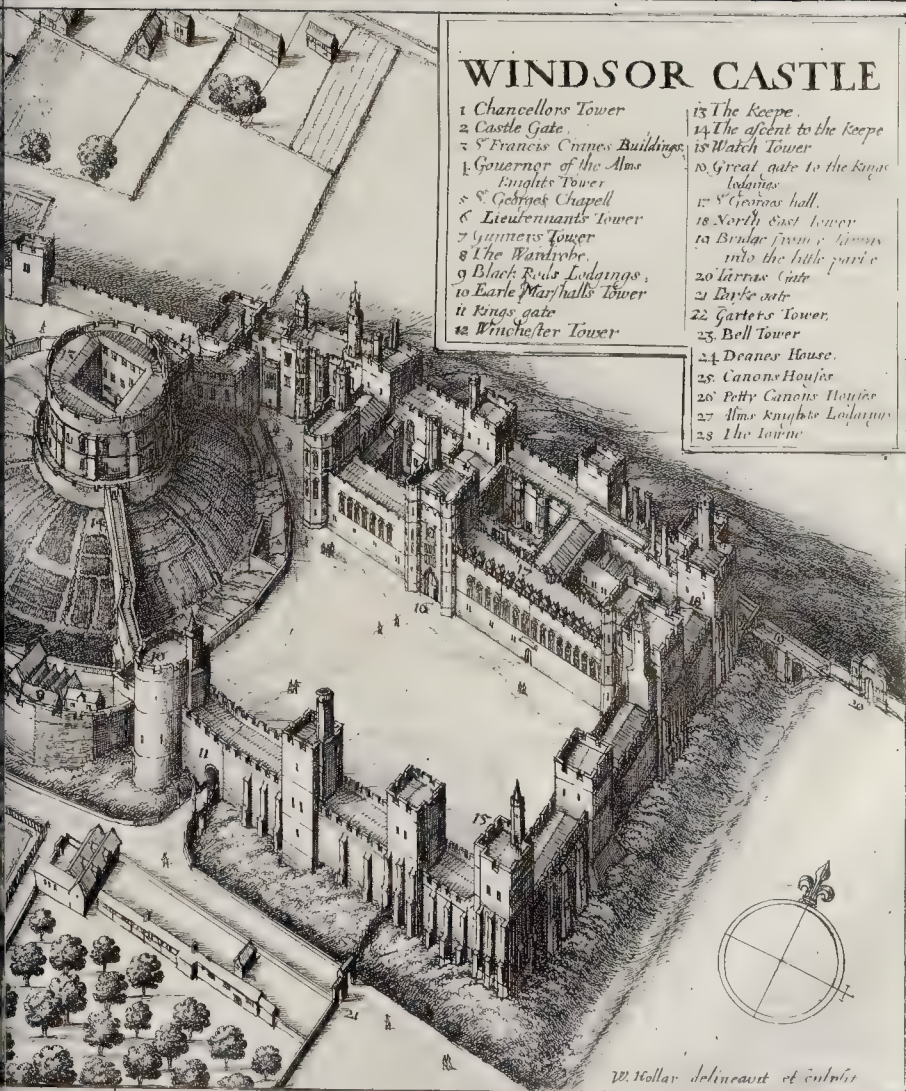
Geometrical Plan of the City

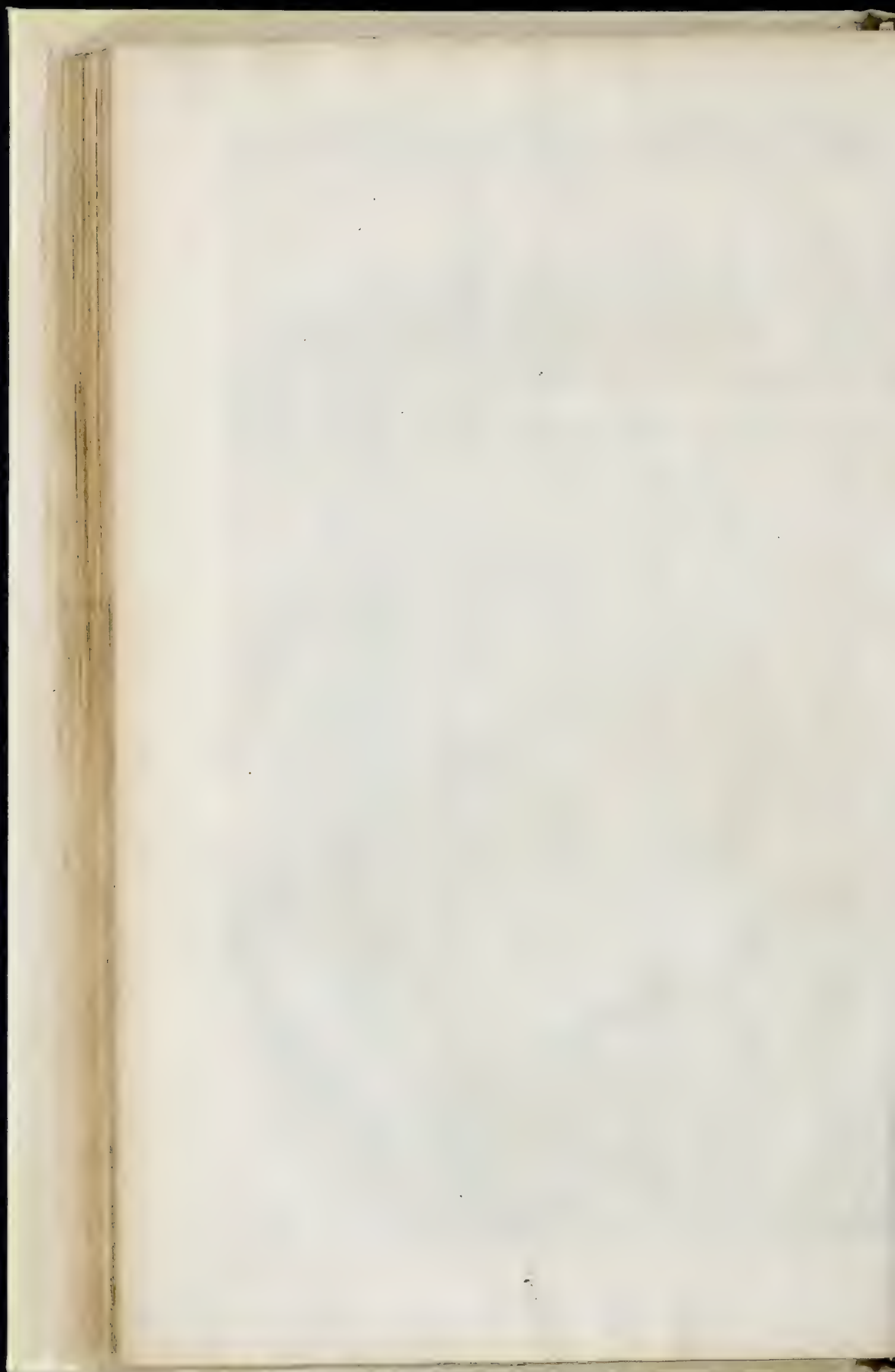
castle from the S.E.

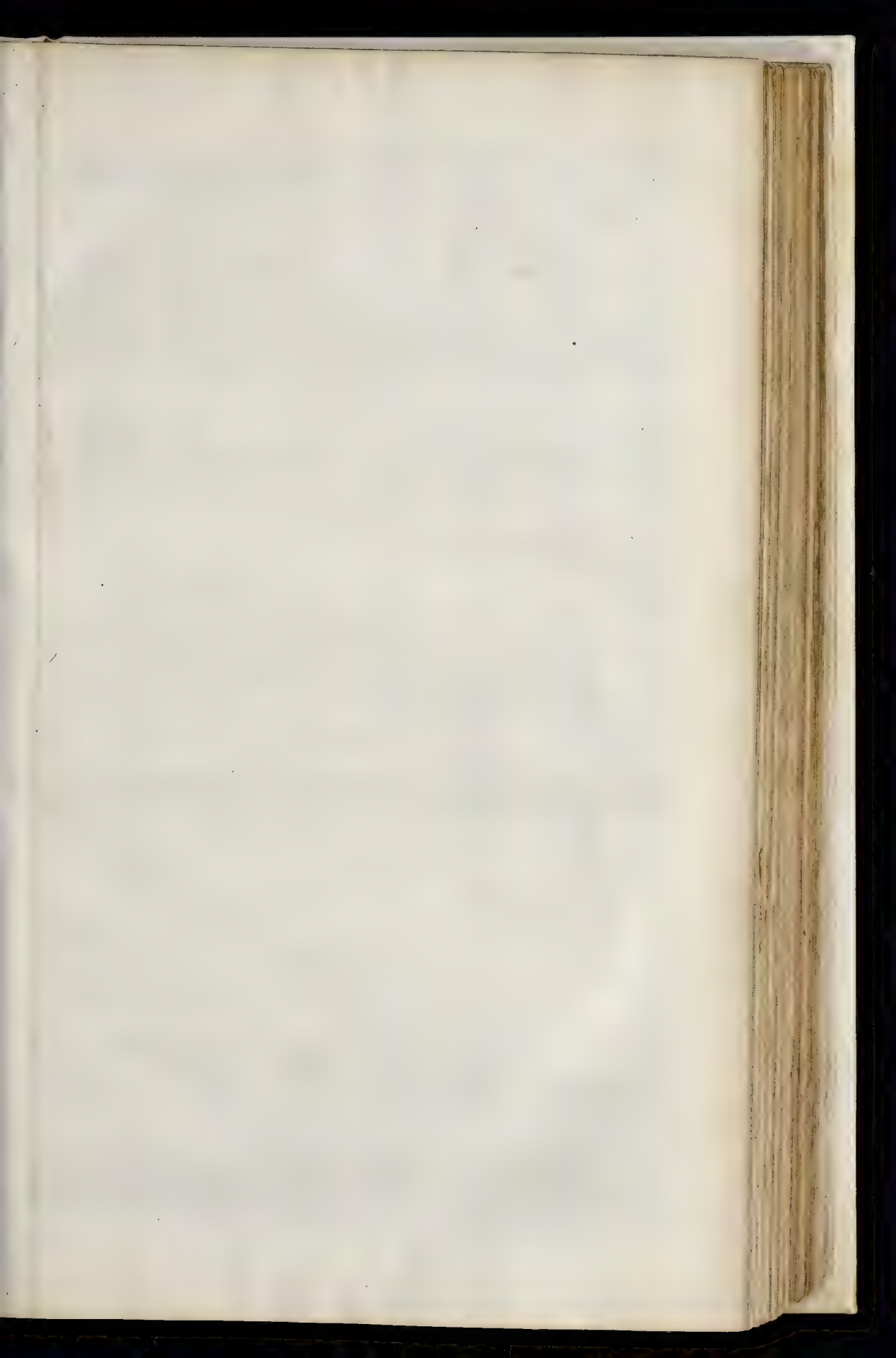


WINDSOR CASTLE

- | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 Chancellors Tower | 15 The Keep |
| 2 Castle Gate | 16 The ascent to the Keep |
| 3 St Francis Cranes Buildings | 17 Watch Tower |
| 4 Governor of the Arms | 18 Great gate to the Kings |
| 5 Knights Tower | lodgings |
| 6 St Georges Chapel | 19 St Georges hall |
| 7 Lieutenants Tower | 20 North East Tower |
| 8 Gunners Tower | 21 Bridle way & Rooms |
| 9 The Wardrobe | into the little park |
| 10 Black Rovers Lodgings | 22 Linnas Gate |
| 11 Earle Marshalls Tower | 23 Dyke arch |
| 12 Kings gate | 24 Garters Tower |
| 13 Winchester Tower | 25 Bell Tower |
| | 26 Deans House |
| | 27 Canons House |
| | 28 Petty Canons House |
| | 29 Arms Knights Lodgings |
| | 30 The Loure |







WNE. from South S. West.



- 10 Lieutenant's Tower
- 11 Parish Church
- 12 The Keep
- 13 The Kings Lodgings
- 14 Earls Marshalls Tower
- 15 Watch Tower
- 16 The Tugne
- 17 Maypole in Bedford Street

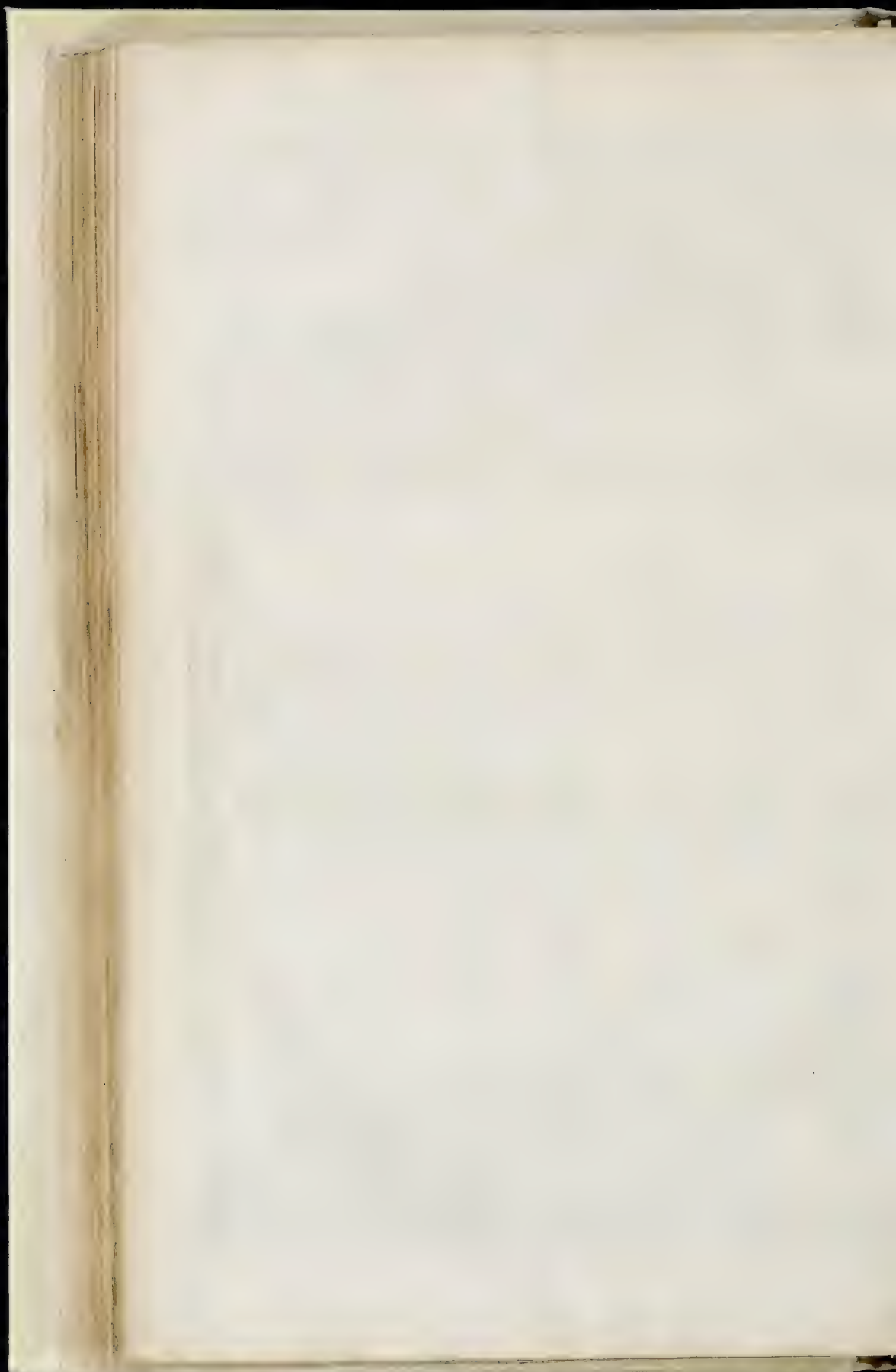
from West South West.



- 11 Lieutenant's Tower
- 12 The Keep
- 13 The Kings Lodgings
- 14 Green Gate & the Kings Lodgings
- 15 Earls Marshalls Tower
- 16 Watch Tower in the East wall
- 17 Parish Church
- 18 Tugne Tower
- 19 The Tugne
- 20 Maypole in Bedford Street

West & by South.





within the Precincts of the *Forest of Windesfor*, and Liberties thereof, which compriseth many Towns, over the Inhabitants whereof this Court hath jurisdiction, to any Sum or Contract, by way of Action at the Common Law, and all legal Process, Judgments, and Executions, issue out in his name.

He hath a *Deputy* learned in the Law, who is called *Steward* of the Court of Record, and is Keeper of the Constables *seal of Office*, belonging to this Court, with which all things issuing out of it are sealed. This Officer supplies the Constables place as Judge of that Court of Pleas, from whose Judgment the appeal is by Writ of Error returnable in the *Kings-Bench*, or *Common-Pleas* at *Westminster*.

The Constable of this Castle is likewise *chief Forester* and *Warden* of the *Forest of Windesfor*, which is one hundred and twenty miles in compass: He hath under him one or more *Lieutenants* at his pleasure, with several other Officers, and hath power to imprison any Trespasser in Vert or Venison, being convicted according to the Law of the *Forest*, having a Prison in the Castle for that purpose, called the *Colehole*.

This Command of his, is not only great, but full of pleasure (specially to such a one as takes delight in Hunting) for he hath the freedom of using the sports of the *Forest* when he pleaseth, which none else can do, unless the Kings license, or Constables leave be first obtained. He signs all Warrants to kill Deer (except what the King signs) to fell Timber and Wood.

He that was *Chastelain* of this Castle in *William the Conquerors* Reign, was *Wal- q Cambd. ter fitz Other*, from whom the Honorable Family of Barons *Windesfor* are descended; and the present Constable is his Highness *Prince Rupert*. *Aurebat.*

SECT. II.

Of the Chappel of St. George.

Proceed we next to the *Chappel* of *St. George*, situate in the lower Ward or Court of this princely Castle, concerning which, we think fit to give our present discourse commencement at the foundation of the Colledge within this *Chappel*, by King *Edward the Third*, because it had a peculiar respect to the most noble Order of the *Garter*; and wave speaking of the first erection thereof by King *Henry the First*, who dedicated it to King *Edward the Confessor*.

First therefore, we shall observe, That King *Edward the Third*, shortly after he had founded the Colledge (of which we shall treat in the next Section) thought it convenient to pull down the old *Chappel*, and to erect another more large and stately: Hereupon he granted to *John de Sponlee* the Office of Master of the Stone-hewers, and gave him power to take and press, as well within Liberties as without, so many Masons and other Artificers as were necessary, and to convey them to *Windesfor*, to work at the Kings pay, but to arrest and imprison such as should disobey or refuse, until the King took other order; with a command to all Sheriffs, Mayors, Bailiffs, &c. to be assisting to him on the Kings behalf.

The following year this King assigned *James de Dorchester*, Sub-Constable of the Castle, to keep a Controll upon all the Provisions whatsoever, bought for the works of the *Chappel*, as also on the payments made for the same, and all other things relating thereunto.

Together with this Fabrick he erected several Houses neer adjoining for the *Custos* and *Canons* to inhabit in, and afterwards King *Henry the Fourth* gave to them a void place in the Castle called the *Glodehawe*, nigh to the great Hall, for building of Houses and Chambers for the *Vicars*, *Clerks*, *Choristers*, and the other *Ministers*, assigned to the service of the *Chappel*.

But King *Edward the Fourth* (whose inclination to, and kindness for this place was extraordinary) finding upon survey, that the former foundation and walls

h Ex lib. N.
p. 13. in Pro-
amblo. See Stow
in Ed. 3.
i Pat. 22. E. 3.
p. 2. m. 6.
k s Pat. 24. E.
l 3. p. 1. m. 21

m Pat. 25. E. 3.
p. 1. m. 10.

n Pat. 10. H. 4.
p. 2. m. 13.

of the Chappel of St. George were in his time very much decayed and consumed, and esteeming the Fabrick not large or stately enough, designed to build one more noble and excellent in its room. To this purpose he constituted *Richard Beauchamp* Bishop of *Salisbury*, Master and Surveyor of the work. And taking notice, that divers of the ° Officiary Houses, and other irregular Buildings and old Walls stood in his way, and hindred the design he had to enlarge the Structure. gave the Bishop power wholly to remove all such impediments, and to demolish and dig up their Foundations; particularly those ancient Buildings on the East-side of the Chappel, which reached unto the Walls on the North-side of the Castle, where the Towers, commonly called *Clure vs Tower*, and *Le Amener vs Tower*, and *Barner vs Tower* were situated; as also on the South-side of the Chappel, unto the Beltrey there, exclusively, and to employ the Stone, Timber, and other materials thereof, upon such Edifices in the Castle, as he should think most convenient.

With what diligence and sedulity, and how well the Bishop performed this Office and Employment, appears from the testimony given him by the King in the preamble of that Patent, by which he shortly after constituted him *Chancellor* of the Garter, to wit, *That out of meer love towards the Order, he had given himself the leisure, daily to attend the advancement and progress of this goodly Fabrick.*

From the new Foundation thus laid by King *Edward the Fourth*, arose (like a Phoenix out of its ashes) the elegant and beauteous Structure now standing, enlarged in length at least one hundred fathom (whose order and figure, as well on the outside as the several Views from within, are here represented) though it attained not its beauty and perfection, until the Reign of King *Henry the Eighth*; together with the *Dean* and *Canons* Houses, situate on the North-side of the Chappel, and those for the *Petty Canons*, raised at the West end thereof, in form of a *Fetter-lock*, (one of King *Edward the Fourth's* Royal Badges) and so vulgarly called.

In *Henry the Seventh's* Reign, *Sir Reginald Bray*, (one of the *Knights-Companions* of the Order) became a liberal Benefactor towards finishing the Body of this Chappel, and building the middle Chappel on the South side thereof. Still called by his name (where his Body lies interred) as is manifest not only from his last Will, but also from his Arms, Crest, and the initial Letters of his Christian and Surname, cut in Stone, and placed in divers parts of the Roof.

By Indenture dated the fifth of June, in the one and twentieth year of this Kings Reign, *John Hylmer*, and *William Verine* Free Masons, undertook the vaulting of the Roof of the *Chaire* (that curious and excellent piece of Architecture) for seven hundred pounds, and to finish it by *Christmas, anno Dom. 1508*.

In his Son and Successors reign the *Rood-lost* and *Lanthern* were erected, with the contributions raised among the *Knights-Companions*, anno 8. H. 8.

Adjoining to the East end of this Chappel was a little Building of *Free-stone* raised by Cardinal *Wolsey*, called the *Tombe-house*, in the middle whereof he designed to erect a goodly Monument for King *Henry the Eighth*, and had well-nigh finished it before he dyed. But this was demolished in April 1646. by command of the long Parliament, and the Statues and Figures provided to adorn it, being all of Copper gilt, and exceedingly enrich by Art, were taken thence.

This place King *Charles the First*, of ever blessed and glorious memory, intended to enlarge, and make fit and capable, not only for the interment of his own royal Body, but also for the Bodies of his Successors Kings of *England*, had not bad times drawn on, and such, as with much ado, afforded him but an obscure Grave, neer the first haut-pace in the *Chaire* of this Chappel, his Head lying over against the eleventh Stall on the Sovereigns side, and in the same Vault, where the Bodies of King *Henry the Eighth*, and his last Queen yet remain.

In this Chappel also rest the Bodies of two other Sovereigns of the most noble Order of the Garter (besides sundry of the *Knights-Companions*) namely of King *Henry the Sixth*, removed thither from *Chertsey Abbey* in *Surrey*, and deposited under the uppermost Arch at the South side of the high Altar, but without either Monument or Inscription, only his Royal Badges may be yet seen painted in several places on the inside of this Arch; and likewise the Body of King *Edward the Fourth*,

o Pat. 15. E. 4.
p. 2 m. 17.

p Pat. 15. E. 4.
p. 3 m. 18.

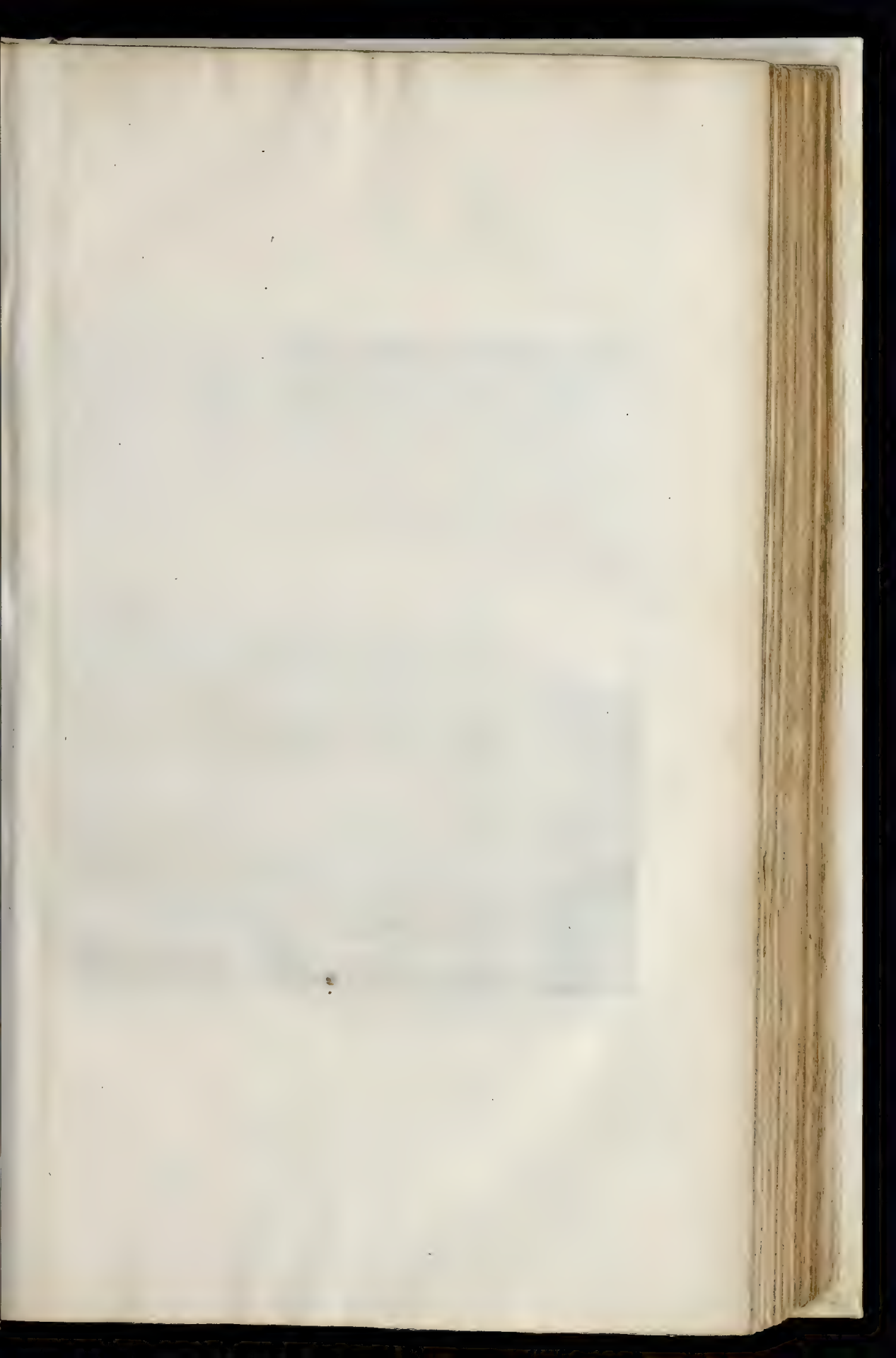
q Bulla de concessione Episcopo Sarra ad condendum novas Ordinationes.

r Ex Lib. vocationis Blaymer in Officio Praedicatorum Cant. n. 26.
f Ex 1560 Autogr. in Arar. Collegii Windefor.

t Lib. N. p. 204.

w Ex relatione Dan Stokes, nuper unius Canon. Coll. de Windefor.

x Spelmans Councils, Vol. 2. p. 712.



Prospect of WINDSOR



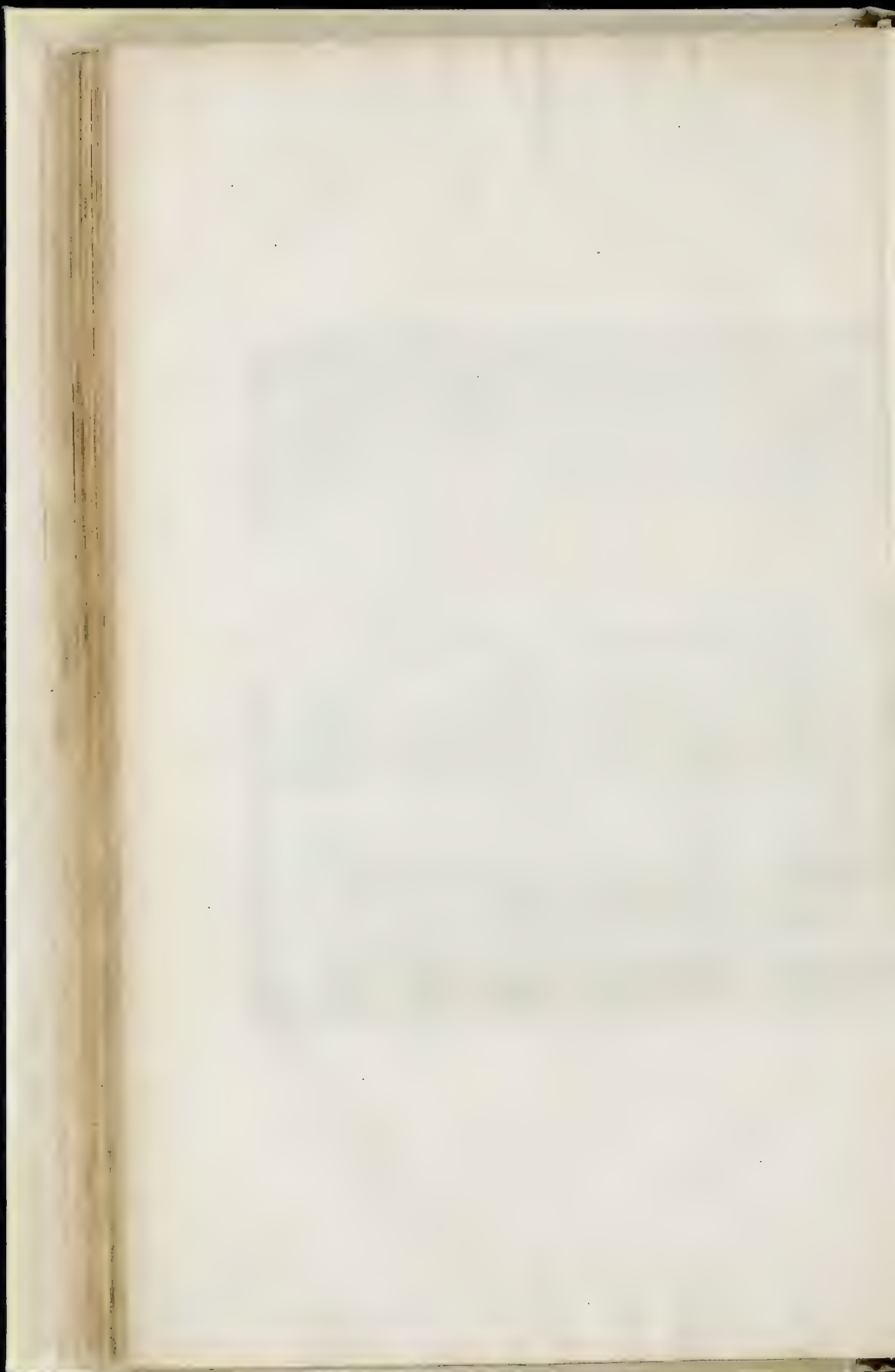
1 North West Tower. 2 Kings Lodgings. 3 The Gate into Upper Ward. 4 The Keep. 5 Winchester Tower. 6 Lewisham Tower.

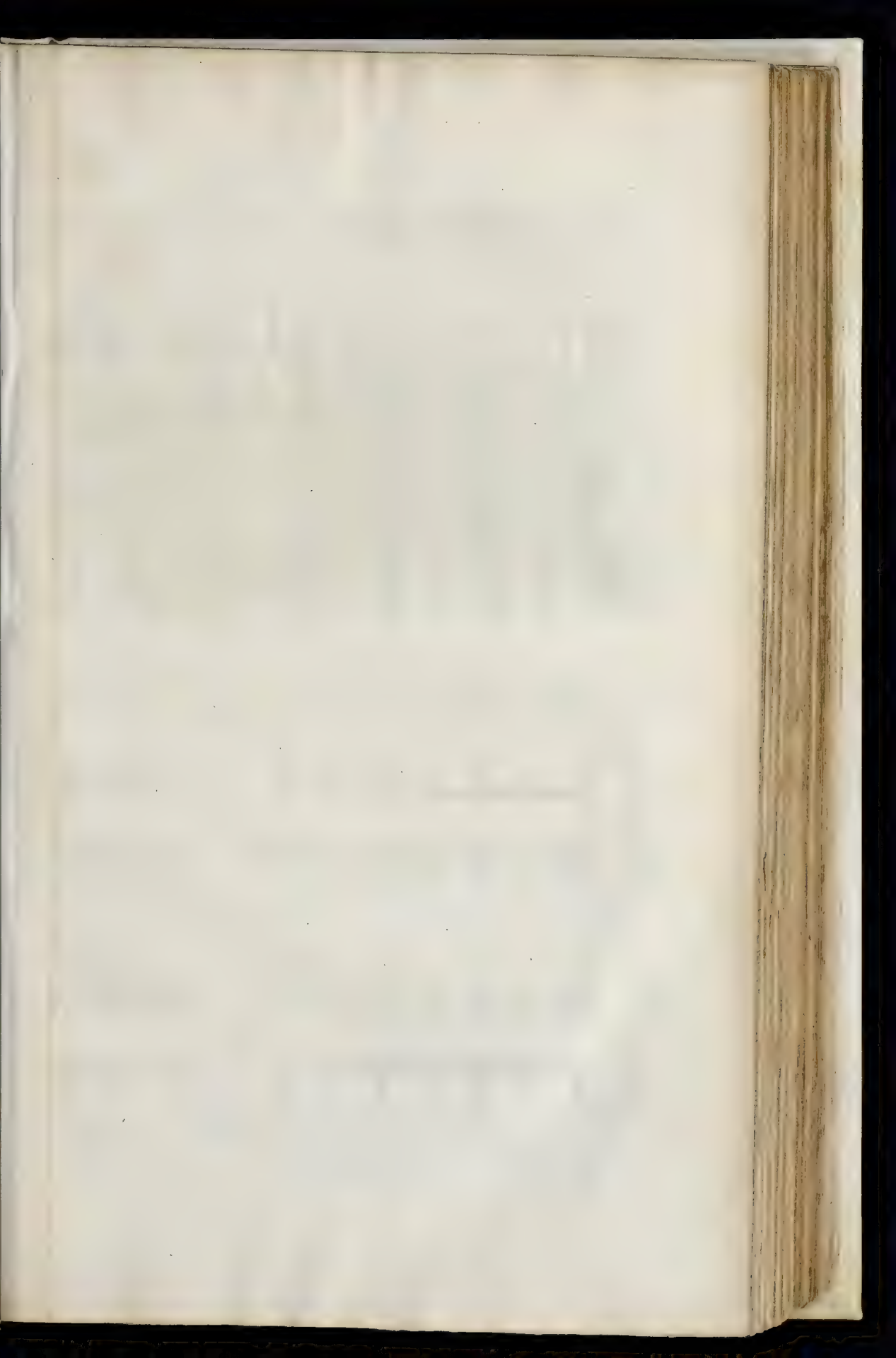
CASTLE, from the North.



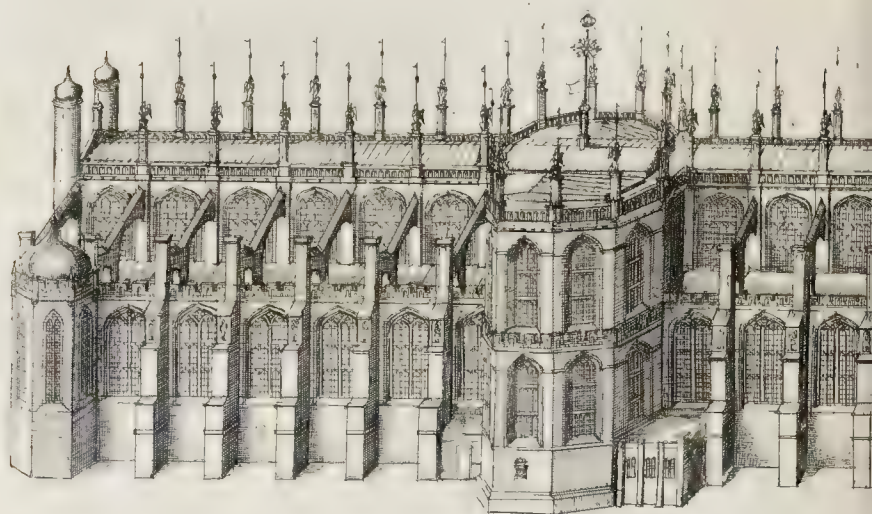
6. Tower. 7. St. George's Chapel. 8. Bell Tower. 9. The Town. 10. Bridge over the Thames.

W. Hillar fecit 1757.



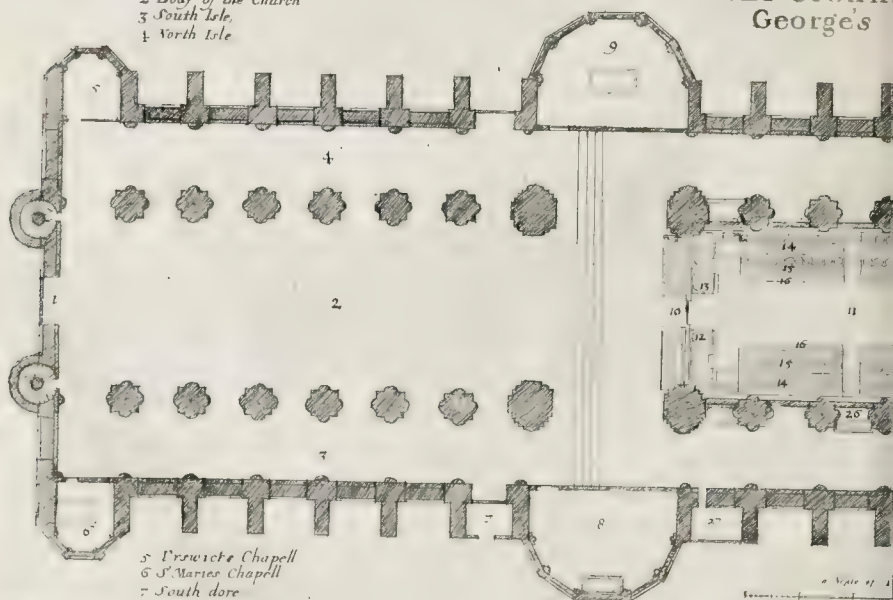


The Prospect of St. George's Chapell from the



- 1 The West dore,
2 Body of the Church
3 South Isle,
4 North Isle

The Grounds
George's



- 5 Eborack's Chapell
6 St. Maries Chapell
7 South dore
8 Bray's Chapell

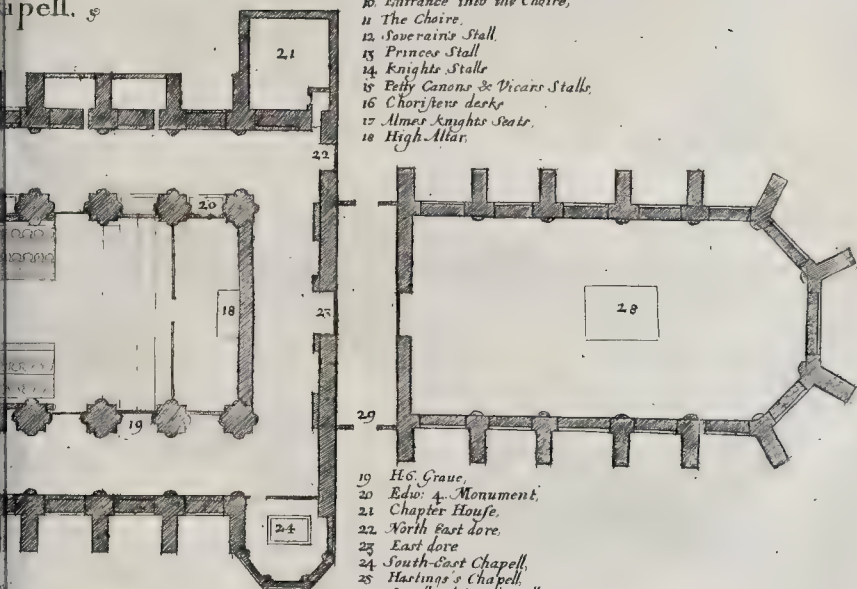
a Scale of 1
10 20
Rene-Clair Hall, del.

uth,

The Tombe House. 23.



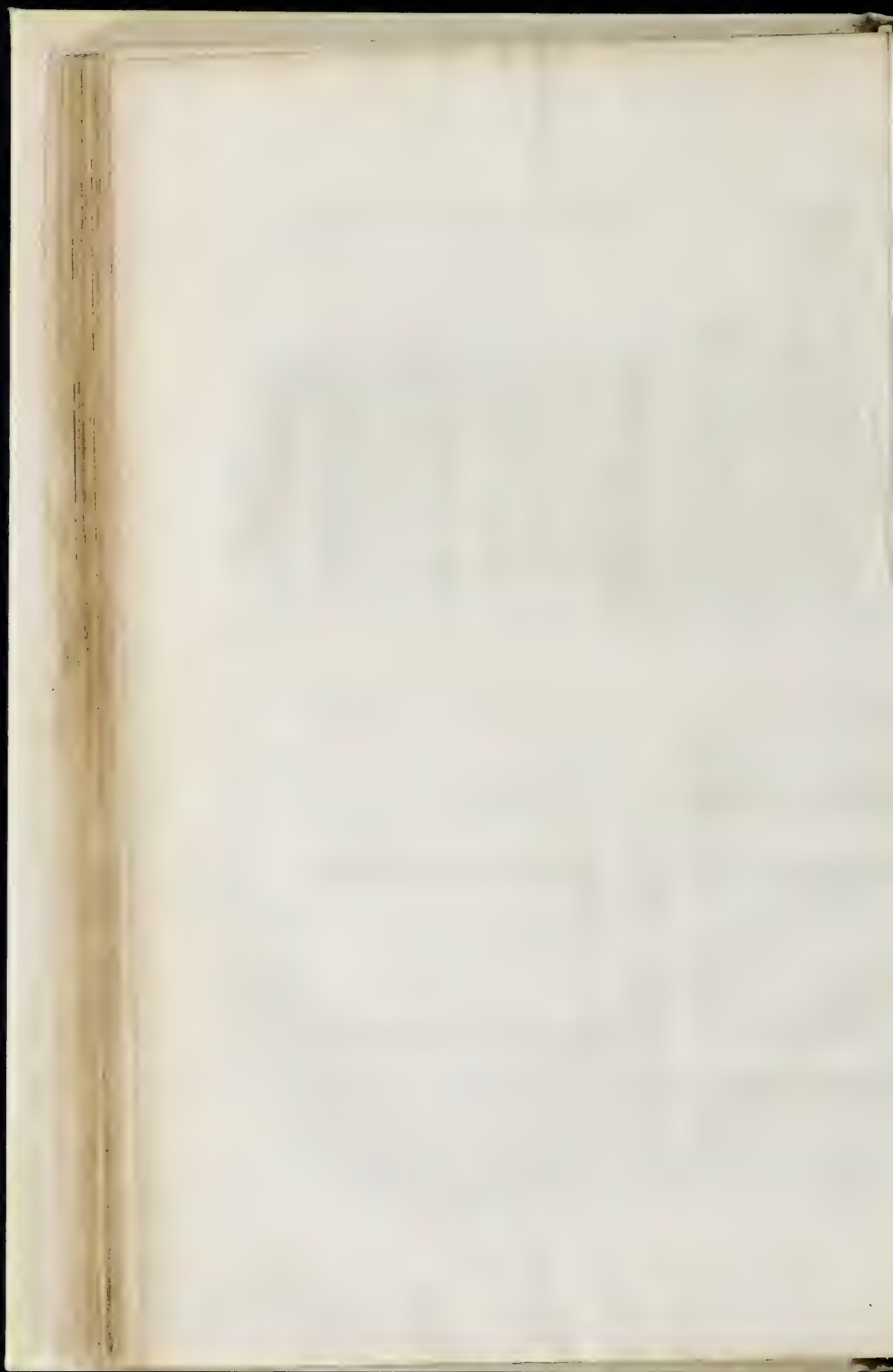
lot of S:
apell. 9



9. The middle North Chapel
10. Entrance into the Choir,
11. The Choir,
12. Sovereigns Stall
13. Princes Stall
14. Knights Stall
15. Petty Canons & Vicars Stalls,
16. Choristens desks
17. Alms Knights Seate,
18. High Altar,

19. H. G. Grave,
20. Edw. A. Monument,
21. Chapter House,
22. North East dore,
23. East dore
24. South-East Chapell,
25. Hartings s Chapell,
26. Oxenbridge s Chapell
27. Ol. Kings Chapell,
28. Part of H. s Tombe,
29. Dore into the Cloyster,

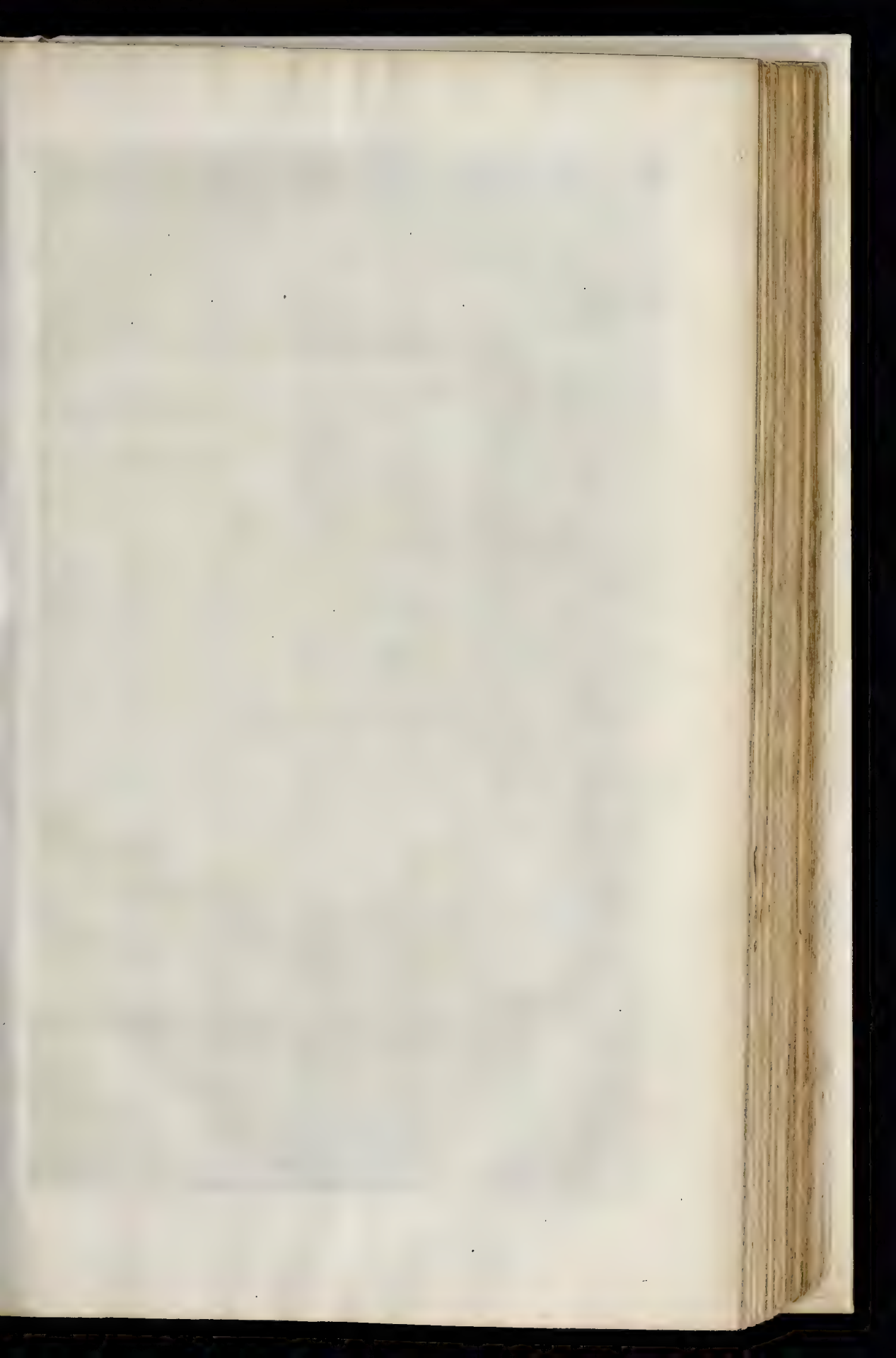
not pulport.

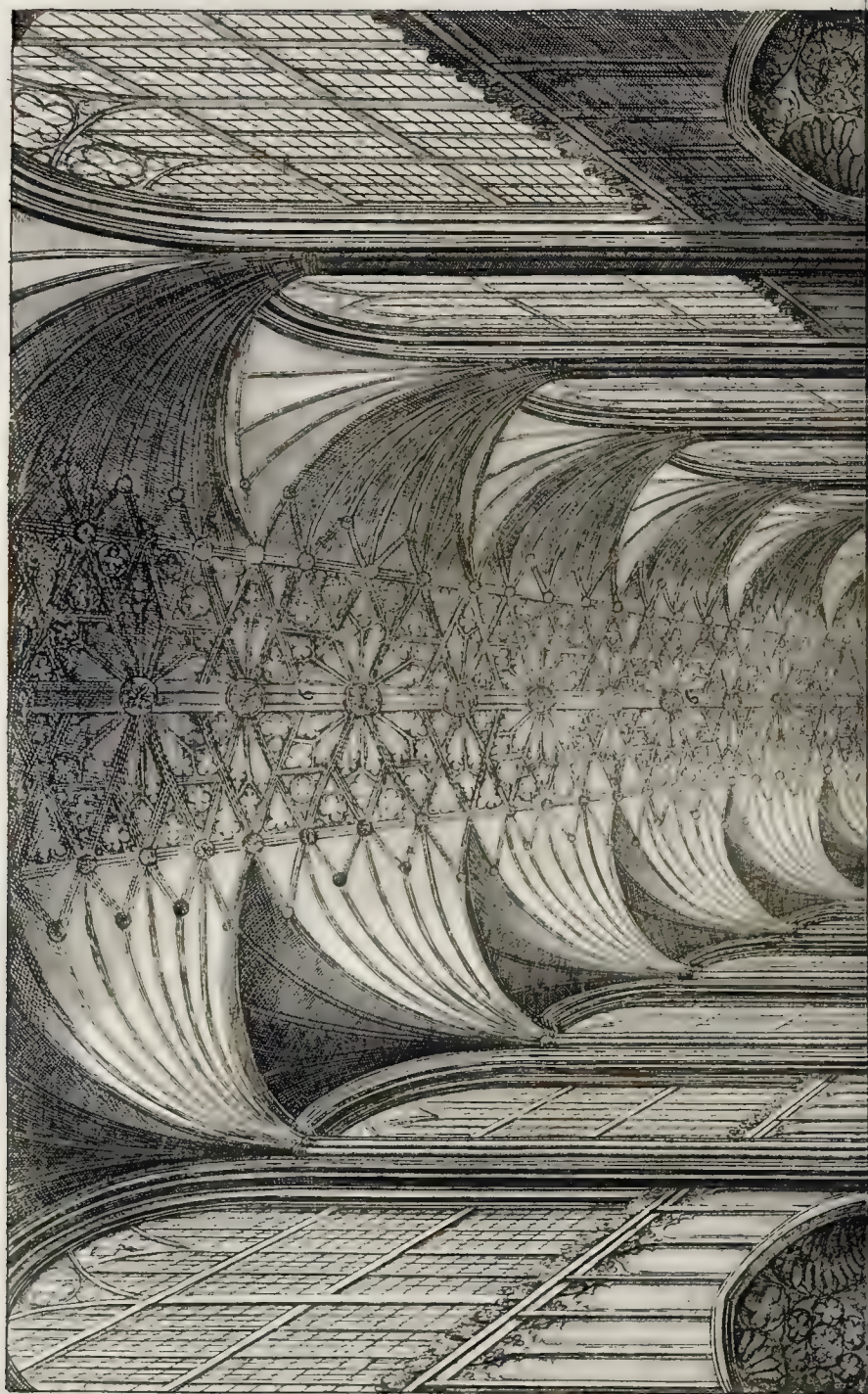




PROSPECT OF THE WEST-END OF ST. GEORGE'S CHAPEL,









PROSPECT OF THE INSIDE OF THE CHAPEL.

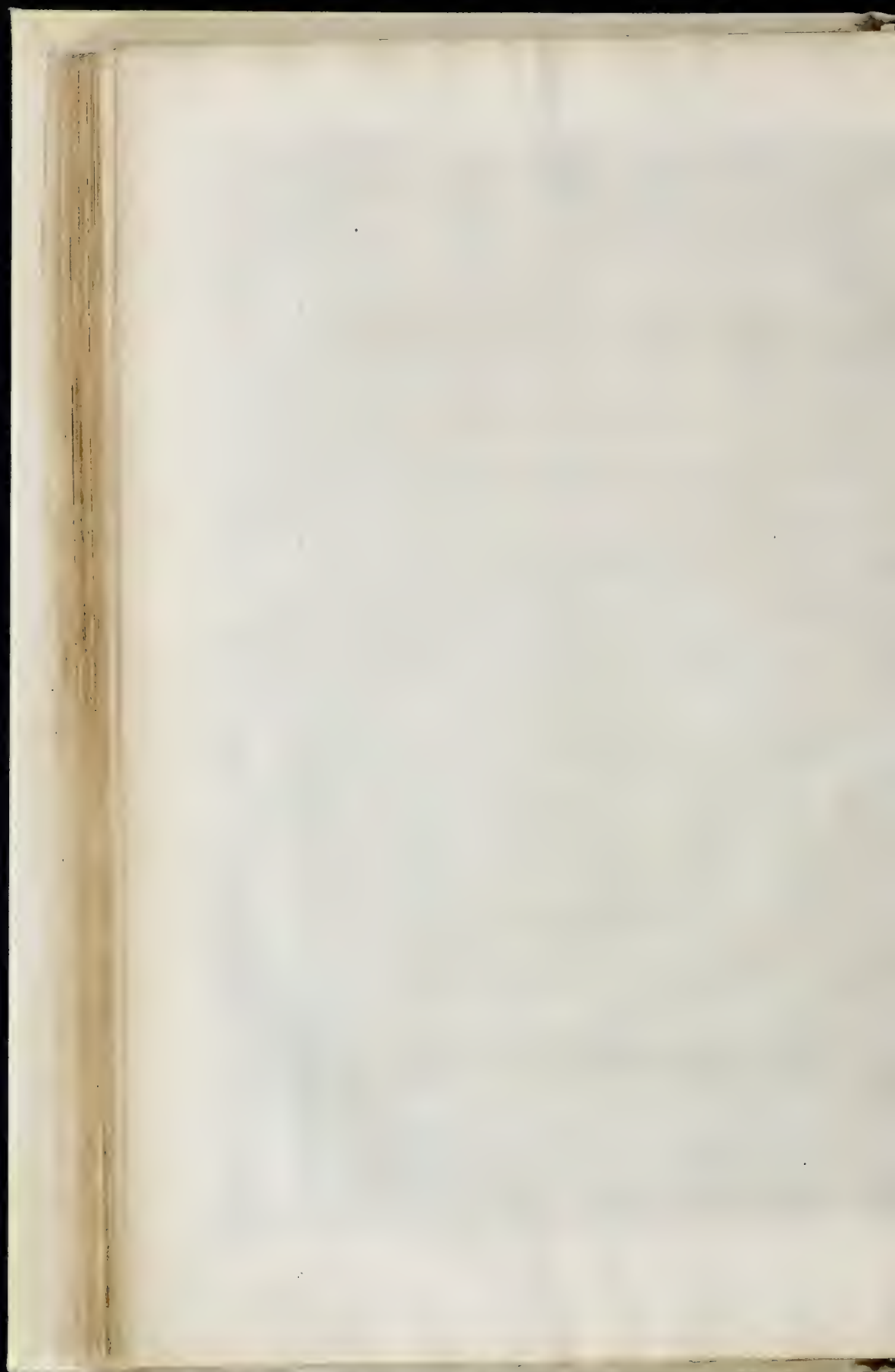
1. The middle Isle,
2. The South Isle,

Page 140

3. The North Isle,
4. The Pulpit,

5. The Choir Dore,
6. Roof of the Nave,

7. Roof of the Choir,
8. East Window of the Choir,





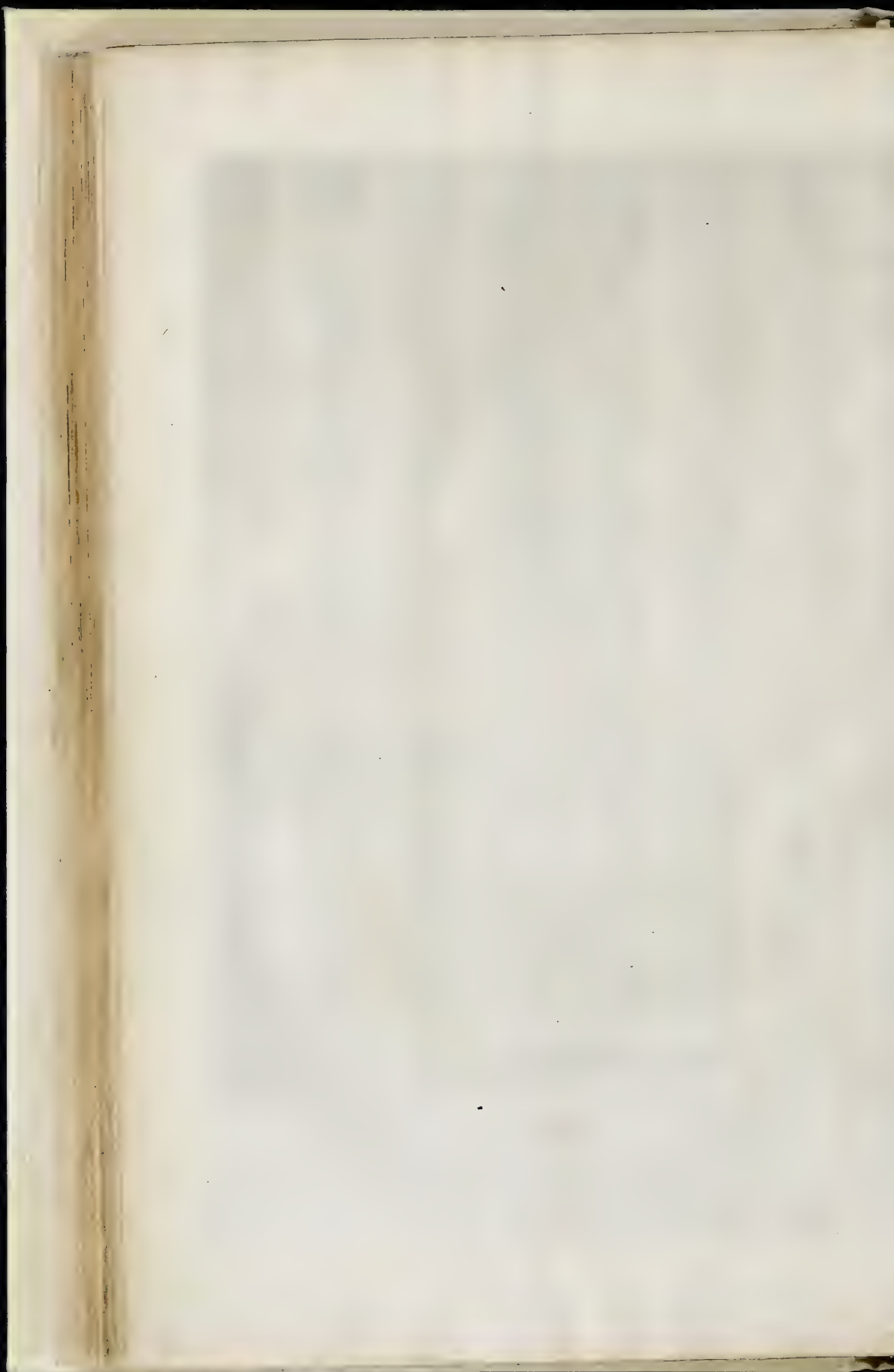
Hollar. delin. et sculp. 1607.

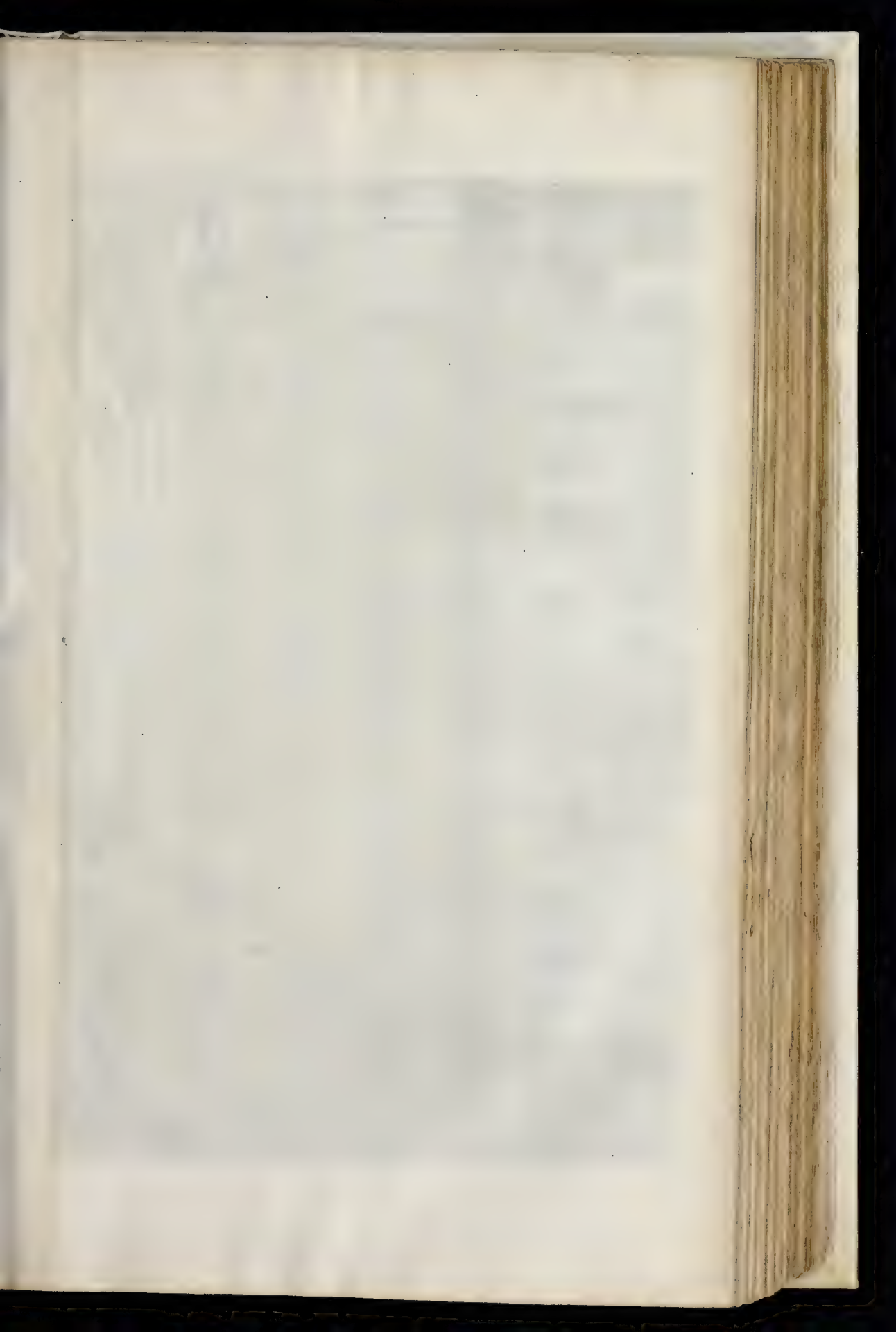
body of the Church
steps up to the Choir

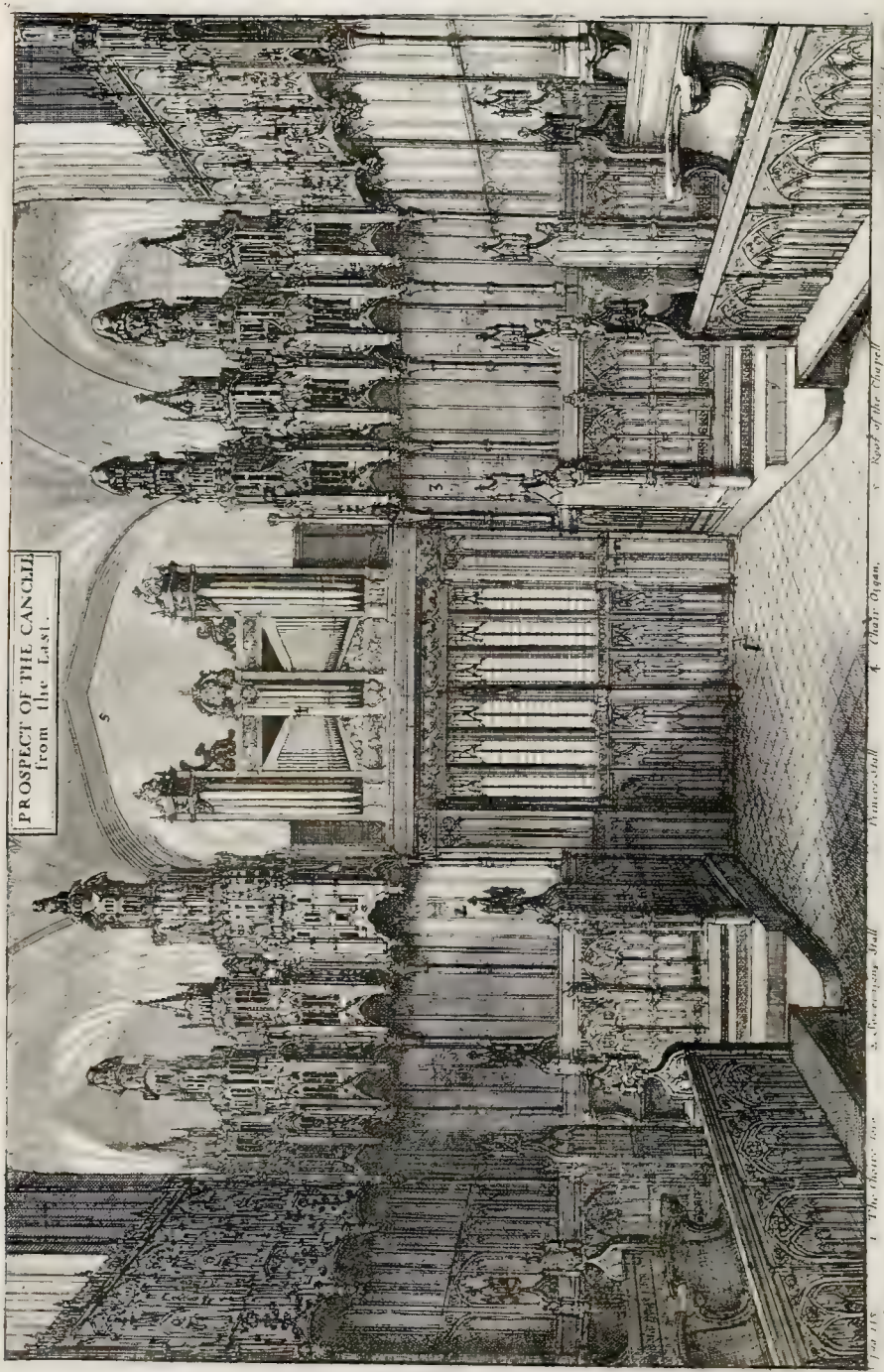
3 Entrance into the Choir.
4 Bray's Chapell,

5 South Isle.
6 Pulpit.

7 South door
8 Great Organ.







PROSPECT OF THE CANCEL
from the East.

8. Roof of the Chapel

4. Choir Organ

5. Choir Stalls

3. Choir Stalls

1. The Choir

Jan 18

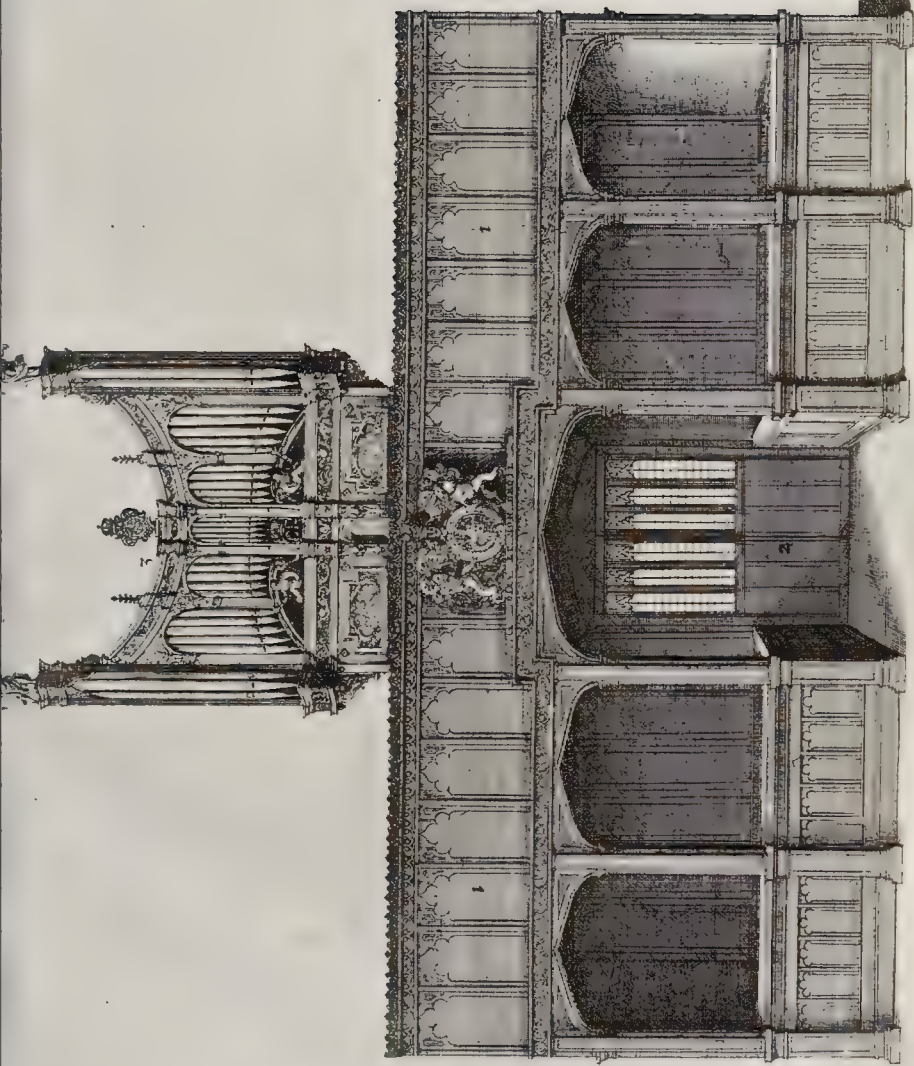
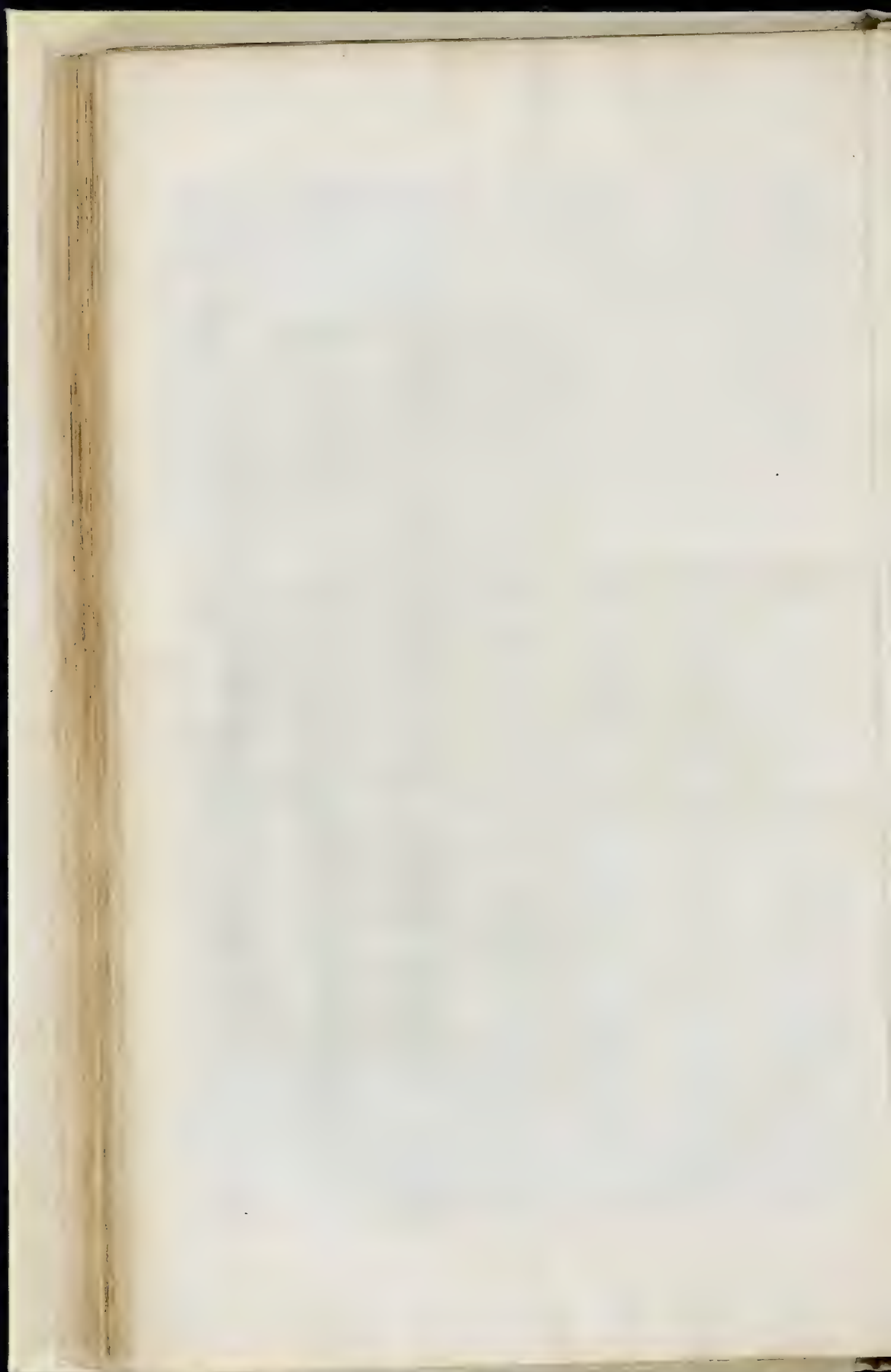


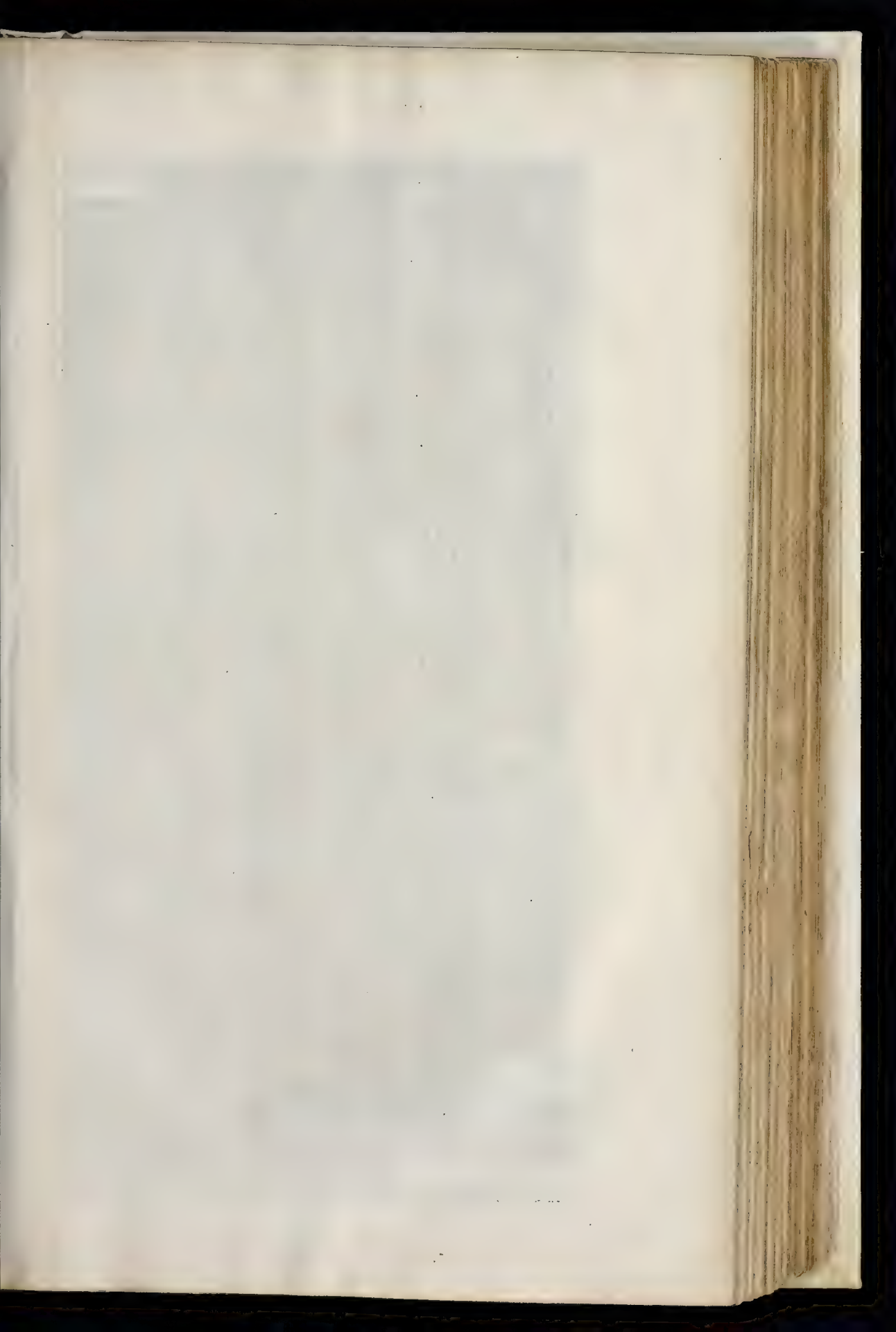
Fig. 44.

1. The Cancell

2. The Choir dore. 80

3. The Great Organ.







Pl. 140

- | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 The High Altar | 4 Petty Canons and Vicars Stalls |
| 2 Knights Companion's Walls | 5 Choristers' Seats |
| 3 Canons' Stalls | 6 Altar Knights' Chaises |

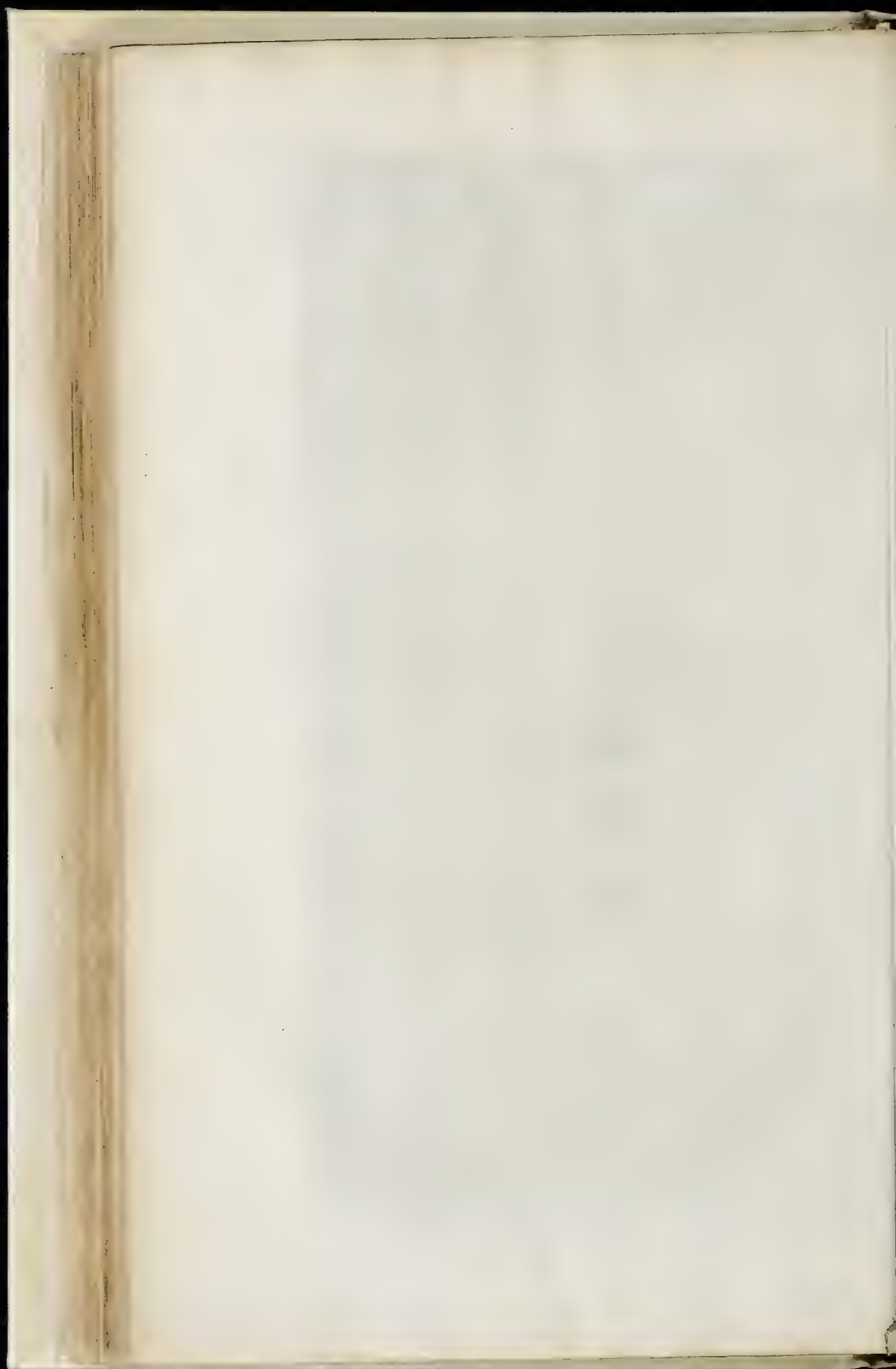
LE CHOIRE.
est



Knights' Companions Banners
their Helmets, Crests, and Swords,
Repos of their Arms and Shields

10. Queens' Closet
11. Closet for Ladies
12. East Window of the Choir

1. Hall
2. Chapter House
3. Library
4. School
5. Chapel
6. Choir
7. Altar
8. Sacristy
9. Vestibule
10. Queens' Closet
11. Closet for Ladies
12. East Window of the Choir







PROSPECT C
from

1 The Reredos before the high Altar
2 Arch over King Henry 6. Grave

3 Arch over King Edu. 4 Tomb
4 Choir door

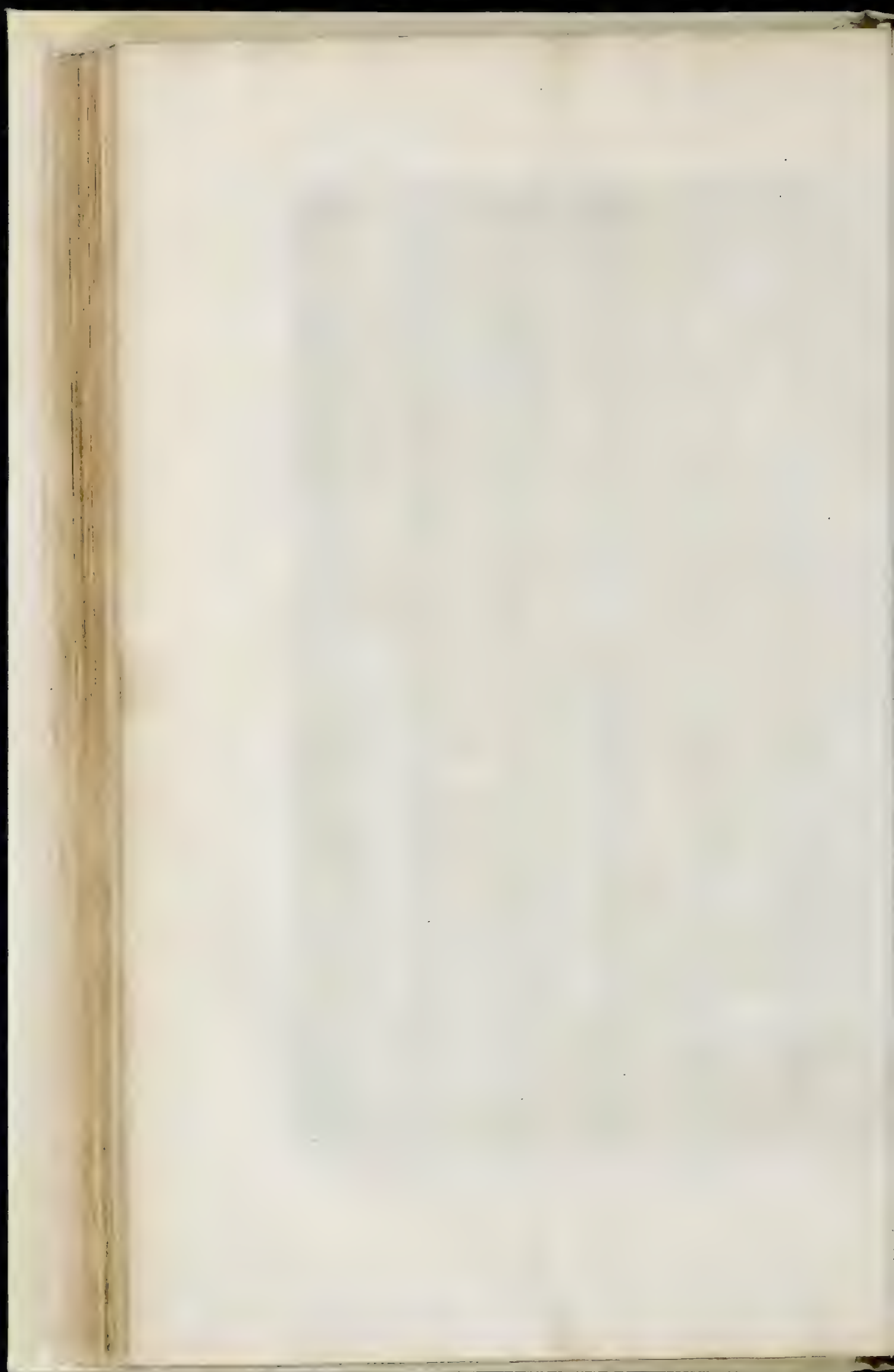
THE CHOIRE
East.



Great Organ
Roof of the Choir.

7. Roof of the Nave.
8 West Window of the Chapel.

W. Haller delin.
J. H. P. sculp.



Fourth, under a large Stone of Tych, raised within the opposite Arch, at the North side of the Altar, but without Inscription also; having on the outside of his Grave a range of Steel gilt, set to inclose it from the North side, cut excellently well in Church-work.

Over this Arch hung this Kings Coat of Male, gilt, cover'd over with crimson Velvet, and thereon the Arms of France and England quarterly, richly embroidered with Pearl and Gold, interwoven with divers Rubies. This Trophy of honor had ever since his Funeral hung safely over his Grave, but was plunder'd thence by Captain Fogg the twenty third day of October 1642. (on which day he also robb'd the Treasury of the Chappel of all the rich Plate, dedicated to the use of the Altar) yet having met with an exact measure and size of each part thereof, as also of his Banner, both heretofore taken by Sir William le Neve, sometime Clarenceux King of Arms, an exact observator of any thing curious, referring to Arms or Ceremony, we think fit to transmit it thus to posterity.

¹ The Coat of Arms was two foot seven inches deep, and below two foot in breadth. y Ex Colledge; pref. Will. le Neve.

Above (the Maunches being extended) in breadth three foot and six inches: whereof the length of each Maunch, was one foot.

The breadth of the upper part of the Coat besides the Maunches one foot and a half.

The breadth of each Maunch one foot and eight inches.

The Arms were embroidered upon Velvet, lined with Sattin, and better wrought then they use to work in these days.

The Banner which also hung over his Grave, was of Taffaty, and thereon painted quarterly France and England; it had in breadth three foot four inches, besides a Fringe of about an inch broad, and in depth five foot and four inches, besides the Fringe.

There were within this Chappel of St. George several Chantries, endowed with Lands, and other Revenues, appointed for the maintenance of Chaplains and Priests, to sing Masses there, for the Souls of their Founders, and their Kindred: As first,

² William of Wickham Bishop of Winchester, gave two hundred Marks for buying of twenty Marks Rent per annum, to sustain a Chaplain to celebrate Mass in this Chappel, for the health of his Soul, the Soul of King Edward the Third, of the said Bishops Father, Mother, and all his Benefactors: The Covenants between him and the Dean and Chapter for performance thereof, bear date at Windesor the 29. of May, anno 3. H. 8. z Ex ipso Autogr. in Arat. Colleg. Windesor.

The²⁶. of November, anno 18. E. 4. the Feoffees of Richard Duke of Gloucester, confirm'd and deliver'd to the Dean and Chapter, the Mannors of Bentfieldbury in the County of Essex, Knaption in the County of Norfolk, and Chellesworth in the County of Suffolk; who thereupon granted (among other things) that they and their Successors should cause yearly for ever, a Mass to be daily celebrated in this Chappel, for the good estate of the said Duke, and of Anne his Dutcheß while they lived, and their souls when dead; as also for the souls of their Parents and Benefactors. a Ex ipso Autogr. in Arat. grad.

^b Sir Thomas St. Leger Knight (sometime Husband to Anne Dutcheß of Exeter, Sister to King Edward the Fourth) founded a Chantry of two Priests, who (in the middle Chappel, situate on the North side of the Church) were ordain'd to pray for the healthful estate of King Edward the Fourth, and his Queen, and Cicely Dutcheß of York the Kings Mother, while they lived, and for their souls when dead: as also for the Soul of Richard Duke of York, the good estate of the said Sir Thomas, and Richard Bishop of Salisbury, then living, and after their decease for their souls, and the soul of Anne Dutcheß of Exeter. The Foundation of this Chantry and the Covenants between Sir Thomas St. Leger, and the Dean and Colledge, are dated the 20. of April, anno 22. E. 4. b Ex ipso Autogr. in Arat. grad.

By the last Will of King Edward the Fourth, a Chantry was ordained to be founded of two Priests, to serve at his Tomb, to whom was appointed an exhibition of twenty Marks yearly apiece. They were called King Edward's Chantry Priests. c Lib. vocat Denton in Arat. grad. f. 260.

The

d *Ibid.* f. 241.

The^a Chantry of *Thomas Passche* (one of the *Canons* of this *Chappel*) was founded for a Priest to pray daily for his Soul, and the Soul of *William Hermer* (another of the *Canons* there) as also for the good estate of *Master John Arundel*, and *Master John Scymer*, *Canons*, and of *Master Thomas Brotherton*, and their Souls after they should depart this life.

e *Ibid.*

^e There was another Chantry Priest assigned to pray for the Souls of the said *Passche* and *Hermer*, and of *John Plumer Verger* of the *Chappel*, and *Agatha* his Wife; which devotion was appointed to be perform'd at the Altar on the North side of the new Church, and the settlement thereof bears date the 18. of *March*, anno 9. *Hen.* 7.

f § *Exypo Ar-*
g *Legr. in E-*
rar. *Colleg.*
Windesfor.

The^f first of *March* anno 12. *H.* 7. *Margaret* Countess of *Richmond*, obtained license from the King, that she or her Executors might found a Chantry of four Chaplains, to pray for her Soul, the Souls of her Parents and Ancestors, and all faithful Souls departed: This Celebration was to be performed in a place near the East part of the new work of the *Chappel*. And the 18. of *July*, anno 13. *H.* 7. the *Dean* and *Canons* granted, that the Countess or her Executors, should erect such a Chantry in the *Chappel*, as is before mentioned.

h *Ex libro vo-*
cat. *Denton.*
f. 244.

The^h Chantry of *William Lord Hastings*, founded of one Priest to pray for his Soul, the Souls of the Lady *Katherine* his Widow, and of *Edward Lord Hastings* his Son, and *Mary* his Wife after their death: The *Chappel* wherein this Service was celebrated, is that on the North side of the *Choire*, about the middle thereof, where the Body of this Lord lies interred. The Ordination is dated the 21. of *February* anno 18. *H.* 7. ⁱ On the North side of *St. Georges Chappel* stands a little house, built for the habitation of this Chantry Priest, having over the Door (cut in stone) the Lord *Hastings's Arms*, surrounded with a *Garter*.

i *Ibid.* f. 247.k *Ib.* f. 233. b.

^k *Charles Somerset Lord Herbert* (created afterwards Earl of *Worcester*) was buried in the South *Chappel* (dedicated to the *Virgin Mary*) at the West end of the Church, where he ordain'd a secular Priest to say Mass every day, and to pray for the Souls of him and his first Wife, *Elizabeth* the Daughter and Heir of *William Herbert Earl of Huntingdon*, Lord *Herbert of Gower*, who also lies there interred.

l *Ib.* f. 237.

^l Adjoining to the House built for the Lord *Hastings's* Chantry Priest, is another like Building, erected for this Chantry Priest, and over the Door thereof, now to be seen, is the *Founders Arms* within a *Garter*, cut also upon stone. The Foundation of this Chantry is dated the 30. of *July* anno 21. *H.* 7.

m *Ibid.* f. 261.
¶ 262.

To these we shall add the pious Foundation of the House called the^m *New Commons*, erected over against the North Door of the Body of *St. George's Chappel*, by *James Denton* one of the *Canons* of the Colledge (sometimes *Dean of Lichfield*) anno 11. *H.* 8. for the lodging and dieting such of the Chantry Priests, Choristers, and stipendary Priests, who had no certain place within the Colledge, where to hold *Commons* in, but were constrained daily to eat their Meals in sundry houses of the Town: this House he furnished with proper Utensils for such a use, the whole charge amounting to 489 *l.* 7 *s.* 1 *d.* and for all which the Choristers were desired by him (in the *Statutes* he ordained for their Rule and Government) to say certain Prayers, when they entered into the *Chappel*, and after his death, to pray for his, and the Souls of all the faithful departed.

n *In Brar.*
Coll. *Windesfor.*

In this *Chappel* of *St. George*, there were heretofore several *Anniversaries* or *Obits* held and celebrated, some of them as they are entered down in anⁿ Account of *Owen Ogleshorp* Treasurer of the Colledge for the year, commencing the first of *October*, anno 38. *H.* 8. and ending the last of *September*, anno 1. *E.* 6. inclusive, we will here remember.

October.

2. *Sir Thomas Sentleger Knight.*
6. *John Wygrym Canon.*
8. *William Edyngton Bishop of Winchester.*
9. *King Edward the Fourth.*
16. *Rich. Beauchamp Bishop of Salisbury.*
22. *William Cock Canon.*

November.

3. *William Benster Canon.*
5. *John Plomer Verger.*
10. *John Brydbroke Canon.*
13. *Thomas Pasche Canon.*
20. *Robert Vere Earl of Oxford.*
27. *Thomas Beauchamp Earl of Warwick.*
29. *John Chapman Vicar.*

December

December.

3. *Ralph Wyndesfor.*
14. *John Howden Canon.*
30. *Richard Duke of York.*
31. *Tho. Beauford Duke of Exeter.*

February.

4. *Richard Raunds Canon.*
21. *William Muge Custos.*
28. *Roger Lupton Canon.*

April.

3. *William Butler Canon.*
5. *Geoffry Wren Canon.*
6. *King Edward the Fourth.*
19. *Robert Ravendale Canon.*
20. *Anne Dutcheffs of Exeter.*
21. *John Bean and his Wife.*

June.

2. *John Stokes Canon.*
7. *Anne Queen of England.*
8. *Edward the Black Prince.*
11. *William Ferrys.*
12. *John Vaughan Canon.*
13. *William Lord Hastings.*
14. *Brothers and Sisters of St. Anthony.*
21. *King Edward the Third, Founder.*
27. *Will. Askew Bishop of Salisbury.*

August.

4. *Sir Reginald Bray Knight.*
8. *John Blount.*
10. *William Mychell Canon.*
11. *Robert Barham Canon.* (drefs.
17. *Philippa Queen of England, Foun-*
18. *Richard Surland Canon.*
31. *King Henry the Fifth.*

January.

3. *Katherine Queen of England.*
8. *King Edward the Fourth.*
10. *Anne Devereux.*
11. *John Chambre Canon.*
12. *Anne Dutcheffs of Exeter.*
14. *Geoffry Aston.*

March.

1. *Richard Smith.*
4. *Knights of the Garter.*
5. *Walter Devereux.*
10. *Richard Welles Canon.*
19. *King Henry the Fourth.*
24. *Henry Duke of Lancaster.*

May.

11. *King Henry the Seventh.*
21. *King Henry the Sixth.*

July.

9. *King Edward the Fourth.*
12. *Anne Dutcheffs of Exeter.*
13. *William Harmer Canon.*
16. *William Palet Canon.*
17. *Henry Deane.*
27. *John Oxenbrydge Canon.*

September.

5. *John Seymor Canon.*
13. *Henry Hanslappe Canon.*
14. *John Duke of Bedford.*
16. *William Bohun Earl of Northampton.*
27. *William Wykham Bishop of Winchest.*

It was an usual thing in former Ages, especially for those of the Military profession, after they had spent their youth and manhood in the service of their King and Country, to bestow the remainder of their lives in Prayers for both, and the salvation of their own Souls. And therefore to cherish the piety of well disposed *Knights-Companions* of the most Noble Order of the *Garter*, who for devotions sake were induced to retire to *Windefor*, permission was given then by the *Statutes of Institution*, to make their continual abode there. Nevertheless to maintain themselves out of their own Estates, not at the Colledge charge.

This Article is confirmed by the *Statutes of King Henry the Fifth*, to which those of *King Henry the Eighth* add, *That the Sovereign should assign them convenient Habitations within the Castle*. The like favour upon like occasion, was afforded to other devout *Knights*, though not of the Order; but the Lodgings to be such as the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* should decree.

o Ed. 3. Stat.
Art. 31.

p Art. 32. H. 8.
Stat. Art. 35.

q H. 5. Stat.
Art. 23. H. 8.
Stat. Art. 36.

We

r Sir James
Palmer's large
Journal, p. 16.

f Exvelatione
D. Chr. Wren,
nuper Regill.
hujus Ordinis.

We no where find, that any of the *Knights-Companions* made use of the benefit of this Article hitherto: but in another nature and for their better accommodation at the grand *Feast* of the *Order*, and other Solemnities held at *Windesfor*; they moved the *Sovereign* in Chapter there (* 22. of *May* anno 14. *Car. I.*) That they might have *Rooms* for *Lodgings* assigned them, in the great (or upper) Court (which they offered to repair at their own charge) since all the *Officers* of the *Order* had *Lodgings* in the *Castle*, but the *Knights-Companions* none. This motion was not disliked by the *Sovereign*,^f so it might be without exclusion of the *Great Officers* of *State*, concerning whom He declared, That he would not have them removed from him at any time; and thereupon it was left to further consideration.

SECT. III.

The Foundation of the Colledge within the Chappel.

q f. 12. f. 5. E. 2.
m. 2. Dorso.

r Pat. 4. E. 3.
p. 1. m. 19.
f. claus. 11. E. 3.
m. 18.

e Appendix
Num. 1.

King *Henry* the First, as he had erected a *Chappel* within the *Castle*, so did he therein found a *Colledge* for eight *Canons*, neither endowed nor incorporate, but maintained by an annual Pension out of the Kings Exchequer. King *Edward* the Second founded here a *Chantry* for four *Chaplains* and two *Clerks*, to pray for his Soul, and the Souls of all his Progenitors; as likewise a *Chappel* in the *Park* of *Windesfor*, under the same Ordination, for four more *Chaplains*, whom his Son King *Edward* the Third (by the advice of his Council) removed and joined to those other before settled in the *Chappel* of the *Castle*, and built habitations for their better accommodation on the South side thereof: all which we shall pass over with this short mention, as not directly relative to our present purpose.

But the *Foundation* that we shall treat of here, King *Edward* the Third laid by His Letters Patent bearing *Tesste* at *Westminster* on the sixth day of *August*, anno regni sui 22. that being about three quarters of a year before He instituted the most Noble *Order* of the *Garter*: for (being inflamed with the zeal of a pious devotion, and desiring by a good kind of Commerce to exchange earthly for heavenly, and transitory for eternal things) at his own Royal Charge, He new founded the ancient *Chappel* in honor and to the praise of the omnipotent *God*, the glorious *Virgin Mary*, of *St. George* the Martyr, and *St. Edward* the Confessor: And by his Kingly authority and as much as in him lay Ordained, that to King *Henry*'s eight *Canons* there should be added one *Custos*, fifteen more *Canons*, and twenty four *Alms-Knights*, together with other *Ministers*, all under the Government nevertheless of the *Custos*: and these to be maintained out of the Revenues wherewith this *Chappel* was and should be endowed.

But, according to the opinion of those times, his Kingly Authority extended not to the instituting therein men of *Religion*, and other *Officers* to perform and attend the Service of *God*; for that lay in the power and disposition of the *Pope*: And therefore this King, setting forth what he had profer'd to do, in reference to the endowment of this *Chappel*, requested *Pope Clement* the Sixth to grant to the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, and Bishop of *Winchester* the authority and power of ordaining and instituting the *Colledge*, and other things thereunto appertaining.

u Appendix
Num. II.

Hereupon this *Pope* by his Bull dated at *Avignon* pridie Calendas Decembris, in the ninth year of his Papacy (which answers to the thirtieth day of *November*, Anno Domini 1351.) commending the pious purpose of the King in this affair, granted to the Archbishop and Bishop, and to either of them, full power to Ordain, Institute, and Appoint in this *Chappel*, as should seem good to them, a certain number of *Canons*, *Priests*, *Clerks*, *Knights*, and *Officers*, continually to attend upon the Service of *God*, of which *Canons* and *Priests*, one should have the Title of *Custos*, and preside over the rest.

On that day twelvemonth the *Statutes* and *Ordinances* of the *Colledge* bear date,
being

being made by * virtue of the Popes authority, the Kings Command, the consent of the Bishop of *Salisbury* (in whose Diocels the *Chappel* is situate) and of the Dean and Chapter of *Salisbury*. By which *statutes* the Bishop of *Winchester*, one of the Popes Delegates (for we find not the Archbishop's name used in them) did Ordain and Institute a *Colledge*, within the Chappel of *St. George*, consisting of one *Custos*, twelve secular *Canons*, thirteen *Priests* or *Vicars*, four *Clerks*, six *Choristers*, and twenty six *Alms-Knights*, beside other Officers. And to this *Custos* and *Colledge*, by the name of *Custos* and *Colledge* of the *Free-Chappel* of *St. George*, within the Castle of *Windefor*, for the most part, but sometimes of *Custos* and *Colledge* of *Chaplains*, or otherwise of *Custos* and *Chaplains* of the same *chappel*, were the Donations of Advowsons, and other temporal Endowments, commonly made and granted.

x In praesentia ne ad Colleg. Statut.

SECT. IV.

Of the Dean, Canons, Petty-Canons, Clerks, and Choristers.

Shortly after the Foundation of the *Colledge* by the Kings Letters Patent, to The Dean. wit, the 14. of November, anno 22. E. 3. the King constituted *John de la y Pat. 22. E. 3.* *Chambre Custos* of the *Chappel* of *St. George*, but he enjoyed this dignity not above half a year, for the 18. of June ensuing, the Letters Patent, for constituting *William Mugg Custos*, beare Teste: so that in truth *John de la Chambre* was the first *Custos*, though in the * Preamble to the Letters Patent past under the Great Seal of England, with consent of the Lords and Commons in Parliament, anno 8. H. 6. *William Mugg* is there said to be the first, and so hath been since accounted.

* Rot. Parl. 8. H. 6. n. 31.

But it seems the Catalogue of *Custos*'s and *Deans*, took commencement at the Institution of the *Colledge* by Papal (not Kingly) authority, and though *William Mugg* (in like manner as *John de la Chambre*) had been constituted *Custos* above three years before, yet being then again nominated by the King to receive Institution from the Bishop of *Winchester* upon his ordaining the *Colledge*, he came to be accounted the first *Custos*, as being so under that Institution; and consequently *John de la Chambre* not taken notice of.

a Tho. Friib. in suo Custodum five Decanor. Catalogo.

By this Title of *Custos* were those that succeeded *De la Chambre* and *Mugg*, presented by the King, till the last year of King *Henry* the Fourth, when *Thomas Kingston* was the first of them presented by the name of *Dean*; and his Successor for *John Arundell* observing that divers of the Lands and Endowments of the *Colledge*, were sometimes granted thereunto by the name of *Custos*, at other times of *Dean* and *Custos*, or lastly of *Dean* only; and doubting that this variation and diversity of names might beget some damage to the *Colledge*, especially being both beside and against the form of the Foundation (wherein the Title of *Custos* was only used) he applied himself by a Petition to the Parliament before mentioned; whereupon the King being pleased to provide for the security of the *Colledge* in this particular, did, with consent of the Lords and Commons, by Letters Patent under the Great Seal of England, grant and declare, That the said *John* should be *Custos* five *Decanus* for his life, and enjoy all rights thereunto belonging, and for the future, he and every other *Custos* of the *Chappel* for the time being should be called *Custodes* five *Decani*, viz. *Wardens* or *Deans* of the free *Chappel* of *St. George* within the Castle of *Windefor*; and that the *Custos*, or *Dean* and *Canons* thereof, and their Successors, by the Name of *Custos*, or *Dean* and *Canons* of the said free *Chappel*, should have and hold to them and their Successors for ever, all Lands, Tenements, Rents, Possessions, &c. as also all manner of Liberties, Franchises, Immunities, &c. granted to the *Colledge* at any time before.

b Ibid.

c Rot. Parl. ann. 8. H. 6. n. 31.

d Ibid.

So that here was instituted a kind of new Incorporation of this *Chappel*, by the Title of *Custos*, or *Dean* and *Canons* only, and the whole State of the *Colledge*, together with its possessions, strengthened and constituted in a manner *De novo*: at least this was a great step to the compleat incorporating them by King *Edward* the Fourth, when, through the interest of *Richard Beauchamp* Bishop of *Salisbury*, then also *Dean* of *Windefor*, and *Chancellor* of the most noble *Order* of the *Garter*, there was obtained from King *Edward* the Fourth, Letters Patent bearing Teste at *Windefor* the 6. of *December* in the 19. year of his Reign, for^e incorporating the *Custos*, or *Dean* and *Canons* and their Successors, by the name of *Dean and Canons of the free Chappel of St. George within the Castle of Windefor*, and that thenceforward they should be one Body Corporate in thing and name, and have a perpetual Succession.

^e Parl. 19. E. 4.
m. 5.

Furthermore, that they and their Successors, should by the same Name, be persons capable in Law, to purchase, receive, and take Lands, Tenements, Rents, Reversions, Services, Liberties, Franchises, and Priviledges, or other Possessions whatsoever, to be held and posselt in Fee and Perpetuity: As also to have a Common Seal, for the Affairs and Causes of them and their Successors. And that they and their Successors, by the name of *Dean and Canons*, &c. might plead and be impleaded, pursue all manner of Causes and Actions, real and mixt, challenge all Franchises and Liberties, and answer and be answered, before any Judges spiritual or temporal.

But for the avoiding all further doubts, which might be taken for any occasion or cause, touching the *Dean* and *Canons* of this *Chappel* in their Corporation, Capacity, or Possessions, and for the more surety of them in all their temporal Endowments; the Letters Patent of Incorporation, were within three years after, past into an^e Act of Parliament, which yet remains in force.

^f Vide Rot.
Parl. 22. E. 4.
n. 11.
g Dat. Avinionie
prie Cal.
Dec. Pontif. sui
anno 9.
h^g Pref. ad
i Coll. Stat.

Thus much for his Title of *Custos* and *Decanus*; we shall next touch upon his Authority and Ecclesiastical Jurisdiction: for as he is constituted (both by the^e Bull of Pope *Clement* the Sixth, and the^b Institution of the *Colledge* thereupon) *President* over the rest of the *Colledge*, to govern, direct, and order them, their Goods and Estates; so is he toⁱ exercise all manner of Ecclesiastical Jurisdiction over them, with a reservation of power of Appeal to the *Chancellor* of *England*, Visitor of that *Colledge*.

k Coll. Stat.
cap. 39.

l Ibid.

m Cap. 20. vide
etiam Injunct.
Jo. Archiep. Ebor.
Angl. Cancellar. c. 1. & 2.

n Cap. 49.

Moreover, ^k where any of them live inordinately or unpeaceably, he, with the advice of the *Chapter* (in cases where no particular penalty is appointed to be inflicted) hath power to reprehend or correct at discretion. ^l And in case where discord ariseth among any of them, shall within eight days reconcile the parties, or do justice. Lastly, he hath power (after the third time of admonition) to^m expel from the *Colledge*. all sowers of Discord, Back-biters, and Whisperers, that are below the Degree of a *Canon*.

o Cap. 7.
p^g Ex Collect.
q^l G. Evans
modo unius Canonici.
huius Colleg. lib. B. f. 74. d.
r Coll. Stat. tit. cap. 50.

Canons.

And to the end there may be no defect in Government at any time, during his non-residence, it is provided by the *Statutes* of the *Colledge*, ⁿ That when he hath occasion to be absent from thence, above eight days or more, he shall before his departure constitute one of the *Canon-Residents* (whom he please) for his *Deputy*, who during his absence (having the Title of *Lieutenant*) shall in all things exercise and execute his Office: for we are to note, that the said *Statutes* allow him^o sixty days for non-residence, the Royal Visitation held anno 1552. enlarged that time to^p one hundred and ten days, and the Lord *Chancellor* *Hyde* gave him liberty of six weeks absence, to attend the affairs of his Deanry of *Wolverhampton*.

But in the^r vacancy of the *Custos*, whatever power or authority belongs unto him, the same is then devolv'd upon the *Chapter* of the *Colledge*; which *Chapter* ought within two days after the vacancy known, to elect one of the *Resident-Canons*, under the Title of *President*, to govern the *Colledge* and direct all affairs relating thereunto, until there be provided another *Custos*.

Leaving the *Custos* thus settled under the Title of *Decanus* (which later he is only known by at this day) we are now to speak of the *Canons*, whose number by the Letters Patent of Foundation, were appointed to be four and twenty, including the *Custos*; but upon Institution of the *Colledge*, by the Bishop of *Winchester*,

Winchester, there was then ordained (as hath been noted) one *Custos*, twelve *Secular-Canons*, and thirteen *Priests* or *Vicars*, in all twenty six; being the very number before ordained by the Statutes of Institution of the Order of the Garter, and answerable to the just number of the *Knights-Companions* of that most noble Order. And for a further distinction between these *Canons-Secular*, and the *Priests*, the first twelve are in a Bull of Pope *Innocent* the Eighth, called *Majores Canonici*, the other elsewhere *Canonici Minores*, or *Petty Canons*.

To these twelve *seculars* were assigned so many *Prebendships* in the Chappel of St. George (as also * *Stalls* in the *Choir*, and Places in the *Chapter*) together with that, held by the *Custos*, whence of later times they are frequently called *Prebends* as well as *Canons*, and their Dignities *Canonships* and *Prebendships*. Every *Prebend* hath a *Sacerdotal* power given him by the Statutes of the Colledge, and in regard of this, those Statutes further ordained, That each *Canon* of the Chappel being a *Prebend*, if not at that time a *Priest*, should within a year after he hath enjoyed his *Prebendship*, be so ordained; otherwise (without further admonition) to be deprived thereof.

By the fore-mentioned Bull of Pope *Clement* the Sixth, there is reserved to the Founder, his Heirs and Successors, the right of presenting the *Canons*, *Priests*, *Clerks*, *Alms-Knights*, and *Ministers* belonging to the Colledge; and thereupon we find it noted, that he nominated and presented *William Mugg*, and four other *Presbyters* to the Bishop of *Winchester*, to institute them *Canons* and *Prebends*, in the *Canonships* and *Prebendships* of the Chappel, which the Bishop did accordingly, and then gave the said *William Mugg* institution to the place of *Custos*, upon the Founders nomination and presentation also.

Notwithstanding which, it appears by the Institution of the Garter, that the first *Canons* were presented to the *Custos* by the first Founders of the Order, viz. the five and twenty first *Knights-Companions*, every one of them being permitted by the Sovereign's favour, to present a *Canon*; yet was it therewithal provided, That neither the *Knights-Companions*, who thus first presented; nor any one of their Successors from that time, should present to the vacant *Canonships*, but the Sovereign only. To which end, in another place, the *Custos* was obliged when any of the *Canons* died (the Sovereign being out of the Kingdom) to signify the same to him by Letter, that so he might appoint whom he thought fit to succeed him.

But upon whomsoever these Dignities are conferr'd, they ought to be Admitted, Instituted, and Installed, by the *Custos* (or *Dean*) or his *Lieutenant*, to whom (at the time of their Installation) they are to be obliged by Oath, to yield Canonical Obedience, and observe the Statutes of the Colledge, so far as it concerns them. The form of their Admittance is annexed to those Statutes.

The principal duty of these *Canons* (so also of the *Vicars*, *Clerks*, *Alms-Knights*, and *Ministers* of the Colledge) is continually and personally to attend upon the Service of God, in the Chappel of St. George; and upon each days omission of a *Canon-Resident*, it was Ordained, that he should forfeit his quotidian distribution, viz. twelve pence. Nor do we find any license of non-residence, or discontinuance given to any of the *Canons* by the Colledge Statutes; but only to the *Custos*, and that but for sixty days in the whole year (as is before remembred) howbeit there is mention of *Canons-Resident*, and *non-Resident* in the said Statutes; to the *non-Residents* there are great defalcations appointed to be made, and good reason for it, because the *Resident-Canons* bear not only the burthen of that duty belonging to the Chappel and Colledge, but the expence of Hospitality and other works of Charity, occasioned from their residing at *Windefor*.

Nevertheless the effect of a favourable indulgence towards the *Canons* was introduced by degrees, and when *Richard Beauchamp* Bishop of *Salisbury*, had obtained power by a Bull from *Sixtus* the Fourth, to make new Statutes in the Colledge, he in this particular dispensed with the old ones, and the fifth of *March* 1478. gave to the *Dean* and every *Canon* and their Successors, fourteen days of non-Residence in every Term, to wit, six and fifty days in the year. By the visitation held anno 1552. these days are enlarged to fourscore, and the Lord Chan-

f Dat. 11. Cal.
O. an. 1484.
c 1. b. N. p. 121.
u Colleg. Stat.
c. 2.
* Ibid. c. 55.

w Ib. c. 10. side
E. 3. Stat.
Art. 4.

y Prefat. ad
Colleg. Stat.

z Art. 4.

b Ibid. Art. 33.
vide etiam H.
5. Stat. Art. 35.

c Colleg. Stat.
cap. 9.

d Cap. 3 & 48.

e Prefat. ad
Stat. Colleg.

f Colleg. Stat.

cap. 11.

g Ibid. c. 2.

h Cap. 7.

i Cap. 20.

k Dat. Roma
anno 11. cal.
Aug. 1475.
l Ex Colleg.
prefat. G. E.
vans lib. B.
f. 74.

m } *Ibid.*
n }

o *Colleg. pref.*
G. Evans, lib.
A. f. 143.

p *Colleg. Stat.*
c. 34.
* *Ord. Stat. in*
lib. N. Art. 4.
q *E. 3. Stat.*
Art. 32.

r *H. 5. Stat.*
Art. 34.
H. 8. Stat.
Art. 37.

t Art. 16.

cellor *Hatton* yet further indulged them with ^m two hundred and two days, which liberty the late Lord Chancellor *Hyde* confirmed; and consequently there remains one hundred sixty and three days in the year, in which the *Canons* ought to be resident at *Windefor*. For each *Canon*'s great Residence is ^o 21 days, the looser Residence in conjunction with the greater is 163 days; that is 21 of these 163 are to be kept without interruption, and with hospitality according to the Statute.

The *Canons* are particularly obliged, ^p humbly to pray for the prosperity of the *Sovereign* of the most noble Order of the *Garter* from time to time being, as also for the ^{*} happy estate of the Order. ^q And if any *Knight-Companion*, or other person, should out of Devotion bestow ten pounds *per annum* revenue or more in Lands or otherwise, that so he might be made partaker of the Prayers, appointed for the Benefactors of the Colledge, his name was ordained to be inscribed among them, and himself also prayed for; which Article, though King *Henry* the Fifth confirmed, yet he provided ^r that neither the *Custos* or *Canons*, should thenceforth admit of any such charge upon the Colledge, without the consent of the *Sovereign*, his *Deputy*, or the *Knights-Companions* of the Order.

To this let us adjoin the care taken by the *Injunctions* of the 8. of February an. 4. E. 6. for commemorating the bounty of the Benefactors of this Colledge to Posterity, for there it is enjoyn'd, ^t That from thenceforth upon the Tuesday, next after the third Sunday in *Lent*, and on the first Tuesdays in *June*, *September*, and *December*, some one of the Colledge should in a brief Sermon commend the munificence, not only of the *Founder*, and of King *Henry* the Eighth, but of all other Noblemen, whose bountifulness had appeared in their pious acts, and set forth how greatly God is to be glorified, who by them had bestowed so many benefits on the Colledge: As also exhort his Auditors to use their gifts to the glory of God, increase of Virtue and Learning, and the pious intent of Benefactors; and lastly, pray the Almighty so to stir up the hearts of the living, to bestow some part of their substance likewise, to the increase of Religion, and setting forth of his glory.

Thus far of the *Canons* Ecclesiastical Duty; but those things which relate to their Civil Obligations are to attend the *Sovereign* (or his *Deputy*) and the *Knights-Companions*, at the *Grand Feast* of *St. George*, whensoever celebrated at *Windefor*, as also at the Feasts of *Installation*; or when the *Sovereign* upon any other solemn occasion shall come to the Chappel of *St. George* to offer; or lastly, when any of the *Knights-Companions* (being on a Journey neer the Castle) come thither to offer likewise.

As touching their part in the Ceremonies observed upon any of these occasions, we shall hereafter note them down in their proper places; and only mention here the *Robe* appointed for them to wear at these times over their Ecclesiastical Habit. This by the Statutes of Institution is appointed to be a ^u *Mantle*, and though these mention not the matter whereof it was made (which at this day is *Taffaty*, of the fashion of the three inferiour Officers of the Order) yet they set down the Colour to be ^v *Murrey*, as also that the Arms of *St. George* should be placed within a Rundle on the ^w right shoulder thereof.

t } *Art. 5. vide*
u } *Hen. 5.*
Stat. Art. 5.

w *Ord. Stat. in*
lib. N. Art. 5.

Petty Canons.
x *Pat. 22. E. 3.*
pars 2. m. 6.
y *Prefat. ad*
Colleg. Stat.

z *Ibid.*
a *Art. 4. vide*
H. 5. Stat.

b *Art. 4.*
c *Pref. ad Col-*
leg. Stat.
d *Art. 13.*
e *Lib. N.*
f. 221.

Those, who are now called *Petty Canons*, have no nominal nor other distinction in the ^x *Founder's* Patent of Foundation, from those other afterwards called *Canonicis majores*, but both go under the Title of *Canons* only. In the ^y Bull of Pope *Clement* the Sixth (which recites the substance of the *Founders* Patent) in reference to the transferring his authority to the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, and Bishop of *Winchester*, for instituting the Colledge, they are called *Presbyteri*; and by the said Bishop, in the very words of his ^z Institution, *Presbyteri seu Vicarii*, but in the ^a Foundational Statutes of the Order of the *Garter*, are styled *Vicarii* only.

Their Number at the first Institution was ^b thirteen, and the same number appears to be continued, being taken notice of in all the Exemplars of the Statutes of the Order. Only ^c King *Henry* the Eighth's English Statutes mention eight *Petty Canons*, beside thirteen *Vicars* (but the Latin takes notice only of ^d thirteen *Priests*, part of them are there called *Canonicis minores*, and other part *Vicarii*)

Vicarii) afterwards the *Injunctions* of the Kings Commissioners dated the 23. of November anno 1. E. 6. appointed twelve *Priests*, and they to be called *Petty Canons*: that is, four to be added to the former eight, mentioned in King Henry the Eighth's *Statutes*, which the said Article directed to be done after this manner, to wit, that at the first avoidance of the next Vicar, his stipend should be equally divided among three of the eldest Vicars, who thereupon were to be called *Petty Canons*; and when the room of another Vicar became void, then five marks of his stipend should be appointed to the next senior Vicar (who was likewise to be stiled *Petty Canon*) and this direction being observed, the number of twelve *Petty Canons* became compleated. Yet in Queen *Elizabeth's* Ordinances for the continual charge, the number of *Petty Canons* thereby provided for, are noted to be thirteen, agreeable to the ancient number of *Vicars*; but at this day they are but seven, and one of them *Sub-chanter*.

The *Vicars* at their admission (according to the appointment both of the *Statutes* of the Colledge, and those of the Order) are bound to be *Priests*, or at least *Deacons*, from whence they are next to be ordained *Priests*, to wit, the next time appointed for Ordination. Those *statutes* bound them also to continual personal residence, and if absent without a lawful cause, from Mattens, they were amerced ^k two pence apiece for each omission, and two pence a time more, if not at every grand Mass, and one penny for their absence from every Canonical hour, the Mass of the Virgin *Mary*, or for the Defunct. All which forfeitures were to be deducted out of their Salary, and divided among those *Vicars* who gave their attendance in the foresaid Duties. But the *Injunctions* anno 1. E. 6. appoint the forfeit of absence from Mattens, to be one penny half penny, and from either Proceffion, Communion, or Even-Song the like Sum, to be paid to the poor Mens Box.

And not only they, but all other *Ministers* of the Chappel, if absent from the Colledge above twenty days, without just cause approved of by the *Resident Canon*, or do behave themselves scandalously in life or conversation, are by the *Statutes* of the Colledge to be expelled, after the fact proved before the *Custos* or his *Lieutenant*; but if any of them absent themselves for less than twenty days, without the like approbation, then to be punished at discretion.

Each of these *Vicars* had at first but the annual Pension of eight pounds Sterling, paid after this manner, to wit, every Kalendar Month eight shillings for their Diet, and that which then remained at the Quarters end, went towards furnishing them with other necessaries. Afterwards King Edward the Fourth increased their Pensions to twenty marks apiece. To which Queen Elizabeth in augmentation of their livings (they being then called *Petty Canons*) added thirteen shillings four pence *per annum* to each of them, out of the Lands settled on the Colledge by King Edward the Sixth, as appears by the Book of Establishment made by her, among the certain disbursements. And now their yearly Pensions are lately increased by the Colledge to thirty pounds. One of these *Petty Canons* is chosen from among the rest, to be *Sub-Chanter* (and usually the same person is the *Deans Vicar*) to whose duty belongs the cure of Souls, Marrying, Burying, &c.

To these *Petty Canons* it is requisite that we subjoin those, who after the Foundation of the Colledge by King Edward the Third, were took into the Chaire for the service thereof. As first the *Quatuor Clerici*, remembred in the Preface to the *Statutes* of the Colledge, whereof one was to be instituted a *Deacon*, and another a *Sub-Deacon*, before their admission: and these two were next in designation, and accordingly promoted to the *Vicars* places; but for the other two, it was sufficient if they had institution into lesser Orders, in which they were to continue. Each of the two first of these had eight Marks yearly Pension, and the two last but six.

King Edward the Fourth increased their number to thirteen, and allowed them ten pounds *per annum* apiece. The same number do we find mentioned in King Henry the Eighth's *Statutes* of the Order, and by the *Injunctions* 23. Nov. anno 1. E. 6. made by the Kings Commissioners, they were increased to fifteen, but here appointed to be *Laymen*, wearing Surplices in the Chaire, each having an allowance of ten pounds annually for his service.

In

c Art. 3.

Penes Camerarios Scaccarii.

g Colleg. Stat. cap. 3. E. 3. Stat. Art. 4. H. 5. Stat. Art. 4. h Ord. Stat. in i Lib. N. Art. k 4. Colleg. Stat. cap. 11.

l Art. 7.

m Colleg. Stat. c. 18.

n Ibid. c. 3.

o Ex lib. vocati. Demons. f. 177.

p Penes Camerarios Scaccarii.

q Colleg. pref. G. Evans lib. B. f. 85. b.

Four Clerks.

r Colleg. Stat. c. 17.

s Ibid. c. 23.

t Lib. Demons. f. 177. u Art. 13. w Art. 5.

In the 23. Article of the Injunctions, of 28. Feb. an. 4. E. 6. a course is prescribed to bring these fifteen Clerks to twenty, but in ^x Queen Elizabeth's Establishment, they were again reduced to thirteen, which number is yet continued, (one of them being Organist, hath a double Clerks place, and consequently reckoned for two of the thirteen) and an augmentation to each of two pounds thirteen shillings four pence half penny farthing yearly; which being at first opposed by the Dean and Prebends, they at length (anno 5. Eliz.) consented to allow them forty shillings per annum apiece, not out of the New-lands, but out of other payments, which the Dean and Canons should otherwise yearly receive, and ^y anno 1662. increased their annual Pensions to three and twenty pounds apiece.

They are tyed to be ^z present in the Choire at all times of Service, as are the ^z Petty Canons, and under the same forfeitures, ^a nor may they, or the Petty Canons go out of Town, without the Dean's or his Lieutenant's license, nor then neither, above ^b three at once, except for very weighty cause, lest the Choire should be unfurnished of a convenient number, to perform the daily Service.

Secondly, There were appointed for the further service of the Choire ^c six Choristers, and they to be likewise Clerks, or at the time of their admission to have been ^d instituted of the Clerical Order, to each of which was allowed five Marks Sterling annually, or to the value thereof in common Money. And in like manner as the Deacon and Sub-Deacon were placed in the Colledge, only in addition to the Vicars, and designed to succeed them as vacancies hapned, so also were there ^e six secular Children, endued with cleer and tuneable voices, admitted and design'd to succeed the Choristers, when their voices altered.

King Edward the Fourth enlarged the number of Choristers to ^f thirteen, and allowed them annually six Marks apiece, and though this number was confirm'd by ^g King Henry the Eighth's Statutes, yet the ^h Injunctions dated the 8. of Feb. an. 4. E. 6. reduced them to ten, nevertheless by ⁱ Queen Elizabeth's Establishment, the former number of thirteen was restored, and thereby given in augmentation among them all, ^k three pounds eleven shillings eight pence: Howbeit they were since brought to eight, and their present exhibition is twelve shillings a Month to each.

SECT. V.

Of the Alms-Knights.

Pursuing the Order of our Discourse, the Alms-Knights come next to be spoken of, wherein to avoid confusion, we shall consider them, first, under the Foundation of King Edward the Third; Secondly, when separated from that, by Act of Parliament; and lastly, as they were established anew by Queen Elizabeth.

First then, King Edward the Third, out of the great respect he bore to Military honor (of which himself had gain'd a large share) and due regard had of valiant men, chiefly such as had behaved themselves bravely in his Wars, yet afterwards hapned to fall in decay; took care for their relief and comfortable subsistence in old age, by making room for them within this his Foundation, and uniting them under one Corporation and joint Body, with the Custos and Canons; these he called *Milites Pauperes*, and we vulgarly Poor or Alms-Knights, the ordained number being at first but ^l four and twenty, as were the Custos and Canons at the first foundation of the Colledge. But shortly after upon his Instituting the Princely Society of Knights of the most noble Order of the Garter, consisting of six and twenty, there were added two more to the former number (as there was to the first Canons) to make them of like number with the Knights-Companions of that Order; which number of twenty six we after find settled at the Ordination of the Colledge by the ^m Bishop of Winchester the Popes Delegate.

The

The charitable intention of the Royal Founder, was to provide for such only, as were truly objects of Charity, and therefore he describes (even in the Instrument of Foundation) what kind of men they should be, to wit, *Poor Knights, weak in body, indigent and decayed*; and to like effect is their qualification inserted in the *Statutes* of Institution of the most noble Order of the Garter, viz. *such, as through adverse fortune were brought to that extremity, that they had not of their own wherewith to sustain them, or live so gently as became a military condition*; but this being thought not enough, the same is repeated (probably for greater caution) in King Henry the Fifth, and King Henry the Eighth's Statutes to prevent diverting the Founders pious intention, and against admittance of such as are otherwise able to live of themselves; which conjecture is not improbable, because we find the ancient *Statutes* of the Colledge Ordained (as also the Orders of Queen Elizabeth) That in case there should happen to fall to any of the *Alms-Knights* either Lands or Rents, by succession or any other way, to the yearly value of twenty pounds or more; then such Knight should immediately be removed from the Colledge, and made incapable of receiving any profits or emoluments thence, and another *Alms-Knight* preferred into his place.

Their presentation when first admitted, was by the same hands that presented the first *Canons*, viz. Each Knight-Companion of the Order presented his *Alms-Knight*, nevertheless it was then also Ordered, That from thenceforward, every Election should remain at the disposal of the Sovereign of this most noble Order.

To each of these *Alms-Knights* was appointed for their Habit, a Red Mantle, with a Scutcheon of St. George, but without any Garter, to surround the same.

Their Exhibition from the Colledge at first, was twelve pence apiece for every day they were at Service in the Chappel, or abode in the Colledge, and forty shillings per annum for other necessaries; it being the like allowance as was appointed to each of the *Canon-Residents*, which shews the quality and esteem then had of these *Alms-Knights*.

It seems (about the beginning of King Henry the Sixth's Reign) these quotidian distributions, and the forty shillings per annum so assigned them, had been unpaid by reason of some dissensions and quarrels that had risen between the Dean and *Canons*, and *Alms-Knights*; but upon complaint to John Archbishop of York, Lord Chancellor of England, Visitor of the Colledge, by the *Injunctions* issued upon his Visitation anno 10. H. 6. the Arrears of both were appointed to be forthwith paid without charge, and in case the Treasurer of the Colledge became negligent in future payments, he was to incur the loss of his own Quotidians, from the time of his voluntary delay; the same to be divided among the *Alms-Knights*.

Their duty was to attend the Service of God, and pray for the prosperity of the Sovereign and Knights-Companions of the Order, to be every day present at high Mass, the Masses of the Virgin Mary, as also at Vespers and Compline, from the beginning to the end, except any lawful occasion did impede. But it was Ordained that for every days absence from the Chappel, they should be debarred of receiving the twelve pence per diem, and whatsoever was raised from such forfeitures, should be converted to the use of the rest of the *Alms-Knights* then being in the Castle of Windefor.

Notwithstanding which Decree, it appears that the Dean did afterwards take upon him the disposal of these Mulcts at his pleasure, which occasioned the *Alms-Knights* to complain to Adam Lord Bishop of St. Davids, Chancellor of England and Visitor of the Colledge, who among other of his *Injunctions* dated the 8. of October anno 2. R. 2. commanded that the Mulcts should be equally distributed among those *Alms-Knights*, who did attend at Divine Service in the Chappel, as the Statute had enjoined. And besides, the like complaint being made for the Dean's disposing of Donations and other Liberalities of the Knights-Companions, so that the *Alms-Knights* had no part thereof towards their sustentation, this Chancellor also appointed an equal distribution of them among the *Alms-Knights* and *Canons*, until the King and his Council should otherwise determine.

These and other differences between the Dean and *Canons*, and *Alms-Knights*, grew

grew at length so wide, that they could not be reconciled; insomuch as in the Act of Parliament, anno 22. E. 4. for the Incorporation of the *Custos* and *Canons*, by the name of *Dean* and *Canons*, the *Alms-Knights* were not only omitted, but this Clause inserted, ^c That the *Dean* and *Canons*, and their Successors, should for evermore be utterly quit and discharged from all manner of Exhibition or Charge of or for any of the said *Knights*. And this was obtained upon pretence, ^a That the King had greatly increased the number of the *Ministers* of the *Chappel*, so that the Revenue was not sufficient to maintain both them and the *Alms-Knights*, as also ^e that the King had otherwise provided for the *Alms-Knights*. But we elsewhere find some other cause, and this afterwards alledged by the *Dean* and *Canons* in their Answer to the *Knights* Petition for Repeal of the said Act, to wit, ^f That *William Omercy* and *John Kendall*, *Alms-Knights*, laboured much before this Act pass'd, to be incorporate by themselves, to get Lands settled on them, to be exempt from the obedience and rule of the *Dean* and *Canons*, and governed by Ordinances made among themselves.

^c Rot. Parl.
d. anno 22.
^e (E. 4. m. 11.

^f Colled. pref.
G. Evans, lib.
A. ad Calcem.

^g Ex veteri
MS. f. 12.

^h Colled. pref.
G. Evans, lib.
A. f. 76.
ⁱ Ex lib. Den-
onf. 72. b.

^k Ibid. f. 73.

^l Art. 16.

^m Ex vet.
n. MS.

In the second place, this Act being thus obtained, and the *Alms-Knights* divided from the Body of the *Colledge*, as also struck off from the benefit of the *Quotidians*, *Portions*, and *Fees*, assigned by the Foundation of King *Edward* the Third; how they next subsisted doth not fully enough appear: but so soon as King *Henry* the Seventh came to the Crown, ^e they petitioned the King and Parliament, for repeal of the Act anno 22. E. 4. affirming it was gained without their knowledge, or being called thereunto; to which Petition the *Dean* and *Canons* answered, and the *Alms-Knights* replied, but it seems all they could alledge did not induce the Parliament to repeal the Act: but on the contrary the *Dean* and *Canons* some years after obtained an ^h Exemplification thereof under the Great Seal, dated 4. Feb. anno 18. H. 7.

And it is clear from King *Henry* the Eighth's ⁱ Letter to the *Colledge*, which takes notice of their discharge from any exhibition to the *Alms-Knights*, by virtue of the said Act, That what the *Colledge* did in that kind, after this Act pass'd, was meerly upon courtesie, and not obliged thereunto; for He thanks them for granting a Pension of twenty Marks to *Peter Narbone*, whom He had recommended to an *Alms-Knights* place, and promiseth they should be no further burthened with *Alms-Knights*, but that he would settle Lands upon them for their maintenance, and free the *Colledge* from the said Pension.

Besides, when Mr. *Narbone* had the Pension granted him, it was by an ^k Indenture made between *Nicholas West* then *Dean* of *Windefor* and the *Canons* on the one part, and the said *Peter* on the other, dated 18. July anno 3. H. 8. wherein he covenanted, that when the King should settle any Lands on the *Colledge*, for sustentation of such *Knights*, then the grant of the Pension should be void, and of none effect.

In the interval between the disunion of the *Colledge* and *Alms-Knights* by the foresaid Act, to their establishment by Queen *Elizabeth*, their *Habit* and *Badge* continued the same, and was so confirm'd by King *Henry* the Eighth's ^l Statutes: But it may be collected from his last Will, that there was then an intention to draw the *Garter* about the *Scutcheon* of *St. George's Arms*, but it took no effect: We observe also, that in this interval several persons who had been of considerable quality and worth, became *Alms-Knights*, some of them were nevertheless great objects of Charity; among whom was Sir *Robert Champlayne* Knight, a valiant Soldier, and one whose martial services abroad, rendred him an honor to our Nation.

It seems he had taken part in the Civil Wars here, with King *Henry* the Sixth, against King *Edward* the Fourth, shortly after whose coming to the Crown he left *England*, and travelled into ^m Hungary (having with him an Equipage of three Servants and four Horses) where, in the assistance of *Matthias Corvinus* King of Hungary against the *Turk*, he behaved himself bravely, and like a valiant Knight: But ⁿ prosperous Fortune not attending him at all times, he received many wounds, and at length was taken Prisoner, lost all, and forced to pay 1500 Ducates for his Ranfom. For the justification of all which, he obtained ^o several authentick

authentick Testimonies under the Great Seals of *Matthias* King of *Hungary*, *Jerominus* Archbishop of *Crete*, Legate *de Latere* in *Hungary*, *Frederick* the Third Emperor of *Germany*, *Renaud* King of *Sicily* (Father to *Queen Margaret* Wife of our King *Henry* the Sixth) *Frederick* Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, and lastly a Declaration thereof from our King *Edward* the Fourth, under his Privy Seal, dated the third of *April* in the nineteenth year of his Reign. And being reduced to a low condition, by his great lollies and the charge of his Ransom, he was through the favour of King *Henry* the Seventh admitted an *Alms-Knight* here. o Ann. 1. H. 7.

But some others made their retreat hither, and obtained admittance into this Fraternity, probably out of devotion, rather than cause of poverty; and among these were *Thomas Hulme* sometime *Clarenceux* King of Arms, *Lodowick Carly* the Kings Physician, *John Mentis* Secretary of the French Tongue, and *Bartholomew Westby* made second Baron of the *Exchequer* 2. June anno 1. H. 8. p Pat. 22. E. 4.
pary 1. m. 26.
q An. 7. H. 7.
t Pat. 18. H. 7.
p. 1.
t An. 6 H. 8.
t Pat. 1. H. 8.
p. 2. m. 31.
u Ex lib vocat.
Fritib. Avar.
Coll. Windesfor.
p. 55.

It is manifest by the Will of King *Henry* the Eighth (as also by an Indenture Tripartite between King *Edward* the Sixth of the first part, the Executors of his Father of the second part, and the *Dean* and *Canons* of *Windesfor* of the third part, dated the fourth of *August* anno 1. E. 6.) that he intended a re-establishment of half the ancient number of *Alms-Knights*, viz. *Thirteen*, to which end he appointed, that as soon as might be, after his death (if not done in his life time) there should be a Revenue of 600 *l.* per annum in Mannors, Lands, and Spiritual Promotions (above all charges) settled upon the *Dean* and *Canons* and their Successors for ever, upon the Conditions following, that is to say, That the *Dean* and *Canons* should for ever find two *Priests* to say Mass at the Altar neer his Tomb, to keep yearly four solemn Obits for him, and at every Obit to distribute ten pounds in *Alms*, as also to pay twelve pence a day to each of those thirteen *Alms-Knights*, and they to have once in a year, a long Gown of White Cloth, and a Mantle of Red Cloth, besides five Marks annually, to such one among them as should be appointed for their Governor: And lastly, to cause a Sermon to be made at *Windesfor* every Sunday throughout the year.

King *Edward* the Sixth (in performance of this Will) the 7. of *October*, in the first year of his Reign, did settle several Lands upon the Colledge, which we shall mention by and by; immediately after which, the *Dean* and *Canons* were put in possession thereof, and received the Rents: but 600 *l.* per annum of these Rents, were by them paid back at the appointment of the then Lord Treasurer, to be employed in building of Houses for the *Alms-Knights*, intended to be settled as King *Henry* the Eighth designed. w Ibid. p. 57.

But it seems this work was not begun till the last of *February* anno 3. & 4. Ph. & Mar. and finished the 25. of *Sept.* anno 5. & 6. of the same King and Queen, the charge whereof came to 2747 *l.* 7 *s.* 6 *d.* These Houses are situate in the South side of the lower Ward of the Castle, and contain thirteen Rooms, besides a Hall, a Kitchen and Pastry. The Stone for building was brought from *Redding*, the Timber from several places in the *Forest*, and the Lead and Apparels for Chimnies, from *Suffolk* place in *Southwark*. x 5 Lib. Com.
y 2 por. prof.
penes.... Harris
nuper de
Windesfor.

At a Chapter of the Order of the *Garter* held the 1. first of *June* anno 4. & 5. Ph. & Mar. (these Houses being then neer finished) debate was had about placing some *Alms-Knights* therein, if possible by *Michaelmas* following, whereupon it was Ordered, That the *Marquess* of *Winchester* Lord Treasurer, should assign Lands for their maintenance, that not any thing might be wanting to finish so pious a work. And towards the completing of all, the Queen had nominated nine of the thirteen designed *Alms-Knights*, namely *James Crane*, *Michael Whiting*, *Silvester Clessop*, *Hugh Johans*, *Robert Case*, *John Brigby*, *George Fothergill*, *George Thackwell*, and *William Eerd*: but she fell sick of a Fever in *August* following, and so a stop was put to this business. c Lib. vocat.
Fritib. p. 64.
b 2 p. 24.

But now (in the third place) to come to the Establishment, which these *Alms-Knights* obtained, and under which to this present they continue, *Queen Elizabeth*, immediately after her coming to the Crown, confirmed her Sisters Grants to the

d *Ibidem.*

the said nine *Alms-Knights*, and associated unto them ^d *Thomas Kemp, William Barret, William Conper, and John Atton*, to make up the full number of thirteen, ordained by King *Henry the Eighth*.

e *Ex lib. pergam. penes Camerarium. Succ.*

Afterwards, viz. ^e 30. Aug. anno primo *Eliz.* the Queen, minding the continuance of the *Foundation* erected by King *Edward the Third*, and as neer as might be the performance of the intent of her Progenitors, and advancement of the most noble Order of the *Garter*, and especially of the knowledge given her of the last mind and Will of her Father King *Henry the Eighth*, to make a special *Foundation* and continuance of thirteen poor men, decayed in Wars, and such like service of the Realm, to be called *Thirteen Knights of Windesfor*, and kept there in succession: And having also set forth and expressed certain *Orders* and *Rules* for their better *Government*, and declared how and in what manner the profits of certain *Lands*, of the yearly value of 600 l. given and assigned by her Father to the *Dean* and *Canons* and their Successors, should be employed for the maintenance of these *Poor-Knights*, and otherwise according to his mind and will, she lastly declared her pleasure, That the *Dean* and *Canons* and their Successors should for ever cause the said *Orders* and *Rules* to be observed and kept, which are these that follow.

f *Ibidem.*

1. *First, We do establish 13 Poor-Knights, whereof one to be Governor of all the residue by such Order as followeth; The same 13 to be taken of Gentlemen, brought to necessity, such as have spent their times in the service of the Wars, Garrisons, or other service of the Prince, having but little or nothing whereupon to live, to be continually chosen by Us, and our Heirs, and Successors.*
2. *Item, We Ordain, that the Governor and Knights shall be chosen of men unmarried, and shall continue, except in special case, where it shall please Us the Sovereign, and the Heirs, and Successors of Us the Sovereign Kings of this Realm, to dispense with any person to the contrary. Provided nevertheless, if any of them will marry, he may so do, losing his place at the day of his Marriage.*
3. *Item, We Ordain, that no man defamed, and convicted of Herefse, Treason, Felony, or any notable Crime, shall be admitted to any Room of the said 13 Knights, and if any so admitted be afterwards convicted of any such Crime, he shall be expelled out of that company, and lose his Room.*
4. *Item, The same 13 Knights to have yearly for their Liveries, each of them one Gown of 4 yards of the colour of Red, and a Mantle of Blue, or Purple Cloth, of five yards, at six shillings eight pence the yard.*
5. *Item, The Cross of St. George in a Scutcheon, embroidered without the Garter, to be set upon the left shoulder of their Mantles.*
6. *Item, The charges of the Cloth, and of the Lying, making, and embroidering, to be paid by the Dean and Chapter, out of the Revenue of that foundation, and endowment given for that and other causes.*
7. *Item, The said 13 Knights to come together before Noon, and afternoon daily, at all the Divine Service, said within the Colledge, in their ordinary Apparel, and to continue to the end of the same Service, without a reasonable lett, to be allowed by the Governor.*
8. *Item, The said 13 Knights shall keep their Lodgings appointed unto them, and their Table together in their common Hall appointed, and to have their provisions made by their common Purse, except for any reasonable cause, any of them be licensed to the contrary, by the Dean or his Deputy, and that License to endure not above 20 days in no year, except it be for sickness only.*
9. *Item, The said 13 Knights shall not haunt the Town, the Ale-houses, the Taverns, nor call any Woman into their Lodgings, without it be upon a reasonable cause, and that with the License of the Dean or his Deputy.*
10. *And further, We will that 12 of the said Knights shall be obedient to the thirteenth, appointed for the Governor, and all 13 shall be obedient to the Dean and Chapter, in the observation of these Statutes, for the good Order of themselves.*

11. *Item,*

11. Item, *The said 12 Knights shall be placed within the Church where the Dean and Canons shall think best, to hear the Divine Service together, where they shall least trouble the Ministers of the Church.*
12. Item, *They shall be present at the Service, to be done quarterly for the memory of the Patrons and Founders of the said Colledge, and specially of our said dear Father and Us, and have for every of them at each time 20 d. and the Governor 2 s. The said Service shall be used at the four quarters of the Year, every Sunday next before the Quarter-day; That is to say, the Sunday next before the Feast of the Annunciation of our blessed Lady, the Sunday before the Nativity of St. John Baptist, the Sunday before the Feast of St. Michael the Archangel, and the Sunday before the Nativity of our Lord God.*
13. Item, *If any of the 12 Knights do not obey the Governor in the observation of these Statutes, he shall sustain for every time of such disobedience, such forfeiture as the Dean and Chapter shall put on him. The Governor shall make report of all such disobedience and other Offences committed by any of the said Knights to the Dean and Chapter; and if the offence be such, as shall seem to them to require such punishment, they shall besides a pain Arbitrary, give a warning to the Offender, causing the same to be registered, and he that shall so twice be warned by them, shall immediately upon the third offence, be expelled for ever out of that company. And if the Governor disobey the Dean and Chapter in the Observation of the said Statutes, upon such warning by them, he shall receive like punishment as the other twelve.*
14. Item, *The Penalties of such as are punished by the Dean and Chapter for not observing of these Statutes, shall be employed, by the discretion of the Dean and Chapter, upon any of the Ministers or Choristers of the Church where they think best.*
15. Item, *When it shall please God, that We, or our Successors, Kings of this Realm, shall repair to the Castle of Windesfor, the said 12 Knights shall stand before their doors in their Apparel, to do their obedience unto Us, then, at the coming and going away.*
16. Item, *Yearly at the keeping of the Feast of St. George, they shall stand likewise in their Apparel, before their doors, at the coming and going out of the Lieutenant, and of the other Knights of the Order, chosen for the keeping of that Feast.*
17. Item, *When any Feast of St. George is kept within that Castle of Windesfor, the Governor and Knights at the Dinner, shall sit together in their Apparel, as aforesaid, at one Table, and have allowance of meat and drink, at the charges of Us, our Heirs, and Successors.*
18. Item, *The said 12 Knights shall daily in their Prayers, pray for Us the Sovereign, our Heirs and Successors, and for the Companions of our said Order of the Garter.*
19. Item, *The said 12 Knights shall all lye within their Lodgings provided for them, and if any of them shall lye without their said Lodgings, and the Colledge, without the license of the Dean, or his Deputy, he shall lose for every time twelve pence.*
20. Item, *If any of the Poor-Knights, after his admission into that room, shall have Lands or Revenues fall unto him to the yearly value of 20 l. or upwards, he shall immediately upon the coming of such Lands or Revenues unto him, be removed, and put from his said room of a Poor-Knight, and another, such as aforesaid, taken into his place.*
21. Item, *The said Poor-Knights (excepting cause of sickness) shall be every day present in the Colledge, at Church at Divine Service as is aforesaid, and receive there for a daily distribution of twelve pence by the day, to be paid them Monthly, if it may be, or at least in such sort as the other Ministers of the Chappel be paid; and he that shall be absent from the Church one day without leave of the Dean or his Deputy, shall lose his distribution of 12 d. aforesaid.*
22. Item, *The Governor shall keep a Book, and therein note aswell the absence of every Knight from the Church, as other faults committed by them, punishable*

- by these Statutes, whereof he shall deliver one to the Dean or his Deputy, and another to the Steward, or him that payeth the Poor-Knights, who by order of the Dean or his Deputy, shall default at the time of their pay such sums as are set upon any of the said Knights for Penalties as aforesaid.
23. Item, The Dean or his Deputy shall once in the year at least, appoint a day and hour, at the which the Poor-Knights shall be warned to be present, unto whom the said Dean or his Deputy, or one of the Commons to be appointed by the Dean, or in his absence by his Deputy, shall read these Statutes, and if any of the Knights, being warned, shall be absent from that reading, without license of the said Dean or his Deputy, he shall lose for every time of such absence, six shillings eight pence.
24. Item, The Poor-Knights so chosen, as is aforesaid, and every of them, before he take any commodity of his Room, shall give a corporal Oath before the Dean or his Deputy, to be faithful, and true to Us, and to our Heirs, and Successors, Kings of this Realm, and that he or they for the time of their tarrying there, shall truly observe these Statutes and Ordinances, so far as the same concerneth them, or such other as shall be hereafter made by Us, or our Heirs, and Successors, touching the good order of that Company, upon the pains contained in the said Statutes.
25. Item, Notwithstanding the Article before expressed, prescribing the aforesaid number to be chosen of Gentlemen, which we do most allow, yet considering that before the perfection of these Orders, we be advertised, that the more part of them now chosen, and admitted, be not certainly known Gentlemen, were received into the same Order, as men well reported for honesty, and thought meet to be relieved for their poverty, we are pleased to dispence with all such, as are presently placed, being not Gentlemen born, and hereafter mean in that point, not to have any admitted, contrary to the said Order.

The annual allowance to each of these *Alms-Knights* upon this new Establishment is 18 l. 5 s. 0 d. to be paid by the Dean of Windesfor (but their Governor hath 3 l. 6 s. 8 d. more) besides a Gown or Surcoat of Red Cloth, and a Mantle of Blue or Purple Cloth, on the left sleeve whereof is embroidered the Arms of St. George in a plain Scutcheon. King James was pleased to double this Pension,

q *Homes Chron.* viz. to each of them 18 l. 5 s. 0 d. more, and made it payable out of the Exchequer by quarterly payments.

To these thirteen *Alms-Knights* there was added, in the Reign of the late Sovereign King Charles the First of ever blessed memory, five more; to wit, two of the Foundation of Sir Peter la Maire Knight, and three of Sir Francis Crane Knight, sometime Chancellor of this most noble Order.

h *Ex lib. vocat. Audely in Officio Prætoris Cant. f. 7.*

For Sir Peter la Maire, by his^h last Will and Testament, bearing date the eighth of January anno 1631. bequeathed the sum of 1500 l. to be bestowed and settled to and for such charitable and pious uses, and in such manner and form as Sir Francis Crane (who had married his Sister) should think fit and appoint, within four years after his death.

i *lib. R. 1. 115.*

Afterwards Sir Francis determining (very greatly to his own Fame and the honor of the Order) to erect certain Houses in Windesfor Castle, for the dwelling of five *Alms-Knights*, did thereupon design the said 1500 l. towards that use, and added also money of his own to make up the rest; charging his Executor [Sir Richard Crane his Brother, afterwards created Baronet] by his^k Will, dated the 27. of August, anno 1635. to see the buildings, which himself had begun, finished. He also bequeathed for ever two hundred pounds per annum, to be settled in Lands by his Executor, according to the advice and direction of Thomas then Earl of Arundel and Surrey, and Henry Lord Matrevers his eldest Son, to serve for the perpetual maintenance of five *Alms-Knights*, after the rate of forty pounds per annum to every one of them.

k *Lib. vocat. Pyle in Officio præd. f. 105.*

But his Executor growing slack in the performance of this, the work being rather exposed to ruine than any way forwarded by him, by whom the same was only expected to be finished; and complaints thereof several times made to the

Sove-

sovereign and Knights-Companions in Chapter, ¹Orders were issued thereupon to quicken him, and a ^mperemptory Letter sent him, dated the 7. of *Murch* 1639. to go on with the work forthwith; which commands he evading, and bad times growing on, the building was wholly neglected.

Sir Richard Crane afterwards dying, by his ⁿWill dated, the 20. of *Sept.* 1645. appointed that his Mannor of *Carbrooke* in *Norfolk*, should for ever stand bound for the payment of the said 200 *l. per annum*, whereupon by an Inquisition taken at *Windsor*, 4. *Mar.* 1652. by virtue of a Commission upon the Statute, anno 43. *Eliz.* for charitable uses, the Mannors of *Woodrising* and *Wesfield*, with other Lands in the County of *Norfolk* were found liable to satisfy for building and finishing the said five Houses, and payment of the 200 *l. yearly*; and further, that the Arrears thereof from Sir Francis Crane's death, came at that time to 3200 *l.*

Some contest then ensued in the Court of *Chancery*, between *Ralph Mabb*, with other Prosecutors on the *Alms-Knights* behalf, and *William Crane* Esquire (to whom the Estate of Sir Richard Crane fell) nevertheless the 200 *l. per annum* was (19. *July* 1655.) Decreed to be paid out of all the Lands which were Sir Richard Cranes, and the building of the Houses out of his personal Estate. And upon this (about two years after) that fair pile of Building, erected between the *Chancellor's* and *Garter's Towers*, against the West wall in the lower Ward of the Castle, was taken again in hand, and finished in the following year; the charge whereof amounted to 1700 *l.*

But for a final end of the Sute it was Decreed, the 27. of *January* 1659. That the before mentioned Mannor of *Carbrook* should for ever stand charged with 200 *l. per annum*, to be paid half yearly at *Michaelmas* and our *Lady-day*, or within thirty days after, for the perpetual maintenance of five *Alms-Knights*, together with 30 *l. yearly* for repairs, payable at the foresaid times, and an assurance thereof to be made accordingly: towards the recovery and settling of which, the care and assistance of Sir *Bulstrode Whiteloke* (then *Constable* of the Castle of *Windsor*) was not wanting.

The settlement being perfected, the present sovereign, in a Chapter held at *Whitehall* the 14. of *January* anno 12. *Car. 2.* Decreed, That the *Chancellor* of the Order for the time being, should receive the said annual sum of 230 *l.* and dispose thereof thus; 200 *l. per annum* among the five new-instituted *Alms-Knights* quarterly, by even and equal portions, at the four usual Feasts of the year, and to employ the residue (being 30 *l. per annum*) upon repair of the new buildings, erected for their Lodgings, which powers were inserted into the Patent for his Office, bearing date the 20. of the same Month.

And it was further decreed at the same Chapter, That these five *Alms-Knights* should be subject to the same Rules and Government, under which the other thirteen were established by *Queen Elizabeth's* Foundation, and made equal partakers of the same Priviledges, and have the like Habit assigned to them.

The number of *Alms-Knights* being by the donation of Sir Francis Crane, increased to eighteen. King *Charles* the First of ever blessed memory, taking notice thereof (though they were not yet settled) intended to make them up six and twenty, as they were at the Institution of the Order; to which end, in a Chapter held at *Whitehall* the 18. of *April* 1637. it was Ordered, ^p That the Knights-Companions (Commissioners for other affairs of the Order) should consider of the best way how the same might be effected, and report their opinions to the then Sovereign: But nothing being done thereupon, this Affair yet waits a more propitious season for the completing thereof.

Lib. R. p. 140.
m Sir James
Palmer's Jour-
nal pro anno
1639 p. 64.
n Vide lib. vo.
cat. Aylet in
Officio præd.
f. 186.

p Lib. R.
p. 121.

SECT. VI.

Of other Ministers of the Colledge.

IN the last place, the *Ministri* or *Officers* of the Colledge and Chappel of St. George, bring up the rear in the Patent of Foundation, under which Title are comprehended, first, the Superior Officers, namely the *Chantor*, *Steward*, and *Treasurer*.

Chantor. The *Chantor* is ordained to be chosen from among the *Canons*, the chief part of whose Office is to govern those that sing in the Chaire, and such as are employed about Divine Service: Before the Reformation in Religion, he appointed who of them should begin the Antiphones, celebrate the Masses, and read the Lessons, Epistles, and Gospels; with these, to his care was committed the custody of the Books, Crosses, Chalice, Vestments, and all the sacred Ornaments of the Chappel. He receives the Offerings there made, and accompts for them, for all which service an annual Pension of 5 l. is allowed him.

Steward. The *Steward* and *Treasurer* are annually chosen on the morrow after Michaelmas-day, from out of the *Canon-Residents*. To the *Stewards* Office belongs the Government of all the Revenue of the Colledge; the Rents and Profits arising thence, he is to pay to the *Treasurer*: To his keeping is delivered all the Ornaments, Jewels, and other Treasure of the Chappel, not committed to the *Chantor*, under the obligation of rendring an account, and his yearly Pension is 5 l.

Treasurer. The *Treasurer* is appointed to distribute to the *Custos*, *Canons*, *Vicars* and every other *Minister* of the Chappel, the Pensions and Allowances assigned to them, of which if he fail eight days after the expiration of their set times of payment, he is debar'd of his own Quotidians, as *Canon-Resident*, until such Arrears be discharged, so also the *Steward* if he be faulty herein. The Pension allowed him is also 5 l. per annum.

As there is one *Treasurer* who receives the Rents of the Old Lands, so was there appointed another distinct from the former, and chosen from among the *Canons* to receive the Rent of the New (within few years after they were settled on the Colledge) to whom the like annual Pension of 5 l. hath been also allowed. The Title of the former being *senescallus veteris Dotationis*, and of the latter *senescallus novæ Dotationis*.

Steward of the Courts. There is also the *Steward of the Courts*, and *Clerk of the Lands*, which is an Officer under both the before mentioned Stewards: He keeps the Courts by himself or Deputy, he is a Barraster at Law, and the standing Council for the Colledge; his yearly Pension is twenty Nobles; but the Council in *spiritualibus*, is usually a Graduate in the Civil Law.

Chapter-Clark. The *Chapter-Clerks* Office, or *Registership*, is to enter or register all Acts agreed upon in the Chapter-house, he also draws, ingrosseth, and registreth all Indentures, Patents, Grants, Leases, and other Writings, which pass under the common Seal of the Dean and *Canons*. His Pension is 3 l. 6 s. 8 d. per annum. The *Under Stewardship* and *Chapter-Clarks* went sometimes heretofore together, but of late they are divided, and now this Officer is also a Barraster at Law.

Vergers. Of the *Vergers* Institution the *Statutes* of the Colledge take notice, and appoint that in the Chappel at Processions and other Solemnities, he shall go before the Dean and *Canons* bearing his Rod: for which service there was then allowed him annually one Robe, and six pence per diem. And besides these Officers, there are two *Sextons*, two *Bell-ringers*, a *Clock-keeper*, and a *Porter*, who attends the shutting and opening of the Gates.

Sextons.
Bell-ringers.
Clock-keeper.
Porter.

SECT. VII.

Of the Endowment of the Colledge.

OUR brief account relating to the *Dean, Canons*, and other *Members* of the *Colledge*, being now dispatch'd, it follows that we treat of the *Endowment* thereof, and shew what *Lands* were given towards the maintenance and support of this Foundation. But because we intend no other account here, than in that of the *Castle, Chappel, and Colledge*, which was but short; we will only set down what *Lands, &c.* the *Founder* endowed the *Colledge* with, and then touch upon those other considerable additions made by some of his Successors, *Sovereigns* of the most noble *Order* of the *Garter*, and of the *Knights-Companions*, referring the rest (after a bare mention of some other that were taken into the first Foundation) to the larger discourse which we intend hereafter to make publick.

The Endowments wherewith King *Edward the Third* invested this *Colledge* by his Letters Patent of Foundation before mentioned, were: first the^a Advowsons of the Churches of *Wypradesbury* (vulgarly called *Rasbury*) in the Diocess of *Lincoln*, of *Southanton* in the Diocess of *Exeter*, and of *Uttorater* in the Diocess of *Coventry* and *Lichfield*. These he gave to the *Custos, Canons, Alms-Knights* and *Ministers* of the *Colledge*, to hold in free, pure and perpetual Alms, throughly and perpetually, free from all secular exactions, with license to appropriate the same to the *Colledge*, notwithstanding the Statute of *Mortmain*.^b He thereby also appointed so much of his Treasure as should be for their decent support, until he had settled an immoveable estate of 1000*l.* per annum upon them in *Lands, Benefices, or Rents*.

But as for two of these Advowsons, namely *Uttorater* and *Southanton*, 'tis to be doubted there was afterwards discovered some defect in the Kings Title to them, and that the right of Patronage lay rather in *Henry Earl of Lancaster*, and *Thomas Earl of Warwick*: for the 18. of June anno 23. E. 3. the King granted special Licence to *Henry Earl of Lancaster* that he should give and assign to the *Custos and Chaplains* of the *Chappel* of *St. George* in *Windesfor*, and their Successors for ever, the^c Advowson of the Church of *Uttorater*, it being there said to be of the Earls proper Patronage. And the like license to *Thomas Beauchamp Earl of Warwick*, for assigning to them the^d Advowson of the Church of *Southanton*, that being of his Patronage also: The King gave special license likewise to receive these Advowsons from these Earls, and to appropriate them to the use of the *Colledge*.

Another like license pass'd (e 26. Jan. anno 24. E. 3.) to *William de Bohun Earl of Northampton*, that enabled him to assign to the said *Custos and Chaplains* and their Successors, the^f Advowson of the Church of *Dadyngton* in the County of *Oxford*, which he held of the King in *Capite*, with license for them to receive and appropriate the same.

The 28. of January following, this royal *Founder* gave unto the *Custos and Colledge*, by the name of *Custos and Chaplains* of his Free Chappel of *Windesfor*, one Messuage, seventeen Acres of Land, one Acre of Pasture, and three shil. lings Rent, with the appurtenances, lying in *Wypradesbury* in the County of *Buckingham*, which had been conveyed to him by *Rich. de Gloucester* Heir to *Isibell de Ditton*. And on the 22. of May ensuing, he also granted unto them, the^h Advowson of the Church of *Datchet* neer *Windesfor*, with license to appropriate it to them and their Successors.

In the following year (*primo Martii*) the King gave them theⁱ Advowsons of the Churches of *Eure* in *Buckinghamshire*, of *Riston* in the County of *Norfolk*, and of *Whaddon* and *Carton* in the County of *Cambridge*, to appropriate these also to them and their Successors. And the 9. of May after he likewise granted and assigned to them, the^k Advowson of the Churches of *Symondesbourn* (which

^a Pat. de an.
22. E. 3.
part. 1. m. 6.

^c Pat. 23. E.
3. p. 2 m. 7.

^e Pat. 24. E.
3. p. 1. m. 37

^g Pat. 24. E. 3.
p. 1. m. 36.

^h Pat. 24. E. 3.
p. 1. m. 14.

ⁱ Pat. 25. E. 2.
p. 1. m. 24.

^k Pat. de eod.
an p. 1. m. 14.

(which the Colledge in the Reign of King Edward the Fourth surrendered to Richard Duke of Gloucester) and of St. Stephens of **Saltrath**, with like license of Appropriation. But the first of these was the gift of Queen *Philippa*, the having purchased it of Sir *John Darcy* Knight; and the other of *Edward* the black Prince; and both granted by them, first to the King, that by his Grant afterwards to the Colledge, its Title might be better strengthened.

The 26. of October in the same year, the King granted to the said *Custos* and Colledge and their Successors, ^mone hundred Marks per annum, to be received out of the Farm of the Town of Northampton; and paid them by the hands of the Bailiff of that Town for the time being, at *Easter* and *Michaelmas* by equal portions, towards their sustentation and maintenance, and the supportation of the burthen of the Chappel.

It was at the instance of the Founder (and therefore we mention it here) That the Bailiffs and Communality of **Harmouth** granted to the Colledge (the first of April anno 26. E. 3.) under their Common-Seal, a Last of Red Herrings yearly, well dried and cleaned; to the end they might take this Corporation into their Prayers. But some say it was enjoined them as a Penance, for murdering a Magistrate among them.

Moreover the Founder granted to them and their Successors (18. July anno 26. F. 3.) the Mannor of **Eure** near *Weybrigg*, with its appurtenances in *Buckinghamshire*, the Mannor of **Craftwell**, with its appurtenances in the Parish of *Bray*, in the County of *Berks*, and a certain **Meate**, called *Braybrook*, placed in the River of *Thames*, with all the Lands and Tenements in the said Parish conveyed unto him by Sir *John Philibert*, together with the Knights Fees, and Advowsons of Churches, Chappels, Chantries, and other things whatsoever, to the said Mannors, Lands and Tenements belonging or appertaining. And the 23. of February following, a Writ issued to *Henry de Greystock* Clerk, Steward of the Lands set apart for the use of the Kings Chamber, and to *Robert de Haddon* Escaetor of the same Lands, to give full seisin to the *Custos* and Colledge of these Mannors of *Eure* and *Bray St. Philebert*, as also of a Wood called **Temple-Wood** in *Stoke-pugeys*, conveyed to the King by *John de Molyns*.

Afterwards, the King considering, that all the Lands he had assigned for support of this Colledge, were yet too little for that end; and being desirous to have it better provided for, he further granted to the *Custos* and Colledge and their Successors by like Letters Patent, a Pension of one hundred pounds yearly out of his Exchequer. These Letters Patent were afterwards vacated, for that by other like Letters dated the 12. of May anno 34. E. 3. he gave them Lands to the yearly value of ¹101 l. 11 s. 11 d. of the possessions of *Religious Aliens*, which fell into his hands, by occasion of the French Wars. One hundred pounds per annum part of this, was in recompence of the said 100 l. yearly Pension issuing out of the Exchequer, and the 1 l. 11 s. 11 d. in part of satisfaction of the Lands, which the King intended to provide for the further maintenance of the Colledge; nevertheless he thereby also granted, that in case these Possessions should by Treaty of Peace or otherwise be restored, they should then receive the said yearly sum of 101 l. 11 s. 11 d. out of his Exchequer as before, until there was provided for them Lands of the like annual value.

And whereas in the Patent of Foundation it is said, that the King designed to settle upon the Colledge Lands of the value of 1000 l. per annum; now in another Letters Patent bearing Teste the said 12. of May, there is notice taken only of Lands of the annual value of ¹655 l. 15 s. 0 d. (as if his intended Donation had extended to Lands of no greater value) and that the King in pursuance of such his purpose, had already provided Lands and other Possessions, rated at 604 l. 5 s. 3 d. per annum, the residue to make up the intended sum here express, being but 51 l. 9 s. 9 d. He thereupon appointed the Colledge to receive that sum yearly out of 126 l. 0 s. 0 d. which the Prior of *Takkele* paid to him for the Farm of that Priory, it being then in the Kings hands by reason of the War with France: Howbeit in case Peace was so concluded, that the same should be restored to the Prior, the King then further granted, that the *Custos* and Colledge should thence-

1 Ibidem.

m Pat. 25. E. 3.
p. 3. m. 15.

n Ex ipso Autograph. in Archivis hujus Collegii.

h Pat. 26. E. 3.
p. 15. m. 1.p Claus. 27.
E. 3. m. 25.q Pat. 28. E. 3.
p. 2. m. 22.r s Pat. 34. E.
(p. 1. m. 13)t s
1 Ibid.
w l

thenceforward receive the said sum of 51 l. 9 s. 9 d. out of his Exchequer, at *Michaelmas* and *Easter*, by even Portions.

But it seems the Lands fell short of the value rated at in this Account, and reached not to the total of the Kings intended Endowment by 90 l. *per annum*: For the first of *June* in the following year, by other Letters Patent, he granted to the *Custos* and *Colledge*, so much money to be annually paid them out of his Exchequer (to make up what yet fell short) until he should cause to be provided Lands or Rents of that value, to be settled on them and their Successors.

Lastly, the 2. of *April* anno 39. E. 3. the *Founder* bestowed on them a piece of ground in *New-Windesfor* (upon which had stood a House sometime of *John de London*) in lieu of the great Garden lying on the South part of the *Castle*, formerly given them by him, for the use of the *Custos* and *Canons*. And also a Garden opposite thereunto, on the other side of the way, with its appurtenances, for the use of the *Alms-Knights*, *Vicars*, *Clerks*, *Choristers*, and other the *Officers* of the *Colledge*; and herewith he closed his Endowments.

But besides all these Donations made by the *Founder*, to the *Custos*, *Colledge*, and their *Successors*, there were other Lands, Parsonages, Pensions, and Portions given to them by pious and devout persons, in free, pure, and perpetual Alms for ever, towards their sustentation, which are said to be taken into the first Foundation, and made up that Revenue, which *William* Bishop of *Winchester*, accounted and declared sufficient for the maintenance of the *Custos* and those other of the *Colledge*, according to the number by him limited in the *Colledge* Statutes, as also for the due defraying of all charges imposed upon them, and these we shall let pass with the bare mention only.

The *Mannor* of *Dobington Castle*, two Pastures called *Frith* and *Abercroft*, the Chappel of *Langeley*, the Parsonages of *Ecriton*, *Langeley-Baries*, *Wanpynge*, *Shalveborne*, *Medonbeek*, *Glynde*, and *Rydepe*, the Pensions of the Vicarages of *Wanpynge*, *Clype*, *Clytebe*, and *Cottesford*, and the Portions of *Baepyngeborne*, *Predetwpe*, in *Haleley magna*, *Chalgrave*, *Adewelle*, *Alton*, *Bowband*, *Sebyngdon*, *Ryngelston*, and *Henton*, in *Stoke-Basset*, and *Cloperote*, in *Gatehampton*, *Whitchebyrche*, *Wapleberham*, *Ketherfeld*, *Etchenrith*, *Strettham*, of *Chernewroft* in *Letherbed*, of *Cotynbeek* in *Wodesdon*, *Ebyngton*, *Woodmerthorne*, of *Korham*, *Ethorpe*, *Kewenham*, and in *Collesworth*.

In following times, there were many other considerable Donations bestowed on the *Colledge*, by the succeeding *Sovereigns* and *Knights-Companions* of the *Order* (for as to what was given by others, we shall not need to take further notice of now) either out of devotion, or desire to be more especially taken into their Prayers, or in honor to the Military Order; some of which, as they fall into our way, we will here set down.

King *Richard* the Second, Grandchild and Successor to the *Founder* (13. Feb. anno Regni sui 13.) gave to the *Custos* and *Canons* one Croft in the Town of *Northmolton*, together with the Advowson of that Church, it being in the Diocess of *Exeter*, and license to appropriate the same.

John Duke of *Bedford*, third Son to King *Henry* the Fourth, bestowed on this *Colledge*, by his Deed dated the 3. of *December* anno 9. H. 5. the *Priory* of *Okeborne* in the County of *Wilts* (a Cell to the Abbey of *Bec* in *Normandy*) together with all and singular the Possessions thereunto belonging or appertaining. This Grant King *Henry* the Fifth confirmed, and that it might be more valid, was likewise confirmed by King *Edward* the Fourth.

King *Edward* the Fourth had a singular respect and favour for this *Colledge*, to which, the 18. of *July* in the seventh year of his Reign, towards augmentation of its maintenance, and ease of the great burthens of the *Dean* and *Canons*, he gave the *Mannors* of *Atherston* in the County of *Warwick* (a member of the *Priory* of *Okeborne*) the *Mannors* and Advowsons of the Churches of *Cheshingbury* in *Wiltshire*, and of *Quarfe* in *Hantsire*, the Church and Priorate of *Appaben*, and the Deanry or Chappel of *St. Burien* in *Cornwall*, with all rights and appurtenances thereunto appertaining, as also an annual Pension which

the Abbot of *Sautre* paid for the Church of *Fulburne* to the Abby *de bonà Requie*, and another annual *Pension* of 20*l.* paid by the Abbot of *Rousford* for the mediety of the Church of *Rotheram*.

i Pat. 13. E. 4.
p. 2. m. 6.

The 29. of *January* anno regni sui 13. he gave the ⁱ Mannor or Priorate of *Bunclane* in the County of *Hereford* (parcel of the possessions belonging to the *Priories Alien*) with all and singular its appurtenances.

k Pat. 14. E. 4.
p. 2. m. 5.

The following year (*viz.* 27. of *February*) he granted to them, by the name of *Custos* or *Dean* and *Chapter* of this Colledge, the ^k Custody, Patronage, and free disposition of the Hospital or Free-Chappel of *St. Anthony's London* (a Preceptory of the Monastery of *St. Anthony* at *Vienna*) with all the Liberties, Privileges, Lands, Rents, Services, and Emoluments whatsoever thereunto belonging, upon the first vacancy, whether it should happen by death, resignation, or otherwise.

l Pat. 14. E. 4.
p. 1. m. 1.

He also gave them (the 17. of *May* ensuing) the ^l Priorate of *Brimfield* in the County of *Gloucester*, the Mannor of *Blakenham* in the County of *Suffolk* (parcel of the Priory of *Okeburne*) the Priorate of *St. Elene* in the Isle of *Wight* in *Hampshire*, the Priorate or Mannor of *Charleton* in *Wiltshire*, and all the Lands, Tenements, Rents, and Services in *Northampton*, *Compton*, and *Wilegh* in the Counties of *Sussex* and *Southampton* (which sometime belonged to the Abbey of *Lucerne* in *Normandy*) the Mannor of *Ponnyngton* and *Wedon* in the County of *Dorset* (parcel of the possessions of *Okeburne Priory*) one annual *Pension* of twelve Marks, payable by the Prior of the Priory of *Monte-Acut*, together with all and singular the Lands, Tenements, Rents, Advowsons, Liberties, &c. annexed to the said Priorates and Mannors, or in any manner appertaining, with license to appropriate the same to them and their Successors.

m Ibidem.

About two Moneths after, this King gave also to the Colledge, the ^m Mannor of *Bembury* in *Devonshire*, and Lordships of *Preston* and *Monte-Alber* in the County of *Somerset*, the Advowsons of the Churches of *Purton*, and *Wollavington* in the said County (being parcel of the Priory of *Colahys* in *Wales*, and one of the Priors Aliens) together with the Knights Fees, Advowsons, Profits, Rights, &c. thereunto belonging.

n Ex ipso Autogr. in A. rat. Colleg. Windesor.

In the 18. year of his Reign, the Queen, *Thomas* Archbishop of *York*, and several Bishops, Noblemen and others, being seised to the use of the King his Heirs and Successors of the ⁿ Mannor of *Wykecombe* called *Baileysbury*, the Fee Farm of the Town of great *Wykecombe*, the Mannor of *Crendon* in the County of *Buckingham*, and of the Mannors of *Bateley* and *Pyrtan* in the County of *Oxford*, parcel of the Lands of the Dutchy of *Lancaster*, they (at the special command of the King) demised and granted the premises with all their appurtenances to the *Custos* or *Dean* and *Canons* and their Successors, until such time as the King, his Heirs or Successors should grant to them other Lands of the like yearly value.

o Pat. 18. E. 4.
p. 2. m. 4.

The 17. of *February* following, this King gave them the ^o Advowson of the Church of *Chestunt*, being of his own Patronage, with license to appropriate the same, provided the Vicarage were sufficiently endowed, and a competent sum of money annually distributed among the poor Parishioners, according to the Diocefan's Ordinance, and form of the *Statute* in such case provided.

This King the 21. of *February* following united the Custody or Deanry of the Free Chappel of *Wolberhampton* in the County of *Stafford*, to the *Custos* or *Dean* of this Colledge, and his Successors for ever. This Church *cum membris* is exempt not only from the Jurisdiction of the Bishop of *Lichfield* and *Coventry*, but (by a Papal Bull) from all his Legates, and Delegates; nor is it subject to any terrene power but the Majesty of *England*, and under it, to the perpetual visitation of the Keepers of the Great Seal *pro tempore*.

q Pat. 20. E. 4.
p. 2. m. 23.

He likewise gave them the ^q Advowson or Patronage of the Prebend of *Emern* in the County of *Dorset*, the 27. of *Sept.* in the 20. year of his Reign, with all its rights and appurtenances, and also a license of appropriation.

r Pat. 21. E. 4.
p. 3. m. 3.

And lastly, the 21. of *November* in the ensuing year, he granted to them two parts of the ^r Mannors of *Old-Stratford* and *Gannow* in the County of *Worcester*,

Worcester, and the Reversion of the third part of them after the death of *Margaret Wife of Fulk Stafford* Esquire; with the Advowson of the Church of *Old-Swynford*.

These were the effects of this most noble and munificent Princes piety and liberality towards this Colledge: Nor was he alone bountiful, but excited others to be so likewise, and to that purpose, in the first year of his Reign, ^{Cart. an. 1. F. 47m. 20.} licensed all his Subjects in general to give what Lands, Rents, or Advowsons they pleased, to the *Dean and Canons*, within the value of 300 Marks *per annum*, as well such as they held of the King *in Capite*, or in *Burgage*, or otherwise, as any other Land; the same to be united and appropriated to the Colledge and its uses perpetually, notwithstanding the *statute of Mortmain*; and afterwards increased this license to Lands of the value of 500 l. a year (but King *Henry the Eighth* extended the like license to the value of 1000 l. *per annum*.)

Hereupon shortly after, to wit, *June 29. anno Regni sui 20.* he granted license to *John Duke of Suffolk* and *Elizabeth his Wife the Kings Sister*, to give and assign unto them the Mannor or Lordship of *Grobybury* otherwise called *Leighton-Busard* with its appurtenances in the County of *Bedford*, the Church of *Cin-tagell* in *Cornwall*, with all its emoluments; as also 19 Messuages, 7 Tofts, 140 Acres of Land, 14 Acres of Meadow, 140 Acres of Pasture, 100 Acres of Wood, and 4 l. Rent, with their appurtenances in *Newford* and *Blanford* in the County of *Dorset*. And 70 Messuages, 12 Tofts, 500 Acres of Land, 100 Acres of Meadow, 300 Acres of Pasture, 100 Acres of Wood, and 100 shillings Rent, with the appurtenances in *Stokeley*, *Northall*, *Edelesburgh*, and *Rodenach* in *Buckinghamshire*. And 20 Messuages, 8 Tofts, 300 Acres of Land, 60 Acres of Meadow, 200 Acres of Pasture, 40 Acres of Wood, and 20 shillings Rent, with the appurtenances in *Compton-St. John* in the County of *Suffex*. And 10 Messuages, 9 Tofts, 200 Acres of Land, 20 Acres of Meadow, 100 Acres of Pasture, 10 Acres of Wood, and 20 shillings Rent, with the appurtenances in *Portsmouth* and *Burgbegge* in *Hampshire*. And one Messuage, 3 Tofts, 60 Acres of Land, 6 Acres of Meadow, 40 Acres of Pasture, and 20 shillings Rent, with the appurtenances in *Stodeham* in the County of *Hertford*, held of the King *in Capite*; notwithstanding the *statute of Mortmain*, or any other restriction or proviso whatsoever.

We shall here note, that the 24. of *July anno 18. E. 4.* this * Duke of *Suffolk* ^{Lib. Denton. f. 148.} infessed *Richard Duke of York*, *Thomas Bishop of Lincoln*, and others, of the Mannor of *Leighton-Busard*, who the 25. of *June anno 19. E. 4.* at his special instance Demised and Granted the said Mannor to the *Dean and Canons* for ever. And in the *Octaves of St. John Baptist*, anno 20. E. 4. the Duke of *Suffolk* ^{Lib. f. 149.} and his Dutcheffs levied a Fine to the *Dean and Canons*, who thereupon agreed that for this their so large Donation they should be had in their perpetual Orisons.

The 10. of *January* next after, * *Sir Walter Devoreux de Ferrers* Knight, following this pious Example, together with *Sir John Devoreux*, and others his Feoffees, of the Mannor of *Sutton-Courtney* in the County of *Berks*, and of the Church of *Sutton-Courtney* (having withal obtained the Kings license to that end) did give and grant unto the *Dean, Canons*, and their Successors for ever, the Advowson or Patronage thereof, with all rights appertaining thereunto. ^{2 Ex. inso. Autogr. in Arar. Colleg. Windesore. f. 41. & 42.}

All the before mentioned Endowments are called the Lands of the *Old Dotation*, to distinguish them from those settled on the Colledge by King *Edward the Sixth*, which bear the title of Lands of the *New Dotation*, concerning which we shall speak in the next place. But several of them so given by King *Edward the Fourth*, the Colledge never enjoyed, namely, the Mannor of *Atherston*, the Mannor and Advowson of *Quarle*, *Uphaven*, *St. Buriem*, *Fulburne* Penzion, *Ermsfeld*, *St. Elen*, *Charleton*, *Blakenham*, *Ponyngton*, *Wedon*, *Old Swinsford*, and *Gannow*: And of some others they were seised but a short time, to wit, *Chefingbury* Mannor and Advowson, the Lands in *Newford*, *Blanford*, and *Portsmouth*. Besides these, the Colledge was dispossessed of *Gottesford* in the Reign of King *Henry the Sixth*, of *Chestnut* Advowson in *Henry the Seventh's* Reign, and in the time of King *Henry*

the Eighth (or some time before) of Wodmerssthorpe, Tyltehey, Retherfeld, Le-
ryngdon, Stoke-Basset, Strettham, Totingbeek, Fordham, Ethorp, Newenham, and
Tollsworth: afterwards they surrendered into the hands of King Henry the
Eighth, the Mannors and Advowsons of Ewre, Clyff, Aylton, Rowband, King-
ston, Esl-Henrith, Northmunden, Compton, Weleg, Compton-St. John's, and
Shobimndon Portion.

And lastly, the Colledge lost at least 1000 Marks per annum, upon the Refor-
mation of Religion, in the profit made by St. Antonies Pigge, which the appro-
priation of the Hospital of St. Antonies London had brought to it, and no less
than 500 l. per annum, the Offerings of Sir John shornes Shrine, at Northmarston in
Buckinghamshire; a very devout man, of great veneration with the people, and
sometime Rector there. The Advowson of this Church was appropriate to the
Dean and Canons. by the Prior and Convent of Dunstable, the license of King
Edward the Fourth being obtained for that purpose the 15. of November, anno
regni sui 19. in exchange for the Advowson of the Church of Wedenbeck in
Bedfordshire.

The Dean and Canons having by their Deed under their Chapter Seal, con-
veyed unto King Henry the Eighth the Mannor and Rectory of Ivor in Bucking-
hamshire, the Mannor of Dammery Court in Dorsetshire, and divers other Lands,
Rents, Portions, and Pensions in the Counties of Somerset, Hants, Middlesex, Ox-
ford, and Suffex, for which they had no recompence in his life, nevertheless by
his last Will and Testament, he appointed them satisfaction; and thereby
charged and required his Son, and all his Executors, and likewise all his Heirs
and Successors Kings of England, as they would answer the neglect before Al-
mighty God at the dreadful day of Judgment, that they should see assurance
made to the Dean and Canons for settling Lands on them and their Successors, in
performance of his Will, and the uses therein appointed.

And it being manifest to the Lord Protector and his Co-Executors (after this
Kings death) that the Dean and Canons upon the commutation and agreement of
an exchange, performed on their part by assigning to the said King the Mannors
and Lands above specified, being of the yearly value of 160 l. 2 s. 4 d. for
which they were as then unrecompenced; King Edward the Sixth, minding the
accomplishing and performance of his Fathers last Will, as well for the assu-
rance of Lands to the yearly value of 600 l. to the Dean, Canons, and their Suc-
cessors for ever, to the uses in the Will, and for maintenance and performance of
such other Ordinances and things, as he and the said Executors should limit and
prescribe to them; as also for the assurance of other Lands of the annual value
of 160 l. 2 s. 4 d. to be made to the Dean and Canons in recompence of the Lands,
they had released and assigned to King Henry the Eighth; was pleased by his
Letters Patent bearing Teste at Hampton Court, the 7. day of October in the first
year of his Reign, to give and grant to the said Dean and Canons the Rectories,
Impropriations, Parsonages, Chappels, Portions, and Tithes here named, viz.

The Rectories and Churches of Bradnynche, Northam, Iplepen, Aling-
ton, and Southmolton in Devonshire, and the Tithe of Corn of Otery in that
County, part of the Duke of Somerset's Possessions, as also Blooms-Inn in St.
Lawrence-Lane, London, sometime parcel of the Possessions of the late Colledge
of Otery. The Tithes of Grain, &c. of the Rectory of Ambrosbury in Wiltshire,
and all the Tithes of Bedwyn, Stoke, Wilton, Harden, Harden-Cunrige,
Knoll, Parball, Chisbury, East-Grafton, West-Grafton, Grafton-Barten,
and Wexcombe, parcel of the Prebend of Bedwyn in that County; as also the
Prebend of Alcanynngs and Archefounte, the Rectories of Archefounte, Sta-
pleford, Wycombe, and Froxfield in the said County, and all the annual Pen-
sion of 8 l. issuing out of the Mannor of Trombe in the County of Gloucester. The
Rectory and Vicarage of Islington in Cambridgehire. The Rectory of East-
Berchworth in the County of Surrey. The Reversion of the Portion of Tithes of
Trequite in Cornwall, and the Rent of 13 s. 4 d. reserved upon the same. All
the Portion of Tithes of Trequite aforesaid, belonging to the Priory of St. Ger-
mans in Cornwall. The Rectory and Church of Plymton, the Chappels of
Plymstoke,

b Pat. 19. E. 4.
m 3.

c Regist. vncat.
Fritih. p. 53.

d Ex lib. vncat.
Alen. in Regist.
Cur. Preleg.
Cant. n. 32.

e Regist. vncat.
Fritih. p. 56.

f Pat. 1. E. 6.
p. 215 s.

Plymstoke, Wembury, Shagh, Sanford-Spone, Plymton, St. Maurice, and Byrton in *Devonshire*, belonging to the late Priory of Plymton, the Rectory of *Ittleworth* and *Twickenham* in the County of *Middlesex*, parcel of the possessions of the Colledge of *St. Maries* of *Winchester*, and the Rectory of *Shiplake* in *Oxfordshire*, lately belonging to the Monastery of *Missenden* in *Buckinghamshire*. As also all the Reversion of the Rectory of *Aberguille*, and of the Chappels of *Llanlawert* (alias dist. *Llanbadock*) and *Llanpenysfaunt*, (part of the Monastery of *Karmarden* in *South-Wales*) with the Rent of 30 l. per ann. reserved thereon; the Reversion of the Rectory of *Talgarth* (part of the Priory of *Brecknock* in *South-Wales*) with the reserved Rent of 11 l. 6 s. 8 d. The Reversion of the Rectory of *Mara* in the County of *Brecknock* (belonging to the Priory of *Brecknock*) and 6 l. Rent. The Reversion of the Rectory of *St. Germans* in *Cornwall* (appertaining to the Monastery or Priory of *St. Germans*) with 61 l. 13 s. 4 d. Rent. To have and to hold all the premises, unto the Dean and Canons and their Successors for ever; except the Tithes in *Woolpall* and *Fitz-Waren* in *Wiltshire* (belonging to the Priory of *Bedwyn*) The Vicarage-house of *Ikelington*, the Monies called *Marriage-Money*, *Dirge-Money*, and *Mass-Money*, and the whole profit of the *Bedrolls* of *Ikelington*. Nevertheless to pay the King and his Successors in the Court of *Augmentation*, for the Rectories of *Aberguille*, *Talgarthe*, and *Mara*, the Chappels of *Llanbadock* and *Llanpenysfaunt* 4 l. 2 s. 8 d. in the name of Tenth, and for all Rents, Services, &c. of the other Rectories, &c. 48 l. 7 s. 4 d. annually at *Michaelmas*.

Furthermore, within all these premises the King (by the said Letters Patent) granted to the Dean and Canons, *Court Leets*, or *Views* of *Frankpledge*, and to have *Fines* and *Amerciaments*, *Free-Warrens*, *Waifs*, and *Felons Goods*, and all other *Profits*, *Commodities*, *Liberties*, *Emoluments*, and *Hereditaments* whatsoever. All which Rectories, Tithes, Pensions, Rents, &c. before mentioned, and all other Gifts and Grants in the possession of the Dean and Canons anno Jac. Reg. 2. were confirmed and made good and effectual in Law to them and their Successors, by Act of Parliament that year.

The 2. of *August* preceding the Grant made by King *Edward* the Sixth, a Regist. Frith, Rental paid under the hand of Sir *Edward North* Chancellor of the Court of P. 57. *Augmentation*, containing the particular charges issuing out of the aforesaid Rectories, &c. whereunto certain Articles were annexed, and according to which the said Deed of Conveyance from the King was drawn.

The ancient rate of these *New Lands* in the Kings Books was^b 661 l. 6 s. 8 d. h. 166d. p. 54. per annum, but according to the improved Rents, to wit, as they were then turned over to the Colledge, was 812 l. 12 s. 9 d. out of which improved value (as appears by the Articles now mentioned)ⁱ 160 l. 2 s. 4 d. was yearly allowed them i. 161d. p. 57. in satisfaction of the Lands past over to King *Henry* the Eighth, and 600 l. per annum for accomplishment of his Will, but the remaining sum, viz. 52 l. 10 s. 5 d. was reserved in lieu of Tenth, to be yearly paid into the Court of *Augmentation*; howbeit this last reserved sum was not agreed unto by the Dean and Canons to be so paid, because the Charges issuing out of the Lands were greater than were expressed in the Rental.

And we find, that shortly after the^k Rents of the Parsonage of *St. Germans*, k. 161d. p. 54. the Rectories of *Northam*, *Ilfrington*, *Icklington*, *Ambrosbury*, *Staplesford*, and *Orchefount*, the Prebends of *Alcanings* and *Orchefount*, being part of the New Lands, were received and accounted for, according to the old rate in the Kings Books, to wit, 162 l. 13 s. 4 d. per annum, by the Steward of the Old Lands, in recompence for the Lands conveyed to King *Henry* the Eighth, and out of which they paid a yearly surplusage of 2 l. 2 s. 1 d. this sum together with the Rents of the rest of the *New Lands*, being upon the said improvement accounted to be 597 l. 17 s. 11 d. made in all 600 l. per annum; and this was paid by the Dean and Canons for some time towards building the *Alms-Knights Houses*, as is before remembered.

Thus stood the Lands accounted for, till the settlement made by *Queen Elizabeth*, for the disposition of the whole Revenue, which then was accounted to the

^o Penes Ca-
m^{er}at.
Scaccarii.

the Colledge, but at the value entred in the Kings Books; upon which settlement the Queen appointed the *Dean* and *Canons* to convert the Rents of these *New Lands*, from time to time to such uses and intents, and in such manner and form as she had set down in a ¹*Book* signed with her Sign Manual, and annexed to an *Indenture* bearing date the 30. of *August*, in the first year of her Reign, made between Her on the one part, and the *Dean* and *Canons* on the other part. By which *Indenture* the *Dean* and *Canons* Covenant for themselves and *Successors* to distribute and employ at all times for ever the Rents and Profits of these Lands, in such manner as in the Book is declared and appointed, and to observe and keep all the Ordinances, Rules, and things whatsoever contained therein, which on their part and behalf is limited and appointed to be performed and executed, according to the true meaning of the same.

And if the *Dean* and *Canons* or their *Successors* should omit any thing to them appointed to be performed by the said Ordinances, Rules, and Statutes, then for every such default they are to abide such Order as shall be made by the *Queen*, her Heirs, or *Successors*, or by any of the *Knights-Companions* of the Order, as by her or her *Successors* should be thereunto appointed.

In this Book, the Total of the	l.	s.	d.
Revenue, reckoned at the ancient	661	06	08
value amounts to			

The Annual charge and dis-	}	430	19	06
bursements to the Colledge, therein				
set down, is				

And so Remains	230	07	02
----------------	-----	----	----

n *Ibid.*

Which Remainder hath been and isⁿ assigned and employed for payment of *Tiths* to the *Crown*, *Vicars* and *Curates* annual stipends, *Officers-Fees*, *Reparation* of the premisses, and for the relief of the *Dean* and *Canons* and their *Successors*, in maintenance and defence of the said Lands.

o *Excecd. lib.*

And to the end the *Queen* might know how the Revenue of these *New Lands* was disposed of, she also Ordered, ° That her *Lieutenant* and the *Knights-Companions*, should annually (at the Feast of St. George held at *Windesfor*) see the just account thereof, how the Income was expended, and the payments made; and that one of the *Officers* of the Order, should from time to time yearly put her *Lieutenant* in mind thereof.

p *Lib. R. p. 10.*
q 15.

Which Order was renewed in a *Chapter* of the *Garter* held April^r 24. ann. *Jac. Reg.* 21. and the *Chancellor* of the Order appointed to be the Remembrancer: and in obedience thereunto, the Account of these *New Lands* (which begins annually at *Lady-day*, as that of the *Old Lands* doth at *Michaelmas*) was afterwards exhibited in *Chapter*, and in particular that^q Account, presented by the *Dean* of *Windesfor*, and submitted to the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* consideration, (the 6. of November anno 9. *Car. I.*) was refer'd to the perusal and inspection of the *Knights-Commissioners*, appointed at the same *Chapter* to consult the Affairs of the Order.

q *Ibid.*
r p. 88.

SECT. VIII.

Of the Priviledges of the Chappel and Colledge.

IN the last place, the *Priviledges* of both are to be considered, which we shall divide into *Ecclesiastical* and *Temporal*.

^u In *Arar. Coll.*
Windesfor.

Touching the first, it appears by a^u *Bull* of Pope *Clement* the Sixth, dated at *Avignon*

Avignon the 12. of *February* in the 9. year of his Papacy, That at the desire of the *Founder*; this Pope exempted the *Chappel, Colledge, Canons, Priests, Clerks, Alms-Knights*, and *Officers* of the *Colledge*, from all ordinary Jurisdiction, Dominion, and Superiority of *Archbishops, Bishops, Archdeacons*, and all other *Judges and Officials*, and received them within the protection of the *Papal See*. And further granted, That the *Custos* for the time being, should have Ecclesiastical Jurisdiction over the *Canons, Priests, Clerks, Alms-Knights*, and *Officers*, and their *successors*, as also the Cure of their Souls; notwithstanding any *Papal Constitution, Statutes, Customs*, whether Provincial or Synodical, or other whatsoever to the contrary. Willing nevertheless, that the *Custos* should receive the Cure of their Souls from the *Diocesan* of the place. And in consideration of this Exemption and Priviledge, the *Custos* was obliged to pay annually on *St. Georges* day, one Mark in Silver to the *Popes Chamber*.

About two years before the date of this *Bull*, we find that this *Chappel* had the title of *the Kings free Chappel*, given unto it (so also whilst under the former Foundation) and still enjoys the same: which title of *Free Chappel* is not only intimated but confirmed by its exemption from the Jurisdictions now mentioned.

It is subject to no power (since the Supremacy in Ecclesiasticks became vested in the King, by the Law of this Realm) but only to the King of *England*; as heretofore it stood divided to the King and See of *Rome*.

The Priviledge of Exemption by *Pope Clement* the Sixth, is included in the Confirmation of Liberties made by the *Founder* in his Charter, dated the 28. of *February* anno regni sui 47. and all Priviledges and Liberties granted by him, are confirmed to the *Colledge* by Act of Parliament, anno 8. H. 6.

As this *Colledge* doth depend immediately on the King, so is it visitable only by his *Chancellor*, whose Visitations, and accustomed Jurisdictions exercised by him in the *Chappel, Colledge*, and *Persons* thereunto belonging, are reserved to him by the statutes of the *Colledge*; and himself called in the *Kings Commission* for Visitation of the *Colledge* anno 2. R. 2. Governor of the said *Chappel*, as well in *Spirituals* as *Temporals*, and under the King immediate *Custos*.

And so jealous were the *Dean* and *Canons* lest the power of the foresaid Exemption should be infringed, that when *Sixtus* the Fourth had granted a Bull to the *Bishop of Salisbury* and *Dean* and *Canons*, with authority to make new Ordinances, and to interpret the ancient Statutes, they within few years obtained a Revocation of that Authority; lest the said *Bishop* (in whose *Diocesi* the *Colledge* is situate) being so impowered, might prejudice their Liberties, new form their Statutes, and by degrees bring them under his Jurisdiction, in prejudice to the said Exemption.

And further, to prevent any such design, the same Pope commissioned the *Archbishop of Canterbury*, the *Bishops of Winchester* and *Worcester* to see this Bull of Revocation take effect, and enjoined them not to suffer the *Bishop of Salisbury* to intermeddle further in the *Colledge* Affairs or Statutes; but that the *Bishops of London, Lincolne, and Rochester*, and the *Chancellor of England*, or any two or more of them, with the *Dean* and *Canons* should review, alter, or new make such Statutes or Ordinances, as might be for the utility and advantage of the *Colledge*: This later Bull is dated at *Rome*, 7. Cal. Aug. an. Dom. 1485.

It is an argument of no small priviledge, that if the *Archbishop of Canterbury* be present in the *Chappel of Windesfor*, yet he sits below the *Dean*; nor can he consecrate there without his License. And the instance is no less remarkable, that at the Solemnity of ratifying the Peace between King *Charles* the First of ever blessed memory, and *Levis* the Thirteenth of *France*, the 6. of *September* 1629. in the *Chappel of St. George at Windesfor*, Doctor *Matthew Wren* then *Dean*, gave the Oath (as *Dean* of this *Colledge*) to the *Marquels of Chasteneauf* the French *Kings Ambassador*, and not the *Archbishop of Canterbury*, though he was then present.

By the Statutes of the *Colledge*, the *Dean* and *Chapter*, are at their yearly Chapters, diligently to consider and debate all things that shall fall out, or seem fit to be dispatcht, in reference both to the *Spiritual* and *Temporal* Affairs of the

the Colledge, and whatsoever Ordinances or Determination shall be made at these Chapters (not repugnant to the Colledge Statutes) all persons belonging thereunto, are firmly obliged to observe, so far as they are concern'd in them, until they happen to be altered by later Resolves of succeeding Chapters.

Other Notes and Marks of Exemption appears in the Deans taking no Institution from any other Bishop; but that his^h Institution, Investiture, and Installation into the Custodship, Canonship, and Prebendship, is received from such of the Canons-Resident, to whom the King (who Collates) doth recommend him by his Letters. As also in the constant proving of Wills before him, or in his absence before his Lieutenant: In using the power of Excommunication within their Jurisdiction (which is the Precincts of the Colledge) and dispensing with themselves, for eating of Flesh in Lent.

Add to these, that the^k Ordinations for the Chantry Priests were confirmed by the Dean and Chapter, not the Bishop of the Diocese, so also were the Statutes of the New Commons. Nor doth the^l Dean who hath the cure of Souls (as is before noted) pay any Synodals or Procurations, nor can any of the^m Kings Chaplains preach in the Chappel of St. George, unless he be a Canon there, without the Kings special mandate, or leave of the Dean and Canons.

The Dean and Canons send noⁿ Delegates to the synod, and when this point fell into debate, anno 1640. it was carried in the Negative, as being a perfect Novelty, and against their Liberties, and might intitle them to the payment of Subsidies, and consequently bring a new charge upon the Colledge. Nor have they share in the Government of the Church, as other Deans and Chapters have. So that notwithstanding any alteration or dissolution of the Government of the Church here in England by Archbishops, Bishops, Deans and Chapters, this Colledge cannot be concerned, more than the Colledges in the Universities, where there are many nominal Deans.

Lastly, after the Act for Uniformity pass^o an. 14. Car. 2. whereby every Clergyman was bound to subscribe before the Archbishop or his Ordinary, the^p Canons subscribed before the Dean of Windesor, he being the Ordinary of the place: And though some of them in majorem cautionem, subscribed also before the Archbishop of Canterbury, yet was it with this salvo, saving the rights and priviledges of this Free Chappel.

Thus much in relation to the Ecclesiastick Priviledges of the Colledge: As to the Temporal and Civil, what the Founder granted to it, being very large and beneficial (in regard he was born here, and toucht with a prerogative of affection to this place) and hath been since confirm'd by several of his Successors, we shall here insert.

First then the Founder King Edward the Third, by his^q Charter dated the 6. of March in the 27. year of his Reign, granted them several Profits, Priviledges, and Immunities to the effect following.

That the Custos and Canons, and their Successors, should for ever be free from payment of any Aid, for making the eldest Son of any King of England a Knight, and for marrying their eldest Daughter: as also of all Aids to the King, Contributions and Tallages.

That whensoever the Clergie of this Realm, or of the Province of Canterbury or York, should give a Tenth or other Imposition, out of their Spiritualities; or the Commons of England should give a Tenth or Fifteenth, or any other Tax, out of their Temporalities or moveable Goods, or that the King and his Heirs should cause his own Demain to be taxed; or that the Pope should impose any Tax or Imposition upon the Clergy of this Realm, and give the same to the King and his Heirs; this Colledge with all its Lands and Possessions should be wholly freed thereof.

That they should be free from any charge of Arraying soldiers, for the service of the King and his Heirs; and from sending them for the Custody of the sea-Coasts, and from every Fine or Composition for the same.

That their Houses, as well those within the Castle of Windesor, as else-where, should be free from any Livery of the Kings Stewards, Marshals, Purveyors, Officers, and servants, and from the like Officers of the Queens, or any of their Children

^h Stat. Colleg.
Cap. 9.

ⁱ Ad Calcem,
Collegii pref.

^k Ibid.
12

^m Lib. R. p. 53.

ⁿ Ex pref. Col-
legii.

^o Ibid.
p. 12.

^q Cart. de anno
17. E. 3. m. 6.
n. 14.

Children, or of the *Peers* or *Nobles*. And that the said *Officers* should not intermeddle there, without the leave of the *Custos* and *Canons*, and their *Successors*.

That no *Duke*, *Earl*, *Baron*, or *Nobleman*, nor any *Stewards*, *Marshals*, *Escheators*, *Sheriffs*, *Coroners*, *Bailiffs*, or *Officers*, nor any other person of what condition soever, should upon any colour lodge or stay in the *Houses* of the *Custos* or *Canons*, without their consent.

That they the said *Custos* and *Canons*, and their *Tenants*, should for ever be free from payment of *Toll*, *Paviage*, *Picage*, *Barbicanage*, *Terrage*, *Pontage*, *Murage*, *Passage*, *Paage*, *Leuage*, *Stallage*, *Tallage*, *Carriage*, *Pesage*, and from *Scot* and *Geld*, *Hidage*, *Scutage*, working about *Castles*, *Parks*, *Bridges*, *Walls* for the *Kings Houses*. And from *Suits* to the *County* or *Hundred Court*, and *Wapentakes*, *Court Leets*, *Murder*, and *Common Amerciaments*, whether they should happen before the *King*, or any of the *Justices* of the *Bench*, or *Justices Itinerant*, or other *Justices* whatsoever, and from every other like Custom.

That they should have within their *Lands* and *Fees*, the *Chattels* of all *Felons* and *Fugitives*, and seize them to their own use.

That they should have all *Fines* for *Trespases*, and all other *Contempts* and *Misdemeanors*, *Fines*, *pro licentia concordandi*, and for all other causes.

That they should have all *Amerciaments*, *Redemptions*, *Issues*, and *Forfeitures* whatsoever, *Annum*, *Diem*, *Vastum*, & *streppum*, and all things which might belong to the *King* and his *Heirs* thereupon.

That they should have *Wrecks*, *Waifs*, and *Strays*, within all their *Lands* and *Fees*.

That no *Purveyance* of *Corn*, *Hay*, *Horses*, *Carts*, *Carriages*, *Victuals*, or any *Goods*, *Chattels*, or any thing whatsoever, should be taken by any of the *Kings Officers* or *Ministers*, in, or upon any of their *Lands*, or the *Lands* of any of their *Tenants*.

That they should be free from the payment of any *Pension*, *Corrody*, or other *sustentation* to be granted by the *King*, his *Heirs* or *Successors*.

That they should have *Free-Warren* in all their *Demain Lands* wheresoever. And that, although they lay within the bounds of the *Kings Forest*.

That they should have a *weekly Market*, to be held on *Wednesdays*, at their *Mannor of Eure* in *Buckinghamshire*, and *two Fairs* to endure for eight days, *viz.* on the *Eve* and *Feast-day* of the *Apostles Peter and Paul*, and for two days next following: and upon the *Eve* and *Feast-day* of *St. Peter ad vincula* and two days following, with all *Liberties* and *Customs* to the said *Market* and *Fairs* belonging.

That they should enjoy all their *Lands*, with the *Liberties* of *Soc* and *Sac*, *Infangthef*, *Ufangthef*, and *View of Frankpledge*; with *Thewe*, *Pillory*, and *Tumbrel*, for punishment of *Malefactors*; and power to erect *Gallows* upon their own soil, for Execution of such *Malefactors* as should fortune to be apprehended within their *Jurisdiction*.

That they should be freed and discharged from all *Suits* and *Pleas* of the *Forest*, and of all *Charges* or *Fees*, which the *Justices* or other *Officers* of the *Forest* might demand. And from *Expedition* of their *Doggs*, and *Suits* of *Court* there.

That they should be free from *Gelds*, *Dane-gelds*, *Knights Fees*, *Payments* for *Murder* and *Robbery*, *Building* or *Repairing* of *Bridges*, *Castles*, *Parks*, *Pools*, *Walls*, *Sea-banks*, *Causeways*, and of all *Assises*, *Summons*, *Sheriff-aids*, their *Bailiffs*, or *Officers*, carrying of *Treasure*, and all other *Aids*, as also from the common *Assessments* and *Amerciaments* of the *County* and *Hundred* and all *Actions* relating to them.

That they should be freed from the payment of *Ward-penny*, *Aver-penny*, *Tithing-penny*, and *Hundred-penny*, and discharged from *Grithbrech*, *Forfall*, *Homesoken*, *Blod-wite*, *Ward-wite*, *Heng-wite*, *Fight-wite*, *Leyr-wite*, *Lastage*, *Pannage*, *Assart*, and *Waste* of the *Forest*, so that such *Waste* and *Offences* be not committed in the *Forests*, *Woods*, or *Parks* of the *King* his *Heirs* and *Successors*; and if it should happen so to be, that then reasonable satisfaction, without imprisonment or grievous recompence, should be accepted.

That they should have return of all *Writs* and *Attachments*, as well relating to the *Pleas* of the *Crown*, as other, throughout all their *Lands* or *Fees*; and that

no *Sheriff*, *Bailiff*, or other *Officer* should make any *Execution* of such *Writs* there, unless in default of the *Custors* and *Canons* and their *SUCCESSORS*.

That they should have and hold *Leets* and *Law-days*, for all within their *Lands* and *Fees*.

That they should have *cognisance* of all *Pleas* betwixt their *Tenants*, as well of *Trespasses* and *Contraints*, as others, in their own *Courts*.

And lastly, that they should have and hold *Wards*, *Reliefs*, *Escheats*, *Forfeitures*, and other *Profits*, *Issues*, and *Emoluments* whatsoever, within their own *Fees*, from all their *Tenants*, which might belong to the *King* or his *Heirs*, and which the *King* might receive by reason of those *Fees*, in case they were in his own hands, as if the *Tenants* did hold of him or others *in Capite* of the *Crown*.

CHAP. V.

THE
Institution
OF THE MOST NOBLE
Order *Of the* Garter.

SECT. I.

The several Opinions touching the occasion of its Institution.

EDWARD King of England and of France, of that name (after the *Norman Conquest*) the Third, was the first *Founder* of this most renowned *Order* of the *Garter*: And this is not only unanimously attested by our own, and other *Historians*, but also by good *Authorities* and *Records* of the *Order* it self.

The *Historians* generally agree in the person of the *Founder*, but as to the original occasion, that gave beginning to the *Order*, and the time when it was erected, there is not small difference among them; by reason whereof, the truth of both is left so perplext, that if we had not clearer light from some other means, the world might yet live in ignorance of the verity of either: But that we may set down these two particulars more exactly than hitherto hath been done, and give a more perfect account of a *Military Order*, whose fame hath spread all over

over the World, and been conferr'd on the greatest Princes thereof, is our design in this present Work.

First then, as to the occasion of its *Institution*, the opinions of *Writers* (as we said) are various: The vulgar and more general is, That the *Garter* of *Joane Countess of Salisbury* falling casually off, as she danced in a solemn Ball, King *Edward* hastily stooping, took it up from the ground; whereupon some of his Nobles and Courtiers smiling, as at an amorous action, and he observing their sportive humour, turn'd it off with this reply in French, *Honî soit Qui mal y Pense*; but withal added in disdain of their laughter, That in a short time, they should see that *Garter* advanced to so high honor and estimation, as to account themselves happy to wear it.

But taking leave to examine this *Tradition*, we shall only make two or three *Remarques*, and then refer it to the judgment of others, what credit ought to be given thereto.

First, Sir *John Froissart* (who only among the *Writers* of that Age speaks of this *Institution*) assigns it no such original, as that of the falling of a *Ladies Garter*: Nor is there found any thing to that purpose in our other *Historians*, for the space of two hundred years, till *Polydor Virgil* took occasion to say something of it; whose grounds we shall examine immediately. Besides it might be expected, that some *Historian* among the *French* (who were so forward to jeer at our King *Henry* the Fifth's design of invading them, with a return of Tennis Balls) would not have forborn to register some where or other, a scoff at the *Ladies Garter*; especially in a time when the fury of War had dissolv'd all obligations of friendship and civility, and opened the mouth of slander. Where to we must add, that there is not the least appearance in the original *Statutes* of this most noble *Order*, to countenance the conceit of such a Feminine Institution; no not so much as obliging the *Knights-Companions* to defend the quarrels of *Ladies* (as the Rules of some *Orders* then in being enjoin'd) nor doth the *Author* of that piece intituled, *Institutio clarissimi Ordinis Militaris à prenobili Subligaculo nuncupati*, written by way of Preface to the *Black Book* of the *Garter*, let fall the least touch to that purpose.

As to what *Polydor* says, it is even thence to be noted, that he himself is not so confident, as to ascertain the person whose *Garter* it was, but warily declining that, says, it was ^b either the *Queens*, or the *Kings Mistress*; and if it were the later, yet doth he with the same caution omit her name and title of dignity, both which hath since been supplied (but on what authority we find not) by some of our modern *Historians*, who call her ^c *Joane Countess of Salisbury*; and there is as little reason, why she should be supposed to be *Joane*, called also the *Fair Maid of Kent* (whom *Edward* the *black Prince* afterwards married) inasmuch as no *Historian* takes the least notice, that King *Edward* the Third ever courted her as a *Mistress*.

We suppose our learned *Selden* points at her, when he calls the Lady from whom the *Garter* slippt, ^d *Countess of Kent and Salisbury*: but about the time of the Foundation of the *Order* of the *Garter*, she in truth was neither: for albeit she was Daughter to *Edmund of Woodstock* Earl of *Kent*, and had been sometime the reputed Wife of *William Mountagu*, second Earl of *Salisbury* of that Family; yet then she could not properly be accounted *Countess of Salisbury*, because she was actually Wife to Sir *Thomas Holland* (one of the first Founders of that *Order*) and so ^e adjudged to be, by Pope *Clement* the Sixth, in a controverſie depending before him, between Sir *Thomas* and the *Earl*: and for this reason not taken notice of either by *Brooke* or *Vincent* (in the title of *Salisbury*) to have been his Wife.

Nor was she yet (though afterwards) *Countess of Kent*, because her Brother *John* Earl of *Kent* at the *Institution* of this *Order*, was alive, and died not till anno 26. E. 3.

But that there was a *Countess of Salisbury*, of whom King *Edward* the Third became greatly enamoured, is reported by ^f Sir *John Froissart*, after this manner; That this *King* having relieved a Castle belonging to the Earl of *Salisbury*, in the North of *England*, wherein his *Countess* had been besieged by the *Scots* (the

^b Angl. Histor. l. 19. p. 379.

^c Cambd. Brit. in Attrebat. p. 208.

^d Speed's Chron. p. 588. Baker's Chron. p. 139.

^e Edit. Lond. 1665. Fullers Holy State.

^f p. 249. d Titles of Honor, p. 792.

^g Ex lib. in Off. sic. principal. Cantuar vocat. Iliip. f. 178. a. See Heylins Hist. of St. George, part 3. c. 2. sect. 7. Edit. 1623. where the Case is Reported.

^h Escaet. de an. 26 E. 3. n. 54. h Chron. l. 1. c. 78.

Earl himself being at that time Prisoner in France) upon sight of her extraordinary beauty fell in love with her: but she so virtuously demeaned her self towards the King, during his short stay there, that he declined further solicitation. Howbeit some time after, the King out of desire to see her (saith the same¹ Author) proclaimed a solemn Jufts in London, whither this Countess, and many other Ladies, being invited, came.

Froissart names not the Castle, wherein this Countess lay, when the Scots besieged it, but only gives this note upon it, * That the King gave the same Castle to her Husband for his good service past, when he first married her, being then but a Knight.

The name of the place being left thus by him in the dark, those who hitherto sought after it, have but roved at it with uncertain guesses. But upon more diligent search we have hit the mark, and find it was the Castle of *Wark* upon *Tweed* in the County of Northumberland, upon the Borders of England towards Scotland, which King Edward had so bestowed upon Sir William Mountague (afterwards created Earl of *Salisbury*) for his life, together with the Mannor, Lands, and Tenements within the Liberty of the said Mannor.

This Castle being grown very ruinous, and the said Sir William undertaking the charge of the repair, (which hapned to be very great) the King thereupon * granted the same anew to him for life, by the service of one Knights Fee, the remainder after his death to his Son John, and the Heirs of his body lawfully begotten, to hold by the foresaid service; and if he dyed without such issue, then to the right Heirs of Sir William for ever.

Though then it should be admitted, that this Countess of *Salisbury* was the Kings Mistress, yet must it be noted, that she was Wife to William Mountague, created Earl of *Salisbury*, * anno 11. E. 3. Mother to William the before mentioned second Earl, that her Christian name was *Katharine*, not *Alice*, as *Froissart*, nor *Joane*, as others call her, and Daughter to William Lord *Granston*, a Nobleman of Burgundy; and that she died anno 28. Ed. 3. and lies buried at *Rysham Abbey* in *Berkeſhire*.

But that the whole story may appear, no otherwife than indeed it is, a Fable; we shall here insert the opinion of a late learned Writer, who hath taken no small pains to satisfy himself and the world in this particular.

* This (saith Doctor Heylin) I take to be a vain and idle Romance, derogatory both to the Founder and the Order; first published by Polydor Virgil, a stranger to the Affairs of England, and by him taken upon no better ground, than *Fama vulgi*, the tradition of the common people, too trifling a foundation to so great a building, common bruit being so infamous an Historian, that wise men neither report after it, nor give credit to any thing they receive from it. And yet hath it so fallen out, that many learned men, for want of reflection, have incautiously swallowed and run away with this vulgar error; whereupon it hath come by degrees to the vogue it is now in.

Of the same spinning with the former, is another Tradition, and no less uncertain; * That the Queen being departed from King Edward's presence to her own Lodgings, he following her soon after, hapned to espy a Blue Garter lying on the ground (thought to have slipt from her Leg as she went along) whilst some of his Attendants passed by it, as disdainng to stoop at such a trifle; but he knowing the Owner, commanded it to be taken up and given to him, at the receipt whereof, he said, * You make but small account of this Garter, but within few Months, I will cause the best of you all to reverence the like.

And some think that the Motto of the Garter was the Queens answer; when the King asked her, what men would conjecture of her, upon losing her Garter in such a manner.

But both these Relations are remote from truth, and of little credit; nevertheless, they give us opportunity to note here, That it hath thus fared with other Orders of Sovereign Foundation; and an Amorous instead of Honorable Account of their Institution, hath by some been untruly rendred.

For instance, that of the *Annunciade*, Instituted some few years after this of the

¹ Ibid. c. 90.

* Ibid. c. 76.

[¹ Part. 7. E. 3. p. 2. m. 24.]

* Ibid.

¹ Royal Can.

1. v. l. 3. m. 10.

6 num. 54.

1. Escaet. bund.

del. anno 9.

E. 3. n. 4.

m. Escaet. anno

28. E. 3. n. 29.

n. Ex Gelleli.

Jac. Strangeman.

* Cosmography.

l. 1. p. 287.

Edit. 1652.

o. Et Fama

vulgi talis.

Pol. Virg. Angl.

Hist. l. 19.

p. 275.

95 Andr. da

r. 2. Chesne Hi-

stoire generale

d' Angleterre,

d' Eſſeſſe, &

d' Irlande.

p. 670.

[¹ Ibidem.

the ennobled *Garter*; concerning which, though *Andrew Favin* hath given it an amorous original, yet have we (in the third *Chapter*) from better authorities, cleared his mistaken account thereof.

Nor hath it hapned otherwise with the *Order of the Golden Fleece*, even that also hath met with the same fate; and the Institution reported to have risen from an effeminate ground: for it is said, that its *Founder* entering one morning into the Chamber of a most beautiful Lady of *Bruges* (generally esteemed his *Mistress*) found upon her *Toilet*, a Fleece of low Country Wool; whence some of his Followers taking occasion of sport, as at a thing unusually seen in a Ladies Chamber, he (as is reported of King *Edward the Third*, upon such another occasion) vowed that such as made it the subject of their derision, should never be honored with a *Collar of the Order* thereof, which he intended to establish, to exprefs the love he bore that *Lady*.

There is a third opinion, grounded on a Relation having an aspect to time before King *Edward the Third's Institution*, which is reported of King *Richard the First*, and is this; that while his Forces were employed against *Cyprus* and *Acon*, and extreemly tired out with the tediousness of the Siege, He, by the assistance and mediation of *St. George* (as imagined) was inspired with fresh courage, and bethought himself of a new device, which was, to tie about the legs of a chosen number of Knights, a Leathern Thong or Garter (for such had he then at hand) whereby being put in mind of the future glory that should accrue to them, with assurance of worthy rewards if they overcame, they might be roused up to the behaving themselves gallantly and stoutly in the Wars, much after the manner of the ancient Romans, among whom were various Crowns, with which for several causes, Soldiers were adorned; to the end that by those encouragements, all sluggishness being shaken off, the virtue and fortitude of their minds might spring up and appear more resolute and vigorous.

It further continues in the same Preface, That after a long interval of time, and divers Victories obtained by him, the said King returning into his Country, determined with himself, to institute and settle this most noble Order of *St. George*, on whose patronage the English so much relied.

But admit this (though we are to note, it is only a Relation put down in the Preface of the *Black Book*, but not any part of the *Annals of the Order*, nor can it plead higher antiquity than the Reign of King *Henry the Eighth*, because written a little after the time he reformed and explained the *Statutes of the Garter*) all this we say admitted, and that King *Richard the First* did make use of this devise in the *Holy Land*, as a signal or distinction of a party going out upon some warlike exploit: yet that he thence took occasion to frame a distinct Order of *Knighthood* afterwards, there is not the least mention, nor any ground to imagine. So that all the advantage can be made of it is, that (as *Doctor Heylin* affirms) we may warrantably be perswaded, this occasion much heightened the reputation of that *Saint* among the *English*, by which means in process of time, the most heroick Order of the *Garter* came to be dedicated to him; and not that it any way contributed to the *Institution* of it.

t. *Señ. l. p. 46.*
108. & 109.

u *Favin, in le Theatre d'Honneur, l. 4. c. 5. w Toilet, or Toilette, called also Tavy-olle, is a large Napkin, or cloth, usually laid over Womens dresses, and other Clothes after they are spread on a Table.*
x *Lib. N. p. 12. in proemio.*

y *Hist. of St. George, part 3. c. 1. sect. 6.*

SECT. II.

The true Cause asserted.

Thus far of the conjectures of others, concerning the *Institution* of this most noble Order; now come we to unfold the true occasion thereof.

We affirm then, that King *Edward the Third* had no reflection, either upon a *Ladies Garter*, or King *Richard's Leathern Thong*, when he first designed the *Institution*, but that it did proceed from a much more noble cause; to wit, that

that this *King* being a person of a most absolute and accomplished virtue, gave himself up to a prudent management of Military Affairs; and being engaged in War for the recovery of his right to the Kingdom of *France*, in the prosecution of which enterprise, he had great use of the stoutest and most famous *Martialists* of that Age, did thereupon first design (as being invited thereto by its ancient fame) the restoration of *King Arthur's Round Table*, which he exhibited with magnificent Hastiludes and general Juits, to invite hither the gallant and active spirits from abroad: and upon discovery of their courage and ability in the exercise of Arms, to draw them to his party, and oblige them to himself.

And conceiving no place more fit than ^a*Windefor*, upon ^b*Newyears-day*, anno 1344. he issued out his Royal Letters of Protection for the safe coming and return of *Forreign Knights*, their Servants and what belonged to them, that were desirous to try their valour at the solemn Juits, by him appointed to be held there, on ^c*Munday* after the Feast of *St. Hillary* next following (which that year happened on the 19. of *January*) and these Letters of safe conduct continued in force until the ^d*Octaves* of the *Purification* of our blessed *Lady* ensuing, being in the 18. year of his Reign.

At the time appointed, he provided a great ^e*Supper* to begin the Solemnity, and then *Ordained*, that this Festival should be annually held there at ^f*Whitson-tide*; and immediately after these first Martial Exercises were over (to the end better accommodation might be provided for the *Knights* that should afterwards come thither) he caused to be implest *Carpenters*, *Masons*, and *Carriages*, for erecting a particular building in the *Castle*, and therein placed a *Table* of ^gtwo hundred foot diameter, where the *Knights* should have their entertainment of diet at his expence of ^h100*l.* a week, to which building he gave the name of the *Round Table*. By this means he associated to himself, from most parts beyond Seas, the prime spirits for martial valour, and gain'd the opportunity of engaging them on his side in the ensuing War.

And, as at these solemn conventions, and great assemblies, the days were spent in exercising all kind of noble feats of Arms, Juits, and Turnaments; so were a great part of the nights consumed in publick Balls, and dancing with the *Ladies*, which attended the *Queen* thither; and perhaps it was hence conjectur'd, that at some of these Balls, the *Queen's Garter*, or the *Garter of Katherine* Countess of *Salisbury* might slip off, and that *King Edward's* stooping to take it up, might beget smiles in the by-standers; and afterwards, when the *King* had modelled his intended *Order*, a *Garter* appearing for its chief *Ensign*, might add something to the conjecture: But that any such accident became the principal cause of erecting the *Order*, and that the *Founder's* particular design therein was to advance the honor of that *Garter* so accidentally taken up, is only a groundless imagination, and hath been already disproved.

And though *King Edward* so far advanced the honor of a *Garter*, as that the *Order* did derive its ^ktitle and denomination from it; yet is it most evident, that he founded this most famous *Order*, not to give reputation to, or perpetuate an effeminate occasion, but ^lto adorn *Martial Virtue*, with *Honors*, *Rewards*, and *Splendor*: to ^mincrease *Virtue* and *Valour* in the hearts of his *Nobility*: or as *Andrew du Chesne* saith, ⁿto honor *military Virtue* with some glorious favours and rewards; that ^otrue *Nobility* (as is noted in the Preface to the *Black Book* of the *Order*) after long and hazardous adventures, should not enviously be deprived of that honor which it hath really deserved; and that active and hardy Youth might not want a *spur*, in the profession of *Virtue*, which is to be esteemed glorious and eternal.

Upon these grounds no doubt does our learned *Selden* affirm, that ^pthis *Order* was raised chiefly out of the *Round Table* of that time (the *Knights* thereof being the flower of that Age) as out of a Seminary.

It is further observable, from the current of the Histories of those times, that the French King, *Philip de Valois*, in emulation of these martial associations at *Windefor*, practised the like at his Court in *France*, for he set up a *Round Table*, and invited the *Knights* and valiant men of Arms out of *Italy* and *Almaine* thither, lest they should repair to our *King Edward* the Third. Which meeting with

^a *Tib. Wallingh.*
sub. anno 1344.
apud Lond.

1579.

^b *Pat. 17.*

^c *E. 3. p. 2.*

^d *m. 2.*

^e *Ex vet.*
^f *MS. Chron.*
nic. penes Ra-
nul. Pigott Ar.

^g *Pat. 18. E. 3.*

^h *1. m. 39. Dorfo*

ⁱ *Ex p. 2. m. 39.*

^j *Wallingh.*

^k *in supra.*

^l *F. l. Virg.*
Aug. Hist. l.
19. p. 278.

^m *Uti militarem*

virtutem ho-

noribus, pre-

miis atq; sple-

dore decora-

ret. Cambden

in Attrebat.

ⁿ *2.*

^o *1. 1. 1.*

^p *Ed. 2. defi-*

neux d'hono-

ret la Vertu

militarie de

quelq; faveu-

re & recompence

glorieux, &c.

Hist. general.

D. angleterre,

Chr. p. 670.

o Tir. Hon.

^q *794.*

^r *Tib. Wallingh.*

laco citato.

Sam. Daniell.

Hist. f. 233.

Speed's Chron.

p. 587.

with success, proved a Countermine to King Edward's main design, who thereby finding, that his entertainment of *Stranger Knights*, upon the account of receiving King *Arthur's Round Table*, was too general, nor did sufficiently oblige them to him, but being free and at liberty, did after their departure take what side they pleased in the following Wars; he at length resolved upon a design, more particular and select, and such as might oblige and tie those whom he thought fit to make his Associates, in a firm Bond of Friendship and Honor.

And having given forth his own *Garter* for the signal of a Battel that sped fortunately, (which with *du Chesne* we conceive to be that of *Crescy*, fought almost three years after his setting up the *Round Table* at *Windeſor*; rather than with the Author of the *Nouveau Theatre de Monde*, that of *Poitiers*, which happened above seven years after the Foundation of the Order, and whereat King Edward was not present) the Victory (we say) being happily gained, he thence took occasion to Inſtitute this Order, and gave the *Garter* (assumed by him for the Symbol of *Unity and Society*) preheminance among the Enſigns of it, whence that select number, whom he incorporated into a Fraternity, are frequently stiled *Equites Aureæ Periscelidis*, and vulgarly, *Knights of the Garter*.

By this Symbol he design'd to bind the Knights or Fellows of it, severally unto one another, and all of them jointly to Himself, as Sovereign of the Order. And accordingly (saith an industrious Historian) this did not only serve as a vehement incentive to Honor and martial Virtue, but also a golden Bond of unity and internal society: it being most just, that those whom equal virtue and fortitude of mind, had joined together, no Fortune should separate or estrange, by occasion of any accident or difference.

Whereunto may be added this further consideration; how neerly the Princely *Garter* (which ennobleth the Order) as it is framed with a Buckle to fasten it close to the Leg, doth resemble the Bond of most inward Society; and can be called nothing more aptly, than a Badge of *Unity and Concord*.

By this *Garter* the Knights-Companions are admonished, religiously, sincerely, friendly, faithfully, and dextrously, to go through whatsoever they undertake, but not to undertake or attempt any thing, contrary to the Oath, and Statutes of the Order, neither to frustrate the rights of peace and friendship, vilifie the Law of Arms, or to proceed in any thing further than Faith or Compact, or the Bond of Friendship will admit.

And much to this purpose, they who will take the pains to read the *Catechismus Ordinis Equitum Periscelidis Anglicanæ*, will find the Author [*F. Mondonus*] Symbolically to descant upon the chief Enſigns of the Order.

Moreover *Salmon*, out of *Stephanus Frocatulus* notes, that in the binding of the Leg with this enobled Enſign, there was given this honorable Caveat and Exhortation; That the Knights should not cowardly (by running away from Battel) betray the valour and renown which is ingrafted in Constancy and Magnanimity.

Nay, so exactly did the Founder sute the whole Habit unto the signification of this Princely Enſign, that he Ordained his, and the Knights-Companions Robes and Ornaments to be all alike, both for materials and fashion; thereby intimating, *That they ought to conserve brotherly love among themselves*. And lest at any time there should fall out the least breach of Amity, the great Collar of the Order (ordained to be of equal weight, and composed of a like number of small Links and Knots) was so made, in witness of the like Bond of Faith, Peace, and Amity, strictly to be observed among them. In fine, all things relating to the Order, were so designed and appointed, *That every one might plainly perceive, how much these things tended to the maintaining of Amity and Concord*.

In further reference to the Institution and perpetual establishment of this Order, the foresaid King, calling together the Earls, Barons, and principal Knights of his Kingdom, freely and obligingly declared his mind to them, concerning this Affair: To which all of them being well inclined, entertained the motion with equal joy and applause; considering it would prove a very great advancement to Piety, Nobility, and Virtue, and likewise an excellent expedient for the uniting,

q *Cambd. in*
Attreb. p. 207.
r *Hist Generale*
d' *Angleterre,*
p. 670.
Tom. 2. p.
1407. Edit.
Paris. 1661.

r *Hoylin's Catech.*
mogr. loco supra cit.
u *Speed, Chron.*
p. 588.

w *Cambd. in*
x *Attreb.*
p. 208.
y *Lib. N. in*
Proemio.

a *Edit. Colon.*
Agripp. anno
1631

b *Natit Guid.*
Pancirell. de
Rebus deper-
dit. p. 170.

c *Lib. N. p.*
d *16. in pro-*
oimio.

e *ibid. p. 141*
f *Froissart's*
Chron. l. 1.
c. 101.

g *ibid.*

not

not only his Natives one with another, but all Forreigners with them in^{the} Bonds of Amity and Peace.

And 'tis very improbable, that this prudent Founder should summon his Nobles, solemnly to consult about so high and noble an advancement of an Order, had it taken its first rise from so slight an occasion, as the accidental dropping of a Garter from a Ladies Leg. On the contrary it is manifest from *Froissart*, that the declaration which the King made to them of his intention and design (when they were assembled) appeared^a a matter very honorable, and (as hath been alledged) such as contributed to the improvement of Love and Amity among themselves; which we see this Historian assigns to be the only cause, why they joyfully consented to his proposal.

Now to make the Bond and Tye of Love and Friendship yet more close and obliging, the King caused those who were (or should be) of the Order, to be called *Fellows, Associates, Colleagues, Brethren, and Knights-Companions*, and the Order itself^a a Society, Fellowship, Colledge of Knights, and Knight-Companionship; and their¹ Habit and Ornaments to be all alike, as to Fashion and Materials: and to no other end, but to represent how they ought to be^m united in all chances of Fortune, Copartners both in Peace and War, assistant to one another in all serious and dangerous transactions, and through the whole course of their lives, faithful and friendly one towards another.

But besides these Authorities, we have met with some other testimonies, much to the same effect; namely, that this most noble Order of the Garter was first instituted, to "fortifie the confidence of the King, the Kingdom, and Martial Virtue: that is to say, to strengthen the faith of the Subjects towards them, and for their greater security.

The French Orator, who made the Harangue at the investiture of Henry Prince of Orange, seems to account the denomination of this Order, by the stile of the Garter, to be very significant, and only for this reason; ^abecause it carries with it a Bond or Tye of Fellowship, and a Symbol of Amity and Friendship between Princes, being Companions of the same Order.

In the last place, if we look back upon the Statutes of Institution, as also those that have succeeded, we shall find the Injunctions wholly Military, and so are the words of Admonition, appointed to be pronounced, at the putting on the Ensigns of the Order: and the ground of the Institution (in the Preamble to King Henry the Eighth's Exemplar) is said to be, ^pFor the honor of God, and exaltation of the Catholick Faith, joined both with Piety and Charity; in establishing a Colledge of religious men, to pray for the prosperity of the Sovereign of the Order, and the Knights-Companions, and to perform other holy duties; as also ^rOrdaining sustentation for a company of Alms-Knights, who have not otherwise wherewith to live. But not one word relating to any obligation or engagement, on behalf of the Feminine Sex.

And whereas King Edward the Third had set on foot a Title to the Kingdom of France, and in right thereof assumed its Arms; he from the "Colour of them, caused the Garter of the Order to be made Blue, and the circumscription Gold. And it may, without any straining, be inferr'd from the Motto [*Honi soit qui mal y penie*] ^wthat he retorted shame and defiance upon him, that should dare to think ill of so just an enterprise, as he had undertaken for the recovery of his lawful right to that Crown; and that the magnanimity of those Knights, whom he had chosen into this Order was such, as would inable them to maintain that Quarrel, against all who durst think ill of it. Consonant to this is the conjecture of ^xHarpisfield, that this Apothegme was designed to put the Knights-Companions in mind, not to admit any thing in the actions of their lives, or among their thoughts, unbecoming themselves and their honor.

And here we have a fitting opportunity to inform our Reader, that the Age we speak of did exceedingly abound with Impreses Motto's, and Devices, of which the Rolls of the great Wardrobe will afford variety; and particularly that King Edward the Third (upon almost every occasion) was much inclined thereto, so far, as that his Apparel, Plate, Beds, Household-furniture, shields, even the very Harness of his Horses,

h *Ecco cit.*

i {
k Lib. N.
l p. 15.
m }

n *Cat. Antiq.*
l. 2. c. 217.

o *MS. in Officio*
Arm. (L. 18.)
circa medium.

p Article 1.

q Art. 13.

r Art. 16.

u {
w Ex Coll. W.
l pref. Wit.
l. Neve.

x *Hist. Anglic.*
Eccles. p. 507.

Horses, and the like, were not without them; many of which, for any man now to descant upon, would be an endless and fruitless attempt, seeing the occasion of their invention, and the circumstances thereupon depending, are irrecoverably lost.

Add to which, that others by reason of their brevity, seem insignificant, in regard it is to be imagined, that something was purposely omitted, and left to be understood, which cannot now be rightly supplied, so as to arrive at the mind of the Inventor. Of this number may well be this *Motto*, *It is as it is*, being embroidered upon a Dublet, made for the King of white Linen Cloth, having about the sleeves and skirt a border of green Cloth, wrought over with golden Clouds and Vines.

But there are others, which seem more easie to be understood, as is that daring and inviting *Motto* of this *King*, wrought upon his Surcoat and Shield, provided to be used at a Turnament

* Hay hay the wythe Swan,
By Gods Soul I am thy man.

z *Ibidem*.

We further observe, that although *David Brus* King of *Scotland* was a Prisoner in the *Tower of London*, yet such was the nobleness of this *King*, that he sometimes permitted him the use and exercise of Arms; for against a *Haslilude* kept at *Windsor*, he had a *Harnes* made of Blue Velvet (at *King Edward's* charge) whereon was embroidered a *Pale* of Red Velvet, and beneath a *White Rose*. And that it was the custom then to have the Arms of a *Knight*, set upon his *Horse-Harnes*, to distinguish him from others, appears by those eight *Harnesses*, which the *King* gave (and were among the preparations made for the *Haslilude* appointed at *Canterbury*, anno 22. Ed. 3.) of Indian Silk, beaten with the Arms of *Sir Stephen Cosynston* *Knight*, of the *Prince*, of the *Earls of Lancaster*, and *Susfolk*, of *Sir John Grey*, *Sir John de Beauchamp*, *Sir Robert Maule*, *Sir John Chandos*, and *Sir Roger de Beauchamp*: four of these *Martialists* being shortly after chosen among the first *Knights-Companions* of this most Noble Order of the *Garter*.

SECT. III.

The Time when the Order was Instituted.

IN what year of the Reign of *King Edward the Third*, the Order of the *Garter* received *Institution*, cannot certainly be deduced from our *Historians*, for the difference among them in this point is very wide.

Our most learned *Selden* would have it, to be in the 18. year of the *Founder's* Reign, and relies chiefly upon the authority of *Sir John Froissart*, who lived near that time (for he wrote his History in the Reign of *King Richard the Second*) But since *Mr. Selden* does acknowledge him guilty of a mistake in the number of the first *Knights-Companions* (and a gross one indeed it is) by making them no fewer than forty; why might he not likewise erre in this point, namely the Time? and as unwarily confound the year of its Erection, with that wherein the *Founder* renewed the Order of the *Round Table*? *Windsor* being the place for holding the grand celebration of both.

For should we admit, that during some part of the great Solemnity held in this *Kings* 18. year, the accident of the *Ladies Garter* slipping off happen'd; and that the *King* taking it up declared, he would make it highly renowned: what other inference can be made, but that he had then only an intention or resolution at most, to do somewhat afterwards, not that there was an Erection or Order actually Instituted at that time.

Z

Besides,

y *Royal Lib.*
rat. Draper.
Offic. mag.
Gardrob. ann.
21. 22. E. 3.
membr. 11. p.
nes Rememo-
rat. Regis.

z *Ibid.*
b2

c *Titles of Hon.*
p. 793.
d *L. i. c. 100.*

Besides, if the King had been desirous to fall upon the establishment of the Order, immediately upon the said accident, yet may it well be supposed, that the jollity of the season, and remaining part of the *Feast*, was too busie a time to admit of much consultation tending thereunto; at least serious enough to mould a design, so compleat and substantial, as it appears to have been, even at first; whether we consider the substance of the *Statutes* of Institution, or variety of the matter, and so fully, judiciously, and warily contrived, as little of that subject could be found worth the adding in many years after.

^c *Chronie.*
^f 219.

To these, if we join the authority of *Fabian*, he is plain, ^c that though the King design'd the Institution at the end of the Festival (which he placeth between *Canterbury* and *Lent* in the 19. not 18. year of this King) yet was it not then (saith he) but afterwards established by him.

^f *Ap. d. S. d. r.*
^p 794.

As to the testimony given by the ^f Author of *Les grandes Chroniques de Bretagne*, &c. who likewise alledgeth, that the Institution of the Order, was in the 18. year of the King: We suppose his best authority was also taken from *Froissart*, supposing him (as Mr. *Selden* doth) the more to be relied upon, because he wrote so near that time.

^e *Ibid.*

But 'tis a fault too frequent among Historians, to run away with what they find spoken by those from whom they collect (especially if such have gained any good opinion or credit in the world) though perhaps erroneous; without making a sufficient enquiry, either into the probability or truth of the thing. And for an instance of some unwariness in collecting, we may trace the now mentioned Author in another passage, relating to this matter, where he tells us it was the day of ^e St. *Gregory* (instead of St. *George*) whereon the Grand *Feast* of the Order was ordained to be solemnized.

^b *Third part*
^{fol.} 240. b.
^{edit.} Lond.
1550.
ⁱ *Notes upon*
^{Psalm.} 33. v.
¹ *Angl. Reg.*
^{Chron.} p. 44.
¹ 19. p. 378.
^p *Pat.* 25. E. 3.
^{par.} 1. m. 18.
^c *Chron.*
¹ 1550.

We now see that *Froissart*, and with him Mr. *Selden*, place the beginning of this Order to the 18. year of King *Edward's* Reign; with whom agrees *Thomas Cooper* in his ^b *Epitomy of Chronicles*. And yet the same Mr. *Selden*, in ⁱ another place, notes, that it took beginning in the 24. year of the said King, and our industrious *Stow* (with whom ¹ *Lilly*, ^m *Speed*, and ^a *Segar* agree) tells us, that the first *Feast* of the Order was celebrated in the year of our Lord 1350. which answers to the said four and twentieth year of King *Edward* the Third.

But ^a *Polydore Virgile* in the series of his History, placeth it after *Henry* Earl of *Derby* was created Duke of *Lancaster*, and *Ralph* Lord *Stafford*, Earl of *Stafford*, which hapned in *March*, anno 25. E. 3.

Thus it appears, that our Historians took little heed to transmit the true time of so famous an Institution to posterity (and their neglect perhaps was the cause why our judicious *Cambden* became silent herein) yet how this Chronological note slipt all their Pens, is much to be wondred at: We must therefore have recourse to some other proofs, whence our Reader may receive better satisfaction.

Admitting then, that the erecting this Order entered into King *Edward's* thoughts, at some of those grand Assemblies of the *Round Table*, held after the French King had set up the like, yet was it not brought to any maturity, till after his glorious Triumphs over the French and Scots, in the Battels of *Crecy* and *Neuils Cross* (in which both the French and Scotch Armies were utterly vanquished, and *David* King of Scots taken Prisoner) and until King *Edward* had *Calais* surrendred to him, as will now be manifest.

Among the *Rolls* of the great Wardrobe, we have met with one which contains the Accounts of all the Kings *Liveries*, from *Michaelmas*, anno 21. E. 3. to the 31. of *January* in the 23. year of the same King: In this *Roll* are divers things mentioned to be adorned with *Garters*, which were provided against the first grand Feast of St. *George*, and among the rest are the *Robes* for the Sovereign of the Order; namely his ¹ *Mantle*, ² *Surcoat*, and ³ *Hood*, as also a ⁴ *Bed* of *Blue Taffaty* adorned with embroidered *Garters*, containing the Motto, *Honi soit qui mal y pense*. There were then likewise made for the Sovereign ⁵ three *Harnesses*, whereof two were of *White Velvet*, wrought over with *Garters de bleu & d'azur*. per totum compedinem cum *Woodboners*, and the third *de Velveto Tnde, cont. Lappekin quisseux, & caligas*, wrought over likewise with *Garters*.

¹ *Ex Rot.*
¹ *Campot. Ju.*
¹ *Cole Cler. mag.*
¹ *Gardrob. pomes*
¹ *E. d. m. r. 1. Re-*
¹ *giz. m. 8.*
¹ 10.

Had this *Roll* been divided into years, or had there been other notes thereupon, to have distinguished whether these particulars were made and provided at the beginning of his 22. year against the Feast-day of St. George ensuing, or else towards the later end of that year, against the same Feast-day *anno* 23. E. 3. we might have been thereby guided with more certainty, as to the right and true year of the *Institution*.

However, we may thence safely conclude, that this *Order* was not founded in the 18. year of King *Edward* the Third, according to *Froissart*, and his Followers; because we here find, that the *Sovereign's Robes* were not made until the 22. year of his Reign at the soonest, perhaps not till the beginning of the 23.

But to put all out of further doubt, the *Founder's Statutes* fix the time of *Institution* to his 23. year; so do the *Statutes* of King *Henry* the Fifth, and the *Preface* to the *Black Book*; the same also is attested by *Leland*, and affirmed by *Mills*, and *Doctor Heylin*.

To conclude, when this famous *King* had resolved upon the day and place for keeping the first grand *Feast* of this most noble *Order*, which he designed to exhibit with as much glory as could be imagined, *He* sent his *Heralds* into *Germany*, *France*, *Scotland*, *Burgundy*, *Hainault*, *Flanders*, and *Brabant*, to invite all *Knights* and *Esquires* who were willing to meet at that grand *Solemnity* (with assurance to every one of safe conduct and Liberty for fifteen days, both before and after the same) to shew their Military Prowess and Valour, in all kind of Martial Feats, and other Publick Exercises, there to be held, proper to the place and occasion.

According to which *Invitation*, there came over at the appointed time, sundry *Knights* and other brave *Martialists*, out of desire to signalize their valour; and what made the *Solemnity* more glorious, King *Edward's Queen*, attended with *three* hundred of the fairest *Ladies*, adorned with all imaginable *gallantry* were there likewise present.

u Edwardus tertius Rex Anglie, anno regni sui post Conquestum 23. Ordinavit &c.

w Edoard apres la conquest D' angleterre l'an de son reigne vint & trois Ordonne &c Establi, &c.

x Edwardus tertius, anno regni sui 23. cum de Gallis atque Scottis plus semel illustissime triumphasset, &c. p. 14. in proemio.

y Ad Cygn. Cant. verbo Windeleora.

z Catalog. of Honor, f. 88.

** History of St. George, part 3. c. 2. Sect. 5.*

a Lib. N. p. 20. vide etiam Froissart. Chron. l. 1. c. 100. & 102.

SECT. IV.

Of the Patrons of the Order.

King Edward the Third, upon his Instituting this Princely *Colledge*, of a select number of *Knights*, did (according to the custom and opinion of that Age) make choice of several *Patrons* to this his most noble *Order*; under whose protection *Himself* and all the *Knights-Companions*, together with the *Affairs* of the *Order*, might be defended, conserved, and governed.

The first and chiefest *Patron* that he elected for this end, was the *holy Trinity*, which, though indeed it be the *Creator* and *Governor* of all things, yet nevertheless was in a more especial manner invocated to the aid and assistance of this *Order*.

Nor was it in those times accounted any derogation to *God*, or his *divine worship*, but rather on the contrary a great addition thereunto, that what he is alone the giver of, should be desired and implored, by their means, through whom he is well pleased to be sought unto: Upon which consideration this religious and pious *King*, being singularly affected to the *blest Virgin Mary*, *though* she was accounted the general *Mediatrice* and *Protectress* to all men and upon all occasions, yet did he more peculiarly intitle her to the *Patronage* of this most noble *Order*.

And no less was King *Edward* the Fourth in a special manner devoted towards

the same blessed Virgin; infomuch as he thought it necessary, that some additional Ceremonies within the Order, should be observed by Himself and the Knights-Companions to her peculiar honor: and thereupon Ordained, ^c That on her five Solemnities, the Knights-Companions should annually (as was wont and accustomed, at the yearly Feast of St. George) wear the peculiar Habit of the Order, as long as Divine Service was celebrating (unless they had sufficient cause of excuse) bearing on the right shoulder of their Robes, a golden figure of the Virgin Mary, and further, that they should go in the same manner and Habit upon all the Sundays throughout the year: and lastly, that on the same days for ever, they should say five Pater Nosters, with as many Ave Maria's.

Thirdly, ^f Saint George of Cappadocia, a most choice Champion of Christ, and famous Martyr, was also chosen one of the Patrons to this Order; and that so not so much because in his life, he was a Candidate of the Christian Faith, a real Professor, and a sincere Defender thereof, or for that he was an armed Soldier or Knight of Christ; but much more because in those Wars, which were waged by Christians, against the Infidels, he by several appearances shewed his presence, as a most certain encourager and assistant to the Christians; the relations of some of which Visions may be seen at large ^h elsewhere.

There is no need we should in this Work engage at all, in asserting the History of Saint George, against those who will neither allow him either a place in Heaven, or a being in the Church; since that is both learnedly and judiciously maintained to our hand, out of the venerable Records of Antiquity and Church-History, by the elaborate endeavours of the late reverend Divine, Dr. Peter Heylin, in a particular ⁱ Tract.

The like pains we are eased of, in avouching and assuring him to be the special Patron, Protector, Defender, and Advocate of this Realm of England, and manifesting in what veneration he hath been held abroad, especially among the Eastern Churches; by the Pen of our most learned ^k Selden. To whose testimonies we shall only add, that this Title of ^l Patron to our Nation is given to St. George by the Founder of this most noble Order, in a Patent granted to the Deans and Canons of the Chappels of St. Stephen at Westminster, and St. George at Windsor, which dischargeth them from payment of Tenths (for the Churches appropriate to those Chappels) that were or should be given by the Clergie to Him and his Successors: As also by ^m King Henry the Eighth, in the Preamble of his Statutes: Nay further, that he was likewise called our Nations Patron, in relation to the ⁿ spiritual Militia of this Kingdom.

^l Beatus Georgius invictissimus Christi Athleta, cujus nomen & patrocinia Gens Anglicana veluti Patroni sui singularis, in expeditione prestant Militari invocant & implorat. instituta divinis ut credimus excelsi. Pat. de anno 25. E. 3. p. 2. m. 12.

^m The blessed Martyr St. George, Patron of the right noble Realm of England.

ⁿ Sanctus Georgius Martyr, qui totius Militie Anglicane Spiritualis est Patronus. Registr. MS. Arundel. Arch. Cant. par. 1. fol. 53. art. 37. ^o Heylin Hist. of St. George, part 2. c. 7. Sect. 1.

^p Ordo est divo Georgio ut Bellatorum presidii dicatus. Vol. Virg. Angl. Hist. l. 19. p. 678.

And though in general he is stiled, the ^o Principal Patron of the Affairs of Christendom, and a Tutelar Guardian of military men; yet among all Christians the English did the best, and in England the Founder of this most noble Order, in making particular choice of such a ^r Captain and Patron, under whose conduct to fight, to wit, a Captain so approved and tried by such high testimonies as he had given. In particular relation to whom, the Knights-Companions had bestowed on them, the title of Equites Georgiani, St. George's Knights; and the Order it self came to be stiled, Ordo divi sancti Georgii, the Order of St. George.

It is worthy of observation that ^q du Chesne (a French Writer) acknowledges, ^r it was by the special Invocation of St. George, that King Edward the Third gained the battel of Crecy, which afterward calling to mind, he founded (saith he) to his honor, a Chappel within the Castle of Windsor. But if we may go higher, and credit our ^s Harding, it seems King Arthur paid St. George particular honors, for he advanced his Picture in one of his Banners: and this was about 200 years after his Martyrdom, and very early for a Country so remote from Cappadocia, to have him in so great estimation.

Lastly, The Founder added to these a fourth Patron, whose Name himself bore, namely,

^q Histoire generale d'Angleterre, &c. p. 670.

^r Cap. 72. l. 1.

^s Cap. 72. l. 1.

namely, ^t *Saint Edward the Confessor*, sometime King of England, and his Pre-^t Lib. N. p. 26.
decessor, by which choice the Patronage of the Order belongs also to him. And
we find he was wont to be invoked by this noble Founder (as well as *Saint George*)
at such time as he found himself in any great streight; of which a memorable
instance is recorded by ^u *Thomas Walsingham*, who reports that at a Skirmish neer ^u Hist. Angl.
Calice, anno Dom. 1349. King Edward in great heat of anger and grief, drew ^{p. 159.}
out his Sword, and most passionately cried out, **Ha Saint Edward, Ha Saint**
George, which his soldiers hearing, ran presently unto him, and rubbing vio-
lently upon the Enemy, put many of them to the Sword.

But in further declaration of electing all these for Patrons to the Order, we
find them ranked together, in the ^w Preamble of the Char-
ter of Foundation of *Windsor Colledge*, granted by
King Edward the Third; though in the Preamble to his
Statutes of the Order, and to King Henry the Fifth's Sta-
tutes, *Saint Edward the Confessor* is omitted; nevertheless,
in the Preamble to Henry the Eighth's Statutes, he is there remembred with
the rest.

^w In honorem omnipotentis Dei, & sue
Genetricis Mariæ virginis Gloriosæ, Sancto-
rumq; Georgii Martyris & Edwardi Confes-
soris nostris Regis sumptibus facimus, &c
Pat. 22. E. 3. par. 2. m. 6.

SECT. V.

The Honor and Reputation thereof.

BEfore we leave this Chapter, we shall note some few things touching the Ho-
nor and Reputation of this most noble Order; and that, either as comparing
it with other Orders of Sovereign Foundation, or else in relation to it self.

First then, let what our learned *Selden* affirms be observed, viz. That this
Order of the Garter hath ^x precedence of antiquity, before the eldest rank of honor of
that kind any where established. ^x Notes upon
Polyalb. Song.
15.

Secondly, The Statutes of Foundation were so judiciously devised and con-
trived; and framed upon such solid grounds of Honor and Nobleness, that they
afterwards became a Precedent to other Orders, particularly those two of the
Golden Fleece, and of *Monsieur Saint Michael*; as may be readily seen, by any
that will take the pains to compare them.

Thirdly, It hath begot no small honor to the Order, that the number of the
first *Knights-Companions*, were never yet increased, but as there were five and
twenty of them elected at the Institution, they, with the Sovereign of the Order, ^y E. 3. 2 Stat.
made up that Number, which at no time hitherto hath been exceeded, ^{H. 5. 3 Art. 3.}
*ut pre- Pref. to H. 8.
tium faciat raritas, saith ^z *Heylin*, lest being else communicated to many, it might
at last become despicable. For it is manifest enough, that an invasion in this
particular, hath like an undiscerned Rock, split several other *Military Orders*
into contempt and ruine: nothing so much abasing the worth of *Glory* and Ho-
nor (which are to be desired by all, yet granted to few) than when made ^{Pol. Virg. Angl.}
common, and given indifferently without choice and merit, to persons of mean ^{Hist. l. 19.}
condition: as may be sufficiently instanced in the Order of the ^{p. 298.} *Star* in France, un-
der the Reign of *Charles the Seventh*, and the now declining Order of ^z *St. Michael*. ^{Hist. St.}
^c *George*, part 3.
^d *et vin en le*
^e *Theatre d'Hon-*
^f *neur*, l. 1. c. 5.*

Fourthly, It hath been honored with the Compani-
onship of divers ^a *Emperors*, *Kings*, and *Sovereign Princes*
of *Christendom*, who reputed it among their greatest
honors, to be chosen and admitted therein; inasmuch as
some of them have with impatience courted the honor of
Electiō. For we find remaining upon this Registry of Honor, eight Em-
perors of Germany, three Kings of Spain, five French Kings, two Kings of Scot-
land, five Kings of Denmark, five Kings of Portugal, two Kings of Sweden,
one King of Poland; one King of Aragon, two Kings of Naples, besides sundry
Dukes

^c Rex instituit Garterium Ordinem, cui
tantus deinde accessit honor, ut maximos
quosq; Reges, non pauciores in id venire Col-
legium. Polyd. Virg. Angl. Hist. loco supra
cit.

Dukes and other Free Princes, as one Duke of Gelderland, one Duke of Holland, two Dukes of Burgundy, two Dukes of Brunswick, one Duke of Milan, two Dukes of Urbino, one Duke of Ferrara, one Duke of Savoy, two Dukes of Holstien, one Duke of Saxony, and one Duke of Wertemberg, seven Counts Palatines of the Rhine, four Princes of Orange, and one Marquess of Brandenburg.

Fifthly, It entitles those Knights and Noblemen, whose virtue hath raised them to this degree of honor, to be Companions and Fellows with Emperors and Kings; a Prerogative of an high nature, and a reward for greatest merits.

In the last place, we shall close up all with the Elogie given to this most noble Order, by our learned selden; ^dThat it exceeds in Majesty, Honor, and Fame, all Chivalrous Orders in the world.

^d Notes upon
Polyalb. Song
15.

CHAP. VI.

THE
Statutes *and* Annals
OF THE
Order.

SECT. I.

Of the Statutes of Institution.

AMONG Societies in general, it hath been found expedient, to plant Rules for them to walk by: Order and Regularity being not only the beauty and Symmetry of Government, but the parent of that Being, which greatly contributes to their perpetuity: Besides, Statutes and Rules, are as well the Bounds to determine, as Bonds to unite Fellowships and Societies together; and if either through negligence fall into disuse, or be unadvisedly broken, they readily open a way to dissolution and ruine.

Upon such like considerations therefore, that most famous, happy, and victorious Prince, King Edward the Third (after he had advisedly determined the Erection of this most noble and renowned Order of the Garter) did most pru-

dently ^adevise and institute several laudable Statutes and Ordinances, to be duly observed

^a Lib. N.p. 214.

observed and kept within the said Order; which being collected into one Body, are called the *Statutes of Institution*.

The original of these was Ordained to be safely kept within the ^b Treasury ^{b Ed. 3. Stat. Art. 27.} of the Colledge of *Windefor*, but hath long since wholly perished, yet there is a Transcript of them recorded in the Reign of King Henry the Fifth, at the beginning of the old Book, called *Registrum Ordinis Chartaceum*; a Copy whereof we have placed first in rank of the Infections and Autographs in the *Appendix*: nevertheless, bearing the marks of the Transcribers negligence or inadvertency, as will appear in several places, by the words we have supplied in the margin, warranted by two ancient *Exemplars* of this Body of *Statutes*.

The first of which, written in an ancient hand, I had communicated to me by the favour of the late Lord *Hatton*, that noble Patron of all good learning and learned men. But 'tis evident these were not the *Original Statutes*, from a part of the 10. *Article*, where speaking of the penalty for a *Knight's* not coming to *Chapter* on the Eve of the Grand Feast, at the assigned hour, it is there added, *Concerning which there is a Decree extant*. So also in the 12. *Article* relating to the penalty, where a *Knight-Companion* is found without his *Garter*; the payment whereof is there appointed to be made after the same manner, *as those who failing in like sort have been used to pay*. And lastly, the 33. *Article* here is wholly added out of King Henry the Fifth's Body of *Statutes*. This *Exemplar* next follows the Transcript of the *Original Statutes* in the *Appendix*, and where we have occasion, is cited thus, *Ordinis Statuta in Bibliotheca Hattoniana*.

Another *Exemplar* of the *Founder's Statutes* is registred at the beginning of the *Black Book of the Order*, it being the same in substance, put only into purer *Latin*, and the *Articles* rendered in a more elegant stile; yet there is one thing must not slip our observation, that whereas in the 17. *Article* of the *Statutes* entred in the *Registrum Chartaceum*, the Title of *Marquess* and *Viscount*, with the proportions they were decreed to pay ^{an. 24. R. 0.} upon the death of each *Knight-Companion*, are both interlined by another hand, and with fresher Ink, this *Exemplar* hath put them into the *Text*: But the same *Titles* being not interlined in the 22. *Article*, in the said *Register* (where there is a like occasion to speak of the Degrees of Nobility in the Order) are also omitted in that very *Article* of this *Exemplar*: which is a sufficient Argument, to manifest that it was compiled from the *Statutes* in the *Registrum Chartaceum*; and as to the time, after the 24. year of King Henry the Sixth, at soonest. These also are printed next the former *Exemplar*, and cited under this Title, *Ordinis Statuta in Libro Nigro*.

SECT. II.

Of those other Bodies of Statutes since established.

BESIDES these *Statutes* made at the *Institution* of the Order, there are two other *Bodies* or *Exemplars* established since; the one by King Henry the Fifth, and the other by King Henry the Eighth.

King Henry the Fifth, that happy restorer of the honor of the Order, having (at his entrance to the Royal Throne) found its glory upon abatement, not only raised it to its former lustre, but very much increast the honor thereof. For He renewed the *Grand Festival* and other *Solemnities*, He commanded a strict observation of all the *Founders Statutes*, and ^abrought many more to a like perfection, ^{a Lib. N. p. 64.} which He subjoined to such of them where they properly might be inserted, and are these that follow.

Article

3. That the Knights should make their obeysance in the *Choir*, first to the Altar, and next to the Sovereign.
8. That

8. That the Deputy should elect, if the Sovereign (when abroad) had not six Knights with him.
9. That the Feast of St. George should not be kept on St. Marks day, May-day, &c.
12. That when a Knight should ride, he might wear a Blue Ribband instead of his Garter.
14. That the order and manner of offering up the Achievements of deceased Knights, should be such as is there prescribed.
20. That Knights absent in the Sovereigns service, might be Installed by Deputy.
31. That the Sovereign should take a Signet of the Order abroad with him.
34. That no Charge should be admitted upon the Colledge, by the Custos or Canons, without the Sovereigns consent.

The Statutes of Institution, with these Additions, this King caused to be translated into French, and transcribed into a Roll, the Transcript whereof was lent me by the right honorable Basil Earl of Denbigh, a person who through an industrious search into his own ancient Evidences, is become fortunately happy, by adding thence great light to his high and noble Descent; and a no less encourager of, than really affected with the Studies of venerable Antiquity.

e From the
Earls of Haps-
burg in Ger-
many, *Dugdale's*
Antiq. of Warr.
p. 57.
f *Art. 29.*
g *Lib. N.p. 168*

This Roll (as before the Statutes of Institution) was Ordained to issue out thenceforth to the Knights-Companions under the Common Seal of the Order. In after times it was transcribed into Books; and by a Decree pass'd *an. 3. H. 7. an. 6* Original Book of these Statutes and Institutions fair written, was to be laid up in the Colledge of St. George; and the Scribe or Register to have Transcripts of it in readiness to present the Elected Knights withall.

The last and largest Body was undertaken and compleated, by that munificent increaser of the splendor of this most Noble Order, King Henry the Eighth; chiefly in regard some of the former Statutes were obscure, doubtful, and needed further explication; others wanted reducing and contraction, where the necessity of the case required.

h *g* *Lib. N.p.*
i *2095.*

And to set this worthy work on foot, this Sovereign gave Order (in a Chapter held at Greenwich on St. George's day, *anno regni sui 9.*) That all the Knights-Companions should be carefully summoned, to assemble together in the year then next following (whilst the solemnity of the Feast lasted) to consult and conclude upon the abrogation of such things as tended to the dishonor of the Order (if any such were) and for the advancement of other things that might augment and promote the honor thereof, but it seems there was not any thing done thereupon.

k *(MS. in Of-
fice. Arm.
m. 117.)*
p. 26. b.

n *g* *Ibid.*
o *f. 29.*

Afterwards, to give greater reputation to this his Royal design, this Sovereign on the 28. of May in the 11. year of his Reign, entred upon this great and noble work, with all magnificent Ceremony, being accompanied with 19 Knights-Companions of the Order, all proceeding on Horseback to the Chapter-house at Windsor; where being entred, and consideration had of the old Statutes; the Knights-Companions, with all due reverence, intreated the Sovereign to reform and explain them, as he should think convenient; who thereupon determining so to do, the whole Company gave their advice and consent. That done, all present besought the Sovereign, kneeling, that where any of them had offended, in breaking any Ordinance concerning the Order, he would please to remit it, and give them a general pardon, which most benignly he granted, and the next day, in Chapter, ratified it to them.

p *Lib. N.p. 156.*

q *Ibid. p. 215.*

But it seems this undertaking held yet three years, before it came to perfection; nevertheless then, viz. the 23. of April, *anno 14. H. 8.* the Sovereign out of a right singular love, good zeal, and entire affection to this most Noble Order, to the estate of Chivalry, and the continuance and increase thereof; as also at the humble request and instant desire of the then Knights-Companions, and by their advice, counsel, and consent did make Interpretation, and Declaration of the obscurities, doubts, and ambiguities of the former Statutes and Ordinances.

r *Ibid.*

And having reformed divers things in them, he thereunto made several additions,

additions, no less necessary than expedient. The Original whereof being signed and sealed, was commanded to be carefully laid up, in the Treasury of the Colledge at Windsor, there to remain to succeeding times, notwithstanding which, it hath not been seen there these many years past.

The Articles and Clauses added to the former Statutes in this last Body are these.

Article

1. That the interpretation of the Statutes, &c. belongeth to the Sovereign.
2. The three points of Reproach, declared; and what is meant by a Gentleman of Blood.
4. Of the Prorogation of the Feast.
5. How the Feast is to be observed by absent Knights.
6. Attendance on the Sovereign, if he be not at the Feast.
7. That the Sovereign's Deputy may correct things in Chapter.
12. The Offering up of Achievements, and a Taper armed with a Scutcheon.
13. Canons to sit in the lower stalls, when any Knights are present.
14. That six Knights make a Chapter.
20. The manner of Installation set down.
21. Clause for a foreign Knight's Deputy to be conducted from the Chapter-house to his Stall; and for making an Election void, if the Knight send not his Proxy within seven months.
23. For Advancing and Translating of Stalls.
25. Plates not to be larger than the first Founders, except Strangers.
38. Concerning the Collar of the Order.

This Body of Statutes was compiled in Latin, and is recorded in the "Black u Pag. 214. Book of the Order; it was translated into w French and English by Sir Thomas w Lib. N. p. 215. Wriothesley Knight, then Garter King of Arms: The English Version is that which hath been since delivered (instead of the former statutes) to all succeeding Knights-Companions, according to the Injunction, but of late times appointed to be sent to Foreign Princes, and other Elect Knights abroad, sealed with the Great Seal of the Order, affixed to a Label of Blue Silk and Gold, x Lib. R. p. 120.

Where this Book hath been delivered to a Knight-Companion at the Sovereign's charge, the Knight's Executors are obliged to send it back to the Colledge of Windsor, and there to deliver it to the Custos or Register of the Order. And because this Law was defective in point of time, therefore King Henry the Eighth's Statutes appoint the same to be sent to either of them (or to one of the principal Officers of the Order, for the time being) within three Months next after the decease of such Knight-Companion. y E. 3. 7 Stat. H. 5. 3 Art. 21.

And yet besides these three Bodies, most eminently known by the title of Statutes, there was another drawn up and published, anno 7. E. 6. the Reformation of Religion here in England giving the occasion; but it being within few Months repealed by Queen Mary, his Sister and Successor, before it received the life of Execution, and not since revived, we suppose it not proper to rank it in the Appendix or make any use thereof in the following Discourse. * Lib. C. p. 63.

In the Month of December 1666. the Right Reverend Father in God Matthew Wren, late Lord Bishop of Ely, shewed me a Manuscript, compiled by himself, about the year 1631. being at that time Register of this most Noble Order: wherein by way of Comment upon King Henry the Eighth's Statutes, he briefly shews (out of the Statutes and Annals of the Order) what alteration there hath been in the Law of the Garter, both before and since. It is a work composed with a great deal of judgment, and exceeding useful; and had it been my good hap to have met therewith before I had so neer finished this Work, the ready directions therein would have eased me of much toil, whilst I was about the composing it.

SECT. III.

Several endeavours for Reforming the Statutes, since the Reign of King Henry the Eighth.

AS the Kings of this Realm, immediately at their attaining the Crown, do become *Sovereigns* of this most Noble *Order* of the *Garter*, and consequently the ^a *Supream Law*, and *Interpreters* thereof; so is the regulation of the whole their undoubted *Prerogative*; and this hath been evidenced in nothing more fully than from their constant course in exercising the power, not only of making and establishing, but changing and altering the *Laws* and *Statutes* thereof; which upon interest of *Religion*, pleasure of the *Sovereign*, change of *times*, or any other fit or necessary *Occasion*, hath from time to time been done by them. Upon this ground was it, that King *Edward* the Sixth went about to alter and reform such things in the preceding *Statutes* as seemed not consistent with the *Religion* he had established in *England*. To which purpose, at a *Chapter* holden at ^b *Greenwich*, the 23. of *April* in the 3. year of his *Reign*, it was agreed, ^c *That the Lord St. John, the Earl of Arundel, and Sir William Paget should peruse over the Statutes of the Garter; and that the same should be reformed, and made agreeable to the Kings Majesty's other proceedings, by the advice of the Duke of Somerset Lord Protector, and other Companions of this Noble Order.*

This was seconded by another *Order*, made also in *Chapter* at *Greenwich*, on *St. Georges* day in the following year; where it was agreed, ^c *That the Book of Statutes should be reformed, and thereupon the Sovereign delivered to the whole Company, a Book, wherein was contained certain Statutes, by the same to be corrected and reformed as they thought best, until the next Chapter.*

But it seems, nothing was as yet done, in pursuance of either of these *Orders*, for at the next *Feast*, on the 24. of *April*, anno 5. E. 6. another *Order* past, ^d *impowering the Duke of Somerset, the Marquess of Northampton, the Earls of Warwick, Arundel, Bedford, and Wiltshire, to peruse over the Statutes and other Books of the Order, and the same to be reformed, as aforesaid.*

This third *Order* it seems took more effect than the former; for thereupon a new Body of *Laws* was collected together (wherein some things were reformed, others newly added; but in effect the *Laws* of the *Order* very much altered) and published *March* 17. anno 7. E. 6. But this King dying within four Months after, the very first thing *Queen Mary* (his Sister) took care for, in reference to the *Affairs* of this *Order*, was to see these new *Statutes* abrogated and made void.

To which purpose in a *Chapter* held at *St. James's House*, the 27. of *September* next following her coming to the Crown, it was among other things Decreed and Ordained, ^e *That the said Laws and Ordinances, which were in no sort convenient to be used, and so impertinent and tending to novelty, should be abrogated and disannulled; and no account to be made of them for the future.*

And for the speedy execution of this Decree, command was then also given to *Sir William Petre* (who that day was admitted *Chancellor* of the *Order*) to see, ^f *that they should be speedily expunged out of the Book of Statutes, and forthwith defaced; lest any memory of them should remain to posterity: and only those Decrees and Ordinances, which her Father, and his royal Predecessors had established, should be retained and observed.*

It may be also noted, that in this particular of Reformation, King *Philip* her Husband appeared no less zealous: for on the 5. of *August*, an. 1. & 2. Ph. & Mar. (which was the third day after he had been invested, with the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order*) himself being present at a *Chapter* in *Windsor Castle*, it was then Ordained; ^g *That all Acts and Decrees being recorded in divers places of the Great Book (to wit, the Black Book of the Order) which were repugnant and disagreeable*

^a Lib R. p. 119
^c 122.

^b Lib. N. p. 302.

^c Lib. p. 304.

^d Lib. p. 306.

^e Lib C. p. 6.
^f Ibid.

^g Ibid. p. 7.
^h Ibid.

ⁱ Ibid p. 12.

disagreeable either with the ancient and received Statutes of the Order, or else with the Laws of the Realm; should clearly be abolished and taken away; by the Marquess of Winchester, the Earls of Arundel, and Pembroke, and the Lord Paget.

And we no sooner see Queen Elizabeth ascending the Throne, but shortly after, on St. George's day in the 2. year of her Reign, a view of the Statutes is committed (by Commission) to four of the Knights-Companions, namely the^k Mar-^h Lib. C. quest of Northampton, the Earls of Arundel, and Pembroke, and the Lord Howard¹ P. 53. of Effingham: ¹Who were thereby impowered to read over and consider those Statutes, and being so read over and viewed, to consider with a watchful care and diligence, if any of them were disagreeable to the Religion, Laws, and Statutes of this Realm; and if any such were found, the same to be faithfully represented to the Sovereign, to the end that She, with the Knights-Companions, might establish such Decree concerning them, as she should think fit.

Whether any thing was done pursuant hereunto, or not, doth not appear in the Annals of the Order, or any where else that we have seen; nor do we conceive there was, or that this Sovereign saw much cause, to alter the frame of those Statutes, which King Henry the Eighth had established, and Queen Mary confirmed; since the Books of Statutes delivered to the Knights-Companions at their Installations, throughout her Reign, were no other than Transcripts of her Father's Body of Statutes, and besides, the practice of her time was generally pursuant to the direction therein; except in some few things, now and then added or altered, at future Chapters, when there arose new cause for so doing; of which we shall give an account as the matter occurs.

After her Reign, King James, her Successor, observing the obscurity and disagreement of some passages among the Statutes, attempted something towards their reformation, and in reference thereto, the^m 14. of May, in the 9. year of his^m Ibid. p. 173. Reign, Decreed, That Commissioners Letters should be made forth to the Earls of Nottingham, Worcester, Pembroke, and Northampton, whereby power should be given them, to examine the Registers, and other Monuments, which pertained to the Order; and where any thing should be found obscure, to make it clear, where contrariety appeared, fitly to reconcile it, yet with no endeavour of innovating any thing, but an intention of renewing all things, as near as might be to the first and most ancient Institution of the Order: saving always power to himself, as Sovereign of the Order, to add or change any thing (according to the occasion) as it should seem agreeable to his prudence, for the honor of this most Noble Order. What was done hereupon appears not, but some few years after, this Affair was revived, and the following Commission issued forth.

James R.

James by the grace of God King of Great Britain, France, and Ireland, Defender of the Faith, and Sovereign of the most Noble Order of the Garter, To our Right trusty, and Right well beloved Cousins and Councillors, Charles Earl of Nottingham, and Edward Earl of Worcester, and to our right trusty, and right well beloved Cousin Henry Earl of Southampton, and to our right trusty, and right well beloved Cousin and Councillor Thomas Earl of Arundel, and to our right trusty, and right well beloved Cousins, Philip Earl of Montgomery, and Robert Viscount Lisle, Knights and Companions of our said Order, Greeting; Whereas, ever since our coming to the Crown of this our Realm of England, We have had a special care to maintain and uphold the dignity and honor of our most Noble Order of the Garter, whereof we are Sovereign, as to the world hath well appeared, both by our careful observation at all due times of all the Ceremonies and Solemnities belonging to the same, and also by the choice we have made of Noble and Worthy persons, whether Princes of Foreign Nations, or Subjects of our own Kingdom, to supply the places which have been void of that Society. Now forasmuch as We are not ignorant that in all humane Constitutions, there may be not only Ambiguity, suffering doubtful Interpretation, but also defect, for which addition is requisite, the same best appearing in time, which is the producer and tryer of truth, We have therefore thought fit, out of the knowledge and

A a 2

experience

Ex Collect.
Guil. le Neve
mil. super Glac.
R. Armor.

experience we have of your understanding and wisdom, and the confidence we repose in your faithfulness and sincerity, being men of honor, and Knights and Companions of our said Order, to nominate you six, and to appoint you, or any four of you, to take an exact view of all the ancient Statutes and Articles of our said Order. And do give unto you, or any four of you, full power and authority to call before you all such persons, whether Officers of our said Order, or others, as can give you light or information concerning the same; and after a serious consideration thereof had by you all, or four of you, We will and require, that you set down in writing, what in the said ancient Statutes and Articles, you shall conceive meet to be explained, and what to be added, whereby our said Noble Order may be made more famous and illustrious, that the same being presented to us the Sovereign and the Society, at a Chapter holden, may be resolved on, in part or in all, to be put in execution, if to us it shall seem so good. Given under the Seal of our said Order, at our Palace of Westminster, the 26. day of April, in the sixteenth year of our Reign, &c.

Notwithstanding the powers and directions given by this Commission, the progress in this business was very slow paced, but towards the later end of his Reign, the Earls of Worcester, Montgomery, Arundel, Surry, and Leicester, four of the six Commissioners above-named, having had divers meetings, and debated several things represented to them; did at a Chapter holden at Whitehall, the 19. of May, anno Jac. Regis 20. present to the Sovereign certain Articles, subscribed with their hands, which for the Honor of the Order they thought necessary to be observed.

By the first of which they endeavoured to provide for a further progress and advance of the same, in proposing, ^c that every year a Commission from the Sovereign should be given or continued to such Knights of the Order, as in Chapter should be thought fit; to consider of all things to the Order belonging; and that the year following an account by the Knights in Chapter should be given of their proceedings, by virtue of the said Commission.

This with 8 other Articles, were confirmed by the Sovereign, and twelve of the Knights-Companions, the 22. of May following, in a Chapter held at Whitehall.

And so happily and effectually went this work forward, that on the Feast-day of St. George held at Windsor in the ensuing year, the said Earl of Worcester (being then the Sovereign's Deputy for that Feast) with ten Knights-Companions more, did agree to eight other Articles (most of them concerning the Alms-Knights) which the next morning were approved of by the Sovereign; and that day, before the celebration of Divine Service, by the Sovereign's Deputy, and Companions assembled in the Chapter-house, the observation thereof was also Decreed.

And now to come neerer, even to the Reign of his late sacred Majesty, King Charles the First, of ever blessed and glorious memory, who while it lay in his power, was (and much more would have been, had not the angry Fate of our late times opposed) the greatest Increaser of the Honor and Renown of this most illustrious Order: He, I say, taking into his princely thoughts all things whatsoever, which carried any shew or probability of adding lustre thereunto, designed and endeavoured, the most compleat and absolute Reformation of any of his Predecessors.

And first, at the Solemnity of St. George held at Windsor the 6. day of October in the 6. year of his Reign, He commissioned nine of the Knights-Companions, namely, the Earls of Molgrave, Pembroke, and Montgomery, Arundel and Surry, Salisbury, Carlisle, Dorset, Holland, Berkshire, and Suffolk, with command to assemble four times in a year, to consult and handle the Affairs of the Order.

All these, but the Earls of Molgrave and Dorset, met at Whitehall, the 2. of January following, where some few things were considered of.

This Commission was seconded by one more ample, about three Months after, and directed to the before-named Knights-Companions, or to any 8, 7, 6, 5, or 4 of them, thereby empowering them, ^d to meet, consult, and take an exact view, and to peruse all the Statutes and Ordinances of the Order; as well such as were established in the beginning, as such as had been since made by Explanation or Addition, and

^c Lib. C. p. 11.
 & 12.

p 57. p. 12.
 q & 13.

r 76 p. 14.
 s

a Lib. R. p. 65.

b Ibid. p. 67.

d Ibid. p. 68.

and to consider advisedly, whether any thing had been Ordered, that had brought Doubt or Ambiguity, or did stand in need of Alteration or Amendment. To the end, that if upon mature deliberation by them, there should appear any contrariety or other defect, by want of plain expression or other omission, which were fit by the Sovereign to be supplied for the augmentation of the Honor of the Order, that then in such case, He [the Sovereign] might (upon return of their Proceedings) resolve of some general Declaration in Chapter, to reform and reduce into one body all the Statutes and Ordinances thereof, that the same being compiled and settled in a perfect form, might be so delivered over to posterity, cleared and freed from all future questions and doubts.

We see here the largeness of this noble design: Nevertheless not any thing was done upon this Commission, though it stood in force even from the 6. to the 13. year of this Sovereign's Reign: but where the neglect lay appears not, though it may not untruly be conjectured by that which follows.

At the Feast of St. George, celebrated by Prorogation at Whitehall, for the year 1636. upon the 17, 18, and 19. days of April, anno 1637. divers humble Petitions for Reformation and Renovation, were presented to the Sovereign, the said 18. day of April, by the Chancellor, and them also read; some of which more especially tending to the honor of the Order were accepted and decreed by the Sovereign, and the rest referred and transmitted to the Knights-Commissioners before mentioned.

The first of those Decrees which at this time past, was to revive and renew the powers given in the former Commission, and thereupon a new Commission, dated the 7. of May then following, issued under the Great Seal of the Order, having the same Preamble with the former Commission, and was directed to the Earls of *Molgrave, Derby, Pembroke, and Montgomery, Arundel, and Surrey, Kelley, Salisbury, Dorset, Holland, Berkshire, Suffolk, Lindsey, Exeter, Marquess Hamilton, Duke of Lenox, the Earls of Danby, Moreton, and Northumberland,* or to three or more of them, to meet and consult of any matter, concerning the Statutes, or Honor of the Order. These Knights-Commissioners, were likewise armed with all the powers given in the foresaid Commission, dated anno 6. Car. 1. Unto which was added, for the better effecting the Sovereign's royal care; ^{g Lib. R. p. 116.} That three or ^{h 5 Rows} more of them should meet at the Sovereign's Court, and begin to execute the said Commission, in Whitson-week next ensuing, attended and assisted by the Chancellor of the Order, and all or any other Officers, or such of them as they should call and find serviceable. And being met and assembled, to have power to hear, propound, and debate whatsoever should be presented, or that they should conceive conducive, to the honor and perfect establishment of the Order. And to prepare all matters of such their consultation to be presented unto the Sovereign, at the next Feast of St. George, and so successively at every Chapter to be held by the Sovereign: therein to receive his full determination, approbation, and royal assent: with further power to adjourn from time to time, after the first opening and reading of the said Commission, their meetings to such places and days, as to them should seem most convenient.

Now who would think, that, after so noble a designation of the Sovereign, after his care to send forth a second Commission with augmentative powers, after his earnest recommending this Affair to their diligence, his pressing their dispatch for the speedy accomplishment of his Royal Intentions, and lastly, his expecting from them an account of their Transactions, at or before the celebration of the next Feast, these honorable persons who were Companions of so noble and honorable an Order, and at their admission sworn to advance the honor of the same, no less than to defend and maintain it, should need a Spur to so worthy a design? But it was so!-----

For although the foresaid Commission was opened and read at the Court at Whitehall, the 30. of May following, in the presence and session of the Earls of *Pembroke, and Montgomery, Salisbury, Holland, Marquess Hamilton, and Duke of Lenox, Commissioners and Companions* of this most Noble Order; yet I find the then Chancellor *Sir Thomas Rowe*, in an account of that day's proceedings by Letter, dated

*e Sir Thomas
Rowes Journal
p. 8.
f Ibid. p. 9.*

*g Lib. R. p. 116.
h 5 Rows
i 2 Journal:
p. 18.*

k Ibid. p. 19.

dated the fourth of June 1637. and directed to Dr. *Christopher Wren*, then Register of the Order (whose attendance was on that day excused) sadly profess; That it was as much as he could do, to procure and draw together five of the Knights-Companions, to open and read the Commission, and this also in haste, quasi in transitu; and all that was done, was to appoint another meeting at the Court in Midsummer-week, then next ensuing; and to lay a charge upon the Chancellor to prepare matter (to wit, ^m Propositions and Observations upon the Statutes) fit for their Consultation, against that time, according to the tenour of the Commission. And elsewhere he makes this ingenuous acknowledgment, That he found such difficulty to procure meetings, and a certain non-chalance in every one, as if it were but a ceremonious Affair, and so few hearty in it, that he feared, he and the Officers should wait to little purpose.

^m Ibid p. 21.

ⁿ Ibid.

^o f Ibid p. 31.
^p 2

^q Ibid p. 36.

And so indeed it fell out, for albeit he attended the said Knights-Commissioners in Midsummer-week, according to the appointment at their last sitting; yet there was nothing done, save only the adjourning of their meeting to ^a London.

Some little (and but little) progress was afterwards made in this Affair, at another meeting at White-hall, the 8. of February following; where three of the said Knights-Commissioners were present, namely, the Earls of *Berkshire*, *Lindsey*, and *Northumberland*; who Ordered, ^v That the Chancellor, Register, and Garter, should prepare an abbreviation of the Statutes, and reduce every thing of one head, into an act, to avoid confusion: And this being the half of what they then did, caused this Expression to fall from the Pen of this worthy Chancellor, in another Letter to the Register, of the 24. of Nov. 1637. There is little hopes of the Knights; they never meet, or to no purpose; though I am tired with solicitations.

Finally, the 1st of February after, another assembly of seven of the Knights-Commissioners was held also at Whitehall, in whose presence a few things were debated, but little concluded: and further than this sitting, can I not trace the prosecution of this noble design and intendment of the late Royal Sovereign, all the following years of his Reign; but that here it slept in silence and neglect.

SECT. IV.

Of the Annals of the Order.

AND because the several Orders and Decrees occasionally made in Chapters (being of good authority and binding to the Knights-Companions and Officers) with many other Historical and Ceremonial matters, relating to the Order, lye dispers'd throughout the Annals thereof; it will be requisite here, to give some account of those Books wherein they are so recorded, because we shall make frequent use of them in the progress of our Discourse.

Registrum Ordinis Char-
taceum.

^c (The First in
f. suo Canoni-
g. Cor. Catal.

The first of these in order of time, is an old Paper Book, written in French (hitherto fortunately preserved in the Paper-Office at Whitehall) which in all probability was begun by *John Coringham*: for we find him 1414. (which was a little before the Annals therein entred do commence) made ^a Canon of *Winchester*, and constituted ^e Register of the Order. And in regard that one and the same kind of hand-writing is continued from the beginning of this Book, until anno 16. H. 6. inclusive, where follows an Hiatus till anno 23. H. 6. that the Annals begin to be entred with another hand, and that he shortly after died, viz. anno Dom. 1445. 'tis very probable, the Book so far was writ by himself.

Hence forward these Annals are entred with several hands, and those generally in use about the times, wherein the Transactions passed, whence may well enough be presumed, that these were the proper hand-writings of each Register of the Order, and that this Book was transmitted from one Register to another, wherein, after their death or other removal, the Annals and Acts were continued by

by the hand of the next Successor; and from this conjecture may some light be also given of the time how long each Register or Scribe enjoyed his Office.

After Richard Sidnor was made Register, to wit, ^b anno 16. H. 8. (who subscribed his name to the foot almost of each leaf) the Annals were written in one hand, until anno 26. H. 8. that ⁱ Robert Aldrydge Doctor of Divinity, and one of the Canons of Windesore succeeded him in that Office, and then 'tis evident the hand-writing also was changed, to an old set Roman, which ran on to the end of 29. H. 8. in which year he was advanced to the Bishoprick of Carlisle, and this Book ends in the 31. of his Reign.

Besides this, there is another Book wherein the Annals of the Order are recorded in Latin, concerning which there past a Decree, anno 3. H. 7. ^m That it should be fairly transcribed, and ^a afterwards, That the Sovereign should be put in mind of it, as being then needful to be renewed; but neither of these Decrees took effect, nor was this done till towards the end of the Reign of King Henry the Eighth.

This Book agrees very nearly with the Registrum Chartaceum, for therein is nothing entred relating to the Order (except^o one of the Exemplars of the Founder's Statutes, and a^a Catalogue of the first 25 Knights-Companions) before the fourth year of King Henry the Fifth; the Annals of the Order until then being wholly lost. It hath the same *Hittus* or Intervals, viz. from the 16. to the 23. year of King Henry the Sixth, from the 7. to the 10. of Edward the Fourth, from the 4. to the 7. of Henry the Seventh, and from the 10. to the 14. of the same King; it also runs parallel therewith for the most part, yet where there is any thing more recorded in the Registrum Chartaceum than in the Black Book, we shall note it, as we have a fitting occasion offered.

And that it was compiled by Dr. Aldrydge, while he was Register, may be collected from a short Account given in the ^o Preface, of all the Sovereigns of the Order, ending with King Henry the Eighth; with a memorial relating to Cardinal Wolsey, who, as it there appears, was then dead.

The Transcription of this Book was finished anno 31. H. 8. for so far it is written (as also the Appendix) with one and the same hand (being a middle sized Text Letter) but anno 32. H. 8. 'tis most apparent, another hand is introduced, which with some variation is afterwards carried on to the end of anno 5. E. 6. where this Book ends.

The Register of the Order, by the Constitutions of his Office, was obliged to provide two Books, and therein to enter the Ordinances and Statutes, with other Acts of the Order, whereof one was appointed to be kept in the Chapter-house at Windesore, and called Index Windesoriensis; and the other (being a duplicate of the former) to remain in the Register's keeping, ready at hand to shew the Sovereign whensoever he should require it; and this latter was called Aula Registrum.

As to the general directions given for compiling these Books, and of what particulars they are principally to consist, we have some information from the Statutes of the Order, and the foresaid Constitutions; for besides the entry this Officer is enjoined to make of all the scruteny taken in Chapter, and Elections thereupon made (which we shall at large discourse of in its due place) his duty is to record the Penalties inflicted on Knights-Companions, and the reason thereof, the reconciliation of those that have suffered penalties as Delinquents, with other Acts and their causes, appertaining to the Order: All which are Decreed to be recited before the Sovereign and Knights-Companions, at the beginning of the Chapter, yearly on the Eve of St. George; to the end they may be corrected, and reduced into Method, if need require.

Moreover, he is, by the foresaid Constitutions, to make entry of all the Policies in War, Exploits, Transactions, and memorable Achievements, both of the Sovereign and Knights-Companions, according as he can best attain the knowledge of them, either by his own diligent search, or the assistance of Mr. Garter, which having first set down and committed to writing, as passages and accidents happen from year to year, whatsoever is thus noted by him, is to be red and perused at the next Chapter, by the Knights-Companions there assembled, that if any thing be found to stand in need of Correction, it may there be forthwith amended, and again in like manner at another

b Lib. N. p. 245.

i Ex Catalog.

p. 168.

k Lib. N. p. 265.

l Godwins Cat.

tal. of Bishops,

p. 543.

Liber Niger.

m Lib. N.

p. 168.

n Anno 32. H. 7.

o vide Lib. N.

p. 181.

o Lib. N.

p. 27.

n Ibid. p. 38.

o Fol. 22. &

p. 23.

q Chap. 9.

Sec. 15.

r E. 3. Stat.

Art. 34.

l Ord. Stat. in

Bibl. Hatton.

Art. 36.

t E. 3. Stat. Art.

34. H. 5. Stat.

Art. 36.

u Lib. N. p.

235.

another Chapter afterwards; which done, he is to take care, that they be fairly ingrossed in the foresaid Book, for a perpetual memorial.

And because the time assigned for rehearsal of these particulars in Chapter, had in succeeding years been taken up with other Affairs; in one of those Articles, which the Knights-Companions (to whom King James recommended the framing of some Articles, necessary for the honor of the Order) presented to the Sovereign the 19. of May, anno Jac. Regis 20. and confirmed the 22. of May following, it was Decreed, ^w That nothing of this nature, or any other Act in Chapter should be Registered, before it had been perused and considered by the then Knights-Commissioners, or at least four of them, who when they should set times apart, to consult of the Affairs of the Order, for which they were chiefly constituted, might then also make use of such opportunities, as should give this business dispatch with more conveniency.

Upon due consideration had of these Injunctions, the present Register (at a Chapter held the 19. of November, anno 22. Car. 2.)^x exhibited the continuation of the Annals of this Noble Order, which he had prepared to register in the *Lib. Carolinus*, and humbly submitted it to the perusal and approbation of the Knights-Companions whom the Sovereign had deputed to take into their consideration the Affairs of the Order; which tender when they declined, he proposed that it might be examined by the Prelate, but that not being liked by them (on consideration that the Register was obliged under an Oath, to deal faithfully in his Report) it was Decreed, ^y That the said Annals should be recorded in the said Book without any further examination.

Besides the above-mentioned particulars, there were materials of another nature, ordered to be collected, both from the Chancellor of the Order, and Garter Principal King of Arms, to be digested by the Register, and entred also upon Record; for, whereas one part of the Chancellor's duty was to^z set forth and declare every year in Chapter, at the Feast of St. George, the renowned and praiseworthy Acts of the Knights of this Order, as many as had so merited, and as for those who had deserved the contrary, to make relation also of their scandalous and disgraceful actions; the Register was to take these in writing, and record them for a memorial of their honor or shame, never to end.

And it is part of the duty of Mr. Garter, ^a diligently and industriously to make enquiry after the valiant, fortunate, and renowned Acts, both of the Sovereign, and the rest of the Knights-Companions, which having learnt, he is to make a true and faithful relation of them to the Register, to be by him entred upon Record for a perpetual memorial.

But we find very little of this hitherto done, and how sparingly inserted, the Annals themselves are but too evident Witnesses. Nevertheless, the present Garter, Sir Ed. Walker, hath drawn up a faithful account of the noble Actions and Characters of the Knights-Companions, beginning with Thomas Earl of Strafford, and continuing it down to his Son; which he delivered to Dr. Ryves, the now Register, for the use afore directed.

Among the Articles established at the Feast of St. George, anno Jac. Regis 21. the last is, ^b That the then Register of the Order should compose a Book, wherein should be orderly transcribed the form and manner of all the Solemnities, Ceremonies, and Processions, which were accustomably used at the Feast of St. George, and celebration of the Order, as also of taking down and offering the defunct Knights Achievements, to the end the Knights-Companions, upon recourse to it, might have full information thereof. But (after much enquiry) we have not heard that such a Book was drawn up by him, or any of his Successors.

And that some course should be taken for the safe custody and preservation of the Annals of the Order, such was the worthy care of the foresaid Knights-Commissioners, that the said 22. of May, anno Jac. Regis 20. it was Ordained, ^c That a secure and certain place within the Castle of Windeſor, should be provided and appointed, in which all Acts concerning the Order should be kept, and to which every Knight-Companion at all times might have access. And further, ^d That upon the remove, or after the death of the Register of the Order, the Book containing

an account of all such acts as had been Registered and there reserved, should be delivered to one of the Knights of the Order.

The second of these Books is called the *Blue Book*, and so called from the colour of the Cover, being fairly bound in *Blue Velvet*. It begins with the first year of Queen *Mary*, and ends at the 18. year of King *James*. Liber Cærus
leus.

The third, being bound up in *Red Velvet*, goes therefore under the name of the *Red Book*; it takes commencement where the *Blue Book* ends, and contains like Acts and Entries with the former, it ends in the 14. year of King *Charles* the First of ever blessed memory, having first given a full account of the Ceremonies performed at the Installation of the present *Sovereign*. Liber Rubens.

And as to a great part of this Book may I justly and without flattery say, (and to the honor of that right Reverend Prelate, Doctor *Wren* the late Lord Bishop of *Ely*, let it be remembered) that from the Institution of this most Noble Order, until he was chosen into the Office of *Register*, the *Annals* of the Order, were at no time recorded by a Pen near so judicious or elegant; whose excellent Patern his worthy Brother, and Successor into that Office, Doctor *Christopher Wren*, (who most freely and readily communicated to me, what materials he had, to encourage my first design and entrance upon this Work,) hath exactly copied in its following leaves.

The fourth and last Book commenceth, anno 1640. wherein the *Annals* are continued down to the beginning of the year 1670. according to the English Account, by the learned pains of Dr. *Brune Ryves* the present *Register* of the Order. And in a Chapter held at *Windsor* the 16. of April, anno 13. Car. 2. it was Decreed, That there should be two of these Books made, the one penn'd in *Latin* to remain with the *Register* at *Windsor*, and the other in *English* to be kept at *Whitehall*, and called *Registrum Anglicum*. Liber Carolinus.
e Lib. Carol.
p. 30.

THE Account drawn up of the Founder and first Knights-Companions of this Noble Order, we designed for the next Chapter, but for some considerable reasons cannot bring it in here; nevertheless we intend it to usher in the Catalogue of their Successors, and join them together in the last Chapter, where our Reader, if hence he cast his eye thither, may read it in due Order.

CHAP. VII.

THE
Habit *and* Ensigns
OF THE
Order.

SECT. I.

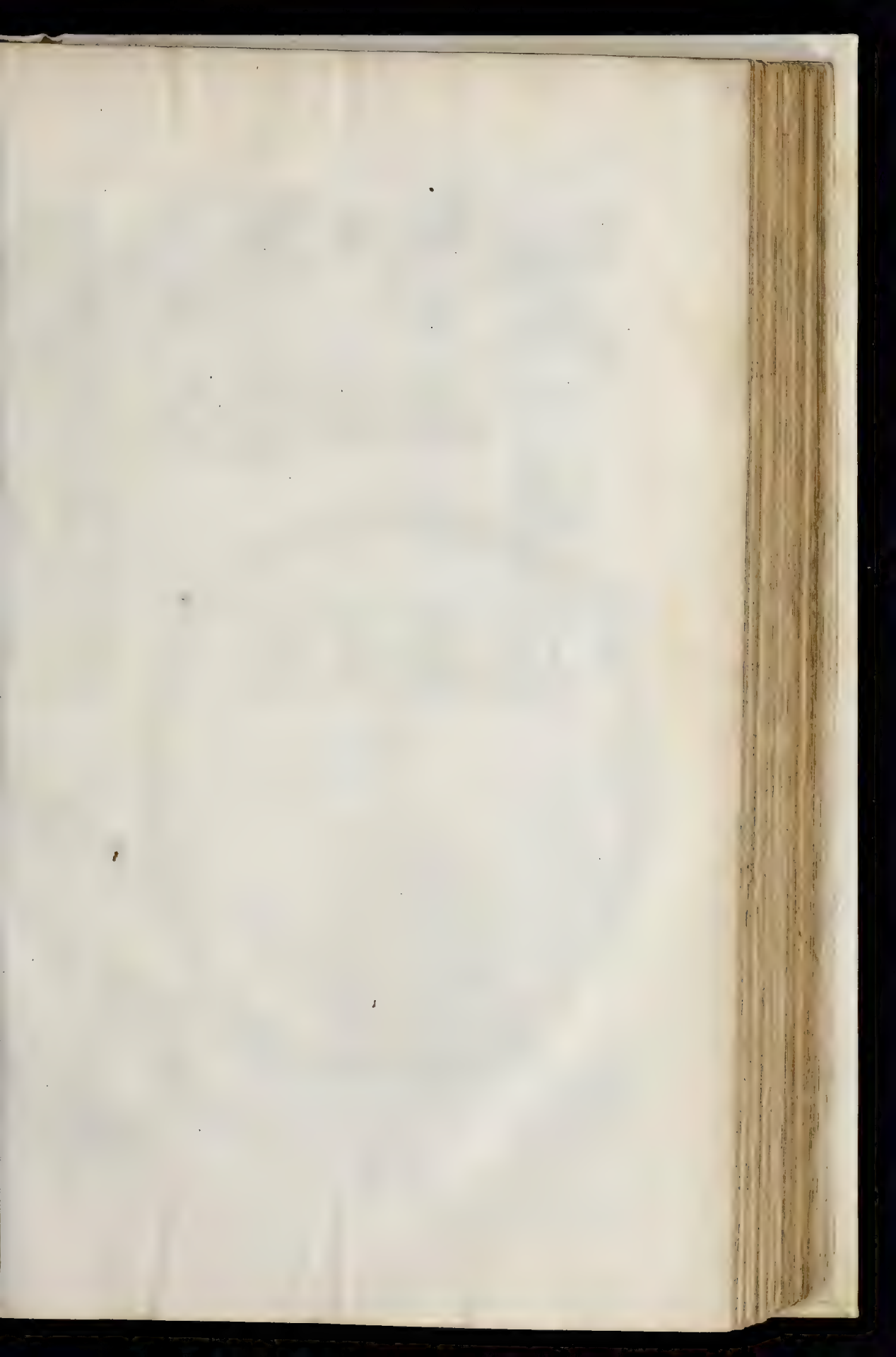
Of the Garter.

AMong the Ancients, the *Romans* were most exact, in assigning each Degree, a peculiar *Habit* and *Vesture*; by which alone the quality and condition of their *Citizens*, might be known and distinguished. This Custom of distinction in Apparel was afterwards taken up by sundry other Nations also, whence it came to pass, that every *Military* as well as *Ecclesiastick* Order of *Knighthood* did appropriate to it self a peculiar *Habit*, *Ensign*, or *Badge*; and these, the *Fellows* and *Companions* of those *Orders*, were appointed and enjoined to wear, to the end, they might be distinguished by them, as from others, so from one another, and best set forth the State and Honor of their several *Societies*.

Among the *Military Orders*, the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of this most Noble Order of the *Garter*, are highly honorable, and eminently magnificent; and consist of these particulars following. Namely the *Garter*, *Mantle*, *Surcoat*, *Hood*, *George*, and *Collar*. The four first were assigned by the *Founder*, and the two last by King *Henry* the Eighth, and all these together, are called ^a the whole *Habit* or *Ensigns* of the Order. Concerning each of which we shall here deliver a short account, beginning with the principal *Ensign* the *Garter*.

The Royal *Garter* challengeth the preheminance; for from it this most famous Order received a Name and Title. ^b It is the first part of the *Habit* presented to foreign *Princes*, and absent *Knights*, and that wherewith they, and all other *Elect Knights* are first adorned; and of so great honor and grandeur in this Institution, that by the bare Investiture with this Noble *Ensign*, the *Knights* are reckoned and accounted *Companions* and *Fellows* of the greatest *Military Order* in the World.

^a Lib. N. p. 209.
^b E. 2. Stat. Art. 19. H. 5. Stat. Art. 19. H. 8. Stat. Art. 20.



The Garter



The Sovereign's



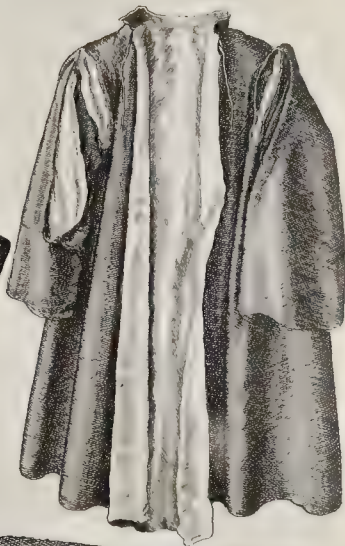
The Collar and great George



Hood



Surcoat



Ribbon and
George

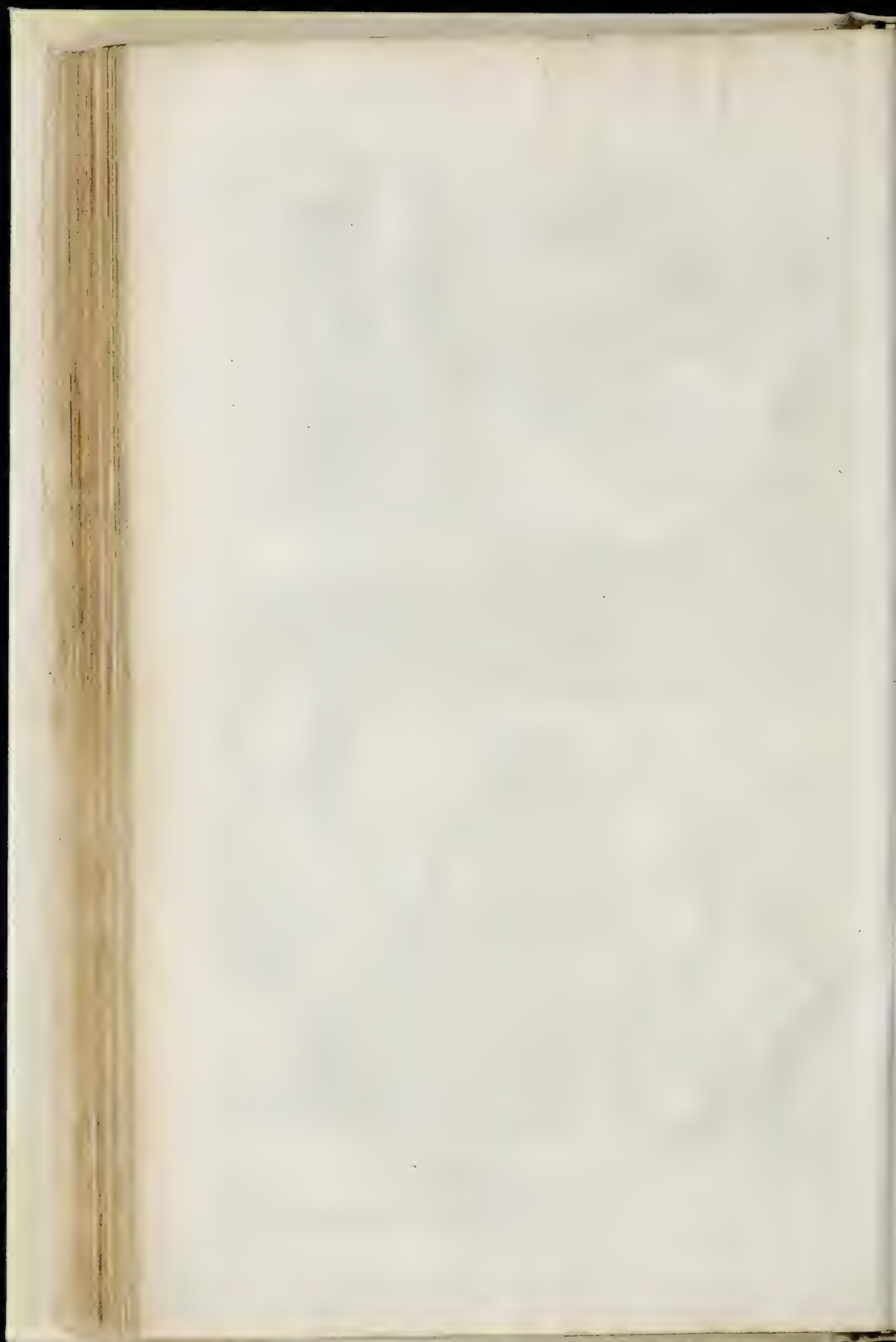


1. Knight Companion's
Mantle



Cap and
Butter





Of what materials this principal *Ensign* was at first made, we have not yet found, nor is it described by any, before *Folydore Virgile*, and he, but in general, as to the ornamental part of it, to wit, That it was adorned with Gold and precious Stones, and had a Buckle of Gold at the end, wherewith to fasten it about the Leg. But doubtless, it was also wrought with rich Embroidery, and thereon the Symbolical word or *Motto* was raised with Gold, Pearl, and sundry sorts of Silks; as may be guessed from the *Garters* anciently placed on the left shoulder of the *Knights-Companions* Mantles, and these other little embroidered *Garters*, wherewith their Surcoats and Hoods were heretofore adorned, which we shall describe by and by.

But touching those made in the last Age, we have received more particular satisfaction: for we find, that the *Garter* sent to *Emanuel Duke of Savoy*, ann. 1 & 2. *Phil. & Mar.* was set with Letters of Goldsmiths Work, the *Buckle* and *Pendant* of the same, and on the *Pendant*, a Ruby and a Pearl hanging at the end. The *Garter* made for *Francis the Second*, anno 6. *Eliz.* was richly wrought with Letters of Gold, garnished with Stones: the *Buckle* and *Pendant* weighing three Ounces and a half and half quarter, was richly set with Rubies and Diamonds. The *French King Henry the Fourth*, had a *Garter* of Purple Velvet, embroidered with Letters of Gold, garnished with Diamonds and Rubies; and the *Garter* of *Christiern the Fourth King of Denmark*, was embroidered with Gold and Pearls.

But that *Garter* sent to *Gustavus Adolphus King of Sweden*, did excel all others, bestowed by former *Sovereigns*, for richness and glory; each Letter of the *Motto* being composed of Diamonds. A particular Inventory whereof (taken the 24. day of *May*, anno 14. *Car. I.* when delivered by the *Sovereign's* Command, to the custody of the *Dean* and *Chapter* of *Windeſor*, to be preserved there in memory of that famous King) we here exhibit; it being the transcript of that Counterpart, signed by *Doctor Christopher Wren*, then *Dean* of *Windeſor*, and seven *Canons* of that *Colledge*, upon the receipt thereof.

Under the Letters of the <i>Garter</i> small Diamonds on [the lower] side	52
Item, on the upper side of the <i>Garter</i> of small Diamonds	52
In the Letter H Diamonds small	10
In the Letter O Diamonds small	12
In the Letter N Diamonds small	11
In the Letter I Diamonds small	4
The first stop Diamond	1
In the Letter S Diamonds small	11
In the Letter O Diamonds small	12
In the Letter I	4
In the Letter T Diamonds	10
The Stop,	1
In the Letter Q Diamonds	13
In the Letter V	9
In the Letter I	4
The Stop,	1
	207
In the Letter M Diamonds small	11
In the Letter A Diamonds small	10
In the Letter L Diamonds small	6
The Stop,	1
The Letter Y Diamonds	6
The Stop,	1
The Letter P	10
The Letter E	9
The Letter N	11
The Letter S	11
The Letter E	9

d Ex Colleſt.
Will le Neve
Ej. Aur. nuper
Clarencieux R.
Armoium.
e Ex Colleſt.
Aug. Vincent
nuper Windeſor Herald.
f MS. fol. pen
Georg. Owen,
nuper Toke Herald.
p. 154.
q Ib. p. 229. b.
h Ib. p. 295.

In the first Button, Diamonds	6
In the second	6
In the third	6
In the fourth	6
In the Star of longer Diamonds	7
Small Diamonds.	31
In the Chapes border, Diamonds of a bigger size	32
In the Cross, four faucet long Diamonds, and four three square faucet Diamonds	8
One large Diamond long and faucet encompassed with seven square Diamonds and faucet	8
In the Buckle, one faucet table Diamond in the end, and twenty seven in the compass and tongue	28
In the Hinge of the Buckle, one foul square Diamond, and eleven other faucet and square Diamonds	12
	88
Total of the Number	411

See the Trustees
Book of Sales.

This rich Garter, being (for greater security) buried in St. George's Chappel, at the beginning of the late War, was discovered by *Cornelius Holland*, and fetch'd thence by *John Hunt* Treasurer to the Trustees for sale of the late Kings Goods, and sold by them to *Thomas Beauchamp* their then Clerk.

§ Ek relation
k ne prod.
Ths. Beau-
champ.

The Garter which his said late Majesty wore upon his Leg at the time of his Martyrdom, had the Letters of the Motto compos'd likewise of Diamonds, which took up the number of 412. It came into the hands of *Captain Preston* (one of the late Usurper's Captains of Horse) from whom the said^k Trustees received it, and sold to Mr. *John Ireton*, sometimes Lord Mayor of London for 205 l. But since the happy Restauration of the present Sovereign, Mr. *Ireton* was summoned before the Commissioners, impowered by a Commission under the Great Seal of England, to enquire after the Crowns, Plate, Jewels, &c. of the said late Sovereign, which had been concealed or imbezeled, and being charged with the buying the foresaid Royal Garter, and not denying it, Compulsion was offered him, according to the direction of the Commission (as in all other like cases, where any thing could not be had in kind) but he refusing the offer, the Kings Attorney General proceeded against him in an Action of Trover and Conversion, in the Court of Kings-Bench, which coming to trial in Trinity Term, anno 16. Car. 2. upon a full hearing, a Verdict was given for the King, against the said *John Ireton* for 205 l. and 10 l. Costs of Suits.

The Motto of the now Sovereign's Royal Garter, is set with Diamonds upon Blue Velvet, and the borders wrought with fine Gold Wire; the Diamonds which frame the Letters of the Motto are Rose Diamonds, much of a bigness, but those which make the Stops, table Diamonds; and the number which set each Letter are as followeth.

In the Letter H small rose Diamonds	10
In the Letter O	12
In the Letter N	11
In the Letter I	4
The first stop Diamond	1
In the Letter S	9
In the Letter Q	11
In the Letter I	4
In the Letter T	8
The Stop,	1
In the Letter Q	12
In the Letter V	9
In the Letter I	4
The Stop,	1
In	

In the Letter M	13
In the Letter A	10
In the Letter L	6
The Stop,	1
In the Letter Y	8
The Stop,	1
In the Letter P	9
In the Letter E	9
In the Letter N	12
In the Letter S	8
In the Letter E	9
In each of the four Not holes six little Diamonds	24
In the Buckle, two very large Diamonds, four somewhat less, three less than they, and four small Diamonds	13
In the Tab, three very large Diamonds, six a little lesser, one somewhat less, four smaller Diamonds, two less than they, and fourteen small Diamonds	30
Total	250

The Hinge of the Buckle is pure Gold, and thereon the *sovereign's* Picture to the breast, curiously cut in flat-stich, crowned with a Laurel, and vested in the Military Habit worn by the first Roman Emperors. The Tab or Pendant is also Gold, and on the back side thereof engraved a *Saint George* on Horseback, encountering the Dragon. The order of placing the Diamonds on the Buckle, Tab, and about the Not holes, may be seen in the Draught which (with the rest of the Noble Ornaments, that make up the whole *Habit and Ensigns* of the Order, exactly taken from the particulars themselves) is placed at the beginning of this Chapter.

This Noble Ensign [the Garter] was at the Foundation of the Order, appointed to be worn on the left Leg, a little beneath the Knee, and so hath the usage in all time since continued. And its apparent, that the manner of placing this Garter on the left Leg of the *Knights-Companions* Sepulchral Portraits, was very early brought into use; seeing in that Alabaster Figure, of Sir William Fitz Warren (who died a *Knight-Companion* of this Noble Order, in the five and thirtieth year of the Founder's Reign) lying with his Lady on a raised Monument, in the North side of the Chancel of Wintonage Church in *Berkshire* (and yet to be seen) with his Surcote of Arms upon the breast the resemblance of his Garter (but without any *Motto*) is carved upon its left Leg. In like manner is the Garter represented on the left Leg of the Alabaster Portrait of Sir Richard Pembridge, elected *Knight* of this most Noble Order, in the Founder's Reign, and in the room of Sir Thomas Ufford: whose Monument is erected in the South side of the Cathedral Church of *Hereford*, below the Pulpit, and encompassed with a Rail of Iron Spikes.

The next Monument in time, whereon we have seen the Garter so represented, is that made for Sir Simon Burley (beheaded anno 1388.) and raised in the North wall siding the Quire of St. Paul's Cathedral London, almost over against the Monument of John a Gaunt Duke of Lancaster. Thence forward the usage became more frequent (and then the *Motto* began likewise to be cut thereon) in so much as even until these days, the Garter is to be seen thus represented, upon all the Monumental Portraits of those, who were since *Companions* of this most Noble Order.

And albeit this Princely Ensign of the Order, was at first designed for an Ornament to the left Legs of the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions*; yet was not its use confined only thereto, but extended to some other particulars: For, in the next place it was (and that anciently also) made use of to incircle the *Scutcheon* of St. George's Arms, worn by the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* on the left shoulder of their *Mantles*; who within a short time after took it to surround each of their proper *Coats of Arms*: which usage, their Successors in this most Noble

Order

1 Polid. Virgil.
Angl. Hist. l. 19.
p. 278.
m Lib. N. p. 66.

n Ex vestis
Codice de Epi-
scopis & Plo-
ribus Dunel-
mens. Ecclesie,
vide Tho. Wal-
singh. sub anno
1351.
o Ex Collect.
p Sils Tay-
lor gen. lib. D.
f. 129. b.

q See the In-
script, in Mr.
Dugdale's Hi-
story of St.
Pauls Cathed-
rals, p. 103. &
Placita coram
Rege. an. 5. H. 5
rot. 46. Heref.

Order have retained, as a peculiar priviledge, but not permitted to any other, except the *Prelate* of the *Garter* their principal Officer.

The first Example which hath occur'd to our view, is the before mentioned Monument of Sir *Simon Burley*; where on the front towards the head is a *Scutcheon* of his Arms, impaled with his first Wives, set within a *Garter* (wanting the *Impress*) but another having the same impalment (placed below the Feet) is surrounded with a *Collar* of *ss*, of the fashion with that about his neck.

The Monument also of *Joane* Wife to *Ralph Nevill* Earl of *Westmerland*, Daughter to *John a Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaster* (who died on the Feast-day of *St. Brice*, anno 1410.) raised on the South side of the Quire in the Cathedral Church of *Lincolne*, hath the Arms of *Nevill*, impaled with those belonging to the said *Joane*, incircled with a *Garter*: And by these two (among other Examples) it appears to have been the usage about those times, to surround *Scutcheons* of Arms, and other *Devices*, with a *Collar* of *ss* also: for so, on this great *Ladies* Monument, is there such a *Collar*, fashioned like that of Sir *Simon Burley's* placed about a square, whereon, what was painted doth not now appear.

Another ancient instance is that *Scutcheon*, viz. *Sable*, three *Ostrich Feathers* *Argent*, surrounded with the *Garter*, set up in the Glass Windows of *Greenwich* Church in *Kent*, by *Humfry* Duke of *Gloucester*, and supported with a *Greyhound* and an *Antelope*. It is said, that these three Feathers were the Badge of King *Henry* the Fourth, which he had from *John a Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaster* his Father, who bore them for his *Device* (as might be seen not long since in the North Window, against his before mentioned Monument, in *St. Paul's London*) and placed in a Field *Sable* as here, but the Pens were powdered with *Ermyns*, for a difference from the *Black Prince's* Feather. The King likewise, so also the House of *Somerset*, gave the White *Ostrich* Feather for a *Device*; but all the difference lay in the Pen, for the Kings Pen was *Or*, the Princes *Argent*, the Duke of *Lancaster's* *Ermyn*, and the Duke of *Somerset's* Compony, *Argent*, and *Azure*.

The Arms of Sir *Lewis Robfort* Lord *Bourchier*, one of the *Knights* of this Order, Elected in the Reign of King *Henry*, the Fifth, are to be seen painted within a *Garter*, on each side his Monument, in *St. Paul's Chappel* in *Westminster* Abbey. Afterwards we find at the Interment of *Richard* Duke of *York*, Father to King *Edward* the Fourth (slain at the Battel of *Wakefield*) that every corner of the Majesty *Scutcheon* (set over the Image of the defunct) had a *Scutcheon* of the Arms of *France* and *England* quarterly, and four Angels *Gold*, holding the Arms within a *Garter*.

In like manner, some of the *Scutcheons* prepared for the Funeral of *John* Viscount *Wells* (who married *Cicely*, third Daughter to King *Edward* the Fourth and died the 9. of February anno 14. H. 7.) were surrounded with the *Garter*; and so were others having his *Ladies* Arms, of both Metal and Colour. At the Interment of *Thomas* Duke of *Norfolk* in *Thetford* Abbey (who dyed anno 16. H. 8.) there was provided a *Shield* of his Arms within a *Garter*, and a *Coronet* set over it. A *Target* also of the Arms of *George* Earl of *Shrewsbury* within a *Garter* was born at his Funeral, anno 33. H. 8.

It was the custom (begun with us about the Reign of King *Henry* the Seventh) when the *Obsequies* of any *Forreign Prince* were celebrated here in *England*, to paint the *Scutcheon* of such Princes Arms within the *Collar* of that Order, whereof he was *Sovereign*, or a *Fellow-Companion*; for instance,

At the *Obsequies* of the French King *Charles* the Eighth, celebrated in the Cathedral of *St. Paul's London*, the *Scutcheons* of the Arms of *France*, were placed within the *Collar* of the Order of Saint *Michael*, of which he was *Sovereign*. At each end of the *Hearse*, when the *Obsequies* of *John* King of *Portugal*, were kept in *St. Paul's Cathedral*, there was among others, one great *Scutcheon* of his Arms, within the *Collar* of the *Golden Fleece*, wrought with Metal upon Wax, in regard he was one of the *Knights* of that Order. The *Obsequies* of the Emperor *Charles* the Fifth, being performed in *Westminster* Abbey the 22. and 23. days of December anno 1558. there were ten great *Scutcheons*, compassed with *Garters*; to shew he was a *Fellow*, and *Knight-Companion* of this Order.

And

r MS. in Bibl.
Hutton.

f MS. in Offic.
A. 1. 1. 1.
f. 6. b. 1. 1.
in
ead. Offic. f. 84.

r MS. in Offic.
p. 1. 1. 1.

u MS. in Offic.
p. 1. 1. 1.

x Aug. Vin-
cent's discov-
ery of Errors in
B. 1. 1. 1.

y Ex. pref. MS.
[1. 1. 1.] fol. 103.

z MS. in ead.
Offic. [1. 1. 1.]

f. 5. b.

a MS. [1. 1. 1.]

f. 10.

b 1. 1. 1.

c MS. 1. 1. 1.

in ead. Offic.
f. 245. b.

c 1. 1. 1.

d MS. f. 24. b.

And upon the same account, where any *Foreign Princes*, were not only *Sovereigns* of one Order, but *Companions* of another; their *Herses* were garnished with *Scutcheons* of their proper Arms, surrounded with the *Collars*, or principal *Badges* of both those Orders. Hereupon we find, at the *Obsequies* of *Francis* the First, the *French King*, celebrated the 19. of June in *St. Paul's London*, anno 1. E. 6. the *Herse* was adorned with the *Scutcheons* of the Arms of *France*, placed both within the *Garter* of *St. George*, and *Collar* of *St. Michael's* Order; in regard he had been a *Fellow* of the one, and *Sovereign* of the other, c. MS. [I. 11.] f. 112.

At the *Obsequies* performed for *Henry* the Second of *France*, on the 9. of September, anno 1. Eliz. in *St. Paul's* also, there were some *Scutcheons* of his Arms, incircled both with the *Garter* and *Collar* of the *Golden Fleece*, he having been a *Knight-Companion* of both these Orders; under the *Joyfts* was a *Majesty* *Scutcheon* of *Black Taffaty*, of this *Kings Arms* within a *Garter*, crowned with an *Imperial Crown*: This *Scutcheon* was garnished in eight places, with eight *Roundles*, and therein his *Impress*, *Donec totum impleat Orbem*, with three *Crescents*, and two *D's* of the *Roman Letter*, linked back to back; and in several other places of the *Herse*, were fastned other *Scutcheons* of his Arms within this principal *Ensign* of the *Garter*. f. Lib. 12. f. 8. 8. 1. 14. f. 7.

King Henry the Eighth was first of the *Sovereigns* of this most Noble Order, who introduced into his *Great Seal*, the *Scutcheon* of his Arms, incircled within a *Garter*; as may be seen placed on either side of his *Portraiture*, fitting in his *Royal Throne*. Since his *Reign*, all succeeding *Sovereigns* have born their Arms within the *Garter*, not only in their *Great* and *Privy Seals*, but also in those other belonging to their Courts of Justice; and generally in all things (except *Coins*) whereon the *Scutcheon* of their Arms have been since cut, carved, graved, painted, or wrought (in imitation of whom the *Knights-Companions* have done the like) But there were an. 21. Car. 1. certain half Crowns stamped in the West of *England*, having the *Sovereign's Arms* so encompassed, and this was the first *Money*, whereon the *Royal Garter* appeared amongst us. h. Speed's Chron. f. 765.



And the present *Sovereign*, intending the augmentation of the Honor of this renowned Order, as in many other things, so in advancing the reputation of this Noble *Ensign* by a more publick way, hath caused the irradiated *Cross* of *St. George*, encompassed about with the *Royal Garter*, to be stamped in the Center of his *Silver Coin* made upon the alteration of it, anno 14. Car. 2.

There were likewise *Medals*, heretofore stamped upon several occasions, wherein the *Garter* was designedly added, some of which are here exhibited; As that in the year when *Frederick* Prince *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, was crowned King of *Bohemia*, and *Robert Cecil* Earl of *Salisbury*, made Lord *Treasurer* of *England*, both *Knights-Companions* of this most Noble Order.



i Interdum
Voll. e gestat.
re. lib. 8. p. 15.

We have seen *Gold Rings* cast into the Figure of *Garters*, the ground on the outside enamelled with a deep Blue, through which the golden Letters of the *Motto* appearing, set them off with an admirable beauty. And it seems such *Garter Rings* have been of ancient use, since the Preface to the *Black Book* of the *Order*, taking notice of wearing the *Garter* on the left *Leg* and *Shoulder*, adds also the *Thumb*; by which we suppose is meant *Gold Rings*, made into the fashion of *Garters*, and bestowed by some new installed *Knights* upon their Relations and Friends, to wear in memorial of so great an honor conferred upon them.

Among the *Officers* belonging to the *Order*, the *Prelate* is allowed to bear his proper *Arms*, (impal'd with those of his See) within the *Garter*: and the rest of the *Officers* are permitted only to wear the *Badges* of their *Office*, surrounded with the same, to express their peculiar relation to this most Noble *Order*.

k Pat. 17. M. 7.
pars 2. m. 1.
vide porro MS.
Offic. Arm.
[G. 15.]
i Ibid. See
also Glovers
Ordinary,
p. 41.

Besides the manner of bearing *Arms* within the *Garter* of this *Order*, the *Garter*, either in whole or part, hath been given by way of *Armory*, (but without the *Motto*) and in sundry manners of bearing. As in the Seal of *Arms*, belonging to the Office of *Garter*, Principal King of *Arms*; where the *Garter* (surrounding a Crown) is placed in Chief, between one of the *Lions* of *England*, and a *Flower de Lis* of *France*. And to instance in *Families*; we find, ^k *Argent*, three demy *Garters* *Azure*, buckled and garnished *Or*, granted by King *Henry* the Seventh, to his Servant *Peter Nerborne*: and ⁱ *Sable* a *Garter Or*, between three *Buckles* of the second, to be born by the name of *Buckland* or *Bowland* in the County of *Northampton*.



SECT. II.

Of the Mantle.

IN the *Founder's* Statutes, mention is made of no other *Robe* among those appointed for the *Habit* of this most Noble *Order*, but only an *upper Garment*, to which is there given the name of *Mantle*; and is the chief of those *Vestments*, which the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* wear upon all solemn occasions relating to the *Order*.

m Panciroll.
lib. 1. rerum
memorab. de-
perdit. Tit. 44.
n Car. Sigonius
de Judiciis, l.
3 c. 17 p. 459.
o In Vita Ro-
muli.
p Panciroll.
eod. lib. Tit. 43.
q Ej. Aur. An-
glo Witemb.
p. 137.

That this kind of *Mantle* was transferred and derived to us from the ancient *Greeks* and *Romans*, is not to be doubted; since it so little differs in fashion from their *Pallium* or *Toga*. For the ^m *Grecian Pallium*, was a kind of long Cloak, which only wanted a Coller or Cape: and the ^a *Roman Toga*, a Garment as common in fashion with, and proper to them, as the *Pallium* to the *Grecians*; and the use so ancient, as *Romulus* is noted by ^o *Plutarch* to have worn it.

We find the *Pallium* further described to be ^p a kind of upper *Robe*, that covered the whole Body, made fast on the right shoulder with a *Fibula*, or Clasp: It was usually worn over the *Tunica*, or short Coat, whence grew the Proverb, *Tunica Pallio propinquior est*; and is more particularly observed by ^q *Erhard. Cellius* from the

the authority of *Livie*, *Suetonius*, *Tacitus*, and other *Latin* Authors to have been a Garment, made without Sleeves, that reached down to the Ancles.

In describing this upper Robe called the *Mantle*, (the *Sovereign's* being differenced from the *Knights-Companions*, only by a long Train) we shall first set down the various *Names* given it in the Records of the Order, secondly the *Materials* whereof made, thirdly the *Colour*, fourthly the *Quantity*, and last of all the *Ornamental Trimming* used about it. Wherein, though some things hereafter inserted, may perhaps to some seem light and trivial, and fitter to fill up a a *Taylor's Bill*, than have place in a serious Discourse; yet well knowing they will be thought to others worthy remembrance, and as much esteemed, as necessary to be known; we thought good, not to omit the least particular, that might contribute to the satisfaction of any enquiry.

In the *Founder's* Statutes it is called *Mantellum*, and in *Henry the Fifth's* *Manteau*, both which in *English* we render a *Mantle*. But the Exemplar of the *Founder's* Statutes entered in the *Black Book*, and the Statutes of *Henry the Eighth* call it *Trabea*, which *Rosinus* also reckons among the different kinds of *Mantles* or *Gowns*. And in the 20. Article of *King Henry the Eighth's* Statutes, it is applied both to the *Mantle* and *Surcoat*. Sometime it is called *Chlomyda*, sometime *stola*, but in other places (and more agreeable to the *Greek* and *Latin* denomination) *Pallium*, and *Toga*.

In the second place, as to the *Materials*; That *Mantle* made for the *Founder*, against the first Feast of this Order, appears to have been of fine *Wollen Cloth*. And it is not unlikely, the *Founder* made choice of Cloth for the *Robes* of the Order (rather than any richer material) to the end he might give a reputation to that our homebred and native Commodity: albeit we find in the Statutes of Institution, a permission for the Proxies of *Forreign Princes*, to bring over with them *Mantles* of *Silk* or *Velvet*, when they came to receive the possession of their Principals Stalls; either because other Countries were better furnished with such Commodities, than our *English* Cloth; or that it might rather stand with the liking or esteem of *Forreign Princes*, as accounting *Silk* or *Velvet* the nobler material.

How long the *Sovereigns* of this most Noble Order continued wearing of Cloth, we cannot directly say, the first time we discover their *Mantles* to be made of *Velvet*, is about the beginning of the Reign of *King Henry the Sixth*; which sort of *Silk* hath thence continued in use until this day. About this time also we observe the *Mantles* of *Forreign Princes*, were likewise made here of *Velvet*; for so was^b that sent to the King of *Portugal*, elected *anno* 13. H. 6.

As touching the *Mantles* of the *Knights-Companions*, there is no question, but they were of the same materials, with those made for the *Sovereign* of the Order; namely, at first, of fine *Wollen Cloth*, and when the *Sovereign* changed Cloth to *Velvet*, they did so likewise: But we cannot meet with equal satisfaction in this particular, as we have done in the *Mantles* belonging to the *Sovereign*, because the *Knights-Companions* provided this Robe at their own charge, and their private accounts, through many casualties were of no great durability; but their *Surcoats* were of the *Sovereign's* donation, and consequently the particulars of them remain on Record, in the *Rolls* and *Accounts* of the great *Wardrobe*.

The *Colour* of these *Mantles* is appointed by the Statutes to be^d *Blue*; and of this coloured Cloth, was the first Robe made for the *Founder*; by which, as by the ground-work of the *Royal Garter* it is not unlike, he alluded (in this no less than that) to the *Colour* of the *Field* in the *French Arms*; which a few years before he had assumed in *Quarter*, with those of his Kingdom of *England*: But the *Colour* of the *Surcoat* was changed every year as will appear by and by. Of the same *Colour* were the *Velvet Mantles* made in *King Henry the Sixth's* Reign, who though he changed the Stuff, yet did he not vary the dye.

It is also manifest, that the *Blue* Colour was retained to *King Edward the Fourth's* Reign, for when this *Sovereign* sent the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the Order to *Julianus de Medicis*, the *Mantle* was made of^e *Blue Velvet*.

C c

But

1. 1st Name.
2. Ed. 3. Stat.
Art. 3. 9. 11.
16. 20. &c.
3. Lib. 5. c. 32.
4. vide etiam
Ram. Hist. An-
thologia, p. 154. Trabea quoque Toga erat;
Panciroli. Rememor. deperdit. L. 1. Tit. 45.
5. Lib. N. p. 30. 31. 310.
6. u Lib. R. p. 120.
7. w Lib. N. p. 209. x Ib. p. 317.

2. Materials.
3. Ex Rotul.
Compt. Jo.
Coke Cler. mag.
Gardrob. ab an.
21. ad 23. E. 3.
m. 8. pener Re-
mem. Regu in
Seccario.
4. Ed. 3. Stat.
Art. 20. vide
H. 5. Stat. Art.
20.

a Ex lib. vocat.
Comon. in Offic.
mag Gardrob.
f. 47 & 52.
b Ibid f. 92.
c Lib. N. p. 91.

3. Colour.
d Ed. 3. Stat.
Art. 11. H. 5.
Stat. Art. 11.
e Ex prad. Rot.
Compt. Jo.
Coke m. 8.
g De Velvet
blodio, vid. lib.
pred. vocat. Co-
tom. f. 47. 54.

i Ex Coll. Fac.
Ware Eg. Ann.

But in King Henry the Eighth's Statutes, there is no mention at all of the Colour of this upper Robe, save only of the Mantle, which a Foreign Princes Proxy is enjoined to bring along with him, when he comes to assume the Stall of his Principal, which though it be not directly to the point, yet is it there noted to be of Blue Velvet: and it is more than probable, that the Blue Colour continued still in use; for within a few years after the compiling this last mentioned Body of Statutes, it appears, the Mantle sent to James King of Scotland, was of Blue Velvet. And^m Polydore Virgile, who wrote his History about that time, affirms as much. Moreover in the ancient form of admonition and signification, appointed to be taken at the Investiture of Foreign Princes, and then in use, it is called the Mantle of Celestial Colour.

If we pass from the Reign of King Henry the Eighth, to the first and second years of King Philip and Queen Mary, it will appear, the Mantle sent to Emanuel Duke of Savoy was likewise of Blue Velvet.

But in Queen Elizabeth's Reign (upon what ground is nowhere mentioned) the Colour of Foreign Princes Mantles, was changed from Blue to Purple: for of that Colour were the Mantles sent to the French Kings, Charles the Ninth, anno 6. Eliz. and Henry the Third, an. 27. of the same Queen: So also to the Emperor Maximilian, an. 9. Eliz. to Frederick the Second King of Denmark, an. 24. Eliz. to John Casimire, Count Palatine of the Rhine, an. 21. Eliz. and to Christiern the Fourth King of Denmark, an. Jac. R. 4. but that sent to Frederick Duke of Wirtemberg in the same year, was of a mixt Colour, to wit, Purple with Violet.

Thus the Purple Colour came in, and continued till about the 12. year of King Charles the First, when that Sovereign (having determined to restore the Colour of the Mantle to the primitive Institution, namely a rich Celestial Blue) gave directions to Mr. Peter Richant Merchant (afterwards Knighted by him) to furnish himself with a parcel of Velvets of that Colour from Genoa, and upon their arrival into England, commanded Sir Thomas Rowe, then Chancellor of the Order, forthwith to signify by Letters to all the Knights-Companions his Sovereign Pleasure; that every one of them should take so much of that Velvet as would make new Robes, against the following St. George's day, and satisfy for them; in obedience to this command the Chancellor within ten days gave notice thereof to the Knights-Companions.

Hereupon all the Knights furnished themselves with new Mantles at the rate of thirty seven shillings a yard, being the price the Sovereign paid to Mr. Richant for the Velvet of his own Robes; and the first time these Mantles were worn, was to honor the Installation of the present Sovereign.

And because there were many Knights-Elect to be Installed, after the happy return of the present Sovereign, it was therefore Ordered, at a Chapter held at Whitehall, the 14. of January, an. 12. Car. 2. (called to consider what preparations were fit and necessary to be made, against the grand Feast of St. George then at hand) That directions should be given to the Master of the Wardrobe, to send abroad for special good Velvets, of skie-colour and Crimson, and other materials of the proper Colours for the Mantles and Surcoats, both of the old Knights-Companions, and those that were then to be Installed; which was accordingly done, and they brought over in time to accommodate them at the said Feast.

Albeit the just number of Ells of Cloth, which went to the making the Foundation of the first Mantle, are not set down, yet in gross for his Mantle, Hood, and Surcoat, Jo. Coke, coat, there was allowed 10 Ells of long Cloth. The Mantle of King Henry the Sixth took up one Piece, 5 Ells and 3 quarters of Blue Velvet; and those sent to Frederick the Second, and Christiern the Fourth, Kings of Denmark, and to the French King Henry the Third, contained each 20 yards of Velvet. This we find to be the allowance for the Mantles of Foreign

k Hen 8. English Statutes Art. 21.

l Autogr. in Bibl. Hatton.

m Utunur

pallo cœru-

te. A. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

14. 1. 14. 11.

Foreign Princes, and are the more large by reason of their long *Train*, which being wanting in the *Mantles of Knights Subjects*, 18 yards served to make one of them. The full length of the present *Sovereign's Mantle*, from the Collar behind to the end of the *Train*, is 3 yards; the length of the fore-side 1 yard and 3 quarters; from the foot along the bottom to the setting on of the *Train* is 2 yards; and from thence, the length or compass of the *Train* is 2 yards.

The left shoulder of each of these *Mantles* have (from the Institution of the Order) been adorned with one large fair *Garter*, containing the Motto, *Honi soit qui mal y pense*: These were distinguished from the *lesser Garters*, anciently embroidered upon the *Surcoats* and *Hoods*, of the *sovereign* and *Knights-Companions*, by the name of *Garters grofs*.

Within this *Garter* was embroidered the *Arms of St. George*, viz. *Argent a Cross Gules*; and was heretofore wrought upon *Satin*, with *Gold*, *Silver*, and *Silk*; but in succeeding times, more cost was bestowed upon this *Ensign*; the embroidery being curiously wrought upon *Velvet*, with *Damask*, *Gold*, and sundry sorts of *Purls*, *Plates*, *Venice Twists* and *Silks*; and the *Letters of the Motto* and *Borders of the Garter*, composed of fair *Oriental Pearl*. The *Garter* fixt upon the *Mantle* of the present *sovereign*, is encompassed with large *Oriental Pearl*, so also are the *Letters of the Motto*, and the *Cross* within the *Garter* (an exact Figure whereof is to be seen in the Plate set at the beginning of this Chapter) the Diameter of this *Garter* is seven Inches, but the depth, from the upper part to the end of the *Pendant*, ten Inches.

In the Reign of King *Henry the Sixth*, it seems to have been the fashion to garnish the *Mantle* with three or four *Welts* drawn down the sides, and round the bottom; for so have I found it exprest on the Monument of *John Talbot*, Earl of *Shrewsbury*, set in the South Wall of the Chancel in the Church of *Whitchurch* in *Shropshire*.

About this time also the *Lining* of this *Robe*, was *White Damask*, and afterwards *White Satin*; but of later times, it was lined with *White Taffaty*, which continues yet in fashion.

For further Ornament, the *Mantle* had fixed to its Collar, a pair of long strings, anciently woven of *Blue Silk* only; (called *Cordans*, *Robe-strings*, or *Laces*) but of later times^a twisted round, and made of *Venice Gold*, and *Silk* of the Colour of the *Robe*; at each end of which, hung a great *Knob* or *Button* wrought over and raised with a rich *Caul* of *Gold*; and *Tassels* thereunto of like *Silk* and *Gold*.

Lastly, at the Collar was usually fixed, an *Hook* and *eye* of *Gold*; for the surer fastning it about the shoulders.

f Ex eod. lib.
v.1. Cosum. f.
43.47. 52.92.
96.6 99.
g f lb f. 52. b.
h l v. d. Hist.
Tho de la Mare
p. 156. b. MS.

i Ex eod. lib. fo.
47.92. 95. b.
k Ex ver. per-
gam Cod. in Of-
fic. mag. Gard.
p. 47.
l Lib. Warr.
Dorm temp.
H.8. 27c f 364
m Ex lib. prad.
v.1. Cosum. f. 52
b. 27 95. b.
n Ex Collat.
pref. Aug. Vin-
cent.
o Ex eod. lib.
v.1. Cosum. loca
nuper cit.
p Ex lib. tercio
in prad. Offic.
p. 17.

SECT. III.

Of the Surcoat.

WE observed before, that the *Mantle* or *upper Robe* is only taken notice of in the *Founder's Statutes*, but not the *Surcoat* or *Kirtle*; nevertheless this part of the *Habit*, is as ancient as the other, being made use of at the Institution of the Order: For such a Garment the *Founder* then made, together with his *Mantle* (as also a *Hood*) to wear at the first Feast of this most Noble Order.

And as the *Mantle* was derived from the *Greeks* and *Romans*, so was the *Surcoat* also; it being not much unlike the *Tunick* or *upper Coat*, now in fashion with us, and worn over the *Vest*. This Garment among the *Romans* was called *Tunica*, and worn, next under the *Toga*, but both narrower and shorter than it; it was girded close to the Body with a *Girdle*, and so girded, that the Hem of it reached

q Pancroll. lib.
v.1. 1. Reperit.
Tn. 44.
r Rob. an.
s in Rem.
l. 5. c. 23.
t Quinill. h. 1.

u f *Rofin. loco*
w & cit. *Baifius*
de re *Vefiar.*
p. 212.

a little below the Knee, or to the middle of the Ham. "It was the proper Mode of the *Roman Citizens*, and by its trimming were the three degrees among them known: For the *Senators Tunicks*, were embroider'd or purfel'd over with broad purple Studs, the *Knights* with narrow ones, and the *Plebeians* plain, and without any such embroidery.

x *Liberationes dicuntur res necessariae quae vel ex debito, vel honori gratia, Magistratui, Hospitibus, seu Peregrinantibus ministrantur. Spelman, Glossar. verbo Liberatio.*

1. Its Name. As to the Name, we observe, this Garment hath had sundry denominations; y *Ex Rot. Com.* that bestowed on it

pr. *Johan.*
Newbury, an. 34. E. 3. m. 1. penes *Remem. Regis* in *Scaccario*, & *Rot. Compot.* Hen. de *Snaith*, an. 37. E. 3. m. 3. Vide parvo *Rot. Compot.* *Alani de Stoke* an. 7. R. 2. m. 9. & 15. & *lib. Comp. de liberat. Pannorum*, &c. temp. R. 2. in *Offic. mag. Gardrob.* f. 155. 167. 173. 184. 194.

z *Rot. Compot. Johan Coke*, ab anno 21. ad annum 23. E. 3. m. 8. & *lib. R. p.* 120.

a *MS.* in *Offic. Armr.* [L. 1.] f. 19.

b *Sir Tho. Rowes Journal*, p. 35.

d *Ex Lib. pred. vocat. Cotom.*

e *Ex Autogr. penes Jac. Ware Eq. Aur.*

f *Ex vet. MS. penes pref. Will. le Neve Eq. Aur.* f. 295.

2. Materials.

h *Ex pref. Rot. Comp. Jo. Coke*, m. 8. vide etiam *lib. Comp. de Liberat. pannor. temp. R. 2.* f. 123. 155. 167. 173. 184. &c.

i *Ex lib. vocat. Cotom.* f. 47. & 92.

k *Ex vet. pergamen. C. d. in Offic. mag. Gardrob.* p. 12.

as appears by the *Precedent* of this *Livery*, in the *Sovereign's* great Wardrobe; where after the distribution of materials for this Garment, proportionable to each Degree of *Nobility*, the like follows for the *Liveries*, given to the *Officers of the Order*, among whom the *Chancellor* is there mentioned. But at length they also came to be made of *Velvet*, which sort of Silk is still retained.

3. Colour.

The Colour of this Vesture was anciently changed every year, commonly into one of these four Colours, either *Blue*, *Scarlet*, *Sanguine* in grain, or *White*; but the Colour of the *Mantles* remained one and the same, as at the Institution, until *Queen Elizabeth's* Reign, namely *Blue*: and note that the *Surcoats* of the *Knights-Companions*, were always changed to the same Colour with the *Sovereign's*.

l *Ex pred. Rot. Compot. Jo. Coke*, m. 8. m. *Ex Rot. Jo. Newbury*, m. 13 n. *Ibid.* o. m. 1.

The *Founder's* first *Surcoat* was of the same Cloth and Colour with his *Mantle*, viz. *Blue*; but that *Surcoat* provided for him in the 34. year of his Reign, was *Black Cloth*. And of the same Colour were those he bestowed (against the Solemnity of the Feast held that year) upon these following *Knights-Companions*, namely, the *Black Prince*, the *Earls of Ulster, Richmond, and Salisbury*, *Edmund of Langley* (his Son) *Sir Richard la Vache*, *Sir Hugh Wrotesley*, *Sir Reynald Cobham*, *Sir Bartholomew Burgherf*, the *Lord Mobun*, *Sir Walter Manney*, *Sir Nele Loring*, *Sir Walter Paveley*, *Sir William Fitz Waryn*, *Sir Miles Stapleton*, the *Earls of Stafford, Warwick, and Suffolk*, and *Sir Thomas Dghtred*. But we conceive this mourning Colour was then assumed, because the *Pestilence* began again to encrease; the dreadful remembrance of that great *Pestilence*, which so furiously raged eleven years before (called *Pestilencia magna*) inviting to all kind of humiliation. The *surcoats* which the *Sovereign* gave the *Dukes of Lancaster* and *Clarence*, and 14 other *Knights-Companions*, an. 37. E. 3. were of Cloth, *Sanguine in grain*.

p *Pestilencia minor.*

r *Ex pref. Rot. Compot. Hen. de Snaith*, m. 2.

s *Ex pred. Rot. Comp. Alani de Stoke*, m. 15.

Those 24. provided for the Feast of *St. George*, an. 7. R. 2. were *Violet in grain*; whereof one was for the *Sovereign*, the other 23. for these *Knights-Companions*

Companions following, ^tJohn King of Castile and Leon, Duke of Lancaster, ^tEdm. 9. the Earls of Cambridge, Buckingham, Derby, Kent, Warwick, Stafford, Salisbury, Northumberland, and Nottingham, the Lords Nevil, Bassett, and John Holland, Sir Guy Bryan, Sir William Beauchamp, Sir Thomas Percy, Sir Nele Loring, Sir John Sulby, Sir Lodowick Clifford, Sir Simon Burley, Sir Richard Burley, Sir Bryan Stapleton, and Sir Soldan de la Trane.

Anno 11. R. 2. there were made against St. George's Feast, three and twenty Surcoats of ^aWhite Cloth, for the Sovereign and 22 Knights-Companions. And in the 12. and 19. year of the same King, the Sovereign bestowed on the same number of Knights, Surcoats of ^along Blue Cloth, as were the first.

The 23 Surcoats provided for the Feast of St. George, an. 1. H. 5. were of ^aWhite Cloth.

Anno---- H. 6. the Sovereign's Gown or Surcoat was made of ^ascarlet; and so was that sent to the King of Portugal in the 13. year of the same King. Anno---- H. 6. the Sovereign had ^aWhite Cloth; and of ^blike Colour were the Surcoats provided for 20 Knights-Companions in the----- year of his Reign.

Afterwards the before mentioned four Colours, began to be laid aside, and others brought into use; for the surcoat sent to Julianus Medices, in the Reign of King Edward the Fourth, was ^cPurple Velvet.

And by the Sovereign's Warrants entred in the great Wardrobe, towards the latter end of the Reign of King Henry the Eighth, and since; it is manifest the Surcoats of the Sovereign, and all the Knights-Companions were Crimsom Velvet: Nor was this Colour altered in the Surcoat, though the late Sovereign restored the Mantle to its first and ancient Colour, an. 12. Car. 1.

It is evident that in provisions of Surcoats made for the Knights-Companions, 4. Quantity, against one and the same Feast, there hath been some difference in the Quantity of the Cloth allowed: for we find, an. 34. E. 3. the Earls of Stafford, Warwick, and Suffolk, as also Sir Thomas Ughtred, had then allowed for each of their Surcoats, ^d6 Ells of Cloth (perhaps the tallness of their stature required it) when the other 15 Knights-Companions were allowed but ^e5 Ells, being the ^fsame quantity put into the Sovereign's Surcoat at the same time.

The Dukes of Holland and Clarence (an. 1. H. 5.) with the Earl of Arundel, were allowed ^g8 Ells of Cloth apiece, the Dukes of Bedford, Gloucester, and York, the Earls of Wesmerland and Warwick, the Lords Grey, Fitz-Hugh, and Roos, ^h6 Ells apiece, the Earls of Dorset, with six Barons, and five Knights-Bachelors, but ⁱ5 Ells apiece.

Afterwards, when the number of Ells of Cloth, Garters, and Furrs came to be ascertained for each Degree, all the Knights-Companions (even the Prince of Wales) were stinted to a certain allowance of ^j5 Ells of Cloth. But since Velvet came into use, the allowance for Surcoat and Hood (as appears by the Sovereign's Warrants) hath been eighteen yards; that is, while the Surcoat reached down to the feet, but now it being the fashion to wear it shorter, the allowance is but ten yards.

The length of the now Sovereign's Surcoat, is one yard and a half; and of the sleeve one yard wanting a Nail.

In the last place, the ornamental Trimmings of these Garments, especially at the time of Instituting the Order, are worthy observation; for they were then, and for a long time after, garnished or ^kpowdered all over with little Garters, embroidered with Silk and Gold Plate; in each of which was neatly wrought the Motto, *Pont soit qui mal y pense*. Besides, the Buckles and Pendants to these small Garters were Silver, gilt. Of these embroidered Garters, there were laid upon the first Surcoat and Hood, made for the Founder, no less than ^l168.

In King Richard the Second's Reign, the little Garters that adorned the Surcoats of the Sovereign and Knights-Companions, were wrought in embroidery upon ^mBlue Taffaty, with Cyprus and Soldat Gold, and Silk of divers Colours; and the Letters ⁿGold.

And as the Sovereign was not limited in the proportion of Cloth or Velvet for his Surcoat; no more was he confined, to a certain number of Garters, wherewith

u De Panno
Elank long.
Videjs lib.
Comp. de Libe-
rat. Pannor.
Cyc. temp R.2.
f. 155. & 167.
w Lib. f. 155. &
173. b.
x MS. in Bibl.
Hatton.
y Ex lib. prad.
vocat. Cotom.
f. 47.
z Lib. f. 92.
a Lib. f. 51.
b Lib. f. 91. b.
c Ex Augug.
pene Jac.
Ware Eq. Aw.

d Ex Rot.
e Compot. fo.
Newbury, m. 1.
f Ibid. m. 13.

g Ex lib. MS.
h in Bibl.
i Hatton.

j Ex vet. per-
gam. Cod. fol.
in Offic. mag.
Gardrob. f. 12.

k Ex prad.
l Rat. Comp.
fo. Coke m. 8.

m Lib. Comp.
n de Libera.
Pannor. Cyc.
temp. R.2. f.
155. 173. 184.
o Ex Rot. Comp.
Alani de Stroet
m. 16.

r MS in Bibl.
Hulton.

to adorn it: nor do I find, that any of the *Knights-Companions* were, until the *Precedent of the Livery of the Garter* was settled. For *an. 1. H. 5.* the Dukes of *Holland and Clarence*, the Earl of *Arundel*, the Dukes of *Bedford and Gloucester*, had each of their *Surcoats* adorn'd with ^c 120 *Garters*: but the Duke of *Tork*, and the rest of the Earls, Barons, and *Knights-Bachelors* wore but 100.

The settlement in the *Precedent of the Livery* was made in relation to the Degrees of honor of each *Knight-Companion*, according to which, they had an allowance of a greater or lesser number of *Garters*, that is to say

<i>A Duke</i>	120	} <i>Garters.</i>
<i>A Marquess</i>	110	
<i>An Earl</i>	100	
<i>A Viscount</i>	90	
<i>A Baron</i>	80	
<i>A Baneret</i>	70	
<i>A Knight-Batchellor</i>	60	

f Ex prad. lib.
vot. Cotom.
f 22. b.
c 18. f 92.

About the Reign of King *Henry the Sixth*, the *Sovereign's* number of *Garters* did not much exceed those which the *Founder* allowed to himself at the Institution; for the *Surcoat and Hood* of the said King, took up but ^c 173. and the King of *Portugal*, *an. 13. H. 6.* ^c 120 *Garters*. But this manner of adorning these Garments, grew at length quite out of fashion (perhaps when Cloth was altered to Velvet) and the plain *Surcoat* hath to this day continued in use.

u Ex praf. Rot.
Compot. Jo.
Nov. 13. 13.
dy Lib. Comp.
de liberat. P. in-
nr. temp. R. 2.
f. 129 vide por-
ro lib. prad. 92-
cat Cotom. f. 51
b. Conf. 104.
w Ex end. Rot.
Comp. Jo. Nov.
Ely m. 1. dy
Rot. Comp. praf.
f. 13. m. 5.
13. Rot. Comp.
p. 13. m. 5.
Stoke m. 9.
x f Ex end. lib.
y f Comp. de
liberat. Pan-
nov. 17. 13.
c 17.

In the second place it is to be noted, that all these *Surcoats* (whilst made of Cloth) were lined with *Fur*, of one and the same kind, to wit, with *Bellies* of pure *Miniver*; only the *Sovereign's* were "purpled with *Ermyn*"; and of these it seems a like proportion was at first allowed to all the *Knights-Companions*, viz. ^w 200 *Bellies*.

u Ex praf. Rot.
Compot. Jo.
Nov. 13. 13.
dy Lib. Comp.
de liberat. P. in-
nr. temp. R. 2.
f. 129 vide por-
ro lib. prad. 92-
cat Cotom. f. 51
b. Conf. 104.
w Ex end. Rot.
Comp. Jo. Nov.
Ely m. 1. dy
Rot. Comp. praf.
f. 13. m. 5.
13. Rot. Comp.
p. 13. m. 5.
Stoke m. 9.
x f Ex end. lib.
y f Comp. de
liberat. Pan-
nov. 17. 13.
c 17.

Yet in the Reign of King *Richard the Second*, some difference began in the allowance to the *Knights-Companions*; for a Baron and all Degrees upward had the same allowance of ^a 200 *Bellies*, but the Degrees under a Baron only ^v 120. Howbeit *an. 1. H. 5.* the Barons were equalled to the *Knights-Batchellors*, for all Degrees^a above a Baron were allowed a Fur of 200 *Bellies*, but the Barons and *Knights Batchellors* Furs were only of 120 *Bellies*.

Afterwards by the *Precedent of the Garter*, there was another Proportion set; the Prince, a Duke, a Marquess, an Earl, had each of them ^a 5 Timber of pure *Miniver* allowed to a *Surcoat*, but the Viscount, Baron, Baneret, and Batchellor Knight, but 3 Timber apiece. In time these *Furs* also were laid aside, and then the *Surcoats* came to be lined with White *Saracen*, to which, in Queen *Elizabeth's* Reign, White *Taffaty* succeeded, and that still continues.

What became of these *Surcoats* heretofore, seeing the *Knights-Companions* had new ones every year, appears from this Note entred in the *Black Book* of the Order, ^b That on the Eve of the Feast of *St. George*, the *Knights* wore to *Vespers* the *Sovereign's* Livery or *Surcoats* used by them the preceding year, which after that night they did not wear (for the new *Surcoats* were first worn on the Feast-day) but the Ensigns and Ornaments of this kind, were afterwards disposed of to the use of the Colledge.

SECT. IV.

Of the Hood and Cap.

THE Hood comes in the next place to be spoken of, which in King *Henry the Eighth's* Statutes, and the *Black Book* of the Order, is called *Humeral*; but

but in the *Rolls of Accounts* in the *Sovereign's great Wardrobe*, *Capucium*. In the *French* it is *Chaperon*, a word used in the *Statute*, an. 1. Ric. 2. c. 7. and also retained in an old English Draught of *Henry the Eighth's Statutes*, that seems to have been prepared for the view of the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions*, at their solemn meeting in *Chapter at Windsor*, an. 11. H. 8. for it carries the date of 29. of *May*, in that same year; on which day that memorable *Chapter* was held, for Reforming and Explaining the *Statutes* of the *Order*.

Hoods were anciently worn for defence of the Head, against the inconveniences of weather, &c. but in later times *Caps* and *Hats* have supplied their place. How they were then worn and sat upon the Head, may be observed in that *Plate*, which exhibits the Portraits of the first *Founders* of the *Order*, standing completely robed. As also with some variety of fashion in succeeding times, in the Pictures of ^a*William Beauchamp Lord Bergavenny*, *Richard Earl of Warwick*, *Humfrey Earl of Stafford*, and *John Duke of Norfolk*. Yet is not the *Hood* quite laid aside, since still kept hanging down the back (almost like a *Pilgrims Hat*) as if put in hopes (being so ready at hand) that it may again be restored to its former use.

This *Hood* was Ordained, and is yet retained as part of the *Habit* of this most Noble *Order*: And though neither it, nor the *Surcoat* is remembered in the *Statutes of Institution*, or in either of its *Exemplars*, nor doth King *Henry the Fifth's* take notice of it, yet is it of equal antiquity with the rest of the *Habit*; as appears from several places before cited, out of the *Rolls of the great Wardrobe*; and *Henry the Eighth's Statutes* have made special observation of it, as part of the *Habit*, for there the *Mantle*, *Surcoat*, *Hood*, and *Collar*, are called ^c*the whole Habit of the Order*. Nay, before this time, mention is made of it in the *Black Book*, anno 22. H. 7. where at the Investiture of *Philip King of Castile*, the *Mantle*, *Kirtle*, *Hood*, and *Collar*, are exprest to be the *whole Habit*, wherewith he was invested.

The form of this part of the *Habit* is perfectly described in the *Plate* at the beginning of this *Chapter*. It was heretofore, and now is, generally made of the same materials with the *Surcoat*, and consequently of the same Colour. Moreover it was anciently trim'd and garnished, with a proportion of little embroidered *Garters*, lined with Cloth of a different colour, and such as would best set off to view; but now with *Taffaty*, as is the Lining of the *Surcoat*; of all which mention is made, in those authorities cited before, and relating to the *Surcoat*.

As to the *Cap*, which in use and place succeeded the *Hood*, we shall briefly say thus much: That it hath been, and yet is made of *Black Velvet*, lin'd with *Taffaty*, but the fashion hath several times varied: for in the Reign of King *Henry the Eighth*, the *Cap* was flat, as appears in a *Proceeding* of that *Sovereign*, and the *Knights-Companions*, fairly limned in the *Black Book of the Order*. In ^g*Queen Elizabeth's* time, it was a little raised in the head, as may be seen in another *Proceeding* in her Reign, which ^hhereafter follows. But in King *James's* Reign, they were much more high crown'd; and the present fashion is shewn in our before mentioned *Plate*.

This *Cap* hath been usually adorned with *Plumes of white Feathers*, and *Sprigs*, and bound about with a *Band*, set thick with *Diamonds*; ⁱ so was that *Cap* provided for the Installation of the present *Sovereign*: And sometimes the *Brim* have been tackt up with a large and costly *Jewel*.

It seems the custom of wearing *Caps* and *Feathers* at the grand Solemnities of the *Order*, had for some time (about the beginning of King *James's* Reign) been neglected; and thereupon, in a ^k*Chapter* held the 13. of *April*, an. 10. *Jac.* ^l*Regis*, this laudable usage was re-established.

To all these may be fitly added, the *Cross* of the *Order*, encompassed with a *Garter*, which by King *Charles the First* was ^{*}Ordained to be worn, upon the left side of the *Sovereign's* and *Knights-Companions* Cloaks, Coats, and Cassetts, when they did not wear their Robes. The *Order* for which we shall here insert.

Charles

^c Vide infra Chap. 26.

^d Dugdale's Antiq. of Warwick, p. 121.

^e Art. 3.

^f Pag. 184.

^g Pag. 196.

^h Chap. 20.

ⁱ Lib. R. p. 146.

^k MS. penes Edw. Fauconbridge gen.

^{*} Lib. R. p. 29.

Charles R.

Ex Coll. Prof. Will. le Neve.

Whereas the Robes concerning the Order, first, having the same ordinary use which Cloaks have at this time, and now are worn only at the Feast of St. George, Installing of Knights, and holding of Chapters, so that the Arms of the Garter, not being daily worn thereon, may be thought an omission, whereby the Order doth receive some diminution of honor, contrary to the intention of the Founder. King Charles out of his princely desire by all due means to advance the honor of the said Noble Order, at a Chapter holden at his Palace of Westminster, on the 27. day of April, in the 2. year of his Reign of Great Britain, the same day, being by Prorogation appointed for the day and Feast of St. George, for that year, His Majesty, with eleven Knights of the Order, viz. Edward Earl of Worcester Lord Privy Seal, Robert Earl of Suffex, William Earl of Pembroke Lord Chamberlain of his Majesties House, Philip Earl of Montgomery, Francis Earl of Rutland, George Duke of Buckingham Lord high Admiral of England, William Earl of Salisbury, James Earl of Carlisle, Edward Earl of Dorset, Henry Earl of Holland, Captain of his Majesties Guard, and Thomas Earl of Berkshire, both Ordered and Ordained, That the Knights and Companions of the Order, and the Prelate and Chancellor of the same, shall after three months next after the date before mentioned of the said Order, wear upon the left part of their Cloaks, Coats, and Riding Caslocks, at all times when they shall not wear their Robes, and in all Places and Assemblies, an Escutcheon of the Arms of St. George, that is to say, a Cross within a Garter, not enriched with Pearls or Stones; that the wearing thereof may be a testimony apert to the World, of the honor they hold from the said most Noble Order, Instituted and Ordained for persons of the highest honor and greatest worth.

And it seems it was not long after ere the *Glory* or *Star* (as it is usually called) having certain beams of Silver that spread in form of a Cross, was introduced and added thereunto, in imitation (as is thought) of the *French*, who after that manner wore the chief Ensign of the Order of the *Holy Ghost*, being the resemblance of a *Dove*, irradiated with such like beams.

And whereas some allow this Symbol of the *Holy Ghost*, to be properly enough furrounded with a *Glory*, like as are the representations of the Heads of our *Saviour* and his *Apostles*, by a general consent among Painters, yet censure it altogether improper for a *Garter* to be so adorned; let them consider that King *Edward* the Fourth, encompassed his *White Rose* with the like *Glory* (whereof both the Stone-work, and Wood-work of *St. George's Chappel* in *Windefor Castle* afford divers instances) and then there will be found something of Precedent for it, long before the Institution of the Order of the *Holy Ghost*, as also of its application to other no less than sacred things. But this *King* assumed this *Devise*, upon the *Sun's* appearance like three Suns, which suddenly united together into one, immediately before his fortunate Victory at the *Battel of Mortimer's Cross*: an occasion, which he thought himself much obliged to perpetuate.

And they mistake, who take it to be the *Garter*, in this new Ornament, that is thus irradiated, but there is something else in it, which was then thought more worthy of the *Glory*, and from it, not the *Garter*, do the beams and rays spread; namely the *Cross* of the Order, esteemed glorious, since it shined so in Heaven, at its appearance to *Constantine* the Great; which that it may more evidently appear, a draught of the *Medal* stamped in memorial of adding this honorable *Devise* is here represented, whereby it is manifest, the *Glory* issues from the *Cross*, not *Garter*.



SECT.

SECT. V.

The Robes anciently assigned to the Queen and great Ladies.

HAVING thus dispatch our discourse concerning the *Robes* of the *Order*, we shall next give some light to a Custom taken up shortly after its Institution, of honoring the *Queen*, some of the *Knights-Companions Wives*; and other great *Ladies*, with *Robes* and *Hoods*, of the gift of the *Sovereign*, and of the same materials, as were the *Sovereign's* and *Knights-Companions Surcoats*; garnished also with little embroidered *Garters*, and lined with rich *Furs*; which *Robes* they likewise wore during the Solemnity of the Feast of *St. George*.

The first mention of this, which hath occur'd to us, is^m *an. 7. R. 2.* (though we conceive 'tis elder) where, against the Feast of *St. George*, appointed to be held that year, such kind of *Robes* and *Hoods* were provided for theⁿ *Queen*, the *Sovereign's Mother*, the *Dutchess of Lancaster*, the *Countesses of Cambridge*, *Buckingham*, *Penbroke*, *Oxford*, and *Salisbury*, the *Ladies Philippa* and *Katherine*, *Daughters to the Duke of Lancaster* and the *Lady Mobun*.

They were made of *Cloth* Violet in grain, like as the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions Surcoats* that year. The *Robes* lined with *Fur*, but the *Hoods* with *Scarlet*, and both embroidered over with little *Garters*; and the proportion of *Cloth*, *Furs*, and *Garters* were allowed according to their several Degrees. For the *Queens* allowance was 8 Ells of *Cloth*, and half an Ell of *Scarlet*, for the lining of her *Hood*; the *Sovereign's Mother* had allowed her one whole *Cloth*, and a double proportion of *Scarlet*: but we conceive she had two *Robes* and *Hoods* made at this time, in regard so large quantity of all things were assigned her, besides the particular number (accounting the *Queen* for one) are but 11, and cannot else reach the total of *Robes* provided for them, and expressly set down to be 12.

The *Dutchess of Lancaster* had the allowance of half a *Cloth*, and half an Ell of *Scarlet*, the *Countess of Cambridge* 7 Ells of *Cloth*, and half an Ell of *Scarlet*; and the rest of the *Ladies* the same proportion of *Cloth* with the *Knights-Companions*; that is, each of them 5 Ells apiece, and half an Ell of *Scarlet*.

According to their proportion of *Cloth*, was also their proportion of *Minivers*, the *Queens* allowance was two *Furs*, each of them containing 300 Bellies of pure *Miniver*; the *Sovereign's Mother* had double that proportion; the *Dutchess of Lancaster*, and *Countess of Cambridge* a like proportion of *Minivers* as had the *Queen*, but all the rest of the *Ladies* had only one *Fur*, consisting of 200 Bellies of pure *Miniver*: Besides, the embroidered *Garters* provided to adorn and garnish the 24 *Surcoats* of the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions*, and the 12 *Robes* for the *Queen* and other *Ladies*, amounted to the number of 2900 *Garters*.

In like manner were there prepared against the Feast of *St. George*, *an. 11. R. 2.* 15 *Robes* and *Hoods* for the *Queen* and other *Ladies*, of the same livery and sute, which the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* then wore: namely, *white long Cloth*, and *blue Cloth* for the lining of their *Hoods*: the proportion in all things being like the former: * The *Dutchess of York* having here the like allowance as had the *Dutchess of Lancaster* above mentioned.

Anno 13. R. 2. the *Ladies Robes* and *Hoods* were *Sanguine Cloth*, and the lining of their *Hoods Cloth* in grain; and in the 19. year of the same King they were *Blue Cloth*, and long *Cloth* in grain for lining their *Hoods*. In both these years we find the *Dutchess of Aquitaine* had double the proportion of *Cloth* allowed her (as had also the *Dutchess of York*) viz. 14 Ells (the *Queen* having then but the former allowance of 8 Ells) and yet her proportion of lining both for the *Robe* and *Hood*, was no more than is mentioned before to be allowed the *Queen*.

But *an. 1. H. 5.* the proportion of *Cloth*, *Minivers*, and *Garters* were alike to *Ladies*

D d

of

Ex prad.
Rst. Comp.
Alani de
Stoke m.
9.

Bid. m.
15.

Lib. Comp.
de Liberat.
Pannor. temp.
Ric. 2. in Offic.
pred. f. 167.

Bid. f. 124.

Bid. f. 173.

A Es Coll. R.
v. 1. p. 10.
Eg Ant. nuper
Garter.

C MS. 1000.
Hen. St George
Ar. R. and
Herald.

f Em. prof.
lib. 1000.
Canon. f. 52.

g Sir James
h Palmer
i Large Jour-
nal, p. 16.

k See his
l Journal
m pro anno
1635 p. 59.

of all Degrees, whether Dutcheffes, Countesses, or other Ladies, and that was to each 5 Ells of White Wollen Cloth, (only the *Queen Mother* had 8 Ells of White Cloth, and 8 Ells of Black Cloth) a *Fur* containing 200 Bellies of *Miniver* pure, and 100 embroidered *Garters*. And by a ^d Letter dormant, under the Privy Seal, dated the 3. of November, an. 12. H. 6. and directed to the then Master of the *Sovereign's* great *Wardrobe*, the like *Livery* (both for Colour of Cloth, number of Ells, Bellies of *Miniver*, and *Garters*) is commanded to be provided, for the Countess of *Suffolk*, against the succeeding Feast of *St. George*.

The last mention we find of these *Liveries* was ^e an. 16. E. 4. when at the Feast of *St. George*, held the Sunday after the 27. of February at *Windesör*, the *Queen*, the Lady *Elizabeth* the Kings eldest Daughter, and Dutcheffs of *Suffolk* the Kings Sister, had for their *Livery Murrey Gowns* embroidered with *Garters*.

Besides, these Robes worn by the Ladies, at the Festivals of the Order, there seems to be some intimation of wearing a *Garter* also on their left arms, in like manner as the *Knights-Companions* do on their left Legs; for it is observed to our hand, from the Countess of ^f *Tankerville's* Monument, that she is portrayed with such a *Garter* on her left Arm.

After a long disuse of these Robes by the *Queens of England*, and *Knights-Companions Ladies*, there was (at the Feast of *St. George*, celebrated an. 14. Car. 1.) endeavour used to have them restored; for the then Deputy Chancellor moved the *Sovereign* in Chapter (held the 22. of May) ^h That the Ladies of the *Knights-Companions* might have the privilege to wear a *Garter* of the Order about their arms; and an upper Robe, at Festival times, according to ancient usage. Upon which motion the *Sovereign* gave Order, ⁱ That the *Queen* should be acquainted therewith, and her pleasure known, and the affair left to the Ladies particular suit.

The ^k 10. of October in the following year (the Feast of *St. George*, being then also kept at *Windesör*) the Deputy Chancellor, ^l reported to the *Sovereign* in Chapter, the Answer which the *Queen* was pleased to give him to the aforesaid Order; ^m Whereupon it was then left to a Chapter to be called by the *Knights-Companions* to consider of every circumstance, how it were fittest to be done, for the honor of the Order; which was appointed to be held at *London*, about *Albollantide* after: but what was then, or after done, doth not appear; and the unhappy War coming on, this matter wholly slept.

SECT. VI.

Of Collars in general.

THE Collar is an Ornament, not of late, but ancient invention; and certainly, could we not deduce its antiquity very high, yet the wonderful consent of most Nations therein, would sufficiently plead for it, since such a consent can scarce be found, unless in things most ancient.

Gen. 41. 42.

As to its Antiquity, the Author of the first Book of ^a Sacred Writ, setting down the Ornaments bestowed by *Pharaoh* on *Joseph*, mentions the Collar to be one, and of Gold; that being the Metal whereof it was in all times ordinarily made: And it may be inferr'd, the use of it in that, was the same as in this Age, viz. to be worn about the neck; in regard *Pharaoh* put it about *Joseph's* Neck.

o Athan Kir-
cher. Oedip.
Tom. 3. p. 80.

Again, the Draught of that most ancient *Hieroglyphical Table*, reserved of old in the Temple of *Isis* in *Egypt*, and most happily conserved till of late years (when, though it unhappily perished at the ^e sacking of *Mantua* by the *Spaniards*, an. 1630. yet was fortunately set forth before in Picture by *Laurentius Pignori*) doth evidence the great antiquity of this Ornament among them; for there are to be found incircling the Necks of the Images of *Isis* and *Osiris* such like Collars, in a manner

manner extending to their shoulders: Their workmanship seems curious, being interfect with various lines, and divided with Tablets and precious Stones.

The *Collar* became first and principally famous among the *Romans*, for having given a *Surname* of perpetual memory to one of the chieftest Families in *Rome*, ^{P. Liv. l. 7. c. 10.} derived unto it from *T. Manlius Torquatus*, who fought with a Champion of the *Gauls*, near the River *Anio*, Anno V. C. 392. and having vanquished him, ^{1 cut 9 Gell. l. 4. c. 14.} cut off his Head, then pluckt off his *Collar*, and (bloody as it was) put it about his own neck. *Livy* saith, the Soldiers, when they presented him to the *Dictator*, ^{1 Loco citato.} were heard to *Surname* him *Torquatus*, and from him that honorable name descended to his Posterity.

In further memory of this gallant action, and to shew the original of this *Surname*, the representation of the *Collar* of this *Gaul*, is found stamped upon some *Roman Coyns*, in particular that referring to *L. Torquatus*, Consul with ^{1 Fulv. Ursin. de Familis Romanar. p. 152. t. Fuffil. l. i.} *L. Cotta*, An. V. C. 688. which we have here inserted, to the end its fashion may be the better known.



And we shall herewith note, that when one of another Tribe became adopted into this *Family*, he also did assume this Badge of Honor; as may be seen in another *Coin* relating to *D. Junius Silanus*, sometime ** Pretor* of *Macedonia*, ^{* Flor. Epit. l. 54.} adopted into the *Manlian* Family of the *Torquati*; though the fashion of the work be somewhat differing from the former.

In eldest times, none but *Kings* and *Princes* wore *Collars*, and therefore their first use seems to be a note of Dignity and Power: as is evident out of *Daniel*, where is noted, that the *Assyrian* Kings used this Ornament. Afterwards men famous for wisdom, excelling in Counsels, and thereby beneficial to their Country, had *Collars* bestowed on them, for tokens of *Reward*; and this is plain, as in the Example of *Joseph*, so likewise from the ** Proclamation* of *Belsazzar* King of *Babylon*, among the Rewards proposed to him, that could read and interpret the Writing on the Wall. But the *Collar* was bestowed as a *Reward* also upon those, whose famous actions and military enterprises merited well, and rendered them deserving of eminent recompences, though otherwise persons of no great or extraordinary note. ^{u Dan. c. 5. v. 9.}

Thus the *Romans* among the ** Dona & Præmia Militaria*, those solemn Rewards, wherewith they honored *Virtue*, which upon occasion of merit and desert, they bestowed among such of their Commanders and Soldiers, as had gallantly exposed their lives to dangers for the service of that *Common-wealth*; and no less to excite others to like performances, than to recompence the deserving for great services done; among these (we say) *Collars* were of the number, and the honor of receiving them thought worthy to be preserved for the notice of Posterity, in *Marble Inscriptions*; of which sort there are many collected by the industrious ** Gruter*, out of whom, for a specimen of this kind, we have transcribed this that follows, ^{w Such were the Coronæ, Armilla, Hastæ, Phaleræ, Vexilla, &c.}

* M. LICINIO. MVCIANO. &c.

-----DONIS. DONATO-----ob vir

TVTEM ET. FORTITVDINEM.

BELLO. DACICO. AB. IMP. TRAIANO.

CORONA. VICTRICI. PVRA. HASTA. TOR-

QVIBVS. ARMILLIS. PHALERIS. &c.

x Pag. 358.
Inscr. 2. p. 391.
Inscr. 4. p. 443.
Inscr. 2. p. 1102.
Inscr. 4.
* P. 6. 429.
Inscr. 1.

This custom of bestowing *Collars*, as a peculiar *Reward* for military and memorable services, was continued down to, and used by the later Emperors, as the learned *Budeus* observes. And we read of Investing a *Knight* of the *sepulchre*

y Fr. Mennen.
Delic. Equest.
p. 46.

with a *Collar*, at his Creation: where alſoon as the Ceremony of his Ordination is finiſhed, the *Padre Guardian* kiſſeth the new made *Knight*, and puts about his neck (according to the manner of the Ancients) a *Golden Collar*, with a *Croſs* hanging thereat.

Moſt fitly therefore have the *Sovereigns of Military Orders*, added this Ornament of the *Collar* to their *Habit*, and beſtowed it on the *Fellows* and *Companions*; many of whom have meritoriouſly deſerved it, upon account of thoſe ancient qualifications, *Wiſdom* and *Valour*.

SECT. VII.

The Collar of the Order.

Hereupon alſo, in addition to the *Enſigns* and *Ornaments* of this moſt Noble Order of the *Carter*, there was inſtituted a *Collar*, compoſed after a peculiar manner, exactly relative to the name and title of the Order; to the wearing of which, the *Sovereign* obliged both himſelf, and *Knights-Companions*, and His and their *Successors*.

a Hen. 8. Stat.
Art. 38.

b (Ex Relat.
c) ſione Tho.
d) Beauchamp
Gen.

This *Collar* was Ordained to be^a *Gold*, 30 ounces *Troy* weight, but not above: howbeit, that *Collar* ſent to *Guffavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, weighed 34 ounces and a quarter; and that belonging to the late *Sovereign* King *Charles* the Firſt, 35 ounces and a half; which after his Sufferings coming into the hands of^b *Thomas Hariſon*, ſometime called *Major General Hariſon*, was by him delivered to the *Truſtees* for ſale of this *Kings Goods*, who^c Anno 1649. ſent it to the *Mint* with the^d *Regalia* here particularized to ſet the *Stamp* on work for the firſt *Gold* that the upſtart *Common-wealth* coynded, viz.

Inventory Bk
of the late
Kings Goods,
fol. 36. a.

Fol. 2^a.

Fol. 40. a.

The Imperial Crown, weighing 7 l. 6 ounces, enriched with 19 Saphirs (3 of which were exceeding large) 232 Pearls, 58 Rubies, 28 Diamonds and 2 Emeralds.

The Queens Crown, weighing 3 l. 10 ounces 1 half, enriched with 20 Saphirs, 22 Rubies, and 83 Pearls.

An ancient Crown weighing 2 l. 1 ounce, enriched with one fair Diamond (valued by the Truſtees, who rated ſuch things far beneath their worth, at 200 l.) 13 other Diamonds, 10 Rubies, 1 Emerald, 1 Saphir (valued by them at 60 l.) and 70 Pearls: which Stones and Pearls weighed 3 ounces.

The Globe or Orb, weighing 1 l. 5 ounces 1 quarter.

Two Coronation Bracelets (adorned with 3 Rubies Ballas, and 12 Pearls weighing an ounce) in all 7 ounces 1 quarter.

Two Scepters, weighing 18 ounces 1 quarter.

A long Rod Silver gilt, weighing 1 l. 5 ounces.

One Gold Porringer and Cover, weighing 15 ounces 1 half.

One Chalice, adorned with 2 Saphirs and 2 Ballas Rubies, weighing 15 ounces 1 half.

Two Patena's enamelled, weighing 25 ounces 1 half.

Two Spoons, with flat heads, weighing 5 ounces 1 quarter.

One Taſter, enamelled with a Phoenix, weighing 5 ounces 1 half.

Two Offering Pieces and a Sey of Gold, weighing 10 ounces 1 quarter.

Queen Edith's Crown (formerly thought to be of maſſy Gold, but upon tryal found Silver gilt) enriched with Garnets, Pearls, Saphirs, and other Stones, weighing 50 ounces.

King Elfrid's Crown, of Gold Wirework, ſet with Stones, and two little Bells, weighing 79 ounces 1 half.

- A Patena enamelled, set with Stones, weighing 23 ounces 1 half.
 The Ampulla, set with Stones and Pearls, weighing 8 ounces 1 half.
 A large Staff, with a Dove on the top, the upper part Gold, the lower part Silver gilt, weighing 27 ounces.
 A small Staff, with a Flower de Lis on the top, being Iron within, and Silver gilt without.
 Two Scepters, one set with Pearls and Stones, the upper end Gold, weighing 23 ounces, the lower end Silver gilt. The other Scepter Silver gilt, having a Dove weighing 7 ounces 3 quarters.
 The Gold of the Tassels of a Liver-coloured Robe (adorned with Pearl) weighing 4 ounces, also the Gold of the Neck Button of the Coat, weighing 1 ounce.
 A pair of Silver gilt Spurs, set with 12 Stones, (having Straps of Crimson Silk) weighing 6 ounces 3 quarters.

Besides these, there were other parts of the Regalia fetcht from Westminster-Abbey, and sold by these Trustees, namely

- One large Chalice of Glass, wrought in Figures, and set in Gold, with Stones and Pearls, weighing 68 ounces 1 half.
 A Staff of black and white Ivory, having a Dove on the top, the binding and feet Gold.
 A Silver Spoon gilt weighing 3 ounces.
 One Crimson Taffaty Robe. ibid. f. 41.
 One Robe trim'd with Gold Lace.
 One Liver-coloured Silk Robe.
 One Robe of Crimson Taffaty Sarcenet.
 One pair of Buskins Cloth of Silver.
 One pair of Shoes Cloth of Gold.
 One pair of embroidered Gloves.
 Three Swords, with Scabards Cloth of Gold.
 One Horn Comb.

It was further appointed by King Henry the Eighth's Statutes, that this Collar should be composed of pieces of Gold in fashion of Garters, the ground enamelled Blue, and the Letters of the Motto Gold. In the midst of each Garter, two Roses placed; the innermost enamelled Red, and the outermost White; contrarily in the next Garter, the innermost Rose enamelled White, and the outermost Red, and so alternately continued: but of later times these Roses are wholly Red. cf. Art. 38.

The number of these Garters are so many, as be the ordained number of the Sovereign and Knights-Companions, by the Institution of the Order, viz. Twenty six; being tyed together with as many Knots of Gold: and this fashion hath in all particulars hitherto continued invariable.

Nor ought the Collar to be garnished or enriched with precious Stones (as may the George which hangs thereat) such costly embelishments being absolutely prohibited by the Law of the Order. ibid.

At the middle of the Collar before, is to be fastned the Image of St. George armed, sitting on Horseback, who having thrown the Dragon upon his back, encounters him with a tilting Spear. This Jewel is not surrounded with a Garter, or row of Diamonds, as is the lesser George; but made according to the representation in the Plate above, and called the Great George: It is allowed to be* garnished with Diamonds, and other enrichments, at the pleasure of the Knight-Companion who owns it; and upon that license, hath been frequently adorned with variety of costly art, whereon the Diamonds and other precious Stones are so disposed, as may upon its motion and agitation cast out the greater lustre. ibid.

But before the establishment of this Article by King Henry the Eighth, it appears the Knights-Companions were invested with Collars at their Installations; for the Black Book takes notice of a Collar among the Ensigns of the Order, wherewith h. Propriam Ordinis Togam Trabeam Humerali ac Col-lare statim induit. p. 184.
 Philip

Philip King of Castile was invested, *an. 22. H. 7.* but whether a *Collar* of *SS.* or other fashion, doth not there appear. Nevertheless this doubt is in part cleared, by an old memorial of the ceremonies used at theⁱ Creation of *Henry Lord Stafford Earl of Wiltshire* (Brother to *Edward Duke of Buckingham*) *3. Feb. an. 1. H. 8.* where it is noted, that after he was invested with the Robes of his State and Dignity, ^k*The Collar of the Garter was put about his neck, denoting him a Knight of that Order.*

^l *Penes Arthur. Com. Anglescy.*

^m *In Biblioth. Hatton. n. Lib. N. p. 202.*

And to make it yet more evident, there is found in a^l *Vellom Book of Statutes in French*, sent to *Maximilian* the Emperor, signed the *5. of January 1508.* by *T. Ronthale* then Register of the Order. And in ⁿ another belonging to *Edward Stanley Lord Mounteagle*, elected ⁿ*an. 6. H. 8.* a particular Article (namely the *41.*) that Ordains a *Collar* to be publicly worn by each *Knight-Companion*, there called the *Collar of the Order*, which though it be not in all respects agreeable to the fashion of that prescribed by *King Henry the Eighth's Statutes*, yet comes it very neer, and said to be a *Gold Collar, coupled together by several pieces of Links in fashion of Garters, with a Vermilion Rose, and the Image of St. George hung thereat.* The reason of the *Knight-Companions* wearing it, the times appointed therefore, the License for putting it to mending, the command not to enrich the *Collar*, but the *George* only, and obligation not to sell, pawn, or alienate it for any necessity whatsoever, are wholly the same, as were afterwards enjoined by ⁿ*King Henry the Eighth*; so that in truth he did no more but adjoin to his Body of *Statutes*, a Decree, which (for the main) had been in practice before. Besides, *an. 11. H. 8.* upon interpretation of the *11. Article of the Statutes* for wearing the *Habit of the Order*, at the grand Feast of *St. George*; ther *Collar* is there enumerated among those Ornaments (as part of the *whole Habit*) that a *Knight-Companion* is obliged to wear.

^o *Art. 38.*

^p *Ibid. p. 209.*

In further proof that the *Collar of Garters* was used before *King Henry the Eighth's* Reign, let us offer here the Monument of *Sir Giles Daubeney* (who died *an. 22. H. 7.*) erected in *St. Paul's Chappel* situate on the north side of *St. Edward's Shrine* in *Westminster Abbey*, whereon his Portraiture, in his Robes of the Order, is adorned with such a *Collar*, as *King Henry the Eighth's Statutes* do afterwards describe.

As the *Garter* sent to *Gustavus Adolphus King of Sweden*, so the great *George* (pendant at his *Collar*, weighing seven ounces) was set with large and resplendent Diamonds; the particulars and order do fully appear, out of the Counterpart of that *Inventory* (mentioned at the beginning of this Chapter) taken upon its delivery into the custody of the Dean and Canons of *Windsor*, and were as followeth.

In the three Chains of the George, small Diamonds	10
In St. George's Feather, three small, middlemost wanting	2
In his Forehead	1
In his Breast-plate, four saucet Diamonds, of a reasonable bigness	4
In the right Arm, saucet big	4
In the left Arm	4
In his Baces, of a big sort	4
Thigh, Knee, Leg, and Foot, one in each	4
The Horse's head, in the forehead a saucet Diamond	1
In his Crest, very small, beside two wanting	5
In his Mane, four lozenge Diamonds	4
In his Neck	1
In his Bridle, 4 small, one wanting	3
On his shoulder, two square, and two lozenge Diamonds of a bigger size	4
On his buttock, one square Diamond, and eight about on his Traps and Crupper six, four wanting on the border of his Saddle behind	21
Four square Diamonds large, at the skirts and leg	4



Tab 1



AR



AR



Tab 2

AR



AR



AR



AR



AR



AR



Between the fore legs, one fair square Diamond	1
The Dragon's forehead	1
In his Wing and Body, faucet Diamonds, one wanting	9
Total of the George are just	87

This George (with the Collar) was sold by the Trustees for sale of the late Kings Goods, to the before named Thomas Beauchamp.

Of what account this Noble Ensign of Honor [the Collar] hath been with the Sovereigns, and Knights-Companions, not only of the Order of the Garter, but other Military Orders; may be observed from the Pictures of some of them, as also their seals, Coyns, and Medals: which later passing up and down, after a publick manner, proclaim its honor throughout the world: for in these they have been pleased to exhibit as well their Effigies, as scutcheons of Arms, incircled therewith; and also the Symbols of their several Orders, pendant thereto.

There is a Picture (hanging in his Majesties Gallery at Whitehall) of Philip Duke of Burgundy, Founder of the Golden Fleece, adorned with the Collar of that Order. And the leading example of the like representation in seals, was first given by a Successor of his, above 180 years since, as appears from the great Seal of Maximilian and Philip his Son, Archdukes of Austria, Turgundia, &c. ^{q Sigilla Co^m m^r. Flandria. p. 116.} fixed to the agreement of Peace made between them and the Flemings, an. 1485, wherein the Pictures of both these Princes are represented, wearing their Collars of the Golden Fleece; and this fashion hath been since continued in Seals, by their descendants Kings of Spain, Sovereigns of that Order.

The French King Lewis the Eleventh, after he had instituted the Order of St. Michael, caused his Picture to be drawn (hitherto preserved at Fountain-bleau) with the Collar of that Order; the Copy of which François de Mezeray, having exhibited in his History of France, we thence made a draught of it. ^{Tom. 2. p. 58.}

In like manner, in a Picture of Amc the Tenth Duke of Savoy (now hanging in the Gallery at Whitehall) is represented the ancient Collar of the Annunciade, and thereon the Motto in old Characters, used at the Foundation of that Order: All which we have caused to be etch'd (Tab. 1.) for the Readers satisfaction; together with the Medals made upon the Coronation of King Charles the First at Westminster, and of the present Sovereign there also, on the Feast day of St. George (Patron to this most Noble Order of the Garter) an. 1661. in both which, the Collar of the Garter may be seen placed over their Royal Robes.

Soon after the Institution of the Order of the Holy Ghost, the French Kings were represented wearing the Collars both of St. Michael and the Holy Ghost; it being Ordained by the Statutes of the later Order, that whosoever should be honored with both Orders, should wear their Collars together: and perhaps, upon the same ground it was thought fit, that the Collars of both the Garter and the Thistle, should be express in the Coronation Medal of King Charles the First in Scotland, an. 1633. ^{Ant. 37.}

And as the Sovereigns, so the Knights-Companions of several Orders, have assumed this manner of adorning their Effigies with the Collar of that Order, whereof they were Fellows: the Copies of some of their Medals and Coyns, are also express in Tab. 2. that is to say, the Funeral Medal of Lewis King of Hungary, Knight and Companion of the Golden Fleece, another Medal of James the Fourth King of Scotland, Knight of the Order of St. Michael, stamped at such time as he invaded England, an. 1513. one of Christierne the Second, King of Denmark, upon his Expedition against the Swedes: as also the Dollars of George Duke of Saxony, Henry Duke of Brunswick, and a piece of Gold of Sigismund the Fourth King of Poland; which last is now in his Majesties rich Cabinet of Medals. And in like manner are extant the Pictures of divers Knights-Companions of the Garter in Painting, Limning, and Sculpture, adorned with the Collars of that Order. ^{q Sigilla Co^m m^r. elegantiss. rum. p. 62. d Ibid. p. 27. e Ib. p. 45.}

And to make this Noble Ensign become ornamental to the Arms also both of Sovereigns and Knights, they have been placed (sometimes with their Quarterings) within

⁵ *Sigilla Com. Fland.* p. 95.

⁸ *Ibid.* p. 107.

within it; the first we find ordered in this manner, was a Seal of ^f Charles the bold, Duke of Burgundy, Chief and Sovereign of the Order of the Golden Fleece, put to an Instrument, dated anno 1470. and whom we observe to have adorned the neck of the Lion of Flanders therewith, in another of his ⁶ Seals, as in *Tab. 3.* The *Chiefs* of other Orders did the like, as may be seen from other examples of *Coyns* and *Medals* in the same *Table*: But the *Sovereigns* of the most Noble Order of the Garter, usually incircled their *Arms*, not within the *Collar* of the Order, but the Royal Garter, that being its principal *Ensign*.

This led on the custom to the *Fellows* and *Companions* of other Orders, to encompass their *Arms* with the *Collars*, both in *Coyns*, *Medals*, &c. examples of some are added by the Graver, in *Tab. 4.* Among these is the draught of a Seal of Charles Count Palatine of the Rhine, incircled both with the Garter and Collar of the Order, and is the first example we have met with, wherein both these *Ensigns* are used together. The last in the 4. *Table*, is the full *Atchievement* of Bernard de Foix de la Valette Duke of Aspernon, &c. set beneath his *Effigies*, graved at Paris by P. Van Schuppen, where his *Arms* and *Quarterings* are encompassed with the chiefest *Ensigns* of those three Orders, whereof he was a Brother and Companion.

And here it is proper to observe, that the more ancient the Order, whose chief *Ensign* is after this manner represented, the neerer ought it be set to the Scutcheon of Arms being the more honorable place: and consequently, a great mistake was committed, in marshalling the *Collars* of the several Orders, about the Arms of the Duke of Chevereux, in his Plate remaining over his Stall at Windeſor, where the *Collars* of St. Michael and of the Holy Ghost are both placed neerer to his Scutcheon, than is the Garter.

SECT. VIII.

Collars of SS.

IT will not be amiss in this place, since there are now in use with us several sorts of *Collars*, worn as Badges of lower and inferior Honors (some of which are adorned with part of the *Collar* of the Garter) and vulgarly called *Collars* of SS: to note down a few things concerning them: having first given a more exact account, as to their antiquity, than yet hath been made publick among us.

^h *Hist. de Divis tam vet. quam novi Testamenti.* Edita Basilæ, an. 1550. p. 258.
ⁱ *Videſu Baroniæ Annal. ad annum Christi 202. necnon Saurum.* Tom. 3. ad diem 31. Maii.

^k MS. in Bibl. lib. Cotton.

^l MS.

^h Georgius Wicelinus informs us, that he found a Book remaining in the Library at Fulda, where (in the life of the two Brothers *Simplicius* and *Faustinus*, both Senators, and ⁱ suffered Martyrdom under *Dioclesian*) is a description of the Society of Saint *Simplicius*, consisting of persons noble in their own Families; and so coming to describe the *Collar* used, as the Note and Badge of their Society, he says thus: It was the custom of those persons to wear about their necks Silver Collars, composed of double SS, which noted the name of Saint *Simplicius*: between these double SS the Collar contained 12 small plates of Silver, in which were engraved the 12 Articles of the Crede, together with a single Trefoyle. The Image of Saint *Simplicius* hung at the Collar, and from it 7 Plates, representing the 7 gifts of the Holy Ghost.

As to the manner of their suffering, it is thus set down in an old Legend; ^k They were commanded to undergo the sentence of death, their Bodies to be bound together by the neck to a Stone, and sent to the Bridge over the Tiber in Rome, and thence thrown into the River: All which was executed upon them, the ^l 287. year after the Incarnation of our Saviour.

How long since the Collar of SS came into use here in England, we no where find, though we have done our endeavour to be satisfied: But if credit may be given to a Monument, standing at this day entire, in the Collegiate Church at Warwick it will appear, to have been at least 300 years since, and worn as an Ornament



AR



R



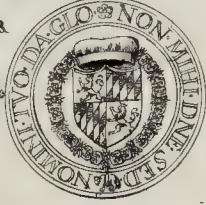
R



Tab.



R



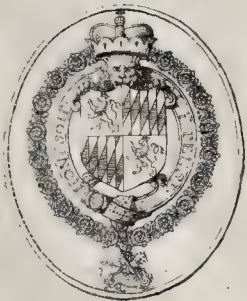
AR

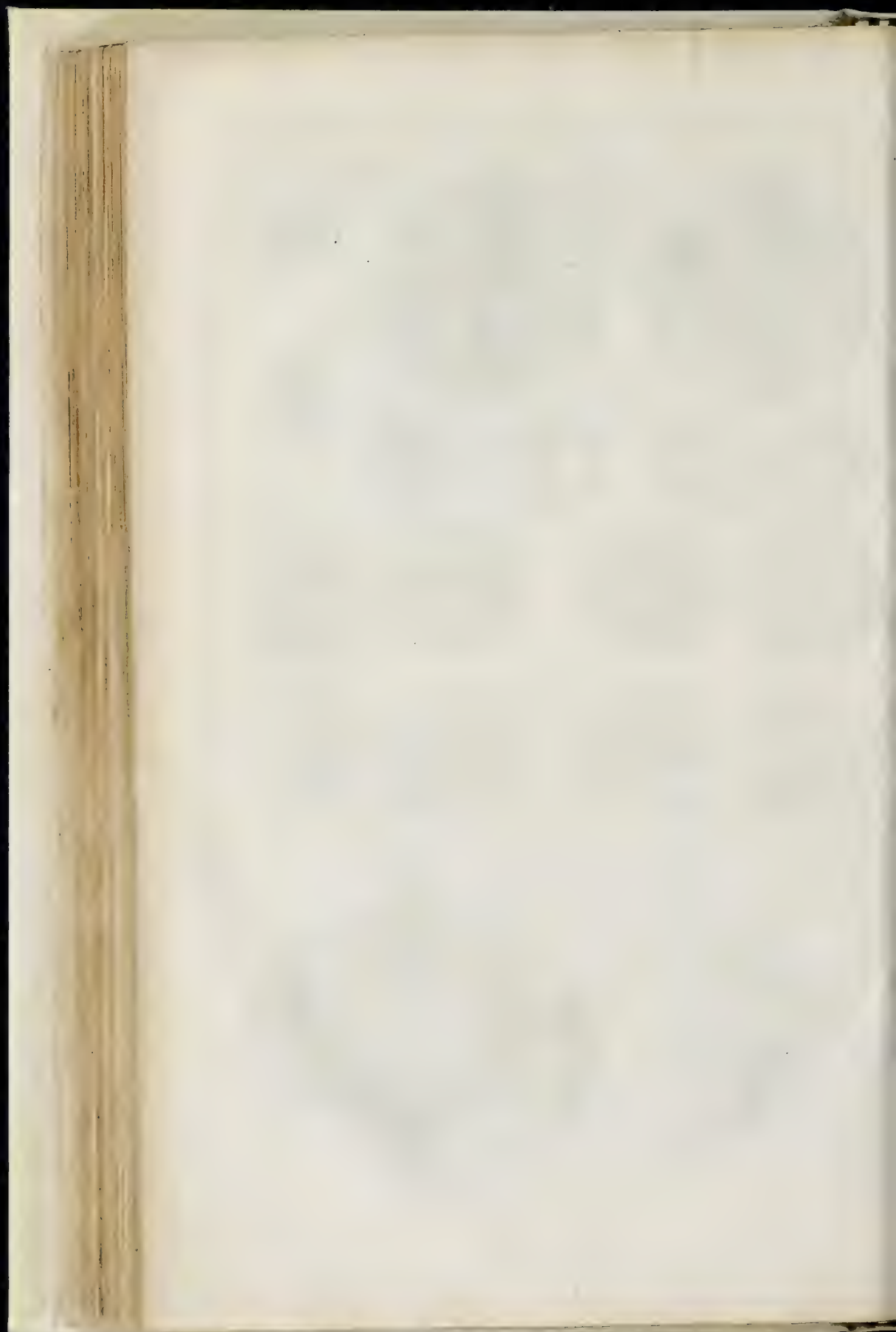


R



AR





Ornament for Women as well as Men: for there the Portraiture of *Margaret* Wife of Sir *William Peito* (said to be buried in the Reign of King *Edward the Third*) hath a Collar composed of *ss*, drawn about and set close to her neck; which the Graver, in the *Antiquities of Warwickshire*, hath through mistake, represented like to a set Ruff. There was to be seen a Collar of *ss*, also about the neck of Sir *Simon Burley's* Statue in *St. Pauls Cathedral London*, but the Monument perished in the dreadful fire anno 1666.

And 'tis probable, that to these Collars, the passage in *Walsingham* (cited by Mr. *Selden* to this purpose) should refer; where speaking of the Earl of *Kent's* coming to *Sunning* near *Reading* in *Berkshire*, where *Richard the Second's* Queen then lay, to comfort her with the assurance, that her Husband was then at liberty; to the end he might gain credit to his relation; forthwith plucked off the Collars from some there present that wore them, letting them know, they ought not to wear a Badge, so particularly relative to Henry the Fourth.

In the ancient creation of an Esquire in England, part of the Ceremony was, that the King put about his neck a Silver Collar of *ss*, as an Ensign of that Dignity: and our learned *Selden* condemns not the authority of that old Ballad, *The Tanner of Camworth*, to prove the making of Esquires in King *Edward the Fourth's* Reign, by bestowing such Collars.

But that the Golden Collar was the undoubted Badge of a Knight, may be instanced in a multitude of Examples, deduced from the Monuments of persons of that Degree in the Reigns of *Henry the Sixth*, *Edward the Fourth*, *Henry the Seventh*, *Henry the Eighth*, and since: and so justly and legally appropriate thereto, that in the Act of Parliament made for reformation of Apparel, there is a Proviso entred, That Knights, notwithstanding, might publickly wear a Gold Collar of *ss*, though since it hath grown out of fashion.

Andrew Favin tells us, that our King *Henry the Fifth* Instituted an Order, sur-named Knights of the *ss*, on the day of the Martyrs *St. Crispine* and *Crispianus*: of which Institution, though he found nothing mentioned in our English Histories; yet out of the Chronicle of *J. Juvenal des Ursins*, where it treats of the Battel of *Agin-Court*, he collected this following relation.

The King of England exhorted his men, and commanded, that if any of them had trespassed against another, they should be reconciled, and confess to the Priests, that were in their company, otherwise no good could happen to them in their undertakings: He further exhorted them to be civil in their march, and to do their duty well, and thus agreed with them: That all those of their company who were not Gentlemen, he would make them so, and give them Warrants for it, and have them thence forward enjoy such Priviledges as the Gentlemen of England had; and to the end they should be particularly known from others, he gave them leave to wear a Collar powdered with the letter *S*.

Among the variety of Collars of *ss* now in use with us, there are these following differences in Figure and Fashion.

The Lord Mayor of London's Collar is Gold, having a knot (like one of those which tie the Garters together, in the great Collar of the Order) inserted between two *ss*, and they again placed between two Roses, viz. a White Rose within a Red; and in the middle before the Breast, is a large Portcullis, whereat hangs a most rich Jewel, set with fair and large Diamonds.

The Collars of the Lords Chief Justices of both the Benches, and the chief Baron of the Exchequer, are (in memory of the before mentioned Saint *Simplicius*, a Senator and consequently a Gown-man) formed of the Letter *s* and a Knot alternately; having a Rose set in that part of it, which falls out to be in the middle of their Breasts, and another on their Backs: the five Flowers of these Roses, are made of five large Pearls.

Those Collars which appertain to the Kings and Heralds of Arms, so likewise to the Serjeants at Arms, having been bestowed by former Kings, and renewed to them by his present Majesty, to be worn upon all days of solemn attendance for his honor, are also composed of *ss*, linked together; in the middle of the

E e

Breast

Breast is a Rose, and another in the middle of the Back, at each of which hang three small drops of Silver. But the *ss* in the *Collars* worn by the *Kings of Arms*, are made somewhat bigger than the other; and in that part lying on either shoulder, is a *Portcullis* taken in between the *ss*, which are wanting in the rest.

The general difference between the *Collars*, appropriate to the Degrees before named, is this: All such persons as are honored with *Knighthood*, have allowed them *Collars of Silver gilt*, but to *Esquires* those of *Silver* only: and therefore he that is created an *Herald*, is also in part of that Ceremony made an *Esquire*, by putting on a Collar of *ss* of *silver* about his neck: and so is a *serjeant at Arms*.

The *Kings of England* have sometimes heretofore drawn a *Collar of ss* about their *Arms*, in like manner as we have shewed, how the *Garter* doth surround them: and we have seen an impression of King *Henry the Eighth's Privy Signet*, whereon his *Royal Arms* (crowned) are incircled with a *Collar of ss*, to the lower end of which is affixed two *Portcullisses*.

SECT. IX.

The lesser George.

WE do not find among the Records of the *Order*, that the *Image of St. George* was at any time worn by the *Sovereign*, or *Knights-Companions* before the Breast, or under the right Arm, as now used, until the 13. year of King *Henry the Eighth*: But then that *Sovereign* past a Decree in Chapter held at *Greenwich*, the morrow after *St. George's day*, with consent of the *Knights-Companions* present, to this effect. ^{w Lib.N.p.212} *That every Knight of the Order, should wear loosely before his Breast, the Image of St. George in a Gold Chain, or otherwise in a Ribband, the same to be thence forward placed within the ennobled Garter; to the end a manifest distinction should thereby appear, between the Knights-Companions and others of the Nobility and Knights, who according to the fashion of those times, wore large Gold Chains, the ordinary Ensign of their Knighthood. And thus the wearing the Medal or Jewel (usually called the Lesser George, to distinguish it from the other George worn at the Collar of the Order) was first enjoined, and hath since been constantly so used.*

This *George* was for the most part made of pure Gold, curiously wrought by the hand of the Goldsmith, but we have seen divers of them exquisitely cut in *Onix's*, as also in *Agats*, and therein such happy choice of the Stones, that by joining thereto the Workmans skill, in designing and laying out the Figures, to express the History, the natural tincture of the Stones have fitted them with Colours, for Flesh, Hair, and every thing else, even to admiration. In this Jewel is *St. George* represented in a riding posture, encountering the *Dragon* with his drawn Sword.

By the last Article of King *Henry the Eighth's Statutes* this *George* is allowed to be enriched and garnished at the pleasure of him that wears it (as is the great *George*) which for the most part hath been curiously enamelled, and the *Garter* about it set with Diamonds, in the best order either art or invention could devise. And of what weight and bigness these *lesser Georges* formerly were, may be judged from that sent to the *French King Charles the Ninth*, being ^{x MS. fol. penes} an ounce and ^{p. of. G. Owen} a half, and half quarter weight. _{p. 154.}

The variety of Workmanship shown in those *Gold Chains*, whereat this Jewel hung, was usually great, and the Artists upon all occasions express much ingenuity and skill in them, according to the fancy or pleasure of the persons for whom they were made.

But

But within a short time, wearing the *lesser George* in *Silk Ribbands*, as well as *Gold Chains* was indifferently used and at pleasure (so were the *Symbols* of Foreign Orders, as appears from sundry Coyns and Medals) but the Colour of these *Ribbands* at their first use were Black, as is noted of those belonging to the *Georges*, wherewith *John Dudley Viscount Lisle*, the Lords *Saint John* and *Parr* were invested, *an. 35. H. 8.* and in the Pictures of several *Knights-Companions* about that time (both painted in Oyl, and limned with Water Colours) the *Ribbands* of their *Georges* are visibly Black.

That small *Chain*, wherewith the *lesser George* sent to *Emmanuel Duke of Savoy*, *an. 1. & 2. Phil. & Mar.* was formed of *twelve pieces of Gold*, in every of which were set three small *Diamonds*; and of twelve other like pieces, wherein were three *Rubies* and twenty four *Pearls*.

It appears by a Letter sent from *Sir Richard St. George Knight Clarenceux*, and the *Heralds of Arms*, to *Henry Earl of Holland*, dated the *10. of July 1627.* that the *Blue Ribband* had some years before been added to the Ornaments of the Order. And 'tis said that *Robert Earl of Essex* being in *France*, and observing the *Jewels* of the Order of *St. Michael* and *St. Esprit*, worn in *Blue Ribbands*, upon his return did occasion the altering those *Ribbands*; wherewith the *George* hung, into that Colour: And I have seen the *Picture* of *Queen Elizabeth*, drawn towards the end of her *Reign*, wherein was represented the *Lesser George*, hanging before her *Breast* at such a *Blue Ribband*.

It was not long, ere this Colour grew into great estimation with the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions*; the rather, for that it was the ground of the *Garter*, and colour of the *Mantle* of the Order. And toward the *later end* of *King James* his *Reign* (because the Colour of the *Ribband* had not been peculiarly expressed in any Article of the *Statutes*, and the *Blue* or *Sky Colour* used for some years past) it was Decreed, *That for the future it should always be of a Blue Colour, and no other: nor in time of mourning for any of the Knights-Companions, of what Degree soever, should the Colour be changed.*

The ordinary manner of wearing this *Ribband* in time of peace, was (till of late) about the neck, down to the middle of the *Breast*, where the *lesser George* hung; but now for the more conveniency of riding or action, the same is spread over the left shoulder, and brought under the right arm, where the *Jewel* hangs.



But where the Pictures of the *Sovereign*, or any of the *Knights-Companions* are drawn in Armour, there, even to this day, the *George* is represented, as fixed at a *Gold Chain*, instead of the *Blue Ribband*, and worn about the neck (not brought under the right arm) which also was so exhibited in the three pound pieces of Gold, stamped at *Oxford* by the command of his late Majesty of ever blessed memory King *Charles the First*, whereby he published to the world, that the true and just occasion of his taking up Arms in the late War, was to maintain the *Protestant Religion*, the *Laws of the Land*, and the *Privilege of Parliaments*. And in like manner is the *Gold Chain* represented in a Medal of *Charles Count Palatine of the Rhine*, now senior *Knight-Companion* of this most Noble Order.

Among those rich and invaluable Jewels, and other choice Curiosities of his said late Majesty, which came to the hands of the Trustees appointed for sale of his Goods, there were several of these lesser *Georges* sold by them to the forefard *Thomas Beauchamp*, the particulars whereof, how low they were valued, and for what sold, appears thus from the Book of Sales.

	Valued at	Sold for
A George containing 161 Diamonds, which came from the Countess of Leicester, and was discovered by Cornelius Holland.	60 00 00	71 02 00
A George cut in an Onix, with 41 Diamonds in the garnish.	35 00 00	37 00 00
A small George with a few Diamonds.	8 00 00	9 00 00
A George with 5 Rubies and 3 Diamonds, and 11 Diamonds in a Box.	10 00 00	11 00 00
A George cut in a Garnet.	7 00 00	8 00 00
Total	120 00 00	136 00 00

The *George* which his said late Majesty wore at the time of his Martyrdom, was curiously cut in an *Onix*, set about with 21 large Table Diamonds, in the fashion of a *Garter*: On the back side of the *George* was the Picture of his *Queen*, rarely well limn'd, set in a Case of Gold, the lid neatly enamel'd with Goldsmiths work, and surrounded with another *Garter*, adorned with a like number of equal sized Diamonds, as was the forefide. A Draught of this Jewel, in three parts, open and shut, we have exhibited to the Readers view, among the *Ensigns* of the Order, at the beginning of this Chapter.

Nor will it be unfitly here remembered, by what good fortune the present *Sovereign's* lesser *George* set with fair Diamonds was preserved, after the defeat given to the *Scotch Forces* at *Worcester*, an. 4. Car. 2.

In Envelatione
Geo. Barlow
gen. 11. Junii
1660. ac
Roberti
Milward ar.
et Isaac Wal-
ton gen.

Among the rest of his Attendants then dispers'd, Colonel *Blague* was one, who taking shelter at *Blore-pipe House* (within two miles of *Eccleshall* in *Staffordshire*) where one Mr. *George Barlow* then dwelt, delivered his Wife this *George* to secure. Within a week after Mr. *Barlow* himself carried it to *Robert Milward Esquire* (now second Justice of the great Sessions of the County Palatine of *Cheshire*, one of the Commissioners of the *Priny Seal*, and Son unto Sir *Thomas Milward Knight*, late Chief Justice of the said great Sessions, both persons of known loyalty, and great sufferers for his late Majesty) he being then a Prisoner to the Parliament, in the Garrison of *Stafford*; and by his means was it happily preserved and restored: for not long after he delivered it to Mr. *Isaac Walton* (a man well known, and as well beloved of all good men, and will be better known to posterity, by his ingenious Pen, in the lives of Doctor *Donne*, Sir *Henry Wotton*, Mr. *Richard Hooker*, and Mr. *George Herbert*) to be given to Colonel *Blague* then Prisoner in the *Tower*; who considering it had already past so many dangers, was persuaded it could yet secure one hazardous attempt of his own, and thereupon leaving the *Tower* without leave taking, halted the presentation of it to the present *Sovereign's* hand.

We shall hereunto subjoin this Observation: That other Princes in Christendom





dom (besides the *soveraigns* of the most Noble Order of the Garter) have assumed the bearing *St. George* encountering the *Dragon*, and in like posture (though not so anciently, nor upon the same account) as they: probably having chosen him *Patron* of their *Countries* or *Families*, as namely the Emperors of *Russia*, the Dukes of *Mantua* in *Italy*, and the Counts *Mansfield* in *Germany*, which will better appear by the exhibits of some of their *seals* and *Coyns* here.

The first is the Great Seal of *Borice-Feodormiche* Emperor of *Russia*, affixed to his Letters sent to Queen *Elizabeth*, dated at his Imperial Palace of *Mosko* the 12. of *June* 1602. and 39. year of his Reign: A Translation of which was most courteously afforded me by Mr. *Ja. Frese* (Interpreter to the *Russian* Ambassadors, sent over hither to his now *Majesty*, *an. Dom.* 1660.) and is as followeth.

By Gods providence, We the great Lord, Emperor, and great Duke Boreece Feodormiche of all Russia self-upholder, of Wolodcemer, Mosko, Novograde, Emperor of Kazan, Emperor of Astracane, and Emperor of Seebeeria, Lord of Psokofske, great Duke of Smolenskee, Twerskee, Ugarskee, Permskee, Vatickeee, Belgarskee, and other; Lord and great Duke of Novagradia, the lower Countries, Cheringoskee, Rezanskee, Rososkee, Yaroslavelkee, Beloozerskee, Leeflandia, Udorkee, Obdorskee, Kondinkee, and Commander of all the Northern parts, and Lord of all the Iverskee Countries, and Granziske Empires, and of the Cabernilkee Countries, Cherkaskee, Igorkee, and of many other Kingdoms, Lord and Conqueror.

We have likewise seen another of this Emperors great *Seals*, fixed to his Letters, bearing date the 31. day of *May*, *an. Dom.* 1594. which he also sent to Queen *Elizabeth*, and was presented to her at *Richmond*, the 14. of *October* following, by his Ambassador *Evanowich*: the Circumscription containing the same *Stile* and *Titles* above set down.

There is preserved in the Archives at *Oxford*, an Instrument containing Letters testimonial of this Emperor, given to Doctor *Christopher Rittinger* his chief Physician, the Seal whereof is Silver gilt, but differs in size and design from the former, and contains on the reverse the Figure of *St. George* and the *Dragon* only. A translation of the whole Instrument I have transcribed hither, as it was communicated to me by my worthy friend Mr. *Thomas Hyde*, the present Library-keeper of that famous *University*, a Gentleman of eminent Learning, in all kinds, and especially in the Oriental Tongues.

By the great mercy of God, We, great Lord, Emperor and great Duke Borrys Feodorwich of all Russia sole Commander, of Volodemeriky, Moscovelky, Novogorodlky, King of Cazaniky, King of Astracantky, King of Siberiky, Lord of Vobsky, and great Duke of Smoleniky, Tweriky, Ugorsky, Permesky, Votiky, Bulgariiky, and many others, Lord and great Duke of Novogorod, Levelandiky, Udorsky, Obdorsky, Kondnilyky, and all the Northern parts, Commander. Lord of Iverkyland, King of Grufinsky, Caberdinsky Country; Cherkasky, and the Country of Iveriky, and of many other Kingdoms Lord and Commander, together with our princely Son Pheodor Burryswich of all Russia, do by these our princely Letters, given unto Doctor Christopher Rittinger Physician, Hungarian born, acknowledge his true, faithful, and willing service unto our Highness: in which his profession, We Lord, King and great Duke Burrys Feodorwich of all Russia, have sufficiently tryed his skill, on our princely person, which he carefully performed for the better preservation of our health: and through Gods great mercy, by his diligent and faithful service hath cured our Highness of a dangerous sickness. And therefore we Lord King and great Duke Borrys Feodorwich of all Russia sole Commander, with our princely Son Pheodor Burryswich, in regard of his great learning and faithful service to us, have admitted him to be our Princely Doctor, to minister Physick, and attend on our royal person: to which end we have granted him our Letters, and hereby we testify his sufficient knowledge and practice in Physick,

Physick, who hath by our selves well deserved, to publish and make known the fame. And if the said Doctor Christopher shall repair to any other Princes, Countries, Emperors, Kings, Cursts, Arch-Dukes, or Dukes, to offer his service unto them, We do by these our princely Letters wheresoever they shall come, give true testimony on the said Doctor Christopher's behalf, to be of great learning, sufficient knowledge, well practised in Physick matters: as also in that profession, careful, diligent, and trusty to be credited, We having had sufficient tryal of his faithful carriage, in all true and honest services towards us. These our Princely Letters, given in our great and chiefest Palace in the Kingdom of Mosco, in the year of the creation of the World 7109. and in the month of August.

The Style about the Seal.

By the great mercy of God, We great Lord, Emperor, and great Duke Borys Feodorowich of all Russia sole Commander, Lord and Governor of many other Countries and Kingdoms.

The third, is the great Seal of *Alexeye Michailowiche*, the present Emperor of *Russia*, wherewith was sealed the Letter sent to his now Majesty, *an. Dom. 1660.* by his Ambassadors, *Duke Peter Semoenowiche Proforoskee*, Lord and Possessor of the Dukedom of *Toole*, and *Evan Ossonofewiche Zelabuskee*, *Namestinnick of Coormeskee*. Which having obtained by the favour of *Sir William Horace* Knight and Baronet, late principal Secretary of State, we also here exhibit to publick view, with a translation of this Emperor's Style, rendred into English by the said *Mr. Ja. Frese*.

By Gods mercy, We the great Lord, Emperor, and great Duke Alexeye Michailowiche of all the great and lesser and white Russia self-upholder, of Moscovia, Knevelskee, Wolodeemerkee, and Novagardkee, Emperor of Kazan, Emperor of Astracan, Emperor of Siberia, Lord of Pscofskee, and great Duke of Lettow, Smolenskee, Twerkee, Wolniskee, Podolskee, Ugarlskee, Permlskee, Waticeskee, Bolgarskee, and others. Lord and great Duke of Novogradia, the lower Countries, Cheringoskee, Rezaniskee, Polotskee, Rostoskee, Yaroslaskes, Belozerskee, Udorskee, Obdorskee, Kandinsk, Weetepkskee, Meestelsoskee, and of all the Northern parts Commander. Lord of the Iverskee Countries, Cartalinkee, Groonfskee, and Igerskee Empires, and of the Kabardinsk Countries, Cheringoskee, and Igoriskee Dukedoms, and of many other Dukedoms Eastern, western and northern, from Father and Grandfather heir apparent Lord and Conqueror.

This representation of *St. George* and the *Dragon* we find assigned for Arms to *Anne de Russie*, Daughter to *Jaroslaus* King of *Russia* and *Moscovia*, married to *Henry* the First King of *France*, in the year of our Lord 1051. and thus blazoned. *De Gueules, à un homme à Cheval, d' Argent, tenant une Lance en la main, qu'il darde en la gueule d'un Dragon renversé.*

*† S. Marthe
Hist. Genealog.
de la Maison
de France.
Tom. 1. l. 12.
c. 4 p. 453.*

The Counts of *Mansfield* in *Germany*, have likewise frequently stamped on their Coyns, the Figure of *St. George* killing the *Dragon*: from which we have singled out one, bearing the name of *St. George*, and placed it under the Number IV.

In the last may be seen the Effigies of *Vincentius* Duke of *Mantua* and *Montferat*, a Knight of the Order of the *Golden Fleece*, and on the Reverse thereof, *St. George* encountering the *Dragon*, in the manner generally worn by the Sovereign and Knights-Companions of this most Noble Order of the *Garter*.

SECT. X.

When the Habit, or part of it, ought to be worn.

Here are several solemn days and occasions, on which the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* of the *Order* are enjoined to wear, either the *whole Habit* of the *Order*, or some part of it.

The more solemn, and which require a full conformity, as to wearing the *whole Habit*, that is, the *Garter*, *Mantle*, *Surcoat*, *Hood*, *Collar*, *Great George*, and *Cap*, are first, the high Festival of the *Order* (commonly called *St. George's Feast*) whether it be solemnized on the 22, 23, or 24. days of *April* annually, or any other days within the following year by *Prorogation*. And for this there is clear Text, in all the *Bodies* and *Exemplars* of the *Statutes*; as also to the time how long they ought to be worn on every of those days, before the *Sovereign* or *Knights-Companions* put them off. K. Stat. 2.

For first, it was Ordained, ¹ That the *Knights-Companions* should put on the *whole Habit*, on the *Eve* of *St. George*, before the *Sovereign* proceeded to the *Chapel*, to hear *Divine Service*; and being so habited, should attend the *Sovereign* to the *Chapterhouse*, thence to the *Chapel*, and return with him back, continuing in the same manner habited (as well such of them as should be minded to *Sup*, as those that should not) until after *Supper*; nor might they put off their *Robes* until the *Sovereign* or his *Deputy* had put off his, or declared it time for his or their so doing. m Ord. Stat. in Lib. N. Art. 3.

By the same third Article of the *Statutes*, the wearing of the *whole Habit* was also enjoined on the *Feast* day of *St. George*, both at their Proceeding in the morning to the *Chapterhouse* or *Chapel*, at their return to *Dinner*; from thence to the second *Vespers*, and back to *Supper*; as also till *Supper* should be ended, and until the *Sovereign* or his *Lieutenant* took leave of the rest of the *Knights-Companions*.

Secondly, it is manifest from *King Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes*, that the *Eve*, the day of *St. George*, and morrow following, were appointed to be kept with solemn service, and holding of *Chapters*, wheresoever the *Sovereign* should then be, though the *Grand Feast* and Solemnity of *St. George* were prorogued, to some further time in the year: And therefore, when by reason of such *Prorogation*, the *Knights-Companions* do meet in any other place besides the *Castle of Windsor*, to attend the *Sovereign* for the observation of *St. George's* day only, they then are appointed to wear the *whole Habit* of the *Order*, from beginning of the first *Evening Service*, until the last *Evening Service* on *St. George's* day. n Art. 4.

Thirdly, on such other days of the year, whereon the *Grand Feast* is held by *Prorogation*; and during such part of the *Eve*, and day of the *Feast*, as is before appointed, when the said *Feast* is held on its proper day.

Fourthly, by absent *Knights*, whensoever the *Grand Feast* of *St. George* should be celebrated, and wheresoever they should at such time happen to reside or be (if at liberty, and not under restraint) in like manner, as if then present with the *Sovereign* or his *Deputy*, in the place where he should celebrate the *Feast*. The time of wearing the *whole Habit* in this case, extends but to the end of the second *Vespers*, as in the second instance above. o E. 3. Stat. H. 4. Art. 1. H. 8. Stat. Art. 4. p Ord. Stat. in Lib. N. Art. 9.

Fifthly, in like manner are the *Knights-Companions* to wear the *whole Habit* of the *Order*, at the *Fests* of *Installation*, I mean such of them as are appointed by the *Sovereign* to assist at that Ceremony; where, if it begin in the *Evening*, then are they not to disrobe themselves, till after *Supper*; and being the next morning habited as before, then to proceed to the *Chapterhouse* or *Chapel*, and not put off their *Robes* till *Dinner* be ended.

The less solemn Occasions, are those which require wearing the *Mantle*, or *Collar* of the *Order* only.

And

1 H. 8. Stat.
An. 12.

And they are, first, upon the morrow after the Grand Feast day, when the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* proceed to the Chappel, and make their Offering of Gold and Silver; for it then sufficeth that they put on the *Mantle* only: which (service being finished) they were wont to leave at the Chapterhouse door, as they went out of the Chappel.

1 E. 5. Stat.
H. 5. Stat.

Secondly, as often as *Chapters* are called, and in what place soever held, either for Elections, or other Causes, as it shall please the *Sovereign* to name.

1 Ed. 3. Stat.
An. 16.
1 E. 3. Stat.
An. 15.
R. 6. Stat.
An. 15.

And also as often as it is requisite for the *Sovereign*; or any of the *Knights-Companions*, to enter into the Chappel of St. George at *Windsor*: and with reference hereunto was it Ordained; "That every one of the *Knights-Companions*, should leave a *Mantle* at *Windsor*, to the end, that upon any sudden and unexpected occasion of access thither, there might be *Robes* found in readines for the due observing the *Statutes* in this point, with all the Commands and Decrees of the *Sovereign*.

1 H. 8. Stat.

1 E. 5. Stat.
H. 5. Stat.
1 E. 5. Stat.
H. 5. Stat.
1 E. 5. Stat.
H. 5. Stat.

Its manifest that anciently (in pursuance of this Article) both the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* left *Mantles* in the *Vestry* at *Windsor*, for such accidental Occasions: for in the Inventory of Ornaments belonging to the Chappel taken an. 8. Ric. 2. We find remaining at that time in the Vestry, a *Mantle* belonging to the *Sovereign*, another to *John Duke of Britain*, a third to *John Holland Earl of Huntingdon*, another to *Edmund Langley Earl of Cambridge*, and one to *Thomas Holland Earl of Kent*, all of them then alive. And by a Decree past, at the Grand Feast, anno 1. H. 6. the *Mantle* of the young *Sovereign* was appointed to be left at *Windsor*, as the *statutes* required. It is further to be noted, that this Article of the *Statutes* was confirmed by King *Henry the Eighth's Statutes*: by force whereof the *Mantles* of the Emperor *Charles the Fifth*, and *Anna Duke of Montmorency Constable of France*, were left in the custody of the Dean and Canons of *Windsor*. And heretofore, in the general Bill drawn up of things necessary to be prepared for Installation of a *Knight-Companion*, there were usually two *Mantles* set down, the use of the one being therein expressly mentioned to remain in the Colledge at *Windsor*, and the other for all other occasions elsewhere.

1 H. 8. Stat.
An. 12.
1 E. 5. Stat.
H. 5. Stat.
1 E. 5. Stat.
H. 5. Stat.

These *Mantles* thus enjoined to be left in the Colledge for sudden chances, the owners living; were anciently committed to the Custody of the *Black Rod*, as we find it granted by *Letters Patent* to *John Athelbrig*, with the grant of that Office, and fell after the death of the Owners, to the Dean and Canons of *Windsor*, where then reserved, either for publick use of the *Knights-Companions*, when they casually came to *Windsor*, or else sold, sometimes to the Heirs of the Deceased, or other *Knights-Companions*, who succeeded in the Order (as that of *Charles the Fifth* was to the Earl of *Bedford*, and that of the Constable of *France* lent to the Earl of *Warwick*, an. 7. Eliz.) which appears from the Accounts of the Chanter of the Colledge, in the Reigns of King *Henry the Fourth*, King *Henry the Fifth*, King *Henry the Eighth*, Queen *Elizabeth*, and King *James*, who in all times answered the full benefit thereof to the Colledge; as being a certain and unquestionable due to the Dean and Canons; and this they have accordingly had and enjoyed.

1 E. 5. Stat.
H. 5. Stat.
1 E. 5. Stat.
H. 5. Stat.

And yet we find some of the Colledge made over bold with the Robe of *Sigifmond* the Emperor and sold it while he was yet alive: But the Archbishop of *York* (who, as Chancellor of *England*, was Visitor of the Colledge) upon a Visitation made by him shortly after, viz. the 22. of February, anno 1431. kept the Money from being distributed among those who had sold it, and reserved the dividend to the Dean and Canons, who should happen to be of the Colledge at the time of that Emperors death: and withall commanded for the future, under pain of Excommunication, "That no Dean and Canon should presume to withdraw or alienate any of the *Knights-Companions* *Mantles*, while he was alive, but the same as much as possible, should be well, decently, and faithfully kept and preserved.

1 E. 5. Stat.
H. 5. Stat.
1 E. 5. Stat.
H. 5. Stat.

But we are informed, that the before mentioned Statute was altered anno 9. Eliz. and a new one made to this effect, "That the *Knights-Companions* should be bound by Oath, to take care by their Wills, that after their decease, all the Ornaments which

which

which they had received, should be restored; the Robes to the Colledge, and the Jewels to the Sovereign that gave them.

We come, in the last place, to the times of wearing the Collar of the Order, with the Great George thereunto appendant, which is not only enjoined to be worn (as part of the Habit) at the Grand Feasts, and Feasts of Installation, but also at other times, when not any of the rest of the Habit (saying the Garter) is appointed to be worn, as in special, at the principal and solemn Feasts of the year: and other Feast days, to which a particular Order in Chapter, anno 4. Eliz. thus directs.

The Holy days, and Sundays, within the twelve days.

Saint Matthias day.

Holy days in Easter week.

Saint Marks day.

Saint Philip and Jacobs day.

Holy days in Whitsun week.

The Feast days of

St. Peter.

St. James.

St. Bartholomew.

St. Matthew.

St. Luke.

St. Simon and Jude.

St. Andrew, and

St. Thomas.

Besides these, the Sovereigns and Knights-Companions have been accustomed to wear this Noble Ensign, upon the Anniversary of the Sovereign's Coronation, of the Gunpowder Treason, and now lately, on the present Sovereign's Birth day. So also heretofore, upon some occasional Ceremonies, not relative to the Order; as when a Knight-Companion hath been created into Titles of Dignity and Honor, he had the Collar of the Garter added to his Investiture, as appears in the case of Henry Stafford, created Earl of Wiltshire, anno 1. H. 8. And at a Chapter held the twenty second of May 1622. it was Ordained, ^{i MS. in Offic. Armo. [L. 12. f. 27.]} That such Knights-Companions of this most Noble Order, as should afterwards assist at the Funeral of any Knight-Companion, should wear the Collar apert, at the said Funeral: and it was so observed by the Dukes of Ormond and Richmond, the Earls of Manchester and sandwich, at the solemn Funeral of his Grace George late Duke of Albemarle.

Howbeit, the custom is otherwise, as to wearing the Garter, that principal Ensign of the Order; for though it be enjoined to be worn, especially at the Grand Feast, and all times of entering into St. George's Chappel, or holding of Chapters; yet doth not this imply, that it may be left off, at all other times as may the rest of the Habit: for indeed it ought daily to be worn, both by the Sovereign and Knights-Companions. And therefore was it Decreed, even at the Institution of the Order: ^{i Ed. 3. Stat. Art. 3.} That if any of the Knights-Companions should in public be found without his Garter, and that the same was not buckled about his Leg, in decent and usual manner; upon challenge thereof, he should presently pay, ^{m Ibid. Art. n 12. & H. 5. Stat. cod. Art.} a Noble to the Dean and Colledge of Windesor. By King Henry the Eighth's Statutes, the Fine was raised to a Mark: the same to be paid forthwith after challenge made, by any of the five Officers of the Order, or as before, by the Dean of Windesor; beside which Fine, the Knight lies liable to a check.

But the Article in the Statutes of Institution being pen'd too strictly, and without any exception, the several occasions of military or necessary affairs discovering the inconvenience; King Henry the Fifth admitted of a qualification, and in case of riding with Boots, Ordained, That it might suffice, if the Knight-Companion wore some Ribband or silk Lace, to represent the Garter: nevertheless in this very Article there is a Proviso added, That no Knight-Companion should enter into Chapter, without his Garter buckled about the Leg.

F f

To

To conclude, King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes* provide, that the *Gold Chain*, whereat the *Lesser George* (in that Age) hung, should be worn 'all other days of the year, except the principal and solemn Feasts, whereon the *Great Collar* was Ordained to be worn, and except in time of War, Sicknefs, or long Voyage; in any of which cases, it should suffice the *Knight-Companion* concern'd, to wear only a *silk Lace* or *Ribband*, with the Image of *St. George* thereat: and the *Blue Ribband*, having since succeeded in place of the *Gold Chain*, the Injunction of this *Statute*, extends to it in all particulars.

CHAP. VIII.

THE
Officers
APPOINTED FOR THE SERVICE
OF THE
Order.

SECT. I.

The Prelate's Institution, his Oath, Robe, and Priviledges.

TO give increafe and augmentation to the Honor of this most Noble Order, the Founder constituted certain Officers, namely, a *Prelate*, *Register*, and *Usher*, to whom he assigned several and particular duties: Some of his Successors added the *Chancellor*, and *Garter*, upon the same account, and all of them sworn to be of the *Council* of the Order. Among these, the *Prelate* and *Chancellor* are usually called the principal, the other three, the inferior Officers of the Order; known and distinguished by the Robes or Ensigns of their peculiar Offices.

In this Chapter, we shall only give some account of their *Institution*, *Oath*, *Habit*, *Ensigns*, *Priviledges*, and *Pensions*; for as to the nature of their Offices, so far as they relate to the Duties enjoined them within the Order, they are, for the general, set down in that ancient Establishment, recorded in the *Black Book*, Entituled, *Constitutiones et Officiales Ordinis [Garterii]* peculiariter attinentes, &c. established by King *Henry* the Eighth, in the^d 13. year of his Reign, *an.Dom.* 1521. adjoined

The ancient Habits and Ensigns assigned
to the Officers of the Order.



Prelate

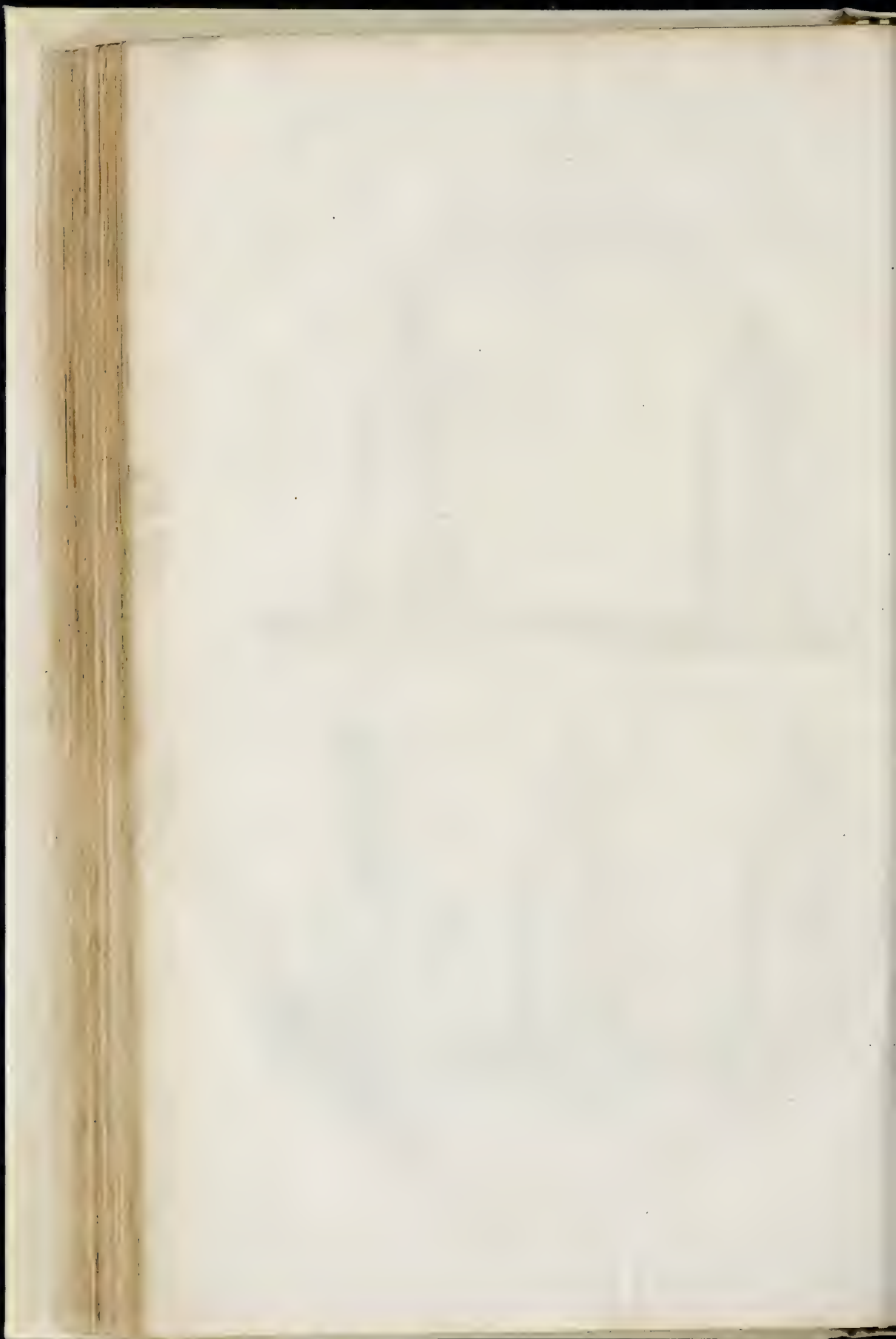
Chancellor

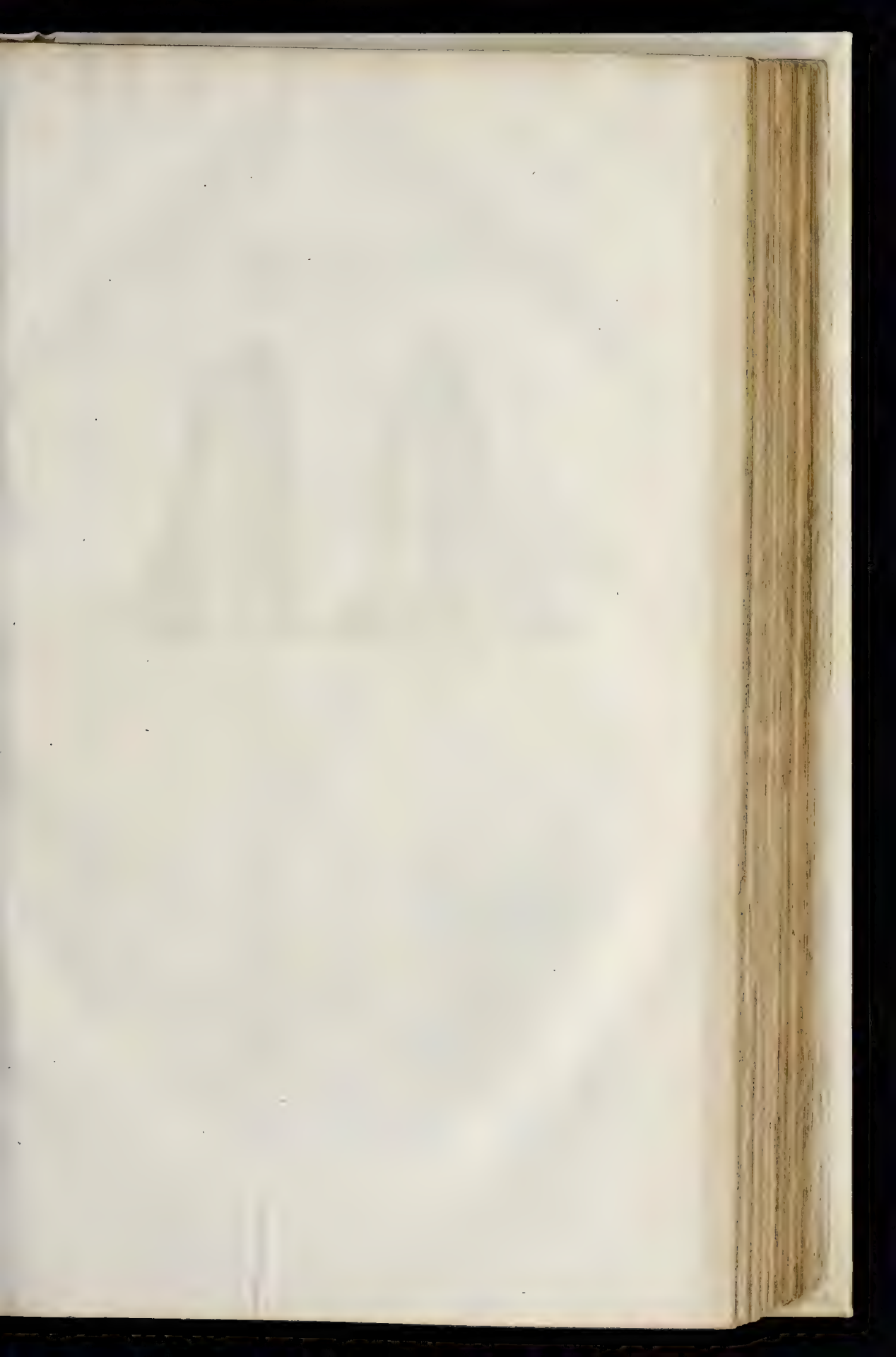


Receiver

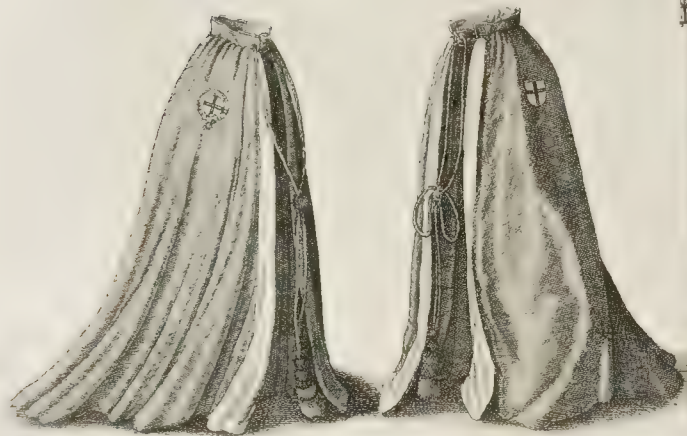
Carter

Black Roid





The present Habits Ensigns and Badges
belonging to the Officers of the Order



*The Prelate and Chancellor's
Mantle*

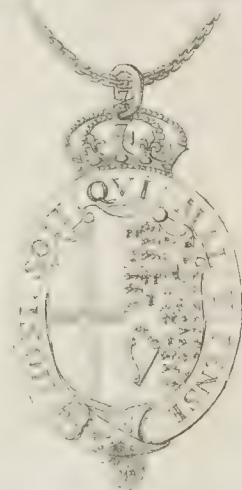
*Registers, Garters, &
Black Rods Mantle*

*Garters
Scepter*

*The Black
Rod*



Garter's Badge



Registers Badge



Black Rods Badge

and adjoined to his Body of *statutes*, from whence we have transcrib'd them into the *Appendix*. But more particularly their duties are to be met with in several places of the ensuing Discourse, where they properly fall in to be treated of.

The *Prelate* is the first and principal Officer belonging to the *Order*, and in the *Founder's Statutes* is called *Prelatus Ordinis*; thus we see his Office is as ancient as the Institution of the Order, and that the then Bishop of Winchester [William de Edyngton] was the first *Prelate*, is as apparent thence. He is an Officer of honor only, and hath not either Pension or Fees allowed him.

By the said Constitutions this Office is vested in the Bishops of Winchester for the time being; and from sundry passages in the *Annals* of the *Order*, it is further manifest, that the Successors to William de Edyngton, have continued *Prelates* to this day, except the interruption only of a few months, anno 7. E. 6. immediately after publishing this Kings Statutes; wherein the other four Officers were constituted anew, to attend the service of the *Order*, but the *Prelate* wholly set aside.

Of what estimation this See hath been, may be collected from the precedence granted to the Bishops thereof, by an Act of Parliament, Entituled, *An Act concerning the placing of the Lords in Parliament Chamber, and other Assemblies and Conferences of Council*, wherein it is Enacted, that this Bishop shall sit next to the Bishop of Durham, who hath place (by that Act) assign'd him next the Archbishop of York: though before, in respect of the honor and preeminence of this most Noble Order, he had precedence and place, granted above all Bishops, and next unto the Archbishops.

At this Officer's admittance, he is obliged to take an Oath in the presence of the Oath. Sovereign or his Lieutenant, which consists of these particulars.

1. To be present in all Chapters, whereunto he is summoned.
2. To report all things truly, without favour or fear.
3. To take the Scrutiny faithfully, and present it to the Sovereign.
4. To keep secret and not disclose the Counsels of the Order.
5. To promote and maintain the honor thereof.
6. To withstand and reveal, what is design'd to the contrary.

1 Vide Append.
Mum, V.

This Oath is read or pronounced in Chapter by the Register of the Order, the Gentleman Usher of the Black-Rod holding the Book, whilst the Prelate kneels between the Sovereign's knees.

As the Knights-Companions had their Surcoats bestowed on them at the Sovereign's charge, and therefore called the Kings Livery; so had the Officers of the Order, their Liveries or Robes, out of the Sovereign's Wardrobe likewise, and in particular the Prelate of the Order: For in the Rolls of the Great Wardrobe we find that William de Edyngton had allowed him for his Robe of the Sovereign's Livery, against the Feast of St. George, anno 37. E. 3. one Cloth of Sanguine in Grain, and a large quantity of Furs, for trimming it up.

We have had occasion in the last Chapter to observe, that the word *Roba* in the Rolls of the Wardrobe, is used to signify a Surcoat (being there applied to the Knights-Companions Surcoats) not Mantle, which in reference to the Prelate is to be understood by it. And we find this Robe, so assigned to the Prelate, noted to be of the Sute or Colour of the Knights-Companions Surcoats, the foresaid year, viz. Sanguine in grain. But whereas each Knight-Companion had 45 Ells of this Cloth for a Surcoat, the Prelate's allowance is said to be, one Cloth of the same Colour: Yet what difference there was in Measure, between one Ell, and so many as made one Cloth, we have not hitherto learnt: but in Fur the Prelate much exceeded them, every Knight-Companion then having but one Fur of 200 Bellies of Miniver pure.

F f 2

Anno

n Domino Willielmo de Edyngton Episcopo Winton. ad unam Robam sibi, de Libertate Domini Regis, contra Festum Sancti Georgii, de secta Militum de Gartherio, faciendi, & Furrurand. per Literam Privati Sigilli, Scilicet,

- 1 Pannus Sanguin. in grano.
 - 1 Mantell. de 454 Ventr. Miniver pur.
 - 1 Furrura de 244 Ventr. Miniver pur.
 - 1 Furrura de 270 Ventr. Miniver pur.
 - 1 Capucium de 154 Ventr. Miniver pur.
 - 1 Furrura dimid. de Bils, furrata de Bils.
- Ex Rotulo Compti Hen. de Snaith Custodis mas. Gardrob. Regis an. 37. E. 3. m. 3.
- o Setl. 3.
 - p Rotul. prad. m. 3.
 - q Ibid.
 - r 2

m Lib. R. p. 392
& 84.

Ex Rotulo Compti Alani de Stoke Cu-
rod mag. Gardrob. Regis m. 8.
viz. 1 Pannum Violetum in grano.
1 Mantellum de 6^{te} Ventr.
1 Capucium de 140 Ventr. Miniver pur.
1 Furrura de 400 Ventr.
1 Furrura de 360 Ventr. Miniver gros.
1 Furrura de Bils de 140 Bels. Ibid.
u Ibid.

W Lib Compt. de Liberat. Pannorum, &c.
temp. R. 1. f. 167.
x Ibid. p. 173.

y Ex Lib. vocat. Cotum. in Offic. mag.
Gardrobe, f. 91. b.

Anno¹ 7. Ric. 2. we meet with the same allowance of Cloth and other materials to *William de Wyckham* (then also *Prelate*) but the difference lay in the *Bellies* of Minivers, whose number now was much encreased: and that the same allowance was made him, in the 11. and 19. years of the said King. But in these three Instances, the Colour of the Cloth was different, and changed to that assigned for the *Knights-Companions* Surcoats those very years, to wit, *Violet* in grain, *White*, and *Blue*. And anno 12. H. 6. the Robe of *Henry Beaufort* Cardinal and Prelate, was *White*, as then were the Surcoats of all the *Knights-Companions*; whence it is evident, the Livery anciently allowed the Prelate, annually varied in Colour, as did the *Knights-Companions* Surcoats.

In that ancient Precedent of the Liveries of the Garter, recorded in an old Velam Manuscript, remaining in the Sovereign's Great Wardrobe, wherein the Surcoats bestowed on the *Knights-Companions* are reduced to a certainty, as to the measure of Cloth, number of Furs and Garters, nevertheless proportioned according to their several Degrees; there the Prelate hath the following allowance for his Livery.

2 Est. 12.

2 24 Yards of Woollen Cloth.
18 Timbr. pur. } Miniver.
18 Timbr. gros. }
3 Timbr. de Biss.

a Constitutio-
nes ad Offici-
al. Ord. atti-
nentes, cap. 1.

By all which it is manifest what Materials and Colour the Prelate's Robe was of, as at the Institution of the Order, so for a long time after; nor can we find, any alteration therein, until the Reign of King *Henry* the Eighth, and then his Habit was^a ordained to be of *Crimson Velvet*, lined with *White Taffaty*, faced with *Blue*, and thereon richly embroidered, sundry royal Cognizances, such as appear on the front of the Prelate's Robe, in the Draughts of the Officers ancient Habits placed at the beginning of this Chapter.

The first of which is the Rose of *England* crown'd.

The second, one of King *Edward* the Fourth's Badges; and may be seen in several places of the Stone-work, in and about *St. Georges Chappel* at *Windsor*.

The third is the Flower de Lis of *France*, crown'd.

And the fourth King *Edward* the Third's peculiar Badge, viz. the Sun Beams issuing out of a Cloud. ^bForty of these Clouds, embroidered with Gold, Silver, and Silk, having in the middle the Saxon Letter E of Gold, were provided to trim several Garments made for this King in the 21. year of his Reign, and garnish'd with Stars.

As the left shoulder of a *Knights-Companions* Mantle, so the right shoulder of the Prelate's Robe, is ordained to be embroidered with a^c Scutcheon of *St. George's Arms*, encompassed with the Garter; and^d adorn'd with *Cordons* of *Blue Silk* mingled with Gold.

After a while (though we find not the certain time) the Colour of this Robe became changed to *Murrey*, the allowance of Velvet^e 16 yards, of *White Sarcenet* for lining 12 yards, and a Garter for the shoulder embroidered with *Purls* of *Damask Gold*. But by a Warrant dated the 22. of *March* anno 23. *Eliz.* directed to the Master of the great Wardrobe, for the Livery of the Order for Bishop *Watson*,

then newly admitted Prelate. The quantity of Velvet was encreased to^f 18 yards, but the lining and Garter as before, so also the Cordon, having Buttons and Tassels of *Blue Silk* and *Venice Gold*. The like Robe in all particulars was made for his Successor Bishop *Cooper*, upon the Sovereign's^g Warrant (11. April an. 26. *Eliz.*) and for Bishop *Bilson*, by a^h like Warrant an. 41. of the same Queen. About the 12. year of King *Charles* the First, the Prelate and Chancellor petitioned the Sovereign to restore them their ancient right and estimation, in relation

e Ex veroff.
pergam. MS. in
Offic. mag.
Gardrob. p. 46.

f Lib. Warrant.
particul. temp.
Eliz. Regina
in Offic. mag.
Gardrob. p. 232.
g Ibid p. 359.
h Ex lib. partic.
Warrant. ad an.
1593. ad an.
1603. f. 167.

relation to their *Robes* and *Badges* of Honor, upon their outward Garments; whereupon it was Ordered in a *Chapter* held the 18. of *April*, an. 13. Car. 1. (being the Feast-day celebrated by prorogation for the year 1636.) among many other things relating to the Honor of this most Noble Order, ⁱThat the Knights-^{i Lib. R. p. 122.} Commissioners (newly established by^k that Chapter) should consider of the Robes^{k Ibid. p. 118.} to be worn by the Prelate and Chancellor, and certify the Sovereign the ancient Colour and Form.

But we have not met with any thing further done in relation thereunto, during that *Sovereign's* Reign; nor until after the happy Restoration of the present *Sovereign*, and then by Warrant under the Signet of the Order, (dated Feb. 19. an. 13. Car. 2.) the Prelate had assigned him for his Livery of the Order one *Robe* of^{*} Purple Velvet, containing 18 yards, and 10 yards of White Taffaty for lining, ^{* Appendix Num. IX.} as also a Scutcheon of St. George within a Garter, wrought with Letters and Purls of Damask Gold and Pearls, having Laces, Buttons, and Tassels of Purple Silk and Venice Gold; but what inducements the *Sovereign* had, for changing the Colour from *Murrey* to *Purple* we have not heard.

An Account being thus given of the *Prelate's Robe*, it follows that we note, at what times he is enjoined to wear it, concerning which it is set down in express Text, ^mThat he should be obliged to wear it yearly on the Vigil and day of St. George, ^{m Constitut. ad} wheresoever he is at his Liberty, whether it be in Parliament, or any other ^{Offic. Ord. attentus, cap. 1.} solemn occasion, or Festival whatsoever.

The Honors conferr'd on this Officer are, That his Place in all Proceedings and Ceremonies of the Order is on the^o right hand of the Chancellor. That he may marshal his Arms within the ennobled Garter, and accordingly hath it been customary for the Prelate, to surround them (impaled with those of the See of Winchester) with this Noble Ensign. He hath allowed him convenient Lodgings within the Castle of Windsor, and these are in a Tower, situate on the North side of the Castle in the middle Ward, called, Winchester-Tower. And as often as he shall come thither, or to any other place at the *Sovereign's* command either to celebrate the Solemnity of St. George, or do any act or thing belonging to the Order, he ought to have allowed him of the Court-Livery for himself and Servants, according to the rate that Earls resident in Court are used to have. ^{Priviledges. of Ibid. q. r Lib. R. p. 551. f Express. Constitut. c. 1.}

Lastly, at a Chapter held the 27. of April, anno 2. Car. 1. this Officer (so also the Chancellor) had the Privilege granted to wear upon the left part of his Cloak, Coat and Riding Cassock, at all times when he should not wear his Robe, and in all Places and Assemblies a Scutcheon of the Arms of St. George, but not enriched with Pearls or Stones, That the wearing thereof might be an open testimony to the World, of the honor he held from this most Noble Order. ^{i Vide supra cap. 7. Sect. A. p. 216.}

But not long after there was some restraint put upon this Act, though I do not find it repealed.

SECT. II.

The Institution of the Chancellor's Office, his Oath, Robe, Badge, and Pension.

AT the Institution of this most Noble Order, ^aThe Common Seal was ordained to remain in the custody of whomsoever the *Sovereign* should please; nevertheless, such person is expressly appointed to be^b one of the Knights-Companions. Among them in after times Sir John Robertfack (to whom its custody was committed, by Decree in Chapter an. 1. H. 6.) is stiled^c Custos Sigilli Ordinis; and within a few lines in the Book and Page now cited (the same Chapter still fitting) there is mention made also of the^d Chancellor: where though the reference be not to Sir John Robertfack by express Name, yet in all likelihood is intended to him, the Seal of the Order being at his Nomination delivered into his keeping. And though in the

His Institution.
a E. 3. Stat. Art. 26.
b Art. 20.
c Lib. N. p. 74.
d Dominus Guliel. Harrington per Cancellarium excusatus est.
Ibid.

^c *Ibid.* p. 75. the course of the *Annals* there recorded, this Title is given to Sir John Robert-sack, preceding the entry of the Decree, which constituted him Keeper of the Seal, yet is it probable his nomination past one of the first things in the Chapter; after which, the Register might justly afford him that Title, though not as yet drawn up into an Order: That work being commonly done after the Chapters were broke up.

But King Edward the Fourth, finding it necessary to settle the Office of Chancellor of the Garter, in a person distinct from the Knights-Companions, and subservient to them, Ordered, in a Chapter held at his Palace of Westminster the 4. of November, in the 16. year of his Reign, 'That the Seal of the Order should be delivered to Richard Beauchamp then Bishop of Salisbury to keep during pleasure; and he to be called Chancellor of this most Noble Order.

^g *Appendix.*
Num. IV.

Not long after, this King by Letters Patent under the Great Seal of England, bearing Teste at Westminster, the 10. day of October, in the 15. year of his Reign, declared, That though among the Officers of the Order of the Garter, the Office of Chancellor was not appointed by the Founder's Statutes, yet was it nevertheless very lawful and necessary. And therefore did Ordain, that for the advancement and good of the Order in those Affairs, there should be constituted an Officer named Chancellor. And so far as this Office was great, and of great charge, and required an able and dextrous person, it was his further pleasure, that none should be admitted therein, unless he were of Ecclesiastical Dignity, that is to say, a Bishop. Moreover, considering the Chappel of St. George in the Castle of Windsor, was founded and established within the Diocese of Salisbury, and having regard to the prudence and diligence of Richard Beauchamp then Bishop of that Diocese, who out of meer love towards the Order, gave himself the leisure daily to attend the advancement and progress of that goodly Work, wherewith the King was then in hand, in the Castle of Windsor, for enlarging the Chappel there, He did therefore likewise Ordain and Establish the said Bishop for the term of his life Chancellor of the Order, and did further Will and Ordain, that after his decease his Successors Bishops of Salisbury should always have and hold the said Office of Chancellor. Nevertheless, in this Patent there is a Proviso, that the Kings Concession, should be put in execution by the advice of the Knights-Companions, and without prejudice of the Bishop of Winchester in those things, which, touching the Order, ought by the Statutes of Institution to belong unto him.

This Office being thus conferred upon Richard Beauchamp personally, for term of life, and perpetually, to the succeeding Bishops of the See of Salisbury, divers of his Successors (some of whom are remembered in the Black Book, though the names of special Officers are seldom set down in Chapter Acts) were, by virtue of this Grant, continued therein, and executed the Office; nor doth it appear by the Records of the Order, that any other person had been invested therein, besides the Bishops of Salisbury, until an. 7. E. 6. that Sir William Cecil, then Principal Secretary of State, was made Chancellor; concerning which more by and by.

^h *Cap. 2.*

If recourse be had to the Constitutions peculiarly relating to the Officers of the Order, it will appear, ^h That this Office is very noble and honorable, of great trust and care, requiring a person of much Honor and Reputation to exercise and manage it: In which regard it is therein provided, that no man should be advanced to this Dignity, unless he be a Prelate of the Church, viz. Archbishop, or Bishop, or of some other such like eminent preferment therein: Or if a Layman, then to be a Knight of known Extraction, expert, learned, and of untainted Reputation.

By this Clause, a Lay-man no less than a Clergy-man was made capable of this Office, nevertheless it amounted not to a divesting the Bishop then living, or excluding any of his Successors, unless it had pleased the Sovereign after making that Constitution, to have passed by the Bishop of Salisbury, and bestowed it elsewhere, which he did not; for Edmund Audeley the then Bishop, some time after the establishing these Constitutions, and his immediate Successor Cardinal Campeius (till he went to Rome) if not more of them, enjoined and executed the same.

But

But upon Reformation of the Order by King Edward the Sixth, his Statutes wholly leave out the Ecclesiasticks, and appoint that the Chancellors Office should be executed by a Knight, qualified as before. And thereupon Sir William Cecil was constituted Chancellor, whose Patent bears date the 12. of April anno 7. E. 6. And here first entred a secular person, though he enjoyed the Office but a while, for the 27. of September following, Sir William Petres was admitted thereinto, since which time, until now, the Chancellorship hath continued in the execution of persons of that rank and quality.

Notwithstanding which, in a Charter granted to the Bishop of Salisbury the first of Dec an. 4. Eliz. (confirming the Charters of Queen Mary, King Henry the Eighth, and King Henry the Seventh) as also in another by the late Sovereign King Charles the First, (6. Mar. an. reg. sui 4.) the forementioned Letters Patent made to Bishop Beauchamp by King Edward the Fourth, are therein recited totidem verbis, and confirmed, as a tacite Reservation of the right and title of the Bishop of Salisbury, whensoever the favour of the Sovereign should grow propitious to that See.

It doth not appear that any of the Bishops of Salisbury, after the Reign of King Edward the Sixth, concerned themselves for recovering the Execution of this Office to their See, until the sixth year of King James, that Henry Cotton then Bishop, upon the death of Sir Edward Dyer sometime Chancellor, set forth by Petition to the then Sovereign, That this Office belonged to him and his Successors Bishops of Salisbury, and therefore humbly prayed Restitution thereof to the Church of Salisbury.

But before the Sovereign would determine any thing hereupon, he was pleased to call the two Chief Justices and Chief Baron to advise with, who were of opinion (saith the Blue Book) That this Office was not compleatly or sufficient- ly annexed to the Bishoprick of Salisbury by King Edward the Fourth. But Sir Edward Cooke, one of those Judges, Reports the point upon which it was void, to be the uncertainty of the Grant, for that a new Office was erected, and not defined what Jurisdiction or Authority the Officer should have. And yet we find elsewhere this third reason given, That the Grant was in the Sovereign's disposition, because the Patent was granted without Fee. With one, or more of these opinions, the Sovereign's judgment being swayed, He forthwith nominated Sir John Herbert one of his Privy Council to the Chancellorship, and so this Affair slept, until anno 12. Car. 1.

When John Davenant Bishop of Salisbury (Sir Francis Crane Chancellor being lately dead) with all due humiliation remonstrated to the Sovereign, That the Office of Chancellor was perpetually annexed to his See, by the foresaid Letters of King Edward the Fourth, and though in following times it had been bestowed upon Lay-men, yet he humbly desired his right might be restored. Whereupon at a Chapter of the Order held in the Chapterhouse within the Castle of Windsor, the 5. of December in the year aforesaid, the Sovereign proposed to the Knights-Companions present, That though he had of his especial Grace, made Election of Sir Thomas Rowe Knight for his Chancellor at that time, yet having understood a Claim made by the Bishoprick of Salisbury, that the place was annexed to that See. He commanded the Lords-Companions of the Order, to take the pretence of right into their considerations: To which proposition of his Majesty, the Lords humbly answered, That they thought it was not their part to search for the Title of any; but that if the Bishop of Salisbury did produce his Evidence, and the proofs thereof, he might present it in Chapter, to his Majesty, to be considered.

Upon this encouragement, the Bishop prepared a Petition, which was presented and read in Chapter, held at the Feast of St. George celebrated at Windsor, the 18. of April ensuing, and here inserted.

u Ex Anteg.
pnes Jac. Pal-
mer Esq. Aur.
rute Regis Cr-
den Cancell.

"To the King's most Excellent Majesty Sovereign of the most Noble Order of the Garter.

The humble Petition of John Bishop of Sarum, your Majesties Chaplain in ordinary.

Sheweth,

That whereas your Majesties most noble Progenitor, King Edward the Fourth, did by Letters Patent, erect and establish one Office of Chancellor of the most Noble Order of the Garter, and did then also grant a Charter unto Richard Beauchamp Bishop of Salisbury, and his Successors for ever, that they should execute that Office, in consideration that the Chappel of St. George in your Majesties Castle of Windsor, was within the Diocese of Sarum, and for other considerations in the said Charter specified. Which Office was enjoyed by the said Richard Beauchamp, and divers of his Successors in the See of Sarum, according to the Charter, which Charter hath also been confirmed under the great Seal of England, by some other Kings and Queens since the Reign of King Edward the Fourth. And was lastly most graciously confirmed by your Royal Majesty, in the fourth year of your happy Reign. But to the great prejudice and dishonour of the See of Sarum, the use and exercise of the said Office, hath been for many years discontinued from the Bishops of your Majesties said Church.

May it therefore please your most Excellent Majesty, out of your accustomed goodness to the Church, graciously to consider of your Petitioner's Claim and Charter, and if your Majesty shall so think fit, to vouchsafe your Petitioner a hearing, or to refer the examination thereof to some others. That thereupon such course may be taken for the restoring and preserving of the right of the said Church herein, either for the present or future time, as your Majesty in your Princely wisdom shall find agreeable to honor and justice.

And the Petitioner according to his duty, shall pray for your Majesties long, happy, and glorious Reign.

To the substance of this Petition it was objected.

u Rotes 7 ar-
nald, for Lib R.
Lives etc.

1. ^u That the Great Seals of England, did not work within, or upon the Statutes and Rules of the Order of the Garter.

2. That no Grant could prescribe or limit the present Sovereign; it being a Fundamental Law within the Order, *Suprema Lex, was Supremi voluntas.*

3. That it did not appear by the Records of the Order, that the place of Chancellor was any otherwise conferred upon Richard Beauchamp Bishop of Salisbury, than, *quam diu Regia celestudini complaceret*: So as the free disposition thereof did remain with the Sovereign.

x Ex Anteg.
pnes Jac. Pal-
mer.

To the first; It was answered by way of exception, as to the Grant of Offices: forasmuch as the power of the Great Seal of England, was anciently took into, and became legal within the Order in like Cases, and not any Patent for an Office, from the institution of the Order unto that time; had past under the seal of the Order, but under the Great Seal of England, and in particular the Office of Chancellor (as was manifest enough from their Enrolments) For besides the first Grant made by King Edward the Fourth, when the Office came afterwards into the hands of Lay-men (from the Patent granted to Sir William Cecil to that made to Sir Thomas Rowe) all past under the said Great Seal; which had not been done, if any legal defect had been therein.

To the second: it being so as was objected, it thence appeared, that the Sovereign was as much at liberty to restore this Office to the See of Salisbury, as continue it to secular Dignities.

To the third; What was alledged out of the Records of the Order, related only

only to the time of delivering the Seals to Bishop *Beauchamp*, but when afterwards the Office was erected by Letters Patent, it was then granted to him during life.

Something was replied from the Judges opinions, given in this case, *an. Jac. Regis 6.* but the *sovereign* thought it was not then well considered, to permit the *Chapter Acts* of this Order, which hath *Statutes* and *Rules* of its own, and wholly independent from other *Laws*, to receive construction and determination from the Measures and Rules of our *Common-Law*, and therefore notwithstanding what had been objected against the Bishops Claim, the *sovereign* was pleased justly to pronounce; “*That he ought to be heard: and to that purpose, gave y Rowe font^a nal. pag. 12.* the *Chancellor* order to signify unto him, that he should prepare and set down in writing, a brief of the Vouchers and Proofs of his Pretensions, in verification of his Petition, and send them to the *Chancellor*, to be delivered to the *Knights-Commissioners* (appointed for the Affairs of the Order) to consider of them, and present them at the next *Chapter* to the *sovereign*, who would therein take such Order, as was conformable to his most impartial and untainted Justice.

The 4. of *October* after, in a *Chapter* held at *Windsor* during the Feast of St. *George*, the *Chancellor* represented the said Bishop's Petition, with the Vouchers to his Pretensions, which the Bishop exhibited no otherwise than as Inducements and humble Motives, for restoring the ancient right of the Church of *Salisbury*, and perpetually re-uniting the *Chancellorship* of the Order to that See, if it should seem agreeable to his Will, Wisdom, and Justice. “*But the Knights-Commissioners* having not to that time met, the business was again referr'd to them to be considered, prepared and abbreviated for the *sovereign's* consideration and final judgment. All which the *Chancellor* by Letter thus signified to the Bishop.

“*Right Reverend and my very good Lord,*

“*Ibid. p. 22.*

I *My* have justly incurred the censure of your Lordship, either of want of manners, or pervarication, that I have not given you an account of the trust you pleased to repose in me, and that I so willingly undertook, both out of true respect I bear to your Lordship, and duty and service to the Church, whose cause you sollicite; but I hope your goodness will acquit me of any of these crimes, and be pleased to take my just excuse, that I deferred only, to give you a more certain answer than yet I am able, lest a longer delay might endanger the good opinion, which I desire to preserve with you, you may be pleased to know; that at the last *Chapter* of the Order held in *October* at *Windsor*, I represented your Lordships Petition, and all the several Vouchers and verifications of your demand and pretension, but his Majesty having not leisure at that time to enter into a full debate, did refer it to the *Knights-Commissioners* standing for the Order, both to consider and to deliver their opinions, and to make report to him at the next Feast, reserving to Himself the final judgment. Of this I have made a Record and registred it in the Acts of the Order for continuance of your Claim. I have since solicited the *Knights-Commissioners* often to meet upon it, and other occasions of the Order, but hic labor hoc opus, I cannot procure them till after the Term, when I beseech you to believe, that I will be a faithful Remembrancer, and Advocate of your cause, and that as soon as I can get any resolution, I will thereof render you an account: and if they will do nothing therein, I will again bring it to his Majesty. In this business, I cannot omit to let you know, the care of his Grace my Lord Archbishop of Canterbury in your behalf, who doth often call upon me, and if you please to take notice thereof to him, and to desire him to move his Majesty to command some of the *Knights* to meet and to hear it, it will procure both a quick and effectual dispatch, and there shall be of my part no manner of omission, to testify to your Lordship both my reverence to your person, and desire to deserve of you the name of

St. Martyns-Lane
29. Nov. 1637.

Your Lordships most humble servant
Tho. Rowe.

G g

Nor

b Rowe's Journal p. 36.

Nor was this worthy *Chancellor* unmindful of his promise, for the next time the *Knights-Commissioners* sat, which was the first of *February* following at *Whitehall*, He to their considerations presented the foresaid *Petition*, *Claim*, and *Vouchers*, to be heard by them according to the former *Order*: But it was their opinion, That unless the *Bishop* were himself present, it would be labour lost, and that they could not conclude in the cause, without hearing his own Reply: And therefore they entred not into the debate, but Ordered the *Chancellor* to write a Letter to his Lordship, that whensoever he came up to *London*, he should be heard personally, and his reasons considered, and to the *Sovereign* represented.

The Letter upon this occasion was as followeth.

c Ibid. p. 37.

c My Lord,

I T hath pleased the Lords *Knights-Commissioners* for the *Garter*, to meet upon Thursday last, the first day of this Month: where in the first place I presented your Lordships *Petition* to his Majesty, and read the *Order of Reference* upon it made in Chapter, and offered unto their consideration the authentick *Vouchers* to every part, sent me by your Lordship, and urged your *Claim* as far, as if it had been my own, both by succession of *Bishops* of *Salisbury* in the Office of *Chancellor* until *Henry the Eighth*, and of the first *Grant* made under the *Broad Seal*, and of continual renewing thereof in all the *Charters* of *Bishops* since, to your Lordship, and all other arguments, which either my wit could present, or to which by sincerity, and your trust, I was obliged. But could not induce their Lordships to view them, nor to make any report upon the cause, all the answer I obtained, was, that it was not proper for me to be the *Advocate*, nor for them to hear, where I could not be furnished with a reply on your part, if they found cause to except against any part of the title, and so they would not judge you by any prejudice: But commanded me to signify to your Lordship, that whensoever your occasions should bring you to *London*, or the Court, that they would hear you, and from you only receive the information. And that when your Lordship should call upon them, they would give you such an answer as the justice of your cause should merit.

I am sorry to write your Lordship so weak effects, but I desire you to believe, that I have proceeded with all faith and integrity, and that I could do no more: Of this proceeding I acquainted his Grace my Lord *Archbishop* of *Canterbury*, who did think it fit that I should signify to you, how the business stood, that you might be the better prepared against your coming to *London*, where I shall be ready to do you all service in my power, and until then will keep your Papers safe for your use: Unless his Majesty, to whom I purpose to render an account of the business, make a new *Order* for more expedition, which I believe will not be done before your coming, or the next Chapter. In hope and desire to be of more use to your Lordship when you shall make your own *Claim*, or in any other of your commands, I shall ever rest

St. Martins-Lane
6. Feb. 1637.

Your Lordships most humble servant
Tho. Rowe.

After which we find not, that the *Knights-Commissioners* met, either upon this or any other Affair relating to the *Order*, before the Feast of *St. George*, begun to be held at *Windſor* for the 20. of *May*, an. 14. *Car. 1.* and to that, being added the Ceremonies of the present *Sovereign's Installation*, the *Bishop* of *Salisbury* thought it not convenient to interrupt any part of that great Solemnity, with the consideration of this Affair; and the *Scotch War* shortly after breaking forth, and troubles growing high at home, the further prosecution was laid aside, and not revived until the 19. of *November*, an. 21. *Car. 2.* when *Seth Ward* now Lord *Bishop* of *Salisbury* took encouragement upon the former grounds and the *Sovereign's* favour, to set on foot this *Claim* by a *Petition* presented in Chapter then held at *Whitehall*, where after a full debate and consideration had of the justness of his *Claim*, he obtained the following Decree for re-establishment of this Office on the *Bishop* of that See upon the first vacancy.

^a At a Chapter of the most Noble Order of the Garter, held by his Majesty Sovereign, and the most noble Companions hereafter named, in the Red Chamber next the Bed-Chamber in Whitehall, the nineteenth of November 1669. ^d Vide Lib. Cap. 112. p. 64.

Present

His Majesty Sovereign.

His Royal Highness the

Duke of York.

Duke of Ormond.

Earl of Oxford.

Earl of Manchester.

Prince Rupert.

Earl of Bristol.

Earl of Sandwich.

Duke of Monmouth.

Officers { Prelate, the Bishop of Winchester.
 { Register, Garter, Usher.

The Sovereign then declared, That the reason of calling this Chapter was to consider of the pretensions of Dr. Seth Ward Bishop of Salisbury, exhibited in a Petition, concerning the Title and Claim of himself and his Successors, unto the Office of Chancellor of the most Noble Order of the Garter (when the same should become void) the Bishop grounding the equity of his Claim, upon a Charter first granted by King Edward the Fourth, in the 15. year of his Reign, unto Richard Beauchamp Bishop of Salisbury and his Successors for ever, which Charter hath been since confirmed under the Great Seal of England, by other Kings and Queens, and particularly by King Charles the First, of ever blessed memory; hereupon the Bishop being called in, and commanded to produce his proofs to make good that his pretension, accordingly the Bishop humbly offered an authentique Copy of the original Charter, of the said King Edward the Fourth, renewed and confirmed by the said King Charles the First, in the fourth year of his Reign; The which being read and duly considered, together with the Objections to the contrary, particularly that the possession and execution of the said Office of Chancellor, had been for above an hundred years, committed unto Laymen, notwithstanding which, the Sovereign and Companions, being fully satisfied with the justness of the Claim of the said Bishop, grounded upon the aforesaid Charters, and likewise considering, that the returning of the said Office to the first Institution, would be for the honor and dignity of the said most Noble Order, the Sovereign thereupon, with the unanimous consent of the most Noble Companions then present, did Declare and Ordain; That the Bishop of Sarum, and his Successors for ever, shall have and execute the Office of Chancellor of the said most Noble Order, and receive and enjoy all Rights, Priviledges, and Advantages thereunto belonging, immediately upon the first vacancy of the said Office.

Proceed we next to the Oath the Chancellor takes at his admission, which we find to be the same with the Prelate's, and in the like humble posture, that is, upon the Knee, and usually administered by the Register of the Order. When Sir James Palmer was to be admitted Chancellor (17. Jan. an. 20. Car. 1.) the Register moved the Sovereign. That in regard his Majesty had made choice of him for that Office in place of Sir Thomas Rowe deceased; and though he had long executed the same, in his absence, and taken the Oath as Deputy Chancellor, yet being now elected Chancellor, ought to take the Oath in the quality he was in: The Sovereign and Knights-Companions present thought it fit to be done, and thereupon the Register gave him the Oath; after which being saluted by the Knights-Companions, and joy given him of his new Office, he went on with the business of the Chapter.

It is clear from the Precedent of the Sovereign's Livery of the Garter, that the Robe Chancellor's Robe, was at first the same with the Prelates, both for Cloth and Colour, but his proportion of Cloth far less, having allowed him but 15 yards when the Prelate had 24. nor but 3 Timber of Miniver gros, where the Prelate had 19. before a large quantity of other Furs. Nor was the Colour settled to one kind, until the Constitutions of his Office, appointed it to be the same with the

^c Lib. N. p. 313.^e Lib. C. p. 107.

112. & Lib. R.

p. 114. See Pal.

mers large

Journal p. 57.

by Lib. Carolin.

p. 24.

p. Palmers

large Journal

p. 56.

h. Ibid. 57.

h. Ibid. 57.

h. Ibid. 57.

h. Ibid. 57.

h. Ibid. 57.

h. Ibid. 57.

h. Ibid. 57.

h. Ibid. 57.

h. Ibid. 57.

h. Ibid. 57.

h. Ibid. 57.

h. Ibid. 57.

h. Ibid. 57.

h. Ibid. 57.

h. Ibid. 57.

h. Ibid. 57.

h. Ibid. 57.

h. Ibid. 57.

h. Ibid. 57.

h. Ibid. 57.

1 Ex Lib. tertio
particular.
Warrant. temp.
Eliz. Reg.
p. 203.

Prelates, [*Crimson*] for no doubt, it was before annually changed (as was the *Prelates*) to the Colour of the *Knights-Companions surcoats*. Howbeit by the Plate of the ancient Habits of the Officers, it is visible to have wanted the Royal Badges, wherewith the *Prelate's Robe* was then embroidered. When the Colour of the *Prelate's Robe* was changed to *Murrey*, then was the *Chancellors* so also, and made alike in all other particulars. The proportion allowed to *Sir Thomas Smith* for his Livery, *an. 14. Eliz.* was¹ 18 yards of Murrey Velvet, 12 yards of Sarcenet for the Lining, one Garter wrought with Pearls of Damask Gold, for the shoulder one Lace (or Cordon) with Buttons and Tassels of Blue Silk and Venice Gold. And the same materials and proportions were afterwards given out of the *Sovereign's great Wardrobe*, to the succeeding *Chancellors*.

m Rowes Jour-
nal f. 36.

But *an. 13. Car. 1.* the *Prelate* and *Chancellor* endeavoured a Reformation of their *Robes*, and upon meeting of some of the *Knights-Commissioners* at *Whitehall* the first of *February* in the foresaid year, who heard and debated several things relating to the *Order*, it was determined, ^{em} That the said *Knights* should move ^{em} the *Sovereign* for a new *Robe* for the *Chancellor* (notice having been given to ^{em} the *Knights-Companions* about a week before, to provide for themselves new ^{em} *Mantles* of Celestial Blue) and the Colour being in question, upon the Reformation of the *Knights Robes*, it being alledged (*but without ground*) that the ^{em} *prelate* and *Chancellor* for their upper *Robe* had from the Foundation, the same ^{em} *Stuff* and Colour that was worn by the *Knights*, it was refer'd to the *Sovereign*. But herein nothing was done till *an. 13. Car. 2.* when the Colour both of the *Prelate* and this *Officers Robe*, was changed to *Purple*.

Badge.

n Lib. C. p. 16.

Besides this *Robe*, the *Chancellor* of the *Order* hath an honorable *Badge* assigned him to wear, first granted to *Sir William Peters*, and his Successors, the 9. of *October*, *an. 1. & 2. Phil. & Mar. viz.* a *Rose* Gold, enclosed within a *Garter*, which he and the succeeding *Chancellors* of the *Order* have ever since worn daily about their necks; at first in a Gold Chain, but since in a Purple Ribband. The Figure of which with those *Badges* worn by *Garter* and *Black-Rod* are to be seen at the beginning of this Chapter.

o Chap. 9.

It seems (something to this purpose had been in design a little before, so soon as the *Chancellorship* became vested in a Lay-man; for *King Edward* the Sixth's Statutes did Ordain, ^o That the *Chancellor* should wear about his neck a *Cross* of the *Order*, with a *Red Rose* in a *White*, of *Gold*, all compassed within a *Garland* of *Red* and *White* *Roses*.

And because it was suggested to the late *Sovereign King Charles* the First, That there were differences and uncertainties in some Books remaining with the *Chancellor* touching the wearing his *Badge*; He thereupon gave out the following *Warrant*, under His Royal Hand and Signet of the *Order* to ascertain the form therein described, and manner of wearing it.

Charles R.

Ex Original
penes prof.
Jac. Palmer.

Charles by the Grace of God King of Great Britain, France, and Ireland, Defender of the Faith, and Sovereign of the most Noble Order of the Garter, &c. To all and singular to whom these presents shall come Greeting. Whereas there are differences and uncertainties in Books of our most Noble Order of the Garter, remaining in the custody of the *Chancellor* of our said Order, about his wearing of his *Badge* or *Token* about his Neck. And because our pleasure is, that the same might be certain and constant: We do therefore of our Sovereign Power and Authority, to whom in any ambiguities arising, the Interpretation, decision, correction, solution, and dispensation of all Statutes only belongs, and with the knowledge and consent of our Companions of our said Order, at this time remaining with us, Decree and Ordain that our trusty and well beloved servant *Sir James Palmer* Knight and Baronet, *Chancellor* of our said Order (and his Successors) shall wear about his neck, at all times in honor of his said place (that thereby he may be known to be of that Office and Dignity, as hath been accustomed) a *Medal* or *Jewel* of *Gold*, enamelled with a *Red Rose* (within a *Garter* of *Blue enamel* with this sentence inscribed *Hony soit qui mal y pense*) or such

such a one as We or the rest of the Knights-Companions of the said most Noble Order of the Garter, do or shall from time to time hereafter wear in our Collars of the said Order, in particular reference unto us and them: And in the reverse thereof he shall bear the Scutcheon of St. George enamelled within a Garter also, in reference to the Order it self, which he only shall wear hanging by a light Purple Ribband, or in a Gold Chain, as hath been accustomed. Given at our Court at Oxenford under the Signet of our Order, the 16. day of December, in the twentieth and one year of our Reign 1645.

Among the Officers of the Order the Chancellor hath place next beneath the Priviledges^q late, and in all Proceedings and Sessions, goeth and sitteth on his left hand. And as it was provided by the Constitutions of the Officers, That if the Chancellor hapned to be a Lay-man, he should be also a Knight, and have other personal endowments, before set down. So did the late Sovereign King Charles the First conceive it requisite to confer some further note of honor and estimation upon this Officer, in relation to place and precedence without the Order, to which effect there past the following Decree.

^q At a Chapter of the most Noble Order of the Garter held by the Sovereign at Whitehall the 23. of April 1629. present the Right honorable the Earls of

^q Lib Rp. 49.
vide etiam Lib.
I. 25. in Offic.
Arm. f. 62.

Mullgrave.	Pembroke.
Montgomery.	Arundel and Surrey.
Rutland.	Salisbury.
Carlisle.	Dorset.
Holland.	Barkshire.
Suffolk.	Northampton.

Charles R.

THE Chancellor of the Order, being by the Institution a place of honour, and so disposed of, that the same hath ever been possessed by persons of great worth and virtue, yet because it appears not, that any declaration hath been made of the Rank and right of Place belonging to that Office, His Majesty hath therefore by the advice of all the Knights present at the Chapter, held upon the day and Feast of St. George, Ordered and Decreed that sir Francis Crane the present Chancellor, and all others that shall succeed him in that place hereafter, shall in right of that place, in all assemblies, and upon all occasions, be ranked and placed immediately after Knights, Privy Counsellors, and before the Chancellor of the Exchequer, the persons holding both places being in pari gradu, and consequently before all others, whom the said Chancellor is to precede. And to the end publick notice may be taken hereof, and the respects known that is due to that place, His Majesty hath commanded an Entry thereof to be made in the Register of the Order. And is pleased, that the Earl Marshal of England shall likewise cause the same to be entred in the Office of Arms.

And to the end the place belonging to the Chancellor of the Exchequer may be certainly known, we have thought fit to transcribe hither so much of the Decree and Establishment of King James, made the 20. of May in the 10. year of his Reign, as will evidence the same.

^r And his Majesty doth likewise by these presents, for Himself, his Heirs, and Successors, Ordain, That the Knights of the most Noble Order of the Garter, the the Privy Counsellors of his Majesty, His Heirs and Successors, the Master of the Courts of Wards and Liveries, the Chancellor and Under-Treasurer of the Exchequer, Chancellor of the Dutchy, the Chief Justice of the Court commonly called the Kings Bench, the Master of the Rolls, the Chief Justice of the Court of Common Pleas, the Chief Baron of the Exchequer, and all other the Judges and Barons of the Degree of the Coife of the said Courts, now and for the

^r Pat. 10. Jan.
pars 10. m. 2.

the time being shall by reason of such their honorable Order, and employment of State and Justice, have place and precedence in all places, and upon all occasions before the Younger Sons of Viscounts and Barons, and before all Barons, &c.

[Cap. 2.

The foresaid *Constitutions* appoint the *Chancellor* of the Order an^t *Habitation* within the Castle of *Windsor*, like as hath the *Prelate*, and that is the South-west Tower, in the Lower-Ward of the *Castle*, hence called the *Chancellors-Tower*. It appears the possession thereof had been for some time, in the hands of others, and therefore in a *Chapter* held at *Whitehall* the 5. of *November*, an. 5. *Car. 1.* it was decreed to be^t restored unto *Sir Francis Crane* then *Chancellor* of the Order, and after his decease, to descend to his Successors in right of this Office. These *Constitutions* also Ordained,^u That this Officer should have the like *Diet* and *Liveries* in the *Sovereign's Court*, as were allowed to the *Prelate*.

[Lib. R. p. 55.

u *Loco citato.*

Pension.

w *Ibid.*

At the erection of this Office, the *Chancellor* had no *Pension* allowed him, towards defraying his charge in the Execution thereof: nor until the *Constitutions* relating to the Officers were established: but thereby is settled on him a^w *Pension* of 100*l.* per annum, in consideration of his Employment, or else an allowance proportionable in *Fees*, *Offices*, or other *Promotions*, over and beside his Lodgings in the *Castle*, and *Liveries* at *Court*.

x 24. Nov.
1657.

But as to *Fees* or *Perquisites*, there are none due to this Officer; and for that reason he hath not only the foresaid *Pension*, but all his *disbursements* touching the Affairs of the Order allowed him, even to *Paper*, *Wax*, and *Wafers*: and indeed those persons who formerly enjoyed this Office, have thought it much below them, to accept either of *Fee* or *Gratuity* for any thing done within the Order: and so that truly noble person *Sir Thomas Rowe* (sometime the worthy *Chancellor* of this Order) out of an extraordinary sense of Honor, affirmed in a^x *Letter* to *Doctor Christopher Wren*, *Register*, upon the tender (but his refusal) of some *Gratuity*; That his Office was an Office of Honor, and not of *Fees*, and that he had always excepted against *Fees* for the *disbursements* of the *Sovereign's Money*. Though he acknowledged some had given his Clerk a small *Gratuity* for the bare *Ingrossing* of an *Alms-Knights Patent*, but nothing further.

Seals of the
Order.

And because the Custody of the seals of the Order, belong to this Officer, before we leave this Section, it will be here the fittest place to say something concerning them.

y E. 3. Stat.
Art. 26.

z Art. 26.

a Pat. 16. E. 4.

p. 4. m. 18.

b 1. f. 3. St. 1.

c 1. m. 27.

d 1. m. 27.

e 1. m. 27.

f 1. m. 27.

g 1. m. 27.

h 1. m. 27.

i 1. m. 27.

j 1. m. 27.

k 1. m. 27.

l 1. m. 27.

m 1. m. 27.

n 1. m. 27.

o 1. m. 27.

p 1. m. 27.

q 1. m. 27.

r 1. m. 27.

s 1. m. 27.

t 1. m. 27.

u 1. m. 27.

v 1. m. 27.

w 1. m. 27.

x 1. m. 27.

y 1. m. 27.

z 1. m. 27.

aa 1. m. 27.

ab 1. m. 27.

ac 1. m. 27.

ad 1. m. 27.

ae 1. m. 27.

af 1. m. 27.

ag 1. m. 27.

ah 1. m. 27.

ai 1. m. 27.

aj 1. m. 27.

ak 1. m. 27.

al 1. m. 27.

am 1. m. 27.

an 1. m. 27.

ao 1. m. 27.

ap 1. m. 27.

g Lib. N. p. 57.

h H. 5. Stat.

Art. 21. vide

Lib. N. p. 57.

i 1. m. 27.

j 1. m. 27.

k 1. m. 27.

l 1. m. 27.

m 1. m. 27.

n 1. m. 27.

o 1. m. 27.

p 1. m. 27.

q 1. m. 27.

r 1. m. 27.

s 1. m. 27.

t 1. m. 27.

u 1. m. 27.

v 1. m. 27.

w 1. m. 27.

x 1. m. 27.

y 1. m. 27.

z 1. m. 27.

aa 1. m. 27.

But besides this *Common Seal* King *Henry* the Fifth, in the 9. year of his Reign, Instituted a^b *Privy Signet*, in case weighty Affairs should occasion the *sovereign* to go out of this Kingdom: The use whereof was to set to all Acts made by the *Sovereign* beyond Sea, to difference them from those of his *Deputies* here in *England*.

King





III

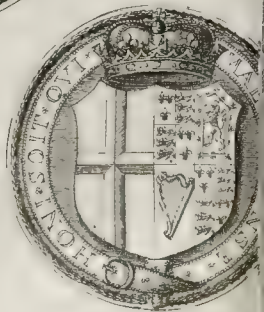


I

II



III



King Henry the Eighth's statutes ordain the making both of a *Common-Seal* and *Signet*; and direct, that the *Arms* of the Order should be engraved upon each of them. The *Common-Seal* used in his Reign we have seen and represented in the inserted Plate under the Number [I] the *signet* being designed after the same manner, but less. The use of this *seal* was continued (as appears from several Commissions of Lieutenancy, that have come to our hands) until the Reign of King James, and then altered to that Draught placed under number [II].

There was a like *seal* made at the beginning of the Reign of King Charles the First, which being ⁱ judged too little for the honor of the Sovereign's Commissions, it was afterwards Decreed in Chapter held the 18. of April, an. 13. Car. 1. ^k That a new ^l one should be made of a larger size, with the accustomed Arms and Motto, and the ^m care thereof left to Sir Thomas Rowe the then Chancellor, and it appears he executed this Command with all due consideration, by the nobleness of the design exhibited under the Number [III]. In the same Decree direction was given for making a new *Signet*, the former being thought too big for Letters; this also was effected by the said Chancellor, and represented under the number [IV].

It was at the same Chapter further Decreed, ¹ That all Legations to deliver the Order to Foreign Princes, all other Acts bearing the stile of Commissions, all Patents of Offices and Fees, all Grants or Licenses to go out of the Kingdom, should be sealed with this seal, which should be thence forward called the Great Seal of the Order. So also the ⁿ Book of Statutes sent to Elect Knights or Foreign Princes, being fixed to a Label of Blue Silk and Gold, according to ancient Custom. And ^o that all Letters concerning the Order, whether of signification of Election, or Lieutenancy, or Summons upon Prorogation, or other directions from the Sovereign, should only be sealed with the *Signet*.



These

o Lib. R. p.
120.

p Rowe's Jour-
nal. loco cit.
q Vide Com-
12 pot. 17b.
Rowe nuper
Cancellar. pe-
nes prof. Jac.
Palmer.

f Art. 31. vide
H. 5. Stat.
Art. 31.

t Cap. 2.
u d. 29.
w S. e. his Jour-
nal. p. 21.

These two *Seals* were by the said Decree appointed to be thenceforth^o born be-
fore the Sovereign in all publick Assemblies, during the celebration of St. George's
Feast, or in other its Solemnities, by the Chancellor of the Order, in a Purse of Blue
Velvet. And^e command given to Sir Thomas Rowe to provide one accordingly.
On the^s fore-side of which Purse, was richly embroidered (by Edmund Harison the
Sovereign's Embroiderer) with fine Venice Gold and Silver, Gold and Silver
Purls and Plates, and variety of coloured Naples Silks, the Arms of St. George
impaled with the Sovereign's, surrounded with a Garter, and Crowned, having
a very fair running work or compartment round about, the charge of which
came to 13 l. 6 s. 10 d.

By the Statutes of Institution it was Ordained, ^f That in case the Knight-Compa-
nion, to whose trust the Sovereign did commit the Seal of the Order, should upon
any lawful occasion happen to be absent from the Court, he should in the mean
time leave it behind him, with some other of the Knights-Companions present
with the Sovereign, to the intent it might be always neer him, so long as he re-
mained within the Kingdom: but if the Sovereign went beyond Sea, then his
Deputy was to have the same disposal of it, as himself had: and the Signet of the
Order should suffice him to Seal all such Acts and Writings as should be made there.

The distance from Court, is by the^s Constitutions for the Officers of the Order,
limited to 10 Miles, and by the^s Statutes of King Henry the Eighth to 20.

Upon consideration whereof we find w Sir Thomas Rowe Chancellor having
some occasions Anno 13. Car. 1. to be absent from the Court above 20 Miles, ac-
quainted the Sovereign therewith, and tending him the Seals of the Order, He
was pleased to dispence with the Statutes, and give him leave to keep them, never-
theless in his own Custody.

SECT. III.

The Register's Institution, Oath, Mantle, Badge, Priviledges, and Pension.

H's Instit-
tion.
* E 2 Stat.
Art. 24.
a Ord Stat. in
Bibl. Hulton.
Art. 36.
b Art. 18. &
2.
c 2 Stat.
Art. 24.
d Ord. Stat. in
Bibl. Hulton.
Art. 25.

e Regist. Char-
tac f. 53. b.
f Lib. C. p. 7.
g Non quate-
nus Decanici
quatenus Ca-
nonici ejus-
dem muneris
capaces facti
sunt. 7b. Frith
in suo Decan.
& Canonie.
Catalog.
h Lib. R. p. 107.

THIS Officer was one of the three constituted at the Institution of the Order,
under the Title of ^a Registrator and ^a Registrarius, and so is called in the^s Sta-
tutes of King Henry the Fifth. Yet in the Black Book he is frequently stiled Scriba,
and in the Registrum Chartaceum, and Blue Book, Actuarius.

What was the first Register's Name, or who were his Successors, unto the
Reign of King Henry the Fifth, we cannot discover, but it may be presumed
they were Canons of Windsor, because this Office was at first appointed to^a one
of the Colledge, namely a^d Canon Resident there: besides, those Registers we meet
with, mentioned in the Black Book from the Reign of King Henry the Fifth, to
the beginning of King Henry the Eighth, were also Canons of this Colledge, among
whom (and the first we observe so called) was John Coringham, as (among other
Testimonies) the fragments of a Glas Inscription in the Chancel of Clure Church,
neer Windsor, where he was Rector, witnesseth.

The first Dean of Windsor, constituted Register of the Order, was John Vesey,
an. 8. H. 8. the next^t Owen Ogclthorp, an. 1. Mar. many of whose Successors in this
Deanry (though not all) have since been admitted to this Office, nevertheless as
they were Canons not Deans of Windsor. And 'tis not unlike, but the Deans
were made choice of for this Employment, as being enabled to support the re-
putation of the Registership with the Revenue of this Deanry, better than any
of the Canons though with addition of the Pension appointed thereto. But at a
Chapter held at Whitehall the 22. of April, an. 11. Car. 1. it pleased the then sovereign
to declare^b how suitable and convenient it seemed to him, that the Office of it
had

had been enjoyed, and therefore commanded this his judgment and purpose to be entered among the *Annals* of the Order, that so it might pass to future times, from Example into Rule.

If we look into the *Constitutions* of this Office, we shall find that a ¹ secular person is made capable of this Employment no less than an *Ecclesiastick*, howbeit to be a ² man of singular integrity, eminent quality, a Knight, and well approved of for Experience and Learning. But if an *Ecclesiastick*, then is it appointed that he be ³ Learned, a professor either of Divinity or Law, that is either Canon or Civil Law, ⁴ in which respect he is supposed to have dignity in some Cathedral Church, or else promoted by the Sovereign to a Canonship at Windsor. Nevertheless, whether he be a Lay-man or Ecclesiastick, there is here put upon him Qualifications suitable to what the *Statutes of Institution* do Ordain, to wit, ⁵ That he be a very knowing person, able to perform the Office, and ⁶ most fit both for Learning and Virtue.

The particulars of the ancient Oath, taken by the Register, are set down in the *Statutes of Institution*, the substance being ⁷ To enter upon the Registry with all fidelity, the Scrutines, Elections, Penalties, Reconciliations, and all other Acts relating to the Order. To which in one of the Exemplars this general Clause is added, ⁸ That he shall faithfully discharge his Duty in all things. But in King Henry the Eighth's Reign, the ⁹ same Oath was enjoined him, as the Prelate and Chancellor took.

At this Officer's admittance, he takes the Oath, kneeling at the Sovereign's feet, while the Prelate heretofore pronounced the words, for so did he when ¹⁰ Owen Oglethorpe took it an. 1. Mar. so likewise upon ¹¹ John Boxolls admittance an. 5. & 6. Phil. & Mar. But being absent an. 3. Eliz. when George Carew was sworn, the Oath was administered by the ¹² Chancellor. An. 4. Car. 1. the Prelate, Chancellor, and Register took their Oaths at one time, and then the Ceremony was ordered in this manner, ¹³ First Doctor Matthew Wren Register took it kneeling between the Sovereign's knees, the Black Rod holding the Evangelists, whereon he laid his hand, and Garter read the words out of the Black Book: this done the Register read the words of the Prelate's Oath when he was sworn, and in the last place did the like to the Chancellor. Thus also did Garter read the words to Doctor Christopher Wren, admitted Register, ¹⁴ an. 11. Car. 1. as also ¹⁵ an. 12. Car. 2. to Doctor Brune Ryves.

What Habit was assigned this Officer at the Institution of the Order we do not find; but it afterwards appears by the Precedent for the Livery of the Garter, that his allowance was the same with the Chancellors, that being 5 yards of Woollen Cloth, and three Timber of Miniver gross, and as much as those Knights-Companions had, who were under the Degree of an Earl.

That Habit wherein he is represented in a ¹⁶ Proceeding of King Henry the Eighth's Reign, appears to be Ecclesiastick, viz. a Black Gown, a Surplice over that, reaching to his Ancles, and thereon a Mantlet of Furs; but the ¹⁷ Constitutions of his Office appoint him not any, wherein there seems some defect, seeing the Habits thereby assigned both to Garter and Black Rod refer to the Registers, to be the same with his. Notwithstanding from the Plate of the Officers ancient Habits, exhibited above, it may be plainly seen to be a Mantle, somewhat of a Russet Colour, faced with a pane of Blue, whereon is embroidered a Flower de Lis, crowned Gold, then another pane of Red, thereon a Lion crowned Gold, and so are they alternately placed to the bottom. To this Mantle belong Cordans of Silk, Blue and Yellow.

Since that time, not only the Register's, but also Garter's, and Black-Rod's Robes have received some alteration; for by a Decree in Chapter held at St. James's House, the first of June an. 4. & 5. Ph. & Mar. these Officers were assigned Mantles of Crimson Sattin, lined with Taffety, and a Scutcheon of St. George's Arms embroidered on the left shoulder, but not encompassed with a Garter, having like Buttons and Tassels, as were appointed to the Prelate and Chancellor. The Proportion of Sattin assigned to each Mantle was ¹⁸ 14. yards, and as many yards of White Taffety.

And though the Register's Mantle was an. 27. Eliz. made of the preceding materials,

H h

i f Cap. 2.

1 Ibid.

m Art. 24. vide

etiam H. 4.

Stat. Art. 36.

n Ord. Stat. in

Lib. N. Art. 33.

Oath.

o Art. 34. H. 5.

Stat. Art. 36.

p Ord. Stat. in

Lib. N. Art. 33.

q Lib. N. p. 313.

r Lib. C. p. 7.

s Ibid. p. 23.

t Ib. p. 32. vide

etiam p. 194.

u Lib. R. p. 39.

w Ibid. p. 107.

x Lib. Carolin.

p. 22.

Mantle.

y Lib. N. p. 196.

z Cap. 3.

* Ex Lib. pref.

particular.

Warr. in mag.

Gardrob. p. 131.

^a Lib. particular. Warr. temp. Eliz. R. p. 201.
^b Appendix Numb. X.

materials and had like trimming, yet did it differ in the proportions, here being allowed 18 yards of Crimfon Sattin, and but 12 of Taffety. From hence these *Mantles* continued unalterable in every thing until after the present *Sovereign's* return into *England*, when (20. Feb. an. 13. Car. 2.) there issued a^b Warrant to the Master of the Great Wardrobe, to prepare for this *Officer*, as also for *Garter*, and *Black Rod*, for their Liveries *Mantles* of *Scarlet Sattin*, each containing 18 yards, and 10 yards of White Taffety for lining, but agreeable in all other things with the former: yet why the *Colour* became altered, the Warrant doth not exprefs.

Badge:

Though this *Officer* hath not any *Badge* assigned, for daily wearing, yet in the Plate at the beginning of this Chapter, he seems (at the publick Solemnities of the Order) to have heretofore carried a *scrowle* in his hand, and by the Proceeding in *Queen Elizabeth's* Reign (* hereafter inserted) a *Book*, both proper Symbols of his Office.

c Cap. 21.
Sect. 3.

In Doctor *Christopher Wren's* Registership, the *Sovereign* gave him command to cover the *Red Book* of the Order with Crimfon Velvet, and assigned for the Device two *Pens* in Saltire within the *Garter*, above which these two Letters C. R. crowned; all being wrought in rich embroidery (so also the Border) with *Venice Gold* and Silver, Purls and Plates of Gold and Silver, and various Colours of *Naples Silk* by *Edmund Harison* the then *Sovereign's* Embroiderer, after the manner here exprest, cost^d 12 l. 17 s. 6 d. This *Book* he was commanded to bear before his Breast, on all solemn occasions, when he wore his *Mantle*; and thereupon, for his better ease and convenience, he made a *Belt* and *Ouch* to hang it at.

d Vide Autogr. penes praf. Jac. Palmer.



So great a regard had the *Sovereigns* of this Order, not only to this Officer, ^{Priviledges.} but likewise to *Garter* and *Black-Rod*, that they took them into a particular protection, and by the *Constitutions* of their Offices, Granted, * *That they, e* ^{Cap. 6.} *their Goods and servants should securely remain under the perpetual protection and safeguard of the Sovereign. And if any injury or violence should chance to be offered them, either by Subjects or Forreiners, whensoever they should exhibit their complaints to the Sovereign, either Himself, with the Knights-Companions, should afford them Justice, or cause it to be administered according to right and equity; but if the adverse party should refuse to submit his cause to the Sovereign, then the Sovereign and Knights-Companions should shew themselves so far inclinable towards these Officers, as to be ready to allow them all due favour, countenance, and protection, as much as should be consistent with justice and equity.*

Upon the strength and security of this ancient Priviledge, and to avoid the charge and tediousness of a Sute at Law, Doctor Christopher Wren, Register, petitioned the *Sovereign* in Chapter held at Whitehall the 19. of April an. 13. Car. 1. ^{f Lib.R. p.125.} against one Thornhill, who under pretence of digging for Salt-Petre, had so undermined his Pigeon-house, built on the Rectory of Knoil-magna in Wiltshire, that it fell down: Upon reading of the Petition it was resolved by the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions*, ^{g s Rows} *That they would consider the extent and purport of the Grant in the Constitutions, and until it were farther declared, the h Chancellor of the Order should have power upon Information from any of the said Officers, of any* ^{h 2 Journal} *rigour upon controversy begun in any other Court, to write Letters under the Signet of the Order, That all vexation against them should be superseded, until information of the Cause were given to, and determination therein resumed by the Sovereign, or leave of him obtained to proceed.* ^{pag 35.}

After this it seems Thornhill was summoned before the *Lords-Commissioners* of the Navy, and his negative Answer given them, represented to the *Sovereign* in another Chapter, held the 4. of October ensuing, whereupon it was Ordered, ^{i s Ibid.} *That the Chancellor should write a Letter to the same Lords-Commissioners, and another to the Earls of Pembroke, Arundel, and Dorset, three of the Knights-Companions of the Order, to be enjoined to them, that they, or any three of them should convene the said Thornhill before them, and write their Letter to any Gentlemen or others neer dwelling unto Knoil-magna, to view and testify the truth, to bear any further proof on the behalf of either party, and to give sentence according to Justice, that so a tedious suit in Law might be prevented, and the dignity of this most Noble Order protected.* These Commands the Chancellor performed the 10. of November following, and Certificates being returned from the Country, the *Knights-Companions* (in a Chapter held the 23. of May an. 14. Car. 1.) were moved to peruse them, which they promised to do; but ^{m s Palmers} *before they could meet, Thornhill, being indicted for conveying Salt-Petre to Dunkirk, fled: and so the prosecution of this business fell.* ^{n 2 Journal} ^{pro anno 1638.} ^{p. 21.}

Upon the same ground was it, that the Register obtained from the late *Sovereign* his gracious protection for Himself, Servants, and Estate, in the late War, in the form following.

Charles R.

Whereas by the ancient constitutions and Laws of our most Noble Order of the ^{Palmer's large} *Garter*, the Register of our said Order is to have his person and estate secured from violence and injury, to the end he or his Ministers may securely live under our perpetual protection and safeguard, and as often as he shall be molested for himself; or for any thing that belongs unto him, he is to receive our protection, and the assistance of the Companions of our said Order according to equity and right. ^{Journal. p. 58.}

These are therefore to will and command all men of what condition soever they be, not to trouble or molest Doctor Christopher Wren Dean of Windesore, and Register of our most Noble Order of the *Garter*; or any of his Ministers whomsoever, or any thing that belongs to him whatsoever, but to suffer his Person, Servants, and Estate to

H h 2

be in quiet, security, and peace, without any injury or violence to be offered by any unto him or his, as they and every of them will answer the contrary at their peril. Given at our Court at Oxford, under the Signet of our Order, the 12. day of December in the 19. year of our Reign.

Pension. This Officer by the Constitutions of his Office, hath a Pension of 50 l. per annum allowed him; or proportionable in Fees, Offices, or other Profits. And an. 1. p. 18. *2. Phil. & Mar.* the like Pension was granted to Owen Oglesborp, Dean of Windsor, out of the Exchequer, until some Ecclesiastical Preferment of like value should be conferr'd on him by the Sovereign. The same was confirmed to Doctor Maxey, by Decree in Chapter 23. April an. Jac. Reg. 16. and afterwards to Doctor Beaumont by Letters Patent under the Great Seal of England in the 20. of the said King: for which there is a most grateful acknowledgment entred among the Annals.

Lib. R. p. 4. f. Graciz itaq; amplissimæ & perennes pro maximo illo favore Regie celsitudinis semper debita & exolutæ. But there needed no assignment of Lodgings at Windsor to this Officer, as there was to the rest, considering both the Canons and Dean were provided of Houses belonging to their Ecclesiastical Dignities within the Colledge, at the Institution of the Order.

SECT. IV.

Garter's Institution, Oath, Mantle, Ensign, Badge, Priviledges, and Pension.

His Institu- tion. King Henry the Fifth Sovereign of this most Noble Order, seriously contemplating its honor upon good and mature deliberation, and with advice and consent of all the Knights-Companions, Ordained and Instituted this Officer, and for the Dignity of the Order, was pleased he should be the Principal Officer within the Office of Arms, and chief of all the Servants of Arms.

a Appenda b Numb. V. c The services enjoined him relating to the Order, were in time preceding performed by^d Windsor Herald at Arms, an Officer created with that Title, by King Edward the Third, much about the time of his Instituting the Order; and an annual Pension of 20 Marks granted him out of the Exchequer, by Letters Patent for life, which received confirmation from King^e Richard the Second.

d Collec. W. de N. Cl. e Pat. 41. E. 3. part 1. m. 13. f Pat. 3. R. 2. p. 1. m. 10. But as to the nature of his employment, comprehended under this later part of his Title, and thus annex to the Office of Garter, we have here no direct occasion to discourse off; nothing therein properly relating to the service he is to perform within this Order. Nevertheless, where any are desirous to be informed of it, some part of his Priviledges, Employments, and Duty, are to be found in the Constitutions of his Office, others in the^h Constitutions made by the Duke of Norfolk Earl Marshal of England, an. 10. Eliz. and lastly by theⁱ Lords Commissioners constituted for the Office of Earl Marshal, dated the 22. of November an. 20. Car. 2.

g Cap. 4. h In Archiv. i Offic. Arm. Sir William Brugges was the person first created Garter, and called in the Institution of his Office *Jartier Roy d'Armes des Anglois*, but else where his Title is found to run thus, *Willelmus Brugges alias dictus Gartier Rex Armorum*. This Sir William became a great Benefactor to St. George's Church at Stamford, and in the Windows of the Chancel caused to be represented King Edward the Third, with his 25 first Knights-Companions kneeling, habited in their Mantles, and Surcoats of Arms: which upon my journey thither, an. 1664. I found so broken and defaced, that no tolerable Draught of them could be taken, fit to exhibit to the Readers satisfaction.

k Pat. 7. H. 6. m. 8. John Smet, the immediate Successor to Sir Will. Brugges, had this Office given him

him by Letters Patent under this Title¹ *Johannes Smert Rex Armorum de Garteria*, ^{1 Pat. 28. H. 6.}
and *John Wrythe* was stiled^m *Principalis Heraldus & Officiarius incliti Ordinis* ^{m. 25.}
Garterii Armorum; Rex Anglicorum. But^m Sir Gilbert Dethick, leaving out *He-* ^{m Pat. 18. E. 4.}
raldus, joined *Principalis* with *Rex*, and so it hath continued since *Principalis Rex* ^{p. 2 m. 28.}
Armorum Anglicorum, Principal King of English Arms. ^{n Pat. 4. E. 6.}

In the *Constitutions* of his Office, he is called^o *Garterius Rex Armorum Anglie*, ^{o Cap. 4.}
whom the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* thereby Ordained, to be a Gen-
tleman of Blood and Arms, of untainted reputation, and born within the King-
dom of England. Besides, as King Henry the Fifth did before, so doth King
Henry the Eighth here declare, ^p That he should be chief of all the Officers of ^{p Ibid.}
Arms, attending upon the Crown of England.

The substance of his *Oath* administred by the *Register* at his admission, whilst *Oath*.
he humbly kneeleth at the *Sovereign's* feet, in the Chapter-house, is

1. ^a To yield obedience to the Sovereign and Knights-Companions.
2. To keep silence, and not disclose the secrets of the Order.
3. To make signification of the death of each Knight-Companion.
4. To execute all things faithfully, committed to his care.
5. To enquire diligently after all the Noble Acts of the Knights Compani-
ons, and certifie them to the Register.
6. To be faithful in the exercise of his Office.

q Appendix
Num. VII.

And we find it observed, that an *Oath*, consisting of these particulars, was ad- ^{r MS. 4. peneq}
ministred to *Garter*, at a Chapter held at Greenwich, an. 28. H. 8. which is to be ^{W. le N. Cl.}
understood of Sir Christopher Barker, admitted *Garter* that very year.

We find no allowance given to this Officer for his *Habit* in the *Precedent* of the ^{Mantle.}
Garter for *Liveries*, nor among the *Books* in the *Sovereign's Great Wardrobe*,
whence it may be presumed, he had no particular *Habit* assign'd him at first,
but was distinguished from the rest of the Officers of the Order, by his *Coat*
only, embroidered with the *Sovereign's Arms*, like as the Provincial Kings then
wore.

But after the *Constitutions* of the Officers were established, there was appointed
him a *Habit*, in all things like to the *Registers* (saving that the Ground whereon ^{Cap. 4.}
the Lions and Flowers de Lis were embroidered, was wholly Red) and this to be
worn only at the Publick Solemnities of the Order; the fashion and embroidery
of which appears in the Plate exhibited at the beginning of this Chapter. Queen
Mary caus'd it to be made of *Crimson Sattin*, and so it continued till shortly af- ^{Lib. C. p. 24.}
ter the present *Sovereign's* return, when the Colour was altered to *scarlet*.

This Officer is appointed to bear a *White Rod* or *Scepter* at every Feast of ^{Ensign.}
St. George the *Sovereign* being present, gilded at both ends, and at the top a
Scutcheon of the Arms of the Order, impaled with the *Sovereign's Arms*. In the ^{u Constitut. ad}
fore-mentioned Plate, the Figure of this *Scepter* hath these Arms crowned, but ^{Officiales Or-}
no directions for it given in the *Constitutions*, nor for the Crown on his head, ^{din attinentes,}
wherewith he is there represented, which at these Solemnities of the Order, neither ^{Cap. 4.}
is, nor hath been used that we can discover.

There was assigned him by Queen Elizabeth a *Badge* of Gold, to be worn ^{Badge.}
daily by him and his Successors, before the Breast, in a Gold Chain or Ribband, ^{W Lib. C. p. 53.}
and thereon enamelled the *Sovereign's Arms*, crowned with an Imperial Crown,
and both surrounded with the Princely *Garter*; but Sir Edward Walker when
made *Garter*, obtained the *Sovereign's* License to impale therein St. George's *Arms*,
with those of the *Sovereign's* of the Order, of which *Badge*, the fore-side and
back-side are both alike.

There is a *House* appointed for his habitation within *Windsor Castle*, and is the ^{Priviledges.}
middle West Tower in the lower Ward, which thereupon hath gain'd the name
of *Garter's Tower*. It was by a Decree in Chapter² annexed for ever to the Office ^{Lib. R. p. 55.}
of *Garter*, and restored to Sir William Segar's possession the 2. of May 1630. By the
Constitutions of his Office he is to be allowed¹ *Baron Service* in the *Sovereign's Court*, ^{y Cap. 4.}
and his Table served next after the Dean of the Chappel, with such *Liveries* as
of old were accustomed. ^{It}

Pension.

a Appendix
b Num. V.

It appears that King *Henry* the Fifth, after his instituting this Office, died, ^a before he had settled any Pension upon Sir *William Brugges*, for supportation of his little Estate, which the *Knights-Companions* taking into consideration, and desiring that for the honor of the Order he should receive a reasonable subsistence among themselves, by which he might more honorably comport himself to the service of the Order, till the Infant King should come to age, and be more largely provided for: ^b They being present in Chapter, with the consent of the Prelate, did assign and ordain the said Sir *William* to receive of each of them annually at the Feast of St. George the Pensions following, viz.

Of the Bishop of Winchester Prelate	5	} Marks.
Duke	5	
Earl	6	
Of every Baron or Baneret	4	} Nobles.
Knight Batchelor	2	

The first payment was agreed on to be made in hand, and so to continue yearly without failing; with request to the absent *Knights*, that for the honor of the Order, and causes in the Instrument express, they would consent to and approve of their Ordinance and Agreement, which pass'd under the seal of the Order, and bears date in the Chapter-house at *Windefor* in the Feast of St. George, an. 1422. but there is a mistake in the date, for at that time King *Henry* the Fifth was alive, and died not till the 31. of *August* following St. George's day in that year.

d Pat. 7. H. 6.
m. 8.e Pat. 24. H. 6.
p. 1. m. 11.f Pat. 28. H. 6.
p. 2. m. 25.
g Pat. 18. E. 4.
p. 2. m. 28.
h 5 Chap 4.
i 2

Afterwards King *Henry* the Sixth, in consideration of the good services performed by Sir *William Brugges* to his Father and Himself, with consent of his Council^d granted him by Letters Patent an annual Pension of 20 l. out of the Fee Farm of the City of *Winchester* during pleasure, which Pension upon surrender of this Patent, He^e granted anew to him and *Agnes* his Wife for their lives, and the longer liver of them. And when this Office (upon Sir *William Brugges* death) was given to *John Smert* Guyenne Herald (3. April an. 28. H. 6.) he had the yearly Pension of 20 l. granted him therewith for life, out of the Exchequer. But his Successor *John Wrythe* Norroy, obtained an increase of Pension to 40 l. per annum made payable out of the small Customs of the City of *London*. This annual sum was after confirmed to *Carter* by the^h Constitutions of his Office and anⁱ augmentation from the then *Knights-Companions* also made to the Pensions granted by their Predecessors upon the death of King *Henry* the Fifth, viz.

Of {	A Duke	4	} Pounds.
	A Marquess	5	
	An Earl	6	} Marks.
	A Baron	6	
	A Knight-Batchelor	4	} Nobles.

In succeeding times the Sovereign thought fit to increase his Pension to 50 l. per ann. (now paid out of the Revenue settled upon the Order) and the *Knights-Companions* yet to augment their Annuities, which they did by the following Decree.

Ex inf. An.
page.

AT a Chapter holden at *Windefor*, the Feast of St. George being there solemnized the xiii. xiv. and xv. days of September, Anno Domini 1617. It was Ordained and Decreed by the mutual consent of the *Knights and Companions* of the most Noble Order of the Garter then present (the Sovereign thereto assenting) That their Officer Sir *William Segar* Garter Knight, King of Arms of that Order, should then, and from thenceforth have renewed and paid unto him certain Annual Fees and Pensions, anciently due to his Place and Predecessors, with an increase of ten pounds per annum, which his Majesty forth of his Royal Bounty hath given unto his said Servant for his better maintenance and support; As also of Prince Charles Prince of Wales the sum of eight pounds, and of every Duke of the blood six pounds; all other Estates, viz. a Duke not of the Blood, four pounds, a Marquess five Marks, an

an Earl four Marks, a Viscount seven Nobles, a Baron forty shillings, and a Knight Bachelor that shall be of the Order, twenty six shillings and eight pence. All which said sums of money, according to the several degrees of their Estates, are to be paid unto the said Garter or his Assigns yearly at St. George's Feast, or immediately after, as well by the Knights then present, as by those that shall be absent, or hereafter are to succeed in the said Order. And after the decease of the said Garter to his Successors for ever.

Prince Charles, Prince of Wales	viii l.
The Earl of Nottingham	liii s. iv d.
The Earl of Northumberland	liii s. iv d.
The Earl of Worcester	liii s. iv d.
The Lord Sheffield	xl s.
The Earl of Suffolk	liii s. iv d.
The Earl of Suffex	liii s. iv d.
The Earl of Derby	liii s. iv d.
The Earl of Exceter	liii s. iv d.
The Duke of Lenox	iv l.
The Earl of Southampton	liii s. iv d.
The Earl of Marr	liii s. iv d.
The Earl of Penbroke	liii s. iv d.
The Earl of Montgomery	liii s. iv d.
The Earl of Arundel	liii s. iv d.
The Earl of Somerset	liii s. iv d.
The Earl of Kelly	liii s. iv d.
The Viscount Wallingford	xlvi s. viii d.
The Earl of Rutland	liii s. iv d.
The Marquess of Buckingham	iii l. vi s. viii d.
The Earl of Leicester	liii s. iv d.

Charles P.

Nottingham.	Northumberland.
E. Worcester.	E. Sheffield.
T. Suffolk.	R.o. Suffex.
Will. Derby.	Exceter.
Lenox.	H. Southampton.
Penbroke.	Montgomery.
T. Arundell.	R. Somerset.
Fenton.	W. Wallingford.
J. Rutland.	G. Buckingham.

Last of all at ¹ St. Georges Feast held at Windsor the 22. 23. and 24. of April, an. 1st Ed. Coll. B. 15. Car. 2. Sir Edward Walker now Garter represented to the Sovereign and Knights-^{E. W. G.} Companions by Petition, That the annual Pensions of the Installed Knights then in arrears for one year amounted to 94 l. 13 s. 04 d. according to the proportions last above decreed, whereof the Sovereign's part (he being to pay for all Stranger-Knights) was at that time 32 l. 13 s. 4 d. And therefore humbly prayed, that his Majesty would please to grant him and his Successors, to receive in lieu, not only of the said Pensions from Himself and Knights-Companions both Strangers and Subjects, but for quitting his right and just pretence to his annual Pension of 50 l. to his allowances for preparing Scutcheons, and removal of Achievements, 100 l. per annum, out of the yearly Revenue settled and assigned to the use of the Order.

This Petition the Sovereign was pleased to refer to a^m Committee of the Knights-^{m s. bid.} Companions, namely the Duke of Albemarle, the Earls of Lindsey, Manchester, Sandwich, and Strafford, who being attended by Garter, and ⁿ consideration had upon the Proposals contained in the Petition, they humbly offered their opinions to the Sovereign, to grant him the said 100 l. per annum, in lieu of what he offered to quit; and thereby he should not only gratify him, by preserving the interest of his Office in a more certain way than it was, but be freed from those small payments for strangers, and other yearly Charges the Petitioner pretended unto, as also exempt the Knights Subjects from the payment of their annual Pensions.

Shortly

c *Ibid.*

Shortly after, the Chancellor, Registrar, and Garter attended the Sovereign with the Report, which he approving of, ordered the Chancellor to pay unto Garter and his Successors the said annual sum of 100*l.* which he accordingly performed, and for testimony thereof signed the ensuing Declaration.

Ex Colle.
grad.

I Henry de Vic Knight Chancellor of the most Noble Order of the Garter do certify and declare, That upon certain Proposals made by Sir Edward Walker Knight, Garter Principal King of Arms, to the Lords Commissioners for the Affairs of the said Order, It was certified by a Writing under their said Lordships hands, dated the 26. May 1663. That in lieu of all Fees and Salaries in the said Proposals contained, the said Sir Edward and his Successors Garters and Principal Kings of Arms shall be paid by me and my Successors, in the said Office of Chancellor of the Garter, the sum of one hundred pounds by the year, out of the Revenue of the Order; with which Writing having attended the Sovereign, his Majesty was pleased to conform unto it, and to direct in his Commission unto me, under the Seal of the Order, to pay and issue the said one hundred pounds accordingly to the said Sir Edward Walker Garter. In witness whereof I have set my Hand and seal to this present Certificate, this 5. August 1664.

De Vic.

Canc.

q *Constitut. ad
Officiales Or-
din. attinentes
Cap. 4.*

Touching the Duty of this Officer in general, it is to perform or cause to be done, what business soever, relating to this Order, the Sovereign, or Prelate, or Chancellor shall enjoy him to do: but his duty in particular is dispersedly set down in the following Discourse, under such heads to which it properly relates.

SECT. V.

Institution of the Black Rod's Office, his Oath, Habit, Ensign, Badge, Priviledges, and Pension.

His Institu-
tion.

i *Widore*
Pat. 50. E. 3.
p. 1. m. 25. G.
p. 4. m. 5.
f Pat. 3. H. 4.
p. 4. m. 21.
f Pat. 1. H. 5.
p. 2. m. 18.
u Term Mich.
an. 1. E. 4.
rot. 46.
w } Cap. 5.
x }

THIS Officer was instituted by the Founder of this most Noble Order, but whether so soon as the Institution of the Order doth not yet appear. Howbeit within a few years after, viz. the 13. of April in the 35. year of his Reign, he granted to William Whitehorse Esq; for life, *Officium Hostiarii Capelle Regis infra Castrum de Windesore*, with a Fee of twelve pence a day out of his Exchequer.

An. 3. H. 4. This Office is called *Officium Virgarii comitiva de la Garter infra Castrum Regis de Windesore*: and under that title was then granted to Thomas Sze with the Fees and Profits thereunto belonging. In the Patent granted to his Successor John Athilbrigg, an. 1. H. 5. we observe it called *Officium Virgarii sive Ostiarii, &c.* Afterwards it hath this Title, *Officium Virge-baiuli coram Rege ad Festum Sancti Georgii infra Castrum Regis de Windesore*. And ever since it hath past in Patents by the name of *Virge-baiulus*, *Virgarius*, or *Nigri-virgifer*. But in the Constitutions of his Office he hath given to him the title of *Hostiarius*; and these qualifications put upon him, * That he be a Gentleman of Blood and Arms, born within the Sovereign's Dominions; and if he be not a Knight at his entrance upon the Office, he ought then to be Knighted.

As Garter was declared the Principal Officer of Arms, so was the Black Rod (for the honor of the Order) appointed the Chief Usher in the Kingdom: And as he is so, and frequently called Gentleman Usher of the Black Rod; so we shall wave (as we did in the account of Garter's Office) all things appertaining to his Employments, other than what directly relate to this most Noble Order.

A Chapter held at Whitehall the 13. of February, an. 6. Car. 1. it was Decreed, *That the Office of Black Rod should from thenceforth successively, as soon as the same*

same should become void (James Maxwell Esquire then enjoying the Office) be annexed to some one of the Gentlemen Ushers daily-waiters, whom the Sovereign should appoint. This was obtained upon the Petition of the Gentlemen Ushers daily-waiters, seconded by the Lord Chamberlain, the Earl Marshal, and divers others of the Knights-Companions, as appears from another Petition of theirs presented to the Sovereign in Chapter held at Oxford, the 17. of Jan. an. 20. Car. 1. ^{z Palmer's large Journal. p. 63.}

But it seems some years after this Decree past, viz. an. 1642. the Lord Lennox, Secretary for Scotland, had (on Mr. Maxwell's behalf) obtained the Sovereign's hand to a Warrant for passing Letters Patent, under the Great Seal of England, for two lives (his own, and Mr. Alexander Thayne's) and the longest liver of them, whereby the Sovereign's intention (signified in the foresaid Decree) to the Gentlemen-Ushers was frustrate; of which they complaining in this last mentioned Chapter, the Sovereign and Knights-Companions then present (in regard this later Grant was not only repugnant to the preceding Decree, and the Great Seal surreptitiously gained, but ought to have pass'd the Seals of the Order, to be made authentical, according to a Decree made, an. 20. Car. 1.) Ordered, ^{b Ibid.} That Peter Newton Esquire, should be presently sworn into this Office: Which was then done in the presence of the Sovereign and Knights-Companions.

Nevertheless shortly after the present Sovereign's happy return, viz. 14. Jan. 1660. (the said Peter Newton being deceased) the Gentlemen-Ushers daily-waiters petitioned the Sovereign in Chapter for the void place, which being read, the Sovereign and Knights-Companions Ordered, That the Petition should be shewed to Mr. Thayne, and he to be heard in the next Chapter, what cause he could alledge, why it should not be granted. ^{c Lib. Carolin. p. 23.}

To this, Mr. Thayne drew up his Answer; which being taken into consideration by the Sovereign, in a Chapter held at Whitehall, the 20. of February an. 13. Car. 2. as also the Decree in Chapter before specified, which fixed the Office to one of the Gentlemen-Ushers daily-waiters, The Sovereign and Knights-Companions adjudged and declared the said Thayne's Answer not satisfactory, as to the right by him pretended to the said Office, and thereupon confirmed the foresaid Decree: and further Ordered, ^{d Ibid.} That John Ayton Esquire one of the Petitioners should be forthwith sworn Gentleman-Usher of the Black Rod, to execute the place upon all occasions hereafter, which was done by the Register of the Order in the presence of the Sovereign and Knights-Companions, the Chapter sitting.

The Oath, as we find it given to this Officer in the Reign of King Henry the Eighth, was, *Truly and faithfully to observe and keep all the points of the Statutes of the Order, as to him belonged and appertained.* ^{e Appendix Numb. VIII.}

He hath the like Habit, with the Register and Garter, before described. ^{Habit.}

But his Ensign and Badge are somewhat different from Garter's; for first it was Ordained, *That he or his Deputy should carry a Black Rod* (whence he hath his ordinary Title) *before the Sovereign or his Deputy at the Feast of St. George within the Castle of Windesore, and at other Solemnities and Chapters of the Order.* On the top of which there ought to be set a Lion of England. This Rod serves instead of a Mace, and hath the same authority to apprehend such persons as shall be found Delinquents, and have offended against the Statutes and Ordinances of this most Noble Order. And if at the command of the Sovereign and Knights-Companions he should apprehend any one of the Order as guilty of some Crime, for which he is to be expell'd from the Order, it is to be done by touching them with this Black Rod, in consideration whereof, his Fee is 5 l. ^{Ensign. f Pat. 50. E. 3. p. 1. m. 25. vide Constitut. ad Offic. Ordin. at- tinentes. cap. 50. g Ibid.}

There is also assigned him a Gold Badge, to be openly worn in a Gold Chain or Ribband before his Breast, composed of one of the Knots in the Collar of the Garter, which tie the Roses together, and encompassed with the ennobled Garter, being alike on both sides; which honor is conferr'd on him and his Successors by Decree in Chapter held the 24. of April an. 8. Eliz. ^{h Lib. C. p. 52.}

'Tis as ancient as King Henry the Fifth's Reign, that we find a House in Windesore Castle granted to this Officer by Letters Patent (together with his Office) during life, and the like provision is made for him by the Constitutions of his Office. ^{i Pat. 1. H. 5. p. 3. m. 18. k Cap. 9.}

It is situate on the South side of the Castle in the middle Ward. The said Constitutions

¹ *Ibid.* institutions give him ¹ *Baron-service* at Court, and *Livery* thereto appertaining; and besides these, the ^m keeping of the said *Castle*, and the two *Parks* adjacent.

ⁿ *Lib. R. p. 54.* King *Charles* the First. having taken into his hands the *Little Park* of *Windsor* (by the resignation of Sir *William Henry*, who had it by Grant under the Great Seal of *England*) and bestowed it upon the foresaid *James Maxwell* then *Usher* of the Order. He also thought fit, with the advice and consent of the *Knights-Companions*, at a Chapter held in the With-drawing Chamber at *Whitehall*, 5. November 1629. to Order and Decree, That as the Custody of the said *Little Park* was conferr'd on Mr. *Maxwell* in right of his Office (pursuant to the Institution) so the same should for ever after be annexed thereto, and not be disposed of, but under the Great Seal of the Order, and that only to the *Usher* of the Order for the time being.

Lastly, this Officer had anciently a^o Fee of 12 d. *per diem* allowed him, which we find continued down in the Letters Patent whereby this Office was granted; beside which, the Constitutions of his Office allow him an annual Pension of 30 l. heretofore paid him out of the *Sovereign's Exchequer*: but by King *Charles* the First, assigned him out of the 1200 l. *per annum*, settled upon the Order, touching which we shall Discourse in the next section.

Pension.
o *Pat. 50. E. 3.*
p *Lib. R. p. 54.*

SECT. VI.

The payment of the Officers Pensions upon the new Establishment.

King *James*, sometimes *Sovereign* of this most Noble Order, well considering its Institution, Nature, and Constitution; and that it was in the nature of a distinct Sovereignty, govern'd by Laws, Statutes, and Assemblies of its own; and Himself as *Sovereign*, in matters and things immediately relating thereto, had sole and absolute power of altering, changing, adding, or explaining. And finding that the annual Pensions paid to the Officers of the Order (as thole to the *Alms-Knights*) and some other its Expences, had been anciently made payable out of his Receipt of the Exchequer, either upon and by virtue of the Great Seals of *England*, or otherwise by *Privy Seals*; and conceiving it incongruous, that the Officers should longer receive or challenge their Pensions by virtue of any other Seal than that of the Order; and in some kind derogatory to the Dignity of the Order it self, to permit other Seals longer to work within or upon the same. He thereupon, with twelve *Knights-Companions*, in a Chapter held at *Whitehall* the 22. of May in the 20. year of his Reign, Ordered, That all things concerning the Order should thereafter be passed under the Seal of the Order only, and in particular, That the Grants of Poor-Knights Places, after their being signed by the *Sovereign*, should be passed under the Seal of the Order only, and none other.

95 *Pat. 50. E. 3.*
12 *Lib. R. p. 54.*
20 *Lib. R. p. 54.*

f *Ex. 15. An.*
e *Ex. 15. An.*
u *Ex. 15. An.*
R. p. 15.

And whereas at the Feast of St. *George* the following year, the Chancellor had received from the Dean of *Windsor* a Note in writing of the Pensions given to the Poor-Knights, and by whom, and in what manner the same had been given; it was also Ordered, That he should take advice of the *Sovereign's Attorney General*, how by virtue of the Seal of the Order, the said Pensions might be paid and received. His Majesties further pleasure being, That all Grants and Payments concerning the Order, should afterwards pass under the Seal of the Order only, and by virtue thereof.

As to the *Alms-Knights* Patents, this Decree took effect, but in the other generals referring to the Order, how far it was pursued we know not; for in some of them we find it not observed. But in a Chapter held at *Windsor*, on the 22. of April in the 10. year of the Reign of his late Majesty of ever blessed memory, debate was had about setting a part from the profits of his Revenue, to the peculiar use of the Order, the annual sum of $\text{w}^11000\text{l.}$ to be assigned out of the Receipts

w *Lib. R. p. 54.*

Receipt of his Exchequer, and employed particularly in discharge of Expences towards the *Feasts* of the Order, *Legations* to Foreign Princes, payment of the *Officers Penfions*, and all other *Titles*, by which any thing, should at any time be disbursed for the necessity or reputation of the said most Noble Order.

Afterwards at a *Chapter* held the 18. of April an. 13. Car. 1. the *Sovereign*^x 12. *Ibid.* p. 121; ratified his Royal Assignment, and increased his gracious bounty to the sum of 1200*l.* per annum, settling it (for the uses aforesaid) in a Perpetuity for ever, and making it payable out of the *Customs* in the Port of London; but to be received by the *Chancellor* of the Order for the time being, as *Treasurer* of this Money of which he should be obliged to render an account, to the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* yearly at St. George's Feast. And in pursuance of this Ratification, was pleased to give his *Attorney General* directions to draw up a Book for his Royal Signature, to warrant its passing under the *Great Seal* of England. The further care of which Affair being committed to Sir Thomas Rowe then *Chancellor*, he readily undertook it, and on the first of February following, at a meeting of the *Knights-Commissioners* (impowered to consider of matters touching the honor of the Order) gave them an account that the same was dispatched. The Letters Patent bearing Teste at Westminster the 23. day of January preceding.

He then also presented their *Lordships* with a List of the ordinary Fees and Charges of the Order, upon consideration of which, it was thought fit, That there should issue out a standing Commission to the *Chancellor*, under the Great Seal of the Order, to warrant the yearly Payments, and he to be discharged, according as the said Patent had provided.

Hereupon a Commission was drawn up, which past the said *Great Seal* the 3. of May, an. 14. Car. 1. whereby the *Sovereign* declared his will and pleasure, and impowered the *Chancellor* to pay out of the said annual Revenue of 1200*l.* all and every the yearly and ordinary Fees, Penfions, Sallaries and other Payments usually paid to any the *Officers* of the Order, *Alms-Knights*, or others, who do their yearly duty and service, any way unto the Order appertaining, either by Charter, Grant, or Assignment, under the *Seal* or *signet* of the Order, or by any other lawful way whatsoever, and in particular

	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>	
Himself as <i>Chancellor</i> .	100	0	0	} per annum.
<i>Register</i> of the Order.	50	0	0	
<i>Garter Principal King of Arms</i> .	50	0	0	
<i>Usher</i> of the Black-Rod.	30	0	0	
Thirteen <i>Alms-Knights</i> .	237	5	0	
Total	467	5	0	

* All which yearly *Penfions* are thereby appointed to be quarterly paid, that is to say, at the four usual Feasts in the year. As also any other annual and usual charge, to any other inferiour Officer or Servant, for their service or attendance. And all these upon account thereof to be made and given, and Acquittances to be produced for the receipt, to be presented to the *Sovereign*, or so many of the *Knights-Companions* as he should depute in *Chapter*, to take liquid, and allow the disbursements under their hands in writing, for the *Chancellor's* discharge.

By virtue of the fore said Letters Patent Sir Thomas Rowe, and in his absence beyond Sea, Sir James Palmer Deputy *Chancellor*, received out of the *Sovereign's* Receipts of Subsidies, Customs, and Imposts, the 1200*l.* per annum, out of which they paid the annual Penfions above mentioned, under the notion of certain and ordinary charges, as also such as came within the compass of uncertain and extraordinary Expences; some of which as we can collect from the Accounts of the said *Chancellor* and Deputy *Chancellor*, (they falling within the disbursements of their time) were such as these;

*Penes pref.
J. d. Palmer.*

Mantles, when the *Sovereign* pleased to bestow them on the *Knights-Companions*.

Plate for the *Altar* in *St. George's Chappel* at *Windefor*.

Embroidery of the *Purse* for holding the *Seals*.

Removal of *Achievements* and *Plates* against *Installations*.

Scutcheons set up at *St. George's Feast*.

Priory Seals and *Fees*, disburs't for receiving the 1200 *l.* per annum.

Fees for *Installation* of *Forreign Princes*, and *Stranger-Knights*.

Parchment used in *Dispensations* and *Prorogations*.

Blue Wax for the *Seals* of the *Order*.

By all which may be gueft, what other particulars ought to be accounted *Extraordinary Charges*; towards the discharge whereof this annual fum was to be employed as far as it would go, to ease the Expences of the *Great Wardrobe*, formerly charged with Provisions of the *Order*, both for *Forreign Embassies*, and Expences at home.

* *Ex ipso Autographo*:

And when *Sir Thomas Rowe* was sent Ambassador to *Ferdinand* the Third, Emperor of *Germany*, he paid over to the said *Sir James Palmer*, upon the * *Sovereign's* Warrant dated the 4. of *May an. 14. Car. 1.* the sum of 600 *l.* then resting in his hands of the said annual Receipts; which he adding to the growing Income, disbursed in ordinary and extraordinary Expences.

g See his *Journal* pro anno 1639. p. 57.

In reference to the manner of the *Chancellor's* passing his *Account*, as is directed by the said *Commission* we find it thus done by *Sir James Palmer*: he humbly moved the *Sovereign* in a Chapter held the 10. of *October an. 15. Car. 1.* That it would please him and the *Knights-Companions* to view the disbursments made for the Expences of the *Order*, which thereupon being examined by the *Knights* in the *Sovereign's* presence, the same were found agreeable to the directions of the *Commission*, and the Payments justified by the Acquittance of every Officer, to whom any Fee was due (no payment having been made, but the *Sovereign's* hand was first had to authorize the same.) All which being seen and allowed, the *Account* (wherein his disbursments exceeded his Receipts 37 *l.* 13 *s.* 10 *d.*) was esteemed just, and allowed by the subscription of the present *Sovereign* then *Prince*, the Earls of *Penbroke* and *Montgomery*, *Salisbury*, *Holland*, *Berkshire*, *Duke Hamilton*, and the Earl of *Northumberland*.

SECT. VII.

The Execution of these Offices by Deputies.

THOUGH all the Officers of the *Order* are strictly obliged personally to attend the duties of their several Places; yet in case of sickness, absence out of the Kingdom, or other lawful or emergent cause, the *Sovereign* hath pleased to dispence with their attendance, and appointed other to officiate in their stead; who on such occasions wear the Robe of that Officer for whom they serve: So also in case of Vacancy.

h Lib. N.p. 109.

The absence of the *Prelate* from the Grand Feast celebrated at *Windefor*, an. 31. H. 6. is noted in the *Black Book* to have been upon just cause, and the ^b Bishop of *Bangor* was appointed to celebrate Divine Service in his stead; who the next morning celebrated Mass *pro defunctis*. The following year his place in these Religious Duties was supplied by the Bishop of *Salisbury*: as also an. * 36. & || 37. H. 6. And at all times of the *Prelates* absence since, the *Sovereign* hath appointed which of the *Bishops* should officiate for him.

i Ibid. p. 112.

* Page, 118.

|| Page, 119.

The

The Office of *Chancellor* hath been executed by Deputy also; to this may first be referred a passage in the *Black Book*, where Doctor *Taylor* hath the Title of *Vice-Chancellor*. Of later times when Sir *Thomas Rowe* was employed upon the fore-mentioned Embassy into *Germany*, Sir *James Palmer* Knight (one of the Gentlemen-Ushers of the Privy Chamber) was deputed by the *Sovereign* to the execution of the *Chancellorship* during his absence, having the *Purse* with the Seals delivered unto him by the *Sovereign* the 4. of *May* 14. *Car. 1.* He first entred upon this Employment at the Intallation of the present *Sovereign*, being sworn by the *Register* of the Order (the 22. of the said Moneth) *durante deputatione & beneficio Regis*: which Clause was likewise added in the Deputy Chancellors Oath *an. 12. Car. 2.*

After Sir *Thomas Rowe's* return into *England*, being sick, and not able to officiate at the Feast of *St. George* held at *Whitehall* the first of *March*, *an. 16. Car. 1.* Sir *James Palmer* was again deputed Chancellor, to supply his place in that particular Ceremony; As also a third time, when the Feast was kept at *Tork*, the 18. of *April* *an. 18. Car. 1.* and thence-forward he continued Deputy-Chancellor unto the death of Sir *Thomas Rowe*; of which the *Sovereign* having notice given him at *Oxford*, in *November* *an. 1644.* was graciously pleased to reserve the gift of this Office, till Sir *James Palmer's* return to Court out of *Wales* (where he was employed in his Service) and then gave him permission to wear the Badge and Ribband about his neck, till a Chapter of the Order should be called to compleat his admittance: in token of his due acknowledgment for so high a favour, he humbly upon his knees gave the *Sovereign* thanks, and received the honor of kissing his hand.

In the vacancy of the *Registership*, *an. 2. H. 8.* *Thomas Ruthall* Bishop of *Durham* supplied it, and *an. 18. & 19. Eliz.* Doctor *Day* Dean of *Windsor* executed the Office, and attended at the Feasts of *St. George* as Deputy *Register*, Doctor *George Carew* then *Register* having license by his Patent to exercise it by himself or Deputy, with allowance of the *Queen* or *Sovereign* of the Order, in case of sickness or other impediment. After his death Dean *Day* was commanded still to execute the Office during its vacancy (being 14 years) which he did, until advanced to the Bishoprick of *Winchester*, *an. 38. Eliz.* upon which Doctor *Robert Bennet* (who succeeded him in his Deanry) was the same year admitted *Register*. Afterwards towards the later end of Doctor *Beaumont's* time (he being much broken with age and sickness) Doctor *John King* the junior Canon supplied the place.

The Office of *Garter* hath likewise been supplied by Deputy, for in those Embassies with the *Ensigns* or whole *Habit* of the Order to Foreign Princes, where special occasions detained *Garter* at home, some of the *Kings* or *Heralds of Arms* have been sent upon those Employments, nevertheless upon *Garter's* recommendation of them to the *Sovereign*, of which several instances shall be hereafter inserted. So also in case of vacancy, for we find that *Clarenceux* King of Arms executed this Office after Sir *Gilbert Dethick's* death, in *January* *an. 27. Eliz.* being then sent in the Embassy with the Earl of *Derby*, to carry the *Habit* of the Order to the French King *Henry* the Third. As also in reference to the preparations, made for his Installation, the 15. of *April* following, and service performed thereat, and at the Feast of *St. George* ensuing.

And lastly the *Constitutions* of the Office of *Black Rod* admit of a Deputy to bear the Rod before the *Sovereign*, which is to be understood where a lawful occasion hinders his personal service. And Sir *Peter Young* (chief Gentleman Usher) executed this Office at the Feast of *St. George*, held at *Windsor*, *an. 6. Car. 1.* *James Maxwell* Esq; *Black Rod* being then in *France* upon the *Sovereign's* service. He being also sent by the King into *Scotland*, *Peter Newton* Esquire was appointed to wait in his place, at the Feast held at *Windsor* the 8. 9. and 10. of *October*, *anno 15. Car. 1.*

CHAP. IX.

THE
 Election of a Knight
 INTO THE
 Order.

SECT. I.

Of Summons to the Election.

^a Ed. 3. Stat.
 Art. 18.

THE Statutes of Institution Ordained, ^a That whenever any of the Knights-Companions happened to depart this life, the Sovereign (or his Deputy) after certain notice had thereof, should forthwith by his Letters summon all the Knights-Companions, then within the Realm (who were able to come) to meet him within six weeks after such notice, in what convenient place soever he pleased to assign, for the Electing a new Companion into the Society. Thus did the Law of this most Noble Order, in case of Death, and to avoid long Vacancies, at first provide, wherewith we observe the practice of elder times did punctually concur: and among other Testimonies, they are not the least which may be collected from the ancient Letters of Summons issued out upon this occasion.

^b Liber N.
 p. 314.
^c Ibid. p.
 d } 237.

^e Num. XIII.
 & XIV.

For assoon as Garter (in discharge of his ^b Oath, and pursuance of the ^c duty of his place) had made ^d Certificate to the Sovereign of a Knight-Companion's decease, or otherwise to the Register of the Order; care was taken thereupon to fill up the vacant Stall, within the time limited by this Article of the Statutes, or shortly after; in order whereunto Letters of Summons were sent to the Knights-Companions to appear at the Election, which hath induced us to exhibit two of these ancient Letters in the ^e Appendix: The first contains several particulars not less pursuant to the Statutes, than worthy observation; and especially these.

1. First, the day whereon the defunct Knight-Companion died is therein set down, and is a note useful in Story.
2. Direction is given for celebrating Masses, according to the tenor of the Statutes, of which more shall be spoken in its due place.
3. Intimation that a Stall is become void by the Knights decease.
4. The

4. The *Law* of the *Order* vouched, which appoints an *Election* of another *Knight*, within six weeks after Certificate made of the death of the former, to avoid (as much as might be) an interval in succession, by a speedy filling up the number of *Knights-Companions*.

5. The *Sovereign's* power asserted, where he sees cause to prorogue the *Election*.

6. An *Injunction* to attend personally at the *Election*, under a penalty express in the *Statutes*, of which more hereafter.

7. The *Day*, *Place*, and *Hour* for appearance, is with certainty appointed and set down, to the end the *Knights-Companions* might so accommodate themselves, as to be present at the time prefixed.

8. The end of coming is mentioned, with full disposition and preparation, to perform what the *Statutes* in this case required.

9. Lastly, direction is there given to the *Knight summoned*, that in case any accident obstructed his Journey, or hinder'd him from coming to the *Chapter*, he should certify the reason of his default, against the day and time of his appearance; of the sufficiency whereof, the *Sovereign* was to be sole Judge. And generally of these heads, and to this purpose were the *Letters of Summons* in succeeding times framed.

The before mentioned branch of the *Statutes* of *Institution* we observe (from its insertion into the following bodies of *Statutes*) to have been sufficiently confirmed, nor hath it since received alteration; howbeit some enlargement and explanation was given thereunto, in the 21. year of King *James*, at a *Chapter* held the last day of the Feast, viz. the 24. of April at *Windsor*; where in the first place (among other things then also established) it was thus Decreed: *That the Sovereign being advertised of the death of a Knight-Companion of the Order, the Knights-Companions remaining at the Court should move him to declare his pleasure, whether he would that Letters should be sent to all the Knights-Companions within the Realm, to attend his person for the choice of a new Knight, at a day by the said Sovereign appointed, according to the ancient Statutes of the Order; or be pleased to defer the Election until the day and Feast of St. George, at what time Elections have been most usually made, wherein the Sovereign's pleasure and direction was to be followed and observed, and according as he resolved, in what place it should be, so it ought (by Letters directed to the Knights-Companions within the Realm) to be made known unto them.*

This deferring or proroguing the *Election* was (to say truth) no new thing, nor more than what had been anciently practised (though not indulged by the *Statutes* of *Institution*, or declared *Law*, before this 21. year of King *James*) as appears from the fore-cited *Letters of Summons*, both which take notice of the limitation of time given by the *Statutes*, after Certificate of death, viz. six weeks; within the compals whereof, a new *Election* was to be made. And where a *Chapter* for *Election* could not conveniently be held, within that limited time, it was enough if the *Sovereign* declared (as he did in that *Summons* sent after Sir Robert *Dumfrevils* death, and entred in the *Black Book*) *That being then involved in other business, he could not well attend this Affair, and therefore deferred the time for Election unto the Eve of St. George next following.* So that it is plain, the Decree an. 21. of King *James*, was but declaratory of an old and practised Custom.

But of later times this formal way of *Summons* by *Letter* to *Knights-Companions* attending at the Court, hath been left off (yet continued to such as are remote) and notice given them by a verbal message only: For the *Chancellor* of the *Order* having known the *Sovereign's* pleasure, as to the day and place, usually acquaints *Garter* therewith, who thereupon goeth immediately to the *Knights-Companions* then at Court, and desires their attendance at the *Chapter*, according to the *Sovereign's* appointment.

And here it is to be understood, that no *Knights-Elect*, ought to be summoned to a *Chapter* of *Election*, or are capable of giving their Votes therein, until they be compleatly installed, either in Person or by Proxy: Nor indeed did any necessity fall out from the Foundation of the *Order*, that did require they should, until

g. H. 6. Stat.
Art. 18. H. 8.
Stat. Art. 19.
h. Lib. R.
p. 14.

Page 81.

until the late rebellious times, when the Castle of *Windefor* being Garrisoned by the Parliaments Forces, it was not possible for his Royal Highness the Duke of *York*, and his Highness Prince *Rupert*, to take possession of their *stalls*, in such manner as the *Law* of the Order enjoined.

in *Palmer's*
large Journal.
p. 66. & 69.
vide *Appendix*
Num. XV.

Therefore the then *Sovereign* (to whom the power of dispensing with any of the *Statutes* is reserved) did on the 17. of *Jan. an. 1644.* (so inevitable necessity requiring)ⁿ dispence with their *Installation* in the Chappel of *St. George* at *Windefor*, for the present, and invested them with all the Priviledges of the Order; among which, the power of giving their Votes in *Chapter* was one: Provided, these *Princes* should first take the Oath given at *Installations*, and afterwards perform the accustomed Ceremonies at *Windefor*, so soon as it should be thought fit, after the *Castle* was delivered out of the power of the Rebels, and returned into the possession of the *Sovereign* of this most Noble Order.

in *Palmer's*
large Journal.
p. 65. & 66.

In compliance with this *Proviso* they both then took the *Oath*: And on the Eve of the first Feast of *St. George*, celebrated after the present *Sovereign's* happy Restoration, the *Duke* was Installed by the Earls of *Northumberland* and *Berkshire*: and on the Eve of the second Feast, being the 22. of *April, an. 15. Car. 2.* the *Prince* likewise received his *Installation* by the hands of the Duke of *Albemarle* and Earl of *Lindsey*.

SECT. II.

The Place of Assembly.

BUT at what time soever this Ceremony of *Election* is appointed, the same ought to be celebrated in *Chapter* (for so is the assembly of the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* called, wheresoever or whensoever held on this occasion) whether at the Solemnity of *St. George's Feast*, which hath been the ordinary and most usual time, or on other certain days, set apart for this affair, by more special appointment of the *Sovereign*. And therefore when the *Sovereign* thinks fitting (in the interval of *Feasts*) to Elect any Forreign Prince, or other person, either Stranger or Subject, He many times doth it in peculiar *Chapters*, called to that end and purpose; and then he appoints his own both day and place, having the prerogative to declare them at pleasure.

This we find hath been practised both heretofore and of late times; and by those few of many *Chapters*, holden at sundry places, most convenient to the *Sovereign's* present occasions (drawn out and here exhibited) will be sufficiently manifest, whereunto we shall add the *Names* of those *Persons* of eminence, who at such times and places have been Elected.

Place.	Day and Year.	Knights Elected.
1. Sign of the Lion in <i>Brain-</i> <i>ford</i> .	11. July 24. H. 6.	{ <i>Albro de Vafques</i> <i>Dalmadea</i> Earl of <i>Averentia</i> . Lord <i>Beauchamp</i> . Lord <i>Hoo</i> .
2. <i>Sovereign's</i> <i>Bedchamber</i> at <i>Westminster</i> .		
3. <i>London</i> with- in the <i>Bishop's</i> <i>Palace</i> .	8. Febr. 39. H. 6.	{ <i>Richard</i> Earl of <i>Warwick</i> . Lord <i>Bonville</i> . Sir <i>Thomas Kyriell</i> . Sir <i>John Wenlock</i> .
4. <i>Tower</i> of <i>London</i> .		
	8. Aug. 14. E. 4.	{ <i>Guido Ubaldus</i> Duke of <i>Urbino</i> . <i>Henry Percy</i> Earl of <i>Northumberland</i> .

5. Starchamber. 15. May 15.E. 4. { Edward Prince of Wales.
Richard Duke of York,
Thomas Grey Marquess Dorset.
6. Sovereign's }
Bedchamber in the } 10. Febr. 19.E. 4. { Ferdinand King of Spain.
Wardrobe London. } Hercules Duke of Ferrara.
7. Greenwich. 14. July 15.H. 8. Lord Ferrers.
8. Calais. 27. Oct. 24.H. 8. { Anne Montmorency Earl of Beaumont.
Philip Chabot Earl of Newblanke.
9. Hampton-Court. 9. Jan. 32. H. 8. Edward Seymour Earl of Hertford.
10. Windsor. 6. Aug. 1.& 2. Ph. & M. Emanuel Duke of Savoy.
11. Whitehall. 8. Febr. 20. Eliz. John Casimire Count Palatine of the Rhine.
12. York. 12. Sept. 16. Car. 1. Thomas Earl of Strafford.

But for the most part, since the beginning of Queen Elizabeth's Reign, *Whitehall* (the Sovereign's usual Court of Residence) hath been the place, whereunto the *Knights-Companions* have been specially summoned, and peculiar *Chapters* held for Election of *Knights*, in the interval between the *vacancy* and *St. George's Feast*: Howbeit of late, while the present *Sovereign* was abroad beyond the Seas, and wanted the full number of *Knights-Companions* to constitute a compleat *Chapter*, He hath been necessitated to make use of his supream power, not only in dispensing with the Ceremony of Election in *Chapter*, but also in supplying the defect of a *Scrutiny*, by making his own choice; nevertheless, since his most happy return to the Throne of his Ancestors, *Whitehall* hath also recovered her accustomed Honors, and beheld again a most worthy advancement of *Knights* into this most Noble Order, at a *Chapter* specially called and held in the *Bedchamber* there, the first day of *April*, an. 13. Car. 2. in the Election of the Duke of *Richmond*, the Earls of *Lindsey*, *Manchester*, and *Strafford*.

Ex Coll. Edw. Wal-
ker Eq. Aur.
Garter.

SECT. III.

The Number of Knights that constitute a Chapter.

IN the next place we are to consider, what number of *Knights-Companions* ought to assemble for constituting a compleat *Chapter* of Election.

By the *Statutes* it is appointed, there should be six at the least, besides the *Sovereign* or his *Deputy*; the due observation of which hath been so strictly stood upon heretofore, that Elections were ordinarily deferr'd, where the *Chapters* consisted not of so many. For proof of which we find that the Duke of Gloucester, anno 9. H. 6. then *Deputy* to the *Sovereign* (at that time in France) for celebrating the Feast of *St. George* at *Windsor*, forbore to proceed to Election, because the Number of *Knights-Companions* there assembled, was less than the *Statutes* required to constitute a *Chapter*. We likewise take notice, that anno 10. H. 5. no Election was made (the Feast being also celebrated at *Windsor*) though one Stall was void, by the death of the Lord Clifford; and probably the reason (though not express'd) might be for want of that full number of *Knights-Companions*, the *Statutes* required: For the Duke of Bedford (then the *Sovereign's Deputy*) had but three *Knights* present with him.

u B. p. 68.

But in this case we need not fly to conjectures, there are direct and cleer instances enough; wherein, if we abound, we hope the satisfaction they will give the concern'd Reader, beside the antiquity of the Precedent may obtain our pardon.

In the 22. year of King Henry the Sixth, or rather 23. (for so the *Registrum* Chartaceum

K k

w B. p. 95.
x Fol. 23. b.

y Fol. 23. b.
z Lib N.
a Ep. 108.

b B. p. 111.
c B. p. 112.
114.

d Ex MS. in
Offic. Armor.
[M. 15. f. 1.
12. b.]

e Dominus Johannes Ascheley licetis suis
per Garcerum missis sufficientem excusa-
tionem ostendit. At à fine celebritatis,
quam prior erat ille numerus quam ut Ele-
ctioni suscipiendi sufficeret, eundem Rex
accrescebat, ut suppleret. Lib. N. p. 132.

f Et puis envoyes par le Roy pour Mes-
sieur Ashley John deffire a l' election con-
demayn apres St. George, fol. 42.

g Lib. N. p. 138.
vide Registr.
Chartac. f.
44. b.
h Lib N. p. 149.
Registr. Char-
tac. f. 49. b.

Chartaceum hath it in the hand of that very Age) *Humfry* Duke of *Buckingham*, being deputed to celebrate the *Feast* of *St. George* at *Windsor*, although there were at that time four Stalls vacant, yet did no *Nomination* pass, one reason being, because there was not present a sufficient Number to make *Election*. So when the same King celebrated the Grand *Feast* personally at *Windsor*, in the 31. year of his Reign, having but three *Knights-Companions* attending him thereat, and two Stalls void; the *Election* was prorogued for the very same reason. In like manner the want of a sufficient Number of *Knights-Companions*, hapning at the *Feasts* held the 32. 33. and 34. of *Henry* the Sixth hindred the *Election* at those times: for at the first of them there were but two *Knights-Companions*, beside the *Sovereign's Deputy*, and at the two last but four besides the *Sovereign*, though the *Registrum Chartaceum* anno 33. names five, by adding the Duke of *Somerset*.

At the *Feast* of *St. George*, celebrated at *Windsor*, anno 1471. which answers to the 11. year of King *Edward* the Fourth (although from what is spoken, concurrent with the following circumstances, both out of the *Black Book* of the Order, and the *Registrum Chartaceum*, we suppose it should more rightly be transferr'd to the twelfth of this King's Reign; and therefore this passage throughout may fitly be corrected by those Authorities) the *Sovereign* intending to make an *Election*, and having but five *Knights-Companions* present with him, *Calys* Purfivant at Arms, was sent to London for Sir *John Asley*, to come and furnish the Chapter; in which, saith this Fragment, there were chosen seven Knights, namely the *Prince*, the King of *Portugal*, the Duke of *Norfolk*, the Earl of *Wiltshire*, the Lord *Ferrers*, the Lord *Montjoy*, and the Lord *Howard*.

But here are some other mistakes, for the *Prince* was not elected until anno 15. E. 4. and the King of *Portugal* not until the 22. year of the same King. As for the rest we not finding the true time of their *Election* elsewhere, shall let them stand; having been loth to make use of so imperfect an authority, but that the circumstance of sending for Sir *John Asley*, to make up a Chapter, rather than violate the Laws of the Order, may be faithfully enough related, and well worth observing through the other false lights cast in, from the inadvertency of the Relator.

Lastly, the 31. of January, anno 21. Car. 2. being designed for the *Election* of *Christopher* Duke of *Albemarle*, and there appearing but five Knights at the Chapter, the *Election* was put off till the 3. of February following, at which time a statutable number of *Knights* being present, his *Election* past.

SECT. IV.

Dispensation for want of a full Number.

AND whereas some may suppose that the *Sovereigns* of this Order in later times, have appeared less careful in the due observation of its Statutes and Laws than were their Predecessors, by making use of *Dispensations*, where the number of six *Knights-Companions* have been wanting, they are to consider the License herein, is no other than an advantage to be laid hold on, in cases of necessity only (for necessity can bring a sufficient plea, where the infringement of a Decree is objected, in the Law of this Order) and withal to shew that the power and prerogative of *Dispensation* is reserved to the *Sovereigns* of this most Noble Order, in all cases of exigency: albeit not to be made use of, where there is a possibility to perform the Rules and Injunctions of the statutes.

The *Sovereigns* therefore in succeeding times, for sundry reasons, and upon important and urgent occasions have been induced to dispence with this branch of

of the *statute*, as to a full Number of *Knights-Companions*; in case so many were not in readines as the *Law* appointed to make a compleat *Chapter*. And the first liberty we observe to have been taken herein, was by King *Henry the Eighth*, in the 26. year of his Reign; who after he had received intelligence of the death of the Lord *Montjoy*, immediately called a *Chapter* at *Whitehall*, where no more than ^k five *Knights-Companions* being present, the absence of the rest were excused by his special favour, and the ^l *Injunction of the Statute* (as the *Annals* further add) concerning the due Number of *Nominators*, were by the same clemency remitted, because of the exigency of the time and place; and forthwith upon a *Scrutiny* then taken, *James the Fifth King of Scotland* was elected into the fellowship of this most illustrious Order.

From this time to the late Rebellion, we meet not with the like case; but then the wickedness of those days created new necessities, which occasioned or rather enforced the then *Sovereign* (one of the exactest observers of the *Laws* and *Ceremonies* of this Order) most unwillingly to awaken this dormant prerogative, which he first put in execution at a *Chapter* specially called for the Election of that deserving and renowned Knight, *Thomas Earl of Strafford*, held at the City of *Tork*, upon the 12. day of *September*, anno 16. Car. 1. where at that time and place, by his Supreme Authority, he dispensed with the defect of Number of ⁿ six *Knights-Companions* (having then with him ^o four only, some of the rest being employed in his Service against the *Scots*) and gave Sir *Thomas Rowe* then *Chancellor of the Order*, directions to prepare a *Dispensation* accordingly; which (in regard that *Sovereign* did therewithal command should be entered among the *Annals of the Order*) we have thought fit to insert in the ^q *Appendix*.

Afterward, when several of the *Knights-Companions* so much adhered to the Long-Parliament, that no summons could draw thence their attendance upon the *Sovereign*, though but to celebrate the grand Festival of their *Patron* (much less to the completing *Chapters of Election*) to which the Oath taken at their Installation had equally obliged them; the *Sovereign* was constrained to make further use of his Supreme Authority, in this very particular; and thereupon at the Feast of *St. George* celebrated at *Tork*, upon the 18. 19. and 20. days of *April*, in the 18. year of his Reign, in a *Chapter* held on the Eve of the said Feast, by Himself, and but four other *Knights-Companions*, viz. *Prince Charles*, the *Prince Elector*, the *Earl of Lindsey*, and *Duke of Richmond and Lenox*, it was Ordered, ^r That Letters of Dispensation should be drawn up by Sir *James Palmer* (then Deputy *Chancellor*) for the insufficient Number (as wanting of six Knights) to hold a *Chapter of Election*; and for authorizing the *Knights then present*, to deliver in their Votes, according to custom in other *Scrutenies*, that so the *Sovereign* might proceed to the Election designed. By virtue of which Dispensation, the ^s *Duke of Tork*, and ^t *Prince Rupert*, were Elected *Fellows and Companions* of this most Noble Society.

The like Dispensation was made for the defect of Six Knights, to hold a *Chapter of Election* at *Oxford*, upon the second day of *March*, ann. 20. Car. 1. there being then but ^u five *Knights-Companions* present with the *Sovereign*, namely the *Duke of Tork*, *Prince Rupert*, the *Earls of Dorset and Berkshire*, and the *Duke of Richmond and Lenox*; at which *Chapter*, *William Prince of Orange*, *Son-in-Law to the Sovereign*, and *Bernard de Foix Duke of Espernon* were Elected.

Last of all, in reference to the holding ^v three several *Chapters*, preparatory to the Feast of *St. George*, and *Grand Installation* celebrated at *Windsor* the 15. 16. and 17. days of *April*, in the 13. of his Majesty the now *Sovereign's* most happy Reign (one of which *Chapters* was called for the Election of four *Knights*, and to deliberate with the surviving *Knights-Companions*) the *Sovereign* was pleased (the 29. day of *March* immediately foregoing) to pass the like ^w Dispensation, under the Signet of the Order, and his own Sign manual for this defect; and ^x thereby made those three *Chapters* as legal and of as much force and validity, as if the Number of *Knights-Companions*, required by the *Statutes*, had been full and compleat.

SECT. V.

Of opening the Chapter.

WE are now arrived at opening the *Chapter*, whereinto neither the *Sovereign* of the *Order*, nor any of the *Knights-Companions* are to enter, without wearing both their *Mantles* and *Garters*, for so the *Statutes* of the *Order* ordain, and so hath the *Law* been understood, in case where a *Chapter* hath been held elsewhere than at *Windsor*; as for instance at a *Chapter* held at *Whitehall*, for the Election of *John* Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, an. 20. *Eliz.* the *Earl* of *Huntingdon*, and the *Lord Grey* of *Wilton*, not having their *Mantles* then at *Court*, not permitted to enter into that *Chapter*, to give their *Votes* for his Election.

The late *Sovereign King Charles* of ever blessed memory^a determining to call a *Chapter* for Electing the foresaid *Thomas Earl* of *Strafford* at *York*, where neither *He*, nor any of the *Knights-Companions* then attending his person, had their *Robes* of the *Order* with them, and taking notice of the *Injunction* of the *Statutes* now mentioned, did by his *supream* authority, as *Sovereign* of the *Order*,^b dispence with the *Knights-Companions* then present, for coming into the *Chapter* without their *Mantles*.

Afterward, upon great necessity, occasioned by the late *Rebellion*, the same *Sovereign* was enforced to make further use of his *Prerogative*, relating to this particular, in some following *Chapters* held at *Oxford*.

In like manner shortly after the present *Sovereign* returned to his *Throne*, a like *Dispensation* pass'd under the *Signet* of the *Order* (the *Great Seal* being then under the hand of the *Graver*, but not finished) dated the 10. of *January* in the 12. year of his *Reign*, *He* being then necessitated to make use of his *Supream* authority for holding a *Chapter* the 14. of *January* following, in regard the *Knights-Companions*, then in being, were not as yet provided of new *Robes*.

Prefuming then, that a full Number of *Knights-Companions* (in obedience to their *Summons*) are attending the *Sovereign*, habited in their *Mantles* and *Garters*, and entred into the *Chapter-house* at *Windsor*, or other place appointed for this their *Assembly*, the *Sovereign* having taken his *Seat*, at the upper end of the *Table*, and given leave to the *Knights-Companions* to sit; the occasion of their being called together, is first declared, either by the *Sovereign* himself, or by the *Chancellor* of the *Order*, upon his command.

The next thing in course, is to give the *Sovereign* information of all the *Stalls* then void, the notice of which vacancies, if (as sometimes formerly) the *Sovereign* happens to be in foreign parts, ought to be before sent him, by his *Deputy* or *Lieutenant*; but if in *England*, and present in *Chapter*, then to be presented by the *Chancellor*, or in his absence, by the *Register* or other *Officer* of the *Order*.

This done, the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* enter into consideration how the room of the defunct *Knight*, or *Knights*, shall be supplied; and sometimes (where two or more *Stalls* are found void) whether they shall be all fill'd up at that time, or if not, how many *Knights* then *Elected*.

But where the *Scruteny* is intended to be taken in the *Choir* of *St. George's Chappel* at *Windsor*, these or the like particulars (referring to *Election*) are commonly consider'd of on the *Feast day*, in the *Chapter* held immediately before *Vespers*; wherein it is most usually *Ordered*, That the *scruteny* shall be taken in the said *Chappel* that following *Afternoon*, and so was it *Decreed* on *St. George's day* anno 5. E. 6. viz. ^b That the *Elections* of *Knights* should be taken that *Even-song*, and in the *Chappel*.

After this, the *Chancellor* begins to collect the *Knights-Companions* *Votes*, and this is frequently termed, the taking of a *Scruteny*: To the full understanding the nature of this *Action* and *Ceremony*, we shall proceed to certain considerations preparatory thereunto; beginning with what concerns the *Nomination* of the *Persons* to be proposed to *Election*.

SECT.

^y E. 3. 7. Stat.
H. 5. § Art. 3.

^z MS. quart.
penes W. le N.
Cl. f. 23. b.

^a Palmer's
large Jour-
nal p. 25.

^b Appendix.
Num. XVI.

^c Palmer's
large Jour-
nal p. 25.
vide Autogr.
penes eundem
Jac. Palmer.

^e Lib. N. p. 65.

^f 5 Lib. C.
82 p. 175.

^h Lib. N. p. 304.

SECT. VI.

That Knights only present in Chapter ought to Nominate.

THE Nomination of those persons proposed to the *sovereign's* Election, belongs only to such of the *Knights-Companions* as are present in *Chapter* when the *Scruteny* is taken; for therein not only all the Bodies of the *Statutes* are positive, but Entrances to that purpose, are made in sundry places of the *Annals*; insomuch, that from the Institution of this most Noble *Order*, it hath not been otherwise used, that we can collect.

And it is observable, that anno 26. Eliz. (the Feast of St. George being celebrated at *Greenwich*) the Earl of *Warwick*, and Lord *Burley* (Lord Treasurer of *England*) fell both ill of the Gout, upon the Feast day, which occasioned their absence at Evening Prayer, whilst the *Scruteny* was taken: whereupon we find their indisposition of body, and absence noted in that *Scruteny* instead of, and in those peculiar places, where their *Nominations* should else have been entred, had they been present at the taking thereof. And beside this we meet with an observation made upon the same occasion, by *Robert Cooke* Esquire, then *Clarenceux King of Arms*: *That as for those Knights-Companions, who happen to be absent, when the Scruteny is taken, although this absence be occasioned by accident of sickness, or with the Sovereign's license, nevertheless, in regard of this their absence, at that very time their Votes may not be received.* *Lib. C. p. 93.*
MS. quart.
penes W. le N.
Cl. f. 83.

Those *Knights-Companions* that come late to the Chapter, lose also the privilege of giving their *Votes* for that time, which so hapned to *Prince Rupert* and the Earl of *Strafford* at the Chapter held for the Election of *James Duke of Monmouth* in the *Priory-Chamber* at *Whitehall* the 29. of *March*, an. Dom. 1663. *Lib. Carolini.*
p. 44 & 45.

Now though none of the absent *Knights-Companions* can give a Proxy to Vote, or otherwise send their suffrages into the Chapter or Chappel, there to pass in *Nomination*; yet anciently (about the Reigns of King *Henry the Fifth*, and King *Henry the Sixth*) when divers of the *Knights-Companions* were frequently employed in the Wars of *France*, and consequently so strictly obliged to their several Commands, that they could not personally attend the celebration of the Feast of St. George at *Windefor*, it was usual for the Commander there in chief, with consent of those *Knights-Companions*, to make a formal Certificate or *Presentment* (but not to pass it by way of *Nomination* or *Vote*, for that the Law of the Order did not permit) to the *Sovereign* of the Order, or his *Lieutenant*, and *Knights-Companions* assembled at the Feast, of such persons famous for martial Valor and Virtue, with an account of their notable services and achievements (attested by other persons of honor also) as were at that time, and in that Kingdom, employed in the *Sovereign's* service, and seemed worthy the honor of Election; to the end that famous and deserving men might be preferred to so noble a Dignity. Which manner of Recordation we having most happily lighted upon, among the Collections made by the great industry of *William Dugdale* Esquire, now *Norroy King of Arms*; and esteeming it to carry the just reputation, both of authority, for informing us of this custom, and of antiquity, for the hand of that time, cannot without injury to its due worth omit.

By Lord the Duc of Bedford remembreth, as by the Statutes of the Order of the Garter, the Election of the Stalls boyde; he saith in the boyde of the Brethren, and of the Fellowship, beyng at the tyme at the Fest, in the presence of the Sovereign or hys Deputy; Et thynketh to my said Lord, that for hys acquital to Knighthood, yt spyteth hym to give in knowledge to the King, Sovereign of the Ordre, and to his Fellowship of the same Ordre, the great honours of the notable Knights, that from tyme

tyme to tyme exercised, and have exercised in Knighthood, and especially in the service of their Soveraign Lord: and of such notable worth, as my Lord of Bedford, for the tyme remembreth hym of: he hath, by the advyce of them of the Fellowship of the Order, being now in France, in the Kyngs service, and gibing in charge to the said Garter, Kyng of Arms of the Order, to shew there Names to the Kyng, and to expound part of there Deeds, Acts, and of there worthynesse. First, to expose the honour of Sir John Radecliff, that hath contynowed all the tyme of the glorious Kyng that last dyed, whom Ourselfe abolished, at the first landing of hym at Calais, where the sayd Radecliff receyved the order of a Knight, and after contynowed the Siege of Harflew: And after with my Lord of Excester, at the Battaille of Vallemont, and of Quiescliff. And also when the Leth of the sayd glorious Kyng, Radecliff being Seneschall of Guyen, hath brought by hys labour in Kyngdome, to his Soveraign Lord's obsequence, within the Duchie of Guyen many byrle Cities, Towns, and Castles. And in especial beferred great and notable merits, at the Siege of the City of Bazates, wherch Siege was attended, appointed and set day of Battaille, and of Rescous, the wherch day was kept and boulden, with great power on both sides, and under Banners displayed, the Enemies doubting to fight with Radecliff required hym of apointment to paye, depert, and safe conduct, from the sayd field, the wherch cause canst be graunted them, for the term of eight days, like as they required. The honour and the empaulse, rested in the sayd Radecliff, and to hys byrd meryte: for in contynent following, was delivered to hym, the reddycion and possession of the sayd City of Bazates. And also the sayd Radecliff was at the Battaille of Alincourt, and hath contynowed and exercised the Arms, the space of xxviii. Wynter unreprouched. And in the tyme of his Esquierhood, was at the Battaille of Shrewsbury, and at the Journay of Huls, with the Lord Grey at the discomfure and taking of Owenion.

* Ches de
Caux.

|| Bazas.

Syr Thomas Ramston.
Syr Rauff Butler.

Syr William Dbegall.
Syr Ro. Harlyng.
Syr Gilbert Passall.

Item my Lord the Duc of Bedford, beseecheth the Kyng, Soveraign of the Order, to have also for recomendyd to his good grace and highnesse, other of his Subjects and Serbants: now being in hys service, in his Realme of France, wherch hath doon, and yet doth take great payne by their Kyngdely labour, dayly to serve the merite of worthynesse and prowess; as Sir Robert Hungerford, Sir Thomas Beaumont, Sir John Popeham, Sir Nicholas Burdett, Sir Rauff Nevell, Sir Edward Wyver, Sir John Robesart, Sir Tyre Robesart, Sir William Bretton, Sir Thomas Kyngston, Sir Richard Hankford and byrle other.

But lest peradventure it may seem to some, that the *Knights-Companions* present in *Chapter* can at their pleasures, *Nominate* or propose to Election such persons as they think fit, so they be qualified according to the *Statutes* of the Order; this priviledge is to be understood of *Knights Subjects* only; for in all cases concerning *Strangers*, the *Soveraign* doth but permit, and may direct and confine the *Knights-Companions* to the *Nomination* of such, as He at any time intends to Elect, which *Prerogative* we find more particularly asserted in the 31. year of the Reign of Queen Elizabeth, and third year of King Charles the First.

|| Pag 113.

In the first of these instances, the *Blue Book* of the Order recordeth, That at a *Chapter* held immediately before *Vespers* on Saint George's day, the Earl of Huntingdon, then Lieutenant for the *Soveraign*, acquainted the *Knights-Companions*, that

That the Sovereign did^a permit them, or leave it to their pleasure, to chuse into the Order whatsoever Foreign Prince they should by their Votes approve of.

Hence there may be observed two things, First, that the *Knights-Companions* have not the privilege and liberty to nominate what Foreign Prince they please, but the same is derivative from the Sovereign, and only by his particular license or leave, at some times permitted to them.

Secondly, if this Paragraph be well weighed (as also that which succeeds) it is most clear from the context, that *Nominare* ought to be understood here by the word *Eligere*, and that the power delegated to the *Knights-Companions* from the Sovereign, was only to *Nominate*, not *Elect*. For it immediately follows, *That the Knights-Companions went from the Chapter to the second Vespers, and while the Divine Offices were celebrating, the Prelate received their Nominations, and that very Evening the Lieutenant presented them to the Sovereign, for her to consider of*: which had been needless, if the *Knights-Companions* had been empowered by her said License, to have made the choice themselves: But the contrary is yet more evident by that which follows, for the next morning, all the *Knights-Companions* attending the Sovereign in Chapter, she herself made there the Election, not of any Foreign Prince, but of the * Earl of *Suffex*, and Lord *Euckhurst*.

In the other Instance anno 3. Car. I. the Sovereign in a Chapter, held before Vespers on St. George's day, signified it to be his pleasure (three stalls being then vacant) that out of Foreign Princes (the ^a Nomination of whom (saith the *Annals* in that very place) belongs only to the Sovereign; that is, the Sovereign has the prerogative to direct the *Knights-Companions* to Name, or impose upon them the Nomination of such Foreign Princes as he pleaseth) they the *Knights-Companions* should chuse, which must nevertheless be understood to *Nominate*, or enter down into the *Scruteny* (not *Elect*) *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, and *Henry of Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*: For there a little after, it in like manner appears (when the *Scruteny* was presented to the Sovereign) that *Himself*, not the *Knights-Companions*, made Election of them.

And it is further manifest by the *Scruteny** there inserted, that both these *Princes* were named by every of the *Knights-Companions* then present, according to the Sovereign's signification (which has been usually done at all other times, upon the like occasions, as may be seen by the *Scrutenies* entred in the *Annals*) But concerning the third person then to be *Elect*ed, the Sovereign (intending him to be a *Knight-Subject*) left it wholly to their pleasure, to *Nominate* whomsoever they esteemed worthy of their Votes.

Since this time, the *Nominations* in like cases have been sufficiently owned, by the *Knights-Companions* themselves, to be a Prerogative belonging to the Sovereign: For, to the end they might more readily and fully comply with the observance of this particular; it was moved in a Chapter held at Oxford, the second day of March, an. 19. Car. I. *That it might become a custom for the Sovereign to declare before hand, whether He would Elect any Foreign Prince, and whom; that so the Knights-Companions might be sure to Name him in the Scruteny.*

ⁿ Locum-tenens certiores facit Comitum milites superiores permittere ipsorum voluntati, quemcumque externum Principem, quem suis suffragiis comprobarent in hunc Ordinem Eligere. *Ibid.*

^a A Capitulum ibant ad Vesperas, dum illæ celebrantur, Equites Nuncupationes Votorum ineunt quas Prælati Ordinis excipit. *ead. pag.*

^{* Ibid. p. 114.}

^p Lib. R. p. 33.

^q Quorum nominatio ad se solum spectat. *Ibid.*

^r Lib. R. lib. 1. c. citato.

^t Ex Antiquo Graph. penes præf. Jac. Palmer.

SECT. VII.

Of the Number, Qualifications, and Degrees of the Persons to be Nominated.

ANother consideration in our progress towards the act of Election, is touching the Number, Qualifications, and Dignities of the Persons Nominated, which

in E. 2. Stat.
Art. 18.

which may be best known from another branch of the before mentioned Article of the Statutes, and is to this effect, *That every one of the Knights-Companions present at the Election, should Nominate for himself nine very sufficient Persons, whom he should judge free from all reproach and scandal, whether Subjects to the Sovereign, or Forreigners. Provided they are known not to favour or abet any party at enmity with him: that is to say three Earls, or others of higher degree, three Barons, and three Knights.*

The things chiefly observable out of this Text, we rank under five heads.

First, The Number of Persons Nominated, or to be given in by every Knight-Companion, are to be exactly Nine.

Secondly, They ought to be of unblamable Reputation.

Thirdly, Either Subjects to the Sovereign, or else Strangers.

Fourthly, Such as are known not to be engaged in any party against the Sovereign.

Lastly, To be Earls (or of greater dignity) or Barons, or Knights.

x Art. 18.
z Art. 19.

1. For the first of these, their Number; every one of the Knights-Companions assembled in Chapter are enjoined to name nine, neither more nor less. So also saith King Henry the Fifth's Statutes, whereunto are consonant the Statutes of King Henry the Eighth. And in this particular the Statutes have been hitherto observed (except in one case) as from the Entries of those many Scrutenies, in the Annals of this most Noble Order, is fully evident.

a Post. l. 1 c. 1.

As to Numbers, we are taught that great Mysteries lie wrapt up in them, the excellency and dignity whereof, and particularly of this number Nine (which Scaliger calls the most perfect number) are largely celebrated among the Learned, both ancient and modern, which are easie to be met with; wherefore we shall not spend further time to insist upon them.

But why our Royal Founder made choice of this Number, to be put in Nomination, above all other, unless he had some reflection on the Nine Worthies (men reported famous for valour and martial exploits, and therefore not unlikely to be at first proposed as Examples to the Knights-Nominators) or otherwise considered it as a trebled threefold Cord, and Symbol of perfect stability and solid amity (for so also is the number Nine accounted to signifie) can neither easly nor certainly be resolved.

b Art. 18.

c Art. 17.

d Lib. N. p. 215.

e Art. 19.

2. As to the second point; the Injunction in the Statutes of Institution takes order, that the Persons designed for Election, should be free from all reproach, and of untainted reputation; and according to those of King Henry the Fifth, are to be the best and most sufficient Knights, and freest from reproach, that the Nominators know. To the same purpose speaks the Exemplar entred in the Black Book, *Such as are fittest, and whom they who Nominate believe to be free from ignominy and dishonour.* And to this Act of Nomination belongs part of the second Article in Henry the Eighth's Statutes, *That no Knight-Companion should name any Person whom he thinks or esteems in his Conscience, to have upon him any spot of Reproach:* But on the contrary in another place of the same Statutes, it is provided, that they be nominated and proposed, *out of the number of the most worthy and fittest Knights.*

f (Lib. N.
p. 121.
i)

How tender the Knights-Companions were in ancient time of infringing the Statutes in this particular, is manifest from a notable passage, which fell out *an. 39. H. 6.* at a Scrutiny taken the 8. of February, in the Bishop of London's Palace; where John de Foix Earl of Kendall, a Gascoigner by birth, (which makes the Example more eminent, where a Stranger became so tender of the honor of the Order) not being acquainted with the quality and merit of Knights and honorable Persons among us, so well and sufficiently, as to name such whom he was confident were irreprehensible, and without blemish, forbore to nominate any person at all. And certainly, seeing the Statutes put very considerable qualifications upon the Deputies and Proxies, made choice of for the Installation of Strangers (as shall be discoursed of in its proper place) much more caution and regard ought to be used and had, both in the Nomination and Election of Knights, into this so Illustrious Society.

g Chap. 16.

3. Touching

3. Touching the third point; the *Statutes* make indifferently capable of being *Nominated* or *Elected*, either *Knights-Subjects*, or *strangers*, [Free Princes or their Subjects] and it was so even at the Institution, upon the first choice; where among the 25 *Elected Knights*, 23 of them were *Subjects* (among whom we reckon *Piers Capdall de la Bucke*) but Sir *sanchio dabrichecourt*, and Sir *Henry Eme* were both born *Strangers*, and *Subjects* to other Princes.

And thus was it practised, not only in the remaining part of the *Founder's* Reign, and during the Reigns of three of his *Succeffors*, as appears in the *Catalogue* of *Knights* elected in their times; but also ever since, as is more particularly and fully evident, from the *Scrutenies* taken and entred throughout the *Annals* of the Order.

Of those who were admitted into this Noble Order by *Election*, we shall in the last Chapter give an account in a compleat *Catalogue* of them: Here we think it sufficient, to insert the *Names* of such, as having not been *Elected*, are not to be forgotten, out of this very respect, that by their standing *Candidates* in Elections into this Order, have the fame of being mentioned in the principal *Register* of Honor now in the *Christian* world: Giving a List, not of all (for that were too numerous) but only those of eminent quality in Foreign parts, with the time when the *Scrutenies* were taken, that transmitted them to our hands.

*A Catalogue of some Strangers, who have been Nominated
yet not Elected.*

<i>Franciscus sforza dux Mediolani</i>	28. H. 6.
<i>Franciscus secundus dux Britannie</i>	13. 14. 15. 22. E. 4.
<i>Henricus quartus Rex Legionis & Castille</i>	14. E. 4.
<i>Matthias Corvinus Rex Hungarie</i>	19. 22. E. 4.
<i>Fredericus secundus Dux Austrie</i>	22. E. 4. & 1. R. 3.
<i>Philippus quartus Dux Burgundie</i>	14. H. 7.
<i>Franciscus Maria Dux Urbini</i>	1. 2. H. 8.
<i>Vladislaus secundus Rex Hungarie</i>	1. 2. 6. 8. H. 8.
<i>Christiannus secundus Rex Danie</i>	6. 8. H. 8.
<i>Dux Barrye.</i>	8. H. 8.
<i>Comes Galacie</i>	}
<i>Alphonfus Dux Ferrarie</i>	
<i>Lodovicus secundus Rex Hungarie</i>	13. 15. H. 8.
<i>Maximilianus sforza Dux Mediolani</i>	13. 14. 15. H. 8.
<i>Marchio Piscare</i>	14. 15. 16. H. 8.
<i>Johannes tertius Rex Portugallie</i>	17. H. 8.
<i>Johannes tertius Rex Portugallie</i>	17. 18. 26. 28. H. 8.
<i>Marchio Mantue</i>	18. H. 8.
<i>Carolus Burbonus Dux Vandosme</i>	24. H. 8.
<i>Guilielmus Dux Clivenfis</i>	}
<i>Dux Bavarie</i>	
<i>Dux Alve</i>	}
<i>Dux Medine Celi</i>	
<i>Comes Fereæ</i>	1. & 2. Ph. & Mar.
<i>Franciscus secundus Rex Gallie</i>	1. Elizab.
<i>Franciscus tertius Comes Palatinus</i>	10. 11. 12. 13. 16. 17. Eliz.
<i>Augustus Dux Saxonie</i>	11. Eliz.
<i>Alphonfus secundus Dux Ferrarie</i>	13. Eliz.
<i>Dux Andegavensis</i>	13. 22. 23. 24. Eliz.
<i>Rambrith de Walsey</i>	}
<i>Johannes de Voynada</i>	
<i>Dominus Grabazenby</i>	}
<i>Dominus Humers</i>	
<i>Dominus Johannes Mounte</i>	
<i>Dominus Harmibolt</i>	
<i>Dominus Boyffy</i>	24. H. 8.

Art. 17.

4. In the fourth place, they are not in a capacity of *Nomination*, who are known to have taken contrary part against the *Sovereign*; or as the *Exemplar* entred in the *Black Book* more largely than any of the *Statutes* exprefs, ¹ *such as are not his Adversaries, or Abettors or willing defenders of his Adversaries*. But concerning such, we no where observe they had room in the *Scrutenies*, all *Knights-Companions* having been more wary and discreet, than by *Nominating* a known or publick Enemy, to put either disrespect upon the *sovereign*, or offer violation to the *Statutes*.

in Art. 18.

5. In the fifth and last place, concerning the *Degree, Rank, and Dignity* of the *Nine Knights* propounded to *Election*; the *Statutes of Institution* appoint, That they be, first, *three Earls, or persons of greater dignity*, secondly, *three Barons, and thirdly, three Knights*; or as it is in *Henry the Fifth's Statutes*, ^m *trois Contes, ou de greigneur estat, trois Banerets, & trois Batchelers*. These *Degrees* are to be ranked in three *Classes*, and they distinguished by three *Divisions*, all comprehending the three *Degrees* aforesaid.

in Art. 19.

As touching the first of these *Divisions*; whereas all other *Bodies and Exemplars* of the *Statutes* make positive mention of *Earls* only (taking in nevertheless the higher *Degrees* though not named) the *Statutes of Henry the Eighth* exprefs themselves in this point somewhat more amply than the rest, by mentioning in the first Class, ⁿ *Dukes, Marquesses, and Earls, or persons superiour to these in Degree*, wherein the highest *Dignities* are included.

o Art. 21. 22.

In this place we may properly observe, the different Title (*viz. Baneret*) that *Henry the Fifth's Statutes* (but now mentioned) hath given us, instead of *Baron*; and not only in this *Article*, but in all ^o other, where there is occasion to speak of *Barons*; nevertheless the *Record* intends by it, to signifie no other than the very same *Degree*, namely a *Baron*. For albeit a *Baneret*, who had his name from a *Vexillo*, from the *Banner*, was usually taken to signifie a *Degree of Honor* next beneath that of *Baron*, both heretofore and in later times (as may be collected from that famous establishment made on the behalf of the younger sons of *Viscounts and Barons*) yet formerly among our *Records* it is found to be a *Synonymy* to *Baron*, and so clearly made out by our most learned ^r *selden*, and is to be so taken here; and not as a distinct Title of a lower *Degree*, because also we observe the *Banerets* ranked in all *Scrutenies* before King *Henry the Eighth* established his *Statutes* (except ^t one) with the *Knights-Bachelors* not with *Barons*.

p 2. part 1^{mo} Stat. f. 667.

q Pat. 10. Jac. pars 10. m. 8.

r Titles of Honor f. 736. 737.

s An 14. H. 7. wide Lib. N. p. 172.

t 1^o 1^o 3.

u Art. 18.

x Art. 18.

y Ord. Stat. in Lib. N. Art. 17.

z H. 3. Stat. Art. 17.

Art. 17.

h 5^o Ord Stat.

i 2 in Bibl.

Hatton Art. 18.

H. 5. Stat. Art.

1^o H. 3. Stat.

Art. 17.

Besides this, something further may be said concerning the Title of the third and lowest rank in this *Classis*; for in the *Statutes of Institution* they are called ^w *Milites Bachalauri*, in those of King *Henry the Fifth* ^x *Bachelors*, and elsewhere ^y *Bachalauri*, and ^z *Bachalauri Equites*, which in common acceptation are all the same with *Milites*; though thus rendred to exprefs and manifest their difference from *Knights Banerets*, who are of a higher *Degree of Honor*. And here we have an occasion given to note, That there is no place in a *scruteny* for any under the degree of *Knights Batchellors*.

h 5^o Ord Stat.

i 2 in Bibl.

Hatton Art. 18.

H. 5. Stat. Art.

1^o H. 3. Stat.

Art. 17.

And though ^b three of the *Nine* named are appointed to be *Barons*, and three other *Earls*, or of a higher *Degree*, yet must these six be such as have received the *Order of Knighthood*, else ought not their names be either given or taken in *Nomination*; for the Text is plain, *That each of the Knights assembled at the Election shall name nine Knights*.

k Lit. R. p. 59.

l Ibid.

Thus his late *Majesty* of blessed memory, in the sixth year of his *Reign*, intending to chuse *James Marquess Hamilton* into the *Society* of this *Order*, conferr'd the honor of ^k *Knighthood* upon him immediately before his *Nomination*; and the *Annals* in that place give this *Remarque* upon the *Action*, and the reason for it, ¹ *Because by the Statutes it is provided, That none should be Elested into the Order, that have not been dignified with the title of Knight*.

Yet it seems the Ceremony of *Knighting* the person designed for *Election*, was not so strictly and duly observed as it ought, but that sometimes this branch of the *Statute* was either not taken notice of, or else confounded with the second *Article*, throughout the several *Bodies* of the *statutes*, which prohibits the *Choice or Election* of any person into the *Society* (of which we shall speak by and by) as this

this doth the *Proposal* or *Nomination*; and thereupon perhaps it was conceived, that although the *Nomination*, *Election*, and sometimes delivery of the *Ensigns* of the *Order*, were first dispatcht and past, yet it was well enough if the honor of *Knighthood* were conferr'd afterward. As it was in the case of *William* Earl of *Derby*, and *Thomas Cecil* Lord *Burleigh*, anno 43. *Eliz.* where the *Register* notes, "that as soon as their *Election* was past, and they brought into the *Chapter*, the m Lib. 6. Earl of *Derby* (who it seems had not been *Knighted* before) was dubbed p. 144. *Knight*, with a drawn *Sword*, according to *Custom*, after which they had the *Garter* and *George* put on by the *Sovereign* her self.

In like manner *Ulrick* Duke of *Holstein*, and *Henry* Earl of *Northampton*, immediately after their *Election* (being the last day of *St. George's* Feast, an. 3. *Jac.*) and before they received the *Ensigns* of the *Order*, had the dignity of *Knight-hood* conferr'd on them by the *Sovereign*. So also in the case of the Earl of *Sus-folk*, an. 3. *Car.* 1. which the *Red Book* of the *Order* taking notice of, saith, "that as soon as it was understood, that the Earl had not received the *Order* of *Knight-hood* before, the *Sovereign* immediately drawing his *Sword* *Knighted* him; which was not done till after his *Election*, and *Investiture* with both the *George* and *Garter*. o f Pag. 35; p 2

Thus also did the Ceremony of *Knighthood* succeed the *Election* of his sacred Majesty the present *Sovereign*, the 21. of *May*, an. 14. *Car.* 1. For after he had been *Elect-ed*, and the *Ensigns* of the *Order* placed upon him, and that the two *senior Knights* (the Earls of *Penbroke* and *Montgomery*, and of *Arundel* and *Surrey*) were intreated by the rest of the *Knights-Companions*, to present his *Highness* to the *Sovereign* in the name of all the rest, to be initiated into the *Title* and *Dignity* of a *Knight-Bachelor*, he was conducted by the said Earls (his *Supporters*) into the *Presence Chamber* in *Windsor Castle*, where before the *Chair* of *State*, he most solemnly received the *Order* of *Knighthood* from the *Sovereign* his late Majesty of blessed memory. q f Palmer's r Large Jour-nal. p. 9.

To honor which *Knighthood*, and the memory thereof, four of the chief Nobility then present were also *Knighted*, namely, the Earls of *Essex*, *Saint Albans*, and *Elgin*, and *Viscount Grandison*; the first of them being conducted from the great Chamber to the *Sovereign's* *State*, between two *Batchellor Knights*, *Sir Frederick Hamilton*, and *Sir Robert Huniwood*; the second by *Sir Roger Palmer* Knight of the Bath, and *Sir Henry Mildmay*; the third by *Sir John Meldram* and *Sir William Withrington*; and the fourth by *Sir John Harpur* and *Sir John Lucas*. Lib. R. p. 143;

Afterwards the *Law* in this point began again to be more rightly understood, and by that time his *Royal Highness* the Duke of *Tork*, came to be *Elect-ed* (which was on the 20. of *April*, an. 18. *Car.* 1. being the last day of the Feast of *Saint George*, then celebrated at the City of *Tork*) the *Sovereign* appointed and accordingly conferr'd the honor of *Knighthood* upon him, the day before, which he received upon his knees; being first conducted into the *Presence Chamber*, between two of the *Nobility*, who were also *Knights*, namely, the *Marquess* of *Hertford*, and *Viscount Grandison*: In honor and memorial whereof, there were also four *Noblemen* *Knighted* at that time, the Earl of *Carnarvan*, supported by *Sir William Killegrew* and young *Sir Arthur Ingram*; the Lord *George d' Aubigne*, supported by *Sir William Howard* and *Sir Peter Wyche*; the Lord *John Stewart*, by *Sir Peter Killegrew* and *Sir Capell Bedell*; and the Lord *Bernard Stewart* by *Sir Edward Savage* and *Sir Henry Blount*. f Palmer's r Large Jour-nal. p. 42. v f Ibid. p. 39.

And thus Prince *Edward* Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, and *George* Duke of *Eckingham*, being designed by the present *Sovereign* to be admitted into this most Noble *Order*, were both first *Knighted* at *Saint Germans* in *France*, an. *Dom.* 1649. and afterwards had the *Ensigns* of the *Order* sent unto them by the hands of *Sir Edward Walker* *Garter*, who, in right of his *Office*, invested them therewith. Nevertheless in the case of his *Highness* Prince *Rupert*, who had the honor to be *Elect-ed*, with his *Royal Highness* the Duke of *Tork*, an. 18. *Car.* 1. His want of *Knighthood* became no impediment thereunto, being then a *Prince* in another Country, viz. Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine* and Duke of *Bavaria*, and might therefore justly claim the privilege, to come within the rule of *Foreign Princes*; mentioned a little lower. Ex Collig. 2. Han. E. a W. G.

But herein also the *Sovereign*, to come as neer to the intention and observance of the *Statute* as he could (where there was a possibility to do it, and the honor also would be well accepted by the *Prince*) thought it requisite by *Commission*, under the great Seal of *England*, to empower^b *Thomas* Earl of *Arundel* and *Surrey*, and *George* Lord *Goring* (late Earl of *Northwich*) both being then in *Holland*, or either of them, to^c *Knight* the said *Prince*,^d before the putting on his *Garter* (seeing it could not possibly be done before his *Election*) which was intended to be sent and presented unto him, by the hands of Sir *John Burrough* *Garter*; but his^e death after happening, the *Sovereign's* intention herein was frustrated. Albeit the *Prince* upon his coming afterwards into *England*, received both the *Garter* and *George* from the *Sovereign* himself at^f *Nottingham*, nevertheless without being *Knighted*, which to excuse it may well be alledged, that the *Sovereign* might not take into his thoughts this part of the *Ceremony*, it being a time of so greas business and trouble, occasioned by the then setting up of his *Standard*.

However, upon the^g 17. day of *January*, an. 1644. when a Decree past in *Chapter*, then held at *Oxford*, that both the Duke of *York* and the *Prince* should enjoy all^h Rights and Privileges of the *Order*, though they were not hitherto Installed (until *Windsor* was free from the *Enemy*, but then to perform the Ceremonies of *Installation* there) the *Prince*,ⁱ before he took his *Oath*, was conducted by the Earl of *Berkshire*, and Duke of *Richmond* and *Lenox* (two of the *Knight-Companions*) unto the *Sovereign*, and kneeling down received the honor of^k *Knighthood* from him. There being at the same time,^l two of the *Nobility* likewise *Knighted* in memorial of that Solemnity; namely, the Lord *Henry Seymour*, second Son to the Marquess of *Hertford*, brought up to the *Sovereign* between Sir *John Stawell* Knight and Baronet, and Sir *Francis Lloyd* Knight; and the Lord *Capell* conducted between Sir *Richard Willis* and Sir *Thomas Corbet* Knights.

SECT. VIII.

Of the Scruteny, and by whom it ought to be taken.

pE. 3. } Stat.
H. 5. } Art. 18
q H. 8. Stat.
Art. 19.
r Lib. N. p. 232.
s Th. p. 213.
t Wintonien-
sis Antistes
Ordinis Prela-
tus cuius illud
erat Officium,
summa cum
reverencia ad
solicam Equi-
tatem nomen-
claturam pro-
cedit. &c. lib.
C. p. 100.
u E. 4. Stat.
v Art. 18.
w Ord. Stat. in
Lib. N. p. 17.
x Lib. N. p. 232.
y Lib. N. p. 77.
z In absentia
Prelati cuius
Ordinarium
alioquin id e-
rat Officium.
Idem p. 84.
a Lib. N. p. 64.

ALL this being premised, we are led directly to the *Scruteny* it self, in reference to which we shall first consider by *Whom* it ought or hath been usually taken, next the *time* when, and then the *manner* and *form* thereof.

By the *Statutes of Institution* the collecting the *Knight-Companions* *Votes*, and entring them in the *Scruteny*, properly belongs to the^p *Prelate* of the *Order*, and upon him is this employment confer'd, not only by the other^q *Bodies* of *Statutes* that succeeded, but also by the^r *Constitutions* of his *Office*, and the obligation of his^s *Oath*; whose right thereunto we find afterwards duly^t asserted, upon this Officers taking a *Scruteny*, anno 27. *Eliz.* on the Feast day of *St. George*.

Nevertheless the *Statutes* provided, that if the *Prelate* were at any time absent, then the^u *Dean* of *Windsor*, or the^v *Register*, or the^w *senior Residentiary* of the *Colledge*, or the^x *Secretary* or *Scribe* of the *Order*, should undertake the employment; and the *Constitutions* of the Officers say, the^y *Chancellor*, *Dean*, or *Register* shall in like case do it; which when they did, it is frequently mentioned to be performed by them, ^z in *absence* of the *Prelate*, as implying a reservation of his right to the employment; or as in another place more expressly, ^a *In the absence* of the *Prelate*, whose particular duty otherwise it had been. Now there are various Examples of all these, given us in the *Annals* of the *Order*, but among the many, take these that follow, and first of the *Prelate*.

The *Prelate* of the *Order* gathered and received the *Suffrages* from the *Knight-Companions*,^a anno 9. *H. 5.* when *John* Earl *Marshall*, and four other *Knight-*
were

were Elected. The like did Henry Beaufort Lord Cardinal, Prelate of the Order, upon the Election of the King of Portugal, ^b an. 13. H. 6. And when the Duke of Norfolk was Elected, ^c an. 28. H. 6. the Prelate then also collected the *Suffrages*; which he likewise did, upon the Feast days of St. George, celebrated in the ^d 12. ^e 13. ^f 14. ^g 27. ^h 28. ⁱ 30. ^k 31. ^l 34. and ^m 35. years of Queen Elizabeth's Reign.

Sometimes the *Scrutenies* have been collected, both by the Dean of Windsor and the Register of the Order jointly; as at the Elections of ⁿ John Lord Talbot an. 2. H. 6. of ^o Sir John Fastolf, an. 6. H. 6. and the Duke of ^p Guibery, an. 15. H. 6. all taken at the Feasts of St. George celebrated at Windsor.

And peradventure the Dean, at those times, received the *Votes* from the Knights-Companions on the Sovereign's side, while the Register collected those other on the Prince's; for we observe, that in King Henry the Fifth's Reign, in employments of other natures (but of like manner as to the performance) one whereof was, to signify the pleasure of the Sovereign to the Knights-Companions, about their giving due Reverence, first to God, and afterwards to Himself; and the other in a Ceremonial, which directs and appoints the manner and order of ^r *Censuring* the Knights-Companions; in both which, the Dean was sent to perform the service on the ^s right hand the *Choir* [the Sovereign's side] and the Register, on the ^t left.

Sometimes the Register of the Order took them himself alone, as at the Election of ^u John Earl of Arundel, an. 10. H. 6. as also at another Election of the ^v Earl of Morieyne and Sir John Grey, an. 14. H. 6. And we likewise find, that when the Office of Register was void, and Thomas Rathall Bishop of Duresme, executed it during its vacancy, the Bishop himself ^w an. 2. H. 8. collected the *Suffrages*. In like manner, when William Day Dean of Windsor, officiated in the absence of George Carew Dean of the Chappel and Register of the Order, at the Feasts of Saint George held at Whitehall the ^x 18. and ^y 19. years of Queen Elizabeth, he performed this service.

This duty was likewise performed by the Register, from the 15. year of King Henry the Eighth, to the end of his and his Sons Reign, as appears by the *Black Book* of the Order, in those places, where the taking of *Scrutenies* is treated of, as also on the day of St. George, celebrated the first of Queen Elizabeth by ^z John Boxhall, and again at the Feast of St. George held, an. 1. Jac. by ^a Giles Thompson, who in the several times were Registers of this most Noble Order. Nevertheless here it must be understood, that what was in these Instances done by the Register or such as officiated for him, was on the behalf of the Prelate, and not otherwise.

But in the ^b beginning of Queen Maries Reign, we find the Chancellor of the Order began to perform this service, being by ^c King Henry the Eighth's Statutes, adjoined to those other Officers, before appointed to collect the *Scrutenies*, in absence of the Prelate, and thereby made capable of the employment; which afterwards we observe somewhat tacitely noted to be performed, as if in his own right, when the Register hath done it, in the Chancellor's absence. Though in truth it was no other, then as when the Bishop of Duresme, and Doctor Day (immediately before remembred) took the *Scruteny* in the vacancy of the Office, and absence of the Register, nevertheless on the behalf of the Prelate.

For instance, an. 4. Eliz. the Register in the absence of the Chancellor (who was sick) upon the Feast day of St. George collected the *Suffrages*; and an. 8. Eliz. George Carew then Register of the Order, took the *Votes* of the Knights-Companions, ^d in absence of Sir William Petre Chancellor of the Order. So also anno ^e Jacobi 4. where the cause of the Chancellor's absence is noted to be ^f sickness, and an. 6. Jac. to be ^g death.

In the first of these Instances we find the Prelate expressly mentioned to be present; in the two following his presence implied, for it is said, that the ^h four Officers of the Order did attend both Feasts, whereof (the Chancellor being wanting) the Prelate must needs be one.

Now all these passages seem to relate to the Chancellor's, rather than the Prelate's right, by this Remarque; That every of the *Scrutenies* were taken in the

bid. p. 91.

c Pag. 105.

d Lib. C. p. 60.

e Idem p. 62.

f Pag. 64.

g Pag. 100.

h Pag. 103.

i Pag. 108.

k Pag. 113.

l Pag. 119.

m Pag. 128.

n Lib. N. p. 77.

o Pag. 81. &

p Continero.

q Lib. N. p. 84.

r Regist. Char.

s Lib. N.

t p. 65.

u p. 89.

v Pag. 92.

w

x Pag. 199.

y Lib. C. p. 73.

z MS. penes G.

a Lib. C. p. 291.

b Eng. 150.

c Pag. 7.

d An. 19.

e MS. penes W.

f Le. N. Cl.

g Lib. C. p. 51.

h Pag. 161.

i MS. penes

Guil. Dugdale

Ar. modo Norroy

Reg. Armor.

g Lib. C. p. 166.

h Ex. ord. MS.

pen. Guil. Dug-

dale.

the absence of the *Chancellor*, which looks something like a cautionary note, that intended the preservation of the right of performing this service to the *Chancellor*, rather than the *Prelate*.

Furthermore, when a *Deputy Chancellor* hath been admitted to officiate in the *Chancellor's* absence, he and not the *Prelate* hath taken the *Scruteny*, though present; as at that made for the Election of his sacred Majesty the present Sovereign, the 20. day of May, an. 14. Car. 1. and at another *Scruteny* taken the 22. of May following. As also when the *Suffrages* were collected, for the Election of his Highness the Duke of York, and Prince Rupert, at York anno 17. Car. 1.

i S Palmer's
k } large Jour-
nal p. 18.
l Ibid. p. 40.

m Suffragia
quum dedif-
sent prænomi-
nati milites, &
ea supremo
detuliffet,
Cancellarius,
qui eis ex of-
ficio excipien-
dis incumben-
bat, Supremus
&c lib. R. p. 23.
* Pat. 15. E. 4.
par. 3. m. 16.

n Palmer's
large Journal.
p. 27.

But there is one passage more (upon taking a *Scruteny*, an. Jac. 22.) which seems advantageous to the *Chancellor* in this point, where it is said, *That when the Knights-Companions had given their Votes* (as in the *Annals* they are described) *the Chancellor who, according to his Office, was to receive them, presented them to the Sovereign.* Howbeit in truth, we find no sufficient ground for the Register to record this as done by the *Chancellor*, by virtue of his Office, or any one Act or Decree of Chapter that hath suspended or taken off the *Prelate's* right, which is reserved to the *Prelate*, even by the * Patent for erecting the Office of *Chancellor*, particularly in those things, which touching the Order, ought by the Statutes of the Institution to belong to him. But forasmuch as at the usual time of performing this Ceremony in the Chappel, the *Prelate* (if present) is presumed to be officiating at the Altar, in discharge of another part of his Duty: Upon this consideration hath the service been then imposed upon the *Chancellor* and others.

Lastly, we have observed the *Scruteny* to be once taken by *Garter*, an. 16. Car. 1. at the Election of the renowned Thomas Earl of *Strafford*; but this was at a time when not only the *Prelate*, but all the other Officers of the Order, excepting Sir John Burrough *Garter*, were absent; and consequently this service being to performed by him, ought rather be judged (from what hath been said) to have been done in the *Prelate's*, than *Chancellor's* right.

SECT. IX.

The Time when.

BUT whosoever of the Officers of the Order they were that gathered the *Knights-Companions Suffrages*, the time when they entred upon this duty (in the intervals of *Feasts*, where the occasion required a peculiar Chapter to be called for Election) was usually after the Chapter had been opened, and the matter of Election proposed by the Sovereign; after which (to the execution of this accustomed employment) the Officer usually proceeded with great Reverence and all possible Respect.

Howbeit upon an extraordinary occasion (in the interval of the Grand Feasts) the Sovereign hath sometimes caused an assembly of the *Knights-Companions* to be had at the Castle of *Windsor*, who in the Chaire of St. George's Chappel (not Chapter-house) after the more solemn way, have delivered in their Nominations, and returning thence into the Chapter-house, He there hath made his Election. Thus did King Henry the Eighth, upon the 7. of June in the 17. year of his Reign in reference to the Election of the Lord Henry Fitz Roy (so is he styled in the *Scruteny*, and there ranked among the Barons) for as yet he was not created Duke of *Somerset* and *Richmond*, nor until the 18. day of the same Month) and Ralph Nevil Earl of *Westmerland*; the Ceremony of whose Nominations having been performed in the Chaire, the Sovereign returned into the Chapter-house where the Election passed.

o Lib. N.
p. 248.
p Ibid. p. 249.

q Pat. de an. 17.
H. 8. pars 1.

r Lib. N. p. 249.

Again

Again we observe, that the 20. of May an. 14. Car. 1. being Trinity Sunday, ^{Lib. R. p. 139.} the Sovereign caused a Chapter to be held that afternoon in the Chapter-house at Windsor, in reference also to the Nomination and Election of his sacred Majesty, the present Sovereign; at the breaking up whereof, the Sovereign and Knights-Companions proceeded immediately to Saint George's Chappel, where at ^{Palmer's} Evening Prayer (which was not within the compass of the Feast, for that began not until ^{Large Journal.} the next day) the Scruteny was taken. ^{p. 5.}

And besides those Examples, which shew the Nominations have been collected (upon peculiar occasions) in the Choir at Windsor, there are also one or two Instances, where it appears they have been also taken in the Chappel at Whitehall, as on the 15. of May, an. 1. Car. 1. at the Election of Edward Earl of Dorset, Henry ^{Lib. R.} Earl of Holland, and Thomas Viscount Andover (afterwards Earl of Berkshire) ^{p. 26.} as also on the 4. of July the same year, whereat the Duke of Chevereux was chosen one of the Companions of this most Noble Order.

Otherwise, and that most usually, the Suffrages have been collected at the second Vespers, or in the time of Evening Prayer, on St. George's day, or that day whereon the Feast of St. George hath been celebrated by Prorogation. And with this note of time do we find the taking of divers Scrutenies marked.

Howbeit, we once have met with a Scruteny, made in the Chapter-house at Windsor, on the Eve of the Grand Feast, at which the Person immediately ^{Lib. R. p. 59.} elected was sent for in, and had the 7 Ensigns of the Order placed upon him: when ^{Id. p. 61.} forthwith the Sovereign proceeded to the Chappel, and after some space the ²² Knight followed to his Installation.

And this was the case of James Marquess Hamilton, an. 6. Car. 1. who being necessitated to begin his Voyage the next morning towards Germany (whither he went General of 6000 Foot, in assistance of the King of Sweden) occasioned the Sovereign to dispatch these Ceremonies on the Eve of the Feast.

Formerly the time wherein the Scruteny was begun to be taken in the Chappel may be noted to have been spoken of somewhat general and indefinite, as in the 2. 3. 4. 5. 8. and 9. years of Queen Elizabeth, during the time of Evening Prayer. And so in like manner, an. 4. Jac. and an. 13. Car. 1. And when the Feast of St. George was held at Whitehall upon the 18. of April, an. 13. Car. 1. the ^{Collection,} ^{W. le N. Cl.} ^{b. 5. MS. f. 1. 1c.} ^{c. 7. not found.} ^{W. le N. Cl.} ^{d. (MS. penes} ^{ec. prof. W.} ^{f. (D. N.} ^{g. Lib. C. p. 160.} ^{h. Lib. R. p. 30.} ^{i. Lib. R. p. 122.} ^{k. Lib. C. p. 24.} ^{l. Ib. p. 185.} ^{m. Lib. R. p. 44.} ^{n. Ib. p. 33.} ^{o. Ib. p. 88.} ^{p. Palmer's} ^{Large Journal.} ^{p. 25.} ^{q. Palmer's} ^{r. Journal} ^{pro an. 1638.} ^{p. 23.} Annals say, 'That the Sovereign recreated himself with the melody of Evensong, during which, the Chancellor collected the Votes of the Knights-Companions.'

But in some other places, the time of this Action, is delivered more limited to a precise time, or some particular part of Evening Prayer. As an. 26. and 27. Eliz. ^k Whilst the Choir sung the service. And the like, an. 14. Jac. but an. 4. Car. 1. while the Anthem was sung, after the second Lesson, but more frequently after the first Lesson, as in the 2. and 9. years of King Charles the First, ^a while the Anthem was singing, or during the Anthem of the blessed Virgin, called the Magnificat; and which is all one with that an. 14. Car. 1. viz. ^p as soon as the first Lesson was read, or ^a at the first Lesson, which is there remembered to be, the usual part of the service, in which the Nomination ought to begin.

SECT. X.

The Manner and Order of it.

After what manner the Knights-Companions Votes ought to be collected, when the Scruteny is taken in the Choir, if we have recourse to the celebration of Saint George's day at Greenwich, an. 28. H. 8. entered into the Black Book of the Order, we shall be informed from the then Register, 'That he used his diligence in going to and fro, from one side to the other, to demand and redemand the Suffrages, from

from the Knights-Companions, according to the variety and order of their Stalls, which like course and proceeding we find recorded, in *eisdem terminis*, to have been observed by the *Chancellor*, anno^t 24. *Eliz.* And without question was generally thus performed at other times; for in other places of the *Annals*, it is mentioned to be done^o *de more*, after the usual manner, as an. 5. *Eliz.* or *juxta Ordinis Constitutiones*, according to the Ordinances and Decrees of the Order, as anno 26. *Eliz.*

That the Officer who collects the *Nominations*, ought to begin at the youngest Knight-Companion, and so proceed upward towards the eldest, doth plainly appear from the order mentioned to be used in the 2. and the 20. years of Queen Elizabeth, as also an. 15. *Car. 1.* But to give the Reader a more particular account of this Ceremony, with its circumstances, as it was performed in his late Majesty's Reign of blessed memory, and doubtless long before, though it hath not been our good hap to meet therewith in *scriptis*, it was as followeth.

* First the Officer arose, and went into the middle of the *Choire*, directly over against his own Seat, where he made two Reverences, first towards the high Altar, and next to the Sovereign: thence he proceeded up the *Choire*, near the *hault* pace, against the Stall of the Junior Knight-Companion, and there made like Reverences: This done, he went up to the Stall of the said Junior Knight, and with a single Reverence to him only, demanded whom he pleased to *Nominate*, which having taken (making to him a second Reverence) he descended into the *Choire*, and thence passed to the next senior Knight on the other side (unless by reason of the vacancy of that Stall he sat on the same side with the Junior) and received his *Nominations*.^b From the second Knight-Companion he again crossed the *Choire* to the third, and in like manner he ascended, according to the seniority of the Knights-Companions present (always crossing the *Choire* where there was occasion) until he arrived at the senior Knight-Companion; and having thus received all their *Nominations*, he returned into the middle of the *Choire*, and after usual and accustomed Reverences, took his Seat.

This method and order of collecting the *Votes*, as to the general, and in the *Choire*, ought likewise to be observed, when they are taken from the Knights-Companions in *Chapter*, they being ranked in due order, on each side the *Table*, according to the seniority of their *Elections*, and position of *Stalls* in the *Choire*, the Officer who gathers them beginning with the Junior, and thence orderly ascending to the senior Knight-Companion; concerning which more need not be said, than is before delivered.

And that it may be understood in what form every Knight-Companion ranketh the Names of those Persons he proposeth, and how each *Classis* is distinguished and divided, the following *Scruteny* will fully enough declare, it being taken the 12. day of May, an. 13. H. 6. upon the vacancy of one Stall, hapning by the death of Sir Heer Tanke Clux a German by birth, and is the first *Scruteny* we find marshalled among the *Annals* of this most Noble Order.

Nominabant

	Principes.	Barones.	Equites.
Dux Exoniæ	{ Ducem Norfolciæ Ducem Warwici Comitem Oxoniæ	{ Dominum Lovell Dominum Audley Dominum Dudley	{ Dominum Tho. Stanley Dominum Job. Holland Dominum Joh. Steward
Marchio Suffolciæ	{ Ducem Norfolciæ Comitem Devonæ Comitem Oxoniæ	{ Dominum Lovell Dominum Audley Dominum Foix	{ Dominum Jacobum Fenys Dominum Ric. Woodville. Dominum Andream Ogard
Comes Salopiæ	{ Ducem Warwici Ducem Norfolciæ Comitem Oxoniæ	{ Dominum Audley Dominum Dudley Dominum Foix	{ Dominum Rogerum Fenys Dominum Thomam Stanley Dominum Thomam Kiriell Dominus

Dominus Sudeley	{ Ducem Norfolciæ Ducem Warwici Comitem Devonie	{ Dominum Foix Dominum Lovell Dominum Audley	{ Dominum Rogerum Fenys Dominum Jacobum Fenys Dominum Gulielm. Boneville
Dominus Willoughby	{ Ducem Warwici Ducem Norfolciæ Comitem Oxonia	{ Dominum Wells Dominum Lovell Dominum Laware	{ Dominum Thomam Kiriell Dominum Jo. Montgomery Dominum Rob. Shotesbroke
Dominus Scales	{ Ducem Warwici Comitem Oxonia Comitem Devonie	{ Dominum Foix Dominum Clyfford Dominum Laware	{ Dom. Edm. Hungerford. Dom. Guliel. Beauchamp Dom. Andream Ogard
Dominus Johannes Faftolph	{ Ducem Norfolciæ Ducem Warwici Comitem Oxonia	{ Dominum Boucer Dominum Audley Dom. Grey Ruffyn	{ Dominum Ro. Hungerford Dominum Rob. Roos Dom. Andream Ogard
Dominus Johannes Beauchamp	{ Ducem Warwici Comitem Devonie Comitem Oxonia	{ Dominum Foix Dominum Lovell Dominum Audley	{ Dominum Rogerum Fenys Dominum Jacobum Fenys Dominum Robertum Roos

Here may be observed, how each *Knight-Companion* hath his own Name prefixed to those *Persons* for whom he gives his Vote, to the end it may be known and remembered by whom the *Knights-Candidates* are *Nominated*, and these are ranked in three several *Divisions*.

The first contains the Degrees of *Earls, Marquesses, Dukes, Princes, Kings*, and *Emperors*; howbeit at a *Scruteny* taken an. 24. H. 6. in a Chapter held at *Brainford*, & *Albro Vasques Dalmadea* (who immediately following is styled *Comes Aventurentie*) is by mistake ranked but in the second division, among the *Barons*, and twice among the *Knights*, in the Votes of the *Marquess of Suffolk*, and *Earl of Shrewsbury*: but this Error peradventure arose for want of due information either of the Law in the Statutes, or his Degree; the later of which is more probably true, for being a *stranger*, his Title of *Earl* might not be so generally known; nor is it taken notice of in the *scruteny* it self, though in the *Annals* immediately after.

And which is more apparent, the *Earl of Oxford, Devonshire, and Arundel* (whose degrees were sufficiently known) at a *Scruteny* taken an. 24. H. 6. are once ranked in the second division among the *Barons*, and an. 1. H. 8. the *Earl of Derby* is three times so placed, and again an. 13. H. 6. the *Earl of Devonshire* twice. But this hapned not through any oversight, or neglect in observation of the Statutes in this particular, but because at these *Nominations*, wherein they are so placed, the first division (to which they belonged) hapned to be fill'd up, with those other higher degrees, appertaining to the same Classis, that is to say, *Kings or Dukes*; as when the before mentioned *Earls of Oxford, Devonshire, and Arundel*, were named in the place of *Barons*, the *King of Portugal*, the *Dukes of Warwick and Norfolk*, were set down in the place of *Princes*; and so it fell out in like manner in the other instances.

On the contrary an. 15. and 16. E. 4. the Lord *Richard Grey* one of the *Queens Sons* by her former Husband Sir *John Grey* of *Groby* Knight, in respect of his alliance to the *Royal Family*, is ranked in the first Division among the *Princes*, under this Title *Dominus Richardus filius Reginae*, and afterwards, an. 19. of the same King, set only among the *Barons*, as well with the former Title, as this, *Ricardus Dominus Grey*. But in the 22. of the same King, he is thrice registred among the *Princes*, and as often with the *Barons*; whence we see, that sometimes the place among *Princes* may be afforded of courtesie to *Persons* of most eminent Relation, but then again as it is not their due, so such of the *Knights-Companions* as rank them lower, pass no diminution on their honor.

Within the second Division are placed *Barons and Viscounts*; for *Viscounts* were in all *scrutenies*, after the first Erection of that Dignity, ranked with *Barons*,

M m

until

^c Lib. N. p. 98.
^d p. 98.
^e Lib. N. p. 98.
^f 104. 110. 244.
^g Lib. C. p. 17.
^h Lib. N. p. 138.
ⁱ 140.
^j 148. 149.
^k Lib. N. p. 99.
^l 104. 110. 244.
^m Lib. C. p. 17.
ⁿ 4. 11. 56. 57.
^o 59. 60. 62. 64.

until the 13. of King James (saying only ^m John Dudley Viscount Lisle, an. 35. H. 8. who by every Knight, the Duke of Norfolk excepted, is ranked in the first Division with the Princes) and in a Scruteny then taken, Robert Cecil Viscount Cranborne is the second Viscount that we observe to have been ranked with Princes, from whence it became usual so to do, in succeeding Scrutenies, until an. 14. Car. 1. and then upon a question put in Chapter (held at Westminster the 23. *Miii anno pradiſto*, whether Earls Sons and Viscounts were eleigible with Barons; it was resolved they were, and that by all practice (except in the two cases now mentioned) it was usually done, and it seems so again observed near that time, for in two Scrutenies taken the 19. and 21. of that instant May, the Viscounts are therein reduced to the second Division, and ranked with Barons.

Finally, in the third Division the Knights-Bachelors receive their place; so also did Emerets, until King Henry the Eighth in his ^{*}Body of Statutes gave them equal rank in Scrutenies with Barons. Only in that one Scruteny taken an. 14. H. 7. Sir Reigmald Bray, Sir Richard Gouldford, and Sir Rice ap Thomas (all three created Barons at the Battel of Black-heath) are registred among the Barons, and yet two of them are oftner ranked with the Knights-Bachelors in the very

But though the word in King Henry the Eighth's Latin Statutes is *Baronetus* instead of *Baronettus*, yet is this a mistake met with anciently in some both Records and Books, as well as in those places of the Annals, all written long before the Title of Baronet was conceived, or the Dignity in use with us; for the ^{*}first Creation of that hapned but in this last Age. And hereof more satisfaction may be received elsewhere.

In the last place, he who demands these Suffrages, given according to the judgment of each Knight-Companion present, is by the Statutes of Institution appointed to take them in writing. In pursuance of which, we find it so observed, at a Scruteny taken an. 2. H. 6. for the Election of ^m John Lord Talbot and Furnivall (afterwards created Earl of Shrewsbury) where the Dean of Windeſor and the Register of the Order, wrote down the Votes and Nominations of every one of the Knights present at the day of Election.

Again, at a Scruteny made an. 4. H. 6. (so also at sundry other times) to supply the stall of Ralph Earl of Westmerland, then lately deceased (for whom mistakingly, the Black Book of the Order sets down ^r Sir Henry Fitz Hugh, in whole room a little before in the same Book an. 3. H. 6. it appears the Lord Scaler was Elected, and elsewhere, that ^a Sir John Fastolfe was chosen a Companion of this most Noble Order, upon the death, not of Sir Henry Fitz Hugh, but of the Earl of Westmerland) we find it noted, that the Dean and Register wrote down in order (according to their seniority) the Votes of the Knights-Companions.

And after the Scrutenies began to be entred on the Pages of the Annals, it is evident the general practise hath gone along with the Injunction of the Statutes, only there are two Instances of an Election made, without taking a Scruteny in writing; one in the case of Prince Henry, and Christierne the Fourth, King of Denmark; where the Knights-Companions in a Chapter held at Whitehall the 14. of July, an. Jacobi Regis primo, gave their Votes *Viva Voce*, and forthwith the Sovereign Elected them both into the Fellowship of the Order. The other was the case of James Marquess Hamilton, Elected the 2. of February in the 20. year of the same King, with the vocal consent of all the Knights-Companions present. But it is to be considered, that this course, and the omission of taking the Scruteny in writing, is not only contrary to the Law of the Order, so enjoined for a more certain memorial of the action, and more faithful transmission of it to Posterity, but exceeding prejudicial to persons of Honor and Merit; whose Names would otherwise live with great reputation among the Candidates of this Illustrious Order: and of which honor many deserving persons will be hereafter deprived, if the Injunction of the Statutes be not observed in this particular.

SECT. XI.

The Presentation of it to the Sovereign.

THE Suffrages being received from the *Knights-Companions*, the Officer by whom they are collected, is to present the whole form of the *Nominations* to the *Sovereign*, with all due *Reverence*; for so is it recorded, *an.* 9. H. 5. c. Lib. N. p. 64. when the *Prelate* of the Order had taken the *Scruteny*.

If these *Votes* were taken in *Chapter*, the Paper wherein entry was made hath been usually forthwith presented to the *Sovereign's* hands, who upon perusal of it made *Election* and *Choice* before the *Chapter* broke up; of which practice we could give sundry Instances, did not the generality thereof render it needless.

But if collected in the *Chappel*; sometimes it was immediately delivered to the *Sovereign*, before he went thence, though no *Election* were made until the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* met in *Chapter* the next morning. And thus in the 2. and 5. years of *Queen Elizabeth*, as soon as the *Nominations* were all received, the *Chancellor* of the Order (who then took them) presented the *Scruteny* to the *Sovereign*, before service ended: the like did the *Register* of the Order, *an.* 8. Eliz.

At other times it hath not been presented until *Vespers* were finished, as in the 4. 14. and 28. years of *Queen Elizabeth*, and the 6. 9. 13. and 14. of *King James*.

Lastly (and which hath been frequent in use of later times) the *Scruteny* hath not been presented to the *Sovereign* until the next morning, after opening the *Chapter* (customarily held before *Morning Prayer*) as in the 13. 15. 22. and 30. years of *Queen Elizabeth*, and again in the 9. 10. 13. 14. 15. and 17. years of the *Reign* of his late *Majesty* of ever sacred memory: against which last time of presentation, it was transcribed into a little Book, and with all due reverence offered upon the *Knee*, before any thing else was treated of in the *Chapter*.

If the *Sovereign* be absent from the *Chappel* when the *Votes* are collected, that Officer by whom they are taken, is to present them into the hands of the *Sovereign's Deputy*, or *Lieutenant*; who thereupon is obliged to deliver them to the *Sovereign*, either that Evening or the next Morning.

Besides the general practice hath gone along therewith, as we see *an.* 2. H. 6. where the *Dean* of *Windeſor*, and the *Register* of the Order having collected the *Vote* of every *Knight*, they were immediately presented to the *Sovereign's Deputy*. So also when *John Duke* of *Bedford* was *Lieutenant*, *an.* 4. H. 6. the *Votes* taken for *Election*, were delivered unto him. Again anno 20. Eliz. Sir *Francis Walsingham* then *Chancellor*, having taken the *Suffrages*, forthwith (before Evening Prayer was ended) gave them to the Earl of *Suffex*, then *Lieutenant* to the *Sovereign*: and the like did the *Prelate* to the Lord *Howard* of *Effingham* *Lieutenant*, *an.* 30. Eliz. as also in the 33. 35. 36. and 37. years of the said *Queens* *Reign*.

And that the *Lieutenant* in discharge of his duty, did present them afterwards to the *Sovereign*, appears likewise from several places in the *Blue Book* of the Order: for after the *Nominations* were received, and delivered to him by the *Prelate*, in the said 30. year of *Queen Elizabeth*, He presented them unto her: and to the like purpose is it remembered in the 34. 38. and 40. years of this *Queen*.

But it seems in the 12. year of *King James*, some exceptions were taken, for that the *Chancellor* did not present the *Scruteny* to the *Prince* (at that time the *Sovereign's Lieutenant*) but afterwards to the *Sovereign* himself: wherein he committed an Error, which some of his *Predecessors* had fallen into before, viz. *an.* 2. 3. and 25. Eliz.

M m 2

f MS. penes W. le N. Cl.

b Lib. C. p. 42.

c Ex Colleſtan. W. le N. Cl.

d MS. penes W. D. N.

e Lib. C. p. 66.

f Ibid. p. 103.

g Lib. C. p. 166.

h Ib. p. 172.

i Ib. p. 184.

l Ib. p. 187.

m Ib. p. 62.

n Pag. 70.

o Pag. 84.

p Pag. 108.

q Lib. R. p. 35.

r Ib. p. 90.

s Pag. 97.

t Pag. 124. 132.

u Pag. 142.

v Palmer's Journ. pro an. 1639. p. 20.

x Palmer's

y large Journ. nal. p. 42.

z Lib. R. p. 142.

aa Stat. H. 5. Art. 18.

ab Lib. N. d. p. 77.

ac Ib. p. 81. v. de Regist.

ad Cbartaceum. f. 13. b.

ae MS. penes G. O. T. p. 114.

af Lib. C. p. 103.

ag Ex ead. lib.

i Ib. p. 113.

k Vota Nominantium exceptis Prelatus Ordinibus, qui ea Locum-tenenti exhibitis, ty is Superiori Lib. C. p. 119.

l Vota Nominantium exceptis Cancellarius, excepta sine mora Locum-tenenti tradidit eadem; ille postmodum Supremæ exhibebat. Ib. p. 131.

m Nomina in Scrutinio excepta, Locum-tenenti Cancellarius obtulit, hic Supremæ Ib. p. 127.

n MS. de Festis temp. Jac. R. penes E. W. G. f. 151. b.

o Lib. C. p. 32. 33.

p MS. fol. penes W. le N. Cl. f. 4.

q Lib. C. p. 91.

SECT:

SECT. XII.

His Considerations thereupon, referring to the Qualification of each Person to be Elected.

THE scrutiny being thus taken, and presented to the *Sovereign*, we now proceed to those particulars, which are to be weighed by him, upon view and consideration had thereof.

For, as the *Knights-Companions* are obliged by the *Statutes* to *Nominate* no other than such as can abide the Test of those *Qualifications* before remembered; so is there a standard of *Honor*, provided and ordained for the *Sovereign*, whereby to measure the *Extraction*, *Quality*, and *Merit* of the *Person* proposed to Election; lest peradventure in less circumspect times, the favour of the *Sovereign* might become over indulgent, to inferior or unworthy persons, who ought here utterly to be rejected, because this Order, consisting of goodness and honorable virtue, doth not admit or uphold unworthiness and villany.

Here then falls in to be considered the substance of the second Article, throughout all the *Bodies* and *Exemplars* of the *Statutes*, wherein the *Qualifications* for Election are exhibited, as in the 18. Article are those for *Nomination*. In the first of which viz. those of *Institution*, the words, "That none shall be Elected into the Order, &c. can refer to the Act of Election only, if we consult the rest of the *Statutes*, and compare them with this place; for thus they severally deliver themselves, That none shall be *Elected Companion of the Order*. That none shall be *Elected and Chosen a Companion of this Order*. All pointing to the time of Election more properly and directly, than to any other Ceremony succeeding, either of *Investiture* with the *Garter* and *George*, *Installation*, or to what ever else it may more dubiously be wrested, from the Expressions of *Admitting* and *Receiving* *Knights* into this Order, used in the *Exemplars* of the *Statutes of Institution*. And that this doth so is further cleared, from another passage in the said second Article of King Henry the Eighth's *Statutes*, which speaking of the last point of *Reproach*, saith, the guilt thereof so incapacitates any mans Election, that he ever after ought to be esteemed unworthy of Election into the Order.

The *Qualifications* and *Endowments* are chiefly noted to be two; first, that the Person in Nomination be a *Gentleman of Blood*; and secondly a *Knight* and without *Reproach*. As to the first of these, finding the phrases somewhat varied throughout the *Statutes*, we shall therefore single them out.

By the *Statutes of Institution* no man ought to be Elected, ^a unless he be a *Gentleman born*, and so saith King Henry the Fifth's ^b *Statutes*. The *Exemplar* entred in the *Black Book* saith, ^c unless he be worthy upon the account of *Birth* and *Arms*; whereunto is added (in this *Exemplar* only) ^d that he be one eminent for his *demeanour* and good Report; hereby linking together, *Blood* and *Virtue*, which indeed make the noblest Conjunction. Finally, King Henry the Eighth's *Statutes* speak a little larger, and appoint him to be a ^e *Gentleman by Name, Arms, and Blood*; and lest this Character might seem in any part obscure; a *Gentleman of Blood* is determined to be ^f one descended of three descents of Nobles, viz. of *Name* and *Arms*, both of his *Father* and *Mother* side.

For most certain it is, that *Gentility* is not made perfect or accomplished in the Person in whom it takes beginning, but rather completed by *Succession*. And we find among the *Romans*, though the *Father* was free born, and of the *Equestrian* *Cenſe*, yet was it further requisite, that the *Grandfather* should be so likewise, for obtaining a *Ring*, one of the *Symbols* of the *Equestrian* Order with them. Whence have been wisely found out, those three Degrees of *Gentility*; *Beginning*, *Encrease*, and *full Ripeness*: for ^h *Gentility* hath its beginning in the *Grandfather*, its encrease in the *Father*, and full ripeness in the *Son*; and therefore in the constitution of *Gentility*, the *Father* and *Grandfather* (bringing renown and reputation

{ Ord. Stat. in
Lib. N.
Art. 2.

u E. 3. Stat.
Art. 2.

w H. 5. Stat.
Art. 2.

x H. 8. Stat.
Art. 2.

y Ord. Stat. in
Biblioth. Hat-
ton. Art. 2.

z Ord. Stat. in
Lib. N. Art. 2.

a Art. 2.

b Art. 2.

c Art. 2.

d Art. 2.

e Art. 2.

f H. 8. Engl.
Stat. Art. 2.

g Anno V. C.
775. Constitu-
tum est ne cui
jus Annuli ef-
fet, nisi cui in-
genus ipsi Pa-
tri Avog: pa-
terpo sexter-
tia 40 census
fuissent. Plin.
l. 33. c. 2.

h Jurispruden-
tia Heredita.

p. 8. a.

reputation to the *Son*, by fame and estimation of life and actions) are at least required to make it perfect and compleat; because it cannot naturally and congruously grow to ripeness in the *Son*, unless it hath formerly encreased in the *Father*, and long before begun from the *Grandfather*.

As to this particular, there is a memorable instance in that of the Lord *William Pagit*, deposed of the *Garter*, about five years after his *Election*; upon pretence of his 'not being a *Gentleman of Blood* by either *Father* or *Mother*.

But it is also observable in the *Blue Book*, that this severity towards him proceeded not altogether from defect in point of Extraction, but most from the prevalence and practice of *John Dudley* Duke of *Northumberland* (* by whose means he was most unjustly and undeservedly put out of the *Order*.) haply grudging the great honor he had formerly done the said Lord, when being Earl Marshal of *England*,¹ his good advice and character of him procured from King *Edward* the Sixth, a new Grant of those *Arms*, under the Great Seal of *England*, which he had sometime before^m received from *Garter* Principal King of *Arms*.

But admit the defect of *Blood* and *Arms* for three descents, were the true cause of his deprivation of the *Garter*; yet what follows is mis-related by *Sir Jo. Haward* (as also by *John Stow*) to wit, that the *George* and *Garter* were forthwith bestowed upon the Earl of *Warwick* eldest Son to the Duke of *Northumberland* (who out of curtesie was so called, as commonly *Dukes Sons*, in the lifetime of their *Fathers*, are entituled of some *Earldom*, whereof their *Fathers* have the honor) but more truly had he said, they were bestowed upon *Sir Andrew Dudley*, Brother to the said Duke.

For although we find the said Earl of *Warwick* put in the *Scruteny*, entred among the *Annals* of the *Order*, of *Edward* the Sixth's Reign, and taken at a *Chapter* held on *St. George's* day, an. 6. Ed. 6. (the Lord *Pagit* being degraded in a *Chapter* held on the Eve of the said *Feast*) yet was not the Earl *Elected* at that or any other time; nor was any other person then chosen, who had the honor to be inserted into that *Scruteny*, except the Earl of *Westmerland*, and the said *Sir Andrew Dudley*.

But to return; the *Ensigns* of this most Noble *Order* were not with more disgrace taken from, than with honor restored to the Lord *Pagit*, as soon as Queen *Mary* came to the Crown; and that by as great and absolute authority, as did deprive him of them, namely by Decree in *Chapter*, holden at *St. James's* the 27. of September, an. 1. Mar. so that this Honor might be said, to have been rather wrongfully suspended than justly lost.

For in confirmation of this *Lords* restauration, he had the *Garter* forthwith buckled on his Leg again, by two of the *Knights-Companions* present, and the *Collar* of the *Order* put about his shoulders, with the *George* depending thereat. And a command then also given *Garter*, to take care that his *Atchievements* should be again publickly set up, over his *Stall* at *Windeſor*: being the same he before posselt, viz. the 9. on the *Sovereign's* side.

In this case of the Lord *Pagit*, we observe that the very Records of the *Order*, brand his degradation of injustice upon the foreſaid pretence, as if it were inferable thence, that when Honor is conferr'd upon the score of *Virtue*, and great Endowments, the consideration of these supplies the defect and obscurity of *Extraction*. Whence it came that the then *Sovereign* (whose prerogative it was^y to declare and interpret the *Statutes*) being at that time present in *Chapter*, thought fit to qualifie the Law, and gave him this honorable commendation, ^z That he had ² Lib. C. p. 6. highly deserved of the Nation by his *Prudence* and *Counsel*.

And though the *Exemplar* entred in the *Black Book* hath the qualification of *Virtue* and good Report inserted only into it; yet we observe the same (in effect ^a Art. 2. and practice) considered in foregoing times, with great circumspection, by the *Sovereigns* and their *Licutenants* before *Election*; and that the *Magnanimity*, *Fortitude*, *Prudence*, *Generosity*, *Fame*, *Reputation*, and other *Virtues* and *Merits*, whether innate or acquired, of the Person proposed to *Election*; have been by their prudent Inquisition looked into, deliberately weighed, and brought to the Rule for tryal, as to their fitness and capacity of the honor of this most Noble *Order*.

These

i King Ed. 6.
Diary in Bibl.
Cotton. Sir Jo.
Hawards life
of the said
King. Print.
1636 p. 244.
k A quo pro-
curante Duce
Northumbria
fuerat in multis
fine ac im-
mense de-
turbatus. Lib.
C. p. 6.
l Ex Collect.
m Pat. Arm.
n R. b. Glover
nuper Som-
set. Herald.
f. 45. b.
o Hist. E. 6.
loco cit.
o Chron. c.
f. 1026.
p Dugdales
Aniq. of War-
wickshire p.
339. a.
q Lib. N. p.
r 320. vide
Autogr. pones
prof. Guil. Dug-
dale. See also
King Ed. 6.
Diary in Bibl.
Cotton.
s Lib. N.
t p. 321.

u Lib. C. p. 6.
x

y H. B. Stat.
Art. 1.

z Lib. C. p. 6.

b Ille Nominatus expendens, ut aliis
alii Fortitudine, Prudentia, reliquisq; Vir-
tutibus ac Meritis antecederent, & Comi-
tibus Johannem Comitem Marechallum
(ut vocant) &c. aptissimos atq; quam dig-
nissimos & ob id in Ordinem suscipiendos
esse decrevit. Lib. N. p. 64.
c Ibid. p. 77.

These and such like Qualities we see^b King Henry the Fifth took into his consideration, at an Election in the 9. year of his Reign, and for which he preferred before others (then Nominated and presented unto him) John Earl Marshal, William Earl of Suffolk, John Lord Clifford, Sir Lewis Robert-
sack, and Sir Heer tanke Clux. In like manner did Hum-
frey Duke of Gloucester (Deputy to King Henry the Sixth, in the second year of his Reign) weigh and examine diligently with himself, the Fortitude and Pru-
dence, with other the illustrious Actions and deserts of John Lord Talbot before his Election; and thereunto gave an approbation worthy his own judgment, and not less than that noble Candidates virtue merited.

It is further remembred in the Annals of this Order, that for these and such like noble and heroick Qualifications, persons in after times were likewise preferred in Election before others: And particularly, we observe it taken notice of,

a Lib. N. p. 271 an. 28. H. 8. upon the Election of Sir Nicholas Carew, ^d That he was a very fit person, upon the eminency of his Extraction and Fame, and the many worthy and noble Actions he had performed; so as that all present did without any delay unanimously approve of his Election. Of like nature are those Commendations given to Hen-
ry Earl of Cumberland upon his Election, wherein also particular services are

e Ibid. p. 274. taken notice of, viz. the ^e many famous and loyal Achievements performed by him, both at several other times, and then more especially, when the tumult of Rebellion, began to break forth in those Borders, where he had his habitation.

f E. 3. Stat. Art. 2.
* In Bibl. Hat- ton. Art. 2.
g H. 5. Stat. H. 8. Art. 2.
The second Point is, That unless he be a Knight, he is not qualified for Election; (or as one of the Exemplars express it * unless girded with the unstained Girdle of Knighthood) and the same in terms do the other Bodies of Statutes declare. Whence we may again mind the Reader of the singular regard and jealousy the Law of the Order hath of this particular Qualification, above the rest:

And lest chance or inadvertency might let slip a Person not Knighted into the scrutiny (besides the two former cautions given touching Nomination) yet is it also here (in another Article) a third time remembred and provided against, to secure such from passing through the Sovereign's Election. For this cause also were the words^h *ut minimum* (That he be at least a Knight before he be elected) added as a special Item, to give a more than ordinary caution, when the Sovereign comes to make his Choice.

i Lib. N. p. 246. And to make it clear, that the second Article in the Statutes hath long since received this construction, we shall insert an eminent case, which fell out i an. 17. H. 8. where the Sovereign (keeping the Feast of St. George at Greenwich) having Elected the Lord Roos (created Earl of Rutland, the 18. of June following) into the Society of this most Noble Order, and being^k advertised on the morrow after St. Georges day, while the Mass of Requiem was celebrating, that he had not before received the dignity of Knighthood, according to the Statutes, which positively enjoin, ^l That whosoever is elected into this Society, should be in degree at least a Knight, that is actually Knighted beforehand; for so the words *ut minimum* here in this place also of the Annals vouched, ought justly to be understood, in regard the Lord Roos, was at the time of his Election a Baron of this Realm, and consequently stated in a higher degree of honor than a Knight: The Sovereign therefore immediately after Mass, recalled the Knights-Companions to a new consultation, whereat he declared the Election void, for the reason before alledged, and commanded the Ensigns of the Order, [the Garter and George] so lately received to be withdrawn, which being accordingly done, He in the same place, drew his Sword, and therewith dubbed him Knight, and then proceeded, with the Knights-Companions present, to a new Election, wherein the said Lord Roos was with their unanimous consent again Elected a Companion, and so declared by the Sovereign's own mouth: by whose command also, the aforesaid Ensigns and Ornaments were restored unto, and placed upon him by the Dukes of Norfolk and Suffolk.

m P. 143. And declaratory to this, is it since recorded in the Red Book of the Order, ⁿ That none of the English, Scotch, or Welch Nation, how considerable soever otherwise,

otherwise, in the prerogative of Blood or Virtue, can be Elected into this most honorable Society, but that he ought to be first ennobled and rendred capable by this first Degree of Knightly honor.

But in reference to Foreign Princes being in their own Country, this Law hath now no force; for by a Decree made at Whitehall, in a Chapter there held, the 18. day of April, an. 13. Car. 1. it being the day whereon the Feast of St. n Lib. R. p. 117. George was also celebrated, these words [*ut minimum*] are explained to relate to all subjects, of what Degree soever, within the Sovereign's Dominions (not Foreign Princes) who before their Election at least (if not Nomination) ought to be Knighted, as the Basis and first Degree of Chivalry.

And as they ought to be Knights, so as well Knights free from Infamy or Reproach; for so the Statutes of Institution enjoin. In Henry the Fifth's Statutes it is thus rendred, *Chivalier sans reproche*, which is the same with *Equus irreprehensibilis*. And we find it one of the Arguments used by John Duke of Bedford, on the behalf of Sir John Radcliff, to promote his Election; That he had continued and exercised the Armies, the space of eight and twenty Winters unreprouched.

of Placuit Supremo, ut solos Majestati p^{re}fixe subditos Lex ea comprehenderet, primi hujus gradus expertes; Non autem Principes Exteriores superiori gradu ornatos. Ib. p. 119.

The three points of Reproach. q Art. 2. r Art. 2. s H. 8. Stat. Art. 2. t Ex Autogr. penes W. D. N.

But for as much as the points of Reproach may be accounted many and diverse, and through their incertainty and number, rather become Traps to ensnare, than Rules for caution and direction, King Henry the Eighth determined and limited them to Three only.

The first species or point of Reproach is, where a Knight hath been convicted of Heresie, against the Catholique faith, or suffered any publique punishment for such offence. Here we may see, Heresie is reckoned among those defects that deprive men of Honor, in as much as bending its force against the Catholique Church, it not only renders a man in the ballance of Honor of no weight, but more than all other sins makes him infamous. And therefore when either by Tongue, Pen, or Actions, a man endeavours to trample under foot the sacred Law, scandalizeth Government, seduceth others, or in like execrable wickednesses discovers himself, he is judged void of Conscience and Equity, and a most notorious destroyer of that divine part of man, the soul, and consequently deserving, not of external infamy alone (which the guilt of this Offence justly contracts) but other punishments extending to life.

The second Point of Reproach is, where any Knight hath been arraigned, convicted, and attainted of Treason. Nevertheless Queen Elizabeth qualifies this point by a Decree in Chapter held at the Tower the 12. of January, in the first year of her Reign (which we conceive was made upon occasion of restoring in Blood William Marquess of Northampton, and the Lord Robert Dudley, after created Earl of Leiceſter, who with others had been attainted of high Treason in the first of Queen Mary, and the attainder confirmed by Parliament the same year) viz. That in case any Person (so convicted) were pardoned by the Sovereign, and restored in Blood, every such Gentleman in Name, Arms, and Blood, and descended as aforesaid, being otherwise qualified according to the ancient Statutes of the Order, should be thenceforth accounted Eligible, and might be chosen a Companion. And we find that the very next St. George's Feast, held the 22. 23. and 24. of April following, the said Marquess of Northampton, and the Lord Robert Dudley (who during the remaining part of Queen Maries Reign, lay under the burden of a heavy fate) had now recovered the Priviledges of Honor, and were preferred in Nomination, and on the last day of the said Feast were Elected into this most Illustrious Society.

And here may further notice be taken of the said Marquess of Northampton's case, who having been restored in Blood, and his restauration to the honor of this most Noble Order also designed (for he had been formerly, an. 35. H. 8. a Lib. N. p. 289. ed and Installed) it was thought necessary to descend to a new Nomination and

x Decretum est, si quis ex familia nobili aut generosa procreatus, cujus utriq; parens avus & proavus generosi fuerint, Laie Majestatis vel ante hac condemnatus est, vel post hac condemnabitur, si ei post eam condemnationem a Principe, ignoscatur, ita ut ad familie sue beneficium, Insignia & dignitatem restituatur; talibus ortus majoribus quales antea notati sunt, sitq; hujusmodi qualem ejus Ordinis Leges & Instituta describunt, ut is deinceps Ordinis nobilissimi capax sit, & in ejus Comilitonum adlegi & coaptari rite possit. Ib. p. 29.

y Ibid. p. 294

1. Conviction of Heresie.

2. Attainder of Treason.

w Lib. C. p. 26.

z Pag. 30.

a Lib. N. p. 289.

b Ib. p. 290.

and *Election*, which as may be collected from the aforesaid *Decree* ought now to be done, and was in him accordingly performed, the 3. of June, anno primo Eliz.

3. Flying from Battel.

The third and last *Point of Reproach*, is where a Knight-Companion hath fled from Battel, in which the Sovereign, or his Lieutenant, or other Captain (having the Kings authority) were present, when Banners were displayed, and both sides proceeded to fight. Now for a man to carry himself cowardly in the Field, abandon his Colours, leave his Prince, Friends, and Companions in hazard of life; are undoubtedly things highly reproachful, and draw dishonor upon the Order, the Sovereign, and Knights-Companions; and a sufficient testimony, that he valueth more his life than his honor, and prefers an infamous safety before an honorable death.

If we look back into ancient History, we shall meet with a great Example of Honor and Courage in Judas Maccabens, who though he had but 800 of 3000 men left him (the rest being fled out of fear to encounter Bacchides Army, consisting of 20000 Foot, and 2000 Horse) and those 800 too forward to follow after; yet rather than cowardly forsake the Field (whereby in all likelihood, he might have saved his life which was there lost) he encouraged his Soldiers to receive the onset of his Enemies, with these words, "God forbid that I should do this thing, and flee away from them; if our time be come, let us die manfully for our Brethren, and let us not stain our Honor. And to say truth, the resolution of a right Martialist ought to be either to return with Honor, or die upon the Bed of Honor.

g Lamberts Arch. f. 147. de Heretochitis Edit. Cantabr. 1544.

h Stat. 18. H. 6 c. 19. 3. H. 8 c. 5 2. E. 6. c. 2. 4. c. 1. Ph. & Mar. c. 3. i Stat. 7. H. 7. c. 1.

By the Laws of King Edward the Confessor, where a Soldier in any expedition either by Land or Sea, runneth from his Colours, his life and Estate was made liable to answer the Offence. And sad experience, having from time to time made appear the inconvenience, danger, and loss occasioned by such cowardly and dishonourable departure out of the Field; at length our Parliaments taking the same into serious consideration, made it Felony without benefit of Clergy, forasmuch as this Offence tended to the hurt and jeopardy of the King, the Nobility, and all the Common-wealth. And to secure our Naval Forces, as well as Land Armies, Queen Elizabeth extended the Statute of 18. H. 6. cap. 19. no less to Mariners and Gunners, to all intents and purposes, than to other Soldiers.

* Walsingh. sub an. 1319.

k Lib. N. p. 216.

e Hist. of St. George, part. 3 ch. 3. sect. 6. m E. 7. Aur. Anglo Wirtemb. p. 24. n Hist. Angl. l. 19. p. 378.

But much greater may the danger be, and far more dishonourable to them than private Soldiers, where a Commander in chief, or other Officers (having the conduct of an Army, or any part of it) shall herein offend; of which there is a notable example in Thomas Earl of Lancaster, who an. 12. E. 2. was * proclaimed Traitor for leaving the Army at the Siege of Berwick, the consequence whereof proved the loss of the whole design. And therefore, whoever is culpable of any of these three points of Reproach, is altogether ^kuncapable of Election into this most Noble Order.

Ere we pass further, let us take notice of an Error, which Polydore Virgil hath linked with one, justly observed and refuted by the learned Pen of Doctor Heylin, and which ^mErhardus Celius hath transcribed from the said Polydore; namely, that the Knights-Companions have certain Laws belonging to their Order, whereby they are obliged, "To defend and help one another, and in time of Battel never to betake themselves to shameful flight.

But the first of these Clauses, is not in truth, any part of the Statute-Law of the Order; nor is the latter otherwise to be taken, than as one of those points of Reproach laid down in the second Article of King Henry the Eighth's Statutes; which renders the person nominated incapable of Election, if known guilty thereof.

Now that which gives some umbrage to the Knights mutual assistance and defence, is an Article of the Statutes, which prohibits the arming themselves one against another. For to avoid begetting of Feuds among them, whereby brotherly love might be extinguished (a thing in all Societies specially to be preserved) it was not the Founder's least care to provide against so great a mischief. And therefore he Ordained (which since the ensuing Bodies of

of Statutes have confirmed) * *That none of the Knights-Companions should Arm themselves against any of their Fellows, unless either in the cause of his Sovereign, or his own just quarrel.*

* E. 3. Stat.
Art. 29. H. 5.
Stat. Art. 30.
H. 8. Stat.
Art. 33.

Upon this Clause some of them took hold, when in the great and fatal controversy between the Houses of York and Lancaster, they divided themselves to either side, and both pretended to take part with the King: some sticking close to Henry the Sixth, whom they accounted Sovereign of the Order, both *de facto*, and *de jure*; others taking part with Edward the Fourth, as esteeming him Sovereign *de jure*, though not *de facto*.

But to make the obligation and tie of this most Noble Fraternity more strong, and to preserve a perpetual unity among the Companions thereof, lest they should unhappily engage in factions one against another, specially to the effusion of blood: it was further Ordained, || That if a Knight-Companion should happen to be retained in the service of a Foreign Prince, to take up Arms in his quarrel, and after his Adversary desired to entertain another Knight-Companion on his side also; he that was last invited, was bound to wave the proffer, and in no wise to give his consent. And therefore in all Reteynors of War, the Knight-Companion was obliged to make a special precaution, that his engagement should become void, if any of his Fellows were before retained on the other side. And if at the time of his reteynor, he knew not that another of his Fellows had been engaged with the Adversary, so soon as it came to his knowledge, he was obliged to relinquish the service he before undertook.

Besides these three points of Reproach, in a Manuscript of the Statutes in English, which hath before it the whole preamble to Henry the Eighth's Statutes, and did belong to Henry Grey third Marquess Dorset, Duke of Suffolk, as appears by his Coat of Arms, painted in the beginning of it within a Carter, and his Name subscribed with his own hand, under the Coat; we find a fourth point of Reproach, added to these other Three, in these words.

The fourth point of Reproach is, That if any Knight of the Order from henceforth be prodigality or riot, wilfully and negligently mispend, sell, aliene, or do away his Patrimony or Livelihood, by reason whereof, he shall not be able honourably to maintain himself and his Estate, in such honorable manner, as may conserve the Honor of the said Order and of himself; In this case he shall be summoned by the Usher of Arms of the Order, called the Black Rod, by Commandment of the Sovereign, his Lieutenant, or Deputy to appear before his Majesty, or his Commissioners, and the Knights of the Order, at the next Chapter ensuing, there to be examined before the Sovereign, or his said Commissioners, and the Knights and Companions of the said Order, and if he be found in such great default of Prodigality, insolent Riot, or wilful negligence; That then the Sovereign, with the advice of the Company of the said Order, may depribe and degrade him of the said Order, at the said Chapter, if it be their pleasure.

But this point of Reproach is not inserted into King Henry the Eighth's Statutes; nevertheless the substance thereof appears to have been approved of before: for we find among some Orders prepared in the Chapters held at Windsor, by the Marquess of Exeter, and other Knights-Companions then present, the 25. and 26. days of May, an. 8. H. 8. one of them was something to this purpose.

o Deinde quatenus Equites hoc Insigni Subligaculo decorati, si præclari status oblit, minus honestè viverent, excluderentur ab hac honoranda Societate; nisi communici propere resipuerint. Lib. N. p. 204.

S E C T. XIII.

Of other Inducements for Election.

p (E. 3. Stat. Art. 18.
q H. 5. Stat. Art. 18. H.
r 8. Stat. Art. 19.
s 1. The having most voices.

AMong the number of these *Candidates*, the *Sovereign* is to regard those who have *p* most voices, or whom he conceives likely to contribute most to the honor of the Order, and prove most serviceable to himself, or most useful to his Crown and Kingdom.

t Conimbero.
u Lib. N. p. 84.
w Lib. N. p. 271.
x 24. of April, an. 28. H. 8.

Touching the first of these *Inducements*, the greater number of *Voices*; we find the law hath not been always observed, as from the many *Scrutenies*, entred in the *Annals* will appear, if need were to refer thereunto. Nevertheless it is sometimes noted to have taken place, as at the Election of the Duke of *Quinbere*, an. 5. H. 6. where after a due and sufficient examination had of the *Scruteny* then taken, the said Duke by the consent of most voices, was then Elected into the Stall of *Thomas Duke of Exeter*. This plurality of *Voices* is again taken notice of (among other *Inducements*) for the Election of Sir *Nicholas Carew*, the

y 5. B. p. 81. vii.
z 2. B. p. 81. vii.
aa Chart. ac. f. 13. b.

It is remarkable that one time when the number of *Voices*, on the behalf of two *Knights*, were upon Examination found equal (which hapned in the case between Sir *John Fastolf*, and Sir *John Radcliff*, an. 4. H. 6.) Sir *John Fastolf*, being by the *Sovereign's* Lieutenant esteemed the more worthy of the two, obtained the Election.

a Being most honorable for the Order.
b See the Commission of Legation.

The second *Inducement* relates to such, as in probability may bring most reputation to this Order, or advance the good and prosperity thereof; and these have been chiefly *Foreign Princes*, esteemed so in respect of that high pitch of Honor they attained, and whose eminent Valour and Worthiness proclaimed them deserving, both of *Nomination* and *Election*.

And therefore the late *Sovereign* of blessed memory, upon consideration had of the Glorious Achievements and high Renown of *Gustavus Adolphus King of Sweden*, judg'd it a part of his respect, not only to render him all offices of kindness and friendship, as to a Prince nearly allyed, and his most special friend; but also to impart to him, as far as in him lay, the greatest and highest honors that might be, and especially such wherewith the Military Virtue of a great Captain was wont to be adorned.

But the general consideration, for which the *Sovereigns* thought fit to Elect *Foreign Princes* into this most Noble Society, and to impart to them these Testimonies of Honor, hath been exprest in the *Commissions* of Legation to be in respect of their Glorious Merits, ennobled by the lustre and grace of their Heroick Virtues, their eminent Nobleness, Grandeur, Prowess, and Magnificence, the renown of which, Fame had divulg'd and spread abroad through the World.

c 3. Serviceable to the Sovereign.
d Lib. N. p. 77.
e Ex. Collect. F. W. G.

Thirdly, where the advantage of the *Sovereign's* service was cast into the Balance, it frequently out-weighed other pretensions; insomuch, that (an. 2. H. 6.) the consideration of the Eminent services of *John Lord Talbot*, for his King and Country; appears to be the strongest motive for his Election. And the great zeal and affection which *John Gaspar Ferdinand de Marchin* had, to engage himself in the present *Sovereign's* service and Cause, for the recovery of his just rights (besides his eminent and famous actions, performed in several military Commands, wherein he had been for many years employed) was the strongest inducement that swayed with the *Sovereign*, to chuse him a *Knight-Companion* of this most Noble Order, an. 10. Car. 2.

f 4. And useful to the Kingdom.

But the last of these *Inducements* is of greatest latitude, for thereby the *Sovereign* has power to reject whosoever he pleases, though they exceed in number of *Voices* or other Qualifications, and to Elect a Person, but once named, which appears full enough in the case of *Casimire* the Fourth King of Poland, an. 28. H. 6. who

who having but the single Vote of the Lord *Scales*, yet upon consideration had ^{Lib. N. p. 104.} by the *Sovereign*, how advantageous he might become to his, and his *Kingdoms* Interest, pass'd in *Election*.

And of later times (as appears in some of the Preambles to the *Commissions* ^{See the App.} for carrying the *Ensigns*, &c. to *Foreign Princes*) the advantages which the *Sovereign* has conceived to possess himself of, in the improving, confirming, and establishing of a most strict and inviolable *Bond of Friendship* and fair *correspondency*, between him and *Foreign Princes*, their *Realms* and *Subjects*; hath been a main Inducement to *Elect* such into the *Order*.

SECT. XIV.

That the Sovereign only doth Elect.

UPON the vacancy of any of the *Knights-Companions Stalls*, the *Election* of ^{g. 37 Stat.} new *Knights* appertains to the *Sovereign*, and in some case to his *Lieutenant*; in declaration of which, it is recorded in the *Black Book* of the *Order*, ^{H. 5. § Art. 18.} *That if any stalls fall vacant, it should belong to the Sovereign to Elect new Knights, wheresoever he were resident*; provided he have with him the compleat ^{H. 8. Stat. Art. 19.} number of *six Knights-Companions*; but if he be beyond Seas, wanting that ^{H. 5. § Art. 18.} number, and the *Feast* of *St. George* held by his *Lieutenant* at *Windsor*, ^{H. 8. Stat. Art. 19.} in such case ^{H. 5. § Art. 18.} the *Election* belongs to the *Lieutenant*, who is first to be certified of the *Sovereign's* pleasure, as also who they are that in *His* esteem appear fit persons to be chosen, to the end such *Information* may guide his *Election*.

This power of *Election* is fully acknowledged by the *Knights-Companions* themselves to be in the *Sovereign*, as appears out of their *Letter* sent to King *Henry* the Fifth then in *France*, and dated at *Windsor*, on the morrow after *Saint George's* day, where it is said, ^m *That the Sovereign in what place soever residing, may, as is most fitting, elect into a vacant Stall (there being a sufficient number of Knights called to the Election) such as he shall judge serviceable to his Crown, or do exceed others in deserts, and nobleness of descent.* Observeable herewith is this, that at the publishing the *Election* of *Emanuel Duke of Savoy*, King *Philip* and *Queen Mary*, being at that time, joint *Sovereigns* of the *Order*, it is called, the *Election* of the ** King and Queen*.

This grand *Prerogative* of the *Sovereign*, being not duly considered by *Polydore Virgil*, occasioned his committing a great mistake (and ⁿ *Claudius Cotereus* ⁿ *De jure dy Privileg. Mill.* from him) for speaking of this *Order*, and the succession of new *Knights* into the rooms of those deceased, he hath this passage, ^o *One Knight is received into the room of another deceased, by the Choice and Election of all the rest.* But *Erhard* ^{Angl. Hist.} Celly being as much ignorant of the *Sovereign's* *Prerogative*, and rather more mistaken, sticks not to affirm, ^p *That no person may be received into this Order, not so much as by the Sovereign, unless with the common consent or suffrage of all the Knights-Companions.* ^{Anglo-Witt.}

But these passages are altogether erroneous; the *Knights-Companions* part being only to *Nominate* the Persons (nevertheless qualified as aforesaid) but the right of *Election* remains wholly in the *Sovereign* of the *Order*. For whosoever He designs, appoints, and chuseth, is forthwith admitted: *His* only pronouncing the *Name* of the *Person* in *Chapter* being sufficient.

For after the *scrutiny* hath been taken, and presented to the *Sovereign*, in the manner and order before laid down, He peruseth it himself, or otherwise the *Chancellor*, or other *Officer* of the *Order* that took it, ^q reads it over to him; ^{Lib. N. p. 132.} which

which done, the *Sovereign* (with reference to the considerations before expressed) forthwith resolves upon some one, or more of the *Knights*, named in the *Scruteny*, and thereupon openly and publickly declareth the Name of him, or them, whom he doth *Elect*: by which bare act of Pronunciation, and without any further Ceremony, the Person or Persons so named, stand and become *Elect Knights*: And this is the manner used at the conferring an Election; except now and then the *Sovereign* is pleased to give his reasons why the *Knight* is *Elect* By him.

But though this act of Election be settled by the Law of the Order upon the *Sovereign*, yet is the consent of the *Knights-Companions* thereunto, frequently entred down among the *Annals*, and sometimes mentioned in the *Commissions of Legation to Foreign Princes*: Not that the single act of Election is in truth the act of the whole Chapter, or is invalid or incompleat, without the joint consent of the *Knights-Companions* present at the Election; but their consent so expressed is to be understood, as an honorary respect given them by the *Register*, and signifying rather an applauding or praising the *Sovereign's Choice*, as being in their judgments, according to the merits of the Person *Elect*ed, than a necessary circumstance, contributing to the ratification or strengthening the Election made by the *Sovereign*, as if defective without it.

r *Supremus pro*
Electis tres il-
lustrissimos
Principes (Ducem Brunswick, Comit-
es Salisbur-
g & Carstolen-
sem) pronun-
ciabat, lib. R.
p. 23. *Supre-*
mus Comitum
Northamptonie
Electum pronun-
ciat. Ib.
p. 45. *Supremus*
accepta & per-
pena Nomen-
claturæ Schedu-
la, Electos
pronunciar
Comites Dun-
blie

SECT. XV.

The Scruteny ought to be entred among the Annals.

* E. 3. Stat.
Art. 34. vide
H. 5. Stat.
Art. 30.
¶ Lib. N. p. 235.

Among other the duties laid upon the *Register* and set down in the * *Statutes* of the Order, and *Constitutions* of the Officers; this is one; of which mention is made to this effect, 'That the *Registers* part is to sit down and record for a memorial, the Elections (or *Scrutenies*) and Names of the *Knights Elect*ed. But in succeeding times a scruple arose, whether this need be done, when the *Scruteny* should be taken, yet no Election made?

To clear which doubt, in a Chapter held on Saint George's day, an. 5. Eliz. we find it the *Sovereign's* will and pleasure, that thence forward it should be enacted, and accordingly it was established for a Law within this Order, 'That if any Nominations were taken from the *Knights-Companions*, the same should be entred in the *Annals*, though there were no Election made of any Person into the Order at that time. Which we suppose was so decreed, out of great respect to those *Princes* and Noble Personages, who in future times should by the glory of their actions appear but worthy the honor of Nomination into so Illustrious an Order. And in pursuance of this Decree, there is frequent mention made of the delivery of the *Scruteny* into the hands of the *Register*, to make entry thereof accordingly.

u pag. 82.

For instance, an. 22. Eliz. the *Blue Book* saith, 'That the *Chancellor* himself delivered the *Knights-Companions* Votes to the *Register*, to be committed to writing, for a perpetual memorial; and accordingly the *Register*, as his duty obliged him, having transcribed them, put them into their proper place, with all care and fidelity. In like manner, an. 26. Eliz. After the *Chancellor* had presented the *Scruteny* to the *Sovereign*, he delivered it to the *Register*, to insert among the *Annals* of the Order, who immediately committed it to posterity; after the accustomed form. Again, an. 34. of the same Queen, 'The Votes were delivered to the *Register*, who took care to Record them, according to the usual order. Nevertheless since the aforesaid Law pass'd, the Entry of *Scrutenies* hath been sometimes omitted, either through the *Registers* not calling to memory the duty enjoined by the before mentioned Decree, or else by some accidental miscarriages, or other neglects.

w lib. p. 94.
Cy 100.

x Ind. p. 120.
Cy 131.

As for Example, in some places of the *Annals*, instead of *Scrutenies* we find

Excuses

Excuses entred, as *an. 28. Eliz.* where it is said; That the ^y *Prelate* immediately ^y *Lib. c.* after *Vespers*, presented the *Scruteny* to the *Sovereign*, but because there was ² no ^z *Lib. 103.* Election made of any new *Knights*, in regard of the croud of weighty and pressing affairs, which seemed very much to concern the *Sovereign* and State, it was laid aside, ^a and through neglect lost; at least it came not to the ^b *Registers* hands, as ⁵ *Ibid.* to be inserted in its proper place. So *an. 18. Eliz.* although the *Dean of Windes-* ^b *Lib. p. 73.* for took the *Scruteny* at *Vespers*, on *St. George's day*, nevertheless it is said, ^c *That* ^c *Lib. p. 73.* no Election was made, nor any thing else done. The like Excuse is made, *an. 5. Car. 1.* but the fault is here laid on the *Chancellor*; for though the *Scruteny* had been taken by him during the *Vespers* of the *Feast day*, ^d yet would he not suffer ^d *Lib. R. p. 50.* it to be entred.

In the next place we read, That the *Votes* being presented to the *Sovereign*, *an. 31. Eliz.* ^e they were left with her. And *an. 11. Car. 1.* the ^f *Scruteny* of ^e *Lib. C. p. 113.* non *Earl of Northumberland*, never came to the *Registers* hands, and lastly *an. 33. Eliz.* we only find, ^g that the *Chancellor* delivered the *Votes* to the *Lieute-* ^g *Lib. C. p. 118.* nant, but no mention is there made, what became of them afterwards.

But the *Law* yet remains in force, that all *Nominations* and *Votes* of the *Knights-Companions* ought to be entred among the *Annals*; whether Election be made or not, unless it shall please the *Sovereign*, for any extraordinary reason, upon particular occasions, to forbid it. One Example (and but one) of such a Prohibition we have met with, *an. 40. Eliz.* where ^h by the *Queens* special com- ^h *Lib. C. p. 137.* mand, the *Scruteny* then taken was not recorded among the acts of this most Noble Order; nor is any thing thereof to be found in the *Blue Book*. But it is there also said, that the *Register* took care to set down all the passages as they hapned, ⁱ the *Names* only excepted. ⁱ *Ibid.*

And that it may not seem strange, why the *Scruteny* is not inserted in the *Register*, *an. 44. Eliz.* this account is given, ^k That upon assembling the *Knights-* ^k *Ibid. p. 146.* *Companions*, it seemed good to the *Sovereign* for several urgent Reasons, best known to her self, to give commandment; ^l That for that time they should wholly ^l *Ibid.* forbear all *Scruteny* of *Votes* and *Nomination* of *Persons*; except which, there was nothing wanting to the height of Solemnity at that meeting. But this we find noted in the *Annals*, to be ^m *præter morem*, contrary to the usual Custom. ^m *Ib.*

SECT. XVI.

The Scruteny ought not to be viewed until it be entred.

Hence we are led to take notice of the following passage: It seems the ⁿ *Earls* ⁿ *Ex Colle.* of *Derby* and *Rutland*, two of the *Knights-Companions* (on the morrow af- ^o *Rob. Cooke* ter *St. George's day*, *an. 27. Eliz.*) were desirous to have seen the *Scruteny*, which ^p *Ar. nuper* was delivered into the *Dean of Windesfor's* Custody to be Registered, in pursu- ^q *Clar. R. Armor.* ^{fol. 10.} *ance* of the before mentioned Decree, *an. 5. Eliz.* But he gave them a modest denial, and said ^r it ought not to be seen before it was Registered.

Whereupon the *Earls*, not satisfied with this answer, requested the opinions of the rest of the *Knights-Companions* (present at that *Feast*) in this case; who upon consideration thereof adjudged the point ^s against them. And since this occasion, we have observed it elsewhere noted. ^t That no *Knight-Companion* ^q *Ex Autogr.* ^{pen. prof. J. W. ^{Palmer.} ought to see whom the other hath named.}

SECT.

SECT. XVII.

Of Scrutenies taken, yet no Election made.

It hath often hapned, that though the *Nominations* for *Election*, have been formally taken, presented, and perused, yet hath not the *Sovereign* thought fit at present to make any *Election*, being moved thereunto from several considerations; principally where an intent was to keep open a *Stall*: But this must be understood of such *Scrutenies* as are taken of course, at the *Vespers* on the *Feast day*.

The most notable Example in this kind, is that of *Sigismund* the Emperor, who died in the 16. year of *King Henry* the Sixth, and whose *Stall* was not disposed of till 21. years after, viz. the 37. year of the said *King*; and then determined to be reserved for *Prince Edward*, the *Sovereign's* only Son, he being at that time about six years of age.

This is that Emperor, whose Election (being about the 7. of May, an. 4. H. 5.) is the first Election we find Registered in the *Annals*, where he is styled *Sigismundus Imperator Almanicus*. He was then lately come into England, and so was the Duke of Holland, * cum præclaro Duce de Briga, una ex comitatu Imperatoris (as he is there styled) who hitherto had the ill fortune not to be remembered in any of the Catalogues of *Knights-Companions*, that we have yet met with; nevertheless at the Feast of St. George celebrated at *Windefor*, the day above said, was Elected Knight of this most Noble Order.

And the reserving a Stall was sometimes given by the *Sovereign*, as a reason for deferring his Election; as upon the 4. of October, being the morrow after the Feast of Saint George, held by prorogation at *Windefor*, an. 13. Car. 1. (when the Scruteny, taken the day before, was read over in the Chapter-house) where the *Sovereign* declared, *That he would receive no man into the Order, before his Son Charles*: whereupon, all the *Knights-Companions* gave their fence, *That this resolution, was rather an effect of Justice than fatherly indulgence; since they all acknowledged him to be more a Prince by merit and towardliness of his youth, than by the fortune of his Birth*, at which the *Sovereign* exprest his satisfaction, no otherwise than by silence.

For such like cause, an. 15. Car. 1. when the Scruteny was presented to the *Sovereign*, by the Chancellor of the Order, the 10. of October (being the last day of the Feast, celebrated at *Windefor* by prorogation) the *Sovereign* declared, *That he had a purpose to have chosen Prince Rupert his Nephew, a Knight of the Order, but being then a Prisoner with the Emperor, he would not Elect any at that time*: Whereupon the vacancy of a Stall was reserved.

At other times, we note the pleasure of the *Sovereign* in deferring Elections, to be frequently entred down only in the general, and without expressing the cause, as an. 13. Eliz. on the morrow after St. George's day, upon perusal of the Scruteny by the *Sovereign* in Chapter, held in the Privy Chamber, where the *Blue Book* tells us; *That the said Sovereign made no Election, though there were two Stalls vacant*. Nay although there were found to be three Stalls void, on the Feast days in the 23. 24. and 25. years of the said *Queens* Reign; nevertheless upon receipt of the Scruteny no Election was made by the *Sovereign*, until the following year, viz. an. 26. Eliz. Thus was it in the 2. 8. 11. and 12. of *King James*, where no other mention is made than this, *None were admitted into the Order this year*. And in such case, the *Sovereign* only views the Scruteny, approves of every *Knight-Companion's* Nomination, and gives them thanks.

Sometimes we meet with this Prorogation of Elections recorded, as done at the pleasure of the *Sovereign* only; and at other times, by the *Sovereign*, with the approbation of the *Knights-Companions*.

t Lib. N. p. 4.
MS. in Offic.
Arm. [F. 9.]

f. 19 b.
Lib. N.
p. 119.

u f.
w. Ed. p. 57.
N
v

z f. Lib. R.
p. 132.

b f. Palmer's
c f. Journal
pro an. 1639.
p. 34.

d Pag. 63.

e Lib. C. p. 27.
p. 93.

f C. p. 156.
g Palmer's
large Journal.
p. 20.
h Palm Journ.
pro an. 1639.
p. 34.

To the first of these pertains a memorial entred, *an. 22. Eliz.* on the 24. of April, at a Chapter held before Morning Prayer; where the *Knights-Companions* received notice, *that it was the pleasure of the Sovereign to prorogue the Election* Lib C.p. 84. for that time. And *an. 38. Eliz.* though there was an^k earnest expectation on the morrow after Saint George's day, of the Election of a new Knight, yet^l it seemed † Pag. 132. good to the Sovereign, to prorogue the Election to the following year.

Again, *an. 10. Car. 1.* on the morrow after the Feast day, then celebrated at Windsor, when the *Scedule of Nominations*, taken the Evening before, was presented to the Sovereign in Chapter by the Chancellor, and one place void; † The Sovereign did not think fit to make any Election at all. m Lib.R. p. 97.

As touching the second, we meet with this instance, *an. 27. Eliz.* *That with the concurrent approbation and assent, of the Knights-Companions then assisting, the Sovereign thought fit to put off the Election to another time.* But as to the reason of this seeming difference in the Sovereign's absolute power, yet taking in the *Knights-Companions* approbation, it may be said, as is already spoken, in the act of Election; That though it be the unquestionable prerogative of the Sovereign, to prorogue Elections at pleasure, yet out of respect and honor to the *Knights-Companions*, their approbation hath been sometimes exprest.

SECT. XVIII.

The Penalties inflicted on Knights-Companions who appear not at an Election.

I Astly, to close up this Chapter; where any *Knight-Companion* hath received *Summons* to appear at a Chapter of Election, and doth^o refuse to come, or wilfully withdraw himself, unless he be hindered for some just cause; and the reason of that impediment signified to the Sovereign, under his Seal of Arms beforehand (which if found to be just and reasonable is forthwith allowed and accepted, if otherwise, rejected and disallowed) his disobedience was Ordained to be punished with the payment of *one Mark* (which King Henry the Eighth's Statutes enlarged to *twenty shillings*) to the Dean and Colledge of Windsor, and heretofore disposed towards praying for the Soul of the *defunct Knight*. At his next coming to Chapter, he is to tarry kneeling upon the ground in the midst of the Chapter, before the Sovereign (or his Deputy) and the whole company there present, which penalty he must still undergo, until such time, as finding favour with them he be restored.

And for greater caution this Clause was heretofore inserted in the *Letters of Summons*, as appears (among others) in that which issued out after the death of Sir Robert Dunsfrevile, where after the time and place for Election was certified, and command given to observe both; the Letter closeth thus, *Et se estre ny pouez nous signifier loubz, &c.* And if it cannot be accomplished, that is, if the *Knight-Companion* could not meet at the appointed time, to perform his part in what the Statutes oblige, he should then signify to the Sovereign under his Seal the cause of his impediment; that so he might perceive by his excuse, whether it were worthy acceptance, or he in fault or not. † Regist. Chart. f. 12. b.

CHAP. X.

THE
Investiture
OF A KNIGHT SUBJECT
WITH THE
Garter and George.

SECT. I.

The Notice given to a Knight Subject of his Election.

IN reference to this Ceremony, we are first to premise something, concerning the notice to be given the *Knight-Elect* of his Election into this most Noble Order; whether he be at such time personally at *Windefor*, or other place where the *Chapter* is then held, or employed in some more remote parts within the Kingdom, or elsewhere beyond the Seas, upon the *Sovereign's* Affairs.

To the newly *Elect-Knight*, who upon this acquisition of Honor happens to be at *Windefor*, or wheresoever else the *Chapter* is held, ^a*Garter* (immediately after the *Sovereign* hath signified his pleasure, in Election of the person) is sent out of the *Chapter* to give him notice of it; for we find this employment recorded as part of the ^bduty of his Office, and asserted to be so by the general practice; and (among other Precedents in the *Annals*) upon the Election of the ^cLord Howard, and Sir Henry Marney, an. 2. H. 8. (both then present at Court) it appears that *Garter* was forthwith sent out of the *Chapter*, to give them notice thereof, and to conduct them to the *Sovereign's* presence; where both were invested, with the two principal Ensigns of the Order, the *Garter* and *George*. And upon the like service was he employed, at the Election of Sir^d Nicholas Carew an. 28. H. 8. and of the ^eLord Burghley, and Lord Grey of Wilton, an. 14. Eliz.

And as *Garter* hath been accustomed to carry the verbal notice of a Knight's Election; so also the *Sovereign's* Letters, signifying Election, to a *Knight* then likewise at Court, where the *Sovereign* is pleased (for the greater honor of the Person)

^a Constitut.
^b Ad Official.
Ordin. armen-
tes. c. 4.

^c Ibid.

^d 76. p. 271.
^e Lib. C. p. 66.

Person) to wave a verbal notice, and send *Letters of signification* in its stead. And in such case these *Letters* are drawn up by the *Chancellor* of the Order, and pass under both the *Sovereign's* Sign manual, and Signet of the Order. Such a particular Honor was afforded the present *Sovereign*; to whom immediately after his Election, in a Chapter held at *Windefor*, the *Sovereign* directed the following Letter, presented to him by *Sir John Burrough Garter*, who found him walking in *St. George's Hall*.

f Palmer's
g large Four-
nal p. 7.

Charles R.

OUR most dear and entirely beloved Son, having to our great comfort *Rowes Journ.* seen, and considered the ripeness of your youth, and conceived joyful and *P. 42.* pregnant hopes of your manly virtues, in which we are assured, you will increase to your own honor, both in prowess, wisdom, justice, and all princely endowments: and that the emulation of Chevalry will in your tender years provoke and encourage you, to pursue the glory of heroick actions, befitting your royal birth, and our care and education. We with the Companions of our most Noble Order of the Garter, assembled in Chapter, holden this present day at our Castle of *Windefor*, have elected and chosen you one of the Companions of our Order. In signification whereof, we have sent unto you by our trusty and well beloved servant *Sir John Burrough Knight Garter*, and our Principal King of Arms, these our Royal Letters, requiring you to make your speedy repair unto us, to receive the Ensigns of our most honorable Order, and to be ready for your Installation, upon the 21. day of this present Month. Given under the Signet of our Order, at our Castle of *Windefor*, the 20. of May, in the 14. year of our Reign 1638.

To our dearly beloved
Son Prince Charles.

This is the only Instance we have met with, where a *Letter* was sent to an *Elect-Knight*, and he at the same time present at Court. But when an Election passeth, and the *Knight Elected* is remote from Court, then the general form of the Letter is both to signify his Election, and summon him to his Investiture with the Garter and George: of which see a Precedent in the *Appendix*.

I Num. XVIII.

But where the *Sovereign* is pleased to descend to mention particular services, or other inducements for a *Knight's Election*, there the Preamble of the Letter is worded accordingly: and that this hath sometimes, though but rarely been used, appears thus in that Letter which certified Election to *Sir John Fastolfe*,
We considering the virtuous fidelity you have shown, and the honorable exploits you have done, in the service of our thrice renowned Father, and that in our service also, you (as many others) have given proofs of that honor and those deserts wherewith God hath endowed you, always suffering, as is the part of a good and faithful subject, the pains and toyls of War, for the vindicating and maintaining of our just right, claims, and title; have chosen you one of our Companions of our Order, &c.

III Appendix
Num. XXI.

Where the Letter barely signifies Election; that is, when the *Sovereign* doth not design a present Investiture with the Garter and George, but defers that Ceremony till the *Elect-Knight* comes to *Windefor*, to take possession of his Stall; in such case notice of the day of his Installation is also inserted towards the end of the Letter, and upon his appearance at *Windefor*, so soon as he is called into the Chapter-house, the Garter is first buckled about his left leg, next follows his Investiture with the rest of the Ornaments of the Order, and lastly his Installation. And thus (in the case of *Henry Earl of Cumberland*, an. 29. H. 8.) was the Investiture with the Garter deferr'd, till his appearance at *Windefor*, where that Ceremony, as also his Investiture with the Habit and Collar, and lastly his Installation, were dispatcht at one time.

SECT. II.

His Reception into the Chapter-house.

IF the *Elect Knight* be neer where the *Chapter* is held, and that *Garter* hath been sent forth to give him notice of the Honor, and to usher him into the *Chapter-house* to receive the *Garter* and *George*, before the *Chapter* break up; intimation being given of his approach, the *Sovereign* sends forth two of the *Knights-Companions* to meet him, who after a mutual salute, conduct him between them to the presence of the *Sovereign*, *Garter* going before them.

^a *Lib. C. p. 159.* For instances herein, first of *Strangers*, we shall remember ^a *Ulrick* Duke of *Holstien*, *an. 3. Jac. R.* who being sent for by *Garter*, was introduced into the *Chapter* between *Prince Henry* and the *Earl of Dorset*, and by them presented to the *Sovereign*: So ^b *Christian* Duke of *Brunswick*, *an. 22. Jac. R.* proceeded with much state and honor, in the midst between *William* *Earl of Penbroke* and *Philip* *Earl of Montgomery*, to receive the *Garter* and *George*.

^c *Coll. B. E. d. 2. W. G.* The ^c 6. of *November, an. 14. Car. 2.* *Christian* Prince of *Denmark* being *Elect* in a *Chapter*, held in the *Withdrawing Room* at *Whitehall*, and then absent, *Garter* was sent next day by the *Sovereign*, to give him notice thereof, with desire to be present the following day, at the forelaid place, to receive his *Investiture*; where the *Sovereign* and several of the *Knights-Companions* being assembled, ^d *Garter* was sent out for the Prince (then at the *Earl of Bath's* Lodgings in the matted Gallery) and thence usher'd him into the Lobby between the said Gallery and the *Withdrawing Room*; where he was received by the *Earls of Lindsey* and *Mincheſter*, and conducted between them into the *Chapter*, *Garter* preceding them, and after three obeysances they brought him up to the *Sovereign*.

^e *Lib. C. p. 66.* Among *Knights-Subjects*, we find the ^e *Lord Burghley* and *Lord Grey* were conducted (*an. 14. Eliz.*) to the *Sovereign* by the *Lord Clynton* and *Earl of Bedford*; and ^f *Robert* *Earl of Essex*, *Thomas* *Earl of Ormond*, and *Sir Christopher Hatton* (present at *Greenwich, an. 30. Eliz.* when their *Election* passed) were severally led into the *Chapter*; the first of them between the *Earls of Worcester* and *Penbroke*; the second between the *Lord Hunsdon* and *Lord Grey of Wilton*; and the third between the *Earl of Leicester* and *Lord Burghley*; and as soon as they were brought up before the *Sovereign*, with all Reverence and Humility they fell upon their knees.

^h *Ex lib. C. p. 153.* In like manner, *an. 4. Jac. R.* ^h *Robert* *Earl of Salisbury* proceeded up to the *Sovereign's* Throne, between the *Earls of Nottingham* and *Dorset*; and *Viscount Emdon*, between the *Earls of Suffolk* and *Northampton*. And *an. 22. Jac. R.* the *Earl of Arundel* and *Surrey*, and *Earl of Kelly*, took ⁱ *William* *Earl of Salisbury* between them, and presented him to the *Sovereign*: So also in the *Reign* of his late Majesty of blessed memory, it is remembred, that the ^k *Earl of Northampton* was conducted to his receipt of the *Garter*, in the *Chapter-house* at *Windeſor*, between the *Earls of Penbroke* and *Montgomery, an. 4. Car. 1.* and the *Earls of Danby* and *Moretoun*, being *Elect* also at the same place, *an. 9. Car. 1.* the ^l former of them was conducted to the *Sovereign* by the *Earls of Penbroke*, and *Arundel* and *Surrey*, and the ^m latter by the *Earls of Salisbury* and *Carlisle*. And when the present *Sovereign* appeared upon his Letter of Summons, at the *Chapter* held in the *Withdrawing Chamber* in *Windeſor* Castle, to receive his *Investiture*, two of the senior *Knights, viz. Philip* ⁿ *Earl of Penbroke* and *Montgomery*, and *Thomas* *Earl of Arundel* and *Surrey*, were sent forth to conduct him in, who (ushered by the ^o *Black Rod*) brought him between them up to the *Sovereign*.

^p *Ex Coll. B. E. W. G.* The ^p *Duke of Monmouth* being *Elect* at a *Chapter* held in the *Withdrawing Room* at *Whitehal*, the 28. of *March an. 15. Car. 2.* *Garter* was immediately sent to him in the *Sovereign's* Bedchamber, who being met at the door by the *Earls* of

of *Lindsey* and *Manchester*, *Garter* (the *Black Rod* joining himself to him in the Room) pass'd to the lower end of the Room before the *Duke* and the two *Knights-Companions*, whence they proceeded up to the *Sovereign* with three Reverences.

Lastly, at the Election of ^a *James Duke of Cambridge*, in the same Room at ^q *Ibidem*: *Whitehall* (3. Dec. an. 18. Car. 2.) *Garter* was also sent forth into the Bedchamber, to acquaint him that the Earl of *Manchester* and Duke of *Monmouth* were appointed by the *Sovereign* and *Chapter* to bring him in thither. That done, the said *Knights-Companions* arose and went to the *Duke*, whom meeting at the Bedchamber door, they took their compass about the rest of the *Knights-Companions* (then standing) and brought him between them (*Garter* and *Black Rod* preceding) from the lower end of the Room close before the *Sovereign*.

SECT. III.

The Ceremonies of Investiture with the Garter and George.

THE *Knight-Elect* being thus introduced, and brought to the *Sovereign*, having first with all reverence bowed himself before him, it was usual heretofore to make a short gratulatory speech, in acknowledgment of so great an evidence of the *Sovereign's* royal bounty, and the *Knights-Companions* respects: The substance of such an address, we find coucht in that speech made by Sir *Nicholas Carew*, after he had been conducted into the *Chapter-house* at *Windsor*, to receive his Investiture, an. 28. H. 8. who first ^a giving infinite ^a *Lib. N.p. 271*:
 “ thanks, both to the *Sovereign* and the whole *Society*, for that they had vouch-
 “ safed to receive him into the honor of this most illustrious *Order*, being a per-
 “ son in his own esteem most unworthy thereof; in the next place profess, That
 “ whereas he was preferred in this choice before many others much more de-
 “ serving than himself, it was not to be attributed to his merits, or any thing
 “ by him performed, but meerly to the *Sovereign's* bounty, and the favour of
 “ the *Knights-Companions* present towards him.

The bestowing of so singular an honor, being thus thankfully acknowledged the Ceremony of *Investiture* with the two principal Ensigns of the *Order* begins, first with the *Garter*, as the most ancient and chiefest Ensign, and next with the *George*: but the further Investiture with the *Habit*, and other the Ornaments of this *Order*, are to be compleated at the time of the *Elect-Knights* Installation at *Windsor*.

Now the manner and order in the aforesaid *Investiture*, was anciently as followeth; first the *Elect-Knight* set his left foot upon a Stool, and then one of the *Knights-Companions*, by the *Sovereign's* appointment, as his Substitute, buckled the Enobled *Garter* about his left leg; and this is to be seen in Picture in the margent of an old Draught of the Combats of Sir *John Astley*, set forth in the ^b *Antiquities of Warwickshire*, where the said Sir *John's* Investiture with the *Garter*, is represented after the aforesaid manner. But of late times, the *Elect-Knight* ^c *Ex Coll. A.V. W.*
 “ kneeled on his right Knee, whilst this Ceremony was performed; during which, ^d *Lib. N.p. 201*
 the ^e words of *Admonition* or *Signification* at this part of the *Investiture* are to be read.

The *Forms* of *Admonition* anciently used at the Investiture of *Knights-Subjects* are inserted in the ^e *Appendix*; but that particularly relative to the putting on the *Garter*, is entred in King *Henry* the Eighth's Book of *English Statutes*, and is as ^e *Numb. XXXVI. Art. 27.*
 followeth.

Sir, the loving Company of the Order of the Garter hath received you their
 Brother and Fellow, and in token of this, they give and present you this
 O o 2. present

present Garter, which God grant that you receive and wear from henceforth to his praise and glory, and to the exaltation and honor of the said Noble Order, and your self.

Afterward it was decreed in a Chapter held at Windsor the 5. of August, an. g Lib.Cp.12. 1. & 2. Ph. & Mar. to this effect, ¶ That not only the same Advertisements and Admonitions which were wont to be given to Strangers at their Investitures, should be likewise given to Knights-Subjects, that in time to come should be Elected and Installed; but also, that among the Knights-Companions there should not be any Investiture differing either in Ceremony or Habit.

Hereupon the foresaid words of Admonition at putting on the Garter were left off, and ^h those used at the Investiture of Strangers given and continued to Knights-Subjects; the English Version of which may be seen at the end of the said English Statutes, which thence we have transcribed hither: being pronounced by the Chancellor, if the Sovereign or his Lieutenant be present, otherwise by the Register.

To the laud and honor of Almighty God, his immaculate Mother, and Saint George the holy Martyr, tye or gird your Leg with this Noble Garter, wearing it to the encrease of your honor, and in token and remembrance of this most Noble Order; remembring, that thereby you being admonished and encouraged, in all just Battels and Wars, which only you shall take in hand, both strongly to fight, valiantly to stand, and honorably to have the Victory.

But against the Investiture of the present Sovereign, the words of Signification, being better weighed and considered, were put into this form.

^h Palmer's
large Journ.
p. 8.

^h To the honor of God omnipotent, and in memorial of the blessed Martyr St. George, tye about thy Leg for thy renown this Noble Garter; wear it as the Symbol of the most illustrious Order, never to be forgotten or laid aside: That thereby thou mayst be admonished to be courageous, and having undertaken a just War, into which only thou shalt be engaged, thou mayest stand firm, valiantly fight, and successfully conquer.

The Princely Garter being in manner aforesaid buckled on, and the words of Signification pronounced, the Elect-Knight is brought before the Sovereign, who puts about his Neck the George, pendant at a Skie coloured Ribband; at which part of the Ceremony, the Admonition used at the adorning of an Installed Knight with the Collar of the Order (changing only the word Collar for Ribband) is pronounced; but were thus framed for the before mentioned occasion, of the present Sovereign's Investiture with the George and Ribband.

¶ Ibid.

ⁱ Wear this Ribband about thy Neck, adorned with the Image of the blessed Martyr and Soldier of Christ St. George; by whose imitation provoked, thou mayest so overpass both prosperous and adverse encounters, that having stoutly vanquished thy Enemies, both of Body and Soul, thou mayest not only receive the praise of this transient Combat, but be crowned with the Palm of eternal Victory.

In further progress upon this Ceremony, we shall note, that so great a respect hath been given to Foreign Princes who receive the honor here, that the Sovereign most usually performs the Investiture himself: For so when Philip King of Castile received a personal Investiture, in the Chapter-house k Lib.Mp.194. at Windsor, it was from the ^k Sovereign's own hands, for he took the Garter from the King of Arms, put it about the Kings Leg, and Prince Henry fastened the Buckle.

ⁱ Lib.Cp.79. Queen ⁱ Elizabeth her self buckled the Garter about the Leg of John Casimire, Count Palatine of the Rhine; and hung about his Neck a Gold Chain with the

the *George* at it. The like honor did ^mKing *James* to the Duke of *Holstein* in ^m*16**p. 159.* the third year of his Reign.

And now and then (though seldom) out of special grace and favour hath the *Sovereign* done this honor to a *Knight-Subject*: though when *Queen Eliz.* was pleased to adorn the Lord *Burghley* with the *Garter*, the *Annals* note it to be done as it were ^{by the by}; and *Henry* Earl of *Suffex*, *an. 31. Eliz.* received these ⁿ*16. 66.* *Ensigns* of the Order from the *Sovereign* her self. The like favour did she to ^o*16. p. 113.* the Earl of *Shrewsbury* in the 34. year of her Reign. So also did ^p*16. p. 121.* King *James* invest *Henry* Earl of *Northampton*, with the principal *Ensigns* of the Order; as a ^q*16. p. 159.* person worthy so great an honor: and lastly, his ^r*16. p. 142. &* late *Majesty* of blessed memory, placed both the *Garter* and *George* upon the present *Sovereign*, the 21. of *May* ^{142. vide porro} *1638.* with his own hands. ^{Palmer's Large Journ. p. 8.}

Sometimes the *Sovereign* hath performed but part of the Investiture, and commanded the senior *Knight* to do the rest. Thus when the Earl of *Devonshire*, *an. 13. H. 8.* received these *Ensigns*, it was on this manner; first the *Sovereign* reached out the *Garter* to the Marquis *Dorset*, and commanded him to buckle it about his left Leg, which as he was doing, the Duke of *Norfolk* gave him his assistance; then the *Sovereign* put on the *Gold Chain*, with the Image of Saint ^{Lib. N. p. 211.} *George* at it. At the Investiture of *Christian* Duke of *Brunswick*, *an. 22. Jac. R.* the *Sovereign* put about his neck the *Blue Ribband*, whereat hung the Effigies of ^{Lib. R. p. 23.} *St. George*; and the Earls (who introduced him to the *Sovereign's* presence) buckled on the *Garter*. The like did the ^u*16. p. 45.* late *Sovereign* to *William* Earl of *Nor-* ^{Lib. p. 89.} *thampton*, *an. 4. Car. 1.* at which time the Earl of *Penbrooke* fastened the *Garter* about his left Leg; and *an. 9. Car. 1.* the Earls of *Danby* and *Moreton* were both of them invested with the *George* by the *Sovereign* himself, while the Earl of *Penbrooke* invested the former, and the Earl of *Carlisle* the latter, with the *Garter*.

So also (since the *Sovereign's* happy return) in the cases of the Prince of *Denmark*, the Dukes of *Monmouth*, *Cambridge*, and *Albemarle*, was the Investiture begun with the *George*.

And thus we see, that *an. 22. Jac. Reg.* the order of Investiture began to be inverted, the *George* and *Ribband* being then first put on, and the *Garter* last: Nevertheless, the *Garter*, as it was the first, so the principal and most worthy *Ensign* of the Order, and therefore in the practice of all former times, thought fit to have the precedence of Investiture given it; and was so observed at the Investiture of the present *Sovereign*.

Lastly, the Investiture with these two *Ensigns*, hath for the most part been heretofore performed by the two senior *Knights*, and at the command of the *Sovereign*, but always in his presence, the *Chapter* sitting; but if absent, then by his *Lieutenant*: and so it hapned *an. 31. Eliz.* for the Lord *Buckhurst* being Elected at *Whitehall*, upon the 24. of *April* that year, and coming to Court (having no knowledge of his Election) after the *Sovereign* was risen (yet leaving the *Chapter* sitting) her *Lieutenant* invested him both with the *Garter* ^{Lib. C. p. 113.} and *George*.

The Solemnity of Investiture being compleated, the *Elect-Knight* recollecting himself with all befitting humility, renders thanks to the *Sovereign* for these ^{Lib. N. p. 211.} Tokens and *Ensigns* of Honor, and after, with due respects, salutes the *Knights-Companions*, ^z who thereupon re-salute the *Elect-Knight*, and joyfully receive him into their Fellowship and Society. ^z *Palmer's Large Journ. p. 9.*

In case two or more *Elect-Knights* receive the honor of this Investiture at one time, then so soon as the senior hath been Invested, and his humble thanks presented, he ^{*} passeth down towards the *Chapter-house* door, and there stands, while the next junior is in like manner invested; which Ceremony being ended, he also goes down, and stands with the other *Elect-Knights*; and so do the rest in order (if there be more present, that attend their Investiture) until the *Chapter* break up. ^{* Ex Coll. A. V. W.}

SECT. IV.

Of sending the Garter and George to an Elect-Knight Subject.

Where a Knight-Subject at the time of his Election is remote from Court, or beyond Sea, and the Sovereign determines to send him the two principal Ensigns of the Order, the charge of this employment doth of right belong to * Garter; and herein there are divers Precedents. Sir Thomas Wriothesley Garter, was sent to the Earls of Arundel and Westmerland, with the Garter and George, an. 17. H. 8. So also was Sir Gilbert Dethick Garter, sent upon the like employment, to the Earl of Westmerland an. 6. Ed. 6. to the Earl of Suffex, an. 1. & 2. Ph. & M. to the Lord Grey of Wilton, an. 3. & 4. Ph. & M. to the Earl of Shrewsbury, an. 3. Eliz. to the Earl of Bedford, an. 6. Eliz. to the Earl of Warwick an. 5. Eliz. (being then at Newhaven in France) to William * Earl of Worcester an. 12. Eliz. to William Lord Cobham an. 26. Eliz. and to the Lord Scroop the same year who then was at Carlisle in Cumberland.

This Investiture of the Lord Scroop, was the last action in this kind, which Sir Gilbert Dethick performed; who had served four Sovereigns of this Order, an Officer of Arms, the space of 65. years, whereof he had been Garter 38. years, and having most worthily and faithfully accomplished his service, upon his return to London from Carlisle aforesaid, he languished by the space of ten weeks or thereabouts, and dyed the 3. day of October, an. Dom. 1584. in the 81. year of his age.

* Constitut. ad Official Ordin. attribentes c. 4.
a Ex vet. MS. an. 17. H. 8.
b Vincent gen. p. 159.
c Ex Col. lea. W. le N. Cl.
d Lib. C. p. 44.
e Ibid p. 96.
f Ex Colle. E. W. G.
g Ex Colle. W. le N. Cl.
h
i
m

The Letters heretofore sent from the Sovereign along with these Ensigns of the Order to the Elect-Knights, have for the most part been drawn after the form of those certifying Election; only instead of the last Clause, which therein requires the Elect-Knights repair to the Sovereign: for receiving the Garter and George from him, in these was an allowance to use them, as to their Election appertain.

n Appendix. Num. XIX.

And these were the two general forms of Letters, sent upon the foresaid occasions: all further difference lay, not in the body, but direction of the Letters, which were evermore worded according to the quality of the person to whom sent: as to a Knight Batchellor, the direction was, *To our trusty and wellbeloved, &c.* to a Baron, *Right trusty and wellbeloved, &c.* to an Earl, *Right trusty and right wellbeloved Cousin, &c.* and to a Duke, *Right trusty, and right entirely beloved Cousin, &c.*

o Appendix. Num. XX.

But we observe the forms of those Letters, sent upon like occasion to Knights-Subjects, when the present Sovereign was beyond the Seas, were pen'd after another manner, and (the necessity of those times requiring) contained some other particulars, namely (besides a large preamble relative to the Election of Knights, eminent for noble birth and heroic virtue) additional clauses of (1.) Power to wear the Star of Silver about St. George's Cross: (2.) The great Col- lur of the Order: And (3.) to stile themselves Knights and Companions of the Order of the Garter, in as ample manner as if they had been Installed at Windsor; with an assurance of receiving the whole Habit there, when the Sovereign was restored to the possession thereof.

p To the Duke of Ormont Marq. of Mor. trost, &c.

q Letters to Duke Hamilton. Marq. of Newcastle, &c.

And it appears from some of these Letters, that by reason Sir Edward Walker Garter was otherwise employed in the Sovereign's service, when they were sent, therefore the Sovereign made choice of other persons to carry both the said Letters and Ensigns of the Order, nevertheless reserving unto him as Garter, the rights of his Office.

Howbeit, the said Sir Edward looking on the disposing this employment to others, as an invasion upon the rights of his Office, and having a just regard to the preservation of the interest of his Successors, no less than his own; humbly petitioned the present Sovereign for redress, and obtained his gracious Reference thereupon to several Knights-Companions of the Order, to examine the matter,

matter, and make report both what they found, and what they thought fit to be done therein; upon whose Report the *Sovereign* did him full right, by his gracious Declaration. All which Proceedings we think necessary to infer here, for clearing and settling the interest of so ancient an Office.

To his sacred Majesty, Sovereign of the most Noble Order of the Garter. [Ex Coll. E.W.G.]

The most humble Petition of Sir Edward Walker Knight, Garter, Principal King of Arms, and Officer of the said Order.

In all humility representing,

That by the especial favour of his late Majesty your Royal Father, of ever glorious and blessed memory, he was created Garter Principal King of Arms, and was thereby to enjoy all immunities and advantages thereunto belonging, as amply as any of his Predecessors.

That since your Majesties accession to the Crown, he hath by right continued in the said Office, it being granted during life by Letters-Patent.

Notwithstanding which, there have lately some disputes arisen about the execution of that part of his Office, wherein he conceives himself most concerned, and for which his Office was at first erected.

He therefore, in all humility, appeals to your Majesty, as Sovereign of the said Order, and Protector of the Officers thereof, for the vindication of his just rights, which were never questioned, until this time of general Invasion, hoping clearly to make it appear.

First, when any Foreign Prince is chosen, that the Ensigns of the Order are sent and delivered him by an Ambassador, and Garter joined with him in the presenting thereof.

Secondly, that until this time of Rebellion (wherein your Majesty cannot formally either Elect, or Install any Subject) the Garter hath rarely been sent to any of them, but according to the Statutes was always delivered them in the Chapterhouse, Garter, and the rest of the Officers of the Order assisting.

To prove the first, he refers himself to the Statutes, and to the constant practice; As for example, the Garter was delivered by the Earl of Arundel, and Garter King of Arms, to Philip the second King of Spain, in the time of Queen Mary. By the Lord Spencer, and Sir William Dethick Garter, in joint Commission with him, to the Duke of Wertemberg, in the first year of King James. By the Lord Carleton, and Sir William Seagar, to Maurice Prince of Orange. By Mr. Peter Young Gentleman Usher, and Mr. Henry St. George, Richmond Herald, Deputy to Sir William Seagar Garter, to the King of Sweden, by whom they were both Knighted; and, as he remembers by Sir William Boswell, and Mr. Philpot Deputy to Sir John Burrough Garter, to the now Prince of Orange, from all which, Garter and his Deputies received large and honorary rewards.

To the second, by the Statutes, no Knight chosen or elect shall be installed by Attorney, except he be a Stranger, or banished without the Realm, for the affairs of the Sovereign; nor receive the Garter, but in Chapter, so that the sending of the Garter to any Subject, rarely happens. The only example he remembers, is, of that sent by Garter to the Lord Scroop President of the North, in Queen Elizabeth's time. As for the other alledged of that sent to the Earl of Holland, into France, it is subsequent in time, and was only the delivery of the Garter, and no completing of the Order, and may (if it were so) for ought appears to the contrary, have been done by Garter's consent. Besides, he is in the affirmative, and so to be believed touching the rights of his own Office and Profession, before others that understand them not.

By all which he hopes it is evident, That Garter is the proper Officer to be sent with an Ambassador, to present the Order to a Foreign Prince, and that your Majesty sends not Embassadors, to your own Subjects. So then it follows,
when

when any such cases happen (as of late have done) that Garter only, or his Deputies, and none other, ought of right to be employed therein.

Wherefore, not to mention at large, how that your Majesty hath by your Royal Letters, with dispensation, fully invested eight most noble and eminent persons with the Order, and all the rights and honorary advantages thereof, and his preparing the Letters, and settling the manner and form, without any notice taken of him for doing thereof as yet, and that a great advantage hath been made by another, by performing that, which he hopes fully to evidence is the right of his Office.

He doth therefore in all humility appeal unto your Majesty, Sovereign of the said most Noble Order, beseeching that he may be heard, to make the particulars appear, either before your Majesty alone, or attended by as many of the Companions of the Order, Peers and Council, as your Majesty shall please to call to that purpose, or by any other way that shall seem best to your Majesty: And that he who hath disputed it may be present, and then if it shall appear that the right is his, that he may have your Majesty's Declaration to fortify it, with direction, that the same be entred in the Register Book of the said Order, that so the Precedents that have been of late made, may not for the future be brought in example against him, or his Successors, to the prejudice of his right, and the loss of the greatest honor and advantage of his Office. The which will more reflect on him than any that have held that Office formerly. He having had the extraordinary happiness to enjoy more of his Sovereign's favours and employments, than any of his Predecessors.

And (as in duty bound) he shall ever pray, &c.

At the Court at Breda the 21. of April 1650.

His Majesty is graciously pleased to refer the consideration of this Petition, to the most honorable Lords, the Dukes of Buckingham and Hamilton, and the Marquess of Newcastle, Companions of the most Noble Order of the Garter, to examine the Allegations of this Petition, and such other proofs as the Petitioner shall produce, for the justifying of his right; and thereupon to make report unto his Majesty what they find, and think fit to be done therein.

Rob. Long.

Breda 27. May 1650.

WE George Duke of Buckingham, William Duke of Hamilton, and William Marquess of Newcastle, Knights of the most Noble Order of the Garter, having read and considered the within written Petition, do find the Allegations therein mentioned to agree with the Statutes and ancient practice of the said Order. And that Garter King of Arms, and his Deputies, ought to bear all Letters-Patents, appertaining to the Brethren of the said Order, and all Elections to the Knights-Elect. And we do therefore make this Report to your Majesty, to the end you may be pleased to maintain the Petitioner in his just rights. And that no examples lately made may be brought in Precedent against him, or his Successors in the said Office.

G. Buckingham.
Hamilton.
W. New-Castle.

His

*His Majesties Declaration of the Rights of Garter King of Arms
to Sir Edward Walker.*

Charles R.

CHARLES the second of that name, by the Grace of God, King of Eng-^{Ex cod. Col-}land, Scotland, France, and Ireland, Defender of the Faith, &c. ^{lett.} And Sovereign of the most Noble Order of Saint George, called the Garter. To all and singular the Princes and Peers, Knights and Companions of the said most Noble Order, Greeting. Whereas we have for the continuation and honor of the said most Noble Order (in this time of general Rebellion in our Dominions) by our power, as Sovereign of the said Order, lately Elected into the Fellowship thereof, divers eminent persons, whom for their great Nobility, Courage, and Fidelity, we have esteemed worthy of the same; and have by our necessary dispensations, fully invested them with all the honorary privileges and advantages thereof, and have employed divers of our Servants, and others unto them, with Letters missive declaring the same. And whereas we have been by the humble Petition of our trusty and well beloved Servant, Sir Edward Walker Knight, Garter, principal King of Arms, and Officer of the said Order, informed, That by the Statutes and ancient practise of the Order, when any of our Predecessors, have Elected any Foreign Prince thereinto, that the Ensigns thereof were always sent and delivered by an Ambassador, and Garter King of Arms joined with him in the doing thereof. And that when any of our Subjects was Elected, the Garter was delivered him in the Chapter-house, or (being employed abroad) was sent unto him by Garter King of Arms Officer of the said Order. All which we having taken into our consideration, were graciously pleased for the preservation of the rights of the Officers of the said Order, to refer the examination of the particulars unto our right trusty and entirely beloved Cogens and Counsellors, George Duke of Buckingham, William Duke of Hamilton, and William Marquess of New-Castle, Knights and Companions of the said most Noble Order, who upon due examination of the particulars, have made their Report, That they find all the allegations above-mentioned, to agree with the Statutes and ancient practice of the said Order. And that Garter, King of Arms, and his Deputies, ought to bear all Letters Patents appertaining to the Brethren of the said Order, and all Elections to the Knights Elect; Wherefore, to the end that the rights and privileges of the Officers of the said Order may be fully preserved and established, We are graciously pleased (by the advice of the said most Noble Companions) hereby to declare, that although we have (in regard of the other employments of the said Sir Edward Walker Garter, in our service) sent the said declaratory Letters with the Garter, by others, unto the persons Elect, yet that the doing thereof shall not be brought in example against him the said Sir Edward Walker Garter, or his Successors in the said Office, to the prejudice of his right, We being fully satisfied, that it is his right, and properly belongs unto his Office, as Garter, King of Arms to perform the same. And we do therefore hereby command, that an Entry be made hereof, in the Book of the said most Noble Order, by the Register thereof, as soon as conveniently it may be done, To the end it may appear, we have preserved the said Garter King of Arms, and his Successors in their just rights, and that he hath not failed to prove the same. Given at the Castle at Breda this 28. day of May, in the second year of our Reign. Anno Domini 1650.

By his Majesties command

Rob. Long.

P p

We

We shall further add, that together with the *Letters* signifying an Election and the *Ensigns* of the Order, it was anciently in use, to send the *Book of Statutes* under the Common Seal of the Order, no less to a *Knight-Subject*, than (in like case,) to a *Stranger*; and to the same end, *viz.* that he might peruse and advise thereupon, whether he would accept of the Election or not: for so it appears by the "Letters signifying Election sent to Sir John Fastolf, an. 4. H. 6.

u *Appendix.*
Num. XXI.

w *Palmer's*
Large Journal
p. 45.
x *Ibid.* p. 43.
y 53.

Within a few days after his Highness Prince Rupert was Elected into this Order (being then in Holland) a^w *Commission* of Legation was prepared to be sent thither with the Garter and George by Sir John Burrough Garter, to perform the Investiture with them: but Sir John* falling sick and dying, prevented the designed Ceremony. Nevertheless, some while after the Prince had been in England, the then Sovereign thought fit to command Sir James Palmer Chancellor of the Order to attend his Highness, to declare the reasons, why the said *Commission* was not sent and executed, as was designed, as also to deliver him the *Commission* it self; to the intent (being prevented of receiving his Installation at Windsor, because that Castle continued in the possession of the Rebels) it might remain with him as a memorial of this Sovereign's Princely favour, and respect to his quality and merits, as also for a further evidence of his admittance into this Noble Order, since there was no other memorial thereof, but the minutes of his Election and this *Commission*.

y { *Page*, 48.
z {

On * Monday therefore the 14. of Jan. 1644. the said Chancellor accompanied with Dr. Chr. Wren Register, and Sir Edward Walker, then newly made Garter, attended the Prince at his Lodgings in Oxford, who having notice of their coming, received them with all obliging civility: and after a little pause, the Chancellor made known to his Highness the Sovereign's Commands in the following Speech.

* *Ibid.* p. 49.

* May it please your Highness,

THE Kings of England Sovereigns of the most Noble Order of the Garter, ever since that honorable Foundation, have thought fit (not only for the reward of eminent services done by their own Subjects, but also for encouragements to noble acts of Chivalry and virtue, and partly for further augmentation and extension of the renown and honor of that most Noble Society) have made it so estimable amongst all the Foreign Princes of Christendom, that they have not thought their Names sufficiently advanced, till they have been taken notice of by this Princely Society, and Elected into this most Noble Order of the Garter. Which Election hath been so welcomed, even to the Emperors and Kings of highest degree of Renown in Europe, that no tie of alliance, amity, or league hath proved a stronger bond of affection between this and Foreign Crowns, than that of the Companionry of the most Noble Order of the Garter; in which nine Christian Emperors, fifty five crowned Kings, and four hundred Princes and Peers, having taken the Oath of homage and fealty to the King of England, as their Sovereign in the said most Noble Order, have already had their Names and glorious Acts registred in the Records thereof.

According to which Example of his Majesties Progenitors of famous memory, his Majesty King Charles my Master Sovereign of the most Noble Order of the Garter, did at a Chapter held at his City of York, the 20. of April in the 18. year of his Reign (when though many stalls remained vacant) yet did think fit then to elect but two Knights only; namely, Prince James Duke of York his Son, and your Highness his Nephew; whom his Majesty thought worthiest to make choice of, not only for your Princely descent of Blood, but for his own particular interest in that noble consanguinity (as being the Son of his only beloved Sister the virtuous Queen of Bohemia) and for many eminent virtues besides (as well heroical as moral) inherent in your person.

And that his Majesties affection to you might be the more emphatically expressed, he elected your Highness a Companion of the Order in the company of

of his own Son, both to manifest thereby the intimatedness of affection to your Highness, as well as to shew Prince James his tender years, a glorious pattern for his Princely imitation of valour and martial Achievements; in which choice, his Majesty did not prove himself a King of Grace and Goodness only, but a King and a Prophet also; as if he could by his foreseeing judgment divine, how happy an instrument of valour and safety you would after prove, to his Crown and dignity, in their greatest distresses. In the conduct of whose Armies, your Highness hath hitherto been so prosperous and successful, that it will be my duty to truth, as well as to the propriety of my Office, to give a timely recordation of each particular to the Register of the Order, that he may eternize the memory of your noble Acts, to remain in the Records of the Order, that posterity may know as well as we find, what happy assistance your Princely Conduct (of his Majesties Armies) hath brought to his Kingdoms and Dominions.

Sir, the Reasons and Motives of this your Election being so many, it behoves me now to inform your Highness, the reasons why this Commission hath not been sooner delivered unto your hand; and those are, that immediately upon your Election at York, his Majesty commanded me to draw up a Commission of legation to Sir John Burrough Knight (then principal King of Arms and Garter) to bring the Ensigns of the Order, together with the notice of your Election, unto your Highness then in the Low Countries, and to perform the same with all the Solemnities thereunto belonging. Another Commission also under the Broad Seal of England was directed to the right Honorable the Earl of Arundel and Surrey, Earl Marshal of England; and to the Lord Goring his Majesties Ambassador extraordinary with the States of the United Provinces; to give your Highness the honor of Knighthood, a Ceremony always by the Statutes of the said Order necessarily to be performed to any Elected Knight, before he can be admitted to be a Companion, and receive the Ensigns of the Order of the Garter. But the said King of Arms then falling sick shortly after dyed, and your Highness suddenly coming in person into England, that Ceremony was prevented by those casualties, and his Majesty at Nottingham himself performed that Office, in delivering both the Garter and George unto your Highness; since which time your continual employments in his Majesties Wars, and your absence thereby necessarily enforced from Oxford (where the Commission and Seals of the Order remained) the delivery thereof was necessarily delayed till this present; when his Majesties express command to me, and to those Gentlemen Officers of the most Honorable Order, is to deliver it now unto your Highness hands, considering the place of your Installation at the Castle of Windesore is necessarily prevented (by reason of the possession thereof by the Rebels) and no other memory, but your Election and this Commission remains upon Record. But his Sovereign Majesty is so desirous to invest you and the Prince his son, in the full privileges of the said Order and Society, that as soon as a competent number of Knights can be assembled to make a Chapter, his Majesty determines to consult of a course how the Installation at Windesore may (if possibly it can) be dispensed with, that rather than you should be deprived longer of the full enjoyment of all rights of Installation, his Majesty is fully determined to make ordinary rules of Ceremony and Order, to give place to extraordinary Examples of merit and fidelity, already so amply performed by your Highness to his Crown and dignity, which is the sum of what his Majesty hath commanded me to present unto your Highness, which he desires you to take in good part till the rest can be performed.

At the ending of this Speech, Sir * James Palmer presented the Commission to the Prince, who gave his Majesty many humble thanks for this gracious Message, and acknowledged his Majesties favours far beyond his desert; but promised he would study to be more worthy by his actions, than in return of words, with many thanks to the Chancellor and the other Officers of the Order for their pains: whereupon they took their leave, and the Chancellor went immediately to his Majesty, and rendered him an account of this Employment.

SECT. V.

The Manner of a Knight's Investiture.

^a Appendix.
N^om. XXI.

IN ancient time it was part of the Ceremony, belonging to the *Investiture* with the *Garter*, of an *Elect-Knight* (whether a Stranger or Knight Subject) to give him an Oath, which we find called, *The Oath in such cases accustomed to be taken*, and was to this effect, that the Knight ^ashould well and faithfully keep and observe, so far as God should enable him, all that was contained in the Statutes of the Order. But we find not of late, that the taking such an Oath, at performing this Ceremony hath been imposed upon any but Foreign Princes, of which anon.

^b Appendix.
N^om. XXII.

It is also observable that an. 4. H. 6. a particular ^bCommission issued to the Earls of *Warwick*, *Salisbury*, and *Suffolk*, with power to any two or one of them, to receive this Oath from Sir *John Fastolf*, upon his Investiture: And this was besides the Oath, which his Proctor was afterwards to take at Installation, as is manifest out of the Letters of Procurator, whereby the said Sir *John Fastolf* gave to his Proctor license to take on his behalf, ^csuch Oath as should be required at the time of his Installation.

^c Reg^{ist}. Char-
tac. fol. 14. b.

As to the Ceremony and manner of Investing a *Knight-Elect* with the *Garter* and *George*, albeit we have discoursed thereof before, we nevertheless think it necessary to subjoin two or three considerable Instances as most proper to this place.

^a MS. p. 3.
^b 2

When ^a*Philip* Prince of Spain, an. 1. *Marie*, had these *Ensigns* of the Order sent him, the sovereign joined *Garter* King of Arms, with the Earl of *Arundel* to perform the *Investiture*, who upon notice of his arrival on the Coast of *England*, set forward on their journey to *Southampton*, where on ^bFriday the 20. of July, they took Water, and meeting the Prince before he landed, entered his Barge, ^cand gave him notice of his Election in a short speech, which being ended, *Garter* having the *Garter* in his hand, ^dkissed it, and so presented it to the Earl, who forthwith fastned it about the Princes Leg: in like manner *Garter* presented the Earl with the *George* hanging at a Chain of Gold, who put it also about the Princes neck.

^c 15. p. 4.
^d 15. p. 4.
^e 15. p. 4.

The Ceremony of *Investiture* being thus performed, the Prince came on shore at *Southampton*, and on the uppermost stair there were ready attending his landing, the ^eMarquess of *Winchester*, Lord high Treasurer of *England*, with divers other Lords; the Prince gave the ^fLord *Williams* his White Staff, and made him Lord Chamberlain of his Household; and Sir *Anthony Brown* Master of his Horse, presented him from the Queen a Horse with a Footcloth of Crimson Velvet, richly embroidered with Gold and Pearls, having the Bridle and all other Furniture suitable, whereon he rode to the Cathedral, and after Prayers to the Lodgings prepared for him.

Touching *Garter's* Investiture of the Earl of *Warwick*, at *Newhaven* in *France*, the first of May, an. 5. *Eliz.* it was as followeth,

^d MS. fol.
^e 2 penes W.
^f N. Cl. f. 10. b.

First *Garter* repairing to the Earls Lodgings, ^aput on his Mantle in the next Chamber to the Earls, and thence proceeded into the Earls Chamber, where having made three Reverences, he buckled the *Garter* about his left leg, and next put on the *George* and *Ribband* about his neck; reading to the Earl the words of *Signification*, appointed to be pronounced at the Investiture; which done, *Garter* retired into the Room, where he had put on his Mantle and there disrobed himself, and so the Ceremony ended.

And it seems to have been a custom about these times, for the Nobility and others, the Allies or Friends to the *Elect-Knight*, to send unto him by *Garter* several *Garters* and *Georges*, as tokens of congratulation for the Honor he was
at

at this time to receive; which so soon as the *Investiture* was finished, and *Garter* returned from putting off his Robe, he delivered unto him, with the particular services and respects of those his Friends who had so bestowed them; for such we find to have been sent by *Garter*, and presented to the aforesaid Earl of *Warwick* at *New-haven*, and to the Lord *Scroop* at *Carlisle*, an. 26. *Eliz.*

At *Garter's* return to Court, he is obliged to deliver an account to the *Sovereign* how he hath discharged his employment, and therewith by special directions from the *Elect-Knight*, also presents the highest thanks he can express, as well to the *Sovereign* as the rest of the *Knights-Companions*, for honoring him with a reception into so illustrious an Order.

We shall close this section, with a brief account of the *Investiture* of his Highness the late Duke of *Gloucester* at the *Hague*, on *Easter-day* in the morning, being the 14. day of *April* 1653. in reference to which Ceremony there was provided,

1. A *Garter* with the Motto, to be tyed about his left Leg.
2. A *George* in a *Ribband*, to put about his Neck.
3. An embroidered *Cross* of *St. George* within a *Garter* and *star*, to be sowed on the left shoulder of the *Dukes* Cloak.
4. A *Velvet Cushion*, whereon the *Ensigns* and *Ornaments* of the Order, as also the *Letter* signifying his Election, were to be laid.

Moreover, for the honor of the Order, and his said Highness, Sir *Edward Walker* *Garter*, humbly proposed as followeth.

That he might be assisted by two or four *Knights*, in performing his duty.

That his Highness the Duke, might receive the *Ensigns* of the Order, in the Presence Chamber of the *Princes* Royal, or in his own, accompanied with the Queen of *Bohemia*, her Highness Royal, and some other persons of Honor and Quality.

That his Highness having placed himself under the State, *Garter* should take the Cushion upon his Arms, on which were to be laid all the particular Ornaments above mentioned; and being assisted with the *Knights*, and a passage left for him to make his three obeysances, he should proceed up towards the Duke, and lay the Cushion with the Ornaments on a Stool set neer his Highness for that purpose.

That he should signifie to his Highness, in few words, the cause of his coming; and then deliver into his hand the *Sovereign's Letter*.

That his Highness having received it, should break it open, and deliver it back to *Garter* to read, which he having done should return it to his Highness.

That after this, he should proceed to the *Investiture* of his Highness with the *Ensigns* of the Order.

Which having finished, briefly to represent unto his Highness, in a Speech somewhat of the quality and splendor of the Order.

And lastly, to kiss his Highness hand, and attend what he should please to say and so depart.

According to these proposals and in the same order, were all things performed; and the Speeches then made to his Highness by Sir *Edw. Walker*, and first that signifying the cause of his coming was as follows.

May it please your Royal Highness,

Ex cod. Col.
leff.

His sacred Majesty the King your Royal Brother, Sovereign of the most Noble ancient and renowned Order of Saint George, called the *Garter*, hath commanded me *Garter Principal King of Arms* and Officer of the most Noble Order, humbly to attend your Highness, and from his Majesty to deliver unto your Highness the *Ensigns* of that most Noble Order, together with *Letters* of Dispensation, for the present investing your Highness in all the honorary Ornaments and accidents thereof. And because the Reasons inducing his Majesty to Elect your Highness, into this most Noble Society and Fellowship of the Order, are best express'd in his Majesties graci-

ous

ous Letters, I do humbly present them unto your Highness, that they may be read, and then I shall proceed in full obedience to his Majesties Commands, to Invest your Highness with the Garter and George therewith sent.

Having spoken this, he proceeded to the *Investiture*, which being finished, he thus continued his Speech.

Now that your Highness is by his Majesties Royal Election and Dispensation for the present Invested, and made a Companion of this most Noble and famous Order, I shall humbly presume (according to the obligation of my Office) succinctly to represent unto your Highness, somewhat of the antiquity and reason of the Institution, what qualifications are requisite to all persons Elected, and how in all ages (since the Institution) this Order hath been highly valued and esteemed: All which, I believe, your Highness having lived from your Cradle under the power and barbarous restraint of the most unparallel'd Rebels and Traytors usurping in England, hath not yet known.

And first, for the Antiquity and Institution of this most Noble Order, your Highness most glorious and victorious Ancestor King Edward the Third (for the honor and encouragement of Martial Actions, and to oblige unto him by the neereſt ties of Royal favour and society, such persons of eminent birth, as by valiant and noble acts had highly merited of him) Instituted this Order, and Elected into the Fellowship thereof (with himself the Sovereign) the number of 25, other renowned Knights, by giving them the Garter, with this most significant and generous Motto, *HONI SOIT QUI MAL Y PENSE*, assigning them likewise a peculiar and stately habit, ordaining them yearly to attend him on the Feast of St. George, at his Castle of Windesore (the seat of the Foundation) where he regally entertained them, and framing statutes which themselves and their Successors were obliged to observe, for the honor of the Sovereign and the Order.

By which Statutes, in the second place, the proper qualifications are fully declared, which are principally, that every person elected into this most Noble Order, be a Knight without reproach, a Gentleman of Blood and Arms, of three descents by Father and Mother, a man of courage, a lover of Justice, and of unblemish'd fame and honor; who likewise at his Installation is by Oath obliged to defend and sustain the honor, quarrels, rights, and dominions of the Sovereign, and to endeavour the augmentation of the Order; And if any one elected into this most Noble Society shall be either convict of Heresie, Treason, Cowardise in flying from the Kings Banner or Standard in the field, or that by prodigality he hath wilfully wasted his Patrimony, he may (if the Sovereign and Companions please) be degraded and deprived of the Order as unworthy thereof.

Lastly, The Institution of this most Noble Order hath been so inviolably observed, as that the Sovereign and Companions have never augmented their number, and but very rarely dispensed with any of the qualifications, whereby the dignity and splendor of the Order hath been entirely preserved. And so great a value and high esteem hath been set upon this most Noble Order, as the greatest and most powerful Monarchs of Europe have accounted it an honor to be Companions thereof, amongst whom the Emperor Sigismund, in the Reign of King Henry the Fifth, and that most potent and glorious Emperor Charles the Fifth, in the Reign of King Henry the Eighth, came personally into England to receive it. And although the number of the Companions from the first Institution (now full 303 years) is with your Highness but 444 persons, yet of them there have been 8 Emperors, and 52 Kings and Princes of Foreign Countrys, besides other most illustrious and eminent persons, some of them Strangers, the rest Subjects to the Kings of England, Sovereigns of the most Noble Order.

Thus Sir, I have represented unto your Highness, the noble ends for which this Order was Instituted, the qualifications required, and the care in preserving the dignity and honor thereof: I shall now presume to add, that as your Highness most Royal extraction is equal to any Prince of Europe, so your
most

most towardsly and generous inclination gives great assurance, that you will encourage magnanimity and honorable enterprises, appear equal to the most renowned Princes that have been Companions of this most Noble Order; And as your Highness bears the Title of the Duke of Gloucester, so that you will inherit the great and heroick virtues of that excellent Prince your Predecessor, Humphry Plantagenet Protector of the Realm and Person of his Nephew King Henry the Sixth, who by his great wisdom, bounty, and justice, obtained the title and appellation of the good Duke.

I shall conclude with my humble and real Prayers for long life, honor, and all prosperity to your Royal Highness, the most high, mighty, and excellent Prince, Henry Duke of Gloucester, Knight, and Companion of the most Noble Order of the Garter.

SECT. VI.

Allowances and Rewards given to Garter for his service in this Employment.

THE Sovereign of this most Noble Order bears the charges of Garter, whensoever, and as often as he is sent to any Elect Knight Subject; either with Letters to signify his Election, or the Garter and George, wherewith to invest him; and this is commonly proportioned, according to the length or shortness of the Journey.

The allowance for that Journey which Sir Gilbert Dethick Garter made into the Counties of Lincolne and Cumberland (by the^a Sovereign's command given in Chapter) first to the Earl of Rutland, and next to the Lord Scroop, an. 26. Eliz. appears to have been^o 20 l.

Besides the Sovereign's allowance to Garter, he hath been accustomed to receive honorable gratuities and rewards from the Elect-Knight himself, after the Investiture performed; and these have usually been proportioned according to the esteem of the honor he receives, and his particular inclinations to Garter, and the service done by him. Among whom we find the^a Earl of Arundel, an. 17. H. 8. gave to Thomas Wriothesley Garter 10 l. in Angelotts, being then at his Mannor of Dawnley, and^a Ralph Earl of Westmerland, elected at the same time with the said Earl of Arundel, then at Myle-end, 6 l. 13 s. 4 d. But the^a Earl of Northumberland, an. 23. H. 8. gave Garter for the verbal certifying him of his Election 4 l. though he went no farther than the Chapter-house door.

Lastly, an. 26. Eliz. the Earl of Rutland honorably rewarded Garter at Newark; and the Lord Scroop gave unto him^a 30 l. in Gold, a Velvet Cloak, and a Gal-laway Nag, and to William Dethick York Herald, who then went along with Garter to Carlisle^a 10 l. But since these times, the Knights-Elect have greatly enlarged their Gratuities to Garter, for his service upon this occasion.

CHAP. XI.

OF

Preparations

FOR THE

Personal Installation

OF A KNIGHT.

SECT. I.

That Installation gives the Title of Founder.

THE *Installation* or *Inauguration* of a *Knight* of this most Noble Order, consists in a conjunction of many Ceremonies, and contains the most solemn part of those, whereby so great an honor is conferr'd; indeed that which compleateth all the rest. And till this great Ceremony be duly and solemnly performed, the person Elected hath not the honor of being reckoned among the number of *Founders*, but barely passes for an *Elect Knight*, and no other. For the express Text is, ^a That in case a *Knight Elect* dye before his Installation, *he shall not be named one of the Founders*. And the reason is there given, ^b forasmuch as *he hath not had the full possession of his state*; and in this point do the other ^c Bodies of the *Statutes* agree. Howbeit as soon as the Ceremonies of *Installation* are compleatly finished, the *Knight* is unquestionably vested in full possession of all the Honors and Priviledges belonging to a *Founder* of this most Noble Order.

^a E. 3. Stat.
Art. 10.

^c H. 5. Stat.
Art. 19. H. 8.
Stat. Art. 20.

^b E. 3. Stat.
Art. 19. H. 5.
Stat. Art. 19.
H. 8. Stat.
Art. 20.

But to quicken each *Elect Knight*, who is either a Subject to the *Sovereign*, or resides within his Realm (and consequently in a more ready capacity of receiving Installation, then one remaining in Foreign parts) to the full attainment of his honor, or otherwise to wave what hath been conferr'd on him, by the Act of Election; the compass of ^b one year after such his Election, is allowed him by the *Statutes* for Installation (albeit for sooner speeding thereof, the *Statutes* do as well appoint him to use all convenient diligence) otherwise *his Election*

Election is ordained to be absolutely ⁱnul and void. Nor can any thing hinder, ⁱbid. ^k but that the *Sovereign* may then freely proceed to a new Election; unless the ^k *Elect-Knight* tend or produce an excuse for such delay, sufficient and fit to be accepted by the *sovereign*, or his *Deputy*, and the whole *Society*; or that the *sovereign* himself think fit to defer the Ceremony of Installation for some longer time.

For which cause, when certain Articles concerning the honor of the Order had been prepared by the *Sovereign's Lieutenant*, and ten *Knights-Companions*, approved by the *sovereign*, and in a Chapter held ^{24. April an. 21. Jac. R. order- 1 Lib. R fol.} ed to be observed; one of them was for hastning the *Installation*, after a *Knight* ^{14. & 15.} had been *Elected*, nevertheless with this Exception, ^{"unless for some special m bid.} cause, the *Sovereign* should think fit to defer the same, until the Eve or day of *Saint George* next following the time of Election.

SECT. II.

Of the Time and Place appointed for Installation.

THE *Fest* of *Installation* hath not been hitherto fixed to any certain time, but always rested in the pleasure of the *Sovereign* to assign a convenient day; which hath been obtained, either upon the sute of the *Knight-Elect*, or some other of the *Knights-Companions*, whose favour and esteem with the *Sovereign* was best able to prevail. Such a one do we find the Lord *Burghley*, ^{"an. n MS fol. penes G.O.P. 202.} 35. *Eliz.* (partly in regard he had been *Licutenant* at *St. George's Feast* immediately preceding, and partly by reason of his being Lord *Treasurer of England*) who on the behalf of the *Earls of Shrewsbury* and *Cumberland* obtained the 19. of *June* in the foresaid year, to be appointed for the day of their *Installation*.

It sometimes fell out that though the day for *Installation* was set down, nevertheless, upon some extraordinary occasion intervening, it hath been prorogued to a further and more convenient time for the *Sovereign's Affairs*: and the most remarkable instance is that, ^{an. 3. & 4. Ph. & Mar. when the Earl of a Lib. C. b 2 p. 20.} *Suffex*, the Lord *Grey*, and Sir *Robert Rochester*, *Knights Elect*, had their ^b *Installation* together with *St. George's Feast*, prorogued to the 10. of *May* in the year aforesaid. But many and urgent affairs, relating both to the *King* and *Queen*, ^c hapning about that time, not only the ^d *Grand Feast*, but the Solemnity of their ^e *Installations* were in a Chapter held the 3. of the same Month, prorogued to the 5. of *December* following, and on the last day of *October* preceding, were they again prorogued to the first Sunday after *Twelf-day*, in case the *King* should not return into *England* before the said 5. of *December*. After all this on the 5. of *January* following, the *Grand Feast* was prorogued a fourth time to the 20. of *February* next coming. Nevertheless it was then Ordered, that the *Earl of Suffex* (one of the three *Elect Knights*) should be forthwith Installed, which was performed on the 8. of the same *January*. And the 6. of *February* following, the Lord *Grey* also obtained an appointment for his *Installation*, and that was celebrated the 20. of *April* ensuing; but we do not find that Sir *Robert Rochester* ever received that honor.

But though the time of *Installation* be arbitrary and uncertain, yet hath the place been from the Institution of the Order, fixt (as an essential Priviledge) only to the *Sovereign's* free Chappel of *St. George* in the Castle of *Windsor*; within whose Chaire stand erected the *Sovereign's* and *Knights-Companions Stalls*, and under its sacred Roof their *Banners* and *Atchievements* are set up, as Monuments of their high deservings, and so great honor. For albeit the celebration of the *Grand Feast* of *St. George*, hapned to be withdrawn from *Windsor*, by a

^o Lib. C. p. 54.
^p Ibid.

^q Lib. R. p. 15.

Decree past an. 9. *Eliz.* nevertheless the *Feast of Installation* was therein excepted, and appointed to be solemnized at that place. And this was again provided for among the before mentioned Orders, an. *Jac. Regis* 21. to wit, ^q *That after an Election made of a Knight of the Order, his Installation should be performed at Windsor, according to the ancient Custom and Statutes of the Order.*

When therefore the *Sovereign* hath been pleased to prefix a certain day, for Installation, in order to this great Solemnity, several things are necessarily to be prepared; as namely, (1.) a *Commission* to admit and install the *Elect-Knight*, (2.) *Letters* to each of the Commissioners, and the *Elect-Knight*, for their repair to *Windsor*, (3.) *Warrants* for the *Sovereign's Livery*, (4.) a *Bill* or *Warrant* for the removal of *Stalls* and *Atchievements* (all which are to be obtained from the *Sovereign* under his Sign manual by the *Chancellor of the Order*) and (5.) lastly the *Knights* own Preparations; among which his *Atchievements* are to be got in readines for setting up, so soon as he is Installed.

SECT. III.

Of Commissions for Installation.

IN the first place we are to note, that no *Elect-Knight* can be Installed unless by the *Sovereign* of the *Order* himself, or (being present) by such of the *Knights-Companions* whom he shall verbally authorize, or (if absent) by his *Commission* drawn up in writing, and past under the great Seal of the *Order*, directed either to his *Lieutenant*, or *Knights-Commissioners*.

^e Chap. 12;
^{Secl.} 6.

^f Art. 25, vide
etiam H. 5.
^{Stat.} Art. 25.

We have met with but one Instance, where the *Sovereign* hath been pleased to honor a *Knight* by performing the Ceremony of Installation himself, and that was in the case *Philip* King of *Castile* and *Leon* an. 22. H. 7. yet it is probable enough that *Sigismund* the Emperor, and anciently some other *Foreign Princes* of eminence and dignity, might receive Installation from other of the *Sovereigns*, though no memorial thereof hath been transmitted to us. As to the *Sovereign's* verbal appointment, we shall mention it by and by: But in reference to Installation by *Commission* we shall speak of it here. For it was Ordained by the Statutes of Institution, *That in case the Sovereign should be absent out of the Kingdom at the time of Installation of any of the Knights, so that he could not personally perform those things his Office obliged him to, it should be lawful for him to constitute as his Deputy in this affair, whomsoever of the Society he should think fit, and he to have power and authority in the Sovereign's name to perform and execute those things, which it would have been his own part to have done, had he been present.*

^e Appendix
Num. XXIV.

ⁿ Num. XXV.

^w H. B. Stat.
Art. 28.

^x Appendix
Num. XXVI.

By virtue of this Article the *Sovereign's Deputy* or *Lieutenant* (in his absence) performed the Ceremony before the Reign of *King Henry* the Eighth, which was usually done at the *Feast* of *St. George* (for the Celebration of which he had another *Commission*) but in the *Commission* given out for Installation, formerly the *Lieutenant* was first named, and the *Knights-Companions* appointed for his Assistants at the said *Feast*, were joined with him in the *Commission* for Installation, to assist in that Ceremony also; but of later times, the *Commission* hath passed to the *Lieutenant* alone.

King Henry the Eighth enlarged the powers given by the former Statutes to a *Deputy*, to *two* or *more* of the *Knights-Companions*, that should exercise the same by the *Sovereign's Letters of Commission*. And therefore by the liberty and privilege of this Article, whensoever after the *Sovereigns* did appoint an Installation, at other times of the year, than at the *Feast* of *St. George*, they then delegated their authority to such of the *Knights-Companions* as were thought most fit to perform this great Ceremony.

And the very next year after making this Statute, we find such a *Commission* issued

issued to the Marquess *Dorset*, and Earls of *Devonshire* and *Kent*, to Instal the Lord *Ferrars* of *Chartley*; the Substance of which hath been ever since, and is yet retained, though the form hath received some little Variation, as may be seen by two other *Commissions* immediately following in the *Appendix*. y Num. XXVII & XXVIII.

The particular powers granted by the *Commissions* are these, to accept and admit the *Knight Elect* into the *Order*, to receive his *Oath*, and to *Instal* him; and the general power is, to do and accomplish every thing which belongeth to his due Admittance and full Installation, as to the Statutes and laudable Usages, Rules, and Customs of this *Order* appertaineth.

We shall only add this observation out of the *Commission* given to the *Marquess Dorset* and the Lord *Cobham*, an. 5. E. 6. for Installation of the Lord *Darcy* (which else is the same verbatim, with former *Commissions*) that in the last clause of general power, the word * *Usage* is put down, instead of the words *Statutes* and *laudable Customs*, which were generally inserted in the more ancient *Commissions*; perhaps, as restraining the Ceremonies of *Installation*, to such as were in use about that time, (when many Ceremonies accustomedly used were forborn) not what the Statutes and laudable Customs of former days, had appointed and practised: Howbeit shortly after, these words were restored to the *Commissions* of Installation as appears from a || *Commission* made to the Earl of *Huntingdon*, and Lord *Clynton*, an. 2. & 3. Ph. & Mar. for the Installation of *Anthony Brown* Viscount *Mountague*. z Lib. N. pag. 306. || Appendix Num. XXIX.

SECT. IV.

Letters of Summons.

BESIDES the *Commission* empowering the *Sovereign's Lieutenant*, or *Knights-Commissioners* therein named to Instal the *Elect-Knight*, it hath been usual for the *Sovereign* (upon the Chancellors motion) to issue out *Letters of Summons* under his privy Signet (but of late under the Signet of the *Order*) both to the *Commissioners* for *Installation*, and to the *Elect Knights*. Those to the *Commissioners* are directed severally to each, nominated in the *Commission*; the effect whereof, is to give them notice of the *Installation*, and to require their repair to *Windsor*, against the day therein assigned, to the end the *Elect Knight* might proceed to his *Installation*; a Precedent whereof is also added in the * *Appendix*. Num. XXX. But at the Installation of *Algernon* Earl of *Northumberland*, an. 11. Car. 1. a || Clause to this purpose is inserted into the *Commission* it self. || Numb. XXVIII.

Those directed to the *Elect Knight*, pass likewise under the *Sovereign's Sign* manual and Signet of the *Order*, by which he is required to repair to *Windsor Castle*, at a certain day therein prefixt, to proceed to his *Installation*, according to the *Statutes* of the *Order*; and of this kind we have also inserted a Form in the * *Appendix*. Where note, that if there be two or more *Knights* appointed to be Installed on the same day, the like *Letter* is sent to each of them, the difference being only in the direction. a Numb. XXXI.

Besides these *Letters* sent from the *Sovereign*, the *Chancellor* (in case the *Sovereign* afford his presence) in his Circular *Letters* to the *Knights-Companions* for their repair to the *Fest* of *St. George*, gives them also intimation of the designed *Installation*. And if the said *Fest* be held either by the *Sovereign* or his *Lieutenant*, he dispatcheth a *Letter* to the *Prelate* of the *Order*, signifying the *Sovereign's* commands for his attendance at the day appointed: In both which cases, as also if the *Installation* be dispatched by *Commissioners*, he writes his *Letters* to the three inferior *Officers* of the *Order*, purporting the same command. The conveyance of all which appertain to *Garter*, and are left to his care and trust by the *Constitutions* relating to the *Officers* of the *Order*; whose allowance and reward upon these and such like services, shall be noted in its due place. d Cap. 4.

SECT. V.

Warrant for the Livery of the Order.

THE third thing to be obtained by the *Chancellor* of the Order, is the *sovereign's Warrant*, directed to the *Master* of the Great *Wardrobe* for the time being, to deliver so much Velvet for the *Livery of the Order* as will make the *Knight Elect* a Surcoat and Hood, and as much Sarcenet or Taffety, as will line them.

Of such a *Warrant* there is an ancient Precedent in *Latin* entred in the *Black Book* of the Order, and transferred to the ^a *Appendix*; together with which, we have also inserted another ^b Precedent in *English*, for delivery forth of materials for the *Livery*, to Sir John Wallop Knight, ^c *Elected an. 35. H. 8.* And in the same form run all the *Warrants* we have seen in the Reigns of ^d *Queen Mary*, and ^e *Queen Elizabeth*.

There is also to be provided a *Book*, wherein King Henry the Eighth's *English statutes* are written in a fair and legible hand upon Vellum: having in the beginning the *Sovereign's Arms* impaled, with those of the Order, and the proper Arms of the *Knight* for whom the Book is provided, both fairly limned and surrounded with the *Garter*.

This *Book of Statutes* is prepared by the *Register* of the Order, to whom, for the writing there is an allowance made, which generally in the Reigns of King Edward the Sixth, Queen Mary, and Queen Eliz. was ^a 2 l. but at King James his coming to the Crown, it was enlarged to ^b 3 l. 6 s. 8 d.

^a Num XXXII.
^b Num XXIII.
^c Lib. N. p. 291.
^d Ex vet.
^e Cod. MS.
in Offic. mag.
Gard. Regni
pag. 2. 81.
126. 127.
138. doc.
Videfu lib.
Warr. dormant
in eod. Offic.
pag. 57. 60. 68.
94. Cyc. Et lib.
terium Warr.
particul. pag.
126. 171. 231.
110. 298.
^g Ex Autogr.
h. Gene W. Le
N. Cl.

SECT. VI.

The Removal of Atchievements and Plates.

BESIDES these particulars before mentioned, there is a *Warrant* or *Scheme* prepared for the *Sovereign* to sign, wherein the order of the *Stalls* in the *Choir* at *Windsor* is set down, according as he appoints them to stand at the ensuing *Installation*; by virtue of which, *Garter* is impowered to remove the *Plates* and *Atchievements* of the present *Knights-Companions*, that so way be made for the *Elect Knight*, or *Knight*, and to fix the new *Plates* and *Atchievements* within and over the *Stalls*, in such order as they are ranked in the said *Scheme*.

In reference to this alteration, *Garter* (so soon as the *Sovereign's* pleasure is known touching an *Installation*) brings to the *Chancellor* of the Order, the Names of the present *Knights-Companions*, ranked in the order they then sit in, their *Stalls* (in which the *Stalls* void are to be so noted) to the end he may present them to the *Sovereign*; who, upon observing the series wherein they be already placed, may the better consider and determine how to alter and seat both them, and the new *Elect Knights*.

And we find in the vacancy of *Garter's* Office, this Employment was put upon *Clarenceux*; for ^a *an. 27. Eliz.* the *Sovereign's Warrant* for removal and placing of *Plates* and *Atchievements* was delivered to ^b him five days before the *Installation* of the Earl of Rutland, the Lords Cobham and Scroop, who thereupon fixed them according to the direction therein given.

This Section may be further enlarged, by adding thereunto an account, upon what ground this Alteration and Removal came to be made, and how it continueth

^g Ex Collect.
^h R. Cook
modo Clarenc.
pag. 8.

continueth now in practice, seeing it was otherwise at the Institution of the Order; wherein we must first have recourse to the *statutes* of the Order, and ancient practice grounded thereupon.

Among the *statutes*, those of Institution did Ordain, *That if any Earl, Baron, or Knight Batchellor should depart this life, he that succeeded in his place, of what condition or state soever, should possess the same Stall, which his Predecessor held before, without changing*: So that it might happen for an Earl (or Duke) to succeed a Knight, and a Knight an Earl (or Duke). And it was thus at first appointed, *That it might be known who were the first Founders of this most Noble Order.*

Now how punctually this Article of the *statutes* hath been observed, and what care was generally taken (for a long time after the Institution of the Order) that none chosen should interrupt or change this course, we shall shew in the following Instances; conceiving it very material to make use of those *Tables*, yet preserved in the Chapter-house at Windsor (but heretofore in the * *Choir* of St. George's Chappel there) wherein are collected the Names of all those *Knights Companions*, who succeeded one another in each Stall until the beginning of King Henry the Seventh's Reign, a transcript whereof we have inserted in the Appendix next after the *Constitutions* belonging to the Officers of the Order.

From which Series of succession, and other Authorities, we shall note how exactly the Law in this point hath been kept and observed, even unto King Henry the Eighth's Reign (when it received some alteration in this particular) with reference no less to Election than Installation: for we find in the *Annals* several *Knights* designed to the Stall of their immediate Predecessor, by the honor only of Election, albeit prevented of Installation by death, or other accidental occasion, and the *statutes* do not bind him only, who shall fortune to attain the honor of Installation, but him *who shall come after or succeed the deceased Knight*, which may as well be understood of, and applied to an *Elect*, as *Installed Knight*; though the before mentioned *Tables* take notice only of the latter of these.

First therefore, we shall instance in foreign *Kings*, among whom we see the King of Denmark [*Ericus*] to have received Installation in a King Henry the Fifth's Reign, not according to his own state and degree (as a King) but into the Stall of that *Knight-Companion* whom he succeeded, namely the Duke of Bavaria, it being the eighth on the *Sovereign's* side, whose first Predecessor and Founder was Sir John Grey of Codnore Castle in the County of Darby.

Besides, John [the First] King of Portugal (a *Knight-Companion* in King Henry the Fifth's time also) was installed in the second Stall on the *Sovereign's* side, which belonged to Henry Duke of Lancaster, his first Predecessor, and to this King did succeed (in the same Stall) his Son Edward King of Portugal elected an. 13. H. 6. to whose Successor [Humphrey Duke of Gloucester] an. 34. of the same King, succeeded Alphonsus [the Fifth] King of Portugal, and to him, as faith the French Table, John [the Second] King of Portugal. But I rather doubt this Table (as to the last King) is mistaken for the second Stall, not on the *Sovereign's* but *Princes* side; because there we find (as may be seen) George Duke of Clarence seated; and the Black Book faith, this King of Portugal was Elected, an. 22. E. 4. in the place of George Duke of Clarence, whose Stall had been long vacant, and whereinto an. 19. E. 4. had been Elected (though perhaps not installed) Henry King of Spain. So the King of Poland [Casimir] was Elected an. 28. H. 6. into the sixth Stall on the *Princes* side, at that time void by the death of the Duke of Coimbra, whose first Founder was Sir John Mohun.

Again Alphonsus King of Aragon and Naples, an. 38. H. 6. was Elected into the Stall of Don Albro Vazquez Dalmadea Count d'Averence, being the seventh on the *Sovereign's* side, Sir Hugh Courtney first possessing it, Ferdinand King of Naples and Sicily, Elected an. 3. E. 4. was Installed in the third Stall on the *Princes* side, Ralph Earl of Stafford having been the first installed therein. To this King succeeded Hercules Duke of Ferrara, Elected, an. 19. E. 4. and after him Guido Ubaldus Duke of Urbino, chosen a Companion of this most Noble Society by King Henry the Seventh.

Lastly,

1. The Elect Knight to succeed in the Stall of his immediate Predecessor.
j E. 3. Stat. Art. 21. vide etiam H. 5. Stat. Art. 51. H. 3. Stat. Art. 22.
k E. 3. Stat. Art. 21.
* Heylyn's Hist. of St. George, Part. 3. c. 4. p. 1.

o E. 3. Stat. Art. 21.

q Lib. N. pag. 58. & 64.

r Ibid. p. 91. lib. p. 114.

u lib. p. 149.

w lib. p. 145. sub finem. x lib. p. 105.

a Ibid. p. 105.

b MS. penes Syl. Taylor. fol. 160.

c Lib. N. p. 145.

Lastly, we find that *Alphonfus King of Sicely and Jerusalem*, being Elected also by King *Henry the Seventh*, received his Installation in the second Stall on the *Princes* side, whose first Predecessor was *Thomas Beauchamp Earl of Warwick*.

In the second place, if we descend to Foreign *Princes*, it may be observed that *William Duke of Gueldres*, Elected by King *Richard the Second*, was installed in the sixth Stall on the *sovereign's* side, which Sir *John Beauchamp*, one of the first Founders sometime posselt. That *William of Henault Earl of Ostervant* (afterwards Earl of *Holland, Haynalt, and Zeland*) chosen Companion of the Order by the said King *Richard*, was Installed in the eleventh Stall on the *sovereign's* side, whose first Predecessor was Sir *John Chandos*. That *Robert Count Palatine of the Rhine*, and Duke of *Bavaria*, Elected by King *Henry the Fourth*, was installed in the eighth Stall on the *sovereign's* side.

^h Lib. M. p. 97.

That *Philip Duke of Burgundy* was Elected by ^h King *Henry the Fifth* (though not Installed) into the Stall of Sir *John Clifford*, which appears to be the eleventh on the *Princes* side. Sir *James Audley* one of the first Founders, having been first placed therein. And that *an. 28. H. 6. Henry Duke of Brunswick* was Elected into the Duke of *Suffolk's* Stall (*viz.* the seventh on the same side) it having been the Stall of Sir *Thomas Holand* (Earl of *Kent*) one of the first Founders. And lastly, that *Frederick Duke of Urbyn* sat in the twelfth Stall on the *sovereign's* side, he therein succeeding Sir *Walter Blount, an. 14. E. 4.* and having Sir *Otho Holand* (Brother to the aforelaid Sir *Tho. Holand*) for his Founder.

ⁱ Ibid. p. 84.

Add to these the *Sons of Kings*, and we find *Peter Duke of Conimbero*, one of the *Sons to John the First King of Portugal* (Elected ⁱ *an. 5. H. 6.*) to have been Installed in the sixth Stall on the *Princes* side, therein succeeding the Duke of *Exceter*. So also *Henry Duke of Vifen* (another of this Kings Sons) Elected *an. 21. H. 6.* succeeded Sir *Simon Felbrige* in the lowest Stall on the *Princes* side, whose first Predecessor therein was Sir *Walter Pavely*.

And as the *Statute* was carefully observed with reference to the Election and Installation of Foreign *Princes*, so no less in relation to the *Princes* of the Blood at home, among whom, let us (in the third place) observe the placing the *Sons* of the Founder of this most Noble Order, where first we see *Lyonel Duke of Clarence* his third Son to have been Installed in the sixth Stall on the *sovereign's* side, whose immediate Predecessor was Sir *John Beauchamp* one of the first Founders. In like manner *John of Gaunt Duke of Lancaster* his Fourth Son was Installed in the seventh Stall on the *Princes* side, having Sir *Thomas Holand* for his Predecessor, and a Founder.

Again *Edmund of Langley Duke of York* his fifth Son was Installed in the seventh Stall on the *sovereign's* side, Sir *Hugh Courtney*, one of the first Founders, being first placed therein. And *Thomas of Woodstock Duke of Gloucester* his sixth Son sat in the eighth Stall on the *sovereign's* side, whose first Predecessor was Sir *John Grey*, one of the first Founders likewise.

It may be further observed that the Rule in the *Statute* was strictly pursued in relation also to the *Sons of King Henry the Fourth*, for *Thomas Duke of Clarence* his second Son, was seated in the seventh Stall on the *Princes* side. *John Duke of Bedford* and Regent of *France* his third Son, was installed in the seventh Stall on the *sovereign's* side; *viz.* opposite to the Duke of *Clarence* his elder Brother, and in a Stall of higher dignity. And *Humfry Duke of Gloucester* his fourth Son, sat in the eleventh Stall on the same side.

To instance next in the *Brothers and Sons of King Edward the Fourth*; *George Duke of Clarence* was placed in the second Stall on the *Princes* side. *Richard Duke of Gloucester* (afterwards King of *England* and *Sovereign* of this Order) was Installed in the fifth Stall on the *sovereign's* side, whose first Predecessor was Sir *John Lisse*. And *Richard Duke of York*, the said Kings second Son, received his Installation in the fourth Stall on the *Princes* side.

In the last place, if we review the foresaid *Tables*, we shall find, that as the *Knights-Companions* of higher dignity, assumed the Stalls (when they became vacant) though often of the lower sort, so some of the lowest degree among them, have had the honor to be Installed in Seats of superior rank; and this meely by virtue and observance of the Law in this case provided.

Among

Among these *Knights-Companions* we shall first reckon Sir *Philip la Vache*, & *Gafcon*, who in the Reign of King *Richard* the Second was first Installed in the *Princes* Stall (that being void by the death of *John* of *Gaunt*, in whose room he hapned to be Elected) though afterwards removed to the third Stall on the *Sovereign's* side. As also Sir *John Dabrichcourt*, Elected *an. 1. H. 5.* who died possessor of the said *Princes* Stall in the fifth of the said King.

Next, Sir *Nicholas Sarnesfield*, Standard-Bearer to the *Founder*, who succeeded *Hugh* Earl of *Stafford*, and after him Sir *William Arundel*, immediate Successor to the said Sir *Nicholas*, were both installed in the second Stall on the *Sovereign's* side. Sir *John Kobsart* an *Hegnower*, was *an. 9. H. 5.* installed in the second Stall on the *Princes* side. Sir *Gilbert Talbot*, and after him Sir *John Grey* were both installed in the third Stall on the *Sovereign's* side. And in the third Stall on the *Princes* side was *Ralph* *Stafford* one of the first *Founders* installed, in which Stall successively sat Sir *Alan Boxbull*, Sir *Bryan Stapleton*, and Sir *William Scroop*.

We could add here divers other instances, how the *Knights-Companions*, both in the case of *Elections* and *Installations*, have succeeded in the Stalls of their immediate Predecessors; but these already inserted may suffice, since they include the chief and most considerable particulars; and sufficiently manifest that the usage and practice down to the Reign of King *Henry* the Eighth, was pursuant to the ancient Law of the *Order*.

But we are here to note, that notwithstanding each *Knight* was by the before mentioned *Article* appointed to succeed his immediate Predecessor, in the Stall void by his death; yet doth there follow an Exception, as to the Stall belonging to the *Prince of Wales*. This Stall is the first on the left hand at the entrance into the *Choir* of *St. George's* Chappel at *Windefor*, and wherein *Edward* the Black *Prince* was Installed; from this Stall doth the whole range of Stalls on the same side take their denomination, and to which the *Prince of Wales* as soon as he is Elected into the *Order*, hath a due Title.

*KE. 3. Stat.
H. 5. Art. 28
H. 8. Stat.
Art. 22.*

But though this Stall *de jure* belongs to the *Prince of Wales*; nevertheless heretofore when the *Sovereign* had no Heir, then was it (for the present) disposed of (otherwise a defect in the full number of *Knights-Companions* would have ensued) to some other *Knight*, who received the honor of Installation therein.

The first that obtained that honor (besides *Princes of Wales*) was *John* of *Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaster*, it being conferr'd on him by Decree of the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* (*Richard* the Second, having no issue, neither then nor afterwards) and thereupon removed thither, from the seventh Stall on the same side, wherein he had been installed at his first admission into the *Order*.

But the first *Knight-Companion* that hapned to be installed in it, was Sir *Philip la Vache* (a little before remembred) and a very great honor it was, for one of his rank: But it fell to him by the then Law of the *Order*, being elected into the room of the said Duke of *Lancaster*, who dyed possessor thereof.

Howbeit shortly after (such was the change of times) King *Henry* the Fourth coming to the Crown, and his eldest Son being created *Prince of Wales*, laid claim to this Stall by virtue of the foresaid Statute, and had it surrendred to him. Nevertheless, that the former possessor might suffer as little diminution in the honor of his Session, as might be, he was removed no lower than to the Stall, which King *Henry* the Fourth lately held when Earl of *Derby*, viz. the third on the *Sovereign's* side, and had now relinquished for the *Sovereign's* royal Stall.

Upon the death of King *Henry* the Fourth, and removal of King *Henry* the Fifth from the *Princes* Stall (whereby a vacancy therein ensued) to the *Sovereign's* Seat: Sir *John Dabrichcourt* (Elected *an. 1. H. 5.*) was Installed therein, and he (*an. 5.* of the same King) dying possessor thereof (of which a notable testimony remains, by the continuance of his Plate in that Stall to this day) and the *Sovereign* yet unmarried, the Emperor *Sigismund* became the next Successor to Sir *John Dabrichcourt*, both into the Society of the *Order*, and the *Princes* Stall.

He

He dying^o *Albert* Duke of *Austria*, afterwards Emperor (there being hitherto no Prince born) was Elected in his room, *an. 16. H. 6.* but this Emperor was never Installed, and thereupon during his life (neer 20. years after his Election) the Princes Stall was not otherwise disposed of, but remained vacant, and so is it noted in several Pages of the *Black Book*.

But some few years before King *Henry* the Sixth dyed, he had a Son born, to wit, in the 32. year of his Reign, in which regard, though the Emperor *Frederick* was Elected into the Order, *an. 35. H. 6.* upon the death of *Albert*, yet was the said Stall reserved for the Prince (but he never posselt it) and the Emperor *an. 37. H. 6.* Installed by Proxy in the Duke of *Somersets* Stall, then lately deceased, being the eighth on the Princes side.

In King *Edward* the Fourth's Reign, we find the right in this Stall returned again to *Edward* Prince of *Wales*, his eldest Son; and in King *Henry* the Seventh's Reign to Prince *Arthur*; but upon his death, *Maximilian* Son of *Frederick* King of the *Romans*, and after Emperor, sat therein: So also did the Emperor *Charles* the Fifth (his Grandchild) in regard that as yet, there was no Son born to the *Sovereign*.

But Prince *Edward* being born, while this Stall was posselt by *Charles* the Fifth, it hapned also that the King of *Scots* dyed, which caused King *Henry* the Eighth to reserve his Stall (the third on the *Sovereign's* side) for the Prince, albeit he never had possession of it, nor was ever Elected into the Order, though we find him^c once registred in a Scruteny. And King *Henry* the Eighth dying, Prince *Edward* became both by inheritance and succession, *Sovereign* of this most Noble Order, by virtue of the first Article of the Statutes; not needing any Ceremony to make him so.

From this time to the eighth year of King *James* there was no Prince of *Wales*; which King, finding the Princes Stall void at his entrance upon the *English* Throne, did (in a Chapter held the 3. of July, *an. 1. Jac. Regis*) advance the French King *Henry* the Fourth, from the second Stall on the *Sovereign's* side into it; and appointed Prince *Henry* to be Installed^a in that Kings void seat, where he remained till *an. 3. Jacobi*. that *Christierne* the Fourth King of *Denmark* came to be Installed by his Proxy, to make way for whom, the Prince (though his Senior both by Election and Installation) was removed yet lower, viz. to the^a second Stall on the Princes side, and the said King Installed in the Seat which Prince *Henry* had to that time posselt. And yet^a *an. 9. Jac. R.* upon the death of the foresaid French King, not the Prince (as was his right, since now he was created Prince of *Wales*) but the^a said King of *Denmark* was translated to the Princes vacant Stall; hereupon Prince *Henry* was returned again to the^a second Stall on the *Sovereign's* side, which he enjoyed while he lived, and upon his death^b Prince *Charles* was removed into it, *an. 11. Jac. R.* and there rested all King *James* his Reign.

In like manner, when the present *Sovereign* came to be Installed, the then *Sovereign* finding him prevented for assuming the Princes Stall (the foresaid King of *Denmark* yet living) assigned to him the second Stall on the *Sovereign's* side, (wherein himself sat, while Prince of *Wales*) and where hitherto the present *Sovereign's* Plate remains fixt as a memorial of his Installation therein.

Albeit (as hath been before cleered) that the *Knights-Companions* at their Election or Installation succeeded the immediate defunct *Knight* in his Stall, yet do we also observe, that somtimes, after Installation, as an especial mark of favour and indulgence, the *Sovereign* hath been pleased (though but seldom and rarely) to advance a *Knight-Companion* to a higher Stall (when it became vacant) then that wherein he was at first Installed. And though there be no such liberty given by the Law of the Order, nevertheless in the first Precedent (very early after the Institution) in the case of *John* of Gaunt Duke of *Lancaster* (who as is before noted was removed from the seventh Stall on the Princes side (wherein he was first placed) to the Princes Stall it self) this act is said to be done^a by the decree of the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions*; and no doubt, but as this was done by so good authority, so upon no less inducements to the *Sovereign* and whole

^a. Removal upon extraordinary Occasion, by Order of Chapter.

^c See the second Table in the Appendix.

^r Ex Collect. A. N. W.

^x Ex Collect. pref. R. Cooke, lib. fol. 17.

^y (MS. penes Z. Edw. Fau-a, Cambridge.

whole Society. But there are few of these extraordinary cases, which (taking up little time) we will remember here.

William of *Henalt* Earl of *Ostervant*, was advanced by King *Richard* the Second from the eleventh Stall on the *Sovereign's* side, to the Duke of *Britains* Stall, it being the second on the *Princes* side. Next, *Humfry* Duke of *Gloucester*, in the Reign of King *Henry* the Sixth, having been first installed in the eleventh Stall on the *Sovereign's* side, was (when he came to be Lord Protector) removed to the second Stall on the same side. Afterward *Richard Nevill* Earl of *Warwick*, by the consent of the *Knights-Companions* in Chapter, an. 39. H. 6. was translated to the Duke of *Buckingham's* Stall, the Lord *Bonvill*, to the Lord *Scales* his Seat, Sir *Thomas Kyriell* to the place of the Earl of *Shrewsbury*, and the Lord *Wenlock* to the Stall of Viscount *Beaumont*. And lastly, *Ferdinand* King of *Naples* and *Sicily*, was removed to the third Stall on the *Sovereign's* side, after he had been installed in the third on the *Princes* side: yet this was an advance of so little honor, as it is scarce worth taking notice of, being but the very next above that, wherein he was first installed.

But King *Henry* the Eighth thinking it requisite for the *Sovereigns* of this most Noble Order, to be impowered by a general Law, to do that at pleasure, which the former *Sovereigns* did not but by the power of particular Acts or Orders in Chapter; after he had confirmed the ancient Law of succeeding in the Stall of the immediate Predecessor, not to be changed without the *Sovereign's* License (nevertheless excepting *strangers*) he in the next succeeding Article established this Privilege upon Himself and Successors, 'That if there were any Place or Stall void, the *Sovereign* at his own pleasure might advance and translate any Knight of the Society into the void Stall, so that it were higher than that wherein he sat before.

This in effect did vacat the ancient Law of succeeding in Stalls by him seemingly confirm'd to *Knights-Subjects*; for afterward Translations preceding to Installations, became so frequent, that the right an *Elect-Knight* had to his Predecessors Stall was seldom enjoyed. Howbeit, hereby he settled a power to gratifie and oblige such of the *Knights-Companions* as should be thought worthy the honor of advancing, without recourse had to a Chapter for a special and particular allowance: and from hence the Custom began to issue out Warrants under the *Sovereign's* Sign manual for the Translation of Stalls, some convenient time before the day of Installation approached, and consequently the alteration and removal of such of the *Knights-Companions* Helms, Crests, Banners, and Plates, who should receive the honor of a higher Place; their Achievements being by virtue of such Warrants set up over the Stalls, to which they were advanced, there to remain during the time their owners continued therein.

And now that we may see in what manner King *Henry* the Eighth made use of the powers and privileges settled by the foresaid Articles, both as to the removal of Stalls, and doing it by special Warrant (which is *Garters* discharge) we shall exhibit a few Examples; first shewing in what order the Stalls were ranked, shortly after passing this Law, that by comparing some following years with these Schemes, the alteration may with greater readines be discerned.

Knights of the Order of the *Garter*, as they stood ranked in their Stalls,
Anno. 17. H. 8.

The *Sovereign's* side.

The *Princes* side.

1. The *Sovereign*.
2. Duke of *Richmond*.
3. Marquess *Dorset*.
4. Marquess of *Exeter*.
5. Earl of *Shrewsbury*.
6. Earl of *Essex*.

1. The Emperor *Charles* the Fifth.
2. Archduke of *Austria*.
3. Duke of *Norfolk*.
4. Earl of *Northumberland*.
5. Duke of *Suffolk*.
6. Earl of *Arundel*.

R. 1

7. Earl

Ex Collect.
Tho. Wrothelst.
pen. G. O. K.
f. 1. b.

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| 7. Earl of Worcester. | 7. Viscount Lisle. |
| 8. Viscount Fitz Walter. | 8. Lord Bergavenny. |
| 9. Lord Dacre. | 9. Lord Ferrars. |
| 10. Lord Dudley. | 10. Lord Darcy. |
| 11. Earl of Westmerland. | 11. Lord La Ware. |
| 12. Earl of Rutland. | 12. Lord Sandys. |
| 13. Viscount Rocheford. | 13. Sir Richard Wingfield. |

*Knights of the Order of the Garter as they stood ranked in their Stalls
Anno 18. H. 8.*

Ibid.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. The Sovereign. | 1. The Emperor Charles the Fifth. |
| 2. Duke of Richmond. | 2. Archduke of Austria. |
| 3. Marquess Dorset. | 3. Duke of Norfolk. |
| 4. Marquess of Exeter. | 4. Earl of Northumberland. |
| 5. Earl of Shrewsbury. | 5. Duke of Suffolk. |
| 6. Earl of Essex. | 6. Earl of Arundel. |
| 7. Earl of Westmerland. | 7. Viscount Lisle. |
| 8. Viscount Fitz-Walter. | 8. Lord Bergavenny. |
| 9. Earl of Rutland. | 9. Lord Ferrars. |
| 10. Lord Dudley. | 10. Lord Darcy. |
| 11. Void. | 11. Viscount Rochford. |
| 12. Lord Mountjoy. | 12. Lord Sandys. |
| 13. Sir William Fitz Williams. | 13. Sir Henry Guldeford. |

In the latter of these two *Schemes*, drawn for the Translation of Stalls *an. 18. H. 8.* it may be observ'd, first, that on the *Sovereign's* side the Earl of *Westmerland* was advanced from the eleventh Stall to the seventh, being void by the death of the Earl of *Worcester*: The Earl of *Rutland* from the twelfth to the ninth, that being also void by the Lord *Dacres* death; then Viscount *Rochford* from the thirteenth Stall to the eleventh on the *Princes* side, where the Lord *La Ware* lately sat, but then also deceased. And lastly, the ^b three newly *Elect Knights* were thus dispos'd of at their Installation; first the Lord *Mountjoy* into the twelfth Stall, then lately void by the removal of the Earl of *Rutland*, next Sir *William Fitz Williams* into the thirteenth Stall, from whence Viscount *Rochford* was removed, and lastly, Sir *Henry Guldeford* into that void by the death of Sir *Richard Wingfield*, viz. the thirteenth on the *Princes* side; but the Stall from whence the Earl of *Westmerland* was removed, remained yet void.

^b Lib. N.
p. 252.

An appointment for the Translation of Stalls upon admission of Francis the French King, *An. 19. H. 8.*

*Ex Coll. H.
prefat. Tho.
Wrottesley, fol.
12. vide etiam
MS. in Offic.
Arm. [N. 17.]
fol. 31.*

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. The Sovereign. | 1. The Emperor. |
| 2. The French King. | 2. The King of Bohemia. |
| 3. Duke of Richmond. | 3. Duke of Norfolk. |
| 4. Marquess of Exeter. | 4. Marquess Dorset. |
| 5. Earl of Shrewsbury. | 5. Duke of Suffolk. |
| 6. Earl of Essex. | 6. Earl of Arundel. |
| 7. Earl of Westmerland. | 7. Viscount Lisle. |
| 8. Viscount Fitz Walter. | 8. Lord Bergavenny. |
| 9. Earl of Rutland. | 9. Lord Ferrars. |
| 10. Lord Dudley. | 10. Lord Darcy. |
| 11. Earl of Oxford. | 11. Viscount Rochford. |
| 12. Lord Mountjoy. | 12. Lord Sandys. |
| 13. Sir William Fitz Williams. | 13. Sir Henry Guildford. |

The

The settlement of Stalls made the 26. of January, in the following year, affords us these observations.

First, by reason of the French Kings Election (which past the 21. Oct. an. 18. k Lib. N. p. 255; H. 8.) and to make room for his Instalment in the second Stall on the Sovereign's side (which hitherto had been possessed by the Duke of Richmond) both the said Duke and Marquess of Dorset were removed lower, the Duke into the said Marquess's Stall, and the Marquess into the Earl of Northumberland's, then lately void by death.

And this was now so done, that the Sovereign might express what honor he could to a King, between whom and him there had lately past so great endearments. All the rest of the Stalls may be observed to stand ranked, as they did the year before; and the void Stall on the Sovereign's side to be here supplied by the Installation of the Earl of Oxford, Elected in the same Chapter with the French King.

In the 20. 21. and 22. years of King Henry the Eighth, the Stalls received no alteration; and but little an. 23. of the same King; when the death of the Marquess Dorset occasioned advancing the Duke of Suffolk into his void Stall, and placing the Earl of Arundel in the Dukes. Whereupon the Earl of Northumberland (Elected in the room of the Marquess Dorset) was Installed in that which the Earl of Arundel relinquished: and in this order they continued the 24. and 25. years of this King.

Nor was there any removal made an. 26. H. 8. for albeit the Earls of Beaumont and Newblanke [French Noblemen] were elected in a Chapter held at Callice the 27. of Oct. an. 24. H. 8. yet at their Installation, they were placed in the two Stalls, then void by the death of two of the Knights-Companions, viz. the first in the Stall of the Lord Dudley, and the other in that of Sir Henry Guilford.

But the alterations became yet more considerable, and extended almost to a general Translation, which were made in the Stalls, an. 27. H. 8. upon the admission of James the Fifth, King of Scotland, (one Stall being then void by the death of the Lord Montjoy) for there remained unchanged only these five, viz. the Earl of Rutland, and Earl of Beaumont (but called only Lord Beaumont in the Warrant for Translation) on the Sovereign's side; and the Emperor, the King of Bohemia, and Duke of Suffolk on the Princes side.

Nevertheless this so great an alteration was not made but upon consultation in a Chapter held at Greenwich on St. George's day, in the aforesaid year, where the Sovereign with the assent of the rest of the Knights-Companions present, thought it expedient, that soasmuch as the said King of Scots, was newly admitted into the Society of the Order, and that there ought to be assigned a Stall answerable to his greatness; that the Stalls of the Knights-Companions should be translated, also as the said King should be placed next to the King of the Romans, and the rest to be ranked according to the Sovereign's pleasure; and thereupon it was given in charge to Garter, to see the same accordingly performed. The settlement of the Stalls at this time, as it was sub-signed by the Sovereign, coming to our hands, we have exactly transcribed hither.

The Kings Highness appointment for the Stall of the King of Scots,
An. R. sui 27. 23. April 1535.

1. The Sovereign.
2. The French King.
3. The King of Scotland.
4. The Duke of Norfolk.
5. The Marquess of Exceter.
6. The Earl of Arundel.
7. The Earl of Northumberland.
8. The Earl of Wiltshire.
9. The Earl of Rutland.

1. The Emperor.
2. The King of the Romans.
3. The Duke of Richmond.
4. The Duke of Suffolk.
5. The Earl of Shrewsbury.
6. The Earl of Essex.
7. The Earl of Westmerland.
8. The Earl of Suffex.
9. The Earl of Oxensford.

R r 2

10. The

10. The Lord Beaumont.
11. The Lord Burgavenny.
12. The Lord Ferrars.
13. The Lord Sandys.

10. The Viscount Lyffe.
11. The Earl of Newblanke.
12. The Lord Darcy.
13. Sir William Fitz William.

Henry R.

In this Scheme we find the King of Scots, placed in the Duke of Richmond's Stall, who with the Duke of Norfolk, the Earls of Shrewsbury, Arundel, Essex, Northumberland, Westmerland, and Sussex, were all removed into the next Stall below that which each of them sat in before, whether it were on the Sovereign's or Princes side. The Marquess of Exeter to the next below his own on the Sovereign's side, Viscount Lisle from the seventh to the tenth Stall on the Prince's side, the Lord Abergavenny from the eighth on the Prince's side, to the eleventh on the Sovereign's side; the Lord Ferrars from the ninth on the Prince's side, to the twelfth on the Sovereign's side; the Lord Darcy from the tenth on the Prince's side, to the twelfth on the same; and the Lord Sandys from the twelfth on the Prince's side, to the thirteenth on the Sovereign's.

And as these before mentioned Knights Companions were removed lower, so the Earls of Oxford, Wilts, and Newblanke, were honored with higher Stalls than they before possessed; for the first of them was advanced from the eleventh Stall on the Sovereign's side to the ninth on the Prince's, the second from the eleventh on the Prince's side to the eighth on the Sovereign's, and the third from the thirteenth of the Prince's to the eleventh on the same side. So that in this last example, though many of the Knights-Companions were removed lower, yet it may be observed, that the English Nobility were now ranked according to their Degrees; first Dukes, next a Marquess, then Earls, next Viscounts, afterwards Barons, and last of all Knights.

Some few removals were made in the following years of this King, but none of so great note as this last mentioned, and therefore we need not enlarge our Instances. Nor were there any considerable translations, in the Reigns of King Edward the Sixth, or Queen Mary.

But immediately after Queen Elizabeth came to the Crown, by consent of the Knights-Companions in Chapter held the 12. of January an. 1. Eliz. the Achievements of Philip King of Spain (late Sovereign of the Order) were removed to the Stall of the Emperor Ferdinand, void by his being advanced into the Princes Stall, for which Garter had then command given him.

And when the French King Charles the Ninth was Elected into this Order, to wit, on the morrow after St. George's day an. 6. Eliz. it occasioned the Sovereign then to alter some Stalls, to leave one vacant for him: and the better to observe this alteration (which was considerable) we shall first shew how they stood ranked on the Eve of the said Feast.

Elizabeth R.

MS. pen. W.
D. N. fol. 14.

1. The Sovereign.
2. The King of Spain.
3. The Constable of France.
4. The Earl of Arundel.
5. The Earl of Derby.
6. The Duke of Norfolk.
7. Void.
8. Void.
9. The Lord Effingham.
10. The Earl of Shrewsbury.
11. The Viscount Mountagu.
12. The Earl of Northumberland.
13. Void.

1. The Emperor Ferdinand.
2. The Duke of Savoy.
3. The Duke of Holstein.
4. The Marquess of Winchester.
5. The Earl of Penbroke.
6. The Lord Clynton.
7. The Marquess of Northampton.
8. Void.
9. The Earl of Sussex.
10. The Lord Hastings.
11. The Lord Robert Dudley.
12. The Earl of Warwick.
13. The Lord Hunsdon.

The

The 14. of *May* following, being appointed for the Installation of *Francis* Earl of *Bedford*, and Sir *Henry Sidney*, Elected at the same time with the *French* King, the Stalls were removed, by the *sovereign's* appointment, and setled in the following order.

Elizabeth R.

1. The *sovereign*.
2. The King of *Spain*.
3. The Duke of *Savoy*.
4. The Earl of *Arundel*.
5. The Marquess of *Winchester*.
6. The Earl of *Penbroke*.
7. The Lord *Clynton*.
8. The Lord *Effingham*.
9. The Earl of *Shrewsbury*.
10. The Viscount *Mountagu*.
11. The Earl of *Northumberland*.
12. The Lord *Hunsdon*.
13. Void.

1. The Emperor *Ferdinand*.
2. Void.
3. The Constable of *France*.
4. The Duke of *Holstein*.
5. The Earl of *Derby*.
6. The Duke of *Norfolk*.
7. The Marquess of *Northampton*.
8. The Earl of *Suffex*.
9. The Lord *Hastings*.
10. The Lord *Robert Dudley*.
11. The Earl of *Warwick*.
12. The Earl of *Bedford*.
13. Sir *Henry Sidney*.

Idem fol. 17.

Where, beside the translation of the *Stranger Princes* (whom we shall mention a little below) we see the Marquess of *Winchester*, the Earls of *Derby* and *Penbroke*, the Duke of *Norfolk*, and the Lord *Clynton*, were each of them seated in the next lower Stall to that they enjoyed before. And by the advancement of the Lord *Effingham*, Earl of *Shrewsbury*, Viscount *Mountagu*, and Earl of *Northumberland*, each a Stall higher on the *sovereign's* side; and the like advance of the Earl of *Suffex*, Lord *Hastings*, Lord *Dudley*, and Earl of *Warwick*, on the *Princes* side; the eighth Stall on the *sovereign's* side, and that opposite therunto on the *Princes*, were now filled up. The Lord *Hunsdon* was likewise advanced from the lowest Stall on the *Princes* side, to the twelfth on the *sovereign's*; and lastly the two *Elect-Knights* were installed in the twelfth and thirteenth Stall on the *Prince's* side.

Beside the power established upon the *sovereign's* of this most Noble Order, of translating Stalls, when a vacancy hapned, King *Henry* the Eighth further added this larger Prerogative: *That the Sovereign once in his life, might if it* (Art. 23) *pleased him, make a general Translation of all the Stalls at his pleasure, except of Emperors, Kings, Princes, and Dukes, who* (being setled in Stalls agreeable to their Dignities) *should keep their Stalls and Places* (if such a general Translation happened) *unless advanced to a higher Room and Stall. In which Translation, the long continuance in the Order, and the praises, worthiness, and merits of the Knights-Companions were to be considered and remembred.*

But this branch of the *sovereign's* Prerogative in the Order, was never yet made use of as we can find (though that Translation an. 27. H. 8. came something neer it) perhaps lest it might raise too great animosities among the *Knights subjects*, forasmuch as that of translating only (when there hapned a vacancy) begot great emulations, which at length introduced an alteration, and to which we shall pass, after we have taken notice of a Clause added in the 22. Article of King *Henry* the Eighth's statutes, relating to *Stranger Princes*.

Here therefore it is to be observed, that the ancient Law of succeeding in Stalls, was also, in relation to them, wholly altered: For King *Henry* the Eighth upon the establishment of his Body of statutes, not only appointed those *Strangers*, then present of the Order, to be seated next himself, but that *all Emperors, Kings, and Princes should hold their Stalls after their Estates, and the very next unto the Sovereign*, though *Knights-subjects* upon vacancy became removeable at pleasure.

Hereupon the Emperor *Maximilian* the Second, and after him *Rudolph* the Second his Son, had the *Princes* Stall assigned them after their Election into the Order.

The

^u Colles. W.
^w le N. Ch.

MS. in Offic.
Arm. [M. 17.]
f. 31.

Y Ex ipso

Z Antegr.

a Collect. A.

V. W.

b Ex Collect.

prof. R. Cook

f. 12.

c Ex prof.

Collect. Tho.

Wriatesley.

d MS. penes

W. D. N. f. 19.

e Ex ipso Au-

rogr.

f Collect. prof.

R. Cook f. 6.

g Ex ipso Au-

rogr.

h MS. penes G.

O. 7 f. 115.

i Collect. A.

V. W.

k Lib. C. p. 28.

l Ib. p. 37.

m Collect.

A. V. W.

n MS. penes

Ed. Faucun-

bridge gen.

o Lib. C. p. 37.

p Collect. W.

q le N. Cl.

r

sg MS. penes

W. D. N. f. 17.

mg MS. fol.

n 24. b.

The French Kings * Francis the First, † Henry the Second, * Charles the Ninth, † Henry the Third, and † Henry the Fourth, were Installed in the next below, being the second on the *Sovereign's* side. And when there were more than one King at a time in the Order, the second Stall on the *Prince's* side was assigned to him, of whom the former had precedency allowed him, in relation to his State and Dignity, not of antiquity in the Order; as it was by the King of † Bohemia, an. 19. H. 8. The King of † Spain, an. 8. Eliz. So also upon the same Rule, and for the same Reason was sometimes the third Stall on the *Sovereign's* side posselt by Kings, as in the cases of † James the Fifth King of Scotland, an. 27. H. 8. and † Frederick the Third King of Denmark, an. 25. Eliz.

And lastly we find, that *Princes Strangers* were placed next to Kings, according to their State as were the Dukes of † Savoy, † Montmorency, and † Holstein an. 3. Eliz. † John Casimire Count Palatine of the Rhine an. 25. Eliz. and † Frederick Prince Palatine, and Maurice Prince of Orange, an. 11. Jac. Regis.

But notwithstanding these Assignments of Stalls to *strangers*, they were nevertheless subject to removal; sometime to Stalls higher than their own, upon the death of a *Stranger*, who died posselt of a superior Stall, and sometimes again to others lower, for the advancing a *Knight* of greater dignity, where the upper Stalls were already fill'd: else could they not be placed or hold their Stalls according to their respective States, as the *statute* doth enjoin; nor indeed would any *Stranger King* (since the ancient manner of succeeding in Stalls received alteration) have accepted of Election into the Order, unless room had been made to seat him in a Stall suitable to his Dignity.

Instances of Advancement in translation of Stalls are of Ferdinand Emperor of Germany, who after the death of the Emperor Charles the Fifth, his Brother, was advanced from the second Stall on the *Prince's* side into the *Prince's* Stall, an. 1. Eliz. Of Philip the Second King of Spain, advanced from the second on the *Prince's* side to the † second on the *Sovereign's*, an. 2. Eliz. after the death of the French King Henry the Second. Of Henry the Fourth of France, advanced from the second on the *Sovereign's* side to the † *Prince's* Stall, an. 1. Jac. R. Of Christerne the Fourth King of Denmark, an. 9. Jac. R. from the second on the *Sovereign's* side to the said † *Princes* Stall, after the death of the French King Henry the Fourth. And of Christierne the Fifth King of Denmark, advanced from the fourth Stall on the *Prince's* side, to the second on the *Sovereign's*, an. 22. Car. 2.

Among the *Princes Strangers*, we find Emanuel Duke of Savoy advanced from the third on the *Prince's* side, to the † second of the same side, an. 2. Eliz. John Casimire Count Palatine from the fourth on the *Sovereign's* side, to the † third on the *Prince's* an. 32. Eliz. four years after the Duke of Holstein's death. Frederick Prince Palatine an. 1. Car. 1. was advanced from the second on the *Prince's* to the † second on the *Sovereign's* side: And Henry Frederick Prince of Orange, from the third on the *Sovereign's* to the † second on the *Prince's*, an. 10. Car. 1. upon the death of the King of Sweden.

In those Instances of Removals lower after Installation, we shall first remember, That an. 6. Eliz. when the French King Charles the Ninth was Elected, the superior Stalls were already fill'd with *strangers*, and there was no way left to make room for him to the Stall designed him by the *Sovereign*, but by removal of some of those *Knights Strangers* lower, and thereupon for the present, Emanuel Duke of Savoy was removed one Stall lower, viz. to the † third on the *Sovereign's* side, Anne Duke of Montmorency to the † third on the *Prince's* side, and the Duke of Holstein to the fourth on the same side.

But the said French King was not Installed until the 16. of January an. 8. Eliz. and before that it was concluded to † remove the King of Spain to the Duke of Savoy's Stall, voided as before, and to Instal the French King in the King of Spain's void Stall, † which was accordingly done; so that on this occasion there were four *Strangers*, and five *Knights Subjects* (before remembred) removed lower, to make way for the French King.

The 20. of April, an. 2. Jac. Reg. the Duke of Wirtemberg was installed in the

the third Stall on the Prince's side, and on St. George's Eve in the following year advanced a Stall higher, viz. to the third on the Sovereign's side. The 16. of May ensuing Ulrick Duke of Holst had assigned him that Stall from whence the Duke of Wirtemberg was advanced, and installed therein: But against the Installation of Christierne the Fourth King of Denmark (which happened to be the 9. of September in the same year) the Duke of Wirtemberg was removed back to the Seat wherein he was Installed, and the Duke of Holst advanced into his void Stall. All which will appear more clear, from the appointment of Stalls on these occasions which follow.

A Remove of Banners and Plates at the Installation of Frederick Duke of Wirtemberg, Anno Jac. Reg. 2.

Ex Collect. prof. R. Cooke, p. 15.

James R.

1. The Sovereign.
2. The Prince
3. Earl of Nottingham.
4. Earl of Ormond.
5. Earl of Shrewsbury.
6. Earl of Northumberland.
7. Lord Sheffield.
8. Earl of Devonshire.
9. Earl of Sussex.
10. Earl of Darby.
11. Duke of Lenox.
12. Earl of Marr.
13. Void.

1. The French King.
2. Void.
3. Duke of Wirtemberg.
4. Earl of Dorset.
5. Earl of Cumberland.
6. Earl of Worcester.
7. Earl of Suffolk.
8. Sir Henry Lea.
9. Lord Scrope.
10. Lord Burghley.
11. Earl of Southampton.
12. Earl of Pembroke.
13. Void.

The order of stalls at St. George's Feast, an. Jac. Regis 3.

15 d.

James R.

1. The Sovereign.
2. The Prince.
3. Duke of Wirtemberg.
4. Earl of Ormond.
5. Earl of Shrewsbury.
6. Earl of Northumberland.
7. Lord Sheffield.
8. Earl of Devonshire.
9. Earl of Sussex.
10. Earl of Darby.
11. Duke of Lenox.
12. Earl of Marr.
13. Void.

1. The French King.
2. Void.
3. Earl of Nottingham.
4. Earl of Dorset.
5. Earl of Cumberland.
6. Earl of Worcester.
7. Earl of Suffolk.
8. Sir Henry Lea.
9. Lord Scrope.
10. Lord Burleigh.
11. Earl of Southampton.
12. Earl of Pembroke.
13. Void.

A Remove of Banners and Plates at the Installation of Ulrick Duke of Holst, the 16. of May an. Jac. R. 3.

Ibid. Fol. 16.

James R.

1. The Sovereign.
2. The Prince.
3. Duke of Wirtemberg.
4. Earl of Nottingham.
5. Earl of Dorset.

1. The French King.
2. Void.
3. Duke of Holst.
4. Earl of Ormond.
5. Earl of Shrewsbury.

6. Earl

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| 6. Earl of Cumberland. | 6. Earl of Northumberland. |
| 7. Earl of Worcester. | 7. Lord Sheffield. |
| 8. Earl of Suffolk. | 8. Earl of Devonshire. |
| 9. Sir Henry Lea. | 9. Earl of Sussex. |
| 10. Lord Scroope. | 10. Earl of Derby. |
| 11. Earl of Exeter. | 11. Duke of Lenox. |
| 12. Earl of Southampton. | 12. Earl of Marr. |
| 13. Earl of Penbroke. | 13. Earl of Northampton. |

15. F. l. 17.

A Remove of Banners and Plates at the Installation of *Christierne* the Fourth, King of Denmark, the 8. of Sept. an. Jac. Reg. 3.

James R.

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. The Sovereign. | 1. The French King. |
| 2. The King of Denmark. | 2. The Prince. |
| 3. Duke of Holst. | 3. Duke of Wirtemberg. |
| 4. Earl of Nottingham. | 4. Earl of Ormond. |
| 5. Earl of Dorset. | 5. Earl of Shrewsbury. |
| 6. Earl of Cumberland. | 6. Earl of Northumberland. |
| 7. Earl of Worcester. | 7. Lord Sheffield. |
| 8. Earl of Suffolk. | 8. Earl of Devonshire. |
| 9. Sir Henry Lea. | 9. Earl of Sussex. |
| 10. Lord Scroope. | 10. Earl of Derby. |
| 11. Earl of Exeter. | 11. Duke of Lenox. |
| 12. Earl of Southampton. | 12. Earl of Marr. |
| 13. Earl of Penbroke. | 13. Earl of Northampton. |

15 MS. penes
13 Edw. Fau-
conbridge gen.

4. The ancient
Law of suc-
ceeding in
Stalls altered.

12 Lib. C. p. 49.

Here in this last Scheme we see Prince *Henry* was removed from the second on the *Sovereign's*, to the second on the *Prince's* side, to make room for the King of Denmark. And though the Duke of *Cheverex* An. 3. Car. 1. upon the death of the Duke of *Brunswick*, was advanced from the third Stall on the *Sovereign's* side into the Duke of *Brunswick's* void Stall, namely the second on the *Prince's* side: nevertheless, the year following, upon the admittance of *Gustavus Adolphus* King of Sweden, he was removed two Stalls lower; and at that time the Prince Elector *Palatine* one.

But let us return from the Removal and Translation of a *Knight-Subject*, after he had been installed, to the Assignment of his Stall at the time of Installation it self, and (in the last place) note, That on the 24. of April an. 6. Eliz. instead of the ancient Law which appointed each *Elect-Knight* to succeed in the Stall of his Predecessor, and the latter, which permitted a Translation at pleasure, a new one was introduced; being framed (as was conceived) upon a more equal ground than the former, and to avoid as much as might be the danger of emulation, which was this, "That all Knights who for the future were admitted into the Society of the Order, should take and be installed in the lowest Stall, according to the course and seniority of their Election; except only stranger Kings and Princes."

Whereupon it came to pass, that when a *Knight-Subject* Elect was to be Installed (he taking the lowest Stall) all the *Knights-Companions*, between him and the vacant Stall, were removed higher, to the end such vacancy might be supplied: or if two or more were to be Installed at one time, they took the lowest Stalls according to the seniority of their Election; the senior *Knight-Elect* being placed higher than the junior. And albeit this manner and order in Removals is now become a thing of course, and the method easie; yet may it not be done, or the Atchievements, Banners, or Plates removed, unless the *Sovereign* Sign a Warrant as formerly, wherein they are orderly ranked, to justify Garter for so doing, which will be the more easily understood by the insertion of a Scheme or two.

The

The order of *stalls* as they stood at the Feast of St. George *an. 29. Eliz.*

Ex Coll. A.V.W.

Elizabeth R.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 1. The <i>Sovereign</i> . | 1. Void. |
| 2. The <i>French King</i> . | 2. The King of <i>Spain</i> . |
| 3. The King of <i>Denmark</i> . | 3. Void. |
| 4. Duke <i>John Casimire</i> . | 4. Void. |
| 5. The Viscount <i>Mountague</i> . | 5. The Earl of <i>Leicester</i> . |
| 6. The Earl of <i>Shrewsbury</i> . | 6. The Earl of <i>Warwick</i> . |
| 7. The Lord <i>Hunsdon</i> . | 7. Void. |
| 8. Void. | 8. The Earl of <i>Worcester</i> . |
| 9. The Earl of <i>Huntingdon</i> . | 9. The Lord <i>Burghley</i> . |
| 10. The Lord <i>Grey</i> . | 10. The Earl of <i>Derby</i> . |
| 11. The Earl of <i>Penbroke</i> . | 11. The Lord <i>Howard of Effingham</i> . |
| 12. Void. | 12. The Lord <i>Cobham</i> . |
| 13. The Lord <i>scrope</i> . | 13. Void. |

A Translation of *stalls* made against the Feast of Installation, *an. 30. Eliz.*

Elizabeth R.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1. The <i>Sovereign</i> . | 1. Void. |
| 2. The <i>French King</i> . | 2. The King of <i>Spain</i> . |
| 3. The King of <i>Denmark</i> . | 3. Void. |
| 4. Duke <i>John Casimire</i> . | 4. Void. |
| 5. The Viscount <i>Mountague</i> . | 5. The Earl of <i>Leicester</i> . |
| 6. The Earl of <i>Shrewsbury</i> . | 6. The Earl of <i>Warwick</i> . |
| 7. The Lord <i>Hunsdon</i> . | 7. The Earl of <i>Worcester</i> . |
| 8. The Earl of <i>Huntingdon</i> . | 8. The Lord <i>Burleigh</i> . |
| 9. The Lord <i>Grey</i> . | 9. The Earl of <i>Derby</i> . |
| 10. The Earl of <i>Penbroke</i> . | 10. The Lord <i>Howard of Effingham</i> . |
| 11. The Lord <i>Cobham</i> . | 11. The Lord <i>scrope</i> . |
| 12. The Earl of <i>Essex</i> . | 12. The Earl of <i>Ormond</i> . |
| 13. Sir <i>Christopher Hatton</i> . | 13. Void. |

The first of these *Schemes* shew how the *Stalls* were ranked on St. George's Eve, *an. 29. Eliz.* and the second how altered against the Installation of the Earls of *Essex* and *Ormond*, and of Sir *Christopher Hatton*, the 23. of May *an. 30. Eliz.* by which those three *Elect Knights* appear to be Installed in the lowermost *Stalls*, (as the last mentioned Decree enjoins) and by reason that the Earl of *Essex* and Sir *Christopher Hatton* were settled on the *Sovereign's* side, the vacancy before in the eighth and twelfth *Stalls* of the same side became filled up; the Earl of *Huntingdon* (seated before in the ninth Stall) being advanced into the eighth, the Lord *Grey* into the ninth, and the Earl of *Penbroke* into the tenth Stall.

So also by the like advance of the Earl of *Worcester* into the seventh on the *Prince's* side, the vacancy is therein supplied, and the other *Knights-Companions* seated below him, by a joint and orderly removal, left the twelfth Stall for the Earl of *Ormond*, and the thirteenth void for the next *Elect Knight*.

The like order was observed by King *James*, as appears by another Scheme of the *Stalls*, settled in Chapter held the 3. of July *an. 1. Jac. R.* at the Election *Lib. C. p. 150* of the Duke of *Lenox*, the Earls of *Southampton*, *Marr*, and *Penbroke*.

Ex Coll. R. 7.
hannis Vincent
Gen.

Stalls altered at a Chapter held at *Windsor*, the 3. of *July an. 1. Jac. R.*

James R.

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1. The <i>Sovereign</i> . | 1. The <i>French King</i> . |
| 2. The <i>Prince</i> . | 2. <i>Void</i> . |
| 3. The <i>Earl of Nottingham</i> . | 3. <i>Void</i> . |
| 4. The <i>Earl of Ormond</i> . | 4. The <i>Lord Buckhurst</i> . |
| 5. The <i>Earl of Salop</i> . | 5. The <i>Earl of Cumberland</i> . |
| 6. The <i>Earl of Northumberland</i> . | 6. The <i>Earl of Worcester</i> . |
| 7. The <i>Lord Sheffield</i> . | 7. The <i>Lord Howard of Waldon</i> . |
| 8. The <i>Lord Hunsdon</i> . | 8. The <i>Lord Montjoy</i> . |
| 9. <i>Sir Henry Lea</i> . | 9. The <i>Earl of Suffex</i> . |
| 10. The <i>Lord Cobham</i> . | 10. The <i>Lord Scrope</i> . |
| 11. The <i>Earl of Derby</i> . | 11. The <i>Lord Burgheley</i> . |
| 12. The <i>Duke of Lenox</i> . | 12. The <i>Earl of Southampton</i> . |
| 13. The <i>Earl of Marr</i> . | 13. The <i>Earl of Penbroke</i> . |

From hence it appears that these *Elect-Knights* were Installed in the lowest Stalls; and so were all other *Elect-Knights* Subjects throughout his Reign and since, except the *Prince of Wales*, and *Charles Duke of York*, Sons to the said *Sovereign*: for the *Prince* was Installed in the second Stall on the *Sovereign's* side; and upon the election of the said *Duke of York*, ^a *an. 9. Jac. R.* the second Stall on the *Prince's* side was first designed for him, and in ^b place answerable thereunto, did he proceed to the Chappel, the morrow after *St. George's* day upon which he was elected. But upon *Whitsunday* following, at a solemn debate in Chapter, it was determined; ^c That notwithstanding he was the *Sovereign's* Son, yet should he have no more preheminance than other *Knights-Companions*, but come in as a *Puisne*, and that his ^d Atchievements (which it seems had been set up over the ^e second Stall on the *Prince's* side) should therefore be removed to that Stall next above the *Viscount Rochesters* (being the eleventh on the same side) and so to be ^f conformed with the *Earl of Montgomery* (before whom he proceeded on *Whitsun Monday* to the *Chapter-house* towards his Installation) and it was moreover then Decreed, ^g that all Princes not absolute, should be installed thenceforth in the *puisne* place.

^a MS. fol. penes
E.W.G. f. 149. a

^b *Ibid. f.*
^c 149. b.
^d *Ibid. f.*
^e 149. b.
^f *Ibid. f.*
^g *Ibid. f.*

But after this, endeavours were used to advance the said *Duke* into the Stall to which he was first appointed, and the *Kings of Arms* were consulted with in the case, who certified that ^h *Richard Duke of York* second Son to King *Edward* the Fourth, was Installed in the fourth Stall on the *Prince's* side, and had precedence of the *Duke of Suffolk*, the *Earls of Douglas* and *Essex*, who were elected long before him: That *Henry Duke of York*, second Son to King *Henry* the seventh, was Installed in the third Stall on the *Sovereign's* side, and had place of the *Duke of Buckingham*, and the *Earls of Oxford* and *Derby* his ancestors: and lastly, that *Henry Fitz Roy Duke of Richmond*, base Son of King *Henry* the Eighth, had place and precedence before the *Dukes of Norfolk* and *Suffolk* and others. Whereupon it was thought fit, that the *Sovereign's* Children should be as well privileged in this case, as *Stranger Princes*; and therefore in another ⁱ Chapter, held at *Whitehall* on the 13. of *April* (being *Easter Monday*) *an. 10. Jac. R.* the Order which past the year before for making the *Duke a Puisne*, was ^k abrogated, and he translated to the second Stall on the *Prince's* side, and paired with *Prince Henry*; as may be also seen by the order of the Stalls then settled, and entred in the ^l *Blue Book* of the Order.

ⁱ MS. penes
^j *Edw. Faus-*
^k *conbridge, gen.*

^l Pag. 174.

We need not bring hither more instances in proof of the observation of the Chapter *Act* made *an. 6. Eliz.* as it hath relation to *Knights Subjects*, since the same hath been to this time punctually pursued; but in regard *Strangers* are therein excepted, it will be necessary to note here concerning them, that the rule

rule and practice continued as established by King Henry the Eighth, viz. That they were Installed in Seats next to the *Sovereign*, according to their state and dignity.

We shall only add an instance of the manner of placing both *strangers* and *Knight Subjects* at one and the same time: for at the coming of King Charles the First to the Crown, there were of both conditions to be Installed in one day, namely the Duke of *Brunswick* a *Stranger Prince*, the Earls of *Salisbury* and *Carlisle* *Knights Subjects*, elected by King James the 21. of December in the 22. year ^{m Lib.C. p. 231} of his Reign; as also the Earls of *Dorset* and *Holland*, with *Viscount Andover*, elected by the said King Charles, the 15. of May following, and the Duke of *Cheveraux* elected the 4. of July after. And when the Removal of Stalls was ^{n J Ibid. p. 26:} considered on for admission of these seven *Elect Knights*, it was determined, that the Dukes of *Brunswick* and *Cheveraux* should be installed in the uppermost Stalls among *Strangers*, as King Henry the Eighth had ordained, but the *Knights Subjects* in the lowermost Stalls, according to the constant practice, since passing the Decree an. 6. Eliz. as doth appear from the settlement of Stalls then made, and thus Intituled.

A Remove of Banners and Plates at the Feast of St. George, and Installation ^{Ex ipso Au} holden at *Windefor* the 13. 14. and 15. days of December, an. 1625. At ^{1087.} which time were Installed the Dukes of *Brunswick* and *Cheveraux*, the Earls of *Salisbury*, *Carlisle*, *Holland*, *Dorset*, and the *Viscount Andover*, as followeth.

Charles R.

- | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. King Charles Sovereign. | 1. The King of Denmark. |
| 2. The Prince Palatine. | 2. The Duke of Brunswick. |
| 3. The Duke of Cheveraux. | 3. The Earl of Northumberland. |
| 4. The Earl of Worcester. | 4. The Lord Sheffield. |
| 5. The Earl of Suffolk. | 5. The Earl of Sussex. |
| 6. The Earl of Derby. | 6. The Earl of Marr. |
| 7. The Earl of Penbroke. | 7. The Earl of Montgomery. |
| 8. The Earl of Arundel. | 8. The Earl of Somerset. |
| 9. The Earl of Kelly. | 9. The Visc. Wallingford. |
| 10. The Earl of Rutland. | 10. The Duke of Buckingham. |
| 11. The Earl of Leicester. | 11. The Earl of Salisbury. |
| 12. The Earl of Carlisle. | 12. The Earl of Dorset. |
| 13. The Earl of Holland. | 13. The Viscount Andover. |

Shortly after the Restauration of the present *Sovereign* to his Crowns and Kingdoms, when several *Knights-Companions*, both *strangers* and *Subjects*, were to be Installed, debate was had in Chapter held at *Whitehall* the 10. of April, an. 13. Car. 2. about placing their *Atchievements* over their Stalls, whereupon the following Order issued.

Charles R.

Whereas divers *Elected Knights* and *Companions* of our most Noble Order of ^{Ex Colle.} the Garter, are by our special appointment, to be installed in the Chappel ^{E. W. G.} of our Castle of *Windefor*, upon the 15. day of this instant, and that some of them who are *Strangers*, do not yet, nor are likely to appear either in their own persons or by their sufficient *Proxies* at the said Instalment, and so might run hazard to lose the benefit and advantage of their pre-election in point of rank and precedency in respect of some of our *Subject Knights*, who though since *Elected* will be first installed, without some expedient taken therein to prevent it. There being no reason (nor is it in our intention) that those Noble Persons should suffer that prejudice for want

of that usual formality, and for which they are not in fault, but others, who according to the Statutes and ancient Custom were to give timely advertisement to the said Foreign elected Knights, and to summon them by themselves or Proxies to assist at the said Instalment: Our will and pleasure is you proceed forthwith to the placing of the Hatchments of all the respective Knights and Companions of our said Order, whether Installed, or Elect, Subject, or Strangers, over the Stalls which we do in manner as followeth assign and appoint them in our foresaid Chappel.

2. The Duke of York.	1. The Sovereign.	1. — — —	2. The Elector Palatine.
3. Prince Elector of Brandenburg.		3. Prince of Orange.	
4. Prince Rupert.		4. Prince Edward.	
5. Earl of Salisbury.		5. Earl of Berkshire.	
6. Earl of Northumberland.		6. Duke of Espernon.	
7. Duke of Ormond.		7. Duke of Buckingham.	
8. Earl of Southampton.		8. Marquess of Newcastle.	
9. Earl of Bristol.		9. Prince of Tarente.	
10. Count Marshin.		10. Duke of Almarle.	
11. Earl of Sandwich.		11. Earl of Oxford.	
12. Duke of Richmond.		12. Earl of Lindsey.	
13. Earl of Manchester.		13. Earl of Strafford.	

And for so doing this shall be your sufficient Warrant, any Statute or Custom to the contrary notwithstanding. Given under the Signet of Our said Order at Our Court at Whitehall the 10. of April 1661.

To our trusty and wellbeloved servant
Sir Edward Walker Knight, Garter,
and Principal King of Arms
of our most Noble Order of the
Garter.

By the Sovereign's
command

Hen. de Vic.

So that here we see the *Stranger Princes* are settled in the upper Stalls, neerest the *Sovereign*, according to their several dignities and degrees, and all the *Knights Subjects* (among whom were reckoned the Duke of *Espernon*, the Prince of *Tarente*, and Count *Marshin*) according to the times of their Elections: this being in confirmation as well of the settlement made by King *Henry the Eighth*, as of Queen *Elizabeth* before remembred. And among the *Knights Companions* in this settlement it is to be noted, that though the Earl of *Southampton* did not receive his *Garter* and *George*, till the *Sovereign's* happy return into *England*, and then from his own hands, yet was his place and precedence here allowed him according to the time of his Election, in the Isle of *Jersey*, in *January. an. Dom. 1649.* some few days before Duke *Hamilton*, and the Marquess of *Newcastle* were elected.

q Lib. Cant.
An. p. 43.

But the 10. of *January, an. 14. Car. 2.* the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions*, assembled in Chapter, Ordered, *That thence forward all Princes Strangers of what condition soever, should have precedence among themselves, according to the seniority of their Elections and Installations*; and thereupon the *Sovereign's* Warrant issued out to Garter under the Signet of the Order, dated the 30. of *March* following, to authorise him to set up their *Achievements* in the Chappel of *St. George* at *Windsor*, in the order here exhibited.

Charles

Charles R.

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. The Sovereign. | 1. Void. | <i>Lib. Carolus</i> |
| 2. Duke of York. | 2. Prince Elector Palatine. | <i>p. 43.</i> |
| 3. Prince Rupert. | 3. Prince of Orange. | |
| 4. Prince Elector of Brandenburg. | 4. Prince of Denmark. | |
| 5. Earl of Salisbury. | 5. Earl of Berkshire. | |
| 6. Earl of Northumberland. | 6. Duke of Ormond. | |
| 7. Duke of Buckingham. | 7. Earl of Southampton. | |
| 8. Marquess of Newcastle. | 8. Earl of Bristol. | |
| 9. Prince of Tarente. | 9. Count Marshin. | |
| 10. Duke of Albemarle. | 10. Earl of Sandwich. | |
| 11. Earl of Oxford. | 11. Duke of Richmond. | |
| 12. Earl of Lindsey. | 12. Earl of Manchester. | |
| 13. Earl of Strafford. | 13. Duke of Monmouth. | |

Nevertheless the 19. of November, *an. Dom.* 1669. at a Chapter held at White-hall, upon due consideration had of the Law made by King Henry the Eighth, for placing of Strangers, as also of Queen Elizabeth for Knights Subjects, and to remove all Orders made in alteration thereof; the Sovereign by the advice and consent of the most Noble Companions present, was pleased to Ordain and Declare,

First, that the Princes of Wales, and such Emperors and Kings, that should be of the Order, should be placed in the neereſt Stalls, to that of the Sovereign, according to their Elections and Installations.

Then, that all other Sovereign Princes, and Princes of the Blood, should be placed in the Stalls, next unto Kings according to their seniority in the Order.

And thirdly, that all other his Majesty's Subjects and Strangers, not of the dignity above mentioned, should be installed in the lowest Stalls, according to their antiquity in the Order, and the ancient Practice.

Thus stands the Law for settlement of stalls at this day. And whereas the Stall commonly called the Prince's Stall, was and had been long void, the Sovereign by the advice of the most Noble Companions (present in Chapter the said 19. of November) was pleased to order, *That the present King of Sweden should by his Proxie be placed in that Stall, and his Achievements hung up thereon accordingly, in convenient time:* All which being done as this Order directed, the stalls at the Feast of St. George celebrated, *an. 23. Car. 2.* were ordered in the following manner.

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. The Sovereign. | 1. The King of Sweden. |
| 2. King of Denmark. | 2. Duke of York. |
| 3. Prince Elector Palatine. | 3. Prince Rupert. |
| 4. Prince of Orange. | 4. Prince Elector of Brandenburg. |
| 5. Prince Elector of Saxony. | 5. Duke of Ormond. |
| 6. Duke of Buckingham. | 6. Duke of Newcastle. |
| 7. Earl of Bristol. | 7. Prince of Tarente. |
| 8. Count Marshin. | 8. Earl of Sandwich. |
| 9. Earl of Oxford. | 9. Duke of Richmond. |
| 10. Earl of Strafford. | 10. Duke of Monmouth. |
| 11. Duke of Albemarle. | 11. Void. |
| 12. Void. | 12. Void. |
| 13. Void. | 13. Void. |

SECT. VII.

Preparations made by the Knight Elect.

HAVING in the preceding section laid down the ancient Law of *Succession* into void Stalls, and of *Translation* from one Stall to another; with several instances, both while such removals were at the *Sovereign's* pleasure, and after, when they became confin'd to the regular course now observ'd; and having also discours'd concerning those things which are to be prepared for the Installation of a *Knight Subject* on the *Sovereign's* part, and for which his *Warrants* and *Letters* issue forth, as is before shew'd at large: we come now to consider, what is further to be prepared for the *Knight Elect*, at his own charge, against the day of this great Solemnity, and they are chiefly these which follow.

1. A *Mantle* or upper Robe, with its appurtenances.
2. A *Collar* of the Garter, and Great George.
3. A *Cap* of black Velvet adorn'd with Plumes.
4. An *Helm*, *Crest*, *Mantlings*, and *Sword*.
5. A *Banner* of his Arms.
6. A *Plate* of his Arms and Stile.
7. A *Cushen*, to carry his Robes and Collar upon.
8. *Lodging Scutcheons*.

ⁱ Mantle.

We do not find that the *Mantle* of the Order was anciently bestowed by the *Sovereign* upon *Knights Subjects*, as was the *Kirtle* or *Surcoat*; nor indeed of late (unless now and then as a peculiar favour) for seeing the Injunction for returning the *Mantle* upon the death of a *Knight-Companion*, is restrained to such only on whom the *Sovereign* should vouchsafe to bestow them, it is thence evident, that the *Sovereign* is not obliged to give the *Mantle* at all, nor to all, but only where himself pleaseth. But it appears that the *Sovereign* always bestowed the *Mantle* (together with the rest of the *Habit*) upon *Strangers*, after he had Elected any of them into the Society of the Order. And when the whole *Habit* was sent over by *Garter* to the King of Portugal an. 13. H. 6. the *Mantle*, *Surcoat*, and *Hood* were accompted for together in the Accompts of the *Great Wardrobe*; and the like hath been done in all such cases since.

^b Ex lib. vocat.
^c Cur. in Offic.
mag. Gardrob.
fol. 92.

^c Lib. Warr. in
Offic. prad. à se-
sto S. Mich.
1623. ad an.
1624.

^d Warr. curr.
in eod. Offic. de
an. 1528.

^e Lib. Warr.
de an. 1629.

^f Ex Autogr.
^g A. p. nes. prof.
Jac. Palmer.

ⁱ Numb.
XXXIV.

^k Sect. 2.

2. Collar.

1 Appendix

Numb. XXXV.

Howbeit of late times the *Sovereign*, as an especial mark of favour, hath been pleas'd now and then to give a *Knight-Subject* the *Mantle* also: as did King James to James Marquess Hamilton, an. 21. Jac. R. and King Charles the First to Theophilus Earl of Suffolk an. 4. Car. 1. to William Earl of Northampton, an. 5. Car. 1. and an. 14. Car. 1. Sir James Palmer by this *Sovereign's* direction paid for the Velvet and Taffety of the Earl of Kelly's *Mantle* and *Surcoat* to Sir Peter Richant, and put it upon the Accompt of extraordinary charges of the Order.

Besides which the present *Sovereign*, as a mark of like favour, caus'd 17 *Mantles* (with the usual Liveries of *Surcoat* and *Hood*) to be provided against the Grand Feast of St. George, an. 13. Car. 2. which were bestowed not only among the new *Elect Knights*, but the three senior *Knights-Companions* also, namely, the Earls of Salisbury, Berkshire, and Northumberland; for which see the Warrant in the Appendix.

But the *Elect Knight* being otherwise to provide the *Mantle* at his own charge, directions may be had in the Chapter of the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the Order, as to all the materials for making thereof.

The *Collar* of the Order with the *Great George* is to be provided by the *Elect Knight*, unless where the *Sovereign* is pleas'd to bestow the *Mantle*; and in such case he also bestows the *Collar*, and then a like Warrant issues to the Master of the *Jewel-house*, as did for providing the 17. *Collars* an. 13. Car. 2.

The

The Black Velvet *Cap*, mentioned and described ^a before, and therefore ^{3.} *Cap* needfess to speak of it here; is also to be provided at the charge of the *Knight* ^{n Chap. 7.} *Elect.* ^{Self. 4.}

Likewise the *Helm*, and *Crest*, with *Mantlings* thereunto belonging, also a ^{4.} *Helm*, *Crest*, &c.; *Sword* and *Girdle* (usually called within the verge of this *Order*, the *Achievements* of a *Knight-Companion*) are to be got in readines, by the care and direction of *Garter*, but at the *Elect Knights* cost; all which are to be set over his Stall, as soon as his Installation Fees are paid.

This honor, that every *Knight-Companion* should have his *Helme*, *Crest*, and *Sword*, hung up over his Stall in the Chappel of St. George at Windsor, is particularly provided for, in all the several Bodies of *statutes*; and are ordained to remain there during the lives of the possessors, ^{in memory} (or as a ^{Token or} *Mark of Honor*) of him that bears them, and a *testimony* of the defence of the *Church*, as the *Oaths of Military Orders* require. ^{o E. 3. Stat. Art. 9. p Ord. Stat. in Bibl. Hutton. Art. 9.}

The *Helms*, used for this purpose and upon this occasion, are made of Steel large and fair, and of a more than ordinary proportion: they are likewise (for the most part) of two sorts, the one appointed for *Sovereign Princes*, and framed open, with large Bailes or Bars; the other for *Knights Subjects*, whose Vizors are made close. About King Henry the Eighth's Reign the *Knights Subjects Helms* were parcel gilt with fine Gold in Oyle, wrought with Rabeskeys and other works, and burnished with fine Gold. But in Queen Elizabeth's Reign, and since, it hath been the Custom to gild their Helms all over, placing St. George's Arms in the middle before the Vizors. ^{q s Collect W. r le N. Cl.}

The *Mantlings* that hang down on either side the Helm, which, with the Wreath, are in some places called *Appendixes*, are all of Tissue or Cloth of Gold, and heretofore lined with *Sarsenet*; but in Queen Mary's Reign they began to make use of *White Satin*, for of such were the Linings to the Mantlings of *Anthony Brown Viscount Mountague*, and *William Howard Lord Admiral*. ^{[Lib. N. p. 61. 70. videfis Stat. in Bibl. Hutton. Art. 7. cy H. 8 Stat. Art. 8. r s Collect W. u le N Cl. w Collect H. 70. x Vincent.}

At the bottom of these *Mantlings* hang a pair of gilt knobs, burnished with Gold, from which issue *Tassels* of either Gold or Silver (according as is the metal in the *Knights Coat Armour*) mixed with Silk of the chief Colour in his Arms.

Upon the *Helm* and *Mantlings* is placed a *Wreath* of corded Silks, of the *Knights* colours, which was heretofore made of *Sarsenet*, but now of *Taffaty*.

The *Crest* of the *Knight* is placed either upon these *Wreaths*, or issuant out of a *Crown*, or ducal *Cap*; turned up with Ermyne, and of what kind soever the *Crest* is, the same is neatly carved in wood, and either gilt or wrought in its proper colours in Oyl.

Directly before the *Helm*, an arming *Sword* hangs down, the *Pommel*, *Cross*, and *Chape* are gilt; the *Scabbard* is made of the same Tissue or Cloth of Gold, as are the *Mantlings*, and so is the *Girdle* thereunto belonging; but the *Buckles* and *Pendants* are of Copper gilt.

It appears a little before, that the custom of setting up the *Helm*, *Crest*, and *Sword*, over the *Knights Stall* is as ancient as the Institution of the *Order*; but when their *Banners* were first hung up, is not so clearly manifest; for neither do the *Statutes* of Institution, or King Henry the Fifth's *Statutes* take notice of them. ^{5. Banner.}

The first mention of them that we find is in the *Black Book* of the *Order*, an. 2. H. 6. where the *Banner* of the King of Portugal, is particularly named among the *Achievements* then set up over his Stall; but Henry the Eighth's body of *Statutes* makes particular mention of them. ^{a Lib. N. p. 76. c Art. 8.}

The fashion of the *Sovereign's* and all the *Knight-Companions Banners* are square; but it doth no where appear to us, of what size their *Banners* anciently were; yet in Queen Elizabeth's Reign, we find them ^a two yards and a quarter long, and a yard and three quarters broad, beside the *Fringe* (which is made of Gold or Silver and Silk, of the colours in the *Wreath*) and thereon are wrought or beaten upon *Taffaty-Sarsenet*, double-Sarsenet, or rich *Taffaty*, with fine Gold and Colours, on both sides, the paternal Coat of the *Knights Companion*, together ^{d Collect W. le N. Cl. videfis MS. 4. penes E. W. G.}

together with his Quarterings, or so many of them as he please to make use of, wherein *Garter* is to take care that they be warrantably marshalled.

25 Coll. F. W.
511e N. G.

And because a single Coat was conceived not to stand fair enough in a *Banner* of this proportion, therefore the *Sovereign* hath been pleased (where a *Knight-Companion* wanted *Quarterings*) to grant a new Coat to bear in *Quarter* with his paternal Coat; as did King *James* to *Robert Carr Viscount Rochester*, afterwards Earl of *Somerset*; to whose paternal Coat (8. *Jun. an. 9. Jac. R.*) he first added a *Lyon passant gardant Or*, in the dexter part, as an especial gift of favour, and then a new invented Coat to be born in quarter therewith, viz. *Quarterly Or and Gules, a Lyon Rampant sable over all*. He also granted to *Sir Thomas Erskin* (afterwards created Earl of *Kelly*) a Coat of Arms to be quartered with his paternal Coat, viz. *Argent, a pale Sable*.

25 Ex Coll. F.
d2 J. V. gen.

25 Ind.
12

These *Banners* of Arms are fixed to the end of long Staves, painted in Oyl, formerly with the Colours of the Wreath, but now Red: Their ends are put into Sockets of Iron, well fixed in the Wall, directly over the *Knight-Companions* Helms and Crests; and commonly lined with thick Fustian, to preserve them.

6. Plates of
Arms.

Besides these, there is also to be provided a *Copper-plate* gilt, whereon a *Scutcheon* of the *Knight-Elect's Arms*, and *Quarterings* within a *Garter*, are engraved and enamelled in Colours, with his Helm, Crest, and Supporters, and underneath his Style and Titles of honor: which *Plate, Garter* usually takes care to provide, and is to be fixed on the back of the *Knight-Elect's Stall* assigned for his Installation.

7. Cushion.

Moreover a Velvet *Cushion* is to be also provided, whereon to carry the *Knight-Elect's Mantle, Collar, Hood*, and *Book of statutes* before him, in the proceeding to the *Choir* at his Installation. Concerning the materials and garnishings of some of these Cushions, we find this account of those used at the Installation of the Lord *Treasure Wexham*, the Earls of *Exceter* and *Lindsey*, Installed *an. 6. Car. 1.* that each of them contained one yard and a half of *Crimson Velvet*, one Ell of rich *Taffaty* for their lining, and 4 yards of *Fringe*, and 4 great *Tassels*.

8. Lodging
Scutcheons.

Lastly, there hath been commonly provided a convenient number of *Lodging Scutcheons*, of the *Elect-Knight's Arms*, invironed with a *Garter*, with his *Stile* and *Titles* underneath; and these *Garter* also gets in readiness, for it hath been an ancient custom, to distribute at the Inns in the *Knight's* passage, to and at *Windefor*, these *Scutcheons*, to be set up in the principal Rooms of those Houses, as a memorial of the honor of the *Knights* Installation.

1 MS. fol. penes
G. O. T. 2: 3.

Such of the foresaid particulars as are committed to the care of *Garter* to prepare and make ready, the charges thereof have been sometimes cast up, and the *Accompt* stated and paid off beforehand; by which means he was the better enabled to furnish out the same, for so did the Earls of *Shrewsbury* and *Cumberland*, *an. 34. Eliz.* And in *Garter's Bill* there is to be inserted the price of a *Trunk*, the charge for Carriage of those things he provides for the *Knight-Elect* to *Windefor*, and for their setting up.

Lastly, besides all these things before mentioned, to be prepared and provided either by the *Chancellor* of the *Order*, or *Garter*; there are other to be taken care for, by the *Knight-Elect*, relating more particularly both to himself and his retinue; as his own *Apparel*, the number of his *Attendants* and *Servants*, with their *Clothes* and *Liveries*, his *Coach* and *Saddle Horses*, both for himself and them; with divers other things necessary for setting forth his *Cavalcade* and *Proceeding*, to and at *Windefor*; all which have usually been the richest and best that could be made or gotten, that so the show might be furnished out, with all possible splendor and gallantry.

Together with these, the *Provisions* for *Dyet* at *Windefor* (if the *Feast* be kept at the *Elect-Knight's* charge and expence) is to be considered of, and to that end for the most part some one of the Clerks of the *Sovereign's Kitchen* is to be consulted, who commonly undertakes the management of that *Affair*.

To conclude this *Chapter*, the *Hall* or *Room* where the grand *Dinner* is to be kept, the *Chapter-house* and *Chappel*, ought chiefly to be set forth and adorned with rich and sumptuous *Furniture*, against this solemnity, over and beside what is of ordinary and necessary use.

The

The Hall or Dining room, to be furnished with rich hangings, and if the *Sovereign* or his *Lieutenant* hold the *Feast*, then must there be a^k Cloth of State <sup>k Colled W.
le N. Cl.</sup> set up at the upper end of it: but not if the Installation be performed by Commissioners.

The *Chapter-house* is then also to be hung, a rich Carpet spread upon the Table, and set about with Velvet Chairs and Cushens; and because in the late times of plundering, this place had suffered its share, and nothing found there upon the present *Sovereign's* happy return, that was worth taking away; his said Majesty in a *Chapter* held the 14. of *January an. 12. Car. 2.* among other preparations relating to the *Order*, caused directions to be given to the *Mistress* of the *Wardrobe*, to provide Velvet for *Chairs* to furnish the *Chapter-house*, and *Cushens* to be used in the *Choir* of *St. George's Chappel*, which accordingly were made ready for the service of the following *Feast*.

Against the Installation of *Philip King of Castile and Leon, an. 22. H. 7.* Tⁿ Table in the *Chapter-house* was covered with cloth of Gold, and the *Forms* vⁿ Baudkin; before the *Sovereign* was laid a Cushen of Cloth of Gold, whereon aⁿ *Crucifix* lay, and the *Evangelists* turn'd open to the place of the *Canon*, with ⁿ *several Tapers* burning on either side. At the upper end of the Table towards ⁿ *the right hand* was set a Chair for the *Sovereign*, under a golden Canopy, with ⁿ *Cushens* of Cloth of Gold, and on the left hand a Stool with like garnishing, for the King of *Castile*. ⁿ *side* ⁿ *183.*

In *St. Georges Chappel*, the *high Altar* is to be richly adorned with Plate, the *Sovereign's Stall* with a Canopy, and other usual ornaments, and lastly, the *Stalls* of the *Knights-Companions* present at this Ceremony with Velvet Cushens.

As to the furnishing of other places in the Castle of *Windsor*, on such a solemn occasion, we will in the last place borrow an account from the Relator of the Ceremony of Installation of the aforesaid King of *Castile and Leon*, whose words are these.

To wit of the gret rich cobbord, which continually dode in the gret hall, which was all gilt Plate; or of the gret and rich beds of estate, hangings of rich Cloth of Gold, or of the rich and sumptuous clothes of Arras, with divers Clothes of estate, both in the Kings Logging, and in the King of Castil's Loggings, so many Chambers, Haulle, Chappell, Closetts, Galleries with odir Loggings, so richly and berely well appointed, with divers odir things, that I suffice nor cannot discern, and as I suppose, few or none that there were, that ever saw Castell or odir Logging, in all things so well and richly appointed, and the great continual fare, open househols, so many noble men soo well appareilled, and with soo short warning, heretofore as I thinke hath not been seen.

Ibid.

CHAP. XII.

THE
Personal Installation
OF A
Knight Subject.

SECT. I.

Of the Cavalcade to Windesfor.

IN former times, the *Knights-Elect* frequently took their journey from *London* to their Installation at *Windesfor*, in the nature of a solemn and stately *Cavalcade*; and this Proceeding on Horseback was generally set forth with exceeding pomp; whether we consider the great number of their honorable Friends, who on gallant Couriers rode along with them, or the multitude of their own Attendants well mounted, the richness of whose Apparel, Jewels, Gold Chains, rich embroideries, and Plumes of Feathers of their Lords Colours, even dazzled the Eyes of the beholders.

Suitable thereto was the *Feast*, which had in it all manner of magnificence and plenty, as well of provision, as all other things that could add glory thereunto: and in which the *Elect-Knights* (when kept at their charge) strove not only to exceed their Predecessors, but one another: Infomuch that Embassadors and Strangers esteemed it one of the goodliest sights, that was to be seen in *Chritendom*; and to which (as is noted by a *stranger*) a great concourse of People, and innumerable multitude of People, used to flock from *London* and other places, some reasonable distance from *Windesfor*, to behold the Solemnity. But to make the Splendour of the *Cavalcade* no less conspicuous to the City of *London*, than Town and Castle of *Windesfor*, the *Knights-Elect* have taken up their Lodgings sometimes in the *Strand*, at other times in *Salisbury Court*, then in *Holborn*, or within the *City*; to the end it might pass through some of the eminent streets, for the Peoples satisfaction, whereof we shall here descend to some particulars.

Gilbert Earl of *Shrewsbury*, in order to his *Cavalcade* an. 34. *Eliz.* was lodged in

in ^b Mr. *Gresham's* house (afterwards knighted, and this house since known by ^b *MS. fol. pe-*
the name of *Gresham Colledge*) whence he rode ^c through the *City*, accompanied ^c *nes G. O. T.*
with sundry of his honorable Friends, and a numerous and gallant Train of At- ^d *pag. 203.*
tendants and Servants to *Charing Cross*; where he met ^d *George* Earl of *Cumber-*
land (his Companion Elect) and thence both together rode towards *Windsor*,
within a mile or two of which place, ^e *Garter* King of Arms met them, and set
their Attendants in order; and thence the *Elect-Knights* took their way, in
goodly Equipage through the Town into the Castle, the Proceeding being
thus ordered.

Trumpets, two and two.

Gentlemen in Blue Coats and Gold Chains.

Gentlemen of note.

Garter.

Gentlemen-Ushers.

Earl of The two Elect Baron of
Ormond. *Knights*. *Effingham*.

With their *Footmen* about them.

Noblemen, Knights, and Gentlemen of Quality.

All their *Servants* in the rear.

In like manner Custom and Peace begat many such glorious *Cavalcades*, during the Reigns of Queen *Elizabeth*, and King *James*, specially that at the Installation of ^f *Robert* Earl of *Salisbury*, and *Thomas* Viscount *Bindon*, *May* 21. *an.* 4. ^f *MS. penes*
Jac. R. who came to *Windsor* honorably ^g accompanied, with a great appea- ^g *E. W. G.*
rance of Nobility, Knights, and Gentlemen of special note. ^h *f. 147.*

But the fate of this Solemnity, much like that glorious body the Sun (whose lustre at such times it strove to outshine) had at sometimes its short intermitting Clouds, at others, long nights, and the glory thereof appeared but now and then, when the pleasure of the *Sovereign* grew auspicious, or the honor of the *Order* became placed upon more generous Spirits. And to say truth, there may grow an excess in such Solemnities, even to surfeit; which is then best cured by a long abstinence. Nor was this Festival at all times free from this distemper; but then the *Sovereign* readily cured it, by taking away the cause, and prohibiting excess in their Attendants.

Hereupon it was that King *James*, observing those Excesses the *Knights-Elect* run into upon this occasion, and willing to check the growing inconveniences, took occasion against the Installation of *Francis* Earl of *Rutland*, Sir *George Villars* Knight (after created Earl, then Marquess, and lastly Duke of *Buckingham*) and of Viscount *Lisle*, *an.* 14. of his Reign, to forbid ^h *Livery Coats*, for saving ^h *Ibidem*
charge, and avoiding emulation; and shortly after, in a Chapter held at *Whitehall*, *an.* 16. *Jac. R.* with the consent of the *Knights-Companions* then assembled, put some restraint upon the number of Attendants; and Decreed, ⁱ *That every of the* ⁱ *Lib. C. p. 191*
Knights-Companions should have 50 persons to attend him unto the annual Solemnities of the Order, and no more.

Some little exceeding (above that allowed number) we meet with afterwards in the Attendants of Gentlemen and Yeomen upon *William* Earl of *Northampton* *an.* 5. *Car. 1.* to the number of fourscore, who began his *Cavalcade* to *Windsor*, from ^k *Salisbury* House in the *strand*; and certainly would have exhibited a more ^k *Ex. Collect.*
glorious show, had not the continual Rain for ^l three days space together impeded: ^l *W. le N. Cl.*
Nevertheless conceiving that a Proceeding designed with so much gallantry as ^l *Lib. R. p. 47.*
it was, ought to outlive the accident of foul weather, we shall insert the order of it here.

The order of riding to the Installation of William Earl of Northampton,
the 20. of April, 1629.

Ex. Collect.
W. le N. Cl.

Trumpets, whose Banners were of Damask, and thereon the Earls Arms
within a *Carter*, with his Crest and Supporters.

T t 2

The

The meanest of his Servants, as *Grooms*, and *Teomen*, in Blue Coats, two and two.

His Lordships other Servants in Blue Coats as *Gentlemen*, *Esquires*, and *Knights* two and two.

Two *Secretaries*; Mr. *Ralph Goodwyn*, and Mr. *Francis Mewse*.

Steward, Mr. *Controllor*, Mr.

Cutbber Ogle. *William Goodwyn*.

Two *Pages*, *Thomas Floyd*, and *Francis Browne*.

His spare *Horse*, led by the Gentleman of his *Horse*.

His *Chaplain* to distribute his *Alms*.

Pursuivants at Arms, two and two.

Heralds at Arms, two and two.

Gentleman Usher, Mr. *The Senior Herald*

Walter Thomas, bareheaded. covered.

Earl of *Earl of* *Earl of*
Berkshire. *Northampton*. *Salisbury*.

Noblemen in their places, two and two.

Knights, *Esquires*, and *Gentlemen*, which accompanied him.

The *Commissioners Servants*.

Other *Noblemen*, *Knights*, *Esquires*, and *Gentlemen Servants*.

m { Ex Colle.
n { W. le N. Cl.
o { Wide Lib.
R p. 93.

Thus *Henry Earl of Danby*, and *William Earl of Morton*, being to receive the honor of Installation, *an. 10. Car. 1.* so disposed of themselves, for their more commodious passage and the peoples view; that the one lodged at *Warwick House* in *Holborne*, the other at *Dorset House* in *Salisbury Court* near *Fleetstreet*, and proceeded severally through the Streets to *Hide Park*, each between two Noblemen to support him, with their Footmen in rich Coats on either side them.

Their *Gentlemen-Ushers* rode bare-headed, and before them the *Officers of Arms* wearing their Coats, then their *Servants* in Blue Coats and *Cogaizances* (as was the ancient manner) all led on by *Trumpets*. The rest of the *Lords*, *Knights*, and *Gentlemen* followed after each *Knight-Elect* in Troop, according to their Degrees, those of the best quality foremost. In particular, the Proceeding of the Earl of *Morton*, was marshalled in the following order.

Ex Colle.
W. le N. Cl.

Trumpets, two and two.

Grooms in Coats, two and two.

Teoman two and two.

Gentlemen, two and two.

Secretaries.

Steward. *Gentleman of the Horse*.

Pages.

4 *Officers of Arms*.

Gent. Usher bare. *Lancaster Herald* covered.

Earl Morton

supported between two chief *Lords*.

Footmen on each side in rich Coats.

Noblemen and *Gentlemen*, according to their Degrees.

At *slow* (two miles on this side *Windsor*) they all made a stand, and being put again into order, proceeded to *Windsor Castle*, where alighting in the lower Court, the *Knights-Elect* were thence conducted to their several Lodgings.

To these already mentioned, we shall add the order of that stately *Cavalcade*, set forth by *Algernon Earl of Northumberland*, from *Dorset house* in *Salisbury Court*, toward *Windsor* the 13. of May *an. 11. Car. 1.* which though the last this age hath beheld, yet was it not the least in pomp and glory; and disposed as followeth.

Mr. *Butler*.

Mr. Butler.	Mr. Githens.
Mr. Hawelocke.	Mr. Blackstone.
Mr. Hillman.	Mr. Harris.
Mr. Eglebie.	Mr. Hall.
Mr. Gradye.	Mr. Newland.
Mr. Williams.	Mr. Hubbard.
Mr. Sheares.	Mr. Lambe.
Mr. Collins.	Mr. Clarke.
Mr. Simpson.	Mr. Emery.
Mr. Barnard.	Mr. Meriwether.
Mr. Gates.	Mr. Guppie.
Mr. Johnson.	Mr. Cobbie.
Mr. Fenwick.	Mr. Holdridge.
Mr. Granger.	Mr. Baldwin.
Mr. Cappon.	Mr. Thornteton.
Mr. Browne.	Mr. Edmunds.
Mr. Ruston.	Mr. Francis Mose.
Mr. Percy.	Mr. William Mose.
Mr. Gibbons.	Mr. Cartwright.
Mr. Musgrave.	Mr. Cardinal.
Mr. Millar.	Mr. Wivild.
Mr. Heron.	Mr. Pagler.
Mr. Potter.	Mr. Smith.
Mr. Dodsworth.	Mr. Taylour.

Ex Coll. B.
W. le N. Cl.

Pages, being Earls Sons, viz.

Mr. William Herbert.	Mr. John Herbert.
Mr. Philip Cecil.	Mr. Algernon Sidney.

Heralds at Arms, two and two.

Mr. Blundevile Gent.	Norroy King of
Usher, bareheaded.	Arms.

Marquess of	Earl of Northum-	Earl of
Winchester.	berland.	Kent.

And somewhat behind him the rest of the *Lords, Knights, and Gentlemen* in order, the best foremost, two and two, the Coaches closing up the Troop.

There was a publick *Cavalcade* design'd from *Somerſet Houſe* in the *Strand* to *Windeſor Caſtle*, when the preſent *Sovereign* was to be Installed; which though it took not effect, yet is fit to be remembred by the inſertion of the then *Chancellor's Letter* to each *Knight-Companion*, for making preparations to accompany him thither.

May it pleaſe your Lordſhip,

THE Kings Maſteſty Sovereign of the moſt Noble Order of the Garter, having Rows Journal. determined to create the Prince his eldeſt Son Knight, and to propoſe him in p. 39. Election to be a Companion of his Order; for the better conveniency of his Installation hath prorogued by a Commiſſion under the Seal of his Order, given the 25. of February now remaining in my Cuſtody, the celebration of the Feaſt of St. George from the 22. 23. and 24. of April next, whereon it ſhould have been ſolemnized, unto the 21. 22. and 23. of May, immediately enſuing, and thereby given Command to all the Knights-Companions, and Officers of his Order, that they ſhould attend his royal perſon at his Palace of Whitehall upon thoſe days appointed. In diſcharge of the duty of my place, and by ſpecial order, I do ſignifie unto your Lordſhip his Maſteſties will, and that it is his pleaſure for the more honor of the Prince, and the noble Feaſt of his Election and Installation, that your Lordſhip ſhould be attended with your Servants and Retinne according to ſolemn Cuſtom, and be prepared to accompany

accompany his Highness from Somerset-house in the Strand unto the Castle of Windesore, upon the 19. of that moneth, to assist at the Ceremony, and Feast of his Installation upon the day following: Praying your Lordship that you will be pleased to take knowledge hereby, both of the time and place designed, and of the Sovereign's order, I humbly rest

St. Martin's Lane
27. Feb. 1637.

In all due obedience
and observance
Tho. Rowe.

* Ex Autogr.
penes graf.
Jac. Palmer.

When this Letter was sent, the Sovereign intended to create the Prince * Knight of the Bath, which Ceremonies were designed to begin at the old Palace at Westminster, upon the 21. day of May an. 13. Car. 1. as also to hold the Feast of St. George for that year, at Whitehall, on the 23. of the same Moneth; and to take the Scruteny that Evening for his Election into this Order: The next day was designed to invest him with the Garter and George, and the day following, to set forward the Cavalcade towards Windesore, wherein also the Knights of the Bath (intended to be created with the Prince) were to ride in their Robes. But this resolution being changed, and the intention of creating the Prince a Knight of the Bath, altered to that of a Knight-Batchellor, the Ceremony thereof was defer'd to Windesore; and so the Cavalcade followed not.

q5 Collect. 70.
1 V. Gen.

It was the manner heretofore, for the Sovereign's Lieutenant (when the Sovereign thought fit to appoint the Installation at the same time with the Feast of St. George) to ride to Windesore, attended with a gallant Train, and no small number of his own Gentlemen and Yeomen richly habited, and in all things well appointed; as was seen in that Cavalcade of the Duke of Norfolk Earl Marshal of England, and Lieutenant to the Sovereign, for St. George's Feast, an. 5. Eliz. (at which time the Earls of Northumberland and Warwick were to be Installed) who had then attending on him 200 of his own Gentlemen and Yeomen.

The Lieutenant and his Assistants (or otherwise the Knights-Commissioners, if the Feast of St. George be not then held) being arrived in the Castle, forthwith retire to their Lodgings, which most usually have been prepared at the Deans house, the Rooms therein being the fairest, and best fitted for accommodation in the Castle (next those of the Sovereign's in the upper Ward) but the Knights-Elect were at all times furnished with Lodgings, in some of the Prebends houses.

SECT. II.

The Offering in the Chappel, on the Eve of the Feast.

f MS. fol. penes
G.O. 1 p. 203.
t MS. fol. penes
u G.O. 1 p. 203.
f 147.

w MS. penes
x G.O. 1 p. 203.
cit.

* Ex Collect.
W. le N. Cl.

IF it so happened, that the Installation passed by Commissioners, and the Cavalcade set forth from London in the morning of the day preceding the Installation, and arrived at Windesore Castle early that afternoon; then the Knights-Commissioners have been accustomed to put on their Mantles only (at the Chapter-house door) and enter St. George's Chappel to offer; but without the attendance of Heralds, or any solemn Proceeding before them into the Choir (only brought in by the Prebends) where having taken their Stalls with usual Reverences (the order of which shall be discoursed at large in the 20. Chapter) and heard an Anthem, they pass'd up to the Altar, with the Verger and Garter before them, and there made their Offering, both of Gold and Silver, according to usual custom. As soon as the Vespers were ended, they descended from their Stalls (after the accustomed manner) and departed to their Lodgings; and in this case the Knights-Commissioners put not off their Mantles, till after Supper.

In this manner was the Ceremony of Offering (on the Eve of the Installation) performed

performed by the ^y Lord Admiral, and Earl of Ormond, Commissioners for the ^y Ex eod. MS. penes G. O. T. lo-
ca ante citato. 2 MS penes E.
W. G. f. 147. Installation of the Earl of Shrewsbury and Cumberland, an. 34. Eliz. as also by the Earls of ² Nottingham, Worcester, Suffolk, and Southampton, Commissioners appointed for the Installation of the Earl of Salisbury, and Viscount Bindon, an. 4. Jac. R. But at the Installation of the Earl of Rutland, and others, an. 26. El. 2. the Lord Hunston (one of the Commissioners for that Solemnity) refused to go to the Chappel to Offer alone, albeit he arrived at Windsor Castle ^a timely enough on the Eve; because he wanted the company of Viscount Mountague (joined in Commission with him) who came not thither till the ^b next morning. a MS 4 per-
b nes W. le
N. Cl.

The Offering thus made, at the Knights-Commissioners coming to the Castle, on the Eve of Installation, is in conformity to an Article in the statutes to this effect, *That if any of the Knights-Companions being upon a Journey, should accidentally pass by Windsor Castle, he is to turn in thither (if he can with convenience, and be not hindered by some just and allowable cause) in honor of the place, and prepare himself to enter into the Chappel to Offer; first putting on his Mantle, without which he must never presume to enter into it.* c MS 3. Stat.
d Art. 5. 21.
de citam H. 5.
Stat. Art. 16.
Cy H. 2. Stat.
Art. 17.

After the Knight-Companion had entered the Castle, the Canons-Resident were by this Article appointed to meet and receive him, and with due reverence conduct him into the Choir. If it were in the time of high Mass, the Knight was obliged to stay and hear it, in honor of God and St. George, but if he came thither in the afternoon, he was to stay till the Canons, with the rest of the Choir, had sung the Anthem de Profundis, which being ended, he proceeded to the high Altar and Offered, and returned to his Stall, with usual Reverences, and then departed.

But if the Knight-Companion passed through the Town of Windsor, and did ^e not go to the Chappel to Offer, in manner as before is ordained; so often as he omitted doing thereof, he was bound upon his obedience to walk a mile on foot to the Chappel, in honor of St. George, otherwise for every time he failed to offer one Penny, which by King Henry the Eighth's statutes is enlarged ^f to a Groat. e Ibid.
f Art. 17.
g

It seems at last, there hapned some dispute about the just distance (intended by this Article) from the Castle, and to the end the Knights-Companions might fully know when they came within the breach of this Injunction, it was thought requisite by King Henry the Eighth, to set down a certain bound, which in his Statutes is there declared to be *two miles*: within which, if any of the Knights-Companions come, and do not repair to the Chappel and Offer, he is liable to the penalty or mulct above specified.

And because it oftentimes fell out, that some of the Knights-Companions did accidentally ride within the said limits, whilst they took the pleasure of hunting in Windsor Forest (some part of it lying near the Castle) nevertheless could not conveniently leave their sport to perform all the Solemnity required, they usually (in such case) sent their Offering in money to the Canons, which being received, the Knights took it for a dispensation of the Ceremony, enjoined by the Statutes.

But they still apprehending inconvenience in this Article, endeavours were used to have it interpreted with greater latitude, which so far took effect, that at a Chapter held at Windsor the 10. of October, an. 15. Car. 1. it was ordered to be considered of at the next Chapter, ^h that so some provision might be made to save the Knights from breach of their Oath, if they came within the foresaid limited distance of Windsor Castle, and passed thence without Offering. But no- thing being then done, nor at any time since, the Law stands as it did. h Sir James
Palmer's Jour-
na! pro anno
1639-p. 50.

SECT. III.

The Supper on the Eve.

THE Supper at night, after their arrival at *Windsor*, is but in the nature of a private Meal; and prepared for the *Lieutenant* (or *Commissioners*) and the *Knights-Elect*, generally in the *Deans House*; and where, on the Eve of Installation of the * *Earl of Rutland* and *Lord Cobham*, an. 26. *Eliz.* the *Commissioners* supped together, with such *Lords* and *Gentlemen* of account, as came along with them; no Nobleman having above || one servant to wait on him at the Table; the rest had their diet prepared in the *Town* at their own.

But now and then they have been permitted to sup in some of the Rooms in the *Sovereign's Lodgings*; for^c there was the Supper made ready at the Installation of the *Lord Russell*, and other *Elect Knights*, an. 31. *H. 8.* and at the Installation of the *Earl of Shrewsbury*, and *Lord Humfray*, an. 3. *Eliz.* the *Lieutenant* and *Knights* supped in the^d *Great Chamber* there, all sitting together at one Table, in the^e same order as was used at other times; but the^f *Heralds* then supped in *St. George's Hall*. And in the 34. of *Queen Elizabeth*, when the *Earls* of *Shrewsbury* and *Cumberland* were Installed; all the *Lords* and *Gentlemen* supped together at one long Table set in the^g *Council Chamber*.

^c MS. in Offic.
Ann. [L. 1.]
p. 19.
^d Ex. Col-
lec. le H. W. le
f N. Cl.
^g MS. penes
eund. G. O. X.
p. 203.

SECT. IV.

The order in Proceeding to the Chapter-house.

WE come now to the chief Circumstances of this great Solemnity; namely the particular Ceremonies of *Installation*, managed and ordered after either the *Sovereign*, (or in his absence his *Lieutenant* or *Commissioners*) and *Knights-Elect*, are arrived at *Windsor*. In reference to which we shall premise this general note; That since neither the *Statutes of Institution*, nor the *Statutes* of *King Henry the Fifth* afford us a *Formulary*, for the personal Installation of a *Knight-Elect* (though each of them contain some part of those Ceremonies, observed at the^h Installation of *Strangers* by *Proxy*.) yet those made by *King Henry the Eighth* do exhibit (in short) theⁱ order and method thereof; which we shall make use of as we pass along, and regularly place those directions, under their proper heads.

^h E. 3 Stat.
H. 8. Art. 20
ⁱ Art. 20.

We must further observe, that if the *Installation* be appointed together with the *Feast* of *St. George*, then either the *Sovereign* (and consequently the *Knights-Companions*) or else his *Lieutenant* and *Assistants* are present; but if at any other time of the year, then it passeth by *Commissioners* only: and where we mention the *Sovereign* and his *Lieutenant*, and *Commissioners* together, there the *Case* or *Rule* inserted, will sute with every of them.

After such time therefore as the *Sovereign* (his *Lieutenant* or *Commissioners*) have prefixed an hour wherein to begin the *Proceeding* to the *Chapter-house*, in order to the Installation of the *Elect Knight* (which Ceremony for the most part hath been performed and dispatcht on the Evening of their arrival at *Windsor*, but sometimes the next morning) all the *Knights-Companions* and *Elect-Knights*, the *Officers* of the Order, and of *Arms*, the *Prebends* of the *Colledge*, and *Alms-Knights* are to give their attendance: that is to say, the *Knights-Companions* and *Officers* of the Order on the *Sovereign* in his inward Lodgings, the

the *Elect-Knights* and *Officers of Arms* in the Presence Chamber, the *Prebends* and *Alms-Knights* in the Great Chamber, where they wait the *Sovereign's* coming forth.

The attendance to be given upon the *Sovereign's Lieutenant*, and such of the *Knights-Companions* as are appointed for his *Assistants*, is by the *Officers* of the Order and of *Arms*, the *Prebends* and *Alms-Knights*, either at his Lodgings, or else where, as he shall appoint; but not by any other of the *Knights-Companions*. For though we find the *Knights-Companions* have sometimes proceeded to the *Chappel*, before the *Sovereign's Lieutenant*, when an Installation was celebrated, yet hath it been at such time only, as they came to *Windsor* with the *Sovereign*, chiefly to hold *St. George's Feast*; where though the *Sovereign* through indisposition of body or weighty affairs, could not pass down to the *Chappel* on the Eve of the Feast, yet they being obliged by the *statutes* to celebrate *Vespers*, did on this occasion, not that of Installation proceed thither; as it fell out at the Installation of *Prince Henry*, and four other *Knights*, *an. 1. Jac. R.* when the Proceeding began from the *Presence Chamber*, and thence past to the *Chap-ter-house* in the following Order.

Alms-Knights.

Prebends.

Pursuivants.

Heralds.

Usher King of Arms.

Lyon King of Arms.

Clarenceux King of Arms.

The four *Elect-Knights.*

Knights-Companions.

Black Rod.

Garter.

Register.

Chancellor.

The *Sovereign's Lieutenant*, leading the *Prince* in his hand.

The *Knights-Companions* proceeded likewise before the *Sovereign's Lieutenant*, at the Installation of the Duke of *Brunswick* and five other *Elect-Knights*, the 23. of Nov. *an. 1. Car. 1.* but the *Sovereign* was then at *Windsor Castle* (though not in the Proceeding) and the Feast of *St. George* there also solemnized.

But upon the *Sovereign's Commissioners*, neither the *Knights-Companions*, nor the *Prelate* nor *Chancellor* do give their attendance; only at the Grand Feast of *St. George*, *an. 13. Car. 2.* the *Chancellor* then waiting on the *Sovereign* at *Windsor* in the duties of his place, out of a particular regard to his Royal Highness the Duke of *York* (being then Controller of his Household) attended the *Commissioners* in the proceeding to his Installation.

The Proceedings upon this solemn occasion, have been generally ordered on foot: Nevertheless, upon some extraordinary account marshalled and disposed on Horseback, in manner of a *Cavalcade*; as was that set forth at the Installation of *Philip King of Castile*, *an. 22. H. 7.* and that when the *Lord Russel*, and other *Elect-Knights* were installed, *an. 31. H. 8.* So also at the Installation of the *Earl of Sussex*, *an. 1. & 2. Ph. & Mar.* which King *Philip* honored with his own presence; Himself, and several of the *Knights-Companions*, riding on Horseback from his Lodgings in the *Castle*, down to the *Cloister door* at the East end of the *Chappel*, and there alighting, proceeded directly into the *Chapter-house*.

When the *Earl of Shrewsbury* and *Lord Hunsdon* were installed, *an. 3. Eliz.* the Proceeding was likewise ordered on Horseback. So also at the Installation of the *Earl of Northumberland*, and *Earl of Warwick* *an. 5. Eliz.* and lastly at the Installations of *Francis Duke of Montmorency*, the *Viscount Hereford*, and the *Lords Burghley*, *Grey*, and *Shandos* *an. 14. Eliz.* concerning which it is further observed; that the *Sovereign's Lieutenant*, and *Knights-Assistants*, did then put on their Robes in the *Sovereign's Lodgings* in the *Castle*, and meeting in the *Presence-Chamber*, proceeded down to the outward Hall door, in the upper Ward of the *Castle*; where taking their Horses, adorned with foot Clothes, they proceeded on Horseback to the West door of the *Chappel*.

If the Proceeding was ordered on Horseback at the beginning of the Feast, it continued the same throughout at the usual times, so often as the *Sovereign* (his *Lieutenant* or *Commissioners*) went to the *Chapter-house*, or *Chappel*; and all the returns were marshalled in the like order as the settings forth.

As concerning the marshalling this proceeding to the *Chapter-house*, it hath been done after the same manner and order, as that celebrated on the Eve of the Grand Feast of St. George (in relation to the degrees, whereof it was composed) of which we shall discourse at large^x below; nevertheless, where there happened any considerable difference, it shall be noted in this Section, as we have occasion.

^x Chap. 20.

To begin now (as we shall do there) with *Servants* and *Attendants* belonging to the *Knight-Elect*; who (if they be taken into the Proceeding) pass on first, two and two in rank, according to their quality; those of the meanest condition formost.

Next the *Alms-Knights* in their Habits, and usual order.

Then follows the *Verger* of the *Colledge*.

After him the *Prebends* or *Canons*; but what attendance they have given heretofore at Installations we cannot make appear; for in those *Schemes* left us of Proceeding to Installations in the Reigns of King Henry the Eighth, King Edward the Sixth, Queen Mary, and part of Queen Elizabeth, we find them not inserted, though since they are.

Next to the *Prebends* of the *Colledge* do the *Pursuivants*, *Heralds*, and *Provincial Kings of Arms*, proceed in a Body.

And after them the *Knight-Subject Elect*, unless the *Proctor* of an absent *Knight-Subject* pass at the same time in this Proceeding, whose place is immediately next after the *Provincial Kings*: And if it so happen that the *Proctor* to a *Stranger-Prince* be then also present, he is to proceed between the *Knight-Subject's Proctor*, and the *Knight-Subject Elect*. But Prince Henry at his Installation, *an. Jac. R. 1.* went in a place^y above all the *Knights-Companions*, and was paired with the Earl of Nottingham, the *Sovereign's Lieutenant* for that occasion.

^y MS. fol. penes
E.W. G. f. 144^a

Where two or more *Elect-Knights* proceed to their Installation at the same time, they take place, according to the seniority of their Election; proceeding two and two together; and if the number be odd, the junior *Elect-Knight* passeth alone.

Some other notices may here take place; as first, that the *Elect-Knight* passed heretofore in his ordinary Apparel (wearing over it long since a short Gown, afterwards a Cloak, and of later times a Coat) as did the Earl of^{*} Northumberland, *an. 5. Eliz.* and the Earls of^{*} Penbrooke and Derby *an. 16. Eliz.* And this also the *Annals* of the *Order*, and other Authorities particularly note of the Earl of^b Suffolk and Lord Buckhurst, *an. 31. Eliz.* of^c Charles Duke of York and others *an. 9. Jac. R.* of the Duke of^{*} Lenox *an. 22. Jacobi*, the Earl of^d Northampton, *an. 5. Car. 1.* and Marquess^{*} Hamilton the year following.

^{*} Collett. 7.
^z V. gen.

^b Lib. C. p. 114.

^c MS. penes E.

^d W. G. f. 149. b.

^{*} Lib. R. p. 18.

^d Consil. W. le

N. Cl.

^{*} Lib. R. p. 61.

But this was before any peculiar under *Habit* was appointed to the *Knights-Companions*; for now there being a Cloth of Silver Doublet, and Trunk Hose established to be worn at the Feasts of Installation and of St. George, the *Elect-Knight* proceeds in this *Habit*, and so did the Duke of Albemarle, *an. 23. Car. 2.*

Secondly, In this Proceeding to the *Chapter-house* he weareth only the *Garter* about his Leg, and the *George* and *Ribband* wherewith he was invested, either about his neck, or (as of late) drawn under his right arm; which being omitted by Sir George Villars, and Viscount Lisle, is noted to be^c contrary to order.

^c MS. penes
E. W. G.

^f 153. d.

^{*} Collett. W. le
N. Cl.

Thirdly, that the Earl of^e Rutland with his Fellow *Elect Knights*, *an. 14. Jac. R.* proceeded bareheaded, as also the Duke of^{*} Lenox, *an. 9. Car. 1.* and so did the Duke of Albemarle, *an. 23. Car. 2.*

^g MS. penes
G O T. p. 203.

^b C. le E. W. le
N. Cl.

Fourthly, the *Elect Knight* doth not always go in this Proceeding, but sometimes stays at his Lodgings in the Castle, as did the Earls of^f Shrewsbury and Cumberland, *an. 34. Eliz.* or else at some other convenient place near unto the *Chapter-house*, till he be sent for in thither, to receive Investiture with the *Surcoat*; an instance whereof we have in the Duke of^h Montmorency, *an. 14. Eliz.* and the other *Elect Knights* that were to be installed at the same time with him, who

who (before the *Sovereign's Lieutenant* and *Assistants* proceeded to the *Chapter-house*) went privately from the *Sovereign's Lodgings* down to the House of Mr. French (then one of the *Prebends*) for the *Dean* was absent at that time and his House unprovided for their Reception) and rested in the Parlour until they were sent for: Or otherwise he hath gone privately into the East Isle of the Chappel behind the High Altar and there stayed till called in, as did the Duke of Monmouth, *an. 15. Car. 2.*

If the *Sovereign* be present at the *Installation*, the *Knights-Companions* proceed next after the *Knights-Elect* (or the *Protector* to a stranger *Prince*) according to the order of their Stalls; but if the *Sovereign's Lieutenant*, then his *Assistants* go in their place: of which there is a President at the Installation of the Earl of Shrewsbury and Lord Hunsdon *an. 3. Eliz.* the Proceeding being ordered in the following manner.

ⁱ Vergers.

Alms Knights.

Officers of Arms.

Elect-Knights.

Assistants to the Lieutenant.

Officers of the Order.

Earl of Arundel Lieutenant.

ⁱ *Collec. W.*
le N. Cl.

And if the Installation be dispatcht by *Commissioners*, then the three inferiour officers of the Order, immediately follow the *Knight-Elect* and proceed next before the *Commissioners* (because they have no *Assistants* appointed them to pass between, as hath the *Sovereign's Lieutenant*) and thus we find them marshalled at the Installation of the Earl of Northampton, *an. 5. Car. 1.*

^k The Earls servants.

Alms-Knights.

Prebends.

Heralds.

Elect-Knights.

Officers of the Order.

The Sovereign's Commissioners.

^k *Lib. C. p. 114.*
videlicet Antogr.
in Biblioth.
Gerton.

Nevertheless once (and but once) viz. *an. 16. Eliz.* at the Installation of the Earls of ^l Penbroke and Derby, we find the said Officers did precede the *Elect-Knights*; but this was through mistake.

Something more may be added, concerning these three Officers place and order; in proceeding at the Solemnities of Installation, since there hath heretofore fallen out both question and dispute thereupon: For at the Installation of the said Earl of Northampton, some question and debate hapning touching their place in this Proceeding, it was at length concluded; ^m That from the *Castle* to the *Chappel* they should proceed before the *Commissioners*, but in returning from the *Chappel* to the *Castle* they should follow.

We suppose the Question (whatsoever it was) chanced not to be propounded till the Proceeding was ready to pass on, and then started on a sudden; because the *Heralds* not readily resolving (as the *Annals* note) seems rather to proceed from surprize, than want of ability to answer; and it also appears, that the determination which took place was grounded but upon ⁿ conjecture; and how fit soever it was then thought, yet if well considered, will appear not consonant to Precedents and Practice, both before and since; as also to the usual rule, where all returns are marshalled answerably to their settings forth, unless the condition of any person in the Proceeding be in the mean time changed.

But perhaps it will be answered, that the ground of this resolution, of following the *Commissioners* in their return, was, because the authority wherewith they were impowered, seemed to cease as soon as the *Knight* was Installed;

U u 2,

and

ⁿ Tandem igitur per conjecturam conclusum est, &c. *ibid.*

and consequently the attendance, which that authority exacted from the *Officers*, then ceased also. Yet if so, what needed any Proceeding back at all, but that the *Commissioners* should have put off their Habits in the *Chapter-house*, and pass thence privately to their Lodgings? But to proceed,

It is further to be observed, that when Installations pass by *Commissioners* only, these three inferior Officers wear their *Robes* (for they are appointed to be worn * at all solemn Assemblies of the Order, no less than at the Feasts of St. George) but bear not the *Ensigns* of their Offices in the Proceeding. And this seems to be deduced from particular Injunctions, laid down in the *Constitutions* appertaining to the Officers of the Order, which appoint *Garter*, and *Black Rod*, to bear the *Ensigns* of their Offices at the Feast of St. George, *when the Sovereign or his Deputy shall be present*, whence it may be inferred, that if either happen to be absent, they need not bear them: We also find this in practice, and their *Ensigns* not carried at the Installations of *Frederick King of Denmark*, and *John Casimire Count Palatine of the Rhine*, an. 25. *Eliz.* next of the *Earl of Rutland* and *Lord Cobham* the following year, and thirdly so noted in the *Red Book* of the Order. But if the *Sovereign* himself be present, or that he constitute a *Lieutenant* in his stead, the *Register* then carries the *Red Book*, and *Garter*, and the *Black Rod*, bear each of them their *Rods*. And note also, that in every Proceeding to Installation by a *Lieutenant* or *Commissioners* *Garter* carries the *Sovereign's* Commission in his hand to the *Chapter-house* before them.

We now are arrived at the place of the *Sovereign* (his *Lieutenant* or *Commissioners*) which is in the *Rear*, and with which we shall close the ordinary Proceeding.

But because we would give some instances where the *Sovereign*, willing to add honor to the *Elect-Knights*, hath appointed their Installation at such time, as he personally solemnized the Feast of St. George, we shall insert here first that memorable but mixt Proceeding on Horseback (when the Election and Installation of *Philip King of Castile and Leon*, past an. 22. *H. 7.*) from the *Sovereign's* Lodging in the *Castle*, to the South door of St. George's *Chappel*, and was thus ordered.

d Lib. N. p. 183.
videtur MS.
vet. penes W. le
N. Cl. fol. 294. b.

a Knights according to their Degrees.
Lords after their Degrees.

Knights-Companions, in their whole Habit, bearing company with some of the *Knights* of the Order of *Toyson d'or*.

Prelate of the Order. Archbishop of Canterbury.

The Spanish Ambassador.

Toyson d'or, King	Garter King of
of Arms, in his	Arms in his
Coat of Arms.	Coat of Arms.

The Sword.

The Prince.

Philip King of Castile.	King Henry the Seventh,
	Sovereign of the Order.

Another but later instance, shall be that at the Feast of St. George, an. 9. *Jac. R.* when *Charles Duke of York*, *Thomas Earl of Arundel*, and *Robert Viscount Rochester*, were installed.

eg MS penes
f. E. W. G.
fol. 149. b.

f Alms-Knight.

Prebends.

Officers of Arms.

Visc. Rochester. Earl of Arundel.

Duke of York.

Knights-Companions.

Officers of the Order.

The Sword.

The Sovereign.

The

The same *Sovereign* with several of the *Knights-Companions*, proceeded also to the *Chappel* at the personal Installation of *Frederick Prince Palatine* of the *Rhine*, *an. 10. Jac. R.* the Feast of *St. George* being then solemnized; and again at the Installation of the *Earl of Rutland*, *Sir George Villars*, and *Viscount Lysle*, in the 14. year of the same King. The like honor did King *Charles the First* to the *Earl of Suffolk*, *an. 4. Car. 1.* and to the *Duke of Lenox* *an. 9. Car. 1.* as also to the present *Sovereign*, when his Installation was celebrated at *Windsor* *an. 14.* of the same King. To these examples we may add, the present *Sovereign's* personal appearance at the Grand Feast of *St. George*, held next after his happy Restoration; whereat 12 *Elect Knights Subjects* received the honor of Installation, namely, the *Dukes of Ormond*, and *Buckingham*, *Earl of Southampton*, *Marquess of Newcastle*, *Earl of Bristol*, *Duke of Albemarle*, the *Earls of Sandwich*, and *Oxford*, *Duke of Richmond*, and the *Earls of Lindsey*, *Manchester*, and *Strafford*.

As also at the Installations of the *Prince of Denmark*, and *James Duke of Monmouth*, the 22. of *April*, *an. 15. Car. 2.* and lastly of the *King of Sweden*, the *Duke of Saxony*, and *Christopher Duke of Albemarle*, the 28. of *May*, *an. 23. C. 2.*

Lastly, at this Solemnity of Installation, the *Sovereign* proceeds in full Robes, having the *Sword of State* born before him by a Nobleman not of the Order, his *Train-Bearers* and *Attendants* following, and the *Band of Pensioners* closing up the Proceeding.

The *Sovereign's Lieutenant* and his *Assistants* (so also the *Commissioners*) proceed in full Robes likewise, which we find not only mentioned, but the particulars* enumerated; *an. 31. H. 8.* when the *Earl of Arundel* and his *Assistants*, installed the *Lord Russell*, and two other *Elect Knights*; but the *Sovereign's Lieutenant* (not any of the *Commissioners*) hath his *Train* carried up, and this service is usually performed by some of his own Gentlemen. The *Earl of Arundel's Train* was carried up by his Gentleman Usher, *an. 3. Eliz.* And the *Duke of Norfolk's*, *an. 5. Eliz.* by *Sir Nicholas Strange*, his Chamberlain.

The Processional way (if the Proceeding take beginning in the *Presence Chamber*) is down thence into the upper ward of the *Castle*, and through the other Wards in at the *Cloyster door*, and so to the *Chapter-house*; but if from the *Deans house*, then the way is but short, and taken only through the *Cloysters*, into which there is an immediate passage from the *Deanry*.

The Proceeding having entred the East door of *St. George's Chappel*, and passed by the *Chapter-house door*, makes a stand in the *North Isle*; while first the *Officers of the Order*, next the *Knights Commissioners*; or else the *Knights Assistants* and the *Sovereign's Lieutenant*; or lastly the *Knights-Companions*, and the *Sovereign* (with the *Sword* born before him) pass into the *Chapter-house*. But the *Knights* (or *Knights Elect*), ought not as yet to enter, but as they come in at the *Chappel door*, fall off on the left hand into the *East-Isle*, behind the high Altar, where they may either walk or repose themselves at pleasure (on Velvet Chairs or Stools, with Cushens, there prepared for them) until they are called into the *Chapter-house*. And this hath been so usual a custom, that we find very frequent mention made of it; amongst others, it is thus noted of the *Earl of Northumberland*, *an. 5. Eliz.* that he eated not into the *Chapter-house* with the *Lieutenant* and *Assistants*, but walked before the door, until he was called in. The like did the *Earls of Essex*, and *Ormond*, and *Sir Christopher Hatton*, while the *Commissioners* appointed for that Installation, *an. 30. Eliz.* went into the *Chapter-house*. At the Installation of the *Earl of Rutland*, *Sir George Villars*, and *Viscount Lysle*, *an. 14. Jac. R.* there were prepared in the foresaid Isle, 4 Stools set upon Carpets, one an Ell distant from another, on which they sat, according to the order of their Election, whilst the *Sovereign, Knights-Companions* and *Officers of the Order* entred into the *Chapter-house*. So *an. 1. Car. 1.* the *Earl of Salisbury*, and the rest of the *Elect Knights*, retired out of the Proceeding as it entred the *Chappel*, and rested themselves in Velvet Chairs placed in the aforesaid Isle. Lastly, all the *Elect Knights* that received their Installation at the Grand Feast of *St. George*, happily celebrated in the 13. year of the present *Sovereign* did the like:

Nevertheless,

g Lib. C. p. 178.

h Ex. cod. MS. penes E. W. G.

i Lib. R. p. 39.

k Ibid. p. 83.

l Palm. large Journ. p. 11.

** MS. in Offic.*

Arm. [L. 1.]

fol. 19.

|| Collec. W. le

N. Cl. f. 14. b.

** Ibid. fol. 11. b.*

vide f. Collec.

J. V. gen.

|| Lib. C. p. 114.

m MS. in Offic.

n f. Arm.

[H. 2.] f. 8. b.

q Ex. Collec.

J. V. gen.

p Lib. C. p. 110.

q Collec. W.

le N. Cl.

r MS. penes Ed.

Fauconbridge.

Nevertheless, out of extraordinary respect to great personages, they have been sometimes (though but rarely) admitted into the *Chapter-house*, with the *Sovereign* or his *Lieutenant*; among whom ¹ Philip King of Castile and Leon, *an. 22.* ² MS. penes E. H. 7. was one, and also ³ Prince Henry, *an. 1.* ⁴ Jac. R. he being led in by the *Sovereign's Lieutenant*, while the other four *Elect Knights* (installed at that Solemnity with him) sat upon Benches in the accustomed place, until they severally received their Summons to enter.

Sometimes the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* in their Proceeding to Installation, have waved going to the *Chapter-house*, and pass'd immediately into the *Choir*, as did King James *an. 9.* when ⁵ Charles Duke of York, and others were Installed: The like did King Charles the First at the Installation of the ⁶ Earl of Suffolk; but then the *Sovereign* had held a Chapter in the ⁷ *Privy Chamber*, immediately before the Proceeding set forward, and it is to be noted, that in the former instance, when the Proceeding came as far as the East end of the *Chappel*, the Duke of York, and the two other *Elect Knights*, with *Norroy* before them, went out of the Proceeding into the *Chapter-house*, and there reposed themselves while the *Sovereign* proceeded on to the South door of the *Chappel*, and thence into the *Choir*.

^u *Ibidem.*

^w *Collec. W.*

^{le N. Cl.}

^x *Lib R. p. 38.*

SECT. V.

The Ceremonies performed in the Chapter-house.

¹ Reading the Commission. ² *Lib. C. p. 110.* ³ *Collec. W. le N. Cl. & J. V.* ⁴ *MS. penes Arthur Comit. Angles. f. 119. a.* ⁵ *Lib. N. p. 277.* ⁶ *vide etiam Lib. C. in locis cit.* ⁷ *perro pag. 135. & 140.* ⁸ *pag. 181.* ⁹ *(MS. fol. penes G. O. T. pag. 203.)* ¹⁰ *34. Eliz.*

AFTER the *Lieutenant's* entrance into the *Chapter-house*, and opening of the *Chapter*; ¹¹ *Garter* (with three Reverences) presents first the *Commission* of *Lieutenancy* to hold the Feast, next that of *Installation*, to the *Lieutenant* (or if the *Installation* pass by *Commissioners*, then only the *Commission* of *Installation* to the *Senior Commissioner*) which being received, he delivers it to the *Register* of the *Order*, who forthwith ¹² reads it, for to him this duty appertains, as is recorded in the ¹³ *Black Book* of the *Order*, upon occasion of *Garter's* reading the *Commission* for *Installation* of Sir Thomas Brandon, *an. 22. H. 7.* the *Register* being then absent.

When the *Register* hath read the *Commissions*, he ¹⁴ returns them to the *Lieutenant* (or *Commissioners*) and he again to the custody of ¹⁵ *Garter*, as it is noted to be done at the *Installation* of the Earls of ¹⁶ *Shrewsbury*, and *Cumberland*, *an. 34. Eliz.*

If the *Sovereign* be present, the *Chancellor* acquaints him that the *Knights-Elect* are without, otherwise the *Lieutenant* and *Assistants* (or *Commissioners*) consult together for some short space, touching the manner of calling in, and receiving the *Elect-Knight*; which being concluded on, they immediately send out for him; and ¹⁷ *Garter* is usually employed in this service, ¹⁸ who with all due respect invites and conducts him, to the *Chapter-house* door. But *an. 34. Eliz.* *Garter* went to the ¹⁹ Lodgings of the Earls of *Shrewsbury* and *Cumberland*, where they waited the Summons from the *Commissioners*, and having delivered his message, they forthwith repaired to the *Chapter-house*; their *Train* attending them to the door.

At the *Installation* of Francis Duke of *Montmorency*, the Earl of *Leicester* (then the *Sovereign's Lieutenant*) as an evidence of singular respect, sent from the *Chapter* ²⁰ two of the four *Assistants* assigned him, (namely the Earl of *Bedford*, and Sir *Henry Sidney*) to Mr. *Freuche* his Lodgings; who taking ²¹ *Garter* and the *Officers of Arms* before them, led him thence between them, into the *Chapter-house*.

When there are two or more *Elect-Knights* that wait without in the East Isle, expecting

¹ *MS. in m. 2. quat. penes W. le N. Cl. f. 25.*

expecting to be called in; *Garter* first conducts the ^a senior by Election, to the *Chapter-house* door, and afterwards the next, and so the rest in like order: for Instance, *an. 14. Jac. R.* when three *Elect-Knights* remained without, *Garter* came forth and made his Reverence to the Earl of Rutland (the senior *Elect-Knight*) and ^o first ushered him to the *Chapter-house* door, leaving the other two reposing upon their Seats; again, *Garter* returning the second time, introduced Sir George Villars, the next senior *Knight-Elect*; and last of all brought Viscount Lisle the junior *Elect* to the same place. In like manner and order did *Garter* perform this service to all the *Knights-Elect*, according to their seniority of Election, *an. 13. Car. 2.*

As soon as *Garter* hath conducted the *Elect-Knight* to the *Chapter-house* door, two of the *Commissioners* (when the Installation is performed by *Commissioners*) or two of the *Knights-Assistants* (when by the *Sovereign's Lieutenant*) or two of the senior *Knights-Companions* (if the *Sovereign* himself be present) receive him ^{*} without. Thus did the two *Commissioners* receive the Earls of P. Derby and Penbroke, *an. 16. Eliz.* and the Earl of Essex *an. 30. Eliz.* In like manner did two of the *Lieutenants* four *Assistants*, receive the ^{*} Lord Cromwell, *an. 29. H. 8.* as also the Earl of Huntington, *an. 3. E. 6.* and Earl of Northumberland, *an. 5. Eliz.*

The *Elect-Knight* being thus received, is immediately ^{*} conducted from the *Chapter-house* door up to the *Sovereign* (his *Lieutenant* or *Commissioners*) unto whom he maketh humble Reverence, and after some short congratulation, the *Lieutenant* (or senior *Commissioners*) in a short speech makes ^{*} known to him, the effect of his *Commission*, and ^{*} declares the *Sovereign's* bounty and ready kindness towards him, for a full admittance into this most honorable Society; which the *Elect-Knight* most humbly and gratefully acknowledgeth and accepts.

When Philip King of Castile and Leon, was to be Installed (which he personally received at Windeſor the 9. of Feb. *an. 22. H. 7.*) the ^{*} *Sovereign* himself (being present in the *Chapter-house*) rose up from his Throne, and gave him information of the *Statutes* and *Ceremonies* of the Order, and what they obliged him to perform; to all which he gave his ready assent.

The Complements at receiving the *Elect-Knight* into the *Chapter-house* being over, he disrobes himself of his ^{*} upper Garment, and then the *Surcoat* or *Kirtle* is taken from the Table (where it and the rest of the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the Order are decently and ſeparately laid in readineſs before hand) and he inveſted therewith; at the doing of which theſe words of *Admonition* (entred at the end of King Henry the Eighth's Book of *English Statutes*) are to be read or ſpoken.

Take this Robe of Purple to the encrease of your honor, and in token or sign of the most honorable Order you have received; wherewith you being defended, may be bold not only strongly to fight, but also to offer your ſelf to ſhed your blood for Chriſt's Faith, the liberties of the Church, and the juſt and neceſſary defence of them that be oppreſſed and needy.

After this, his *sword* is cloſe girt about him, over his *Surcoat*, by the ^b *Commisſioners* (or the *Assistants* to the *Lieutenant*, or ſome of the *Knights-Companions*) and ſometimes (in way of aſſiſtance) *Garter* hath put on the *Elect-Knights Surcoat*, and girt his *sword* about him, and laid his *Hood* over his ſhoulder, as in the caſe of the Earl of Rutland, *an. 26. Eliz.* And as ſoon as this Ceremony is diſpatcht, the ^c *Sovereign* (or his *Lieutenant*) proceed into the *Choir* leaving the *Elect-Knight* behind them.

The *Hood* was heretofore put on in the *Chapter-house* (for ſo King Henry the Eighth's ^d *Statutes* do appoint) after the *Elect-Knight* hath been inveſted with his *Surcoat*, and before he proceeded to his *Installation*; but of late, becauſe it muſt be ^k taken off again in the *Choir*, and laid aſide, to the end the *Mantle* may be put on, and after that laid on the ſhoulder a ſecond time (over the *Mantle*) it hath been conceived a ſort of diminution in the inveſtiture, to take off any part of the *Habit* before the whole inveſtiture be compleated. Whereupon at the beginning of King James his Reign, it was thought more convenient, that the *Hood* ſhould be

ⁿ *Ex Colleſt.*
^o *J.V. gen.*

^{*} *MS in Offic.*
Arm. [H. 2.]
fol 8 b & vide etiam MS penes G. O. T. fol 162.
p Colleſt. J.V. gen.

^{*} *Lib. C. pag. 110.*
^{*} *Lib. N. p. 277.*
^{*} *Ex prad. MS. penes eund. G. O. T. fol. 80.*
^{*} *Colleſt. J.V. gen.*
^{*} *Lib. N. p. 277.*
^{*} *ibid.*
^{*} *Lib. C. p. 114 videſtis MS. prad. penes G. O. T. fol. 203.*
^{*} *Ex vet. MS. penes W. le N. Cl. fol. 294.*

^{3.} Inveſting him with the *Surcoat.*
^a *Lib. N. p. 274.*
^b *Ex 277. Lib. G. pag. 114. 135. 140. & Lib. R. p. 6. & 18.*

See alſo the *Appendix, Num. XXXVII.*

^b *MS penes E. W. G. f. 25 vide etiam Colleſt. J.V. gen.*

^c *MS.*

^d *Art. 20.*
ⁱ *Colleſt. J.V. gen.*
^k *MS in Offic. Arm. [2.1.] p. 19.*

be carried upon the Cushen by Garter into the *Choire*, together with the *Mantle* and *Collar*, and not be put on till after the Investiture with the *Mantle*, and so was it observed at the Feasts of St. George *an. 13. 15. & 23. Car. 2.*

1 See the Decree entered at the end of King Henry the Eighth's Book of English Statutes.
m MS. penes E. W.G.f. 151. b.

And though anciently it was laid over the left shoulder of the *Elef-Knight*, and so worn upon all occasions, yet *an. 2. & 3. Phil. & Mar.* the wearing thereof being taken notice of to obscure the *scutcheon* of St. George (embroidered on the same shoulder of the *Mantle* it was therefore in a *Chapter* held at St. James's, on the 22. of April, in the foresaid year Decreed, 'That thenceforth the Knights-Companions should wear their Hoods on the right shoulders, to the end the Scutcheon might be the better seen and appear.

Nevertheless there was a question moved, *an. 12. Jac. R.* whether the *Knights-Companions* should not restore the usage of wearing their Hoods to the left shoulder; which it seems was over-ruled, and the custom of wearing them on the right, thought fit to be continued, as the foresaid Decree appoints. And on the Eve of the Feast of St. George *an. 23. Car. 2.* some of the *Knights-Companions*, supposing the Hoods ought to be worn rather on the left shoulder, did so wear them to *Vespers*, but the next morning being better perswaded, of the Law and later Custom, they altered them to the right.

n Art. 20.

To great *Princes-Strangers*, there is a liberty given by King Henry the Eighth's Statutes, to receive (if they please) their *Habit* wholly within the *Chapter-house*, and before they enter their Stalls; and it thereby appears, that this was the Custom in times past; and whereof we have an Instance in Philip King of *Castile an. 22. H. 7.* who was fully invested in the *Chapter-house* with the *Garter, Surcoat, Mantle, Hood, and Collar*, the *Sovereign* himself putting his hand to his Investiture with the *Mantle*.

o Lib. N.p. 184. vide super MS. penes W. le N. Cl. f. 295.

p MS. pag. 92. 11.

r Lib. C. p. 11.

s Ibid.

Hereupon King Philip (Grandchild to the foresaid King of *Castile*) was invested with the whole *Habit* of the Order, before he assumed his Stall, for arriving at *Windsor* the 3. of Aug. 1. & 2. Ph. & Mar. he proceeded to the *Chappel*, and received his Investiture within the West door; where was prepared a Form (adorned with Carpet and Cushens) and there the *Register* of the Order, delivered the *Mantle*, to the Earls of *Derby* and *Penbroke*, who kissing it, presented it to the *Queen*, and she her self (assisted by the said Earls) invested the King therewith; next Garter gave the *Collar* to the Earls of *Arundel* and *Penbroke*, who presented it also to the *Queen*, with the like ceremony wherewith the *Mantle* was delivered; and She thereupon put it about King Philip's neck, and forthwith the *Knight-Companions* (having also robed themselves within the *Chappel* door) proceeded before the King and *Queen*, who with joined hands passed into the *Choire*; where being arrived, the *Queen* led him to the *Sovereign's* Stall, which having ascended, they both sat therein.

t Collett R.C. Cl. f. 24. & 25. u MS. penes E. W.G.f. 151.

But as the foresaid Statute leaves this to the pleasure of the *Stranger-Prince*, and was permitted only for gaining of time, so have not any (who received a *Personal Installation* at *Windsor* since) been fully invested before they entered the *Choire*. For Francis Duke of *Montmorency*, *an. 14. Eliz.* and Frederick Prince Palatine of the *Rhine*, *an. 10. Jac. R.* were both invested with their *Surcoats* only in the *Chapter-house*; but received the *Mantles, Hoods, and Collars* in their Stalls, after they had taken their Oaths.

SECT. VI.

The Proceeding into the Choire.

THE *Elef-Knight* habited as before, forthwith passeth from the *Chapter-house* along the North Isle, and so in at the West door of the *Choire*, in solemn order; but his place in this Proceeding is changed, for here he is led between

between two of the *Knights-Companions*. This is noted in the ^a *Black Book* to be the order wherein *Albro Vasques d'Almada* Earl of *Averence*, and two other *Elect-Knights* proceeded to their Installation, *an. 24. H. 6.* And albeit the *Statutes of Institution*, and those made by King *Henry the Fifth* are silent in the order of this Proceeding; yet for an *Elect-Knight* to be led to his Stall, between two other of the *Knights-Companions* is no modern Ceremony; since we also find that ^b *Viscount Bouchier, an. 30. H. 6.* past to his Installation between the Lord ^b *bid p. 108.* *Hastings* and Lord *Beauchamp*. But the order of Proceeding is precisely set down in ^c King *Henry the Eighth's Statutes*, to wit, *That the Elect-Knight attended by his Gentlemen and Servants, shall be led between two other of the Knights-Companions, the Officers of the Order going before them.* ^c *Art. 20.*

To this Rule the constant practice hath been answerable, at all Installations since; the Knight-Eleſt proceeding either between ^dtwo of the *Knights-Com-* Lib. C. p. 114
missioners, when there hath been no *Lieutenant*, or between two of the ^e*Knights-* Lib. N. p. 274
Aſſiſtants, where a *Lieutenant* was conſtituted, or laſtly between the two ſenior ¶ 277. vide ſup.
Knights-Companions, the *Sovereign* being preſent. Of which caſes we ſhall here MS. in Offic.
aſſign each a Preſident. Arm. [H. 2.]
fol. 8 b.

* A *Proceeding* from the *Chapter-house* into the *Choir*, at the Installation of the Earl of Rutland, an. 26. Eliz. Viscount Mountagu and Lord Hunfodon being Commissioners for that Solemnity.

Verger with his Rod.

Alms-Knights, two and two

Pursuivants, Heralds, and Norroy.

Black Rod. *Register.* *Clarenceux*, who then executed
the Office of Garter.

Lord *Hunsdon*. Earl of *Rutland*. Viscount *Mountagu*.

|| Another Proceeding from the *Chapterhouse* at the Installation of the Lord *Russel*, an. 31. H. 8. the Earls of *Essex* and *Rutland*, being then the *Lieutenants's* *Assessants*.

Heralds.

Register.

Garter.

Earl of *Rutland*. Lord *Russell*. Earl of *Essex*.

* A third *Proceeding* at the Installation of the present *Sovereign*, an. 14, Car. 1. the two senior *Knights-Companions* being appointed to conduct the *Prince* from the *Chapter-house* to his *Stall* in the *Choir*.

Alms-Knights, two and two.

Officers of Arms, two and two.

<i>Black Rod.</i>	<i>Register.</i>	<i>Garter.</i>
Earl of Arundell	The Prince	Earl of Penbroke.

But when there hath been three *Commissioners* nominated, then the two senior *Commissioners* take the *Knight-Elect* between them, and the * junior *Knight Commissioner* proceeds before them; and thus was it ordered at the Installation of the Earls of *Essex*, and *Ormond*, and Sir *Christopher Hatton*, an. 30. *Eliz.* where the Earl of *Essex* proceeded from the *Chapter-house* into the *Choir*, between the Lord *Hunsdon* and Earl of *Worcester*, and the Lord *Grey* the junior *Commissioner* past singly before them.

In all cases where the *Sovereign* is present at an *Installation* (since the Custom of Investing with the *Collar* in the *Chapter-house* was left off) this is generally to be observed; that so soon as the Investiture with the *surcoat* is finished, the

X x

Sovereign

h Ex Colleſt.
J. V. gen.

Sovereign palleth from the *Chapter-houſe* into the *Choire*, with the whole *Proceeding* before him, leaving the *Eleſt-Knight* behind. And ſo ſoon as he and the *Knights-Companions* have taken their *Stalls*, in the uſual manner, the two ſenior *Knights-Companions*, upon the *Sovereign's* verbal directions, deſcend from their *Stalls* and ſtand under their *Banners*, while the *Alms-Knights* (but not the *Prebends*) *Officers of Arms*, and the three inferior *Officers* of the *Order* paſs out of the *Choire* in uſual manner, and proceed before them to the *Chapter-houſe*, from whence they introduce the *Eleſt-Knight* into the *Choire* to his *Installation*. But if there be more *Knights* to be *Installed*, then the two next ſenior *Knights* deſcend, and after them the next ſeniors to them, till all the *Eleſt-Knights* are conducted in.

i MS. penes
E. W. G. f.
147. d. C
146. d.

And this courſe is likewiſe obſerved when a *Lieutenant* is conſtituted, and hath been generally ſo praſticed, ſince the *Investiture* with the *Collar*, was performed in the *Choire*, and particularly at the *Installations* of the Duke of *Lenox*, and Earls of *Penbroke*, *Marr*, and *Southampton*, an. 1. *Jac. R.* and of the Duke of *Holſtein* and Earl of *Northampton*, an. 3. *Jac. R.* In this *Proceeding* to *Installation*, the *Register* uſually carries a *Book* of the *New Teſtament* for the *Eleſt-Knight* to take his *Oath* upon; as alſo the *Oath* it ſelf, fairly written in *Parchment*.

k Lib. N. p. 274.
277. & Lib. C.
p. 110.
1 Art. 20.

Garter bears before the *Knight-Eleſt* his *Mantle*, until he arrive at his *Stall*, and *King Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes* place this ſervice upon ſome one of the *Knights-Companions* likewiſe; but we have not found in all our ſearch, that it was ever performed by any of them.

m MS. in Offic.
Arm. [L. 1.]
p. 10.

It ſeemeth, that about the time when this *Injunction* paſſed, it was the Cuſtom for *Garter* to bear the *Mantle* upon his arm; for we find it ſo carried at the *Installation* of the Lord *Ruffel*, and others an. 31. *H. 8.* But it was not long after, that the laying it on a *Velvet Cuſhen* began.

n MS. fol. 20. b.
of the Eleſt. J.
V. gen.
p Ex Autogr.
q Ex end. Col-
leſt. J. V. gen.

The great *Collar* of the *Order* was alſo laid upon the *Cuſhen*; at the *Installation* of *Sir Henry Sidney*, an. 6. *Eliz.* of the Earl of *Derby*, an. 16. *Eliz.* of the Earl of *Rutland*, an. 26. *Eliz.* and of the Earl of *Shrewsbury*, an. 34. *Eliz.* and in this manner born before the *Knights-Elect*, an. 13. *Car. 2.* and before the Duke of *Monmouth*, an. 15. *Car. 2.* and the Duke of *Albemarle*, an. 23. *Car. 2.*

r MS. penes E.
W. G. f. 144. b.
1 Ind. f. 151. a.

With theſe the *Hood* (though heretofore put on in the *Chapter-houſe*, yet) of late hath been laid upon the *Cuſhen*, and alſo the *Book of Statutes*, and ſo we find them born by *Garter* before *Prince Henry* an. 1. *Jac. R.* and *Frederick* *Elect*or *Palatine* in the 10. year of the ſame King, as alſo before the *Knights* *Installed*, an. 13. *Car. 2.* and ſince.

And here we muſt note, that when *Garter* bears theſe *Ornaments* and *Enſigns* upon the *Cuſhen* before an *Elect-Knight*, or a *Proctor*, he is always placed between the *Register* and *Black Rod* in the *Proceeding*.

Laſtly, in this *Proceeding* alſo the *Knight-Elect* goeth bare headed, holding his *Cap* in his hand, and ſo did the Duke of *Albemarle*, an. 23. *Car. 2.* for it hath been thought incongruous to the order of *Investiture* (as is before noted of the *Hood*) to put on any part of the *Habit* or other *Ornaments* that muſt be taken off again, before the *Investiture* be compleated; and the due place (among the *Ceremonies* of *Investiture*) for putting on the *Cap* is not till all the other be finiſhed.

SECT. VII.

The Ceremonies of Installation.

q MS. fol. 20. b.
248. d.

WHEN the *Proceeding* hath entred the *Choire*, the *Alms-Knights* and *Officers of Arms*, make their obeysances towards the *high Altar*, and the *Sovereign's* royal *Stall*, in the ſame manner and order as we ſhall deſcribe anon to be

be done on the Eve of St. George. Then they proceed up to the steps before the Altar and divide themselves, next the Officers of the Order make their like double Reverence, and last of all the two Commissioners (or Knights-Assistants, or Knights-Companions) and Knight Elect, all three together.

After this the Officers of the Order turn aside towards the stall, designed for the Elect Knight, and approaching neer it, stand below in the Choir, while the Commissioners (or Assistants, or Knights-Companions) pass into the lower row of Stalls (sometimes called the middle row) directly under the designed stall, leading the Elect Knight with them. And in this place is he to take his Oath, called in the Annals, the sacred Oath of the Order of the Garter: during which time he ought to stand between the Knights-Companions, who brought him thither.

At the Installation of Prince Henry an. 1. Jac. R. the Sovereign's Lieutenant himself, with the Lord Buckhurst (the next senior Knight-Companion) led him directly under his own stall, and there gave him his Oath. And when the Earl of Shrewsbury was Installed, an. 34. Eliz. we find it noted, that the senior Commissioner first entered the lower row of Stalls; but an. 31. H. 8. at the Installation of the Lord Russell, and others, the junior Assistant went up first.

The Knight Elect being thus placed, the Register of the Order (standing before them, but below in the Choir) readeth or pronounceth the Oath, for it is part of his duty, to administer the same.

In this solemn Ceremony, the New Testament whereon the Oath is taken (commonly opened in some place of the Gospels) is indifferently held by one of the three inferior Officers of the Order, for sometimes the Register hath held it, as at the Earl of Derby's Installation, an. 16. Eliz. as also at the Installation of the Earl of Rutland, and Lord Cobham, an. 26. of the same Sovereign. At other times Garter hath held it, as an. 5. Eliz. when the Earl of Northumberland took his Oath, and an. 10. Car. 1. at the Installation of the Earl of Moreton. But when the Earl of Shrewsbury was sworn, an. 34. Eliz. the Usher of the Black Rod, performed this Office.

While the Oath is administering, the Elect Knight holds his right hand upon the holy Evangelists, and as soon as the Register hath ended pronouncing the words, the Elect Knight answereth, * I will, so help me God, and then taketh off his hand reverently kissing the Book; and by this Ceremony sealeth his obligation to the statutes of this most Noble Order.

The Ceremony used when Philip King of Castile and Leon, took the Oath (which to him was administered in the Chapter-house at Windsor) an. 22. H. 7. was this, The said King laid his hand upon the Canon (under which was placed the Book of the Statutes of the Order, by the Prelate, to whom it was delivered by the Register) and repeated the words of the Oath, and having reverently kist all those things, by which he swore, he took a Pen from the Prelates hand, and signed the Oath he had taken, with his own hand-writing; and forthwith delivered it to the Sovereign then present.

Now the Oath which a Knight-Subject takes, at his personal Installation, being of very great weight and concernment, it is fit we here render some account of the nature and form thereof, and (leaving those others taken by Stranger-Princes, and their Proctors, and the Deputies of Knights-Subjects, to their proper places) enquire, what was its original form, and how, when, and upon what occasion it received addition and enlargement.

First then, the form of the ancient Oath, which the Statutes of Institution appointed to be taken by the Elect-Knight was very short, but comprehensive, and was, * That he should well and faithfully observe, to the uttermost of his power, all the Statutes of the Order.

This was the full content of the Oath, taken by the first Founders, and to which they also affix their seals; and so it continued without alteration or addition, till towards the end of King Edward the Fourth's Reign. But at a Chapter held at the Kings Wardrobe in London the 10. of February, in the 19. year of the same King, it was Decreed, That all the Knights-Companions then alive, and all

b Colled. 7.
v. 2.

r. Taking the
Oath.

c MS. penes Ar-
thur Comit An-
glesey. f. 119.
d MS. penes E.
W. G. f. 144. a.
e Lib. C. p. 140.
f Li R. p. 154.
g h 8 Stat. Art.

20. vide f. Lib:
C. p. 110. 114
140.

q Lib. C. p. 50.
h MS. fol. penes
E. W. G. h. c. i.
i MS. fol. penes
G. O. T. p. 206.
k MS. in Offic.
Arm. [L. i.]

l 19.
m Lib. N. p. 274.
n Lib. C. p. 114.
o 151. q Lib. R.
p. 61. 47. 51.
r. 7. 115.
s MS. fol. 112. d.
t J. V. gen.

u Antogr
v MS. penes W.
le N. Cl. f. 11 b.
q MS.
r MS. fol. penes
G. O. T. p. 206.

f Lib. R. p. 61.

* Colled. W.
le N. Cl.

t Lib. N. p. 184.
vide f. 112. v.
MS. penes W. le
N. Cl. f. 294.

u E. 3. Stat.
Art. 24.

w Lib. N. p. 201

such as were afterwards admitted into the Order (and that before they took possession of their Stalls) should be obliged to take this Oath also, * That they would aid, support, and defend, with all their power, the Royal Colledge of St. George, within the Castle of Windsor, as well in its possessions, as all other things whatsoever.

In pursuance of which Decree, there was a form drawn up, wherein both Oaths were joined together, and entred in the *Black Book*, the Transcript whereof we have placed in the *Appendix*. But when the *Register* of the Order pronounced the Oath, (he premiling such compellation as was due to every Elect Knight by name) it was altered to the form ² there likewise following.

This Clause (relating to the maintenance and defence of the liberties of the Colledge) we also find retained in the Oath drawn up for the Prince of Wales, and entred for a Precedent in the *Annals* of the Order, which we have also thought fit to subjoin to the ³ former.

But when King Henry the Eighth new modelled the *statutes*, we observe this Clause to be omitted, and some other particulars of another nature added to the general Oath, for due observation of the *statutes*; as first, instead of maintaining and defending the Colledge in its rights and possessions; there is adjoin'd a Clause, to defend the Honors, Quarrels, Rights, Dominions, and Cause of the Sovereign, to augment the Honor, and accomplish all the *statutes*, Points, and Ordinances of the Order, as may be seen at large in his Body of ⁴ statutes, all which we find sum'd up together, in that form of the ⁵ Oath, taken by the Earl of Cumberland, at his Installation *an.* 29. H. 8.

In the third year of King Edward the Sixth, at the Installation of the Earl of Huntington, and other Elect Knights, a new form was agreed on, by consent of the Earl of Derby, then the Sovereign's Lieutenant, and the Knights-Assistants appointed for that Solemnity; the alteration being such, as the Reformation in Religion, and the Sovereign's Interest, thought fit to make: and to the end the difference between this and former Oaths may be observed, it is also inserted in the ⁶ Appendix.

But *an.* 1. Eliz. the *Blue Book* affords us a notable instance, of a dispensation for taking the Oath at the Installation of the Duke of Norfolk and others, in regard the ⁷ Rites and Ceremonies of Religion were then altered, and no new form of an Oath yet settled; for which cause the Earl of Penbroke (then the Sovereign's Lieutenant) dispensed with their taking any Oath at that time; upon promise ⁸ they would observe such *statutes* and Orders, as the Sovereign and Knights-Companions should decree to be observed and kept in the next Council of the Order.

And accordingly (within a short time after) another Form was Ordained, wherein the words of Obligation were put in the Negative: And this is the form of the Oath, taken by a Knight-Subject at this day; it being recorded at the end of the *Red Book* of the Order, both in Latin and English, and thence transcribed into the ⁹ Appendix.

As soon as the Knight-Elect hath taken the usual Oath, he is led by the Knights-Commissioners (or Knights-Assistants, or Knights-Companions) up to the Stall appointed for him, through that entrance next beneath it, and by them placed before it. In the mean time Garter advanceth into the lower row of Stalls to the place where the Elect Knight stood, when he took his Oath, and from thence he presenteth to them (with due Reverence) the Mantle, Collar, and Book of Statutes, who invest the Elect Knight first with the ¹⁰ Mantle, by putting it upon his shoulders.

But we have met with some Examples, where Garter hath delivered the Mantle, while the Elect-Knight remained in the lower row of Stalls, and wherewith he was invested before he went up to his Stall; and these were in the cases of the Earl of Northumberland, *an.* 5. Eliz. of Francis Duke of Montmorency, and others, *an.* 14. Eliz. the Earls of Dunbar, and Montgomery, *an.* 6. Jac. R. and the present Sovereign, *an.* 14. Car. 1. Whereto may be added, that those Elect-Knights installed at the Grand Feast of St. George, most happily celebrated, *an.* 13. Car. 2. were

y Num.
XXXVIII.

z Num.
XXXIX.

* Appendix,
Num. XL.

a Art. 27.
b Appendix,
Num. XL.

c Num. XLII.

d Lib. C. p. 31.

e Ibid.

* Num. XLIII.
2. Inveſture
with the Man-
tle, &c.

f E. 3. Stat.
H. 5. Art. 19
H. 8. Stat.
Art. 20.
g Ex Colled.
f. V. gen.
h MS. 4. penes
Wle N. Cl.
i MS. penes B.
W. G. f. 148.
k Palmon's
large Journ.
pag. 13.

were constrained to receive their Investiture below in the *Choir*, yet directly under their proper *stalls*. But this hapned through the great concourse of people, which at that time had flockt to *Windsor* (greedy to behold the glory of that Solemnity, which for many years had been intermitted) and rudely forced, not only into and fill'd the lower row of *Stalls*, but taken up almost the whole *Choir*.

But it is noted in the *Red Book* that the Investiture with the *Mantle* and *Collar*, hath been sometimes performed by the *Black Rod*: as at the Installation of the * *Earl of Northampton*, an. 5. *Car. 1.* and of the Lord Treasurer || *Weston*, the * *Lib. R. p. 47. i* || *Ibid. p. 61.* *Earls of Exeter and Lindsey*, and *James Marquess Hamilton*, an. 6. *Car. 1.* Nevertheless this is to be understood, of this Officers assistance given to the *Knights-Companions* whose Office it only is, and no otherwise.

¹ Whilst the Ceremony of Investiture with the *Mantle* is performing, the *MS. fol. 26.* words of *Admonition* proper thereunto are pronounced, and are these that follow.

Take this Mantle of Heavenly Colour in sign and token of the most honorable Order you have received, and to the increase of your honor, signed and marked as you see with a red Scutcheon of our Lords Crois, to the intent that you being always defended by the virtue and strength thereof, may pass through your Enemies, and them also overcome and vanquish, so that at the last for your worthy and approved acts, you may after this temporal Chivalry come to eternal triumphant joys in Heaven. See the Appendix, Nam. XXXVI. & XXXVII.

But at the Installation of the present *Sovereign*, they received some alteration, and were put into this form.

Receive this Robe of Heavenly Colour (the Livery of this most excellent Order) in augmentation of thy honor, enobled with the Shield and Red Crois of our Lord, by whose power thou mayest safely pierce Troops of thy Enemies, and be over them ever victorious; and being in this temporal warfare glorious in egreious and heroick actions, thou mayest obtain eternal and triumphant joy. Palm. large Journ. p. 13.

In the next place the *Commissioners* (or *Assistants* or *Knights-Companions*) lay the *Hood* upon the *Knights* right shoulder over the *Mantle*, and bringing the *Tippet* athwart his *Brest*, tuck it under his *Girdle*, at which his *Sword* hangs. n. MS. p. 65. G. O. I. f. 80. & 87.

And lastly, they tie the *Collar* about his shoulders, over his *Mantle* and *Hood*, and at this part of the Investiture these words of *Admonition* are also pronounced.

To the encrease of your honor, and in token of the Honorable Order you have received; Take this Collar about your Neck, with the Image of the holy Martyr and Christs Knight St. George, by whose aid you being defended, may pass through the prosperities and adversities of this world; that having here the Victory, as well of your Ghostly as Bodily Enemies, you may not only receive the glory and renown of temporal Chivalry, but also at the last the endless and everlasting reward of Victory. Appendix, Num. XXXVI. & XXXVII.

This form of words received likewise alteration when the present *Sovereign* was to be Installed, being varied after this manner.

Wear this Collar about thy Neck, adorned with the Image of the blessed Martyr and Soldier of Christ St. George, by whose imitation provoked, thou mayest so overpass both prosperous and adverse encounters, that having stoutly vanquished thy Enemies, both of body and soul, thou mayest not only receive the praise of this transient Combat, but be crowned with the Palm of eternal victory. Palm. large Journ. p. 9.

And

And here (before we pass further) it will be needful to observe, that anciently at the Solemnities of *Installation* when the *Sovereign* or his *Lieutenant* was present, the *Elect-Knight* after he had been invested with the *Mantle* in his *Stall*, was immediately conducted out of the *Choir*, back to the *Chapter-house* (where the said *Sovereign* (or his *Lieutenant*) was accustomed to remain till he returned) there to receive Investiture with the *Collar* of the *Order*, from the *Sovereign* (or his *Lieutenant's*) hands; which being done, he is said to have received the full possession of his *Habit*.

And this is evident, first from King Henry the Eighth's *Statutes*, which direct (after the *Elect-Knight's* Investiture with the *Mantle*) *That he shall return into the Chapter-house, where he shall receive from the Sovereign or his Deputy, the Collar of the Order*; and secondly from the Practice about that time, as is manifest in the cases of the Lord *Montjoy*, Sir *William Fitz Williams*, and Sir *Henry Gouldford*, installed an. 18. H. 8. and the Lord *Cromwell*, an. 30. H. 8. as also of the Lord *Russell*, Sir *Thomas Cheney*, and Sir *William Kingston*, installed an. 31. H. 8. of the Marquess *Dorset*, Earl of *Derby*, Lord *Seymour* of *Sudeley*, and Sir *William Pagit*, an. 1. E. 6. of the Earl of *Huntingdon*, Lords *La Ware* and *Cobham*, and Sir *William Herbert*, an. 3. E. 6. so likewise of the Earl of *Shrewsbury*, and Lord *Hunsdon*, an. 3. Eliz. of the Earl of *Northumberland*, an. 5. Eliz. and of the Duke of *Montmorency*, an. 14. Eliz.

The Proceeding back into the *Chapter-house*, upon this occasion, was ordered almost after the same manner, as that before mentioned into the *Choir*, only with this difference; that the new installed *Knight* took here his place, according to the dignity of his *Stall*: and so did the aforesaid Duke of *Montmorency*, when he returned to the *Chapter-house*, to receive his *Collar*; for because the *Stall* wherein he had been installed, was of a higher rank, than either of those belonging to the two *Assistants*, that conducted him to his *Installation*, they therefore proceeded before (not on either side) him thither.

But this is observable, that when the *Sovereign's Lieutenant* remained in the *Chapter-house*, while the *Elect-Knight* proceeded to his *Installation*, the *Usher* of the *Black-Rod*, proceeded not with the said *Knight*, but stayed behind, to attend upon the *Lieutenant*: as appears from the notices of the before mentioned Installations, of the Lord *Russell*, Earl of *Huntington*, and Earl of *Northumberland*; and as soon as the Investiture with the *Collar* was finished, the *Lieutenant* proceeded to the *Choir* in the Rear, and the new invested and installed *Knight* in place according to his *Stall*: A President or two of such Proceeding follows.

The *Lieutenant's Proceeding* into the *Choir*, at the Installation of the Lord *Russell* and others, an. 31. H. 8. after they had received their *Collars* in the *Chapter-house*.

Officers of Arms.

Knights newly installed, the junior formost.

Knights-Assistants.

Black-Rod. Register. Garter.

The *Lieutenant*.

In the same manner was the *Lieutenant's Proceeding* ordered at the Installation of the Marquess *Dorset*, and others, an. 1. E. 6.

After the Proceeding had entred the *Choir*, and the *Lieutenant* and *Knights-Companions* taken their Seats, with the usual Ceremonies; the Service of the Church began.

But when the *Installation* was performed by *Commissioners*, then was the *Collar* of the *Order* laid on the *Cushen* with the *Mantle*, and born before the *Elect-Knight* to his *Stall*, where, after his Investiture with the *Mantle* and *Hood*, he received

o Art. 20.
p Lib. N. p. 254
q Ibid. p. 277.
r Ideus Lib. v.
car. Dalton.
p. 1. s. 4.
t MS. in Offic.
Ann. [L. 1.]
pag. 19.
f MS. penes G.
O. T. fol. 87.
t Ibid. fol. 80.
u Collect. W. le
N. Cl.
v Collect. F.
V. gen.
x Collect. R. C.
Cl. pag. 26.

y Ibidem.

MS. in Offic. Ar-
mor. [L. 1.]
p. 19.

MS. penes G.
O. T. fol. 87.

received Investiture with the *Collar* also, and among sundry examples we shall instance in these; The^a Lord William Howard, *an. 1. & 2. Phil. & Mar.* was first invested with his *Mantle*, and then had his *Collar* put about his neck by the Lord^b Clynton and Lord Pagit, the two *Commissioners* appointed for his Installation. The^c Earl of Lincoln, and Viscount Mountague, *Commissioners* for the Installation of the^d Earls of Derby and Penbroke, put on their *Collars* in their *stalls*; and thus was it done by the *Commissioners* at the Installations of the^e Earl of Rutland, and Lord Cobham, *an. 26. Eliz.* and of the^f Earls of Shrewsbury, and Cumberland, *an. 34. of the same Queen.*

And in like manner, at all Installations solemnized since Queen Elizabeth's Reign, where the *Sovereign* hath vouchsafed his presence (the ancient Custom of returning to the *Chapter-house* for the *Collar* being laid aside) the *Knights-Companions* who led the *Elect-Knights* to their *stall*, did there invest them with the *Collars* also; as we find in the case of the^g Earl of Rutland, Sir George Villars, and Viscount Lisle, *an. 14. Jac. R.* who being come to their several *stalls*, were first invested with their *Mantles*, next their *Hoods*, and after that their^h *Collars*. In like manner did theⁱ Earls of Dorset and Holland invest the Earl of Suffolk with the *Collar* in his *stall*, *an. 4. Car. 1.* and thus hath it been observed, at all Installations since, where the *Sovereign* hath been present at the Solemnity.

As soon as the Ceremony of Investiture, with the *Mantle*, *Hood*, and *Collar*, is finished; the *Commissioners* (or *Knights-Assistants*, or *Knights-Companions*) take the^k *Book of the statutes of the Order*, and deliver it into the hands of the new invested *Knight*. Thus this part of the Ceremony was observed to the^l Earls of Shrewsbury and Cumberland after their Investiture, *an. 34. Eliz.* and to the^m Earl of Rutland, Sir George Villars, and Viscount Lisle, *an. 14. Jac. R.* and so generally to all *Elect-Knights* since.

This *Book* the *Knight* is to keep safe in his own custody, both for instruction and direction, in such things as relate to the *Laws* and *Ceremonies* of this most Noble Order, therein contained.

After this, they also give unto him the Black Velvet *Cap*, adorned with Plumes of White Feathers; and this in particular is noted to be the last among the Ceremonies performed at the Installation of the presentⁿ *Sovereign*.

All things relating to the full Investiture being ended, there only remains, to compleat this great Ceremony, the *Installation* it self, which is performed in the following manner.

The new invested *Knight*, standing before his *stall*, and turning himself towards the *High Altar*, first makes an humble Reverence thitherward, and after a like obeysance towards the *Sovereign*, or in his absence towards his *stall*, (Thus is it noted of^o William Lord Howard, *1. & 2. Phil. & Mar.*) which having done, the^p *Commissioners* (or *Assistants* or *Knights-Companions*) forthwith jointly imbrace him, with much joy (as their *Fellow* and *Companion*) according to the Custom of Installations, and set him down in his assigned *stall*; thereto adding their wishes for his happiness and honor.

With the like^q courteous and civil expressions and congratulations, we find this Ceremony was closed to the Lord Russel, *an. 31. H. 8.* which he answered with equal respect; giving moreover to the *Knights* who installed him, great thanks for the honor of their assistance: and to the Marquess Dorset and others installed, *an. 1. E. 6.* the *Commissioners* for that Ceremony, added this Vote, *That God would give them much honor*; and after such like Complementary respects have past, the *Commissioners* (or *Knights-Assistants*, or *Knights-Companions*) take their *Stalls*.

But we have a notable instance in relation to this Ceremony, at the Installation of Philip King of Castile, *an. 22. H. 7.* where the *Sovereign* himself, solemnly introduced him into his *stall* (being the^r next unto his own) and^s therein placed him. At which action it seems there was a form of words pronounced, relating to the *Elect-Knight's Session* and act of *Installation*, no less than at his *Investiture*, though we are not so happy as to know them: the *Relator* of the manner

a^c Coll. 7.
b^c V. gen.

c^e Autogr.
d^f MS. fol. penes
G.O.T. p. 206.

g^g MS. penes
h^h E. W. G.
f. 153. b.

iⁱ Autogr. penes
Camer. Stac-
carit.

k^k MS.
l^l MS. fol. penes
G.O.T. p. 206.

m^m MS. penes E.
W. G. f. 153. b.

nⁿ Lib. R.
p. 146.

o^o Placing the
Knight in his
Stall.

q^q Ex Coll. 7.
f. V. gen.
r^r Lib. C. p. 110.
s^s Lib. R. p. 61.

t^t MS. in Offic.
Arm. [Lib. L.]
pag. 19.

u^u MS. fol. penes
G.O.T. p. 37.

v^v Lib. N. p. 184
w^w Ex vet.
x^x MS. pen.
y^y le N. Cl.
fol. 295.

manner and order of this great Ceremony, having in the place of the words added an &c. and left a blank for them; but with this short note at the instant of Installation; *The Sovereign saying these words, Don sitz, &c.*

y *Ex vet. MS.*
pen. W. le N. Cl.
f. 1295.

S E C T. VIII.

The Order observed, when two or more Knights are Installed in one day.

W HEN there are two or more *Elect-Knights* appointed to receive the honor of *Installation* at one Solemnity; and that the Ceremony is performed by two *Commissioners* (or two *Knights-Assistants*) then as soon as they have finished all the Ceremonies of *Investiture* and *Installation*, due to the senior of them, they leave him so possess of his Stall, and forthwith * return to the *Chapter-house*; the *Proceeding* of *Alms-Knights*, *Officers of Arms*, and the inferior *Officers* of the Order (after their usual Reverences made in the middle of the *Choir*) passing forth before them, to the *Chapter-house*, and thence they conduct the next senior *Elect-Knight* into the *Choir*, where they perform all the circumstances of *Investiture* and *Installation* to him, as they did to the first Installed *Knight*: Which having finished, they leave him also in his stall, and ^a proceed back as before for the third *Elect-Knight*, and after the like manner do they introduce and install him, and so the rest (if there be more that wait their *Installation*) till all be installed.

* *Ex Coll. H.*
a *F. V. gen.*
vide *MS. penes*
Arthur. Comit.
Anglesey. fol.
119. a.

This seems to have been the ancient practice, for it is noted in the *Annals*, that Viscount *Beaumont*, and the Lord *Sudeley*, *Commissioners* appointed by King *Henry the Sixth*, for the *Installation* of *Albro Vusques d'Almadea* Earl of *Averence*, the Lord *Beauchamp*, and Sir *Thomas Hoo*; led them into the *Choir* singly and apart by themselves, and there installed them in their proper Stalls. And thus is it noted of the two *Assistants* at the *Installation* of the Earl of *Huntingdon* and others, an. 1. E. 6. who ^c after they had invested and installed the said Earl, ^d proceeded back to the *Chapter-house*, for the Lord *La Ware*, and he being installed, they ^e returned again for the Lord *Cobham*, and lastly for ^f Sir *William Herbert*. In like manner, when the *Commissioners* had given the *Proctor* to *Emanuel Duke of Savoy*, possession of his Principals Seat, an. 1. & 2. Ph. & Mar. they ^g proceeded back for *William Lord Howard*, and conducted him to his *Installation*. Thus did the *Commissioners* by the Earl of ^h *Penbroke*, an. 16. Eliz. when they had first installed the Earl of *Derby*; and by the ⁱ Earl of *Cumberland*, after the Earl of *Shrewsbury* had been installed.

When the *Sovereign* hath nominated three *Commissioners* to his service, in such case they have returned ^k altogether to fetch in the other *Knights* (after the Ceremonies of *Installation* were performed to the senior *Elect-Knight*) singly, that were to be installed, and alternately changed their places in the *Proceeding* to the several *Installations*: (one of them always going single and foremost) an instance whereof we have at the *Installation* of the Earls of *Essex*, and *Ormond*, and Sir *Christopher Hatton*, an. 30. Eliz. where the Earl of *Essex* having been first conducted to his *Installation*, between the Lord *Hunsdon*, and Earl of *Worcester*, the Lord ^{*} *Grey* the third *Commissioner* went single next before them, then all three *Commissioners* returned to fetch in the Earl of *Ormond*, who proceeding into the *Choir*, between the Lord *Hunsdon* and Lord *Grey*, the Earl of ^l *Worcester* went alone immediately before them; and his *Installation* being likewise dispatcht, Sir *Christopher Hatton* was conducted to his Stall, between the Earl of *Worcester* and the Lord *Grey*, the ^m Lord *Hunsdon* in this proceeding going next before them.

If the *Lieutenant* had four *Assistants* appointed him, (which was necessary when there were many *Knights* to be installed) the order of their *Installation* hath been

^b *Lib. N. p. 99.*
^c *MS. fol. pe-*
^d *nes G. O. T.*
^e *pag. 80.*
^f

^g *Coll. H. F. V.*
^h *Coll. H. R.*
ⁱ *MS. fol. penes*
^j *G. O. T. p. 206.*

^k *Coll. H. R.*
^l *Cl. f. 34.*

^{*} *Lib. C. p. 110.*

^l *Ibid. pag.*
^m *1111.*

been as followeth; first two of the senior *Knights-Assistants* conducted the senior *Elect-Knight* to his Installation, next the two other *Assistants* proceeded with the second *Elect-Knight*, and installed him; then again the two senior *Knights-Assistants* introduced the third *Elect-Knight* to his Stall, and in this manner they alternately changed, till all were installed. Thus was it ordered at the Installation of ⁿ Francis Duke of *Montmorency*, and others, ^o an. 14. *Eliz.* for at this Solemnity the ^p Earl of *Bedford*, Sir *Henry Sidney*, the Earl of *Worcester*, and the Earl of *Huntington*, were appointed *Assistants* to the Earl of *Leicester* (then the *Sovereign's Lieutenant*) the two first conducted the *Duke* to his Stall, and the two last the Earl of *Essex*, then the two first proceeded again with the Lord *Burgbley*, and the two last with the Lord *Grey*, and lastly the two first proceeded a third time, with the Lord *Shandos* between them.

ⁿ *Collect. R.*
^o *C. Cl. fol.*
^p 26.

And the like method and alternate change is observed, if four *Commissioners* be constituted, as at the Installation of *Frederick King of Denmark*, and *John Prince Palatine of the Rhine*, an. 25. *Eliz.* where the *Kings Proxy* was conducted into the *Chaire*, between the Earl of *Leicester*, and Lord *Hunsdon*, being the two senior *Commissioners*, and the *Prince* between the Earl of *Huntingdon*, and the Lord *Charles Howard*, the two junior *Commissioners*.

^q *Ibid. fol. 31.*

But some have been of opinion, that the *Commissioners* nominated to this employment, ought not to divide the duty, and part of them to install one *Knight*, and part another, and by such an alternation to dispatch the Ceremony, as in the former cases; but on the contrary, that all should jointly assist at each Installation. And in favour of this opinion, there is an instance at the Installation of the Earl of *Salisbury* and Viscount *Bindon*, an. 4. *Jac. R.* for the said Earl, having been brought in to the *Chaire*, and both invested and installed by the Earls of *Nottingham* and *Suffolk*, (then the two senior *Commissioners*) the other two *Commissioners*, who were left behind in the *Chapter-house*, to conduct Viscount *Bindon* to his Stall, calling to mind that all four were joint *Commissioners*, conceived that the said Earl was not legally installed by the two other, because themselves had not been assistant at the Ceremony. And upon consultation with the senior *Commissioners*, it seems this opinion prevailed so far with them, that they agreed to impart it to the Earl of *Salisbury*, who thereupon descended into the lower Seats before his Stall, and there all four *Commissioners* gave him his *Oath* again, then led him up into his fore-said Stall, and a second time Invested and Installed him; each of the four *Commissioners* putting to their hand: and the like joint assistance was given by them to the Viscount *Bindon*, installed at the same time.

^r *MS. penes*
^s *E. W. G.*
^t f. 147. a.

^w *Ibid.*
^x
^y
^z

But this method was not only new, but different from former practice, for in all like cases as before are cited, we have observed that both the *Knights-Commissioners*, and *Lieutenant's Assistants* have constantly divided the employment, by an alternate change; and besides, where the *Sovereign* hath authorized his *Lieutenant* to perform this Ceremony, and appointed some of the *Knights-Companions* to assist therein, these *Assistants* and not the *Lieutenant* have done the duty appertaining to the Installation, that part of it of investing with the Collar heretofore in the *Chapter-house*, and the whole duty at the Installation of *Prince Henry*, excepted.

And it is to be further noted, that this way of joint assistance at the installation of the Earl of *Salisbury*, was afterwards thought so little essential or necessary, that it became no Precedent; for at the very next Feast of Installation, when the Earls of *Dunbar* and *Montgomery* were installed (in the sixth year of the same King) and for which Ceremony four *Commissioners* were likewise appointed; the two senior of them installed the Earl of *Dunbar*, and the two junior, the Earl of *Montgomery*; and this we find again in Practice, an. 10. *Car. I.* when the two senior *Commissioners* installed the Earl of *Danby*, and the other two the Earl of *Morton*.

^a *Ibid. f. 148. a.*

^b *Autogr.*

But in the last place, if the *Sovereign* be present, and consequently that the *Knights-Companions* perform this Ceremony of *Introduction*, *Investiture*, and *Installation*, there is commonly then so many of them, as can go through the

Y y

whole

whole work, without changing by turns, after the manner uſed when done by a few, either *Commiſſioners* or *Aſſiſtants*, and therefore in this caſe the order is thus,

First, the two ſenior *Knights-Companions* (having deſcended from their *ſtalls*, and paſt out of the *Choire* to the *Chapter-houſe* with the *Proceeding* before them) conduct to his Installation the eldeſt *Eleſt-Knight*, and having performed that whole Ceremony, they return and take their *ſtalls* with accuſtomed Reverences. Then the two next ſenior *Knights-Companions*, deſcend and go out, and return with the next ſenior *Eleſt-Knight*, to his Installation, and after that two other *Knights-Companions* go out and fetch in the third, and ſo the reſt in due order.

And this method, we obſerve to have been practiſed at the Installation of Prince *Henry*, and other *Eleſt-Knights*,^{c an. 1. Jac. R.} for after the *Prince* had been placed in his *ſtall*, by the Earl of *Nottingham* and Lord *Buckburſt*; the Earls of *Shrewsbury* and *Cumberland*, came down from their *ſtalls*, and went to the *Chapter-houſe*, taking the *Proceeding* before them, and thence conducted the Duke of *Lenox* to his *ſtall*, and returned to their own. In like manner the Earls of *Northumberland* and *Worceſter*, went next out for the Earl of *Southampton*; and having installed him, the Lord *Sheffield*, and Lord *Howard* of *Walden*, paſt forth of the *Choire*, and brought in the Earl of *Marr*; and laſtly, the Lord *Montjoy* and Earl of *Suffex*, installed the Earl of *Penbroke*.

The like order was obſerved at the Installation of the Earl of *Rutland*, and others, an. 14. Jac. R. who having been left behind in the *Chapter-houſe*, while the *Sovereign* proceeded to the *Choire*, were afterwards by ſeveral *Knights-Companions* (the ſeniors going out firſt) introduced to their Installations; one after another, according to the ſeniority of their Election.

But to be more particular in the order of the Ceremony in this caſe, we ſhall lay down the method obſerved at the grand Feaſt of *St. George*, held at *Windleſor*, an. 13. Car. 2. which was as followeth.

First, the two ſenior *Knights*, the Earls of *Salisbury* and *Berkeſhire*, deſcended from their *ſtalls* with the uſual Reverences, and ſtood before them.

Next the *Alms-Knights* came down in a body, from the hault paces of the *Altar*, into the middle of the *Choire*, and having there made their double obeyſances proceeded forth.

After them the *Officers of Arms* deſcended alſo (the *Pursuivants* formoſt) and having made the double Reverences in the middle of the *Choire*, went out after the *Alms-Knights*.

Then followed the three inferiour *Officers* of the *Order*, having firſt made their uſual Reverences.

And laſtly, the two ſenior *Knights* joining together in the middle of the *Choire*, (after their double Reverences) paſt out in the Rear.

In this order they proceeded towards the *Chapter-houſe*; and when the *Alms-Knights* came near the door, they fell off and divided themſelves; the like did the *Officers of Arms*, and both thereby opened a way for the *Officers* of the *Order*, and *Knights-Companions*, to paſs between them into the *Chapter-houſe*; where being entred, they firſt brought forth the Duke of *Oromond* (the ſenior *Eleſt-Knight*) and taking him in the middle between them, the *Proceeding* went before into the *Choire*, in the ſame order as it came thence, *Garret* then bearing (on a Velvet Cuſhen) his *Mantle*, *Hood*, *Collar*, and *Book of Statutes*.

The *Alms-Knights* being entred the *Choire*, made their double obeyſances in the uſual place, and aſcended the hault-paces of the *Altar*, flanking on the other ſide.

After them, the *Officers of Arms* did the like.

Then the three inferiour *Officers* of the *Order*, coming up into the middle of the *Choire*, made their double Reverences, and ſo paſſed before the *Knights* to the place directly under the *ſtall* deſigned for the *Duke*, whither he (conducted as aforeſaid) followed, after that he and the two *Knights-Companions* had alſo made their uſual Reverences, in the middle of the *Choire*; for the Croud was ſo great through the concourſe of People to this grand Feſtival that the *Knights-Companions*

Companions could not pass into the lower row of Stalls with the Duke, (being the usual place for the *Elect-Knight* to be brought unto) but were necessitated to invest him below in the *Choir*.

After the Duke was Invested and Installed, the *Proceeding* (ordered in all points as before) went again to the *Chapter-house*, and brought the Duke of *Buckingham* into the *Choir*, where he received his Installation, in the manner aforesaid.

But the day being far spent, and these *Proceedings* to and from the *Chapter-house* taking up much time; the *Sovereign* to shorten the Ceremony, commanded that with the next *Proceeding*, all the rest of the *Elect-Knights*, being eight, (beside two *Proxies*) should be introduced at once; which command being obeyed, and each *Elect-Knight* placed before his *stall*, they took the *Oath*, received their *Investiture*, were led up to their *stalls*, and took possession of them by a solemn *Installation*.

And in regard so many *Elect-Knights* were introduced together, it was thought fit (because necessary) that their *Mantles* and *Collars* should be also brought in the *Proceeding*, and to effect this, each *Knight-Elect* appointed one of the Gentlemen that attended on him, to bear the Cushen (whereon his *Mantle* and *Collar* were laid) before him to the *Choir* door, which was accordingly done; and where they stood holding them in their arms, until *Gar*ter had in due order (as they were to be made use of) fetched them into the *Choir*.

And here we may insert this general Rule, That at all *Installations* where some of the *Elect-Knights* are not sent for in to the *Chapter-house*, to receive investiture with the *Surcoat* (before the senior *Elect-Knight* hath been conducted to his *stall*, but left to repose themselves, in the *East Isle* of the *Chappel*, during his *Installation* (as hath many times happened) the *Knights-Commissioners* or *Assistants*, upon their return to the *Chapter-house*, send *Gar*ter for the next senior *Elect-Knight*, whom they receive at the door thereof, and having invested him with his *Surcoat*, and girt his *Sword* about him, proceed with him to his *Installation* in the usual order: and the same method is observed, if there be more *Elect-Knights* that wait their calling into the *Chapter-house*. And thus we find it practised to Sir^h Thomas Cheney, and Sir William Kingston, an. 30. H. 8. after the *Knights-Assistants* had returned from the *Installation* of the Lord Russell; and to the Earl of Penbroke, as soon as the *Knights-Commissioners* had installed the Earl of Derby, an. 16. Eliz. as also to the Earl of Cumberland, when the *Commissioners* returned from the *Installation* of the Earl of Shrewsbury, an. 34. Eliz. and lastly to theⁿ Earl of Morton, after the Earl of Danby had received his *Stall*, an. 10. Car. 1.

The *Knight* or *Knights* having now received a compleat *Installation*, the *Knights-Commissioners* (*Knights-Assistants*; or *Knights-Companions*) with all civil respect take their leaves of the last installed *Knight*, and descend into the *Choir*, and with usual Reverences take their own Stalls, but the senior *Knight-Companion* ascends first. Where note, if the Stalls of the *Commissioners*, or *Assistants*, or *Knights-Companions* be on the same side with the last installed *Knight*, they then descend not into the *Choir*, but (after their Reverences made above) pass directly to them along the Stalls, and this we find done by the Lord^o Howard of Effingham, and the Earl of Ormond, an. 34. Eliz. when they had finished the *Installation* of the Earl of Cumberland.

The Ceremonies and Circumstances of *Installation* being finished, the *Officers* of *Arms* first, next the *Alms-Knights* descend from the Steps of the *Altar*, and take their several stations in the *Choir*. Then one of the *Prebends* of the *College* (but if the *Sovereign* be present, the *Prelate* with the *Serjeant* of the *Vestry* before him) is conducted to the *Altar* by the *Verger* of the *Chappel*, and there begins the *Service* appointed by the *Church*, which being finished, the *Proceeding* passeth out of the *Choir* in the usual order (the new installed *Knight* being ranked according to his *Stall*) either to the *Presence Chamber*, or the *Lieutenants*, or *Commissioners Lodgings*, as the occasion is.

^k MS. in Offic.
Armor. [L. 1.]
pag. 19.
Colled. 7.
V. gen.
m MS. fol. pe-
nes G. O. T.
p. 206.
n Autogr.

^o Ex eod. MS.
fol. penes G. O.
T. in loc. cit.

SECT. IX.

The Offring of Gold and Silver.

BUT if the *Installation* be solemnized in the morning, the *Service* of the *Church* having proceeded as far as the *Offertory*, two of the *Prebends* (appointed to receive the *Offring*) are conducted to the *Altar* by their *Verger*, and forthwith first the *Alms-Knights*, and then the *Officers of Arms* ascend again to the steps of the *Altar*, and flank on each side as before.

After this, *Garter* summons down the *Knights-Companions* to the *Offring*; who descend with usual Reverences, and stand in the *Choir* under their proper Stalls, whilst the *Sovereign's Lieutenant* descends from his Stall, and offers (first) for the *Sovereign* (he receiving the *Bezant* from the *senior Knight*) and then returns to his Stall.

And at this instant was the usual time heretofore for offring the defunct *Knights Achievements*; which by King *James* his appointment was altered, and ordained to be performed before the *Elect-Knights* were installed; of which we shall speak *anon.

The *Lieutenant* after a short stay in his Stall, descends again, and proceeds up to the *Altar* to make his own *Offring* both of *Gold* and *Silver*, and then returns; and after him do the rest of the *Knights-Companions* (including those newly installed) offer in their due order, the circumstances we shall largely set down in our discourse upon the *Offring* on the || *Grand Feast-day*.

But when the *Installation* passeth by *Commissioners*, there is then *no Offring* made for the *Sovereign*; but the *Commissioners* offer first, beginning with the two *Seniors*, and after them the other *Knights-Companions* in their due order.

The Ceremony of *Offring* at the *Installation* of *Philip King of Castile*, an. 22. H. 7. is remarkable, and therefore we shall note it here: For he descending from his Stall into the *Choir*, and standing before it (as the other *Knights-Companions* did) the *Sovereign* left his royal Stall, and hastned down to proceed to the *Offring*; to which the King would have followed, this the *Sovereign* would not permit, but obliged the King to proceed along with him *w* on his left hand, though he *x* desired to perform his duty as a *Brother of the Order*, and *Knight-Companion*, so that at last they both made their *Offrings*, *y* so neer together, that though the *Sovereign* had the precedence, yet was it hardly observable.

|| Chap. 21.

p § Colled. R.

q § C. Cl. f. 33.

r MS.

s § Ex vet. MS.

t § penes W. 10

N. Cl. f. 295. b.

u Lib. N. p. 185.

w § Ex cod.

x § vet. MS.

y Lib. N. loc. cit.

SECT. X.

Of the Grand Dinner at the Installation.

ON the day of *Installation*, there hath from ancient time been accustomedly prepared, a very sumptuous and noble *Feast*; and though it was agreed on in *Chapter*, an. 3. E. 6. *That the Knights-Elect from thenceforth might be installed by Commission without a Feast*, yet after his *Reign*, we find the old usage of making a *Feast* at this Solemnity restored.

If the *Sovereign* appoint the *Installation* to be when the *Feast* of *St. George* is also celebrated, and himself personally present, the *Feast* is then kept at the *Sovereign's* charge.

If in such case he constitute a *Lieutenant*, the *Installation Dinner* is kept at the expence of the *Lieutenant*; and usually prepared in some of the *Sovereign's Lodgings*

a Lib. N. p. 302
and see lib. v.
cat. Dalton.
p 129. b.

Lodgings in the Castle, but seldom in St. George's Hall; though^b there, the Earl of Arundel, at the Installation of the Earl of Shrewsbury and Lord Hunfdon, kept his Feast, an. 3. Eliz.

But when the Installation is kept at any other time of the year, without the joint observation of St. George's Feast, then the new installed Knight or Knights are at all the charge; who for the most part have had the Grand Dinner prepared at the Dean's Lodgings. Nevertheless, where ever it is appointed, thither do the Sovereign (his Lieutenant and Assistants, or Commissioners) together with the new installed Knights proceed in full Robes, which at the Installation of the Marquess of Dorset and other Knights, an. 1. E. 6. we find noted to be according to the ancient custom.

At the Installation of the Lord Russell, Sir Thomas Cheney, and Sir William Kingston, an. 31. H. 8. the Sovereign's Lieutenant washed alone, the water being brought up with three Reverences; after him did his two Assistants wash, and lastly the three new installed Knights.

The Lieutenant's place at the Table, is somewhat on the left hand the cloth of State, and there sat the Earl of Arundell, Lieutenant for St. George's Feast, when the Earl of Shrewsbury and Lord Hunfdon were installed, an. 3. Eliz. But the other four Knights-Companions (his two Assistants, and the two new installed Knights) sat towards the Tables end on both sides, for that they could not well sit all on a side.

But of late times, viz. at the Installation of the Earl of Northampton an. 5. Car. 1. a question was started, whether the Lieutenant (or Commissioners) should sit at Dinner in their Habit, or not? since the powers given them by their Commissions, seem to terminate as soon as the Knights are installed (though it was allowed that the new installed Knight ought to sit in his Robes) as also because at the Installation of the Lord Cromwell, an. 29. H. 8. after all the Ceremonies were finished in the Chappel, the Knights went to the Deans house, and there put off their Habit, and dined in their ordinary Apparel. So also at the Installation of the Earl of Rutland, and Lord Cobham, an. 26. Eliz. the Commissioners when they were returned from the Chappel, did put off the Habit of the Order, before they went to Dinner, and the new installed Knights kept on only their Surcoats; and thus sat all Dinner while.

What was answered to these objections, or whether they dined without their Habit, we do not find; but the practice to the contrary, to wit, of keeping on the whole Habit till the grand Dinner be ended, hath been at other times generally observed.

At the second Course (called also the second Mess, and second Service) doth Garter (accompanied with the Officers of Arms) proclaim the Stiles, and Titles of honor of the Sovereign (if he be personally or by Lieutenant present) in Latin, French, and English, and crys Largeſſ thrice: next the Stiles of the new installed Knights in French or English only, with two Largeſſes, and in that order they were installed. Thus was it done at the installation of Charles Duke of York an. 9. Jac. R. of Frederick Prince Palatine of the Rhine an. 10. Jac. R. of the Earl of Rutland, and others, an. 14. Jac. R.

Philip King of Castile dined with the Sovereign in his Privy Chamber, the day of his installation an. 22. H. 7. whose Stile was proclaimed by Garter not in the same Room, but at the Sovereign's great Chamber-door, and in St. George's Hall (after Largeſſ had been thrice cryed) in this manner.

Du tres-hault tres-puissant tres-excellent Prince, le Roy de Castile de Leon & de Granade Archduc Dauphrich, Duc de Bourgoine, & Chevalier de la tres-noble Ordre de la Jurtier.

When the Sovereign constitutes a Lieutenant, then is the Lieutenant's Stile also proclaimed, and to his other Titles is added that of this present honor of Lieutenantship; and afterwards the Stiles of the new installed Knights; which we find noted at the installation of the Earl of Shrewsbury, and Lord Hunfdon, an. 3.

an. 3. Eliz. where *Garter* and the *Officers of Arms* proceeded into the middle of *St. George's Hall* (the *Grand Dinner* being held there) and after three obeysances, proclaimed their *Stiles* (only in *French*) as followeth.

¹⁰ MS. pener. W.
D. N. f. 5. b.

^k Du tres-noble & puissant Seigneur, Henry Fytz Allen, Conte de Arundell, Seigneur Matravers, & de Clan, Chevalier du tres-noble Ordre de la Jartier, & Lieutenant de cest noble Feste de St. George.

Du tres-noble & puissant Seigneur, George Conte de Shrewsbury, Seigneur Talbot, Furnivall, Verdon, & Strange de Blakmer, Chevalier du tres-noble Ordre de la Jartier, & Justicier des Forrestz & Chassez, de la Riviere de Trent envers le North.

Du tres-noble Seigneur Henry Cary, Baron de Hunsdon, Chevalier du tres-noble Ordre de la Jartier.

^c Coll. R. C.
Cl. fol. 27.

The order of this Ceremony is more particularly noted at the Installation of the Duke of *Montmorency*, and others, an. 14. Eliz. and was thus; first *Garter* cryed *Largez*, and next proclaimed the *Sovereign's Stile*, and Titles of honor, in three Languages, then going two foot back, he proclaimed the *Lieutenants Stile* only in *French*, with two *Largez*; after that he cryed one *Largez* for the *Duke*, and lastly for all the other new installed *Knights*, only two *Largez*, and the other *Officers of Arms* did the like; and still as *Garter* had finished his proclamation of the *Stiles*, the *Heralds* joined with him in crying *Largez*; and so with Reverence they departed the *Hall*.

^p Ex Coll. H.
q. W. le N. Cl.
r. 2.

But we are in the last place to note, that when neither the *Sovereign* is present, nor his *Lieutenant*, then the *Sovereign's Stile* is not proclaimed, nor those of the *Commissioners*, but only of the new installed *Knights*.

As soon as *Dinner* is ended, the *Knights-Companions* rise from the *Table*, and withdraw to disrobe themselves, and therewith the Solemnity of *Installation* takes ending; but if at any time the Solemnities continue to that evening and the following day; it is only, because the *Sovereign* (or his *Lieutenant*) is present, upon the account of celebrating the Feast of *St. George*, and not with reference to the Solemnity of *Installation*.

^f Sylloge Numismatum Elegantium.

We shall conclude with this Observation, that the ancient custom of preserving the memory of remarkable actions by some Emblematical Representations, Figures and Devices (whereof, for the last Century, *Lukins* affords plenty of Examples) is still continued in use; and therefore upon consideration had of the honor they thereby brought the persons to whom they related, was it, that the late *sovereign*, of ever blessed memory, thought fit to perpetuate the Solemnity of the present *Sovereign's Installation*, by certain *Medals*; whereof the forms and inscriptions were these.



SECT. XI.

Of setting up the Knights Achievements.

THE last thing to be done, at this great Solemnity, is setting up the *Helm, Crest, Sword, Banner, and Plate* of the new installed *Knight*, over his *Stall*, in the *Chappel* of *St. George* at *Windſor*; to which purpose they are to be provided in readineſs, according to the ^adirections before given. This, though it ^{a Chap. 111} be no part of the Ceremony of *Installation*, yet is it a conſequent thereunto, and ^{ſect. 7.} an unſeparable appendix; and therefore proper enough to be added here.

The ſetting up of *Trophies, Enſigns, and Achievements* of honor anciently in *Churches*, as well in the life time of ſuch worthy and deſerving men, who had performed ſome gallant action, as on their *Tombs* and *Monuments* after their death, was chiefly deſigned to this end; that the *Beholders* thereby put in mind of their great virtues, might be excited to the imitation and purſuit of true *Nobility, Valour, and Virtue*.

Hereupon at the *Inſtitution* of this moſt Noble *Order*, the *Achievements* of the *Knights-Companions*, were thought fit to be ſet up in the *Choir* of the ſaid *Chappel*; and hence alſo the remarkable *Plates*, wherein their *Eſcotcheons* of *Arms*, curiouſly wrought in enamel, were faſtned to the back of their *Stalls*. ^b Not that the outward form of ſuch things, have in them any great force; but that the memory ^{b Lib.N. p.101.} of great actions done, beget that ardour in the breaſts of excellent perſons, which never is at reſt, till ſome eminent achievements of theirs have overtaken the others fame and glory.

By the *Statutes* of *Inſtitution* it is ordained, that the time for ſetting up the *Achievements* ſhall be ^c when the *Eleſt-Knight* comes to *Windſor Caſtle*, that is, ^{c E. 3. Stat. Art. 19.} to his *Installation*, and not before; and the reaſon is there likewiſe given, ^d left it ſhould happen (he not coming within the time limited for his *Installation*, and ^{d Ord. Stat. in Bibloth. Haulton Art. 19.} conſequently the vacating his *Election* thereupon enſuing) that a new *Election* being made, thoſe *Military Enſigns* might ſeem to be diſgracefully withdrawn, and an ^e occaſion of diſhonor given, which otherwiſe could not be avoided, if ^{e Ord. Stat. in Lib.N. p.18.} they ſhould be ſuddenly taken down from a place ſo high.

Now 'tis moſt clear, that the intention of this *Article* extends to the finiſhing the Ceremonies of *Installation*, before the *Achievements* ought to be ſet up, by ſo carefully providing againſt the diſhonor of taking them down, in caſe the *Election* ſhould become void, which muſt certainly happen, if the *Knight-Eleſt* died but the hour before he were compleatly installed. And accordingly in the ancient *Deputations* both to ^f Sir *William Philip*, and Sir *John Faſtolf* power is ^{f Appendix, Num. XLIX. and L.} given their *Proctors* firſt to demand, receive, and obtain their *Principals Stalls*, and next to tender their *Helms* and *Swords*, to be hung up in the *Choir* of *Windſor* according to cuſtom: and for clearer information of the order and courſe in this Ceremony, it may be obſerved, that the *Sovereign* impowered his *Commiſſioners* ^{*} firſt to give the *Deputy* poſſeſſion of his *Principals Stall*, and after to receive the *Achievements*, and place them over it. Herewith it may be conſidered, That the *Achievements* are ſet up in memorial of the *Knight-Eleſt's* being installed a *Companion* of the *Order*; and 'tis incongruous in the rules of Honor, to have the ſign or memorial of an action, precede the action it ſelf.

Again, the *Statutes* of this moſt Noble *Order* expreſſy provide, That the *Knights Achievements* ſhall not be permitted to be hung up, until all the ^g *Duties* and ^{g E. 3. Stat. H. 5. Art. 22} *Fees* enjoined by the *Statutes*, to be paid the *Colledge*, be firſt diſcharged: ^{H. 8. Stat. Art. 24.} but 'tis certain there are no *Fees* due (and conſequently cannot be challenged) till the Ceremonies upon which they become due are compleatly finiſhed. And it is remembered as the Cuſtom in *Queen Elizabeth's* Reign, for the *Eleſt-Knights* ^h *Steward*, or ſome other of his *Servants*, to bring money with them to *Windſor*, ^{h Colleſ. A. V. W.} and

and there pay the Fees at the Chappel door, so soon as the Installation was dispatcht, to the end the Atchievements might immediately after be set up.

But to clear all doubts which may arise upon this point, it was in a Chapter ^{Lib. Carolin.} held at *Whitchall*, the 4. of February, an. 22. Car. 2. Ordained and Decreed,* That ^{p. 81.} not any of the Atchievements of an Elect-Knight shall be set up in the Chappel at *Windefor*, before he be Installed and the Fees of Installation paid.

It should seem that though anciently they did not set up the Elect-Knights Atchievements before he was installed, yet were they prepared and brought to ^{i E. 3. Stat.} *Windefor*, and disposed of or set before his stall: and in case of his not coming to ^{Art. 19.} receive Installation, then (being no otherwise placed) might be the easier removed without the *Chaire*, in as decent a manner as could be, that so the honor of * *Knighthood* might be preserved entire; nevertheless to be thenceforth ^{* Ord. Stat.} kept for || publick use, and benefit of the *Colledge*. ^{in Lib. N. p. 12.}

Where we find mention made in the *Annals* of any person employed to set up the Atchievements of a Knight, it is to be understood, that he was his *Proffor*, and installed on the behalf of that Knight whose Atchievements he so hung up. ^{k Lib. M. p. 64.} And the Lord * *Fitz Hugh*, who set up the Atchievements of the King of *Denmark* an. 9. H. 6. took also possession of that Kings Stall, for, and on his behalf, and in his name.

There is but a single instance (as we remember) where one man hung up a Knights Atchievements, and another was installed for him: and this hapned, an. 29. H. 6. where the Lord *Ryvers*, having been Elected to the Stall of the Lord *Hungerford*, the 4. of August that year, his *Sword* and *Helm* were hung up on the 8. of September next after, by *William* ^{i Ibid. p. 105.} *Bobden* his Elq; and *Guyen Herald*, ^{in Regill. Chart. f. 28 b.} and he installed the 30. of October following, by Sir *William Crafford* his *Proffor*: ^{p. 105. Ibid.} But this was contrary to the Law of the Order. ^{p. 12.}

Moreover, where the setting up of a Knights-Atchievements, is barely mentioned without taking notice of the Installation, it is to be understood, that such Knights Installation was also solemnized at that time: as in the case of the ^{q Lib. N. p. 49.} King of *Portugal*, concerning whom the *Annals* only note, that he had taken care to set up over his Stall his *Helm*, *Sword*, and *Banner*, and all things belonging thereunto, at the Feast celebrated at *Windefor*, an. 2. H. 6.

In what manner and order these Atchievements are fixed, will partly appear from the Statutes, viz. the *Helm* and *Crest*, are thereby appointed to be set over each Knight-Companion's Stall, and the *Sword* to hang directly underneath them. But the *Plate* is nailed to the Back of the Knights Stall. ^{i E. 3. Stat. Art. 9. vide Ord. Stat. in Bibl. Hattom. Art. 9.}

And here for a Corollary to this Chapter, let us add, That as the Statutes of two of the most noted Orders of *Knighthood* in Christendom, have in them the substance of those of the *Garter*, and being of later Institution, cannot but be acknowledged Copies from this Original; so we here think it requisite, to exhibit the manner of Investiture with the Habit and Ensigns of the Order of *St. Michael*, of our King *Edward the Sixth*, *Thomas Duke of Norfolk*, and *Robert Earl of Leicester*, to the end the Reader may also observe, that the order of our Ceremonies used at the Investiture of a Knight-Companion of the *Garter*, is also the Precedent to theirs of *St. Michael*.

The manner of receizing the Order of Saint Mychaell, by King Edward the Sixth.

^{MS. penes Archiep. Comit. Anglesy f. 87. a} First, the King's Majesty to be in his Privy Chamber, accompanied with his Noble-men, and all them of the Order of the *Garter*, to have their Collars about their necks, and the French King's Ambassador to enter with the Order, and so after his obeysance, the proposition to be given, and after the proposition done, the King's Majesty must put off his uppermost garment, the Ambassador shall invest him with the Robes of that, and afterwards, when the King is full invested, then all the Noblemen to proceed afore the King, and the Ambassadors which be in Commission to go afore the King, with the Noble-men, in order, to the Chappel, and after

after them the two French Lords, then the King of Arms, then the Sword, then the King's Majesty himself, then the Lord Chamberlain, and the Vice-Chamberlain to bear the train of the Robes, and in this order to proceed to the Chappel, and the King to go into his Stall, and the other into their Stalls, and at the Offering time the King's Majesty to Offer, and the greatest man about the King to give the King his Offring, and then the two other to Offer according to their Estates; when the King is in his Stall, and when all the Service is done, they to proceed in like order, as they came to the Chappel, to the place appointed for Dinner, and none to sit at the King's Board, but only the two Knights which be of the same Order of France; and after Dinner, the King's Majesty to put off his Robes, and to wear such Apparel as shall please his Majesty. Note, the King's Majesty when he passeth by the French King's Stall, is to make but only a beck with his head.

Add hereunto, That King Edward the Sixth observed the Anniversary of St. Michael, after the same manner and order as strangers were long before obliged to do that of St. George; and caused his ^{* Arms,} surrounded with the ^{* Colled. E.} Order of St. Michael to be set up in his Chappel at Hampton Court, each Michaelmas-day after his acceptation of that Order, during his life. ^{W. G.}

The order and manner of furnishing the Chappel at the Queen's Palace of Westminster, against Thursday the 24. of January 1565. Anno 8. Eliz. Reginæ, that the Duke of Norfolk and Earl of Leicester received the Order of Saint Michael there.

Item, the said Chappel, both before and behind the Stalls to the ground, was ^{MS. f. 24. b.} hanged with rich Arras, and the upper part from the Table of Administration, to the Stalls, hanged with like Stuff, which said Table was richly garnished with Plate and Jewels as followeth. First, to the wall was set in a row five gilt Basins, and afore them another row, and in the middle a gilt Cross between two great gilt Cups covered, garnished with Stone, a Ship or Ark likewise garnished, a Fountain of Mother of Pearl, and a pair of gilt Candlesticks; afore that another row, in the middle whereof was set a rich Basin and Ewer gilt railed over with Gold, between two great Mawdlyn Cups with Covers, two great Legwres, two Cruets, and a Pax all gilt, and over the said Table on the wall upon the Arras was fastned a fronte of Cloth of Silver, embroidered with Angels of Gold, and before the said Table to the ground, a front of the same suit.

The Dean's stall was garnished with Cushens, and a rich Cloth of Estate, whereon was set within a black Table, the Arms of the French King, within his own Order, under a Crown Imperial, the ground palee of 6. Blue, White and Orenge Tawney, without any Style.

Then on the same side over the 6. Stall on the Arras hanged a like Table, with the Arms within the Order, Crest and Supporters of the Deputy, Mounseur Remboillet (with a Cushen before him) the Table palee of six Ar. and Sa. the Arms, Sab. à Saulter Ar. the Crest a Lyon couchant Ar. collored Or, his Supporters two Woodmen with Clubs in their hands the great end downward, and under his Style written, viz. Messier Jaques D'augennes Seigneur de Remboillet Chivaler de L'ordre du Roy, & Capitaine des Cinquantes hommes des Armes de ses Ordonnances.

On the other side on the Arras over the eight Stall hanged a little Table palee of six Ar. and Gu. with the Arms within that Order of the Duke of Norfolk, under a Dukes Crown, with no Crest, nor Supporters, but his Style, De treshault, puissant & trefnoble Prince, Thomas Duc de Norfolk Conte Marishall D'angleterre, Seigneur de Mowbrey Segrave & de Brews, Chivaler de trefnoble Ordre de la Jarritier, & aussi du trefnoble Ordre de St. Michell.

On the third stall beneath on the same side, hanged a like Table Palee of six, Or & Az. with the Arms in that Order of the Earle of Leicester, under an Earls Crown, without Crest or Supporters, but his Style, Du trefnoble & puissant Seigneur Robert
Z z Conte

Conte de Leicester, Baron de Denbeigh, Chivaler du tres-noble &c. & Grand Escuyer de la Roynne nostre Souveraigne.

On the ground before the Duke and Earls Stall, stood two Chairs with Cushens for them to sit on, if they pleased, till they took their Stalls. And about the Stalls on the South side was set a Chair, Carpet, and Cushen, where the Embassador Leger sate all the Ceremony time, And below afore the Deputy's Stall was set a Form, covered with a Carpet for Monsieur Doze alias St. Michell, to sit on; And above that on either side were Tables and Forms, for the Gentlemen and Children of the Chappel.

The receiving of the said Order of St. Michael, Thursday the 24. of January, Anno 8. Reg. Elizab.

Feb. 25.

ITem, about 10. of the Clock the said day, the Embassador Leger, with Mounseigneur Remboilliet the French King's Deputy, together with the other Lords and Gentlemen accompanied with certain English Gentlemen, came to the Court at the Queen's Palace of Westminster, where, at the Gate, they were met by the Earl of Warwick and others, and conveyed up to the Queen's great Cloiset, whither after a while came the Duke of Norfolk and Earl of Leicester; And for that the said Duke and Deputy, had not till then seen either other, they then embraced each other, and then communed a while; And then the said Deputy left the same Lords there, and he with Mounseigneur Doze alias St. Michael, Mr. Garter and others, went down through the Chappel into the Vestry, where he shifted him, into the Robes and Habit of the Order of St. Michael as followeth.

First, Having on afore his Hose, Shoos, Girdle, and Scaberd of White Velvet, he there put on a Cote with Sleeves of Cloth of Silver, the edges laid with Gold Lace, and over that his Mantle of Cloth of Silver broad garded with Scallop shells, environed with Clouds and Rays of the Sun, and other Embroidery of Gold very richly, lined with White Taffeta, and on the right shoulder it was tyed, and turned up on the left shoulder, to put his Arm underneath, at, and over that on his right shoulder, lay his Hood of Crimson Velvet, spreading all over his back, the Tippet over his breast, the end put under the Hood, on the left shoulder, garded and embroidered like the Mantle; And over the order lay the Collar of Gold, made with Knots and Scallop shells, whereat hanged the Picture of St. Michael, garnished with Stones. And whiles the said Deputy was shifting him, the Duke and Earl came down into the Chappel, appareled as followeth, And first, the Duke with his shoes, Hose, Girdle, and Scabbard of White Velvet, his neather stockings of white silk knit, his Cote with the sleeves on of Cloth of Silver, the edges laid with Gold Lace, and in a short Gown of Russet Velvet, garded with the same, furred with Leopards, and faced with Lizards, the sleeves set with eighteen pair of Aglets of Gold, and a Cap of black Velvet with a Silver band; the Earl of Leicester likewise in all points appareled, but that his Gown was Russet Satten, garded with Velvet, furred and faced as the other, the sleeves set with thirty pair of Aglets of Gold, and in his Cap a White Feather, and so the Duke and Earl being come into the Chappel, stood beneath on the ground, before their Arms and Stalls, And then they there staying, proceeded forth of the Vestry into the Chappel two Noblemen, named Mounseigneur Cleremont and Mounseigneur de Luppe carrying the two Mantles and Hoods in their arms, after them Mounseigneur Doze alias Saint Michael King of Arms, carrying the two Collars lying on a Cushen upon his arms, without any Cote of Arms, but wearing about his neck, hanging at a Riband, at his breast the Arms of France, within the Order of Gold, After him followed the Deputy Remboilliet, doing reverence to his Majesty's Stall as he passed by, and there went up and stood with his back to the Communion Table, The Embassador then standing somewhat near him; Then St. Michael went and brought the Duke and Earl to the Deputy, afore whom his Secretary read the Commission, whereby he had authority from the King his Master, to make those two Noblemen Knights of the Order of St. Michael, which read out, on Cushens they two kneeled down, and the Deputy himself read unto them their

their Oaths, which ended they stood up, and then Doze alias St. Michell took off their two Gowns, and they two again kneeled down, and the two Lords, Mounſieur Cleremont and Mounſieur de Lupe, preſented the Mantles and Hoods to the Deputy, who put on the ſame. Firſt that on the Duke, and then the other on the Earl himſelf, reading unto them the ſignification thereof. And then the ſaid Deputy put on their Collers, likewiſe reading the ſignification thereof, which ſaid Mantles, Hoods, Collers, and Cotes were ſent them by the French King, and were in all points like to the Deputy's afore declared, and the Cotes were ſent them to their Chambers afore they came, where they put them on. Then the Deputy with St. Michell before him, and the other two following proceeded down, and after reverence done to the King's Stall, took theirs, the Deputy firſt, the Duke next, and the Earl laſt. Then the Prayers, as the Letany and Commemoration began, and at the Offring time, the Deputy came forth of his Stall, and ſtood in the middle of the Chappel, below, before his Stall, and made his obeysance both to the Table, and his Maſters Stall, and then proceeded with St. Michell before him, up to the Offring, making as he paſſed by a beck to either of his Companions (they fitting or ſtanding ſtill in their ſtalls) which Offring ended, he returned and took his Stall. Then the Duke of Nortolk came forth making obeysance to the French King's Stall and proceeded up with St. Michell before him, and Offered and returned to his Stall. And then the Earl of Leiceſter likewiſe offered. Then the Service being ended, with reverence to the King's ſtall, they proceeded forth of the Chappel, firſt St. Michell, then the Earl, then the Duke, laſt the Deputy, till they came into the Counſel Chamber, where they dyned, all three ſitting in three Chairs on one ſide of the Table, which Dinner ended, they went all three into the Privy Chamber to the Queen, and after a while came forth into the Counſel Chamber, where they put off their Cotes, Mantles, Hoods, and Collars, and put on their uſual Apparel; And then the ſaid Duke and Earl brought the Deputy to the Great Chamber Door, where they took their leave of him, and they returned into the Chamber of Prefence again, and ſo ended this Ceremony.

CHAP. XIII.

THE
 Installation
 OF A
 KNIGHT SUBJECT
 BY
 Proxie.

SECT. I.

The original cause of making Proxies.

^a E. 3. Stat.
 Art. 24.

THere was no liberty given at the *Institution* of the Order, to Instal a *Knight-Subject* by his *Proctor* or *Deputy*; but on the contrary in the *Founders Statutes*, was inserted this express Prohibition, ^a*That none of the Knights-Elect should be permitted to be Installed by Proxie, unless he were a Stranger.*

The Law in this particular continued unaltered, till the Reign of King Henry the Fifth, when John Duke of Bedford, the *Sovereign's Deputy* for holding the Feast of St. George at Windsor, an. 7. H. 5. and other the *Knights-Companions* then present, took it into consideration, That where a *Knight-Subject*, Elected into the Order, was at that time employed beyond the Seas, in service of the *Sovereign*, and likely to continue there upon that Employment, it was concluded, that the said Duke should make an address to the *Sovereign*, by Letter under the Seal of the Order (he being at that time engaged in the War with France) wherein, for the reasons set down in the Letter (which we have inserted in the

^b *Nom. XLIV.*
^c *Regist. Char-*
^{inc. f. 6. b.}

^b *Appendix*) he should petition him, to remove from the *Statutes*, all manner of scruple, and (in cases of like hazard and danger) to Ordain, ^c*That Knights-Subjects might be permitted to receive the privilege and favour of a compleat admittance, and full possession of their stalls and rights, by their Deputies or Proctors, no less than Strangers; notwithstanding the clause in the Statutes to the contrary.*

^d *Lib. 1. p. 59.*
^{69. 52.}

It likewise appears from that Letter, as also from the ^d*Black Book* of the Order, that

that Sir John Grey, and the Lord Bourchier had been installed at the foresaid Feast by their several Proxies, which the Sovereign's Deputy permitted out of great tenderness to their persons, lest by an over punctual and too rigid an observance of the Statutes in this point, the foresaid Knights, through the misfortunes and casualties of War, whereunto they were daily exposed, should be snatched away by a sudden death, and so want the desired suffrages of those Masses, ordained to be sung for a defunct Knight; as had been seen in the case of divers other, prevented thereof by over much delay.

Nevertheless, by that more ample and large Copy of the foresaid Letter, recorded in the *Registrum Chartaceum* (which we think necessary also to add in the Appendix) it appears, that the Sovereign, and Knights-Companions remaining at that time with him in France, had before (upon the Duke of Bedford's request) signified their approbation of installation by Proxie; by the favour of which Certificate, and virtue of this consent (though as yet not formed into a Decree) Sir John Grey, and Sir John Robessart were installed upon their Letters missive, wherein they only named their Proctors. In this Letter it also appears, that the Lord Bourchier's Proctor (made so by a deprecatory Letter sent over to his Deputy from the Countess of Stafford) was only promised to be installed, in regard there was no express caution given in the Statutes, concerning the sufficiency of this sort of Proxie.

But to clear all doubts, which for the future might arise, it was among other things Decreed, an. 9. H. 5. That where any Elect-Knight was actually in the Sovereign's Wars, or otherwise employed abroad upon the Sovereign's affairs, he should possess and enjoy the privilege of a Stranger in this particular, namely, to be admitted to his Stall by a legal Proxie; who should do and perform all things enjoined to the Proxie of a Stranger. Which Decree we find added to King Henry the Fifth's Statutes.

Hereupon, it was in a short time after enjoined the Elect-Knight (upon notice of his Election) to take care that his Proctor should be appointed to take possession of his Stall with all possible speed; to the end he might enjoy the rights and privileges of a Founder; for such an obligation we find laid upon Sir John Fastolf, who at the reception of the Garter, was in France, and there employed in the Sovereign's service.

But King Henry the Eighth, besides his confirmation of this Decree, for allowance of a Proxie in the foresaid two Cases, further enlarged it, to such as the Sovereign should either command or permit by License, to be installed by Proxie, which is to be understood of Knights-Elect within the Kingdom, no less than those beyond Sea. By virtue of which clause, the Earl of Dorset, being sick, an. 1. Car. 1. obtained the Sovereign's License, to be installed by his Deputy Sir Richard Young, who accordingly took possession of the Stall appointed for him.

e Nam. XLV.

f Registr. Chart. fol. 6. b.

g Lib. N. p. 67. Prope finem.

h Art. 20.

i Registr. Chart. f. 14. b.

l Art. 26.

m Lib. R. p. 28. n Ibid. p. 29. o vide MS. penes Edw. Fauconbridge gen.

SECT. II.

Letters of Procuration.

WE noted before, out of the *Registrum Chartaceum*, that Sir John Robessart, Elected into the Order by King Henry the Fifth, was installed by virtue of his Letter missive, sent to (Sir Thomas Barr) his Proxie. But the same Register in another place, calls it a sufficient Procuration under his Seal of Arms, enabling him to do and perform in his name, all things which might appertain to the observance and Ceremony of his Installation.

The Copy of this Instrument we have not met with, but that other Letter missive which Sir John Grey directed to Sir John Lisle, to take the possession of his Stall, and by virtue of which he was installed, is transferred to the

Appendix.

^d Num. XLVI. ^d Appendix. Nor have we seen the before mentioned Deprecatory Letter, sent over from the Countess of *Stafford*, for the Installation of *Hugh Stafford* Lord *Tourchier*, but it seems to have been esteemed so sufficient and authentick, as to obtain for his substitute the title of *Proctor*.

^e Lib. N. p. 69. ^e Regist. ^e Chartac. f. 6. b. This example became a President to the now Countess of *Bristol*, whose Lord having been Elected a *Knight-Companion* of this Order, by the present *Sovereign*, and being absent on an Embassy when the Grand Feast of *St. George* happily celebrated, *an. 12. Car. 2.* was drawing on, she wrote a Letter to Sir *Richard Fanshawe* Knight and Baronet, to desire him to appear and act at that following Solemnity, in quality of her Lord's *Proxie*.

And because there grew some doubt from the Lord *Bourchier's* Case, of the sufficiency of such a Nomination, the request of the said Countess was thought requisite to be strengthened by the *Sovereign's* Authority and a Nomination likewise, which being obtained was ratified under the Seal of the Order.

And doubtless in the case of a *Knight-Subject*, the *Sovereign* may if he please, nominate and appoint a *Proxie* for Installation, where the *Elected-Knights* hath not done it himself; for here all those considerations of grand respect, form of the Oath, &c. always afforded to *Strangers* have no place; and this is evident from the ^h *Sovereign's* Letters of Summons, to the *Commissioners* nominated for Installation of the Lord ⁱ *Grey*, *an. 4. & 5. Ph. & M.* who at that time was Prisoner in *France*; and whose Deputy, ^k Sir *Humphry Radcliff* Knight is therein mentioned to have been appointed by the *Sovereign* her self.

The first President of *Letters of Procuration* or *Deputation*, drawn into a solemn form, is that made by Sir *William Philipp*, whereby he (having obtained the *Sovereign's* License) impowers two Knights, namely Sir *Andrew Butreley*, and Sir *John Henington*, or either of them (as their occasions would permit) to supply his place, and take possession of that Stall which should be assigned him, in the *Choir* at *Windeſor*.

This *Procuration* and the time of Sir *William Philipp's* Installation by virtue thereof, is entered in the ^m *Black Book* of the Order, under the eighth year of King *Henry* the Fifth, but certainly misplaced; for though the year of our Lord, or of the *Sovereign's* Reign be wanting in the date of the Instrument, yet is there added a note remarkable enough; to wit, that it was made while the *Sovereign* lay in Siege before *Roan* in *France*, which as our *Chronicles* report was begun the ⁿ 13. of *October an. 5. H. 5.* and taken the 19. of *January* following, so that by this account, the *Procuration* was sealed the 11. of *November, an. 5. H. 5.* and ought to have been placed in the *Annals* under that year.

Besides this, the *Registrum Chartaceum* expressly saith, That Sir *William Philipp* was Installed the same day with Sir *John Robessart* (and so it is also exprest in the *Duke of Bedford's* before mentioned Letter) which Solemnity is there entered as held on the 17. of *February*, and though the year be not set down (and all the former part of this Register wanting) yet in the course thereof, it may be observed, that the following year is the 7. of *H. 5.* Add to all this, that the *Black Book* it self, under that seventh year, ranks both Sir *John Robessart*, and Sir *William Philipp*, for *Knights-Companions* among the other *Knights* Installed before that year, and notes them to be then attending upon the *Sovereign* in *Normandy*; whence it may be collected, that Sir *William Philipp* was installed, if not in the 5. yet in the 6. year of King *Henry* the Fifth at the farthest. And that this *Procuration* made by Sir *William Philipp* became a President in that Age, appears from the Deputation given by Sir *John Fastolf* to Sir *Henry Inghouse*, and Sir *William Breton*, under his Hand and Seal of Arms, which is little different from Sir *William Philipp's* *Procuration*, in *French*, unless in the alteration of the Persons Names.

SECT. III.

Qualifications of a Proxie.

AS touching the Qualifications of a Proctor nominated by a Knight-Subject, they are the same with those wherewith the Proxie of a Stranger is to be endowed, and of which we shall discourse *anon: that permissive clause in the ^a Statutes affording the same favour to a Knight-Subject, as to Strangers, and is the ground whence he derives like Priviledges. <sup>* Cap. 16.
a E. 3. Stat.
Art. 20.</sup>

We shall only add here, that not any Deputy or Proxy for a Knight-Subject, hath at any time been admitted to be Installed for an Elect-Knight, under the degree of a Knight; it being thought fit (as in other essentials and circumstances, so especially and chiefly in this) that a Knight-Subject should exactly observe the Rule, which the statutes have imposed on a Stranger. And in this respect, the case is very observable, where Sir ^b William Lyffe (though one of the Alms-Knights of Windsor, yet in Degree a Knight) was not refused but allowed Proctor to Sir John Grey, an. 7. H. 5. <sup>b Lib. N. p. 59.
videlicet Regist.
Chartac fol. 6.</sup>

It appears by the Characters given to the Proctors nominated by Sir William Philipp, and Sir John Fastolf, that the Qualifications required in a Proctor (viz. to be (1.) a sufficient Proctor, of (2.) unblamable Reputation, and at least (3.) a Knight) were to be found in them: for when the Sovereign was induced (by reason that the Employments of Sir William Philipp's in his service, detained him beyond Sea) to give him leave to nominate his Proctor, it may be observed, that this License was not granted, but under this proviso, *That his Procurator should be executed by a Knight at least in degree, ennobled with Arms, and of an honest and untainted reputation.* And when the said Sir William did make choice of and depute his Proctors, they were Knights, and such and so nobly qualified, ^c That there was nothing wanting in them which belonged to true valiant Knights: and the like Character is bestowed upon those two Knights nominated by Sir John Fastolf, to take the possession of his Stall; to wit, ^c That in them there could be found no defect of ought that should belong to magnanimous and courageous Knights. <sup>c Regist. Char.
tac. fol. 5 b. &
Lib. N. p. 62.
Lib. N. p. 62.
c Regist. Char.
tac. f. 14. b.</sup>

SECT. IV.

Preparations for Installation.

THE day for Installation of a Knight-Subject by Proxie, being by the Sovereign appointed, there are to be provided for him, and got ready against the Solemnity, these things following.

First, a Commission for Installation is to be drawn up, and by the Chancellor of the Order presented to the Sovereign for his Sign manual; to which is after affixt the great Seal of the Order. The substance of the ancient Commissions may be found in ^b that directed to Sir John Robessart, an. 5. H. 6. to accept of Sir Henry Inghouffe, one of the two Knights which Sir John Fastolf had constituted for his Proxie; himself being at that season employed in the Wars of France; the powers granted by the Sovereign to the said Sir John Robessart were these. <sup>1. Commissions for Installation.
b Appendix;
c Num. LL.</sup>

1. To conduct Sir Henry Inghouffe to Windsor Castle.
2. To put him in possession (as from the Sovereign) of the Stall assigned to his Principal.
3. To

3. To invest him with all the Benefits, Honors, Prerogatives, Franchises, and Liberties thereunto appertaining.
4. To receive his Mantle, Helm, and Sword; and set them up where the Earl of Westmerland's stood, in whose room he was Elected.
5. To add thereunto all usual Solemnities.
6. Lastly, this Commission contained an Injunction to all the Knights-Companions, to suffer and permit the said Sir John Fastolf, fully and peaceably to possess the said Stall, Places, Honors, Franchises, Prerogatives, and Liberties, in the same manner as the Statutes import, without any contradiction or scruple.

^d Appendix,
^e Num. LII.

There is another Precedent almost as ancient in a ^d Commission granted to the Earl of Essex, the Lords Berners, and Wenlock, for Installation of the Earl of Worcester, and other Elect-Knights by their Proxies, an. 2. E. 4. in regard they for the present were, and for some time would be, so far employed about the Sovereign's Person, and in his Service, that they could not receive a Personal Installation: but the Commissioners Authority in this is comprised in fewer particulars than the former, namely to admit, receive, and establish with all convenient speed, the Elect-Knights by their Proctors into their Stalls at Windsor, in the same manner, as if one, and all of them had been present in their own persons, any Ordinance or Statute to the contrary notwithstanding.

^f Num. LIII.
2. Letters of
notice to the
Commissioners

Of later times the Commissions granted upon such occasions, differ from those made for the Personal Installations of the Knights themselves, only by premising the cause of their Principals absence, and the Employment or Negotiation he is then engaged in, and then authorising the Commissioners to admit the Proxie, into his Stall; a Precedent of which kind is added in the ^f Appendix to the former.

^g Num. LIV.
3. And for Removal of
Stalls, &c.

In the next place, where the Installation by Proxie is performed by two or more Commissioners; the Sovereign directs Letters to each of them, giving notice of the intended Solemnity, and requiring them to make their repair to his Castle of Windsor, by a certain day therein prefixt, to the end the Proxie may proceed, to take possession of his Principal's Stall. Of such a Letter see also a form in the ^g Appendix.

ⁱ Num. L.
^k

And as there is, upon admission of an Elect-Knight, installed by Proxie, the same ground for removal of Stalls in the Chaire, as for one who receives a Personal Installation; and in like cases: So is it usual to issue out the like Warrants from the Sovereign to Garter, some time before the Solemnity, to remove the Achievements and Plates, and place them in the order as his Warrant directs.

4. Mantle of
the Order.
1 E. 3. Stat.
H. 5. Art. 20
H. 8. Stat.
Art. 21.
5. Achievements.

Anciently the Stall for the Elect-Knight was assigned in the body of the Commission, which issueth out for his Installation; as it appears in the before mentioned Commission for admitting Sir Henry Inghouse, Proctor to Sir John Fastolf, to whom the Stall which the Earl of Westmerland held, while living, was there by appointed for him.

m Locis supra
citat.
6. Plate of
Arms.

The rest of the particulars to be prepared against the day of Installation, are provided at the Knight's own charge; and they are first, his Mantle of the Order, which, according to the injunction of the ^l Statutes, the Proctor is obliged to bring along with him to Windsor, at the day appointed for Installation.

7. Velvet Cushion.

Garter is also to be consulted with, as to the preparing the Elect-Knight's Achievements; namely, his Helm, Crest, Mantlings, Sword, and Banner of Arms; and to bring these to Windsor, is likewise part of the duty assigned to the Proctor by the ^m Statutes.

8. And Lodging
Scutcheons.

Besides these Achievements, the Proxie is to provide a Plate of Brass gilt, whereon is to be engraved the Arms, Crest, and Supporters, enamelled in their proper Colours, together with the Stile of the Elect-Knight: and this to be fixt upon the back of his Stall.

A Velvet Cushion also for Garter to bear the Mantle on when the Proctor proceeds to the Chaire.

Lastly, A dozen or more of Lodging Scutcheons to set up at the Inns by the way, and other places in Windsor.

SECT. V.

Proceeding to the Chapter-house.

THE next thing to be considered of, is the *Proceeding to the Chapter-house*, and therein chiefly the *Proxie's* place; for it will be needless here, to speak of his journey to *Windeſor Caſtle*, his arrival there, or ordering of this Proceeding, in relation to thoſe Degrees whereof it is compoſed; ſince what hath been already ſaid touching theſe particulars, and other circumſtances, having reference to the Perſonal Installation of an *Elect-Knight*, may be made applicable to a *Proxie*, or elſe ſuch part of them as he ſhall judge moſt conducing to the honor of his Principal.

The place therefore belonging to the *Proxie* of a *Knight-Subject* in this Proceeding, is that immediately after the *Provincial Kings of Arms*, becauſe as yet he hath not taken poſſeſſion of his *Principal's* Stall, which gives him a place in his return according to its dignity; and in this place did the *Proctors* of the Marqueſs (ſince Duke) of *Newcaſtle*, and Earl of *Briſtol*, proceed (bare-headed) to the Chapter-houſe, *an. 13. Car. 2.*

And though this be the *Proxie's* uſual place, in this Proceeding, yet Sir *Henry Sidney*, Proctor to the Earl of *Warwick*, *an. 5. Eliz.* (and 'tis the only inſtance we have met with) proceeded immediately before the *Alms-Knights*; the order of which Proceeding was as followeth.

Fiſt, Gentlemen Attendants.

MS. fol. penes
W.D.N.f.11.

Knights.

Sir Henry Sidney Proctor.

Alms-Knights.

Verger.

Purſuivants.

Heralds.

Provincial Kings.

E. of Northumberland, a Knight-Elect.

Viſc. Mountague

Lord Loughborow

} Aſſiſtants.

Black-Rod.

Reſiſter.

Garter.

Duke of Norfolk Lord Lieutenant.

Laſtly, the *Proxie* (as in the caſe of an *Elect-Knight*) paſſeth into the Eaſt Iſle behind the high Altar, as ſoon as he arriveth within St. George's Chappel (while the *Sovereign*, or his *Lieutenant*, or *Commiſſioners* proceed into the Chapter-houſe) and there repoſeth himſelf, till he be ſent for in; for ſo did the foreſaid Proctors to the ſaid Marqueſs of *Newcaſtle*, and Earl of *Briſtol*. But if the *Proxie* paſs not in the Proceeding, he then goes privately to this place before the Proceeding ſets forward.

MS. in Offic.
Armor. [H. 2.]
fol. 8, b.

SECT. VI.

Transactions in it.

AFTER the Chapter is opened, the firſt thing done, is for a Garter to preſent the *Commiſſion* or *Commiſſions*, which he carried in the Proceeding thither, A a a

1. Reading the
Commiſſion.
a MS. in Bibl.
afwel Patton.

b MS. penes W.D.N. f. 11.
c Coll. R. C. Cl. f. 32. vi.
d MS. f. 20.
e Scl. 5.

2. Receiving the Proxie.
e Ex. ed. MS. penes W.D.N. l. 10. cit. vide etiam Coll. R. C. Cl. fol. procl.
f MS. penes W.D. loco ante cit.
g Ibid. f. 17. b.

3. Delivery of the Mantle.

k E. 3. Stat. Art. 20.
l 3 Coll. R. C. Cl. f. 32.
m 2 C. Cl. f. 32.

n E. 3. Stat. Art. 20. H. 8. Stat. Art. 21.
o MS. penes P. W. D. N. f. 11. b.

aswel that for^b *Lieutenancy* (in case a *Lieutenant* then held the *Feast*) as of^c *Installation* (for admitting a *Proxie*) the order of which, and by whom read, is noted before in the^d precedent *Chapter*.

The *Letters of Procuracion* or *Deputation* are in the next place read, after which, the *Proxie* is sent for into the *Chapter-house* by *Garter*, who conducts him to the door, and there the *Commissioners* (or^e *Assistants*, or *Knights-Companions*) receive him: But an. 5. Eliz. Sir Henry Sidney exhibited his^f *Deputation* after he was called in: Or sometimes the *Proxie* produceth his *Deputation* before the *Proceeding* pass to the *Chapter-house*, for so did^g Sir George Howard, Deputy to the Earl of Bedford, an. 6. Eliz. and in such case, there is no need of admitting the *Proxie* into the *Chapter-house*, but that he may rest without, till the *Sovereign* (his *Lieutenant*, or *Commissioners*) are past into the *Chaire*, and he sent for in thither; at which time the *Mantle* was wont to be laid upon his right arm, at the *Chapter-house* door, by the *Knights-Companions* appointed to introduce him.

Heretofore, so soon as the *Proxie* was admitted into the *Chapter-house*, and the *Letters of Procuracion* read, the *Mantle* of his *Principal* was usually laid upon his^k right arm by the *Sovereign's Lieutenant* (or *Commissioners*) and being so laid, part of it was also^l spread upon the *Proxies* shoulders, the^m *Scutcheon* of St. George lying uppermost, and the *Cordons* laid fair to be seen; and in this manner he bore it in the *Proceeding* to the Stall of his *Principal*, where he held it tillⁿ Service was ended. But now, the present *Sovereign* hath directed the *Mantle* to be born upon the left arm.

But an. 5. Eliz. the Earl of Warwick's *Proffor* had the *Mantle* born before him into the *Chaire* by^o *Garter*, in the same manner as is used to *Knights* Personally Installed, and not delivered him, till he had^p taken the *Oath*; and at the delivery thereof the^q words of *Admonition* were pronounced by the *Register* of the Order. So was it observed to the *Proxies* of the Duke of Newcastle, and Earl of Bristol, an. 13. Car. 2.

SECT. VII.

Proceeding to the Chaire.

u H. 8. Stat. Art. 21. vide MS. penes W.D.N. f. 11. b. & MS. f. 20. & l. 10. R. p. 19.
w Chap. 12. Scl. 6.
x MS. f. 20.

THE *Proxie* proceeds from the *Chapter-house* door, between the *Sovereign's Commissioners* (*Assistants*, or *Knights-Companions*): Concerning the order of this *Proceeding*, so much is spoken^w before, that we shall need to add but one Example, and that is an. 6. Eliz.

* Verger.
Alms-Knights.
Officers of Arms.
Officers of the Order.

Lord Hunston. Proffor to the Lord Clynton.
Earl of Bedford.

SECT. VIII.

Ceremonies performed there.

1. Taking the Oath.
a MS. fol. 20.

THE *Proceeding* having entred the *Chaire* the *Commissioners* (*Knights-Assistants*, or *Knights-Companions*) conduct the *Proxie* into the^a lower Stalls

Stalls directly under the Stall designed for his *Principal*, where the ^b *Register* of ^b *Ibid. f. 20. b.* the *Order* reads the words of the *Oath*, while the *Proxie* (laying his hand upon ^c *MS. penes* the Book) ^d repeats them after him, and in confirmation thereof ^e *W. D. N.* kisseth the ^e *fol. 17. b.* Book; and this *Oath* his ^f *Lib. N. p. 62.* *Deputation* impowers him to take, in the ^g *sub finem,* ^h *Ibid.* name and behalf of his *Principal*.

The form of the *Proctor's Oath* hath no difference from the *Oath* which an *Elest-Knight* himself takes; the substance of the ancient *Oath* is ⁱ *Chap. 12.* already noted ⁱ *Stat. 7.* down; and that taken of later times may be seen in the ⁱ *Num. LV.* *Appendix*. Nevertheless some variation and enlargement (though the same in effect with the ancient *Oath*) do we observe to be in that Form, which Sir ^k *Num. LVI.* Thomas Barr (*Proctor* to Sir ^k *Reg. Chartac.* John Robessart) took, viz. ^l *fol. 5.* Faithfully to keep and observe all the Articles of the ^l *Stat. 5.* Statutes whatsoever, in all things appertaining thereunto, according to the form and ^l *Stat. 5.* efficacy of the said Statutes, and to the utmost of his power.

The *Oath* being taken in this solemn manner, the *Proctor* is led up into the ^{2.} *Giving possession of the Stall.* Stall of his *Principal*, where both the *Knights* who conducted him into the *Choir*, first take the *Mantle* and lay it on his left (though formerly on his right) arm, next laying their hands upon him, in the ^m *E. 3. Stat.* Name of his Lord and Master (from ^m *Art. 20. H. 8.* whom he received his *Deputation*) set him down therein: and so the Ceremony ⁿ *Stat. Art. 21.* of *Installation* being fully finished, the *Service* of the Church begins.

If the *Installation* be performed in the morning, then there is an *Offring* of ^{3.} *Offring at the Altar.* Gold and Silver; at which time the *Proxie* in his turn comes down from his *Principal's Stall*, and stands before it, and when the *sovereign* hath offered (or the *Licutenant* for him, and for himself, or otherwise the *Commissioners*) as also the rest of the *Knights-Companions* present, in their due order, then the *Proxie's* ⁿ *MS. in Offic.* turn coming (being joined with the *Knight* sitting in the opposite Stall to that ⁿ *Arm r. [H. 2.]* of his *Principal*; if he be present at this Solemnity, and having two *Officers* of ⁿ *f. 1. 8. 5.* Arms before them) he proceedeth to the high *Altar*, and there offereth both Gold and Silver; and afterwards returns and takes his Stall in the same order as the *Knights-Companions* do. In this manner ^o *MS. penes W. D. N. f. 12. b.* an. 5. Eliz. the ^o *MS. fol. 20. b.* Earl of Warwick's ^o *MS. fol. 20. b.* *Proxie*, joining himself with the Earl of Northumberland (installed at the same time) jointly proceeded to the *Offring*, with *Richmond* and *Lancaster Heralds* before them. The like did the *Proctor* to the ^p *MS. fol. 20. b.* Earl of Bedford, and offered together with the Lord *Hunsdon*, an. 6. Eliz.

As soon as the Ceremony of the *Offring* is finished, the *Service* of the Church proceeds, which being ended, the *Proceeding* returns in the same order it came to the ^q *MS. fol. 21.* *Chapter-house*, except that now the *Proxie* takes his place, according to the dignity of the Stall, of which he lately took possession for his *Principal*: But in regard the *Statutes* do expressly declare, ^r *E. 3. Stat.* That after the *Proxie* hath been ^r *Art. 20. H. 8.* admitted to the Stall of his *Principal*, he shall neither wear the *Mantle*, nor have ^r *Stat. Art. 21.* any *Voice* in *Chapter*, nor presume to enter there in the absence of him that sent him; therefore hath it been the common practice to take off the *Mantle* from his arm, at the *Chapter-house door*; in his return from the *Choir*, so that at this place the bearing thereof hath usually terminated, having for the most part been delivered to the ^s *MS. prad. loco cit.* *Verger* of the *Chappel* (though sometimes to the ^s *Ex cod. MS.* *Sexton*, at ^s *penes W. D. N.* other times to the ^s *f. 11. b.* *Garter*, so also to the ^s *Ibid. f. 13. b.* *Black-Rod*) who hath taken it from off ^s *w Colles. R.* the *Proxie's* arm, and carried it into the *Chapter-house*; this done, the *Proctor* retires privately out of the *Proceeding* to his Lodgings.

Nevertheless it appears (but by what indulgence is not recorded) that though ^t *MS. pen. W. D. N. f. 12.* *Garter* took from Sir Henry Sidney, an. 5. Eliz. the *Mantle* at the *Chapter-house door*, on the Evening as he returned from taking possession of his *Principal's Stall*, yet the next morning he ^x *Lib. C. p. 43.* rode in the *Proceeding* to the *Chappel* (the celebration of ^x *St. George's Feast* continuing) with the *Mantle* on his right arm, on the left hand of the Earl of Northumberland (the place of his *Principal*) and, having entred the *Choir*, took his *Principal's Stall*; afterwards he bore the *Mantle* in the *grand y* *Procession*, at the *Offring* of *Money*, and during divine *service*; and from the *Chappel* proceeded in the foresaid place up to the *Castle* to Dinner.

In the Afternoon of the said Feast-day he again ^y *Ex cod.* rode on horse-back in the ^y *MS. penes* *Proceeding* to the *Chapter-house door*, (but ^y *W. D. N. f. 13.* there the *Mantle* was taken from

him and laid within upon the Table, whilst he retired into the East Isle of the Chappel) and at the rising of the Chapter was it again delivered to him, whence he proceeded in his Principal's place to the second Vespers.

The next morning after the Lieutenant and his Assistants had ended the Chapter, the ^b Mantle was again laid on his arm, and in that manner he pass'd into the Choir, where he entred the Stall of his Principal, and afterwards ^c Offred in the same order he did on the Feast day; and when the morning Service was finished, the Lieutenant and Assistants returned to the Chapter-house door, where they put off their Mantles, and at the same place the Sexton of the Colledge received the Mantle from him.

^b & ^c Exord. MS. ter, the ^b Mantle was again laid on his arm, and in that manner he pass'd into the Choir, where he entred the Stall of his Principal, and afterwards ^c Offred in the same order he did on the Feast day; and when the morning Service was finished, the Lieutenant and Assistants returned to the Chapter-house door, where they put off their Mantles, and at the same place the Sexton of the Colledge received the Mantle from him.

SECT. IX.

The Grand Dinner.

^d AT Dinner the Proxie sits with the Lieutenant (or Commissioners) and takes the place where his Principal should sit if he were present; and this was so observed at the Installation of the Earl of Warwick, *an. 5. Eliz.* ^d for the Sovereign's Lieutenant sate on the left hand of the Cloth of State, his two Assistants, the Earl of Northumberland (newly installed) and the said Earl of Warwick's Proxie sate on the same side.

The *stile* of the Knight, who is installed by Proxie, is proclaimed in French or English, at the usual time, and in his due place, together with the other Stiles that then ought to be proclaimed, as we find it observed *an. 25. H. 8.* at the ^f *Lib.N.p.264.* Installations of the Earls of *Beaumont* and *Newblanke* by their Proctors (for they were Knights-Subjects, though not to the Sovereign, and therefore not improper to be made use of, for an instance in this case) in the order following.

^{MS. in Offic.}
^{Armour. [L. 1.]}
^{fol. 46.}

Du noble & puissant Seigneur le Comte d'Essex, & de Enseigneur de Bourchir, & de Loueyn, Lieutenant, & Depute de la Feste Sainte George, Chevalier, Frere & Compaignon de la tres-noble Ordre de la Jartier.

Du tres-noble & puissant Seigneur la Conte de Beaumont, Seigneur de Montmorency, premier Baron, grand Maistre & Marechall de Fraunce, Baron de Montberon, & sere-----tertenois Seigner de Lyssleadam, de Compiegne, de Chantelly & de Escouen, Gouverneur & Lieutenant General pour le Roy tres-cristien au Paris de Longuedoe, Chevalier frere & Compaignon de la tres-noble Ordre de la Jartier.

Du tres-noble puissant Seigneur le Conte de Neublance, Seigneur de Beron, Barou d'Aspremont, Buransay, Beaumont, Paygin, Mirebeau, & de Fonteyne François, Admirall de France, Gouverneur & Lieutenant Generall pour le Roy tres-cristien, en la Duché de Bourgoigne, Chevalier, Frere & Compaignon de la tres-noble Ordre de la Jartier.

And when the forementioned Earl of Warwick was installed by Proxie, the order was thus.

^{MS. penes W.}
^{D.N. f. 12.}

Du tres-hault puissant, & tres-noble Prince, Thomas Duc de Norfolk, Conte Marshall d'Angleterre, seigneur Mowbray, Segrave, & de Brews, Chivalier du tres-noble Ordre de la Jartier, & Lieutenant de ceste noble Feste de Saint George.

Du tres-noble & puissant Seigneur Thomas Conte de Northumberland, & Baron de Percy, Chevalier de tres-noble Ordre de la Jartier.

Du tres-noble, & puissant Seigneur Ambrose Conte de Warwick, Baron de Lisle, Chevalier, &c. Maistre de L'artillerie de la Roynne nostre Souveraine, & Lieutenant pour sa Majestie, au pais de Normandie, & Defendeur de la Ville François de grace.

To conclude, the *Proctor* is to take care that the *Atchievements* and *Plate* of his *Principal* be set up in the *Chappel* of *St. George*, so soon as the *Installation* is compleated, for he is obliged to offer and present them to that end, according to custom, which doth further appear, not only out of the ancient Letters of *Procuracion*, but also by *Commissions* for *Installation*, which appoint, ^{g Lib. N. p. 62. vide Reg. Chartac. f. 5. b. & f. 14. b. h Reg. Chartac. f. 15.} That the *Sovereign's Deputy* should receive from the *Proctor* his *Principal's Helm* and *Sword* (for we find no mention of the *Banner* till afterwards) and place them over his *Stall*.

CHAP. XIV.

THE Signification of Election TO Strangers.

SECT. I.

Within what time, and in what manner Certificate is made of their Election.

FOrasmuch as *Strangers Elect* are for the most part *Emperors*, *Kings*, or *Sovereign Princes*; the necessity of whose affairs, obliged them to abide in their own *Dominions*, and seldom or rarely permitted them, to receive a *Personal Installation* in the *Colledge* of the *Order*; therefore several *Priviledges* were thought fit, by the wisdom of the *Founder* of this most Noble *Order*, to be offered and established in their favour: as principally the giving them honorable notice of their *Elections*, allowing convenient

venient time of consideration for *Acceptance*, affording to them Investiture in their own *Countries*, and permitting their *Installations* to be performed at *Windsor* by *Substitutes*, or *Deputies*.

a (E. 3. Stat.
b Art. 20.
c H. 5. Stat.
Art. 20.

It was therefore by the *Statutes* of the *Institution* Ordained, ^aThat when any such were chosen into the Order, they should be certified of their Elections by the Sovereign; and besides, that at his charge, the ^bGarter should be sent over to them, with the *Mantle* and *Statutes* of the Order, sealed with the *Common seal*. And this to be done with all convenient speed, so ^cthat they might have notice thereof at least within four months, from the time of Election, to the end they might advise and determine with themselves (from consideration had of the tenor of the *Statutes*) whether they would receive, or refuse, the honor of this most Noble Order.

In pursuance of these directions, it became customary for the Sovereign, together with his *letters* to the *Elect* Stranger, giving signification of his Election, to send (and that by way of solemn Embassy) the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the Order, as also a *Book* of the *Statutes*; and in case the Election were accepted, then the *Elect* Stranger might receive *Investiture*, before the return of the persons by whom the *Habit* was sent.

e N. Rittersum.
in Tab. Reg.
Portugale. edit.
Tabing. an.
1658.
f 5 Lib. N.
g 2 pag. 91.

And this is manifest from the direction given, upon the Election of *Edward* King of *Portugal* (^eSon of King *John* and of the Lady *Philippa*, Daughter to *John* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaster*) at the Feast of *St. George* celebrated at *Windsor* the 8. day of *May* an. 13. H. 6. to wit, ^fThat because the Election then but newly transacted, was not known to the said King, it seemed good to the Chapter, ^gthat he should be speedily certified thereof: And that *Garter* King of Arms should be sent over to him to signify his Election; and upon his acceptance thereof to present him with the *Garter* and *Habit* of the Order, as also with the *Book* of *Statutes*; which he was likewise appointed to carry over with him.

i Lib. N. p. 136.

And it may be presumed, that a *Certificate* of Election was sent to the Duke of *Urbino*, within the time limited by the *statutes*; since it appears, that (being ⁱElected the 18. of *August* an. 14. E. 4.) all things were fitted for his *Installation* against the following *St. George's* Feast, at which he was *Installed*. And upon the Election of the King of *Portugal*, an. 22. E. 4. the *Register* observes, that notice was sent to him of his Election, ^kwithin the appointed time.

k Ibid. p. 149.

l Appendix,
Num. LVIII.

The purport of which *Letters* certifying a Stranger's Election, may be understood and known from ^lthat which King *Edward* the Sixth sent to the French King *Henry* the Second, whereby (briefly) for his eminent Nobleness and Virtues, and to augment and improve the brotherly amity and fair correspondency between them, He had in Chapter, with the consent of the *Knights-Companions*, Chosen and Elected him into the number of the Society of the *Garter*, and therefore thought good to acquaint him therewith; desiring also the said King to give him and the Society the honor of consenting to and accepting of the Election; forasmuch as he should thereby perform that which would be very acceptable and grateful to him, as he should more fully understand by the *Ambassadors* who were preparing for their journey, to *Invest* him with the *Habit*.

m Cdp. 4.

The right of bearing these *Letters* signifying Election, and returning the Stranger's answer, belongs to *Garter*; being confirmed to him by the ⁿ*Constitutions* appertaining to his Office.

n H. 8. Stat.
Art. 21.

We see before, that the *Certificate* of Election was ordained to be dispatcht within four months, from the time of Election. Nevertheless to afford the Sovereign more liberty, where the nature of the Affair required it; King *Henry* the Eighth added this necessary Clause to the foresaid Article. That where the Sovereign had any great or high impediment, He ⁿshould defer certifying the Election, till a more opportune or convenient time.

o Lib. N. p. 117.
p 8 bid. pag.
q 118.

But in this particular we observe, that like liberty had been taken, in times preceeding, though no provision by *Statute* was made for it before; as namely, by King *Henry* the Sixth, in the case of *Frederick* the Third, Emperor of *Germany*, who having been Elected an. 25. of the said King, had not *Letters* sent him to signify his Election until the ^pfollowing year. It likewise appears, that *Letters* to the ^qsame effect were then also dispatcht to the King of *Aragon*, the

the Duke of *Brunswick*, and King of *Poland*, who had been Elected [†] eight years before. † *Ibid.* p. 105.

And yet we find it recorded, that the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the Order were sent by special *Ambassadors* to all three, *an.* 34. *H.* 6. *viz.* two years before: but perhaps this ought to be understood of their being but then designed and ordered to be sent, and upon second thoughts might be stopped, or if they were sent, might miscarry by some accident; for if they had arrived at these Princes Courts, it would have been needless to send other *Letters* to give notice of their Election, two years after. But to clear this doubt, we after find a second mention of sending the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the Order to the King of *Poland*, *an.* 37. *H.* 6. by which it is sufficiently apparent, that the first *Embassy* took no effect. † *Ibid.* p. 114.
† *Ibid.* p. 118.
† *Ibid.* p. 119.

In the foresaid Memorial entred in the *Black-Book* of the Order, and placed under the 34. year of King *Henry* the Sixth, touching the King of *Aragon*, King of *Poland*, and Duke of *Brunswick*; we suppose the King of *Aragon* is mistaken for the King of *Portugal*, Elected *an.* 25. *H.* 6. Since the *Registrum Chartaceum* calls him King of *Portugal*, and both authorities agree in sending over Mr. *Fetiplace* with the *Garter* and *Mantle*, though the *Black-Book* doth not distinguish (as doth the other) to which he was sent. † *Le Roy de Portugal est Esliuz & ad le Jarretier, & le Mantel envoiez par Fetiplas, f. 32. b.*

It may much rather be presumed that Mr. *Fetiplace* was sent on this Legation to the King of *Portugal* (not *Aragon*) since *Beatrice* the natural Daughter of *John* King of *Portugal* was his Mother, and he by this relation, and being in those times a Courtier in King *Henry* the Sixth's Court, might the sooner obtain the honor of this Employment: And there is in the *Registrum Chartaceum* another particular (co-relative with the former) yet more clear and full than the *Black-Book*; for it tells us that Mr. *Newport* was at the same time sent in the Legation with the *Garter* and *Mantle* to the King of *Poland*. † *Cambd. Brit. in Attreb.*
* This Gentleman was Progenitor to the Family of *Fetiplace*, late of *Berks* in *Berkshire*, of *Swinbroke* in the County of *Oxford*, and many other Families of note of the same Name, now residing in those Counties.
† *MS. in Offic. Armor. [C. 18.] f. 35.*
† *Le Roy le Poleyne est Esliuz, & ad le Jarretier & le Mantel envoiez par Newport. f. 32. b.*
† *An. 34. H. 6.*

But to return; we have not found that King *Henry* the Eighth, or any of his Successors, *Sovereign's* of the Order, have made much use of that liberty (granted by the foresaid Article of his statutes) for deferring the *Significatory Letters* of Election beyond the time appointed by the *Statutes* of Institution. And that it may be the better observed, how soon notice of Election hath been given to strangers, we will insert all the instances in this kind, that have come to our knowledge.

It is recorded, that the French King *Francis* the First was Elected *Oct.* 21. *an.* 19. *H.* 8. and albeit we find not the exact time, when the *Sovereign's* Letter for giving notice of his Election was sent him; yet must that complement be most certainly dispatcht within the time limited by the ancient *Statutes*, since we observe he was Installed within three months after, *viz.* the 25. of *January* following. † *Lib. N. p. 257.*
† *Ex Autogr. in Bibl. Cotton.*

When *James* the Fifth King of *Scotland* was Elected [*Jan.* 20. *an.* 26. *H.* 8.] the Lord *William Howard* was forthwith sent to inform him of his Election. *Henry* the Second of *France* (before mentioned) having been Elected the 24. of *April*, *an.* 5. *E.* 6. had *Letters* of signification sent him in *May* following. † *Lib. N. p. 257.*
† *Ibid. p. 305.*

Emanuel Duke of *Savoy* was chosen a *Knight-Companion* 6. *Aug.* *an.* 1. & 2. *Ph.* & *M.* and the same day it was Decreed, That *Letters* should be sent unto him with the illustrious *Garter*, and other *Ensigns* of the Order: But hereby is to be understood, the *Sovereign's* *Credential Letters* sent to accompany the *Habit* of the Order (the *Commission* for delivery whereof bears teste the 17. of *October* following) not the *Letters* signifying his Election; for it appears clearly from the said *Credentials*, that the *Sovereign* had not only before that time given him notice of his Election, but that the Duke had returned a cheerful and ready acceptance of the honor. † *Lib. C. p. 14.*

The Election of *Charles* the Ninth of *France*, passed the 24. of *April*, *an.* 6. *Eliz.* and in *May* ensuing the Lord *Hunsdon* carried him the *Habit* of the Order † *Lib. C. p. 49.*
† *Colled.*
† *AV. W.*

which he receive at Lyons the 24. of June following; and the French King Henry the Fourth, and James the Sixth King of Scotland (afterwards Sovereign of this most Noble Order) were both Elected together, the 24. of April an. 32. Eliz. to the former of these, the Certificate of Election was sent by Sir Edward Stafford Knight, and to the latter, by the Earl of Worcester. Lastly, Christian the Fourth King of Denmark, Elected the 14. of June, an. 1114. 1. *John Maurice* Prince of Orange, chosen the 19. of December, an. 10. Jac. R. *Custavus Adolphus* King of Sweden, and *Henry* Prince of Orange, both Elected the 24. of April, an. 3. Car. 1. as also *Charles* Prince Palatine of the Rhine chosen a Knight-Companion the 18. of April, an. 9. Car. 1. had Letters sent to signify their Election within a few days after they were Elected. And at such times as the present Sovereign made Election of any Stranger, whilst he remained abroad; care was also taken to send his Letters, to acquaint them with their Election, immediately after the Ceremony of Election had past.

SECT. II.

Of Notice given of an Election, before sending the Habit.

Here it is to be observed, with how much more caution than the former, the Statutes made by King Henry the Eighth do Ordain, to send Letters that signify Election, and the Book of Statutes only at the first; but not the Garter and Mantle, till a return be made, whether the Stranger-Elect (after consultation had with the Statutes) will receive the Order or not. And after the Certificate of Acceptance returned to the Sovereign, then, but not before is it there also Decreed, to send a solemn Embassy with the whole Habit, George, and Collar. And consonant to these directions in the Statutes hath the Practice sometimes been: As for instance, in the cases of the French King Henry the Second, an. 5. E. 6. and Emanuel Duke of Savoy, an. 1. & 2. Ph. & Mar. both remembered a little before; as also in that of Frederick Duke of Wirtemberg, to whom Queen Elizabeth sent Letters signifying his Election, shortly after she had chosen him into the Society of the Order, to which the Duke returned thanks and acceptance by two Ambassadors, Benjamin a Bwinkhausen of Walmerock one of his privy Council, and Cristopher ab Hangwitz Master of his Horse: who received a promise from the Sovereign, that the sending him the whole Habit of the Order should not be long deferr'd, howbeit the same was not sent during her life.

SECT. III.

Notice of Election sent with the Habit.

When the Sovereign hath been well assured beforehand, that the Elect-Stranger would not refuse the Honor; upon such confidence, the same Embassy (as anciently before the adding this Clause) dispatch both Ceremonies. The Sovereign's Letter certifying Election being first presented, together with the Book of Statutes, to peruse and consider of; and if (upon consideration thereof) the Stranger declared his acceptance, then within few days after, the whole Habit of the Order was with due Solemnity delivered.

And

And thus do we find it directed, shortly after the Election of *James the Fifth* King of Scotland; the Lord *William Howard* (sent on that Embassy) his Instructions as to this point, being as followeth.

That he should within five or six days next after he had been with the said King of Scots, for his first Embassy and resort to Court there, and in most reverend fashion deliver unto the King of Scots, the Letter Missive of Certification of his Election into the noble Order of the Garter, from the Sovereign of the Order, with due commendation from his Highness.

The Letter read, and the said King consenting to the Reception of the said Order, then incontinent the Book of Statutes to be delivered unto him, and a day appointed to have his consentment on the Articles of the said Statutes.

In like manner were the Letters certifying Election, and the Commission for presenting the Habit and Ensigns of the Order, dispatcht together to *Christian the Fourth* King of Denmark, an. 1. Jac. R. and sent by the Earl of Rutland who went hence within a fortnight after the said King had been Elected. As also to *Gustavus Adolphus* King of Sweden, and *Henry* Prince of Orange, within two months; their Election falling on the 24. of April, an. 3. Car. 1. and the d.

of the Commission for delivering the Order being on the 24. of June following.

The manner and order of the delivery of these Letters signifying Election, when the Habit is sent therewith, is thus.

First the Ambassador and Officer of Arms, having notice given them of the first Audience, do present themselves to the Stranger-Prince, in the accustomed manner of Ambassadors; and deliver the Sovereign's Letters Missive, with all due reverence. The Ambassador therewithall signifying (after some short general Complement from the Sovereign) how his Master and the honorable Society of the Garter, in respect of his renowned prowess, valour, virtues, &c. and for to establish and augment the amity which is betwixt them, hath Elected him into the most renowned Order of St. George; and that the Sovereigns do never Elect any Stranger, but such as they do most highly honor, and therefore desires that it may be accepted as a true testimony thereof: to which end the Sovereign hath sent him over, and his Herald there present, to perform the Ceremonies due thereunto.

But of late, when through the Sovereign's multitude of Affairs (in particular the late Sovereign while engaged in the Wars) or suddenness of the occasion, they have had no convenience for the present, to send a special Commission of Legation, with the Habit and Ensigns of the Order to any Stranger: They therefore thought fit, at such time as they sent their Letters signifying Election, to Commissionate their Agent, residing in that Princes Court, and Garter Principal King of Arms, to deliver part (but the two chief and most peculiar) of the Ensigns of this most illustrious Order, namely the Garter and George, pendent at a Blue Ribband, to the Elect-Stranger; deferring the solemn Legation till a further and more convenient time.

The first Precedent we have met with in this kind, was an. 10. Jac. R. when Sir *Ralph Winwood*, and *William Seagar* Esq; Carter, (afterwards Knighted) were Commissionated to deliver only at the present the Garter and George to *Maurice* Prince of Orange, the rest of the Habit being intended to be presented afterwards in their due time. And this was so done, within five days after his Election; that Ceremony being dispatcht on the 19. of December in the foresaid year, and the Sovereign's Letters of notice, and the Commission, both bearing date the 24. of the same month.

In like manner were the Garter and George only, sent over to *Charles* Prince Palatine of the Rhine, and presented to him by *William Boswell* (then) Esq; the Sovereign's Agent in Holland, and *John Philpot* Esq; Somerset Herald, an. 9. Car. 1. So the late Sovereign, by reason of the many disturbances occasioned by the unhappy War with the Long Parliament, could not conveniently send over to *William* Prince of Orange, and *Bernard de Foix* Duke of Espervon, other Ensigns of the Order, than the George and Garter.

And lastly, during the present Sovereign's aboad in Foreign parts, it was the

B b b

general

Appendix
Num. CII.

Appendix

h. CII.
R. 1.
sup. Ord. Cam.
f. 207.

i. Autogr. penes
W. 10. N. C.

* Appendix,
Num. CV.

k. Du Chesne
Hist. p. 1138.

l. Appendix,
Num. LXXII.

m. Lib. C. p. 117

n. Joh. Olers in
Genealog. Com.
Nassovia, p. 89.
Videsis Conti-
nuit. Thuan.
p. 331.

general practice (in regard the whole *Habit*, could not with conveniency be provided, nor the Ceremonies of Investiture fully performed) to present the *Elected-Knight* in confirmation of his Election (whether he were a *Stranger*, or *Subject*) with the *Garter*, *George*, *Ribband*, and sometimes a *Saint George's Cross*, irradiated within a *Garter*, to be fixt on the left shoulder of their *Cloaks* or upper *Garments*, of which we shall speak more largely in the following * *Chapter*.

* *Sec. 3.*

SECT. IV.

Certificate of Acceptation.

AFTER that the *Sovereign's Letter* signifying Election, hath been delivered by the *Ambassador*, and the *Elected-Stranger* doth readily accept the *Order*, and thereupon is desirous to have it confirmed to him; he is obliged by the *Statutes*, to return to the *Sovereign* a *Certificate* of such his acceptance, and desire of ratification.

p *Art. 21.*

And we observe, that before this additional Clause made by King *Henry* the Eighth, this ceremonious course had been of ancient time practised, and both expected from, and observed by the King of *Denmark*; who having been *Elected an. 6. H. 5. was an. 8.* of the same King, taken notice of, for 'not returning (before that time) an answer whether he would accept of the honor of the *Order*, or not? And it appears, that before the next *St. George's Feast* in the following year, 'he sent over to the *Sovereign* his ready acceptance, both of the honor of his Election, as also of the *Ensigns* of the *Order*; and thereupon directions were then given for his Installation by his *Proxie* the Lord *Fitz-Hugh*.

q *R. t. pergam.*
men. penes *Sim.*
Archer *Eq. Aur.*
n. no. defunct.
r *L. N. p. 61.*
s *Ibid. f. 64.*
t

But for an instance (after the said additional Clause) we have one remarkable enough, in the preamble of the *Sovereign's "Credential Letters"* to the Duke of *Savoy*, *an. 1. & 2. Ph. & Mar.* sent together with the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order*; in which it appears, "that the *Sovereign* having given him notice of his Election into this most Noble Order, he had returned back his cheerful and ready Acceptance of, and singular satisfaction in the said choice; and therefore cordially wist that it might attain its due effect.

u § *Appendix,*
v *Nam.*
LVIII.

In succeeding times it was thought necessary (in case where the whole *Habit* of the *Order* was sent over to a *Stranger*, together with the *Sovereign's Letters*, signifying his Election) to make a provisional Decree (which pass'd the 18. of *April an. 13. Car. 1.*) * That *Garter*, and all others (whom it pleas'd the *Sovereign* jointly to commissionate with him) should be most punctually careful, that they delivered not the *Ensigns* of the *Order* into the hands of any such Prince, till they were fully satisfied by his *Letters Patent* of his kind and grateful acceptance thereof, or in case of refusal to forbear their presentation.

x *Lib. R. p. 120*

y *Sir Th. Rowe's*
Journal. p. 11.

And that care was taken for the due observation of this Decree (even in such case where only the *Garter* and *George* were sent) appears from the *Instructions* of the 4. of *March, an. 19. Car. 1.* sent to *Sir William Boswell* Knight, he being appointed by the then *Sovereign* to present those two principal *Ensigns* of the *Order*, to *William Prince of Orange*, the said *Sovereign's Son-in-Law*; where among other things he is expressly commanded, * to take a *Testimonial* from the said Prince, of his kind acceptance thereof, before he should deliver those *Ensigns* of honor to him.

z *Ex Autogr.*
penes *Jac.*
Palmer *Eq.*
L. nup. *hujus*
Ord. Cancell.

The like || Clause (for demanding of a *Certificate* of willing and grateful Acceptance of the *Order*) we also find to have been inserted in those *Instructions*, under the same date, for the delivery of the *Garter* and *George* to *Bernard Duke of Effingham*.

SECT. V.

Of an Election not accepted of.

THAT there hath been a non-acceptation of this honor, by the person Elect-
ed, appears in that single case of *Philip* the Second Duke of *Burgundy*;
who having been Elect-^d by King *Henry* the Fifth, then in *France* into the Stall
of the Lord *Clifford*, (slain at the Siege of ^b *Meux* in *Brie*) had not (^a *an.* ^d *1. H. 6.*) ^a *Lib. N. p. 77.*
sent his answer whether he would have his Election confirmed. It was there-^b *ib. p. 69.*
fore concluded on, at the Feast of *St. George* held at *Windefor*, in the foresaid
year, by *Hunsfry* Duke of *Gloucester* (then Deputy to the Sovereign) having
therein the unanimous consent of the *Knights-Companions* present, to send ^c *Let-*
^d *ters* to the said Duke Elect, ^e by which he might be entreated to give his Reso-^f *ibid. p. 75.*
lution, whether he would accept of the Election or not.

It seems the Duke of *Burgundy* returned no answer to this Letter, and there-
fore at the next years Feast, it came again to be considered of, by the Duke
of *Gloucester* (the Sovereign's Deputy for that Feast also) and the *Knights-Com-*
panions present, and upon further debate it was thought fit, ^g that there should ^h *ib. p. 77.*
be those persons sent over to him with the *Nomination*, who should desire to
receive his final answer.

And then it appears, that the Duke of *Burgundy*, well considering the *Sta-*
tures of the Order, and reflecting on the ⁱ *Quarrels* between the Duke of *Glou-*
cester, and the Duke of *Brabant* his Uncle, made a most plausible excuse, re-^j *ibid.*
fusing the Election, least ^k he should be forced, either dishonorably to violate
the pious Constitutions of the Order, or the obligations of Alliance.

The substance of this Excuse, was afterwards represented to the Sovereign's
said Deputy, and *Knights-Companions*, in a Chapter held at *Windefor*, *an.* 2. *H. 6.*
^l who considering the reason and manner thereof, the long voidance of the ^m *ibid.*
Stall, and the strictness of the Statutes in this case, vacated the former Election,ⁿ
and proceeded to a new one, which brought ^o *John* Lord *Talbot*, into the room
and Stall of the said Lord *Clifford*.

This is the only instance of any *Stranger*, who after Election refused his ac-
ceptance of the Order. On the contrary, how desirous and earnestly solicitous
some others (even of the highest rank) have been of admittance into this illu-
strious Society, may appear by these few Examples.

Alphonfus King of *Naples*, and Duke of *Calabria*, did with ^p great importunity ^q *Heylins Hist.*
solicit his Election into this Order, and was accordingly chosen, *an.* 7. *H. 7.*
^r of *St. George*,
^s Part 3. Ch. 3.

The *Black-Book* of the Order, mentioning the Election and Installation of *Philip*
King of *Castile*, saith, that ^t he not only assented to what was offered, namely ^u *ib. N. p. 123.*
the honor of admittance into the Order; but with much gladness and infinite
thanks accepted thereof. A little before, we are informed, how ^v gratefully ^w *ib. p. 178.*
the King of *Denmark*, *an.* 20. *H. 7.* accepted of his Election. And in the me-
morial of the Sovereign's sending his *Ambassadors*, with the *Ensigns* of the Order
to the French King, *Francis* the First, it is noted, ^x that he received them with
such a ^y cheerfulness of mind, as the Affair required.
^z *ib. p. 257.*
^{aa} *Regist. Char.*
^{ab} *fac. f. 66.*

Some few years before this King was Elect-^d, *Ferdinand* Brother to the
Emperor *Charles* the Fifth was chosen into the Order, of whom it is said, ^{ac} That ^{ad} *Eq. Aur. An-*
he took it for a very high honor, to be made a Colleague of this most Noble
Society; and that he ^{ae} received the Order at *Norimberg* in *Germany* to his great
contentment. *Maximilian* his Son was presented with the *Habit* of the Or-
der, by *Thomas* Earl of *Suffex*; who giving the Sovereign an account by *Let-*
ter of his reception thereof; affirms, that he received the Honor gladly, and
with manifest satisfaction. Such is also the expression of *Frederick* the Second
King

^v Appendix.
Num. LXVII.

King of Denmark, in his *Letters of Procuration* to the Lord Willoughby, ^u That he received the *Order* with as much gratitude, as if it had been presented to him by the *Sovereign* her self.

^w *Eq. Aur.*
^x *Angli.*
Wirttemberg.
l. 3. p. 82.

But that which *Erhardus Celius* reporteth of ^w *Frederick Duke of Wirtemberg*, is beyond all; who being in *England*, and seeing the ^{*} magnificence of the *Castle* and *Chappel* of *Windsor*, was induced by the sight of the illustrious *Arms* and *Ensigns* of Honor of so many great Princes and famous Personages of this most Noble *Order*, to wish himself one of the renowned Society.

Being afterwards Elected, he exprest his acknowledgments of the Honor done him, not only by a solemn *Embassy* to *Queen Elizabeth*, but also by the ^z *l. 1. 5. 6. & 7.* great Preparations he made, the vast Expences he was at, and his extraordinary munificence in Rewards, at his *Investiture* with the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order*; which indeed were such grand testimonies of his glad acceptance of this additional flower of Honor, as nothing could more fully evidence it to the World. To these we may add the ^{*} re-iterated solicitations made to the present *Sovereign*, on the behalf of *Frederick Guillaume* Marquess of *Brandenburgh*, and his great impatience till his Election was past, though not easily nor suddenly obtained.

^{*} *Exvelatione*
Edm. Nicholas
Eq. Aur.

In fine, how acceptable this Honor hath been to several other Kings and Princes, and what esteem and value they have set upon it, may be further seen, in their several *Certificates*, sent back to the *Sovereign* of this most Noble *Order*, after their *Investitures* with the *Habit* and *Ensigns* thereof.

CHAP. XV.

THE

Investiture of Strangers

WITH THE

HABIT and ENSIGNS

Of the ORDER.

SECT. I.

The Time for sending the Habit and Ensigns unlimited.

Albeit the *statutes* of the *Order* do appoint and prefix a time, within which the *Sovereign's Letters* giving notice to a *stranger* of his *Election*, ought to be sent unto him, as before is shewed; yet as to the sending a solemn Embassy, with the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order*, they do not limit a certain time, but leave that wholly to the *Sovereign's* pleasure; wherein his conveniency, and other Interests, as also those of the *Elected Stranger*, are to be consulted and considered.

But nevertheless, the *Statutes of Institution* appoint and direct, that this *Legation* shall be dispatcht ^a *with convenient speed*; which must needs be interpreted ^a *Art. 20.* with such latitude, as may refer both to the *Sovereign's* conveniency of sending, and the *Stranger's* capacity of receiving.

And therefore we find it six years after the Election of the Kings of *Aragon* and *Poland*, and the Duke of *Brunswick*, e're we meet with the first notice of the *Sovereign's* determination of sending over the *Habit* of the *Order* to them: For they having been Elected the ^b 4. of *August*, an. 28. H. 6. the preparations ^b *Lib. N. p. 169.* for the intended *Legation*, were not made until the ^c 34. year of the same King. ^c *Ibid. 115.* And doubtless some cause, within the limits of that conveniency (allowed to the

the *Sovereign* by the foresaid *Article* of the *Statutes*) or the accident of miscarriage might fall out, particularly in reference to the King of Poland, (if not of the other) because ^dthree years after the former Order for *Legation* had past, we find new directions issued for sending the *Ensigns* of the Order to him.

But in King *Henry* the Eighth's body of *Statutes*, this Clause of sending the *Legation* with convenient expedition, is wholly omitted, and the *Sovereign* is now unlimited as to the time: by which liberty it hath come to pass, that the *Habit* and *Ensigns* have been sent over, sometimes soon after the *Stranger's* Election, at other times not till some years after; and at all times when the *Sovereign* hath thought fit and convenient.

Thus was it four years after *Frederick* the Second King of *Denmark* had been ^fElected, Before *Peregrine* Lord *Willoughby* of *Ersby*, together with ^gSir *Gilbert Dethick* Garter, and *Robert Glover* Somerſet Herald (by Order of *Chap-ter* ^h24. Apr. an. 24. Eliz.) were sent over into *Denmark*, to present him with the *Habit* of the Order.

ⁱ*Maximilian* the Emperor was Elected, the ⁱ24. of April, an. 8. Eliz. but it was above a year after ere the *Commission* issued out to the Earl of *Suffex*, (*viz.* 20. May, an. 9. Eliz.) for carrying the *Ensigns* of the Order over to him.

It was seven years after the Election of the French King *Henry* the Third, before the ^kWarrant issued out to provide his Robes, and almost two years longer ere the ^lEarl of *Derby* went over with them: in all, about nine years and something above eight months.

And in another instance of a French King, namely *Henry* the Fourth, we find it six years and a half from the time of his Election, to his reception of the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the Order, which Solemnity fell on the ^m10. of October, an. 38. Eliz.

Lastly, we observe that it was five years and a half, after the Election of *Frederick* Duke of *Wirtemberg*, before the *Embassy* with the *Ornaments* of the Order, were sent unto him: for we find he was ⁿElected at St. George's Feast, an. 39. Eliz. and the *Commission* of *Legation* to the Lord *Spencer*, and Sir *William Dethick* bears Teste at *Woodstock*, the ^o18. of Sept. an. 1. Jac. R.

ⁿ Lib. C. p. 124.
^o Videtur Collect.
^p R. C. Cl. p. 111.
^q E. q. An.
^r Angl. - Wir-
temb. p. 107.
^s Num. LXXI.
^t Vide du Chesne
Hist. p. 1138.

SECT. II.

Preparations made for the Legation.

IN reference to this solemn *Embassy*, there are several things to be provided before the *Ambassadors* or *Commissioners* take their journey; as first (1.) *Credential Letters*, (2.) *Commission* of *Legation*, (3.) *Warrants* for the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the Order, and (4.) *other Necessaries*.

The *Credential Letters* are (as to particulars) drawn futable to the present occasion, by the *Chancellor* of the Order, and directed to the *Stranger-Elect*; but the substance (in general) is ^aThat the *Sovereign* having elected him into the *Society* of the Order, hath sent his *Ambassadors* with full power to present the *Habit*, and perform the Ceremonies in such case due and accustomed, as if himself were present. And further, to desire him, ^bto give credit to all that his *Ambassadors* shall say or perform in his behalf, in reference to their *Commission*, as he would do to himself.

These *Letters* pass under the Sign manual of the *Sovereign*, And ^cSignet of the Order; but it is observable, that those sent to *Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy* were subscribed both by ^dKing *Philip* and Queen *Mary*.

^s Credential
Letters.

^a Appendix,
^b Num.
LVIII. LIX.
LX. LXI.

^c Lib. R. p. 120
^d Appendix,
Num. LVIII.

The

The *Commission of Legation* is likewise to be prepared by the *Chancellor* of the Order, fairly ingrossed in Velum, and sealed with the Great Seal of the Order; the substance of which (for the most part) hath been as followeth.

* First, the merits and worthiness of the *Elect-Stranger* to deserve the honor of *Election*, and the reasons inducing the *Sovereign* to confer the same upon him; are elegantly set forth in the Preamble.

Secondly, the persons nominated for this honorable employment, are ordained, authorized, and deputed (and therein styled) *Ambassadors*, *Procurators*, and special *Messengers*; and so are they acknowledged to be, by the *Strangers-Elect* in their *Certificates* of the Receipt of the *Habit*.

Thirdly, their power, authority, and special command, is to address themselves to the *Stranger-Elect*, and to present and deliver him from the *Sovereign*, the *Garter*, *Mantle*, and other the *Ensigns* of the Order, with due and accustomed Ceremonies and Solemnities: where note, that if there were four or five joined in a *Commission* (as it hapned sometimes heretofore) then any five, four, three, or two were of the *Quorum*, whereof the Principal in the Embassy was always one.

Fourthly, they were impowered to require from the *Stranger-Elect* his *Oath*, according to the form and manner prescribed in the *Statutes*, but this clause we only find inserted in the *Commissions* of Legation, to Charles Duke of Burgundy an. 9. E. 4. and Ferdinand Arch-Duke of Austria, an. 15. H. 8. and omitted in all *Commissions* since that time.

And lastly, to perform, accomplish, and dispatch those things, which they should judge necessary on this occasion; in like manner as if the *Sovereign* should or were obliged to do, if he were present in his own person. And this latitude was thought convenient, to allow the *Ambassadors*, in case any matter in Ceremony, or other Circumstances should be thought necessary or expedient to use (not repugnant to the *Statutes* of the Order) which their *Instructions* had not sufficiently provided for.

As touching the first of these particulars, we have spoken to it * already, but the second particular, relating to the persons nominated in the *Commission*, to perform this service, we conceive most proper to handle here.

The first Embassy upon this occasion, recorded in the *Black-Book* of the Order, is that to Edward King of Portugal, an. 13. H. 6. to whom, for the dignity of the Affair, *Garter* was thought fit by the Chapter to be sent alone with the *Habit* of the Order: And hence is the original of *Garter's* claim to this Employment.

Nevertheless, in succeeding times, as the Order grew up into esteem, both at home and abroad; some one of the *Knights-Companions* was made choice of by the *Sovereign* to be the Principal in these Legations; as were Galliard Sieur de Duras, sent to Charles Duke of Burgundy, an. 9. E. 4. * Arthur Plantagenet Viscount of Lysle, to the French King Francis the First, an. 19. H. 8. William Marquess of Northampton, to the French King Henry the Second, an. 5. E. 6. Edward Lord Clynton and Say, to Emanuel Duke of Savoy, an. 1. & 2. Ph. & Mar. Henry Lord Hunsdon, to Charles the Ninth French King, an. 6. Eliz. Thomas Earl of Suffex, to Maximilian the Emperor, an. 9. Eliz. Henry Earl of Derby to the French King Henry the Third, an. 27. Eliz. And Gilbert Earl of Shrewsbury to Henry the Fourth, the French King, an. 38. Eliz.

Sometimes other Noblemen, and persons of great quality (though not *Knights-Companions* of the Order yet) correspondent to the Degree of the *Stranger-Elect*, or to the esteem the present Interest begat with the *Sovereign*, were employed chief in these Embassies; among whom Sir Charles Somerset (created after Earl of Worcester) was sent to the Emperor Maximilian, an. 6. H. 7. Henry Lord Morley to Don Ferdinand Prince of Spain, Arch-Duke of Austria, an. 15. H. 8. The Lord William Howard, Brother to Thomas Duke of Norfolk, to James the Fifth King of Scotland, an. 26. H. 8. The Lord Willoughby of Eresby, to Frederick the Third King of Denmark. Roger Earl of Rutland, to Christian the Fourth King of Denmark, an. 1. Jac. R. The Lord Spencer of Wormleighton, to Frederick Duke of Wirtemberg, the same year. Sir Ralph Winwood to

2. Commission of Legation. c. Lib. R. p. 119. & 120.

* Appendix, Num. LXII. LXIII. &c.

* Chap. 9. Sect. 13.

Of Persons nominated in the Commission. f. Lib. N. p. 91.

g. Ibid. p. 257.

i. Collect. A. V. W.

k. Lib. N. p. 267. l. MS. quarto penes Arthur. Com. Anglesey. p. 133. b.

Maurice

Maurice Prince of Orange, an. 10. Jac. R. Sir Jacob Spene of Wormston, to Gustavus Adolphus King of Sweden, an. 3. Car. 1. Dudley Viscount Doncaster, to Henry Prince of Orange, the same year. And Sir William Boswell, to Charles Prince Palatine of the Rhine, an. 9. Car. 1.

In Embassies of this nature, it was heretofore usual, to join some persons of rank and quality, or Office near the Sovereign, in the Commission; and such were Sir^{*} John Scott, Controller of the Sovereign's House, and Sir Thomas Vaughan, Treasurer of his Chamber, both joined in Commission with Galliard Sieur de Duras. Sir William Hussy with the Lord Morley; and Sir[†] Nicholas Carew, and Sir Anthony Brown, with Viscount Lyffe.

To these persons, the Sovereign thought fit sometimes to add a Doctor of the Civil Law, or an Ecclesiastical person having dignity, and such as had the Language of the Country whither they were sent; not only the better to make answer to such questions, as the Stranger-Elect might start, upon his perusal of the Statutes, but also to inform him touching the Institution of the Order, or other Historical passages, relating to the Founder, the preceding or present Knights-Companions, or honor of the Garter: all which (if judiciously and accurately read) might add reputation to the Order, and beget in the Stranger-Elect the better esteem of it.

Besides, an Ecclesiastical person was in those times thought fittest to administer the Oath, and to pronounce the words of Signification, at the time of Investiture with the Habit and Ensigns of the Order.

And for these Reasons was^c John Russell Doctor of the Civil Law, and Arch-deacon of Berkshire, joined in Commission with the aforesaid Galliard Sieur de Duras; and^d Edward Lee Doctor in Divinity, Arch-deacon of Colchester, and the Sovereign's Almoner, sent over with the Lord Morley: In like manner was^e John Tailour, Arch-deacon of Buckingham, and^f Vice-chancellor, joined with Arthur Plantagenet Viscount Lyffe; and Doctor^g Goodrick Bishop of Ely with the Marquels of Northampton.

But of later times, the Sovereign's Ambassador, resident with the Stranger-Elect, hath supplied this place; as did^h Sir Thomas Smith in the Legation sent over to the French King Charles the Ninth; and Sirⁱ Edward Stafford in that to the French King Henry the Third; and^k Sir Anthony Mildmay, when the Earl of Shrewsbury was sent upon the like Legation to the French King Henry the Fourth.

Besides the before mentioned persons, Garter Principal King of Arms, was always joined in these Commissions of Legation, not only to keep on foot his right to the employment, but to manage the ceremonious part of this Solemnity: and if we shall be thought over numerous in Instances to justify this particular, let our Reader excuse it, since it is to make good the Privilege of an Office, and maintain the interest of an ancient right.

This reason (we presume) will also excuse our repetition here, of the ancient President when^l Garter carried over the Habit of the Order, to Edward King of Portugal, an. 13. H. 6. to which we shall subjoin the Embassies to Charles Duke of Burgundy, where Sir^m John Writh Garter, was joined in the Commission with Galliard Sieur de Duras, and that toⁿ Guido Ubaldu Duke of Urbyn, an. 22. H. 7.

Sir^o Thomas Wriothesley was also joined with Sir Charles Somerset, in the Legation to the Emperor Maximilian; with the^p Lord Morley sent to Ferdinand Arch-Duke of Austria, and with^q Arthur Viscount Lyffe, to the French King Francis the First.

Sir Christopher Barker, Garter, was also sent with the Habit of the Order into Scotland (immediately after the Lord William Howard) who jointly presented the same to King James the Fifth.

Sir Gilbert Dethick likewise was joined in the Commission with the Marquels of Northampton, in the Embassy to the French King Henry the Second; also with the Lord Clynton in that to Emanuel Duke of Savoy; with the Lord Hunsdon in that Legation to Charles the Ninth, with the Earl of Suffex, in that to the Emperor Maximilian, and with Peregrine Lord Willoughby, in that to Frederick the Second King of Denmark.

Afterwards

^{*} Ibid. pag. 133. b.

^m Lib. N. p. 309

sub finem.

^b Ibid. p. 210.

^c Appendix.

Num. LXII.

^d Ibid. Num.

LXIII.

^e Lib. N. p. 257

^f Regist.

Chart. f. 66.

^g Vicechancel-

lier D'angle-

terre, is called

in the Certificate

of Francis the First

his Receipt of

the Habit.

^h Collect. A.

ⁱ V. W.

^j Collect. W.

^k Le N. Cl.

Garter joined

in the Lega-

tion.

^l Lib. N. p. 51.

^m Collect. A.

ⁿ A. V. W.

^o

^p Appendix. Num.

LXII.

^q Ex Collect.

prad.

^r Lib. N. p. 267.

Afterwards Sir William Dethick (his Son and Successor in the Office of Garter) was in like manner joined in Commission with the Earl of Shrewsbury, sent to Henry the Fourth French King, and with Robert Lord Spencer to Frederick Duke of Wirtemberg.

Lastly, Sir William Segar, when the Habit of the Order was sent to Henry Prince of Orange, was joined in Commission with Viscount Carleton, for the presentation thereof.

And it is here further to be noted, that at such times as any other of the Officers of Arms were employed in this Affair (as hath sometimes hapned, when Garter could not undertake the Voyage in person) such Officer (recommended by him to, but approved of by the Sovereign) was sent to execute his Office, nevertheless, under a particular reservation of his Rights.

And therefore the Embassy to Christian the Fourth King of Denmark, falling out near to the Coronation of King James (in reference to the preparations for which grand Solemnity, Garter could not be spared) William Segar Esq; then Norroy King of Arms, was joined in Commission with the Earl of Rutland.

When Henry St. George Esq; Richmond Herald, was joined with Sir James Spens Knight, and Peter Young Esq; in the Commission of Legation to Gustavus Adolphus King of Sweden, he went Deputy to Sir William Segar, Garter, and was accountable to him for the Rewards he did receive. Nor was John Philpot Esq; Somerset Herald any otherwise sent, than Deputy to Garter, though joined in Commission with William Boswell Esq; for delivery of the Garter and George to Charles Prince Palatine of the Rhine, an. 9. Car. 1.

In like manner, when the Embassy was less solemn, and only part of the Ensigns of the Order sent, Garter hath been jointly employed with the other Commissioners: for so was William Segar Esq; Garter, with Sir Ralph Winwood, for presenting the Garter and George to Maurice Prince of Orange, an. 10. Jac. R.

But beside the ancient right, the usage and prescription on Garter's side (as is before laid down) we find it declared by a Decree in Chapter (pass'd the 18. of April, an. 13. Car. 1.) That the carrying of the Ensigns of the Order to Stranger-Princes, doth properly belong to Garter.

Besides those persons joined in the Commission of Legation, there hath been oft times appointed either Norroy King of Arms, or some one of the Heralds, to go in the quality of an Attendant on this Service, not only for the honor of the Sovereign, but of the Stranger that is to receive the Habit; in regard the Ceremonies of Investiture with the whole Habit, require the presence and assistance of two Officers of Arms; concerning which we have met with these Presidents.

Lancaster Herald attended the Embassy to Charles the Ninth French King, Chester Herald, and Rouge Dragon Pursuivant at Arms, waited on the Embassy, to the French King Henry the Third. A Herald also attended the Embassy to Emanuel Duke of Savoy. York Herald attended that to Maximilian the Emperor: And Somerset Herald to the French King Henry the Fourth.

And whereas there went only Norroy to Christian the Fourth King of Denmark; it was because no more of the Officers of Arms could be then spared, from their necessary attendance on the Sovereign's Coronation then at hand. So in the Embassy to Maurice Prince of Orange, one Herald sufficed, because the Garter and George only (not the whole Habit of the Order) were sent unto him, and consequently there was then but little service to be done at such an Investiture.

Concerning other Companions and Attendants in these Legations, they are both for Quality and Number such and so many, as the Chief in the Legation thinks sufficient, for the honor of the Sovereign, and the reputation of the Embassy: and in what Equipage some of these Ambassadors have been attended heretofore, may be seen from the following Lists.

Colled. E.
W. G.
MS. in Office:
Arm. [L. 18.]
circa medium.

Colled. W.
le N. Cl.

See before
fol. 202. Sir Ed.
Walkers Per.
for the rights
of his Office.
y Colled. E.
W. G.

Heralds atten-
dant in the
Legation.
b (c)
Colled. W.
le N. Cl.

MS. fol. penes
G. O. T. p. 106.

Colled. W.
le N. Cl.

Ex eod. MS. in
Bibl. Cotton.
[sub Effigie
Fulvi] C. 9.

The Names of the *Noblemen, Knights, and Gentlemen*, that accompanied the Marquess of *Northampton* in his *Legation*, with the *Habit* of the Order to the French King *Henry the Second*, 15. May an. 5. E. 6.

The Earls of *Worcester*.

Rutland.

Ormond.

Viscounts *Fitzwalter*.

Lysle.

Lords *Bourgoune*.

Bray.

Evers.

Mr. *Throgmorton*.

Mr. *Sidney*, both of the *Sovereign's*
Privy Chamber.

Sir *William Cobham*.

Sir *John Cutts*.

Sir *John Perrott*.

Sir *Anthony Guydot*.

Sir *Gilbert Dethick*.

Mr. *Fitz Williams*.

Mr. *Carre*.

Mr. *Knolles*.

Mr. *Edw. Warney*.

Mr. *Fr. Warney*.

Mr. *Toung*.

Mr. *William Thomas* Secretary to
the Lords Commissioners.

Mr. *Nicholas Alexander*.

Mr. *Lucas Frugard*.

Chester Herald

Rougedragon Pursuivant } at Arms.

The whole number of *Noblemen* and
Gentlemen, with all their *Trains*,
was 260.

MS. penes G.O.
T. f. 118.

The Names of the *Noblemen, Knights, and Gentlemen*, who accompanied the Earl of *Sussex* in his *Legation* with the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the Order, to *Maximilian* the Emperor, an. 9. Eliz.

The Lord *North*, Baron of *Kyrtling*.

Sir *Egremond Radcliff*, the Ambassador.

Sir *Thomas Mildmay*. (dors Brother.

Sir *Gilbert Dethick*, Garter.

Sir *Henry Cobham* } Two of the Sove-
raign's band of
Sir *Edmund Powell* } Pensioners.

William Dethick Rouge Crois Pursui-
vant at Arms.

William Weston, one of the *Queens*
Servants.

William Hamlett.

Thomas Gess.

Simon Smith.

Thomas Barber.

Servants to the Lord *North*.

Arnold Segrell.

Leonard Dicker.

Servants to Sir *Tho. Mildmay*.

John Strange.

James -----

Servants to Sir *Gilbert Dethick*.

Charles Poinsett.

John Ruddle.

John Child.

John Fletcher.

Servant to Sir *Henry Cobham*.

Hans -----

Servant to Sir *Edmund Powell*.

Charles -----

Gentlemen attending on the
Ambassador.

John Valpe Doctor of Physick.

Anthony Overton Prothonotary.

William Chancellor, Chaplain.

George Frevill,

Robert Butler.

William Mejon.

Henry Mildmay.

Thomas Higham.

Peter Gough.

Arthur Hovingham.

Albert Philipps.

Servants to the Ambassador.

Henry Eritage.

James Bradshaw.

The Names of the *Emperor's Gentlemen*, that waited upon the Lord Ambassador the Earl of *Suffex*, in *Vienna* 1567.

MS. penes G.
D. T. f. 154.

Casper van Mynkhonitz, Sewer.	In the Kitchin 10 persons.
Seymfred van Alderston, Carver.	In the Cellar 5.
Marques's Spiller, Cupbearer.	In the Larder 5.
William van Pellustrans, } Heralds of	In the Confectionary 5.
Hans Poyntfott } Arms.	In the Chaundry 2.
Nicholas Radode, Comptroller of the	In the Wardrobe 3.
Houfe.	In the Scullery 3.
George Swikle, Clerk of the Kitchin.	And one Porter.
Item 10 Archers.	
Item 10 Holbardiers.	In all 62 persons.
George Weaver, Master Cook.	

The Names of the *Noblemen, Knights, Esquires, and Gentlemen*, who gave their attendance on the Earl of *Derby*, sent Ambassador with the *Habit and Ensigns of the Order*, to the French King *Henry the Third*, 20. Jan. an. 27. Eliz.

The Lord Sands.	The Earls waiting Gentlemen.
The Lord Windfor.	Mr. Dawney, Son and Heir to Sir John Dawney.
Mr. Scroop, Son and Heir to the Lord Scroop.	Mr. James Legh, Son and Heir to Sir Pierce a Legh.
Mr. Windfore, Son and Heir apparent to the Lord Windfore.	Mr. Warene.
Sir Richard Shirborne Knight, Treasurer.	Mr. Thomas Shirborne.
Sir Randolph Brereton, Knight.	Mr. Stanley.
Mr. Clarendieux, King of Arms.	Mr. Charles Doyley.
Mr. Anthony Cook, Heir to Sir Anthony Cook.	M. Chevalier Machett.
Mr. Gerard, Son and Heir to Sir Thomas Gerard.	Mr. Richard Starkey.
Mr. Fleetwood.	Mr. Brereton.
Mr. Newdygate.	Mr. Thomas Hamner.
Mr. Stallange.	Mr. Richard Lloyd.
Mr. Somerset Herald of Arms.	Mr. Salisbury.
Mr. Crompton.	Mr. Richard Bussy.
Mr. Smith.	Mr. John Downes.
Mr. Denton.	Mr. Francis Starkey.
Mr. Milles Secretary.	Mr. Baptist.
Mr. Thomas Arderne, Steward.	Mr. Thomas Randolph.
Mr. Fox, Comptroller.	Mr. Tuffer.
Mr. Newton, Gentleman Huisher.	Mr. Anthony Chambers.
Mr. Philipps, Chaplain.	Mr. Nicholas Forton.
Mr. Alexander, Gentleman of the Horse.	Mr. Gervase Rosell.
Mr. Moorcroft, Physitian.	Thomas Ewscogh } Clerks of the
	Roger Jolibrand } Kitchin.

In the third place, there is to be prepared for this Legation, Warrants for the *Habit and Ensigns of the Order*; and these are also to be drawn up by the Chancellor of the Order, who is to attend the Sovereign for his Sign manual thereunto.

One Warrant is to be directed to the Master of the Sovereign's Great Wardrobe, to deliver to Garter King of Arms, the *Mantle*, with a Scutcheon of St. George within a Garter, embroidered on the left shoulder, and Tassels thereunto belonging, as also the *Surcoat and Hood*.

C c c 2

There

2. Warrants for the Habit.
h Appendix,
i 2 Numb.
LXXVI.
LXXVII.
LXXVIII. &
LXXIX.

k *Ibid.* Num.
LXXX.
LXXXI.
LXXXII &
LXXXIII.

There is also another *Warrant* drawn up, for the delivery of the *Ensigns* of the *Order* to *Garter*; namely^k the rich *Garter*, the Great *Collar* of the *Order*, with a *George* appendant, and another smaller *George* hanging in a Blue Ribband: together with *Cases* for them, lined with Purple Velvet, and gilt on the outside.

And sometimes these *Ensigns* have been delivered out of the *Jewel-house* to the *Herald at Arms*, joined in the *Legation* in *Garter's* stead, as were those sent to *Charles King of Sweden*, an. 20. Car. 2. But those provided for *John George Duke of Saxony* to Sir *Thomas Higgons*, the principal in the *Legation* to him; for which they gave their^m several Receipts.

m *Ibid.* Num.
LXXXIV.
& LXXXV.

The *Sovereign's* *Warrant* for the delivery of those *Ensigns* sent to *Maximilian* the Emperor, was directed to the *Lord Treasurer* of *England*, for which *Garter* gave his^{*} Receipt. But for those sent to the French King *Henry* the Fourth, the *Warrant* was directed to the *Master* of the *Jewel-house*: and out of this Office have all the *Ensigns* of the *Order*, before mentioned, been since delivered.

* *Ibid.* Num.
LXXX.

4. Other Necessaries.

There are several other *Necessaries* to be provided, which may pass as appendances to the former, and are sometimes inserted into the *Sovereign's* *Warrants* for the *Habit* of the *Order*, and at other times issue forth by particular *Warrants*; namely,

n § Appendix,
o 2 Numb.
LXXXVII. &
LXXXVIII.

Aⁿ Black Velvet Cap, with white Feathers and a Heron Sprig.

A^o Girdle and Hangers of the same coloured Velvet with the Surcoat.

A yard of Purple Velvet hath been usually allowed out of the Great *Wardrobe*, for covering the *Book of Statutes* which the *Sovereign* sends to the *Eleſſ-ſtranger*; and for the Velom, Writing, and Binding the ſaid Book, there is a Fee paid by the *Sovereign* to the *Register* of the *Order*, which generally hath been proportioned according to the Degree of the *ſtranger*; for this *Officer* had allowed him for the *Book* ſent

m *Coll. Wile*
N. Cl.

	l.	s.	d.
To the French King, <i>Henry</i> the Fourth	5	0	0
To <i>John Caſſimire</i> Count Palatine	4	0	0
To the Duke of <i>Holſtein</i> , an. 3. Jac.	3	6	8
To the King of <i>Sweden</i> , an. 3. Car. 1.	3	0	0

n Append. Num.
LXXXVIII.
o MS. fol. penes
G.O.F. p. 104.

That *Book of Statutes* ſent to the French King *Henry* the Third, was fairly bound in a Crimſon Velvet, and edged with Gold Lace: That to the French King *Henry* the Fourth was^o painted with Arms, wrought with Goldſmiths work, bound in Blue Velvet, with Laces of Gold and Silk. But to be more particular, we will inſert a Transcript of the Bill of Charges for the *Book* of the *Statutes*, provided for and ſent to *James* the Fifth King of *Scotland*, an. 26. H. 8.

MS. vet. penes
G.O.F. 1.

	s.	d.
Fiſt, For Vellym	5	0
Item, For illumyning the Arms and Letters	10	0
Item, For writing	20	0
Item, For Binding and Gilding	2	8
Item, For half a yard of Purple Velvet	7	0
Item, For half a yard of Crimſon Sattin	7	0
Item, For the Purple Silk for the Laces	0	4
Item, For the white and green Silk for the Seal	1	0
Item, For red Silk for the Strings and } garniſhing of the Book	1	0
Item, For an Ounce and a half of Venice Gold	5	2
Item, For ſhaping, making of the Bag, and garniſhing	3	4
Item, For the Red Sarcenet for the lining of the Bag	1	4
Item, For a Box	0	8
	1	4 6

This Book of Statutes ought to be Sealed, with the Common Seal of the Order; ^{p. 3. Stat.} which not only the Statutes of Institution, but all the other succeeding Bodies of ^{H. 6. Stat. 20} Statutes do appoint: Besides, at a Chapter held at Whitehall, 18. Apr. an. 13. Car. 1. ^{H. 8. Stat. Art. 21.} this Law was confirmed, and thereupon it was again Decreed, ^{q. Lib. R. p. 120.} That the Book of Statutes sent to any Stranger-Prince should be sealed with the Great Seal of the Order, affixed to a Label of Blue Silk and Gold.

There is also to be provided a large Purple Velvet Cushen, to carry the Robes on, when they are to be presented; this is put likewise into the Sovereign's Warrant, and provided by the Master of the Great Wardrobe; and it usually contains one yard and a quarter in length, being adorned with Fringe, Cauls, and Tassels of Gold and Purple Silk, and within it a Pillow of Fustian filled with Down.

There were two Velvet Cushens prepared for the Service of the Duke of Wirtemberg's Investiture, an. 1. Jac. viz. one of Purple for the Sovereign's State, and another of Crimson for the Dukes: So also were there carried over the same year, for the Service of Christian the Fourth King of Denmark, two Purple Cushens garnished with Fringe, Buttons, Cauls, and Tassels.

Two Majesty Scutcheons are likewise to be provided, painted in Oyl, and gilded with fine Gold; the one whereof to have the Arms of the Sovereign surrounded with a Garter, under an Imperial Crown; the other of the Stranger's Arms, within a Garter also, and such a Crown as belongs to his Dignity. Both these are to be put in Frames, painted, and gilt, with their several stiles fairly written underneath the Arms, and set upon the back of the Sovereign's Stall, under the State, as also on the back of the Stall of the Stranger-Elect. But there were three Majesty Scutcheons sent over in the Legation to Henry Prince of Orange, in regard that at his Investiture Frederick Prince Elector Palatine was present.

And in case the chief person in the Legation be a Knight of the Order, then is he to have a like Scutcheon of his own Arms to set over his Stall also: for so had Henry Earl of Derby provided for him at the Sovereign's charge, when he was sent with the Habit to the French King Henry the Third.

The remaining Necessaries are such as relate to the Transportation of the Habit of the Order, and what appertains to them, to wit;

One pair of fine Holland sheets, to fold the Habit in.

Two Sweet Bags of Taffaty, to lay amongst them.

Two Trunks, to put the said parcels in.

One sumpter saddle.

All which are to be provided at the Sovereign's charge, and is also his gift to the Elect-Prince.

What further Warrants are to be obtained from the Sovereign, relate to Garter, and such other Officer of Arms as is appointed to attend the Legation; as first, a Warrant whereby the Sovereign ascertains an allowance for their Dyet and Reward, during their Journey, and till their return; and upon which most commonly, for greater certainty of the payment, the Sovereign's Privy Seal is obtained.

The allowance to Garter in the Reign of King Edward the Sixth, was 10 s. a day for his dyet, and 10 s. a day the Sovereign's Reward, in all 20 s. per diem.

Thus much we find to have been allowed Sir Gilbert Dethick Garter, in the Embassy to the French King Henry the Second, and appointed to begin the 28. of April, an. 5. E. 6.

The like sum per diem was allowed him in the Legation to Maximilian the Emperor, and to begin seven days before his arrival at the Sea side: In this service * 250 days being spent, his allowance came to 250 l.

In the Voyage to Frederick the Second King of Denmark, the said Sir Gilbert Dethick, had the same allowance given him, which began the 29. of June an. 24. Eliz. (being the tenth day before his embarking) and ended the 2. day of October following.

And when Clarenceux was sent in the place of Garter (that Office being void by the death of the said Sir Gilbert Dethick) with the Earl of Derby, to the French King Henry the Third, the like sum of 120 s. per diem was also allowed him,

^{p. 3. Stat.}
^{H. 6. Stat. 20}
^{H. 8. Stat.}
^{Art. 21.}

^{r. Collect. A.}
^{V. W.}
^{f. Ex Lib.}
^{r. Warrant. particular in Office.}
^{mag. Gardrob.}
^{ab. an. 1593.}
^{ad. an. 1603.}
^{pag. 85.}
^{u. MS. fol. penes}
^{G. O. T. p. 193.}
^{w. Ibid. p. 299.}

^{x. Collect. Wile}
^{N. Cl.}

^{y. Append. Num.}
^{LXXVIII.}

^{z. Ibid. Num.}
^{LXXVI.}
^{LXXXVII.}
^{LXXXVIII.}

^{b. Ex eod. MS.}
^{penes G. O. T.}
^{f. 97. b.}

^{g. Warrants}
^{for allowances}
^{to Garter and}
^{the Herald.}

^{a. Appendix}
^{c. Numb.}
^{LXXXIX.}

^{f. 7b. Num.}
^{g. XC.}

^{* MS. fol. penes}
^{G. O. T. p. 159.}

^{h. Appendix}
^{i. Num. XCI.}

^{k. Collect. W.}
^{le N. Cl.}
^{l. Appendix}
^{Num. XCII.}

him, to begin from the 17. of Jan. an. 27. Eliz. though the said Earl went not till the 26. of the same month, and returned not till the 16. of March following.

We further find, that the very same allowance was also settled upon Sir William Dethick Garter, when the Habit of the Order was sent to the French King Henry the Fourth, which Journey began the 11. of September, an. 40. Eliz. and lasted till the 7. of November ensuing, in all 60. days. As also in his Voyage to the Duke of Wirtemberg, which began the 6. of September, an. 1. Jac. R. and ended with his return to Hampton-Court, on Christmas Eve following, and amounted to 109*l*. But an. 10. Jac. upon the carriage of the Habit over to Prince Maurice of Nassau, the allowance to Sir William Segar, Garter, was increased to 30*s*. a day: so much also was after allowed to the same Sir William Segar, when the Habit of the Order was sent over to Henry Prince of Orange, an. 2. Car. 1. viz. 15*s*. per diem, for his Dyet, and the same sum per diem by way of Reward.

Of this daily allowance Garter hath usually obtained an advance beforehand, for his better support by the way: For instance, he had an advance of two months pay for his Voyage towards Vienna, and when he accompanied the Lord Hunsdon into France, he had an advance also of 40*l*. In like manner when Clarenceux went in the Legation to the French King Henry the Third, he received a hundred Marks beforehand.

When any of the Heralds were sent in Garter's place, the same allowances were made them, as if Garter had gone in person; for we find the sum of 30*s*. a day allowed to Henry St. George Esq; Richmond Herald sent with the Earl of Carlisle to Charles King of Sweden, whither he began his Journey the 5. of February, an. 21. Car. 2. As also to Tho. St. George Esq; Somerset Herald, sent with Sir Tho. Higsons to the Duke of Saxony, upon the like Employment, the 27. of February following.

As concerning the allowance to such Officers of Arms, not joined in, but appointed to attend any of these Legations, it was as followeth.

If he were a Herald, his allowance was the moiety of what was given to Garter; to wit, heretofore 5*s*. per diem for his Dyet, and the like sum for the Sovereign's Reward, in toto 10*s*. per diem. And if a Pursuivant at Arms was sent on this Employment, his allowance was half as much per diem as an Herald had.

Agreeable hereunto was the allowance given to a Cheſter Herald, and Rouge Dragon Pursuivants in the Embaſſy to the French King Henry the Second, an. 5. E. 6. and there called the old Rate. So also to Somerset Herald, in the Voyage to Frederick the Second King of Denmark, and to the same Herald when he attended the Legation to the French King Henry the Third, and likewise in that Embaſſy to Henry the Fourth of France.

Moreover the Herald or Pursuivant had also a proportionable part of their daily allowances advanced beforehand, to fit them for their Journey, like as Garter had; as in the foresaid Legation to Henry the Third, Somerset Herald had an advance of an hundred Nobles.

Over and above the before mentioned allowances to Garter, for Diet and the Sovereign's Reward; he hath also an allowance for Postage, both outward and homeward, of himself and his Servants, and Transportation of the Habit of the Order, and other things necessary for the Voyage: And of this, because there can be no estimate made beforehand, whereby to ascertain any allowance for the same, it hath been usual to insert a Clause in the Sovereign's Warrants, including the allowances for these things, to be such as Garter (upon his return) should in a Bill of particulars, subscribed with his hand, signify to the Treasurer and Chamberlains of the Exchequer to have been disbursed by him.

The Warrant to furnish Garter or the Herald with Post-horses from place to place, is commonly had from the Lords of the Privy Council, or Secretary of State: as likewise for convenient Shipping, for the Transportation of himself, Servants, Trunks, and other necessities, when he passeth over Sea, either before or after the Lord Ambassador, and is not provided for in his Ship.

SECT. III.

The Ceremonies of Investiture.

THE Ceremonies observed at a *Stranger Prince's* Receipt of the whole Habit and Ensigns of the Order, are highly solemn, whether we consider the manner of *Investiture* performed by the *Sovereign's Ambassadors*, or the *Festivity* and *Triumphs* added by the new *Invested Stranger*; and therefore that nothing may hinder a full prospect into the state and magnificence of both, we shall handle the same at large; and give such instances thereof, as may illustrate so great a Solemnity.

First then, the *Commissioners* joined in the *Legation* (after their arrival at the *Elect-Stranger's* Court, and receiving notice of their first Audience) are to present themselves in the ^a accustomed manner of *Ambassadors*, *Gar-ter* or his *De-puty* going in breast with the chief in the *Legation*, if there be only himself joined in the *Commission* with the Lord *Ambassador*: and in that ^b place is it remembered, that *William Segar* Esq; *Norroy King of Arms* (sent in the place of *Gar-ter*) did proceed with the *Earl of Rutland*, at their first audience before *Christian* the Fourth King of *Denmark*.

Being arrived near the *Elect-Stranger*, they present the *Letters* ^c certifying ^{e Appendix, Num. CII.} *Election*, or their *Credential Letters* from the *Sovereign*; and after some short general Complement delivered from the *Sovereign* of the Order, by the chief *Ambassador* in the *Legation*, he further makes known how that the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* of the most Noble Order of the *Gar-ter*, have elected him ^a into that most renowned *Society*, for the reasons which are commonly laid ^b down in the Preamble of their *Commission*, and which he ought then to repeat; ^c further acquainting him, that the *Sovereign* doth never Elect any *Stranger* into the said *Society*, but such as he doth most highly honor and respect; and ^d therefore desires him, that he would accept of it, as a true testimony thereof; ^e to which end he adds, that the *Sovereign* hath sent him over, together with ^f *Gar-ter* Principal King of Arms (or his *Deputy*) to perform the Ceremony of *Investiture*. And this is the substance of his address for the general representation of his Affair.

But more particularly in this first speech, he is to prosecute the method and order laid down in his *Instructions*, concerning which we have some light from those given to the *Earl of Shrewsbury* upon his Embassy, with the whole *Habit* of the Order to the French King *Henry* the Fourth, which were as followeth.

“First, you shall let the *King* understand, that the *King* who was first *Insti-* ^{e Ex Colle. W. le N. C.} *tutor* of this Order, did principally dedicate the same to *Noble persons*, remarkable for extraordinary valour and command in martial Affairs; and as both *We* and *Our Predecessors* have usually bestowed it upon personages of highest Estate and dearest unto Us, so both these respects concurring in this *Election* of him (as that *Prince* whose preservation we have ever held most dear, and who liking personal valour and experience hath gotten to himself the greatest reputation by the same, that ever any *Prince* hath done in *Europe*) we have had no small desire long ere this time, to possess him of this further pledge of our perfect amity, being one of the greatest signs of honor, wherewith we can honor any *Prince*; and therefore do desire him to make no other judgment of the protraction of the same hitherto, but that his own uncertainties of residence, in regard of the continual actions of War, wherein he is daily engaged, hath given us cause to think, it would have come unseasonably unto him; when now that the *Treaties* and other Circumstances seem more fitting, we assure our self, that it shall be received with that sure measure of good will and kindness; wherewith we offer it; and as we take our self

“honored

“ honored by such and so choice a *Companion*, so can no *Prince* go before *Us* in
 “ *Our* true and perfect obligation, to the rights of all happiness in all his *Fortunes*.

f MS. in Offic.
 Arm. [L. v.]
 fol. 47. vide
 etiam Appen-
 dix, Num. CII.
 * Collect. E.
 W. G.

After the formality of this first address is over, and that the *Stranger* hath by his answer accepted of the Election, and consented to the reception of the Order; then doth the *Ambassador*, immediately^f deliver to him the *Book* of *Statutes* (that so he may peruse them before he assume the *Habit*) and desires his consideration thereupon: Next, both the Commissioners in the Legation present him with the *George* and *Ribband*, and put it about his Neck, for so did * Sir *James Spens* and Mr. *Henry St. George*, *Richmond Herald*, to *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden* the 21. of *September*, an. 3. *Car. 1.* and in the last place, the *Ambassador* moves him to be pleased to name both a fit time and place, for his consent to the *Articles* of the *Statutes*, and the reception of the *Habit*; which being appointed (after some further Complements) the *Ambassadors* depart for that time.

g. Preparati-
 ons for the In-
 vestiture.

In the interim, before the day of *Investiture*, time is usually set apart for Conference between the *Sovereign's Ambassadors*, and some of the *Elect-Princes* Council, touching the ordering of the Ceremonies at this great Solemnity, and wording the *Oath* to be by him taken, before he is invested (in case any Exceptions shall be made to the *general Oath* of the Order, or that the form thereof hath not been fully agreed upon beforehand) in relation to which we shall particularly discourse in the following Chapter.

g Self. 11.
 h MS. in Bibl.
 Cotton. [f. 5
 effig. Julii
 C. 9.]

^h *Garter* is likewise to consider, what places in the *Elect-Princes* Court (fittest to perform the Ceremonies in) are to be made ready, and in what manner; as also to instruct his Officers, what duties and services are on their part to be undertaken.

If the great *Hall*, or other large Room, be appointed for the place of *Investiture*, there ought to be prepared a *Table*, with a rich Carpet, whereon the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the Order are to be laid, during the reading of the *Sovereign's Commission* of Legation; with another *Table* for the *Stranger*, who receives the Order, and a third for the *Sovereign's Ambassadors*.

i Ibidem.

In the *Church* or *Chappel* into which the invested *Stranger* is to proceed, to hear Divine Service, is to be erected a *Stall* (under aⁱ Cloth of *State*) on the right hand entrance of the *Choir*, for the *Sovereign* of the Order, within which is to be fixed the *Majesty-Scutcheon* of the *Sovereign's Arms*, mentioned among the preparations made for the Legation.

Also another *stall* placed at that distance from the *Sovereign's Stall*, and on the same side of the *Choir*, as is the *stall* designed for the *Elect-Stranger*, in the *Choir* at *Windsor*; over which a *State* is likewise to be set, and within the *stall* fixt the other *Majesty-Scutcheon* of his own *Arms*, brought likewise over by *Garter* or his *Deputy*.

k MS. penes G.
 O. T. f. 239.
 l Collect. W. le
 N. Cl.

And lastly, a third *stall* for the Lord *Ambassador*, who (if he be a *Knight-Companion* of the Order) hath in like manner a *Scutcheon* of his own *Arms* within a *Garter*, set over it; for so had the^k *Marquess of Northampton*, at the *Investiture* of the French King *Henry the Second*, an. 5. *E. 6.* and the^l *Earl of Derby* at that of *Henry the Third*, and the *Constable of France* (being a *Knight-Companion* of the *Garter*) attending at the former of these two *Investitures*, in his whole *Habit*, had also a^m *Scutcheon* of his *Arms*, placed over the *stall* provided for him.

m Ex eod. MS.
 penes eund. G.
 O. T. bc. cit.

And we are further to note, that underneath all these *Scutcheons* of *Arms*, the *Stiles* and *Titles* (fairly written) of the *Sovereign* and each *Knight-Companion* are to be affixed.

n Collect.
 O. T. W. G.

But where there hath followed no solemn Proceeding to *Church* after *Investiture*, the *Sovereign's Scutcheon* of *Arms* with his *Titles* have been set up at the upper end of the Room where the *Investiture* was performed, so also the *Stranger-Knights* at due distance: for so was it done at the *Investiture* of * *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, which he received in his Tent at the Leaguer near *Darßlaw* in *Prussia* the 23. of *September*, an. 3. *Car. 1.* and likewise at the *Investiture* of || *John George* Duke of *Saxony*, the 13. of *April*, an. 22. *Car. 2.*

Howbeit

Besides the before mentioned Preparations, the Church or Chappel into which the new Invested *Stranger* proceeds, is to be richly adorned: This, for instance, we find done at the Investiture of Henry the Third, the French King, the Church of *Augustine Friars* in Paris, being hung with rich Arras, and all the *Choir* and *Stalls* with Cloth of Gold: and how the Church of St. *Ulrick* at *Stuttgart* was adorned at the reception of the *Habit* by *Frederick* Duke of *Wurtemberg* will appear by and by.

The day whereon the Solemnity of Investiture is to be celebrated, the *Elect* ^{3.} The order of Investiture. *Stranger* sends his Coach, and some persons of Quality to accompany the *Sovereign's Ambassadors* to his Court. At the Investiture of Henry Prince of Orange, ⁿ *Frederick* Prince Palatine of the *Rhine*, sat with Viscount *Charleton* in one Boot of the Prince's Coach, and Sir *William Segar* in the other; who arriving at the Court, were met by the said Prince, at the foot of the Stairs, and conducted thence into his great Chamber.

n⁵ Vide Gulio-
o² elmi Segar
Supremo Rela-
tionem, inter
Collecti. Wile
N. Cl.

After such time as the *Elect-Stranger* and the *Sovereign's Ambassadors* have a while retired, the *Stranger* hath usually first entered the Room, appointed for the Ceremony, and stood under his own *State*, expecting the coming in of the *Ambassadors*, and notice thereof being given them (they reposing themselves in a Room near unto it) forthwith proceeded in manner following.

Servants to the Lord *Ambassador*, two and two.

The *Herald* in his Coat of the *Sovereign's Arms*, bearing the *Mantle*, *Surcoat*, *Hood*, and *Cap* on his arms, and if there be a *Pursuivant* attending the *Embassy*, he (wearing his Coat) proceeds before him, bearing part of the said *Habit*.

Garter, vested in his rich Coat of the *Sovereign's Arms* also (but at the Investiture of the Duke of *Wurtemberg* he wore his *Robe* of Crimson Sattin, so did *Clarenceux* at the Investiture of the French King Henry the Third, and lastly *Richmond* and *Somersét* at the Investiture of Charles King of Sweden, and the Prince Elector of *Saxony*) bearing on a Cushen the *Garter*, the *Collar* of the Order, with the great *George*, the *Book* of *Statutes*, and the *Commission* of *Legation*.

p MS. in Bibl.
C. ten. [fab
effigie 7th 11]
C. 9.

Lastly, the Lord *Ambassador*, or chief in the *Embassy*, who, if he be a *Knight-Companion*, proceedeth in his compleat *Habit*.

If there happen to be any other *Knight-Companion* present at this high Solemnity, he also wears his whole *Habit* of the Order, as did *Frederick* Prince Palatine of the *Rhine*, at the Investiture of Henry Prince of Orange, an. 3. Car. 1. the like did the *Constable* of France, when the French King Henry the Second received the whole *Habit* at *Castlebriant* the 21. of June, an. 5. E. 6. The said *Constable* also paired in the Proceeding with the *Sovereign's Ambassador*, into the said Kings *Privy Chamber*, the place appointed for performing this Ceremony.

q Ex prof. Re-
lati ne.
r MS. penes G.
O. T. f. 220.

In this Proceeding up to the *Sovereign's State*, they all make three Reverences, and drawing near thereunto, the *Ambassador's Servants* fall off on either side, for the *Herald* to pass up to the *Table* set before the *Sovereign's State*, where being arrived (with a single Reverence) he lays down the *Robes* thereupon.

Then *Garter* draws near the *Table* also, and with a like Reverence towards the *Sovereign's State*, deposites there the *Ensigns* of the Order.

The Lord *Ambassador* follows and makes his Reverence towards the *Sovereign's State*, and after turning to the *Stranger-Elect*, and doing him Reverence, he (or some other fit person thereto appointed) delivers himself in a short, but grave and learned, *Oration*; "In which he not only sets forth the praises of the most illustrious Order, and of the King the *Sovereign* thereof (his Majesties hearty affection and good will appearing in this Action) but also the virtues, the memorable and praise worthy Actions of the *Elect-Stranger*, to whom the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the Order are sent: neither are his Ancestors (if happily any of them have attained and enjoyed the honor, reputation, and dignity of this Order) to be pass'd over in silence; whereby his heart (already sufficiently of it self breathing impatience and desire) may be so much the more inflamed with an earnestness to obtain the honor and favour of this so great a dignity.

"He adds beside, that the *Sovereign* having well weighed these and the like things in his mind, and maturely advised thereof with his *Knight-Companions*

"mious; they were perswaded and well satisfied in themselves to nominate and chuse him before others, to the end that he might both himself be honored by the choice of such a person, and also thereby give an encrease and addition of Lustre to those renowned actions and virtues, which already were a chief ornament unto him.

"Lastly, he points towards the *Ensigns* of the *Order*, which he declares to have been sent by the *Sovereign*, out of great love and singular affection to dignifie him therewith, as to a person unto whom he wisht as well and honorably as to any other *Prince* whatsoever: and withall intreats him kindly to accept of, and wear them in remembrance of the *Sovereign* and his *Order*.

w Ibid.

This, w or the like *Oration* being ended, the *Ambassadors* present their *Commission* of *Legation* to the hands of the *Elect-Stranger*, who delivers it to his *secretary*, and he publickly reads it.

x MS. in Bibl. Civ. n. [sub] Effig. Julii C. 9.]

At the before mentioned *Investiture* of the *French King Henry* the Second, the *Bishop of Ely*, one of the *Commissioners* in the *Legation*, made the *Speech*, to which the *Cardinal of Loraine* returned answer, in the said *Kings* behalf, with all thankful acknowledgments of the honor of the *Order*.

y Colles. W. le N. Cl.

And when *Henry* the Third of *France* received the *Habit* of the *Order*, y Sir *Edward Stafford*, the *Sovereign's* *Leiger Ambassador*, performed this service.

z Appendix, Num. CII.

After the *Commission* is read, *Garter* presents the *Oath*, fairly written, which is administred to the *Elect-Stranger*, where if any exceptions were beforemade and admitted, they must be here rehearsed; as we find it directed in the *In-structions* given for the *Investiture* of *James* the Fifth King of *Scotland*.

* Lib. C. p. 97.

But the *Oath* was not taken by the *French King Henry* the Third, till after his *Investiture*, and in the *Augustine Fryers Church* in *Paris*; which being before prepared and written on *Parchment* in *Letters of Gold*; the said *King* there * signed it, by the subscription of his name [*Henry*] and then delivered it to his *Secretary*, to have his *Privy Seal* put to it. So also was the *Duke of Wirtemberg*, an. 1. Jac. a first *Invested* in his great Hall at *Stutigard*, and then proceeded to the great *Church*, b where he took the *Oath*.

a Erhard Cel- lun Eq. Aur. Angli W. remb. p. 121. Et 135. b Ibid. 153. c Lib. N. p. 310.

The c Ceremony of the *Oath* being finished, *Garter* takes from off the Cushen the *Garter*, and having kil'd it, presents it to the *Lord Ambassador*, who kneeling down, puts it with all Reverence about the *Stranger's* left leg, being assisted by *Garter*, and therewithall d *Garter* pronounceth these words of *Signification*.

d Colles. W. le N. Cl.

e Lib. N. p. 310

"Ad laudem atq; honorem Omnipotentis Dei, intemeratæ Matris ejus, & Sancti Georgii Martyris; cinge Tibiam tuam hoc insigni subligaculo, circumferens in augmentum honoris tui, & in signum ac memoriam illustrissimi Ordinis, nusquam oblivioni daturus, aut omisurus, quod eo moneris; ut valeas, inquam, & velis in justo bello, quod solum inibis, stare firmiter, agere fortiter, & feliciter omnino vincere.

f Colles. W. le N. Cl.

This being said, *Garter* next takes the *Surcoat*, and delivers it with the Ceremony of a Kiss to the *Lord Ambassador*, who (after the *Elect-Stranger* hath put off his Cloak, or upper Garment and Sword) puts it upon him in this manner: First the f *Lord Ambassador* begins at the *Stranger's* right arm, and *Garter* (or the *Leiger Ambassador* if present) assists at the left shoulder. The *Stranger* being thus vested with the *surcoat*, both the *Lord Ambassador* and *Garter* gird his *Sword* about him, with a *Velvet Girdle* of the same colour, at the doing whereof *Garter* saith these words.

g Lib. N. p. 310.

"Capito vestem hanc purpuream, ad incrementum honoris, & in signaculum Ordinis accepti: quâ munitus non vereberis pro fide Christi, libertate Ecclesiæ, pro jure, & oppressorum atq; indigentium necessaria tuitione, sanguinem etiam fundere, necdum fortiter ac strenue dimicare.

After this, *Garter* takes up the *Mantle* and *Hood*, which having in like manner kilied, he delivers to the *Lord Ambassador*, who invests the *Stranger* there- with

with, and lays the Hood upon his^h right shoulder (the Train being given into the hands of some noble Personage, to be born up) Garter also pronouncing these words.

^h MS. in Offic. Arm. [L. 1. f. 47.] vide MS. penes G. O. T. f. 239.

ⁱ Accipe Clamidem hanc Celici coloris, in Signum Clarissimi hujus Ordinis, & in augmentum etiam honoris tui, rubeo Clypeo Dominica Crucis, uti cernis, insignitam: ut cujus virtute semper ac vigore protectus per Hostes tutus abeas, eos ubiq; superare valeas, & pro clarissimis deniq; meritis, post egregiam hanc hujus temporis militiam, ad aeterna verèq; triumphalia gaudia pertingas.

ⁱ Lib.N. loco cit.

And in the last place, Garter takes up the Collar, and with a Kiss also, presents it to the Lord Ambassador, who placeth it about the stranger's shoulders, at which part of the Investiture Garter uttereth these words.

^k Torquem hunc in Collo deferres, ad augmentum honoris, & in signum quoq; clarissimi Ordinis à te suscepti, cum imagine sanctissimi Martyris, & Christi Militis Georgii: cujus praesidio suffultus, Mundi hujus tam prospera quàm adversa sic pertranscas, ut animæ pariter ac corporis hostibus hic strenue devictis, non temporarie modo Militiæ gloriam, sed & perennis victoriæ palmam deniq; recipere valeas. Amen.

^k Ibid. 311.

As soon as this Ceremony of Investiture is finished, the Lord Ambassador congratulath the new invested stranger in the Sovereign's name, and in the name of all the Knights-Companions; and then delivers to him his Velvet Cap, adorned with White Plumes, and next the Book of Statutes.

By the Instructions drawn up for the Investiture of ^l Julianus de Medicis, and ^m James the Fifth King of Scotland (though the form of the words of Admonition and Signification, are therein more briefly couched) it may be observ'd, that this was the ancient series and order of Investiture, and was performedⁿ all together, and^o before the stranger proceeded to the Church.

^l § Appendix, m. Num. Cl. & CII.

The Stranger being thus Invested, stayeth a while in the Room, where he received this honor, and either discourseth with the Ambassador, or else is entertained by him, with some short congratulatory Oration: which Complement being ended, he goeth to the Church in a solemn manner, having the Train of his Mantle carried up.

ⁿ MS. in Offic. Arm. [L. 1. f. 47.] vide MS. penes G. O. T. p. 156. in the case of the Emperor Maximilian, and fol. 239. in that of the French King Henry the Second.

The Proceeding to the Chappel, after the Investiture of the French King Henry the Second.

^p Gentlemen of France and England.

Noblemen of France and England.

Knights of the Order of St. Michael in their Collars.

Commissioners of England, where Sir John Mason placed himself with Monsieur de Ombale, above the other Commissioners, because he was the Sovereign's Ambassador Resident.

Chester Herald, in the Sovereign's Coat of Arms.

Marquess of Northampton, and Constable of France.

Serjeants at Arms.

Garter in the Sovereign's Coat of Arms.

Cardinal of
Chattillion.

The French King in the Habit
of the Order of the Garter.

The Cardinal
of Lorraine.

His Train born by the Duke of Longueville,
as great Chamberlain of France.

^p MS. in Bibl. Cotton. [sub. effig. Julii] C. 9. vide MS. penes G. O. T. f. 239.

At the entrance into the Church, all in the Procession make three Reverences, the first towards the high Altar, the next towards the Sovereign's Stall, and the third towards the new-invested stranger's Stall.

The Lord Ambassador proceedeth towards the Seat assigned for him, and stands before

D d d 2

before it till the Stranger hath ascended his Stall, and after that (making his Reverences as before) he takes his; then *Garter*, making the like Reverences, sits down on a Chair, placed for him before the *Sovereign's* Stall.

But the *Herald at Arms* ought to be often neer the *Stranger*, or else the Lord *Ambassador*, to inform them of the order of the *Ceremony*, if there be occasion; because *Garter* is obliged to attend the *Sovereign's* Royal Stall.

After a solemn *Anthem* sung, *Garter* passeth into the middle of the *Choir*, and by a Reverence, first to the Invested *Stranger*, and next to the Lord *Ambassador*, gives them the Signal for descending.

They being both come down, *Garter* passeth up before the *Stranger* to the high Altar, where he makes his *Offring* of Gold and Silver, being accompanied with the Lord *Ambassador*, the *Herald* laying the Cushen whereon he kneels while he offers.

But in case a *Knight-Companion* of the Order be sent on this *Legation*, then he proceeds first up to the Altar, preceded by *Garter*, and offers for the *Sovereign*, which done, he returns to his own Stall: Next the Invested *Stranger* proceeds up (preceded as before) and offers, and returns back to his own Stall; afterwards the foresaid *Knight-Companion* proceeds up again, and at this time offers for himself: and in this order was the *Offring* made, when the Emperor *Maximilian* was Invested at *Vienna*, the 4. of *January*, an. 10. *Eliz.*

MS. penes G.
O. 7. f. 156.

t Ibidem.
u fol. 239.
w c

At the *Investiture* of the French King *Henry* the Second, there was a solemn *Mass* sung, and at the *Offring* time *Garter* proceeded before the King to the Altar, and Monsieur *Dangennes* the Duke of *Vendosme's* Brother, presented to the King his *Offring*; and when he was returned to his Stall, the *Constable* of *France* proceeded up with *Garter* before him, and offered; and in like manner after him the *Marquess* of *Northampton*, with *Garter* also before him, made his *Offring* and returned to his Stall.

The new-invested *Stranger* having offered, returns to his Stall, and the Lord *Ambassador*, with three Reverences takes his Seat, the Organs or other Musick, playing all the while.

As soon as the solemn Service is finished, the *Stranger* descends again from his Stall, and with the Proceeding before him, returns in the same order he came, to the Room where he received his *Investiture*.

x Ibid. f. 110.

And it is observable that the Emperor *Maximilian*, out of compliance with the *Protestant Religion*, caused on the day of his *Investiture*, all *Prayers to Saints*, *Incensing*, and other matters and Ceremonies, not used by the Church of *England*, to be wholly omitted at the service in his *Chappel*.

y Ex Autogr. in
Bibl. Hatton.

At these great Solemnities, the invested *Strangers* have heretofore held most magnificent *Festivals*, but they of late are not so much in use: And when Dinner was ready they proceeded thither in their whole *Habit*, which they wore all Dinner while.

z See MS. W.
* See N. Cl.
a MS. in Of-
b MS. Arm.
[118.] circa
medium.

At the *Investiture* of *Christian* the Fourth King of *Denmark*, an. 1. *Jac.* the *Sovereign's* *Stiles* and *Titles* of honor were proclaimed thrice (* before they sat down to Dinner) and the said *Kings* twice: But when * *Maurice* and * *Henry* Princes of *Orange* received *Investiture*, the *Stiles* were proclaimed immediately after they were *Invested*, and in the same Room, that Ceremony being performed to both in an Afternoon.

c Penes Job.
Vincent gen.

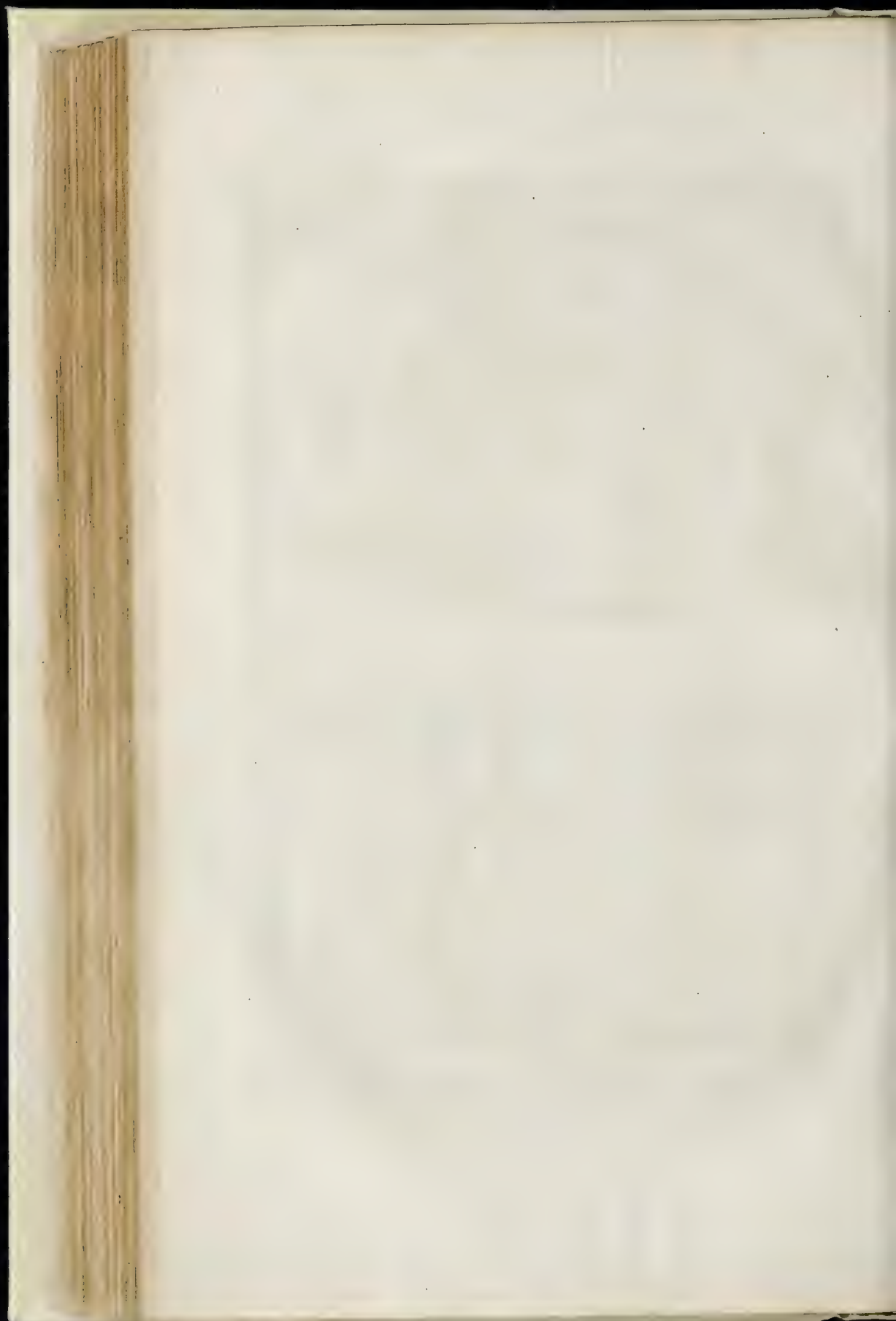
We have had the perusal of a fair Vellom Manuscript, wherein there is very curiously limned the order and manner of *Maximilian* the First (King of the *Romans*) his sitting at Dinner, on the day of his *Investiture* with the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the Order, together with Sir *Charles Somerset* and Sir *Thomas Wriothesley*, sent on the *Embassy* to present him therewith. As also the order observed of sitting at Dinner by Don *Ferdinand* Prince of *Spain*, Arch-Duke of *Austria*, on the like solemn occasion; the Lord *Morley* and Sir *William Hussey* sitting on his right hand, and Doctor *Lee* and the said Sir *Thomas Wriothesley* on his left, these four being joined in the *Commission* of *Legation* to him; which two Draughts for Antiquity's sake, we have copied thence, and thought good here to exhibit.



The Manner of sitting at Dinner of Maximilian king of the Romans, on the day of his Investiture.



The Manner of sitting at Dinner of Ferdinand Prince of Spain, on the day of his Investiture



At the Feast made on the like occasion by the French King Henry the Second, he^d admitted to his Table, (beside the Marquess of Northampton, the principal person in the Legation) the before mentioned Constable of France; and all three sat in their full Robes of the Garter, which they^e put not off till after Dinner: The^f Cardinal of Loraine, sat also at the Kings Table, but it was on the other side.

When the Investiture hath been performed in the Afternoon, then was the grand Dinner turned into a Supper; and thus it fell out at the Investiture of ^g Maximilian the Emperor, and two of the French Kings, namely ^h Charles the Ninth, and ⁱ Henry the Third, as also of ^k Maurice Prince of Orange.

But when Henry Prince of Orange received the Ensigns of the Order, there was no Feast at all, but purposely omitted, to prevent the difference which might have been occasioned, by ^k the precedency and place between Ambassadors, drinking of Healths, and other Complements. Only the next day, the said Prince invited^l Garter to Dinner, who sat on the same side with him, yet at a^m convenient distance, and on the other side of the Table were placed, ⁿ Count Lodowick of Nassau, and Collonel Bogg a Scotchman.

Thus have we briefly touched at the most material particulars, relating to the Investiture of Strangers; of which Solemnity, and the honor they derived from it, some have thought fit to transmit the memory to Posterity, by Medals, with Inscriptions relating thereto. Such were those of Gold and Silver, which Frederick Duke of Wirtemberg caused to be made, ^o having on one side his Effigies, and on the other the Arms of stuttgart (his chief City) and over them the imperial Eagle crowned; some of which were preserved, and others dispersed abroad, for a perpetual commemoration of that solemn act of his Investiture, with the Habit and Ensigns of the Order. So also those made by Charles King of Sweden at his Investiture, emblematically pointing out the happy concord settled between the Crowns, both of this and that Kingdom, being copied out and here inserted.



What is wanting in the course of the Solemnity on the day of Investiture, may be supplied from the large account we shall give of the Ceremonies on the Eve and Feast-day of St. George; from whence many things may be transferr'd to their use, who shall be employed abroad upon the Like Legations.

Yet for their sakes, whose curiosity will like a more particular account of the Solemnities in Foreign parts, we have thought fit to insert here the Relations of some eminent Investitures, wherein several passages may seem remarkable enough, while drawn together in a continued Narrative, but perhaps would not appear so, if taken asunder; nor indeed can divers minute things (in some kind worthy of knowledge) be precisely referr'd to those few heads we have chosen to discourse of, without too much straining.

A Relation of the manner of investing the French King Henry the Third, with the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the most Noble Order of the Garter, *An. Dom. 1585.*

called, W. le
N. G.

HENRY Earl of Derby, appointed by her Majesty, Ambassador to Henry the Third French King, and to invest him with the Order of the Garter, took his leave of the Queen's Majesty at Greenwich the 20. of January, an. 27. Eliz. and with him, such Gentlemen as were present, were admitted to kiss her Highness hand; Mr. Cook, Clarenceux, appointed to attend in that Voyage, in place of Garter, whose room was void, and Robert Glover, Somerset Herald, likewise appointed to that Journey.

On the 26. of January, the Earl, with his Train, passed from London to Gravesend, where taking Post-Horses they rid to Sittingborne, and from thence to Dover, where they embarked, and landed at Callis, on the first of February; on the third of February the Earl with his whole Train went from Callis to Boloigne to Bed, where they were very well entertained; On the fourth of February they rid to Montreuil, on the fifth to Abbevil, where they were met with 150 shot of Hacquebushers: On the sixth they took their Journey to Amyens, being by Monsieur Crevecoeur, accompanied with 100 Gentlemen, and best Citizens, met half a Mile without the Town; that night the said Crevecoeur presented the Earl, with great store of very large and good Fresh-water Fish, and the Town with Wine of divers sorts, and the day following, being Sunday, the said Crevecoeur invited the Earl to Dinner, which Dinner was highly commended; after Dinner the Earl with his Train went to Breteuil to Bed, the next night to Cleremont, where they stayed Tuesday, and Wednesday, the tenth of February he went to Luserche; on the eleventh to St. Dennis, where by the way he was met by Sir Edward Stafford, her Majesties Ambassador, resident with the French King, who brought with him divers Gentlemen of England, to the number of thirty horse, and so accompanied him to St. Dennis, where they kept Company all the day following, being Friday.

On Saturday his honor made his Entry into Paris, about two or three of the Clock at Afternoon, there being of the Lord Ambassadors Train more than two hundred horse, and mid-way between St. Dennis and Paris there met with them (sent from the King) the Duke of Montpensier, a Prince of the blood; the Lords Chauigny, le Chapelle, Comte de Lude, de Pienne, de Malicorne, de la Mothefelon, who had sometimes been Ambassador Leiger in England, D'estree, d'Abin, de Fontaines de Cornuillon, the Marquess of Curton, the Comte de Grignan, all Councillors to the Council, and Knights of the Holy Ghost, the Duke of Iremouille, the Counts of Brisac, de Creance, Sancerre, and of Lazure, with a great number of Lords and Barons, Gentlemen of the Chamber; these did accompany the Earl of Derby, unto Hostell de Longueville, sometime called the Hostell of Anjou, there was his Lordship with the other Lords and Gentlemen lodged, where was three Tables very sumptuously furnished for them, all of the Kings cost; the one Table in the great Chamber, for the Lords and Gentlemen, Servants to her Majesty; the other in the Hall, for the Earl of Derby's Gentlemen; and a third in a Gallery beneath, for Gentlemen Servants, besides livery into every Chamber, both of Wax, Wood, Wine, and such like, in as great plenty as could be desired.

On Sunday, the said Earl, betwixt the hours of two and three in the Afternoon, went from his Lodging by a Postern, through the Garden, accompanied with the said Lords de la Mothefelon, de Curton, and Grignan, together with others, and and found the Captains of the Regiment of the Kings Guard, making two ranks on either side of the streets, beginning from the Postern to the Louvre Gate, who welcomed him in the Kings behalf; without the Gate of the said Louvre he was received by the Lieutenant of the great Provost of France, and his Archers; at the Louvre Gate by the sire de Montigny, Captain thereof to his Majesty, and his Archers; which Archers, together with those of the great Provost, made two ranks from the said

Gate

Gate of the Louvre to the foot of the Stairs, from which foot his Lordship was received by the Sire de Pardillon, the French Lieutenant of the Switzers, of the Kings Guard, which from the foot of the said Stairs to the door of the Hall, made two ranks for his Lordships passage; at the entrance of the Hall his Lordship was received by the Sire de Chateau Vieux, Knight of the Holy Ghost, and Captain of Archers of the Kings Guard, who likewise from the said door unto the door of the Antichamber, made two ranks; from the door of the Antichamber his Lordship was received by Sire de Combault, Knight of the Holy Ghost, Chief Master de Hostell to his Majesty, and by his Gentlemen Waiters, and there in the said Antichamber all the said Earl of Derby's Officers and Gentlemen, wearing Liveries, were appointed to stay; and the Queens Servants that proceeded next went still forward; at the Entry of the Chamber of Estate, his Lordship was received by the Sire de Lenoncourt, Knight of the Holy Ghost, chief Ecuier of the Kings Ecurie, and the other Ecuier of the Ecurie, together with the Lieutenant of the hundred Gentlemen of his Majesty, who made two ranks from that Chamber door to the Chamber of Audience, every of them having Halberts in their hands; at the Entrance of the Antichamber his Lordship was received by the Duke Joyeuse, accompanied with the Gentlemen of the Kings Chamber Ordinary, who made two ranks from that Chamber door, to the door of the Chamber Royal, into the said Chamber Royal.

First entred all the Gentlemen, the Queen's Majesty's Servants, the Lords that had received and accompanied the said Earl, and Lords, and the said Duke de Joyeuse, accompanied the said Earl of Derby unto the Bars, that stood about the bault-pace or mounting floor in the said Chamber, where the King stood at his Beds feet, accompanied with the said Barriers on his right hand, with the Cardinals of Bourbon, Vandosme, and Joyeuse, and on the left hand with the Lords, the Princes of Conty, the Comte de Soissons, and D. Montpensier, Princes of the Blood, the Dukes of Nevers, Delbœuse, de la Joinuille, de Retz, Monsieur le Chancelleur, sior de Villequier, du Bouchage, de la Valette, d'Antragues, de la Chappelle aux Ursus, Chavigny, la Vivone, Comte de Mauleurier, Clermont, Denitragues, de l'Archant, and other Knights of the Holy Ghost, and Councillors of the Estates in great number.

The said Earl with the Lord Ambassador Ordinary of England, only entred the said halt-space within the Barriers unto his Majesty, of whom they were received with great curtesie, and as amiable countenance as could be; and the Earl delivered the Queen's Majesty's Letters unto the King, with great reverence, and then making rehearsal of that he had in charge to say, the said Ambassador presented unto the King the Lord Sands and Windfore, and other the English Knights and Gentlemen, which all one after another mounted upon the halt-pace, kissed their hands, and did reverence unto the King. Then the Earl took his leave, and was conducted by all the Lords and Captains unto the place where they had first received him.

After, he went to salute the Queen Mother, and at the entrance into her Chamber he was received by Monsieur de Lanfac, Knight of the Holy Ghost, and Knight of Honor unto the said Queen, whom he found accompanied with her Neece, the Princess of Loraine standing at her Beds head, the Princess of Conde and the Dutcheß of Nevers standing at the Beds feet, the Dutcheß of Duzez and of Retz, and other Ladies and Gentlewomen in great number; from thence his Lordship was conveyed to the Queen Regents Chamber, and at the entrance whereof he was received by the Comte de Fiesque, Knight of the Holy Ghost, and her Knight of Honor, finding her accompanied with the Dutcheß of Montpensier, and Joyeuse who stood at her Beds feet, the Lady of Royden her Lady of Honor, and other Ladies and Gentlewomen in great number, and then returned to the aforesaid Hostell de Longueville.

On Monday the 15. of February, the King by Monsieur de Motheselon, told the Lord Ambassador his mind, touching the receipt of the Order, that he intended to receive it on Thursday following, in the Afternoon at the Augustine Friars, which was done accordingly, the 18. day of February, an. 27. Eliz.

About two of the Clock in the Afternoon, the Earl and Leiger Ambassador, and all the other Gentlemen of their Train, in Coaches, were conducted from the house of Longueville

Longueville, where the Earl of Derby was lodged, unto the house of Monsieur de Mantuliet, Provost of Paris, where the Earl did put on his Robes of the Garter, and Clarenceux then representing the place of Garter, did put on his Mantle, and made ready the Kings Robes. The King also with a great number of his Nobility came from the Louvre to the same house of Mantuliet, for whom there was provided two Chambers, in the inner Chamber over the Chimney was set up a Cloth of Estate, and on the left hand thereof a board covered with a rich Carpet; against the end of which board the King did stand in a short Gown of rich Taffata, having on either hand of him some sixteen of the greatest of his Nobility, the rest abode in the outward Chamber (for so was the Kings pleasure) that there might be the more room, and freer access for the Earl, and the English Noblemen and Gentlemen; all things being put in good order, the King sent the Earl word by Monsieur Lamothe, Fluelon, and Monsieur de Rhoades, Master of the Ceremonies that he stayed for him.

Whereupon thirty of the English Gentlemen, accompanied with as many French Gentlemen, proceeded two and two together up the Stairs before the Earl, towards the King, then marched Somerset Herald in his rich Coat of Arms, bearing on his Arms the Kings Kirtle, Mantle, and Hood; after him went Clarenceux in a Robe of Crimson Sattin; having on his arms a fair large Cushen of Purple Velvet, and thereon the Collar of the Order of the Garter, and the little Chain with the George. After Clarenceux went the Earl in his Robes, and the Ambassador Resident: And being thus come before the King, Somerset (after due reverence) laid the Robe he bare upon the Table, that the King leaned unto, so also did Clarenceux the Cushen, with the Jewels thereon. The Earl also being entred, and having made his due reverence, Clarenceux delivered him his Commission, who giving the same reverently to the King, he forthwith gave it to his Secretary Pinart to be read, according to the form: Though at that time it was not read at all.

That done, Clarenceux delivered unto the Ambassador the Garter, who gave it unto the King, who also kissing the same kneeling, did put it about the Kings left leg, the Ambassador pronouncing these words following.

* See before
: 402.

* Ad laudem atq; honorem Omnipotentis Dei, &c.

That being done, Clarenceux kissing the Kirtle of Crimson Velvet gave it to the Ambassador, who also delivered it to the Earl, and he to the King, putting the same on with a Crimson Velvet Girdle, whereunto was put a gilt Rapier; which Girdle and Rapier was formerly provided by a Gentleman of the Kings Chamber, at the doing whereof the Ambassador pronounced these words following.

Page 403.

|| Capito Vestem hanc purpuream, &c.

The Kirtle being put on, Clarenceux delivered the Mantle of Purple Velvet, and the Hood of Crimson Velvet, which the Earl put upon the King also with the assistance of the Ambassador, that pronounced these words following.

¶ Ibid.

* Accipe Clamidem hanc Cœlici coloris, &c.

Lastly, Clarenceux kissing the Collar of Gold, gave the same also to be put about the Kings neck, which was done by the Earl, the Ambassador using these words following.

¶ Ibid.

|| Torquem hunc in Collo deferes, &c.

After the King was thus invested with all the Habilements of the Order as aforesaid, the Earl delivered unto him, first the Book of Statutes of the said Order fairly bound in Crimson Velvet, and Gold Lace; which Book the King gave to the Duke of Joyeuse, to carry after him to the Church; and lastly, the small Chain with the George, which was by the Earl delivered to the King, which also was delivered by him to the Duke of Joyeuse.

Thefe

These Duties thus performed, the King standing invested with his Robes, and the Earl likewise by him, the Ambassador for and in the name of the Earl (for want of the Language) used a Speech to this effect.

"Sir, we rejoice greatly, to see your Majesty now invested into this honorable Society and Order of the Garter, desiring of God, that long and most happily you may wear and use the same to his Glory, and the advancement of your own greatness, equal with all your Predecessors, being right well assured (for so hath her Majesty commanded my Lord to say unto you) that if her Highness, and the residue of the Knights of this Order, certainly had understood of the day and time of this your Majesties reception of the same, both she, and all they would not have failed, in their Robes, to celebrate this day, in token of the honor and prosperous success they wish unto your Royal Person.

When the King had thus received the Order, and was invested as aforesaid, he proceeded to the Church of the Augustines; some 15 or 20. score off to Even-song, being about 4 of the Clock, the way being all railed in with Timber, and gravelled with fine sand, and guarded on each side with the Kings several Guards, that the Train might not be troubled in proceeding.

The body of the Church was hanged with rich Arras, and all the Choire of the same Church and Stalls with Cloth of Gold. At the entry of the Choire was erected two Cloths of State, one for the Queens Majesty, and that was over the Stall on the right hand of the same Choire, and the other for the French King, and that was over the Stall, next unto the Queens Majesty, on the left hand; within these two States royal were affixed the Arms of these two Princes, viz. over the Queens Stall the Arms of England and France quarterly, and over the Kings Stall the Arms of France, both within the Garter, and set in Frames of Wood richly gilt. The Earls Stall was about eleven stalls beneath her Majesties, and on the same side, whereon was also affixed the Earls Arms within the Garter, and his Stile fairly written under them; directly before the Queens Cloth of State was placed a Form, covered all with Cloth of Gold, for Mr. Clarenceux to sit upon, during the time of Even-song.

At the right side of the Altar within the same Choire was made a place of bords scaffoldwise, two yards high from the Ground, covered with rich Carpets, and hanged with Cloth of Gold, whereon was placed the Queen Mother, and Queen Regnant with other Ladies and great Princes, and directly on the other side against them was another place made, and erected, whereon stood the Popes Nuntio, with the Cardinals, and all the Ambassadors that then were in Paris.

All things being thus put in Order at the Church, and all persons placed therein according to their Degrees, the King proceeded thither in this sort following.

First, Trumpets and Drums.

Then thirty English Gentlemen, accompanied by the Kings especial order and care, with thirty French Gentlemen, of equal or better degree.

Then the Lord Windesfor, with a French Lord.

Then the Lord Sands, so also accompanied.

Then Serjeants at Arms with their Maces.

Then Somerset Herald at Arms.

Then Clarenceux.

Then the Ambassador Leiger Sir Edward Stafford.

And then the Earl of Darby Chief Commissioner.

After him followed the King, his Train being born by a Brother of the Duke of Joyeuse, being a Gentleman of the Kings Privy Chamber.

And after the King came the Princes of the Blood Royal.

Then Dukes, Marquesses, Earls, and other Noblemen.

Note, That the King had specially ordered, that for her Majesties special Honor, none should that day proceed before him, but English and such French as were ordered to go with them, and his own Nobility to wait behind him.

Note also that all personages of the Order of the Holy Spirit, went next to the King in their Cloaks of the Order, and Collars of Gold about their necks of the same Order, the person of the King was guarded all the way, by a number of Gentlemen Pensioners, with their Poll-axes in their hands.

In this order, the King with his Train entred the Church, and in the entring in of the Chaire, Somerset Herald in his rich Coat of Arms made his three Reverences, the first towards the Altar, as it was formerly agreed upon before by the Lord Ambassador. Secondly, towards the Queens Stall. Thirdly, towards the Kings stall.

And after him, Clarenceux entring the same Chaire did the like. Then the Ambassador Leiger, then the Earl; which done, the said Earl went before his own Stall, and there stayed till the King had taken his Stall Royal, and then the Earl making his Reverence as before went up into his Stall.

After him the Ambassador Leiger did the like, and went into the Stall next beneath the Earl, towards the High Altar; Then Clarenceux having made the like Reverence, sat him down on his Form placed as aforesaid, directly against the Queen's Stall, where he remained till the Chaire began to sing Magnificat.

At which time he stepped forward into the midst of the Chaire, and there making his three Reverences, as aforesaid, turned himself to the Earl and Leiger Ambassador, then the Ambassador came forth of his Stall, and making his three Reverences, followed Clarenceux over the Chaire towards the King, and there stayed afore the Kings Stall, until Clarenceux returned and fetched the Earl unto him, who making his three Reverences, came also with Clarenceux before the King, to the right side of his Stall, where standing, Clarenceux delivered the Oath, fairly written in Parchment and Letters of Gold, which by the Earl was laid before the King to be signed, the Ambassador Leiger being ready to have read it (but that the King said it needed not, because he was privy to it before) who taking it in his hands, received of his Secretary Pinart a Pen with Ink, and therewith did subscribe his Name, only by the Name of Henry, which done, he gave the same unto the said Secretary, to have the Privy Seal put thereto, which was done accordingly, and the next day delivered to Clarenceux.

After the King had thus taken his Oath, as aforesaid, the Earl and the Ambassador with Clarenceux before them, returned back to their Stalls, not omitting three Reverences, and there remained till the end of Even-song, at which time the King standing up in his Stall, being ready to depart, with all the other Strangers Ambassadors, presented themselves before him, with words of special Congratulation, to whom he gave several thanks and answers, and so departing out of the Church, in the same order as he came thither, he returned again to the House of Mantuliet, where in the same Chamber as he had put the Robes on, he put them off, and after some speeches with the Earl, and Ambassador some Quarter of an Hour or thereabouts, he departed with his Nobility over the Water to the Louvre, leaving the Earl and Ambassador, and all their Trains, to return in their Coaches through Paris to the House of Longueville.

The same night, the Earl with the Lord Ambassador, and all the English Gentlemen that were the Queens Servants, did sup at the Court, the Earl and the Ambassador at the lower end of the Kings Table, at which Board did also sit with the King the two Queens, and six or seven other great Ladies, among whom the Lady Sheffield was one, and at another Table in the same Chamber did sit divers great Ladies all along one side, and over against them the Lord Sands, the Lord Winderfor, and the other English Gentlemen. Supper being ended, and the place ordained for dancing, the King took his Wife by the hand, and danced with her; the like did divers other great Lords and Ladies of France, and lastly, three English Gentlemen; I omit the description of the Masque, and other singular Musick both costly and curious, whereby the Evening was spent till three of the Clock the next morning.

*On the 28. of February, the Ambassador with his Train took their leave, at whose return from the Court to his Lodging, he was presented that night with a rich Cupboard of Plate, worth 1200*l.* at the least, and unto Mr. Clarenceux*

was

was given a Chain of Gold worth 120 l. and better, of 236 links; to Master Somerset a Chain of 150 links, worth 100 Marks; and to Thomas Milles a Chain of the same value.

On Thursday next, the Earl with his Train set forward homeward, from Paris unto St. Dennis, and so were lodged all the way in the same Lodgings that before they had been received in, and arrived prosperously in England, from Boloigne to Dover, the 12. of March, and on the Tuesday following were brought to the Queen's Majesty's presence at Greenwich, who graciously welcomed them home.

A Relation of that pompous Solemnity, celebrated at the Duke of Wirtemberg's Investiture with the Habit and Ensigns of the most Noble Order of the Garter, an. 1. Jac. R. extracted out of Erhardus Cellius his *Eques Auratus Anglo-Wirtembergicus*.

Robert Lord Spencer of Wormleiton, and Sir Gilbert Dethick Knight, Garter Principal King of Arms, were joined in Commission, bearing Teste at Woodstock, the 18. day of September, an. 1. Jac. R. to present and invest Frederick Duke of Wirtemberg and Teck, with the Habit and Ensigns of the most Noble Order of the Garter.

They began their Journey in the beginning of October, an. 1603. and came to the City of Stutgard the second of November following.

Upon their arrival, they presented their Credential Letters, which being read, the said Duke began to treat the Ambassadors with the highest respect imaginable, and to put all things into a readiness for his solemn reception of the Ornaments of the Order. To which end, he sent for his three Sons, with their Tutors, from the Castle of Tubing, where they followed their Studies, to be present at this Solemnity; likewise he ordered the Vice-President and twelve Assistants of his Ducal Consistory, and all the principal and most noble Persons of his Court to be present. Lib. 4. p. 122.

Moreover, he appointed an English Lord, and the Lord Benjamin Buwinkshausin, one of his Privy Council, to be the principal Contrivers, Directors, and Managers of all things that should belong to the setting forth of this Solemnity; for the performance of which, two places were especially allotted, prepared, and adorned, namely the great Church of Stutguard where the Investiture was to be conferr'd, and the great Hall of the Castle called from hence Hypocaultrum Equestre, whence the Proceeding was to begin, and pass toward the Church. Pag. 123.

At the entrance of the Choir were four stately Stalls erected with their Canopies, Footstools, and ascents on each side, and covered with Velvet; the first Stall was assigned to the Sovereign of the Order, on the back side whereof his Majesties Arms and Stile were engraven, besides his Stile written underneath in French thus. Pag. 124.

Du tres-hault, tres-puissant, & tres-excellent Prince Jaques par la grace de Dieu Roy d'Angleterre, d'Ecosse, France, & d'Irlande, Defenseur de la Foy, &c. Souverain du tres-noble Ordre de la Jarrier.

The second Stall was placed on the right hand next to the Sovereign's, in like manner adorned and assigned to the Principal Ambassador the Lord Spencer, who in conferring the Order was to represent the Sovereign's person.

The third Stall was on the left hand next to the second, assigned to Sir William Dethick, Garter, Principal King of Arms.

The fourth Stall was also on the left hand over against the Sovereign's Throne, after the same manner made and adorned, assigned to the Elect Duke: and on the back side thereof his own Arms and Stile also engraven, besides his Stile likewise underwritten in French thus.

Du tres-hault, puissant & tres-noble Prince, Frederick par la grace de Dieu, Duke de Wirtemberg & Teck, Comte de Montbeliard, Seigneur de Haydenhemb, &c. Chevalier du tres noble Ordre de la Jarrier. Pag. 125.

There were also on the right and left hand of the Stall, Benches or Seats continued on either side as far as the Altar; these Seats were all covered with red Cloth, and also the stone Pavement, from the steps of the Vestry unto the Stall of the Elect-Duke, and so from the middle of the Vestry unto the Altar, in the form of a Cross. The Altar was covered with red Silk hanging down to the ground, in the middle of which three gilt Basons were set upright; the first for the Sovereign, the second for his Ambassador, and the third for the Elect-Duke.

Pag. 126.

The Hall of the Castle was magnificently set out with rich Hangings, and other costly Furniture. Towards the East and South were placed five stately long Tables covered with Velvet, as also the Seats and Benches about them; the middlemost of these Tables was called the Sovereign's Table, in honor of the King of England, though absent; over the Sovereign's Chair was set a stately Canopy of Silk, and on the back side of the Seat towards the middle thereof, were six his Majesty's Arms with his Stile underwritten, after the same manner as on his Stall in the Church.

Pag. 127.

At the right hand of the Sovereign's Table were two other Tables, the one for the Lord Ambassador Spencer, the other for Sir William Dethick Garter, both covered in like manner with Silk, and adorned with Canopies, and their Arms.

On the left hand of the Sovereign's Table were likewise two other Tables, one for the new invested Duke, covered and adorned with his Arms, and a Canopy in the same manner as in the Church; the other for the Duke's Wife and Children, who were ten in number of either Sex.

Besides those that were particularly warned to be present at this Feast (which was cheerfully performed by them) there came divers of their own accord, from all parts of the Dukedom, drawn by the same of a Feast and Solemnity, the like whereof had not been in those parts within mans memory.

Pag. 128.

The day appointed for this Solemnity, namely, the 6. of November, an. Dom. 1603. being come, the Peers, Nobles, and Councillors of the Duke of Wirtemberg, according to Summons, appeared at the Castle of Studtguardt, attending the Dukes coming forth.

Lib. 5. p. 130.

And at length he proceeded out of his Bedchamber, most splendidly clad, in very rich and sumptuous Habit; there going before him, first the Nobles of his Dukedom, the great Master of his Court, the Marshal, the great Master of his Hall, the Tutors and Attendants of the Dukes five Sons, then the five young Princes themselves, going next immediately before their Father, who thus illustriously attended entered into the said Hall, and placed himself between the Sovereign's Table and his own, expecting the coming of the Sovereign's Ambassadors.

The Elect-Duke was most sumptuously habited from Head to Foot, his Hofs were Ash-colour and seamless, his Breeches, Doublet, and Sleeves were of Silk prickt, slashed, and fringed, there shining all along through the Cutwork the gilt Plate upon which it was wrought; his Sleeves were wrought after the manner of a long Pretext or Senators Robe, with the finest sort of Linen, embroidered with Needlework Blue, upon his Wrists were Bracelets of costly Gems, upon his Fingers Gold Rings, most exquisitely wrought and inlaid with Rubies, Diamonds, Saphirs, Emeraulds, and other such like precious Stones, casting forth a radiant mixture of divers colours; the Collar of his Doublet was in like manner of the finest and softest Linen, and of a Blue Amethyst colour, and wrought all about with oylet holes, his Cap was of Silk ending in a Cone at the top, and girt about with a Hat-band of Gold and precious Stones, especially Pearls of a very large size, and also a Circle of white Plumes erected up towards the top, and bending a little downward at the end. His Shoes were likewise of Silk adorned with Roses, artificially wrought with Precious Stones, Gold, and Pearls, a cross his middle he had a Belt very skilfully wrought, and adorned with a Sword appendant to it on the left side, and a Dagger (inserted into the Belt) the Hilt and Handle whereof were all wrought about and enamelled with Gold and Precious Stones, his Cloak was of black Silk, bordered about with several orders or rows of Not broad Gold Fringe.

Pag. 131.

long after, the Lord Ambassador Spencer, from another part towards the south, came forth out of his Chamber, through a little stone Gallery, into the Hall where the Duke was. There went before him Sir Gilbert Dethick, Garter, clad
in

in a long Crimson Mantle reaching down to his heels, lined within with White Silk, and carrying in both hands a Cushen of Crimson Velvet, upon which were laid the Robes and Ornaments of the Order, as the Gold Collar of the Order, with the George hanging at it, the Blue Garter and the other Vestments and Ensigns belonging thereunto; and making thrice a low Reverence, first to the Sovereign's Table, and next to his Highness the Duke as he drew near; he gently laid down the Cushen with the aforementioned Ornaments upon the Sovereign's Table; in the mean time the Lord Ambassador Spencer representing the person of the Sovereign, bowing himself to the illustrious Elect-Duke placed himself at his right hand, whom his Highness courteously received, as also Garter King of Arms, taking them by the hand. After which the Lord Buwingskshaulen made an Oration in the Dutch Tongue, wherein he briefly toucht upon all the Circumstances of the occasion of this solemn meeting, which were more at large contained in the Commission of Legation and the Sovereigns Letters, which after a low obeysance were delivered by the Lord Ambassador into the Dukes hands, who presently gave them to his principal Secretary and Councillor the Lord John Stattler, standing near him, to read them publicly in that solemn assembly. Pag. 132.

Before the Letters of Legation were read, in the attentive hearing of the whole Assembly, Garter made a short speech also in French, to the illustrious Elect Duke, wherein he declared the will and pleasure of his most serene Master the Sovereign of the Order; which speech being ended, and the Commission read, they proceeded to the Investiture. Pag. 134.

Garter first deweste'd the Duke of his Cloak, Sword, and Dagger, which according to the custom of the Order, he reserved to himself as his own Fees; but presently in the room thereof he invested him with a Surcoat of Crimson Velvet lined with White Tassaty, which he girded close to his Waste with a silken Girdle, by which there hung a Fauchion or shorter kind of Sword, made plain after the ancient fashion: Over his Surcoat he put on the Mantle of the Order, which reached down to his heels, with a long Train behind, and buttoned before at the top; it was of Velvet, and of a mixt colour, Purple with Violet, and lined within with White Tassaty, as also faced with the same, and very neatly fringed, and made after the ancient fashion used at the Institution of the Order, over the left shoulder whereof hung the Tippet or Hood. Pag. 135.

The Duke splendidly clad with the aforesaid Vestments of the Order, proceeded from the Hall through the four square Court of the Castle, and over the large Bridge to the Church of St. Ulrick, to receive the rest of the Ensigns of the Order, there sounding all the time of his Procession several Trumpets, and other Musicians, placed on high in the stone Gallery of the Castle.

As to the order of the Proceeding, it was in this manner, First went two Trumpeters belonging to the Troops of Horse, whose Trumpets were adorned with silk Banners, painted with the Arms of Wirtemberg in their proper colours, and after them ten other Trumpeters in the same equipage: Next a Flute-player and a Drummer, the military Musick belonging to the Foot. These fourteen Musicians were clad in Silk intermixt White and Red, at equal intervals, and Caps of black Velvet on their heads. After these rode the Captain of the Life-Guard, habited in the same colour, but more richly, and with a gilt Truncheon in his hand, then the Troop of the Life-Guard, habited in like manner as before is specified, and carrying Pollaxes. Next, after a little interval, went the Lord Marshal Baron Princenlstein, carrying in his hand a silver Wand; then came all three together, Anwill the great Master of the Hall, Hugwitz the great Master of the Horse, and Daxperg Captain of the Horse-Guard. After them rode the Knights in a long Train, and then the Sovereign's Ambassador's Retinue of Knights and Gentlemen, very splendidly accoutred and adorned; next the chief Peers and Nobles of the Dukedom, together with the principal Courtiers and chief Officers of the Duke's household, after whom rode the Duke's five sons, in the richest and most splendid equipage that could be imagined; at a little distance from them came very nobly attended and also accoutred, Garter, King of Arms, carrying before him with both hands, the Cushen upon which lay the Ensigns of the foresaid Order; namely the Great Collar of the Order, with the

the Image of St. George, in a riding posture, hanging at it, also the Garter wrought with Gold and Precious Stones. He carried moreover the Book of the Statutes of the Order. Next after Garter, came jointly together the Lord Ambassador Spencer, richly glistering with Gold and Precious Stones, and with him the illustrious Duke of Wirtemberg himself, so personable, and withall so magnificently attired, that he attracted the admiration of all upon him; some thinking his Habit to be Turkish, some Hungaric, some Imperial, others Electoral, others Pontifical. The Train of his Mantle was held, and carried after by Count Lodowick Leoitem.

The last part of the Procession consisted of the grand Councillors and Senators of Wirtemberg, as namely, the Lord Eberard, Lord of Limpurg, hereditary Cup-bearer of the sacred Roman Empire, Great Master of the Court of Wirtemberg, James Reenhard Doctor of Law, Assistant at the Imperial Chamber, and Chancellor, besides many other Councillors and Noblemen.

Thus nobly and magnificently attended, the Duke entred into the Church, where in the midst of the Body thereof, he and the Lord Ambassador Spencer, walking upon Red Cloth, spread for that purpose, they first made obeysance, according as the manner is in England, to the Sovereign's Royal Stall, all the rest of the Company doing the like as they past by; then the Lord Ambassador went to his own Stall, placed at the right hand next after the Sovereign's, and seated himself therein, Garter also placed himself in his, and lastly the Duke possessed his Stall on the left hand: As soon as they were seated thus in the Church, a loud volley was discharged by 300 Musketers.

The concourse of People at this Solemnity was very great, but to repress the Croud from rushing in with too much violence, there were placed at the entrance both of the Church and the Castle, on the one side a row of Musketers, and on the other a row of Halberdiers.

The Sovereign's Ambassadors and the Duke being thus seated, each in their Stalls, the Peers and Nobles that attended took their places also, the English Nobles and Gentlemen on the right hand of the Lord Ambassador Spencer, those of Wirtemberg on the left hand of their Duke; and in the first place on the foremost Seats, covered with red Cloth, sat the Duke's five Sons, vested in ducal habits. Then began a threefold sacred Musick, first the Organ played to certain Anthems, next the Children of the School sung certain Psalms in Dutch, lastly the principal Militians of the Court sung in Consort: and during the Musick the Investiture of the Duke went forward.

For the Lord Ambassador Spencer and Garter rising from their Seats, went upon the red Woollen Cloth towards the Duke, and making a low obeysance to him with great honor and respect, they addressed their speech to him in a certain form of words, commonly used upon that occasion, and presented unto him the Ensigns and Ornaments of the Order.

First they delivered into his hands the Book of the Statutes, which he again delivered unto his chief Secretary the Lord John Stattler, who stood ready at the Duke's side, according to his place, to receive it; and who thereupon delivered to the Ambassadors, from the Duke an Oath, to keep and observe faithfully all the Statutes and Articles of the Order. After that, the Garter was tied upon his Highness left leg, a little beneath the Knee; Then they put the Collar about his neck.

All these things being performed, the Lord Ambassador Spencer, and Garter, congratulated the Duke with much respect, and a while held discourse with him; and then after a low obeysance made to the Sovereign's Stall, they returned towards their several Seats.

Then the Musick ceasing, that most eminent Divine John Magirus Councillor to the new invested Duke, and President of Studtguardt, made a most learned and elegant Sermon, wherein he discoursed of the friendship and discord of Princes, and shewed how excellent a thing the mutual concord amity and benevolence of Princes was, how much it was to be esteemed by their Subjects, and what great benefits and conveniences arose from thence.

Sermon ended, the Musick was again renewed, which consisted of the Voices of *Page 180.*
two Youths clad in White Garments, with Wings like Angels, and standing opposite
one to another; so after a Tenor, an Altus, and a Base was sung, the Organ and
other instrumental Musick, together with vocal, went together in consort.

After, according to the Custom at the Anniversary Feast of St. George at Winde- *Page 183.*
sor, the new invested Duke rising from his seat, and thrice as he passed by making
Reverence to the Sovereign's Stall, went upon the Red Cloth (Garter going before)
immediately to the Altar, (his Train being held up by Count Leostene, and his
Sword carried after him by his Esquire of honor) where when he was come, the Re-
verend Divine Felix Bidembachin, Chaplain to his Highness, set a gilt Basen upon
the middle of the Altar, into which the Duke put 50 Duckets, which he took out of
a little red silk Purse, giving charge to his said Chaplain to distribute them to the
Poor; which done he betook himself again to his Stall, saluting the Sovereign's in
passing by as before.

The Solemnities in the Church being finished, this illustrious company returned to *Page 184.*
the great Hall in the Castle, in the same order and pomp as they proceeded thence,
the Trumpets sounding, and the Guns going off.

After several congratulations from the Lord Ambassador Spencer, and Garter, *Page 185.*
and many other noble Personages, to the new invested Duke, in the said Hall, they
parted and went to their several Chambers till Dinner was ready.

Dinner time being come, the Duke and Lord Ambassador Spencer, with all their *Lib. 7. p. 190.*
Train, went into the great Hall to Dine; where the preparation and order of the
Feast, was after the manner of St. George's Feast in England; the Sovereign's
Table was served with all manner of varieties, as if he had been there present
himself, the Carver and Sewers and all other Officers attending and serving on the
Knee.

Also Water was presented by three that carried the Basen, Ewer, and Towel, with *Page 193.*
the same obeysance as is used in England, to the Sovereign, being present. Water
also was presented to the Duke after the custom of Wirtemberg, the like to the Lord
Ambassador Spencer and Garter, to the Dutchess and the Duke's Children.

Then each ones proper place was assigned by certain Officers appointed for that *Page 194.*
purpose.

At the four ends of the Sovereign's Table were placed Tasters; he that was at
the North side received the Dishes from the Sewers, and delivered them to him that
stood opposite on the South side, who standing on the right side of the Sovereign's
Chair, tasted of the meat cut off it, and put it upon a Plate that was laid as for
the Sovereign, and after a while changed the Plate, giving it to him that stood at
the West side, and did the like with the rest of the Viands.

The fourth Taster stood at the East side of the Table, and his Office was to taste and *Page 196.*
administer the Sovereign's Wine; reaching it over to the Southern Taster, that
stood by the Sovereign's Chair, in like manner as the meat was served.

Likewise the Duke, the Lord Ambassador Spencer, and Garter, had their seve- *Page 212.*
ral Tables as hath been said before, and sate under their several Canopies, and at
another Table sate the Dutchess and her ten Children.

After exceeding plenty, state, and variety of Dishes, there were served all man- *Page 213.*
ner of Curiosities in Paste, as the Figures and shapes of several kinds of Beasts
and Birds, as also the Statues of Hercules, Minerva, Mercury, and other fa-
mous persons. All Dinner time and a pretty while after, the English and the Wir-
temberg Musick sitting opposite to one another, these on the Dukes side, the other *Page 230.*
at the Sovereign's and Lord Ambassadors side; sung and plaid alternately to one
another.

After Dinner certain Balls were danced in a long Gallery of the Castle, towards *Page 233.*
the Paradise of Studtguardt.

This Festivity lasted that night and the next day, and afterwards the English *Page 245.*
Guests were conducted to see some of the principal places of the Dukedom; as Walte-
buch, the University of Tubing, &c. where they were entertained with Comedies,
Musick and other delights, and at their return to Studtguardt, were presented with *Page 259.*
very

Pag. 260.

very magnificent gifts; and being to return for England were accompanied by the Duke as far as Asperg, where with great demonstrations and expressions of amity and affection on both sides, solemn leave was taken.

A Relation of the order observed when Maurice Prince of Orange was Invested, an. 11. Jac. R.

Johan. Olers in
Genealog. Co-
mit. Nassavia.
pag. 90.

ON the 4. of February, an. 1613. the Citizens of the Hague met in Arms, together with the Troops of Prince Maurice, of Prince Henry his Brother and the Earl of Chastilion; the Citizens kept Guard in the outermost Court, where also several pieces of Ordinance were placed, and the three aforementioned Troops in the innermost Court. From the Palace to the Shambles were Pitch Barel's placed, as also at the Sovereign's Ambassadors Lodgings.

At 3 a Clock in the Afternoon the States of the United Provinces assembled in the usual place, where other persons of great quality were admitted as Spectators. The first that came thither was Refuge the French Kings Ambassador, who took his Seat at the upper end of the Table; not long after came Prince Maurice, conducted by the Sovereign's Ambassador, and those deputed by the States; before them went 12 Trumpets sounding, and after several Noblemen and Persons of Honor two and two, the Guards attending on each side. After these went Garter Principal King of Arms, vested with his Coat of Arms, embroidered with the Arms of England, Scotland, France, and Ireland, and carrying in his hand a Purse of Green Silk, wherein were the Garter and George; next him went Prince Maurice, and after him his Brother Henry, the Prince of Portugal, and others of his kindred, as the Earls of Nassau and Lippia; then several of the Nobility, and many others of great quality.

Then Prince Maurice taking his place where these Solemnities were performed, sat at the upper end of the Table, at the left hand of the French Kings Ambassador, but Sir Ralph Winwood the Sovereign's Ambassador, took his place in the middle over against the President of the States, and began a short Oration in French to this effect.

My Lords, from those things which I have in the Convention declared, by the command of the King my Master, you have sufficiently understood his purpose, of conferring the Order of the Garter upon Prince Maurice, as also the causes, wherewith he thought himself moved to do it; and whereas it hath been decreed, by the common suffrages of the Knights-Companions of the Order, that he should be joined in Companionship with the Elector Palatine, it seemed good to the Sovereign, to command me to present him with the Ensigns of this Order, and hath confirmed this his command by the testimony of his Commission, under the Great Seal of England, which Commission I here deliver unto you, and pray it may be read.

Hereupon he delivered the Commission to the President, from whose hand the Secretary then taking it, read it aloud; which having finished, the Sovereign's Ambassador continued his discourse.

Both the honor of this Order, and ancient Custom require, that it be sent out of England to Stranger Princes, by persons of honor peculiarly deputed to this Employment, and who are themselves Knights-Companions of the Order, or at least deserve to be so: but because that the Ceremonies there used, seem not so well to agree with the Discipline of your Church, and that the conditions thereof are not altogether consistent with the state of your Common-wealth, it hath pleased the Sovereign of the Order, for the avoiding all scandal, to confer this Order without any pomp, or external magnificence. We have therefore made choice of this place, in compliance with your pleasure, as the most commodious for the performance of our duty, in that we might present it in the presence of your Lordships, who, as being the Supream Lords of this State, will not think much to be Eye-witnesses of that honor, which the King of Great Britain your best Friend and Allie, offers to the chief General of your Armies, and Governour of your Provinces, as also to your whole State in general, whereof

whereof each of you are a part. Nor could his Majesty have given greater testimonies, either of his affection towards the happy State of your Commonwealth, or of the joy which he hath conceived, for that he sees your Affairs, after so many troubles and storms, brought to a Haven of rest and quiet, or likewise of his most entire good will; wishing that that League of Friendship which is contracted between his Kingdoms and your Provinces, may be perpetual and inviolable. Now therefore, desiring first your good leave, we shall convert our Address to Prince Maurice.

At this instant, Garter King of Arms opened the Silk Purse, and took out the Garter, set with rich Diamonds, and laid it on the Table, and then the Ambassador address'd himself to Prince Maurice in the following manner.

To you my Lord, we offer in the name of the King my Master, the Order of the Garter, which we may say without boasting or flattery, is the most ancient and most illustrious Order of all Europe, which in all times hath been kept inviolable, without any spot or blemish, wherewith all the greatest Emperors and Monarchs suing to be graced and adorned, have esteemed the greatest part of their felicity, that they could obtain it; his Majesty judgeth the greatness of your Family, which he acknowledgeth to be most illustrious, worthy of this Honor, your piety also and zeal to promote the Reformed Religion, likewise your warlike virtues, which the God of Hosts hath blest with so many Victories, but especially those high merits, whereby you have obliged these United Provinces, and by consequence his Realm, and so thereby the whole Christian World, his Majesty being altogether of opinion, that the quiet of Christendom consisteth much in the happy state of these Provinces, and that the condition of these Provinces what ever it be, and that of those Realm have a mutual dependence one upon the other: This is the motive and sole cause that hath induced his Majesty to confer upon you an Honor, the greatest his Kingdoms can bestow, of which behold these the Marks and Ensigns [*and with these words produced the Garter*] which your Excellency is to receive from us, according to the commands of our King, and those altogether free from any Ceremonies, except such wherein you shall voluntarily and willingly consent to be engaged.

This speech being ended, Prince Maurice in brief gave thanks for the Honor offered him, and then forthwith the Ambassador and Garter having made due obeisance, tyed on the Garter about his Leg; next Garter took out of the forementioned Purse, the Golden Medal, whereon was the Effigies of St. George, with the subdued Dragon under his feet, this Medal hanging upon a Blue Ribband, Garter put about the Princes Neck, after which he unfolded a Parchment, wherein were contained the Titles of Prince Maurice in French, which he read aloud.

The high, mighty, and excellent Prince, Maurice Prince of Orange Earl of Nassau, Cutzenelleboge, Viand, Dietz, Meurs, Linge, Marquess of Vere and Flushing, Baron of Grave, the Territory of Kuyke, Lece, and Nyerwaert, Governour and Captain General of Gelderland, Holland, Zealand, Utrecht, West-Friesland, Zutphen, and Overysse, Admiral General of the United Provinces, and Knight of the most Noble Order of the Garter.

As soon as he had made an end of reading these Titles, presently all the Trumpets sounded, and the Troops in order shot off their Pistols, which Volly was seconded by the Trained-Bands, after which the great Guns were discharged.

These things being thus performed, and silence made, Sir John Oldenbarnevelt Lord of Tempel, making an Oration in the name of the States General, reckoned up in brief, the Leagues contracted heretofore at several times, between the Provinces and the Kingdom of Great Britain, and thereupon rendred humble thanks to the King for the continuance of them, specially for that by this action he went about to manifest the same to all men; for as much as that so remarkable Honor, which his Majesty was conferring on those Provinces in the person of Prince Maurice, their Governour and Commander both in War and Peace, was an honor used to be shewn but only to the very choicest of his Friends; but most principally of

“all for that he was pleased to confer this honor on Prince Maurice, without en-
 “joining any strict obligation upon the receipt of the Order. Next he gave thanks
 “to the Ambassadors, for the diligence they had employed in this affair; and lastly,
 “addressing his Speech to Prince Maurice, he in the name of the States General,
 “congratulated his new honor, assuring him on their behalf, that they conceived ve-
 “ry great joy and satisfaction, and wist him a very long and a happy enjoyment
 “thereof, to the glory of God, and the enlargement of his Family, and the confer-
 “vation of the publick liberty of the United Provinces, in which thing, as hitherto
 “they had done, so for the time to come, they would for ever afford him their best
 “and most faithful assistance.

As soon as he had finished his Speech John Utenbogard Minister of the Hague, as he had been ordered, standing at the end of the Table, made a very admirable and learned Sermon, wherein he most devoutly praised God, for what had hapned, imploring him to bless Prince Maurice, in his new obtained honor, and to endue him with his Grace.

The Sermon ended, the Trumpets sounded, the Muskets also, and great Guns were again discharged: Then Prince Maurice (accompanied by the Ambassadors and other Noble Persons) returned in the same order as he came, and then again the third time Volleys of great and small shot were discharged; after which the Soldiers and Trained-Bands went every one to their own homes and quarters. At Evening the pitcht Barrels were set on fire, and Bonfires kindled; a magnificent entertainment also was given by Prince Maurice to the Ambassadors, Princes and great Persons above mentioned, at which, while Healths were drunk to the King of France and Great Britain, all the Guns were again discharged.

A Remonstrance made by Sir William Segar, Knight, Garter Principal King of Arms, joined in Commission with the right honorable the Lord Carleton, Ambassador to the high and mighty Prince, Henry Prince of Orange, for presenting him with the Noble Order of the Garter, 1627.

*MS. in Offic.
 Armor. [L. 18.
 circa medium]*

WE took our journey from Whitehall, on a Thursday to Gravesend, being the---- of April, Anno Domini 1627. and lodged there that night. On Friday morning we embarked in two Merchants Ships of London, in the one went the Lord Ambassador Carleton, Secretary of State to the Kings Majesty King Charles, accompanied with the young Lord Dormer, and divers other Gentlemen, his Followers and Servants; my self embarked in the other Merchants Ship, with my two Sons, Mr. Henry Lennard, my three Servants, Trunks, and other Provisions.

We set sail about 9 of the Clock, and sailed all that day and night following, and arrived on Saturday at Delf Haven in Holland, about 6 of the Clock in the Evening; where being landed we could have no lodging in the Town, all was taken up for the Lodging of the Lord Ambassador, and his Train, and I forced to hire two Waggons for the transport of me and mine, our Trunks and baggage to the Town of Delf, whither we came about eleven of the Clock that night, and lodged at the Sign of the Golden Fleece.

The next day being Monday, the Ambassador coming by water to Delf was entertained and feasted at the English House by the English Merchants, and that Afternoon was conveyed by Water, in the Princes Barge to the Hague; and by the way was met with, by his Excellency, and divers of the States, who complemented his welcome.

My self followed his Lordship by Waggon, and had my Lodging and Diet provided in the Chanceliers House in the Hague, where I was well entertained and accommodated. The day following being Tuesday, my self with my two Sons, and Mr. Lennard, went to kiss his Excellencies hands, who very kindly entertained me, and remembered he had seen me there before, upon the like occasion, with his Brother Maurice, Prince of Orange; so after our humble salutations we departed.

It was about nine or ten days before we could be resolved, whether the Order should

should be accepted of or not; for the French Ambassador there resident, opposed it by all means possible that he could, alledging it stood not with the French King his Masters honor, considering the League between him, the Prince, and States, that his Enemy the King of Great Britain, should be so much favored and honored by the Prince, as to have the Order of the Garter by him received, the King of Great Britain having entred his Dominions in hostile manner, surprised the Isle of Ree, slain his People, and endeavoured to relieve Rochell, which he held Rebels to him; all which by the wisdom of the Lord Ambassador Carleton, was so discreetly answered, and so far prevailed, that a day was appointed for the reception of the Order, which was to be done on the Sunday following, in the Afternoon, and was performed as followeth.

The Prince of Orange his Regiment of Shot and Pikes, the English Regiment, and some Dutch Companies, having placed themselves in two Battalions, on either side of the great Court of the Princes Palace, we proceeded between them.

First went a number of Collonels and Captains, English, Scots, and Dutch, after whom followed the chief Officers of his Excellency's Household, then my self, bearing on a Purple Velvet Cushen the Robes of the Order, the great Collar, and the Garter, and a lesser Jewel of the George, fastned to a Blue Ribband, with King Charles his Commission, under the Great Seal of England: The Prince went between the Lord Ambassador and the Palsgrave, who that day wore the whole Habit of the Order of the Garter. We were conducted up the great Stairs, through the old Hall of the Palace, and so brought to the Council Chamber of the States General, who were all placed on either side of a long Table, the whole length of the Room.

The Estate of the Table was holden in the midst thereof, where four Chairs were placed, the Prince of Orange and the Ambassador took the two middlemost Chairs, the Palsgrave on the right hand, and my self on the left. The French Ambassador, and the Venetian, sat at the upper end of the board. The Earl of Coningburg, President of the Council of the States, the Treasurer, and Admiral of Holland sat opposite to the Prince, and all other of the States on either side in their degrees. Silence being made, the Ambassador Carleton stood up, and began his Harangue or Oration, signifying, that by the Example of the great love and amity long time continued, between the Queen's Majesty of England, Elizabeth of famous memory, and Prince Maurice, with the States General of the United Provinces; King James her Successor intending no less good, welfare, and prosperity to his Excellency, and the States then and still being, had presented him with the Noble Order of the Garter, as to his intimate Friend, Confederate, and Ally, which he princely accepted, acknowledged, and used during his life. And that now the high and mighty Prince, King Charles his Son, understanding of the right noble and valorous disposition of his Excellency, Henry Prince of Orange, and having a like desire, as his Father had, to continue the same amity and friendship inviolably between them, had made especial choice of him the said Prince, to be a Companion and Confrere of the said most Noble Order, which he was there by Commission to present his Excellency withall.

The Oration ended, the Ambassador presented his Majesty's Commission, under the Great Seal of England, during the reading whereof, by one of the Secretaries of the States; The whole Table of the States stood up, their heads uncovered, only the French Ambassador excepted, who sat covered.

Then Garter, after Reverence made, with an audible voice, pronounced in French the stile of the King of Great Britain, as is accustomed, and after it the stile of Henry Prince of Orange; which done, by a signal made at one of the Windows, the Trumpets sounded, the Drums strook up, and a thousand Musket shot were discharged in Volley.

Then stood up at the Table a French Orator, who began his Harangue in the praise of the Noble Order of the Garter, relating as he said he was informed, how many Emperors, Kings, and Princes had been thereof, applauding the worthy Election and choice of both the famous Princes of Orange, Prince Maurice lately deceased, and Prince Henry then Governing; only he excepted against the patronage of Saint George, who was he said, but a Legendary Saint, and not Canonical, nor approved

by general Councils, and in effect, but a moral Allegory : For every Christian man that for his Faith would fight, and defend the Church, yea and for the same suffer Martyrdom, he should conquer the Dragon, that is the Devil, and be as much holy reputed as St. George. But the Order to be stiled of the Garter, was more significant, because it carried with it a bond or tie of Fellowship, as a Symbol of Amity and Friendship between Princes, being Companions of the said Order. So concluding his Harangue with a Prayer for the Sovereign's prosperity King Charles, and the whole Fellowship of the said most Noble Order of the Garter, he ended.

Then the Lord Ambassador Carleton, with his Excellency the Prince of Orange, the Prince Palatine, and my self standing up, the Ambassador took the great Collar with the George, and assisted by the Palatine, put it over the head of his Excellency, and fastned it on his shoulder; for at that time he refused to wear the Robes of the Order, because he said, his Brother Grave Maurice had not done it, but laying up his leg on my Chair, the Ambassador and I put on the Garter.

Which done, by another signal, six and thirty Canons reported, and so way being made, we returned that way as we came, the Trumpets sounding, and the Drums beating, until his Excellency was entred into his Court. That day or night we had no Feast, for avoiding Precedency and Place between the Ambassadors, drinking of Healths, and other complements, which might have occasioned question or difference on either party. That night Bonfires of pitched Barrels were made through the Town, as is accustomed to be done in all their Triumphs.

The next day following, being Monday, I was invited by a Messenger to dine with his Excellency, where, in his great Chamber, the Table ready furnished with meat, without Ceremony of other service, or attendants, but his own Pages, being half a dozen in number, his Excellency sate down, not at the end of the Board, but at the right hand thereof, and Count Lodowick of Nassaw his Uncle on the left hand side, I was placed on the Princes side, at a convenient distance from him by his Marshal; Collonel Boage a Scottish man sate right against me, next to Count Lodowick, and these were all the Guests at the Table; during Dinner, his Excellency asked me sundry questions, namely, whether Queen Elizabeth did wear the Garter of the Order about her leg, as the Knights did? I answered, I thought not, for it was not proper for her Sex so apparently to shew her leg. Then he demanded, whether the Institution of the Order was from the fall of a Blue Garter from the Ladies leg, with whom the King danced? I told him it was so holden by tradition, but the truth was otherwise, as it is recorded in the old Register Book of the Order, that King Edward the Third returning home after his conquest of France, to remunerate those Knights, that had done him the most noble service in that Expedition, did select of them the number twenty five, and gave them Blue Garters embroidered, and buckled under the Knee, with this Motto, Honi soit, qui-mal y pense, as a caveat to avoid the emulation of others, who might perhaps presume, they had deserved as much honor as others. Now the question may be asked, said the Prince, why a Garter rather than any other thing should be made an Order? It is to be answered, said I, that at that time most men (especially men of Arms) wore their Boots close up gartered, and buckled with thongs of Leather under their Knees (a Custom yet used of some men for the strengthening of their Leg) so with divers other trivial questions the Dinner was spent and ended, and I with due thanks and humble salutations took my leave.

Tuesday morning I delivered the Robes of the Order to the Master of his Wardrobe, and on Tuesday in the Afternoon, I with my Sons, and Mr. Lennard kissed his Excellencies hands, and took our leave, who most princely thanked us for the pains we had taken to do him honor.

Wednesday in the morning, I was presented with four Chains, one for my self of the value of 240 l. sterling, two Chains for my Sons, the third for Mr. Lennard, being all lesser in value than those which I had received of Grave Maurice by 130 l. The Ambassador Lord Carleton had a standing Cup with a Cover of 500 l. being of pure Gold. The same day in the Afternoon I gave Rewards to the Chastellain, and his Wife, with the Servants of the House, and taking my leave that night of the Ambassador,

Ambassador, with whom I supped, I took my Journey on Thursday in the morning by Water to Delf, where I hired two Waggons to transport me to Mailland Sluce, where I took shipping for England, in the same Merchants Ship that brought me thither.

Friday morning, the first of June, we set sail, and on Saturday in the Afternoon we all safely arrived at Gravesend, thanked be God; Tuesday following, I went by Coach to Oatlands, and delivered my Letters to the King, from the Prince of Orange, and the Lord Ambassador Carleton, making a brief relation of the performance of our Employments, which it was his Majesties pleasure I should do.

A Relation of the Investiture of Charles the Eleventh King of Sweden, with the Habit and Ensigns of the Order, drawn up by Henry St. George, Esq; Richmond Herald.

CCharles the Eleventh, King of Sweden, &c. being elected into the most Noble Order of the Garter, at a Chapter held by the Sovereign and Companions of the said Order, the 18. day of June 1668. The Right Honorable Charles Earl of Carlisle, &c. was by the Sovereign appointed his Ambassador extraordinary to the said King, and Henry St. George, Esq; Richmond Herald, was commanded to attend the Ceremony of his said Majesty's Investiture, in the place of Garter Principal King of Arms.

Being furnished with all Necessaries for this service, as the Robes, Collar, George, Garter, &c. and having received his Majesty's Commission, under the Seal of the said Order; they set sail from Greenwich in the Anne (a Yaght belonging to his Royal Highness the Duke of York) on Friday the 5. of February 1668. and landed at Rotterdam on Sunday the 7. of the said Month, from whence they proceeded on their journey to Stockholme, first to Hamborough, and then to Lubeck, where my Lord Ambassador having received command from the King, to go for Denmark, they took shipping at Framond (the Port of the said City) on Saturday the 20. of March, and landed at Copenhagen on Monday the 22. of the said Month. After some 10 days there, in which time his Lordship dispatched his business in that Court, they again imbarqued themselves in a Frigate of the King of Denmark's, and arrived at Stockholme, on Saturday the 10. of April, being Easter Eve, where his Excellency continued some weeks incognito, till the arrival of his Train and Equipage.

Saturday, June 5. the Countess of Carlisle landed at Stockholme, and about a week after arrived the Ship with my Lord Ambassador's Goods and Retinue.

Wednesday the 7. of July, my Lord Ambassador made his Entry into Stockholme, and on Saturday the 10. of the said Month had his publick Audience of the King.

Monday the 26. of July my Lord Ambassador and Mr. St. George, at a private Audience, delivered their Credentials concerning the Garter; and his Majesty of Sweden received the lesser George.

Thursday the 29. of July was appointed for his Majesty's publick reception of the whole Habit of the Order, which Ceremony was performed as followeth; About three of the Clock that Afternoon, my Lord Ambassador and Mr. St. George, were by two principal Senators Count Neile Brahe, and Count John Steenbook, the Master of the Ceremonies, with the King's Coaches, Pages, and Footmen (all in new Liveries) with many Officers and Cavaliers, conducted to the Castle, being come into the great Court, they were met at the stairs foot (where they alighted) by severall of the King's Servants, and so conducted up to certain Rooms, where the Robes, &c. were deposited (having been sent thither that morning) here my Lord Ambassador for a while reposed himself, whilst Mr. St. George made ready the Robes, &c. and put on his Mantle, and having now notice, that his Majesty was come into the Great Hall, they proceeded thither, Mr. St. George bearing the Robes, &c. on a Velvet Cushen: At the entrance into the Hall, they were met by the Rix-Marshal Count Gabriel Oxenstiern (having in his hand a long Staff of silver gilt) and conducted to the upper end of the Room, which was inclosed within a Rail and Ballister. Here stood the King in

a Suit

a Suit and Cloak of Cloth of Silver, with a large Plume of White Feathers in his Hat, under a State of Crimson Velvet, fringed with Gold, to the back of which said State was affixed an Escutcheon of his Majesty's Arms within the Garter, and his Stile underneath; on the King's right hand was erected a like State for the Sovereign, with an Escutcheon of his Arms, and his Stile also underneath, with a Chair and Footstool. Opposite to the King of Sweden's Chair, was placed a Chair, like in all things to that of the King's, for my Lord Ambassador, and on the left hand of my Lord Ambassador was a Chair set for Mr. St. George, and near it, close to the Rails, was a little Table to lay the Robes on. On the King of Sweden's left hand, at a good distance, near the other end of the Rails, sat the Queen, under a lesser State of Cloth of Silver, the haut-pas was covered with Turkie Carpets, as was also all the ground within the Rails, where stood the Regents and the rest of the Senators (all in Cloaks and Bands as is used at their Dyets and most solemn Assemblies) with Chairs behind them: The whole Room was hung with Tapestry, having a great number of Scaffolds in it, filled with the principal persons of quality, both of the Court and City.

After my Lord Ambassador and Mr. St. George, had saluted the King, Mr. St. George placed the Robes, &c. on the Table, and having made an obeysance first to the Sovereign's State, then to the King of Sweden, stood before his own Chair, till the King and my Lord Ambassador were both of them seated; they being seated, Mr. St. George sat down on his Chair, until the Trumpets and Kettle Drums ceased (which had beat and sounded from their first entrance in the Room) all being quiet Mr. St. George arose, and making an obeysance first to the Sovereign's State, and then to the King of Sweden, stood by the Table, then the Ambassador arising, began his speech to the King, which ended, his Secretary delivered a Copy of it, in the Swedish tongue, to the Ambassador, who gave it to the Lord Stein Bielk, who delivered it to a Secretary, by whom it was read aloud, whereunto a Reply was made by the same Senator, in Swedish; this Reply translated into English, was given by the said Senator to the Ambassador, and by him to his Secretary, who read it in English. Then did Mr. St. George deliver the Commission under the Seal of the Order, to my Lord Ambassador, who presented it to the King, who having received it gave it to a Secretary, by whom it was read aloud.

The Commission being read, Mr. St. George devested the King of his Cloak, Sword, and Belt, untying also the silk Garter on his left leg, and delivered the Book of the Statutes of the Order to the Ambassador, who presented them to the King, then was the Garter of the Order presented to his Majesty by Mr. St. George, who at the delivery pronounced the accustomed words in Latin, which ended, my Lord Ambassador and Mr. St. George did both of them buckle it on the King of Sweden's left leg; in like manner was presented the Surcoat, the Girdle, and Hangers with the Sword, the Mantle, the Hood, the Collar, and great George, last of all the Cap and Feather. His Majesty thus fully invested with the whole Habit of the Order, continued standing under his State, whilst Mr. St. George descending from the haut-pas, towards the lower end of the Rails, returned, and having made three obeysances as he came up, proclaimed the Stile of the Sovereign in Latin, French, and English; and afterwards the Stile of the King of Sweden in French only.

This being done, Mr. St. George returned and stood before his Seat, whilst my Lord Ambassador complemented his Majesty in a short speech in English, which was afterwards read in Swedish by a Secretary; and a Reply made by the afore named Senator Stien Bielk in Swedish, read in English by my Lord Ambassador's Secretary.

After this another Senator, viz. Baron John Gyllenstiern, did in a long Harangue congratulate his Majesty's Election and Investiture into this most Noble Order; which ended, the King, my Lord Ambassador, and Mr. St. George took their Seats again, whilst the Trumpets and Kettle Drums beat and sounded, being the signal for the firing 124 great Guns, from the Ships of War in the River, and several parts of the City, and of divers Volleys of small shot from Horse and Foot, purposely drawn into the Town for this occasion; after they had all fired the first time, they gave a second Volley, which being near ended, my Lord Ambassador, and Mr. St. George arose, and making their obeysances to the King (who stood in his Robes under his State) they withdrew, and were conducted by the afore mentioned

Senators

Senators Count Brahe and Count Steenboock, to the same Room from whence the Robes of the Order had been brought, where Mr. St. George put off his Mantle, and after a little repose, my Lord Ambassador and Mr. St. George were in the same manner conducted home to my Lord Ambassador's House.

About eight of the Clock that Evening, my Lord Ambassador and Mr. St. George were again brought to Court in the King's Coach, by Count Torstenson, and the Master of the Ceremonies, to Supper; where in a fair Room, under a state of Crimson Velvet, sat the King covered, and in the Robes of the Order, on his left hand the Queen, and on her left hand my Lord Ambassador, all under the State, at each end of the Table sat two of the Regents, and on the other side of the Table near each end, sat two of the senior Senators, and between them stood two Carvers.

At another Table in the same Room sat Mr. St. George, with the other Senators and the Officers of the Army; during Supper, several Healths were drank, as the Sovereign's, the King of Sweden's, the two Queens, the Duke of York's, the Companions of the Order, &c. at each of which were fired 4 great Guns, 24 being purposely planted for that service, under the Wall of the Castle: Supper being ended my Lord Ambassador and Mr. St. George, having waited on the King and Queen back again in the same manner they attended them to Supper, about three of the Clock the next morning, they were again conducted home by Count Torstenson, and the Master of the Ceremonies, in the King's Coach; and as they descended from the Castle, the 24 great Guns were all fired twice over.

Sunday, the 1. of August, my Lord Ambassador, and Mr. St. George were by Count Torstenson, and the Master of the Ceremonies, in the King's Coach, brought to the Castle about 7 of the Clock in the Evening, from whence they went with their Majesties in their Barge, to see the Fireworks which had been preparing about three Months, an English mile from Stockholme (in honor of this Solemnity) this divertisement continued about two hours, and was concluded with a Banquet; which ended, they returned in the same manner, being saluted both in their going and return, with four Guns from each Ship of War in the River, besides the Guns from the Fort; At their landing, Count Torstenson, and the Master of the Ceremonies were ready to conduct my Lord Ambassador, and Mr. St. George home, in the same manner as they came.

Thursday the 19. of August, Mr. St. George received his Majesty of Sweden's Letter to the Sovereign, and a Certificate of his Majesties Reception of the said Order, both signed by the Queen and the Regents.

Sunday the 22. of August, Mr. St. George took his leave of the King and Queen, being attended by the under Master of the Ceremonies.

Thursday the 2. of September, Mr. St. George was presented by the under Master of the Ceremonies, with a Chain of Gold, and a Meddal set with Diamonds, from his Majesty.

Saturday the 4. of September, Mr. St. George began his Journey from Stockholme to the Sound by Land, and came to Ellineur the 12. of the said Month; the 29. he took shipping for England, and landed at Hull the 20. of October, the 27. he came to London, and was the next day by the Earl of Carlisle (who was newly returned) brought to his Majesty in his Bed-chamber, where he kissed the King's hand, presented the King of Sweden's Letter to his Majesty, and so concluded his Employment.

The Fire-works above mentioned, which the King of Sweden caused to be prepared, to close the Solemnity of his Investiture, and manifest to the world his great satisfaction in the honor received, were ordered in the following manner.

In the middle of the work was erected a great Pillar 52 foot high, on the top of which was placed a gilt Crown; 18 foot below the Crown were the initial Letters of the Sovereign's and King of Sweden's Christian Names, set breast to breast; and below at the Foot were placed several Military Colours, both of Horse and Foot, filled with Fire-works.

On each side of the pillar stood in the middle of four antique Trophies, filled with Fire, and on each side of the pillar, 40 foot distance from it, was placed St. George on Horse-

Horseback, having the Dragon under his Feet, of 24 foot in length, and 28 in height, and on each side of St. George two Pyramids of 36 foot high.

In several places of the Work were set great *Wind-Pipes*, filled with Water, for playing of Water-Balls, and round the Work about 2000 *Musket-Pipes*, 60 together in a Frame, with 72 *Chests* in and about the Work, full of *Rockets* 12 foot high, besides 28 *Chests* with *Swarmers* in the Earth, 2 foot high; and *Rockets* fired by Degrees, which flying high threw from them all sorts of Figures of Fire. Lastly, at each corner a *Fire Musser*, which threw up all sorts of pleasant *Fire-Balls*, and in their breaking presented several Figures.

A Relation of the Investiture of John George Duke of Saxony, with the Habit and Ensigns of the Order, drawn up by Sir Thomas St. George Knight, Somerset Herald.

John George the Second, Duke of Saxony, was elected into the Society of the most Noble Order of the Garter the 18. of June 1668. at a Chapter held at Whitehall, and by the Sovereign and several of the Companions of the Order, Sir Thomas Higgons Knight, and Thomas St. George Esq; Somerset Herald, in the place of Garter Principal King of Arms, were then appointed and ordered to carry the Garter, with the Habit and other Ensigns appropriated to the Order, to the said Duke of Saxony; which being provided and delivered unto them, on the 27. of February following they set forward from London, and arrived at Dresden the 5. of April 1669. and lodged at an Inn, from whence they gave notice to the Hoff Marshal of their arrival.

Upon Wednesday morning about 10 of the Clock, being the 7. of April, the Duke of Saxony sent his Coach and several of his Servants, for them to their Audience, where Sir Thomas Higgons presented his Majesty's Credentials, and Mr. St. George the Book of Statutes, the Elector having sent to see them the day before.

They were conducted from this Audience by the Duke's Servants to their several Lodgings within the Castle, where they remained and were entertained at the Duke's charges, and attended by his Servants during their stay at Dresden.

Upon the 8. of April in the morning, the Duke sent a Complement to them, acknowledging how sensible he was of his Majesty's great affection unto him, in sending him the Order of the Garter, and that he was very desirous to receive it, whereupon they desired an Audience, to which they were conducted about 4 of the Clock in the Afternoon by the Duke's Servants.

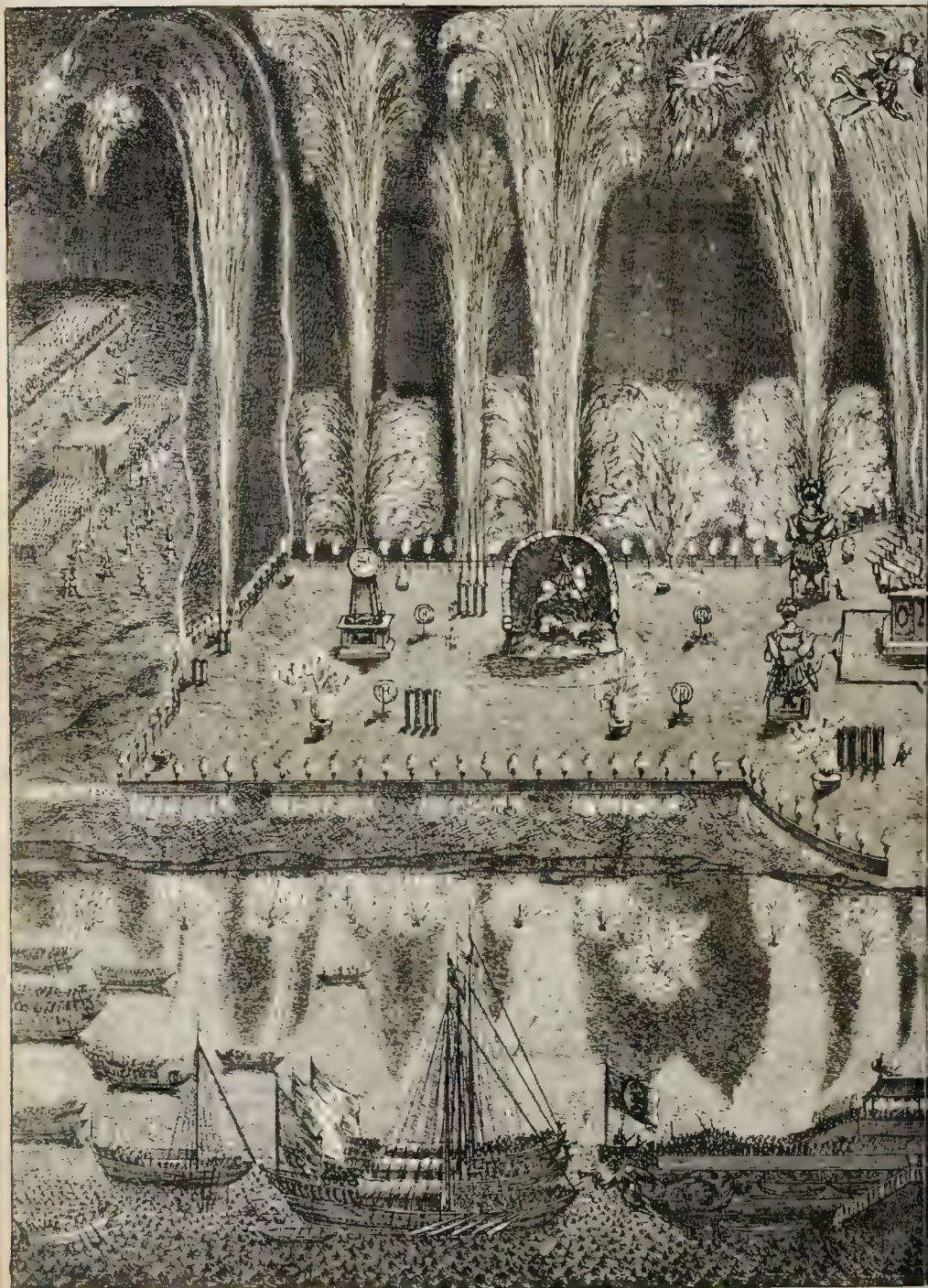
Being brought to the Duke, Sir Tho. Higgons told him that he understood by his Secretary Mr. Voght, his Electoral Highness was very desirous to be invested with the Order of the Garter, and that thereupon he and Mr. St. George were come to present his Electoral Highness with the George and a Blue Ribband, which was usually worn by the Companions of that most Noble Order, before their Investiture, whereupon he gave them thanks; and then Mr. St. George delivered to Sir Tho. Higgons the George, and by him it was presented to the Duke, who having received it, and viewed it a little while, returned it again to Sir Tho. Higgons, then he and Mr. St. George put it about his neck; which being performed, the Duke returned thanks, and declared that he intended to be invested on Tuesday or Wednesday following, whereof they should receive more particular notice.

Upon the 9. of April the Duke sent to them by his Secretary, to signify that he had resolved to be invested on Tuesday following, and thereupon discoursing about the Ceremonies, and that his Electoral Highness had given order for the furnishing a stately Room for that occasion, which he was ready to shew them, but that if any part of the Ceremony were a custom to be performed in the Church, he desired that might be omitted; which being by them consented unto, they repaired to the Room appointed, and gave directions how it should be ordered.

Upon Easter-day, being the 11. of April, they were attended by several of the Duke's Servants to Church first, and after to Dine with him.

Upon





In Magnificentissimum hoc supra designatum Spectaculum nocturnorum Ignium, pactorum inter viennae nomine Civesis Ordinis D. Randalis et Princeps hereditarius Magnus Dux Finlandiae Dux Scaunae Esthoniae Livoniae Carthae Bremae Verdae Stettini Porti et Montium Dux a JESU VASSIMO et POTENTISSIMO PRINCIPLE ac DOMINO DNO CAROLO ejus nomine S. Extraordinarium Illustrissimum et Excellentissimum D. Carolum Gm. Carolensem Vice Gm. Howard a. Moipeth. Baronem D. Aere de Gillel

Adspice sidera certantes ignibus laevis

Aethra repentinis nomina subire gradibus

Cerne coronatas turres, atque proceras triplices

Etque Principibus Nomina sacra iussu

Cirumlatam facibus noctem hinc mirare nitens

Edicta sublimibus missa, lustrata loquem

Unite Equitem et tota pactata incendia mole

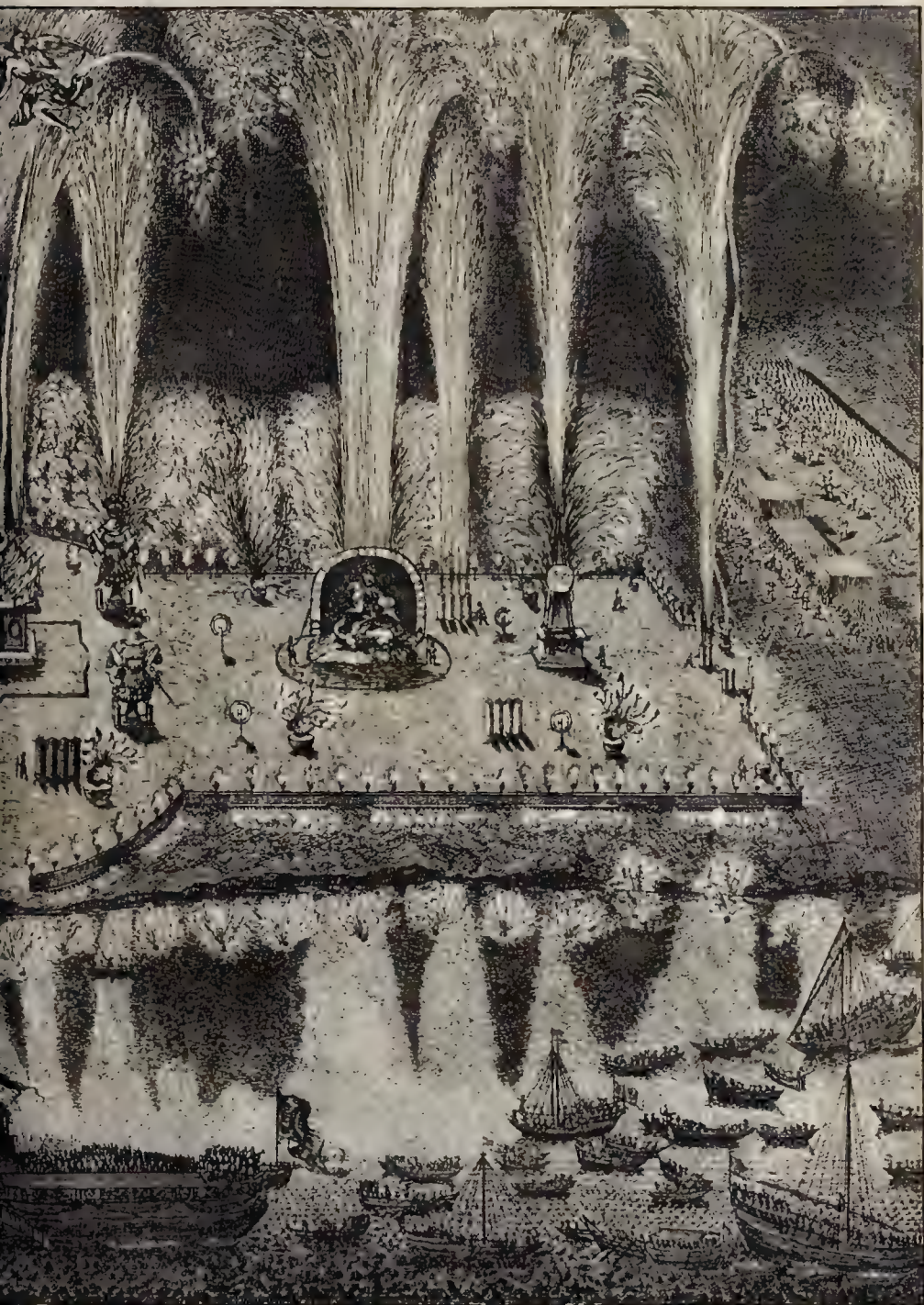
Hicque Perisclides nobile schema vide

Venisse caelestis n

Et laevis Regum

Dum talis est terrae

Ut solum hunc in



cum eundem SERENISSIMVS atque POTENTISSIMVS PRINCEPS ac DOMINVS DV. CAROLVS D.G. Svecorum Gothorum
 Caelubria, et Vandalia, Princeps Rugie, Dominus Inguia, et Vistularie, nec non Palatinus Comes ad Rhenum, Bavaria, Iuliaci, Clivia
 DD. D.G. Magna Britannia Francie et Hibernie Rex Fidei Defensor per eundem .C.R. Maj. Magna Britannie Regis Legatum
 Militum Praefectum et Locumtenentem Regium in Provinciis Cambria et Westmerlandia, Oblatum suscepit Holmiae 29 July .A. 1600.

igitur honores,
 aut. Anon.
 itis aequo notus,
 dica lingua sonet.

Dumque hec mortales longum sper ducit in aevum
 Et statum aeterni fiderit, quoniam habet:
 Restat ut Arctiferae fama haec quoque permiscet orbes
 Ne qua pars plausu rerum Elementa vacent.

Hic ergo incipit, Reges dicturus Amicas,
 Dicturus Fratri. Nuncius Ignis abit:
 Utque parat, qua sese haec quondam Esca digna
 Parte Poli sistuat. Partes hic Ignes abit.



Upon Tuesday the 13. of April, between 10 and 11 of the Clock in the morning, the Duke sent a great number of his Servants to them, to let them know he was ready to receive the Order; whereupon Mr. St. George put on his Robe or Mantle, and having placed the Habit, Collar, George, Garter, and his Majesty's Commisſion upon a Blue Velvet Cuſhen, they were conducted to a little Room appointed for that purpoſe, where the Duke ſtayed for them, Mr. St. George carrying the Robes and the other Enſigns of the Order, which he preſented to the Duke, and after placed them on a Table ſtanding by him.

Then Sir Thomas Higgons and Mr. St. George, having firſt prayed the Duke's leave, took off his Cloak, and his Sword and Belt, which the ſaid Mr. St. George had for his Fee, and after that the Blue Ribband and George, which they had preſented to him before, which Mr. St. George delivered to one of the Duke's Servants.

The Duke being in this poſture, Mr. St. George took the Surcoat which Sir Thomas Higgons and he preſented to the Duke, and then put it on; after that the Girdle and Hangers, which they likewiſe girt about him, having received another Sword from the Maſter of his Horſe.

Then the Duke's Secretary brought and laid upon the Table before his Electoral Highneſs, the Letters Teſtimonial ingroſſed in Parchment, of the preſenting him with the Enſigns of the Order, which he there ſigned, and being ſealed by him before them, they were delivered to Mr. St. George by the Duke.

Theſe things being thus performed, they proceeded to the great Room prepared, where the principal part of the Ceremony was to be accompliſhed, where there was a great concourſe of People, and towards the upper end on the right hand was a place raiſed, where ſate the Dutcheſs, the Prince of Saxony and Princeſs, the Princeſs of Anhalt, and below them a great many Ladies of quality, and the Ladies of the Court.

Fiſt paſſed the Dukes Servants two and two.

Then the Cap and Feather, carried by Mr. St. George's ſon.

Next Mr. St. George, carrying the reſt of the Habit and the Enſigns of the Order.

Then Sir Thomas Higgons.

After him the Duke of Saxony in his Surcoat, his Sword girt about him.

On each ſide, and cloſing the Rere, were his Guard of State richly habited, with Partizans in their hands, the Staves covered with Blue Velvet, and ſet thick with gilt Nails.

In this manner they paſſed through divers ſtately Rooms, entertained with ſeveral ſorts of Muſick, until they came to the great Room, where there was alſo excellent Muſick of ſeveral ſorts, with Kettle-Drums and Trumpets, placed in a high Gallery at the lower end, which entertained them as ſoon as they entred.

In this Room was two States of Crimson Velvet, the one at the upper end for the Sovereign with a Chair and a Foot-ſtool, and an Eſcotcheon of the Sovereign's Arms within a Garter, having his Stile underneath, ſet over the Chair; the other on the ſide of the Room on the right hand of the Sovereign's State for the Duke, with an Eſcotcheon of his Arms within a Garter, and his Stile underneath; and on the left hand two Chairs, the one for Sir Thomas Higgons, the other for Mr. St. George.

Being entred this Room, as they paſſed from the lower end, three obeysances were made to the Sovereign's State going up, then the Duke going to his State, and there ſtanding, Mr. St. George placed the Robes on a Table on the Duke's right hand; which being done, Sir Thomas Higgons and Mr. St. George did go to their Chairs oppoſite to the Duke's, on the left hand of the Sovereign's State, making their obeysances to it as they paſſed by, then the Duke ſate down, and they did the like. Then being entertained with Muſick for a little while, they roſe from their Seats, and making their obeysances as before to the Sovereign's State as they paſſed by it, and repaired to the Duke, who ſtanding up, they placed themſelves on each ſide of him: being in this poſture Mr. St. George took up the Commiſſion, and holding it in his hand, Sir Thomas Higgons made a ſpeech to the Duke, relating to the Antiquity and Nobleneſs of the Order, declaring how many Emperors, Kings, and Foreign Princes had been Companions thereof ſince its institution, and in relation to the election of his Electoral Highneſs of the ſplendor and greatneſs of his Family, &c.

G g

which

which having ended, Mr. St. George gave the Commission to Sir Thomas Higgons who presented it to the Duke, which he caused to be read with a loud voice by his Secretary, and then received it again, and delivered it to Mr. St. George.

After this Mr. St. George took the Garter, and with the assistance of Sir Thomas Higgons, buckled it about the Duke's left Leg, then they put on the Mantle, the Hood upon the right shoulder, and last of all the Collar and George.

Thus being fully invested, Mr. St. George spoke to the Duke as followeth, Ayant investi vostre Altesse Electorale avec tous les habits & les autres ornements du tres-noble Ordre de la Jartiere, Je souhaite toute sorte de prosperité de grandeur & de longue vie au tres-hault tres-puissant & tres-illustre Prince Jean George le Second, par la grace de Dieu Duc de Saxe, de Juliers Cleves, & des Montz, Archimareschall & Prince Electeur du Saint Empire, Landgrave de Thuringe, Margrave de Misnie, & de la haute & basse Lusace, Burgrave de Magdeburg, Conte de la Marche & Ravensperg, Seigneur in Ravensstein, & Chevalier du tres-noble Ordre de la Jartiere; which being ended, the Trumpets and Band *Marched*.

The Musick ceasing, Sir Thomas Higgons congratulated his Electoral Highness's Investiture, whereupon one of his Council made a speech in Latine, declaring his Electoral Highness's great obligation to the King of Great Britain, how highly he esteemed the Order, and his Majesty's particular kindness to him, &c. and concluded with his thanks to Sir Thomas Higgons and Mr. St. George.

Then Mr. St. George took the Cap and Feather and presented it to the Duke, which he put on; and they returned in the same order as they came, to the Chamber from whence they brought him, Mr. St. George's son bearing his Train; and there they left him and retired, being attended to their Apartments by the Duke's Servants. About half an hour after, the Duke sent his Servants again for them, they found him in the same Room where they left him, in the Habit of the Order, and in the same manner as before they passed to the Room, where the Duke's Dinner was upon the Table, and they dined with him that day, the Duke wearing the Habit of the Order, and Mr. St. George his Robe. After Dinner they attended him back to the same Room, and there took their leaves and departed.

Upon Sunday the 18. of April, the Duke's chief Chamberlain came to Sir Thomas Higgons first, and after to Mr. St. George; and presented each of them with a Chain of Gold, and the Electors Picture set in Diamonds hanging at it, and also to each of them a Bason and Enure; he also presented Mr. St. George's son with a little Jewel of Diamonds, and invited them to Dine with the Duke, and the Master of the Ceremonies presented all their Servants.

On Monday the 19. of April, Sir Thomas Higgons, and Mr. St. George took their leaves of the Duke to return for England, and dined that day with him: and that Evening the Duke's Secretary brought them a Proxie, under the Duke's hand and Seal to the Earl of Bath, to be installed for him at Windsor.

The next morning being Tuesday, the 20. of April (Sir Thomas Higgons and Mr. St. George, having before hired a Boat to carry them down the River of Elbe to Hamburg) the Dukes Coaches and Servants attended them to their Boats, and there all but two of them took their leaves of them, those two that remained had laid in provision, and attended and defrayed them by the Dukes command, as long as they travelled in the Dukes Territories, which was within two German Miles of Magdeburgh, and there they took their leaves.

Sir Thomas Higgons and Mr. St. George parted at Hamburg, the former to go for England by the way of Holland, the other by shipping. Upon Sunday the 16. of May, Mr. St. George arrived first in England, and that day Fortnight Sir Thomas Higgons; and when Mr. St. George kissed his Majesties hand at his return, he was pleased to confer the honor of Knighthood upon him, with the same Sword the Duke of Saxony gave him.

By way of Corollary to the present Section, it will be necessary to give an account of those Transactions relating to this most Noble Order, which past, during the interval of the late Rebellion and Usurpation.

The

The present *Sovereign*, by reason of his frequent removals from several places, beyond the Seas, where his rebellious Subjects had forced him to retire, was obliged to dispence with the accustomed Ceremonies of the *Order*, and to such *Strangers* as he was pleased to *Elect*, to send only the *George* and *Garter*, together with the *Glory* or *Star* of Silver (to wit the *Cross* of St. *George* irradiated within a *Garter*, curiously wrought in rich embroidery) to be worn upon their upper Garments: Declaring also, that the *Investiture* therewith should be sufficient to stile themselves *Knights-Companions* of this most Noble *Order*, as effectually, as if they had been formally, and with the usual Solemnities, installed at *Windefor Castle*, where then it was not possibly to be done.

And in these Cases, instead of such formal *Commissions* of *Legation*, as had been accustomed to be made out, the *Sovereign* sent only his *Letters* ^a signifying a *Appendix*, Election to the *Elect-Stranger*, and a *b* *Warrant* to Sir *Edward Walker* *Garter*, un- *Num. CIII.*
der his sign manual, whereby he was authorised, according to his Office, to de- *CIV. CV. &*
liver those *Ensigns* to the *Elect-Stranger*, with such Ceremonies as were usual, *CVII.*
and might be performed in the place where he was. *b Num CVI. & CVIII.*

Of this kind were the *Warrants* issued out to the said Sir *Edward Walker*, for delivery of the *Garter*, *George*, and *star* ^a to *Charles* Prince of *Tarante*, to *c* *Wil* ^d (Ex Collect.
liam Prince of *Orange*, to *e* *Frederick William* Marquess of *Brandenburgh*, and by *f* ^e E. W. G.
virtue of which he invested these *Princes* with them.

The manner and order of *Investiture* of a *Stranger* upon these occasions, was briefly thus.

The *Stranger-Elect*, to whom the *Ensigns* were sent, entred into the Room, appointed to receive the Ceremony, and placed himself under the State.

In the mean time, *Garter*, having retired into another Room neer thereunto, put on his rich *Coat* of the *Sovereign's Arms*, and placed the *Garter*, *George*, and *Cloak* (on the left shoulder whereof was embroidered the *Cross* of St. *George*, within a *Glory* of Silver) upon a Velvet Cushen; then taking them on his arms before him (together with the *sovereign's Letters*) went towards the Room, where the *Elect-Stranger* expected his coming, and where (a free passage being made) he proceeded up with three Reverences, and being arrived neer unto him, laid down the Cushen on a Table, placed for that purpose, neer the fore-said State.

This done, he began his *Oration*, and having made an entrance, sufficient to usher in the delivery of the *Sovereign's Letters*, he presents them to the *Elect-Stranger*, who opening the same, returned them back for *Garter* to read, which having done he redelivered them to him.

These things being dispatched, he took the *Garter* from off the Cushen, and kneeling down, first buckled it on the *Elect-Strangers* left leg, next he took the Blue Ribband and *George*, and hung it about his Neck, and lastly the *Cloak*, which he put likewise over his shoulders; and leaving him thus Invested, proceeded on with his *Harangue*: which being ended, he attended what the *Invested-Stranger* should please to say, by way of acknowledgment, or thanks to the *Sovereign*, for the Honor received: and then with usual obeysance departed the Room to put off his *Coat*.

The Copy of Sir *Edward Walker's* Speech, made in delivering the *Garter*, to *William* Prince of *Orange*, at the *Hague*, on Sunday in the Afternoon, being the 4. of May 1653.

May it please your Royal Highness,

I Have lately received the Commands of his sacred Majesty, the King your Brother, ^{Ex Collect.}
Charles the Second of that name, by the Grace of God King of England, Scot- ^{E. W. G.}
land, France, and Ireland, Defendor of the Faith, and Sovereign of the most Noble and Renowned Order of St. *George*, called the *Garter*, humbly to attend his Ne-
phew the Prince of *Orange*, only Son unto your Royal Highness, and to deliver unto
G g g 2 him

him the Ensigns of that most Noble Order, with his Majesty's Letters of Dispensation investing his Highness with the most splendid Ornaments thereof. But because the tenderness of his Highness age allows him not the capacity to comprehend the great honor the King hath done him, in this early electing his Highness into this most Noble Society, the Reasons whereof are best express'd in his Majesty's gracious Letter; I shall therefore humbly address my self unto your Royal Highness, his Mother and Intrix, and by your permission, open and read his Majesty's Letters, and shall then, in obedience to his Majesty's Commands, deliver unto his Highness the Garter and George therewith sent. The Investiture being dispatched, he thus proceeded.

Now that his Highness is by his Majesty's gracious Election and Dispensation Invested, and become a Companion of this most Noble Order, I should according to the obligation of my Office, represent unto his Highness somewhat of the Antiquity, Nature, and Dignity of this most famous Order; but (as I said before) the tenderness of his Highness age denying him the notion of matters of this kind, my hopes and wishes shall supply that present defect, which are, that as his Highness grows in years, under the happy tuition of your Royal Highness, and observing that he wears an Order and Habit not common to others, that he will with curiosity examine the cause of that effect, and then I doubt not but he will be informed, and with delight retain in his memory, that it was the most victorious King of England, Edward the Third, his Highness Ancestor, that 300 years past for noble and generous ends instituted this Order, that it was the King his Uncle that elected him thereunto in his infancy, That he is of an Order neer 100 years more ancient than any other merely Military, and that it hath been so highly valued and desired, as that the greatest Monarchs of Europe in their times have been Companions thereof. And to make the impression deeper, his Highness will then also find, that his great and excellent Father, your Royal Highness Husband, was a Companion of this most Noble Order, as were formerly those two most potent and fortunate Supporters of this State, his Highness most heroick Grandfather Henry, and his great Uncle Maurice, all Princes of Orange in succession; The great Examples of whose admired and noble actions, as of other his Royal and Princely Ancestors, will certainly induce his Highness with alacrity and vigour to endeavour to be equal unto them in all honor, magnanimity, and princely virtues.

I shall conclude, that as your Highness hopeful Son, the Prince here present, is the youngest that ever yet was chosen into this most Noble Society, so it cannot be otherwise esteemed, than an early Omen of his future felicity and greatness, which with length of days and all prosperity, is humbly and heartily wished by me unto his Highness, the most high, mighty, and excellent Prince, William Henry of Nassau, Prince of Orange, &c. Knight and Companion of the most Noble Order of the Garter.

A brief Journal of Sir Edward Walker's passage and employment, in passing from Amsterdam to Hamborough, and so from thence to Berlin, to deliver the Garter to his Electoral Highness, Frederick Guillaume Marquess of Brandenburg, An. Dom. 1654.

Ex eod. Col-
lect.

ON Tuesday in the Afternoon, being the 17. of March New Stile, I began my Journey, and arrived at Hamborough the Monday following being the 23. I stayed there from Monday till Thursday in the Evening, and then I departed with the Messenger of Berlin. On Monday morning I came to Spanda, a good Town, where there is the strongest Fort I ever saw, of four Bulwarks, environed by the River Sprey, and a Morass towards Berlin, from which place the Elector hath caused the Wood to be felled, that he might see this Fort from his Castle at Berlin.

At 11 of the Clock that day I arrived at Berlin, here I lodged my self in the Burgomasters house, a good Inn, and that Afternoon sent for one Mr. Roe an English-man, but an old Servant of the Electors Family; to him in general I made my self known, and desired his advice for my address, he presently went and acquainted the Electors Marshal with my Arrival, who presently informed the Elector, and
so

so I had answer, if I sent to the Marshal the next day at 10 of the Clock, I should understand his Highness's pleasure; accordingly I sent, and the Marshal returned me answer, that at 11 his Highness would send a Gentleman to conduct me to the Court, and accordingly there came his Carver, in one of his Highness's Coaches, to conduct me thither, where when I was arrived, I was brought through two or three Rooms (the Guards standing in order in the first, and Gentlemen in the rest) by the Gentleman to the Electors Anti-Chamber; there his Chamberlain received me, and brought me into his Highness's Bed-chamber, to whom I presented my self in the best posture I could, and briefly gave him an Account of my Employment, and delivered him his Majesty's Letter, which he presently opened and read, and in few words of great respect acknowledged his Majesty's favour: After that I delivered him her Majesty the Queen of Bohemia's Letter, which he received with great demonstration of affection, and then returned to discourse with me about the time and manner of receiving the Order.

Hereupon I having prepared a Paper of all things necessary, that so I might do my best for his Majesty's honor and service, I presented it unto his Highness, which he presently gave to Monsieur Scurein (one of the chief of his Council, and the only person, besides his Chamberlain, then present) to read, which he did, and it gave the Elector so full satisfaction, as he proposed to receive the Order the next day being Wednesday; but I being weary, and besides other particulars being to be advised, I put it off till Thursday: so I took my leave of his Highness for that instant, and the Surintendant being Hofmaster to the Electrix, brought me to her Apartment to wait upon her, to whom I likewise delivered her Majesty's Letter, she received me with great favour, and told me her Mother had given her notice of my coming, so after some questions of the young Prince of Orange, the Princes Royal, &c. I took my leave, and was conducted into his Highness's Dining-Room, where the Dinner being on the Table, he presently appeared, leading his Mother who with her Brother the Palatine of Zimérne, his Lady, with a Son and Daughter came to this Court few days before. The old Electress, seeing me present, with high civility seemed as if I should apply my self unto her; hereupon I briefly told her, that I was assured, had her Majesty the Queen of Bohemia known I should have found her there, I should have had the honor to have brought her Letters from her Majesty, which she took in good part, so she placed her self with her Sister-in-Law, her Daughter-in-Law, the young Electress her Sister, the Princess Katherine, and the young Princess of Zimérne on the outside of the Table; in the interim the Elector, the Duke of Zimérne and his son washed, the Chamberlain giving the Towel, then the Gentleman gave water to the Ladies, so they took their places at a long Table; at the end sat the Dutches of Zimérne, and the old Electress on the inside of the Table, the Electress, the Princess Katherine, and the young Princess of Zimérne, on the outside sat the Duke of Zimérne, then the Elector (then stood the Carver) and below sat the young Prince of Zimérne, and below him the Chamberlain, opposite to the young Prince and next to his Sister I was placed, beneath me the Master of the House to the old Electress, and then at the end sat the Electors Master of his Horse, and another: The Table was excellently served, having at the first course 20 Dishes of gilt Plate, covered with Silver, and the Plates the same; so was the second course, and at the third, the Banquet was served in, in as many standing scalloped Cups gilt. At the second course the Elector began to me his Majesty's Health, and a while after the Duke of Zimérne the Queen of Bohemia's, and these were all the Healths past at the Table, so as to my great joy, instead of drinking after the German mode, I rose from Table thirsty.

Dinner being done, his Highness and the Ladies returned into her Highness's Chamber; in the interim I stayed in the Dining-Room, where the Marshal came and told me, his Highness had given order, I should be lodged neer the Court, at his Stables, and should have a Coach to wait upon me to come to Court that Evening, and so constantly while I stayed. I excused the first, at least till the next day, and the last for that time, and so returned to my Lodging. The next day after Dinner, I went into the Electress's Room with the Elector, and presently the old Electress applied her self to entertain me, and did so neer an hour. Then I took my leave of her and the Elector for that time, and was brought by one of his Gentlemen to my new Lodging at the Stables, where (after a large half pace, at the top of a Stair)

I was

I was brought into my Stove hung with good Arras, at the upper end were two large round Tables, the one covered with a Carpet of Crimson Velvet fringed with Gold, the other of Cloth of Gold, on which stood a great Silver Basin and Ewer, out of that Room I went into my Bed-Chamber hung with Silk Hangings, the Bed was of Cloth of Gold Damask, and the Counterpart of rich Cloth of Gold, and Chairs of Crimson Velvet; towards Evening I was sent to, to know whether I would sup at the Court or there, I desired the last at my Lodging, in regard I was to deliver the Garter the next day. So in the Evening Wax Candles were brought me in great Silver Candle-sticks, and Wine and Beer in two great standing gilt Cups, and then eight or ten Dishes of meat in Silver Dishes, and (the Table being covered with rich Damask Lincin) the meat was brought by six or eight Footmen, and a Page of the Electors to wait upon me, towards the end of Supper, five or six Plates of Sweet-meats were set on the Table, and so the Supper ended.

The next morning being Thursday, the 3. of April, Stilo Novo, I made my self ready to deliver the Garter, and about 10 of the Clock went to Court conducted by a Gentleman sent of purpose, when I came there I found all things ready as I had designed, and presently the Elector came and set himself under the Cloth of State, a Table standing by him whereon to lay the Garter, &c. Then I presently retired into another Chamber, and put on my Coat of Arms, having laid on a Velvet Cushen his Cloak, the Garter, George, and his Majesty's Letter (which was again delivered me, as I had proposed, to be then publicly read) so having made my three Reverences, I approached near his Electoral Highness, and then laid down the Cushen, and applied my self by way of introduction in the French Tongue, to give an account of my Employment, and therein again delivered to his Highness his Majesty's Letter, which he re-delivered me. Then having finished my introduction, I read openly his Majesty's Letter, which done, I again delivered it to him, and kneeled down and put on the Garter, then the George, and lastly the Cloak, and so proceeded with the rest of my Harrangue; which done, the Elector in few words returned humble thanks to his Majesty, for the great honor he had done him, in making him Companion of so Noble and worthy an Order, and was likewise pleased to give me thanks for the pains I had taken in bringing it unto him; so I made my Reverences and departed to put off my Coat. During the time of exercising my Function, I saw him very well pleased with it, and after, all the Company present, being his Council and Servants, congratulated his admission.

Presently after his Highness came forth to Dinner with the accustomed company, and as formerly he drank to me his Majesty's Health; afterwards the Duke of Zimerne began his Highness Health to me, and her Majesty of Bohemia's Health and the Electress's passing, Dinner was ended, so being weary I went not into the Elector's Chamber, but returned to my Lodging; where I had not been long, but the Elector accompanied with the Duke of Zimerne, and most of his Court, came to the Escurie to see his Horses, so I presently went down to wait upon his Highness, who used me with high civility, causing me to put on my Hat (for by the way, at home I never saw him covered) at first I saw his Stables full of excellent Horses, at least 30 of several breeds for the Great Saddle, thence he went up stairs, the stable being a quadrangle well built, and the Rooms above divided into six or eight Rooms, all full of Carbiners, Pistols, Swords, rich Armour, &c. of divers fashions and richness, and the two last of very rich Saddles of all fashions, and Furniture for Horses, many of them set with Turquoises, Rubies, Emeralds, &c. and one set with Diamonds; which done, his Highness took his Coach and departed. That Evening I had a Supper at my Lodging as formerly, and the Mr. de la Lane grand Esquire came to me from his Highness, telling me he had order, if I pleased, to wait upon me to shew me the Fort at Spanda, and likewise that at Castrein 10 Miles off, I excused the last as being far off, and would take the opportunity of seeing the other at my return. Fryday I went to Court again, and then I delivered his Highness the Copy of my Speech, and told him I had no more to do now, but to attend his Commands, resolving to depart about the middle of the week following.

The next day being Saturday I dined at Court as formerly: The following day being Easter-day, I went early to the Court, and waited on the Elector to the Church, which by a Gallery is joined to the Court, I had the honor immediately to precede his

his Highness leading his Mother, and to have a stool set me in his Closet, which is at the lower end opposite to the Altar above his Chamberlain, next the young Prince of Zimerne; there I heard the Service and Sermon, which ended, the Elector and all the Company went down to receive the Sacrament, leaving me in the Closet with two Lutheran Gentlemen to bear me company; all being done, we returned in the same order we came to Church, and went immediately to Dinner, which was served up as formerly, but the number of Dishes of all sorts surpassing other days, yet there past only his Majesty's health, and the Elector's at that time. That Evening I supped at Court, where the entertainment was agreeable to the former.

Monday after Dinner I represented to his Highness, that having obeyed his Majesty in delivering the Order, I had no more to do, but to beseech his Highness leave to depart on Thursday, and therefore prayed him to honor me with his Commands on Wednesday, which he granted, though at Dinner he proposed to me to go and see his strong Fort at Castrin 10 Dutch Miles thence, but I excused it, saying, I would satisfy my self with seeing that at Spanda two Miles in my way back, which is of great strength both by art and situation.

The next day being Wednesday, I sent to have audience, to take my leave of his Highness in the Morning, but I was put off till after Supper. Yet I waited on his Highness to Dinner, and after Dinner I waited upon the old Electress, the Duke of Zimerne, and his Lady and Children, and the Princess Katherine, and had Letters from most of them to the Queen of Bohemia and Princess Louisa, with as great testimonies from them of their affection and good wishes to his Majesty, and respect and thanks to my self as was imaginable: After Supper that Evening, I took my leave of his Electoral Highness, who with all respect delivered me his Letter to his Majesty, and then with extraordinary civility he dismissed me. After that, although the Electress had taken Physick that day, I had audience of her, who gave me her Letter to the Queen of Bohemia, and when I desired one to her Mother, she told me she had written by the Post, and so I returned to my Lodging.

The next morning being Thursday, Monsieur le Cane Captain of his Highness Guard and Master of his Horse brought me a Present of 100 pieces of Gold, weighing each 5 Daiats, which were coined of purpose for me, using much Complement from the Elector his Master in the delivery, and then presently by his Highness Order, he brought me out of Town in one of his Highness Coaches, there being two other Gentlemen with him: and first he shewed me the place of casting Ordinance, where there were newly cast two great whole Cannons and a very large Mortar-piece, then through a very large Park we came to Spanda, where at the entry of the Fort I was saluted with three pieces of Cannon, and met by the Governor, who shewed me all the strength and provisions thereof, which are in all kinds very great both of Brass, Ordinance, and Arms. After that, I was very well entertained at Dinner by the Governor, and after Dinner saw the Elector's Lodgings, where only the great variety of rare Stags-horns is worth observation, and so the Messenger being arrived, I took my leave of the Governour and Monsieur le Cane, who brought me out of the Fort, and through the Town, returning by the same way and means. Thus I came to Hamburg on Monday following, and so returned to Amsterdam on Sunday night the 20. of April.

Shortly after the present Sovereign was most happily restored to his Kingdoms, he took care to send over the rest of the Habit and Ensigns of the Order (namely the Mantle, Surcoat, Hood, and Collar) to the said Prince Elector of Brandenburg, who had yet been invested but with part; these were committed to the care of Garter, who thereupon sent them to Prince Maurice of Nassau to be conveyed to the said Elector; the Receipt of which, with the Elector's particular thankful acknowledgments to the sovereign, may be found in the^b Appendix.

^b Num. CIX.
CX. CXI.
CXII. &
CXIII.

SECT. IV.

Certificates of having received the Habit and Ensigns of the Order.

THE great and magnificent Solemnity of *Investiture* with the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of this most Noble Order, being compleatly finished, and the *Ambassadors* having fully performed their duties therein, with all circumstances of honor, as belongs to so great a Ceremony, they are yet further to obtain from the new *Invested Stranger*, before their departure, a publick Instrument, testifying the reception of the said *Habit* and *Ensigns*, signed with his Hand, and sealed with his Great Seal.

This we find anciently done, as appears from that Certificate sent back by Charles Duke of Burgundy, bearing date at *Gannt* the 4. of February an. 9. E. 4. and was generally demanded and obtained since that time, as will fully appear from the several Certificates sent from those *Stranger-Princes*, to whom the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the Order have been presented.

Hereupon was a Clause to this effect usually added in the Instructions, given to *Ambassadors* in such their Legations, as appears from those to the Lord Howard and Garter, in the Embassy to James the Fifth King of Scotland; namely, ^b That Garter should remember (after the *Investiture* was performed) to purchase and sollicite a Certificate from the said King, of his reception of the Order, and taking the Oath, both under his Seal.

The form and substance of those Certificates which have come to our view, are much alike; for^k after a recital of all the powers given to the *Ambassadors*, named in the *Commission* of Legation, the *Stranger-Prince* first makes Certificate of his Receiving, and Investiture with the *Garter*, *Mantle*, *Surcoat*, *Collar*, and other *Ornaments* of the Order, and that they have been presented to him by the *Sovereign's Ambassadors*, with due honor, and all the Solemnities accustomed: and generally where the Letters signifying *Election*, and the *Habit* of the Order have been sent together, the Certificate of receiving them hath also contained the *Strangers* grateful acceptance of the Order, together with his due thanks (in such cases necessary to be returned) and an acknowledgment, how acceptable the choice, and assumption into this Society, hath been to him.

And in some of these Certificates, namely from ^l Ferdinand Prince of Spain, an. 15. H. 8. from ^m Francis the First, the French King, an. 19. H. 8. and from ⁿ Gustavus Adolphus King of Sweden, an. 3. Car. 1. we find, the taking the Oath appointed by the Statutes to be also certified, with such qualifications and under such conditions, as had been advised and agreed upon, between them and the *Sovereign's Ambassadors* beforehand.

Of the return of these Certificates, the *Annals* of the Order sometimes take notice, as in particular, that of ^o Frederick the Second King of Denmark, which the Lord Willoughby brought back with him, ^p signed by that King, and sealed with his Great Seal, which he presented to the *Sovereign* in the ^q Chapter-house at Windesfor, upon the finishing of his Legation; as also that of the French King ^k Henry the Third, by the Earl of Derby.

Moreover by a late ^r Decree an. 13. Car. 1. care was taken to oblige the *Ambassadors* to produce these Certificates to the *Sovereign* at their return.

And besides the Certificate testifying the *Investiture*, sometimes the *Stranger-Prince* hath been pleased to give therewith, a particular testimonial of Garter's punctual discharge of his duty in the Legation, or of the Officer of Arms employed in his stead; as did ^s Frederick Duke of Wirtemberg, in a Letter to the *Sovereign*, an. 1. Jac. R. The like did Gustavus Adolphus King of Sweden, in the preamble of his ^t Diploma, whereby he testifies the bestowing upon Henry St. George Richmond Herald, the honor of *Knighthood*.

^b Appendix, Nam. CII.

^k Ibid. Nam. CXIV. & c.

^l Ibid. Nam. CXV.
^m in Nam. CXVI.
ⁿ Nam. CXIX.

^o Lib. C. f. 87.
^p 7.

^k Ibid. p. 97.

^r Lib. R. p. 120.

^s See the Letter inserted at the beginning of Ech. Celsus his Eq. Aur. Anglo-Wirtemb. in the *Sovereigns Library* at St. James's.
^t Seld. Tit. of Honor. f. 459.

Of those *Gratuities* given to *Garter* by *Strangers*, after they had received their Investiture, notice of some of them have come to our hands, which we therefore think fit to mention here.

Ferdinand Arch-Duke of *Austria* gave him a "Cup worth 22 *l.* and 100 Rhenish Guilders.

^u { *Ex Colle.*
^w { *E. W. G.*
^x {

The *French* King *Francis* the First w 250 Crowns.

James the Fifth King of *Scotland* * 100 Crowns of the Sun.

John *Casimire* Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*, a Gold Chain and a Cup worth 30 Pounds.

Frederick Duke of *Wirttemberg*, a v rich Sword and Dagger, a Chain of Gold with his Picture hanging at it, and lastly 1000 Rix Dollars.

^y *Eq. Aur. Anglo-Wirtemb.*
^{p.} 259.

Maurice Prince of *Orange* a * Chain of 6 pound weight, and a Medal with his Picture thereat, set about with Diamonds.

^z *MS. penes G. O. T. p. 132.*

Charles Prince of *Tarent* a * Diamond of 200 *l.* value.

William Prince of *Orange* ^b 1200 Dollars.

^a { *Ex Relat.*
^b { *lione E.*
^c { *W. G.*
^d {
^e {
^f {

Frederick *William* Elector of *Brandenburg* ^c 100 pieces of Gold, each of the value of 10 Rix Dollars.

John *Gasper* Count *Marchin* about ^d 200 *l.* in Gold.

Charles the Eleventh King of *Sweden* gave to *Henry* *St. George* Esq; at his Investiture, a ^e Gold Chain and a Medal pendant thereto, worth 200 *l.*

And lastly, *John* *George* Duke of *Saxony* bestowed on *Thomas* *St. George* Esq; a ^f Silver Bafon and Eure, a Gold Chain and Medal, and a Sword with a Cross Hilt of Agat, adorned with Gold.

CHAP. XVI.

THE

Installation

OF A

Stranger *by* Proxie.

SECT. I.

Touching the Choice and Nomination of a Proxie.

^a § Ed. 3. Stat.
^b § Art. 20.

THE Invested *stranger*, of what Dignity, State, or Condition soever, is enjoined by the *Statutes* (after such his Investiture) to send hither a ^a *Proctor* or *Deputy* (for we find both Titles indifferently applied to one person) to be installed on his behalf, in the Seat assigned him within the Chappel of St. George at Windsor.

^c Art. 20.
^d § Art. 21.
^e §

The time limited by the *Statutes of Institution*, for sending him hither, is ^b eight Months after Investiture with the Habit and Ensigns of the Order. Yet in King *Henry* the Fifth's *Statutes* it is but ^c seven Months; and those of King *Henry* the Eighth allow only ^d seven Months and no more, and that not only after Investiture, but after the *stranger* hath ^e certified the *sovereign* of his Reception of the Order.

^f Lib. N. p. 257. The *French King Francis* the First, was so earnest for the completing this honor, that he ^f speedily (after he had received the Habit and Ensigns) dispatcht his *Proctor* hither, to perform what the *Statutes* required in this particular. And for the general we observe so little slackness in *stranger-Princes*, nay so great a forwardness to obtain the accomplishment of this Honor, that their *Deputies* have been installed for them within the limited time.

But

But King Henry the Eighth's statutes have further provided, ^{§ That in case a} ^{8 Art. 21.} Stranger do not send his Deputy or Proctor within seven Months, without having a reasonable excuse, and such as should be allowed by the Sovereign or his Deputy, the Election (notwithstanding his former acceptation) should be also void, except so it be, that the Stranger be hindered or disturbed by great Affairs, and then might he send his Excuse to the Sovereign or his Deputy, within one month after; and according as the Sovereign or his Deputy should allow or disallow of his Excuse, that then the Sovereign or his Deputy might give unto him four months of respite more, within which time, if he neither come nor send his Deputy to be installed for him, then the said Election should be void for that time.

And sometimes it hath fallen out, that through the multiplicity of Affairs, strangers could not punctually observe the ancient Law of the Statutes in this point; nevertheless, by virtue of the limitation in those Statutes of King Henry the Eighth, upon a sufficient cause, the Sovereign hath been pleased to excuse the delay; but the instances are very few, as that of the French King Charles the Ninth, who was ^h invested at Lyons, an. 6. Eliz. but not installed till the ⁱ 22. of January, in the eighth year of the same Queen.

^h Ex Coll. B.
A. V. W.
ⁱ Lib. C. p. 50.

And when of late the Garter and George only were sent to a Stranger, the Ceremonies of Installation have also been dispensed with till a more convenient time, as appears from the ¹ Instructions of the 4. of March, an. 19. Car. I. given at the sending these two Principal Ensigns of the Order to William Prince of Orange, and Bernard de Foix Duke d'Espernon (in regard of the interruptions then given by the Rebellion here) nevertheless ^m then to be performed with all usual Rites and Honors due to persons so nearly allied unto, and so much esteemed by the then Sovereign of the Order.

¹ Ex Autogr.
m pence pref.
Jac. Palmer.

Such Dispensations, and for the same reason, was the present Sovereign necessitated to give those strangers, whom he honored with Election into this most Noble Order, while he remained in Foreign parts.

And upon his Majesties happy Restauration, among many other things relating to the Order, this particular was at several Chapters taken into serious consideration, in reference not only to the Duke d'Espernon and Prince Maurice, that were dead, but those strangers also then living, both wanting the full complement of their Honor by a formal Installation; for at a Chapter held at Whitehall the 10. of April, an. 13. Car. 2. ⁿ directions were given to Garter, to place the Banners, and other Achievements of the surviving strangers over their respective Stalls: The Sovereign then also did by his Supreme power (induced by divers considerable reasons) ^o dispence wholly and absolutely with their Installations, nevertheless declared them and every of them to be esteemed Companions, and to enjoy all privileges of the Order, as if they had been installed Personally, or by Proxie; with this further declaration notwithstanding, That as the like necessity and conjuncture could never happen again, so he would not upon any motion or pretence whatsoever give the like Dispensation. Finally, at another Chapter, held at Whitehall the 20. of February following, it was concluded, and the Sovereign again declared his pleasure, to dispence with the said strangers Installations by a formal Act, thereupon commanded to be drawn up by the Chancellor; which he having performed, read it in a subsequent Chapter, where it received approbation. A Copy whereof here follows.

ⁿ Lib. Carolini
p. 27.

^o Coll. B.
E. W. G.

W Hereas it is expressly provided by the Statutes of the most Noble Order of the Garter, That no Companion Elect of the same, shall enjoy the privileges of a compleat Knight thereof, before he be actually installed, either in his Person or by his sufficient Proxie, within the accustomed time, and according to the usual Rites and Formalities, which some of those noble Persons, who though Elected, could not possibly perform and receive, during the late troubles, nor legally since our return into our Dominions, by reason of the space of time elapsed since their Election, beyond that which is allowed and prescribed by the Statutes, as also for the many difficulties and incumbrances, through which the performance of their Installations must pass, in some of them who are Strangers, and have their abode in Foreign and

^{Ex Lib. Coll. B.}
^{Hen. de Vic.}
^{Bar. nuper hui.}
^{ord. Com.}
^{cel. p. 23.}

remote parts; which we taking into our consideration, and that if not all, most part of the foresaid Knights were admitted into our said Order, without those Formalities, which at other times, to have omitted had been an unexcusable breach of Statute: We conceiving it no more irregular to pass by the Statutes, in matter of their Installation, than it was in point of their Election, the observation of the usual forms in either of them having proved equally difficult or rather impossible; for these and other reasons, particularly for the avoiding that prejudice, which some of the said Companions, who are now dead, and have a like interest therein, with those that survive them, would have undergone (who for want of being installed, would have been left out of the Catalogue of the Founders in the Register-Books of our Order) as we heretofore declared our pleasure to be, That such of them as are dead, should not for want of being installed, be deprived of the honor of being called Founders, and for those that are yet alive, that they should not suffer likewise in that respect, or in point of their Ranks and Precedency: And accordingly with the advice and consent of our other Companions, in the Chapter held the 10. of April last, we did regulate the Stalls, and command their Hatchments to be set up in the Chappel of St. George, in our Castle of Windsor, according to their Elections in point of time, We continuing in our former purpose, for the putting an end to the irregularities which the late troubles occasioned in our foresaid Order, and the many questions and difficulties which have ensued thereupon, and especially in this particular, We have thought good to dispence with the Installation of all the said Knights, whether they be Subjects or Strangers, dead or living, and whatsoever omission of, or contravention to the Statutes, may have hapned upon that account, And that the same notwithstanding, they all shall be held and reputed for compleat Knights of our foresaid Order, and enjoy all the priviledges and advantages of it, with the rest of the Companions, in as full and ample manner, as if they had been installed and performed all the Rites, and Ceremonies, usual upon such occasions.

But it seems to rest in the pleasure of the stranger, whether he will chuse to send over hither any person of his own Court, or give his Procuration to some one of the Sovereign's Subjects, to receive his Stall, and in his name to take possession of it; the later of which hath been several times done, out of desire to favour some of our Nobility, or other persons of quality at Court; with this honor: For instance, Frederick the Second King of Denmark, gave his Procuration to the Lord Willoughby (principal in the Legation, for the carriage of the Habit of the Order to him) to be installed for him; and in like manner, a John Prince Palatine of the Rhine, deputed Sir Philip Sidney to the same Employment: Viscount Dorchester was installed for Henry Prince of Orange, to whom he (and Sir William Segar, Garter) had before carried the Habit and Ensigns: and this was done by virtue of a Deputation pen'd in French, and sent him hither from the said Prince. The Earl of Carlisle received his Deputation from Charles King of Sweden at Stockholme; and the Prince Elector of Saxony sent his hither to the Earl of Bath.

But it hath sometimes hapned, that a Proctor for the installation of a stranger, hath been appointed and nominated by the Sovereign of the Order, though the Principal had named another before, perchance induced thereto by some extraordinary necessity. Thus it hapned in the case of Maurice Prince of Orange, an. 10. Jac. R. who having deputed Count Henry his Brother to be installed for him, and he having put to Sea in order thereto, but by reason of contrary winds, not arriving in England before the day appointed for his Installation, the Sovereign and Knights-Companions ordered, that Lodowick of Nassau, Kinsman to the Elect Prince, should take possession of his Stall on his behalf; to the end that the honor designed the said Prince, in accompanying Frederick Prince Elector Palatine to his personal Installation, might not become frustrate.

A case somewhat like to this, was that of John George Duke of Saxony; for having sent over his Procuration to John Earl of Bath, and he being detained in the West by extraordinary occasions, when St. George's Feast was held at Windsor, an. 23. Car. 2. wrote to the Chancellor of the Order, to obtain the Sovereign's

f Append.
g Num.
CXXI.
& CXXII.

f Lib. R.
p. 41.

f MS. penes
a Edw. Fair-
w Cambridge.

Sovereign's Dispensation for his not appearing there in the name of his Principal; who* representing his humble request to the *Sovereign*, in *Chapter* held on the Eve of the said Feast, he was pleased to grant it, and appointed *Henceage* Earl of *Winchelsey* to be the Duke's *Proxie*, who performed the whole service.

And there is an ancient Example in this kind, *an. 9. H. 5.* where the *Sovereign* nominated the Lord *Fitz-Hugh*, *Proctor* for the King of *Denmark*; which yet was not done, till after the *Sovereign* had been certified, that the said King had been invested with the Habit and Ornaments of the Order, and also obliged himself by Oath to the observation of the *Statutes*.

In like manner it is recorded, that the Earl of *Cleveland* was by the *Sovereign* appointed *Deputy*, for the Installation of *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*; and yet not unlike but this might be by consent of the said King, though the *Annals* herein are silent; (as is very usual, and sometimes in circumstances and passages of note) for if we look towards the end of the said King's *Certificate*, returned of his Receipt of the Habit and Ensigns of the Order, we shall there find he desired, that the Qualifications therein before mentioned, might be admitted into his Oath, when any solemn attestation should be made by his *Proctor* in his Name; whence it may be well enough (and without much wresting) inferred, that he had not then named his *Proctor*, but probably either by a private Letter, or verbal message, returned by those (or some of them) joined in the Legation with the Habit, might leave him and the time to the choice and appointment of the *Sovereign*.

But suppose the *Sovereign* (being loth to defer this King's Installation too long, considering the hazards of War) did appoint a *Deputy* for his Installation, without his direction; as the case stood he might do it, and not intrench upon that leave given a stranger by the *Statutes*, to chuse his own; because in the body of the said Kings *Certificate*, there is set down the very qualifications wherewith his Oath should be taken by his *Proctor*, which being allowed and admitted by the *Sovereign*, any further concern in this Affair was but matter of indifference.

But if the *Sovereign*, having nominated a *Proctor*, should also cause him to take the ancient Oath, in its absolute nature and form, not allowing those qualifications, which the interests of his Principal, to his Religion, or to other Princes Orders, and such like, might justly exact (which without consulting an invested *Stranger*, cannot well be known or set down) and such an Oath as his Principal had neither allowed of, nor consented unto: this might seem good cause of exception, and be esteemed done in prejudice to his preingaged interests.

SECT. II.

The Proctor's Qualifications.

BUT whether the *Proctor* be nominated by his Principal, or by the *Sovereign*, the *Statutes* of the Order put some qualifications upon the person so sent, or appointed as aforesaid: and first,

That he be *Procurator sufficiens*, & idoneus; that is, such a person who hath been always accounted of an unblamable conversation, not branded with any note of infamy, but altogether irreproveable. And such a one was *Dominus Franciscus*-----Deputy to *Hercules* Duke of *Ferara*, who in the *Black-Book* of the Order, is characterised to be a Knight of an incorrupt Fame; nor are we to doubt, but that other *Proctors* to *Strangers* were such, though the testimonials of their virtue do not appear in the *Annals* of the Order.

Secondly,

* Ex Prof. lib.
Collett. Hen. 6.
Vic. p. 159.

x (Lib. N.
y pag. 164.
z

b Appendix,
Num. CXIX.

* E. 3. Stat.
Art. 20.
a Ib. Art. 24.
b Ord. Stat. in
Lib. N. Art. 19.
c Pag. 197.

d E. 3. Stat.
Art. 20. Vide
fr H. 5. Stat.
Art. 20. & H.
8. Stat. Art. 21.

Secondly, the *Proctor* ought to be a person^d correspondent to the State and Dignity of that *Stranger* which doth depute him; so that answerable to the dignity of the Invested *Knight*, ought to be (in some Proportion) the quality of the *Proctor*. And how this Injunction hath been observed, will sufficiently appear in the following Scheme.

	<i>Knights.</i>	<i>Proctors.</i>	
Emperor.	Maximilian the First.	Marquefs of Brandenburg.	An. 6. H. 7.
	Ericus King of Denmark.	Lord Fitz-Hugh.	An. 9. H. 5.
	Francis the First of France.	Adrian de Tercelein Lord of Bros.	An. 19. H. 8.
	James the Fifth King of Scotland.	Lord John Erskine.	An. 26. H. 8.
	Charles the Ninth of France.	Jaques Lord Remboillet.	An. 8. Eliz.
Kings.	Frederick the Second King of Denmark.	Peregrine Lord Willoughby of Ersby.	An. 24. Eliz.
	Henry the Fourth of France.	Sier de Chastes Vice-Admiral of France.	An. 42. Eliz.
	Christierne the Fourth King of Denmark.	Henry Ramell, hereditary Lord of Wosterwitz and Beckeskaw.	An. 3. Jac. R.
	Gustavus Adolphus King of Sweden.	Thomas Wentworth Earl of Cleveland.	An. 4. Car. 1.
	Charles King of Sweden.	Charles Howard Earl of Carlisle.	An. 23. Car. 2.
Arch-Duke.	Ferdinand Arch-Duke of Austria.	George de Halwyn, Baron of Gomynus.	An. 16. H. 8.
	Peter Duke of Conimbero.	John Lord Typtost.	An. 6. H. 6.
	Guido Ubaldus Duke of Urbin.	Sir Balthasar de Castilian Knight.	An. 22. H. 7.
	Emanuel Duke of Savoy.	Johan Thomas Langusts des Contes de Stropianc.	An. 1. & 2. Ph. & Mar.
Dukes.	Adolph Duke of Holstein.	Walter Devereux Viscount Hereford.	An. 3. Eliz.
	Henry Prince of Orange.	Dudley Carleton Viscount Dorchester.	An. 4. Car. 1.
	John George Duke of Saxony.	Heneage Finch Earl of Winchelsey.	An. 23. Car. 2.
	Anne Montmorency Earl of Beaumont.	Sir Amye de Courteney Knight Sier de Villert.	An. 25. H. 8.
Earls.	Philip Chabot Earl of Newblink.	Sir James Deschateners Knight Sier de Beaulion.	An. 25. H. 8.

* *Nid.*

f Nam fas non
est alios quam
Milites munus
istud in se sus-
cipere, R. pag.
29.

g Ibid. p. 159.
* Collect. R. C.
Cl. fol. 30.

Thirdly it is provided, that he be a *Knight*, and without any manner of Reproach; and if it so happen, that he have not received the degree of *Knighthood*, the *Sovereign* is to bestow that honor, before he be allowed to take upon him the execution of his deputative power; for none but *Knights* are capable of this Honor, or permitted to bear the Ensigns of so great an Order.

Hereupon the Lord Willoughby of Ersby, *Proctor* for Frederick the Second King of Denmark, and Sir Philip Sidney, for John Count Palatine of the Rhyne; were both Knighted by the *Sovereign* at Windefor Castle, the morning before they proceeded to take possession of their Principals Stalls.

Not-

Notwithstanding, there was a reason why this particular was not strictly stood upon (though moved) in the case (and it is the single case) of ^b Henry Ramell, ^h Lib. C. p. 159 Deputy for Christian the Fourth King of Denmark, an. 3. Jac. R. for it being taken notice of, that he was not a Knight, certain persons were sent from the Sovereign to signify his pleasure, that he should be advanced to the honor of *Knighthood*, before he took upon him the *Ensigns* of the *Order*, in his Kings behalf; to which he made answer, ⁱ that he appeared here not in his own, but in ⁱ Lib. R. p. 160; the name of the King of Denmark, and that such a Degree of honor was unusual in his own Country (being born in Pomerania) and therefore humbly desired that he might be excused for receiving the honor. Upon which answer the Sovereign was pleased to ^k dispence with him, and forthwith the said Deputy (but ^k Ibid. no Knight) ^l received the Ornaments of the *Order*, and was admitted to take ^l the Stall assigned to the said King his Principal.

SECT. III.

His Letters of Procuration.

THE authority wherewith an *Elect-Stranger* invests his *Proxie*, is chiefly deduceable from the words in his *Letters of Procuration* or *Deputation*, which ought to pass under the Hand and Seal of his Principal, and do generally contain these particulars.

First, ^m he premiseth the *Sovereign's* Election of him into the *Order* of the *Garter*, and his Receipt of the *Habit* and *Ensigns* thereof; then takes notice of the obligation which the *Statutes* of the *Order* put upon him, for sending a *Proxie* to take possession of his Stall, in regard the dignity whereunto he is advanced in his own Country, will not permit him to repair personally to *Windefor*; and being not only desirous, that the Election and Investiture should obtain its due effect, but to fulfil, as far as in him lies, the Injunctions of the *Statutes*, in what concerns the assuming of his Stall, and taking the Oath appointed, He therefore ordains, authorises, and deposes, a person fitly qualified (named in the *Deputation*) his sufficient *Proctor* and special *Deputy*, to appear at the Castle of *Windefor* on his behalf, and in his Name at the next Solemnity that should be held there, to supply his room, and receive possession of the Stall assigned him, according to the usual form; and to perform in all respects those Ceremonies and things, in his behalf, due and accustomed, or should appear to belong any way to the splendor or ornament of the *Order*: As also to take the accustomed Oath, with those qualifications, and in that form, as had been (or should be) agreed upon; and further to fulfil all other things, which he should think necessary, to be performed on this occasion, or whatsoever thing might require a more special command, than was contained in the *Letters of Procuration*; and as fully as the *Stranger* should be obliged unto, and would do, if he were there present in his own person. Lastly, there is usually added a Clause of Ratification and Confirmation of all such things, as the *Proctor* should say or do, in reference to the Solemnity of Installation.

^m Appendix;
ⁿ Num. CXXXI
CXXXII. &
CXXXIII.

SECT. IV.

Of the *Proctor's* Reception.

SOON after the arrival of the *Proxie*, and that the *Sovereign* is acquainted with the occasion of his coming, he at some convenient time ^a giveth him Audience ^a Colled. W. ^b is N. 61.

ence; after which a day for Installation is assigned, (where the *Sovereign* or his *Lieutenant* are present) the *Sovereign* nominates some of the *Knights-Companions* his *Commissioners* to perform the Ceremonies.

Heretofore, the *Sovereign* hath caused the *Proctor* to be received with very great state; for so was ^b Sir *Balthasar Castilian*, sent hither from the Duke of *Urbin*, an. 22. H. 7. whom Sir ^c Thomas *Brandon*, with a goodly company of his own Servants, well horst, met at the Sea side; and thence continually kept company with him, till they came neer *Deptford* in *Kent*, where, by the *Sovereign's* command, he was met by Sir ^d Thomas *Dokara*, Lord of *St. Johns*, and Sir *Thomas Wriothesley* Garter: The said Sir *Thomas Dokara* had attending him ^e 30 of his Servants all in new Liveries, well horsed, every Gentleman bearing a Javelin in his hand, and every Yeoman a Bow, and a Sheaf of Arrows, and so they conveyed him to his Lodging. The next day they conducted him to *London*, and by the way there met him divers *Italians*, and *Paulus de Gygeles* the Popes Vice-Collector, to whose house he was conveyed and there lodged.

The Reception also of *James* Lord *Rambouillet*, Proctor for the *French* King *Charles* the Ninth, was very noble; to whom, as soon as the *Sovereign* heard of his arrival at *Gravesend* (being ^f Tuesday the 8. of January an. 8. Eliz.) he sent thither ^g Arthur Lord *Grey* of *Wilton*, Mr. *Midlemore*, and other Gentlemen, who the next day landed him at the *Tower-Wharf*, where all taking Horse, they conducted him to his Lodgings, neer *St. Maries Spittle*, without *Bishops-Gate*; within which place lay the Ambassador *Leiger* of *France*.

b *Ec. oct.*
c *MS. pence*
d *W. le N. Cl.*
e *p. 24. b.*

f *C. il. 8. W.*
g *le N. Cl.*

SECT. V.

The Preparations for Installation.

THE Preparations for the Installation of a *Stranger* by *Proxie*, are the same as for the *Proxie* of a *Knight-Subject*, and mentioned as before, namely the (1.) *Commission* for Installation, (2.) *Letters* of notice to the *Commissioners*. (3.) *Warrants* for removal of *Stalls*, (4.) for the *Strangers Achievements*, and (5.) some other particulars of less note: All which are to be obtained by the *Chancellor* of the *Order*, under the *Sovereign's* Sign Manual, to which the *Signet* of the *Order* is to be affixt.

The form of the *Commission* is much the same, with that drawn up for Installation of a *Knight-Subject*, both as to the material and circumstantial parts; whereof we have ^a already discours'd. The ^b Preamble contains the same matter, and the authority wherewith the *Proxie* is impow'ed, and is penn'd with like words; the variation lies only in those expressions, which lay down the causes of the *Stranger's* absence, and for the most part are generally express'd, but if in particular, then are the words fitted with alterations futable to the occasion.

The *Letters* sent from the *Sovereign* to each of the *Commissioners* appointed for Installation, ^c giving them notice and information of the Solemnity, and requiring their attendance at *Windsor*, on the day assigned, are of the same nature with those prepared against the Installation of a *Knight-Subject* by his *Proxie*; the necessary alterations being taken in, where the occasion requires.

Thirdly, a *Warrant* for the Removal of *Stalls*, is likewise to be obtained from the *Sovereign*, and sent unto *Garter*, to see it put in execution, according to its tenour, whereby a *Stall* being assigned to the *Stranger*, his *Proxie* having taken possession thereof, may set over it the *Achievements* of his Principal. The ground of this Removal, and the practice thereupon, in relation both to *Strangers* and *Knights-Subjects*, is discours'd of at large, among the ^d Preparations made for the Personal Installation of a *Knight-Subject*.

1. *Commission* for Installation.
a *Chap. 11.*
Self. 3.
b *Appendix*,
Num. CXXIV.
CXXV.
CXXVI.
CXXVII.
2. *Letters* to the *Commissioners*.
c *Ibid.* Num.
CXXVIII. &
CXXIX.

3. *Warrants* for removal of *Stalls*.

d *Chap. 11.*
Self. 6.

In the last place, a *Warrant* is to be drawn and signed by the *Sovereign*, for providing the *Stranger's Atchievements* at the *Sovereign's* charge; namely, his *Helm, Crest, Mantlings*, and *Sword*, together with a *Banner* of his Arms and *Quarterings*; and these the *Proctor* is * enjoined to bring along with him to *Windefor*.

Sometimes a *Warrant* hath been directed to the *Master* of the *Wardrobe*, to provide but some part of these *Atchievements*; and another *Warrant* to the *Lord Treasurer of England*, to deliver *Garter* money to provide the other part; in each of which, the particulars relating to either are enumerated. For so were the *Warrants* drawn up, for the *Atchievements* of the *French King* ^a *Henry* the Second. At other times the direction hath been to the *Master* of the *Great Wardrobe*, to provide and deliver to *Garter* the whole, who thereupon put the charge upon account; as were those *Warrants* for *Atchievements* for the ^b *Duke* of *Cheveraux* and *King of Sweden*.

Sometimes particular *Warrants* have been directed to the *Master* of the *Wardrobe*, to deliver forth several parcels of the *Materials*, for the making up these *Atchievements*, to the persons employed in the work, or oversight thereof, as were those *Warrants* to deliver the ^c *Sovereign's* Embroiderer, and to ^d *Garter* so much *Velvet*, *Cloth of Gold*, &c. for making the great *Banner* and other the *Atchievements* of *Charles* the Ninth, and *Henry* the Third the *French Kings*, and *Christian* Prince of *Denmark*.

But it appears that *Garter* hath sometimes laid out the money, for making all, or part of the *Atchievements*, and then he delivered his *Bill* of disbursements into the *Wardrobe*, as is manifest from those *Bills* drawn up for the *Atchievements* of ^e *Frederick* the Second *King of Denmark*, ^f *John* Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, and the ^g *Duke* of *Holstein*.

Besides the *Atchievements*, some other things used at the *Solemnity*, are commonly included in the foresaid *Warrants*, as (1.) a *Plate* of *Brass* gilt, whereon are engraven and enamelled in Colours the *Stranger's Coat of Arms* and *Quarterings*, within a *Garter*; as also his *Helm, Crest*, and *Supporters*, and underneath these his whole *Stile* and *Titles* of *Honor*: (2.) A *Majesty Scutcheon*, to be set over the *Sovereign's* Stall, and another over the *Strangers*, there to remain during the time of *Installation*. And when *Prince Henry* was constituted the *Sovereign's Lieutenant* for *St. George's Feast*, at which time also *Christian* the Fourth *King of Denmark* was installed; he likewise had a ^h *Majesty Scutcheon* placed over his Stall: (3.) Some *Lodging Scutcheons* of his Arms, marshalled in the same order as they are in his *Plate*: And (4.) a *Cushion* of *Crimson Velvet*, whereon to lay the *Mantle*, when *Garter* bears it before the *Proctor* into the *Choir*, in case the *Proctor* doth not carry it on his own arm. Lastly, for the carriage of all these things to *Windefor*, a *Trunk* is likewise to be provided.

We do not think it needful to place the *Mantle* of the *Order* here, with those things that are to be prepared at the *Sovereign's* charge against this *Solemnity*; for the ⁱ *Statutes* of *Institution* appoint the *Proxie* to bring one with him, not that the *Sovereign* should provide it, having done that before at the ^k *Legation* with the whole *Habit*: Nor have we found in the *Rolls* or *Books* of the *Sovereign's Great Wardrobe*, any account made for providing a second *Mantle*, when the *Proxie* of a *Stranger* came hither; which, had the *Sovereign* been at such charge, would not have been omitted.

4. Warrants for Atchievements.

* E.g. Stat. Art. 20. H. 5. Stat. Art. 20. H. 8. Stat. Art. 21.

a Appendix, Num. CXXX. & CXXXI.

b Ibid. Num. CXXXII. & CXXXIII.

c Ibid. Num. d) CXXXIV CXXXV. CXXXVI. & CXXXVII.

e Ex Collect.

A. V. W.

f MS. penes

g G. O. T.

h 160. & 156.

i Some other particulars.

h Ex Antegr. penes Guil. Knight, an. 1657.

i E. 3. Stat. Art. 20. vide etiam H. 5. Stat. Art. 20. & H. 8. Stat. Art. 21.

k Ibid.

SECT. VI.

The Proctor's Cavalcade to Windefor.

THE day appointed for the *Installation* drawing on, the ^a *Proxie* was heretofore accompanied on Horseback, from *London* to *Windefor*, with the

Sovereign's Lieutenant and his Assistants (if the Feast of St. George were then also celebrated) or otherwise the Sovereign's Commissioners, with a very great Retinue.

Amongst the rest, when Adrian de Tercelin, Deputy for the French King Francis the First, rode to Windsor, the day before his Installation (being the 24. of Jan. an. 19. H. 8.)^b all the Knights-Companions that were in Commission for that Solemnity, assembled at the Lord Sandys his Place, neer St. Paul's Church in London, whence they rode to the Deputy's Lodging, then at the Dean of Pauls his House; and thence accompanied him in good order and gallant equipage, to the Castle of Windsor; where Lodgings were prepared for him at the Dean's House.

In like manner on Tuesday the 15. of January an. 8. Eliz. the Earls of Suffex and Leicester and Lord Clinton, (three of the four Commissioners appointed for the Installation of the French King Charles the Ninth) with other Lords and Gentlemen, took their Horses at the Court Gate at Westminster, and with a great Train rode to the Lodging of the said Kings Proxie (being then at St. Mary's Spittle in London) whence they took their way through Holborn towards Windsor, the Earl of Southampton, Viscount Mountague, Sir Henry Lea, and Sir Edward Umpton met them at Langford neer Colebrook with their Hawks, and there shewed the Proxie variety of sport, with which he being exceeding well pleased, they rode to Windsor; where he was accommodated with Lodgings in the Dean's House, for that hath usually been the place to entertain the Stranger's Proxies, when they came to Windsor, upon this solema occasion.

SECT. VII.

Supper after his arrival there.

THE Evening of their arrival passeth with a Supper, for the most part costly and sumptuous; but the principal entertainment is reserved to set forth the magnificence of the following days Dinner, in case the Instalment be appointed to be solemnized on the next morning.

At the Installation of the French King Francis the First, all the Commissioners met at the Marquess of Excester's Lodgings, and went together to the Dean's House, where they were entertained by him at supper, all at one Table, at another Table sat Garter, with certain of the Deputy's chief Gentlemen, and some of the Heralds; and at a third Table sat the rest of the Heralds, and other of the Proxy's Servants.

The Commissioners, and other Noblemen, who also accompanied Charles the Ninth's Proxor to Windsor, supped (the Evening of their arrival) with him; he himself sitting at the upper end of the Table, then the Earls of Suffex and Leicester by him, one against the other, next the Earl of Southampton, and Viscount Mountague, then the Lord Clinton, and Lord Herbert of Cardiff, after them two Strangers, namely Monsieur Cleremont, and Monsieur de la Lupe, then lower sat the Lord Grey, and other Strangers, and last of all sat Monsieur Doze alias St. Michael, the French Herald, at the lower end, opposite to the Proxor. Garter, Black-Rod, and divers Strangers, supped with the Dean; and in the Parlour and Hall sat divers Pensioners, Gentlemen, and Strangers.

SECT. VIII.

Of the Proceeding to the Chapter-house.

What hath been before set down, touching the publick *Proceeding* to the *Chapter-house*, at the personal Installation of a *Knight-Subject*, and other particulars relating to that Ceremony, will extend hither, both as to order and circumstances; and there needs no further instruction here, but to look back to the * Discourse thereupon: Nevertheless, this general rule is to be born in mind, ^{* Chap. 12.} That the place of a *Stranger-Prince's Proctor* here, is ^{Scil. 4.} next after the *Provincial-Kings* (unless the *Proctor* of a *Knight-Subject* happen to intervene) and ^{a § Collett. W. b le N. Cl.} before the junior *Knight-Companion* (unless a *Knight-Subject* Elect pass then in the *Proceeding*) of which we have an instance at the Installation of the Dukes of * *Brunswick* and *Cheveraux*, and the Earl of *Dorset* by their *Proctors*, but the Earls of *Salisbury*, *Carlisle*, and *Holland*, with Viscount *Andover*, in person, ^{* Lib. R. p. 29} an. 1. Car. 1. when the *Proceeding* was ordered as followeth.

|| First, two *Waiters* of the *Sovereign's Hall*
in their *Livery Coats*, bearing white *Rods*.

|| MS. penes
Edw. Fau-
conbridge, gen.

Alms-Knights.

Prebends of the *Colledge*.

Officers of Arms.

Proctors to the absent *Elect-Knights*.

Elect-Knights in person.

Knights-Companions.

Black-Rod.

Register.

Garter.

Chancellor.

Prelate.

Sovereign's Lieutenant.

Courtiers and *Gentlemen* in the *Rear*.

Only in the single case of *Christian the Fourth King of Denmark*, an. 3. Jac; (as an extraordinary respect and honor) his *Proxie* went in the *Proceeding* to the *Chapter-house*, * next before the *Sovereign's Lieutenant*.

c MS. fol. penes
E. W. G. fol.
145. b.

As we had an example before, of a *Proctor* to a *Knight-Subject*, who pass in this *Proceeding* before the *Alms-Knights* and *Officers of Arms*, namely, Sir *Henry Sidney*, Deputy to the Earl of *Warwick*, an. 5. Eliz. so here (in the case of a *Stranger*) the Viscount *Hereford*, *Proxie* to the Duke of *Holstein*, ^{d Lib. C. p. 37.} installed the 15. of December, an. 3. Eliz. who went in the *Proceeding* to the *Chapter-house* before the *Officers of Arms* also: which *Proceeding* was ordered in this manner.

* *Gentlemen*, and *Knights*.

The *Proctor*, and *Ambassador* of *Holstein* together.

Officers of Arms.

Register and *Garter*.

Lord *Hastings* }

Lord *Paget* } *Commissioners*.

c Collett. W. le
N. Cl.

If the *Proxie* of a *Stranger* pass in the *Proceeding* which the *Sovereign*, or his *Lieutenant*, or *Commissioners* make to the *Chapter-house*, then doth he for the most part give his attendance in the *Presence-Chamber*, or in that Room, from whence the *Lieutenant* or the *Commissioners* do proceed, and there joineth himself thereunto.

But sometimes the *Commissioners*, after their setting forth (as an act of grand respect) have taken the *Proxie's Lodgings* by the way, and there received him

into the *Proceeding*. Instances in this, are first Prince Henry, Lieutenant at the Installation of Christian the Fourth King of Denmark, who proceeded from the *Presence-Chamber*, down to the *Deans House* (where the said King's *Proxie* lodged) and received him at the Door, from whence the Lieutenant pass'd to the *Chapter-house*. And at the Installation of the Duke of Wirtemberg, ^h 19. April an. 2. Jac. R. the Commissioners proceeded from their Lodgings (having the *Alms-Knights* and *Officers of Arms* before them) unto the *Dean's House*, where ^k *Grave van Eveston* his *Proctor* likewise lodged; and from whence to the *Chapter-house*, the now full *Proceeding* pass'd.

We observe, that the *Proxies* of *Strangers* have not always gone in the *Proceeding*, but sometimes stay'd at their Lodging in the *Castle*, till the *Commissioners* were ready to send for them into the *Chapter-house*. And thus it was at the Installation of the French King Charles the Ninth, for on the 16. of January, an. 8. Eliz. in the morning (at the Earl of Leiceſter's Lodgings in the *Castle*) the other three *Commissioners* met, where they and the three inferior *Officers* of the Order, robed themselves, and went thence to the *Proxie's* Lodging; and having a while conferred with him, took leave and proceeded to the *Chapter-house*. After some time of consultation there, they sent out *Garter* to the *Proctor*, with desire to repair to them, who, upon the delivery of the message, was forthwith conducted by *Garter* (attended with the Earl of Southampton, the Lords Herbert and Grey, and many others) to the *Chapter-house* door; where being arrived, the Earls of *Suffex* and *Leiceſter* (being the two senior *Commissioners*) received him between them.

Sometimes the *Proxies* have pass'd privately to the East-Isle of St. George's Chapel, and there rested, before the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* went into the *Chapter-house* (or proceeded into the *Choire*, without entering therein); for so it hath sometimes hapned as did the Earl of Cleveland, and Marquess Dorchester, *Proxies* for Gustavus Adolphus King of Sweden, and Henry Prince of Orange, an. 4. Car. 1. The like did the Earl of Dover *Proxie* to Charles Prince Palatine of the Rhyne, an. 9. Car. 1. and of late, Sir George Carteret, *Proxie* to Christian Prince of Denmark, an. 15. Car. 2. So also the Earls of Carlisle and Winchelsea, *Proctors* to Charles King of Sweden, and John George Prince Elector of Saxony, an. 23. Car. 2.

SECT. IX.

The Ceremonies performed therein.

When the *Proceeding* hath arrived at the *Chapter-house* door, the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* (or the Lieutenant and his *Assistants*, or *Commissioners*) with the *Officers* of the Order before them, enter to hold their Consultation: but first the *Stranger's Proctor* is intreated to stay without, until his *Deputation* or *Letters of Procurator* be read, to the end they may understand the effect thereof.

To this purpose we find it also directed, (under an ancient hand) that where any *Knight* is installed by his *Deputy*, he ought to stay without the *Vestry* (or *Chapter-house*) door, until he be brought in by two *Knights-Companions*: Hereupon the Lord Pagit, one of the *Commissioners* for installation of the Duke of Savoy, when the *Proceeding* was come to the *Chapter-house* door, acquainted his *Proxie* with this Custom and Injunction, and desired him to walk aside, which he accordingly did.

The East-Isle behind the High Altar, is the accustomed place for the *Proxies* to walk or repose themselves in, till they be called into the *Chapter*; as it is also

f Ex eod.
g MS. penes
eund. E.W.G.
h loco citato.
i Lib. C.p. 153.
j Ex MS.
k prad.

r MS. penes
i D. N.
j ps.

t Ex Collec.
v A.V.W.

w Collec. W. J.
N. Cl.

x Lib. R. p. 84.

b MS. in Offic.
Arm. (H. 2.)
fol. 8. b.

c Collec. A.
V. W.

d MS. fol. pe-
nes E.W.G.

also for the *Deputies of Knights-Subjects*, where Chairs and Cushens are ready prepared for this occasion.

The first thing done, after the *Chapter* is opened, is ¹ Reading the *Commission* for *Installation*, by the *Register* of the *Order* (but if the *Sovereign* be present at the *Installation*, no *Commission* issues) and next the *Letters of Procuration*; this being as the most proper, so the most accustomed place for this act.

Nevertheless, at the *Installation* of the *French King Francis the First* (we know not by what (but certainly a most unusual) compliance, the *Commissioners* went from the *Chapter-house*, after they had called in and invested the *Earl of Oxford* (then also present to receive his *Installation*) with his *Surcoat* and *Hood*, unto the *Deans House*, where the *Proctor* was lodged, and in the great *Chamber* there, shewed him the *Sovereign's Commission*, and in it the authority for admitting him into the *Stall* of his *Lord and Master*: Whereupon the *Proctor* presented them with his *Procuration*, by which he was empowered to take the possession of his *Principal's Stall*, and further to do and perform all such Ceremonies, as to the *Order* of the *Garter* did appertain, which Instrument was forthwith read before them, by the *Register*. This Ceremony being ended, they all proceeded to the *Chappel*; where entering, they waved their return into the *Chapter-house*, and pass'd directly into the *Choire*.

After some time of consultation in the *Chapter-house*, the *Proxie* is sent for thither by *Garter*, who conducts him to the *Chapter-house door*; and his Reception there by the *Commissioners*, is after the same manner, and with the same circumstances of respect and ceremony, as is used to the *Knight-Elect*, or to his *Proxie*. But whether he ought to enter into the *Chapter-house*, or be admitted any further than the door or *Porch* thereof, (and to pass thence immediately into the *Choire*) hath been some question; because the practice seems to have been sometimes one way, and sometimes another.

All that we find to prohibit his entrance thereinto, is an expression in the *short Ceremonial of Installation of Strangers by Proxie*, entred in the *Black-Book*, where it saith, That the *Mantle* is to be laid on the *Proctor's* right shoulder in the *Porch* of the *Chapter-house*, ¹ because he is not to enter into it.

And there are two instances, where the *Mantle* was delivered to the *Proctor* at the *Chapter-house door*, from whence some may infer, that the Practice also of those times was agreeable to the aforesaid direction; namely, that of the *Proctor* of the *French King Francis the First*, an. 19. H. 8. where ² *Garter* stood at the *Chapter-house door*, with the *Mantle*, and as the *Proceeding* passed by presented it to the two Senior *Knights-Companions* (the *Marquess of Exeter* and *Viscount Lysie*) who placed it upon the *Proctor's* right arm, and of the *Proctor* to ³ *Emanuel Duke of Savoy*, an. 1. & 2. Ph. & M. who entred not into the *Chapter-house*, but had the *Mantle* of his *Principal*, laid on his arm and spread upon his shoulder at the *door*.

But these instances (if duly weighed) cannot properly or with advantage, be alledged to prove the assertion, because the affairs relating to both, received dispatch in the *Proctor's Lodging*, a little before, and where the *Proctor* himself was present; which Convocation or meeting of the *Commissioners* and *Proctor*, cannot be called less than a *Chapter* (though not held in the *Chapter-house*) from the Transactions which pass'd therein, namely producing the *Sovereign's Commission*, and the *Proctor's Instrument of Deputation*, which were both read before them by the *Register*, and the *Proctor* accordingly admitted, which being finished, nothing referring to the present occasions, required their passing into the *Chapter-house*, or remained to be done till they came into the *Choire*.

But the general practice runs strong on the contrary side, for we find, that the *Proxie* for ⁴ *Charles the Ninth of France*, an. 8. Eliz. was met at the *Chapter-house door*, by the *Earls of Sussex* and *Leicester*, who took him in thither between them; where after the *Register* had read as well the *Sovereign's Commission* for *Installation*, as his *Letters of Procuration*, and the *Commissioners* had admitted him *Deputy* for the said King, they all came forth and laid ⁵ his *Principal's Mantle* on his right arm and shoulder, the *Train* whereof was born by the *Earl of Southampton*, assisted by the *Lord Herbert of Cardiff*.

Again

¹ Reading the Commission.
Colled. W. le N. Cl.

² Autogr. in Bibl. Harion.

³ Receiving the Proxie into the Chapter-house.
Colled. W. le N. Cl.

⁴ Lib. N. p. 310

⁵ Ibid.

⁶ Ex Autogr. in Bibl. Harion.

⁷ Ex Colled. A. V. W.

⁸ Lib. C. p. 5.
MS. p. 2.
nes W. D.
N. f. 25.

¹ Ex Cilleff.
R. C. Cl. f. 30.
sub finem.

c MS. f. l.
d penes E.
e W. G. fol.
f 151. a.

Again it is remembred, *an. 25. Eliz.* that *Garter* conducted the *Proxie* of ^a *Frederick* the Second King of *Denmark*, to the *Chapter-house* door; and at that place the *Earl of Leiceſter* and *Lord Hunſdon*, receiyed and led him in. So alſo was *Chriſtian* the Fourth's *Proxie* led in thither, by the *Earls of Nottingham* and *Dorſet*; and *an. 10. Jac. R.* ^d *Lodowick Count Naſſaw*, *Proctor* to *Maurice Prince of Orange*, was called into the *Chapter-house* and there left, while the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* proceeded into the *Choir*: And ſo in like manner was *Sir George Cartret* Vice-Chamberlain, *Proctor* to *Chriſtian Prince of Denmark*, *an. 15. Car. 2.* and the *Proctors* to the King of *Sweden* and *Duke of Saxony*, *an. 23. Car. 2.*

Nor are theſe inſtances, and the practice in this latter caſe (in truth) derogatory to the *Statutes*, which though it prohibite the *Proxies* entrance into the *Chapter-house*, yet doth not this Prohibition extend to any time before, but after the Ceremony of Installation is finiſhed; for the Article of the *Statutes* having firſt directed the delivery of the *Mantle* to the *Proxie*, and next the aſſumption of his *Principals Stall*, in theſe words, *Diſtus Procurator installatus*, it immediately ſubjoins ⁱ that from thenceforth (namely the time of installation) he ſhall neither wear the *Mantle*, nor enter into the *Chapter*, nor have any voice there, by virtue of any power granted unto him: all which are prohibitions, plainly relating to the future, and after ſuch time as the Ceremonies of Installation are paſt, and not to any time preceding.

And it ſeems the Law hath been thus underſtood, in regard the greater ſtream of Practice hath gone along with it; for not only the *Proxies* of *Strangers* (as before is obſerved) but generally of *Knights-Subjects*, have been called into the *Chapter-house*, and there received the *Mantle* before they proceeded into the *Choir*.

² Delivering
from the Man-
tle.
³ Ibid. de loc.
frequent.
⁴ Ord. Stat. in
Lib. N. Art. 19.

The Ceremony of delivering the *Mantle* to the *Proctor* is performed by the ^k *Sovereign*, his *Deputy*, or the *Commissioners* (*Garter* preſenting it to them) and the manner thereof was heretofore, by putting it upon the *Proxies* right arm, * or ſhoulder, in the name of his Lord and Maſter, there to hold it until the end of *Divine Service*.

But as there hath hapned ſome doubt, touching the entry or not entry of *Proctors* into the *Chapter-house*, before they proceeded to Installation; ſo likewiſe here, concerning the receiving of the *Mantle*, viz. whether in the *Chapter-house*, or *Stall* allotted to their *Principal*, of which there are Examples.

m E 3 Stat.
Art. 20.

That part of the Article of the *Statutes of Inſtitution* which concerns this point runs thus, That the *Mantle* ^m *tempore Installationis Procuratoris*, ſhall be laid upon his *Arm*, &c. but whether this ſhall be ſtrictly limited to that inſtant of time, when the *Proctor* is brought to the *Stall* of his *Principal*, or with ſome greater latitude conſtrued, to be during the time of Installation (including the ⁿ *very firſt action*, or beginning of the Ceremony of Installation, namely, the being called to the *Chapter-house* door, and entrance into it) is the queſtion; becauſe there are inſtances in both, but the latter is more warrantable by the *Statutes* and general practice.

w 21.

The ^w Article in *King Henry the Eighth's ſtatutes*, being much more large in deſcription, and paſſing further in ſetting down the Ceremonies of Installation, than any of the former (the particulars of which, as in the reſt, ſo to this point, we take to be as well placed in a true ſeries and order of action) having mentioned the *Sovereign* (or his *Deputy's*) laying the *Mantle* on the *Proxies* Arm; it immediately follows (as the very next thing to be performed in courſe of time) That afterward he ſhall be led by two *Knights*, from the *Chapter-house* door, unto the *Stall*, and there being ſhall make his *Oath*, and be inſtalled; but it ſaith nothing of laying the *Mantle* on the arm of the *Proctor*, now at the inſtant of installation in the *Choir*; for that was directed to be done before. It is alſo recorded in the *Black-Book*, where the order of this Ceremony is more fully and particularly ſet down, That ^x *Garter* ſhall take the *Mantle* upon his *Arms*, and deliver it to both the *Knights-Commissioners*, and that they (according to the tenor of the *Statutes*) ſhall lay it on the *Proctors* right ſhoulder, in the *Porch* of the *Chapter-house*.

x 21. m. 316

Befides

Besides which, and the ancient usage of receiving the *Mantle* in the *Chapter-house*, or at the *Chapter-house* door, either before or in the Proceeding to the *Choire*, by the *Proctors* of the French King *Francis* the First, of *Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*, * of *Charles* the Ninth the French King, and || *Frederick* the Second King of *Denmark*; we have likewise the Examples of later times, as that of the *Proctor* for *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, an. 4. Car. 1. who proceeded into the *Choire* with the *Mantle* upon his arm; and that at the Installation of *Charles* Prince Palatine of the *Rhine*, the 5. of November, an. 9. Car. 1. where the Earl of *Dover* his *Proxie* bare the *Mantle* on his right shoulder into the *Choire*, and *Garter* carried the *Collar* of the *Order*, before him, on a Velvet Cushen.

But there are several modern instances, where the *Mantle* hath been born to the *Choire* (and sometimes the *Collar* of the *Order* with it) not by the *Proctor* but by *Garter* before him, and delivered in his Principal's Stall; as in the Proceeding of the *Proxie* for the Duke of *Wirttemberg*, an. 2. Jac. when after he had taken the Oath and was led into the Duke's Stall (not before) was the *Robe* laid upon his arm; and so was it done in the following year, at the Installation of *Christian* the Fourth King of *Denmark*.

So also at the Installation of *Maurice* Prince of *Orange*, an. 10. Jac. *Garter* performed the like service for him, and in the very same manner, and after he had taken the Oath appointed, the *Mantle* was laid upon his arm. And lastly, after the *Proxies* of the Duke of *Brunswick* and *Cheveraux*, had taken the Oath, not only the *Mantles* but *Collars* were placed on their arms.

Which manner hath so far prevailed, as to be continued in practice since the Restauration of the present *Sovereign*; for at the Installations of the Prince of *Denmark*, *Charles* King of *Sweden*, and Duke of *Saxony*, *Garter* carried the *Mantle* on a Cushen before their *Proctors* into the *Choire*, nor was it laid on their arms, till they had taken their Oaths, and so laid, that the *Cross* of *St. George* might be conspicuous.

* Ex Colle. A. V. W. Colle. R. C. Cl. f. 30. Y Lib. R. p. 40. z Ibid. p. 83. a Colle. W. b Le N. Cl.

c MS. penes E. W. G. f. 145. b.

f 16. f. 146. b. g Et fol. 151.

h MS. penes Edw. Fauconbridge gen.

SECT. X.

Of the Proceeding to the *Choire*.

BUT let us pass on to the *Proxie*'s proceeding into the *Choire*, concerning which, King *Henry* the Eighth's statutes direct, (as is remembered a little before upon another point) ^d That he shall be accompanied and led by two Knights-Companions of the Order, from the door of the *Chapter-house*, unto the Stall assigned to his Principal; agreeable to which is that passage in the short Memorial of Installation entred in the *Black-Book*, That as soon as the two Knights have placed the *Mantle* on his arm, ^e they shall take him between them, and conduct him to the Stall of his Lord: and thus assisted have all *Proxies* proceeded to the *Choire*.

But in relation to the order of the rest of the Proceeding, it will be necessary to exhibit a Scheme or two.

The ordinary Proceeding into the *Choire*, the Installation being celebrated when the *Sovereign*'s *Lieutenant* holds the Feast of *St. George*.

Alms-Knights.
Verger of the Chappel.
Prebends of the Colledge.
Officers of Arms.

Colle. W. le N. Cl.

Black-Rod. Register. Garter.
The *Proxie* between two Knights-Assistants.
The *Lieutenant* having his Train born.

The

The Proceeding into the *Choire*, at the Installation (by *Commission*) of Charles the Ninth the French King, an. 8. Eliz.

MS. penes W.
D.N. fol. 25. b.
vide etiam Col-
lect. A.V.W.

Gentlemen, attendants on the *Sovereign's Commissioners*.

Gentlemen, attendants upon the *Proctor*.

Verger of the *Chappel*.

Alms-Knights.

Officers of Arms.

Black-Rod. Register. Garter.

Viscount Mountague } the two *Junior Commissioners*.
Lord Clinton. }

The *Proctor*, between the Earl of *Sussex* and Earl of *Leicester* (the two senior *Commissioners*) his Train being born by the Earl of *Southampton*, assisted by the Lord *Herbert*.

Since the Custom of receiving the *Collar* in the *Chapter-house* was laid aside, if the *Sovereign* (or his *Lieutenant*) was present at an installation of a *Stranger*, so soon as the *Mantle* was delivered to the *Proctor*, or (as of late) that he hath been admitted, according to the purport of his *Deputation*, the *Sovereign* (or his *Lieutenant*) proceeds to the *Choire* with the *Knights-Companions* present, and leaves the *Proxie* behind him in the *Chapter-house*, and after he and the *Knights-Companions* have taken their *Stalls*, directs two of the *Knights-Companions* to descend; who taking the *Alms-Knights*, *Officers of Arms*, and the three inferior *Officers* of the *Order* before them, pass to the *Chapter-house*, and bring thence the *Proxie* to his Installation.

Thus was it done an. 4. Car. 1. at the Installation of the King of *Sweden*, when William Earl of *Penbroke*, and Philip Earl of *Montgomery*, proceeded forth of the *Choire*, and introduced the Earl of *Cleveland*, *Proctor* to the said King: In like manner, the Earls of *Penbroke* and *Arundel* went out to conduct in the Earl of *Dover*, *Proctor* to Charles Prince Palatine of the *Rhine*.

So also were the Duke of *Tork* and Prince *Rupert* sent out, to introduce Sir George Carterett *Proctor* to the Prince of *Denmark*, an. 15. Car. 2. and the Earl of *Carlisle* *Proctor* to the King of *Sweden*, an. 23. Car. 2. And where there are more than one *Stranger*, at the same time to be installed by *Proxie*, there the two next senior *Knights* pass out, as did the Earls of *Kelly* and *Salisbury*, who brought in Sir *Dudley Carleton*, *Proctor* to the Prince of *Orange*, an. 4. Car. 1. and the Dukes of *Ormond* and *Buckingham*, the Earl of *Winchelsey*, *Proctor* to the Duke of *Saxony* an. 23. Car. 2.

In this Proceeding the *Proxie* goes bare-headed, for so did the before mentioned Earl of *Dover*, Sir George Carterett, the Earl of *Carlisle*, and the Earl of *Winchelsey*.

3 Collect. W.
6 le N. Cl.

WHEN the Proceeding hath entred the *Choire*, and paid the accustomed Reverences, both towards the *Altar* and the *Sovereign's Stall*, and the *Alms-Knights*, *Officers of Arms*, and of the *Order*, taken their usual Stations; the two *Commissioners* (*Knights-Assistants* or *Knights-Companions*) and *Proctor* make their Reverences together, and then is he conducted by them into the lower *Stalls*, directly before the Stall appointed for his Principal, the foresaid *Officers* of the *Order* standing below in the *Choire*.

If the Installation pass by more than two *Commissioners*, then the two ^g senior *Knights-Commissioners* bring him to the foresaid lower Stalls, and perform the Ceremonies belonging to his Installation, while the rest of the *Commissioners* at their entrance, take their Station ^h below in the *Choir*, before their proper Stalls, and there stand until the Installation be finished. And the like do the *Lieutenants Assistants*, except the two senior that are employed in the Ceremonies of Installation.

The *Proxie* thus introduced into the lower Stalls, ^o stands there while the *Register* ^p pronounceth the *Oath* of the *Order* to him, after whom he ^q repeateth the words distinctly; during all which time he ^r layeth his hand upon the New Testament, and lastly kisseth the Book.

The ancient *Oath*, ^t appointed by the *Statutes of Institution*, to be taken by a *Stranger's Proxie*, is short, absolute, and without limitation or exception, and in all points the same with that, which a *Knight-Companion* himself took, at his Personal Installation, viz. ^u Faithfully to observe to the utmost of his power, the *Statutes of the Order*.

But afterwards the *Sovereigns* and *Fellows* of those other *Orders of Knight-hood*, whereof *Kings* or *Free-Princes* are *Sovereigns*, (as the *Golden-Fleece*, *Monsieur St. Michael*, and the *Annunciade*) before their admission into the *Order of the Garter*; sued for, and obtained the allowance of some relative exceptions or provisos, to be added to the foresaid *Oath*; which commonly were such as stood with the interest of their Religion, their great state or dignity, or precedent obligation to the *Orders* they had before accepted.

There is a Precedent entred in the ^a *Black-Book*, of the *Oath* to be taken by an *Emperor*; whereby he is obliged to ^b promise upon his Royal word, and give his Faith, upon his honor and the holy Evangelists, ^c That he will faithfully and truly, to the utmost of his power, observe the *Statutes of this most Noble Order*, and that particularly in every branch and Article thereof; ^d at least so far as they can or ought to be observed by him, and so far as they shall not be contrary or derogatory to those, whereunto he hath before given his name and sworn, and saving all other conditions agreed on.

Besides this, there are also two other Precedents lodged in the ^e *Annals*, the one of the form of the *Oath*, as it is fitted for the *Proctor* of an *Emperor* or a *King*; the other for the *Proctor* of a *Prince*, *Arch-Duke*, and every other inferior degree to a *Knight*, including him also.

By the first of these, the ^f *Proctor* is to oblige himself in the name and behalf of his *Lord*, and with a sincere heart and true faith shall promise and swear, that his said Lord shall well and faithfully fulfil and observe, all and every the *Statutes, Ordinances, and Decrees of this Order*, according to the force, form, and effect, any way thereunto belonging, saving the conditions before agreed on between him and the *Sovereign*. By the second he is ^g also in the name and behalf of his *Lord*, with a real heart and sincere faith, to promise and swear, That his said Lord shall faithfully observe and fulfil the *Statutes, and every several Branch and Article thereof*, according to the force, form, and effect of the same, ^h at least so far as the *Sovereign's Dispensation* shall limit and appoint. But we have not found any of these Precedents made use of, because being rather too general, they have otherwise and more particularly fitted the *Oath* to the present interest and occasion, at least so far, as they could obtain the *Sovereign* to condescend unto.

And hereupon *Philip King of Castile and Leon* (*Sovereign of the Order of the Golden-Fleece*) when he received a Personal Installation at *Windsor*, an. 22. H. 7. though the *Oath* he took was absolute and without limitation, viz. ⁱ To observe all the *Statutes of the Order of the Garter*, according as they were contained in the Book then lately sent unto, and accepted by him; as faithfully, as if every one of the Articles were then rehearsed unto him, and to fulfil them from Article to Article, as faithfully and readily as he looked for help from God and all his *Saints*. Yet nevertheless, soon after he obtained the *Sovereign's* free and full Dispensation, in these two things only; first, ^j that the use of the *Collar*, and the other *Ensigns* of the *Order*, might be left to his pleasure; and secondly, that he might not be obliged to be present at future *Chapters*.

K k k

Not

g Collet. W.
h Le N. Cl.Taking the
Oath.
o Sedere De-
putato non li-
cet. f. 18. R. p. 40
circa finem
p Collet. W. le
N. Cl.
q Lib. R. p. 47.
r Ex Collet. R.
C. Cl. p. 32.
s Art. 24.
ta (Pag. 311.
b) Appendix.
c) Num.
d) CXXXVIII.e (Pag. 312.
f) 1b. Num.
g) CXXXIX.h) Ibid. Num.
i) CXL.p Lib. N. p. 184
Append. Num.
q CXL.

r Lib. N. l. c. 17.

Not long after, some other *Exceptions* were admitted, but such were obtained with very great difficulty, and much debate had between the *Sovereign's Council*, and the *Stranger-Princes Ambassadors*, lest otherwise the dignity and reputation of the *Order* should (instead of being kept up) be lessened; because, where the forbearance or omission of any circumstance, either in the Investiture or Ceremony of Installation, hath been yielded unto, it hath sometimes or other been taken notice of, and brought into Precedent, to the prejudice of the *Order*. Therefore great circumspection ought to be taken, in yielding to the omission of any part of so grand a Ceremony: And the standing upon terms hath not been without good success, since known, that though other Interests (different or contrary to the *Sovereign's*) have sometimes assaulted *Strangers* desirous of this Honor, yet their present necessities of obtaining his Friendship, by receiving this *Order*, have caused them (though with some unwillingness) to accept of this obliging Tye from him.

The Exceptions that were allowed to *Ferdinand Arch-Duke of Austria*, when he took the *Oath* at his Investiture at *Noremberg*, the 8. of *December*, an. 15. H. 8. were these that follow.

^t Append. Num. CXLIII. ^t Not to wear the Garter and Collar, but at some certain times in the year, at his own pleasure.

That if he were not in place convenient, to go to hear *Mass* on *St. George's day*, he should cause a Priest to say it in his presence.

Not to be obliged, if busied in weighty Affairs, to wear the Garter, Collar, or whole Habit of the Order on *St. George's day*, longer than during Divine Service: Nevertheless he promised, if he could not then wear it, for a whole day together, he would willingly wear it upon some other solemn day, within the compass of the year.

^u Ibid. Num. CXLIV.

And much to the same purpose is that Proviso, added in the *Oath* of *Emanuel Duke of Savoy*, taken the 6. of *November*, an. 1. & 2. Ph. & Mar. viz. To observe the Statutes of the Order, so far forth as they might be conveniently observed by him, and were not inconsistent with those things, wherein he had formerly bound himself by Faith and Oath; yet not to be obliged to wear the Garter and Habit of the Order, but when he should see good, and have convenience so to do, and never else.

^w Ibid. Num. CXLV.

Of another nature were the Exceptions which *Francis the First of France* procured to be admitted into the *Oath*, taken by *Adrian Tercelin* his Proctor, an. 19. H. 8. viz. ^w To observe the Statutes of the Order of the Garter, so far as they were consistent with, and not contrary or prejudicial to the Statutes of the Order of *St. Michael*, and other Orders, which his Principal had before taken of other Princes.

^x Ibid. Num. CXLVI.

And like to this, was the *Oath* of *Charles the Ninth*, adding only an exception of any thing contrary to his royal dignity, which was received from him in the Church of the Colledge of *St. Johns* at *Lyons* in *France*, the 24. of *June* in the morning after *Mass*, an. 5. Eliz. namely, ^x To observe the Statutes of the Garter, so far forth as they were not contrary or derogatory (1.) to his greatness Royal, (2.) the Statutes of *St. Michael*, nor (3.) to any other Oath, which he had before taken.

^y Ibid. Num. CXLVII.

Neer to these, were the Provisoes allowed in the *Oath* made by *Maximilian the Emperor* at *Vienna*, the 4. of *January* an. 10. Eliz. ^y To observe the Statutes, so far forth as they were not contrary or derogatory to his (1.) Greatness and Majesty Imperial, nor to the (2.) Statutes of any other Order, nor any (3.) Oath which he had before taken.

^z Ibid. Num. CXLIX.

But by the *French King Henry the Third*, because now our Church was reformed, the Exception of the *Catholic Religion*, was thought of consequence to be gained from the *Sovereign*, and thereupon the Proviso in the *Oath*, which he took in the Chappel of the *Augustins* in *Paris*, an. 27. Eliz. runs thus, ^z so far forth as the Statutes of the Order should not be found contrary (1.) to the Catholic Religion, his (2.) Greatness and Majesty Royal, and (3.) the Statutes and Ordinances of the blessed Holy Ghost, and *St. Michael*.

^a Ibid. Num. CL.

And this was the form of the *Oath* word for word, which ^a *Henry the Fourth of France* took at *Roane*, an. 38. Eliz. And when *Monsieur de Chastel* came over
four

four years after, to be Installed for him, viz. an. ^b 42. Eliz. his Oath then taken, referred to the ^c form of the foresaid Oath, which Henry the Fourth himself had before made, and upon the Conditions agreed on, between the sovereign and his Master.

Such like Exceptions were allowed, in the Oath of Gustavus Adolphus and Charles Kings of Sweden; ^d To observe the Articles of this Order in all things, which should not be any way derogatory to the Religion by him profess'd, his Dignity and Majesty Royal, or contrary to any other Articles or Orders.

Frederick the Second King of Denmark at his reception of the Habit of the Order, ^e took in effect the usual Oath, and to observe the Statutes of the Order, ^f so that they were not derogatory to those he had before sworn unto, or other conditions whereunto he had been formerly obliged: And yet I find that his Proctor, ^g an. 25. Eliz. obtained a larger latitude both in point of Religion, and particular Interest, being admitted to take the Oath with these reservations, ^h so far forth as the Statutes of the Order, concerned the said King, and should be agreeable to the Word of God. And the same Oath was taken by Sir Philip Sidney, Proctor to John Count Palatine of the Rhyne; But ⁱ Henry Ramel, Proctor to Christian the Fourth King of Denmark, an. 3. Jac. R. took it with the salvo of those ^j Conditions and Covenants, wherein his Master had been already pre-engaged.

But the Princes of the Empire have allowed them another manner of Exception, as appears by that Oath of Frederick Duke of Wirtemberg, an. 1. Jac. R. viz. ^k To observe the Statutes, so far as they were not inconsistent with the Constitutions of the sacred Roman Empire, and faith which he owed to the Roman Emperor and his Empire.

And with a like salvo did Frederick Prince Palatine of the Rhyne (personally installed at Windesfor, ^l an. 10. Jac. R.) take this Oath, viz. ^m salvis sacri Imperii constitutionibus.

But as touching the Proxies of such Strangers, not Sovereign Princes but Subjects; the form of their Oath is usually framed (by the indulgence and dispensation of the Sovereign) with just limitations, not only relative to their obligation to the Statutes of any other Order, which they had before accepted, or any Oath formerly taken, but sometimes to the fidelity and allegiance, which they owe to their Sovereign Lord and Prince. And hereupon the Earl of Newblank's Deputy, an. 25. H. 8. was sworn to the observation of the Statutes, ⁿ so far forth as they were not contradictory to the Statutes of the Order of St. Michael, his Principal being one of the Fraternity of that Order.

After the Oath hath been administered to a Strangers Proxie (with such of the like exceptions before set down) the two Knights-Commissioners pass up with him into the higher row of Stalls, and so to that assigned for his Principal; where being arrived, they take the Mantle from Garter, and lay it upon the Proctor's left arm, with the Scutcheon of St. George uppermost; for so was it ordered to be born, in a Chapter held at the Feast of St. George the 28. of May, an. 23. Car. 2. and to be a standing Rule for the future; and the Proxies to both the King of Sweden and Duke of Saxony did so observe it the same day, at and after Evening Service.

The next thing that follows is the act and ceremony of Installation, which is briefly thus; first, the Commissioners, who conducted the Proxie into the Choir, jointly embrace him; next, the Proxie makes his double Reverence, and lastly the Commissioners, according to the custom of Installations, ^o set him down in his Principal's Stall, where he hath used to remain during the time of Divine Service.

But by the foresaid Order in Chapter held the 28. of May, an. 23. Car. 2. the Proxies are prohibited for ^p sitting in their stalls during the time of Divine Service, but on the contrary directed to stand before them, in the uppermost Row of Stalls (^q uncovered) holding their Mantles on their right arms until it be ended.

And thus this great Ceremony of Installation with all its Circumstances being finished, the two Knights (between whom the Proxie proceeded to Installation)

K k k 2

descend

b Lib. C. p. 148
c Appendix
Num. CL.

d Ibid. Num.
CXIX. &
CXX.

* Lib. C. p. 96;
|| Num. CLII.

e Lib. C. p. 89;
f Append. Num.
CLIII.

h Lib. R. p. 160
i Appen.
CLIV

k Ibid. Num.
CLV.

l Lib. C. p. 178;
m MS. penes
W.G. f. 151.

n MS.

o MS. in Offic.
Arm. [H. 2.]
fol. 8. b.
p. Collect. W. le
N. Cl.

r Ex Collect.
AV. W.
u Lib. N. p. 316

w Ex eod. Lib.
Collect. H. de
Vic. loco cit.
x Lib. R. p. 84.

descend into the *Choir*, and stand before their own Stalls, and after a while ascend up into them with usual Reverences, but the senior *Commissioners* first; and then begins the celebration of *Divine Service*.

SECT. XII.

The Proctor's Offring.

THE Proctor having now received the possession of his *Principal's Stall*, performs his part in all the following Ceremonies, while he stays in the *Choir*, as if his Lord and Master were present, until he hath surrendered up his *Manile*; the chiefest of which is, the *Offring of Gold and Silver*, and this he doth according to the ^a degree and seniority of his *Principal's Stall*, in case the Installation be in the morning.

^a MS. in Offic.
Ann. [H. 2.]
fol. 2. b.

If the Installation be celebrated when *St. George's Feast* is held by the *Sovereign's Lieutenant*, the *Proxie* ought not to offer, until the *Lieutenant* have first offered for the *Sovereign*. And in case the *Lieutenant's Stall* be higher than the *Stranger's* for whom the *Proctor* is installed, then the *Lieutenant* also offereth for himself before him.

As to the order observed in *Offring* by the *Proctor*, he doth it with all the circumstances of Ceremony, as if his Lord were present.

First, when the *Knights-Companions* descend from their Stalls (which Ceremony begins with the junior *Knight*) he also descends in his turn and course, and placeth himself below in the *Choir*, before the Stall of his *Principal*.

Then in case he have an opposite *Knight-Companion* present, he joins himself unto him, and so proceeds up towards the Altar to the *Offring*, taking the *Officers of Arms* before him; but if not, he then proceeds alone without him, having his Train born, and a *Knight-Companion*, or some other great personage, futable to his degree, attending on his left hand, to give him the *offring*, with Carpets and Cushens spread to kneel upon at the time of *Offring*; after whom the ^c rest of the *Knights-Companions* present offer, every one according to the seniority of their Stalls.

^c Lih. N. p. 316.

^d Ex Autogr.
^e in Bibl.
^f Canon.

The *Proctor* to *Francis* the First of France, was ^d served in all respects, as if himself had been there present, and at the time of the *Offring*, ^e Sir *Richard Sands* (who was of greatest quality there present excepting the *Knights-Companions*) gave him his *Offring*, ^f after whom the residue of the *Knights-Companions* offered in their due order.

^g MS. penes
^h W. D. N.
ⁱ fol. 25. b.

Charles the Fifth's *Proctor* proceeded up to the *Offring* first, (no Feast of *St. George* being then solemnized, and consequently no *Lieutenant* to offer for the *Sovereign*) with the ^g three inferior *Officers* of the Order before him; he had his ^h Train carried up, and the ⁱ Earl of *Sussex* (the principal *Commissioner*) following, delivered him the *Offring*; for whom also a ^k Carpet and Cushen was laid, and assay thereof taken by Mr. *Monk*, Servant to the Earl of *Leicester*, ^l instead of a Gentleman Usher, with the assistance of a Yeoman Usher.

^m MS. penes
ⁿ E. W. G.
^o fol. 145. b.

Henry Ramel, Deputy to *Christian* the Fourth King of Denmark, was ushered up to the *Offring* by ^m Garter, and the *Black-Rod* (ⁿ still bearing the Mantle of his *Principal* on his arm) and having his ^o Train born up by a Gentleman.

^p Ex Collec.
^q N. Cl.

When the *Proxie* hath offered, he returns back to his *Lord's Stall*, in the same manner as do the *Knights-Companions*, that is, by the ^p East end of the Stalls (not through the body of the *Choir*) and so along till he arrive at the Stall of his *Principal*, as did the foreaid^q *Henry Ramel*.

^r Ex end MS.
^s E. W.
^t loc. cit.

Divine Service being finished, and like honor in all respects shewed to the *Proxie*, as would have been done to his *Principal*, had he received a Personal Instal-

Instal-

Installation; the *Proxie* ought to remain in his Masters Stall, until his next junior *Knight* have left his Stall, and then is he to descend after him, and stand below before his Stall, until his turn come to join himself again to the Proceeding, and so to pass out of the *Choire*.

Where note, that sometimes the *Proctor* hath been received at his coming down from his Lords Stall by the two *Knights-Commissioners*, who installed him; for so were the *Proctors* of *Frederick* the Second King of *Denmark*, and of *John* Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*, between whom they also proceeded to the *Chapter-house* door, in the same manner as they were conducted to the *Choire*. Ex Collec.
R. C. Ch.
p. 31.

But rather the *Proctor* ought, in this his return, to take the place of his Principal (as he did at the *Offring*, and which in truth is his right) as we find it allowed to the *Proctor* of *Francis* the First of *France*, who went behind alone, in his Principal's place, and followed the *Knights-Commissioners* from the *Choire*, to the place where he lodged. Ex Autogr. f.
Bibl. Cotton.

In like manner Viscount *Hereford*, *Proxie* to the Duke of *Holstien*, an. 3. *Eliz.* who though in his Proceeding to the *Choire*, he went before the Officers of *Arms*, yet in his return from Installation, pass'd behind the *Knights-Commissioners*, in the room and place of the Duke, and the Ambassador of *Holstien* followed him, because the said Duke's Stall was higher than any of the *Commissioners*, as may be seen by the following Schem. Ex Collec.
W. le N. Ch.

Arms-Knights.
Officers of Arms.
Garter and Register.
Lord Loughborough } *Commissioners.*
Lord Pagit }
The Proctor.
The Ambassador of Holstien, and
Sir Henry Pagit.
Knights and other Gentlemen.

The like did the *Proxie* for *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, and *Henry* Prince of *Orange*, an. 4. *Carl* I. who as they returned from the *Choire*, held the rooms of their Principals, among the *Knights-Companions* in the Proceeding. So also the *Proctor* to *Charles* Prince Palatine of the *Rhyne*, in his return; but was then commanded by the *Sovereign* (present in the Proceeding) to put on his Hat, which he had kept off in all the preceding parts of the Ceremony. MS. penes
Edw. Faucon-
bridge.
Ex Collec. W. le
N. Ch.
y Lib. R. p. 85.

As the *Proctor* passeth along by the *Chapter-house* door, he hath usually heretofore delivered up his *Mantle* there, and so is it directed in the *Black-Book* of 2 *Page* 316. the *Order*; as did the *Proctor* to the *French* King *Francis* the First, an. 19. *H.* 8. So also the Duke of *Saxony's* *Proctor*, an. 1. & 2. *Ph.* & *Mar.* And at the same place did the *Verger* receive the *Mantle* from the Duke of *Holstein's* *Proctor*, an. 3. *Eliz.* But of later times when the *Sovereign* hath been present at the Installation, some *Proxies* have been permitted to go along in the Proceeding to the *Presence-Chamber*, covered, as were the *Proxie* to *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, to *Charles* Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*, to *Charles* King of *Sweden* (the Train of whose *Mantle* was born by *Monsieur Leyenberg*, the Swedish Resident) and to *John George* Duke of *Saxony*, whose Train likewise was carried up by *Mr. Richard Richaut*, one of the Earl of *Winchelsea's* Gentlemen. MS. penes
Edw. Faucon-
bridge.
Ex Lib. R. p. 85.
Ex Lib. Col-
lec. pref. Henr.
de Vic p. 158.

SECT. XIII.

The Dinner.

When the *Installation* hath past in the morning, there hath usually been prepared a great *Dinner* at the *Sovereign's* charge; we shall need here only to mention such particulars as are peculiar to the *Proxie* of a *stranger*, or different from the *Instances* set down in our discourse of this particular, in the

^c Chap. 12.
^d Sec. 10.
^d Lib. N. p. 316.

^c Personal Installation of a *Knight-Companion*.

And first, ^d before *Dinner* (if the *Installation* pass by *Commissioners*) the *Proxie* (representing the State of his *Principal*) shall wash alone, he shall sit at the chief place of the Table, and alone, and shall be served alone; but the other *Knights-Commissioners* shall sit at the end of the Table.

^e Ex lib. vocat.
^d Dalton p. 105. b
^f Ibid. p. 112.

^g Ex Autogr.
^h in Bibl. Co-
ⁱ lon.
^k
^l

Thus was it observed at the *Installation* of ^e *Ferdinand* Arch-Duke of *Austria*, an. 14. H. 8. and of ^f *Francis* the *French* King, an. 19. H. 8. for when the later of these was *Installed*, the *Dinner* was held at ^{*} the *Deans-house*, and his ^g *Proctor* washed alone, and sat down to *Dinner* in a *Chair*: nor did any of the ^h *Knights-Commissioners* sit at his *Mess*. The services were all performed to him in every particular, as ⁱ though his *Principal* had been present, saving his ^k *Cloth* of State. The Lord ^l *Marquess* of *Excester*, and all the other *Knights-Companions* (having first washed) sat on both sides the same Table, yet beneath the *Proctor*, and in their whole *Habits* of the *Order*.

^m MS. penes
ⁿ W. D. N.
^o f. 26.
^p
^q

The *Dinner* was likewise prepared in the *Dean's* great *Chamber*, at the *Installation* of *Charles* the Ninth the *French* King, whose *Proctor* was served with *Water* and a *Towel* by the ^m *Earl* of *Southampton*, and *Lord* *Herbert*; *Sir* *John Radcliff* performed the Office of ⁿ *Sewer*, *Henry* *Brooks* alias *Cobham* *Esq* was ^o *Carver*, and *Mr. Francis* *Hervy*, *Cupbearer*.

^r Ex Collec.
^s A. V. W.

This *Proctor* had a ^p *Cloth* of State allowed him, under which he sat at *Dinner*, the *Mantle* lying by him all the while on a *Stool* and *Cushen*; at the ^q *Table* end, on the ^r right hand, sat the four *Commissioners* in their *Robes*, being served ^s apart from the *Proctor*.

^t MS. penes
^u E. W. G.
^w

But if the *Sovereign's* *Lieutenant* be present, the *Proctor* dines at the same Table with him, and then a little before the second course is brought in, is the *Sovereign's* *Stile* proclaimed in ^t *Latin*, *French*, and *English* with usual Ceremony: but otherwise, only the *Stile* of the new *Installed* *Prince*, and but once.

The *Stile* and *Titles* of *Christian* the Fourth King of *Denmark* were proclaimed in ^u *Latin*, and of *Maurice* Prince of *Orange* in ^w *French*.

^x MS. penes
^y W. D. N.
^z fsh. 26.
^x

Dinner being ended, all rise in ^x order and wash; first the ^y *Proxie* alone, and after him the *Knights-Commissioners*; and thence they accompany the *Proctor* to his *Chamber*, where having left him, they retire to their own *Lodgings*, and ^z there put off their *Habits*.

The *Proctor* to *Charles* the Ninth took the *Mantle* of his *Principal*, on his arm in to his *Chamber*, when he rose from *Dinner*; and ^{*} there delivered it to *Garter*.

So soon as the Solemnity of *Installation* is over, the *Proctor* is to take care, that *Garter* forthwith set up the *Atchievements* of his *Principal* over his *Stall*, and fix the *Plate* of his *Arms* upon the back thereof; in memorial of the Honor done him, by this Ceremony of *Inauguration* into the most Noble and most Honorable *Order* of the *Garter*.

And sometimes we find the *Proxie* hath, upon his request, obtained an *Instrument* under the Sign manual of the *Sovereign*, and Seal of the *Order*, attesting his being conducted to *St. George's* Chappel at *Windefor*, and placed in, and taken possession of the *seat* assigned to his *Principal*, in whose name he hath also taken the *Oath*, attested by his subscription, and performed all the Ceremonies in due form as the *Statutes* direct; for so did the *Sieur de Chaster*, *Proctor* to the *French* King *Henry* the Fourth, an. 42. *Eliz*.

¶ Append. Num.
CLVI.

In close of all, let us here remember, that the present King of *Sweden*, against his late Installation, caused both Gold and Silver *Medals* to be made in memory of that Solemnity, and to perpetuate the honor so received: Those of *Gold* were bestowed upon the *Knights-Companions* present, and other persons of quality, and those of *silver* distributed among some of the *Officers* attending at the Installation, and others. The *Devise* was suitable to the occasion, and present interest of both Kings, as may be observed from the Representation here exhibited.



CHAP. XVII.

THE
Duties *and* Fees

PAYABLE BY THE
KNIGHTS COMPANIONS AT THEIR
Installations.

SECT. I.

Touching the Fees due to the Colledge of Windesfor.

Such was the piety and bounty of our *Ancestors*, that they thought no work well performed, without being attended with some charitable donation, especially if it had relation to the *Church*, whereunto they generally bore a venerable esteem. Hence was it, at the Installation of this Order, ordained,^a That every Knight-Companion should at his entrance bestow a certain sum of money, according to his quality and degree, That is to say,
^a E. 3. Stat. Art. 22. H. 5. Stat. Art. 24. H. 8. Stat. Art. 24.

The

	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>
The Sovereign of the Order —————	10	13	4
A stranger-King —————	20	0	0
The Prince of Wales —————	13	6	8
Every Duke —————	10	0	0
Every Earl —————	6	13	4
Every Baron —————	5	0	0
Every Knight-Bachelor —————	3	6	8

What use these sums were employed in, and how distributed, appears by the appointment there set down, viz. ^b Towards the relief of the Canons of Windesor, the Alms-Knights, and augmentation of the Alms-deeds there appointed perpetually to be done. To the end ^c That every one entering into this Military Order, might thereby more worthily obtain the Name, Title, and Privilege of one of the Founders of the Order: ^d It being supposed a worthy and just thing, that whosoever obtained this Privilege, should add some small increment to this Foundation.

Not long after establishing the Statutes of Institution, the Titles of Marquess and Viscount, came to be special dignities, for Robert Vere Earl of Oxford, was the first among us, who as a distinct dignity, received the title of ^h Marquess, the first of December, an. 9. R. 2. and John Lord Beaumont the first here also that had the Title of ⁱ Viscount conferred on him, as a distinct Title of Honor, the 12. of February, an. 18. H. 6. And whereas both these Degrees of Honor, at their Creations, were settled as intermediate, the first between a Duke and an Earl, for so saith the ^k Roll (where it speaks of the Marquess his precedence) the Marquess was commanded to sit among the Peers in Parliament, in a higher place (than his Degree as Earl of Oxford could justly challenge) viz. ^l between Dukes and Earls; and the Viscount between Earls and Barons, as the said Viscount Beaumont, is by his first Patent ranked, to wit, ^m above all Barons; and afterwards in another Patent, to render his place more certain and apparent, ⁿ above all Viscounts afterwards made and created, and before and above the Heirs and Sons of Earls, and immediately and next to Earls, both in all Parliaments, Councils, and other Places.

Upon these grounds, and suitable to the ranks of Honor thus settled, were the Fees of Installation to the Colledge, from Knights-Companions of these Degrees proportioned, for shortly after the precedence so granted and settled to the said Viscount Beaumont (his latter Patent bearing date the ^o 12. of March, an. 23. H. 6.) the Sovereign with the unanimous consent of the Knights-Companions, at the Feast of St. George held at Windesor the ^p 12. of May following, Decreed, ^q That a Marquess, forasmuch as his Degree of Honor was above an Earl, and intermediate between him and a Duke, should therefore contribute more than an Earl. Now the sum for an Earl, being (as appears above) set at 10 Marks, the Marquess was by this Decree, obliged to pay 33 s. 4 d. more than the Earl; viz. in toto 8 l. 6 s. 8 d. And for the same reason also, was a Viscount enjoined, to give the proportion of 16 s. 8 d. more than a Baron; and so his whole Fee amounted to 5 l. 16 s. 8 d. The Installation Fees of these two Degrees, being thus added to the former, were with them confirmed by King Henry the Eighth's ^r Statutes.

And though in all the Bodies of the Statutes, the Sovereign of the Order is charged with payment of Fees to the Colledge, no less than the rest of the Knights-Companions, yet is it to be understood only of those Sovereigns, who were not (before the assumption of their Stall) elected into this Order: for we see in the case of King Henry the Sixth (the first Sovereign that had not before his being so, been elected a Knight-Companion) there past an order in Chapter, ^s an. 1. H. 6. for payment of his Fees, upon assuming his Stall, according to the appointment of the Statute.

The case also of the Lord Weston is here observable, who although at the time of his Installation (the 5. of October, an. 6. Car. 1.) he was seated in no higher a rank of Nobility, than the Degree of a Baron; yet being then by an honorary

^b 5 E. 3. Stat.

^c 2 Art. 22.

^d 5. Stat.

Art. 22. H. 8.

Stat. Art. 24.

^d Ord. Stat. in

Lib. N. Art. 21.

^h Cart. an. 9.

R. 2. m. 13.

ⁱ Pat. 18. H. 6.

part 2. m. 21.

^k Rot. Parl.

^l an. 9. R. 2.

m. 3. n. 17.

^m Pat. 18. H. 6.

et supra.

ⁿ Pat. 23. H. 6.

part 2. m. 20.

^o Ibid. Pat.

^p Lib. N. f. 55.

^q Ibid. f. 55.

^r Art. 24.

^s Lib. N. p. 75.

honorary Title *Lord Treasurer of England*, did (for the honor of his Office) not only pay as much as an *Earl* ought by the *Statutes*, but in all other customary *Lib. R. p. 66.* Fees and Duties bare a proportion to that Dignity.

But the matter of Installation Fees, w being by several Petitions represented w *Lib. Carol.* to the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* in *Chapter*, since the present *Sovereign's* p. 48. 49. 59. 66. happy return, was referred to the *standing Committee* of *Knights-Companions*, to 67. 73. & 74. make enquiry and take into their examination, all the pretensions and demands thereunto: in relation to which, much time having been spent in a diligent and full examination thereof, through the zealous endeavours, and continual solicitations of the *Register*, out of respect to his *Successors*, the *Colledge* and *Choir* of *Windsor*, so also of *Garter* on behalf of his *Successors*, the *Officers* of *Arms*, and other the *Sovereign's* *Officers* and *Servants* claiming Installation Fees, and due consideration had of the reasons and proofs to justify the same, as also to the reasonableness and equity of the whole matter: Finally, a Report was made the 5. of *March*, an. 22. *Car. 2.* by the Duke of *Ormond*, the Earls x *Id. p. 84.* of *Sandwich* and *Manchester*, whereby such Installation Fees were thought reasonable and requisite to be paid by the *Knights-Companions*, as were contained in an annexed *Schedule*, ascertaining the sums, proportioned according to the Dignities and Degrees of the *Knights-Companions*; which, both y *Report* and *Schedule* being afterwards^z read over and approved by the *Sovereign*, part of it containing the Fees due to the *Dean* and *Canons*, *Choir* and *Alms-Knights* of *Windsor*, the *Register*, *Garter*, *Black-Rod*, and *Officers* of *Arms*, were commanded to be entered upon the *Register* of the *Order*, in *perpetuam rei memoriam*, to prevent all future questions and controversies that might otherwise arise; the other part, wherein was set down the Fees payable to the rest of the *Sovereign's* *Servants*, was appointed to be only signed in *Garter's* *Bills*, with all the other Fees as they became due.

In this Decree the *Installation Fees* made payable to the *Dean* and *Canons* are these,

	l.	s.	d.		l.	s.	d.	
* A Stranger-King	20	00	00	An Earl	06	13	04	a Ex ipso An-
A Stranger-Prince	10	00	00	A Viscount	05	16	08	tegr.
The Prince of Wales	20	00	00	A Baron.	05	00	00	
A Duke	10	00	00	A Knight-}				
A Marquess.	08	06	08	Batchellor }	03	06	08	

These Fees ought to be paid^b at the time of the *Knights Installation*, whether b E. 3. 7 Stat. Personal or by *Proxie*, so also for a *Stranger*; and as to the practice, it hath H. 5. 3 Art. 22 been thus; * to pay them by the hands of some one of the *Knights-Companions* H. 8. Stat. Servants, so soon as the Ceremonies of Installation were ended; and in truth, Art. 24. that which quickened their care herein, was the strict injunction repeated in all c See before, the Bodies of the^d *Statutes*, which do expressly prohibit the setting up of their p. 367. Achievements, till payment be made. d Vide etiam Lib. Carol. p. 81.

That anciently the *Alms-Knights* shared in the Fees paid to the *Colledge*, is manifest from the *Statutes* of *Institution*, the use for which they were given, being therein exprest to be towards relief of the *Alms-Knights*, no less than the *Canons*, and so say the succeeding bodies of the *Statutes*. Howbeit, since their re-establishment by Queen *Elizabeth* upon a new Constitution, they have received Installation Fees apart from those paid to the *Colledge*, which by the foregoing Establishment of Installation Fees, an. 22. *Car. 2.* are made equal and alike to those thereby payable to the *Dean* and *Canons*. e E. 3. Stat. Art. 22. f H. 5. Stat. Art. 22. H. 8. Stat. Art. 24. g Ex ipso Antegr.

The *Choir* of *Windsor*, under which not only the *Vicars*, but the *Vergers*, *Choir*, &c. *Choristers*, *Sextons*, and *Bell-Ringers*, are comprehended, reap some benefit by the Installation of a *Knight*, and have in all times been thought deserving of Fees among others, who performed service at these Solemnities: Hereupon were they taken into the Establishment made, an. 22. *Car. 2.* which has settled on them these following Fees, viz.

L 1 l

A

	l.	s.	d.		l.	s.	d.
^h <i>Ex ipsa An-</i> ^{1087.}				^h A Stranger-King	16	00	00
				A Stranger-Prince	08	10	00
				A Prince of Wales	16	00	00
				A Duke	08	10	00
				A Marquess	06	15	00
				An Earl	05	10	00
				A Viscount	04	00	00
				A Baron	04	00	00
				A Knight- Batchellor }	03	00	00

SECT. II.

Fees due to the Register, Garter, Black-Rod, and Officers of Arms.

ⁱ *Lib. N. p. 235.* Register. **I**N the rank of those Officers to whom Installation Fees are due, stands first the Register, who by the Constitutions of his Office, is to have of every Knight-Companionⁱ 13 s. 4 d. in money, and a Robe.

After that Doctor Matthew Wren had enjoyed this Office for some few years, and supposing himself defrauded by the concealment of part of his Fees, he petitioned the Sovereign, that the Fee anciently due to his place, might be restored and settled, with the allowance of a Robe, or composition for it from the new installed Knight; the grounds of which address were set forth in the following Petition.

To the King's most sacred Majesty, Sovereign of the most Noble Order of the Garter.

The humble Petition of Matthew Wren, Register of the said Order.

Sheweth,

*Autogr. penes
DuB. Chr.
Wren mper Or-
dinis Regist.*

THat at his first entry into this Office, the Black-Book (wherein the chiefest Records of the Order are) being in the custody of Sir William Segar then Garter, he was forced to receive from him the Instructions which concerned his place: And whereas at the Installation of any Knight, the said Sir William Segar did use to make a Bill of such Fees as were to be paid, wherein of later years, he would set down for the Register but half as much as for himself, upon whose authority the Register for a while rested, and knowing no other had no more; Copies of which Bills are privately transmitted from one Lord's Officer to another.

But since the Black-Book was by the honorable Chapter remanded to the Registers custody, upon survey of the Records, and view of the Statutes (in the Book by him lately exhibited to your Sovereign Majesty) the rule for the Registers Fee in more express Text, than for any Officer else, appears; That as oft as any Knight chosen into the Order, is installed, the Register shall have of him thirteen shillings and four pence, and a Robe. [Statut. de Officialibus Ordinis, cap. 6.]

He therefore most humbly beseecheth, on the behalf of his place, that, according to every Lord's Oath, not wittingly to break the content of any Statute, this Statute may be without question observed, and the Robe be allowed him; and that Sir John Burrowes, now Garter, may have order to reform this Error, with such of the Companions or their Officers, as have not yet paid the Register an Installation Fee.

But in case that any Lord, shall rather chuse to compound with the Register for the said Robe, That it may now please your Sacred Majesty, for the avoiding of all exception to the said Register, to set down a proportion meet to be demanded for the same by him; who both in the order of his place is before Mr. Garter, and in the proportion of his Annual Fee from your Sovereign Majesty above him.

At

At the Court at Greenwich, the 6. of May 1634.

It is his Majesty's pleasure, that all Fees due to the Officers of the Order, by the Institution, shall be precisely paid; and that this particular of the Register shall be satisfied, according to the words of the Institution, and not according to the custom lately used, of which Mr. Garter is to give notice, as there shall be occasion.

Fr. Crane, Cancr

But it seems that nothing was done in his time, upon the Sovereign's Answer to this Petition, besides its entry into the^k Red-Book; and thereupon afterwards, when his Brother Doctor Christopher Wren had succeeded him in the Register's place, and the Robe assigned him out of the Sovereign's Wardrobe at his entrance into his Office, being of the value of $\text{£} 28 \text{ l. } 1 \text{ s. } 0 \text{ d.}$ according to this valuation of his Robe, a^q like value was proposed (by way of Composition) upon the Knights-Companions Batchellors (the lowest Degree among the Knights of the Order) to be paid him in lieu of the said Robe, supposing they could not give him less: and from hence was raised the^r proportions, for each several Degree of honor, upon those who should be admitted into this most Noble Order, thus

p (Ex Colle^h.
q) pred. Dr.
r (Chr. Wren.

	s.	d.		l.	s.	d.
Inprimis for a Knight-Batchellor	13	04	and	28	00	00
Baron	13	04	} and	30	00	00
Viscount	13	04		32	00	00
Earl	13	04		34	00	00
Marquess	13	04		36	00	00
Duke	13	04		38	00	00
Prince	13	04		40	00	00

Afterwards, taking occasion from the Instalment of the present Sovereign then Prince, an. 14. Car. 1. the Dean desired the Deputy-Chancellor, to know the Sovereign's pleasure once again, and to represent, that the Registers Fees were anciently 13 s. 4 d. in money, and the Robe in kind; and seeing that the Sovereign was pleased to allow encrease of Fees, to the other Officers of the Order, particularly to Garter King of Arms 40 l. at the Installation of the said Prince, and every other Officer in proportion; and that it stood both with the honor of the Prince, to give as honorable a Fee, as any Prince Stranger, at his Installation, and also with the Dignity of the Registers place, to expect no less than others, that were not above him in rank; that it would therefore please the Sovereign, to think the Register worthy to make the like Plea.

Thus much the Deputy-Chancellor represented to the Sovereign at Greenwich, sometime after the Prince's Installation, and thereupon the Sovereign was graciously pleased, to think it most reasonable, on the Register's behalf, and Ordered, that at every Installation of a Prince, the Register should receive for his Fee 13 s. 4 d. and 40 l. in lieu of his Robe; and that Prince Charles (then newly installed) should pay him the said sums, which was accordingly done; and the same were since settled on this Officer by the Establishment of Installation Fees, made an. 22. Car. 2. to be thenceforth paid, not only by the Prince of Wales, but for the Installation of a Stranger-King; whereto is added for a Stranger-Prince 38 l. 13 s. 4 d. But those thereby made due from Knights-Subjects of other Degrees, are the same as were proposed by Doctor Christopher Wren, mentioned a little above.

Next to the Register doth Garter claim both Droits and Fees, for his service and attendance at this Solemnity, who in reference to its preparations, and employment at the time, hath a greater share of business than any other Officer

Garter's

of the Order: As to the first of these, it was Ordained by the Constitutions of his Office, ^a *That as often as any Knight should happen to be Installed, he might challenge for himself the Garments worn by him, immediately before his Investiture with the Surcoat of the Order.* And the constant practice hath interpreted this, to be the Knight's upper Garment, anciently a short Gown, of later times a Cloak, but now a Coat; which he puts off in the *Chapter-house*, when the Investiture begins.

When Garter had received the Gown of Philip King of Castile, immediately before his Investiture with the Robes of the Order, *an. 22. H. 7.* he came before the Sovereign, and ^b humbly besought him to give thanks to the King, who, for his sake, had bestowed it on him, which the Sovereign accordingly did.

Heretofore, when Garter had received the Knight's Gown, he immediately put it on, and wore it during the whole Ceremony of Installation, and therefore the Gown of Henry Duke of York, second Son to King Henry the Seventh, though he was very young when installed, was made large enough for Garter's use. But because this short Gown hath been so long out of fashion, as to be well nigh forgotten, we shall therefore mention several of the kind, wherein their description will appear remarkable enough, both for their materials, and the then fashionable Trimmings.

King Henry the Seventh's Gown, at his assumption of the Sovereign's Stall, was made of ^c Black Velvet, and lined with Cloth of Gold, full of red Roses. Prince Arthur wore a Gown of ^f Crimson Velvet, lined with Black Velvet, when he proceeded to his Installation. And the Gown made for the forefaid Henry Duke of York, was of ^e Crimson Velvet, lined with Black Sattin.

In the Reign of King Henry the Eighth, the materials of some of the Knights Gowns, were as followeth.

The Lord Dudley's, of ⁱ Tinsel Sattin Violet, lined with Black Sarcenet. The Lord Howard's, of ^k Tawney Velvet, furr'd with Leopards. The Lord La Ware's, of ^l Tawney Velvet, lined with Black Bogy. The Earl of Devonshire's, of ^m Cloth of Silver, lined with Cloth of Gold. The Viscount Lytle's, of ⁿ Black Velvet, furr'd with Black Bogy. The Lord Fitz Walter's, of ^o Black Damask, and double Black Velvet. Henry Fitz Roy Duke of Richmond, of ^p Black Sattin, with Buttons and Aglets of Gold on his Sleeves, and furr'd with Sables. The Earl of Arundel's, of Tawney Velvet, lined with Black double Sarcenet. The Earl of Westmerland's, of ^q Black Velvet, lined with Sattin, with Aglets of Gold. The Earl of Oxford's, of ^r Black Sattin, lined with Jennets. The Lord Russell's, of ^s Black Velvet, lined with Black Sattin. The Coat of King Philip (installed *an. 1. & 2. Ph. & Mar.*) was ^t embroidered on Velvet, with Gold-Wire, of Goldsmiths work, and lined with White Taffaty: His Gown was made of ^u Purple Velvet, garnished with the same, and twisted Silver Lace laid on the Gard; his other Coat of Velvet embroidered with Silver, lined with White.

This kind of upper Garment or Gown continued also in fashion, a great part of Queen Elizabeth's Reign, for we likewise find, that the Earl of Leicester's Gown was made of ^v Velvet, garded with four gards of the same, and thereon 38 pair of Aglets. The Lord Burghley's of ^w Taffaty, with three gards of Velvet, and three dozen of great Buttons of Gold. The Lord Buckhurst's of ^x Velvet, with a broad embroidery gard, and Buttons of Gold. The Lord Shandos's of Sattin, with a brodered gard of Velvet, and two dozen of Gold Buttons. The Earl of Worcester's, of ^y Velvet lined with double Sarcenet, with a paceman Lace about it. The Duke of Norfolk's of ^z Black Sattin, furr'd with Squirrels, faced with Sables, with-----pair of Aglets. The Earl of Bedford's such another Gown, but had a Silver Lace about it. The Lord Hunsdon's of Sattin, furr'd with Luzarts, and garded with-----The Earl of Warwick's of Russet Sattin, embroidered all over with Russet Lace, and furr'd with Cony. The Duke of Northumberland's, was a loose Velvet Gown, furr'd with Pavilion, and had a falling Cape.

But at length, the fashion of this upper Garment began to alter, and by that time John Casuare, Count Palatine of the Rhine, was received into the Order, it

^a Lib. N.p. 236.

^b MS. veter. penes W. le N. Cl. f. 255.

^d MS. fol. penes Jo. Vincent, p. 151.

^e Ex. ampl. f. Codice MS. penes prof. Jo. Vincent p. 151.

ⁱ Ex. cod. MS. k. p. 157.

^m Ibid. p. 158.

^o Ibid. pag. p. 159.

^s Ibid. p. 160.

^t MS. in Offic. Arm. [L. 1] f. 19.

^u MS. penes prof. G. w. O. T. p. 132.

^y Ibid. z. a. b.

it was converted to a *Cloak*, for such was his upper Garment (and of Velvet) faced and furr'd with Sables, and two Gold Laces garded thereon, cut, with Buttons and Gold Lace, where the Sleeves were wont to be. And ever since, till of late, hath the Cloak been most in fashion, for an upper Garment, but very much varied, both as to materials, lining, and ornament.

Sometimes *Garter* had not this Garment in kind, but received a *Fine* in lieu thereof; and this by virtue of a Decree made in *Chapter, an. 25. H. 6.* wherein it was ordained, "to be at the pleasure of every *Knight-Companion*, at the time of his Installation, whether *Garter* should have the Garment which each *Knight* did then wear, or a composition in money according to his Estate.

Since when the Compositions grew higher, as this upper Garment was made richer; for *Algernon* Earl of Northumberland bestowed on *Carter* upon this occasion for Fees and Droits *200 l.* in Gold, and *Henry* Earl of Danby, the Habit he wore on the day he rode from London towards his Installation, with *100 l.* in the Pockets, and by the late *Sovereign's* order, at the Installation of his Son *Prince Charles* our now *Sovereign*, *Garter* received for his Fee *40 l.* and for the composition of his upper Garment *60 l.* in the whole *100 l.* The like sum was given the present *Garter*, by the Dukes of *Ormond* and *Albemarle*, and the Earls of *Sandwich*, *Lindsey*, and *Manchester*, shortly after their Installations, by particular agreement; but herein his Fee for signification of their several Elections was included.

Finally, by the Establishment of Installation Fees, *an. 22. Car. 2.* the composition set upon each *Knight-Companion*, for his upper Garment, was thus rated, proportionably less than what was paid for the said *Prince, an. 14. Car. 1.* viz.

	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>		<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>	
^a A Prince of Wales	60	00	00	A Viscount	40	00	00	^g Ex ipso Au-
A Duke	55	00	00	A Baron	35	00	00	toqr.
A Marquess	50	00	00	A Knight-}	30	00	00	
An Earl	45	00	00	Batchellor }				

Besides this Droit or Composition, there hath in all times been paid to *Garter*, by every *Knight-Companion* a Fee for his Installation, proportioned also to his state and dignity, which was likewise brought to the following certainty by the said late Establishment.

	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>		<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>	
^b A Stranger-King	30	00	00	An Earl	25	00	00	^h Ibid.
A Stranger-Prince	20	00	00	A Viscount	20	00	00	
A Prince of Wales	40	00	00	A Baron	15	00	00	
A Duke	35	00	00	A Knight-}	10	00	00	
A Marquess	30	00	00	Batchellor }				

The Fee anciently due to the *Black-Rod* at the Installation of a *Knight*, like *Black-Rod*; all other Fees, hath in succeeding times received augmentation; for the Fee paid him at the Installation of *Prince Charles an. 14. Car. 1.* was *40 l.* and by the foresaid Establishment *an. 22. Car. 2.* he hath allowed him

	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>		<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>	
^k Stranger-King	20	00	00	Earl	16	00	00	^k Ex ipso Au-
Stranger-Prince	20	00	00	Viscount	14	00	00	toqr.
From a Prince of Wales	40	00	00	Baron	12	00	00	
Duke	20	00	00	Knight-}	10	00	00	
Marquess	18	00	00	Batchellor }				

Officers of
Arms.* Ex ipso An-
not.1 Ex lib. Part.
in Offic. Armor.
[3] f. 155. b.
in 16. f. 70. b.n Ex Antogr.
penes E.W.G.

As Fees were in all times paid to the *Register*, *Garter*, and *Black-Rod* for their particular services, at the Feasts of Installation, so likewise have the *Officers of Arms* accustomably received *Fees*, in reward of their attendance and service at those Solemnities; which having been encreased by the bounty of the Givers, were by the said late Establishment (pursuant to the Fees, paid them for the Installation of the now *Sovereign* when Prince) brought to the * same thereby allowed the *Black-Rod*, only in the Fee of a *stranger-King*, they have an addition of 10*l.* more, his Fee to them being 30*l.*

Besides these Installation Fees, when the Elect-Knights rode publicly from *London* to *Windeſor*, to their Installations, they were accustomed to bestow upon the Officers of Arms, that attended them thither, Scarfs, Hats, and Feathers, as did the Earls of *Danby* and *Moreton*, an. 10. Car. 1. viz. to¹ each of them 9 Ells of rich Taffaty, and a black Beaver Hat and Feather. And the Earl of *Northampton*, upon the like occasion, an. 5. Car. 1. allowed ^m 35*l.* to the seven Officers of Arms, that attended him to *Windeſor*, in lieu of Taffaty Scarfs of his Lordships Colours, and Beaver Hats, and gave each of them besides, Feathers worth 20*s.* a piece. Lastly, at the Installation of *Charles* Prince of *Wales*, an. 14. Car. 1. there was given to the 13 Officers of Arms, for the like allowance 10*l.* a piece, in all ^a 130*l.*

SECT. III.

Fees belonging to other of the Sovereign's Servants.

TO these forenamed Officers, we have seen added in the *Lifts of Installation Fees* of former times, some other here set down, who gave their attendance at these Solemnities, with the several sums received: some were then accounted *Fees*, and other run under the Title of *Benevolences*; all which nevertheless were admitted into the *Lift of Installation Fees* established, an. 22. Car. 2. and though not entred in the *Register* of the Order, yet are to be given in, under the hand of *Garter*, with the other Fees payable at Installations, and to be paid by every *Knight*, to all persons concerned respectively, according to ancient custom.

Ex ipso
Annot.

Viz.

	The Prince l. s. d.	A Duke l. s. d.	A Marquis l. s. d.	An Earl l. s. d.	A Viscount l. s. d.	A Baron l. s. d.	A Knight- Bachelor l. s. d.
To the Wardrobe	06 00 00 03	10 00 02 10	00 00 02 00	00 00 01 15	00 00 01 10	00 00 01 05	00 00
To the Trumpers	12 00 00 06	00 00 04 00	00 00 04 00	00 00 03 00	00 00 02 10	00 00 02 00	00 00
To the Serjeant Trumpeter	02 00 00 01	00 00 01 00	00 00 01 00	00 00 01 00	00 00 01 00	00 00 01 00	00 00
To the Musicians & Companies	16 00 00 08	00 00 07 00	00 00 06 00	00 00 05 00	00 00 04 00	00 00 03 00	00 00
Knight-Harbenger	03 06 08 03	06 08 03 06	08 03 06 08	03 06 08 03 06	08 03 06 08 03 06	08 03 06 08 03 06	08 08
Drums and Fifes	04 00 00 02	00 00 01 15	00 00 01 10	00 00 01 05	00 00 01 00	00 00 01 00	00 00
To the Porters	06 00 00 03	00 00 02 10	00 00 02 00	00 00 02 00	00 00 01 10	00 00 01 00	00 00
Master Cook	03 00 00 01	10 00 01 05	00 00 01 00	00 00 01 00	00 00 01 00	00 00 01 00	00 00
Serjeant Porter	06 00 00 03	00 00 02 00	00 00 01 00	00 00 01 00	00 00 01 00	00 00 01 00	00 00
Vestry	02 00 00 01	00 00 01 00	00 00 01 00	00 00 01 00	00 00 01 00	00 00 01 00	00 00
Yeomen Harbengers	06 00 00 03	00 00 02 10	00 00 02 00	00 00 02 00	00 00 01 10	00 00 01 00	00 00
Ushers of the Hall	02 00 00 01	10 00 01 05	00 00 01 00	00 00 01 00	00 00 01 00	00 00 01 00	00 00
Grooms of the Chamber	03 00 00 01	10 00 01 05	00 00 01 00	00 00 01 00	00 00 01 00	00 00 01 00	00 00
Yeomen Ushers	06 12 04 03	06 08 03 00	00 00 02 10	00 00 02 00	00 00 01 10	00 00 01 00	00 00
Quartermasters	08 16 00 04	08 04 03 16	08 03 06 08	03 06 08 03 06	08 03 06 08 03 06	08 03 06 08 03 06	08 08
Sewers	08 00 00 04	08 04 03 16	08 03 06 08	03 06 08 03 06	08 03 06 08 03 06	08 03 06 08 03 06	08 08
Battery	03 00 00 01	10 00 01 05	00 00 01 00	00 00 01 00	00 00 01 00	00 00 01 00	00 00
Pantry	03 00 00 01	10 00 01 05	00 00 01 00	00 00 01 00	00 00 01 00	00 00 01 00	00 00
Cellar	03 00 00 01	10 00 01 05	00 00 01 00	00 00 01 00	00 00 01 00	00 00 01 00	00 00

SECT. IV.

Fees payable for Strangers.

AND because it was thought unfit (the dignity of the Order considered) that on the one side *strangers* should be liable to the demand of Fees, and on the other, that charitable disposals should be defeated; provision was made in the^a *Statutes of Institution*, by obliging the *Sovereign* to pay the respective Fees, ^{a Art. 22. vide etiam H. 5. Stat. Art. 22. & H. Stat. Art. 24.} either personally or by his Proctor. And the first example pursuant thereto (that we have met with) is an Order made in *Chapter* at *Windsor*, an. 1. H. 6. which appointed, ^{b Lib. N. p. 75.} *That the usual Fees due for the Installation of the King of Denmark, should be discharged by the Sovereign, as the Statutes did enjoin.*

To which purpose, in after times have *Privy seals* accustomably issued forth, directed to the *Lord Treasurer* for the time being, to pay the *Fees* due for *strangers Installations*, unto the *Register* of the Order (and sometimes to *him* and *Garter*) out of the *Sovereign's* Exchequer; but those due to the *Alms-Knights*, since their Establishment by *Queen Elizabeth*, were paid to themselves by particular *Privy seals*.

And thus were the foresaid *Fees* paid out of the *Exchequer*, as they became due, until the late *Sovereign King Charles* the First, did by *Letters Patent*, bearing date the 23. day of *June*, in the 13. year of his Reign, settle an annual Pension of^c 1200 l. unto and upon the Order; and by a^d *Commission* dated the 3. day of *May* the following year, was the *Chancellor* of the Order, and his Successors impowered to pay out of the same, not only the ordinary, but also extraordinary Charges of the Order, wherein the Fees for Installation of *Strangers* are included. ^{c Lib. R. p. 121 d Rowe's Journal, p. 40.}

But notwithstanding which, yet did^e *Sir Henry de Vic* the late *Chancellor* make some scruple to pay the Fees due to the *Colledge*, upon the Installation of *Strangers*, since the happy return of the present *Sovereign*; whereupon it occasioned the^h *Dean, Canons, Choire*, and *Alms-Knights*, as also the *Register, Garter*, and *Black-Rod*, to petition the *Sovereign* at the Feast of *St. George*, an. 15. Car. 2. ^{e Ex Coll. E. W. G. h Lib. Carol. p. 48.} for the continuance of some rights, and payment of their Fees, which beingⁱ referred to three or more of the *Knights-Companions* of the Order, upon full examination of the matter, they made the following Report. ^{i Lib. p. 49.}

At the Court at Whitehall, the 16. of May 1663.

WHEREAS your Majesty, Sovereign of the most Noble Order of the Garter, in a Chapter held in the Castle of Windsor, the 23. of April past, where were present divers Companions of the said most Noble Order, was graciously pleased to receive a Petition, humbly presented in the name of the Dean, Canons, Chaplains, Choire, and Poor-Knights, belonging to your Majesty's Free Chappel of St. George in Windsor, wherein they, in all humility, desired to have some Rights and Fees (which are contained in a Schedule thereunto annexed) to be continued unto them; which Petition, your Majesty was then graciously pleased, to refer unto any three or more Companions of the said most Noble Order, to consider of, and examine the particulars, and accordingly to make Report unto your Majesty, what they conceive proper to be done thereupon: And in like manner the said Lords Referees upon a Petition delivered the 24. of April, were to consider, examine, and report the humble desires of the Register, Garter Principal King of Arms, and the Gentleman-Usher of the Black-Rod, Officers of the Order in relation to the Fees demanded by them from your Majesty, for the Installation of all Princes, and other Strangers,

u Ex MS.
w versust. per-
x gam. pences
y Vincent.
Gen.
y Ex lib. Par-
tition. in Offic.
Armor. [1]
fol. 19.
z Ibid. f. 169.
a Ib. f. 172.
b Ib. f. 220.
c Ib. f. 272.
d Ib. f. 314.
e Ex lib. Par-
tit. [2.] fol.
177. b.

Maximilian King of the Romans gave them	u	100 Guildings.
The King of Portugal	w	30 Crowns.
Philip King of Castile	x	100 Crowns.
Francis the French King	y	60 Crowns.
King Philip of Spain	z	38 l. 7 s. 0 d.
Emanuel Duke of Savoy	a	10 l. 0 s. 0 d.
Adolph Duke of Holstien	b	25 Crowns.
Charles the Ninth of France	c	30 Crowns.
Francis Duke of Montmorency	d	40 Crowns.
Frederick Prince Palatine	e	13 l. 6 s. 8 d.

And not only to Garter and Officers of Arms, but likewise to several others, did the Proctors bestow Gratuities, as doth appear from what Monsieur de Terce-
lin Proctor to Francis the First of France, gave an. 19. H. 8.

g Ex Coll. B.
pref. W. le N.
Cl.

To Garter for his Gown	60	} Crowns.
To the Black-Rod	6	
Officers of Arms	60	
Gentlemen-Ushers, Guard, and other of the Chamber	20	
Master of the Household, and other Officers of the Household	30	
The two Sextons	2	} Nobles
Choristers	3	
Vicars and Clerks	6	
Vergers of the Colledge	8	

Besides it is evident from a Bill of particulars, which Prince Henry of Nassau (Brother to Maurice Prince of Orange) paid to Sir William Seagar, that the Alms-Knights, Trumpets, Drums, Fifes, and Musicians, received Gratuities also upon the foresaid account.

CHAP. XVIII.

OF THE
Grand Feast
OF THE
Order.

SECT. I.

*The Grand Feast, appointed to be annually celebrated on
St. George's day.*

AT the Institution of this most Noble Order, it was Ordained, That its high and solemn Festival (commonly called *St. George's Feast*) should be annually celebrated on the 23. day of *April*, or Saint *George's day*, in honor of that *Saint* made choice of for its peculiar Patron.

a E. 3. 7 Stat.
H. 5. § Art. 9.
H. 8. Stat.
Art. 8.

And it is very observable, that the *Founders* of several other *Military Orders* (whose *Institutions* bear later date than this of the *Garter*) settled also the Anniversary of their *Festivals* upon the *Feast-day* of their *Patrons*. Thus *Philip Duke of Burgundy*, upon his erection of the Order of the *Golden Fleece*, making choice of *St. Andrew* for its Patron, ordained the *Grand Festival* to be kept on *St. Andrew's day*. The like did *Lewis the Eleventh of France*, in appointing *Michaelmas day* for holding the *Feast* of the Order of *St. Michael*. So also the Solemnities of the Duke of *Savoy's Order* of the *Annunciade*, are annually held upon our *Lady-day* in *Lent*. And the *Festival* of the Duke of *Burbons Order* of *Knights of our Lady*, on the day of the *Conception* of our *Lady*, being the 8. of *December*; in which kind more instances might be produced, were it needful.

b Ordinances
du tres-noble
Ordre de la
Toison d'Or
Art. 2.

c Stat. de POr-
dre de Monf.
St. Michael
Art. 32.

d Heylin's
Geogr. Lib. 1.
p. 138.

e Andr. Favon
in le Theat. d'
Honneur, lib. 3.

Since then the *Founders* of *Knightly Orders*, have generally appointed the celebration of their Solemnities, on the days set apart by the *Church*, for commemoration of those particular *Saints*, whom they had pitched upon for *Patrons*; it will not be besides our subject to enquire, upon what grounds those days were advanced into *Festivals* for the honoring such *Saints*.

M m m 2

* The

(Divin. Offic.
Lib. 7. xxviii. 1.
Edit. Lugd.
1612.

The Church saith ^c *Durand*, celebrates the Feasts of *Saints* for several causes; first by way of return of thanks to them for keeping a continual Feast for us, inasmuch as there is joy among the Angels and holy Souls, in regard of one penitent sinner. Secondly, because in honoring them, we are highly concerned our selves, their cause of Festivity being indeed ours; for charity makes all things common. A third reason he will have to be, that we may the better engage them to intercede for us. Fourthly, in imitation of them, since by their examples, we are the better incited to imitate their virtues. Fifthly, for confirmation and advancement of our hopes, seeing mortal men, like our selves, advanced to that height of glory; whereupon we have the less cause to despair of the like, since the hand of the Lord is no way shortned. Sixthly, for the honor of the Divine Majesty; because in them we honor and exalt God himself, who sanctified and glorified them. Seventhly, that upon the contemplation of their beauty and felicity, men may be weaned from their sins, and learn to contemn worldly things. But the eighth and principal for our present purpose is, because the keeping of the *Anniversary* Feasts of *Saints*, brings their actions and examples the better to our memory, for our profit and edification; not that they stand in need of our Prayers, being themselves perfectly happy, but that we should give thanks and honor to God for them.

g Hspin. de
Origine Festi-
rum Christiani-
tatum, cap. 3.
fol. 9. a.

Nor hath it been the practice only of later Ages, but even of the primitive *Christians* also, to make *Anniversary Commemorations* of deceased *Martyrs*, as appears from *Rodolph Hospinian*, who saith, ^e *That the ancient Christians, as they had an affectionate care and respect to the Saints and Martyrs, while they were yet in the flesh, so neither were they unmindful of them after their decease; for on those days, whereon, by suffering Martyrdom, they were deprived of this life, they meeting at their Sepulchres, celebrated their memorials; and this they did not only once, but every year, namely, as often as that day came about, whereon they suffered.*

But to resume the prosecution of our present discourse; the next thing to be considered, is the *Day* whereon the *Patron* of this most Noble Order suffered Martyrdom, and which was thereupon designed to be his *Anniversary Festival*.

SECT. II.

The Anniversary of St. George fixed by the Church unto the 23. of April.

That the 23. day of *April* was the day whereon *St. George* suffered Martyrdom, by beheading, appears from the *Greek Hexameter* before his Commemoration, among other Testimonies given us in that most elaborate Work, the ^b *Titles of Honor*. Therefore on that very day, both the *Greek* and *Latine Church*, from ancient time, appointed and observed the *Natalis sancti Georgii Martyris*, in commemoration of the *Passion* of that famous and victorious *Martyr*; as may be seen in the ancientest *Martyrologies*, remembered both by our learned ⁱ *Selden* and Doctor ^k *Heylin*.

i Tit. of Hon.
p. 807.
k Hist. of St.
George, part 2.
c 5, sect. 2 vide
Bed. in Marty-
rolog.
l Tit. Honor,
p. 811.
m Rationale
lib. 2. c. 1. n. 18.

And on this day also was the *Natalis* of *St. George* observed by our Predecessors the *Saxons*, as appears by the old *Saxon Martyrologie* (remaining now in ¹ *Benet Colledge* in *Cambridge*) whence may be also collected the estimation *Saint George* had gained, even in the *saxon* times.

But that we may the better understand the acception of this word *Natalis* and *Natalitium*, in the matter of *Martyrology*, *Durand* tells us, *That* ^m *Natalis* or *Natalitium*, is said to be the departure of *Saints* out of this life, as being then born to God, and a state of *Glory*, by a *Nativity* tending to eternal life. By which it plainly appears, that in the *Saints Calender*, the day of their *Martyrdom* or death, hath

hath been accounted their true *Natalis*, their *Nativity* or *Birth-day*, rather than that generally so accounted; namely, the time of their first coming into the world. And with this the forecited *Hospinian* agrees, affirming, "That the Christians of the primitive Church, appointed not the days of *Martyrs* Nativities to be celebrated as the *Ethnicks* used, but those of their death or suffering. To which effect he cites *St. Ambrose*, and a little after adds, that those days, whereon *Martyrs* resolutely underwent death for *Christ's* sake, they used to call their *Genethlia*, their *Natalia* or *Natalitia*, by the testimony of *Origen* and *Tertullian*.

And this kind of second birth, is also known by several other names, as *Festum transitus*, so called "Because their souls departing from their bodies, pass through divers and unknown places, through the airy, æthereal, and christalline Heaven, that at length they may come to the empyreal. It is called also *Obitus*, "Because then the Angels come to meet the Soul. Sometimes it is termed *Passio*, because then the soul and body suffer most, as being violently separated one from the other.

The *transitus* of the blessed Virgin *Mary* is called her *Assumption*. *Deposition*, is properly belonging to *St. John* the Evangelist, who entred alive into the place of Sepulture, and as it were deposited himself. *Obdormition* is the refreshment, of the *Saints* after sleep, because *Saints* in their glorified bodies, rise as it were newly awakened out of sleep. By all these several Names are the *Festivals* of the *Saints* celebrated, which plainly denote, the day of the second Birth or going out of the world, and not of the first or coming into the world.

And it is further observable, that the Church, among the many *Saints*, who have days appointed for their Commemoration, does not celebrate the *Nativities* of any, but our blessed saviour, and *St. John* the Baptist: whereto those of the *Romish* persuasion have added that of the blessed Virgin *Mary*.

SECT. III.

St. George's day made Festum duplex.

AFTER that the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions*, had given encrease of honors to this their *Patron's Festival*, our Church began to take a greater regard to his day, because he was also esteemed amongst us, the *Patron* of our Nation, and therefore bestowed an addition of honor thereupon.

For whereas it had anciently been accounted, only *minus duplex*, or, *inferius duplex* (as beside the Testimonies, both of our learned *Selden* and others, may also be deduced from the interdiction of the *minora servilia opera* upon this *Saints* day, by a Synod held at *Oxford*, in the year of our Lord 1222. cited by *Hospinian*) it was petitioned in a Convocation, held under Archbishop *Arundel*, an. 1. H. 4. ¹ that it might be observed and solemnized sicut ceteræ Nationis suorum Patronorum facta solent; which though it took no effect, yet after at the instance of King *Henry* the Fifth, this day was (in the 3. year of his Reign) made ² Festum duplex, ad modum majoris duplicis, by a Canon of the Convocation, of the Province of *Canterbury*: And so we find it noted to be observed, a long time after, in the *Kalendar*, set before the *Horæ beatissime Virginis Mariæ*, secundum usum Sarum, Printed at *Paris*, by *Francis Regnault*, anno Domini 1526. But this is found so noted, only in some of the *Missals* used here in *England*, for in the *Roman Breviary* and *Missal*, it appears to be but *Semiduplex*.

Now the better to explain, the above-mentioned distinction of *Festa majora duplicia*, & *minora duplicia*, *Durand*, as being very particular in this point, may fitly be consulted herein, who saith, "Quedam festa dicuntur in totum duplicia,

³ Titles of Hon.
p. 814.

¹ De Orig. Fest. Christ. C. 4. f. 17. a.
² MS. in Offic. principal. Cantuar. vocat: Arundel. part. 1. f. 53. b. Art. 27.
³ Constitutionem hanc edidit Hen. Chicheley ad excitationem Regis Henrici Angliæ quinti, in partes Normanniæ transiit. Linwood in Gloss. verbo ineffabilis Provincialis, Lib. 2. C. Ineffabilis de Ferris.
⁴ Selden's Titles of Honor. p. 814.
⁵ MS. in Offic. Principal. Cantuar. vocat: Chicheley, part. 2. f. 2.

⁶ Ration. Div. Offic. lib. 7. c. 1. num. 21. vide etiam Gavant. Comment. in Rubricas Brev. Roman. Seli. 3. c. 2. 3 & 4.

duplicia, quedam simpliciter duplicia, quedam semiduplicia, &c. Some Feasts are said to be totally double, some simply double, some half double: The totally or greater double are so called, because in them the *Responsories*, as well the greater as the shorter, as also the *Verses* are sung by two, and because the *Antiphones*, both at *Mattins* and *Vespers* are doubled; of this sort, are the Feasts of the Nativity of our Lord, of St. Stephen, of St. John the Evangelist, *Epiphany*, *Purification*, &c. The lesser double Feasts are the second and third *Feria* before the Octaves of *Easter* and *Pentecost*, the Commemoration of St. Paul, and in brief every Feast which is ordained to be celebrated double in all Churches, whereas the greater double Feasts are kept in some particular Churches only. The half double Feasts are such wherein the *Responsories* are sung by two, but neither are they begun by two, nor are the *Antiphones* sung double, yet the *Verses* and short *Responsories* are said, and these are the Feasts of St. Andrew, Nicholas, Lucie, Thomas the Apostle, &c.

And the reason of this variety observed in the celebration of these Feasts, is for that as St. Paul saith, *One Star differs from another in glory*; so according to the degrees of merit (saith the same *Durand*) their praise is so much the more or less celebrated in these Feasts:

This division of *Durand* appears to be the same in effect, with that taken notice of by our learned *Selden*; where ^a *Majora duplicia*, answers to *Durandus* his *duplicia in totum*, the *Minora*, to the *simpliciter duplicia*, and the *inferiora* to the *semiduplicia*; only herein *Selden* notes this difference, that the grand and high Feasts of all, as *Christmas*, *Easter*, and *Pentecost*, &c. are not comprehended under the notion of *Majora Duplicia*, but by the title of *Principaliora*. And as for the Festival of our particular Patron St. George, however after-Custom had slackned that due honor which was decreed unto it, by the above mentioned Canon; yet how great a veneration it was thought worthy of, plainly appears, both by that part of the said Canon, wherein it is Decreed to be one of the *Festa majora duplicia*, and also by the reasons given at large for it, in the Preamble thereof, which are these. ^b Upon consideration therefore of this appointment, proceeding from the favourable and bountiful mercy of our God and Saviour, the faithful of the English Nation, although at all times obliged to worship God in all his Saints, yet as is testified by the general vote of the World, and the experience of grace given from above, the best interpreter of all things, are they more particularly bound to extol him with high acclamations, to sound forth his praises, and to give him veneration and special honors, in the person of his most glorious Martyr Saint George, as Patron and Protector of the said Nation, since by his intercession, as we verily believe, not only the Military Power of the English Nation, is strengthened, and made capable of repelling all hostile incursions, in the time of War, but also our Spiritual Militia, the flourishing estate of our Clergy, is under the tutelage of so great a Patron manifestly fortified in the prosperity of a holy and peaceful estate.

To this may be added, the division of Feasts into *Generalia*, which are called *Solemnitates*, and *Particularia*, which are peculiar to one Church only, one Parish or one Bishoprick, and also into *Mobilia*, such as are not limited to one certain day of the Month, as *Easter-day*, *Whitsunday*, &c. and *Fixa*, such as constantly fall upon a certain day of the Month, as *Christmas-day*, *Lady-day*, and several others: which, as falling into this subject of Feasts, we thought fit to mention out of the before mentioned *Hospinian*, rather for satisfaction to the curious, than as necessarily relating to the present discourse.

^a De Orig. Fgl. Christian. c. 5. f. 19. 4.

^b MS. in Offic. Principal. Cantuar. vocat. Chicheley part. 2 f. 2. & f. 114. vide etiam Concil. Spelmani Tom. 2. p. 207.

SECT. IV.

The Place for celebrating the Grand Feast, assigned to Windesfor Castle.

AND as King Edward the Third, Founder of this most Noble Order, had fixed the day of its Feast, to that of the *Passion* (or, according to the Church phrase, the *Nativity*) of his Patron; so as to the place, wherein to perform its Solemnities, he made choice of that of his own Nativity, the Castle of *Windesfor*, and appointed the observation of this *Grand Festival*, in a solemn manner, and with due Ceremonies to be celebrated there, which for a long time after was inviolably observed, either upon the very day by the Church made sacred to St. George, or else upon some other appointed by *Prorogation*, not long after: for which way of Prorogation, allowance was given by the Statutes of the Order, and of which the *Registers* are full of instances.

d H. 8. Stat.
Art. 8. Froi-
sard. l. i. c. 100.
Polid. Virgil.
Angl. Hist. l. 19.
p. 378.
c. E. 3. Stat.
H. 5. Art. 9.
H. 8. Stat.
Art. 4.

SECT. V.

St. George's day kept apart from the Grand Feast, and how then observed.

HOW this Noble Order spread its roots and flourished, from its first plantation to the time of King Henry the Fifth, we can give no account, since the *Annals* thereof are wanting unto his Reign; certain it is, that then it was of a considerable growth; but afterwards, the Civil Wars, towards the end of King Henry the Sixth's Reign, caused it to stand at a stay. Under the benevolent aspect of King Edward the Fourth, it seemed to recover; and whilst King Henry the Eighth reigned, to have attained a greater height than at any time before.

But though the several Branches of the Order received some augmentation, from the favourable influence of this last mentioned *Sovereign*, yet the principal, to wit, the *Grand Festival*, began to flag, by a removal of the observation of St. George's day from *Windesfor* (the place particularly appointed for it) and a prorogatory celebration of the *Grand Feast* to other times. By which means, the honor of that princely Seat, and the advantages accreing by the performance of the Solemnities there, were diverted to those other places, whereto the observation of St. George's day was translated. The *Article* of the *Statutes* causing this great alteration, and which clashed so much with the design of the first Institutor, may be seen in the *Appendix*, where it is manifest, that when the *Sovereign* saw occasion, to prorogue the celebration of the *Grand Feast*, he might legally do it; but when he did so, 'tis there also evident, that the day of St. George, was nevertheless ordained to be duly observed, singly by it self, in what place soever the *Sovereign* (if within this Realm) should then reside; *Windesfor* hereby being not excluded.

It further implies the sacred *Rites* and *Offices* to be performed, with sundry other concerns of the Order, for besides the particulars therein innumeraed, we may observe thence this general clause, that what other urgent Affair soever (relating to the Order) should offer it self to be performed, the same might be treated of, and receive dispatches in the *Chapter* held, where the *Sovereign* then should be, as fully as if he were at *Windesfor Castle*.

See Henry the
Eighth's Sta-
tutes, Art. 4.

So that hence forward, all things began to be ordered, both on the *Eve*, the *Day* of *St. George*, and the *Morrow* after, with full as great state, all Affairs as legally dispatched, and all Ceremonies as magnificently performed (except that of *Offring* up of *Atchievements*, which is peculiar and local to the *Chappel* of *St. George* in *Windsor Castle*) as could be observed, at the *Grand Festival* it self.

And how (by virtue of this *Article*) and with what Ceremonies *St. George's* day was held, when the *Grand Feast* was prorogued to some further time, is evident, from a full and ample Precedent (*an. 22. H. 8.*) now remaining in the *Office of Arms*.

h Lib. N.
i p. 258.

For albeit the *Sovereign*, with ^{*h*} thirteen *Knights-Companions*, were at *Windsor*, upon the 22. 23. and 24. of *April* that year, yet did they at that time observe only the *Feast* day of *St. George* (with the *Eve* and *Morrow* after) but deferred (by ^{*i*} Order in *Chapter*) the celebration of the *Grand Feast*, unto the 8. day of *May* ensuing; the Memorial whereof follows.

k MS. in Offic.
Arms [M. 17.]
fol. 32.
1 *Ibid.*

^{*1*} The King went not to the Chapter before the first *Evensong*, but immediately to his *Stall* (viz. in the *Chappel* of the ^{*1*} *Sovereign's Lodgings* in the *Upper Ward* of the *Castle* of *Windsor*, not in the *Chappel Royal* of *St. George*) The *Bishop* of *London* *Lord* *Cutberde Tunstall* elect of *Duresme* did the *Divine Service*, and at Magnificat he and the *Dean* first censured the *Altar*, and after the King; both the high *Altar* and the *Altar* which was made before the King, were richly garnished with *Images* and other garnishments of *Gold*, and *Silver*, and *Gilt*, &c. The *Evensong* the King returned to his ----- and his *Grace*, and the *Knights* of the *Order* were served of the *boord*, &c. And on the *Morn* at 9. of the *Clock* ----- to be at *Matyns*, which was done above the *Ordinary*, the King obtained in the honor of *St. George*, a right noble *Procession*, whereat was 35 *Copes* of rich *Cloth* of *Gold*; after the *Procession* the King went immediately to his *Stall*, and *High Mass*, and offered as accustomed, That done; *Dinner*, and 4 of the greatest *Estates* sat at the *Kings boards* end. And the residue sat all along at the two *Tables* all on the one side, as accustomed, and before *Evensong* the King went to his *Closet* to the *Chapter*, and appointed the *Duke* of *Suffolk* to be his *Lieutenant* at the *Feast*, which was appointed to be kept the eight day of *May* then ensuing, accompanied with the *Earl* of *Rutland*, the *Lord* *Sandys* *Lord Chamberlain*, *Sir William Fitz Williams*.

Memorandum, That the low *Evensongs* that were said before the King, were of *St. George*. Also the first low *Mass* in the morning song by the *Lord* *George Grey* of *Dorset*; two other *Masses* of the day, of the which *Lord* *John Longland* *Bishop* of *Lincolne* sang the third *Mass*, the fourth low *Mass* was of *Recordare*, and was appointed that the high *Mass* done, the *Mass* of *Requiem* should begin.

Thus here we have (1.) The attendance of the *Knights-Companions* upon the *Sovereign*. (2.) The *Chapter*, which accustomedly was held on the *Eve* of the *Feast*, implied, by observing, that the *Sovereign* went not unto it. (3.) The *Ceremonies* at the first *Vespers*. (4.) The *Morning Service* on *St. George's* day. (5.) The *Grand Procession*. (6.) The *Solemn Offring*. (7.) The *Grand Dinner*. (8.) The *Chapter* held before the second *Vespers*. (9.) The day for celebrating the *Grand Festival* appointed. And (10.) The *Mass* of *Requiem*, on the morrow after *St. George's* day celebrated.

SECT. VI.

The Grand Feast neglected by King Edward the Sixth.

BUT King Edward the Sixth assuming the Sovereignty of this Noble Order, the days became more gloomy, in as much as during his Reign, there was no Anniversary of St. George kept at *Windefor*, by a *Grand Festival*. Under what churlish Fate this noble place then suffered, we cannot guess, other than the common calamity of that Age, wherein most Ceremonies, solemn or splendid, either (chiefly such as related to Divine Services) came under the suspicion of being superstitious, if not idolatrous. Inſomuch as at a Chapter held at *Greenewich*, upon the 22. day of *April*, in the ſecond year of his Reign (an abolition being intended of all ſuch Ceremonies, as were not conſonant to the King's Injunctions then lately preſcribed) it was Ordained and Decreed, that ^{MS. fol. 1 pen. Rob. Com. Alib. p. 24. b.} then and for ever from thenceforth (at the *Feaſt* of this moſt Noble Order) no other Ceremonies ſhould be obſerved, than ſuch as were appointed in the following Letter. Which was at that Chapter agreed upon, and a little before the next years Feaſt day of St. George, ſent from the Lords of the Council to the Knights-Companions, attributing the whole procedure, to the great piety of the then Sovereign, and the care he took, that certain abuſes and prepoſterous Ceremonies of the Church, ſhould be reformed: Whereby the Solemnity, State and magnificence of this *Grand Feſtival* was very much eclipsed.

AFTER our moſt hearty commendations; For as much as the Kings Highneſs hath appointed a moſt godly Reformation of divers abuſes and rites in the Church, to a more convenient and decent Order, of the which ſome hath been uſed heretofore, in the moſt honorable and amicable Order of the Garter, and being not reformed, there ſhould make a diſagreeing from his Maſteſty's moſt godly proceedings. Therefore it is his Maſteſty's will and pleaſure, by the advice of us the Lord Protector, and other his Highneſs Council, that all ſuch things, as be not conformable and agreeing to his Maſteſty's Injunctions, Orders, or Reformations, now of late preſcribed, ſhould be alſo in that moſt Noble Order and the Ceremonies thereof left undone, and reformed as hereafter ſolloweth. Firſt, that no Proceſſion be made with going about the Church or Church-yard, but the Kings Maſteſty's Proceſſion, lately ſet forth in Engliſh to be uſed. His Maſteſty and other Knights of that honorable Order ſitting in their Stalls, at the entry ſuch Reverence to be made to the King's Maſteſty only as was heretofore. The Offering to be in the Box for the Poor, without any other Reverence or kiſſing of any Paten or other thing, but only at the return due Reverence to the King's Maſteſty as was uſed before. The Maſs of Requiem to be left undone, but yet both upon St. George's day, and the next day a Maſs to be ſung with great Reverence; in the which immediately after the words of Conſecration is ſaid, the Prieſt ſhall ſay the Pater Noſter, and ſo turn and communicate all, or ſo many of the Order or other, after they have done, as ſhall be diſpoſed godly at the ſame time to receive the Communion, according to ſuch order as is preſcribed in his Highneſs Book of Communion, and without any other Rite or Ceremony after the ſaid Communion to be uſed, except it be ſome godly Pſalm or Hymn to be ſung in Engliſh, and ſo to end the ſaid Service. All Chapters and other Rites concerning the ſaid Order, not being contrary to theſe, to remain as they have been preſcribed and uſed, the which we have thought good to ſignifie unto you, that you may follow the ſame accordingly. From *Greenewich* the 20. of *April* 1548.

This Decree we obſerve, ſignified not leſs than a Prohibition to the holding the *Grand Feaſt* at *Windefor* (although it ſpoke not ſo plain) at leaſt the neglect of its celebration there, whiſt King *Edward* the Sixth lived, makes it to

N n n

ſeem

seem so. And albeit towards the end of this *Sovereign's* Reign, some care was or seemed taken, for a permissive holding of the said *Feast*, either upon the day of *St. George*, or some other day appointed by *Prorogation*, yet was it without any regard had to the ancient and usual place, the *Castle of Windsor*. For when the *Act of Parliament* passed, commanding the days therein mentioned to be kept holy, and none other (whereby the celebration of many days besides, which in former time, by the *Canons* of our *Church* appointed to be kept holy, were prohibited, and among the rest the *Feast* day of *St. George*, it being not found among those *Feast* days at that time established) It was considered, That a *Proviso* and allowance should be entred in the aforesaid *Act*, for the celebration of this *Feast*, particularly by the *Knights-Companions* of this most Noble Order, in these words.

Prohibited always, and be it enacted by the Authority aforesaid, that it shall be lawful to the *Knights of the right honorable Order of the Garter*, and to every of them, to keep and celebrate solemnly the *Feast of their Order*, commonly called *St. George's Feast*, yearly from henceforth the 22. 23. and 24. Days of April, and at such other time and times, as yearly shall be thought convenient, by the *Kings Highness his Heirs and Successors*, and the said *Knights of the said honorable Order*, or any of them, now being, or hereafter to be, any thing in this *Act* heretofore mentioned to the contrary notwithstanding.

a An. 1. Mar.
c 2.
f An. 1. Jac. R.
cap. 25.

Which *Act*, although it suffered a *Repeal* by *Queen Mary*, yet stands it at this day in force, being revived by *King James*, his repealing of that *Statute* of the first of *Queen Mary*, *Cap. 2.*

SECT. VII.

Removed from Windsor by *Queen Elizabeth*.

BUT that which gave the greatest and almost fatal blow, to the growing Honor of this no less famous than ancient *Castle of Windsor*, and severed the *Patrons Festival* from the Place, was a *Decree* made at a *Chapter* held at *Whitehall*, upon *St. George's day* an. 9. *Eliz.* with the consent of the *Knights-Companions* then present, being 12 in number (namely, the *Earls of Arundel and Penbroke*, the *Lord Clinton*, *Marquess of Northampton*, *Lord Howard of Effingham*, *Earl of Sussex*, *Lord Loughborow*, *Viscount Mountague*, *Earls of Leicester, Northumberland, Warwick*, and *Lord Hunsdon*) to the effect following.

c Lib. C. p. 54.

That if on the *Vigil and day of St. George*, the *Feast* were not held at *Windsor* according to the usual *Custom*, it should nevertheless be sufficient, if the observation thereof were kept in the same place, where the *Sovereign* should then happen to be, where also all the rest of the *Knights-Companions* were obliged to be present, no less than if the *Feast* had been to be celebrated at *Windsor*. And henceforward the glory which *Windsor Castle* had alone possessed for some Ages, began to be distributed to other places, nay, so severe was the later part of this *Decree*, to the interest of so flourishing a place, that it wellnigh extended to a prohibition of all other Celebrations there, since it also commanded, "That no other Solemnity under the notion of *St. George's Feast*, should thenceforth be celebrated at *Windsor*, except upon occasion of the *Installation of some illustrious personage*, and then also, not without the leave and appointment of the *Sovereign*."

a Ibid.

And to say truth, this *Statute* was but too strictly observed, all the remainder of her Reign; for we meet not with one *Feast* of *St. George*, held simply and peculiarly

peculiarly as a *Feast* in honor of the *Order's* Patron at *Windsor* (unless you mistakenly account any of the *Feasts* of *Installation* for those of *St. George*, which for the most part were held at the charge and expence of the *Knights Installed*) until the first year of King *James*: But then the *Sovereign* (as yet in *Scotland*) taking notice that the ^w day of the Celebration of the Feast of *St. George* approached, and his Affairs hindring him from the observation of the just day, because he could not be so soon present, at any of his Houses of Residence, where the same was meet to be kept, he therefore thought good to defer the Celebration thereof for a time, until he could conveniently honor the same with his own presence. To that purpose, by *Commission* dated the ^x 5. of *April* in the first year of his Reign, he appointed *Charles* ^{* f} Earl of *Nottingham* his *Lieutenant*, for the Proroguing thereof unto the 3. day of *July* next ensuing, Declaring also, that on that day he intended to ^a keep the said *Feast* and Ceremonies personally at *Windsor*.

This ^b *Commission* being read (upon the *Knights-Companions* assembling at *Whitehall*, on *St. George's* ^c Eve following) they forthwith proceeded to *Vespers*, which being finished, all the *Knights-Companions* present went up to the *Closet*, and there Decreed, ^d That the foresaid Festival should be celebrated upon the day, ^d *ibid.* which the *Sovereign* had appointed.

And the *Sovereign* arriving at *Windsor* the ^e 25. day of *June* following, shortly after constituted the said Earl of *Nottingham* his *Lieutenant*, by *Commission* bearing date the second day of *July* following, thereby empowering him to perform the Ceremonies of the *Feast* (which it seems himself could not personally observe as was intended, though then in the *Castle*) on the 2. 3. and 4. days of the said Month, upon which days it was with all pomp and state solemnized.

And thus after a long interval did the honor of the *Feast* then return, which had this effect (towards the end of the same *Sovereign's* Reign, and in that of his Son and Successor King *Charles* the First) that it begat a re-union of the *Feast* and *Place*; whereby that ancient *Fabrick*, famous for the *Institution* of this most Noble Order, retrieved the honor of having its Solemnities celebrated within its Walls.

SECT. VIII.

Of Prorogation of the Grand Feast.

HAVING thus noted, that from the beginning of King *Henry* the Eighth's Reign, until of late years, the *Grand Feast* was seldom observed upon the precise day of *St. George*; and that the occasion how both *day* and *Feast*, came to be celebrated apart, took its rise from the indulgence of the *Statutes*, in point of *Prorogation*: we shall further observe, that this *Prorogation* is of two sorts, either absolute, as being enjoined by the *statutes* of the *Order*, or else arbitrary at the *Sovereign's* pleasure, when for some reason he saw just occasion therefore.

To the first of these it is said, ^f 'If the *Feast* day of *St. George* shall happen within 15 days next after *Easter* day, it shall be ^g prorogued to the *Sunday* fortnight or 15. day next after *Easter* day, and the reason of this is there set down, viz. ^h That every of the *Knights-Companions* might have the opportunity of coming thereunto, without being constrained to ride upon any of those three holy days, immediately following *Easter* day. The same rule for *Prorogation*, where there is a concurrence of these two *Feasts*, is likewise enjoined in the *statutes* of King *Henry* the Fifth, and King *Henry* the Eighth.

And we observe, that when the *Grand Feast* (in this case of *Easter*) hath been kept before the expiration of the said 15 days, the *Knights-Companions* then absent (to avoid the penances incur'd for their non-attendance) have laid

N n n 2

hold

^w MS. quart.
^x penes W.
le N. Cl.

^{* f} Lib. C. p.
2147. vide
etiam MS. pen.
E. W. G. f. 12.

^b Lib. C.
p. 147.

^c *ibid.* p. 150.

Prorogation
by Statute.
^f (E. 3. Stat.
g Art. 9.
h)

i *Lib. N.p.* 171. hold of this following excuse, ⁱ That the ancient Statutes of the Order were violated, in keeping the Feast within fifteen days after Easter; and this was so alleged, when Sir ^k John Denham (then also Lord Treasurer) held, as President, the Feast of St. George at Windsor, the ^l 24. of April, an. 8. H. 7.

Anciently, where the Register mentions the Grand Feast to be held at Windsor, beyond the day of St. George, we find upon Calculation, that Easter day (in those years) fell too near the 23. of April, to celebrate the Festival on, without breaking the Law, which was the real cause of those Prorogations: As for instance in the ^m 13.ⁿ 24. and ^o 35. of King Henry the Sixth, when Easter day fell upon the 17. of April, and consequently St. George's day within the following week. In like manner in the ^p 29. and ^q 32. of the said King's Reign, Easter day hapned yet neerer to St. George's day, in the one upon the 25. and in the other upon the 21. of April. And in all of these cases, care was taken to Prorogue the celebration of the Grand Feast, until some further day in the Month of May, immediately following, as from the before cited places doth appear.

Again an. 11. H. 8. ^r Quia festa dies Divi Georgii Paschatis in vigilia contigit, because the Feast day of St. George hapned upon Easter Eve, therefore the Sovereign summoned a Chapter to be held, upon the Thursday before Easter day at Richmond, where it was then held; and although there is nothing spoken, as to the Prorogation of the Feast, or when it was to be celebrated, yet doubtless something there was to this purpose then enacted, in pursuance of the foresaid Statute; else, why should it there be noted with the word quia, if it were not out of respect to the Feast of Easter, and that thereupon the said Chapter was then called.

To this place may be referred a Commission of Lientenancy, made to Thomas ^t Earl of Arundel, for holding the Grand Feast at Windsor, upon the ^u 24. of May, an. 21. H. 7. (the Sovereign keeping the day of St. George that year at Cambridge) the Prorogation being grounded upon the falling of St. George's day, within the excepted 15 days of Easter, as appears by the then Sovereign's Letters of notice to the said Lientenant; which for the antiquity thereof, as that it is a testimony of the punctual observance of the Statutes, we have inserted in the ^u Num. CLIX. Appendix.

And as the Knights-Companions had prohibitions put upon the solemnization of their Feast, in case of its interfering with Easter; so had the Church of England in their observance of the day of St. George. For by the Ordinall of the Church of Salisbury, published an. 1508. it appears to have been the usage of that Church, that when the Feast day of St. George fell upon Easter day or Easter Eve, the celebration thereof was then deferred to the 9. day or some other day of May, as the case required in their Ecclesiastical Discipline: And our learned Selden observes it noted in the end of an old Manuscript Ordinal of the Province of York, ^w That when St. George's day hapned to fall upon Easter Eve, the celebration was anticipated, and cast into the 8. or 9. day preceding, or into the 16. or 17. days of April.

Hereunto may we subjoin, that in the Solemnities of the Order, there hath sometimes been an omission (in part or in all) of the Service and Office appointed by the Church to be used upon the day of St. George, when it hapned near to Easter, as it was an. 22. H. 8. St. George's day falling upon ^x Saturday in Easter-week (the Sovereign then at Windsor celebrating the ^y day there, though the Grand Feast was prorogued to the 8. of May following) wherefore the ^z Service of the Feast of Easter and not of St. George, was celebrated on the Vigil (in the ^a Chappel above, in the upper Quadrangle next St. George's Hall, not in the Colledge) but the low Evensongs said before the Sovereign, were of St. George.

In like manner ^b an. 38. H. 8. Good Friday falling upon the 23. of April (the day used to be kept sacred to St. George) the Service together with the Ceremonies wont to be performed to the honor of God, and in memory of St. George, were prorogued to Sunday the ^c 3. of May, being Low-Sunday, and the ^d Service of the day took place.

So reverend a regard was anciently had for the Feasts appointed by the Church

m Lib. N.
pag. 90.
n Regist. Ghar-
tac. fol. 24.
o Lib. N. p. 115.
p Ib. p. 104.
q Pag. 111.

r Ib. Pag.
1208.

t Lib. N. p. 179.

u Num. CLIX.

w Tit. Honor,
p. 816.

x (MS. in Of-
y fic. Armor.
z) [M. 17.]
a (f. 32.

b Lib. N.
c p. 296.

d Lib. vocat.
Dalton, p. 128.

Church to be kept holy, and the *Vigils* thereof, as also to the *Divine Service*, ordained to be celebrated thereon, that this *Feast* of *St. George*, was by King *Henry* the Fifth's *Statutes* expressly prohibited to be held, if through the *Prorogations* aforesaid, it should chance to fall out upon the 24. and 25. days of *April*. But in all other *Rolls* and *Copies* of these *Statutes*, that have come to our view, we find the 26. day of *April* added to this place, (and so afterwards in King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes*) which was very requisite, because otherwise the second *Vespers* of *St. Mark*, might from the first *Vespers* of *St. George* receive interruption.

With these, the like *Prohibition* was enjoined, if the *Feast* fell upon the last of *April*, the first, second, third, and fourth of *May*, in honor of the double *Feast* of *St. Philip* and *Jacob*, and of the *Feast* of the *Invention* of the *Cross* of our Lord *Jesus Christ*; for which cause in the 9. and 10. years of King *Henry* the Eighth, the celebration of the *Grand Feast* was prorogued to the 10. and 16. days of *May* at *Windsor*, which were the *Sundays* next following the *Feast* of the *Invention* of the *holy Cross*, in those two years. So likewise if it fell on the *Feasts* of the *Ascension*, and *Pentecost*.

Thus far in reference to these enumerated *Festivals*, did the *Statutes* of the *Order* provide; as also where the case might fall within the compass of any other solemn *Feast* ordained by the Church, when the first or second *Vespers* thereof might (through such *Prorogations*) be hindered or disturbed, which were for ought we find, until the time of our Reformation of Religion (begun by King *Edward* the Sixth) duly observed: But since upon passing the *Act* of *Parliament* before mentioned, for singling some few days, out of those many, that were before kept holy, there hath been no due observation given to these *Injunctions*, but that the *Grand Feast* of *St. George*, hath by *Prorogation*, been celebrated upon any of them indifferently, the *Feast* of *Easter* only excepted. And in this case of *Easter*, after such time as the *Statutes* were new modelled by King *Henry* the Eighth, the time for *Prorogation* of the *Grand Feast* was left more arbitrary (so also when it fell out upon any *Fish* or *Fasting-day*)^k even at the *Sovereign's* pleasure; and therefore since then (when the said two *Feasts* happened to concur) the adjournments have pass'd but for some few days.

As for instance, *St. George's day*, an. 18. *Eliz.* fell upon *Easter-Monday*, and thereupon the *Sovereign* appointed a *Chapter* to be held in the *Privy Chamber* at *Whitehall*, on *Easter Eve*, wherein it was Ordered: That the *Feast* of *St. George* should be adjourned, until Tuesday the 24. of *April* (being Tuesday in *Easter* week) and by this appointment, the very day celebrated by the Church, for that of *St. George*, became the *Eve* to the *Grand Feast*, and was so observed by the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions*.

Of later times, viz. an. 12. *Jac. R.* when *St. George's day* fell upon *Easter Eve*, the celebration thereof was deferred until Thursday then next following.

Lastly, his late Majesty of ever sacred memory, being a great restorer of the ancient Solemnities and Discipline of this *Order*, punctual even in circumstances of Honor, and extraordinary tender of infringing any of the *Statutes*, having prorogued the *Feast* of *St. George* from the 8. 9. and 10. days of *February*, in the 18. year of his Reign, to the 18. 19. and 20. days of *April* following, at the City of *Tork*; and the time falling out to be within 15 days of *Easter*, although he might (by the power of King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes*, and those *Precedents* before recited) have kept the same upon the days designed: Nevertheless without a particular *Dispensation* drawn and made authentick, by the Great Seal of the *Order*, and his own Royal Signature, would not proceed to the Ceremonies of that celebration.

We come now to the second sort of *Prorogations*, which are meerly arbitrary, and wholly dependent upon the *Sovereign's* pleasure, yet warranted sufficiently from the words [*Causa postulante*] set down in the beginning of the Fourth Article of King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes*; as also by the great latitude given unto the *Sovereigns* of this most Noble *Order*, out of compliance with their urgent Affairs, in the 8. Article following, *quo Supremus volet prorogabitur*. But we observe, that long before the making this *Statute*, something of like nature

e Lib. N. p. 66.

f H. 5. Stat. Art. 9.

g Lib. N. p. 205. c. 207.

h H. 5. Stat. Art. 9.

i Idem, vide etiam H. 2. Stat. Art. 8.

k Ibid.

l MS. penes p. E. W. G. q. f. 151. b. p. 123.

o MS. penes p. E. W. G. q. f. 151. b.

p Palmer's Journ. p. 32. c. 33.

q Art. 8.

Prorogations at pleasure;

had

had been practised, and the *Grand Feast* prorogued at the pleasure of the *Sovereign* (the day of *St. George* being nevertheless observed) albeit the *Registers* render not the cause: To manifest which, we shall instance in a few Examples. The first thing memorable in this kind (of which any Record is extant) is that *an. 5. H. 5.* when about the *w 18.* of *August* (neer 4 Months after *St. George's* day) the *Sovereign* (then engaged in War with *France*) having reduced to his obedience the not inconsiderable Town of *Caen*, and made the Duke of *Clarence* Governour thereof; *†* took order as far as the present exigency of Affairs would permit, to have the *Feast* of *St. George* there celebrated, and with great solemnity created 15 *Knights* into the Order.

w { *Lib. N.*
x { *1-18 57.*
y {

a {
b { *Ex lib. v.*
c { *cat. Dalton.*
d {

e *Page. 148.*
f *F.A. 49.*

So *an. 22. E. 4.* the *Sovereign* with the rest of the *Knights-Companions*, kept all the Solemnities of the Order in *St. Paul's Church London*, and dined in the Bishop of *London's* *Palace* (at which time he received from the *Pope* a *Sword* and Cap of Maintenance) and albeit the mention of *St. George's* day occur not expressly in the place, whence we have this account, nevertheless, observing both out of the *Black Book*, and the *Registrum Chartaceum*, that the *Grand Feast* it self, was by the Lord *Mutrevers* held at *Windefor*, within few days after *St. George's* day, that very year, viz. the 29. of *April*. Therefore these Solemnities at *St. Paul's*, may most probably be thought to have been observed upon the very day of *St. George*; for they could not be celebrated in any part of the year following the aforesaid 29. of *April*, because the *Grand Feast* it self was then already past.

g { *Lib. N.*
h { *pag. 177.*
i {

In like manner King *Henry* the Seventh, in the 20. year of his Reign, went on *St. George's* day in solemn Procession and very great State, to the forementioned Cathedral, yet notwithstanding on the 4. of *May* following, the *Grand Feast* was observed at *Windefor*, by the Earl of *Arundel* (deputed by the *Sovereign*) and four other of the *Knights-Companions* appointed for his Assistants.

k { *Registr.*
l { *Chart.*
m { *f. 53. b. 69.*
n { *Lib. N.*
o { *p. 204.*

Again, *an. 8. H. 8.* the *Sovereign* being at *Eltham* on *St. George's* day, it was in a Chapter there held, Decreed, That the accustomed celebration of the *Feast* of *St. George*, should be observed at *Windefor*, upon Sunday next after *Trinity Sunday*, being the 25. of *May* ensuing; and the Marquess *Dorset* was then also appointed Lieutenant to the *Sovereign* for holding thereof, and the Earl of *Essex* (in whose room the Lord *Poyning*s was afterwards substituted) with the Lords *La Ware*, *Mountegle*, and *Lovell* his Assistants.

And from this time it became annually customary, especially all the subsequent years of King *Henry* the Eighth's Reign, *Queen Mary's*, and unto the 9. of *Queen Elizabeth*, to keep the day of *St. George*, wheresoever the *Sovereign* at that time abode, which for the most part was at *Greenewich*, or *Whitehall*, on which day (as also on the Eve and morning after the day) the usual Solemnities were observed, and a noble *Feast* provided, as hath been said: But as to the celebration of the *Grand Festival* it self, that was in one of the Chapters, held during the foresaid celebrations, and most commonly on *St. George's* day, adjourned unto some further time, and then solemnized at *Windefor* by *Prorogation*, not by the *Sovereigns* themselves, but by their *Lieutenants* and their *Assistants*, especially deputed and appointed for that purpose.

p *Lib. G. p. 7.*
q { *Ibid. p. 9.*
r {

But to proceed with the causes of *Prorogation*, which were either for some considerable reasons, or upon emergent occasions. *An. 1. Marie*, the *Sovereign* celebrating the day of *St. George*, at her Mannor of *St. James's*, *Philip* then Prince of *Spain*, and *Henry* Earl of *Suffex*, were on the *morrow* after elected into the Order; whereupon it was also decreed, *†* That the inauguration of these two *Knights-Elect*, should be prorogued until the Prince came over into *England*, which hapning upon the 21. day of *July* following, the *Grand Feast*, together with that of the *Elect-Knights Installations*, were appointed to be celebrated together; to which purpose a Letter was afterwards sent unto the *Knights-Companions* for their repair thither, against the 5. of *August* then next following.

s *Appendix.*
t *Num. CLX.*

u *Lib. C. p. 19.*

v { *Ibid. p. 20.*
w {

Again, *an. 3. & 4. Ph. & Mar.* at a Chapter held at *Westminster* upon the 22. of *April*, the *Feast* of *St. George* (together with the Installation of three *Knights* at that time *Elected*) was appointed to be held at *Windefor*, on the 9. day of

May

May following, and by a Chapter summoned at the same place, the^x 3. of May before the appointed day for keeping the Feast, the same was prorogued unto the^y 5. of December following, ^z because of the manifold and urgent affairs of the King and Queen. But before that designed time, another Chapter was held at Saint James's, upon the^a last day of October in the 4. and 5. years of their Reigns, wherein it was again prorogued unto the^b first Sunday after Twelfth-day, viz. the 9. of January then following, ^c if by that time the King (who it seems was gone out of Flunders) should return into England; but there appearing afterwards no hopes of his coming over against that prefixed time, another Chapter was summoned and held at Greenwich the^d 5. of January, wherein it was Decreed, ^e urgent Affairs requiring, that the said Feast should be further prorogued, unto the^f 20. of February next coming, and then the Lieutenant and Assistants appointed to the first Prorogation, should celebrate this solemn Feast at Windsor, in manner as it was Decreed, the 22. of April preceding. Nevertheless, the sixth day of February after, in another Chapter, the Sovereign and Knights-Companions Decreed, to prorogue the last mentioned Prorogation unto^g St. George's day, then next following, ^h Because both in respect of the meeting of the Parliament, and other Affairs of great importance, as also by reason of the War that was begun, the said Feast could not conveniently be before observed.

In like manner, an. 2. Eliz. upon the^k 24. of April, it was Decreed, that on Sunday the^l 5. of May the Feast of St. George should be observed with the accustomed celebrations; but that morning in a Chapter held at Whitehall, ^m for very high and important causes, was it prorogued until Sunday the 12. day of May immediately following, on which day it was solemnized at Windsor.

Again, King James having designed his Journey into Scotland (to begin theⁿ 20. of March, an. 14. regni sui) he assembles a Chapter at Whitehall, the second day of that Month, and therein, by reason that for the cause aforesaid, ^o Saint George's Feast for the year ensuing, could not conveniently be kept on the accustomed day and place, decreed to celebrate the same at Windsor the^p 13. day of September next following, where it was accordingly observed.

So also for causes of another, but sadder nature, an. 17. Jac. R. viz. Queen Anne's death, and the Sovereign's dangerous sickness, which had brought him^q also near to the gates of death, was the Grand Feast prorogued from St. George's day, to the^r 26. of May in the same year, and then celebrated at Greenwich.

And an. 1. Car. 1. the Sovereign not thinking fit^t for several causes, at that time to keep the Grand Feast, prorogued it from the^u 22. 23. and 24. days of April, unto the 16. 17. and 18. of August following, thence again until the^v 4. 5. and 6. of October, and lastly to the 23. 24. and 25. of November in the same year, and then observed it at^w Windsor.

Sometimes this Feast hath been put off, out of a respect unto the day, whereon it fell, as an. 22. Jac. R. St. George's day then hapning upon a Friday, the Sovereign therefore prorogued it until the 26. 27. and 28. days of April, at which time it was celebrated at Windsor: And the authority unto which regard was had in this place, was that Clause in the 8. Article of King Henry the Eighth's statutes, wherein the keeping of St. George's Feast was prohibited, if it fell upon any^x Fasts or Fasting days.

So also an. 22. Car. 2. it falling upon a Saturday, was prorogued to the 27. 28. and 29. days of April following.

And albeit in times past this Feast hath been, for the most part upon Prorogations, observed upon a Sunday, yet of late in veneration to this day, it hath been likewise prohibited, as an. 2. Car. 1. St. George's day falling upon a^y Sunday, thereupon the Solemnity was put off until Wednesday, Thursday, and Friday following, being the 26. 27. and 28. of April, upon which days it was observed at^z Whitehall. But where the^a Eve hapned upon a Sunday (as it did the^b next year after) there the Feast received no^c Prorogation.

In the year of our Lord 1636. the Sovereign was moved, by reason of the^d Contagion and Sickness, dispersed into several places of the Kingdom, and to avoid the danger of the concourse of much People, during the Infection atwell

for

^x { Ib. p. 21.
^y {
^z {

^a {
^b {
^c { Ibid.
^d { pag. 22.
^e {
^f {

^g {
^h { Ibid. p. 23.
ⁱ {

^k { Ibid.
^l { pag. 33.

^m { Ibid. p. 34.

ⁿ {
^o { Ib. p. 189.
^p {

^q {
^r { Ib. p. 192.
^s {

^t { Lib. R.
^u { p. 26.
^v {
^w { Ibid.
^x { pag. 28.

^y { Ibid. p. 17.
^z { Lib. N.
^a { pag. 218.
^b { Lib. Caro!
^c { p. 82.

^d { MS. penes
^e { Ed. Fancome
^f { bridge, gen.
^g {

^h { Row's Jour:
ⁱ { nal, p. 4.

for other great and important Affairs, to give several *Prorogations* to this Feast, from the 22. 23. and 24. days of *April* (being the usual days of this Solemnity) first to the 8. 9. and 10. days of *July* following, then again to the 26. 27. and 28. of *September*, and from that time unto the 13. 14. and 15. of *December*, and lastly to the 17. 18. and 19. of *April* in the 13. year of his Reigu; upon which last appointed days it was solemnized at *Whitehall*. Where on the¹ morrow after the Feast, it being considered in a *Chapter*, that the day of *St. George* was neer at hand, and for other special reasons, the *Sovereign* was there pleased to defer the Celebration of the approaching Feast, unto the 25. 26. and 27. days of *September* ensuing: And on the 13. day of the said *September*, prorogued the *Prorogation* unto the 2. 3. and 4. of *October* next following, to *Windefor*, where it was accordingly observed.

Within few Months after, the *Sovereign* having determined to create the then *Prince* (now most happily the present *Sovereign*) a *Knight*, and to propose him in Election, as a *Companion* of this most Noble Society, did for the more conveyency of his Installation (the 25. of *February*, an. 13. Car. 1.) defer the celebration of the *Grand Feast* from the 22. 23. and 24. days of *April* then coming on, to the 21. 22. and 23. days of *May*, when the same was observed with high Solemnity. This being the third *Grand Festival*, which had been celebrated personally by the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions*, within the Revolution of one year, and something more, and to keep up the honor of *Windefor Castle*, two of them were solemnized within its Walls. And before the return of the next Anniversary of *St. George*, the *Sovereign* upon consultation had (in 2 *February*, an. 14. Car. 1.) with divers of the *Knights-Companions*, about the *Prorogation* of the Feast, which was supposed could not (by reason of his important occasions to repair into the North) be celebrated at the usual time in the next ensuing *April*; thereupon he thought fit to adjourn the same, (which was done the 26. of *February* aforesaid) unto the 2. 3. and 4. of *July* next coming (*Tork* being the place the *Sovereign* thought most convenient to hold the Feast at) but afterwards being in his Camp neer *Barnick*, and taking into consideration, the impossibility of keeping the Feast at *Tork* upon the before designed days, and conferring with some of the *Knights-Companions*, that then attended on his person, he the 22. of *June*, an. 15. Car. 1. adjourned the same until the 8. 9. and 10. of *October* following to *Windefor*, at which time it was there celebrated.

After this, the troubles and tempest of War approaching, the *Prorogations* became more frequent, and such places appointed to hold the Feast in, as the *Sovereign* thought most convenient, or had occasion to reside at. Nevertheless the adjournments passed always regularly under the Great Seal of the Order, and the *Sovereign's* Sign Manual.

SECT. IX.

Of Commissions for Prorogation.

WE have not met with any Precedent of *Commissions* for *Prorogation* of the *Grand Feast* of *St. George*, more ancient than that of the 11. of *December*, an. 12. Car. 1. left us by Sir Thomas Rowe, wherein is notice taken of all the former adjournments of the *Grand Feast*, from *St. George's* day preceding until that time, with the reasons thereof, and chiefly upon consideration had of the then spreading Sickness, together with a command to the *Knights-Companions* and *Officers* of the Order, to attend upon the *Sovereign* on the new assigned days, viz. the 17. 18. and 19. of *April* following, for the celebration of the said Feast.

As

* Append. Num. CLVIII.

As to the substance hereof, the succeeding *Commissions* do very neer agree, yet with some small difference; as first, the *Preambles* are general and run thus: *Whereas upon special Reasons, and other important Affairs, &c.* except only that *Commission* issued the 25. of February ^a1637. whose Preamble being fitted to the particular occasion, was this, ^b*Whereas we have determined to create the Prince our eldest son a Knight, and to propose him in Election, as a Companion of our most Noble Order, for the more conveniency of his Installation, we have thought fit to defer the celebration of the Feast of St. George, &c.*

But in the *Commissions* of *Prorogation* of the *Grand Feasts*, dated the 19. of April, and the 25. of February, ^{an.} 19. ^{Car.} 1. the place appointed for Celebration is omitted, which defect we find in the above mentioned Precedent also. Nevertheless, afterwards that material part came to be inserted, and first of all in that *Commission* of the 26. of February, ^{an.} 14. ^{Car.} 1. where the place (being the City of York) is put into the body of the *Commission*. And when the late War drew on, and consequently the *Sovereign* could not so well ascertain the place beforehand, because of his continual and uncertain motion, according as occasion and advantages offered themselves: Then we observe, that the *Grand Feast* was appointed to be kept at any such place, as (when the time appointed by *Prorogation* was neer expired) should seem to the *Sovereign* most convenient. But from the body of the *Commissions*, the nomination of Place, afterwards slid downwards into the close, and shewed it self in that part, where the Injunction was given, for the *Knights-Companions* and *Officers* to attend upon the days before appointed, being expressed either thus, *Wheresoever we shall then be, &c.* or else thus, *at such Places as we shall timely appoint, &c.* which later way of signification was first used in *Commissions* issued forth, after the *Sovereign* came to settle at Oxford.

Now the most ordinary course, preparatory to the issuing forth such *Commissions* of *Prorogation*, hath been by the *Sovereign's Declaration* in Chapter, or otherwise the signification of his pleasure, to the *Chancellor* of the Order at any other time, who thereupon drew up the *Commission*, and presented it to the *Sovereign*, for his Sign Manual, and then affixed thereunto the Great Seal of the Order. Nevertheless, where the *Chancellor* was not at hand, to receive the commands for adjournment, immediately from the *Sovereign*, we find his pleasure in this particular, was then signified to him by some other hand, with command to summon the *Knights-Companions* and *Officers* accordingly. For so was it done by Sir Francis Windebanke, Knight, one of the Principal Secretaries of State, by his Letters from Oatlands, directed to Sir Thomas Row, dated the 11. of September, ^{an.} 13. ^{Car.} 1. for *Prorogation* of the *Grand Feast*, from the 25. of September then neer at hand, unto the 2. 3. and 4. of October following.

And as all the preceding *Adjournments* of the *Grand Feast*, have been either Decreed in Chapter, or directed immediately from the *Sovereign*: So have we also seen a Precedent that hath impowered a *Lieutenant*, to prorogue the same, nevertheless to the time and place before appointed by the *Sovereign*, and mentioned in the *Commission* of *Lieutenancy*. And this was a *Commission* directed to Charles Earl of Nottingham, ^{an.} 1. ^{Jac.} R. wherein, after the *Sovereign* had presumed the impediments, which hindered him from his personal observation of the said *Feast*, upon the prefixed day then neer approaching, he thereby made choice of the said Earl to be his *Lieutenant*, and impowered him to assemble in Chapter, upon the *Vigil* of St. George, such of the *Knights-Companions*, as might be conveniently gotten together, and then and there to intimate unto them the great causes that withheld him from keeping the *Feast* at the set time, and by virtue of the said *Commission* to defer the same until the 3. of July following. Furthermore charging and requiring all the *Knights-Companions* not to fail to be present at that day, wheresoever the same should happen to be, to perform and celebrate with him the said *Feast*, according to the laudable Orders and Institutions of the Order. And lastly, he required the said *Lieutenant* to give warning of his pleasure to all other *Knights-Companions*, who should not be present at the Chapter by him assembled.

SECT. X.

That the Grand Feast ought to be celebrated once every Year.

i E. 3. Stat.
Art. 9.
k H. 5. Stat.
Art. 9. H. 8.
Stat. Art. 3.
l Froissard. l. 1.
c. 100. *Ep- annua, Celebritas annua, Epulum quotannis, Convivium quotannis,* and the like.
lid. Virg. Ang.
Hist. lib. 10.
p. 378.

AND though *Prorogations* of the *Grand Feast* have been occasionally made use of, upon the several and important reasons above discoursed of, and sometimes a necessity hath fallen out to appoint two, three, or four of them in a year, by proroguing the *Prorogations*; yet is no such Adjournment legally to be enlarged beyond the next *St. George's day* ensuing, because that every year, *that is*, once before the revolution of the year determine (the year in this case entering upon *St. George's day*) the *Grand Feast* ought to be solemnized. For so we see it was not only ordained at the *Institution* of the *Order*, but confirmed by the succeeding *Statutes*. And where our *Historians* take notice of the *Grand Feast*, they speak the same thing, to wit, That it ought annually to be observed; Hence it is frequently called in the Registers, *Annua Festivitas, Solemnitas*;

Of late times an occasion hapned, which brought this Clause of the *Statutes* into a solemn debate in *Chapter*, which for the result thereof became very remarkable: And the *Order* thereupon drawn up, being full and positive, not only as to the occasion, but also as to the circumstances, and determination, may not unfitly come in here.

m Ex ipso Autogr. pen. Fac.
Palmer nuper
Cancell.

At a Chapter held in Whitehall the 26. day of February 1640.

Present.

The Sovereign.
The Earl of Penbrooke and Mont-
The Earl of Salisbury. (gomery.
The Earl of Holland.
The Earl of Lindeſey.

The Prince.
The Earl of Arundel and Surrey.
The Earl of Dorset.
The Earl of Berkshire.
The Lord Marquess Hamilton.

The Duke of Lenox.

The Chancellor.

Garter.

The Sovereign proposed unto the Knights of the Order, that having prorogued the Celebration of the Feast of St. George from time to time, unto the first, second, and third of March, so near unto Lent, that if the Feast were not held on those days, it could not be held within the year, because the 23. of April for the next year did fall upon Good-Friday, and so consequently must have been kept in Lent for this Year, or not at all: And considering the great and important Affairs of the Parliament, he moved this Question, Whether if there were no Feast kept this year, it would be any blemish unto the Honor of the Order or not? And whether he might not dispence with the Statute, and defer it until the next Year? requiring the Knights and Companions to consult and to give their opinions therein: The result whereof was, that though they did all confess an absolute power to dispence in the Sovereign, yet some of the Knights proposed unto him, that seeing from the Institution until this day, there was not found any year where-in the Feast was wholly omitted, but that some of his Ancestors, though engaged in War beyond the Seas, either solemnized the Feast in their own presence, or by Commission in England, which was averr'd by the Chancellor

to be both the fundamental statute and constant practice. They humbly besought the Sovereign, not to begin to make a breach in that constant order, which hath been so long and uninterruptedly continued; whereupon it was resolved by general Vote, that the Feast should be celebrated upon those afore appointed days in the last Prorogation.

By which determination it sufficiently appears, of what concernment the then Sovereign and Knights-Companions, conceived it to the Honor of the Order, and observation of the Statutes, for the Grand Feast to be celebrated once within the year. Besides we may observe, that it was not thought expedient to be dispensed with, albeit the weight of important Affairs were justly alledged to ballance the Law, and ground a further Prorogation. Nay, rather than the Statutes should suffer violation, the said Feast was accordingly solemnized on the said first, second, and third days of March, although so straitned in time, that there was not above two days space, to make preparation and provision for the doing of it. n Palmer's Journ. p 47.

But within a few years after, the unhappy distractions had prevailed so far, that the Sovereign was necessitated to assume his power of dispensation in this particular, and by continued annual Prorogations from the 22. 23. and 24. days of April, an. 18. of his Reign (being then at York) to defer the Solemnity from year to year; so that during the remainder of his Reign, this Grand Celebration had never the fortune to be again observed.

And here the glory of this solemn Feast began first to set with us, unto which succeeded a long night: But blessed be God we have lived to behold it rise again, and seen the Royal Sovereign and most illustrious Knights-Companions fill those too long vacant Stalls, and late languishing Fabrick with wonted lustre.

CHAP. XIX.

OF

Preparations

FOR THE

Grand Feast

OF THE ORDER.

SECT. I.

Of Letters giving notice of the Time and Place.

TOWARDS the setting forth and celebration of this *Grand Festival*, there are several things to be prepared beforehand, chiefly such as are usual and of course; nevertheless among these we shall have opportunity, now and then, to touch upon some things extraordinary, where the occasion hath invited the *Sovereign*, to give any additional lustre to the state and glory of the *Feast*.

The things therefore to be prepared of course, are (1.) *Letters* directed to all the *Knights-Companions* and *Officers* of the *Order*, resident within the *Kingdom*; to give them notice of the time and place, when and where the *Feast* is to be celebrated. (2.) *Letters of Dispensation* to such *Knights-Companions* as the *Sovereign* shall please to excuse, from their attendance at the *Feast*. (3.) *Commissions of Lieutenancy* (and sometimes of *Assistance*) when the *Sovereign* cannot personally solemnize the same. (4.) *Warrants* for the *Removal* of *Achievements*, if at this time there be any such occasion. (5.) *Scutcheons* and *Stiles* to be set upon the back of each *Knight-Companion's Stall*, if the *Feast* be held elsewhere than at *Windsor*. (6.) The *Chappel* to be decently adorned. (7.) the *Great Hall* (or other place where the *Grand Dinner* is to be prepared) to be likewise very nobly furnished. And (8.) lastly, *Officers* to be appointed (besides those of the *Order* and of *Arms*) who are to give peculiar attendance upon the *Sovereign* at this *Grand Solemnity*.

As touching the first of these particulars, the *Chancellor* of the *Order* is to attend the *Sovereign*, in convenient time before the approach of *St. George's day*,
to

to know his pleasure, whether he will hold the *Grand Feast* on that day, or otherwise prorogue the Solemnities to some further time, and whether it shall be celebrated at *Windsor*, *Whitehall*, or what other place.

If the *Sovereign* shall be induced to *Prorogue* the *Feast* from *St. George's* day to some further time, then is the *Chancellor* to draw up a *Commission* to that purpose, of which we have discoursed in the preceding ^a *Chapter*. After this, *Letters* ^a *Self. g.* issued out, anciently under the *Sovereign's* Sign Manual, both to his *Lieutenant* (when he held not the *Feast* in Person) as also to each of the *Knights-Companions*, giving them notice of the time and place; some of which are placed to the ^b *Appendix*; but of late, the *Chancellor* hath been appointed to dispatch these *Letters* of notice in his own name. ^b *Num. CLIX. & CLX. c* *Num. CLXI. & CLXII.*

But whether the *Feast* be held upon the day of *St. George*, or on any other day by *Prorogation*, the *Sovereign's* pleasure was usually known so long before the appointed time, that these circular *Letters* sent from the *Chancellor*, issued out, sometimes ^d fix, ^e five, ^f four, ^g three, two or ^h one Month at least, before the assigned day. And in cases where *Prorogations* have been yet further adjourned, care hath been taken to issue out new *Commissions* in like convenient time before the old were expired; as may be observed in the cases of adjournments mentioned in the last *Chapter*, that so those *Knights-Companions*, who are most remote from *Court*, may have sufficient time to prepare, either for attendance at the day assigned, or upon just occasion procure the favour of *Letters* of *Dispensation* for absence: And further, that the absent *Knights* may thereby take notice of the day set, because such are obliged to hold the *Feast* in their own Houses at the same time. ^d *Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl. c* *Row's Journal, p. 16. f* *Ib. p. 5. & 20. g* *Ib. p. 39. h* *Autogr. penes prof. Jac. Palmer.*

Besides, the *Letters* directed to the *Knights-Companions*, the *Chancellor* is likewise to write his *Letters* to each of the *Officers* of the *Order*, to give them the like notice. ⁱ *Append. Num. CLXIII.*

SECT. II.

Of Dispensations for not attending at the Grand Feast.

IT having been complained of, by the *Chancellor* of the *Order*, and taken notice of by the *Sovereign*, and *Knights-Companions*, in a *Chapter* held at the Celebration of the *Grand Feast*, at *Whitehall* the 18. of *April*, an. 13. Car. 1. ^k That of late years, divers *Knights-Companions* of this most Noble Order, had neglected both their attendance upon the *Sovereign* at the *Feast* of *St. George*, or to send under their *Seals of Arms*, their probable *Excuses*, and *Petitions*, for *License* and *Dispensation*, contrary to the most ancient *Statutes* and their duty: It was therefore then among many other things Ordered and Decreed, ^l That from thenceforth every *Knight* of the *Order*, should be bound to attend upon the usual days, or such as should be assigned by *Prorogation*. But in case of *Sickness*, or other important business, by reason whereof they might have cause to be excused, they should send under their *Seals of Arms* to the *Chancellor*, the reasons of their desire for leave of absence, twenty days at least before the usual or assigned time, to be presented by him to the *Sovereign*; and whosoever should neglect so to do, except in sudden accidents, should not be dispensed with, but incur the penalty of the *Statutes*. ^k *Rowe's Journ. p. 10. vide etiam Lib. R. p. 119.*

And it is evident, that this way of enjoining the *Knights-Companions*, to send the cause of that impediment, which should hinder their said attendance, under their *Seals of Arms*, hath been very ancient; for the *Black Book* records an *Order* in *Chapter*, held at the *Grand Feast*, an. 1. H. 6. ^m to this very purpose; ⁿ it further enjoining, that ⁿ when such absent *Knights* were present at the next *Feast*, they should be obliged then to render the reason, why they should not undergo the penalty of their former absence, since the *Statutes* enjoin it. ^m *Lib. No. pag. 734.*

In pursuance of the before mentioned Decree of the 18. of April, Sir Thomas Rowe, then Chancellor, added to those his Letters, dated the 18. day of May 1637. and directed to the *Knights-Companions* under the Seal of the Order (which signified, that for special reasons and other important Affairs (in a Chapter held at *Whitehall*, on the 19. of April in the forefaid year) the *Sovereign* had prorogued the *Grand Feast*, from the 22. 23. and 24. days of April, an. 14. Car. 1. to the 25. 26. and 27. of September then next ensuing) this following *Postscript*.

o Rowe's Journ.
pag. 20.

p See Chap. 22.
c. 3. d.

q Vide Jus
E. 3. 2 Stat.
H. 5. 5 Art. 10.
H. 8. Stat.
Art. 9.

r Palmer's
Journ. p. 10
an. 1635.
p. 61.

According to two Acts made in Chapter, in the presence of the *Sovereign*, the 18. of April 1637. concerning the neglect of the *Knights and Companions* of the most Noble Order of the Garter, in their attendance upon his Majesty at the Feast of St. George, and a command expressly received, to signify so much to your Lordship: I have sent to your Lordship, the true Copy of the 2 Acts themselves; it being resolved in case of omission of your lawful and timely excuse, under your Seal of Arms, and in occasion of absence, of keeping the Solemnity in your own house, that no dispensation shall be given, but your Lordship shall incur the penalties of the ancient Statutes, which are; That you shall not be admitted to the Chapter, nor to your Seat the next year; but shall stand before it as do the *Choristers*: In Procession you shall march before, and not in your place among the *Knights*, and shall Offer Last; and that this Penance being done, you shall come before the Seat of the *Sovereign*, and ask absolution; but if two years successively your Lordship shall omit your attendance and timely suit for Dispensation, you shall pay Twenty Marks, and that sum be doubled for every year of such omission, until you be reconciled, and pardoned by the *Sovereign*; whereof I beseech your Lordship to take knowledge.

It afterwards appears, by an Order past in Chapter, of the 9. of October, an. 15. Car. 1. that this early notice to be given, from such of the *Knights-Companions*, as upon the causes before mentioned should be absent, was appointed in favour chiefly of the Officers of the *Sovereign's Household*, who (by knowing in due time, who should be absent and who not) might make timely and certain provision for the said Feast.

Upon notice sent by the Chancellor to the *Knights-Companions* as aforesaid, if any of them should happen to be sick, weak, infirm, or have any other lawful impediment or occasion, which might justly hinder or excuse their repair to the Court, and attendance at the Feast; they may acquaint the Chancellor therewith; whose duty it is to represent the same to the *Sovereign*, and thereupon to procure his Letters of Dispensation for their absence, if the *Sovereign* be so pleased.

Which Letters are to be conveyed by Garter, or carried by whomsoever he shall appoint; for which there was a Fee by the Mile allowed him, by the following Order, past at a meeting held by the *Knights-Commissioners*, for regulating things relating to the Order, the first of October an. 13. Car. 1.

u Rowe's Journ.
pag. 37.

v Mumb.
CLXIV.
CLXV.
CLXVI. &
CLXVII.

Whereas it having anciently been the Office of Garter King of Arms, to disperse and send Letters for Prorogation, Dispensation, and other Commands of the *Sovereign*, unto the *Knights absent from the Court*, which in many cases must be chargeable, it was this day Ordered, That if he should send any Act of favour or Dispensation to any Knight absent from his Majesty's Court, or four Miles from the City of London; he to whom such Dispensation should be sent, should pay to his Servant or Messenger, for every day's Travel, as much as is allowed and paid to any other Messenger of his Majesty's House or Chamber.

Variety of occasions and accidents, as grounds to move the *Sovereign*, and inducements to obtain his Dispensation, we have seen in several Letters sent to Sir Tho. Rowe, when Chancellor, upon the before mentioned Injunction, Decreed an. 13. Car. 1. and always the causes have been inserted in the Preambles of the Dispensations, some of which are to be seen in the w Appendix.

SECT.

SECT. III.

Of Commissions of Lieutenancy and Assistance.

Touching the third particular, namely, the preparing *Commissions* of *Lieutenancy*, in such cases where the *Sovereign* cannot personally celebrate the Feast; as also *Commissions* for those, whom he thinks fit to appoint for his *Assistants*; we shall transfer the Discourse thereof from hence to that head in the * next Chapter, under which we shall speak of the constituting a *Lieutenant*; and only note here, that the *Chancellor* is to draw up these *Commissions*, and attend the *Sovereign* for his hand, and afterwards to pass them under the Great Seal of the Order. x *Self*. 5.
y *Lib. R. p. 120.*

SECT. IV.

Warrant for the removal of Atchievements.

IF there be occasion for the removal of any of the *Knights-Companions Atchievements*, at the *Grand Feast* (which hath seldom hapned, unless an *Installation* were at the same time celebrated) then doth the *Chancellor* obtain the *Sovereign's Warrant*, directed to *Garter*, for the doing thereof: Concerning which (as also the cause and reason of such removal) we have already, and at large discoursed, among the *Preparations* to be made for the Personal Installation of a *Knight-Companion*; that place being most proper, in regard the removal of them doth chiefly concern that Ceremony. z *Chap.* 11.
Self. 6.

SECT. V.

Scutcheons of Arms and Stiles.

Heretofore when the Celebrations of *St. George's day* were kept at any other place besides *Windsor-Castle*, it was thought most necessary to provide large Paper *Scutcheons*; wherein were marshalled the *Arms* and *Quarterings* of the *Sovereign* and each *Knight-Companion*, in Metal and Colour, encompassed with a *Garter*; and thereon *Crowns*, *Caps*, or *Coronets* peculiar to each Dignity, with their *Stiles* and *Titles* fairly printed underneath (but without *Crests* or *Supporters*) to be set on the back side of their *Stalls*, on the Eve of the Feast: But the *Sovereign's Arms* were impaled with those of *St. George*, over which an *Imperial Crown* was placed, and these (in defect of the *Plates* and *Banners*, set over their *Stalls* in the *Choir* of *St. George's Chappel* at *Windsor*) did serve for directions to the *Knights-Companions*, that by the view of them, they might the more readily and certainly know their proper *Stalls*.

We have not met with any memorial of this usage, that reacheth higher than an. 21. H. 7. when the *Sovereign* holding the day of *St. George* at *Cambridge*, *Kings Colledge Chappel* was furnished with *Scutcheons* of the *Knights-Companions Arms*; but to shew the use was ancient, there is this note put into the memorial, a *Ex ipso*
Autogr.

[as was yearly accustomed.] *An. 22. H. 8.* the *Sovereign* being at *Windsor* on the Eve of *St. George*,^b appointed the Service of the Church to be celebrated in his *Chappel*, in the upper *Quadrangle* of *Windsor Castle*; and there being present with him 13 *Knights-Companions*,^d each of them had set over their heads a *Scutcheon* of their *Arms*.

This manner of adorning the *Stalls* was afterwards solemnly established, and enlarged to absent *Knights*, by an Order of *Chapter* held at *Greenewich*, *an. 23. E. 6.* wherein by the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* it was agreed, 'That from thenceforth, every Stall upon *St. George's Eve*, should have an *Escutcheon* of the Arms of them which were absent, as well as those that were present, at their several costs and charges.

But this cannot be understood of the *Stalls* situate in the *Chappel* of *St. George* at *Windsor*; for besides, that we have met with no ancient account of any such custom in that place, we find a memorial rather implying the contrary, when *Queen Elizabeth*, in the 6. year of her Reign, held the *Feast* of *St. George* upon its proper day at *Windsor Castle*; namely, 'That there was no *Scutcheons* of the *Knights-Companions* Arms set up there, but only the *Plates*: And without all doubt, had it been the usage to fix *Scutcheons* in the *Choir* of that *Chappel*, as at other places, they would not at that time especially have been omitted, because then the *Sovereign* appeared upon an extraordinary occasion, and where many things were added to heighten the glory of that *Grand Feast*, by reason the *Peace* between *England* and *France* was to be proclaimed at this Festival, in the presence of the *French Ambassador*; and was accordingly done with great Solemnity on *St. George's day* in the morning, at the East entrance into the lower Ward of the *Castle*, at the top of the Hill towards *St. George's Chappel*; and to which place the *Sovereign* in her whole *Habit* of the Order (the *French Ambassador* being near her) with the five *Officers* of the Order, and *Knights-Companions* before her, and before them the *Officers* of Arms and *Trumpets*, proceeded in a stately and well ordered *Cavalcade*; and after *Clarenceux King* of Arms had ended the *Proclamation*, they continued the *Proceeding* thence to the *Chappel*, in the same state and order.

As to the practice and constant usage of setting up *Scutcheons* of Arms, since *an. 3. E. 6.* and at such time as *St. George's day* was held elsewhere than at *Windsor*, we have seen variety of Testimonies.

The care of ordering and providing of which belonged to *Garter*, but the *Sovereign* of the Order was at the charge (notwithstanding the said Order, *an. 3. E. 6.*) which heretofore we see was paid out of the *Treasury* in the *Exchequer*; and since the establishment of 1200*l.* per *an.* (settled by the late *Sovereign King Charles the First*, to discharge the ordinary and extraordinary expences of the Order) the allowance issued thence, and was paid by the *Chancellor* of the Order. But now the charge is placed upon *Garter*, he having an allowance therefore included in the augmentation of his Pension, *an. 15. Car. 2.*

We find *Privy-Seals* to have issued as high as the 15. of *Queen Elizabeth*, for the annual allowance of 7*l.* for *Scutcheons*, employed for the use aforesaid, and that the price sometime before, was much about that rate; for the three and twenty *Scutcheons*, provided against *St. George's Feast*, *an. 1. & 2. Ph. & Mar.* came to 6*l.* 1*s.* 8*d.* and those five and twenty set up the following year, to 6*l.* 11*s.* 8*d.* some difference then also being in the work, which enhanced the price, viz. those provided for *Princes* at 6*s.* 8*d.* a piece, and each of the rest at 5*s.*

The *Sovereign*, the *Prince of Wales*, and *Stranger Kings* and *Princes*, have accustomedly had, at these times, *Majesty Scutcheons* set up over each of their *Stalls*, but the rest of the *Knights-Companions* Lodging *Scutcheons* only; and we have seen an account of four *Majesty Scutcheons*, prepared for every *St. George's Feast*, from 1613. to 1619. to wit, one for the *Sovereign*, another for the *King of Denmark*, a third for the *Prince of Wales*, and a fourth for *Frederick Count Palatine* of the *Rhine*, at 6*s.* 8*d.* a piece; but so many *Knights-Companions* as attended the *Sovereign* at those Feasts, had each a Lodging *Scutcheon* at 2*s.* 6*d.*

From

b (MS. in Offic.
c Arm. [H.
d (17.) p. 32.

e § Lib. N.
f 2 p. 302.

g MS. fol. penes
W. D. N. f. 14.

h { Ib. f. 15. b.
i {
k {

l Append. Num.
CLXVIII.
CLXIX &
CLXX.

m See Sir
James Pal-
mer's Accounts.

n Ex Collec.
praf. W. le N. Cl.

o (Append.
p) Numb.
q) CLXVIII.
r (

s (Collec.
t praf. W.
le N. Cl.

From the marshalling of *Arms*, quartered in the *Knights-Companions Scutcheons*, and ordering their *Stiles* (printed always in *French*) there are several things, no less useful than worthy observation: for,

First, though the *Plates of Arms* and *Quarterings*, fixed in each *Knights-Companions Stall* at *Windeſor*, continue there without alteration, or very seldom changed from that order, wherein they were marshalled at the time of their Installation; yet these *Scutcheons* and *Stiles* annually set up, do admit of frequent alteration, as there is occasion; either by adding more *Quarterings*, altering the *Stiles*, or amending any thing that is amiss. For instance,

Whereas the Duke of *Savoy* before 5. *Eliz.* bore ^a *Gules a Crofs Argent*, it was then altered into ^w 5 Coats, that is to say, in the first quarter *Westphalie, Saxe moderne*, and *Angrie*, in the second *Chablais*, in the third *Aouſſe*, the fourth as the first, and over all, in the middle, the foresaid *Scutcheon of Savoy*. u f MS. foli
w l penes W.
D.N.f.9.a.

When the Lord *Hunſdon* was installed, an. 3. *Eliz.* he had ^x 12 Coats of Arms, thus marshalled in his Plate, 4, 4, and 4, the first *Carey*, the second *Spencer*, the third *Somerſet*, the fourth *Bullen*, the fifth *Ormond*, the sixth *Hoo*, the seventh *Rochford*, the eighth *Seyntomer*, the ninth *Malmains*, the tenth *Wichingham*, the eleventh *St. Leger*, and the twelfth *Hangford*: But an. 7. *Eliz.* his *Scutcheon* received an addition of four other Coats, viz. *Beauchamp*, *Warwick*, *Berkley*, and *Gerard*, and these were inserted next to *Somerſet*, the third Coat in his said Plate. x Ibid.f.6.a.
y lb.f.19.a.

But on the contrary, where *Ambroſe* Earl of *Warwick* had ^z 21 Coats put into his Plate, an. 5. *Eliz.* and they marshalled in this order, 5. 5. 5. and 6. namely, 1. *Sutton*. 2. *Paganell*. 3. *Grey of Ruthin*. 4. *Hastings*. 5. *Quincy*. 6. *Melpas*. 7. *Somery*. 8. *Valence*. 9. *Talbot*. 10. *Warwick*. 11. *Beauchamp*. 12. *Berkley*. 13. *Liſe*. 14. *Gerard*. 15. *Guilford*. 16. *Houlden*. 17. *West*. 18. and 19. quarterly *de la Ware* and *Cantilupe*. 20. *Mortimere* of *Wigmore*. and 21. *Greely*: at the Feast of *St. George* held at *Whitehall*, an. 9. *Eliz.* his *Scutcheon* contained but ^a 16. viz. 4. 4. 4. and 4. namely, 1. *Sutton*. 2. *Paganell*. 3. *Somery*. 4. *Melpas*. 5. *Grey of Ruthin*. 6. *Hastings*. 7. *Valence*. 8. *Ferrers*. 9. *Quincy*. 10. *Chester*. 11. *Talbot*. 12. *Beauchamp*. 13. *Warwick*. 14. *Berkley*. 15. *Gerard*. and 16. *Liſe*. So that there was seven Coats taken out of the former, namely, *Guilford*, *Holden*, *West de la Ware* and *Cantilupe* quarterly, *Mortimere* and *Greely*, and two added, viz. *Ferrars* and *Chester*. z lb.f.13.b.
a lb.f.27.e.

But the greatest and most frequent variations are in the *Stiles* and *Titles* of Honor, set under the *Scutcheons*, and these relate unto, and are occasioned principally from their attaining or resigning of Offices or Dignities.

We find that the *stile* set under the *Scutcheon* of *Ferdinand* the Emperor, at *St. George's Feast*, an. 1. & 2. *Ph. & Mar.* was as followeth,

^b *Du tres-hault tres-excellent & tres-puissant Prince, Ferdinand par la grace de Dieu Roy des Romaines, de Hongarie, & Bohemie, Archiduc d'Autriche, Duc de Bourgoigne, &c. Chevalier du tres-noble Ordre de la Jarretiere.* b Autogr. penes
prof.W.D.N.
Cl.

But an. 5. *Eliz.* in the said Emperors *Stile*, the *Titles* of *King of Hungary* and *Bohemia* were left out, because *Maximilian* his Son, had a little before obtained (and at that time enjoyed) both those Kingdoms. c MS.fol. penes
prof.W.D.N.
fol. 9.

In the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth*, the *Stiles* of *Philip* King of *Spain* (who while Queen *Mary* lived was Co-Sovereign of this most Noble Order) run thus,

^d *Du tres-hault tres-excellent & tres-puissant Prince, Philip par la grace de Dieu, Roy d'Espagne, des Deux Sicels, & Jerusalem, Arch-Duc d'Autriche, Duc de Bourgoigne, Millan, & Brabant, Comte de Hapsburge, Flanders, and Tyroll; Chevalier du tres-noble Ordre de la Jarretiere.* d Autogr. penes
prof.W.D.N.
Cl.

But at the Feasts of *St. George*, an. 28. 29. and 30. *Eliz.* the Title of *Catholic Prince* was also given him, viz. ^e *Du tres-hault tres-excellent tres-puissant & Catholic Prince Philip, &c.* e (Sir Will.
f. Newer MS;
g of Stiles.

And till an. 26. *Eliz.* we observe the Title ^f *des Deux Sicels* were continued to him; but s an. 28. *Eliz.* and so forward, the word *Deux* was omitted,

P p p

nevertheless

h § *Ibid.*
i §

nevertheless ^b *an. 36. Eliz.* that word is again added; but withall we find this marginal note entred over against the said *Sole*, ⁱ *This was forbidden to be set up at Greenwich, the 22. of April, an. 1594.*

If we proceed with a few instances, relating to *Knights-Subjects*, we shall find that among them, there hath hapned the most frequent alterations, and almost every year some additions or omissions.

k § *MS. fol.*
l § *penes prof.*
m § *WD. N. f. 2.*
n § *Ib. fol.*
o § *2. b.*

In the Duke of Norfolk's *Stile*, *an. 3. Eliz.* the ^k *Lieutenanship of the North* was omitted. In the Earl of Rutlands, at the same Feast, ^l *President of the Council in the North*, was added. The Marques of Winchester, *an. 3. Eliz.* caused the Title of ^m *Baron of St. John* to be omitted, because his eldest Son, then bore that honor. In like manner was the Title of ⁿ *Lord Strange* left out of the Earl of Derby's *Stile*, *an. 4. Eliz.* in regard his Son was then so called, and a *Baron of Parliament*. As to these and such like particulars, a multitude of Examples might be cited, but let these suffice.

o § *Ib. f. 19. a.*

p § *Ibid. fol.*
q § *2. b.*

We shall close this point, with this further observation; That where a *stranger-Elect*, hath received the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the Order (though not installed) he hath been allowed the honor, of having a *Scutcheon* of his *Arms* set on the back of that *Stall* designed for him, on the Eve of *St. George*, next after such his Investiture: an instance whereof we have in the French King ^o *Charles the Ninth*, *an. 7. Eliz.* the Lord *Hunsdon* having took his journey into France, in May before, with the *Habit* of the Order, and therewith invested the said King. But on the contrary it is observed to our hand, that the Emperor *Maximilian*, having been ^p *Elected* the 24. of April, *an. 8. Eliz.* had not any *Scutcheon* placed in his *Stall* the next *St. George's Feast*; and the reason is there given, ^q *because he had not as then received the Habit and Ensigns of the Order.*

SECT. VI.

Of adorning the Chappel.

THE Chappel where the *Divine Services* are to be celebrated at this *Grand Feast*, whether it be that of *St. George's* at *Windsor*, or the *Sovereign's* at *Whitehall*, or elsewhere, in what place soever the *Sovereign* is pleased to keep the day of *St. George*, is usually set forth and adorned with peculiar and most rich Furniture; the care and oversight whereof at *Windsor*, is committed to the *Dean* of the *Colledge*, but at other places, to the *Dean* of the *Chappel* at *Whitehall*.

The *Altar*, as the principal place in the House of *God*, hath been thought worthy (in all times and Churches, where decency and reverence have been retained) of the richest and most costly furniture; and in particular, this in *St. George's Chappel* at *Windsor*, from time to time, by the addition of pious *Benefactors* hath been adorned with *Vessels*, sumptuous both for materials and workmanship: How plentifully it was stored *an. 8. R. 2.* (which was within 36 years after the Institution of this most Noble Order) with *Plate*, *Jewels*, and other Church *Ornaments*, is evident from an *Inventory*, of all the rich Furniture of the *Chappel*, then taken by *Walter Almaly*, the second *Custos* (or *Dean*) there.

a § *MS. penes*
b § *Peregr. Ho-*
c § *by de Bi-*
d § *scum in Com.*
e § *Gicks ar.*

But a great part of these, and other succeeding Contributions towards the Furniture, both of the high *Altar* and this sacred *Chappel*, were in the ^a 2. 3. and 5. years of King *Edward the Sixth*, sold by the mutual consent of the *Dean* and *Canons*, for the sum of ^b 1489 l. 8 s. 0 d. (besides *Copes*, *Vestments*, *Cloths* of *Arras*, *Altar-Cloaths*, *Albes*, *Frontlets*, and other *Ornaments*, which they distributed among themselves) alledging a necessity so to do, for ^c defraying the building of some part of the *Castle Wall*, taking down the high *Altar*, paying the *Tents* and

and *Subsidies* of the inferiour Officers of the *Colledge*, bringing *Water* to their Houses, the charges of *Visitations*, and loss by the fall of *Money*: taking themselves only to be owners and disposers thereof, by virtue of the first Article in the *Statutes of Foundation* of the *Colledge*.

What was left (being but a small portion in comparison of what was there, when one ^d Mr. Henley took an Inventory of them *an. 36. H. 8.*) appears from an ^d *Inventory* taken the 16. of July 1552. by Sir Philip Hoby, Sir Maurice Berkley, ^e { *ibid.*
Mr. Tho. Welden, and Mr. John Norrys, Commissioners impowered by the King to survey the Jewels, Plate, and Ornaments of all kinds, within the *Colledge* of *Windsor*; as also to take an ^f account from the *Dean* and *Canons* of what things had been sold, alienated, distributed, or made away since their first coming to the said *Colledge*.

We find very little of Plate or other Ornaments, since this time, bestowed upon this Chappel, until King James of blessed memory became *Sovereign* of this most Noble Order. But he taking into his pious thoughts the nakedness of this Altar, and considering how decently sacred *Vessels* would become the Service of God, made some convenient provision for the adorning thereof, which at length was best resolved on and effected, by the free Contributions of the *Knights-Companions* themselves.

For at a Chapter held at *Whitehall*, April 23. *an. 16. Jac. R.* it was Decreed, That every of the *Knights-Companions* (as well those already of the Order, as such afterwards admitted into it) should give to the use of the Altar, in the said Chappel, a piece of Plate, of the value of 20*l.* at the least. And it is evident ^g *Lib. C. p. 191.* that whatever had been done in former times, for the greater Ornament of this Chappel, was by a general contribution, of the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions*, whose Benevolences were always correspondent to their several Degrees: For thus were the contributions ordered, for the erection of the ^h *Statue* of Saint ^h *Lib. N. p. 118.* George on Horseback, *an. 36. H. 6.* and for finishing the ⁱ *Rood-loft*, and *Lanthorn* ⁱ *ibid. p. 204.* of the Chappel, *an. 8. H. 8.*

^k This was again proposed by the late pious *Sovereign*, at another Chapter ^k *Lib. R. p. 30.* held at *Windsor* the 24. of November, *an. 1. Car. 1.* and agreed unto by all the ^l *ibid. p. 29.* *Knights-Companions* present, the reverend ^m Doctor Laud, then Bishop of *London* (who at that Feast officiated in the absence of the *Prelate*, and a zealous promoter of all pious designs) freely and liberally undertaking to bestow a piece of Plate of the like value.

But it seems, notwithstanding all this ready concurrence, the work went on but slowly; for in a Chapter held at *Windsor*, the 24. of September *an. 4. Car. 1.* the Feast of St. George being then celebrated there, the want of the designed Plate being signified, it was therein further Decreed, ⁿ *ibid. p. 41.* That all the present installed *Knights*, should take care before the following Feast of St. George (and all other within a year after their Election) to send every one of them 20*l.* at the least to the *Dean* of *Windsor*, to be bestowed in Plate, for the use of the Altar. And the ^o *Lib. R. p. 43.* *Sovereign* being humbly intreated by the *Knights-Companions*, that He himself (in way of example to all) would bestow some gift, most readily and willingly condescended.

This pious Decree was again confirmed at a Chapter held at *Windsor* the 6. of ^q *Lib. R. p. 63.* October *an. 6. Car. 1.* and ^r *Numb. CLXXI.* *Commissionary Letters* therewithall ordered to issue out forthwith, under the Seal of the Order; whereby the *Dean* and *Canons* of *Windsor* were not only impowered, but commanded, either by themselves or their Deputy, to demand and receive the sums of Money, so decreed to be paid to the use aforesaid; not only from the *Knights-Companions* then living, but also from those who died after the 24. of November *an. Dom. 1625.*

And that we may observe, the zeal towards this religious design slept not with the *sovereign*, on the 13. of February following, he gave the said *Dean* ^s *Lib. R. p. 70.* order to demand 100*l.* out of the *Privy-Purse*, as his own free gift; which ^t *ibid. p. 72.* was paid the next morning, being an eternal monument of his Kingly piety and devotion.

And that it might appear what was given, by whom, and how bestowed, towards the furnishing of the Altar, it was also appointed, that a short ^u *Historical* account

account of these sacred *Offerings* and *Gifts*, should be made and preserved in the *Chapter-house at Windsor*.

The *Book* designed for this purpose is now with his Majesty, being a large thin Folio in Vellum, wearing this Title.

Σ Υ Ν Θ Ε Ω

Memoriæ Veritati, Virtuti Sacrum,

*Altare liberæ Capellæ Regiæ Sancti Georgii Martyris, infra
Castrum Regale Windesoriense,*

*Amplissimis donariis, Deo Opt. Max. per Augustissimum Su-
premum, & Honoratissimos Commilitones Nobilissimi Or-
dinis (à Periscelide dicatis) recentèr adanctum.*

*Describit humilimus Ordinis illius Seruus Scribe C. Wren
Decanus Windesoriensis, An. Dom. 1637.*

It contains the Orders made in *Chapter* the 24. of November 1625. the 24. of Septemb. 1628. the 6. of Octob. 1630. with the *Commissionary Letters* which thereupon issued, and the Order of the 13. of February following, together with the Names of all the *Knights-Companions* present at each *Chapter*.

After these follow the *Arms* and *Quarterings*, very fairly limn'd in Metal and Colour, within a *Garter*; over each a *Coronet* suitable to the dignity of the person, and underneath are entred the *Stiles* of all the *Knights-Companions*, who were of the Order an. 1625. or admitted after, to the time of making the Book; as also the sum which each *Knight* paid to the *Register*. But as to any account of Plate provided upon the *Sovereign* and succeeding *Knights-Companions* Contributions, there is none, though probably intended, to fill up the many blank leaves that followed.

x Ib. p. 68.

The *first that presented his *Offering*, was *Thomas* Earl of *Arundel* and *Surrey*, Earl Marshal of *England*, therein giving the rest a noble example, by a delivery of his 20 l. into the hands of the *Dean* of *Windsor*: So that a competent sum being afterwards collected, and the money decreed by *King Henry* the Eighth to pious uses, instead of celebrating the *Obits* of deceased *Knights* * added thereinto by Order of *Chapter*, all was wholly employed towards Plate for the fore-said *Altar*.

y An. 32. H. 8.
Lib. N. p. 283.
2. Ex. Collect.
D. Chr. Wren.
1. p. 1.
10. R. 1.

To hasten the payment of these Contributions, the *Dean* and *Canons* deputed *William* Ryley, then *Blue Mantle Pursuivant*, afterward *Lancaster Herald* at *Arms*, to collect the *Moneys* to be raised, both upon the Order of the 6. of Octob. an. 6. Car. 1. and also upon the *Obits*; and for his pains therein he was allowed * 2 s. in the Pound.

* See Sir
James Pal-
mer's account
for *Obit* Mo-
ney.

But notwithstanding all his diligence and sollicitation, it appeared to the *Chapter* held at *Windsor*, the || 6. of November an. 9. Car. 1. that there were several of the *Knights-Companions*, and the *Executors* of others yet in arrear, and to the end the same might be speedily collected, there was set (in the said *Chapter*) a penalty in the nature of a *nomine pænæ*, of * twenty shillings a Month, to be levied upon those, who should longer delay the payment thereof.

|| Lib. R.
1 p. 86.

And now at length (a considerable sum having been collected) the work began to be set on foot, and the Workman made choice of, was one *Christian* Van *Vianan* of *Utrecht*, a man excellently skill'd in chasing of Plate: and to give him due praise in this undertaking, he discovered a rare ingenuity and happy fancy, as the skilful did judge while the Plate was in being, and the designs of each piece yet to be seen (among the present *Sovereign's* rare collection of *Draughts* and *Sketches*) can sufficiently manifest.

The

The agreement with him, made by the forementioned || Earl Marshal, Sir Francis Windebanke, and Sir Francis Crane, then Chancellor of this most Noble Order, was at 12 s. the Ounce: Whereupon (24. Apr. an. 10. Car. 1.) the Sovereign gave command under the Signet of the Order, to pay unto him^a 600 l. by way of im-^a Lib. R. p. 97. press, towards making the Plate, after the receipt of which, he forthwith disposed himself to the work.

And before the Month of June 1637. he had finished and made ready for the use of the Altar, nine pieces of Plate, which the^b 3. of July following, were delivered into the Chapter-house at Windsor, Sir Thomas Rowe then Chancellor, Doctor Stokes Lieutenant for the Dean, Doctor Some, Doctor Elly, and Doctor Col-^b Ex Autogr. cl. penes praf. Jac. Palmer Cancell. vide porro Row's Journ. p. 21. lens then Canons of the said Colledge, being present; the particulars whereof, with their weight here follows.

	ounce.	d.	wt.	glt
^a Two little Candlesticks, chased and gilt, for Wax Candles	92	06		
Two Chalices, with four Patens	113	1		
Two great Candlesticks neat, for Tapers	553	15		
[*] Two little Basons	251	15		
One great Bason	210	00		
	1220	17		
			l.	s.
The value at 12 s. the Ounce came to	732	10		
Besides nine Cafes	9	10		
	742	00		
Of which he received by way of ^d impress	600	00		
The rest, being	142	00		
was paid unto him by Doctor Stokes, the foresaid 3. of July.				

^{*} These three Basons contained the whole History of Christ, in chased work.

^d Lib. R. p. 97.

But notwithstanding all the foresaid care taken by the then Sovereign, to promote the work; and a subsequent Order passed in Chapter the^f 18. of April an. 13. f. Row's Journ. Car. 1. commanding the Chancellor to signify the Sovereign's commands, for due^{p. 13.} payment of the Obits, and other sums due according to the statutes, yet were some of the Knights so visibly backward in their payments, That, at a Chapter held the^g 14. of June following, when the first parcel of Plate before mentioned was finished (an account being given by the Chancellor to the Sovereign and Knights-^h Lib. R. Companions of^h 784 l. received upon the two Orders aforesaid, and that 774 l. k thereof had been disbursed) there appeared to beⁱ 289 l. not undemanded, but unpaid; and which the^k Dean of Windsor could not receive; some of the Knights-^l Row's Journ. Companions^l deferring, and others refusing, &c. ^m although there had not wanted^{p. 29.} diligence both in taking several journies, and giving many solicitous attendances^m in Litera ad Cancell. May 24. 1637. at London.

This Affair being thus represented to the Sovereign and Knights-Companions present in Chapter, their names being also read over who were in arrear, it was thereupon Ordered, ⁿ That the Chancellor should write in the Sovereign'sⁿ Lib. R. p. 133. name a peremptory Letter to every Knight-Companion, so behind in payment, to command present satisfaction, and signify in case of omission the Sovereign's displeasure, which very much hastned the bringing in of the Arrears; a Copy of which Letter here follows.

My Lord,

I Am commanded to put your I ordship in mind of two Statutes of the most Noble Row's Journ. Order of the Garter, whereof you are a Knight and Companion, the first being^{p. 31.} one of the Foundation, that every Earl should pay 50 s. to the Treasury in Windsor, for

for pious uses, upon the death of any Knight, and Brother of the Order; and that the money being unpaid one whole year, should be increased one third part, as a Fine, or mulct; the other made in a Chapter the sixteenth year of King James of blessed memory, and confirmed by three several Acts, of the first, fourth, and sixth years of his Majesty now happily reigning, That as well all the Knights of the Order then living, as all that should be chosen and admitted then after, should give and pay 20*l.* to the use and ornament of the Altar, and Chappel of Saint George in Windesfor; according to which Constitutions, there having lately been made divers pieces of rich Plate, presented, and consecrated in that Chappel, to the near value of 800*l.* the Dean of Windesfor, and Register of the Order, being by Statute Collector of such moneys received and disbursed, did bring in his full account unto his Majesty, the Sovereign and the Knights of the Order, at the Solemnity of the Feast of Saint George for this year, held by prorogation upon the 2. 3. and 4. of October; upon the view whereof your Lordship being found behind, and not having paid the sums expressed in the inclosed paper, with the Reasons how they did grow due, taken out of his account in writing, it was resolved in full Chapter, and registred among the Acts of the Order, that those several sums should be called for, and collected before the next Feast. In pursuance whereof, I then received command from his Majesty, with the approbation and consent of all the Knights then assembled, to signifie to your Lordship, under the Signet of the Order the Sovereign Will, That you make present payment of your arrearages, and to deliver it unto the bearer hereof, who is appointed Collector for this service; which if your Lordship shall delay, or refuse to do, being only the observance of the Statutes, to which you are obliged, both in honor and by your Oath; I have also express order to return your answer, and to signifie to you the displeasure of his Majesty, of all which respects I am confident your Lordship will be most tender. And so I humbly take my leave.

st. Martyns-Lane
9. Nov. 1637.

Your Lordships in all due observance

Tho. Rowe.

And yet notwithstanding all these Injunctions, in the List of the *Knights-Companions*, who ought to have paid, the^e Earls of *Somerset*, *Suffex*, and *Marr*, were at last returned insolvent.

All this Plate was ^ptreble gilt, and thereon were the *Scripture Histories* rarely well designed and chased; and especially the great *Bason*, and the Covers of two *Books* hereafter mentioned; for I find the said *Van Vianan*^q complaining, that he was a great loser, at the rate agreed upon; so much and so good work had he bestowed on them above the rest.

Upon the^r 22. day of *July*, after the delivery of this Plate into the *Chapell-house*, order was given by the *Sovereign* to the *Chancellor*, to remove and carry the afore recited parcels, to *Croyden* or *Lambeth* (whither the *Dean* of *Windesfor*, or some of the *Prebends* should also go) there to be consecrated by his Grace *Doctor Laud*, the then *Archbishop* of *Canterbury*; and from thence, they to see it returned, and safely delivered into the *Treasury* of the *Dean* and *Chapter* of *Windesfor*. But they went not thither according to the appointment; for this solemn and sacred action was deferred till the next *Feast* of *St. George*, celebrated at *Windesfor*; wherein at a *Chapter* held the 2. of *October* in the year aforesaid, the said Plate was ordered to be^r offered the next morning at the *Altar*, and there to be consecrated to *God* and his *service* for ever, by the *Prelate* of the *Order*.

And because the whole Ceremony was performed with great veneration, and all due reverence, his late Majesty being a high promoter of Ecclesiastical decency and holy discipline; we think fit to present it here at large.

On the 3. day of the said Month of *October*, being the *Feast* day (held by *Prorogation* at *Windesfor-Castle*) in the time of the 'second Service, at the *Versicle*, Let your light so shine before men, &c. *Walter* Bishop of *Winchester*, then *Prelate*, standing before the middle of the *Altar*, read certain select *Verses* out of the *Old Testament*, concerning the dedication of *Solomons Temple*, and the Riches thereof, the

^o See Sir James Palmer's account.

^p Vasa argentea tertium deaurata, Operis vere Dardalei.

^q See his Account, s. Row's Journ. p. 22.

(*Ibid.* p. 24.)

^r Row's Journ. p. 24. vide R. p. 128.

the first of which was taken from the 35. Chapter of Exodus ver. 4. the second being the 21. verse of the same Chapter; and the third taken out of the second Chapter of St. Matthew's Gospel verse 11. and afterwards fitted himself for the Offring.

At which time, the *Sovereign* descended from his Throne, as in the manner of offring, and thrice bowed down towards the *Altar*, "worshiping and adoring God" ^u *ibid.* in the middle of the *Choir*, and so past to the Degrees of the *Altar*; where humbly kneeling, did present and offer to God, the before mentioned great *Bason*, devoutly saying, "Part of thy bounty to us, O Lord Almighty, I offer to thee and to thy Service."

The Offring was forthwith received by the *Prelate*, and set upon the *Altar*; which done, every one of the *Knights-Companions* present (after the example of this holy King) in their due ranks and single, did offer his piece of dedicated Plate, "with the same words, and in like manner."

And that their ordinary Offring of Gold and Silver might not be interrupted or omitted; all the *Knights-Companions* at the time of offring the Plate, "made the same in another *Bason*, held by one of the *Prebends*."

Every of these holy Vessels being thus offered, and decently placed upon the *Altar*, the *Prelate* with his hand touched every piece severally, "as on God's part" ^{z Lib. R. p. 129} receiving them; and after made the following Prayers of Consecration and Benediction.

O Lord God, Heavenly Father, we thy most humble servants do earnestly entreat thee, that thou wilt graciously vouchsafe to accept these sacred Offerings, by the hands of our most gracious Sovereign Lord King Charles, and the most honorable Companions, which are here present dedicated to thee. Grant we beseech thee, and cause, that whatsoever is this day offered unto thee, may be preserved from all profane use, and may for ever abide consecrated to thy service, through Jesus Christ our Lord, Amen.

Let us bless thee our most glorious Lord God, for that it hath pleased thee to put into the heart of our most gracious Lord Charles, and of these Princes, to dedicate these oblations to thy service. Regard we beseech thee, from the highest Heavens, and pour out thy blessings upon the head of his most gracious Majesty: Bless him in his Royal Person, in his most gracious Queen Mary, in the most illustrious Prince Charles, and in all the rest of the Branches of the Royal Stock. Bless we pray thee, all those whose donations offered to thee, we have here this day received: Let thy blessing fall down (as the dew of Heaven) upon them, and upon their posterities, and upon all things which they have from thee; and grant that by the holy and devout use of these things, which are here offered, the glory of thy name may ever be proclaimed, and thy Majesty may by these our due observances be exalted, through Jesus Christ our Lord, Amen.

These sacred Ceremonies being * compleated, the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* marched to the great Hall to Dinner. * *ib. p. 130*

But to make some further addition to the Glory of this *Altar*, his Majesty that now is, at the time of his *Installation* into this most Noble Order (being the 22. of May 1638. * offered two large gilt *Water-pots*, chased with Histories also, a *Palmer's* weighing 387 Ounces 10 penny weight, wrought all by the hand of that ingenious Artist, the before mentioned *Christian Van Vianan*, which amounting (at 12 s. the Ounce) to the sum of 232 l. 10 s. besides 2 l. 16 s. for the Cases, and his journey to *Windeſor*, in toto 235 l. 6 s. 0 d. was paid by ^b Warrant from the *Sovereign*, dated the 20. of November, 1638. ^{c Palmer's Journ. p. 171}

These sacred Vessels were afterwards delivered by ^c *Indenture*, one part remaining with the *Chancellor*, and the other with the *Dean* and *Chapter* of *Windeſor*, to be kept for the service of the *Altar*. ^{b Sir Tho: Row's Accounts.}

And

And yet the bounty of this pious *Sovereign*, King *Charles* the *Martyr*, rested not here; he thought the *Altar* was not with all these sufficiently furnished, and therefore finding, by an^d Account rendered by the *Chancellor* in *Chapter*, the 23. of *May* 1638. that there had been collected (upon the afore-mentioned *Letter* of the 9. of *November* 1637. sent from the *Chancellor*) 137 l. 4 s. more, to the end it might be also employed, in further addition towards this so pious a work, and so religious a design; the said Money was by Sir *Philip Palmer*, then *Deputy Chancellor*, immediately given to the said *Christian Van Vianan*, by way of impress, for the providing of more Plate for the use also of the said *Altar*; and the 25. of *March* following, a *Warrant* issued under the *Sovereign's* hand, and Signet of the *Order*, for the advancing 200 l. more to the said *Van Vianan*, for finishing this additional Plate, bespoke by the *Sovereign*, as aforesaid; which sum was paid unto him, the 27. of *March* following.

The Plate made upon the last advance, was two great *Candlesticks*, weighing together^h 471 Ounces; on the foot of the one, was excellently chased, the Histories of *Christ's* preaching in the Mount; and on the other, those of the lost *Groat* and *Sheep*. Two Covers for *Books*, both weighing 233 Ounces; the one for a *Bible*, contained the Histories of *Moses* and the *Tables*, *David* and the *Ark* on the one side, and on the other, *Christ's* preaching on the Mount, the sending of the *Holy Ghost*, and *St. Paul* falling from his Horse. The other Cover was for the *Common-Prayer*; having the *Angel* of *Incense* on the one side, and the *King* healing the *Evil*, the manner of our *Preaching* and *Christning* on the other: and two great *Flaggons*, whereon were the Histories of *Christ's* *Agony* and *Passion*, weighing 268 Ounces; all being Silver gilt.

And now if we sum up the number, weight, and value of all the before mentioned parcels of Plate, wrought by the said *Van Vianan*, for the service of the *Altar*, we shall find them to be 17. pieces, weighing 3580 Ounces, 7 Penny weight, and amounting (with some other small Charges) to the sum of 1564 l. 6 s.

These last mentioned Parcels, were finished against the *Feast* of *St. George* held at *Windefor*, the 18. 9. and 10. days of *October* 1639. upon the last day of which *Feast*, in the time of the second Service, the *Knights-Companions* descended from their Stalls, and^k *Offred* the same at the *Altar*; and thereupon, after the usual manner, and with the accustomed words, were they consecrated by the *Prelate* of the *Order*; and the 19. of *November* following, delivered to the custody of the *Dean* and *Canons* of *Windefor*.

And doubtless, this pious *King* would have bestowed much more in honor of this sacred place, had not the late unhappy times drawn on; an Age indeed so wicked, that the most solemn dedication to *God*, could not protect these holy *Vessels* from prophane hands; for a Generation rose up, who would have us think, they did *God* good service, when they stript his *Church*, of all that the piety of our Ancestors, for his sake, had endowed it with: and among other sacred places, this *Chappel* of *St. George* received not the least share of misfortune.

For on the 23. of *October* 1642. (Sir *John Seyton* having that day seized on *Windefor Castle*, for the *Parliament*) one^m Captain *Fog* came immediately to the *Colledge*, and demanded the Keys of the *Treasury*; but not finding the three *Key-Keepers*, he caused a Smith to make strong Bars of Iron, who with them brake down the stone jaums, forced open two doors, andⁿ carried thence all the aforesaid rich chased and other Plate, made sacred and set apart for the service of *God*; (except two double gilt *Chalices* weighing 62 Ounces, and two double gilt *Flaggons*, weighing 98 Ounces one half) an action to be stigmatized with an indelible Brand!

° About the end of *May* following (not long before the *Recess* of the *Colledge*) *Collonel Ven*, then Governor of *Windefor Castle* for the *Parliament*, was instant with the *Dean* of *Windefor*, and the *Officers* there, that he might see, what Goods were in the *Chapter-house* and *Vestiaries*; which having viewed, he within a few days after demanded all the Keys, and kept them; saying, *The Charge of them, as well as of the Castle, lay on him, and he would keep them*. How he afterwards disposed of the Ornaments and rich Goods, hitherto safely deposited there, for

holy

d lb. p. 22.

e Ex Autogr.
penes pref. Jac.
Palmer

f Penes pref.
Jac. Palmer.

g See *Vianans*
Acquit.

h See *Vianans*
Accounts.

i Palm. Journ.
pro an. 1639.
p. 16.
k Ibid. p. 63.

l Ex Autogr.
penes pref. Jac.
Palmer.

m Ex Autogr.
n penes D.
Chr. Wren super
Ord. Regist.

o Ex alio
p l Autogr.
penes pref. D.
Chr. Wren.

holy uses, and service of the *Chappel*, I cannot tell; but this I can assure, that the *Inventory* following, is a perfect transcript, from the Copy thereof made by the hand of Doctor *Chr. Wren*, the late reverend and worthy *Dean*, out of the *Colledge Book*, and by him delivered to me, of all the particulars, *Collonel Ven* so posselt himself of.

A Memorial of the *Goods and Monuments* belonging to the King's Majesty's
Free *Chappel* and *Treasury* at *Windefor*.

- Imprimis, 6 Long Cushens of Cloth of (wire) Gold, fringed and tasselled suitably.
- Item, 2 other long Cushens of Cloth of Gold, interwoven with tufted Flowers of Crimson Velvet fringed, and tasselled suitably.
- Item, One other long Cushen of Cloth of Gold, backt with Blue wrought Velvet, fringed and tasselled, Gold and Blue.
- Item, 4 Long Cushens of rich wrought Velvet, Blue, fringed and tasselled suitably.
- Item, 8 Cushens of wrought Velvet Azure, upon a yellow ground bottomed suitably.
- Item, The Hangings of the head of the *Choire*, 12 foot deep, of Crimson Velvet and Gold.
- Item, The great Bible ruled, covered with Purple Velvet, with thick Silver bosses double gilt, strung with Blue Ribband, fringed with Gold.
- Item, Another large Bible imbossed.
- Item, 13 Rich Copes, embroidered and wrought in Gold.
- Item, 2 Rich Copes of Wire-Gold.
- Item, A Pulpet-Cloth and long Cushen of Crimson tufted Velvet, interwoven with Gold.
- Item, Another larger Pulpet-Cloth, Crimson Damask, interwoven thick with Flowers de Lis, Portcullices, Roses, and Crowns of Gold.
- Item, The Blue Velvet Robe of *Gustavus Adolphus King of Sweden*, embroidered with the Garter, Pearl and Gold, with the Strings and Tassels suitable, Blue and Gold.
- Item, 4 Other rich Robes of Purple Velvet, with like Embroideries, Strings, and Tassels.
- Item, 2 Large Pieces of Cloth of Gold, never used (designed for State Cloths) given out of the Wardrobe to the *Colledge*.
- Item, A large Carpet of Wire-Gold, for the Communion Table.
- Item, A large Cushen of the same suit.
- Item, The Cloth of State of rich Baudekin, over the Kings Seat, and at the back.
- Item, Another of Crimson and Gold Velvet, chequered.
- Item, A great Brass pendant Candlestick, with 12 Branches.
- Item, One lesser, with 6 Branches.
- Item, 6 Great Brass Spouts, to quench Fires.
- Item, 12 Leather-Buckets.
- Item, The great Brass Bason, given by the Founder, with a foot to it for Christnings.
- Item, 2 Fair standing Brass Candlesticks, double gilt.
- Item, One Brass Lamp, to hang in the body of the Church.
- Item, The great Brass Desk in the middle of the Chappel, with the Bible in two Volumes, on each side fairly bound and embossed.
- Item, 13 Seats of the Poor-Knights, lined with scarlet, &c.
- Besides all the long Wainscot Pews moveable, serving at the Sermons and Divinity Lectures, thrice in the week.
- Item, 19 Wainscot Seats, with Ballisters, &c.

But no less pious than his Predecessors, hath the present *Sovereign* manifested himself, who finding (shortly after his happy Restauration) that through the licentious barbarism of the late times, the sacred *Utensils* formerly dedicated to the

9 } Lib. Carol.
1 } pag. 32, 33.
5 }

the use of the *Altar*, had been sacrilegiously plundered, and being religiously earnest to set again on foot, so laudable a way of provision, for supply of all things necessary to its service and ornament, upon the Petition of the *Dean* and *Canons* of *Windsor*, exhibited in *Chapter* held at *Whitehall* the 20. of *June*, did with the cheerful and ready consent of the *Knights-Companions*, revive the foresaid *Decrees*, for raising the like sums of money, both from *Himself*, and the present and future *Knights-Companions*, which by virtue of the foresaid *Decrees* had been formerly collected.

Hereupon, his Highness *James Duke of York*, bestowed a fair piece of *Plate* of 100 *l.* value, and the *Earl of Southampton* gave not only what the *statutes* required, but half as much more, towards the *Plate* designed to be bought with the rest of the *Knights-Companions* Money. And to enable *Dr. Brune Ryves* the now *Dean* of *Windsor*, to collect and receive, not only from the rest of the present *Knights-Companions*, but all other, within one year after their Election, the sum of 20 *l.* a piece, and thereof to give an account at the following *Chapter*, and so successively of slackness or failure if any should be, the *Sovereign* in *November* following, issued out his *Warrant* unto him, under the Sign Manual and the Signet of the Order.

How the money hereby collected was bestowed, as also what other *Plate* was added to the Furniture of the said *Altar*, by some other piously disposed persons, will appear by the following *Inventory*, taken by *Dr. Browne Chanter*, and *Dr. Evans* Steward of the *Colledge*, the 20. of *July* 1667. and from them transmitted to my hand.

A pair of plain gilt Flaggons, bought with the money collected from the Knights-Companions, weighing 150 Ounces.

A pair of wrought Flaggons, with great Bellies, having the Figure of St. George on Horseback on their Covers, the rest all Feather-work, bought with the Knights money, weighing 414 Ounces.

One plain small Bason, wrought and gilt only in the middle of it, weighing 25 Ounces and one half.

A pair of plain gilt Chalice and Covers, bought also with the Knights money, both weighing 163 Ounces and one quarter.

A large embost Bason, with the Figure of Mary Magdalen, washing our Saviours Feet, weighing 198 Ounces.

A pair of large Taper Candlesticks embost, with Nozles to them, weighing 264 Ounces.

*These Candlesticks and Bason were obtained of her Highness Princess Mary about November 1660. by Dr. Brown, but she dying before the following Christmas, the charge (being 233 *l.* odd money) lay upon the Colledge.*

A pair of large Basons gilt and embossed with the History of Christ, at his last Supper upon one; and on the other, of Christ blessing the young Children coming to him, being obtained by Dr. Brown of her Highness the Dutchess of York 1661. both weighing 305 Ounces.

A plain gilt Corporas, the gift of Sir Richard Fanshaw, weighing 24 Ounces.

A double gilt Chalice and Cover, with a broad Foot, having a Cross on the Cover, and another on the foot; the gift of the Lady Mary Heveningham, weighing 33 Ounces.

We see in the foregoing *Inventory*, taken 1643. that formerly there was belonging to the *Altar* a large *Carpet* of *Wyre-Gold*, this we find mentioned in the *Inventories* taken the 4. of *February*, an. 43. *Eliz.* the 9. of *November*, an. 17. *Jac. R.* and the 12. of *December* 1638. an. 14. *Car. 1.* and being seized on by *Colonel Ven*, as aforesaid, is now supplied in a *Covering*, given by the present *Sovereign*, consisting of seven panes of *Cloth of Gold*, and purple *Velvet*, with a fair broad *Gold Fringe* towards the *Front*, and a narrow *Gold Fringe* on the two sides. There is now also two *Diaper Table-Cloths*, *Diamond work*, made

to

to lye upon the *Altar*, and two fine *Holland Cloths*, with great Buttons and red Crosses in the middle, to cover the consecrated *Elements*, in the time of the Communion.

If we should pass hence to the ancient Ornaments of the *Chappel*, we shall find them many and rich, even so early as *an. 8. R. 2.* but because their particular mention will better suit with the larger Discourse, we intend upon the *Chappel* it self, we shall refer it to that work, and here remember only these two, namely, by the *Image* of our *Lady*, and *Equestrian Statue* of *St. George*.

There is notice taken of an *Image* of the blessed *Virgin Mary*, given to this *Chappel* by King *Henry the Fifth*, in the first year of his *Reign*, which weighed *117 pound Troy weight*. He liking the workmanship, caused *John Cause* a skilful *Dutch Goldsmith*, to give some additional ornament thereto; after which, it then weighed *Troy weight 165 pound and one quarter*; and this *Image*, in the *9. year* of his *Reign*, he commanded to be set up in *St. George's Chappel*, there to remain for ever.

As to the other, there is an *Order of Chapter*, *an. 36. H. 8.* entred in the *Black-Book*, by which it appears, that the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* (to increase the honor of their *Patron*) agreed to raise money and employ it towards making his *Statue* sitting on Horseback; the *Sovereign's* proportion of this contribution was *5 l.* every *Duke* gave *2 l.* an *Earl 1 l. 6 s. 8 d.* a *Baron 1 l.* and a *Batchellor Knight 13 s. 4 d.* These two being thus mentioned, we need insert no more here, seeing that *Inventory* taken *an. 8. R. 2.* and the others since, will afford plenty of such like rich and excellent pieces of work, which heretofore belonged to this sacred place.

The *East wall* of the *Chappel* is now adorned with *22 panes* of *Cloth of Gold* and *Purple Damask*, the gift of the present *Sovereign*: But those in the late *Sovereign's* *Reign* were of *Crimson Velvet* and *Gold*. In the middle of these Hangings over the *Altar*, have been heretofore placed very rich *Altar-Cloths*, concerning some of which, we have met with a *Memorial*, which informs us, that it pleased the late *Sovereign*, in a *Chapter* held at *Windefor* the *6. of November an. 9. Car. 1.* to give command, that two little pieces of *Arras Hangings*, then hanging over the *Altar* (in one of which was wrought the *Picture* of *St. George* on Horseback, and on the other, of the *Assumption* of the blessed *Virgin*) should be preserved in such places where the *Dean* and his *Lieutenant* should think best, for the use of the said *Altar* at the *Grand Feast*, and other *Festivals* of the *Order*: Hereupon they were^d fetched from *Windefor*, to set over the *Altar* in the *Chappel* at *Whitehall*, *an. 11. Car. 1.* the *Feast* of *St. George* being then celebrated there.

There are now two other pieces of *Arras*, which are appointed to that use; the one hath the *Pictures* of *Christ* and his *Disciples* at *Supper*; given by the late *Right Reverend Father* in *God Bryan Lord Bishop of Winchester*, *Prelate* of the *Order*; the other, of *Christ* and the two *Disciples* at *Emmans*, wrought after *Titian's* Original, given by the right *Honorable*, the *Lady Mordant*, Wife to the *Lord Mordant*, late *Constable* of *Windefor*.

As to the *Sovereign's Royal Stall*, it hath in all times had over it a rich *Canopy*, the back and foreparts adorned with materials of the same sute, with a long *Velvet Cushen* before, to lay his *Books* on, another shorter for his *Seat*, and a third to kneel on. The *Canopy* prepared against the *Grand Feast*, *an. 13. Car. 2.* and which now adorns it, is made of two panes of *Purple Velvet*, and one of *Cloth of Gold*, having a broad *Gold Fringe* at the bottom, a narrow one at the top, and an inner *Valance* of the same, with a *Purple Silk Fringe*; the back and fore piece is of three panes also, one of *Gold*, the other two of *Purple Velvet*, with a narrow *Gold Fringe* about it. The three *Cushens* are of *Purple Velvet*, garnished with *Gold Fringe*, and *Tassels* of *Silk* and *Gold*.

Each of the *Knights-Companions Stalls*, are also furnished with the like number of *Cushens*.

Lastly, The *Pulpit* is hung with *Crimson Damask*, inwrought with small *Flowers* of *Gold*, *Portcullices*, *Flowers de Lis* and *Roses*, all crowned; this

^u (MS. vet.
w³ penes Sil.
x (Taylor gen.
fil. 159.

^y Pag. 118.

^a (Lib. R.
b³ p. 88.
c)

^d Lord Cham-
berlains Book
of Warrants, at
an. 1634, ad
an. 1641. p. 56:

Pulpet-Cloth was preserved from the ravenous hands of Collonel *Ven*, and now restored to its former use.

It may be judged how other of the *Sovereign's Chappels*, wherein the solemn Services at the *Grand Feast* were celebrated, besides this of *St. George at Windsor*, have been set forth and adorned, by one or two Examples in that kind; for ^e *an. 22. H. 8.* though the *Sovereign* held the *Feast* of *St. George at Windsor*, yet on the *Evening*, he went not to *St. George's Chappel*, but heard Divine Service in the *Chappel* above in the upper *Quadrangle* (at the West end of *St. George's Hall*) which *Chappel* was hanged on both sides, a rich Cloth of State set up, and a haut pas of a foot high for the *Sovereign*, as also a little foot pace, 13 inches broad, and 7 inches high for him to kneel at. The *High Altar* and that set before the *Sovereign*, were richly garnished with Images and other Ornaments of Gold and Silver gilt, &c.

We also find, that at the *Feast* of *St. George* held at *Whitehall*, ^h *an. 5. Eliz.* the *Chappel* was hung with Cloth of Gold, and the Stalls both before and behind with Cloth of Tissue, set with Scutcheons at their back. The *Sovereign's Royal Stall* was adorned with a Cloth of State, and furnished with Cushens, as were the *Emperor's*, the *French King's*, and the *Sovereign's Lieutenant's*. But ^k *an. 7. Eliz.* all the Stalls of the same *Chaire* were hung with Carpets, both before and behind.

At the *Feast* held there *an. 19. Car. 2.* the *Chappel* was hung with the rich Hangings of Silk and Gold, wherein the twelve Months were with excellent skill described. The *Altar* was furnished with chased gilt Plate, *viz.* one large *Bason* in the middle, and two less on either side, two fair *Candlesticks* with unlighted Tapers, and two large *Water-Pots*; on the lower rank was set another *Bason*, four *Flaggons* and two *Service-Books*, covered with like gilt Plate; and lastly, the *Sovereign's Stall* had the rich Furniture of Cloth of Gold and Purple Velvet fetcht from *Windsor* to adorn it.

SECT. VII.

The furnishing of St. George's Hall.

THE care of making ready and furnishing *St. George's Hall* (or other Room, either there or elsewhere, set apart for the *Grand Dinner*) is committed partly to the *Gentleman-Oficer* of the *Black-Rod*, and partly to the *Sovereign's Surveyor General* of his Works.

The *Surveyor-General*, upon directions given him by *Warrant* from the Lord Chamberlain of the Household, causeth a Floor to be raised at the upper end of the Hall, whereunto is an ascent of three steps, and thereon he raiseth a Table 12 Foot long, and 3 foot and a half broad for the *Sovereign* to dine at. On the left hand of this Table, is set a *Cupboard* for Plate, and a *side Table* for Glasses, &c. to serve the *Sovereign's Table*, as occasion shall require. Upon the uppermost step of the raised Floor, is set a strong Rail with Banisters cross the Hall, to keep off the Croud from the *Sovereign's Table*, that so the *Officers* appointed to attend thereat, may with more liberty perform their several Duties and Services.

On the right hand of the *Sovereign's State*, and below the Rails, are Tables placed for the *Knights-Companions* to dine at, which sometimes hath been but one Table, continued to the lower end of the Hall, with a long Form on the back side; but of late the same space hath been taken up, and furnished with several small Tables; those set up *an. 23. Car. 2.* were 6 foot long, and 4 and a half broad, and set at two Foot distance, each from the other. At the *Grand Feast* held

^e MS. in Off.
f. sic. Arm.
g. (M 17 f. 31.
32.

^h MS. genes
i. 2. W.D.N. f.
9. b. vide etiam
MS. f. 20.

^k Ibid. f. 20.

^l MS. in Offic.
Arms. [M 17]
f. 29.

held at *Whitehall*, ^{m. Lib. R. p. 78.} *an. 8. Car. 1.* the *Tables* for the *Knights-Companions* were (like the *Sovereign's*) fenced in with *Rails*; within which the *Waiters* only being admitted, the *Dishes* of *Meat* and the *Banquet*, were thereby handi-omly freed from the troublesome (yet usual) croud and rapine of the people; the like hath been done at all times since, with *Bars* to open and shut against every *Table*.

Opposite to these, between the *Hall Windows*, are set so many side *Tables*, each 5 foot long, and 2 and a half broad, all railed in with *Bars*, as are the *Tables* provided for the *Knights-Companions*; so that each of theirs hath a side *Table*, furnished with *Plate*, *Glasses*, *Wine*, *Beer*, &c. to serve it.

The *Hall* being thus far prepared, the *Black-Rod* receives the *Lord Chamberlain's Warrant*, for taking into his *Custody* such rich and costly *Furniture*, both for the *Sovereign's State*, and hanging the *Hall*, as is thought worthy to contribute to the honor of this *Festival*. The *State*, placed at the upper end of the *Hall* before the *Sovereign's Table*, is usually the richest; the *Hangings* of the best sort: and such were the four pieces of *Arras*, wherein were wrought the *History* of *St. George*, bought by ^{n. Lib. v. c. Cat. con. in Offic.} *King Henry* the Sixth. The *Story* of *Abraham* and *Lot* (most curious for design and workmanship, most costly for *Silk* and *Gold*) with the rich *State*, *Chair*, *Cushens*, and *Stools* belonging to the *Queen's Privy Chamber*, did adorn the *Presence-Chamber* at the *Feast* held at *Whitehall*, *an. 11. Car. 1.* And the same *Hangings* were made use of in the *Banqueting House* there, ^{Mag. G. m. a. v. b. f. 95. b.} *an. 19. Car. 2.* ^{o. Lord Chamberlain's B. ok of Warrants from 1623. 10 1641. p. 56.}

And in case the appearance at *Windsor*, of the *Nobility* and great *Performances*, with their *Trains*, be extraordinary, then doth the *Sovereign*, upon such an occasion, direct his *Letters* to the *Dean* and *Prebends*, desiring them to give way, that the *Black-Rod* may survey their *Houses*, and therein appoint *Lodgings* for so many as may be entertained there; and thus was it done, upon the coming hither of the *Emperor Sigismund*, ^{p. Lib. N. pag. 57.} *an. 7. H. 5.* for the *Sovereign* being desirous that their *Servants* and *Attendants*, as well as others of his own *Retinue*, might be in all respects handi-omly accommodated, and because the *Privilege* was granted to the *Dean* and *Canons*, in the *Charter* of 27. *E. 3.* That no person, of what *state* or *condition* soever, might upon any colour lodge or tarry in their *Houses* without their consent; he thereupon wrote his *Letter* to them, thereby desiring liberty and allowance, for the *Black-Rod* to take up *Lodgings* in their *Houses*, in such an extraordinary case; yet withal signified, it was not his intention, that under colour of this they should be so charged for the future. ^{q. Appendix N. CLXXII.}

In *May an. 23. Car. 2.* a little before the *Grand Feast* was held at *Windsor*, there fell out some dispute between the *Gentlemen-Ushers* daily *Waiters*, and the *Knight-Harbinger*, who should appoint *Lodgings* in the *Dean* and *Prebends* *Houses*, for any of the *Knights-Companions*, or other persons of quality of the *Court*. The *Knight Harbinger*, alledged that by his *Patent* he ought to assign *Lodgings* for all persons, that are not lodged in the *King's Palace*, and that the *Gentlemen-Ushers* have nothing to do either without the *King's House*, or with those who are not the *King's Household-Servants*, as some of the *Knights-Companions* are not. But after much discourse on both sides, before the *Lord Chamberlain* of the *Household*, which occasioned a further enquiry into the matter, the only person for this *Affair*, appeared to be the *Gentleman-Usher* of the *Black-Rod*, who is an *Officer* of the *Order* within the *Colledge*, and whose *Predecessor* carried the before mentioned *Letter* from *King Henry* the Fifth, to the *Dean* and *Canons*; besides he is one, whom they have since willingly admitted of in such occasions, and consequently not been invaded by a *strange Officer*, and thereupon were the *pretensions* of the *Knight-Harbinger* set aside. ^{r. (A Book entered & ruled by St. George's Feast, in the Lord Chamberlain's Office.}

SECT. VIII.

Officers and Servants appointed to attend at the Grand Feast.

THE Names of those *Noblemen*, which the *Sovereign* appoints to the principal Offices of this *Grand Feast*, are put into a *List*, signed by the Lord Chamberlain of the Household, and delivered to the *Black-Rod*, who is to give them notice some convenient time before the *Feast* begin, that thereupon they may fit themselves to perform the duty of their several places.

w Lord Chamberlains Book of Warrants, from 1634, to 1641 pag. 256.

* A List of those *Lords* that gave attendance at the *Grand-Feast*, an. 14. Car. 2. when the present *Sovereign* was Installed.

For the Sword.
Earl of Northampton.
The Great Baron.
Earl of Bedford.
Earl of Hertford.
Earl of Clare.
Earl of St. Albons.
Lord Herbert of Ragland.
The Cupbearer.
Earl of Essex.
The Carver.
Earl of Carlisle.
The Sewer.
Earl of Dover.
The Surnap.
Earl of Elgin.
The Ewer.
Earl of Devonshire.
The Train.
Lord Russel.
Lord Herbert.
Lord Cranborne.

A List of those *Lords* that attended the *Sovereign*, at St. George's Feast held at Windsor the 8. of October, an. 15. Car. 1.

For the Sword.
Earl of Denbigh.
The Great Baron.
Earl of Denbigh.
Earl of Monmouth.
Lord Edward Howard.
Lord Herbert of Cardiff.
The Cupbearer.
Lord Herbert of Cardiff.
The Carver.
Lord Wharton.
The Sewer.
Lord Grandison.
The Surnap.
Lord Edward Howard.
The Ewer.
Lord Slego.
The Train.
Duke of Buckingham.
Earl of Oxford.
Lord Buckhurst.

The *Gentlemen* of the *Sovereign's Privy-Chamber*, who bear the *Canopy*, are those that are at the time of the *Feast* in waiting; and these that follow performed that service at the *Feast* held in October, an. 15. Car. 1.

x *Ibid.* p. 340.

* Mr. Gilbert North.
 Mr. John Carey.
 Mr. John Frecheville.
 Captain John Tyringham.
 Mr. Edward Tyringham.
 Sir Peter Kellegrew.

Mr. Henry Wentworth.
 Sir William Berkeley.
 Sir Henry Bruce.
 Sir Richard Young.
 Sir Robert Winde.
 Sir John Weldram.

Besides

Besides these, several other of the *sovereign's Officers and Servants* have notice from the *Lord Chamberlain*, to give their particular attendance at the *Grand Feast*, and of what quality they usually are, will appear by the List of those appointed to attend at *Windsor* the 29. of *May*, an. 23. *Car.* 2.

1 *Lord Chamberlain*, and *Servants*.

Mr. Vice-Chamberlain.

Groom of the Stool.

Gentlemen of the Bedchamber.

Bedchamber-men.

Privy-Purse.

Secretaries of State.

Secretaries of Scotland.

Gentlemen-Users of the Privy-Chamber.

12 *Gentlemen of the Privy-Chamber* in waiting.

4 *Gentlemen-Users daily Waiters*.

2 *Carvers*.

2 *Cupbearers*.

2 *Sewers*.

8 *Quarter-Waiters, Gentlemen-Users*.

2 *Pages of the Presence*.

2 *Chaplains*.

2 *Esquires of the Body*.

2 *Physicians*.

2 *Apothecaries*.

2 *Chyrurgeons*.

4 *Serjeants at Arms*.

Mrs. Sempstresses and Landress to his Majesty.

8 *Sewers of the Chamber*.

4 *Grooms of the Chamber*.

Pages of the Back-stairs.

14 *Lords* to attend his Majesty.

Captain of the Guards.

Officers of the Guard.

Officers of the Robes.

Yeomen of the Guard.

2 *Grooms of the Privy-Chamber*.

3 *Masters of the Tents*.

Groom-Porter.

Master of the Ceremonies.

Marshal of the Ceremonies.

Aid of the Ceremonies.

Removing Wardrobe.

Jewel-house.

Gentlemen of the Chappel.

Musicians.

5 *Messengers*.

Yeomen of the Bows and Guns.

16 *Trumpeters*.

Captain Cook, and the *Children of the Chappel*.

Serjeant-Trumpeter.

Drum-Major, 4 *Drummers* and a *Fife*.

y A Book intitled *St. George's Feast* in the *Lord Chamberlain's Office*.

St. Alban.

CHAP.

CHAP. XX.

THE
ORDER OF THE
Ceremonies
ON THE *Eve* OF THE
Grand Feast.

SECT. I

Of the beginning of the Grand Feast.

HAVING in the precedent *Chapter* spoken somewhat of the *Institution* of the *Grand Festival*, which the *Statutes* of this most Noble Order have fixed to the day of *St. George*; we come now to treat of its *Celebration*, with the Ceremonies performed throughout this great Solemnity, devised to set forth and illustrate the glory thereof: In the observation of which, both the first *Institutor*, and all succeeding *Sovereigns* have shewn the utmost of their provision and care: well knowing, that what is once slightly observed, will soon fall into disesteem, if not contempt. And here, what first occurs to our consideration, are the *Day*, the *Hour*, and the *Place*, when and where the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* are to meet, in order to the beginning of the *Feast*.

As to the first, although *St. George's day* (or such other day as the *Sovereign* shall please to nominate and appoint, by *Prorogation* in lieu thereof) be indeed the principal and *Grand day* of the *Feast*, yet does the *Feast* take commencement upon the *Eve*, and determines not until the third day following; and so the whole Solemnity takes up, inclusively, three days.

And this is clear from several *Articles* of the *Statutes*, wherein the course of the Ceremonies, to be observed at this *Grand Solemnity*, are set down; whether performed on the *Eve*, the *Feast-day*, or the *Morrow* after: And these three days together did the *Sovereigns* hold the *Grand Feast*, whether they personally celebrated

celebrated the same, or deputed other of the *Knights-Companions* to that Employment, the Clause in the *Commissions of Deputation*, limiting their power, either in general, *during the time of the Feast*; or in particular, *upon the day of St. George, the day going before, and that following, viz. the last day of the Feast*. In like manner, when in succeeding times, *Commissions of Prorogation* of the *Grand Feast* were made use of, we find the three days continuance of the *Feast* to be particularly mentioned in the body of those *Commissions*, namely, the day wherein (by such appointment) the *Feast* was to begin, the *Grand day* it self, and the day whereon it ended.

The directions given in the *Statutes*, for the order and course of this Solemnity, to begin with the *Eve*, run thus, *Every year, upon St. George's Eve, shall be an assembly or meeting of all the Knights-Companions of the Order, at Windsor Castle, &c.* and the same is positively enjoined by all other ^{a E. 3. Stat. Art. 9.} ^{b H. 5. Stat. Art. 9. H. 8. Stat. Art. 3.} *Bodies of the Statutes.*

And as the *Grand Feast* is generally, and for the most part, said to take commencement, ^{c An. 1, 2, 4. 5, 7, 9, 10, 22. 25. & 26. H. 6. & 1. Mar. & 9, 11, 13, 20, 29, 30, 31, 33. & 34. Eliz. d An. 23. H. 6. e An. 14. & 15. Eliz. f An. 2. & 4. Jac. R. g An. 17, 18. & 19. Eliz. h An. 43. Eliz. i An. 42. Eliz. & 3, 14. & 15. Jac. R. k An. 38. Eliz. l An. 3, 8, 12, 32. Eliz. m An. 27. H. 6. n An. 38. & 39. Eliz. o An. 6. Eliz. p An. 18. & 20. Jac. R. q An. 5. E. 6.} *in Vigilia Sancti Georgii*, or, as it is otherwise express'd in the *Black-Book*, *in Vigilia sature celebritatis*, or, *Vigiliis Divi Georgii*, or, *in Vigilia Festi*: So hath the *time* of this preceding day several other denominations given unto it in the same Register, as *Vesperis ante diem Sancti Georgii*, *in Vesperis Georgianis*, *in Vesperis Festi*, *in Vesperis Communionum*, and other whiles *Pridie Divi Georgii*, *Pridie Georgiane Solemnitatis*, *Pridie Festi*, *Pridie feriarum Divi Georgii*, and sometimes *Pervigilia*, and lastly in plain English, *St. George's Even*. All which signifie one and the same thing, and are but various names given to the Evening of the day foregoing, either that of *St. George*, or that whereon the *Grand Feast* is appointed to be held by *Prorogation*.

Thus we see, the *Founder* began his Solemnity upon the *Eve* of the *Feast-day*; which doubtless was in conformity to the Custom of the *Church*, who made the *Vigils* and *Eves* part of the ensuing *Festivals*, and as *Ushers* to the *Grand Solemnities*. And because the meaning of the word, and first occasion of observing also the *Eves* of Solemn Days, or great Feasts, by the *Church*, may haply be to many unknown; it will be here proper enough, to give a touch upon the original of this Custom.

Hospinian handling this particular, in his Book *De origine Festorum Christianorum*, draweth the antiquity of *Vigils* out of the Epistle of *Plinius secundus*, and the authority of Ecclesiastical Writers, from the *Apostles* times, and the next succeeding Age; for saith he, *In the Apostles days, and sometime after, when the Christians durst not appear in publick, because of the continual snares, Treacheries, and persecution of Tyrants, and Enemies of their Religion; they were forced to meet in the night time, and early before day, for the exercise of their devotion. And in the first Church after the times of the Apostles, when they stood not in fear of any persecution, they watched and fasted in their Churches all the week before Easter, or Passion-week; but especially on the Eve of the Resurrection; whence grew the Custom, both for Christian men and Women, to watch and fast on the Eves of great Solemnities, in their Churches; and at the Sepulchres of Saints and Martyrs.*

And *Durand* gives a reason, why these meetings were called *Vigils*, ^{u Rationale div. Offic. lib. 6. cap. 7. Nu. 8. Edit. Lugd. 1612.} *because anciently in the principal Feasts two Nocturnal Offices were performed [probably Watching and Praying] for the People which came to the Feasts, watcht all night in the Churches, spending their time in the praises of God.*

But as the best things may be abused, even *Virtue* and *Religion* it self, so it hapned in this religious duty, as *Hospinian* thus further relates, ^{w Loco supra citato. x Can 35. Elbertine Concilii. y Loco supra citato. z Orig. Ffest. Christi. cap. 7. pag. 26. 2.} *That forasmuch as in process of time, these Nocturnal Watchings occasioned much wickedness, therefore were the Women forbidden access thereto; because under pretence of Prayer, great abuses were oftentimes committed.*

Whence it came, that these kinds of *Vigils*, as *Durand* affirms, were also at length prohibited; which prohibition received confirmation from *Pope Innocent the Third*, in the year of our Lord 1210. and in the room thereof *Jejunia*, or *Fasts*, were appointed. Nevertheless those sorts of *Fasts* still retained the name of *Vigils*, as most properly implying the Duty originally enjoined. And

Durand further informs us, that this Institution was also called *Dispensatio*, ^d *because the Fast was put in the place of the Vigil.*

And yet to shew the antiquity of *Vigils*, it appears that, before *Christianity*, the ancient *Greeks* and *Romans* had the same kind of preparations, to some of their grand or solemn Feasts; and particularly at the ^e *Θεσμοφρία*, or Feasts of *Ceres*. ^f For, three days before this Feast, the Women were to abstain from all manner of *Vener*y, to which end they strewed *Agnus castus*, and such Herbs, under their Beds, as ^g *Dioscorides*, speaking of that Herb, testifieth. ^h *Pliny* also saith the same; and much to that purpose, the *Scholiast* of *Nicander*, ⁱ and on the third day they fasted; and this kind of *prosestium*, ^k *Plautus* plainly calls *Vigiliae* where he saith,

*Is adolescentis illius est avunculus
Qui illam supravit noctu Cereris vigiliis.*

And this the Uncle is of that young man
Who her by night at *Ceres Vigils* ravish'd.

In the ^m Temples of *Isis* and *Æsculapius*, the like nocturnal *Vigils* were also celebrated: Analogous to which were those ⁿ Nocturnal Rites of *Cotyto*, kept by the *Corinthians*, mentioned by *Suidas*, *Hesychius*, and ^o *Juvenal*.

*Talia secreta coluerunt Orgia tæda,
Cecropiam soliti Baptæ lassare Cotyto.*

^p At *Athens* such the *Baptists* Orgies were,
When they their publick Torches did advance,
And tir'd out their *Cotyto* in a Dance.

Which likewise for the same kind of abuses above mentioned, were condemned ^q chiefly by *Eupolis*, an ancient Comædian in his *Baptæ*, as the nocturnal of *Bacchus* by ^r *Enripides*.

*Τὸν οἷς γυναικας δέλει ἐστὶ καὶ οὐκ ἐστὶν
To Womens honors dangerous and unsafe.*

And for this cause were the *Vigils* many times ^s prohibited by the wisest of the Ancients, though Heathens, among whom *Romulus* was one, who made a Law, that no night *Vigils* should be kept in any Temple at *Rome*. An account of their wicked and beastly Ceremonies used in the Nights, and why they were likewise afterwards banished out of *Rome* and *Italy*, may be seen at large in ^t *Livy*.

But to proceed to the second Point, the *Hour*; as the *Eve* was appointed by the *Founder*, for the commencement of the Anniversary of this *Grand Feast*, so to make the time yet more certain, the *Statutes* express the exact *Hour* of meeting, for beginning the Solemnities, to be at the *Hour* of *Tierce*, which in many other places is called ^u *Hora tertiarum*. But this seemed not sufficient, to express clear enough, the meaning of a Law, wherein the punishment for late coming was enjoined, and by the strength of which, the penalty might be levied; and therefore in a *Chapter* held at *Windsor*, upon the ^v 10. day of *May*, an. 17. E. 4. A scruple being raised among the *Knights-Companions* then assembled, concerning the Exposition of these words ^w *Hora tertiarum*, the day before the *Feast*; whether it were intended at three a Clock in the Afternoon, or at the *Hour* of the Church, accustomedly used after Prime, before Noon. ^x *Because it seemed most agreeable to the Statute, and to the reason of the Statute, and to the penalty there enjoined, that it should be taken for the Hour after Prime before Noon; it was determined, that thenceforth it should invariably be so observed.*

The ^y *Registrum Chartaceum* recordeth the same interpretation of the words; and to let us see that this was immediately put in practice, in it there is entred down

^m *Hospin. de Orig. Fest. Christi. f. 26. a.*
ⁿ *Hospin. de Fest. Ind. c. 1.*
^o *Juvenal. lib. 1. Satyr 2.*

^p *Stapleton's Translation.*

^q *In Bacchis.*

^r *Hospin. de Orig. Fest. Christi. f. 26. a.*

^t *Livy. lib. 39. sub finem.*

^u *Lib. N. p. 4. 82. 142. c. 218.*
^v *Regr. Chartac. fol. 9. b.*
^w *Lib. N. pag. 142.*
^x *Idem.*
^y *Idem.*

down the Names of those *Knights-Companions*, present in the *Chapterhouse* with the *Sovereign*, both in the Morning and Evening of the said 10. day of *May* (being the *Eve* of the *Feast* of *St. George*) that is to say ^b before Noon, *Thomas* ^b *ibid.* *Marquess Dorset*, *William Earl of Arundel*, *Henry Earl of Essex*, *Anthony Earl Rivers*, *John Lord Scrope*, *Thomas Lord Mantravers*, *John Lord Dudley*, and *Sir John Aspley*; and in the ^c Afternoon, the *Prince*, *George Duke of Clarence*, *Richard Duke of York*, *James Earl Douglas*, *John Lord Howard*, *Sir William Parre*, *Walter Lord Ferrars*, and *Sir Thomas Montgomery*.

Another instance of which Practice, we again meet with, *an.* ^d 3. *H.* 7. on the *Eve* of the *Grand Feast*, held by *Prorogation* at *Windsor*; where the *Sovereign* ^e *Lib. N. pag. 166.* (in regard of the arrival of several *Ambassadors* there, and treating about the Affairs concerning which they came) ^f put off the usual *Chapter* until Noon. Whence it evidently appears, that the custom at this time also, was to begin the Solemnity in the *Morning*, and then to hold a *Chapter* as the first thing; which although (for the reasons before mentioned) the *Sovereign* thought fit to defer until Noon; nevertheless, he commanded in the mean time, that the ^f *Earl of Shrewsbury* should be installed, which was accordingly performed at the *Mass* of the *Virgin Mary*.

As to the express acception therefore of the *Hora tertia*, so far as it relates to the entrance upon our *Grand Festival*, and how neer the same, expounded and practised as above, agrees with that hour of *Tierce*, celebrated by the *Church*, and reckoned as one of the Canonical Hours, set apart for Divine Worship; may best be deduced from what is discoursed at large by ^g *Durant, de Ritibus Ec-* *g Lib. 2. cap. 3.* *clesie Catholice*, and by ^h *Durand* in his aforesaid *Rationale*, speaking both of ^{4. 5. 6. c.} them concerning the Canonical hours of the *Church*, which though agreed on by ^{h Lib. 5. Cap. 2.} both to be the same in effect, are by *Durant* most positively delivered, to be seven in Number, *viz.* *Matutine laudes*, or *Mattins*, the *Prima Hora*, or *Prime*, the *Hora tertia*, the *Hora sexta*, the *Hora nona*, *Vespers*, and the *Completorium*, besides the *Nocturnum Officium*, the Office for *Nights*; which is also divided into four *Vigils*, the *Conticinium*, *Gallicinium*, *Intempestum*, and *Antelucinium*; which several hours, after what manner they divided the day, it is pertinent to our purpose to enquire, since from thence may be collected, what time of the day was their hour of *Tierce*, seeming to be the same (determined by *King Edward* the Fourth, as aforesaid) in some respect.

And though these *Authors* do not very punctually determine the course of these *Hours*, yet it may well enough be implied, that since their *Mattins* was performed about break of day, and their *Prime*, by consequence, at 6 a Clock in the morning, the hour of *Tierce* was most probably 9 a Clock in the Morning, and so the rest at 3 hours distance one after the other; and this determination is clearly confirmed by my late worthy friend *Mr. Somner*, in his *Saxon Dictionary*, from an old ⁱ *Saxon Author*, whose words, he having cited in that ^{i Birthfrithus Rameiensis MS. verbo} Language, thus renders; *Sacram horam diei (veterum) tertiam (nostram) autem Nonam ante meridiem, Archiepiscopi cum Clero festiva celebrant hilaritate*: The *Kyppiole*, *Archbishop* with the *Clergie*, celebrate with feasting and mirth, the sacred hour of the day, which among the *Ancients* was the *Third*, but with us the *Ninth* hour, before Noon. This *Hora tertia*, or hour of *Tierce*, was by our *Ancestors* the *English-Saxons*, called *Unsepn*, as we find in venerable *Bede's* History of the Church of *England*, ^k *ppam unsepn tisse þonne mon mæsse oþtorc ringeð*, i.e. *à Ter-* ^{k Lib. 4. c. 22.} *tia Hora quando Missa feri solebant*; and so is it rendred by the said *Mr. Somner*, ^l *Unsepn, Tempus ante meridianum, hora diei veterum tertia, nostra nona*, the ^{l Diß. Sax. Lar. Anglicum; verbo} Forenoon, the third hour of the day, that is nine of the Clock with us. So in like manner is it used in an old *Manuscript* of the holy *Festivals* of the *Church*, ^{unsepn.} composed in meeter about the Reign of *King Edward* the First, in the life of *St. Brandon*.

^m This fowles song ek her Matyns; wel right tho it was time,
And of the Sauter seide vers; and seithe also Prime,
And Undarne seithe, and Midday; and afterward seith non.
And ech tye of the day longe as cristenemen scholde don.

R r r 2

m Penes Sil. d
Taylour gen.
fol. 72.

Of

n Lib. de Fe-
jun. adversus
Phylic. c. 10.
o Durandus de
Rit. Eccl. Ca-
thol. pag. 909.
p Canon fin. ii.
stint. 44. &
concilio Mart.
Papa, Can. 61.
q Ab horâ pri-
marum Vespere-
rarum post
meridiem. Lib.
N. pag. 209.
r Lib. N. pag.
216. Art. 3.
(Excod. Lib.
p. 218. Art. 7.
s Lib. R. p. 107.

Of the *Third, sixth, and Ninth Hours*, ^a *Tertullian* takes notice, as the most remarkable in humane Affairs, for the division of the day, the distinction of business, and more peculiarly to be solemnized by Prayers and Divine Service; but especially of all the rest the ^o *Hora Tertia*, is by preheminance called the *Golden hour*, and in the Canon Law ^p *Hora sacra*, doubtless, as being most peculiarly dedicated to some celebration of Divine Service.

But notwithstanding the forefaid declared and decreed Exposition made by King *Edward the Fourth*, we find it an. 11. H. 8. declared to be meant and intended for the hour of three in the ^q *Afternoon*; and when King *Henry the Eighth* came to model the *statutes* of the Order, he in two several *Articles*, declares and expounds this *Hora tertia* (which the *English* Version of those *Statutes*, renders the *Hour of Tierce*) to be ^r *Hora tertia post meridiem*, three a Clock in the *Afternoon*; and in another *Article* of the same *statutes*, ^s *Hora tertiarum, id est Hora tertia post meridiem*; and elsewhere ^t *Hora tertia Vespertina vel Pomeridiana*, which *Hour* as it was then settled to be the punctual time for the *Knights-Companions* meeting, to enter upon the Solemnity of the *Feast*, so hath it ever since continued unaltered, and usually observed.

Thirdly, the Place of *Assembly*, which, for the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* hath been in such of the *Sovereign's* *Privy Lodgings*, both at *Windefor* or elsewhere, as he hath appointed, and for the most part, either in the ^x *Privy*, ^y *Withdrawing*, or ^z *Bedchambers*. To this appointed Room do the *Knights-Companions* repair, to give their attendance on the *Sovereign*, first having invested themselves in full *Robes*, either in their ^a own Lodgings, or some other convenient Room at *Court*, where ^b *Garter* is to attend them, with notice of the approaching hour.

The *Knights-Companions* being come to the *Sovereign*, so also the *Officers* of the Order, habited in their *Mantles*, and bearing in their hands the *Symbols* of their several *Offices*, they wait the *Sovereign's* being vested in his *Robes*, and until he pass into the ^c *Presence-Chamber*, or ^d give beginning to the *Feast*, by opening the *Chapter* at this their meeting, before he go thither.

About the same time, the *Provincial Kings, Herald, and Pursuivants*, wearing their *Coats of the Sovereign's Arms*, so also the *Band of Pensioners*, armed with their *Pole-Axes*, assemble in the *Presence-Chamber*; but the *Prebends of the College*, vested in their *Tassaty Mantles* over their *Surplices*, and *Alms-Knights* in their *Mantles and Surcoats*, come no nearer than the *Guard-Chamber*. Lastly, the *Servants and Attendants* of the *Knights-Companions* meet without the *Guard-Chamber* door, whence spreading themselves down the *Stairs*, through the *Stone Gallery*, into the upper *Ward of the Castle*, or as far as their number will reach, all wait the *Sovereign's* coming forth into the *Presence*.

And here we think it needful (once for all) to inform our *Reader*, in regard not only the *Feast-day* of *St. George*, but the *Grand Feast* held in honor of the Order, hath been kept in several other places besides *Windefor Castle*, more especially *Whitehall*, *St. James's*, *Greenwich*, and *York*; that there are many Ceremonies and other particulars (hereafter falling under our discourse) which alter not with the *Place*, but appertain to the *Festival*, and are therefore to be observed every where alike; as for instance, the form of *Proceeding*, the manner of holding *Chapters*, the Ceremony of *Offering Gold and Silver*, the order of *Electing Knights-Companions*, *Swearing of Officers*, and such like: But others there are precisely local and particular, as the *Prebends* and *Alms-Knights*, going in the *Proceedings*, the *Offering* up of *Atchievements*, &c. to *Windefor* only; when therefore we speak of any of the former sort, which properly belong to the *Feast*, and not to the *Place*; it is to be understood, that as heretofore they have been, so now ought they to be performed in the celebrations thereof, wheresoever solemnized.

For since the withdrawing of the *Grand Feast* from *Windefor*, some of the *Officers of Arms*, curious in the observation of these Solemnities, performed in other places, have afforded us greater plenty of *Memorials*, relating to the ceremonious part thereof, than any in former Ages did, while the same was

continued

x Lib. R. p. 5.
94. 107. &
110.
y Ib. pag. 38.
Rowes Journal,
p. 8. Palmers
Journal pro
an. 1639. p. 16.
See his large
Journal, p. 2.
z Lib. C. pag.
174.
a c Tell. W. le
N. Cl.
b Lib. R. p. 5.
c Rowes Jour-
nal, p. 23. Lib.
R. pag. 126.
Palmers Jour-
nal pro ann.
1639. pag. 16.
and his large
Journal, p. 36.
d Lib. R. p. 5.
& 39.

continued at *Windsor*, and therefore, when the true place where the instance lies, shall be also cited by us, we would not have our *Reader* mistakingly conclude, that the Precedent urged, doth not full enough answer our purpose, unless it had been also fetched from *Windsor*. But that in these cases, the Ceremony or Example is such as is peculiar to the *Feast*, not the *Place*, where it is held; and ought to serve, and be used without alteration at any *Place*, where it shall please the *Sovereign* to keep the *Grand Feast*. And for those things appertaining to each other place, where the *Feast* hath been observed, as well as at *Windsor Castle*, we shall at all times note them with sufficient difference of place, as oft as we have occasion to draw them into Example.

SECT. II.

Of setting the Proceeding in order.

IN setting forth the order of *Proceeding* to the *Chapter-house* on the Eve of the *Grand Feast*, We are to consider the *Persons*, who constitute and make up the same, together with the course observed in putting them in their due place and rank: In order to which, we shall pursue our wonted method, and as a fore-hand satisfaction, note down and make observation of what materially relates thereunto, as we first meet with the *Persons* and *Degrees*; that so they may afterwards become applicable (if need be) when the same thing returns again into our discourse.

The particulars whereof we shall handle in the order and series as they proceed, whether it be in *Bodies* or *Single*, beginning with those of inferiour rank and so upwards; and therein consider, first the *Persons*, who peculiarly and more immediately relate to this most Noble *Order*, and who customarily and of duty do, and are obliged to attend, to make up the ordinary and constant *Proceedings*; and secondly, such who have now and then been occasionally or accidentally received thereinto *ad augendam pompam*, or otherwise, in regard their employments entitle them to a neer attendance upon the *Sovereign* at other times; both which sorts, we shall (as occasion is offered) again consider, either as among themselves, or in relation to the other *Degrees* who go in the *Proceeding*, next before or after them. And all this, to the end that the pretensions to precedence, among and between all *Persons* and *Degrees* herein concerned, may be the better made known and understood, and consequently without much difficulty be decided.

First then, we think fit for methods sake, to begin with those of the lowest rank and quality, namely the *Servants* and *Attendants* of the *Knights-Companions*; and thence rise upwards with the next higher *Degree*, according to the rule and right of precedence.

We are to consider therefore, that in times past the *Knights-Companions* appeared at the *Grand Feast*, attended with a goodly and numerous *Train*; but that having been removed from *Windsor* to other places, (as hath been before remembred) much of this glory was laid aside: Nevertheless, within a few years after that King *James* became *Sovereign* of this most Noble *Order*, the lustre of *Attendants* began to revive; for we find it entred upon the *Register*, in the 4. year of his Reign, 'That the ancient Custom, which for some years had been intermitted, wherein, at the Solemnity of this Feast, all the *Knights-Companions* were wont to go attended, each with a large *Train*; was recalled and brought back again into use.

Which height of gallantry, made splendid in the number of *Attendants*, and richness of their *Apparel*, within ten years after grew up to such excess, or rather exorbitancy, that it stood in need of a restraint, wherefore The *Sovereign* by

by the unanimous advice of the *Knights-Companions*, Ordained, Decreed, and
 f *Ibid.* p. 189. Commanded, 'That every one of the *Knights-Companions* of the Order, should
 have to attend upon his person, at the yearly solemnization of the Feast of the Or-
 der, 50 persons, and no more: The reason whereof we find elsewhere noted to
 be, ^g for saving of charge, and avoiding of emulation. But in the beginning of his
 g *MS. pen. E.*
 W. G. fol. 153. late Majesty's Reign of ever blessed memory, the gallantry of Attendants, began
 again to encrease and augment, insomuch that at the *Grand Feast* held at *Whitehall*
 h *Lib. R. p. 77.* the 22, 23, and 24. of April an. 8. Car. 1. we find it observed, ^h That the *Knights-*
Companions came forth attended, each with a Train of Servants very richly clad.

But to return, and enter upon the *Proceeding*; to the end the *Servants* and
 Attendants of the *Knights-Companions* may be exactly marshalled, the *Usher* of
 i *Collec. W. le*
 N. Cl. the Hall (whose ⁱ duty it is to rank them) ought to call for a Lift from *Garter*,
 of such *Knights-Companions* as are to be present at the *Grand Feast*, noted with
 their several places in the *Proceeding*, for his better directions, in assigning the
 k *Ibidem.* Attendants their due places, the order whereof is thus: First, the ^k junior
Knights Attendants, proceed one before another, on the left hand; upon whose
 right hands the second eldest *Knight's* Attendants go in equal rank with them;
 for this we observe to have been the general rule; where the *Knights-Compa-*
nions proceed in pairs, their Attendants go together; those belonging to the
 senior *Knight* of the two, on the right hand, and to the junior upon their left.
 But the order is otherwise, where any of the *Knights-Companions* proceed single
 and alone (which often falls out, as shall be noted in its due place) for then
 the Attendants belonging to that single *Knight*, go two and two, on both sides
 the way, opposite one against another.

But when the *Grand Feast* is celebrated at *Whitchall*, there the ^l *Knights-*
Companions Attendants are marshalled by the said *Usher*, on both sides the pas-
 sage, from the outward door of the *Guard-Chamber* down into the Hall, taking
 up all the room as far as the old *Chappel*; and because here they do not proceed
 in regard of the shortness of the processional way, but only make a stand for the
Proceeding to pass through them, they are ranked in a way different from that
 used at *Windefor*; nevertheless relating more especially to the order observed
 by their Masters: which method, in the *Sovereign's* *Proceeding* to the *Chappel*,
 at the before mentioned Feast, held at *Whitehall* an. 8. Car. 1. we find thus de-
 scribed, ^m The eldest *Knights-Companions* Servants, were ranked on the right
 m *Ibid.* hand of the passage, the chiefest of them neereft unto the old *Chappel* door; and
 the second *Knight* (being Companion to the eldest) his Attendants stood on the
 left side, the chiefest of them also next to the said old *Chappel* door. And in case
 the eldest *Knights* Fellow or Companion be not present in this *Proceeding*, then
 the eldest *Knights* Servants ought to be placed opposite one against another, up-
 on each side of the said old *Chappel* door: The like order is to be taken in mar-
 shalling the Servants of the other *Knights* of this most Noble Order, whose *Com-*
panions are then absent.

Secondly, the order of *Proceeding* amongst the *Alms-Knights* (who an. 1. Car. 1.
 n *MS. pen-*
 Edw. Faucon-
 bridge gen. had ⁿ two Waiters of the *Sovereign's* Hall, in their-Livery Coats, bearing white
 Rods in their hands, to proceed before them) is in general two and two toge-
 ther; the junior in place formost on the left hand, and his next senior on his
 right. And if sickness, or other lawful impediment, chance to hinder one or
 more of them, from going in the *Proceeding*, his junior is advanced into his
 place, and consequently all the other juniors do in like manner alter their pla-
 ces, and advance, to the end the superior place be still supplied, according to
 the right rule of marshalling the singles that compose a gross Body; but in this
 case, if their Number that attend happen to be odd, the *Governor* of the *Alms-*
Knights goeth last of all, and alone.

Thirdly, the *Verge* of the *Colledge* hath his place next ^o after the *Alms-Knights*,
 o *Collec. W. le*
 N. Cl. and immediately before the *Prebends* of the *Colledge*; who being habited in a
 Gown, beareth a Silver *Verge*, the Ensign of his Office. Nevertheless, hereto-
 fore when the *Prebends* went not in the *Proceeding*, on the Eve of the *Grand*
 p *MS. pen. W.*
 D. N. f. 15. a. *Feast*, the *Verge* proceeded first of all, ^p before the *Alms-Knights*, for so was it
 observed

observed on the Eve of St. George at *Windsor*, an. 16. *Eliz.* and in this manner ^q *Ibid.* we see it express'd, in the *Proceeding* set forth by *Marcus Gerchard*.

Fourthly, under the general Rule, relating to the *Alms-Knights*, are comprehended the *Prebends* of the *Colledge*, the *Pursuivants*, *Heralds*, and *Provincial Kings*; infomuch, that where either of the said *Kings* are absent, the senior *Herald* is advanced, and goeth in breast on the left hand of him who is then present: So also where any of the *Heralds* are wanting, his next junior ascendeth into his place, whereby it sometimes falls out, that the senior *Pursuivant* is joined to the left hand of the junior *Herald*. And if through these defects and absence, the number of the *Officers* of *Arms* be odd, then (with this difference in the forefaid rule observed among the *Alms-Knights*) the youngest *Pursuivant* goeth single by himself.

Touching the right of precedency, between the *Officers* of *Arms* and *Prebends* of the *Colledge*, in proceeding before the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions*, we find there hath been heretofore not only some question started, but the place contended for; infomuch that at the Installation of the Earls of *Shrewsbury* and *Cumberland*, an. 34. *Eliz.* the *Prebends* took place, and upon the 24. of *May*, an. 39. *Eliz.* at the Installation of *Thomas Lord Howard of Walden*, and others, the *Prebends* again endeavoured to pass between the *Officers* of *Arms*, and *Officers* of the *Order*; but *Charles Lord Howard of Effingham* then *Lieutenant* to the *Sovereign*, delivered his opinion on the behalf of the *Officers* of *Arms*, against the *Prebends*.

Yet did not this so settle the order of *Precedency*, or quiet the *Prebends*, but that the contention again broke out, an. 1. *Jac. R.* at the Installation of the Earls of *Penbroke*, *Marr*, *Southampton*, and *Duke of Lenox* (which hapned on the ninth, not second of *July*, in the forefaid year) even to such a height, that the *Prebends*, *Pursuivants*, and *Heralds* contended in the *Proceeding*; but the controverſie was on the next morning compos'd, by the *Lord Admiral* (then the *Sovereign's Lieutenant*) the *Lord Treasurer*, and the *Earl of Worcester*, and the order in proceeding thus settled; first, that the *Alms-Knights* should go foremost, the *Pursuivants* next, then the *Prebends*, and then the *Heralds* and *Kings of Arms*. And this Order in *Proceeding*, was afterwards observed on the 21. of *May* an. 4. *Jac. R.* at the Installation of the *Earl of Salisbury*, and *Viscount Bindon*, as also the 19. of *May* an. 6. of the same King, at the Installation of the Earls of *Dunbar*, and *Montgomery*.

Howbeit an. 9. *Jac. R.* and so afterwards, we do not find the *Pursuivants* mentioned in the *Proceeding* by particular name, nor otherwise, than in this following order, viz. *Alms-Knights*, *Prebends*, *Heralds*, &c. but it may be presumed that the *Pursuivants* then joined again in Body with the *Heralds*, (though for some years before divided from them, by the interposition of the *Prebends*) aswell as the *Provincial Kings*, and all of them under the Title of *Heralds*, and sometimes *Officers* of *Arms*.

And though at the *Grand Feast* held by *Prorogation*, on Sunday the 14. of September, in the said 15. year of King *James*, it is noted, that the *Prince* (being then the *Sovereign's Lieutenant*) proceeded to Morning Service on the Feast day, with the *Alms-Knights*, *Heralds*, *Prebends*, and *Officers* of the *Order* before him; from which manner of expression, it may perchance be supposed, that the *Heralds* went at that time next after the *Alms-Knights*, and before the *Prebends*; nevertheless, elsewhere we find them on the Eve of the forefaid Feast ranked in this following order.

The *Alms-Knights*.
The *Prebends*.
The *Officers* of *Arms*.
The *Knights* of the *Order*, &c.

And doubtless, they proceeded in the same order to the *Chappel* on the next morning, notwithstanding what is before said to the contrary, those expressions being

being interwoven with the general account given of the Ceremonies of the whole *Festival*, and more subject to mistake, where the Relation of the *Proceeding* is carried on in a continued Discourse, than where ranked (as is before exhibited) in particular lines, and in the order and form of a *Proceeding*: Besides, we no where meet with any Order or Decree, nulling the foresaid determination, made *an. 1. Jac. R.* which placeth the *Prebends* before the *Heralds*. Finally, to give an end to the disputes in this point, we find, that upon the *Eve* of the *Feast*, held at *Windeſor* the 23. 24. and 25. of *November an. 1. Car. 1.* the *Prebends* proceeded next before the *Pursuivants*, and the *Pursuivants* immediately before the *Heralds* and Provincial *Kings*; that is to say, all the *Officers* of *Arms* (except *Garter*, whose place is elsewhere) proceeded in one entire Body together; which order we find to be the same in all *Proceedings* after, that we have met with, and was so observed at the *Grand Feast* held at *Windeſor* *an. 13. Car. 2.* and ever since. But to proceed,

f MS. penes
Edw. Fakcon-
bridge.

g Lib. Carol.
pag. 39.

All the before mentioned *Attendants* wait in their several stations, till the hour of *Tierce*, when the *Sovereign* (having the *Knights-Companions* and *Officers* of the *Order* before him, and his *Train* carried up) passeth towards the *Presence Chamber*; notice of whose coming being given, the *Band of Pensioners* make the accustomed Guard and Passage, along the *Presence-Chamber*, the seniors standing towards the Lobby door; within which Guard, on either side, do the *Officers* of *Arms* place themselves: Upon the same warning, the *Teomen* of the Guard clear a like passage from the *Presence-Chamber* door, along the *Guard-Chamber*, unto its outward door, for the *Proceeding* to pass through.

h f Collect. W.
i 1. le N. Cl.

k f Sir Tho.
l Rows
Journ. pag. 23.
See also Sir
James Palmers
large Journ.
pag. 11. of his
Journ. pro an.
1639. pag. 16.

m Ex Collect.
W. le N. Cl.

p Lib. N. p. 58.

q Art. 2.

At the *Sovereign's* approach, one of the *Gentlemen-Ofsers* attending with the *Sword of State* (the point resting upon the ground) delivereth it to such one of the *Nobility* (not being a *Knight of the Order*) whom the *Sovereign*, as an honorary favour, hath before nominated, to bear it from thence before him in all the *Proceedings* of the *Feast*; during which action the *Knights-Companions* proceed forward, and being entred the *Presence-Chamber*, ^b flank on each side the *State*, with some small distance between them, and there make a stand. The *Sovereign* being also entred, passeth to the step before the *State* (the ⁱ *Nobleman* who beareth the *Sword*, and the five *Officers* of the *Order*, retiring a little on his right hand) and then turning himself towards the *Knights-Companions*, standeth there a while, until they have made their ^k *Reverences* unto him; which being performed, he re-saluteth the *Knights-Companions* by ^l putting off his Cap. This done, the *Sovereign* putteth his Cap on again, whereupon every of the *Knights-Companions* put on theirs, and immediately rank themselves, according to their due place, on both sides the *State*.

For the right understanding whereof, we are in the fifth place to note, that the order and method wherein the *Knights-Companions* are ranked (if they be all present) is two and two together, the ^m junior formost on the left hand, for that is his place in all *Proceedings*. But where any of them be absent, the Rule is different from that appropriate to the before mentioned Degrees; for although it be recorded, that upon the *Eve* of the *Grand Feast* held at *Windeſor*, *an. 7. H. 5.* The *Knights-Companions*, ⁿ went together in order into the *Chapter-house* and *Choir*. Yet this being exprest but in general terms, how it ought to be understood, will more fully appear, from the particular directions given for the order of the *Knights-Companions* proceeding in *King Henry the Eighth's Statutes*; where the ^{*} Law directs each *Knight-Companion* to proceed alone, at such time as his *Fellow* (who possesseth the Stall opposite unto him) is absent; but the order of such *Proceeding* will by a *scheme* be made more evident.

The *Proceeding* of the *Knights-Companions*, present on the *Eve* of *St. George*, to the Cloſet at *Whitehall*, *an. 3. Eliz.*

r MS. fol. pen.
V.D.N.

o The Lord Hunſdon.
The Lord Robert Dudley.
The Lord Loughborow.

Void.
The Viſcount Mountague.
The Earl of Shrewsbury.

The

The Earl of *Suffex*.

Void.

The Marquess of *Northampton*.The Lord *Clynton*.

Void.

The Lord *Howard* of *Effingham*.The Earl of *Westmerland*.

Void.

The Duke of *Norfolk*.The Earl of *Penbroke*.

In this Proceeding there are four *Knights-Companions* who proceeded alone; first the Lord *Hunsdon*, then being the junior *Knight*, because the Lord *Grey* his Fellow on the right hand, was in this Proceeding absent, and consequently his Stall became Void. Secondly, the Earl of *Westmerland*, in regard the Earl of *Rutland*, his left hand Companion, was then also wanting. Thirdly, the Marquess of *Northampton*, whose right hand Fellow, the Lord *Pagitt*, was likewise absent: and lastly, the Earl of *Penbroke*, because the Stall opposite unto him was then void by the death of the Earl of *Huntington*.

And to avoid all questions and disputes, touching precedency of the *Knights-Companions* among themselves, at *Feasts*, *Installations*, *Chapters*, or other occasional meetings, relating to the Affairs of the *Order*, and to settle an indisputable rule for them to observe, it was in the 16. year of the said King *Henry* the Eighth Decreed, in affirmation and explanation of the foresaid *Article* of the *Statutes*, that *Each Knight-Companion should take place in Procession, Station, or sitting at the Table, thenceforward, as he had his Seat or Stall in the Chaire, and not according to the degree of his birth or condition, unless the Sovereign were pleased that any should be made choice of, according to the Nobility of his Family, to sit at the end of his own Table, and perform any other thing by the by.* And this is the Law, which settled the precedency among the *Knights-Companions*.

Sixthly, the manner of Proceeding among the *Officers* of the *Order*, differeth from all before spoken of; for, being five in number, the three inferiour Officers (when they are all present) march in breast, and (of later times) in this following order: The *Register* in the middle, *Garter* on his right hand, and the *Usher* of the *Black-Rod* on his left.

But we find the form and course of Proceeding among these three Officers, hath anciently been observed otherwise, and therein we meet with much diversity, as for instance; in the Proceeding of the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions*, fairly limned and inserted in the *Black-Book* of the *Order*, at the beginning of the Acts of King *Henry* the Eighth's Reign, there *Garter* is placed in the middle, having the *Register* on his right hand, and the *Black-Rod* on his left, (so also at the Installation of the Lord *Cromwell*, an. 29. H. 8.) Nevertheless, in another Proceeding of the *Sovereign*, the *Knights-Companions*, the *Officers* of the *Order*, and the *Alms-Knights*, designed and etched by *Marcus Gerhard* hereafter inserted; there the *Register* is put in the middle, *Garter* upon his right hand, and *Black-Rod* on his left, as is the order at this day. And in truth, all Relations described in writing, of the manner of Proceeding since (which hath come to our view) are in this point delivered very imperfect and promiscuous; having neither distinction of the right hand man, or which of the foresaid three Officers went in the middle, to guide us with any certainty. For sometimes, when they come to speak of this very point (and here we take in what we find of proceeding upon other occasions, besides those used at the *Grand Feast*, in regard they ought to be alike in all) they thus deliver themselves. ----- Then followed the *Usher*, *Garter*, and the *Register*, as it is set down in the ^a 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. and 7. years of Queen *Elizabeth*: At other times thus, ----- then went *Garter*, the *Register*, and *Gentleman-Usher*, ^b an. 31. H. 8. ^c 1. E. 6. and 1. Car. 1. and again thus, ----- then the *Register*, *Garter*, and *Black-Rod*, as in the ^d 5. and ^e 34. of Queen *Elizabeth*, and the ^f 6. and ^g 15. of King *James*: And lastly thus, ----- then *Garter*, *Black-Rod*, and the *Register*, as an. ^h 16. Eliz. and ⁱ 4. Jac. R. Other Examples there are, which may be reduced to one or more of these heads, or the like uncertain manner of placing these three Officers; but these are the most obvious, and we need not be more particular. And seeing the error, or at least inadvertency of the Relators, have left the matter so confused, we cannot confidently enough

S f f

say

^q Ex lib. vocat.
Dalton. pag.
119. b.
^r See Ch. 21.
Sect. 3. sub
finem.

^a MS. fol. penult
W. D. N.

^b MS. in Offic.
Arm. [L. i. fol.
19. b.]

^c MS. pen. G. O.
T. fil. 87.

^d Coll. A. A.
V. W.

^e MS. pen. prof.
G. O. T. f. 203.

^f MS. penes
E. W. G.
Coll. A. A.

^g MS. pen.
E. W. G. f. 147. a

say to what method such contrariety in ranking them heretofore can refer; in regard they agree not in position of place, nor doth that clear enough set forth where, how, or in what particular, the right appears due to the priority of their several Offices.

After these 3 Officers the two superior proceed together, the *Prelate* on the right hand and the *Chancellor* on the left; yet *an. 11. H. 8.* we find that *Garret* and *Black-Rod* proceeded || between the *Prelate* and the *Sword*, but the very same morning at the *Grand Procession*, the *Prelate* proceeded * next before the *Sovereign*, affirming that was his room and place, and the other Officers of the *Order* went before him.

After the Officers of the *Order* follows the *Sword*, which is carried immediately before the *Sovereign*. In the beginning of *Queen Elizabeth's* Reign, it was born on the *Eves* of *St. George*, solemnized at *Whitehall* by some of the *Baronage*, for instance, *an. 3. Eliz.* by the *Lord Wentworth*, *an. 5. Eliz.* by the *Lord Scroop*, *an. 7. Eliz.* by the *Lord Shandos*, *an. 9.* by the *Lord Cobham*, and *an. 10.* by the *Lord Herbert*. But of later times, the employment hath been conferr'd upon persons of higher rank, as *an. 4. Car. 1.* upon the *Earl of Dover*, *an. 8. Car. 1.* upon the *Earl of Stanford*, *an. 9. Car. 1.* upon the *Earl of Danby*, and *an. 13. Car. 2.* upon the *Lord Viscount Mordant*, then *Constable* of the *Castle of Windsor*.

We are now arrived at the *Sovereign's* place in the *Proceedings*, *Et notandum quod superior Ordinis tempore Processionis in dicta Capella transibit retro totam sociorum Comitum*; which though the *statute* mentions here to be performed at the *Grand Procession*, yet doth it refer to all those times the *Sovereign* shall proceed to or from, no less than within the *Chappel*. And indeed this is the chief place in all

Proceedings, *being retained by *King Henry the Fifth*, as *Sovereign* of the *Order*, when *Sigismund* the *Emperor* was in person with him at the celebration of the *Feast of St. George* at *Windsor*, *an. 4. H. 5.* In ancient time, the *Sovereign* (if he were at *Windsor* to celebrate the *Grand Feast*) proceeded to the *Chappel* in person, as well on the *Eve* as on the *Feast-day*: But *Queen Elizabeth* was the first, who went not to the *Chappel* on the *Eve* of the *Feast*, held in the *6. year* of her *Reign* (though present in *Windsor-Castle*) but deputed the *Earl of Arundel* for that purpose; unless we shall here except *King Henry the Sixth*, who by *reason of sickness on the *Eve* of the *Feast*, celebrated *an. 32.* of his *Reign*, was necessitated to make a *Deputy* in his stead, and thereupon appointed the *Duke of Buckingham*, *President* of that *Feast*. The aforesaid omission of *Queen Elizabeth* at *Windsor*, and sometimes afterward, when the *Grand Feast* was observed at *Whitehall*, or *Greenwich* (first occasioned through her indisposition of health) as

in the *18. 25. 29. and 31. years* of her *Reign*, gave afterwards the occasion to *King James*, who at those three *Grand Feasts* he celebrated at *Windsor*, in the *1. 15. and 21. years* of his *Reign*, went not to the *Chappel* on the *Eve*, but deputed for the first *Charles Earl of Nottingham*, at the second the *Prince*, and at the third the *Earl of Worcester*. The like deputation did his late Majesty of ever blessed memory, *King Charles the First*, give unto the *Earl of Worcester* on the *23. of November*, being the *Eve* of the *Grand Feast*, held by *Prorogation an. primo regni sui*, who proceeded to the *Chappel* in his stead. But on the *Eve* of the *Grand Feast*, celebrated by *Prorogation* upon the *23. 24. and 25. days of September, an. 4. Car. 1.* the ancient custom (for many years intermitted) was restored, and the *Sovereign* (making no *Lieutenant*) proceeded to the *Chappel*, not only on that *Eve*, but duly observed the same Ceremony upon all *Eves* of the *Grand Feast* thence forward, in his own person. So did the present *Sovereign* in all the *Grand Feasts* held since his happy return. In those celebrations of the day of *St. George*, observed by *Queen Elizabeth* at *Whitehall* and *Greenwich*, before the *9. year* of her *Reign* (wherein the *Grand Feast* was removed from *Windsor*) as also after that year, she went not on the *Eves* into the *Choir* to *Vespers*, but only to the *Closet* of the *Chappel*; whither she proceeded from the *Chamber of Presence*, with all usual state, though in her ordinary Apparel, and without the *Robes* of the *Order*, and where she celebrated the first *Chapter*, accustomedly held on the *Eve*, and there deputed her *Lieutenant*, who supplied her place in the *Proceeding* thence, and in the *Choir*, whilst she remained

|| MS.

* MS. in Offic. Armis. M. 17. pag. 26. b.

k MS. penes W. D. N.
m
n
o
p Colles. W.
q le N. Cl.
r

f E. 3. Stat. Art. 3.

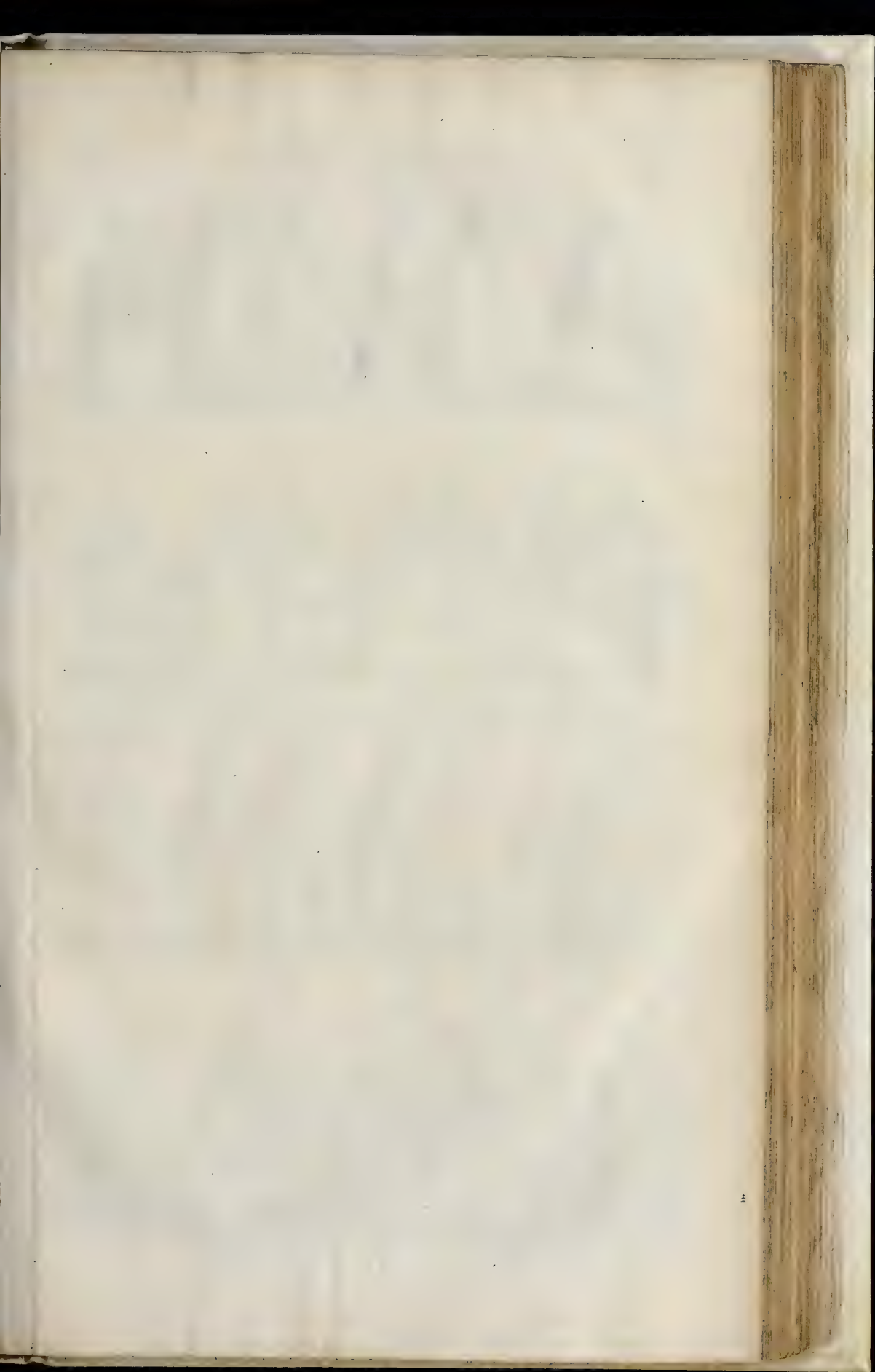
t Lib. N. p. 57.
dy lib. vocat.
Dalton, p. 36.

w MS. fol. pen. prof. W. D. N. f. 15.

x Lib. N. p. 111.

z MS. pen. G. O. 7. pag. 114.
* Ex Colles. W. le N. Cl.
a MS. pen. prof. E. W. G. fol. 151. a.
b Lib. C. pag. 189.
c Lib. R. p. 5.
d Ibid. p. 29.
e Ex Colles. f prof. W. le N. Cl.

g MS. fol. pen. prof. W. D. N.

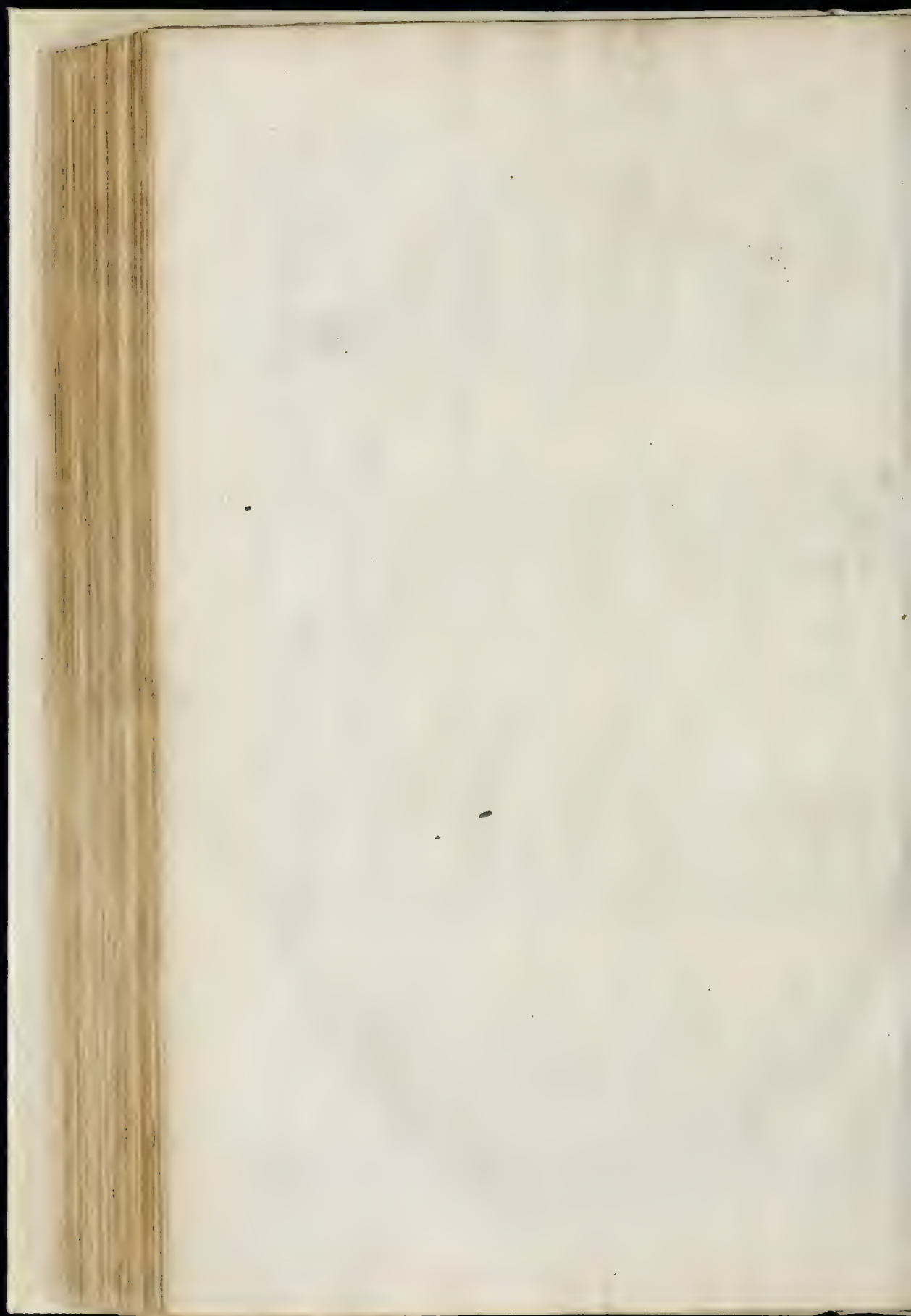




245. A Proceeding of the Sovereigne and Knights Companions, at the Feast of S George. designed by Marcellus



ward and set forth in the 20 yeare of Quene Elizabeth, by Thomas Dawes sometime Fougcroix Pursuēt at Law.



remained in the *Closet* until Evening Prayers were finished; at which time the *Lieutenant* returning to the *Closet*, the whole Proceeding passed again before her, unto the *Presence-Chamber*. But throughout King *James* his Reign, we cannot collect, that the *Sovereign* went at all, either to the *Closet*, or into the *Chappel*, upon the *Eves* of *St. George*, (when the *Feast* was celebrated at either of the foresaid places) but rather held the first *Chapter* before *Vespers*, in some of the *Privy-Lodgings*, where he constituted his *Lieutenant*, who immediately went into the *Presence-Chamber*, and from thence proceeded to the *Chappel*, to Evening Prayers.

Before we pass further, it will be necessary to observe, that from the *Presence-Chamber*, called in the Statutes the ** Great Chamber*, and elsewhere, the *Chamber of Estate*, or the *Kings Dyning-Chamber*, this first Proceeding to the *Chapter-house*, and all that follow during the *Feast* begin, and there take ending.

And now to close up the *Ordinary Proceeding*, the *Band of Pensioners* having stood in the *Presence-Chamber*, and made a spacious Lane for the Proceeding to pass through, so soon as the *Sovereign* and the Attendants upon his *Train*, are passed by, they (with the *Captain* of their *Band* or his *Lieutenant* before them) immediately fall in, two and two, from each side of the way, after the Proceeding, the seniors first, and so accordingly in order; and follow thence the *Sovereign* to the *Chapter-house* door: but at the *Feast* held *an. 8. Car. 1.* they went in guard, on *k* each side the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions*, the Lord *Goring* their *Lieutenant* (for the *Earl of Suffolk* their *Captain* was absent) going in the head of them.

Having under these precedent heads spoken as much as we conceive needful, to usher in the ordinary and usual Proceeding, upon the *Eve* of the *Grand Feast*; we think fit to exhibit a *Scheme* thereof here.

The Attendants on the *Knights-Companions*.

Alms-Knights.

Verger of the Chappel.

Prebends of Windsor.

Officers of Arms.

Knights-Companions.

Black-Rod.

Register.

Garter.

Chancellor.

Prelate.

The Sword.

The Sovereign.

Train-bearers.

Captain of the Pensioners.

Pensioners.

To the foregoing Proceeding, we shall touch upon those persons of quality, who to encrease the pomp and state of it, have occasionally been received thereinto; as also such other eminent in place and degree, as (though their Offices do not particularly relate to this most Noble Order) have nevertheless been taken into the Proceeding, merely by reason of their requisite attendance upon the *Sovereign*, in his Proceedings upon all other occasions.

On *St. George's Eve an. 3. Eliz.* the *old Ambassador of Sweden* was present, *1 MS. penes m^r W. D. N. fol. 2.* and being accompanied by the *Earl of Hertford*, went in the Proceeding to the *Closet* at *Whitehall*. He had place assigned him next after the *Train-bearers*, and immediately before the *Ladies Attendants* upon the *Sovereign*; and the next morning, when the *Sovereign* proceeded to the *Chappel*, the *new Ambassador of Sweden* went in the same place. So also the *French Ambassador an. 6. Eliz.* had place *n* near the *Sovereign*, at her proceeding to Morning Service on the *Feast-day* at *Windsor*. *o Ibid. fol. 17. b.*

As to those admitted upon the account of their Offices, we observed *Henry Earl of St. Albans*, the present *Lord Chamberlain* of the Household (being not hitherto a *Knight* of the Order) was allowed place on the right hand of the *Sovereign*, somewhat behind, in the Proceeding to the *Chappel*, at the *Grand Feast an. 23. Car. 2.* and the *Vice-Chamberlain* on his left hand.

ⁿ Collet. W. ^o le N. Cl. ^p The *Vice-Chamberlain* (who in the beginning of Queen Elizabeth's Reign was taken in to assist at the bearing up the *Sovereign's Train*) went on the ^a left hand the *Sword of State*, on the *Eves* of St. George at *Whitehall*, an. 23. & 8. Car. I. and 19. Car. 2.

^q Collet. W. le ^r N. Cl. The *Dean* of the *Sovereign's Chappel* at *Whitehall*, attends the *Sovereign* in the *Proceedings* thither, and the place he goes in is a ^q little behind the *Sovereign* towards his left hand. Next the *Dean* goes the ^r *Clerk* of the *Closet*; and then the ^r *Master* of the *Robes*; so also of late one of the *Masters* of *Requests*, and then the ^r *Gentleman* of the *Robes*.

SECT. III.

Of Proceeding to the Chapter-house.

^r Having treated at large under the precedent head, concerning the due rank and place of all those persons, that ordinarily or occasionally have gone in the *Proceeding*; wherein all saving the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* pass bareheaded, we now pass to the *Place* whither the *Proceeding* is directed.

The first solemn action, that the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* are obliged to perform, at the entrance upon the *Grand Feast*, is to celebrate a *Chapter*; and therefore it hath been most usual for them, to proceed from the *Presence-Chamber*, ^w Every one in their due place and order; first to the *Chapter-house*, to consult of things of course, and next into the *Choir*, to hear Divine Service. And though it be not positively set down in the Statutes, which of these two shall precede, yet that the *Chapter* ought to be held before the first *Vespers*, is naturally enough to be deduced out of that branch of the statutes, where the penances and penalties to be inflicted on such *Knights-Companions*, as come late to the *Feast*, are laid down. For there we find it provided, ^{*} that in case any of the *Knights-Companions* appear not on the *Eve*, precisely at the hour of *Tierce*, they shall not be permitted for that time, either to enter into the *Chapter*, or to have voice in any thing done therein; and then (the *Article* proceeding with other penalties upon other defaults) it immediately follows; That if any of them come not before the beginning of *Vespers*, they shall not be allowed to enter into their stalls. So that hence it is evident, that the course and order intended was, that the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* should first celebrate a *Chapter*; therein to dispatch the business of the time; and after that broke up, then next proceed into the *Choir* to *Vespers*. Moreover, the general practice in all succeeding times (beginning with King Henry the Fifth's Reign) doth most fully demonstrate, that a *Chapter* was of custom held before the first *Vespers*; whereof we shall urge these following Examples in the point, as being recorded in the *Registers* of the *Order*.

When John Duke of Bedford, Deputy to the *Sovereign*, celebrated the Solemnities of St. George at *Windsor*, an. 7. H. 5. he and the *Knights-Companions* present, at the designed hour, on the *Eve*, entred together into the ^a *Chapter-house* and *Choir*.— Again an. 5. E. 4. the Lord *Berners*, the *Sovereign's Lieutenant*, and other *Knights-Companions*, ^b met at *Windsor*, in an honorable equipage, for the accustomed holding of *Chapters*, and the solemn celebration of Divine Service. An. 7. Car. 1. Oct. 4. (after the celebrations of the *Grand Feast* began to be restored to *Windsor*) we find it recorded more fully to our purpose, viz. that ^c before *Vespers*, the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* went first to the *Chapter-house*; but business being put off till the morrow, they all proceeded to the *Choir*. So an. 9. Car. 1. ^d the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* are said ^d first to go to the *Chapter-house*, and by and by it follows, as soon as they came to the *Choir*, &c.

Lastly, we find there are recorded by Sir Thomas Wriothesley, sometime *Garter King of Arms*, in an ^e old *Velom* Manuscript of his, the *Chapter* accustomedly held, during the celebration of the *Grand Feast*, in the following order.

1. Upon

1. Upon the *Eve* of St. George, before *Evensong*.
2. The next day, either before *Matins* or before the *Grand Procession*.
3. The same day also before *Evensong*.
4. And lastly on the next morning before the *Mass* of *Requiem*.

At all which times, *Chapters* have (for the most part since) been held by the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions*: and herein the *Chancellor* of the *Order* is not only to know the *Sovereign's* pleasure, but also whether he will hold any of them publickly in the *Chapter-house*, or privately in any Room of his *Privy-Lodgings*, or in the *Closet*, before the *Proceeding* pass to the *Chappel*.

As this ancient Custom of holding a *Chapter* on the *Eve* of the *Grand Feast*, was constantly observed, when celebrated without prorogation; so also hath a *Chapter* been in like manner held before *Vespers* on the *Eve*, at such time as the *Feast-day* of St. George only hath been observed, when (for any cause) the *Anniversary* of the *Grand Feast* received *Prorogation*; as for instance, *an. 1. Mar.* a *Chapter* was held at the *Mannor* of St. James's, on the *Vigil* of St. George, before the first *Vespers*; whereunto is fixed this note, *Ut moris est*; and the *Grand Feast* for that year received *adjournment*, until the coming of Philip then *Prince* (after King) of Spain. So *an. 8. Eliz.* the day of St. George being celebrated at *Greenwich*, it appears that a *Chapter* was holden thereⁱ on the *Eve* before *Evening-Prayer*; and the *Grand Feast* for that year prorogued to the first *Sunday* after *Trinity Sunday*, to be kept at *Windsor*.

In like manner, though the celebrations of the *Grand Feast* were by Queen Elizabeth removed from *Windsor*, and observed at other places (as hath been before discoursed) yet this usual Custom of holding a *Chapter* on the *Eve*, was in such cases constantly practised; after which the *Proceeding* to *Evening Prayer* succeeded, as is manifest by these following Testimonies. *An. 29. Eliz.* After a relation entred in the *Blew-Book* of the *Order*, of what had past in *Chapter*, held on the *Eve* of the *Feast* at *Greenwich*, it^a there follows, that the *Sovereign's* *Lieutenant* and *Knights-Companions* proceeded to *Evening Prayer*. So also *an. 39. Eliz.* on the *Eve* of the *Feast*, the Lord Charles Howard, was by the *Sovereign* (in *Chapter*) constituted *Lieutenant*; which done, they in a solemn manner straight way went to *Prayers*. And the next year, when in a *Chapter* called on the *Eve* of the *Feast* at *Whitehall*, after the Earl of Shrewsbury had been made *Lieutenant* for the holding of that *Feast*, and other customary things dispatched therein, the *Register* notes, that *Vespers* were solemnly celebrated.

And because the *Processional-way* to the *Chapter-house*, as also to the *Chappel*, both publick and private, as well at *Windsor*, as elsewhere, are fit to be known and remembred; we shall in the next place trace them out.

The publick *Processional-way* to the *Chapter-house* at *Windsor*, used time out of mind, led from the *Presence-Chamber*, down through the *Cloister*, and the great Gate of the *Kings Lodging*, into the upper Ward of the *Castle*, thence through the middle Ward, and part of the lower, to and through the passage, between the East-end of the *Chappel*, and *Tomb-house*, and thence into the *Chapter-house*, situate at the North-East Corner of St. George's *Chappel*.

But sometimes the *Sovereign* hath thought fit, to wave this publick *Processional-way*, and pass along the private way, which leads from the King's *Privy-Chamber*, down the Stairs into the *Terrace*, viz. through that most stately Walk lying on the North side the *Castle*, and entring again at a door, heretofore made through a part of the *Castle Wall*, into one of the *Canons Lodgings* adjoining to *Winchester Tower* (now made up) went thence through the *Cloisters*, into the *Chapter-house*; nevertheless proceeding in the order before shewed, as it was on the *Eve* of the *Feast*, held in the 4. 7. and 9. years of King Charles the First.

But when the *Grand Feast* was (heretofore) celebrated at *Whitehall*, the *Chapter* was usually held in the *Sovereign's* *Closet*, built over the entrance into the *Chappel*; and then the *Processional-way* thither, lay from the *Presence-Chamber* into the *Guard-Chamber*, and through the *Gallery*, thence into the outward *Closet*, or *Ante-camera*, and so to the *Sovereign's* *Closet*.

But the *Sovereigns* of this most Noble *Order*, or their *Lieutenants*, have not always

1. § Lib. e.
2. pag. 7.
3. Ibid. pag. 9.
4. Ibid. pag. 50.
5. Ibid. pag. 52.

The Processional way.

1. Lib. R. p. 39;
2. 61.

1. Collect. W. 10.
2. Cl.
3. MS.
4. Ex Collect.
5. prefat.
6. MS. fol. peni.
7. W. D. N. fol.
8. 7. b. 20, 26, &
9. 27. b. & intr.
10. Collect. W. 16.
11. N. Ch. de an. 2.
12. Eliz. vid. etiam
13. MS. f. pen. G. O.
14. 7. pag. 123.

always (though generally) proceeded upon the *Eve* of the *Grand Feast*, first to the *Chapter-house*, and thence into the *Chappel*; but sometimes gone immediately into the *Chappel*, to Evening Prayer, without entering the *Chapter-house* at all: and at these times, the Processional way at *Windefor*, differed from the former only in this, that when the *Procession* arrived neer unto the forementioned passage, at the East end of the *Chappel*, instead of entering thereat, it went on to the South door of the *Chappel*, and thence into the *Choire*. In like case, when the *Sovereign* went not to the great Closet at *Whitehall*, to hold the usual *Chapter* before Vespers, the publick processional way then led from the *Presence-Chamber* into the *Guard-Chamber*, and so down the great Stairs into the *Hall*, thence into the old *Chappel*, and lastly, in at the door of the new *Chappel*. And at *Greenwich*, from the *Presence-Chamber* down into the *Hall*, and thence into the *Chappel*. But these ways we take to be used at such time only, when the *Sovereign* hath held a *Chapter* in some of the *Privy Lodgings*, before the *Proceeding* set forward; which *Chapter* being ended, there was then no need of going to the *Chapter-house* or *Closet*, but immediately into the *Choire*.

x MS. fol. pen.
W. Dugdale
Noir.

x { Ibid. fol.
y { 15. a.
z {

And thus we find it to have been observed at *Windefor*, upon the *22. day of April an. 6. Eliz.* where after the *Knights-Companions* and *Officers of the Order*, were assembled in the *Queen's Privy-Chamber*, a *Chapter* was there called, and the *Earl of Arundel* constituted her *Lieutenant* for holding the *Feast*; at the breaking up whereof, the *Proceeding* began (the said *Lieutenant* supplying the place of the *Sovereign*) which passed along the publick processional way, directly unto the *South door of the Chappel*, where they entred, and went thence into the *Choire*, without going to the *Chapter-house* at all.

a Lib. R. p. 1.

b { Lib. R. p.
c { 29.
d {

So was it *an. 20. Jac. R.* at *Whitehall*, where after the *Prince* had been constituted the *Sovereign's Lieutenant in Chapter*, He and the *Knights-Companions* proceeded to the *Chappel* to Evening Prayers, according to the Custom. So also upon the *23. of November, an. 1. Car. 1.* being the *Eve of the Grand Feast*, celebrated at *Windefor* by *Prorogation*, before the *Proceeding* began, a *Chapter* was held, wherein the *Earl of Worcester* was constituted *Lieutenant*, and the *Sovereign* dispensed with the non-appearance of the absent *Knights-Companions*; after which, the said *Lieutenant*, and the rest of the *Knights-Companions*, together with all the *Officers of the Order*, proceeded from the *Presence-Chamber*, immediately into the *Chappel*, to hear Divine Service.

e { Lib. R.
f { pag. 38.

g Lib. R. p. 39.
vide etiam Col-
lett. W. le N.
Cl. dy Autogr.
pen. Edw. Fau-
conbridge.
h Palmers
Journ. p. 8.
i Lib. R. p. 117.
k {
l { Lib. R. p. 5.
m {

In like manner on the *23. day of September (the Eve of the Grand Feast) an. 4. Car. 1.* a *Chapter* was called in the *Sovereign's Bedchamber* at *Windefor*, where the new *Officers* were sworn; and when that was ended, the *Proceeding* began to the *Chappel*, and so into the *Choire*.

And lastly, *17. Apr. an. 13. Car. 1.* at the Hour of *Tierce* in the Afternoon, the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* opened the *Chapter* in the *Privy-Chamber*, and thence proceeded to the *Chappel*; this day being the *Eve of the Feast*, held by *Prorogation* for the *12. year* of his Reign.

And although upon the *Eve of the Grand Feast an. 21. Jac. R.* after the *Sovereign* had held a *Chapter* in the *Privy-Chamber* at *Windefor*, and thereat sworn *Sir George Moor* into the Office of *Chancellor* to this most Noble Order; the *Sovereign's Lieutenant* (the *Earl of Worcester*) together with the *Knights-Companions*, proceeded to the *Chapter-house*, and there held another *Chapter*; yet was not this second *Chapter* called for Affairs appertaining to the *Grand Feast* (they being dispatched in the *Privy-Chamber* before) but only in reference to the calling in, and investiture with the *Surcoat*, of *James Marquess of Hamilton*, who was that evening installed.

We shall close this head, with acquainting our Reader, that though the *Proceedings* to the *Chapter-house* or *Chappel* on the *Eve of the Feast*, have most commonly been on foot; nevertheless, now and then, upon an extraordinary occasion, the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* have proceeded on Horseback; as *an. 3.*

o MS. penes
p { Arch. Cam-
Anglic., fol.
167. a.

H. 7. the Grand Feast being then held by *prorogation* at *Windefor*, on *Sunday* following the *Feastday* of *St. George*, at which time several *Ambassadors* being arrived here from *Foreign Kings and Princes*, they, and many of the *Nobility* of this Kingdom,

Kingdom, with the King's Council, the two Archbishops, the Bishops of Lincoln and Exeter, and the Chief Justice of the Kings Bench repaired also thither.

On the Eve the Sovereign accompanied with the Knights-Companions in their Mantles, and the Gowns or Surcoats of the Livery of the ⁹⁸ preceding year, rode ⁹⁸ *ibid.* from the upper Quadrangle down to the Colledge. The Queen and the Kings Mother, in like Gowns of that Livery, rode in a Chair covered with a rich Cloth of Gold, drawn by six Courfers, harnised with the same Cloth of Gold, and 21 Ladies habited in Crimson Velvet, rode upon white Palfreys, their Sables of Cloth of Gold, the Harness Goldsmiths work, with white Roses demy-trapper-wise. Sir Roger Cotton Master of the Queens Horse, riding upon a Courser trapped with Goldsmiths work, led her Horse of State in his hand, being furnished with a Saddle of Cloth of Gold, and thereon three Crowns of Silver gilt, with Fimbres of the same Cloth hanging down to the Knees on both sides, and harnised with Goldsmiths work demy-trapper-wise: as soon as they alighted, the Sovereign and Knights-Companions proceeded to the Chapter-house, and thence to Evensong; which ended, they returned in the order they came.

King Henry the Eighth on the 28. of May in the 11. year of his Reign, ^{at 3} *MS. in Offic. Arm. [M. 17.] fol. 26. b.* at a Clock in the Afternoon, with all the Knights-Companions in the Habit of the Order, proceeded from the Presence-Chamber in Windsor Castle, till they came to the Quadrangle, where they took their Horses, and rode according to their Stalls, not after their Estates, next before the King; the reverend Father in God the Bishop of Winchester Prelate of the Order, wearing on him a Mantle of Morrey, with a Scutcheon of the Arms of St. George on the left shoulder, following all other the Knights of the Garter, the sword was born by the Earl of Westmerland next before the King, and Garter King of Arms, and Sir William Compton Usher of the Black-Rod, went betwixt the Prelate and the sword, and all Gentlemen and Knights, Barons and Earls before the Knights of the Garter, and thence rode to the middle door of the Chappel, and there alighted, and ^{u Ex Lib. prod. M. loco cit.} so proceeded without the Choire unto the Chapter-house.

Lastly, The Grand Feast being held at Windsor, an. 6. Eliz. and the Earl of Arundel chosen the Sovereign's Lieutenant, ^{w MS. fol. x penes W. D. N. f. 13. d.} he and the Knights-Companions proceeded on the Eve on Horseback, from the Sovereign's Lodgings in the Castle, to the South door of the Chappel, and after Evening Service returned in the same order.

SECT. IV.

Of the opening of the Chapter.

THE Proceeding being arrived at the entrance into the Chappel, first the Attendants upon the Knights-Companions divide themselves as they enter, beginning at the outward door, and flank on each side the North Isle of the Chappel, and so forward towards the West door of the Choire, making a stand along the Isle for the Alms-Knights, Verger, Prebends, and Officers of Arms to pass through them, who go on towards the said West door; and when the junior Knights-Companions are entred into the Chappel, the Proceeding makes a stand, while all the Knights-Companions following turn aside on the right hand into the Chapter-house, next the Officers of the Order, and lastly the Sovereign; but the Nobleman that carries the sword, the Train-bearers, Pensioners, &c. stay without the Chapter-house door in the North Isle, none being admitted in but the Sovereign, the Knights-Companions, and the Officers of the Order; who being all entred, the door is shut by the Gentleman-Usher of the Black-Rod, and every person severally takes his due place and station, whereupon the Chapter immediately opens.

As

As the *Chapter-house* is a place of publick Convention, wherein all the Affairs of the Order are transacted, having been made the more famous for those many *Laws, Acts, and Decrees of Honor and Nobles*, which have received life and confirmation therein: So doth it seem to challenge as great a regard in the order and method of setting out the Places of those Persons, who not only assemble to consult, but such as are admitted to give attendance, as doth the *Proceeding* thither. In what manner and order the *Sovereign, Knights-Companions, and Officers* of the Order are ranked at the holding of a *Chapter*, and during its continuance, we shall find most fully and particularly described, in the order observed upon the 28. day of *May, an. 11. H. 8.* when the *Sovereign and Knights-Companions* most solemnly assembled in the *Chapter-house* at *Windsor*, to consult upon Reformation and Explanation of the *Statutes* of the Order.

^d *Lib. M. 17.* First, the *Sovereign* upon his entrance, immediately ^e proceeded to the midst of the North end of the Table (here called the *Vestments board*) whereat his Chair, Cushens, and Cloth of State had been prepared; next the *Knights-Companions*, whose Stalls in the Choir were on the *Sovereign's* side, took the right hand of the Table, and those of the *Prince's* side the left; then the *Prelate* of the Order came and stood at the corner of the Table, upon the *Sovereign's* right hand, the *Register* and *Garter* went down to the lower end, and stood there, whilst the *Black-Rod* kept the *Chapter-house* door on the inside.

^c *in Offic.* And albeit the *Chancellor* of the Order be not here mentioned (as being not present at that time) yet his place in *Chapter* is on the *Sovereign's* left hand of the Table, at the upper end, in regard the nature of his Employment requires that he be neer the *Sovereign*.

^a *Lib. R. p. 73.* It hath seldom hapned, but that upon opening of the *Chapter*, the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions*, fell immediately upon debates relating to the business of the time: Nevertheless, upon some peculiar and greater emergencies, all such Affairs have been adjourned until the following *Chapter*, as it was *an. 7. Car. 1.* the Feast for that year having been prorogued unto the Month of *October*, and it falling out to be very late, before the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* arrived at the *Chapter-house*; after the *Chapter* was opened they proceeded no further, than to ^f adjourn the discussion of Affairs, relating to the Order, until the next morning, which otherwise would have put off the celebration of *Vespers* beyond the canonical hour.

^g *Palmer's* The like was done upon the Eve of the *Grand Feast, an. 14. Car. 1.* for after ^h the *Sovereign* had entred the *Chapter-house*, and was set down under the State, ⁱ the *Chancellor* offering to the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* the business of the time, the *Sovereign* moved, ^b in regard it was then late (besides the Ceremonies of the *Princes* Installation were to be performed at the ensuing *Vespers*) that the matters depending should be ^c adjourned until the next *Chapter*; which being agreed upon, the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* advanced to the *Chappel* in their accustomed order.

SECT. V.

Transactions in the Chapter held before the first Vespers.

^a *Lib. C. p. 93.* BUT now to proceed to the Affairs treated of and transacted in the *Chapter*, held before *Vespers*, on the Eve of the *Grand Feast*; which being opened as before is shewed, and no adjournment given thereunto: All things are then to be debated, consulted of, and provided for, which concern the *Honor and Dignity* of this most Noble Order, and necessary conservation of the *interest* thereof; and among these, some particulars are *ordinary*, and of *course*, others *extraordinary* and *occasional*. The

The matters of *course* (and indeed the proper business of the time) are first, swearing and admitting *Officers*; secondly, debating about the *Knights-Companions* then absent, and either dispensing with, or inflicting penalties upon them; and thirdly, constituting or appointing an *Officer*, to carry on the state and solemnity of the *Feast* in the *Sovereign's* absence. But the other particulars, *viz.* those of extraordinary nature and occasional, cannot so well be brought within Rule, seeing they are things wholly accidental, whose contingency only begets a necessity of proposal or discussion, and besides are usually adjourned to the next days *Chapter*: therefore we have already touched upon them in their proper places, as we had occasion offered.

As to the first, we shall chiefly consider such *Officers* of the *Order* as happen to be nominated since the *Chapter*, immediately preceding the *Grand Feast*. And touching these, it hath been thought most proper, to introduce them soon after the *Chapter* is opened, that so (their respective *Oaths* having been administered unto them) they might be ready to perform the duty of their several places, during the session of the *Chapter*, and thence forward.

Thus on the ^b Eve of the *Grand Feast*, solemnized at *Wind'sor* ^{an. 21. Jac. R.} the *Sovereign* appointed a *Chapter* to be held in the *Privy-Chamber* (before the *Lieutenant's* proceeding to the *Chappel*) whereat ^c Sir George *Moor* was sworn *Chancellor* of the *Order*. In the same *Chamber*, ^{an. 4. Car. I.} upon the 23. of September, being the *Eve* of the *Grand Feast* held by *Prorogation* (and before the *Sovereign* proceeded to *Vespers*) was Doctor ^e Nele *Bishop* of *Winchester* sworn *Prelate*, Sir ^f Francis *Crane* *Chancellor*, and Doctor ^g Matthew *Wren* (late *Bishop* of *Ely*) *Register*. Moreover, in the *Chapter* held on the ^h Eve of the *Feast*, celebrated at *Whitehall* ^{an. 23. Eliz.} did Doctor *Watson* *Bishop* of *Winchester* make *Oath*, for his faithful Execution of the *Prelates* Office, as also Doctor ^k Thomas *Cooper* (his Successor in that See) who was admitted ^{an. 26. Eliz.} The like did ^l William *Wickham*, ^{an. 37. of the same Queen}: and in the same place, ^{an. 40. Eliz.} Doctor *Bilson* also *Bishop* of *Winchester*, was sworn into this Office, at which time was *Richard Conisby* admitted *Gentleman-Usher* of the *Black-Rod*. In like manner ^m an. 11. Car. 1. did Doctor *Christopher Wren*, (Brother and Successor in the *Registers* place, to the afore-mentioned *Bishop* of *Ely*) take his *Oath*, at a *Chapter* held in the *Privy-Chamber* at *Whitehall*, on the *Eve* of the *Grand Feast* there celebrated. Again Sir *Francis Walsingham*, and Sir *Amias Paulet*, were both sworn *Chancellors*, on the *Eve* of the *Feast*, kept at *Greenwich*, the one ⁿ an. 20. and the other ^p an. 30. of *Queen Eliz.* And lastly ^q an. 18. *Jac. R.* at the same place was the *Bishop* of *Winchester* sworn *Prelate*, the *Bishop* of *Saluto* *Register*, and *James Maxwell* Esq; *Black-Rod*.

Yet hath it happened now and then, that some of the *Officers* of this *Order*, have been sworn at other times, to wit, at *Chapters* next ensuing their *Nomination* or *Choice*, whether such have been held on the *Eve* of *St. George*, or on the *Grand Feast-day*, or otherwise called upon particular occasions; at which time nevertheless, the administration of the *Oath* hath been one of the first things done therein, for the reason before mentioned.

Those *Officers*, whom we have observed to have taken their *Oaths* on the *Eve* of *St. George*, that is to say, when only the day of *St. George* hath been solemnized, and the *Grand Feast* prorogued, were, first *Owen Oglethorpe* admitted ^r an. 1. *Marie*, in a *Chapter* called at the *Mannor-house* of *St. James*. Second-^s ly, *George Carew* at *Whitehall*, ^t an. 2. *Eliz.* who immediately succeeded *John Boxhall*, Successor to the said *Oglethorpe*, in that Office. Next Doctor *Horne*, *Bishop* of *Winchester*, called ^u an. 3. *Eliz.* into the *Chapter*, then sitting in the *Queens great Closet* at *Whitehall*, and there took the *Prelates* *Oath*.

Such *Officers* of the *Order*, as were sworn into their places, on the *Grand Feast-day*, are Sir *John Woolley* *Chancellor*, ^v an. 31. *Eliz.* before Morning Prayers, so ^w an. 38. *Eliz.* Sir *Edward Dyer*, and Doctor *Robert Benet*, who were admitted, the one *Chancellor*, and the other *Register*, ^x at a *Chapter* held before the first Morning Service, because they were not nominated before the beginning of the Celebrations on the *Eve*; but either the night following, or in the morning immediately before their admittance.

T t t

Lastly,

Lastly, those who have taken their *Oaths at Chapters*, called for peculiar purposes, in the intervals of *Feasts*, were ¹ Sir William Peters, and Sir Thomas Rowe, both *Chancellors* of the Order; the one at the first *Chapter* that Queen Mary called, being the ² 27. of Sept. an. 1. Mar. and the other at a *Chapter* celebrated at *Windsor*, upon the ³ 5. day of December, an. 12. Car. 1. As also Sir James Palmer, who, after the Execution of the Office of *Deputy Chancellor*, for the space of six years and an half, was upon the ⁴ 17. day of January, an. 20. Car. 1. sworn *Chancellor*, in a *Chapter* held at *Oxford*, at which time Sir Edward Walker Successor to Sir Henry St. George, in the place of *Garter*, was also sworn thereinto.

Touching the second Particular, debated in the forefaid *Chapter*, viz. the dispensing with, or punishing of absent *Knights*; we are herein to consider, that the *Statutes of the Order* injoin, ⁵ all the *Knights-Companions* to be present at the Celebration of the *Grand Feast*; that is to say, ⁶ those who are then within the Kingdom, or elsewhere, ⁷ although the Service of St. George, according to the Rites of the Church, be not at all celebrated: as in some cases we have already instanced, where the ⁸ Service of the day, whereon that of St. George hath fallen, as *Good-Friday*, &c. and not that of St. George hath been preferred. But with this limitation; ⁹ so that they be in a capacity, or may conveniently repair thither, and in particular at the beginning of the *Feast*, viz. the hour of *Tierce* on the Eve, as hath been before observed.

And therefore the next thing usually entred upon in the said *Chapter*, is for the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* to take notice, whether any of the Fellowship make default of coming at the hour assigned for their meeting, as aforefaid: If so, then are such to be considered, under one of the three general heads following. First, *Stranger Princes*: secondly, *Late Comers*, who are by this time arrived at the *Castle*, or every minute expected; and thirdly, such as have given notice, that they cannot be present during the continuation of the *Feast*: and in relation to Offenders of these three natures, Excuses of Course, verbal Apologies, or Letters of Excuse, are or may be offered, or presented on their behalf; and in case they be approved and admitted, then the Penance, which by the *Statutes* ought otherwise to be inflicted, is remitted; all which ought to be recorded.

As to *Stranger Princes*, their default of appearance is excused, upon their necessary residence in their own Territories, and the management of their Affairs there: And of their Excuses of Course, and accustomed Dispensations, we have divers instances in the *Registers* of the Order, as an. 7. H. 5. where it is said, ¹⁰ That Strangers indeed who are not obliged to leave their own Dominions, but with their own consent, as the Kings of the Romans, Portugal, and Denmark, were (according to the custom) for that reason excused.

So the following year, the ¹¹ same persons were out of affection and respect excused, as busied in their own Affairs; ¹² and, as afterwards, because they could not be spared from their own Kingdoms. In the first year of King Edward the Fourth, in reference to the Kings of Portugal and Denmark, and the Earl of Longueville, it is said, ¹³ They were excused (as always before in the same case) upon the account of being Strangers. And lastly to the same effect of the King of the Romans, and Duke of Ferrara, an. 19. H. 7. ¹⁴ They (because Strangers) were excused, as at all other times in the like case. The like expressions are entred almost annually in the Reigns of King Henry the Eighth, King Edward the Sixth, and downwards still upon the like occasions.

As to *Knights-Companions* comprised under the second general Heads, viz. those who are tardy in their journey, or being come to the *Castle*, fall short of the hour, or of attending the *Sovereign* to the *Chapter-house*, either through negligence, or want of timely notice, or other accident; the Penance set on them by the *Statutes of Institution*, is, ¹⁵ That they shall so far incur punishment from the *Sovereign* and *Chapter* for their offence, as not to be permitted, for that time, to enter into the *Chapter*, but shall tarry without at the door, and not have voice in any thing that shall happen to be done there, unless they can alludge

y *Ibid.* p. 7.z *Ibid.* pag. 5.a *Lib. R.* pag. 114, & 115.b *Palmer's Journ.* pag. 56.

2. Dispensing with or inflicting of Punishments.

c *E. 3. Stat.*d *Art. 9.*e *Hen. 8. Stat.*f *Chap. 18.*

Self. 8.

g *E. 3. Stat.*h *Art. 9.*i *H. 8. Stat.*

Art. 8.

Stranger Princes.

h *Lib. N.* p. 58.i *Ibid.* pag. 61.k *Ibid.* pag. 68.l *Ibid.* p. 125.m *Ibid.* p. 176.

Late-Comers.

n *E. 3. Stat.*

Art. 9.

alledge a just excuse, or render such a sufficient cause, as the *Sovereign* or his *Deputy* shall approve of.

But we have observed few Defaulters in this kind, beside the Lord *Bourchier*, *p an. 35. H. 6.* who being noted to come thither before *Vespers*; it seems to imply, that his appearance was short of the *Hour* enjoyned as aforesaid.

Concerning the third sort of Delinquents, being those *Knights-Companions*, who are not only absent at the *Hour* of *Tierce*, but likely to be so during the whole *Feast*; the Proceedings in the *Chapter* relating to them are either upon what is presented and offered, in excuse of their absence; or determined upon their neglect or default, of making *Apology* for it.

Where *Excuses* for absence are offered, they are either by *Letters*, or word of *mouth*; if by *Letters*, then are they sent either from the absent *Knights* themselves, and directed to the *Chancellor* of the *Order*, or else from the *Sovereign* to his *Lieutenant* on their behalf, and both produced by the *Chancellor*. But if *Excuses* be made by word of *mouth*, then they are delivered, either by the *Sovereign* himself; or upon motion made, by some of the *Knights-Companions* present in *Chapter*.

In order to the first of these ways, of presenting the absent *Knights-Companions* excuses, we find the Custom of sending *Letters* to that purpose, to have been very ancient: For at the *Grand Feast* held at *Windeſor*, by *Humſry Duke of Glouceſter*, the *Sovereign's Deputy*, *an. 8. H. 5.* it appears that the Lord *Powis* his *Letter* under his Hand and Seal (wherein he certified his present infirmity and indisposition of Body) was produced in *Chapter*. And the following year the Dukes of *Tork*, *Norfolk*, and *Buckingham*, with the Earls of *Salisbury*, *Shrewsbury*, and *Penbroke*, Viscount *Bourchier*, the Lord *Rivers*, and Sir *John Fastolf*, being all absent from *St. George's Feast*, they declared the reason of their absence, by their *Messengers*. So *an. 5. E. 4.* we find that the Lord *Beauchamp* sent his *Excusatory Letters*, which were received. Again *an. 19. of the same King*, it is noted, "That all that were absent from this solemnity, excused their absence by *Letters* to that purpose, signed and sealed with their Arms. And this hath been the use in following times, whereunto several Memorials entred in the late *Sovereign's* Reign concur; and among others, that *an. 13. Car. 1.* when on the *Eve* of the *Grand Feast*, held by *Prorogation* upon the 17. 18. and 19. days of *April*, the Earls of *Moulgrave*, *Lindſey*, *Suffolk*, and *Exceter*, having signified by *Letters* under their Seals of Arms, their several excuses of sickness and disability to attend, the *Chancellor* producing them in *Chapter*, they were dispensed with by the *Sovereign*. The like *Excuses* made by *Letters* were accepted from the Earls of *Suffolk*, *Danby*, and *Lindſey*, *an. 15. of the same King*.

There are entred in the *Registers* several Memorials of *Letters*, sent from the *Sovereign* to his *Deputy*, when himself hath not been present in *Chapter*; wherein his excusing and pardoning the defaults of absent *Knights-Companions* hath been signified. As *an. 22. H. 6.* the Duke of *Buckingham* being *Lieutenant*, the Dukes of *Glouceſter* and *Exceter*, with the Lord *Hungerford*, were excused by the *Sovereign's Letters*. So *an. 36. of the same King*, Viscount *Mountagne* being reckoned up amongst the absent *Knights-Companions*, the *Register* saith, "he was excused by the *Sovereign's Letters*. The like is noted of the Dukes of *Tork* and *Glouceſter*, and six other *Knights-Companions*, absent from the *Feast* held *an. 18. E. 4.* the Lord *Dudley* being then the *Sovereign's Lieutenant*. And so *an. 21. E. 4.* concerning other absent *Knights-Companions*. Moreover *an. 18. H. 7.* the *Sovereign* (it being his pleasure to be absent) sent his *Letters* thereupon to the Earl of *Darby* his *Deputy*, to excuse also some others that were absent: So also in the 21. 22. and 23. of the same King. But *an. 20. H. 8.* we find no less than 17 *Knights-Companions* at one time, excused and pardoned for their absence, by the *Sovereign's Letters* sent unto the *Marquess* of *Exceter*, his *Lieutenant* for the *Grand Feast* kept at *Windeſor* the 27. of *May* in the foresaid year, viz. three Dukes, six Earls, two Viscounts, five Barons, and one Knight Baneret.

And hitherto may be referr'd, what is spoken of the Dukes of *Clarence* and *Glouceſter*, and six other *Knights-Companions* *an. 14. E. 4.* that their absence was

o H. 8. Stat. Art. 9.

p Lib. N. pag. 116.

q See before Chap. 19. Sect. 2.

Excuse by Letters.

r Lib. N. p. 61.

s Lib. pag. 119. Chap. 19.

u Pag. 144.

w Rowes Journal, pag. 9.

x Palmers Journal pro an. 1620 pag. 17. Letters from the Sovereign.

y Lib. N. p. 94.

z Pag. 118.

a Ibid. p. 142.

b Pag. 148.

c Pag. 174.

d Pag. 179.

e Pag. 180.

f Pag. 186.

g MS. in Office. Ann. [M. 17.] fol. 30. b.

^b Lib. N. pag.
134.
ⁱ Ibid. p. 143.

excused ^b by the *Sovereign's* authority; the like expression is used in the case of the Earl of ⁱ *Northumberland*, and others *an.* 19. of his Reign.

k *Appendix.*
Num.
CLXXIII.
l Num.
CLXXIV. &
CLXXV.

And from many Precedents, which we have seen, of *Letters* sent from the *Sovereign*, and directed to his *Lieutenant* to accept of *Knights-Companions* excuses, whose absence he had beforehand dispensed with; we observe those *Dispensations* excused not the sending of their own particular Excuses; for it is evident they were also expected, and that such allowance of absence was not absolute, but in a manner conditional, the clause running thus. ^k *That you* [the *Sovereign's* Deputy] *allow these excuses, so far as they are consonant to reason.* And in all other *Letters* of the same nature, a Clause to this effect hath been inserted, ^l *That as the Sovereign thought good to advertise his Deputy, that for certain causes he had dispensed with their attendance for that time; so he willed him to accept their* reasonable excuses *in that behalf accordingly.*

The Sovereigns verbal
Excuses in
Chapter.

Secondly, The absent *Knights-Companions* have had their *Excuses* frequently made by word of *mouth*, either of the *Sovereign*, or some other of the *Knights-Companions* present in *Chapter*. This favour of the *Sovereign* is either done by himself, when present in *Chapter*, or by giving order to his *Lieutenant* before the *Feast* begin.

m Lib. N. p. 84.

In relation to what he hath personally done in this case, we have many Examples; as *an.* 6. H. 6. the ^m *Sovereign* declared the reason of the Duke of *Norfolk's* absence. So on the Eve of the *Feast* kept at *Windeſor an.* 26. H. 6. the Duke of *Tork*, the Earl of *Salisbury*, Viscount *Beaumont*, the Lords *Hungerford*, *Willoughby*, and Sir *John Fastolf* were absent, ⁿ but excused by the *Sovereign*. Again, in a *Chapter* held on the Eve of the *Grand Feast*, celebrated at *Windeſor an.* 36. H. 6. the Duke of *Tork*, Earl of *Salisbury*, and Viscount *Bourchier*, being absent, ^o were excused by the *Sovereign's* own mouth: the ^p like is said on the behalf of the absent *Knights an.* 3. H. 7. So *an.* 17. E. 4. on the Eve of the *Feast* held by *Prorogation*, the Dukes of *Gloucester*, *Buckingham*, and *Suffolk*, with the Earl of *Northumberland* at that time absent, ^q were excused by the *Sovereign*.

n Pag. 101.

o Pag. 101.
p Pag. 108.

q Pag. 141.
And to his
Deputy before.

At other times, the *Sovereign* (not being present in *Chapter*) hath before hand verbally, (instead of *Letters*) given his Deputy or *Lieutenant* direction to excuse the absence of several of the *Knights-Companions*. Thus it was in the case of the *Prince*, the Earls of *Surrey* and *Shrewsbury*, and Lord *Danbary*, who *an.* 19. H. 7. ^r were excused by the *Sovereign*, by word of mouth (to the *Marquess of Dorset* his *Lieutenant*) because they were then employed in his service. And as touching the Earls of *Arundel*, and *Devonshire* at the same time, the *Register* saith, *the Sovereign with his own mouth excused them to his Deputy.* Whereto we may add what is recorded, *an.* 26. H. 8. ^t *All others absent were by the Sovereign at that time excused (to the Duke of Richmond his Lieutenant) by word of mouth, and afterwards by his Letters.*

r Lib. N. p.
127.

t Pag. 265.

Excuses made
by Knight
Companions.

u Lib. N.
v Pag. 24.
x Pag. 24.

Of the latter sort, to wit, such as have been excused, upon the motion made by some of the other *Knights-Companions* present in *Chapter*, we find that on the *Vigil* of *St. George an.* 1. H. 6. *Hunfrey* Duke of *Gloucester* being then the *Sovereign's* Deputy, Sir *William Harington's* absence ^u was excused by the *Chancellor*, at that time Sir ^v *John Robessart*, one of the *Knights-Companions*. So *an.* 2. H. 6. ^x *The Deputy took upon him the Earl of Warwick's* excuse.

Excuses allowed, and in
what cases.

y Lib. N. p. 61.
z Pag. 76.
a Pag. 85.
b Pag. 135.
c Lib. C. p. 97.
d Ibid. p. 107.

But ere we proceed any further, it will not be amiss here to observe, what effect the *Excuses*, presented on the behalf of absent *Knights*, have usually produced; in reference whereunto we find the just and reasonable, favourably admitted, some suspended, and divers disallowed.

Excuses easily allowed, were first *Sickness* (for those of the *Knights-Companions* who have either been sick, far spent with age, or intent upon publick Affairs; have readily obtained excuse) which we meet with in the Examples of the ^a Lord *Powis an.* 8. H. 5. the ^b Duke of *Excester an.* 2. H. 6. ^c Sir *Thomas Erpingham an.* 6. H. 6. as also the ^d Lord *Dudley an.* 15. E. 4. And of later times the ^e Earl of *Bedford an.* 26. *Eliz.* ^f Viscount *Mountague*, and the Earl of *Warwick* in the 30. of the same *Queen*, with many others.

Secondly, *The not recovery of Wounds received in the Sovereigns Service*; for such

such was the condition of Sir William Harington, an. 7. H. 5. whom we see excused ^{for his illness, occasioned from the Wounds, then lately received at the Siege of Roan and elsewhere.} Lib. N. p. 58.

Thirdly, *Impotency and old age*; for which cause the ^h Lord Burnell, an. 7. H. 5. at the last mentioned Chapter, the Earls of ⁱ Shrewsbury and Warwick, and Lord Burghley an. 31. Eliz. and the ^k Earl of Moulgraves an. 13. Car. 1. So also the Earl of ^l Westmerland, an. 2. & 3. H. 6. and the Earl of ^m Suffolk an. 13. Car. 1. for the ⁿ weakness of his Limbs; were all of them excused for absence at those several Feasts. i Lib. C. p. 112.
k Lib. R. pag. 126.
l Ex. pref. lib. N. p. 79. & 78.
m Lib. R. p. 126.

Fourthly, *employment in the Sovereigns service*; either abroad or at home: Of the first sort was the case of Sir Robert Omsfrevile, excused an. 7. H. 5. ^o because he had been sent towards Scotland, to defend the Borders. So the Lord Scroop engaged in the like Service, ^p an. 30. Eliz. his absence was immediately excused. As was that of the Duke of Bedford and the Lord Talbot, an. 6. H. 6. ^q both being employed in the Wars of France, whilst the Grand Feast was celebrated at Windsor. Again, the Earl of ^r Salisbury and Lord Fauconbridge had such another Apology, an. 28. H. 6. And lastly, the Earl of Essex an. 4. Eliz. ^s who according to his Commission, was endeavouring to subdue by Arms the Irish Rebels; and therefore deservedly excused. n Rowes Journ. pag. 24.
o Lib. N. p. 58.
p Lib. C. pag. 107.
q Lib. N. pag. 84. & 85.
r Ibid. p. 103.
s Lib. C. p. 137.

Of the second sort of employment, to wit, at home, was that of the Earls of Shrewsbury, and Huntington, an. 22. & 26. Eliz. the first of whom was taken up in the managery of certain Affairs enjoined him by the Sovereign; but the other being ^t President of the Council in the North, his absence was for that, and several years following, favourably admitted. And a like case was that of the Earl of Danby, an. 13. Car. 1. who ^u for his necessary attendance at the Seat of Justice in Eyre, was excused of his waiting on the Sovereign, at the Grand Feast held by Prorogation on the 2. 3. and 4. days of October in the foresaid year. t Ibid. pag. 81.
u Pag. 97.
w Lib. pag. 81.
x Lib. R. p. 126.

Fifthly, *When the Grand Feast hath received Prorogation, and any of the Knights-Companions have not had notice of the day whereunto it was prorogued*; and for non-attendance for want of such notice, Sir Simon Febbridge an. 8. H. 6. (the Feast for that year, having been prorogued unto the 22. of May) was excused by ^y the Hungry Duke of Gloucester, then the Sovereign's Deputy. y Lib. N. p. 86.

Sixthly, *When any of the Knights-Companions have been employed upon Embassy or other Civil Affairs*; as Sir Here Tanke Clux, who an. 3. H. 6. ^z was by the Sovereign sent in Legation to the Emperor of Germany, and also for that an. 5. & 6. H. 6. ^a he yet remained in the Emperor's Court by the Sovereign's command. In like manner the Indulgence of the sovereign excused the Earl of Derby and Lord Cobham an. 30. Eliz. ^b they being sent Ambassadors into the Low-Countries, to treat with Philip King of Spain about a Peace. To like purpose is that Entry made in excuse of the Earl of Marr's absence in Scotland, and Earl of Carlisle's Embassy abroad, ^c an. 4. Car. 1. z Ibid. p. 58.
a Ibid. p. 83.
b Lib. C. p. 107.
c Lib. R. p. 57.

Seventhly, *When any of them have been in Captivity*; as was ^d Thomas Earl of Salisbury, and the Earl of Huntington, both Prisoners in France an. 2. H. 6. So also the Earl of ^e Suffolk, the Lord Talbot, and Lord Scales an. 7. H. 6. the ^f Lord Fauconbridge an. 30. & 36. H. 6. and Earl of ^g Kendal an. 32. H. 6. and lastly, in the 4. 5. and 6. years of Edward the Fourth, ^h Sir John Astley who was Prisoner there also. d Ibid. p. 85.
e Pag. 107.
f Pag. 111.
g Pag. 129. & 130.

Eighthly, *When any of them have obtained the Sovereign's Letters of Dispensation*, of which sufficient is spoken before.

Lastly, *Some other just and lawful occasion*, as well as accident, having fallen out (not relating to those under the former heads) the Sovereign upon information given in Chapter, hath been pleased to allow of, as sufficient to excuse the non-appearance and non-attendance of the Knights-Companions at the Grand Feasts; in which rank, the foresaid Lord Fauconbridge's care of his domestick Affairs, an. 32. H. 6. was readily admitted, ⁱ because having been lately in Prison, he had obtained leave to go to see his House and Lands in the Country. And the Earl of Arundel's absence an. 15. Car. 1. was pardoned, by reason of the Dutcheffs of Richmond's ^j Death, who died on the Eve of the Grand Feast, that so ^k (he i Pag. 111.
j Palmers Journ. pro an. 1639. pag. 171.

(he being the chief of her Family) might be at hand to advise and assist, in all things conducing to the honor of the deceased Dutcheſs.

And as the *Knights-Companions* have been often excused, for not appearing at the *Grand-Feast*, upon lawful and sufficient grounds, so hath the *Sovereign*, for like reasons, been pleased to license and dispence with their departure from the same. Of this we have met with an Example *an. 6. Eliz.* in the Lord *Hastings* of *Loughborough*, who falling ill a little before the Offering on St. George's day, obtained license from the *Sovereign*, to depart out of the *Choire*; and came no more abroad that day, nor during that Feast. As also another in the Duke of *Lenox an. 15. Car. 1.* who being forced to go back to *London*, by reason of the aforesaid Dutcheſs of *Richmond's* death, had his excuse made in *Chapter* held the morning of the *Feast* day, by the *Deputy Chancellor*; whereupon he obtained the *Sovereign's* allowance for such his departure.

n Lib. C. p. 46.
o MS. fol. pen.
W.D.N. f. 16. a.

p f Palmers
q f Journ pro
an. 1639. p. 20.

r Pembr. &
Mont. Salubury,
Dorset, Holland,
Berke, Northumber-
land.

We are next to consider *Excuses*, which though sent in due time, yet upon debate and consultation in *Chapter* were suspended, rather than allowed; to this head may be referred that case of several of the *Knights-Companions*, who were members of the *Lords house* in the Long *Parliament*. For *an. 18. Car. 1.* the *Deputy Chancellor*, having by command of the *Sovereign*, and in discharge of the duty of his Office, sent unto each of them a several *Summons*, for their attendance at the celebration of the *Grand Feast*, to be held for the preceding year at *Tork*, upon the 18. 19. and 20. days of *April*; and notice thereof being given to the *House of Lords*, they immediately made the ensuing Order.

Die Martis, 22. Maii 1641.

Whereas the Lord Chamberlain of his Majesties household, and some other Lords of Parliament, Knights of the Garter, have been summoned to give their attendance, and repair unto the City of York, for the celebration of St. George's Feast; who acquainting this House with the Summons aforesaid, it is this day Ordered by the Lords in Parliament, that they attend the weighty Affairs of the Kingdom, discussed in Parliament, whereunto they are obliged by his Majesties Writ, and the Law of the Land.

Jo. Browne Cleric. Parliament.

f Palmers
Journal, p. 36.
r Pag. 38.

u f Lib N. p.
w f 118.

x Pag. 117.

Whereupon, every one of the said *Knights-Companions*, before the days appointed by *Prorogation* for holding the *Feast*, sent their *Petitionary Letters* of excuse to the *Deputy Chancellor*, wherein they professed their desire and readiness to attend, in obedience of the said *Summons*; nevertheless, pleaded the foresaid Order for the ground of their stay at *London*, and therefore desired him to obtain for them the *Sovereign's* gracious Letters of *Dispensation*: But when the said Letters were severally presented in *Chapter*, held before *Vespers* on the Eve of the said *Feast*, the *Sovereign* would not at present either admit or disallow of their *Excuses*; but deferred the consideration thereupon until the next *Chapter*, to be held by *Prorogation*.

Of excuses which have not been allowed, the most remarkable is that of the Duke of *Norfolk*, and the Lord *Scales*, *an. 36. H. 6.* who, in regard the causes alledged to excuse their absence at the *Feast*, were not approved in a *Chapter* held on the Eve, were adjudged to the penalty of the *statute*; the latter being particularly fined by the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions*, in a Jewel to the value of 20 Marks, to be offered in the *Colledge*: whereby the rigour of the *statute* appears to have been more strictly executed upon him, than on the Duke (whose contempt might be of a less nature, though it seems great enough to shut out his excuse) probably because the Lord *Scales*, having been absent the year before, and no cause thereof being then shewed in *Chapter*, was therefore to suffer penalty for his absence, according to the *Statute*; so that this it seems was the second fault.

But

But now to enter upon the second Branch of the third general head, which relates to the proceedings upon the absent *Knight-Companions* neglect, or default of sending their *Excuses*: We shall therein observe, that some of them have with difficulty been remitted, some left in suspense, and others sentenced, and referred, either to the *Sovereign's* pleasure, or the punishment assigned by Law.

Of the first kind are those, who having such a plea for their absence, as might induce the *Chapter* to dispence therewith; yet were with much ado excused, because they neglected giving due intimation thereof, according to the *Statutes*. Such was that of the Earl of *Westmerland* an. 10. H. 5. who though not very well, yet had much ado to be excused; because he signified not the cause of his absence, as the *Statutes* required. Defaultera pardoned.

So an. 12. *Car. 1.* The Earls of *Derby* and *Kelly*, having made no Excuse nor Petition for Dispensation, were for that omission blameable; but by the grace of the *Sovereign* for that time pardoned. Rowes Journal, pag. 9.

Of the second sort are such, who through the indulgence of the *Sovereign*, or his *Lieutenant* (where probable cause hath induced it) have not had sentence passed on them at that present, but were deferred, in expectation of some satisfactory cause to be shewed: As in the case of the *Prince*, the Duke of *Euckingham*, and five other of the *Knight-Companions*, absent from the Feast held an. 18. H. 7. concerning whom, * no cause of Excuse was shewed, but there was an expectation of one to be alledged. Suspended; Lib. N. pag. 175.

But as for those of the third sort, upon whom sentence hath passed; for default of sending their *Excuses*, they have been left either to the pleasure of the *Sovereign*, or to those penalties and penances which the Law of this Order doth inflict: And first of such Offenders as are left by the *Chapter* to the mercy of the *Sovereign*, we have several Examples. Of the Earl of *Effex*, an. 18. H. 7. it is recorded, ^a That his absence was referred to the *Sovereign's* indulgence. So an. 21. a Lib. N. pag. 175. of the same King, upon occasion of the absence of the Earls of *Northumberland*, *Oxford*, *Devonshire*, *Kent*, together with the Lord *Stafford*, and no cause thereof assigned, ^b they were left to the *Sovereign's* indulgence. To the like effect is the entry made of the Earls of *Effex*, and *Kent*, absent the following year, without cause shewn to the *Chapter*. Sentenced and left to mercy. b Ibid. p. 179. c Pag. 180.

Lastly, touching those on whom Judgment hath passed, divers instances may be given, among which are these that follow. An. 10. H. 5. the Lord *Willoughby*, Sir *Robert Umsfrewill*, Sir *John Cornewall*, and Sir *William Harington*, were in no wise excused for their absence, ^d because being within the Kingdom, they sent not the cause of their absence. And an. 2. H. 6. the said Sir *Robert Umsfrewill*, was also found culpable, ^e in regard no cause of his absence had been shewed. Moreover, seeing the reasons of the Duke of *Norfolk's*, the Lord *Scales*, and *Fastolf's* absence an. 33. H. 6. were not made known to the *Chapter*, ^f they were left to the Judgment of the *Statutes*. And of the same Lord *Scales*, an. 35. H. 6. it is recorded, ^g that he gave no reason of his absence, therefore underwent the punishment thereof. Punished. d Lib. N. p. 69. e More. c Pag. 77. f Pag. 113. g Pag. 117.

Lastly, The Duke of *Tork*, the Earl of *Salisbury*, the foresaid Lord *Scales*, and Lord *Willoughby*, for presuming to be absent from the *Grand Feast*, an. 30. H. 6. ^h without shewing any allowable cause, they were adjudged to the certain and deserved penalties (of the *Statutes*) against the next Feast. And the said Duke being again absent the very next year (and also the Lord *Hastings*) ⁱ They were both adjudged to certain Penalties, as daring to be absent without sufficient cause shewn. h Ibid. p. 107. i Pag. 108.

Besides these grounds for assigning Penances already mentioned, there are upon a few other causes, set down in the before recited ninth Article of the *Statutes of Institution* other Penances appointed, that is to say, if the *Knight-Companions* be absent at other times beside the hour of *Tierce*; which (if we were strictly tied to pursue the series and order of time) would fall out to be spoke of, a little hence. Nevertheless, having had occasion to discourse so much already of this subject, it will become further beneficial to the concerned Reader, to bring all the *Injunctions* which are included in the said Article, and must

Penances where Knights are absent at other times of the Feast.

muster up the *Penalties* for breach thereof, in view together : nor will this anticipation at all interrupt our method, or become improper for this place, if well considered, and therefore we shall proceed with them here.

The *Knights-Companions* are further punishable, if they are absent at any of the times here spoken of, *viz.* First, at the beginning of the *first Vespers*. Secondly, at the beginning of the *Morning Service*, on the *Feast* day. Thirdly, at the beginning of the *second Vespers*. Fourthly, during the *whole Feast*. And fifthly, at the *Grand Feast* next following.

For the first, admitting any *Knight-Companion* hath failed of meeting and attending on the *Sovereign* at the hour of *Tierce*, and thereupon suffered the punishment of non-admittance into the *Chapter-house*, and deprivation of *Vote*, nevertheless if at the rising of the said *Chapter*, he be not ready to proceed with the *Sovereign*, and other the *Knights-Companions* into the *Choir*, to the beginning of the first *Vespers*; he ought not only to suffer the former, but this additional penalty, ^k *That he shall not presume to enter into his Stall at that time, but tarry in that part of the Choir, where the Taper-bearers are wont to stand, nevertheless before his own Stall, until the holy Offices be ended.* And the Law of the Order is the same in King Henry the Fifth's and King Henry the Eighth's ^l *Statutes*, only they render the place for the delinquent *Knight* to stand in, to be before their *Stalls* in the *Choristers* places. And now how the penalty hath been inflicted, upon breach of the Law in this particular, we shall see by the following instances.

k E. 3. Stat.
Art. 10.

l H. 5. Stat.
Art. 10. H. 8.
Stat. Art. 9.

m Lib. N. pag.
179.

n Ibid. p. 99.
o Pag. 100.

p E. 3. Stat.
q 2 Art. 10.
r Hen. 8. Stat.
Art. 9.

s Lib. N. p. 74.

t MS. penes
u L. G. O. T.
pag. 123.

w Lib. R. pag.
107, 108.

x Lib. C. pag.
127.

y Palmers
Journal pro
c. 1535 p. 22.
z Ibid. pag. 33.

At the *Grand Feast* celebrated at *Windsor*, an. 21. H. 7. when it seems the Lord Kildare, Sir Gilbert Talbot, and Sir Richard Goulford came late to the *Chappel*, we find this Memorandum fixed to their names, ^m *They stood without* (before their *Stalls*) by the *Sovereign's* permission, or rather command. But yet this is not all the punishment which hath been inflicted upon the *Knights-Companions* for this offence (though it be all that is set down in the foresaid *Article*) for an. 25. H. 6. upon the *Eve* of St. George, the *Marquess* of Dorset not coming to the first *Vespers*, and being convicted of his late coming, ⁿ *was prohibited joining in the Nomination then made, for the Election of the King of Portugal, into the room of the Duke of Gloucester.*

Offenders in the second and third case, being such as neglect to come before the beginning of the high *Mass*, or the ^q *second Vespers*, called also the ^r *Vespers* on St. George's day, have the like punishment with the former assigned them, throughout all the Bodies of the *Statutes*; *viz.* Exclusion from their *Stalls*, and station in the *Choristers* range.

An. 1. H. 6. we observe the Lord Willoughby noted to be absent upon the ^s *Eve* of the *Grand Feast*, but present on the day; and consequently he incurred no further penance, than what his absence on the *Eve* drew on him. The ^t *Earl* of Derby an. 18. Eliz. coming too late to the first morning Service, on the *Feast* day, did for some short time undergo the aforesaid penance, but soon after upon ^u Dispensation from the *Lieutenant*, went up to his Stall.

In like manner an. 11. Car. 1. the *Earl* of ^w *Exceter* came not to the *Chappel*, in the morning of the *Feast* day, till after the *Grand Procession*; and so the Penance for his tardiness, should have been according to the *Statutes*, *stare Pavimento*; but, upon consideration of his age, and the foul weather, whereby it was occasioned, the *Sovereign* permitted him to enter into his Stall.

And though absence at these times also be occasioned by *sickness*, or some unexpected accident, yet notice is to be given thereof to the *Sovereign* or his *Lieutenant*. For instance, the Lord Burghley falling ill was absent ^x from the first Morning Service on the *Feast* day, an. 37. Eliz. but upon notice given thereof, with the consent of the *Lieutenant* and *Knights-Companions*, he obtained leave of absence. The *Earl* of Dorset an. 15. Car. 1. (the *Grand Feast* being then celebrated at *Windsor*) suddenly falling ill, before Evening Prayer, on the *Feast* day, besought the *Sovereign* to excuse his attendance for the present; but the ^y next morning being recovered, he attended the *Sovereign*, with the rest of the *Knights-Companions* to the *Chapter-house*.

The Penances inflicted upon any Knight (for the foresaid defaults) he is in like manner to undergo, if he happen to offend in the like kind, when the Grand Feast is prorogued^a from St. George's day, in what place soever it be celebrated.^a (H. 8. Stat. Art. 4. c)

But if he offend in all, and have neither license, nor reasonable or allowable excuse for his absence, he is then^b prohibited entering his Stall, at the next St. George's Feast, where ever it be kept; and moreover to pay, as a pecuniary mulct^c 10*l.* to be employed towards the Ornaments of the Colledge. And we find the former kind of Penance, to have been inflicted, upon Late Comers to Divine Service, as well upon the *Morrow* after the Feast day, as on the *Eve* or Feast day it self. For the Earl of *Lindsey* coming into the Chappel on the morrow after the Feast^d held at *Whitehall* an. 8. Car. 1. after the Sovereign was entered, he suffered the punishment of standing before his stall a while, until the Sovereign signified his license, that he might ascend thereinto. In like Manner, the Earl of *Northumberland* coming somewhat late unto morning Service, on the last day of the Feast, held by prorogation at *Whitehall* the 17. 18. and 19. days of April an. 13. Car. 1. did undergo the assigned Penance, of standing beneath his stall in the middle of the *Choir*, but upon the gracious permission of the Sovereign he was soon admitted thereunto. (Colleg. W. c) (Le N. Ch. f) (Lib. R. p. 125. Rows Journal, p. 16.)

But touching the fourth degree of offence, as it is far greater than any yet named, so are there variety of Penances appointed to expiate the fault; and therefore, if any Knight-Companion shall be so negligent, as not to come^e to the celebrations of the Grand Feast, and yet have no justifiable reason of his absence, such as may be allowed by the Sovereign or his Deputy, he shall not (at the Feast to be held the ensuing year) enter into his own stall, but stand below before it, in the place above mentioned: (2.) he shall walk alone by himself, before the three Crosses, which in ancient times were born in the Grand Procession. (3.) When the Grand Procession returns to the Choir, he shall stand in the place before mentioned, the following part of the Mass, until the time of the Offertory. (4.) He shall offer last of all by himself alone. And after the humble sufferance of all these Penances, he shall forthwith approach the Stall of the Sovereign, or his Deputy, and there humbly desire absolution for his Offence. Whereupon the Sovereign, or his Deputy, shall restore him to his Stall and first estate. But we have not hitherto met with any Record or Memorial, where the particulars of this punishment were executed upon any of the Knights Offenders, albeit we too often find, where many have neither appeared all the time of the Feast, nor sent Letters of excuse, nor obtained license for their absence. As for instance an. 9. H. 6. Sir Robert Umsfrevile, Sir Simon Felbrigg, and Sir William Harington, signified not the cause of their absence: neither did the Duke of Buckingham, nor Earl of Northumberland, give any reason at all of their absence. The like hath been observed of many others, but without further memorial of what the Chapter did thereupon. (H. 3. Stat. Art. 10. i) (H. 5. Stat. Art. 10. H. 8. Stat. Art. 9. k) (Lib. N. p. 86: 1 Pag. 177.)

Fifthly, and lastly, the statutes ordain, That if any Knight-Companion remain within the Kingdom, and not having a sufficient excuse, to be allowed upon humble suit as aforesaid, shall presume to absent himself the next following year, and thereby become culpable of an omission of two years successively, from the Solemnity before mentioned, he ought thereupon to be so long interdicted his own Stall, until, in the said Chappel, he shall have offered at Saint George's Altar, a Jewel to the value of 20 Marks, of lawful money of England; and thence forward every year, so long as he shall continue guilty in that nature, the mulct must be doubled until he be reconciled and pardoned. (m) (E. 3. n) (H. 5. o) (Stat. Art. 10. H. 8. Stat. Art. 9. p)

By virtue of this last Clause of the foregoing Article, was the Lord Multravers an. 15. E. 4. for such his absence, fined at 20 Marks. And the Lord Scales, an. 36. H. 6. in a Jewel of 20 Marks value, which, as probably may be collected, was the following year endeavoured, either to be mitigated or taken off; nevertheless we find the sentence confirmed, and he left to pay the Fine imposed. (q) (Lib. N. pag. 127. Ibid. p. 118. pag. 119.)

Of later times the greatest Offender, that we observe, against this Statute, was
U u u Ferdinand

Ferdinand Earl of Derby; who having made no excuse, nor Petition for his absence in two years, was at a *Chapter*, held on the Eve of the *Grand Feast*, *an.* 13. *Car.* 1. accordingly fined, and that with some further note of negligence, but at the mediation of the Earl of *Penbroke* and *Montgomery*, he was for that time remitted. Yet was he not guilty of any future neglect; for, the following year, upon his humble *Petition* setting forth his age, weakness, and inability to Travel, he obtained a *Dispensation* for attendance on the *Sovereign* at the Feasts of *St. George* during his life.

But the most memorable case in the prosecution of a contempt, was that against the Earl of *Arundel*, who in a *Chapter* held *an.* 14. *E.* 4. was fined 740 Marks, to be paid to the *Colledge* of *Windefor*, for being absent from the Solemnity of the *Grand Feast*, for two years together without any approved cause: and the following year still continuing his Contempt, the mulct (by virtue of the aforesaid *Statute*) was doubled, and he fined in the sum of 280 Marks.

Touching the third particular, amongst those things done of course, in the *Chapter* held before the first *Vespers*, to wit, the nominating and constituting an *Officer* for holding the same (if the *Sovereign* be not present) we are beforehand to note the occasion and cause thereof, which was briefly this.

At the time of *Instituting* this Order, the *Sovereign* being engaged in Wars with *France* and *Scotland*, which he then, and for some time after, personally managed, thought fit to make provision for supply of his room, no less than in case of sickness or other urgent occasion, where he should be hindered from affording his personal presence, at such time of the year, whereon the *Grand Feast* should happen; and hereupon allowance was given by the *Statutes* to depute another in his stead.

When therefore such occasion afterwards hapned, a Commission was made out to one of the *Knights-Companions*, some reasonable time before the approach of the *Feast*; to the end, that by such a representation of his Person, none of the ancient Ceremonies might be omitted, or any defect happen through his absence. For till the beginning of *Queen Elizabeth's* Reign, we meet not with any *Commissions* that stayed for the *Sovereign's* fiat so long as until the sitting of the *Chapter*, held before the first *Vespers*. Nevertheless, seeing from thence it hath been for the most part thus practised, we think it not improper to give our account thereof here, amongst those things of course, which (if at this day the appointing such an *Officer* shall be thought requisite) are usually dispatched at the aforesaid *Chapter*. And herein we shall speak, (1.) Of the Person Nominated to this Office, (2.) his Title, (3.) the Ceremonies used at his Constitution, (4.) the nature of his Employment, (5.) and the Dignity of his Office.

As to the Person Nominated, we observe, That (most usually) he hath been one, if not the chief of the *Knights-Companions* (we mean in Authority, Eminence, or Birth) next to the *Sovereign* himself. Such were *John Duke of Bedford*, Regent of *France*, and *Humfrey Duke of Gloucester*, still also Earl of *Henalt*, *Zeland* and *Penbroke*, Lord of *Frizland*, *Protector* and Governor of *England*; both, Sons to King *Henry the Fourth*, Brothers to King *Henry the Fifth*, and Uncles to King *Henry the Sixth*. *Humfry Stafford Duke of Buckingham* (Son and Heir of *Edmund Stafford*, by *Anne Plantaginet*, Daughter of *Thomas of Woodstock*) made *Primer Duke of England* 22. *May*, *an.* 25. *H.* 6. *Thomas Earl of Derby*, Father-in-Law to King *Henry the Seventh*, the Dukes of *Suffolk* and *Richmond*, with *Marqueffes of Dorset* and *Exceter*, in King *Henry the Eighth's* time. The *Duke of Norfolk*, *Marqueff of Northampton*, *Earl of Leicester*, and *Lord Treasurers Burghley*, and *Buckhurst*, under *Queen Elizabeth*. And in King *James* his Reign, the *Sovereign's* eldest Sons the Princes of *Wales*, first Prince *Henry*, and after his death Prince *Charles*, the late *Sovereign* of blessed memory.

Next we shall consider the Time, and Place, when, and where he hath been appointed to this Employment: Concerning the Time, we observe it

anciently

Lib. R. pag.

1. 5.
u Romes Jour-
nal, pag. 24.

u Lib. p. 59.

u Lib. N. p.
y 2. 144.

z Ibid. p. 136.

3. Of consti-
tuting an Offi-
cer to hold the
Grand feast.

** E. 3. Stat.*
Art. 8. vide
H. 4. Stat.
Art. 8. H. 8.
Stat. Art. 7.

x. Of his No-
mination.

a Lib. N. p. 58.

68. & 80.

b Ex eod. lib.

pag. 61. 86. 87.

c Ibid. p. 74.

d Ibid. p. 103.

e Chart. 24.

f. 6. nu. 21.

g Lib. N. pag.

174. 175.

h Ibid. p. 258.

i Ibid. p. 32.

j Ibid. p. 33.

k Ibid. p. 34.

l Ibid. p. 35.

m Ibid. p. 50.

n Pag. 68.

o Ibid. p. 170.

p Ibid. p. 140.

anciently to have been uncertain, but so long before the Feast day, as that this Officer might make preparation, suitable to the state and grandeur this great Solemnity required: For so when Henry the Sixth had deputed his Uncle (the aforesaid John Duke of Bedford) to hold the Grand Feast at Windsor, on St. George's day, in the fourth year of his Reign, we see the Commission bears date at Leicester, the first day of April preceding. In like manner the same Sovereign, having appointed John Earl of Shrewsbury to the same employment, the 14. of May an. 35. regni sui, his Commission bears date at Hereford, the 18. day of April preceding. Again, that Commission given to the Marquess of Exeter, for holding the Feast at Windsor, upon the 17. day of May, an. 20. H. 8. is dated at Richmond the 24. of April, which was above three weeks before.

But in the Reign of King Henry the Eighth, the most accustomed time for this Nomination, was in the Afternoon of St. George's day; the day for holding the Anniversary of the Grand Feast, being in those days always appointed together with this great Officer: Nevertheless in the 13. 24. 31. and 36. years of his Reign, the appointment of the Feast, and Nomination of this Officer may be observed to happen on the morrow after the day of St. George; as also an. 1. & 2. Ph. & Mar. and an. 4. & 5. of the same King and Queen; and for the most part it was so ordered, until the 9. of Queen Elizabeth, in which year the Grand Feast was removed from Windsor unto other places, as hath been before noted. Afterwards it became customary to nominate him immediately before the first Vespers, which hath continued in use ever since.

Now the reason why so many days passed heretofore, between the date of the Commission, and the time appointed for celebrating of the Feast, was because this Officer (in those times) held the Feast at his own charge; and therefore was it thought fit and reasonable, that he should have notice of the day assigned early enough, to the end he might provide all things suitable to his own honor, and the dignity of the person he was to represent. But afterwards when he was not named, till he entered upon the Execution of his Office, to wit, immediately before the first Vespers, there needed no warning, the Sovereign being at the charge of the Feast.

As to the place, where this Officer received the honor of Nomination, that we always find to have been in Chapter, held at any the times aforesaid, and wheresoever called.

Secondly, the person designed to this employment, is in the Statutes of Institution, and those that follow, called Deputy: The first we find to have been made so, was John Duke of Bedford an. 7. H. 5. and the reason thereof given in the Registrum Chartaceum is *Because the Sovereign being then in Normandy, was employed in the recovery of his right to that Dukedom.*

And albeit the Title given by the Statutes to this Officer, be not particularly mentioned in the Black-Book, where it speaks of the said Dukes holding the Feast of St. George at Windsor, for the aforesaid year, but rather implied in the words *Regie sublimitatis locum implevit*; yet in the Registrum Chartaceum among other memorials of that same year, it is expressly set down, and the said Duke there styled *Depute del Ordre de Jaritier*: wherein also the very same Title is given to Humphry Duke of Gloucester, he being appointed to celebrate the Anniversary of the Feast at Windsor, the year following. And when the foresaid Black-Book comes to inform us (an. 1. H. 6.) that the said Duke of Gloucester did execute his Office, and hold that Feast, we find him therein called *Deputatus Ordinis*; which Title is given him also at other times, upon the like occasion, as also to the Duke of Buckingham an. 28. H. 6. to the Earl of Exeter the year following, to John Earl of Shrewsbury, the 35. year of the same King, and to many others in the Reigns of King Edward the Fourth and King Henry the Seventh.

Sometimes also, we find other Titles given to this Representative of the Sovereign, as an. 10. H. 5. John Duke of Bedford (the second time of his being such) is styled *Preses Clarissimi Ordinis*. Equivalent to this, is that expression

U u u a

of

Lib. N. p. 80.

Pag. 116.

MS. in Officio
Armor. [M 17]
fol. 30, & 31.w Lib. N. pag.
212.

x Pag. 251.

y Pag. 279.

z Pag. 294.

a Lib. C. p. 18.

b Pag. 23.

2. His Title.
c Art. 8.
d H. 5. Stat.
Art. 8. H. 8.
Stat. Art. 7.
c Fol. 6.

f Pag. 58.

g Loco citat.
h Ibid. fol. 7.

i Pag. 74.

K Ibid. p. 103.

l Ibid. p. 106.

m Pag. 115.

of the *Black-Book*, where it says, that at the *Chapter* begun at *Windefor*, an. 15. H. 6. ° *Præsidebat Nobilis Dux Gloucestræ*. And in another place of it, that the *Grand Feast* was observed at *Windefor* an. 8. H. 7. per *Johannem Denham Angliæ Thesaurarium* ° *ibi Præsidentem*; the like is said of the ° *Earl of Worcester*, an. 10. H. 8.

In the Exemplar of the *Statutes* registred in the *Black-Book*, the Title of *Vicegerent* is first mentioned, and indifferently used with that of *Deputy*; this great Officer being in some of those Articles called *Deputy*, and in others *Vicegerent*. But from that time to the 8. year of King *Henry the Eighth* we find no further remembrance thereof.

And then the *Commission* granted to the *Marquess of Dorset*, for holding the *Grand Feast* at *Windefor* that very year, invests him with such authority, ° as the *Sovereign's Vicegerent* ever used to have, and might claim by right; whence it may be inferred, that some of the *Knights-Companions* had before that time held the said *Feast*, under the Title of *Vicegerent*, though we have not met with any of their *Commissions*. Afterwards, an. 24. H. 8. the *Feastival* was appointed to be held at *Windefor*, upon the 12. day of *May*, ° in qua Comes *Arundelia Supremi vicem* gereret, or as it is exprest an. 28. H. 8. ° *Northumbria Comes Supremi vicem* gerens. And that this Title was at other times placed upon this Officer, may be implied from some other places of the forefaid *Register*, where he is said,

° *Supremi vices tenere, et administrare, et supplere, &c.*

About the beginning of the Reign of King *Henry the Eighth*, the Title of *Locum tenens*, or *Lieutenant*, began to be taken up; for at a *Chapter* held at *Eltham*, the 23. day of *April* an. 8. H. 8. it was determined, that the celebration of *St. George's day* should be held at *Windefor*, upon the 25. of *May* following,

° *Et quod potens vir, Marchio de Dorset, erit ad tunc regie Majestatis Locum tenens*. And a little after, the same old *Register*, speaking of the *Chapter* held on the 25. and 26. days of the said Month of *May*, saith they were celebrated per prædictum Nobilem Marchionem, Locum Regis tenentem, sub Sigillo Garterii legitime deputatum: Which Title of *Locum tenens*, this Book also gives to the *Earl of Arundel*, the ensuing year; and frequently to others, afterwards nominated to this Office. But the first time we find this Title expressly mentioned in the

° *Black-Book* of the Order, is an. 36. H. 8. where the *Sovereign* ° constituted the *Earl of Essex Locum tenentem*, during *St. George's Feast*; albeit it is before in the same Book, many times used, in a way somewhat different; as for Example, such a one of the *Knights-Companions* (naming him who is appointed to this Office)

Regie Majestatis locum ° impleret, or ° adimpleret, ° occuparet, ° suppleret, ° obtineret, and the like. Lastly, this Office hath been for the most part conferred, under the Title of *Lieutenant* in all succeeding times, and the other Titles of *Deputy*, *President*, and *Vicegerent* laid aside, as is manifest from the *Blue* and *Red Books*, and sundry original *Commissions* which we have seen under the Seal of the Order.

But besides the usage of these Titles of *Deputy* and *Lieutenant* severally, we have met with them sometimes joined together in one person, as in the Stile of *Henry Earl of Essex*, proclaimed at the holding of the *Grand Feast* an. 25. H. 8. as followeth; ° *Du noble & puissant Seigneur, le Conte d'Essex & de Eu, Seigneur de Bourghir, & de Loveyn, Lieutenant & Depute de la Feste de Sainte George, Chevalier, Frere, & Compaignon, de le tresnoble Ordre de la Jarretier*. As also in another of like nature, when *Henry Courtney Marquess of Exeter* and *Earl of Devonshire* held the *Feast* an. --- H. 8. wherein he amongst his other Titles, is also stiled ° *Lieutenant & Depute de la Feste de Saint George*. And in the *Blue Book* also, there is taken notice of the like conjunction of these two Titles, for an.

1. & 2. Ph. & Mar. the *Grand Feast* having been prorogued unto the 25. day of

May, it is there recorded, ° that then the *Sovereign* appointed the *Earl of Shrewsbury*, *Deputy* and *Lieutenant*.

To conclude, the Titles of this great Officer are sometimes exprest not so much positively, as by way of Periphrasis, and that in several manners; as ° *Deputatus à Rege præsit*. ° *Assignatus ore Regio præsidit*. ° *Virtute Regie Commissionis Assignatus*. ° *Cui Supremus eam potestatem commiserit*. ° *Regie sublimitatis commissione ac*

authoritate communitus. ° *Regias vices subiret*, ° *gerebat*, ° *præstabat*, ° *suscepit*, ° *cui vices*

h Lib. C. p. 18. i Lib. N. p. 103. k Pag. 111. l Pag. 142. m Pag. 148. n Pag. 155. o Lib. C. p. 19. p Pag. 53. q Pag. 59. r Pag. 132. s Pag. 100.

*vices ejus demandate sunt. Alfo * Supreme absentis vice sufficitur. ° Supreme absentis potestatem referebat. ° Supremus surrogatur. * Ejus (viz. Supremi) absentis Officio fungeretur,* with several other variations, much of the same nature.

As to the third particular, the Ceremonies used at the constituting the Sovereign's Lieutenant, they were these three; (1.) The reading of the Commission. (2.) Delivery of it to the Lieutenant. And (3.) his taking an Oath. For the Commission being ingrossed in Parchment, and prepared ready by the Chancellor, it is brought into the Chapter by him, and there read in the presence of the Lieutenant and Knights-Companions, before it be delivered; for thus we find it recorded an. 19. H. 7. [†] The illustrious Lord Thomas Marques Dorset, was impow- y Lib. N. pag. ered (to hold the Feast) by the Sovereign's Letters of Commission which were read 176.1 in Chapter. And at the meeting in Chapter, on the day prefixt, for celebrating of the Grand Feast an. 17. H. 8. by the Duke of Norfolk, it is said, that ^z in the presence of the said Duke (the rest of the Knights-Companions attending him on either side) the Kings Letter was read, wherein the power committed to the Duke was declared. So also, when the Earl of Penbroke (Lieutenant for the Grand Feast, held the 3. day of June an. 1. Eliz.) was arrived at Windsor with his Assistants, ^a and a Chapter being held, the Sovereign's Letters were read, wherein she a Lib. C. p. 31: conferred the Lieutenantcy on the said Earl. So an. 3. of the same Queen, the Earl of Arundel being Lieutenant, and the Grand Feast kept at Windsor, ^b The Letters b Ibid. pag. 40. of Legation (for so the Commission of Lieutenantcy, and Letters of Notice to the Lieutenants Assistants are here called) were openly read in Chapter. And sometimes we find the Officer taken notice of, who reads these Commissions; as when the Earl of Shrewsbury was constituted Lieutenant, at a Chapter held in the Privy-Chamber at Greenwich, on the Eve of the Feast, an. 27. Eliz. his Commission was read by the Dean of Windsor. But an. 37. Eliz. the Lord Cobham's ^c Commis- c MS. pen. G: sion of Lieutenantcy, and the ^d Prince's an. 19. Jac. R. were both read in Chapter O. T. fol. 20. d Lib. C. pag. 192. by the Chancellor of the Order; which being finished, in the next place the ^e So- e Ex. pref. MS. veraign (if present in Chapter) delivereth it ^f propria manu, to the Lieutenant, who pen. G. O. T. & vide Coll. R. C. receives it upon his ^g Knees; as did the said Lord Cobham in the great closet at Cl. fol. 9. Whitehall, an. 37. Eliz. f Lib. C. p. 41.

Thirdly, the Lieutenant is to take an ^h Oath, for the due Execution of his Office (but the form thereof we have not hitherto met with) before the Ceremonies of his Constitution are fully dispatcht. This Oath the Lieutenant takes in Chapter upon his ⁱ Knees, when sometimes the ^k Prelate and sometimes the ^l Register have read the words, whilst the ^m Black-Rod held the Book; in attestation of which the Lieutenant ⁿ kisseth the same, and then ariseth. And we find that in the aforesaid 27. year of Queen Elizabeth, the Lieutenant when he proceeded to Chappel (after the Ceremonies of his Constitution were over) gave his Commission to ^o Clarenceux (who then waited in the ^p place of Garter) to bear it before him thither. g MS. pen. k G. O. T. fol. 20. m n o Coll. R. p 6. Cl. f. 9.

And albeit, it hath been the most usual way, for the Sovereign to constitute his Deputy or Lieutenant for holding of the Grand Feast, or any part thereof, by Commission, and to add thereunto the foresaid Ceremonies of Creation; yet sometimes in great exigencies and sudden occasions, he hath appointed this great Officer by word of mouth; whereunto no other Ceremony hath been adjoined, than that of taking the usual Oath: as for instance, an. 432. H. 6. the Sovereign being then at Windsor, and falling sick a little before the Feast, the Duke of Buckingham was assigned his Deputy, [†] Ore Regio, by word of mouth. q Lib. N. p. 111.

But before we take leave of this head, we shall observe, that, in the Reign of King Henry the Eighth, though in some one of the Chapters, held during the observation of the day of St. George, both the Grand Feast hath been prorogued to a further time, and the Lieutenant nominated for holding the same: yet upon just cause, or for some reasons urged, or excuse made, which the Sovereign hath approved of; some other of the Knights-Companions hath been appointed to the execution of this Office, instead of him who had been first nominated: Thus it chanced an. 9. H. 8. when at the Celebrations of the day of St. George at Greenwich, the [†] Earl of Arundel was chosen the Sovereign's Lieutenant for holding the

† Pag. 88.
u Pag. 101.
w Pag. 112.
x Pag. 143.
3. The Ceremonies of his Constitution.

y Lib. N. pag. 176.1

z Ibid. p. 249.

a Lib. C. p. 31:

b Ibid. pag. 40.

c MS. pen. G:

O. T. fol. 20.

d Lib. C. pag. 192.

e Ex. pref. MS.

pen. G. O. T.

& vide Coll. R. C.

Cl. fol. 9.

f Lib. C. p. 41.

g MS. pen.

k G. O. T.

fol. 20.

m

n

o Coll. R.

p 6. Cl. f. 9.

q Lib. N. p.

111.

r

†

†

†

†

†

†

†

†

†

†

†

†

†

†

†

†

†

†

†

†

†

†

†

†

†

†

†

the Anniversary of the Grand Feast at Windsor, upon the 10. of May following, but he ^tnot thinking himself able to perform the Duty, humbly objected his infirmity of body, and disability otherways, and the Sovereign graciously admitting of his alledged excuse, substituted in his stead the Marquess of Dorset. So also when St. George's day was observed at the same place, in the 20. year of the same King, at which time Charles Duke of Suffolk, was ^u nominated to keep the Grand Feast at Windsor, upon the ^w 17. day of May ensuing, the Black-Book saith, ^x "That afterwards for certain causes, moving the Sovereign thereunto, that Office was transferr'd from the aforesaid Duke, to the Marquess of Exceter, who executed it consonantly to the dignity thereof." Again an. 32. H. 8. the Grand Feast being prorogued unto the 9. of May, at a Chapter held on St. George's day preceding, the Earl of Cumberland was appointed to celebrate the same. ^y But in regard the said Earl could not be present by reason of some urgent Affairs; his excuse was accepted, and the Earl of Southampton supplied his room.

But what hapned ^z an. 28. H. 8. was more remarkable; for the Earl of Northumberland (then the Sovereign's Deputy) was in the time of the first Vespers suddenly taken with the Vertigo, or diziness in his head, and that accompanied with a distemper over his whole body. ^a From hence arose a great scruple, what was hereupon to be done; it being conceived, that they could not conveniently proceed, without the presence of the Deputy, and that another could not rightly be substituted in his room, without new authority from the Sovereign: ^b But whilst they were in the midst of this controversy, he recovered, and came again among them, and performed all that was to be done, both on the Vigil, and on the day it self.

But this may clearly be inferred, from this procedure of theirs, that if the Deputy had not recovered, the Ceremonies of the Feast had been adjourned till the Sovereign had nominated a new Officer. And not unlike, but upon reflection had on this accident, and prevention of the like afterwards, occasioned ^c what was done, An. 3. & 4. Ph. & Mar. to wit, the nomination of ^d two Knights-Companions to be Deputies, namely, the Earls of Derby, and Huntingdon; the second being designed to supply the place, in case the former should be obstructed by ^e indisposition, or weighty affairs.

The Authority and Obligations annexed to this Office of Deputy (or Lieutenant) are deducible from the statutes of the Order, which give him power ^f to hold a Chapter at the hour of Tierce, on the Eve of the Feast: as also on the day it self, and punish Offenders against the statutes. And though he be thereby expressly prohibited, the ^g making of any new Decrees or Ordinances, nevertheless he may ^h correct and reform all points of the Chapter as shall seem necessary.

And now to shew that the powers granted by the Commissions, are, as derivative from, so pursuant to the statutes, we shall insert in the ⁱ Appendix first, the most ancient Commission of Deputation that Record hath preserved, being that which King Henry the Sixth gave to his Uncle John Duke of Bedford, in the fourth year of his Reign, to supply his place, when by reason of his abode at ^j Leicester, in expectation of the Parliaments sitting there, he could not personally hold the Grand Feast at Windsor that year.

First then, in the Preamble, the reason and cause of making such a Commission, is set down in general words. Next the Sovereign takes notice of the allowance given him by the statutes to constitute a Deputy, and thereupon sets down the particulars wherewith he impowers him, namely, to hold Chapters, to reform what is amiss, to make Elections, and by a general Clause, to perform all other things which should be any way pertinent to the necessary observation of the statutes: to the end his Deputy, in one and the same Instrument, might both understand the duty of his place, and be impowred to put the same in execution. Such like particulars are also inserted in the Commission made ^m to John Earl of Shrewsbury, an. 35. H. 6. But in later Commissions they are omitted, and supplied by a general Clause, which gives this Officer the same authority as had been allowed him, or such as he of right might claim. Then follows the words of Constitution (which in succeeding Commissions are ex-

^t Pag. 206.

^u Reg. Char.
^w fac fol.
66. b.
^x Lib. N. pag.
257. & 258.

^y Ibid. p. 283.

^z Ibid. p. 272.

^c Lib. C. p.
^d 21.

^a The nature
of his employ-
ment.
^e E. 3. Stat.
Art. 8.

^h Ibid.
ⁱ H. 8. Stat.
Art. 7.

^j Nam.
c. LXXVI.

^k Lib. N. p. 79.

^m Ibid. p. 116.

prest with some variety *) and lastly a Clause commanding obedience from the *Knights-Companions* present.

In the *Commissions of Lieutenancy*, (though not at all in the *Deputational Commissions*) we find the Title of this great Officer, inserted immediately after the words of Constitution, in this following manner. *We therefore by these presents name, constitute, appoint, and ordain you to be our Lieutenant, at the said Feast: Giving you full Power and Authority, to do and accomplish every thing in the same, which to our Lieutenant there, in such cases belongeth, and hath been accustomed, as it is expresst in that Commission of Lieutenancy, given to the Mar- quess of Exceter, dated at Richmond the 24. of April, an. 20. H. 8. and that other to the Marquess of Winchester, and dated at St. James's the 14. of May, an. 2. & 3. Ph. & Mar. for celebrating the Grand Feast at Windsor, the 26. of the same month: and not only in this, but in all other since, that have come to our view.*

* As Eligimus, Assignavimus, Nominavimus, Constituvimus, Instituvimus, and the like.

* MS. in Offic. Arm. [M. 17.] fol. 30. b. a Collect. A. V. W.

In the Reign of Queen Elizabeth and King James, when the *Grand Feast* was held, either at *Whitehall*, or *Greenwich*, and the *Sovereign* present only at some part of the Solemnity (as in the *Chapters*, or at the *Chappel* in the morning of the Feast-day, and sometimes proceeded publickly to the *Closet* (not down into the *Chappel*) to the first and second *Vespers*) but by reason of some weighty affairs, could not conveniently be present in person, at all parts of Divine Service, and other Ceremonies and things to be done and executed at the *Feast*, neither on the Eve, nor on the day of *St. George*, nor the next day following; in such case the Clause in the *Commission*, which constituted the *Lieutenant*, was put after this manner, *We do therefore name, &c. you in our ab- sence, to be our Lieutenant for that purpose, &c.* Or, as it is in that *Commission* made unto Prince Henry, an. 4. Jac. R. *We have made choice of you to supply Our Peace, whensoever we shall have cause to be absent, at any time of the said Eve, Day, or Morrow: And do give unto you full power and authority, to do and accom- plish all things in Our absence, incident and meet to be performed, for the honoring and celebration of this Feast, as by the Statutes, and laudable usage, and Customs of Our said Order doth appertain.*

b *Rewes Four- nal*, fol. 209.

c *Autogr. penes W. D. N.*

Now how the *Sovereign* is to constitute such an Officer, appears from the directions given in the *Statutes of Institution*, to wit, by his *Letters*; and that these *Letters* since, do carry the style of *Commissions*, and ought to pass under the Seal of the *Order*, and the *Sovereigns* sign manual, is evident from divers passages in the *Registers*, and from the *Commissions* themselves: For instance, The before recited *Deputations*, made to John Duke of Bedford, an. 4. H. 6. is said to be done, *by a sufficient Commission delivered unto him, under the Com- mon Seal of the Order.* So an. 8. H. 6. Humfry Duke of Gloucester, &c. was deputed *by a certain Commission, signed by the Sovereign under the Common Seal.* And for holding the *Feast*, an. 1. E. 4. Viscount Bourghier was also Deputed by the *Sovereign, by a fit and sufficient Commission.* So also the Earl of Essex, an. 14. E. 4. *by the authority of the Sovereigns Commission.* In like manner an. 18. E. 4. *The Lord Dudley was assigned by vertue of the Sove- rains Commission, to observe the yearly Feast of St. George, and to perform all things according to custom.*

d E. 3. Stat. Art. 8.

e Lib. N. p. 191

f Ibid. pag. 86.

g Ibid. p. 125.

h Pag. 134.

i Pag. 142.

It may be further observed, that the *Commissions of Lieutenancy* (as ancient as the Reign of King Henry the Eighth) are said in the close to issue forth *under the Seal of this most Noble Order.* So was that to the Duke of Norfolk, an. 17. H. 8. And also that other to the Marquess of Exceter, an. 20. H. 8. which runneth thus, *Teoven under the Seal of Our Garter, &c.* and according to the Modern expression, *Given under the Seal, &c.*

k Pag. 250.

These *Commissions of Lieutenancy*, an. 14. Eliz. and the six following years run under the title of *Letters Patent*, and are so called in the *Blue Book*; but how justly, is to be questioned. For in one of these *Commissions*, made to the Earl of Lincoln, an. 15. of the said Queen, the conclusion is the same with those other *Commissions* of like nature, of former years, viz. *Teoven under the Seal of Our Order, at, &c.* and wanteth that Clause, or conclusive period, from which

m Lib. G. p. 64.

such

ⁿ *Cokes second Part Instit. p. 78.*

^o *Page. 60.*

^s *The Dignity of his Office. p Lib. N. pag. 246.*

^q *Fol. 53. b.*

^r *Ibid. f. 66. b. they were four; Anno 21. H. 8. we find but three: and afterwards, an. 32. H. 8. w Lib. N. pag. 283.*

^x *Page. 298.*

^y *Num. CLXXIX.*

^a *Lib. N. pag. 204.*
^b *Registr. Chartac fol. 53. b.*
^c *Ibid. f. 66. b.*

^d *Lib. N. pag. 274.*
^e *Lib. G. pag. 122.*

such instruments (as we are informed) derive the ^o name of *Letters Patent*, to wit, *In cujus rei testimonium has literas nostras fieri fecimus Patentes*. Again, *an. 12. Eliz.* and for seven years after, we observe from the said *Blue Book*, that this Officer was made ^o *with the consent of all the Knights-Companions*, a Phrase much like that used elsewhere, touching the *Election of Knights*, as hath been before taken notice of. But, if duely examined, we shall find this expression of no more strength to entitle the *Knights-Companions* to a joynnt power with the *Sovereign*, for the constituting of a *Lieutenant*, than the other is to make them *Colectors*; where though something requisite to the obtaining of their consent, may seem to be implied in the aforesaid words, yet we conceive those expressions were used by the *Register*, as of his own choice, rather than such as the Law of the *Order* will allow of.

The Dignity of this Officer, as he ^p represents the *Sovereign's* person, and supplies his place, is very great. Which, that we may the better set forth, we shall distinguish the Honors annexed to this eminent Place, as they are essential, and necessarily consequent thereto; or personal, that is, such as may additionally be conferred upon him, at the pleasure of the *Sovereign*.

That this Officer, as an essential Honor to his Place, hath from ancient time, had some of the *Knights-Companions* assigned him for his *Assistants*, during the whole *Feast*, is evident enough throughout the *Registers*; yet the first mention of *Assistants*, as to the Title particularly given unto such persons, we find in the ^q *Registrum Chartaceum*, in the Decree made at a *Chapter*, called at *Eltham*, on *St. George's day, an. 8. H. 8.* (wherein after the *Anniversary* of the *Grand Feast*, had been appointed to be observed at *Windsor*, upon the 25. of *May*, then next ensuing, and the *Marquels of Dorset* nominated the *Sovereign's Lieutenant*) the ^r *Earl of Essex*, the *Lord de la Ware*, the *Lord Monteagle*, and *Sir Thomas Lovell*, were appointed *Assistants* to the said *Marquels*. Another instance in the same *Register* concerning the celebration of the *Grand Feast* at *Windsor*, the following year, upon the 10. day of *May* (the *Earl of Arundel* being appointed *Lieutenant*) affirms that the ^s *Lords de la Ware*, and *Monteagle*, and *Sir Thomas Lovell*, and *Sir Henry Marney* were also appointed *Assistants* to the said *Earl*.

The number of *Assistants* were in those times uncertain, here above we see ^t *Ibid. f. 66. b.* they were four; *Anno 21. H. 8.* we find but three: and afterwards, *an. 32. H. 8.* ^w *Lib. N. pag. 283.* they were reduced unto ^u two: which number, following times exceeded not, except once, and that was the last year of the aforesaid King; when there were

^x three appointed.

These *Assistants* were always appointed in *Chapter*, when the *Lieutenant* himself was Nominated; and afterwards had *Letters* of notice sent, to each of them, from the *Sovereign*, requiring their repair to *Windsor*, a Transcript wherof see in the *Appendix*; of which form have we seen several other *Letters*, sent upon the same occasion, to each of the *Assistants*, after they had been appointed to the said Service.

And as before we have noted in the case of *Lieutenants* themselves, it hath sometimes chanced, that others were afterwards upon occasion, put in the places of those first named; so here amongst the *Assistants*, it hath in like manner hapned: for the ^a *Lord Poynings an. 8. H. 8.* ^b by the *Sovereign's Commission* was appointed *Assistant* to the *Lieutenant*, in the room of the *Earl of Essex*, who had been before nominated. And the *Earl of Rutland* being named one of the *Assistants an. 22. H. 8.* was afterwards excused by the *Kings Letters*, ^c whose place the *Lord Montjoy* executed. So *an. 29. H. 8.* the aforesaid *Earl of Rutland* falling sick, after the time of his nomination, and before the approach of the *Feast day*, the ^d *Earl of Sussex* was substituted *Assistant* in his place.

And sometimes a *Quorum of Assistants* have been nominated, as *an. 3. & 4. Ph. & Mar.* in case some of them should be absent: for the *Lord Pagit*, the *Lord Clynton*, the *Lord Howard of Effingham*, and *Sir Edward Hastings*, having been appointed *Assistants* to attend the *Lieutenant* at the following *Feast*, it is added, ^e *that at least any two of them, who at that time were nearest to the Kings Court, should be there present, to assist the Sovereign's Deputy, according to his Majesties pleasure, as the Customs and their duty obliged.* Another

Another Honor, essential to the Dignity of the *Lieutenant* is, that the *Sovereign* layes an Injunction upon the rest of the *Knights-Companions* then present, to yield *Assistance* and *Obedience* to him in all things, as if himself were personally present: For so is it enjoyned by the *Commission* to the aforesaid^k *John* ^{k Lib. N. p. 80,} Duke of Bedford. And generally all Forms of *Commissions* since, close with such like *Injunctions* of Obedience, in the execution of the *Sovereign's* Authority.

To these Honors before spoken of, we might add some other of the like nature, viz. that this great Officer possesseth the *Sovereign's* Place, in all *Proceedings*, and at the *Table*, that he hath his *Train* carried up, that a *Reverence* is given him by the *Knights-Companions*, an essay taken for him of the *Offering*, and offereth with *Carpet* and *Cushion*; but these we reserve to speak of at large by and by.

In reference to personal Honors (though generally all *Lieutenants* sit in their own seats in the *Chappel*) we find the Marquess of Northampton had assigned to him a higher Stall than his own, during the whole Festivity of St. George: For in the *Chapter* held on the Eve, an. 3. Eliz. the Celebration of the day of St. George, being that year observed at Whitehall, the *Sovereign* decreed,^k ^{k Lib. C. pag. 38.} that the foresaid Marquess, during only the time of his *Deputation*, should take the stall of the Earl of Shrewsbury, then lately deceased. Now the Marquess's own Stall was at that time the eighth Stall on the Princes side, but^l ^{l MS. fol. m. penes W.D. n. fol. 2. a.} that which the Earl of Shrewsbury then lately posselt, was the fourth on the same side, and next below the Duke of Holstein, whose Seat was the lowest among the *Stranger Princes* then alive.

To conclude; it seems in time, the Duty incumbent on both the *Lieutenant* and his *Assistants*, grew so burthensom, that the *Sovereign* took their attendance and charge into consideration, and therefore in their favour decreed (at a *Chapter* held on St. Georges day at Greenwich, an. 19. H. 8.) ^{o Registr. p. Chariac. fol. 63. b.} That the *Knights-Companions* Appointed or Deputed [Lieutenants or Assistants] to be present or to keep the Feast of St. George in the Colledge of Windsor one year, should not be Appointed or Deputed to be present, or to keep it the year next following, unless the *Sovereign* should please to be present at the day or Feast. And to the same effect, though briefly, is this Decree recorded in the *Black Book*. But more large and particular is it thus entred in one of the *MS.* now remaining in the Office of Arms. ^{q Pag. 255.}

^{r Lib. M. 17. fol. 33. b.} **Demozandum, That the Sovereign of the Order King Henry the Eighth our Sovereign Lord, by the advice of the Knights of the said Order, the 19. year of his most noble Reign, by vertue of a Chapter holden at his Manor of Greenwich the 23. day of April, Ordained and enacted by Act of Chapter, that all such Knights of the Order from thenceforth, which should be appointed by his Highness to be his Lieutenant or Deputy at the Feast of St. George kept at his Castle of Wyndesore, and all such other Knights as was to the said Lieutenant, Attendant, and Assistant at that time, should, for the next year ensuing, be clearly discharged and excused for their attendance at the said Castle; unless any Knight of the Order upon his own devotion would be at the said Feast of St. George at Wyndesore, then he to be there at pleasure.**

Nor was that yet thought a sufficient indulgence to the *Lieutenant* and *Assistants*, to be absent from the next *Grand Feast*, and therefore the said Ordinance was afterwards an. 23. & 24. H. 8. extended to the space of three years, from and after the said Feast. ^{q Ibid.}

And herewith we are to note, That this Officer always held the *Feast*, at his peculiar charge and cost; and gave liberal Rewards to^c *Garber*, and for his *Scutcheons*, as also to the *Officers of Arms*, the *Gentlemen-Officers*, the *Alms-Knights*, the *Officers* and *Grooms of the Chamber*, the *Clerks of the Kitchen*, the *Harbinger*, and *Groom-Porters*, with the rest of the *Sovereign's* *Servants*, Waiters of several Offices in the *House*, to the *Choristers*, the *Vergers*, &c. that kept the *Robes*, and the *Sexton*, even to those who made clean the *Seats*, and laid the *Cushions*. ^{c Collett. A. V. W. vide etiam MS. penes G. G. T. fol. 155. 156.}

X x x

And

While the *Prebends* are entering their Seats, the *Pursuivants*, *Heralds*, and *Provincial Kings of Arms* (in a Body) enter also the *Choire*; and after their double Reverences made, pass up towards the *Altar*, and joyn to the *Alms-Knights*.

But sometimes heretofore, to enlarge the Ceremony, as *an. 3. & 8. Car. I.* the *Pursuivants* have by themselves advanced into the *Choire*, and proceeding into the middle, there made their Reverences, first towards the *Altar*, and then turning about by the left hand, did the like to the *Sovereign's Stall*, then, they ascended unto the second *Haut Pas* before the *Altar*, where also dividing themselves on each side, (the *Junior Pursuivants* joyning near to the *Senior Alms-Knights*) kept the like spacious Lane between them, as the *Alms-Knights* did, to the end also, that the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* might have the *Altar* in full view, as they made their several Reverences towards it.

Next, the *Heralds* proceeded in a Body by themselves, up to the middle of the *Choire*, and there having likewise made the like double Reverences, ascended the first *Haut Pas* before the *Altar*, and divided themselves, flanking even with the *Pursuivants*.

In like manner the two *Provincial Kings* made their Entry, (doing their Reverences) and placed themselves on each side upon the edge of the lowest *Haut Pas*, towards the *Stalls*. Thus they divided themselves, not only here at their first entrance, but at all other times when they passed up and down, or in, or out of the *Choire*, during the foresaid Feasts. But for shortning of the Ceremony, (as of late hath been the usual course) the *Pursuivants*, *Heralds*, and *Provincial Kings* joyn all in a Body, and perform this part of the Ceremony together.

Afterwards, the two *Junior Knights-Companions* enter, and passing on till they come near their own *Stalls*, there make their double Reverences together, first towards the *Altar*, next the *Sovereigns* Royal Stall; then they divide themselves, and take their stand directly before their *Stalls*. Thus also do the rest of the *Knights* present, at their entry into the *Choire*, and in the same order as they pass in the Proceeding to the *Chapter-house*; taking their several stations under their proper *Stalls*, until the *Sovereign* shall have ascended his Seat. But where any of the *Knights* want his opposite *Companion*, in such case he enters the *Choire* alone.

And this manner of doing *Reverence* and *Obeisance*, was introduced in the Reign of *Henry* the Fifth, and hath continued in use ever since. For whereas from ancient time, the *Knights-Companions* at their entrance into the *Choire*, and taking of their *Stalls*, gave *Reverence* to *God*, and towards the high *Altar*, *John Duke of Bedford, an. 6. H. 5.* holding the Feast of *St. George* at *Windfor* in absence of the *Sovereign*: It was then in Chapter decreed, 'That all the *Companions* of the Order, whensoever they entered into the *Choire*, and at their going forth, as likewise at their descent from their *Stalls*, should do *Reverence* to the *Sovereign*, if present; or if absent, to his Stall: by which Ceremony they should owe him as their *Sovereign*, and acknowledge all manner of subjection and obedience to be due unto him. But when the *Sovereign* returned out of *France*, he signified to the *Knights-Companions*, as much more reasonable and convenient, 'That at the Entrance and Departure aforesaid, the devout *Obeisance* due to *Gods* honor, should be first paid to *God*, and towards his *Altar*, after the manner of *Ecclesiasticks*; and then, what of Honor was due to him, to pay it next to Himself, or in his absence, to his Stall.

Next to the *Knights-Companions* doth the *Black-Rod*, *Garter*, and *Register* enter in Breast, who proceeding also to the middle of the *Choire*, do their double Reverences together, and then pass to their Form, placed on the South side of the *Choire* before the *Sovereigns* Stall, and stand before it.

After them come in the *Chancellor* and *Prelate*, who having made their double Reverences also, go from the middle of the *Choire*, and stand before their Form, set between the *Sovereigns* Royal Seat, and that other but now mentioned. As touching these two Forms whereon the Officers of the Order sit in the *Chappel*, there is a special Decree for the allowance of them, entered at the

g h
i k
l m
n o
p q
r

Colleg. W.
le N. Cl.
Colleg. W.
le N. Cl.
Colleg. W.
le N. Cl.

Manner of doing
Reverence,
and when in-
troduced.

Lib. N. pag.
65.

Ibid.

Colleg. W.
le N. Cl.

MS. penes
W. D. N. f. 7. b.
15. d.

z Lib. N. pag.
132.

end of the *Constitutions* of their *Offices*, which is this; ² *Within the Choir of the Chappel, during the Celebration of Divine Service, there shall be placed before the Sovereigns Seat two other Seats or Forms, one before another; upon one of which shall sit the Prelate and Chancellor of the Order, on the other the Register, Garter, and Visser of the Black-Rod.*

f c c R. W.
R¹ le N. Cl.
h

Last of all, the ¹ *Sovereign* entrench, (having the *Sword* born before him, but his *Band of Pensioners* stay at the *Choir door*, to keep off the *press*) who coming to the ² *Steps* which ascend to his *Royal Seat*, makes there a *Reverence* towards the *Altar*, and then ascending thereinto, makes a ³ *second Reverence* and seats himself.

i MS. penes
h¹ W. D. N.
f c f. 2. a. for
7. b. vide MS.
penes G. O. T.
pag. 123.

And when (in the *Sovereigns* absence) his *Lieutenant* proceeds to the first *Vespers*, he goes in the *Sovereigns* place, and as soon as he hath entred the *Choir*, and is come near the *Sovereigns Stall*, he stands, and makes a little pause there; then ¹ *doing his Reverences*, first towards the *Altar*, next towards the *Sovereigns Stall*, after he hath again stood a while before it, he ² *ascends his own* (which like unto the *Stall* of the *Sovereign* (*Emperors, Stranger Kings and Princes* when present) is garnished with a ³ *Carpet and Cushion* laid before it) where being arrived, he makes the double *Reverence* a second time, and then sits down.

m c c R. W.
R¹ le N. Cl.
o

And now, in order to placing the *Knights-Companions* in their *Stalls*, *Garter* (so soon as the *Sovereign* (or his *Lieutenant*) is set down) maketh again his usual *Reverences*, in the middle of the *Choir*, then turneth to the two *Senior Knights*, and doth his *Reverence* to each of them; whereupon, at one instant, they make their double *Reverences* ¹ *below*, where they stood, and forthwith ascend at the ² *first or Western entrance*, that goeth to the *side Stalls*; where being ³ *arrive*, they make again the double *Reverence*, and seat themselves.

p MS. penes
W. D. N. f. 7. b.
c 20. a.

But when the *Sovereigns Lieutenant* is present, each *Knight* adds a ³ *third Reverence* to him, both when they ascend to, and descend from their *Stalls*. And this *third Reverence*, not only they, but all the persons who pass in the *Proceeding* add to their double *Reverences*, so often as there is occasion to make it, after such time as the *Sovereigns Lieutenant* is entred his *Stall*, and so long as he continues therein, both on the *Eve*, the *Feast day*, and the *Morrow* after.

q c c R. W.
R¹ le N. Cl.
f

In like order, and with like *Reverences* do all the rest of the *Knights-Companions* (having each waited the seating of his senior fellow) ascend their *Stalls*, where they proceed by pairs; otherwise they take their *Stalls* singly. But the place appointed for all but the two *senior Knights-Companions* to enter into, and come out of their *Stalls*, is the ¹ *middle entrance*, or that at the ² *East end* of the *Stalls*, which of them fall out to be next below each *Knight's* respective *Stall*, to avoid the trouble and inconvenience of passing before any of their *senior Companions*.

The *Knights-Companions* being all seated, the ¹ *Prelate and Chancellor* of the *Order* pass into the middle of the *Choir*, and having made double *Reverences*, return to their *Form* and sit down. After them doth the *Register, Garter*, and *Black-Rod*, pass thither, there make their *Reverences*, and then sit down on their *Form*, in the order as they proceeded.

As touching the *Sovereign's* other *Attendants*, we have observed, that the *Nobleman* who carries the *Sword* retires before the *Sovereign's Stall* a little on the right hand, and the *Lord Chamberlain* of the *Houhold* (if not a *Knight* of the *Order*) and the *Vice-Chamberlain* on his left, until the *Sovereign* give them leave to sit down; the *Clerk* of the *Closet* stands at the *Sovereign's* right hand; but the young *Noblemen* that carry up the *Sovereign's Train*, and the *Gentleman* of the *Robes*, sometimes repose themselves upon the *Steps* going up to the *Sovereign's Stall*.

c Lib. N. p. 233.

This great Ceremony of the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* entry into the *Choir*, and taking their *stalls* being finished, preparation for the *Vespers* begin; in reference to which the *Prelate* ascends to the *Altar*; it being appointed among other things relating to the duty of his Office, That ¹ *Whensoever the Sovereign should think fit to keep the Solemnity of St. George at Windesore, he should be obliged to be present to celebrate divine Service; which if he purposely omitted, it*

is there provided, that ^d for such omission he should be fined 20 Marks to the ^d Lib. N. p. Colledge, to be laid out upon the Reparations that are there to be made, ^e unless he alledge to the *Sovereign* and the *Knights-Companions* some reasonable and just cause of his being absent. And therefore, in case of Vacancy of the See of *Winchester*, Sickneſs, or other lawful occasion for absence, the *Sovereign* hath diſpneſed with this penalty, and appointed ſome other Biſhop to officiate for him. The Proceeding to the *Altar* on this occasion is in manner following.

Fiſt the *Serjeant* of the *Veſtry* makes a double Reverence, then comes before the *Prelate* and makes a ſingle one to him, who thereupon ariſeth from his Seat, and the *Serjeant* proceedeth before him into the middle of the *Choir*; where ſtanding a little on the one ſide, the *Prelate* there makes a double Reverence, and from thence paſſing forward after the *Serjeant*, and having aſcended the uppermoſt *Haut-pas* before the *Altar*, he makes ^a one ſingle Reverence towards the ſame, and ſo goes to the ^b North ſide of it.

In his aſcent to the *Altar*, he hath ſometimes made ^c three double Reverences, *viz.* one before his Seat, a ſecond in the middle of the *Choir*, and the third on the fiſt *Haut-pas*, and after theſe, the ſingle one above the *Haut-pas*'s; all in a direct line before the *Altar*.

After the *Prelate* hath arrived at the *Altar*, the two ^d *Provincial Kings*, *Heralds*, and *Pursuivants*, leaving their forementioned Station, join together, and paſs along the *Choir*, until the *Kings* come neer to the *Form*, whereon the *Regiſter*, *Garter*, and *Black-Rod* ſit, where all making their double Reverences together, they divide themſelves again on each ſide, and there ſtand.

Laſtly, the *Arms-Knights* come down into the *Choir* in a Body, and there make their joint double Reverences, and then take their Chairs.

The like in every thing is performed in the *Chappel* at *Whitehall*, and other places, where the Solemnity of the *Feaſt* is obſerved; where becauſe the *Arms-Knights* are abſent, the *Pursuivants* at *Arms* aſcend neerer the high *Altar* than when they are at *Windeſor*, that there may be room enough for the reſt of the *Officers* of *Arms* to ſtand in rank, yet ſo that the *Provincial Kings* ſtand not further from it than the lowermoſt *Haut Pas*, to avoid preſſing upon the *Junior Knights*.

All theſe Ceremonies being finiſhed, and the ſeveral Degrees in the Proceeding duly placed, the *Choir*, reſembling the celeſtial Spheres, where the *Sovereign* of this moſt Illuſtrious Order ſits as *Sun*, among the *Planets* and *Stars*, the *Divine Office* is begun by the *Prelate* in a moſt ſolemn manner; which is now celebrated according to the Order of the Book of *Common Prayer*, eſtabliſhed by the Acts of *Parliament* made an. 1. *Eliz.* & 14. *Car.* 2. being the ſame appointed in the *Rubrick* for the Evening of the 22. day of *April*, or for the Evening of ſuch other day, whereon the *Feaſt* by *Prorogation* hath been celebrated: Where ſometimes to ſhorten the Ceremony, the *Prelate* hath omitted the *Confefſion* and *Absolution*, and began with the *Pater Noſter*; and frequently inſtead of the *Magnificat*, or *Nunc dimittis*, or one of them, ſome choice-compoſed *Anthems* are ſung to the *Organ*: and after proceeding on with the *Creed*, and the reſt of the *Prayers* in the accuſtomed order, to that of *St. Chryſoſtom*, before which in the Reign of King *James*, was the following Prayer uſed throughout the *Feaſt*.

O Lord, ſave our King,
And mercifully hear us, &c.

Almighty and moſt merciful Father, we humbly beſeech thee in the Name of thy Son Chriſt Jeſus our Lord and Saviour, to direct and endue King *James* our moſt worthy Governour, with the continual and plentiful grace of thine holy Spirit, that as he is anciently and rightly deſcended from the valiant and prudent Princes of this Realm, the fiſt Founders and Creators of this moſt noble Order of the *Garter*, ſo he may abound and excell in all things acceptable to thee, namely in the maintenance of piety, peace, juſtice, and unity, to the ſupport of good Learning, relief of the poor and oppreſſed; and grant moſt gracious Lord, that all the Noble-men of this Realm, eſpecially ſuch as be Companions

^d Lib. N. p. 233.

^e unless

^a one
^b North
^c three
^d Provincial Kings, Heralds, and Pursuivants

^e unless

^d Lib. N. p. 233.

The Course of Divine Service

panion of this most honorable Order, may be truly devoted to godliness, valour, and virtue, in such sort, that God may be thereby the better honored, their Sovereign served, the Common-wealth secured, and the memorial of their well-doing remain to their posterity. And that we all may live and dye in thy faith and fear, and walk in these good works, which thou hast appointed us through Jesus Christ our Lord, Amen.

O Lord, long preserve James our King, and all the Companions of this most noble Order of the Garter, Amen.

Next follows the Prayer of St. Chrysostom, and last of all the Blessing. After the pronouncing of which, at the Feast of St. George celebrated at Windsor, in the 15. year of the present Sovereign, there was an Anthem composed for the present Solemnity, sung to the Organ and other Instrumental Musick, placed in the Organ loft: and this was the first time, that Instrumental Musick was introduced into the said Chappel.

a { Colled. W.
b { le N. Cl.
c {

When the Vespers are ended, the ^a Prelate goes to the middle of the Altar, and there before it (with great reverence) makes an obeisance; and thence (^b taking the Serjeant before him) descends to the middle of the Chaire, where he makes his double Reverences, and so ^c returns to his Seat; whereupon all make ready to pass out of the Chaire in the following manner. And first,

Proceeding
out of the
Chaire.

The *Alms-Knights* come from their Seats, and draw together into the middle of the Chaire, and having made their double Reverences, in manner first above described, they ascend in a body upon the highest *Haut Pas* before the Altar (the Junior near to the Rails) and there dividing themselves again, make a Lane, and stand in the same place they did before.

Next them, the *Pursuivants*, *Heralds*, and *Kings* make their double Reverences, & ascend to the Altar, where dividing themselves, they stand where they did before. All which is done, to the end the body of the Chaire may be wholly cleared, for the *Knights-Companions* to descend into, and stand over against their Stalls.

d { Exord. Col.
e { le N. Cl.
f { N. Cl.
g {

After this, *Gariter* riseth from his Seat, and passing into the middle of the Chaire, makes there a double Reverence, then going forward till he ^d come over against the Junior *Knights* stall (for when they descend from the Stalls, he is the first) he there bows towards him, and (^e if his Companion be present) then turns himself towards the opposite side of the Chaire, and immediately bows to him also, and then gives the usual Signal or Summons for the *Knights-Companions* to descend, by the waving or bending of his Scepter towards them; which done, he draws back to his Seat without any other Obeisances. And the Reason given is, ^f for that at this time while *Gariter* is retiring, the Junior *Knights* are making their Reverences, and therefore it were not proper for him to be also doing his.

h {
i { Ibid.
k {
l {

Altoon therefore ^a *Gariter* hath given the aforesaid Signal, the two ^b Junior *Knights-Companions* (if both be present, otherwise the Junior alone) rise from their Seats, and standing above before their Stalls, make their double Reverence ⁱ both at one time, and then descend into the Chaire by the way they went up; where making a second double Reverence, they forthwith place themselves directly over against their own Stalls, and ^k stand there.

Then the ^l next Junior *Knights* (or *Knight*, if he be not paired with his *Companion*) arise, and descend with like Reverences; and in like order, do all the rest that are present at the Ceremony, each with his opposite *Companion*; but if he be wanting, then he performs the Ceremony alone.

When all the *Knights-Companions* are come down, and placed before their Stalls, the *Black Rod*, *Gariter*, and *Register* step forth, make their double Reverence all ^s once, then retire before their Forms, and stand there. After whom, the *Chancellor* and *Prelate* do the like.

Altoon as they have done, the *Alms-Knights* descend into the middle of the Chaire (the *Princes* going formost) and there, turning about by the left hand, ^s before, make their double Reverences together, and so pass out through the west door of the Chaire, and at some convenient distance thence, stand, till the

the *Prebends* be also come out and joyned to them, and moving a little further, when the *Officers of Arms* are come forth, all then attend the coming out of the *Knights-Companions*, and they, that of the *Sovereign*.

Whilst the *Alms-Knights* are passing out, as aforesaid, the *Prebends* of the *Colledge* came forth of their Seats into the *Choire*, and in the middle thereof make likewise their double Reverence, and then pass out (the *Verger* of the *Chappel* going before them) and joyn themselves to the *Alms-Knights*.

Next the *Pursuivants*, *Heralds*, and *Kings* descend into the middle of the *Choire*, and there making a double Reverence, pass likewise forward

Then the two *Junior Knights* (or *Knight*, if his *Companion* be absent) make their double Reverence in the middle of the *Choire*, over against their proper Stalls, and proceed forth, and so do all the rest in order, the *Seniors* last. And here (and all other times when the *Knights-Companions* pass out of the *Choire*, except in the *Grand Procession*) do the *Choristers* step in, and bear up their *Trains* to the *Presence-Chamber*, which piece of Service, was so at first permitted, to intitle each of them to the favour of a half-piece gratuity, which the *Knights-Companions* have usually bestowed upon them, in recompence of their officious Attendance. in Colled. W.
le N. Cl.

After the *Knights-Companions*, the *Black-Rod*, *Garter*, and *Register* make their double Reverences, and pass forward. The like do the *Chancellor* and *Prelate*, and follow them.

Then doth the *Sovereign* rise out of his Royal Seat, and having made his obeisance towards the *Altar* above in his Stall, he descends, and doth the like again being descended.

But when the *Sovereign* is absent, his *Lieutenant* descends from his Stall with usual Reverences; and when he comes to the *Sovereigns* Royal Stall, he stands a while before the entrance into it, and then making his accustomed Reverence, proceeds out of the *Choire*. MS. A. pen.
E. W. G.

The *Sovereign* having made his Reverences, proceedeth forthwith out of the *Choire*, (the *Sword* being born before him) thence he passeth through the South door of the *Chappel*, into the lower Ward of the *Castle*, and presently enters into the same way, by which he came to the *Chapter-house*; and as the *Statutes* do ordain, & returns in the very same order, viz. per modum *Processionis* back to the *Presence-Chamber*. P. E. 3. Stat.
Art. 3.

When the *Servants* and *Attendants* of the *Knights-Companions* are arrived at the great Gate, in the upper Ward of the *Castle*, entering into the *Sovereigns* Lodgings; (or to the same place, as far as their number reached, to make the Lane for the Proceeding to pass thorow, when the *Sovereign* proceeded to the *Chapter-house*) then do they begin to divide, and rank themselves on either side the passage, through the *Stone-Gallery*, up the Stairs to the *Guard-Chamber* door, in the same order, as they were marshalled at the beginning of the Proceeding; that so the whole Proceeding may again pass through them.

The *Alms-Knights* having entred the *Guard-Chamber*, and being come near to the middle, the *Juniors* begin to fall off on both sides the Room; the next *Seniors*, (and so forward to their Governor) following in due order, do place themselves up further in the Room.

Whereupon the *Prebends* pass through the Lane so made, and as soon as they are past the *Alms-Knights*, fall off on either side the Room, to the *Presence-Chamber* door. Then the *Pursuivants*, *Heralds*, and *Provincial Kings* proceeding through the Lane made by the *Alms-Knights* and *Prebends*, do forthwith enter into the *Presence-Chamber*, and immediately fall off on either side, towards the State, the *Kings of Arms* standing uppermost.

Then enter the *Knights-Companions*, and place themselves on each side of the State, in such order as they sat in their Stalls, the eldest nearest the State; but such whose *Companions* are absent, stand alone. After whom follow the *Officers* of the Order, disposing themselves conveniently neer the State. Colled. W.
le N. Cl.

Lastly, the *Sovereign* (attended as before) passeth to the step before the State; where being arrived, he turns his Face towards the *Knights-Companions*, who immediately make their Reverences jointly to him, and he thereupon puts off his

his Cap, and re-salutes them, which done, the *Sovereign* and they withdraw into the *Privy Lodgings*, until Supper time.

But in *Queen Elizabeth's* Reign, when the *Feast* of *St. George* was kept at *Whitehall*, or at *Greenwich*, and the *Sovereign* (as was usual for the said *Queen*) proceeded no further on the *Eve* to *Vespers*, than to the great *Closet*, the ordinary way, and thence sent her *Lieutenant* into the *Choir*: Then in such case, when *Vespers* were ended, the *Lieutenant* returned from the *Choir* orderly through the great *W Hall*, and so back to the said *Closet*, and stood at the Door thereof attending the *Sovereigns* coming forth, from whence they all proceeded before her into the *Presence-Chamber*, and there the Ceremony (for that time) ended.

But in *King James* his Reign, when the Supper on the *Eve*, as also the following Meals, were prepared in the *Banqueting-House*, the *Sovereigns Lieutenant* frequently returned from the *Closet* by the *Lobby* over the *Terrace* (since pulled down) to the said *Banqueting-House*, (the *Noblemens Servants* standing on either side the way) instead of going to the *Presence*; and passing up to the *State*, gave an end to the Ceremony till Supper time: and so do we find it observed in the 7, 8, 9, 10, 12, 13, 14, and 16. of the said *Sovereigns* Reign.

When the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* are retired, they are not to put off any part of their *Robes* till after *supper*; for that is prohibited by the *Statutes*,* not only to those that do not sup, no less than those which do. And hereupon the 22. of *April*, *An. 19. Car. 2.* the *Grand Feast* being held at *Whitehall*. The *Sovereign* having a desire to take the *Air*, after he had taken leave of the *Knights* in the *Presence-Chamber*, took *Coach*, and went into *Hide-Park*, taking the *Duke of Monmouth* and *Earl of Oxford* with him, and all three in their whole *Habit* of the *Order*. The *Duke of York* also at the same time, went in another *Coach*, his *Dutcheß* accompanying him, but habited in full *Robes* likewise; and so returned to *supper*.

* E. 3. Stat.
Art. 3.

SECT. VII.

The Supper on the Eve.

When the *Sovereign* is pleased to Sup publicly, on the *Eve* of the *Feast* at *Windsor*, the *Supper* hath been always prepared in *St. George's Hall*; and was accordingly done *an. b 14. & c 15 Car. 1. & 13. 15. & 23. years* of the present *Sovereign*.

The usual place at *Whitehall* for this first Meal, was heretofore the *Presence Chamber*,^d of latter times the *Banqueting-House*; and at *Greenwich* either the *Chamber*,^d or *Council-Chamber*; where the *Sovereign* or his *Lieutenant* were always present. But when the *Feast* of *St. George* was celebrated at *Tork*, *an. D. N. f. 3. a. 17 Car. 1.* The *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* marched after the first *Vespers* ended, to an^b *Hause* prepared for that purpose, and Supped there; and thence returned to his own *Palace* to Bed.

But if the *Eve* of the *Feast* fell out to be on a *Fasting Day*, as it did *an. 22. H. 8. upon a Saturday*, and *an. 11. Jac. R. upon a Friday*; the *supper* was always omitted, and the *Sovereign* or his *Lieutenant* and *Knights-Companions* were served of the *Void* only; concerning which *Term*, more shall be spoken immediately.

Nor doth the *Sovereign* when he suppeth publicly, pass privately to the place: but as soon as notice is given that the first *Mess* is set upon the *Table*, he forthwith entrench the *Presence-Chamber*, whence the *Officers* of the *Order* and of *Arms*, the *Knights-Companions* in their full *Robes* (for so the *statutes* of the *Order* direct in particular) having put themselves into their usual and due *Order*, proceed before him into *St. George's Hall*. Where being entred, the *Pursuivants*,

1 E. 3. Stat.
H. 5. Art. 3.
17. 8.)

b Palmers
large Journal.
pag. 14.
c Palmers
Journal.
pro an. 1639.
pag. 19.
d MS. penes W.
D. N. f. 3. a.
7. b. 20. 4.
e MS. penes G.
O. T. pag. 114.
f MS. prefat.
D. N. penes f.
26. b.
g Palmers
large Journal.
pag. 38.
i MS. in Offic.
Arm. M. 17.
fol. 32.
k MS. penes E.
W. G. f. 151. d.

Servants, Herald, and Provincial King, fall off all upon the right hand, ^m opposite to the *Knights-Companions* Table, the *Junior Pursuivant* standing towards the lower end of the Hall.

Then the *Knights-Companions* passing up beyond them, formerly ⁿ divided themselves on either side, according to the Decree ^o *an. 16. H. 8.* and made a ^p stand, each taking place, ^q according to the order of their *Stalls*. But at the *Feast* held at *Whitehall an. 19. Car. 2.* the *Sovereign* directed, that they should stand all on the right hand side, facing their Table.

Next the five *Officers* of the Order follow, who ascending ^r beyond the *senior Knight*, retire on the right hand; After them the *Sovereign*, who coming up last (all the *Officers* of *Arms* ^s doing him reverence as he passeth by) goes directly to the *Haut-pas*, before his own Table, where turning himself towards the *Knights-Companions*, and ^t putting off his Cap, they return their Reverences jointly to him.

After this, in order to the *sovereigns* sitting down to *Supper*, he is first served with Water by some Noblemen appointed for that Service. Next Grace is said by the *Prelate*, and then doth the *Sovereign* place himself in his Chair, set in the middle of the Table. After whom the *Senior Knight*, conducted to his Table by two *Officers* of *Arms*, sits down, and so do all the rest in due order, at the Tables appointed for them. Whereupon the *Officers* of the Order and of *Arms*, retire out of the Hall to *Supper*.

Now in regard all these last mentioned particulars are ordered alike, and in the same manner, at the other Meals of this *Grand Feast*, as here at this: We chuse rather to transfer the further enlargement upon them, to our Discourse of the *Dinner* on the *Feast day*, where these, and such things and services as are also common to every Meal, are once for all brought to view, and handled at large.

If a *Lieutenant* be constituted, he ^u proceeds to *supper* in full Robes, and in the same order as doth the *Sovereign*, whether it be to *St. George's Hall*, or elsewhere, and sits ^v alone at the *Sovereign's Table*, yet on the ^w left hand of the Cloth of State; being served in all points with ^x Water, and by a ^y Cupbearer, Carver, and ^z Sewer, as is the *Sovereign* himself.

This, and the other Meals were usually heretofore closed with Comfits, Spices, and Wine, and of late times with a costly Banquet: which, after the *sovereign* hath washed, is brought in and placed upon the Table.

This Banquet after *Supper*, is that which in some places is called the *Voyd*, as *an. 31. H. 8.* it is observed, that *supper* being ended, the *President* and *Knights-Companions* had a ^a *Voyde* of Comfits and *Hypocras*, and *an. 4. Eliz.* a ^b *Voyde* of *Spices* and *Wine*. So ^c *an. 6. & 7.* of the same Queen, it is said, they were served of the *Voyde* and departed, and *an. 20. Eliz.* it is likewise said, *Supper* being ended, and ^d *Voydance* brought, they departed for that night. So also is it phrased in *King Henry the Eighth's Statutes, Art. 3.*

But somewhat more fully *an. 5. Eliz.* when *St. George's day* falling upon a *Friday*, at the return from the second *Vespers*, instead of a *Supper* (it being a fasting night) the *Lieutenant* ^e standing in the middle before the Cloth of State, and the *Knights* along on either hand, the Comfits, Spices, Sugar, and Wine were brought in, and in several Bowls (or *Chargers*) presented; first ^f a Bowl to the *Sovereign's Lieutenant*, and then a Bowl to each two of the *Knights-Companions*; and the *Relator*, at the close, noting also the posture they took the *Banquet* in, calls it a *Voyde*; for he says, they had the ^g *Voyde* standing. And lastly, the *Feast* hapning on a *Friday, an. 27.* of the same Queen, celebrated at *Greenwich*, it is noted by ^h *Robert Cook* then *Clarencieux*, that when the *Banquet* was brought in, the *Lieutenant* and all the *Knights-Companions* standing in order, were served of the *Voyde*, because they had no *Supper*.

When *supper* is ended, and the *Banquet* taken away, the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* ⁱ proceed back (in the same order as they came) into the *Presence-Chamber*; where the *Sovereign* (or his *Lieutenant*) standing on the step before the State, saluteth them as before, and then ^j appoints the hour and place

Collect. H. W.
de N. Cl.

Lib. N. p. 312.

MS. f. pen.
pref. W. D.
N. f. 3. a.
vide etiam
MS. penes
G. O. F. p. 114.

The Voyd,
what?
y Lib. L. 1. in
Offic. Arm. p. 19.
2. MS. pen. W. D.
N. fol. 7. b.
Ibid. f. 15. a.
cy 20. a.
MS. pen. G. O.
F. pag. 114.

MS. pen. W.
D. N. fol. j
10. a.

MS. quart.
penes E. W.
fol. 9.

Palmeri largè
Journ. pag. 14.

MS. 4. penes
E. W. G. fol. 2.

^h MS. in Offic.
Arm lib. M. 17.
fol. 32. b.

place for the *Knights-Companions* to attend him the next morning; which commonly is about ^h 8 a Clock, after which they make their Reverences, and all depart to their several Lodgings.

ⁱ Palmer
^k large foun-
nal, pag. 38.

The like if *Supper* be prepared in any other place besides the *Presence-Chamber*; for from thence (when it is ended) doth the *Sovereign* (or his *Lieutenant*) and the *Knights-Companions* proceed to the *Presence*, because the Ceremony ought to end there. So we find it observed *an. 17. Car. 1.* when the *Feast* was solemnized at *Tork*, where, though the ⁱ House appointed to sup at, was somewhat remote from the *Sovereign's* Palace, yet the *Knights-Companions* and *Officers* of the *Order* attended the *Sovereign* thence, after *Supper*, to the ^k *Presence-Chamber* in the foresaid Palace; and there, he taking leave of them, they immediately retired to disrobe themselves. In like case *an. 27. Eliz.* the *Feast* being then held at *Greenwich*, and the *Sovereign's* *Lieutenant* and *Companions* supping in the ^l *Great Chamber*, (at the neither end of the *Guard-Chamber*) they thence attended the *Lieutenant* to the ^m *Presence* after *Supper*; where the *Lieutenant* taking his place at the upper end, and the *Knights-Companions* their places in due order, they stayed a while there, and then departed.

^l Collect. R.
^m C. Cl.
ⁿ

The like did they the next day, both after the *Grand Dinner*, and at night after *Supper*, because the *Lieutenant* dined and supped in the said *Great Chamber*.

^o Collect. E.
^p W. G.

But when *Supper* was prepared in the *Presence-Chamber*, at any of the *Sovereign's* Courts, the *Sovereign* (or his *Lieutenant*) and *Knights-Companions* did take their leave one of another in the same Room, there being no occasion for any formal *Proceeding* further. Nevertheless, if any of the *Knights-Companions* accompanied the *Sovereign* (or his *Lieutenant*) to his Lodgings, they then went ^o after, not before him, in regard the ^p state of that nights *Service* ended in the *Chamber* of *Presence*; and after they are retired to their several Lodgings, they have permission to put off their Robes.

When the *Sovereign* or his *Lieutenant* do not sup in *St. George's Hall* on the *Eve* of the *Feast*, or the following night, the *Officers* of *Arms* have formerly had the liberty to eat their *Suppers* there; and this privilege and assignment of a Table, was given them by a *Decree* in *Chapter* held the 16. of *June*, *an. 8. Eliz.* as followeth.

^q Lib. C. D. 52.
videlicet lib. Par-
tit. in Offic.
Arm. fol. 275.
et MS.
penes G. O. T.
fol. 93.

^q That forasmuch, as the *Officers* of *Arms* had formerly no certain place assigned them, wherein they might eat their meat, the night next preceding the day of *St. George*, and also on the Evening of the *Feast* day, they should from thenceforth hold, within the Hall at *Windsor*, that Table, which was before that time appointed for the *Chancellor* and *Register*, and other *Officers* of the *Garter*, to sit at, on the day of the said Festival. But how they came to lose the privilege, hereby granted, we cannot learn; for now instead of sitting in the *Great Hall*, they are necessitated to eat their Meat in such Rooms of the *Castle*, as upon the score of friendship they can obtain; and among others, at the *Grand Feasts* held at *Windsor an. 13. & 15. Car. 2.* Captain *Burgh*, one of the *Alms-Knights*, very courteously befriended them with the use of his lower Room, to dine and sup in; and in the 23. year of the same King, Captain *Hull*, another of the *Alms-Knights*, did them the like kindness.

CHAP. XXI.

THE
ORDER OF THE
Ceremonies
ON THE
Feast Day.

SECT. I.

The Proceeding to the Chappel in the Morning.

Albeit the Celebrations of the *Feast* of St. George take up three days inclusively, that is to say, part of the 22. all the 23. and part of the 24. days of *April*; yet the 23. day [the day of St. George] is the *Grand day*, wherein the chiefest and most solemn Ceremonies are celebrated; all things being set forth after the noblest order that can be devised, for the greater honor and lustre of this Princely and Ancient Order of the Garter.

The Ceremonies of this *Grand day* may be divided, into *Sacred* and *Civil*; the former solemnized in the *Chappel*, the latter in St. George's Hall. The *Sacred* (as is most requisite) are first celebrated; in reference to which, the *Knights-Companions* then present at *Windsor*, repair to the *Sovereign* in his Privy Lodgings, about the hour he had appointed them the night before, vested in the whole *Habit* of the Order; and thither also repair all the *Officers* of the Order.

In the mean time, the rest of the Degrees and Persons, which compleated the *Proceeding* to the *Chappel*, on the *Eve* of the *Grand Feast* (and before remembred) do repair to the several stations that were then appointed for them, and there attend the *Sovereign's* coming forth into the Chamber of Prefence, viz.

The Attendants on the	} To the Passage from the Guard-Chamber door, down into the Cloister and upper Ward, Into the Guard-Chamber. Into the Prefence.
Knights-Companions	
Alms-Knights and	
Prebends	
Officers of Arms	

Y y 2

And

And in these several places, do they all rank themselves, in the very same Order, as is before set down, and directed to be observed on the *Eve*.

Here it will be proper to note, that though the *Serjeant Trumpeter*, and the *Trumpets*, do not pass in this Proceeding, nor in that on the *Eve*; yet at the Feast held *an. 23 Car. 2.* they stood ranked one by one, when the Proceeding came forth of the great Gate, in the Upper Court to Morning Service, on the right hand against the Wall, but sounded not.

When the *Sovereign* (having the *Knights-Companions*, and *Officers* of the Order before him) hath entred the *Presence*, the *Sword* is delivered to the *Nobleman* appointed to bear it; and after the *Sovereigns* usual Salutation, and *Knights-Companions* Reverences returned, the whole Proceeding sets forward towards the *Chappel* in the same Order, as on the *Eve*; the *Knights-Companions* having their *Trains* born by some of their own Gentlemen.

At the ^a foot of the Stairs, entering the *Cloyster* or *Stone-Gallery*, do ^b twelve Gentlemen of the *Privy-Chamber* attend, with a rich *Canopy* of Cloth of Gold; who, when the *Sovereign* approacheth receive him under it, and bear it over his head, ^c until he arrive at the *Choir Door* of *St. George's Chappel*; and this *Canopy* is carried over the *Sovereign* only in the Morning of the Feast Day, not in the Afternoon, nor on the *Eve*, nor the Day after the Feast.

The *Processional way* to the *Chappel*, is the same they traversed on the *Eve*, if the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* march to the *Chapter-House* first; for ^d anciently it was the Custom to hold a *Chapter* in the Morning of the Feast Day, either before *Mattins*, and sometimes when ^e *Mattins* was finished before the *Grand Procession* set forward. This course received interruption in Queen *Elizabeths* time; during which no *Chapter* was held in the Morning, but in the ^f 26. ^g 31. ^h 38. years of her Reign, and then only for admitting of some of the *Officers* of the Order. But the time of holding this *Chapter*, was restored by King *Charles the First*, who several times held it before the first Service began, as in the ⁱ 5. ^k 14. ^l 15. Years of his Reign.

But if no *Chapter* be at this time held, then as soon as the Proceeding comes near to the *Chappel*, instead of entering the passage between the East end of the *Chappel*, and King *Henry the Eighth's Tomb-House*, (as it doth on the *Eve*, because the *Sovereign* goes first to the *Chapter-House*) it proceedeth straight on to the *South Door* of the *Chappel*, and thence into the *Choir*. Yet the present *Sovereign An. 15.* of his Reign, appointed the whole Proceeding to pass by the said *South Door*, along the Southside of the *Chappel*, and then to enter in at the *West Door*, which was then, and since, so observed.

When the *Alms-Knights* are come to the *West Door* of the *Choir*, they enter, and pass up above the steps to the *Altar*, in the very same manner and Order, as is at large described and mentioned to be observed, upon the entry of the Proceeding into the *Choir*, on the *Eve* of the Feast.

Then do the *Prebends* take their Seats, and

The *Officers* of *Arms* pass to the *Haut Pas's* of the *Altar*.

After this, the *Knights-Companions* proceed, and stand before their Stalls.

The *Officers* of the Order before their Forms, and

The *Sovereign* ascends his Royal Seat, as also

The *Knights-Companions* their Stalls.

Then the *Prelate*, conducted by the *Serjeant* of the *Vestry*, goes up to the *Altar*,

The *Officers* of *Arms* descend into the *Choir*, and lastly

The *Alms-Knights* retire to their Seats.

All which being done, the *Prelate* begins the *Morning Service*; wherein he proceeds according to the order prescribed in the *Book of Common Prayer*, save only that the first Lesson, being made proper to the Festival, is taken out of the 44 Chapter of *Ecclesiasticks*.

This solemn Proceeding to the *Chappel* in the Morning of the Feast day, is, and hath been most usually performed on Foot; nevertheless sometimes heretofore, the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* have proceeded on Horseback, to enlarge the state and gallantry of the show.

For

^a (Palmer's
^b large Journ.
^c p. 14. & 15.

^d Fez Vetus.
MS. gen. G. O. T.
^e MS. f. p. 12.
^f an. 1. & 2. Ph.
^g Mar.
^h Lib. C. p. 94.
ⁱ Ibid. p. 111.
^j Pag. 130.
^k Lit. R. p. 48.
^l Ibid. p. 140.
See Palmer's
large Journal,
pag. 14.
^m Palmer's Jour-
nal, pro an.
1639. pag. 20.

For it is remembred, that an.^m 16.^e E.⁴ the Feast of St. George being then celebrated at *Windsor*, the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* rode to the Chappel on Horseback, to hear Mass that morning: and with them also rode the *Queen*, the Lady *Elizabeth* the King's Daughter, and the Dutchess of *suffolk* the King's Sister, the Lady *Marchioness Mountague*, the *Marchioness Dorset*, and divers other Ladies, in *Robes* embroidered with *Garters*; concerning which Habit we have already spoken.

So also an.^m 3.^e H.⁷ on the Morning of the *Feast-day*, did the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* proceed on Horseback to *Matins*, with equal splendor, or rather more glorious, than on the *Eve* to the first *Vespers*: For the *Knights-Companions* were vested in *surcoats* of * *White Cloth*, embroidered with *Garters*, (the *Livery* of the new year) the Kings Courser was trapped with a *Trapper* of St. George, of white Cloth of Gold, and the Lord *Berners* bare the King's *Sword*, his Courser being trapped with St. *Edward's Arms*. This Proceeding was augmented by the presence of the *Queen*, and the Kings *Mother*, attended with a splendid Train of *Ladies*, and others that waited on them, themselves being attired in the *Livery* of the *Order*, and their Horses most richly accoutred with Foot-Cloths, Trappings, and all other Furniture correspondant, in like State as on the *Eve*. Again, in the 20 year of the same *Sovereign*, who then held the Feast of St. George at *Baynards Castle* in *London*, he proceeded on Horseback to St. *Paul's Church* (in like order as on the *Evening* before) where he heard *Matins*. And King *Henry* the Eighth, at the Feast held at *Windsor* in the 11. year of his Reign, rode with the *Knights-Companions*, about eight a Clock in the morning, down to the *Colledge* to hear *Matins*, in like manner as on the *Eve*, and alighted at the South door of the *Chappel*. The like did King *Philip* an.^m 1.^e & 2.^e Ph. & Mar. And *Queen Elizabeth* in the sixth year of her Reign, proceeded also on Horseback to the *Morning Service*, in her whole Habit of the *Order*.

Lastly, an.^m 6.^e Eliz. the *Sovereign* in the whole Habit of the *Order* (the *French Ambassador* riding near her) and all the *Knights-Companions* with the *Officers* of the *Order*, and *Officers of Arms*, proceeded on Horseback to the *Chappel* on the Morning of the *Feast-day*. And in like manner did the *Sovereign's Lieutenant*, at the same Feast, ride to the first and second *Vespers*, and to the *Morning Service* the day after the *Feast*.

It was a Custom begun by *Queen Elizabeth*, and used when she celebrated the Feast of St. George, either at *Whitehall* or *Greenwich*, for the *Sovereign's Lieutenant* and the *Knights-Companions* in full Robes, attended with the *Officers* of the *Order* and of *Arms*, to meet in the *Presence-Chamber*, (about 9 a Clock in the Morning of the *Feast-day*) and thence to proceed as they did the *Evening* before, through the *Guard-Chamber* down into the *Great Hall*, and thence into the *Chappel*, where they took their Stalls as on the *Eve*; after which, *Morning Prayer*, according to the order established in the Church of *England*, was begun and continued so far as the *Letany*; and this was called the *first Service*; which done, they all descended from their Stalls, in the accustomed order, and proceeded back to the *Presence*, in the same manner, and by the same way as they went to the *Chappel*, and there waited the coming of the *Sovereign*; before whom they proceeded a second time to the *Choir*, where the *Letany* and *Grand Procession* begun, (called the *second Service*) at which the *Sovereign* was usually present, but never at the first *Service*.

And the first memorial that we have met with, of this double proceeding to the *Chappel* in the Morning of the *Feast-day*, is recorded in the *Blue Book* of the *Order*, an.^m 3.^e Eliz. And this double Proceeding and dividing of the service, continued throughout the Reign of *Queen Elizabeth* and *King James*, not only when the Feast of St. George was celebrated at *Whitehall* or *Greenwich*, an.^m 7.^e 8.^e 10.^e 12.^e 13.^e 14.^e and 16.^e Jac. R. but also an.^m 15.^e 20.^e 21.^e and 22.^e of the same *Sovereign*, when solemnized at *Windsor*, and also the first year of *King Charles* the First. But from that time, the *Sovereign*

h Pag. 22. Illustrissimus Comes Arundel
(constituted the *Sovereign's Lieutenant* for that Feast) cum reliquo Ordinis comitatu stipatus, Matutinis Precibus interfuit. Postea vero omnes celeberrimi Ordinis Commilitones, illustrissimæ Regiæ dederunt operam seduli; quæ Sacellum est ingressi, inibi; Regis sedili recepta, quod reliquum erat celebratis gratiosè peregit.
i MS. pen E.W.G. k Eod. MS. l Lib. C. p. 1.
m Ibid. pag. 6. n Pag. 19. o Pag. 30.

went

^p Lib. G. went to the Chappel to the beginning of *Divine Service*, and the celebration thereof continued on, without any interruption, to the end; and this latter Custom hath been ever since duly observed by the present *Sovereign*.

But when it was known (before the *Lieutenant* proceeded to the first Service) that the *Sovereign* did not go the *Grand Procession*, (as, when either through indisposition of Body, or some other occasion, she could not come abroad) there the *Service* being begun, continued; and at the usual time the *Grand Procession* began, wherein the *Sovereign's* place was supplied by the *Lieutenant*.

^q Lib. R. p. 1. Nevertheless once we observe, that the *Sovereign's Lieutenant*, at the finishing of the first service, proceeded back to the *Sovereign's* Lodgings (the *Feast* being then kept at *Windsor*) not knowing of the *Sovereign's* indisposition, which understanding to be such, as permitted him not to go in the *Grand Proceeding*, he with the rest of the *Knights-Companions*, returned to the Chappel a second time, to celebrate the rest of that Mornings Ceremonies.

SECT. II.

The Proceeding to the second Service.

^b ^{MS. fol. pen.} BUT when the *Feast* hath been celebrated elsewhere than at *Windsor*, as soon as the *Prelate* was come down from the *Altar*, upon finishing the first Service, the *Knights-Companions* descended from their Stalls in usual order, and then the *Sovereign's Lieutenant*, with the *Officers of the Order*, and of *Arms*, proceeded before him to the *Presence*, to conduct the *Sovereign* to the second Service. This second *Proceeding* to the Chappel was disposed in the same order, as was that in the Morning to the first Service; only, in the latter, because the *Sovereign* proceeded, the *Sword* also was carried. Here follows a *Scheme* of one of these *Proceedings*, viz. an. 19. Eliz.

^c MS. pen. G.
O. T. pag. 113.

^e Pursuivants.
Heralds.
Provincial Kings.

^f This Lord and the three following Knights wanted their opposite Companions, therefore went single.

^f Lord Howard of Effingham.

Lord Viscount Mountague.
Lord Clynton.

Earl of Penbroke.
Earl of Worcester.
Earl of Bedford.
Earl of Leiceſter.
Earl of Suffex.

The Usher.

Mr. Dean of Windsor,
in place of the Register.
The Bishop of Winchester.
Sword, born by the Earl
of Southampton.

Garter.

One Gent. Usher.

One Gent. Usher.

The *Sovereign*.

^g The Earl of Ormond (on the left hand) assisted the Robe on her shoulder.

The Earl of Rutland (on the right hand) assisted the Robe on her shoulder.

The Train of the Robe
born by the Earl of Oxford,
The Train of her Kirtle
by the Countess of Derby.

^g The year preceding the *Sovereign* had her Mantle burn up in like manner from her shoulders by the Earl of Northumberland on the right hand, and the Lord Russell on the left. Ex cod. MS. pag. 123.

The *Processional way* from the *Presence* to the *Chappel* at *Whitehall*, is at this time, the same as it was in the Morning to the first Service, viz. through the *Guard-Chamber* and *Great Hall*. And as soon as the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* had ascended their *Stalls*, after the usual manner, in the s 3. ^b 4. and ⁱ 5. ^g MS. penes W. D. N. f. 2. b. h Ibid. f. 8. a. i Fol. 10. a.

Sometime afterwards, as an. 18. & 19. Eliz. instead of a *Psalm* an ^k *Anthem* was sung by the *Choire*, in praise of the *Sovereign's* presence there, with her *Knights-Companions*; which custom of singing an *Anthem* immediately before the *Grand Procession*, was observed an. 19. ^m 14. & ⁿ 16. Jac. R. and probably the use continued long after. ^k MS. fol. penes G. O. T. p. 123. ^l MS. penes m. E. W. G.

But an. 4. Eliz. by reason that the *Sovereign* was not well, she somewhat altered the usual processional way to the *Chappel*, proceeding from the *Presence*, ^o first to the great *Closet*, where she reposed her self, while the *Choire* was making ready to advance in the *Grand Procession*; and when the *Sovereign* was gone into the *Closet*, the *Lieutenant* and *Knights-Companions* leaving her there, ^p proceeded through the great *Hall* into the *Chappel*, where they took their *Stalls* in due and solemn order, while the *Choire* sung a *Psalm*. After which the *Letany* begun, and then the *Knights-Companions* descended from their *Stalls* in usual order, and ^q went the next way up to the *Closet*, having the *Officers* of the *Order* and of *Arms* before them; where waiting the *Sovereign's* coming forth, they returned before her again to the *Chappel* (the *Choire* having by that time advanced forward in the *Grand Procession*) and proceeded through the body thereof. ^o MS. fol. penes p. praf. W. D. q. N. fol. 8. b.

SECT. III.

Of the Grand Procession.

WE are now arrived at the *Grand Procession* of this Noble Order, which is indeed the most solemn and most illustrious part of the whole Ceremony; to utter in the state and magnificence whereof, it seems here both proper and necessary, to premise somewhat concerning *Procession* in general, and by reason of their correspondency, to say something of *Triumphs*, *Cavalcades*, and Ecclesiastical Proceedings; those glorious and pompous Solemnities, which the wisdom of all Ages, and custom in most parts of the World for all, or in all parts for some, have thought most necessary to exhibit upon particular and remarkable Occasions.

Procession is so called as it were ^{*} *progressio à procedendo in publicam*. The original of *Processions* some deduce from the ancient *Jews* in the Old Testament; and well may we do so too, since we observe the *Israelites* removal from *Sinai* to *Paran*, was ^a according to the commandment of God, and the order and manner of their Proceeding thus recorded. ^a Duran. de Ritibus Eccl. Cath. p. 427. ^b Num. c. xci. v. 13.

^b First went the Standard of the Camp of the Children of *Judah*, where *Nahshon* the Son of *Aminadab* commanded in Chief. ^b Cap. 10. v. 14. usq. ad vet. 28.

Next that of *Issachar*.

Thirdly, that of *Zebulon*: and after these

The *Tabernacle* born by the Sons of *Gershon* and *Merari*.

Then followed the Standards of *Ruben*, *Simeon*, and *Gad*: and after them,

The *Kohathites* bearing the *Sanctuary*.

Afterwards the Standards of the Camps of *Ephraim*, *Manasseh*, and *Benjamin*: And lastly in the Rere came

The Standards of *Dan*, *Asher*, and *Naphtali*.

^c Cap. 5. A second and most solemn *Proceeding* we have in the Book of ^e *Joshua*, at the famous encompassing the Walls of *Jericho*; where ^d first the *Army* proceeded on before the seven *Priests*, who sounded the seven Trumpets of Rams horns, then the *Ark* of the *Covenant* of the Lord followed them, and lastly the *Rere* came after the *Ark*.

^{e 2 Sam. cap. 6.} Again, when the ^e *Ark* was fetched from *Kiriath Jearim* by *David*, unto the House of *Obed Edom*, it was brought thither with great Ceremony, the *King*, and all *Israel* joining with him in the *Procession*: And to be more particular as to the order thereof, *David* himself informs us out of the 67 *Psalms* (which most Interpreters agree to be penn'd upon this solemn occasion) that in this *Proceeding*, ^f *The Singers went before, the Minstrels followed after, and in the midst were the Damsels playing with the Timbrels*. Moreover, for the setting forth of this Solemnity and celebration of the glory of *God*, not only vocal Musick [*Psalms*] namely the 47. and 67. *Psalms*, as the *Rabins* are of opinion, were composed and sung; but *Musical Instruments* to the honor of *God*, were also introduced, ^{g 2 Sam. c. 6. ver. 5.} *even all Instruments made of Fir Wood*. ^{h 1 Chron. cap. 13. ver. 8.} *And David and all Israel played before God, with all their might, and with singing, and with Harps, and with Psalteries, and with Timbrels, and with Cymbals, and with Trumpets*. All which is not only our Warrant but Precedent.

Now in respect of the correspondence and alliance between the State of *Processions* and *Triumphs*, and that a *Triumph* seems but to be a Military *Procession*, We think it not amiss in speaking of *Processions* to divide them into *Military*, *Civil*, and *Ecclesiastical*: Under the *Military* may best be comprehended *Triumphs*, and the *Transvection* of the *Roman Knights*; under the *Civil*, the pompous *Entries* or *Cavalcades* of *Princes*, into or through any great *City*; and the *Ecclesiastical* are those generally so called, wherein the *Church* proceeds upon a solemn account of *Supplication* or *Thanksgiving*: To all which, in the last place, shall follow the order of the *Grand Procession* of this most Noble *Order*; which in reference to the Degrees of the Persons appearing therein, is composed of a mixture of such as are to be seen in each of the three former.

Triumphs.

It is evident enough out of the sacred Story, that *Triumphs* were of ancient time celebrated after the obtaining Victory over Enemies; and the *Triumphal* ^{i Exod. cap. 15.} *Songs* of ⁱ *Moses*, made upon the destruction of *Pharaoh* and his Armies in the ^{k Judg. cap. 5.} *Red Sea*, and of ^k *Deborah* and *Barak*, after the discomfiture of *Sisera* and *Jabin*, seem to inform us so much. But a more particular account of a *Triumph*, with the order of *Proceeding*, is recorded in the second Book of the *Chronicles*, where *Jehosaphat* having taken the spoil of the Children of *Ammon* and *Moab*, it is said, that ^m *every man of Judah and Jerusalem returned, and Jehosaphat in the forefront of them, to go again to Jerusalem with joy; and they came to Jerusalem with Psalteries, and Harps, and Trumpets, unto the House of the Lord*.

Besides the ancient *Jews*, the *Grecians* and *Romans* did oftentimes, upon the gaining of signal Victories, ordain and celebrate *Triumphs*; which led to their *Temples*, where Sacrifices were made, and there the Solemnity terminated.

It is a received opinion, that ⁿ *Bacchus* first triumphed after his Victory over the *Indians*; and that at *Rome*, *Romulus* was the first, who, at his return to the City, after a Victory, sending his captived Enemies before, himself followed on foot, and after him marched the whole Army in due order.

^o But it is thought by some, that there was never any absolute *Triumph* celebrated at *Rome*, till the time of *Tarquinius Priscus*, who triumpht over the *Sabins*, and ancient *Latines*, as ^p *Plinius Secundus* relates, and subdued 12 several Nations of the *Tusci*. And thence first came the ^q *Fasces*, the *Trabeae*, the *Selle curules*, the *Annuli*, the *Phalerae*, the *Paludamenta*, the *Prætexta*, the *Curtus Triumphalis*, drawn with four Horses, the *Toga pictæ*, the *Tunice palmate*, and all other Ensigns of *Triumph*, mentioned by ^r *Lucius Florus*.

As concerning the word, ^s *Varro* affirms that *Triumphare* hath its appellation, for that such of the *Souldiers* as returned with the *Emperor*, all the way as they marched from their very entrance into the *City*, unto the *Capital*, used to cry out unto him in his passage, with a loud voice, *Ido triumphæ, Ido*.

This

This *Triumph* was the highest honor the *Roman City* could bestow, and given to a *General* when he had gain'd a Victory, with little loss to his own Army, and great loss to the Enemy: And among the *Roman Writers* ^{u Mart. de Guichardo de antiq. triumph. Speſſacchi, pag. 21.} *Valerius Maximus* observes, that it was provided by Law, that none should have a *Triumph* granted, but upon the slaughter of 5000 of the Enemy in Battel.

These *Triumphs* were either *Triumphs minores*, termed also *Ovations*, or *Maiores*, which were perfect and entire *Triumphs*. In *Ovations* (granted upon putting an Enemy to flight without effusion of blood, or obtaining a Victory against an Enemy of mean quality, as Slaves, Pirates, or the like) ^{x M. Guich. de antiq. Trium. ph. Speſſ. pag. 24.} the *General* either went on foot, or was drawn through the *City* with one Horse only, and conducted to the *Capital* by *Plebeians*, or at most by *Roman Knights*; the *Sacrifice* was only of *Sheep*, and thence called *Ovation*; whereas in a just and compleat *Triumph*, the *General* was drawn in a *Triumphal Chariot* by four White Horses, and conducted into the *Capital* by the whole *Senate* going before him, and the *Sacrifice* was of *Oxen*. Moreover in an *Ovation* the *General* wore a plain ^{y Perot. in Cornucopia. fol. 74. col. 1.} purple *Gown* without any Gold or embroidery, and a Garland of *Myrtle*; but in the greater *Triumph* (called properly *Triumphus*) he wore the *Trabea*, or Garment of State, and had his Temples adorned with a Wreath of *Laurel*.

What the order and state of these *Triumphs* were, will partly appear by the description at large of that famous *Triumph* of *Scipio* the elder, out of *Appianus Alexandrinus*: But for a general description of a *Roman Triumph*, it is best seen from *Onuphrius Panvinus*, who hath most accurately collected it out of ^{z Salmath. in Pancyr. lib. Rerum deperd. Cap. de Triumph.} *Dionysius Halicarnassensis*, ^{a Lib. 2. c. 5.} *Valerius Maximus*, ^{b Lib. 2. cap. 8.} *Josephus de bello Judaico*, ^{c Lib. 7. c. 24.} *Plutarch*, ^{d In vita Pauli Aemilii.} the aforesaid *Appianus Alexandrinus* and others.

And to perpetuate the memory of these glorious shows to posterity, and cause them not only to outlive the triumphal day, but also that Age; The *Romans* in publick places of the *City* erected *Statues*, *Columns*, and *Arches*; and caused the memorials thereof to be inscribed on *Marbles*, &c. We also meet with great variety of emblematical Devices referring hereunto, in the *Roman Coins*, both of Gold, Silver, and Brass, as will appear out of *Hubertus Goltzius*, *Antonius Augustinus*, *Franciscus Angelonus*, *Ottavianus Strado*, *Adolphus Occo*, and divers others; who have illustrated that Subject. Which Custom being revived, hath been often used (especially in this and the last Century) among the *European Princes*; in the former of which ^{e Johannes Jacobus Luckius} affords us variety of Examples, among those which he calls the *Nummi Triumphales*.

And for a description in painting, there is now to be seen in the *Sovereign's* Gallery at *Hampton Court* in large pieces, the *Triumphs* of *Cæsar*, done with great Art by the famous and admirable Painter *Andrea Montegna*, which are also extant of his own Engraving.

But to remember somewhat else, which more particularly suits with those *Proceedings* of the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* of the most Noble Order of the *Garter*, especially when celebrated on Horseback; We shall bring hither a prospect of the stately *Transfection* or *Cavalcade* of the *Equestrian Order* among the *Romans*, annually celebrated in *Rome*, on the *Quintilian Ides*, which answers to our 15. day of *July*, concerning which, *Dionysius Halicarnassensis* affords this commendation, that ^{f Sylloge Numismatum, elegantiorum Edit. Argent. 1620.} *certainly it was a gallant sight, and worthy the greatness of the* ^{g Evelyns Sculptura, pag. 52. Transfection of the Roman Knights.} *Empire*.

This solemn show was first instituted by ^{i Liv. Dec. x. lib. 1. extremo, vide etiam Val. Maxim.} *Q. Fabius*, that the pomp and glory of the *Equestrian Order*, might thereby be the more fully observed; not for mustering the *Knights* before the *Censors*, who were thereupon to note their defects or neglects; for that was done at another time of the year, namely, on the 18. *Calends* of *October*, and the 18. *Calends* of *December*, as may be seen among *Grueters Inscriptions* in a Marble Table of the ^{m Inscript. Jan. Grueteri, p. 133. n Lib. 33. c. 1.} *Kalendar* of the *Roman Fasts* published by *Cn. Flavius*, and mentioned by *Pliny*; which Table was, at the time that *Grueter* published his work, in the House of *Cardinal Maphews*.

The occasion of its Institution, the aforesaid ^{o Loc. citat.} *Dionysius Halicarnassensis* doth refer to the honor of *Castor* and *Pollux*, in memory of a Victory, which the *Romans* had obtained over the *Latines*, near the Lake *Regilius*, in the 357. year after

the Foundation of the City; where those two Gods seemed to lead on and assist the Roman Army against the Latines, and when the Victory was gained vanished out of sight; but immediately appeared to the Roman Citizens in the Forum at Rome, in that very place thereof, where afterwards the Temple (dedicated to their Names) was erected, and in the Habit of Knights on Horseback; who having told the News of the foresaid Victory, forthwith disappeared, and were no more seen.

Now the manner and order of this gallant Transvection, is likewise thus related by the said learned Author, the Sacrifice was first performed by the chief of the Equestrian Order, which being finished, all the Knights who had Horses bestowed on them at the publick charge, (distinguished by Tribes and Centuries rode in order, as returning from Battel) crowned with Olive Leaves, and apparelled in Purple Mantles, embroidered with branches of Palms, the Symbol of Victory. The beginning of this solemn show being made from the Temple of Mars, erected without the City (others say, from the Temple of Honor) and thence (leaving the other parts of the City) they rode through the Forum, and passing by the before mentioned Temple of Castor and Pollux, proceeded to the Capitol. They were sometimes not less than 5000 Knights in this Proceeding; and as an augmentation of their honor, they carried and exhibited to view, whatsoever had been bestowed on them by their Commanders, as the reward of Valour in fight.

Turnebus explicating a piece of Julius Capitolinus in Antonini Philosophi vita, is of opinion, * That this gallant Cavalcade was led on by an eminent Commander, who was called *sevir*, whom he there interprets to be the chief of the six Classes of Knights, in such manner that every *Classis* had his *sevir*; they relating as we suppose to the six ancient *Decurie* of Knights, instituted by Romulus, viz. the *Rhamnenses*, *Tatienenses*, and *Luceres*, all three being a little after doubled, and so became six: For the said Author having (in another place) mentioned these very six *Decurie*, he also saith, They who commanded them were called *seviri*. Now Mar. Aur. Antoninus, whom Capitolinus saith, was then created, *sevir* of the Troops of the Roman Knights, had been before by Antoninus Pius, designed Consul with himself; whence it is very apparent, that the dignity of *sevir* was most honorable and eminent, since it was placed upon a Consul, and had the command of all the Roman Cavalry.

In the year after Christ 1578. there was a Marble digg'd up in Saint Peters Church at Rome, whose Inscription (taken by Jos. Castalio) doth relate to such a Commander, and was this.

• C. POMPVS IDIO
FABIO
FRATERNO
X. VIR • STL. IVD.
VI. VIR.
EQVITVM. ROMANOR.

u Vide Gruter
Inscr. ant. Rom.
p. 456. Inscr. 4.

w Stilitibus iudicandis, id est, super lites iudicandis.

Orsinus hath also transmitted to posterity an Inscription of one of the Equestrian Order, yet but a very young Knight; who having received the honor of a publick Horse, he also rode in this famous Cavalcade before he was a man; for he lived not beyond the age of 16 years. The Inscribed stone is noted by *Janus Gruterus* to be in a private House at Montefiasco.

x Inscr. ant.
y Rom. pag.
1026. Inscr. 4.

• DIIS MANIBVS
SEX. GAVL SEX. F.
PROCVLL
VIX. AN. XVI.
EQVO PVBLICO
TRANSVECTVS EST.

To conclude, this grand Ceremony is mentioned also by *Pliny*, who speaking of the *Olive*, saith, * *The Roman Majesty did afford great honor to the Olive*, ^{z Lib. 15. c. 4.} crowning therewith the Troops of the Knights in the Ides of July. As also by *Suetonius*, who writing of *Augustus* saith, that * *He frequently reviewed the Troops of* ^{In vita Aug. Cap. 38.} the Knights, reviving the custom of Transvection on Horseback, after a long interruption.

The *Civil Processions* or *Cavalcades*, are the solemn Entries of Princes, into, ^{Cavalcades.} or riding through any great City, which in all Ages have been set forth, with exceeding state and Pomp; being for the most part solemnized (especially in these latter Ages) at Inaugurations, Interviews, and Marriages of Emperors, Kings, and great Estates: as also at the Entries of Ambassadors, and upon such like extraordinary occasions, of which a few Instances.

^a Alexander the Great after the taking of *Arbella*, proceeded on towards *Babylon*, and upon his approach to the City, had it surrendered to him in a suppliant manner by *Mazæus*, a person of very great Fame and Eminency among the *Babylonians*; by whose Example many went forth to meet him, amongst whom ^b *Bagathanes* the Kings Treasurer and Governour of the Castle, that he might not come short of *Mazæus* in his respect to *Alexander*, strewed all the way with Flowers and Garlands, and on each side thereof were placed Altars of Silver, which fumed with Frankincense and all manner of Odors. After him followed divers great Presents, droves of Cattel and of Horses, Lyons also and Leopards were brought forth in Coops, after these came the *Chaldeans*, and both the Poets and Artificers of the *Babylonians*, with a sort of Musical Instruments, wherewith they were wont to sing forth the praises of their Kings; the *Chaldeans*, describing the motions of the Stars and the vicissitudes of times; next the *Babylonian* Troops, so richly adorned both Men and Horses, that it inclined rather to Luxury, then Magnificence. Lastly the King himself came attended with his Life-Guard, and ordered the multitude of Citizens to follow after in the Rear of his Foot, entering the City in his Chariot.

We might here extend our observation to the Entrance of our Saviour into *Jerusalem*: at which, the multitude spread their Garments in the way for him to ride on, (a Rite ordinary among the Jews, at the Inauguration of a King, as we find the ^c Captains did when *Jehu* was proclaimed King) and they ^e that went before, and that followed after cryed *Hosanna*, that being the solemn form of Acclamations, used by this people, especially ^f in the Feast of *Tabernacles*.

How sumptuous and stately the Ceremonies used in this last Age are, to set forth and adorn the *Cavalcades* and *Grand Proceedings* among the *Asiatick Princes* (who very much exceed in this kind of Pomp and Magnificence) may be conceived from that which *Jo. Albert Mundeſſo* relates, in his ^g Travels into the *Indies*, concerning the King of *Siam*'s annual Procession in October, both by Land and Water, through his principal City (seated in an Island on the River *Menam*) to one of his Chief Mosques; the greatness whereof deserves particular relation, and is thus set down by him.

^h In the head of this Procession march about 200. Elephants, each of them carrying three Armed Men; then come the Musick, consisting of Hoboyes, Tabours and Cimbals; next come about a thousand men compleatly Armed, divided into several Companies that have their Colours and Banners. Next to these follow the Noblemen of the Kingdom on Horseback, and amongst them, many with Crowns of Gold upon their heads, each attended with a Train of fourscore or a hundred persons on foot. Betwixt these Noblemen and the Life-Guard, march two hundred Soldiers, Japonese, all very well appointed, who go immediately before the Horses and Elephants, which are for the Kings Life-Guard, their Harness is adorned with Buckles and studs of Gold, set with Diamonds and other precious stones. The Servants who bear the Fruits, and other things for the Sacrifice, march before certain Grandees of the Kingdom, whereof one bears the Kings Standard, the other the Sword of Justice. These walk on foot immediately before the King, who sits mounted on an Elephant in a Chair of Gold. The Prince his Son, or some other Prince of the blood, followeth next after him, and then comes the Queen and the

^a Quint.
^b Curt. Am.
sterl. 1550.
^c Lib. 5. pag. 95.

^c Matth. c. 21.
v. 8.

^d 2 Kings c. 9.

^e 13.
^f Matth. 21.
vers. 9.

^g Godw. Moses
by Aaron, pag.
134.

^h 1 Pag. 122.
See also
Jo. Schan-
ten's Descrip-
thereof, an.
1636.

Kings other Women on Elephants, but not to be seen, as being in certain wooden Closets guilt. The rest of the Household and six hundred of the Guard, follow in the Rear, which by this means consisteth of fifteen or sixteen thousand persons.

As to their Procession upon the River, the Order following is observed. First, in the head of this Fleet passeth about two hundred Noblemen, each in his several Barge, where they sit in a gilt Cabin, and each Barge is rowed by three or fourscore slaves. Then follow four Barges assigned for the Musick; and next follow about fifty Barks of State, each having fourscore, or fourscore and ten Rowers, and after these come ten other gilt Barges, in one of which the King is seated in a Throne of Gold, attended by divers Noblemen, all upon their knees before him, and amongst them, one of the chiefest Grandees who bears his Standard. The Prince followeth after him in another Barge with his Train, and after him comes the Queen and the Concubines each in their Barges apart; and lastly, in a great number of other Barges follow the Household Servants and the Guards, so as this Procession consisteth of twenty five or thirty thousand persons.

i Pag. 18.

k Idem, p. 182.

Together with this great Ceremony, the ordinary Proceeding of the King of Japan, either on Horseback or on Mens shoulders, in a Palanquin (related by the said Mandeslo, as also by Fr. Caron in his description of Japan) may be fitly remembered. Whether we regard the numerous Train and Attendants, or the manner or order thereof: all of them marching with such gravity and so orderly, that there is not only any one man to be seen out of his Rank, but a man hears not so much as a word spoken; which may well deserve our wonder and admiration.

There is in the Sovereigns Privy Lodgings at Whitehall, the order of the King of Gulcandale his Ordinary Proceeding, when he goes abroad, set forth in Figures about a foot long, it is of that Countries manner of Painting, and an extraordinary piece of Oriental Rarity, being sent thence to Sir Martin Noell Knight, and by him presented to his now Majesty.

l Pag. 109.

m Ibid. p. 20.

But we may not yet take leave of the Grandeur of these Oriental Princes, in relation to these pompous shows, before we have referred our Reader to Conrad Krammer's description of the magnificent and unparralleld Proceeding of the Deyro, (who indeed is the true Prince of Japan) when he passeth from his own Court in the City of Meaco, to the Emperor of Japans Palace in the same City, on the 25. of Oct. 1626. which is to be seen at large, ¹ Printed in English at the end of the foresaid Description of Japan; nor may we omit this; That the preparation for the said Emperors usual progress from Jedo his present Imperial City, to Meaco, (the former Metropolis and as yet the Court of the Deyro, (being 125. Dutch Miles) to visit the said Deyro, (which happens once in 5. or 7. Years) takes up a whole Year, before the Orders are given out, on what Day, and with what Train every man shall go.

n Evelyn's Sculptura, pag. 84.

o Penes eund. J. Evelyn.

p Evelyns Sculptura, pag. 70.

And to draw somewhat nearer Europe, the State and Pomp among the Turks, however barbarous enough in other things, yet in these Ceremonies are exceeding regular and stately; as may be seen in the Grand Seigniors Cavalcade to Sancta Sophia, cut in Copper Plates by ^a Peter van Aelst, as also in the order of his Ordinary Cavalcade, etched by Anthony Tempest.

But enough of these. We now come to give some Account of the Gallantry of our Christian Princes, in this particular. Among whom the Triumphal Entry of Maximilian the First, Emperour of Germany, into Noremberg, is excellently well design'd, and cut in Wood by Hans Broschebaemer.

q In Masao nostro.

r Pag. 271.

s Jo. Just. Win. i. c. 119.

The Entry of the Emperour Charles the Fifth, and Pope Clement the Seventh into Bononia in Italy, an. 1530. in Order to his being Crowned King of Lombardy there, is ^a graven in 40. Copper Plates with large Figures, excellently well designed, by Nicholas Hogenbergus.

Jo. August. Pastorius in his Acta Publica, hath exactly described the solema Cavalcade, of the present Emperour Leopold his Entry into the City of Frankfurt upon the Mayn, the 19. of March 1658, where the 18. of July in the same Year (non sine difficultate & invidia tandem unanimi Octoviratus consensu) he was Elected Emperour of Germany; and the first of August following had his

his Inauguration solemnized there also. The Order of this Gallant show is to be seen cut in brass by *Gasper Merian*, in a thin ^cFolio, Printed at *Francfort* the ^tPlate 14. same Year.

In the same *Acta Publica*, are also described at large, the several Entrances into that City, of the Electors of ^u*Mentz*, ^w*Tryerr*, ^x*Collen*, the Duke of ^y*Saxony*, Count Palatine of the ^z*Rheyn*, as also the Deputies or Substitutes of the two other Electors ^a*Bavaria* and ^b*Brandenburgh*: and the order of each *Cavalcade* is likewise particularly set forth in Copper Plates, cut by the said *Gasper Merian*, and collected together in the fore said Book.

^u Pag. 257.
^w Pag. 278.
^x Pag. 284.
^y Pag. 280.
^z Pag. 286.
^a Pag. 252.
^b Pag. 282.

We could here insert the particulars of divers other solemn *Cavalcades*, exhibited upon like occasions, but we are unwilling to dwell longer upon them, since many of them are to be met with.

Here in *England* it hath been the ancient usage for our *Kings* and *Queens*, the day before their Coronation, to ride from the *Tower* through the City of *London*, in a most noble and magnificent Equipage, they being at those times attended on by all the Nobility, Officers of the Household, and a gallant and splendid Train.

Among these, *Proceedings*, the order and pomp of that magnificent and numerous *Cavalcade* of the present *Sovereign*, from the *Tower* to *Whitehall*, the day before his most happy Inauguration is worthy observing, in that his *Majesties Entertainments* described by Mr. *Ogilby*, together with the sumptuous Arches which then adorned the Streets; and how well that ingenious Artist Mr. *Wenceslaus Hollar* hath merited both in designing and etching the same, is obvious to every ingenious Eye.

Besides these, relating to the Inauguration of Princes, many other solemn and particular occasions have been honored with sumptuous *Cavalcades*; such was that of our King *Henry* the Eighth, when he entred *Boulogne*, and is to be seen in the *Sovereign's Gallery* in *Whitehall*, being painted by a Disciple of *Hans Holben*.

Such was that brave *Cavalcade* of the late Duke of *Florence*, celebrated at his Nuptials; which, together with the Scenes and other Representations, were etched by the most excellent *James Callot*, an Artist of incomparable skill and fancy in things of that kind.

So also that of *Lewis* the Fourteenth, the *French King*, with his Queen *Maria Theresa* of *Austria*, into *Paris*, the 26. of *August* 1660. shortly after their marriage, which was as full of splendor and magnificence as could be devised. But among these, and indeed above all, none ought more deservedly to be celebrated, than that which passed through *London* upon the 29. of *May* 1660. a day since made venerable amongst us to posterity, upon the safe and most happy return of the present *Sovereign*, to his Crown and Kingdom, to the unconceivable joy of all his loyal Subjects.

In the last place, touching those *Cavalcades* made at the reception of *Ambassadors*, we have met with two (and those very solemn ones) described at large in the fore said ^c*Acta publica* of *J. A. Pastorius*, namely the entrance of the *French* and *Spanish Ambassadors* into *Francfort*, that, upon the 19. of *August* 1657. this, upon the 24. of *March* 1658. when the Election was to be made of the present Emperor; both which are likewise cut in Copper Plates, by the before mentioned *Gasper Merian*.

^c Pag. 260. & 263.

Adam Olearius in his *Voyages and Travels* of the *Ambassadors* from the Duke of *Holstein* to the great Duke of *Muscovy*, as also to the King of *Persia*, makes mention of such *Cavalcades*, they being ordered according to the manner of those Countries with very great Ceremony; Namely that of the ^d*Turkish Ambassadors* entrance into *Musco* 17. *sept. an.* 1634. he being met with 16000 Horse, besides the persons who made up the *Cavalcade*. Likewise that of the Duke of ^e*Holstein's Ambassadors* entry into the same City 14. *Aug.* immediately before going. As also the entrance of the same Duke's *Ambassador* into ^f*Ispahan* in *Persia*, the 2. of *Aug.* 1637.

^d Pag. 212.

^e Ibid. p. 13.

^f Pag. 270.

To conclude, the *Cavalcade* of the *Polish Ambassador* upon his Reception into *Rome an.* 1633. was a most magnificent Ceremony; it being made publick in *Aqua Fortis*, by the incomparable hand of *Stephen della Bella* a *Florentine*. And

And now to come within the Verge of the *Order of the Garter*, we shall here present to the *Readers* view, some few, yet stately *Cavalcades*, made upon the *Sovereigns* entrances, not only into *Windeſor Caſtle*, but other places upon account of its Grand Solemnities, and of which we have happily met with theſe following Memorials.

The 20. Year of King *Henry* the Seventh, the Feast of *St. George* was celebrated at *Baynards Caſtle* in *London*; and the *ſovereign* (being at the *Tower* on the *Even*) Proceeded thence on Horſeback to *St. Paul's Church* to *Veſpers*, in the following Order.

Ex ipſo Autographo.

First, all the Noblemen aſtir their *Estates* and *Degrees*, then the Officers of *Armes* next before the *Knyghts* of the *Ordre*, then the *Knyghts* of the *Ordre*, ryding in theiſe *Gownes* of the *Garter* only, with theiſe *Collers* without *Bantells*, wherby *Lybery* is of crymoſin velvet lyned with whyte, next following them the *Byſhopp* of *Wincheſtre* *Prelate* of the *Ordre*, then the *Ambaſſadors*, then the *Secretary* and *Aulmoner*, then *Gartier Kyng* of *Armes* of the *Ordre*, the *Maioſ* of *London* beſyng the *Wace* rode on the left hand of the *Kyngs Cote*, then the *Sword borne* by

then the *Kyng*, *Soverain* of the *Ordre*, then followed the *Prince*, and after certayne *Nobles*, and then the *Garde* all on ſoote, the *Aldermen* and all the *Craftys* of *London* ſtandpyng in theiſe *Lyberies* in places accuſtomed. And when the *Kyng* came to the *West Doze* of *Powles* he did on his *Bantell*, and all the *Knyghts* did on theiſe, and ſo entred the *Church*, where ſome what within the *Church*, there was ready the *Byſhopp* which yd the *Dibine Serbice*, with the *Deane* and *Chanons*, &c. where they ſentled and receyved the *Kyng* as accuſtomed; and from thens proceeded to the *Queere*, and entred theiſe *Stalls*, and there herd *Ebenſonge*; and aſtir *Ebenſonge*, the *Kyng* with the oðer *Knyghts* rode to *Baynards Caſtle* his *Logging*, wher hys *hyghneſs* remayned that nyght.

Ex alio Autogr.

The 16. of *April* in the following Year, the *Sovereign* began his *Pilgrimage* to the Shrine of the *Bleſſed Lady* of *Walsingham*, and took *Cambridge* in his way thither, where he arrived the 22 of the ſame Month, and was in this manner received.

ibid.

First, the *Maioſ* with hys *Brederen* rode to meet the *Kyng*, two or three myle out of the *Towne*; Alſo *Mr. Molory* then *Shereff* of the *Shire* boze hys rodd, and gabe hys attendance, and as he approached nere the *Unyverſyte*, within a quarter of a myle, ther ſtoode, firſt, all the four *Ordres* of *Freres*, and aſtir oðir *Religious*, and the *King* on horſebacke kyſſed the *Croſſe* of everyche of the *Religious*, and then ther ſtoode all along, all the *Graduatts*, aſtir theiſe *Degrees*, in all theiſe *Habitts*, and at the end of them was the *Unpheryſte Croſs*, wher was a *Fozme* and a *Cuſhin*, &c. as accuſtomed, where the *Kyng* yd alight, and there the *Byſhopp* of *Rochestre* *Dodoz* ----- then beſyng *Chaunceller* of the *Unyverſyte*, accompanied with oðir *Dodozs*, ſentſp &c. the *Kyng*, and aſtir made a litle *Propoſition*, and welcomed hym; and then the *Kyng* rook hys horſe ageyn, and rood by the *Blackfriars*, thorough the *Towne*, to the *Queens Colledge*, wher hys *Grace* was at that tyme lodgged, and ther reſted the ſpace of a *Houre*, and then did on hys *Gowne* and *Bantell* of the *Gartier*, and all oðir *Knyghts* of the *Ordre* there beſyng preſent, gabe theiſe attendance in the *Habit* of the *Ordre*, as apperteyneth, and roode from the *Kyngs Logginge* to the *Chappell* of the *Kyngs Colledge*, wher was for the ſame cauſe ready appointed with *Scotchins* &c. as ys perely accuſtomed. The *Byſhopp* of *Rochestre*, beſyng there *Chaunceller*, did the *Dibine Serbice*, both the *Even*, the *Day*, both at *Mattens*, &c. and ſang the *Paſſ* Requiem on the *Bozrow*.

With

With these, we shall remember the same *Sovereigns* noble reception of Philip King of Castile at Windsor, on Saturday the 31. of January, next ensuing the foresaid Feast, where he was Installed Knight of this most noble Order, the 5. of February following; which we find thus reported.

¹ His Highness (King Henry the Seventh) having notice of the King of Castile's approach, rode towards him a mile or two out of Windsor, and there in an Arable field (where the King of Castile by the Kings pleasure carried his coming) met with him. And when the Kings Compaignie approached neer to the said King of Castyll, some rode on one part, and summe on the other part, and soo made a lanne, that the two Kings myght mete togeder; and when the King of Castyll perceived the King, he toke of his hat, and in like manner the King toke off his, and with a loving and glad countenance, everypth salued and embraced odir. The King with many odir good wordys welcommed him to his realme, and the King of Castyll with humble and loving wordys smyling, thanked the King of the great honours that he did him, and alsoo for the grete plesurs and kyndness, that the King had shewed and doon unto him, sython his arrivall, and at divers tymes before; and the King toke the King of Castyll on his left hand, and in good ordonance rode towards the said Castyl of Windsor, the Officers of Armes beryng theyr Cors of Armes, and the Kings Trumpetts blew at the metyng, and soo by the way, &c. the Earle of Derby barre the Sward right before the King. It is to be noted, that there was many Noble men verely well appointed, both in Cloth of Gold and Goldsmith werke, as my Lord Marquis, the Earle of Kent, the Earl of Derby, the Lord Henry Stafford, with many and divers odir Noble and Gentlemen, which all for the most part, were in Helmet, and oder likes, right honorably apparellled; and when the Kings entred the furd pate of the Castyll, the Wyndrells and Shackbuth play'd, and when they approached neere the place where they alighted, the King of Castyll tarried, and would have alighted before the King, but the King would not suffer him, but tooke hym forth with him, and soo lighted booth at oong, the King of Castyll sumwhat got before the King, and in like Order, the Lords and odir Noble men, went before the Kings throug the Medar Galarie towards the hall, and as the King perceived that the King of Castyll's hatt was off, he toke of his hatt, and would not doe hit on againe, till the King of Castyll was almost ready to doo on his; and soo went up the Stayres, and passed through the upper Galarie to the Kings grete Chamber, which was richly hanged with Cloth of Arras, and a greet riche Bed in the same Chamber, where remained the Knights and Equires, and from thence to the 2^d. Chamber which was alsoo richly hanged, where remained Barons and * Baronetts and from thence to the 3^d Chamber, which was hanged with a very rich Arras, in the which there was a Cloth of Estate, and as rich a Bed as I have seen, where remained the Wyppes, Cells and Officers that attended upon him; and from thence would have conveyed the King of Castyll to the 4th Chamber, which was all hangen with rich Cloth of Gold, the bozdure abobe of Cremosin Helmet, and brodered upon the Kings Armes, with other the Kings debtyres, as Roses, Portecolys &c. but the King of Castyll excused hym, and said, that the King should not take the paine to conbope him to his Logging, then the King shewed him, that all that he had passed through was and should be his Logging, and that the King thought that place honoured by his coming, and called hym Sonne, and sayd that he was as welcome unto him, as though he had been his owne Naturall Sonne, and that his coming was not only agreeable and joyfull unto him, but alsoo to all his Subjects, and that that Rome, and all his Servants should be at the Com-mandement of the said King of Castyll, and that he should thinke that he were come to his own Faders House, and soo desired him to goo at his pleasure to Dynner, or to Rust hym: but when the King of Castyll perceived, that that greate Logginge was for hym, he thanked the King bare headed, for he had taken off his Hood a little before, and sayd, that he was forry that the

1 MS. penes W.
le N.C.I.p.288.
vide Lib. N.p.
182.

* Sic.

King

King had taken soo much labour and payne for him, and for any words or thing that the King might doe, he wold conbope the King to his Lodging, and soo he did; and after the King had shewed hym his Chamber, and wold he should take no further paine, the King wold somewhat have reconbored him, but the King of Castill wold not suffer hitt, and soo they enter salued the one the othr and departed.

Another most magnificent *Cavalcade*, was that of King Henry the Eighth, and the *Knights-Companions* into *Windeſor*, upon the 27. of *May*, in the 11. year of his Reign, being the day preceding the Eve of the *Grand Feast* (during which he begun his Reformation of the *Statutes* of the Order) which was ordered as followeth.

o MS. in Offic.
Armour. [M. 17]
fol. 25.

On the 27. day of May being Friday, the King removed from Richemont towards his Castle of Windelſor, and appointed them about one a Clock at Afternoon the same Friday, that all Noblemen, and oder which should wayte upon his Grace, should be ready between Richemont and Honſlowe to attend upon him, and in consideration of a ſcarcete and ſtraitnes of Lodgings, as well as in avoiding and eſchewing of the corrupt air, every Nobleman was taxed and rated to a certain number of Horſes, that is to ſay, every Duke at 60 Horſes, a Marqueſs at 50 Horſes, every Earl at 40 Horſes, every Baron at 30 Horſes, every Knight of the Garter Batchellor at 20 Horſes, and no oder Knight or Nobleman to have above 16 Horſes, with their Carriages and all. And the King, thus right nobly companied, rode to Colebroke, and at the Sign of the Katherine's Wheel the King took his Courſer, and his Henchmen richly apparelled followed, and also the Kings Horſe of State led, Gartier King of Arms wore his Coat of Arms, the Lord Richard Fox Biſhop of Wincheſter and Prelate of the Order, with many oder great Eſtates, gave their attendance upon his Highneſſe. The Queen and the Ladies, and their Compaignies ſtood in the ſeld at the Towns end, beſides the high way towards Windeſor, to ſee the Kings noble Compaignie paſſ by, and then the Queen rode to the fery next way to the Caſtle. The King rode by Slow, and ſo to Eton Colledge, where all they of the Colledge ſtood along, in manner of Proceſſion, receiving his Grace after their cuſtom.

p MS.

The King entred Windeſor with his great Horſes, that is to ſay nine Courſers with nine Children of Honor upon them, and the Maſter of the Kings Horſes upon another great Courſer back, following them, habing and leading the Kings Horſe of Eſtate in his hand, that is to ſay, a rich Courſer with a rich Saddle, and trapped and garniſhed following the King, and ſo entred the Caſtle.

q Ex Lib. praeſ.
Ar. fol. 26.

At the Caſtle Gate, the Miniſters of the Colledge received the King with Proceſſion, and the King and Knights of the Ordre, at the Church doze, took their Hantles, and entred the Quere, and ſtood beſore their Stalls, till the Sovereign had Offred and returned to his Stall; then every Knight offered according to his, as by the Statute is ordained, and entred their Stalls, which was a long Ceremony or eber they had all offered, becauſe of the great number of Knights that then was preſent, which were 19 in number beſides the Sovereign.

r MS.

The During Doon, the Sovereign and all the foresaid Knights of the Ordre, (putting of their Hantles at the Church Doze) with the Prelate and oder Officers of the Ordre, as the Register, King of Armes, and Huſhier of the Ordre, called the Black Rodd, bozne by Sir William Compton, according to his Office of Huſhier; all theſe rode beſore the King from the Colledge, unto the Quadrate of the Caſtle, and ſo conbered his Highneſſe to his Lodging.

s MS.

The King had attendant on him, all his Officers of Armes, wearing their Coats of Armes; and all his Trumpetts, which blew the Entry of the King, all the tyme of the ſaid Entry. The Lord Mountague, Henry Poole, bare the Sword

Sword before the King, and Garter King of Armes rode next before the Sword, and Sir William Compton rode on his left hand, bearing the Black Rodd.

Another Cavalcade offers it self here, namely that of King Philip and Queene Mary, who, after the Marriage solemnized betwene them at Winchester the 15. of July 1554. arrived at Windsor the 3. of Aug. following, where, at the nether end of Pescod-street, they were met by the Major of Windsor and his Brethren, and thence (the Trumpets sounding) they Proceeded with the Officers of Arms before them, into the Castle, till they arrived at the West door of the Chapell, where was prepared a Form with Carpets and Cushions, and at their entry, the Bishop of Winchester sensed them.

The Queene having received the Mantle of the Order, with a reverential kiss from the Earl of Derby and Penbroke (to whom it had been presented by the Register of the Order) put it upon the King (assisted by the said Earles) the Earls of Arundell and Penbroke, receiving the Collar of the Order from Garter, presented it to the Queene (with the like Ceremony as was the Mantle) who put it about the Kings Neck.

Then all the Knights Companions put on their Mantles, within the Chapell Dore, and Proceeded into the Choire, and stood before their Stalls according to ancient Order. Then the Queene went into her Stall, taking the King by the Hand, and setting him in the same Stall with her, and after a little space, they both descended and Proceeded up to the High Altar (the Queene keeping the right hand) and there Offered; after which, they returned to their Stall, where they reposed themselves, while all the Knights Companions present did Offer, according to their Degree, and had taken their Stalls according to their ancient Custome. Then was Te Deum, and de Profundis sung, which being finished, they came all downe from their Stalls, and Proceeded to the Chapter House Dore, where the King, and all the Knights Companions put off their Mantles; and immediately going out of the Chapell, they tooke their Hozles at the Chapell Dore, and Proceeded in Order, up to the Castle, where they reposed themselves that night.

In the last place, we may properly add the duty of the Colledge of the royal Chappel of St. George, touching their Reception of the Sovereign, upon special occasions; to wit, the manner to be observed by them in their Proceeding, to meet the Sovereign of the Order, at his first coming thither in his royal State, or in his return after some great Victory, or extraordinary Action performed, or some Foreign or unwonted Atchievement; according to the most decent manner there observed, by the most invincible Prince King Henry the Fifth, in the 9. year of his Reign: at which time he ordained, that this his Ceremonial should be firmly observed for ever, in the like cases. The same in effect is also appointed by King Henry the Eighth, only the direction is put into other words, and where the title of *Custos* is in the former Precedent used, in the latter, that of the *Dean* is inserted instead thereof, and is as followeth.

^w In the first place, a Form or Bench decently adorned, being placed after the usual manner, in the midst between the Chappel of the Colledge and the uttermost gate of the Castle, the Custos and Canons are there to meet with all the Officers of the Colledge, each in their proper order and Habits, having a handsome Cross carried before them, with two Torch-bearers, and two Censers. The Register of the Order bearing the Kings Mantle, is to present it to his Majesty, who being therewith invested by the Custos, assisted by the senior Canon, the King is to be Censed five times, and then taking the Cross to kiss, from the hand of the Custos, or some one of the more eminent Prelates then present, he is to be conducted, in way of Procession, to the Chappel, the Knights-Companions present vested with their Mantles, going orderly immediately before the King, until he hath arrived at the Faldstool before the high Altar, for that purpose adorned, and there kneeling, till the end of the Responsory, to be sung by the Choire, at his arrival, by appointment of the Prae-centor, to wit, Honor Virtus, or some such like, answerable to the Affair in hand;

A a a a

with

with a Prayer also correspondant. And then kissing the venerable part of the Cross of our Lord, and the Heart of St. George, he is to offer, and then to betake himself to his Stall, and there to sit, till the Knights of the Order have also offered, each in their turns, and placed themselves again in their Stalls, and until the Anthem De Profundis hath been sung by the Canons, with the accustomed Prayers; then the Knights-Companions are to descend from their Stalls into the Choire, each of them bowing himself towards the Altar, every time they so come down, and thence proceed through the middle of the Choire, unto the place where the Chapter is to be celebrated, at the hour of Tierce, the Sovereign of the Order following in the last place, as in all other Processions, and consequently in his absence, his Deputy doing the same. These things thus performed, they are to get up on Horseback, and conduct the Sovereign into the place appointed by the Statutes; and the Proceeding being finished, the Bells are to ring at convenient seasons.

Ecclesiastical
Processions.

κ Hom. 28. &
Serm. ad Ascen.
Dom.
γ Serm. 172.
ζ 173.
z Lib. 7. Hist.
Eccl. cap. 10.
a Rufinus li 2.
c. 5. Socrat. l. 3.
c. 19. Theod. li.
3. cap 9.

As touching Ecclesiastical Processions, they are of great antiquity in the Christian Church; some are ordinary and statute, other extraordinary or indictive.

The Ordinary, are those celebrated on Ascension-day, mentioned by *St. Chrisostom, and on the Purification, by † St. Austin, Rabanus, St. Bernard, and divers others. The Extraordinary are commanded and appointed by authority on several occasions; such was that which † Sozimus makes mention of, at the translation of the Reliques of St. Miletus. So also that of † the Christians of Antioch (when Julian the Apostate commanded the Coffin of St. Babylas to be removed) who went a Procession with their Women and Children, rejoicing and singing Davids Psalms, and removed the Reliques of St. Babylas, from Daphney to Antioch.

b Collet Tho.
c Writchesley
d Mil Garter
penes W. le
Nove Cl.p.3.

A like Procession do we find celebrated, within the most Noble Order of the Garter, on † Wednesday in Easter week, being the 27. of March 1504. at Greenwich, upon reception of that noble Relique the † right Leg of St. George, sent to King Henry the Seventh, then Sovereign, from the Cardinal of Rowen being Legat, by a Chaplain of his own, an Augustine and Abbot of ----- by Meaux; which was most solemnly ordered in the following manner.

a “ First, as the Oratour of the Legat was landed, which landed before the
“ Fryers yat of Greenwiche, he did on a surplis and a cope, holding St. George's
“ Leg in his hand, which was goodly garnished in silver, like a Knights Leg arm-
“ ed with a gilt Spor, &c. and immediately upon his arrival, there went to meet
“ the said Relique, first the Kings Chappel, all in Copis, with Cross &c. and on eve-
“ ry side of the Chappel, were divers Yoemen of the Garde in their beten Cotys of
“ Goldsmith work, beryng certain Torches brenning, then the Bishop of Chestre in
“ Pontificalibus, the Dean on his left hand, and on every side of them certain of
“ the Officers of Arms, then followed the Kings of Arms, and next them the Knights
“ of the Order, beryng their Mantle and Collers of the Ordre, that is to say, the
“ Marquis of Dorset, the Erll of Surrey, the Erll of Shrewysbyry, the Erll of Ef-
“ sex, the Lord Dawbeny the Kings Chamberlaine, the Lord Herbert, Sir Thomas
“ Lovell Treasurer, and Sir Rich. Gilford Contrroller of the Household, and next
“ the Knights of the Order, followed the odir Lords and Noblemen, after their
“ Estates and Degrees in gret nombre; and when the Bishop approched neer the Le-
“ gats Oratour, which was assisted by two Doctours, beryng Chappellyns to the King.
“ The Bishop censed the Relique, and then the Legats Oratour, beryng the said Saint
“ George's Leg, went between the Bishop and the Dean, and returned in licke or-
“ dre till they came to the Kings Chappel, where the Leg was set on the high Aul-
“ tre, and then the Quire sange O George, &c. that doon the Knights and Officers
“ went up into the Gallery, and there did off their Mantles, and the Officers of Arms
“ their Cotys of Arms, and from thence all the Noblemen went into the Kings grete
“ Chambre, to attend upon his Grace, which immediately went to Mals, and at Of-
“ fering time his Highness kissed and offered the Leg, and so the second Relique re-
“ maind in the Kings Chappel; and after Mals the King returned to his gret Cham-
“ bre where he dynd, &c. with Gods blessing and Saint George.

F. 16. 4.

Again,

Again, of *Processions* some are called *Lugubres*, i. e. mournful; which seems to us to be properly termed *Supplications*, being to implore some help, or to avert some evil impending, wherein *Letanies* were also used, as that of *Theodosius* the younger, who instituted a *Letany* to supplicate for fair weather, and a mild temper of the Air; wherein, as *Nicephorus* saith, the Supplicants went in *Procession* with Hymns and Adorations, *Theodosius* himself going before them in a mean Habit, singing of *Psalms*; and thereupon the face of the Heavens changed, the troubled Air grew calm and serene, and plenty of all things ensued; and whilst the *Letany* in our *Book of Common-Prayer* was used, the *Grand Procession* of the Order might well be cast among the *Lugubres*, and in some places of the *Blue Book* we see it is so called; being only upon this occasion sung walking;^a a gesture more anciently used, than the posture of kneeling or standing.

Others are called *Letae*, i. e. joyful; which are to give thanks for blessings received: And such is the nature of the *Hymn*, appointed (by the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* command) to be sung in the *Grand Procession* of the Order, an. 15. Car. 2. instead of the *Letany*, and since continued.

Having immediately before delivered somewhat of *Proceedings*, *Military*, *Civil*, and *Ecclesiastical*; we shall now pass on to the *Grand Procession* of this most Noble Order it self, which consists of persons *Military*, *Civil*, and *Ecclesiastical*: The *Military* are the *Sovereign*, the *Knights-Companions*, and *Alms-Knights*; the *Civil* are the *Officers* of the Order, *Officers of Arms*, and other *Attendants*; and lastly, the *Ecclesiastical* are the *Prebends* of the Colledge, the *Choir-men* and *Choristers*. And in reference to this magnificent Solemnity (whether it fell out to be celebrated at *Windsor*, or at any other place, where the *Sovereign* kept his Court) we are to consider, the (1.) *Time*, when this great Ceremony took its beginning; next, the proper (2.) *Place* or *Processional way*; then the (3.) *Order* and *Manner* of the Solemnity; and lastly, the (4.) *Pomp* and *State* thereof.

The *Grand Procession* hath been always celebrated, in the morning of the *Feast* day of *St. George*, or upon such other day, as the *Sovereign* hath appointed to hold the same by *Prorogation*; but as to the instant of time when it began, we find it divers and uncertain; but those variations make no very great difference, having been ordered and appointed with considerations had to convenience, and at such a part of the *Church Service*, as was conceived most proper, and generally after the end of the last *Collect*, appointed for the morning, in our *Book of Common-Prayer*, immediately before the *Letany*. Nevertheless an. 6. *Eliz.* the *Feast* being then held at *Windsor*, we find it began presently after the *Te Deum* was sung, and an. 20. of the said *Queens* Reign (at *Greenwich*)^b after the reading of the second *Lesson*. Again an. 22. *Jac. R.* it is said to begin^c when the second *Morning Service* was celebrating, and almost half done. And to come nearer our times, the *Grand Procession* set forward an. 8. Car. 1. when^d the first *Service* was finished, and an. 17. Car. 1. after the *Sermon*. But at the *Grand Feast* solemnized at *Windsor* in the 13. year of the present *Sovereign*, and since, it took beginning at the most usual and accustomed time, viz. when the *Prelate* (then officiating at the *Altar*) came to that part of the *Common Prayer* where the *Letany* was next to begin. Who there making a pause, was conducted from the *Altar* by the *Serjeant* of the *Vestry*, down to his Seat.

We come next to the second consideration, which is the compass of the *Proceeding*, or the *Processional way*; and that we observe, not to have been always one and the same at *Windsor*; for sometimes we find it confin'd within the walls of *St. George's Chappel*, but at other times enlarged through the *lower Court* of the *Castle* (in divers places of the *Registers* called also the *Church-yard*) a few memorials in both cases are left unto us, though none of very ancient date: as an. 15. *Jac. R.* The *Sovereign* and whole assembly of the *Knights-Companions*, going out at the West door (of the Chappel) in remarkable pomp and order, proceeded about the bounds of the *Church-yard*; that is, (as is elsewhere of the same *Procession* more particularly exprest) from the *Choir* through the middle Ile (or Nave of the Chappel) out at the West door, down to the *Castle Gate*, so through

e Synod. Augst. cap. 20. & cap. 23.

f Lib. 14. cap. 2.

g An. 28 & 30. Eliz. & 14. Jac. R. h See Dr. Taylor's Preface to his Collection of Offices.

i. The time when the *Grand Procession* begins.

g MS. fol. pen. W.D.N.f. 15. a. h MS. pen. G.O. T. pag. 114. i Lib. R. p. 20. k Collect. W. le N. Cl. l Palmers Journ. p. 40.

2. The *Processional way*.

b Lib. C. p. 190.

p MS. penes R. W. G.

1 P. B. 41.

the passage into the Cloyster, and by the Chapter-house door again into the Choire. To which purpose, doth the *Red Book* briefly describe the passage of the *Grand Procession* *an. 4. Car. 1.* and yet more particularly, the *Grand Procession* (celebrated at *Windsor* in the 15. year of the present *sovereign's* Reign) passed down the *Middle Ile* of the *Chappel*, through the *West door*, and so along the *Lower Ward* of the *Castle*, neer unto the *Castle Gate*; from whence ascending towards the *Alms-Knights* old *Lodgings*, unto, and through the passage, between the *East end* of the *Chappel*, and the *Tomb-house*, into the *Cloyster*, it entred into the *Chappel*, by the door neer the *Chapter-house*, and from thence proceeding down the *North Ile* unto the *West door*, and up through the aforelaid *Middle Ile*, it re-entred the *Choire*.

1 Lib. R. p. 10.

But when the *sovereign* hath pleased to shorten this great Ceremony, which, either through his indisposition of health (as *an. 22. Jac. R.* when being so extremely taken with the Gout, that he was carried, during the *Grand Procession*, in a Chair) or, upon other like occasion he has sometimes done, then the *Grand Proceeding* hath passed out at the *East door* of the *Chappel*, and going through part of the *Church-yard*, hath entred the *Chappel* again at the *South door*, and so into the *Choire*; or else through the *South Ile*, and returning by the *Cloyster*, at the *East end* of the *Chappel*, hath passed thence to the *West door*, then up the *Nave*, and so ascended again into the *Choire*, as *an. 6. of the same King*.

1 Lib. R. p. 62.

11 MS. penes Edw. Fauconbridge gen. 11 Lib. R. pag. 84.

Moreover, upon foulness of Weather, the *Grand Procession* hath been celebrated within the coverture of the *Chappel*, as *an. 1. Car. 1.* But more fully for the same cause (abundance of Rain) doth the *Register* observe, that *an. 9. Car. 1.* it pass'd from the *Choire* to the *West door* of the *Chappel*, whence turning to the left, it proceeded through the *South Ile*, and coming about by the *East door*, descended at length by the *North Ile* again to the *West door*, and thence through the *Nave* of the *Chappel* it returned into the *Choire*.

11 Ex Colle. v. 2 Jo. Vincent. gen. 11 Lib. Carth. fol. 29.

And this *Processional way* was in like necessity made use of, both by the Duke of *Norfolk*, the *Sovereign's Lieutenant* for the *Feast* holden *an. 7. 5. Eliz.* as also by the present *sovereign*, *an. 13. Car. 2.*

11 MS. penes G. O. T. p. 113. & 123.

11 Colle. H. W. le N. Cl.

11 MS. penes W. D. N.

11 MS. penes G. O. T. loco cit. vide etiam Col. le. R. C. Cl. 11 Lib. R. p. 94. & 107.

And because it is necessary to know, which is the way where the *Grand Procession* hath usually passed, in other places honored with the celebration of the *Feast* of *St. George*, as well as the *Castle of Windsor*, it will be requisite here to describe the same, and set them down; and first we shall shew how it lies at *Whitehall*, the whole passage having been (both formerly and of late) strewed with Rushes upon this occasion.

Here, the *Grand Procession* sets forth from the middle of the *Choire* (as in all other places) and so on, to the outward *Chappel door*, thence through the *Hall*, and the left entrance of the *Skreen* towards the *Thames*, then to the *Hall Porch*, and so along on the right hand of the *great Court* (sometimes called the *Outer*, or *outwardmost Court* of the *Palace*, as *an. 2. 3. 5. 7. and 26. Eliz.* and *10. & 11. Car. 1.*) towards, and beyond the *Signet Office*, then turning on the left hand towards the *Court Gate*, and yet on the left hand (on that side of the *Court* which formerly lay towards the *Terrace*, but now neer the *covered Walk*) it passeth in at the *Hall Porch*, and enters the *Hall* at the right entrance of the *Skreen*, and thence into the old *Chappel*, and so into the *New*.

Where note, that in all solemn *Processions*, where the return is to the same place, the regular turning is on the left, not right hand; and this the present *sovereign* well understood, when at the *Grand Feast* held at *Whitehall*, *an. 19. Car. 2.* the *Foot Guards* having made a Lane on the left hand of the *great Court*, along by the *covered walk*, for the *Proceeding* to pass through, and a great part of the *Proceeding* had gone that way, so soon as the *sovereign* came to the steps descending into the *Court*, (for by reason the *Hall* was shut up, being employed for *Masks* and *Scenes*, the *Proceeding* passed from the *Chappel* up Stairs into the *Guard-Chamber*, and so into the *Court*) He discovering the Error, caused all to come back, and proceed on the right hand of the *Court*, towards the *Hall Porch* and *Signet Office*, and make their return upon the left hand, according to the right rule of turnings in solemn *Proceedings*.

At

At Greenwich we find the *Grand Processional way* an. 20. *Eliz.* ^f led out of the *Chappel*, through the *Hall*, beneath the *Skreen*, and thence going round about the *2d. Court*, came in at the *South Door*, in the upper end of the *Hall*, and so along the *Hall* again into the *Chappel*. MS. penes W. D. N.

And when the *Feast* was celebrated at the *City of York* an. 17 *Car. I.* The *Grand Proceeding* passed out of the *Choir*, and marched round the inside of the *Church* only, and then returned back into the *Choir*, as it is usually observed at *Windsor*, in rainy weather. Once, viz. an. 20 *H. 7.* the *Grand Procession* was solemnized in *St. Pauls Church London*, of which the *Black Book* of the *Order* gives but this short account. ^h The most Illustrious Sovereign of the *Gar-* Palmer's Journ. pag. 40
ter solemnly made his *Procession* in *St. Pauls Church London*. But ⁱ an old memorial calls this the *Grand Procession*, and notes it to pass about the *Church* as the Custom was, ^k to which solemnity there flockt as great a multitude of People, as had been seen in that *Church*, at any time before. h Pag. 177. i Ex ipsi. Ant. k 108.

Lastly, The way through which the *Grand Procession* passeth, (wheresoever Celebrated) is fenced in by the *Teomen* of the *Guard*, and the *Knights-Companions Attendants* and *Servants*, who standing on both sides, make a spacious Lane for it to pass through, and keep off the *Crowd*, from pressing upon it.

The third consideration relating to the *Grand Procession*, is the *Order* and *Manner* thereof; and herein (as to particulars) the more ancient times afford us very little light. Nevertheless, that the same hath been Celebrated (even from the *Institution* of the *Order*) as part of those Ceremonies used to set forth the solemnity of *St. Georges Feast*, we have collective Evidence enough; and that, not only at *Windsor*, but other places, where the *Anniversary* of *St. George* hath been kept and observed. 3. The Order in Proceeding.

To proceed then; What the *Order* of this Ceremony anciently was, may be collected from that which an old *Relator* saith (where he sets down the order of the *Solemn Procession* made the 29. of *May*, an. 5 *H. 8.*) namely, that it was Ordered ^m as of old time accustomed. Now the *Proceeding* he speaks of, was marshalled in this manner. l Ex Lib. M. m 17. in Offic. n Arm. pag. 27.

^a First went the *Alms-Knights*, two and two on either side the *Choir*, then the *Officers* of *Armes*, next after whom, came the *Knights-Companions*, after them the *Officers* of the *Order*, and then went the *Prelate* of the *Order*, bearing the *Heart* of *St. George*, under a *Canopy* honorably assisted, four *Noblemen* at the *Corners* bearing each a *Torch*, and last of all the *Sovereign*.

And though here is no mention made of any *Ecclesiasticks* that joined in this *Proceeding*, yet if we consider, that throughout this *Grand Ceremony*, some part of the *Divine Office* of the *Church* was Sung (which until of late was either the *Letany*, or *Te Deum*;) it cannot be supposed, that the *Chaplains* and *Priests* were left out.

And to clear this doubt, we have happily met with another *Old Observer*, who informs us, That the ^b *Priests* not only went in the *Grand Procession*, but had a place assigned in it, where the *Gentlemen* of the *Sovereigns Chappel* and *Choir* of *Windsor*, now go. o Ex Lib. D. 1. in Offic. Arm. pag. 17.

But it must be confessed, that the *Records* of the *Order*, are defective in this particular relating to the *Grand Procession*, and speak not otherwise of it, then in general, or at most, take notice but of some of those *Degrees*, that attended in it, and this, but of late time neither; amongst which an. 23 *Eliz.* it is said, that ^p they all *Proceeded* in order, as the Custom was, the *Sovereign* following in the *Rear* of the *Procession*. p Lib. C. p. 85.

As to *Place* and *Precedency*, not only among them who *Proceed* here in *Bodies*, but also those that walk singly by themselves, it is the same, in all points, with the *Sovereigns Proceeding* to the *Chappel*, on the *Eve* of the *Grand Feast*: (Concerning which we have ^q already spoken largely enough) only here are some Persons added, which go not in that, namely the *Gentlemen* and *Choristers* of the *Sovereigns Chappel* at *Whitehall*, and the *Petty Canons*, *Vicars*, and *Choristers* of *Windsor*; the whole *Order* is as followeth. q Chap. 20. Sect. 2.

The

The Morning Service having proceeded to the end of the second *Lesson*, and the *Prelate* conducted by the *serjeant* of the *vestry* from the *Altar* to his Seat, with usual Reverences,

The *Alms-Knights* rise from their Seats and pass to the middle of the *Choir*, and after their accustomed Reverences, go up to the sides of the *Altar*.

Next, in like manner, do the *Officers of Arms* pass up.

Hereupon *Garter* riseth from his Seat, and makes his Reverences, then waving his Rod, summons the junior *Knights-Companions* to descend.

Whilst they and the rest of the *Knights* are leaving their Stalls, with usual Reverences, the *Gentlemen* of the *Chappel*, *Petty Canons* and *Vicars* of *Windefor* put on Copes, and make themselves ready to proceed.

Then the *Knights-Companions* being all come down, and having made their accustomed Reverences, stand each under his proper Stall.

Then the *Black-Rod*, *Garter*, and *Register* rise, and after Reverences made, stand before their Forms.

So do the *Chancellor* and *Prelate*.

This done, the *Alms-Knights* came down from the *Altar*, and passing into the middle of the *Choir*, make again their double Reverences, and proceed out of the *Choir*.

After them, all the *Choristers* pass in a body to the middle of the *Choir*, and having made their double Reverences (so do all that follow) proceed forth, two and two.

So do the *Vicars* of *Windefor*.

Next four of the *Petty Canons* come from their Seats, into the middle of the *Choir*, and there begin to sing the *Hymn*.

Then followeth the *serjeant* of the *vestry*, bearing his gilt Rod.

After whom, the *Gentlemen* of the *Chappel* at *Whitehall*.

Next, the *Verger* of *Windefor Chappel*, bearing his Silver Rod.

Then the *Prebends* of *Windefor*.

After whom, the *Officers of Arms* come down from the *Altar*, and pass on.

Then the *Knights-Companions*, the juniors first.

Then the *Black-Rod*, *Garter*, and *Register*.

The *Chancellor* and *Prelate*.

The *Nobleman* that bears the *Sword of State*.

Then the *Sovereign* above in his Stall, makes a Reverence towards the *Altar*, and being descended, another below, then passeth out and enters under the *Canopy*, which waits him at the *Choir door*, having his Train carried up; the *Lord Chamberlain* of the *Household*, if he be not a *Knight* of the *Order*, attending somewhat behind the side of the *Canopy*, on the *Sovereign's* right hand, and the *Vice-Chamberlain* at the like distance on his left, for so they waited in the *Grand Procession* an. 23. Car. 2.

And lastly, the *Band of Pensioners*, who attend in Guard on each side the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions*, with their *Captain* in the head of them.

In this order (at this day) they proceed with great devotion, the whole *Choir* singing the Office appointed, which heretofore was the *Letany*; but that *Supplicational Procession*, is now converted into a *Hymn* of *Thanksgiving*, composed by the Reverend Doctor *Brune Ryves*, the present Dean of *Windefor*, and *Register* of the *Garter*, at the command of the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* in *Chapter*, held the 17. of April an. 13. Car. 2. which follows here.

An Hymn to be sung in the Procession at St. George's Feast instead of the Letany.

Judg. 5. 9.

Psal. 18. 2.

HEAR, O ye Kings; give ear, O ye Princes: I, even I will sing unto the Lord; I will sing praises unto the God of Israel.

The Lord is my Rock, and my Fortrefs, and my Deliverer, my God, my strength, in whom I trust: my Buckler, the Horn of my Salvation, and my high Tower.

The Lord is my Strength, and my Song: and he is become my Salvation. *Exod. 15. 2.*

The Right hand of the Lord is become Glorious in Power: The Right hand of the Lord hath dashed in pieces the Enemy. 6.

In the greatness of thy Excellency thou hast overthrown them, that rose up against thee: who is like unto thee, O Lord, amongst the Gods: who is like unto thee, glorious in Holiness, fearful in praises, doing Wonders. 7.

Sing aloud therefore unto God, our Strength: make a Joyful Noise to the God of Jacob. *Psal. 81. 1.*

CHORUS. { *I will sing unto the Lord: for he hath triumphed gloriously: Exod. 15. 1.*
To day will we sing this Song, We have a strong City: Salvation will God appoint for Walls, and Bulwarks: Psal. 26. 1.

The Princes of the People are gathered together, even the People of the God of Abraham: for the Shields of the Earth belong unto God: he is greatly exalted. *Psal. 47. 9.*

We will therefore rehearse the righteous Acts of the Lord: even his righteous Acts towards the Inhabitants of the Villages of Israel. *Judg. 5. 11.*

We will not hide them from our Children, shewing to the generations to come the praises of the Lord: and his Strength, and his wonderful Works, that he hath done. *Psal. 78. 4.*

That the generation to come might know them, even the Children, which should be born: who shall arise, and declare them to their Children. 6.

That they may set their Hope in God: and not forget the work of God, but keep his Commandments. 7.

Sing unto the Lord therefore, O ye Saints of his: and let us give thanks for a remembrance of his Holiness. *Psal. 30. 3.*

Sing aloud unto God, our Strength: make a Joyful Noise unto the God of Israel. *Psal. 81. 1.*

CHORUS. { *The Lord is my Strength, and my Song: and he is become my Salvation: Exod. 15. 2.*

We will be glad, and rejoyce in thy mercy, O Lord: for thou hast considered our trouble, and hast known our Soul in Adversities. *Psal. 31. 7.*

For our Sins thou didst cast our Crown to the Ground: thou powderedst our temple upon our Princes, and causedst them to wander in the Wilderness, where there is no way. *Psal. 107. 40.*

Thou gavest us like Sheep appointed for slaughter: and didst scatter us among the Nations. *Psal. 44. 16.*

Thou madest us a reproach to our Neighbours: a Scorn, and a Derision to them, that are round about us. 13.

Thou madest us a By-word among the Heathen: a shaking of the Head among the People. 14.

Thou didst deliver thy Strength into Captivity, and thy Glory into the Enemies hand. *Psal. 78. 61.*

Thou gavest thy People over also unto the Sword: and wast wroth with thine Inheritance. 62.

Nevertheless, thou didst regard our Afflictions: and heardest our Cry, and didst repent, according to the Multitude of thy Mercies. *Psal. 106. 44.*

But, as the Lord was our hiding-place, and did preserve us in the midst of our trouble: so at last he hath compassed us about with Songs of Deliverance. *Psal. 32. 7.*

For the Lord did awake, as a man out of sleep: and like a Mighty man, that shouteth by reason of Wine. *Psal. 78. 65.*

His anger endureth, but a Moment; in his favour is life: Weeping may endure for a Night; but Joy cometh in the Morning. *Psal. 30. 5.*

God hath turned our Mourning into Dancing: he hath put off our Sack-cloth, and girded us with Gladness; 11.

12.

To the end, that our Tongues may sing praises unto thee, O Lord; and not be silent: O Lord our God, we will give thanks unto thee for Ever.

CHORUS.

The Salvation of *Israel* is come out of *Sion*, the Lord hath brought back the Captivity of his People: Therefore shall *Jacob* rejoyce, and *Israel* shall be glad: *Psal.* 14. 7.

O! that men would therefore praise the Lord for his goodness, and for his wondrous Works to the Children of Men: *Psal.* 107. 8.

Psal. 9. 4.

Thou, O God, hast maintained my Right, and my Cause: thou satest in the Throne, judging right.

5.

Thou hast rebuked the rebellious: thou hast destroyed the Wicked; and hast put out their Name for Ever and Ever.

Psal. 37. 35.

I have seen the Wicked in great power: and spreading himself like a green Bay-tree.

35.

Yet he passed away, and, lo! he was not: I sought him, but he could not be found.

37.

Mark the perfect man, and behold the upright: for the End of that Man is Peace.

Psal. 85. 1.

Lord, thou hast been favourable unto thy Land: Thou hast brought back the Captivity of thy People.

2.

Thou hast forgiven the Iniquity of thy People: Thou hast covered all their Sin.

3.

Thou hast taken away all thy Wrath: Thou hast turned thy self from the fierceness of thine Anger.

Psal. 18. 45.

Therefore will we give thanks unto thee, O Lord, among the People: and sing Praises unto thy Name in the great Congregation.

Psal. 81. 1.

Sing aloud unto God, our Strength: make a Joyful Noise unto the God of *Israel*.

CHORUS.

O give thanks unto the Lord; for he is good: for his Mercy endureth for Ever.

Let the Redeemed of the Lord say so: whom he hath redeemed from the hand of the Enemy: *Psal.* 106. 1, 2.

Psal. 45. 8.

O come hither, and behold the Works of the Lord: what Desolations he hath made in the Earth.

9.

He maketh Wars to cease unto the ends of the Earth: He breaketh the Bow, and cutteth the Spear in sunder, and burneth the Charriots in the fire.

Psal. 65. 7.

He hath stilled the noise of the Seas: the noise of their Waves, and the Tumult of the People.

Psal. 68. 30.

He rebuked the Company of the Spear-men, the Multitude of the Bulls with the Calves of the People: till every one submitteth himself with pieces of Silver: He hath scattered the People, that delight in War.

Psal. 75. 3.

He hath broken the Arrows of the Bow: the Shield, the Sword, and the Battel.

Psal. 98. 1.

O! come therefore, let us sing unto the Lord a new Song; for he hath done marvailous things: His right Hand, and his holy Arm hath gotten him the Victory.

Psal. 60. 4.

For he hath given a Banner to them, that fear him: that it may be displayed because of the Truth.

CHORUS.

The Lord is a Man of War: the Lord is his Name: *Exod.* 15. 3.

The Lord of Hosts is with us, the God of *Jacob* is our refuge: *Psal.* 46. 11.

O! clap your Hands therefore, all ye People: shout unto God with the voice of Triumph: *Psf.* 47. 1.

Great

Great deliverance giveth he to the King : and shewed mercy to his Anointed, *Psal. 18. 50.*
and to his Seed for evermore.

Then he made him, that remained, to have Dominion over the Nobles among *Judg. 5. 13.*
the People : the Lord made him have Dominion over the Mighty.

And he shall be as the Light of the Morning, when the Sun riseth, even as *2 Sam. 23. 4.*
Morning without Clouds : as the tender Grass springing out of the Earth, by
clear shining after Rain.

Thou, O Lord, that hast delivered him from the strivings of his People : *Psal. 18. 43.*
Thou, that hast made him head of those, that rose up against him :

Let his Glory be still great in thy Salvation : increase daily that Honour, *Psal. 21. 5.*
and Majesty, which thou hast laid upon him.

Fasten him as a Nail in a sure place : and let him be for a Glorious Throne *Ezay 22. 23.*
to his Father's house.

And hang upon him all the Glory of his Father's house : the Off-spring, and *24.*
the Issue. And let all the People say Amen.

CHORUS. { The Lord hear him in the day of his trouble ; the Name
of the God of Jacob defend him : *Psal. 20. 1.*
Send him help from the Sanctuary, and strengthen him
out of *Sion. 2.*
Grant him according to his own Heart's desire : and ful-
fill all his Counsel. *3.*
We will rejoyce in thy Salvation, O Lord, and in the
name of our God will we set up our Banners : The Lord
fulfill all his Petitions. *4.*

The King shall joy in thy Strength, O Lord : and in thy Salvation how greatly *Psal. 21. 1.*
shall he rejoyce ?

Thou hast given him his heart's desire : and hast not withheld the request of *2.*
his Lips.

For thou preventest him with the Blessings of Goodness : Thou hast set a Crown *3.*
of pure Gold upon his head.

Thou hast made him most Blessed for ever : Thou hast made him exceeding *6.*
glad with thy Countenance.

For the King trusteth in the Lord : and, through the mercy of the most high, *7.*
he shall not miscarry.

Thou wilt prolong the King's life : and his Tears, as many Generations. *Psal. 61. 6.*

CHORUS. { O satisfie him with a long life : and shew him thy Sal-
vation : *Psal. 91. 16.*
Keep thy mercy with him for evermore : and let thy
Covenant stand fast with him : *Psal. 89. 28.*
Make his Seed also to endure for Ever : and his Throne
as the days of Heaven. *29.*
Cloath his Enemies with shame ; but upon himself let
his Crown flourish : *Psal. 132. 18.*

How excellent is thy loving kindness, O Lord : therefore the Children of men *Psal. 36. 7.*
put their trust in the Shadow of thy Wings.

Whom have we in Heaven, but Thee, and there is none upon Earth, that we *Psal. 73. 25.*
desire, besides Thee.

Many, O Lord our God, are thy wonderous Works, which thou hast done : *Psal. 40. 5.*
and thy Thoughts, which are to usward, they cannot be reckoned up in order
to Thee. If we should declare, and speak of them : they are more, then can be
Numbered.

Psal. 68. 35.

O Lord our God, thou art terrible out of thy holy places : The God of Israel is he, that giveth strength and power unto his people. Blessed be God.

CHORUS.

Rejoyce, rejoyce, O ye People : for the Lord will be merciful unto his Land, and to his People: *Dent.* 32. 43.
The Lord will give Strength unto his People : the Lord will bless his People with Peace: *Psal.* 29. 11.
For who is God, save the Lord? or who is a Rock, save our God? *Psal.* 18. 31.
Blessed be the Lord God of *Israel* from everlasting to everlasting : and let all the people say *Amen*, Praise ye the Lord : *Psal.* 106. 48.
Glory be to the Father, &c. *Amen*.

The *Grand Procession*, when it hath been celebrated at *Whitehall* (or else-where beside *Windsor*) is for the most and principal part, ordered after the foresaid manner, as may be seen by the following *Scheme*.

Serjeant of the *Vestry* with his gilt Rod.
Choristers, in Surplices.
Gentlemen of the *Chappel*, in Copes.
Sub-Dean, in a Cope.
Dean of the *Chappel*, in a Cope.
Officers of *Arms*.
Knights-Companions.
Officers of the *Order*.
The *Sword*.
Sovereign, under a *Canopy*,
with his *Train* carried up.
The *Pensioners*, as before.

But in what this *Grand Procession* differs from that celebrated at *Windsor*, we shall here note.

1. Here the *Serjeant* of the *Vestry* leads the *Proceeding*, and is followed by the *Choristers*.

2. The *Prebends* and *Choir* of *Windsor*, and the *Alms-Knights* are here wanting.

3. The *Sub-Dean*, and *Dean* of the *Chappel*, are ^ttaken in, and proceed next to the *Gentlemen* of the *Chappel*, to whom sometimes the *Sovereign's* ^t*Almoner* hath joined himself.

4. Whilst the *Knights-Companions* are descending from their Stalls, the ^t*Gentlemen* of the *Chappel* go into the *Vestry*, to put on their Copes; but the ^u*Dean* of the *Chappel* hath his brought into the *Choir*, which he puts on below under his Seat.

5. Lastly, in *Queen Elizabeth's* Reign, the ^w*Ladies* Attendants went with the *Pensioners* on either side the *Sovereign*.

The State and Pomp of this *Grand Procession*, appears both solemn and magnificent to the Eyes of the beholders, since the glory thereof is much augmented, by the (1.) splendor of the *Sovereign's* *Apparel*, *Canopy*, and *Train*; the (2.) Lustre in which the *Knights-Companions* shine; the (3.) various Habits of the rest of the *Proceeding*; the (4.) rich *Apparel* of the *Retinue* attending thereupon; and (5.) lastly, the solemnity of the vocal *Musick*.

We have already drawn into this ^x discourse, an account of the *Sovereign's* whole *Habit* of the *Order*, and set forth the glory of his *Robes*, the richness of his *Garter*, *Collar*, and *George*; what falls to have place here, is only the *Apparel* or

^w MS. fol. pen.
^{prof.} W. D. N.
^{fol.} 20. b.
^{4.} The State
and Pomp
whereof.

^{Sovereign's}
^{Under-Habit.}
^x Chap. 7.

or *Under Habit*, provided for him against this high *Festival*, and this was heretofore made of Cloth of Gold, Cloth of Baudkin, and other the richest materials, which in their several times were most in fashion and use; the same being set out and adorned with costly Embroideries of Gold, Pearl, and precious Stones, and suitable thereunto were the ornamental Trimmings.

If we look so far back, as to the time of the *Institution* of the *Order*, we shall see, that the *Founder* caused to be made for him; against the first Feast of St. George, these Garments following. A ^a *Joump* containing 4 Ells of Blue *Taf-faty* ^b powdered with *Garters*, the *Buckles* and *Pendants* Silver and gilt, and no less than 72 *Buckles* were used about it, and as many *Pendants* to adorn it. As also another ^d *Joump* of Blue *Sattin*, containing 3 Ells, powdered with ^e Blue *Garters*, and fitted with as ^f many Silver and gilt *Buckles* and *Pendants* as the former. Besides these, there was also provided for him a ^g *Sattin Coat*, a *Cloak* and *Hood* with ^h 100 *Garters*, fitted with 100 Silver *Buckles*, as many Silver *Pendants*, and ⁱ 300 Bars of Silver.

But let this suffice; for in recounting things of this nature, the task would be endless, and the satisfaction but to a few: Nevertheless those who are curious to be informed, of the *Robes* and *Habits* of our *Kings*, throughout the last four Centuries, may meet with sufficient satisfaction (even in the qualities and particulars of all the Materials) among the Accompts of the Great *Wardrobe*, in the *Exchequer* at *Westminster*.

The *Registers* of the *Order* have in them but light touches of this concern, and not frequent neither; yet such as they afford shall here follow. Upon Saint George's day *an.* 13. *Eliz.* it is noted, that the ^b *Sovereign* wearing the *Collar* of the *Order*, and the rest of the *Habit*, was pleased, to the great applause of the Spectators, and satisfaction of all Strangers that were there, to grace the *Grand Procession* it self with her own presence. In the 26. year of her Reign, she went the *Grand Procession*, wearing the whole *Habit* of the *Order*, and a ^d *Diadem* of Pearl on her head; and *an.* 28. *Eliz.* ^e being gorgeously attired, in the rich *Habit* of the *Order*, went about the *Palace* (at *Whitehall*) according to the custom, in *Processional* Pomp and Supplication.

But it must be confessed, that this *Queen* (and only she, of all the *Sovereigns* of this most Noble *Order*) did sometimes publicly proceed to the *Chappel* (as well as to the great *Closet*) and also passed in the *Grand Procession*, without wearing the whole *Habit* of the *Order*, as in the ^{8.} 27. 29. and 30. years of her Reign, the Feast day of St. George, being then held at *Greenwich*, and so did she the following year, when it was kept at *Whitehall*.

But this may admit of some excuse; first as a Woman, she thought her self not so strictly tyed, to the exact observation of the Rules of so martial an *Order*; next, notice is often taken of her indisposition of health, at such times, and the whole *Habit*, being thought a little too heavy and cumbersome, she only wore the *Collar* of the *Order*. Howbeit her other Apparel, splendid attire, and the Lustre of her Jewels, (at these Solemnities) exceeded both in richness and glory, all that she wore at other times.

Among those things which contribute to the Pomp and State of this great Ceremony, the rich *Canopy* is not the least; which is born by *Knights* and *Gentlemen* of *Quality*, over the *Sovereign's* head, while he passeth in the *Grand Procession*, and till he return to the *Choir* door.

That which was carried *an.* 18. *Eliz.* while this solemn Ceremony was in motion, was a certain round *Canopy* of green *Taffaty*, and born on the sunny side, to shadow the *Sovereign* from the heat of the Sun: by which description it should rather seem to be an *Umbrella*, than a *Canopy*; for generally *Canopies* are of another Figure, viz. an oblong square, and made either of Silk and Gold, rich Cloth of Gold, or Cloth of Tissue; and to suite with both, it is sometimes called *Umbrella aurea*, *Umbraclum aureum*, * or *Canopium vel Cælum portatile auri*, to which there are affixed 16 Golden Staves, wherewith it is supported.

The persons appointed to carry the *Canopy* *an.* 11. H. 8. were 4 *Knights* of the *Body*, when 4 other *Knights* bore 4 Wax Tapers; but since, they are the

B b b b 2

Gentlemen

a Ex Comp.
b Jo. 1. de
c Cler mag.
d ne Gardrob.
e an. 21. ad
f an. 23. E. 3.
m. 9.
g
h Mem. 11.
i

k Lib. C. p. 62.
l MS. pen. G. O.
T. pag. 113.
m Lib. C. p. 103.

n MS. penes W.
D. N. fol. 26.
o Collec. R. C.
Cl. pag. 9.
p Ex Collec.
q pref. W. le
N. Cl.
r MS. fol. penes
W. D. N. fol. 27.
s An. 4. Eliz.

The Canopy.

t Ex end. MS.
penes prefat.
G. O. T. p. 122.
u Lib. C. p. 178.
184.
w Ibid. p. 190.
x Ibid. p. 99.
y Lib. R. p. 30.
z MS.

^a Col. B. W. le
N. Cl.
^b Lib. C. p. 94.

^a Gentlemen of the Sovereign's Privy Chamber in Ordinary, who at the time of the Feast are in waiting. Concerning whom, there is this mention made in the *Blue Book*, an. 26. Eliz. The ^b Sovereign was pleased to follow the Grand Procession, certain persons being placed already at the Choir door, who wear to bear the Canopy (woven of Gold and silk) for her to walk under. In her Reign, there were not above ^b 6 appointed for this ^c service, but of later times they have been increased to double that number; the first mention whereof, that we have met with, is an. ^d 8. Cur. 1.

^b Lib. C. p. 94.
^c Lib. Ref. 30.
^d A lex Equitibus in alium extenjo.
^e Ex prefat.
Col. B. W. le
N. Cl.
^f MS. penes B.
W. G. sub an.
16 Jac. R.

The most usual place at *Windsor*, where the Canopy bearers attend, to receive the Sovereign, when he enters upon the Grand Procession, is at the Choir door (yet once we find they received him ^e without the outer door of the Chappel) and they who bear it make a stand, when the Sovereign returns to the same place, where they received him, while he passeth from under the same into the Choir, to his Royal Stall. At *Windsor* the Canopy is aswell used, when the Sovereign descends from the Presence Chamber, in the Proceeding to the Chappel, on the Feast day in the Morning, as during the time of Procession; but at *Whitehall*, it is carried over the Sovereign's head, during the time of the Grand Procession only.

The Train.

In this solemn Proceeding (and at all other times of Publick Proceeding, during the continuance of the Feast) the Sovereign hath the long Train of his Mantle, carried up by several of the young Nobility, appointed to this Service; concerning which we shall observe,

^f Erhard. Cel.
li Aur. Equit.
An. 147.
Lib. 5. p. 145.

That this Custom, of holding up the Train, is a very ancient kind of honor; and derived (some think) from the ^f Roman Emperors, others from the Popes, Cardinals, and Bishops; who, as they used to kneel down to offer at the Altar, or perform any other part of Divine Service, had the end or hindermost part of their Stoles, or long Robes, held up behind from the ground, by their Archdeacons, in token of great veneration and honor. But what *Erhardus Cellius* affirms, as more peculiar to our purpose, is this; ^g That as Kings have anciently been accounted Priests, so King Edward, the Founder of this most Noble Order, ordained this sacerdotal honor of the Train, to be added to the Habit of the Order.

^g Ibid.

Which Ceremony of carrying up the Train, as it hath been anciently afforded to Kings, both in *England*, *France*, and elsewhere, so at length, it was drawn down into use, by great Personages of both Sexes, at grand Solemnities, Assemblies, Marriages, &c. whereof the foresaid Author gives ^h sundry Examples.

^h Ibid. p. 146.
ⁱ 147.

A description of the Train, together with the manner of bearing it up, as of the Fashion and Figure, wherein it then shews it self, is also given us by him; for speaking of the Duke of *Wurtemberg's* Train, that was carried up (according to the *English* Fashion) at his solemn reception of the whole Habit of the Order of the Garter, he takes occasion to tell us, that this Appendix or Supplement, trailing from the hindermost part of his Mantle, is commonly called

ⁱ Ibid. pag. 145.

Syrma, as being ⁱ in the likeness of the Tail and Wings, which Nature hath given for ornament to the Peacock. The ^k Lady *Isabell*, Daughter to the French King *Henry* the Second, when she was married by Proxy to *Philip* the Second King of *Spain*, ^l an. 1559. had her Train carried up from the ground, by *Mary* Queen of *Scotland* (who had been lately married to the Dauphin of *France*) and two other young Ladies, Sisters of the Bride.

^k Pag. 147.

^l *Reuterbusius*.

This being premised, the Persons, together with their quality, who have had the honor to bear up the Sovereign's Train, at the Grand Festival, or other solemn Assemblies, relating to this most Noble Order, fall in now to be spoken of; they being appointed by the Sovereign, and notice thereof sent unto them, by the Lord Chamberlain of the Household, to the end they may give their attendance accordingly.

^m Ex veteri
n. MS. penes
W. le N. Cl.
cujus faciei in-
scribitur, The
Entertain-
ment of the
King of Castile
1455.

The ancientest Example we have met with, of performing this Service, in relation to the Solemnities of the Order, is that of ^m an. 21. H. 7. at the Installation of *Philip* King of *Castile*, when the Sovereign's Train, as he went to make his Offering at the high Altar, was ⁿ born up by one of the Canons of the Colledge.

Queen *Elizabeth* had (for the most part) her Train carried up by great Ladies, where

when she proceeded to the *Closet* at *Whitehall*, on the *Eve* of *St. George*; and in particular, by the *Lady Marchioness* of *Northampton*, in the third year of her Reign, *an. 4.* by the *Duchess* of *Suffolk*, *an. 5.* by the *Duchess* of *Norfolk*, *an. 6.* by the *Lady Margaret Clifford*, Wife to the Lord *strange*, in the 7. and 9. years by the *Duchess* of *Somerset*, *an. 8.* by the Countess of *Rutland*, and *an. 10.* on the *Eve* of the *Grand Feast*, by the foreſaid *Duchess* of *Suffolk*.

At other times, this service hath been performed by persons of honor, both men and women together, as on the *Grand Feast day an. 19. Eliz.* the *Earl* of *Oxford* bore up the *Train* of the *Sovereign's Robe*, and the Countess of *Derby* that of her *Kirtle*. But *an. 5. Eliz.* the *Duchess* of *Norfolk* carried up the *Train* both of the *Robe* and *Kirtle*.

Sometimes the said *Sovereign* had her *Train* carried up by the *Register* of the *Order*, as on *St. George's day an. 2. & 3. Eliz.* But of late times young *Noblemen* have performed this Office, the most honorable person, going on the right hand, as *an. 3. Car. 1.* * the *Duke* of *Lenox*, and *Earl* of *Caernarvon*, *an. 8. Car. 1.* || *Vic. Grandison*, the Lord *Wentworth*, and the *Countess* of *Leppington*. So *8. Oct. an. 15. Car. 1.* the *Duke* of *Buckingham* and his Brother, with the Lord *Buckhurst*, and Lord *Cavendish*.

Assistants have been usually appointed, to those honourable personages, who carried up the *Sovereign Train*; and in this quality *an. 18. Eliz.* the *Earl* of *Oxford*, Lord High Chamberlain of *England*, assisted the Countess of *Derby*, which service the *Vice-Chamberlain* had before discharged, for many years together, viz. in the *2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9,* and *10th Years* of *Queen Eliz.* and since the *Gentleman* of the *Robes*, for so did *Mr. Kirke an. 8, 9, & 11. Car. 1.* The place of the *Assistant*, in the *Proceeding*, is upon the left hand of the *Train-Bearers*.

This honor of bearing up the *Train*, hath been in like manner afforded to *Stranger Kings*, at such times, as they have personally been present at *Windsor*, and in particular to *Philip King* of *Castile*, *an. 21. H. 7.* who in his approach towards the High *Altar*, to make his *Offering*, had his *Train* carried up by his own *Chamberlain*.

In like manner the *Lieutenants* or *Deputies* to the *Sovereign*, constituted for holding the *Grand Feasts* of *St. George*, (and consequently his representatives) have had their *Train* carried up, in the *Proceedings*; For instance, the *Earl* of *Arundel*, being the *Sovereign's Lieutenant* for holding *St. Georges Feast*, *an. 3. H. 8.* after such times as he had offered for the *Sovereign*, his *Train* was let down, when he came to offer for himself, in the quality of a *Knight-Companion*. And this hath been the usage in all times since.

And not only the *Train* of the *Sovereign's Lieutenant* or *Deputy*, but sometimes that of a *Stranger King's Mantle*, hath been carried up, when his *Proxy* proceeded to *Installation*; as in the case of the *French King Charles* the Ninth, *an. 8. Eliz.* when *Monsieur Rambouillet*, bearing the *Mantle* of his Principal upon his right Arm, had the *Train* thereof carried up, by *Henry Earl* of *Southampton*, assisted by the Lord *Herbert*.

Furthermore, this Ceremony of bearing up the *Train*, hath been also performed unto *Stranger Princes*, in their own Countries, (and that in reference to the Custom of *England*) at those solemnities relating to this most Noble Order, whereof *Erhardus Cellius* gives us an instance, in *Frederick Duke* of *Wirtemberg*, who as soon as he was invested with the *Surcoat* and *Mantle*, in the great Hall at *Stuttgart*, proceeded thence to the great Church of *St. Ulrich*, to receive the rest of the *Habit* of the Order, having his *Train* born from the ground, by the Noble and Illustrious Count *Lodowick Leosten*; ¹ who likewise carried it after him, throughout the whole Ceremony.

And lastly the *Knight-Companions* have (in this *Proceeding*) their *Trains* carried up by their own *Gentlemen*.

Another piece of Ceremony, in the State of this *Grand Proceeding*, we find once added, and that was the bearing of *Queen Elizabeth's Cloak* and Hat along with her; the one by *Sir William Howard*, the other by *Sir Christopher Hatton*,

o MS. peres W.
D. N. f. 2. b.
p Idem f. 7. b.
q Fol. 9. b
r MS. f. 17. b.
s Ibid. fol. 20.
t Ibid. fol. 30.
u j MS. fol.
w 1 penes G.
O. 7. p. 113.

x Ex prafat.
MS. penes W.
D. N. fol. 10.
y Colled. W. le
N. cl.
z MS. penes W.
D. N. fol. 3. b.
* Colled. W.
le N. cl.

a MS. penes G.
O. 7. pag. 123.

b Videtis MS.
penes praf. W.
D. N.
c Colled. W. le
N. cl.

d Colled. T. W.
Wrotehesley
Mil. Garter,
fol. 295. b.

e MS in Offic.
Arm. [L. 1.]
fol. 19.

f MS. fol.
g 25. b.
h

i 5 Aur. Equit.
k Anglo-Wir-
temb. Lib. 5.
pag. 145.

l Ibid.

m An. 18. Eliz.
n MS. prafat.
penes G. O. T.
Pag. 113.

Hatton, then Captain of her Guard : but as this was the first, so was it the last time that either of these, are mentioned to be thus publicly carried.

^a Apparel of the Knights-Companions.

In the second place, the *Cloths* and *Apparel* (or *under Habit*) of the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions*, have for many years past, been made of white *satin*, and in the fashion of the times ; which the present *Sovereign* observing to be laid aside, and others introduced, He, to prevent profuseness in Apparel, and emulation among the *Knights-Companions*, as also to beget an uniformity and equality, among them in the under, no less than in the upper *Habit* of the *Order*, thought fit to appoint a set, and constant *Habit* of *Cloth of Silver*, made in the fashion of *Trunk Hose*, with white silk *stockings*, to be worn by himself and them, upon all solemn occasions, relating to the *Order*; for the observation of which, an *Order* past in *Chapter*, an. 13 Car. 2.

^c Appendix Num. CLXXV.

As to other Ornaments the chiefest are the variety of rich Jewels, which surround or adorn their *Caps*, and where else they may appear most conspicuous.

But besides the glory and splendor, which shoot from the *Habits* and *Ornaments* of the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions*, who are principal in this grand Ceremony, there are others, that make up the body of the *Proceeding*, and may fitly be compared to *stars* of the middle and lesser magnitude, since we find them adorned in *Robes* particular to their *Officers*, to distinguish and set off the lustre of the show ; among whom are, first,

^g The Officers of the Order

The five Officers of the *Order*, namely the *Prelate*, *Chancellor*, *Register*, *Garter* and *Black Rod* ; of whose *Habits* we have sufficiently spoken ^h before.

^p Chap. 9. ^d Officers of Arms.

The *Provincial Kings*, *Heralds*, and *Pursuivants*, habited in their rich *Coats*, and going together in one Body, appear more conspicuous, from the Royal Arms of the *Sovereign* of this most Noble *Order*, richly imbroidered upon them with fine gold, purples, and twist ; the ground of the *Provincial Kings Coats*, being at this day blew Velvet, the *Heralds* blew Satin, and the *Pursuivants* blew Damask.

^g Canons.

The *Habit* in which the *Canons* of the *Colledge* proceed, is also peculiar, and more remarkable, because of their particular reference to this most Noble *Order* : for though as *Clergy-men*, they are vested in Linen Surplices, at all times of Divine Service, or the Celebration of Sacred Offices, yet at the Solemnities peculiar to the *Order*, they wear a *Mantle* over those Surplices, which is a *Habit* appointed for them, from the foundation of the *Order*.

^q R. 3. Stat. H. 5. } ^e Stat. Art. 5. ^r Ord. Stat. in Lib. N. Art. 5.

These *Mantles* are of *Taffety* and of the ancient colour, to wit ⁹ *Murrey* ; upon the right shoulder of which is a Scutcheon of St. *Georges* Arms within a Run-delet, imbroidered with Gold and Silk ; and bought at their own charge, for we do not find them entred among the *Liveries* of the *Garter*, provided by the *Sovereign*.

⁶ Gentlemen of the Chappel, &c.

In *Habits* yet more glorious, do the *Gentlemen* of the *Sovereigns Chappel* at *Whitehall*, the *Petty-Canons*, and *Vicars* of *Windsor* appear ; who at this time are also joined in one Body, to augment the Solemnity : for they are all (or the most part of them) Vested in Rich *Coats* of Cloth of Gold, Cloth of Bodkin, or most costly Imbroideries : But the *Children* of the *Chappel*, and *Choristers* do always proceed habited, in *surplices* of fine Linen.

^f MS. in Offic. Arm. [M. 17.] fol. 32. b.

By a memorial we have met with, a. 22 H. 8. we find how well stored this *Colledge* then was, with such sacred *Vestments* ; when at one *Procession* appointed by the *Sovereign* in honor of St. *George*, there were ¹ 35. *Copes* of rich Cloth of Gold made use off.

^t Lib. C. p. 190.

These kind of *Vestments*, have been in all times worn in the *Grand Procession*, whether the *Grand Feast* was kept at *Windsor*, or at *Whitehall*, or *Hampton-Court*, or *Greenwich*, even to the beginning of the late Wars, in which the covetous barbarism of the then Reformers, sent most of them to the fire ; Besides, they are sometimes taken notice of, in the *Registers* of the *Order*, to be used in the *Grand Procession* ; as in particular, an. 15 Jac. Reg. it is noted, that the whole *Choir*, being adorned in *Copes*, (for so we suppose the word *Orarium* may signify, as well as *Dalmatica Vestis*) descended from the *Altar*, and sung the *Letany* ; and to like purpose is that recorded, an. ² 21. of the same King.

^u Lib. R. p. 7. vide etiam p. 50. ⁷ Alms-Knights.

Lastly, the *Habits* of the *Alms-Knights* [a *Mantle* and *Kirtle*] are not unremarkable

markable; they being grave and civil, and both for colour and materials, appear futable to their Age and Degree. The *Mantles* are of Cloth, which the *Statutes* appoint to be of a ^w Red Colour, with a Shield of the Arms of St. George, ^w *Stat. H. 5. Art 7* but without any *Garter* to surround them. In conformity whereunto, when Queen Elizabeth's Orders and Rules, for the establishment of good Government, ^{H. 8. Stat. Art. 16.} among these *Alms-Knights* were ^{*} made; It was therein Ordained, that each of ^x *An. 1. Eliz.* them should have yearly for their *Livery*, a ^y *Gown* of Red, and a *Mantle* of ^y *Art. 4.* blew or purple Cloth, with a ^z *Art. 5.* *Cross* of St. George embroidered in a *Scutcheon*, (without the *Garter*) but to be set upon the left shoulder.

In this *Grand Proceeding*, we observe the *Habits* so ordered, that the more grave and civil, being placed between those that are rich and gallant, entertain the Beholders with a more delightful prospect. For such we see are the *Officers* of the *Order*, who proceed between the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions*; the *Canons* of the *Colledge*, who pass between the *Heralds* and *Gentlemen* of both *Chappels*; and lastly, the *Alms-Knights* who go immediately before the *Choristers*.

The *Registers* of this Noble *Order* make frequent mention of divers persons of rank and quality, who at this Solemnity of St. George, put themselves upon the duty of attendance on the *Sovereign*, because, otherwise, related to his Service, although in reference to the *Order* not so concern'd, as to be taken into the *Proceeding*. Such are divers of the *Nobility*, sometimes great *Ladies*, many considerable *Officers* of the *Houhold*, and other *Courtiers*; all richly habited and attired, thereby adding to the Gallantry of this solemn Ceremony.

Concerning these it is remembred, *an. 35. Eliz.* that the *Sovereign's Proceeding* in publick to the *Chappel*, was not only attended in all points by the *Knights-Companions*, and ^{*} other of her *Nobles*, but accompanied also with a great *Train* ^{of her Ladies of Honor,} and a numerous concourse of *Foreigners* and *Domesicks*, looking on and wishing all happiness.

Nor may we here omit some other *Servants*, who attend upon the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* at the *Feast*, they deserving notice, both for their number and rich *Liveries*. Such were the *Henxmen* anciently (now called *Pages of Honor*) who waited on the *Sovereign*; Upon the *Knights-Companions* attended divers *Gentlemen*, wearing *Blue Coats*, and on their left *Sleeves* the *Cognizances* of those *Lords* whom they waited upon, adorned with valuable *Gold Chains*: to these we shall add, both *Pages* and *Footmen*,^{*} always clad in exceeding gallant and rich *Liveries*.

At the *Feast* of St. George, *an. 11. Car. 1.* there was Exceptions taken by the Earl *Marshall*, at the Earl of *Berkshires* *Servants*, for that their *Cognizances* were adorned with ^b *Coronets* set over them, and it was thereupon ^c Ordered, to be amended against the next occasion of wearing them, upon a publick account. And by special directions from the late *Sovereign King Charles the First*, in the beginning of his *Reign*, ^d the *Coats* of the *Footmen*, belonging to the *Knights* of the *Order*, were then, and for the future, forbid to have the *Garter* embroidered about their *Badges*, as being too great an abatement of that first and chiefest *Ensign* of the *Order*, to be worn by persons of so mean rank; which excess, for the same reason, deserves reformation, in the *Water-mens Badges*, too frequently worn within a *Garter*, in this Age.

The *Henxmen* followed, in the *Grand Procession*, neer to the person of the *Sovereign*, but the *Gentlemen*, *Pages*, and *Footmen* belonging to the *Knights-Companions*, did not go in this *Proceeding*, but were ^{*} marshalled before it set forward, from the *Choir door*, on both sides the *Processional way*, and here and there intermixt with the *Yeomen of the Guard*, to keep off the *Press*.

The *Habit* wherein the *Henxmen* were usually drest, was rich and gay, as could be devised, being oftentimes embroidered with ingenious and pretty *Devices*, such as best liked the fancy of the *Sovereign*: We have seen the ^f account for the Apparel of 12 *Henxmen*, who attended on the *Sovereign* at St. George's *Feast*, *an. 11. H. 6.* the *Sleeves* of their *Gowns* being embroidered, each with three

^w *Stat. H. 5. Art 7*
^{H. 8. Stat. Art. 16.}
^x *An. 1. Eliz.*
^y *Art. 4.*
^z *Art. 5.*

^{8.} The *Sovereign's* and *Knights* *Retinue*.

^a *Lib. C. p. 122.*

^b *MS.*
^c

^e *Collec. W. 1. c. 1.*

^f *Ex Lib. 6. cat. Cotom. in Offic. mag. Gardrob. Regii, fol. 54.*

three sprigs of Broom, and three Peacocks Feathers bound together, wrought with Silks of divers Colours, and the *Sovereign's* Motto [*Dieu & mon Droit*] embroidered thereupon.

9. The Musick. To compleat the pomp of this great Ceremony, we may (in the last place) fitly remember the *Musick* as a part thereof; it being particularly taken notice of, in most places of the *Register*, where the *Grand Procession* is recorded. The *Choirs* both of the *Sovereign's Chappel* at *Whitehall*, and this at *Windefor*, being here (as before is noted) united; all singing the sacred *Hymn* together, while the *Grand Procession* devoutly passeth on.

This *Hymn* was composed and set with Verse and Chorus, by Captain *Cook* Master of the *Children* of the *Sovereign's Chappel*; by whose direction some Instrumental loud Musick was at that time introduced, namely two double sackbotts, and two double Courtals; and placed at convenient distance, among the Classes of the *Gentlemen* of both *Choirs*, to the end, that all might distinctly hear, and consequently keep together, in both time and tune. For one sackbot and Courtal was placed before the four *Petty Canons*, who begun the *Hymn*, and the other two, immediately before the *Prebends* of the Colledge.

And now behold the *Sculp* of the *Grand Procession*, as it was ordered upon this solemn occasion, an. 23. Car. 2. designed and etched by Mr. *Wineflaus Hollar*; in which, the Postures and Habits are exprest with singular spirit and freedom.

Return of the
Grand Procession into the
Choir.

Upon the return of the *Grand Procession* to the *Choir door*, the *Alms-Knights* first advance into it, and after double Reverences, ascend above the *Haut Pas's* to the *Altar*.

Next the *Choristers*, and in like manner the *Vicars*, *Petty Canons* of *Windefor*, *Gentlemen* of the *Chappel*, and *Prebends* go to their Seats.

Then the *Officers of Arms* pass up, and joyn to the *Alms-Knights*.

After this, the *Knights-Companions* enter and stand before their Stalls.

The like doth the *Black-Rod*, *Garter*, and *Register*.

As also the *Chancellor* and *Prelate*.

Then doth the *Sovereign* take his Royal Stall.

The *Knights-Companions* ascend their Stalls.

The *Officers* of the *Order* sit down on their Forms: And all this is done in the same manner and order, and with like Reverences, as at their entrance into the *Choir* on the *Eve* of the *Feast*.

Then the *Prelate*, with two *Prebends* (appointed to read the *Epistle* and *Gospel*) are conducted, the one by the *Serjeants* of the *Vestry*, the other by the *Verger*, up to the *Altar* (which they approach with usual Reverences) the *Prelate* passing to the North side, and the *Prebends* to the South, to finish the remaining part of *Divine Service*.

Whereupon the *Officers of Arms* descend into the *Choir*, and,

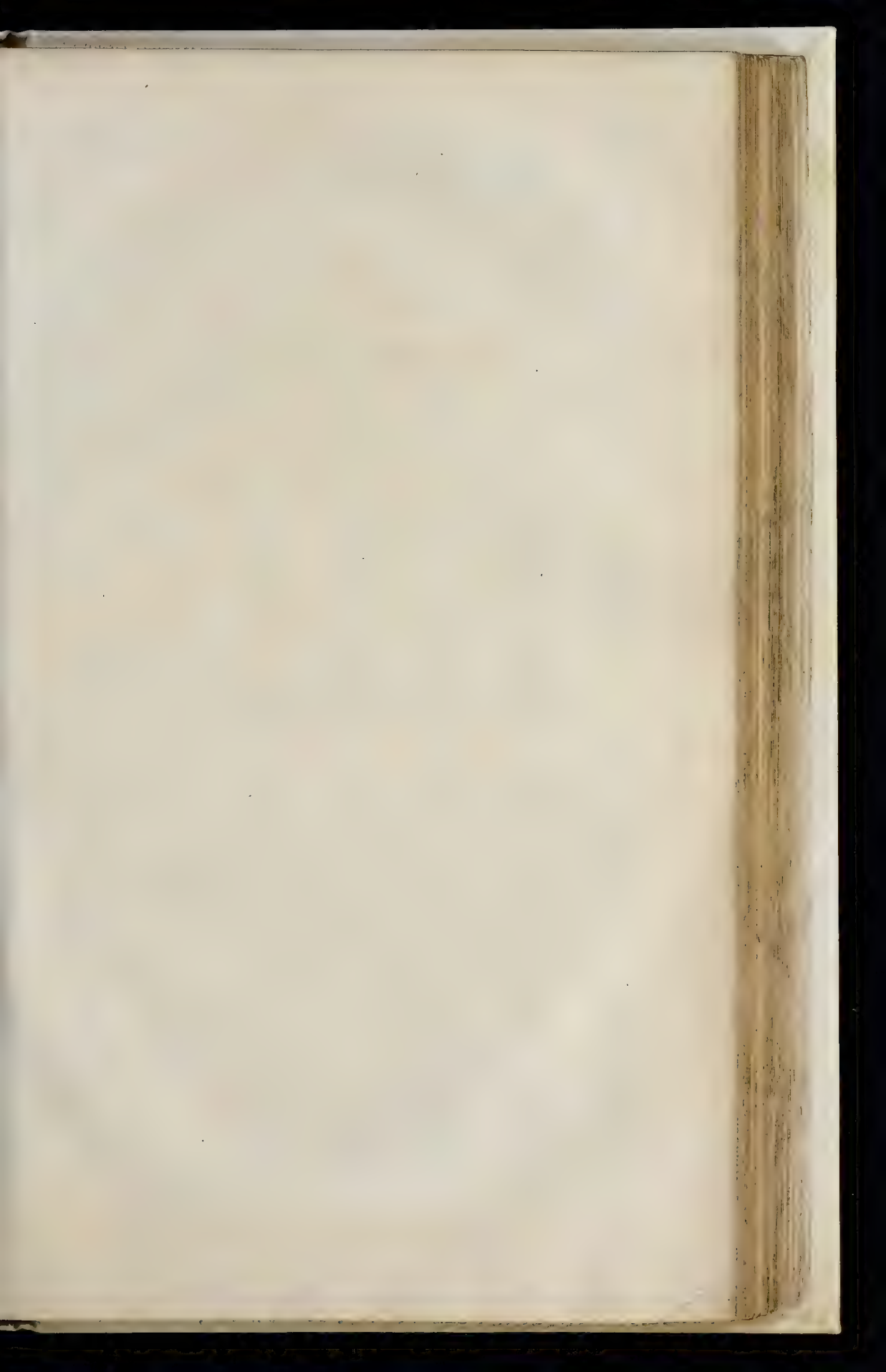
The *Alms-Knights* go down to their Seats. Which, while they are so doing, the two *Prebends* put on their *Copes*, at the South side of the *Altar*.

This done, the *Prelate* begins the second Service.

SECT. IV.

The order of the Second Service.

THE order and course of the *Second Service*, since the time of Reformation in the Church of *England*, hath been celebrated according to the directions set down in the Book of *Common-Prayer*, established by Act of Parliament,



THE
GRAND PROCESSION
OF THE
Sovereigne
and
knights Companions
ANNO
25 CAROLI 2







Parliament, being the same commonly used on any other *Feast-day*; excepting that a peculiar *Epistle* and *Gospel*, made proper to this *Festival*, hath been appointed to be read in their due place of the *Service*. The *Epistle* being the 23. Chapter of *Deuteronomy*; next follows the *Gospel*, taken out of the 5. Chapter of the Gospel of *St. John*, beginning at the 24. Verse, and ending at the 30. which being read the *Creed* is sung.

The Office appointed to be used on this *Feast-day* in the Chappel of *St. George*, in *Windsor Castle*, before the Reformation, may be seen in the *Breviary* and *Missale ad usum ac consuetudinem Sarum*, which we have transcribed hither; for (in regard that the Colledge of *Windsor* was situate within the Diocess of *Salisbury*) the *Statutes* of the Colledge did appoint and ordain, ^k that the use and custom of singing, pronouncing, and celebrating *Divine Service*, of attending in the *Choir* and at the *Altar*, or of celebrating about it the *Masses* peculiar to the day, or of the *Virgin Mary*, as also for the dead, as well in celebrating as reading, singing, standing, sitting, both in the *Choir* and without it, and all things whatsoever, which were observed in the Church of *Salisbury*, should be observed in this Chappel of *St. George*, according to the conveniency of place and exigency of persons: To the observation of this *statute*, they were also obliged by the ^l Injunctions of *John* Archbishop of *Tork*, Chancellor of *England*, under the penalty of paying 12 *d.* to the Treasury of the Colledge, by every one, that should be guilty of violating or infringing the same. What difference there is between the foresaid Office, and that appointed to the use of the Church of *Tork* (in regard it is but small) we shall also note, and then close this *section* with the *Hymn* and *Prayer*, out of the *Primmer* of *Salisbury*.

If any be further curious to know, what alteration hath been made since our Reformation, in this Office in the *Roman Church* (for since then, they have seen cause to mend and refine divers things, in their publick *Liturgie*) they may have recourse to the *Breviarium Romanum* and *Missale Romanum*, Ex decreto Concilii Tridentini restitutum, wherein the *Service* is ^m noted to be very solemn, and (for the honor of *St. George*) scarce any *Festival* there, is celebrated, with more variety of proper and *Divine Offices*.

Officium proprium Sancti Georgii, prout extat in Portiforio (sen
* Breviario) Salisburiensi Londini excuso 1555. In proprio de
Sanctis. Part. Hiemali, ad diem April 23.

Rubrica.

Sancti Georgii Martyris. Tres Lectiones, cum regimine Chori, duplex Festum.

Capitulum.

Iste sanctus qui pro Lege Dei sui certavit usq; ad mortem: Et à verbis impiorum non timuit: fundatus enim erat supra firmam petram.

Oratio.

Deus qui nos beati Georgii Martyris tui meritis Et intercessione laetificas; concede propitius, ut qui ejus beneficia poscimus, dono tue gratie consequamur, per dominum nostrum Jesum Christum.

Lectio I.

Sanctus Et verus Dei Cultor Georgius Cappadociae regionis oriundus, cum videret multos Deum blasphemantes, Et cum Daciano demones adorantes, spiritum sancto repletus in hanc vocem prorupit: Omnes dii Gentium demonia, Dominus autem celum fecit. Dacianus ait ei, qua temeritatis audaciâ, nobis

Cccc

injuriam

k Cap. 21.

l Cap. 64
m *Arslins Hist.*
of *St. George*,
Part. 2 Sect. 8.
* Nota, Quod
Breviarium hoc
Salisburiense
Beda sequitur,
qui in suo
Martyrologio,
ad diem 23 Aprilis, ait Georgium Martyrium fuisse passum sub Daciano Rege Persarum; Et Usuardus in Martyrologio suo ad diem etiam April. 23. ait, Georgium Martyris coronatum in Perside, civitate Bysanti.

In Breviario Sancti Dominici. Paris. 1512 p. 44. In Officio Sancti Georgii occurrit eadem Oratio, quæ hic habetur in Breviario Salisburiensi, & tres Lectiones (ex gestis Sancti Georgii secundum Ecclesiam Gallicanam, ita enim habet Rubrica) quæ quoad sententiam, ut penè quoad verba ipsa, eadem sunt cum his Lectionibus Ecclesiæ Salisburiensis. Vide Nicephorum Callist. Hist. Lib. 7. c. 15. de Martyrio S. Georgii sub Dioclesiano.

injuriam irrogans, Deos nostros demonia vocas? fatere tunc ex qua Provinciâ huc advenisti, vel quo nomine vociferis.

Lectio 2.

Sanctus Georgius dixit: Christianus & Dei servus sum, Georgius nuncupor, genere Capadocus, patriæ meæ comitatum gerens. Elegi verò temporali dignitate carere, & immortalis Dei imperio servire. Dacianus ait ei: erras Georgi, accede & immola Deo Appollini. Beatus Georgius respondet, Domino enim meo Jesu Christo exhibeo culturam, Regi omnium sæculorum, non Appollini auctori Demoniorum.

Lectio 3.

Iratus Dacianus jussit s. Georgium in Equuleo levare, & extensum membratim ungulis lacerari. Deinde lateribus ejus lampades ardentes applicari; salem verò in vulnera aspergi, & cilicio plagas ejus fricari; plumboq; bullienti Georgium immitti, extractumq; per vicos ut reum fecit trahi. Cumq; traheretur ad locum supplicii, flexis genibus gratias egit Deo, & sic capitalem pro Christo subiit sententiam.

Rubrica.

Cetera de Communi unius Martyris de Pasce. temporis.

What is set down above, is proper to St. George, but the rest of the Office used on St. George's day (being common to him with other Martyrs) is not set down, but referr'd to that part of the *Portiforium*, called *Commune*.

Sancti Georgii Martyris Officium.

Protexisti me Deus à conventu malignantium, Alleluia; & multitudine operantium iniquitatem. Alleluia, Alleluia.

Psalmus.

ibidem.

Exaudi Deus orationem meam cum deprecar: à timore inimici eripe animam meam.

Oratio.

Deus qui nos beati Georgii martyris tui, meritis & intercessione latificas: concede propitijs; ut, cujus beneficia poscimus, dono tuæ gratiæ consequamur. Per Dominum nostrum Jesum Christum.

Lectio beati Jacobi Apostoli. 1.

Cap. 1.

Carissimi, omne gaudium existimate, cum in temptationes varias incideritis: Scientes quòd probatio fidei vestræ, patientiam operatur: Patientia autem opus perfectum habeat: ut sitis perfecti & integri, in nullo deficientes. Si quis autem vestrum indiget sapientiâ, postulet à Deo qui dat omnibus affluenter, & non impropert: & dabitur ei. Postulet autem in fide nihil hesitans. Qui enim hesitat, similis est fluctui maris, qui à vento movetur & circumfertur. Non ergo existimet homo ille, quod accipiat aliquid à Domino. Vir duplex animo, inconstans est in omnibus viis suis. Glorietur autem frater humilis, in exaltatione suâ: dives autem in humilitate suâ, quoniam sicut flos sæni transibit: Exortus est enim sol cum ardore: & arefecit fenum, & flos ejus decidit: & decor vultus ejus deperit: Ita & dives, in itineribus suis marcescit. Beatus vir qui suffert temptationem: quoniam cum probatus fuerit, accipiet coronam vitæ, quam repromisit Deus diligentibus se. Alleluia.

Letabitur

Latabitur iustus in Domino, & sperabit in eo: & laudabuntur omnes Psal. 63. recti corde.

Sequentia.

Organicis canamus modulis Georgii solennia. Omnigenis Domino vocibus reddentes odas debitas: Qui in suis sanctis mirabilis nimis, multiplici virtutum flore eosdem decorat, ac mirifice adornat. Nam & in ipsis quasi in quibusdam musicis instrumentis, digito proprio fides agitat, fides virtutum sonoras; his numerosè percurrens singulas. Permiscet singulis diatessaron melissimam melodiam; quam generat virtutum mater illa, quæ aliis decenter composita reddit suavem symphoniam, qua sine cuncta sunt dissona, necnon & frivola; qua cum omnia sunt consona, necnon utilia: qua iusti benè morati, rite petentes excelsa poli sidera alacres decantant nova cantica, in Cithara Threiciâ: quorum agentes festa, consortia mereamur in celesti patria.

Evangelium secundum Johannem.

In illo tempore, dixit Jesus Discipulis suis, Ego sum vitis vera, & pater Chap. 15; meus agricola est; Omnem Palmitem in me non ferentem fructum tollet eum, & omnem qui fert fructum purgabit eum, ut fructum plus afferat. Jam vos mundi estis propter sermonem quem locutus sum vobis. Manete in me, & ego in vobis. Sicut Palmes non potest ferre fructum à semetipso nisi manserit in vite: sic nec vos nisi in me manseritis. Ego sum vitis; vos palmites. Qui manet in me, ego in eo, hic fert fructum multum, quia sine me nihil potestis facere. Si quis in me non manserit, mittetur foras sicut palmes & arefcet: & colligent eum & in ignem mittent & ardet. Si manseritis in me, & verba mea in vobis manserint, quodcumq; volueritis petetis, & fiet vobis.

Offertorium.

Confitebuntur celi mirabilia tua Domine: & veritatem tuam in Ecclesia Psal. 88; sanctorum. Alleluia Alleluia.

Secreta.

Offerimus tibi Domine solenne sacrificium pro venerandâ sancti Georgii martyris tui passione, deprecantes clementiam tuam: ut per hæc sacrosancta mysteria: antiqui hostis temptamenta, te triumphante, vincamus: & æternæ remunerationis primum, te largiente consequamur per Dom.

Communio.

Latabitur iustus in Domino, & sperabit in eo: & laudabuntur omnes Psal. 33. recti corde.

Postcommunio.

Mense celestis satiati dulcedine, humiliter te rogamus omnipotens pater: ut intercedente beato Georgio martyre tuo: resurrectionis ejus simus participes cuius sumus morte redempti. Qui tecum, &c.

Here note, that it belonged to theⁿ Abbot of Towerhill to read the Gospel, ⁿ Lib. N. p. 109; and to the Prior of Medemenham in Norfolk to read the Epistle; for upon them was this duty imposed, until the Reformation; and in whose absence, a^o Canon ^o Ibid. p. 112; non, and a Vicar of the Chappel, supplied their place (^p He that read the Gospel, ^p Ibid. p. 113; (after censing by the Epistoler) presented the Heart of St. George, bestowed upon King Henry the Fifth by ^q Sigismund the Emperor) to the sovereign and ^q Ibid. p. 26. Knights-Companions to kiss.

The difference between the Office appointed for St. Georges Day, *secundum Sarum*, & Ebor. is as followeth.

The Office of the Church of York hath the same *Officium*, *Psalmus*, *Oratio*, with Salisbury; but it hath another *Epistle*, viz. 2 Cor. 5. 1. beginning *scimus quoniam si terrestris*; and ends with the fourth verse.

And other verses follow the *Epistle*, viz.

Versus. *Conspicebuntur celi mirabilia tua Domine, etenim veritatem tuam in Ecclesiam Sanctorum.*

Versus. *Angelus Domini descendit de celo & accedens revolvit Lapidem & sedebat super eum.*

The *sequentia*, is the same with Salisbury, But the Gospel is 16 Math. beginning at the 24. verse. *Si quis vult post me venire*, &c. to the end of the Chapter.

The *Offertorium* and *Communio*, are the same also with Salisbury.

But the *Secreta* and *Post-Communio*, the same with the Roman Missal now in use.

The Office *secundum Sarum*, hath the same *Officium*, *Psalmus*, *Oratio*, *Offertorium*, *Communio* and Gospel, with the Roman Missal.

But it differs in the *Epistle*, the Verse following, the *Secreta*, and *Post-Communio*.

In the *Primmer* according to the usage of Salisbury, otherwise called *Hore beatissime Marie Virginis, secundum usum Sarum*. Printed in a small Volume by Winandus de Wurde, an. 1529. there is this Hymn to St. George among the Suffrages.

Fol. 54.

De Sancto Georgio.

Antiphona.

Georgi martyr inclite decet laus & gloria, prædotatum militiâ: per quem Puella Regia exiens in tristiâ, coram dracone pessimo salvata est. Te amaro rogamus & cord. intimo, ut cum cunctis fidelibus, celi jungamur civibus; nostris ablatis foribus ut simul cum letitiâ tecum simus in gloriâ, nostraque reddant labia, laud s Christo cum gloriâ.

Vers. Ora pro nobis beate Georgi Christi miles.

Resp. Ut hostes visibiles & invisibiles sint contra nos valdè debiles.

Oratio.

Omnipotens sempiterne Deus qui deprecantium voces benignus exaudis, majestatem tuam supplices exoramus: Ut sicut in honore beati ac gloriosissimi martiris tui Georgii Draconem à Puellâ superare voluisti: Ita ejusdem intercessione hostes nostros visibiles & invisibiles, ne nocere valeant, à nobis superari concedas, per Dominum nostrum. Pater noster. Ave Maria.

The same Prayer I find in the *Primers* Printed in a Large Quarto at Paris, by Francis Regnault in the Years 1516, 1526, 1527, 1534. and in a small Volume at Roven, an. 1538.

SECT. V.

The Offring of Gold and Silver.

Preparations
for the Offer-
ing.

BEing now to speak of this solemn and sacred Ceremony, we shall premise; That, whether it be performed in the Sovereign's Chappel at Windsor, or in any

any other *Church* or *Chappel* whatsoever, the Ceremony is one and the same, having not any thing peculiarly local to *Windeſor* (except the *Sovereign's Offring* of *Gold* and *Silver* instead of the *Bezant*) or otherwise varying with the place.

The accustomed time of Offring *Gold* and *Silver* on the *Feaſt day*, is mentioned *an. 22. H. 8.* to be after the *Sovereign's* return to his Stall, from the *Grand Proceſſion*, in the time of *high-Maſs*; and at this day begins, immediately after this firſt Sentence of the *Offertory* is pronounced by the *Prelate*,
a MS. in Offr. Arm. [M 17.] f. l. 32. b.

Let your light ſo ſhine before men, &c.

This ſaid, the *Organs* begin to play (continuing ſo throughout the whole Ceremony) and forthwith a *Groom* and *Page* of the removing *Wardrobe* (with Reverence firſt made) unroll a long *Carpet*, and ſpread it from before the *Altar*, downward, upon the *Haut paſ*, aſcending thereto, and then ſtand on each ſide thereof.

Which being done, the *Alms-Knights* firſt, next the *Purſuivants*, *Heralds*, and *Provincial Kings* aſcend in uſual order, to their wonted Stations before the *Altar*, and dividing themſelves, flank the *Carpet* on both ſides.

Then *Garter* ſteps from his Seat, and, after his double Reverences, and the uſual manner of waving his Rod, the *Knights-Companions* deſcend in their accustomed and regular order, and ſtand before their Stalls.

After this, the *Black Rod* goes from his Seat, makes his double Reverences in the middle of the *Choir*, and aſcends neer to the *Altar*, towards which, making a ſingle Reverence, he turns his back, and immediately the *Groom* of the removing *Wardrobe*, delivereth unto him a little *Carpet*, anciently of *Silk*, now of *Cloth of Gold*, which he (the ſaid *Groom* aſſiſting) ſpreads over that before mentioned, lying on the *Haut Paſ's* to the *Altar*.

Moreover the ſaid *Groom* holds upon his arms, a fair *Cuſhen* of *Cloth of Gold*, for the *Sovereign* to kneel upon, at the time of his Offring, which the *Black Rod* forthwith lays upon the upper *Haut Paſ*, before the *Altar*. And note, that aſwell in delivering as receiving the *Cuſhen*, each of them take the *Aſſay* thereof, by kiſſing it.

Theſe preparations for the *Sovereign* to offer, being made, the *Prelate* of the *Order* takes a large gilt *Baſon* into his hands, to receive the *Sovereign's Offring*, and placing himſelf in the middle of the *Altar*, ſtands before it with one of the *Prebends* to aſſiſt him.

The *Sovereign* at this inſtant ariſing from his Royal Seat, makes his Reverence towards the *Altar*, and then deſcending makes a like Reverence below, and aſcends towards the *Altar*, attended as followeth.
The Order of the Sovereign's Offring.

Garter.

Regiſter.

Chancellor.

The *Nobleman* that bears the *Sword*.

The *Sovereign*,

having his *Train* born up.

The *Knights-Companion*, who is to give him his *Offring*, goes a little behind on his left hand.

Being come into the middle of the *Choir*, he makes another Reverence, and at the firſt *Haut Paſ* his laſt.

And albeit, in other matters of Ceremony, the *Sovereign* performs his part laſt, yet at the *Offring*, firſt, and before all the *Knights-Companions*. And in this point, *Errhard Celius* diſcourſing of the Duke of *Wirttemberg's* Offring, is miſtaken, where he ſaith, the *Sovereign* or his *Deputy* Offer after all the *Knights-Companions*, and in the laſt place.

The *Officers of Arms* were anciently wont to lead on this *Proceeding*, and paſs before the *Officers of the Order*, and ſo we find it remembered *an. 22. H. 7.*
an. c. 1. & 2. Ph. & Mar. i. 2. & 19. Eliz. and the like attendance was in thoſe times

b. E. 3. f. Stat.
H. 5. l. Art. 13
c. Eq. Aur. Anglo-Wirtemb.
fol. 183.
d. Ex Veteri MS. pen. W. le N. cl. f. 295. b.
e. MS. pag. 12.
f. Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.
g. MS. G. O. 7. pag. 113.

^h MS. fol. pen. times given to the *Sovereign's* ^h *Lieutenant* by them; but this is now altered, and they directed to proceed up next towards the *Altar* after the *Alms-Knights*, as before, and together with them, stand in flank on both sides the *Carpet*, while the *Sovereign* approacheth the *Altar*.

He that bears the *Sovereign's Offering*, is either the senior *Knight*, the *Prince*, or the greatest *Estate* among the *Knights-Companions* then present, and no other person (of what *Degree* soever) if he be not one of this most Noble Fraternity, doth perform this service. And once we find the senior *Knight* had an *Assisant* for this service, namely *an. 18. Eliz.* when the Earl of ⁱ *Arundell* went on the *Sovereign's* right hand, and the Earl of *Suffex* on her left, to give her the *Offering*.

ⁱ MS. penes G.
O.T. pag. 123.

The *Sovereign* being come to the upper *Haut Pas*, kneels, at which instant, the *Black Rod* on his *Knee* delivers (with *Assay*) the *Sovereign's Offering* to the senior *Knight*, and he, kneeling, presents it to the *Sovereign*, which he immediately offers into the *Basin*, held by the *Prelate*, assisted as before, who at this instant heretofore also kneeled; but at the *Feast* celebrated *an. 15. Car. 2.* the present *Sovereign* gave command, that the *Prelate* and *Canon* should * stand, while himself, in the humble posture of kneeling, should make his *Offering*.

* Lib. Carol.
pag. 47.

Which having done, he riseth and passeth down the *Haut Pas's*, where turning about he makes a *Reverence* towards the *Altar*, and thence conducted and attended, as when he came up to *Offer*, at the entrance into his *Stall*, he turns about and makes another *Reverence*, at both which times the *Attendants* bow towards the *Altar* also, and ascending into his *Stall*, doth the like again, and then reposeth himself in his *Seat*. In that interim the *Black Rod* takes up the rich *Carpet* and *Cushen*, and delivers them to the foresaid *Groom*, and so descends (with *Reverence*) to his *Form*, and stands before it.

In *Queen Elizabeth's* *Reign*, it appears the *Bezant* was *Offered* by her, and redeemed of course (so also at sundry times since) and noted (*an. 2. Eliz.*) to be of * 7 l. value. But at the *Installation* of the *Duke of York* at *Windsor*, *an. 11. Jac. R.* there was a question proposed to the *Dean* and *Canons*, ^k whether if the *Sovereign* should offer his *Bezant*, it might be redeemed or not? Their answer then was, ^l that whatsoever was there offered, became the *Dean* and *Canons* without redemption, whereupon the *Sovereign* waved offering his *Bezant*, and offered ^m both *Gold* and *Silver*.

* Collect. W. le
N. Cl.
k Collect. D.
l Chr. Wren
m super Ord.
Registr.

And besides, concerning this thing, there is an *Entry* made of a passage (upon the *Register* of the *Order*) which hapned *an. 6. Car. 1.* ⁿ That whereas in other places (besides *Windsor*) the *Sovereign* is wont to offer a certain golden piece (vulgarly called a *Bezant*) to be redeemed afterwards, at a certain price; ^o The *Usher* of the *Black Rod* having sometime been admonished, that in these services there is no redemption to be made, never presents the *Bezant* at *Windsor* to the *Sovereign*, but *Gold* and *Silver* of *English* money.

ⁿ Lib. R. p.
o c 2.

The *Lieutenants* *Offering* When the *Sovereign* is absent, and his *Lieutenant* offers for him, he performs the Ceremony in manner and order following.

First (after the preparations made for the *Offering*, as aforesaid, and *Garters* double *Reverence* towards the *Altar* and the *Sovereign's* *Stall*, with a third to the *Lieutenant*) he descends from his *Stall* with his usual *Reverences*, and goes to the steps ascending the *Sovereign's* *Stall*, and there stands a while; then making his double obeisance, he proceeds towards the *Altar* (the *Officers* of the *Order* going before him) with one other *Reverence* in the middle of the *Choir*, and another at the first *Haut Pas* of the *Altar*, having his *Train* carried up. The ^q *Carpet* and *Cushen* is spread and laid for him, by the ^r *Black Rod*, and *Yeomen* of the *Wardrobe*, with *Assay*, and the *Offering* given also with *Assay*, by the ^s *Black Rod*, to the senior *Knight*, or one of the *Knights-Companions* of highest dignity, at that time present, who attending the *Lieutenant* up to the *Altar*, delivers it upon his *Knee*, and he having put it, kneeling also, into the *Basin* (held by the *Prelate*) returns back through the body of the *Choir* to the *Sovereign's* *Stall*, in the same order, and with like *Reverences* as he came, where standing a while again before it, he makes his single *Reverence* towards it, and then goes up into his own *Stall*, where (if it fall out that the *Lieutenant* is not the senior *Knight*) he stays to receive the *Reverences*.

q MS. penes
r pref. G. O. R.
s (p. 113 vide
MS. 4. pen. W.
le N. Cl. f. 11.
* Collect. A.
V. W.

t MS. in Bibl.
Canon. sub Ef-
f. fol. 11.

Reverences of all the *Knights-Companions* his seniors, as they go up to offer, and when his own turn and course comes to offer, he descends with a double Reverence, and proceeds up with his Fellow (if present) and "offers for himself in his own place, and as one of the *Knights-Companions*; but his *Train* is now let down, the *Assay* not given, the *Carpet* and *Cushion* taken away, and only two *Officers of Arms* (but none of the *Order*) proceeds before him; and as soon as he hath thus offered for himself, he returns to his Stall, by the * East end through the Stalls.

But it seems *an. 7. Jac. R.* that * *Garter*, alone on the *Feast day*, brought up the *Prince* (then the *Sovereign's Lieutenant*) when he came to offer for himself, which some of the *Knights-Companions* observing, alledged that the service ought to have been performed by † *Clarenceux* and *Norroy* (he being the senior *Knight*) yet because *Garter* had so brought him up the day before, it was thought good he should so continue. And this we look on as an oversight in *Garter*, if not ignorance, since at the same time we find him guilty of another, as great an Error; for he brought down the *Knights-Companions* out of their Stalls to offer, * before the *Epistle* and *Gospel* were read, which the *Relator* notes to be done, * contrary to the use of former times, and in truth very absurd and inconvenient; inasmuch as, besides their long time of standing below in the *Choir*, while the tedious Ceremonies of the *Offring* were preparing and performing, the *Knights-Companions* were now put to exercise their patience, by the inconvenience of a longer standing there, even while the *Epistle* and *Gospel* were read, and the *Creed* sung, and all this before the *Offring* did begin. But the foresaid mistake was *an. 11. Jac. R.* rectified, and when the *Prince* (being the † *Sovereign's Lieutenant*) came to offer for himself, he was then brought up by *Clarenceux* and *Norroy*, and not by *Garter*.

When the *Sovereign's Lieutenant* hath offered for himself, he ^b returns to the lower end of the Stalls, and passeth thence towards his own, where having paid his usual Reverences, he enters it again, and is there ready to receive the Reverences of all the rest of the *Knights-Companions*, his juniors.

This ceremonious course of the *Lieutenant's* returning up to his Stall, after he had offered for the *Sovereign*, and there remaining, until his own turn came to offer, and then to descend again, and offer for himself, and so return to his Stall, was first appointed to be observed by † Decree in *Chapter an. 7. Eliz.* though the entry thereof into the *Register* of the *Order*, was (we know not how) neglected; and this return hath been since duly observed, albeit the senior *Knight* (as very usual) was made the *Sovereign's Lieutenant*, and then (there being no other *Knight* that possessed a higher Stall than himself, to offer before him) he, resting a while there, arose, and with usual Reverences came forth a second time from his Seat, and went up to offer for himself, attended as is before mentioned.

As soon as the *Sovereign* (or his *Lieutenant*) is returned to his Stall, the two *Provincial Kings* pass down into the middle of the *Choir*, where making a Reverence jointly towards the *Altar*, and next to the *Sovereign*, *Clarenceux* turns himself to the senior *Knight*, and makes him a third Reverence, while *Norroy*, at the same instant, doth the like to the next junior *Knight*, and to both, as an intimation of their going up to offer; then each *King* retires a little backward, towards the Stalls.

In the mean time, the two senior *Knights-Companions* draw neer together, and make their double Reverence, and upon the last turning of themselves, *Clarenceux* and *Norroy* step forth and pass up before them, until they arrive neer to the *Prelate* (but where the senior *Knight* wants his opposite *Companion*, the two *Kings* bring him up alone, and he Offers single) then making their Reverences, first towards the *Altar*, next to the two *Knights*, *Clarenceux* retires to the right side, and *Norroy* to the left, and make themselves ready for a present return, before the *Knights-Companions*; who in the interim are kneeling together, on the upper *Haut Pas* before the *Altar*, making their *Offring*.

This humble posture in *Offring*, was not (it seems) heretofore generally observed by the *Knights-Companions*, and therefore *an. 4. Car. 1.* it occasioned the passing

u. Ibid.
w. MS. in Offic.
Arm. [L. 1.]
p. 19. & MS.
pen. W. D. N.
fol. 12.
* Ex. Collect.
W. le N. Cl.
x (MS. penes
E. W. G.
z fol. 148. b.

u. Ibid. f. 151. b.

b. MS. in Offic.
Arm. ut sup.
274.

c. Collect. A.
V. W.

The Knights
Offering.

passing a Decree to this effect; That in all Offerings to be thenceforth made every one of the Knights-Companions (in honor of God, and in testimony of their obedience and Christian Piety) should most humbly bow their knees.

The Knights-Companions Offerings are both of silver and Gold, which they put into the foresaid *Bason*, held to them by the two *Prebends* before-mentioned, or by one *Prebend* and the *Chantor*, and anciently by the * *Chantor* only, when the Offering is made at *Windsor*; but by the † *Subdean* of the *Chappel*, when they Offer at *Whitehall*.

The Offering being made, the Knights-Companions rise, and forthwith divide themselves, *Clarenceux* conducting the Senior Knight to the ‡ lower end of the Stalls, on the *Sovereigns* side, and there at parting from him makes a Reverence to him; and *Norroy* conducting the next Junior Knight to the lower end of the Stalls, on the *Princes* side, with a Reverence also leaves him, and forthwith both Kings return to their Stations, before the *Altar*.

As soon as the Knights-Companions are ^b entred in, at the nethermost end of the Stalls, they make their double Reverences together; and then pass along the Stalls, till they come to their own, where making the like Reverences, they take their seats.

But if any *Stranger King* be present at the Offering, he retires not to his Seat (after he hath offered) by the lower end of the Stalls, as is before observed, by other Knights, but along the *Choir* (like as doth the *sovereign*) the same way that he proceeded up: for so did the ¹ King of *Denmark*, an. 4. *Jac. Regis*, but the ^k Prince and all the other Knights-Companions, who Offered at the same time, went back to their Seats by the nether end of the Stalls: viz. at the end nearest the high *Altar*, which sometimes is called the ¹ upper end, and sometimes the ^m East end, and often the lower end; for so did Prince ⁿ Arthur an. 15. H. 7. and ^o Francis Duke of *Montmorancy*, an. 14. *Eliz.* the like did ^p Prince Henry an. 16. *Jac. Reg.* and the Duke of *York* an. 19. & 23. *Car. 2.*

The Ceremonies of the two Senior Knights Offering being finished, the two Senior *Heralds*, observing the end of the said Knights last Reverences, pass down into the *Choir*, after the same manner as did *Clarenceux* and *Norroy*, to bring up the two next Senior Knights-Companions to Offer, (for all Offer according to the Seniority of their Stalls) who ascend in the same manner, and with the same Reverences, as did the two Senior Knights, and after they have Offered, are conducted to the lower end of the Stalls, and with usual Reverences take their Seats.

In like manner, do the next two Senior *Heralds* go down, and bring up the two next Senior Knights to Offer in the before-mentioned Order; which being done, they return to their Stalls as aforesaid. And after them the two Junior *Heralds* descend, and bring up the two next Knights to the Offering, who return as did their Seniors.

And if there be yet more Knights-Companions to Offer, then *Clarenceux* and *Norroy* begin again, and go down to bring them up to Offer also. After them the *Heralds*, again by turns, fetch up the rest of the Knights, who proceed up, paired or single, as they have or want their Fellows, until all have made their respective Offerings: for we find not, that the *Pursuivants* at Arms have at any time performed any part of this Service. But to make the Ceremony more apparent, we shall insert the Order in which the Knights-Companions were conducted up to the Offering, at the *Grand Feast*, celebrated at *Windsor*, an. 13. *Car. 2.* together with the Officers of Arms that proceeded before them.

Duke of *York*.
Earls of *Salisbury* and *Berkshire*.
Earl of *Northumberland*.
Dukes of *Ormond* and *Buckingham*.
Earl of *Southampton*.
Duke of *Albemarle*.
Earls of *Sandwich* and *Oxford*.
Duke of *Richm.* and Earl of *Lindsey*.
Earls of *Manchester* and *Strafford*.

conducted
to the Of-
fering by

Clarenceux and *Norroy*.
York and *Lancaster*.
Windsor and *Richmond*.
Chester and *Somerset*.
Clarenceux and *Norroy*.
York and *Lancaster*.
Windsor and *Richmond*.
Chester and *Somerset*.
Clarenceux and *Norroy*.

And

And it is to be noted, that where any *Knight* hath his opposite *Companion* absent, he goeth up to Offer singly and alone, and so returneth; nevertheless with two *Heralds* before him (as may also be seen by the precedent *Scheme*) who conduct him to the lower end of the Stalls, and there, with a joint Reverence take their leave.

In this solemn Ceremony, the order wherein the *Knights-Companions* Offer, is always according to the Dignity of their Stalls, wherein they sit; for they obtain the honor and title of Seniority, according as their Stalls stand in Order, nearer to the *Sovereigns* Stall.

As touching the Offerings themselves, which the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* do at any time make, in the Chappel at *Windsor*, they, of right, belong to the *Dean* and *Prebends* of that *Colledge*; having been conferred on them by the Statutes of the *Colledge*. And it was also Ordained, that the Chantor should see, that all the Offerings there made should be received, collected, and faithfully kept, and at the end of every Month, or weekly if the *Colledge* required it, give a faithful account of what was so received. By which it appears, that they were not only given to the *Dean* and *Prebends*, but care was also taken, by whom they should be received, and when an Account should be rendered. All which was confirmed by King *Edward* the Third, by the *Bishop*, and *Dean*, and *Chapter* of *Salisbury*, to whose Jurisdiction the *Colledge* of *Windsor* doth belong, and also by the *Bishop* of *Winchester*, *Prelate* of the *Garter*, the last Day of November, 1352.

Nor do we find but that in pursuance of these Statutes, the *Dean* and *Prebends* of the said *Colledge*, have constantly enjoyed them, until *Dr. Mountague* came to be *Bishop* of *Winchester* and *Prelate* of the Order; who, it seems, challenged a right to the Offerings, which he had received at the Feast of *St. George* celebrated at *Windsor* an. 21 Jac. Reg. Whereupon in a Chapter held on the last Day of the said Feast, the Dean and *Canons* made their complaint against the said *Prelate*, for not only receiving the *Knights-Companions* Offerings, but for detaining them, as also the *Sovereigns* and *Princes* Offerings: Of which, the said *Prelate* being demanded, by the *Sovereigns* Lieutenant and *Knights-Companions* present in the said Chapter, he acknowledged, and further answered, that he had left them in the hands of the *Subdean* of the Chappel, *tantum in deposito*. But the Chapter being ready to rise, the matter was not then further debated, but referred to the next Feast.

* *Bishop Andrews* did also *de facto*, both receive and keep the Offerings, whenever he, as *Prelate*, Officiated at *Windsor*; but his Executors to avoid Suit, compounded for them.

It appears by the Red Book of the Order, upon Complaint of the *Dean* and *Prebends* of *Windsor*, in a Chapter held the 24. of Sept. an. 4. Car. 1. that power was given to the *Knights-Commissioners* of the Order, to determine this contention about the Offering; and withal it is there noted, that *Bishop Neyle* the then *Prelate* himself also desired, that a Chapter might determine the matter.

But we have not met with any account of what these *Commissioners* (so empowered) did, though by an Expression in the same Book, an. 5 Car. 1. one would guess, as though the thing had been determined against the *Prelate*. For an Offering having been then made in the Chappel at *Windsor*, and the *Sovereigns* Offering received by the Bishop of *Norwich*, that Officiated for the *Prelate*, and the *Knights-Companions* Offering by the two *Prebends*, who assisted at the Altar, it is added: That what was Offered, fell according to Law of the place, to the share of the *Dean* and *Prebends*: And yet it appears, that the controversy was not ended, since by a subsequent Order of Chapter, (6 O.E. an. 6 Car. 1.) the matter was again referred to the nine *Knights-Commissioners* of the Order, or any four of them, who were to hear both Parties, and make their Report, that so the same might receive a determination. But here also it is immediately noted, That the next Morning the *Prelate* (*nequid nimis denique sententie tribuere videretur*) voluntarily delivered to the *Dean*, 9l. 4s. that sum being the moiety of the Offerings: he had received from the *Sovereign* and

D d d

Knights-

The Offerings
belong to the
Dean and
Prebends,
f A. 1. 33.
c Art. 37.

w Lib. R. p. 10.

x Autogr. in
y Errat. Coll.
Winds.

a c
b c
Pag. 43.

d Pag. 52.

e Pag. 51.

f Ibid. pag. 52.

h Lib. R. p. 64.
G 55.

i Ibid.

1 Pag. 73.
m Pag. 74.
n Pag. 75.

o f
p { Pag. 91.
q {

Knights-Companions. The next *Feast* after held at *Windsor*, viz. ¹ 4. Oct. an. 7 Car. I. the controversy was again^m resumed, and after some arguments urged by the *Prelate*, and answered by the *Register*, it wasⁿ Decreed, that the *Dean* should attend the *Knights-Commissioners*, at their next sitting, with the *Statutes*, and other *Grants* to the *Colledge*, and that from them the controversy should be determined. After this, there is another *Memorandum* made in the same *Register*, which informs us, that the^o *Prelate* by the hands of the *Chantor* delivered all the *Offerings* received at the *Feast* ^p an. 9 Car. I. to the *Canons*, upon condition of restitution, if it chanced they^q should be adjudged to him, and not to the *Canons*. And whether any final determination was afterwards made herein, we have not hitherto found. But since the return of the present *Sovereign*, the *Offerings* received at the *Feast* of *St. George* at *Windsor*, an. 13 Car. 2. were divided between the *Dean* and *Canons* resident, the *Prelate* not disputing the right.

And now that we may see, what hath ordinarily been Offered in *Gold* and *Silver*, this following Account of the *Offering* received by the *Bishop* of *Winchester*, (attested under his hand, and delivered to the *Dean* and *Prebends* of *Windsor*) will give us some Information.

* Ex ipso Autogr. in Arar. pradiit. Coll.

* Sept. 24. 1628.

The *Offering* at *St. Georges Feast* at *Windsor*, besides the *Kings Offering* of the *Bezant* not yet redeemed.

	l. s. d.	
	in Gold.	in Silver.
Viz.	s.	s.
The Lord Steward	10	01.
Lord Chamberlain	10	02.
Earl of Kellie	10	02.
Earl of Salisbury	10	02.
Earl of Dorset	10	02.
Earl of Holland	10	02.
Earl of Suffolk	10	02.
Earl of Berkshire	10	02.
	04	15 00.

The *Offerings* on Thursday the 25th Day.

	s.	s.
His Majesties Offerings	20	10.
Lord Steward	10	01.
Lord Chamberlain	10	02.
Earl of Kellie	10	02.
Earl of Salisbury	10	02.
Earl of Dorset	10	02.
Earl of Holland	10	02.
Earl of Suffolk	10	02.
Earl of Berkshire	10	02.
	06	05 00.

The sum of both, besides the *Kings Besant* unredeemed is--- l. s. d. 11 00 00.

Of which, given to Mr. *Cotton* who waited at the *Altar* by me 5 s. for the rest I am answerable.

R. Winton.

When

When all the *Knights-Companions* have Offered, and are returned to their Stalls, then doth the *Chancellor* of the *Order* make his Reverences; and after him the *Register*, *Garter*, and *Black Rod*, theirs together, and take their Seats.

Upon this the afore-mentioned *Grooms*, and *Page* of the removing *Wardrobe*, roll up the long *Carpet* (spread for the *Knights* to kneel on) close to the fore-side of the *Altar*; which done, the *Provincial Kings*, *Heralds*, and *Pursuivants* next, and last of all the *Alms-Knights*, make their Reverences, and pass down into the *Choir*, and take their stands before the Stalls, where they remain until the *Prelate* hath finished the *Second Service*: and then the *Prelate*, conducted by the *Serjeant of the Vestry*, comes down from the *Altar*, with his accustomed Reverences to his Seat. After whom, the two *Prebends* are brought down by the *Verge* of the *Chappel*, who make a Reverence towards the *Altar* before they descend, next a double Reverence below the first *Haut Pas*; and lastly another towards the lower end of the *Choir*, and so take their Seats.

SECT. VI.

The Return to the Presence.

Immediately after, all prepare to pass out of the *Choir*, and to proceed back to the *Presence-Chamber*, which is done in every point and circumstance, as is set down to have been observed, in the *Sovereigns* return from the first *Vespers*.

That is to say,

The *Alms-Knights* ascend to the Rails before the *Altar*, and divide themselves on either side.

The *Pursuivants*, *Heralds*, and *Provincial Kings* pass up to their usual station, on the *Haut Pas*'s before the *Altar*, and there divide themselves likewise.

Then *Garter* summons down the *Knights-Companions*, who orderly descend into the *Choir*.

Next, the *Officers* of the *Order* stand up before their Forms.

All this being done,

The *Alms-Knights* descend, and pass out of the *Choir*.

The *Prebends* follow.

Next, the *Officers* of *Arms*.

Then the *Knights-Companions*.

After them the *Black Rod*, *Garter*, and *Register*.

Next, the *Chancellor* and *Prelate*.

Then the *Sword*; and lastly

The *Sovereign* himself, being attended, as when he entered the *Choir*; at the *Choir* door he is received under the *Canopy*, by the *Gentlemen* that bear it, and from whence the *Band of Pensioners* follow his person.

The *Proceeding* passeth on through the *South door* of the *Chappel*, and here, the *Trumpets* are taken in, and placed before the *Alms-Knights*, who sound all the way up, till they arrive at the stairs foot, going up to the *Guard-Chamber*: and as soon as they cease, the *Drums* and *Fifes* begin to beat and play.

Thence the *Proceeding* passeth into the *Presence-Chamber*, whither it first ought to go, before the *Sovereign* pass into the *Great Hall* to *Dinner*, and being there arrived, the *Knights-Companions* take their stands as usually, and after the *Sovereign's* salutation and their Reverences, the *Sovereign* retires into the *Privy-Chamber* for a little while, and the *Knights* likewise retire themselves, till notice be given that *Dinner* is ready.

When the *Feast* was heretofore held at *Whitehall*, the return of the *Sovereign* (or his *Lieutenant*) and *Knights-Companions*, from the ¹second Morning Service

on the *Feast day*, was through the great *Hall* and *Guard-Chamber* into the *Presence*, and thence they retired into the *Privy Lodgings* till *Dinner* was ready. But since the *Grand Dinner* hath been prepared in the *Banqueting house* there, the *Proceeding* hath passed from the *Chappel*, through the said great *Hall*, over the *Terrace* (while it stood) and since, from the *Chappel*, up the *Stairs* into the *Guard-Chamber*, down into the *Great Court*, and so through the covered *Walk* into the said *Room*; where being entred, and the *Sovereign* arrived neer the *State* (after *Salutation* and *Reverences* made, as usually done in the *Presence-Chamber*) the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* retired till *Dinner* was ready; and hereupon in this *Room* now, as formerly in the *Presence*, doth the *Proceeding* from the *Chappel* take its termination.

S E C T. VII.

Of the Dinner on the Feast Day.

THE *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* having for a while retired, after their return from *Morning Service* on the *Feast day*, they make ready to go into *St. George's Hall* to *Dinner*; where all things are prepared against their coming. But more particularly, the *Sovereign's Proceeding* to the *Hall* is, when he hath notice given him, that the ^a first *Mess* is set upon his *Table*: the *Dishes* being brought up in the following order; *Wind Instruments*, from the *Gallery* at the lower end of the *Hall* (where the rest of the *Sovereign's Musick* is placed) founding all the while.

^a Coll. H. W. le
N. Cl. MS. pen-
cund. W. le N.
f. 12. v. 8. r.
by MS. penes
G. O. T. p. 113.

4 *Serjeants* at *Arms*, two and two.
Controller. *Treasurer.*

Sewer.

The *Messes* carried up by the *Pensioners*.

Master of the Household. *Cofferer.*

A *Clerk Controller.* A *Clerk Controller.*

Second *Clerk* of the *Kitchin.* Chief *Clerk* of the *Kitchin.*

But in the *Plate* representing the *Sovereign's* sitting at *Dinner*, the *Serjeants* at *Arms*, and *Clerks* that usually follow the *Messes*, are omitted, for want of room.

This *Dinner* hath several Names given to it in the *Registers* of the *Order*, all describing and setting forth its magnificence, as ^b *Mensa splendida*, ^c *Regium Epulum*, ^d *Epulum solenne*, and the like: and for the *Provisions* made for it, they are said to be ^e most costly and delicate, ^f compleatly royal, and set forth with all befitting state and grandeur.

Upon the foresaid notice, the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* come forth of the *Privy-Lodgings* into the *Presence-Chamber*, with the *Officers* of the *Order* before him, and passeth to the ^g middle of the *State*; where turning about, he makes a stand, while the *Knights* place themselves on either side, in their ^h usual order, the *Officers* of the *Order* ⁱ retiring a little on the one side and on the other. And as soon as the *Knights-Companions* have put themselves into rank and order, they make their ^k *Reverences* to the *Sovereign*, according to the usual manner, who thereupon re-salutes them, as is accustomed.

It seems, the *Prebends* of the *Colledge* had, in *King Henry* the Eighth's Reign, discontinued the duty of their attendance on the *Sovereign*, as well at the *Grand Dinner*, as at other the *Servises* of the day, which caused an *Order* to pass for the performance of their accustomed servises, particularly at such times; for

at

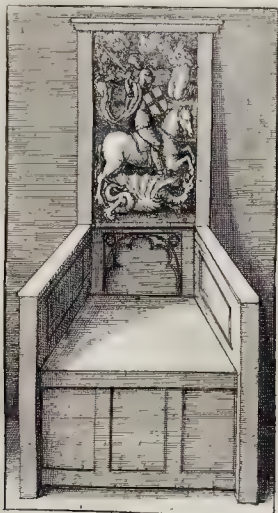
^b Zinn. p. 155.
^c Lib. Cp. 108.
^d Ibid. p. 104.
^e Ibid. p. 104.
^f Lib. R. p. 108.
^g S.
^h Coll. H. W.
ⁱ le N. Cl.
^k C.

at a Chapter holden at Windsor, the 12. day of May, the 24. year of the said King, it was Ordained by the Earl of Arundel, then being the Kings Lieutenant, with the assent and advice of the Knights of the Order there present; ¹ That the Canons of the Colledge of saint George, being present at the Feast, should have their Mantles according to the Statutes of the Order, and give their attendance the day of the Feast, aswell at Dinner and Grace, as at other the Divine Service, and as of old time hath been accustomed, in avoiding the displeasures of, &c.

Immediately after the Knights-Companions have made their Reverences, the Alms-Knights, Prebends, and Officers of Arms pass on before the Knights-Companions, through the Guard-Chamber into St. George's Hall, the Officers of the Order following; after whom comes the Sovereign, having his Train carried up as at other times. And being entred a little way therein, the Alms-Knights first, next the Prebends, and then the Officers of Arms, fall off one after another, on the side opposite to the Knights-Companions Table, Clarenceux neereft to the State.

Then the two junior Knights pass a little above Clarenceux, and there facing their Table make a stand, and the rest of the Knights-Companions coming up after, do in like manner make a stand, according to their seniority, the senior neereft the State; through which Lane, the Officers of the Order proceed, conducting the Sovereign till he draws neer to the State, and then do the said Officers retire, as did the former part of the Proceeding on the side opposite to the Table; the Sovereign in the mean time passeth on to the State, and there turning himself about, receiveth the Reverences of the Knights-Companions, and re-salutes them as usually.

After this the Sovereign, yet standing directly before the State, hath Water brought him up with three Reverences, by the Noblemen assigned to that service: the Lord Chamberlain, if he be not a Knight of the Order, otherwise the Vice-Chamberlain, going before them; for so did the Earl of St. Albans at the Grand Feast, an. 23. Car. 2. so also did Sir George Carteret an. 19. Car. 2. But an. 3. H. 7. some of the Knights-Companions served the Sovereign with Water. And to be more particular in the Ceremony of the Sovereign's washing, it is noted an. 2. Eliz. that the Earl of Arundel held the Towel, the Earl of Pembroke the Water, the Earl of Derby, and Marquess of Winchester Assistants, the Bason, and the Earl of Derby gave the Sovereign the Assay of it. Again an. 7. of the same Queen, the Duke of Norfolk held the Towel, the Earl of Derby received it, the Earl of Suffolk brought the Water, and the Earls of Northumberland and Shrewsbury Assisted; all these being Knights of the Order.



In like manner also, is the Sovereign's Lieutenant served with Water before Dinner (but not by any of the Nobility) of which there are many Examples: among the rest, that an. 3. Eliz. when Sir Tho. Berenger gave him the Water kneeling, and Sir Radcliff the Towel; as also an. 7. Eliz. when Sir Nicholas Poynes brought him the Towel, and Sir Tho. Berenger the Water.

When the Sovereign hath washed, the Pre-late of the Order says Grace, being assisted with some of the Sovereign's Chaplains; an. 7. Eliz. the Register of the Order assisted him, and an. 9. Eliz. the Bishop of Rochester, then the Sovereign's Almoner.

Grace being said, the Sovereign sits down in his Chair, placed in the middle of his Table under the State; for there is the most honorable Seat, and the place where the State is held: And here we have occasion to offer to the Readers view, a draught of the old Wooden Chair, said to be the Founders, yet remaining

1 Ex Lib. M.
m 17 f. 25. b.
in Offic. Arm.

n Colled. H. W.
o le N. Cl.
p

q MS. penes
Arch. Com. An-
glesey, fol. 167.
r Colled. H. W. le
N. Cl.

s MS. penes
W. D. N. fol.
20. b.

t Ibid. fol. 5.

u Et fol. 20.

w Colled. H. W. le
N. Cl.

x MS. pen. W.
D. N. fol. 20. b.
y Ibid. f. 27. b.

remaining in St. George's Hall at Windsor, in which the *Sovereigns* heretofore sat at Dinner.

Most usually the *Sovereign* sat alone, though sometimes heretofore, he hath been pleased to admit some of the *Knights-Companions* to sit at his Table with him: For instance in a few, *Sigismund* the Emperor, when he received a Personal Installation at Windsor, at the *Grand Feast* held there an. 4. H. 5. it is remembered, that the *Sovereign* out of great civility offered the chief place at the Table to him (which hitherto the King, as *Sovereign*, had retained in the *Chappel*, and in all the Proceedings) which whether the Emperor accepted of it or not, is not clear enough expressed in the *Black Book*, but we have met with an ancient memorial which is more particular, and saith, that at Dinner the Emperor kept the State, that is, sat in the middle, and another that saith the King sat on the Emperors right side, and the Duke of Bedford, the Lord Chancellor, the Bishop of *Duresme* on the Emperors left hand; the Duke of *Briga*, and another Duke of the Emperors Train, sat both on the *Sovereign's* side, and all of them on one side of the Table.

Moreover an. 11. E. 4. (the *Sovereign* then keeping the *Feast* at Windsor) the *Prelate* of the Order sat on his right hand, and the Duke of Gloucester and Earl of Essex on his left. So an. 3. H. 7. the *Prelate* sat alone on the *Sovereign's* right hand, at the end of the Table. And in the 24. year of the same King (who then celebrated the *Feast* at Greenwich) there sat with him at the Boards end the Dukes of Norfolk and Suffolk, the Marquess of Exceter, and the Lord Stephen Gardiner *Prelate* of the Garter.

It is also noted, that at the *Feast* held at Windsor an. 11. H. 8. only the Lord Richard Fox then *Prelate*, sat on the right hand of the *Sovereign*, neer to the Boards end, being served with his *Carver*, *Sewer*, and *Cupbearer*, *Mess*, *Course*, and *Service*, as the *Sovereign* had. In which place sat also the Bishop of Winchester, an. 1. & 2. Ph. & Mar. And an. 22. H. 8. four of the greatest States (being *Knights-Companions*) sat at the *Sovereign's* Table, and the residue of the *Knights* at their own.

An. 2. Eliz. the *Sovereign* admitted the Earls of Arundel and Derby, together with the Marquess of Winchester, to her Table, who sat at the end thereof on the left hand; and the following year the Duke of Norfolk, the Marquess of Northampton, and Earl of Arundel, sat also at the Tables end. So an. 7. Eliz. the Duke of Norfolk, and Marquess of Winchester; and an. 9. the Earls of Arundel and Pembroke, whilst the other *Knights-Companions* sat at their own Table.

But this favour and honor was not afforded to any of the *Knights-Companions*, since her Reign, no, not at the Installation of the present *Sovereign*, though a Ceremony carried on with designed indulgence and honor; but we find him then placed at the same Mess with the senior *Knight*, at the upper end of the *Knights-Companions* Table.

As soon as the *Sovereign* is sat down, the *Knights-Companions* put on their Caps, and remaining so covered, forthwith retire against the Tables prepared for them; where standing a while, Water is brought to them, and they also wash; there being to each pair a *Basin* and *Ewer*, and a *Towel* allowed, which are brought in by *Gentlemen* of quality; and having washed, they all sit down.

The order of passing to their Seats at the Table an. 19. Car. 2. was on this manner (and appointed so to be observed for the future) first his Highness the Duke of York entered within the Rails at the upper end of the Table, and so passed down the hither side, to the lower end, and thence up along the Bench side to his place; in like manner followed all the other *Knights*, according to the seniority of their Stalls; for it is ordained, that they shall sit in that order, not according to their Estates or Degrees (except the Sons or Brethren of Stranger Kings, Princes, and Dukes, who shall keep their places or rooms after their Estates) and all on the right hand or further side of their Tables (not one over against another) two and two at a Table, to one Mess. But those whose *Companions* are wanting sit alone, and have a whole Mess allowed to each of them.

Their

Lib. N. p. 57.

Page. 57.

d MS. in Offic. Arm. [F. 9. Inveniens]

fol. 12. b.

e MS. in Bibl. Corr. sub effig. Vitell. A. 16.

sub an. 4. H. 5.

f Collect.

g Thos. Rowe nuper Canc.

h MS. in Offic. Arm. [V. 15.]

fol. 12. b.

i Lib. N. p. 166.

j MS. in Offic. Arm. [M. 17.]

fol. 35. b.

k Exe d. MS. fol. 27. b.

l MS.

m MS. p. 15.

n Ibid. fol. 32. b.

o Ibid. fol. 27. b.

p Ibid. fol. 27. b.

q Palmer's large Journ. pag. 14.

r Collect. W. fol. 12. b.

s MS. pen. W.D. N fol 20. & MS pen. G. J. J. pag. 143.

t MS. pen. W.D. N fol 20. & MS pen. G. J. J. pag. 143.

u Hen. 8. Stat. Art. 11.

w Lib. N. pag. 166. Hen 8. Stat. Art. 11.

x MS. p. 15.

Their meat is usually brought up by the *Yeomen* of the ** Guard*, and are attended by some of the *Gentlemen Pensioners*, and others of the *Sovereign's* Servants; two to each Table.

And now to descend to the *Officers* of the *Order*, who though they sit not at this day in the great *Hall* at *Dinner*, yet anciently it appears, they had a Table allowed them there. For first the ** Black Book* rendring an account of the magnificent *Feast* of *St. George*, held at *Windefor* an. ^b 3. H. 7. and having spoken somewhat of the *Sovereign's* splendid and sumptuous Table, as also of that, of the *Knights-Companions*, placed on the right side of the *Hall*, it tells us, that a ^c little beneath the said *Knights-Companions*, there sat on both sides the Table, the ^d *Dean*, the *Register* of the *Order*, the *Prebends*, the *Choire* and *Alms-Knights*.

The said *Register* informs us further, that at the Table set in the ^e middle of the *Hall*, sat the Lord *Botbottle* Ambassador from the King of *Scots*, the Lords *Edmond* of *Suffolk*, *Grey*, *Morley*, *Latimer*, *La Ware*, and *Barnesi*; a little beneath whom sat the *Choire* of the *Sovereign's* *Chappel*.

At another Table, on the ^f left hand side of the *Hall*, sat the President *Kussenburg*, with the Ambassadors of the King of the *Romans*, and the *Duke* his Son; over against whom on the other side sat the Lord *Malpart*, Ambassador from the *Duke* of *Britagne*, the Lord *Houfey* and others, ** Knights*, *Esquires*, and *Officers* which had given their attendance at the *high Mass*.

Moreover at the *Feast* holden at *Windefor*, ^g an. 11 H. 8. we meet with an account of several other Tables set in *St. Georges Hall*, beside those of the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions*. For on the ^h Southside, opposite to the *Knights-Companions* Table, was a Table placed for the Lord *Steward*, at which then sat certain *French Gentlemen*, being *Hoflages* of *France*, accompanied with *Earls* and *Lords*, and none at that Board under the Degree of a *Lord*. At ⁱ the second Table of the said Southside, sat the *Dean* of *Windefor*, *Doctor Vesey* *Register* of the *Order*, the *Abbots* of *Towerhill* and *Medemenham* (who that Morning read the *Epistle* and *Gospel*) and the *Choire* or *Chappel*. And at the ^k West end of the same Table (which was all joined together as far as to the *Choire*) sat the other *Officers* of the *Order*, as ^l *Register*, *Garter*, and *Usher* of the *Black Rod*, accompanied with the *Legats* Brother, and four other *Strangers*, and beneath the *Strangers* sat divers *Knights*, next to them sat the ^m *Officers* of *Arms*, then several other *Gentlemen* filled up the Table, unto the *Chappel* adjoining to the *Hall*; the residue of *Officers* sat in the ⁿ *Chappel* at divers Tables.

In the eighth year of King *Charles* the First, the *Dinner* being then prepared in the *Banqueting-House* at *Whitehall*, we find a particular mention of a Table for the *Officers* of the *Order*, and in what part of the Room it was then set, namely on the ^o right hand side of the *Banqueting-house*, over against the Table of the *Knights-Companions*: who all sat after the manner of the *Knights-Companions* on the further side of the Table; having their Meat brought and served up to them by the *Yeomen* of the *Guard*, and some of the *Sovereigns* Servants. And at the *Sovereigns* command, signified by the *Treasurer* of the *Houfhold*, they sat covered all *Dinner* while, the *Prelate* and *Register* in their four corner Caps, and the other three in their Hats. So also at the next Great *Feast* viz. an. ^p 9 Car. 1. at *Windefor*, these *Officers* (Dining in the Great *Hall*) sat covered, but not till such time as the *Sovereign* (by the *Treasurer* of the *Houfhold*) had given command for it.

And though it was by the *Sovereigns* command that they sat covered at this time also, yet the following Afternoon it was moved against in *Chapter*, as a thing unfit to be permitted; || because some of the grand *Nobility* always served the *Sovereign* at this *Feast* uncovered, and therefore not fitting that the *Officers* (being all of far lower Degree excepting the *Prelate*) should sit with their Hats on. Whereupon it was Ordered, ^q That it should be referred to the further consideration of the *Knights-Commissioners*.

Afterwards we find it was Ordered in *Chapter* on the Eve of the *Feast*, an. 10 Car. 1. ^r That these *Officers* should be at their choice, either to keep the *Feast* privately by themselves, or sit uncovered where the *Sovereign* Dined. They thereupon

^x *Collec. W.*
^y *le N. Cl.*

^{3.} *Officers* of the *Order* had a Table in the great *Hall*.
^a *Lib. N. p.*
^b 166.

^c *Lib. N. p.*
^d 67.
^e 67.

^{*} *MS. p. nes*
Arth. Com Anglesey, f. 167. a.

^g *MS. in Offic. Armor.*
^h *M. 17.*
ⁱ fol. 28.

^o *Lib. R. p. 78.*

^{*} *Ibid. p. 85.*

^{||} *Ibid. pag. 98.*

^p *Lib. R. p. 88.*

^q *Ibid. pag. 94.*

upon thence forward, forbore sitting in the *Hall*, or where else the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* sat; and at the *Grand Feasts*, celebrated at *Windsor*, since the present *Sovereigns* Happy Return, they had their *Messes* served up into the *Chappel*, at the end of *St. Georges Hall*, and there Dined.

By what is before spoken, touching the order of sitting at *Dinner*, *an. 11. H. 8.* it appears, that the *Officers of Arms* did then also sit at a *Table* in *St. Georges Hall*, which joined to that, where the *Officers of the Order* also sat. And among the memorials of the *Feast* held *an. 19 Eliz.* it is noted that on the *Eve* thereof, the *Heralds* had at *supper*, their allowance as accustomed, *viz. 16 Dishes* of *Meat* at the first course, and 8. at the second.

r MS. pen. pre-
fat. G. O. T.
pag. 113.

f Collet. W.
le N. Cl.

A little before the *Sovereigns* second course is sent for, all the *prests* of *People* (which throng towards the *Knights-Companions* *Tables*, out of curiosity to behold them sitting at *Dinner* and observe their *Services*) are to be removed away towards the side *Tables*; whereby a place may be left spacious enough, for the *Sovereign* to take all the *Knights-Companions* in view; which being done, the *Sovereign* stands up and drinks to them (and so is it remembred to be done by *King Philip* and *Queen Mary*) they standing all the while uncovered, and which they do altogether, till they have pledged him.

u MS pag. 13.

The manner
of proclaiming
the *Sovereigns*
Style
w Collet. W.
x le N. Cl.

And immediately before the said course is brought in, the *Prests* is again removed, from the *Knights-Companions* *Table*, to make another spacious lane from the lower end of the *Hall* up to the *State*. At which lower end the *Officers of Arms* assemble, and there make themselves ready to proceed up in the following Order.

Garter,
Clarenceux and Norroy.
Heralds, two and two.
Pursuivants, two and two.

a Ibid.
b Ibid.
c Ibid.

Having put themselves in the foresaid Order, they altogether make their Reverence to the *Sovereign*, and proceed near the side of the *Knights-Companions* *Table*, until they come to the middle of the *Hall*, where after another Reverence made, they go still forward, and when *Garter* hath passed about two yards beyond the *Knights* *Table*, and come near the *Haut Pas* ascending the *Sovereigns* *State*, they jointly make the like Reverence again.

d Collet. W. le
N. Cl. & MS.
f. l. pen. G. O. T.
pag. 114
e Lib. C. p 193.
f Lib. R. p 85.
g Ibid pag. 74.

Then *Garter* with a loud and audible voice, cries *Largess* thrice, (though anciently but twice.)

Upon *Garters* beginning to cry *Largess*, all the *Knights-Companions* (except *Kings* and *Great Princes*, if any be present) stand up uncovered (so did the *Officers of the Order* when they Dined in the *Hall*) until he hath made an end. Which Custom it seems had been, *an. 7 Car. 1.* for some years discontinued. Then *Garter* proceeds, and proclaims the *Sovereigns* *Stiles* and *Titles of Honor*; first in *Latin*, as followeth.

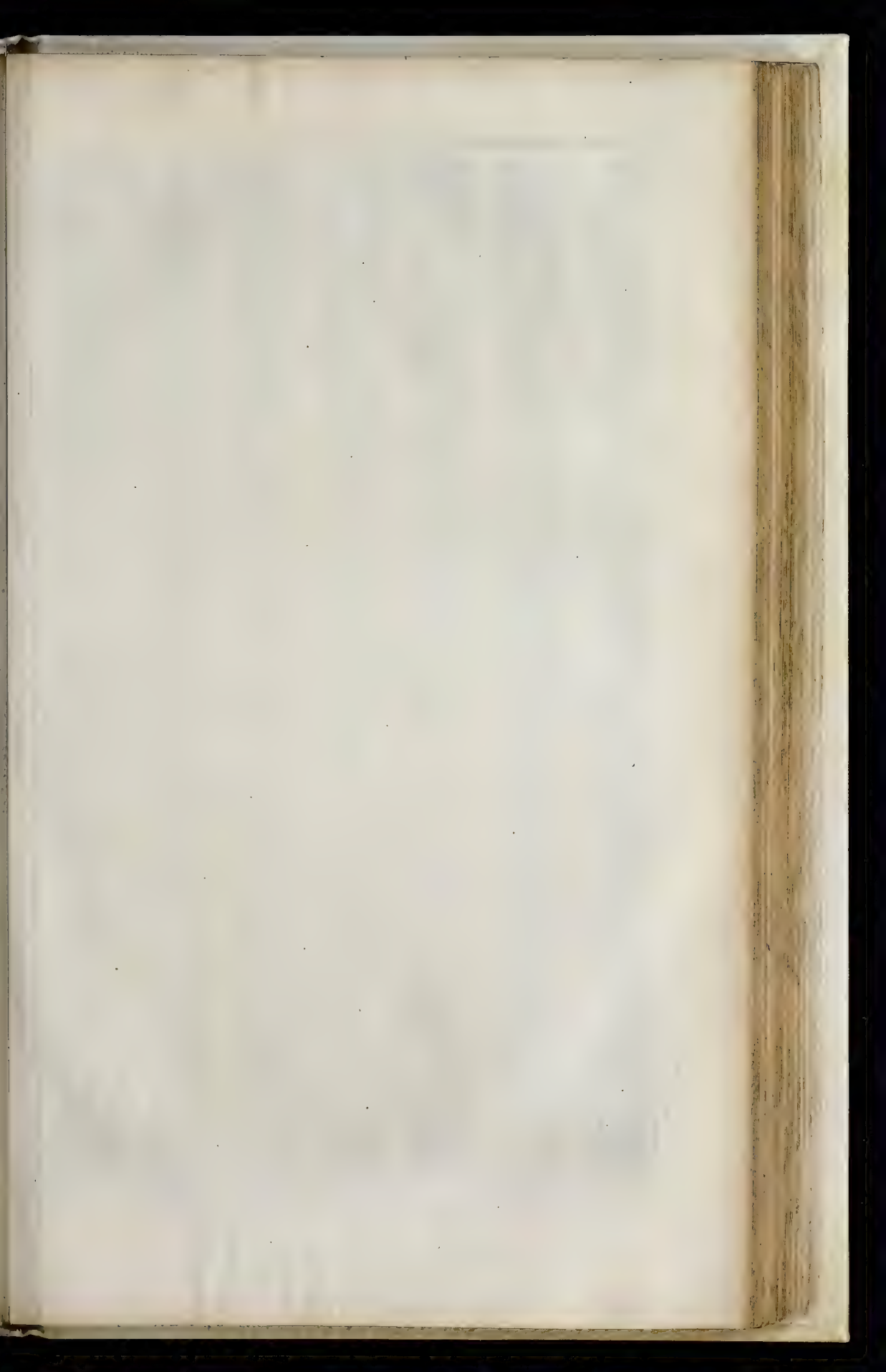
h First Intro-
duced at the
Feast, an. 19.
Car. 2. the
word *Princi-
pis* being used
before.

Serenissimi, Excellentissimi, & Potentissimi *Monarchæ Caroli Secundi*
Dei Gratia Magnæ Britanniæ, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ Regis, Fidei Defensoris,
& *Supremi Nobilissimi Ordinis Garterii.*

Which done, He and all the *Officers of Arms*, make another Reverence, and *Garter* Proclaims the *Sovereigns* *Stile* in *French*.

Du Tresbault, Tres-excellent & Tres-puissant Monarque Charles le Second
par le Grace de Dieu, Roy de la Grande Britaigne, France, & d'Irlande,
Defenseur de la Foy, & Sovereign du Tres-noble Ordre de la Iartiere.

Then *Garter* and the rest of his *Fellows*, make another Reverence, and lastly he Proclaims the *Sovereign* *Stiles* in *English*.





1. The Sovereign sitting at dinner
2. Knights sitting at dinner
3. Attendants
4. Court Cub
7. Treasurer of the Household.
8. Controller of the Household.
9. Sewer.
10. Pensioners, car

the inside of
S HALL.



that serve the knights tables
the second course

11 Cofferer 12 Master of the Household,

13 Officers of Armes 14 Women of the Guard



Of the most High, most Excellent, and most mighty Monarch Charles the Second, by the Grace of God King of Great Britain, France, and Ireland, Defendor of the faith, and Sovereign of the most Noble Order of the Garter.

At the end of which (but not before) Garter and the rest join together, in crying *Largeſs* thrice, and then they all make Reverence together.

Hereupon, sometimes the *Treasurer* of the *Household* puts the *Sovereign's Largeſs*, (which is 10*l.* in Gold) into Garter's Hat; and this is afterwards divided among the *Officers of Arms*, according to Custom. But *an. 23. Car. 2.* the Lord *Chamberlain* sent his *Warrant* to Sir *Edward Griffin* Knight, *Treasurer* of the *Sovereign's Chamber*, to deliver this *Largeſs Money* to the *Black Rod*, and he put it into Garter's Hat, so soon as the last *Largeſs* was cryed.

The proclaiming the *stile* being finished, all the *Officers of Arms* retire about $\frac{1}{2}$ 3 yards backward, keeping their Faces towards the *Sovereign*, and there make another Reverence, and then retyring yet backward, about the same distance, they jointly make another Reverence, after which they retire out of the *Hall* and go to *Dinner*.

This Ceremony ended, the *Sovereign's* second Course is brought up, in the following order, first the *Serjeants at Arms*, next the *Treasurer* and *Comptroller* of the *Sovereign's Household*, next the *Sewer*, then the *Gentlemen Pensioners* bearing the *Messes*, then the *Cofferer* and *Master* of the *Household*, the two *Clerks* of the *Green cloth*, the two *Clerks* *Controllers*, and lastly the two *Clerks* of the *Kitchen* following all in the rear, habited in their Gowns, and holding their Caps in their hands; and after the *Sovereign's* Table is compleatly furnished, then is the second Course served up to the *Knights-Companions* Tables, by the *Teomen* of the *Guard*, in such order as was the first.

The order of the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* sitting at *Dinner* on the *Grand Feast* day, *an. 15. Car. 2.* The order in proclaiming the *stile*, and bringing up the second Course, with an exact prospect of the inside of *St. George's Hall* at *Windeſor*, we have here drawn together for the *Readers* better view.

But where any *Knight-Companion* happens to be Installed at this *Grand Feast*, and is present at *Dinner*, then Garter, and the *Officers of Arms*, proceed in order (after they have proclaimed the *Sovereign's stile* as before) from the lower end of the *Hall*, till they come before the new installed *Knights Meſs*, and there he crys *Largeſs* once, and proclaims his *stile* in *English* only, after which they retire backward, and go to *Dinner*. Concerning which, we had a full and remarkable instance in the 13. year of the present *Sovereign*, when the Duke of *York* and other *Knights* were Installed: For after Garter had proclaimed the *Sovereign's stile*, and he, together with the *Officers of Arms*, had retired to the lower end of the *Hall*, they all proceeded again, as at proclaiming the *Sovereign's stile*, to the upper end of the *Knights-Companions* Table, where his Highness the Duke sat, and there Garter cryed *Largeſs* twice, and proclaimed his *stile* in *English*; then after a joint Reverence made, Garter and the *Heralds* now joining with him cryed *Largeſs* twice. This done, they went backward, as before, to the next senior Installed *Knight*, and proclaimed his *stile*, and cryed *Largeſs* but once, the like to all the rest installed at that *Festival*, and so they departed out of the *Hall* to *Dinner*.

It seems to have anciently been the custom of other great Feasts, besides this of *St. George*, at the second Course, when the *Sovereign's* *stile* was to be proclaimed, for Garter and the *Officers of Arms*, to proceed in order up to the *Kings* Table, and there to cry *Largeſs*, and upon the receipt of the *Kings Largeſs* (in the name of all the *Officers of Arms*) first to make some short *Oration* to the King, and then to proclaim his *stile*; for so *an. 20. H. 7.* when the King kept his *Easter* in great State at *Greenwich*, have we met with the following Speech (among some Collections of Sir *Thomas Wryothelſey* then Garter) made to the King in humble thankfulness, for the *Largeſs* at that time bestowed upon the *Officers of Arms*.

E e e

Most

*i Book intituled
St. George's
Feast, in the
Lord Chamber-
lain's Office.
k Collect. W. 16
N. 61.*

*2 MS. intituled,
King Hen. 7.
Proceedings
pen. eund. W. 16
New.*

Prov. 16.

Most high mighty and excellent Prince, most victorious and Christian King and also our most drede Sovereaine and naturell Lord, by whom, through Gods provision, vertue ys greatly increased and vice oppressed, juxta illud sapientis abhominabiles Regi agunt Impii qui Justitia formatur solium, the which to your Highnesse is, viz. Incressing of vertue and honor perpetual, and to your subjeſts continuall Welth teste Salustio, quia diviciarum & forme gloria fluxa atq; fragilis est virtus clara perpetuaq; habetur and as concerning us your Officers of Armes, and servants of honour and of Noblesse, in as moche as in us ys, we humbly thanke your good grace of the grete and abundant Largess geven unto us, in the honour of God and of his most gloriouse Resurreccion: and for as moche as wee suffice not to geve graces condigne unto your Highnesse, Nam quod prestare tanto, &c. Wee meekly beseech almighty God long to preserve maintaine and encrease your most noble and royall Estate, which ys the singular Welthe and comfort of this your realme, and of all your trewe subjeſts; and to send you the perfect knowledge and victory over all your enemyes.

Nor was it unusual for Poets, in former times, to present the Sovereign with the issue of their Fancies, having a subject so noble as this of the Grand Feast; among whom, the following Verses were presented to King Henry the Seventh, at the Feast of St. George celebrated at Windsor in the 3. year of his Reign, probably by Mr. John Skelton (after made Poet Laureat) who about that time began to be of some esteem.

* MS. penes
Arth. Com. Ang-
lesey, fol. 169.

O most famous Noble King! thy Fame both spring and spreade,
Henry the Seventh our Soverain in eiche Regeon,
All England hath cause thy grace to love and dread,
Seeing Embassadors seeke for thy protection,
For Ayde, helpe, and succore, which lyeth in thie Electyon.
England now Rejoyce for joyous mayest thou be,
To see thy Kyng so florishing in dignitee.

This Realme a Seasone Noode in greate Iopardie,
When that Noble Prince deceased King Edward;
Which in his Dayes gate honore full nobly,
After his veresse nyghe hand all was marr'd,
Eich Region this Land dispised mischefe when they hard;
Wherefore Rejoyce for joyous mayest thou be,
To see thy Kyng so florishing in high dignitee.

Fraunce, Spayne, Scoteland, and Britanny, Flanders also,
Three of them present keepinge thy Noble Feast,
Of St. George in Windsor, Ambassadors comping more;
Febe of them in honore bothe the more and the lesse,
Seeking thie grace to have thie Noble begelle;
Wherefore now Rejoice and joyous maist thou be,
To see thy Kyng so florishing in dignitee.

O knightly Ordere clothed in Robes with Gartere,
The Queen's grace and thy Sother clothed in the same;
The Nobles of thie Realme Riche in arape, Aftere
Lords, Knights and Ladys, unto thy greate fame,
Now shall all Embassadors know thie Noble Name,
By thy Feast Royal: nowe joyous mayest thou be,
To see thie King so florishing in dignitee.

Here this day St. George Patron of this Place
Honored with the Gartere, cheefe of Chebalrye,
Chaplenes synging procession keeping the same,
With Archbushopes and Bishopes beseeue nobly,

Duch

Such people presente to see the King Henrye;
Wherefore now St. George all we pray to thee,
To keepe our Soberaine in his dignetie.

At the *Grand Feast* held at *Windefor*, ^a *an. 4. Car. 1.* the *Queen* (her *Ladies* attending) was conducted into *St. George's Hall*, a ^b little before the *Sovereign's Stiles* were proclaimed, to see the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* sit at *Dinner*. ^a MS. pence
^b Ed. Fau-
cond. gen.

At the *Feast* there celebrated by the present *Sovereign*, in the 15. year of his Reign, the *Sovereign's Stiles* were not proclaimed (as many times heretofore) until the second *Course* was set upon the Table, but it was by the *Sovereign's* special direction, because he expected the *Queens* coming into the Hall, to see the state and glory of the *Feast*; who staying something long, and the second *Course* being already brought to the lower end of the Hall, and the *Sovereign* seeing it stand there, gave command it should be set upon the Table, but that the proclaiming of his *Stiles* should be yet forborn. Immediately after, the *Queen* attended with her *Ladies*, entred *St. George's Hall*, and passing up the middle, came to the *Sovereign's* Table, where she was seated on his right hand. Hereupon *Garter*, accompanied by his Fellow Officers of Arms, proceeded up the Hall, and with usual Ceremonies proclaimed the *Sovereign's Stiles*, in *Latine*, *French*, and *English*. The Queen's coming into the Hall, to observe the Order of the Feast.

In like manner, when the Duke of York was Installed at the *Grand Feast*, *an. 13. Car. 2.* his *Dutchess*, desirous to see the order and grandeur of it, was brought into the Hall, as soon as the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* were set, and passing to the upper end of the Table, where the Duke sat, she stood on his left hand all Dinner while.

And it appears to be no new thing, that the *Queens* of England, have been desirous to behold the magnificence of this solemn *Feast*; since we also find it recorded *an. 11. H. 8.* that a little while before the second *Course* was carried in, *Queen Katherine* and her *Ladies* came to the ^d Gallery, at the end of the Hall (which was nobly prepared for her) to see the honorable Services and Ceremonies there performed. ^c MS. in Of-
d. sic. Armor.
[M. 17.] f. 28.

But besides the *Queens* of England, the *Ambassadors* of Foreign *Kings* and *States* have counted it an honor, to have view of this *Grand Feast*; and amongst others, we find the ^e French Ambassador was *an. 15. Jac. R.* conducted into the Banqueting-house at *Whitehall*, by Sir John Fenet (then Assistant Master of the Ceremonies) about the middle of *Dinner*, where he placed himself at the left hand of the *Sovereign*; and having staid there about an hour, he descended to the *Knights-Companions* Table, and there saluted the *Prince*, and the rest of the *Knights* of the Order, as he passed along before them, and so departed. ^e Sir John Fenet's Observ. touching foreign Ambassadors, p. 34.

At the *Grand Feast* kept at *Whitehall an. 19. Jac. R.* to the sight of which the ^f *Polonian* Ambassador *Osalinskic*, Count Palatine of *Sindomerskie*, having received an invitation, he went, about the middle of *Dinner*, to see and ^h salute the *Sovereign*, the *Prince*, and *Knights-Companions* as they sat at the Table; and thence retired into the *Council Chamber*, where he and the ⁱ Arch Dukes Agent, *Van Mab*, had been before treated. ^f Ex eod. lib.
^g Observ. p.
^h 179.

The next following year, on the ^k 22. of May, which was the day assigned for holding the *Grand Feast* at *Whitehall*, the *Prince* (being the *Sovereign's* Lieutenant) supplied his place in the Banqueting-house at the Table, whither ^l Don Carlos de Coloma the *Spanish* Ambassador, and ^m Philip a second Son to the *Lantgrave* of *Hesse* (sent hither on a negotiation of his Father) were conducted: the *Spanish* Ambassador ⁿ standing at his Highness right hand, and the young *Lantgrave* at his left, most part of the *Dinner*. ^k Ibid. pag.
106.
^m Pag. 102.
ⁿ Pag. 108.

An. 3. Car. 1. the ^o Ambassador of *Denmark*, *Paul Rosenkrantz*, and *Joachimi*, and *Monseur Catz*, the Ambassadors and Deputies of the *States*, were conducted altogether, in the ^p time of the second *Course*, to the *Sovereign's* Table, and there presented themselves, at that side next the *Sovereign's* left hand; and after, passed down along before the *Knights-Companions* (with their respects bestowed personally on each *Knight* as they deemed fitting) and then returned by the way they entred. ^o Pag. 107.
^p

98 *Ibid.*
12

But in this last instance, where there were more *Ambassadors* than one, and from several *Princes*, a Question arose, whether they were to perform this Ceremony of seeing the *Feast*, and presenting themselves at the *Dinner*, singly and alone, or jointly and together; inasmuch that the *Danish* Ambassador was of the mind to perform it by himself, which course was approved by the Lord Chamberlain: But the States Ambassador *Jouchimi*, telling him that he and the *French* Ambassador had been joint spectators, at a *Feast* two or three years before, at which time he was employed a Commissioner hither, the Ambassador of *Denmark* came in along with the others.

Lastly (for we would not be over tedious with Instances) when the *Grand Feast* was held at *Whitehall* an. 19. Car. 2. the *Swedish* Ambassador had not only a place assigned him in the *Choir*, at the North side of the Altar, to behold the Solemnities on the *Feast* day in the *Chappel*, and when the *Grand Procession* passed into the *Court*, he also went out at the little door on the North side of the *Chappel*, up to the *Greencloth Chamber*, whence he had a fair prospect of it, and thence returned to behold the Ceremonies of the *Offring*. But when the *Sovereign* was at *Dinner*, he entred the *Banqueting-house* from the *Privy Gallery*, and passing to the *Sovereign's* Table, stood there on the left hand of the *Queen*, thence he went to salute the *Knights-Companions* at their Table, beginning with his *Highness* the Duke of *Tork*; and at all these places was attended by Sir *Charles Cotterell* Master of the Ceremonies.

In the last place comes in the *Banquet*, brought up to the *Sovereign's* Table by the *Pensioners*, in the same order, and with the same Attendants as are the *Sovereign's* Messes; only, in the place of the *Clerk* of the *Kitchen*, the chief *Clerk* of the *Spicery* waits, but the *Banquet* for the *Knights-Companions*, is brought up by the *Teomen* of the *Guard*.

And now, that the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* have dined, the *Knights* first rise, and having washed, place themselves a little below the State, in their usual order, and there make their Reverences to the *Sovereign*; and hereof we find particular mention made an. 24. H. 8. in these words, 'The *Knights-Companions* sat upon their *Forms*, notwithstanding their *Boards* were taken up, and until the *Lords*, which at that *Feast* sat at the *Sovereign's* Table, were also taken up, and then they immediately arose, and went together, and made their obeysances to the *Sovereign*.

After this, the *Sovereign* hears *Grace*, said by the *Prelate*, then is "Water brought up with the usual Ceremony, and the *Sovereign* washeth.

This being done, the *Knights-Companions* making again due Reverence to the *Sovereign*, he puts off his Cap, and salutes them as usually, and forthwith proceeds back to the *Presence-Chamber*, with the *Knights* and *Officers* of the *Order* before him, and being arrived at the step before the State, he again saluteth the *Knights-Companions*; who having made their Reverences to him, he appoints the "Hour for their attendance again, to go to the second *Vespers*, and forthwith passeth thence into his *Privy Lodgings*, taking the *Officers* of the *Order* before him, and the " *Knights-Companions* following after; thus they all retire till the time appointed, to go to the second *Vespers*.

In like manner doth the *Sovereign's* *Lieutenant* proceed from the *Presence* to the *Hall*, or such other Room where the *Dinner* is prepared; only his place of Session at the Table, is a little on the left hand the Cloth of state, or at the "end of the Table; and after *Dinner* he returns to the *Presence*, in the same order as doth the *Sovereign*.

But what order was taken in King *Henry* the Eighth's Reign, for the entertainment of the *Sovereign's* Deputy at *Wyndesore*, during the continuance of the *Feast*, may be seen by these following directions, which, to this particular, are very observable.

* MS. penes
Rob. Com. Aylesbury.

* Memorandum. that the Saturday at Wyndesore, the Lords and Knights of the Garter keepe the Chamber, and in like tale the Sonday at Souper. First the President, at the Board hys messe allone.

Item

Item, the Lords or Knights at the said *Hordefende* 2 *Hesse* or 3: as the case requireth, *Waters* and *Apocras* the said *Nyghts*.

Item, the sayd *nyght* ther ys oon halle kept for the Lords *Servants*, and to *serbede* when the Lords be at *Souper*.

Item, the Sunday following, the President, with all the *Knyghts* of the *Garter*, doo *bryke* their *fests* with the *Dean* of *Wyndesor*, at *hys* *Colls*, except 2 or 3. *Chynes* of *Beif*, which be sende from the *Castle* thither.

Item, the sayd *Sunday*, when the President with the *knyghts* be at *nyght* messe, then there is a *spylle* halle kepte in the *Castle* for their *Servants* and othere.

Item, the sayd *Sunday* at *Dinner*, the President keepeth the *hall*, with the *Knyghts* at the *Boardsend* at *Dynner*; but the President *lyteth* not in the *Chere* of *Estate*, but by.

Item, the sayd *Sunday*, the *Deane* of the *Colledge* with those *Colledge*, *lytting* in thall at the *lattere* *dynere*, and no moze.

Item, the sayd day and *dynner*, the Lords and the *Deane* with the *Colledge*, the *Heralds* and the *Marshall* be *serbed* with *Waters* and *Apocras*.

Memorandum, that the President, and the *Knyghts* of the *Garter*, have both the *Saterday* at *nyght* and *Sunday*, *byde*.

Memorandum, that there be sent the *Monday* following to the *Colledge* for the *Knyghts* *bekesfests*. *Brede*, *Alc*, *Wyne*, a *certeyne*. 3. *Chynes* of *Beif*; a *Surlayne* of *Beif*. 4. *Capons* good, 18 *Rabbetts*, 18. *Pigions*, 18. *Chyk*. And other *suche*, as the *Stewarde* of the *Feaste* thinks best. And all the rest, to be at the charge of the *Deane*.

SECT. VIII.

The Ceremonies belonging to the second Vespers.

Since the Ceremonies relating to the second *vespers* at *Windefor*, are but the Repetition of those, which have been performed on the *Eve* of the *Feast*; we shall pass them over with more brevity, being very unwilling to cloy the *Reader* with needless recitals.

The time for *Proceeding* to the *Chapter-house*, hath most usually been about four a *Clock* in the *Afternoon* of *St. George's day*, but sometimes not before five; and so long did the services of the *Dinner* hold, when the *Feast* of *St. George* was celebrated at *Windefor*, the^a 14. of *September*, an. 15. *Jac. R.* that the *Knyghts-Companions* proceeded by^b *Torch* light to the *Chapter-house*.

The place from whence the *Proceeding* begins is (as at other times) the *Chamber* of *Presence*; in reference to which the *Sword* is there laid in readines, on the *Chair* under the *State*, and all other things put in order, as on the *Eve* of the *Feast*.

The *Persons* whereof the *Proceeding* is composed, the *manner* and *order* thereof, the publick *Processional way* to the *Chapter-house*, is the very same as on the *Eve*; and when the *Sovereign* and *Knyghts* did at any time proceed to the *Chapel* on *Horseback*, on the *Eve* and *Morning* of the *Feast day*, they have, in like manner, proceeded to the second *Vespers*.

It hath been customary, for the *Sovereign* and *Knyghts-Companions* to hold a *Chapter* before the second *Vespers*, and therein, for the most part, have been transacted all Affairs relating to this most Noble *Order*; as the making new *Constitutions*, regulating things amiss, reading *Petitions*, making *Orders* thereupon, determining *Controversies* and *Disputes* referring to the *Officers* of the *Order*, *Alms-Knyghts*, &c. and such like matters, either ordinary or extraordinary; for instance,

An. 28 H. 8. we find it recorded, that the *Sovereign* and *Knyghts-Companions* (having performed all the Ceremonies of the *Feast* (then held at *Greenwich*)

^a MS. penes
b E. W. G.
fol. 154. b.

^c MS. penes
Arch. Com. An-
glesey, fol. 157.
MS. in Offic.
Armour. M. 17.
b. & MS. pen.
W. D. N. fol.
16. b.

viz. on the *Eve*, *Matins*, and solemn *Offring* on the *Feast Day*, in the Morning) ^d at the second *Vespers*, before they entred the *Choir*, they went aside to the *Sovereigns Closet*, and there debated the ordinary affairs relating to the Order: but besides this Instance, many other are scattered up and down the *Registers*.

And frequently, both at *Whitehall* and *Greenwich*, (this *Feast* being there celebrated) hath this *Chapter* been held in the *Sovereigns Closet*, near the *Chappel*; from whence, at the breaking up thereof, the *Sovereign* hath now and then in *Person*, proceeded into the *Chappel*, to the second *Vespers*. But generally ^h remained in the *Closet*, during the celebration of those Divine Offices: and in such case, the ⁱ *Lieutenant* supplying the place of the *Sovereign*, hath proceeded from the *Closet*, through the *Hall* into the *Chappell*. Where note, that the ^k *Proceeding* from the *Presence* to the *Closet* before the *Sovereign*, and thence into the *Chappel* ^l before the *Sovereigns Lieutenant* (as also the returns thereof) are ordered in all points, as on the *Eve* of the *Feast*.

But, if the *Sovereign* do not proceed to the second *Vespers*, then is this *Chapter* held, in some convenient Room of the *Sovereigns Privy Lodgings*, before the *Proceeding* begin, for so it was *an.* ^m 6 *Eliz.* and *an.* ⁿ 13 *Car.* 1. when (at the hour of *Tierce*) many things were Decreed in a *Chapter* there celebrated.

As soon as the *Chapter* riseth, the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions*, proceed to the *West Door* of the *Choir*, where the *Alms-Knights* being arrived, first they, after them the whole *Proceeding* enters, in the usual order, and with the accustomed Reverences and Ceremonies; all placing themselves, as they arrive at the Stations and Seats formerly mentioned, and in that manner and Order, as they did at their Entry into the *Choir*, to the first *Vespers*.

Which Ceremony of the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* entrance and Session in their Stalls, being finished, the *Prelate* ascends to the *Altar* as before, and begins the *Divine Service*, during which, the *scruteny* for Election of *Knights* is most commonly taken; of which we have spoken at large in the *Chapter* of Elections.

When the second *Vespers* are finished, the *Proceeding* passeth out of the *Choir*, the *Knights-Companions* and the *Sovereign* following, and returns to the *Presence Chamber*, whence He and the *Knights-Companions* retire till *Supper* be ready; all things being done, as when they pass out of the *Choir*, and proceeded to the *Presence* at the finishing of the first *Vespers*.

But *an.* 15 *Car.* 1. it hapning to be late, ere the second *Vespers* were ended, the *Sovereign* went ^o not to the *Presence Chamber* from the *Chappel*, but marched directly to the great *Hall* to *Supper*, by *Torch light*.

When the *Feast* hath been kept at *Whitehall* or *Greenwich*, if the *Sovereign* went ^p into the *Chappel* to the second *Vespers*, the return of the *Proceeding* was immediately thence through the great *Hall*, and up into the *Presence*. But if the *Sovereign* proceeded no farther then the ^q *Closet*, and there staid, both holding the *Chapter* and during *Divine Service*; then the *Sovereigns Lieutenant* as he came from the *Chappel*, pass also through the Great *Hall*, and up into the *Guard Chamber* and thence to the *Closet*, where receiving the *Sovereign*, they all proceeded thence before him into the *Presence* in the usual order; where the *Proceeding* ending, all retired till *Supper* was ready. Nevertheless if the *Supper* on the *Feast Day* at night was prepared in the *Banqueting-House*; then the *Sovereigns* return from the *Chappel* or *Closet*, was over the *Terrace*, into the said Room, and up to the *state* there.

SECT. IX.

Of the Supper on the Evening of the Feast Day.

IT hath been very seldom seen, that the *Sovereign* hath supped publicly in *St. Georges Hall*, on the *Feast Day*; but when he doth (as ^r *an.* 14 *Car.* 1.) the

f MS. penes
g W.D. N. vi-
de etiam MS.
penes G. O. T.
pag. 113. &
Collect. prefat.
R C. Cl. fol. 9.
h Ex eod.
i MS. penes
k eund. W.
l D. N. fol.
m 8. b.

n Palm. Journ.
pag. 25.

o Palmers
Journ. pro an.
1639. p. 33.

p MS. pen. W.
D. N. fol. 10.
q 26. b.
q Et fol. 8. b.
vide etiam
MS. penes G. O.
T. pag. 113. &
114.

r Palm. Journ.
pag. 20.

the *Proceeding* thither, the *Ceremonies* and *attendance* there, and return thence, are in all respects performed, as at the *Supper* on the *Eve*.

But if the *Sovereign's Lieutenant* hath on this night supped publickly (as formerly it often hapned at *Whitehall*) then this Meal was made in the *Presence* Chamber, where the *Lieutenant* sat alone at the *Sovereign's Table*, on the left hand of the Cloth of State, as was usual at other times, and the *Knights-Companions* at a Table set along the side of the Room; all being served after the accustomed manner.

Sometimes, at *Greenwich*, the *Sovereign's Lieutenant* and *Knights-Companions* have supped in the *Council Chamber*, as an. 8. *Eliz.* (and also in the *Great Chamber*, at the end of the *Guard-Chamber* on the *Eve*, as an. 27. of the same *Queen*) And when *Supper* was ended, they all proceeded back to the *Presence-Chamber*, and there (having appointed the Hour of meeting the next morning) took leave one of another, and departed to their several Lodgings, to put off their Robes.

MS. penes
W. D. N.
fol. 4. cy. 8. b.
MS. pen. G.
O. T. pag. 113.

Collect. R. G.
Ch. fol. 9.

CHAP. XXII.

THE
Ceremonies
OBSERVED ON THE
Last Day
OF THE FEAST.

SECT. I.

Of Proceeding to the Chapter-house in the Morning.

IT is observed by the Author of the *Rationale*, upon our Book of *Common-Prayer*, ^a That great Solemnities have some days after them, to continue ^a *Paq.* 128; their memory in *Prorogationem Festi*, which are ^b added as Attendants in ^b *Ibid.* 174; honor of the *Feast*. And it may be well enough presumed, that upon this ground, the *Founder* lengthened out the *Feast* of *St. George* with part of the following day; one being too little to contain all the Ceremonies, designed by him to set forth the State of this high Festival.

* Feb. 7. v. 39. Among the * Jews, the last day of the *Feast of Tabernacles* was taken for the greatest day; but though it be not so to be understood here, yet doth this last day share in a very great part of the Solemnity of the *Feast*; for in the distribution of the *Ceremonies*, there are appointed to it particulars, both *Civil* and *Solemn*. As first, the Affairs transacted in *Chapter*, chiefly concerning the *Election of Knights*, with their *Proceeding to the Chappel*; and secondly, the *Services* used in the *Chappel*, viz. the *Offering of Gold and Silver*, and *Hatchments* of deceased *Knights-Companions*.

c Colled. W. le N. Cl. The bringing of the *Sword* into the *Presence*, the setting the *Proceeding* in order, and the manner of the *Sovereign* and *Knights* *Proceeding to the Chapter-house*, is performed in the same sort as it was on the *Eve of the Feast*; the Solemnity differing only in this, that then the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* are obliged by the *Statutes*, to proceed in full Robes; here, by the indulgence of King Henry the Eighth's *Statutes* all are dispensed with, saving the upper Robe or *Mantle*: and where then, the Image of St. George was worn pendent at the Collar of the Order, now a blew Ribband sufficeth; and in lieu of their Caps and Feathers, they now wear only their ordinary Hats.

d Art. 12. First, therefore the *Knights-Companions* and *Officers* of the Order, repair to the *Sovereigns* Privy Lodgings, and there attend his going into the *Presence Chamber*.

c Colled. W. le N. Cl. The *Officers of Arms*, *Prebends*, and *Alms-Knights*, as also the *Knights-Companions* *Servants*, (habited as the Day before) meet in the several places they then did, and there wait the *Sovereigns* coming forth.

The *Sovereign* attended with his *Train-bearers*, enters the *Presence*, and takes his Stand before the *State*.

The *Proceeding* advanceth towards the *Chapter-House*, in the accustomed Order.

Generally, and for the most part, the *Proceeding* passeth on foot (and sometimes on Horseback) the publick way: yet the late *Sovereign* King Charles the First, used now and then, to pass the private way, ⁱ over the Terrace. But an. 15 Jac. Reg. there was no solemn proceeding at all, for the publick way was so pestered with Carts, that the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* were constrained to pass to the *Chapter-House* in their ordinary Apparel, and put on their Mantles there.

It was the ancient Custom, to celebrate a *Chapter* in the Morning of the last Day of the *Feast*, before the *Sovereign* proceeded to the *Chappel*, whereinto the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* entring and opening the same, have given dispatch to such affairs relating to the Order, as were, either not finished or treated of in the *Precedent Chapters*: but the chief business then is to make *Election of Knights*, where any Stall is void.

Which *Chapter*, hath sometimes (when the *Sovereign* did not go to the *Chapter-house*) been kept in the *Privy Chamber*, and the present Affairs dispatcht in that Room; and then the *Sovereigns* *Lieutenant* waving the *Chapter-House*, hath proceeded straight on to the *Chappel*, and entred in at the South Door thereof.

SECT. II.

Of the Elect Knights Proceeding into the Choire.

Where an *Election* hath been made of a Person then present at Court, he is called in to the *Chapter-House* by Garter according, to the usual manner. Where the Garter is buckled about his Leg, and the George put about his Neck; (of which particular Ceremony we have ⁱ already spoken) this being done, it hath been usual for the *Elect Knight* to receive the further honor of passing immediately

SECT. III.

The Ceremonies on the Morrow after.

immediately in the *Proceeding* to the *Chappel*, whether it were from the *Chapter-House*, or *Presence-Chamber*, which he doth in his^k ordinary apparel, always bare-headed, as did the^l Earl of *Northumberland*, *an. 11 Car. 1.* and without any other Ornaments of the *Order*, saving the foresaid *Garter* and *George*: and the *Place* allowed him in the *Proceeding*, is between the *Knights Companions* and the *Officers of Arms*, of which there are a multitude of *Presidents*.

In this place^m Sir *Henry Sydney* rode, in the *Proceeding* to the *Chappel* at *Windefor*, *an. 6 Eliz.* and here went the Lordⁿ *Hunsdon* immediately after he was elected, *an. 3. Eliz.* so also the^o Earl of *Northumberland* the 5th of the same *Queen*.

But where two *Knights* have been Elected, they then proceed together before the *Knights-Companions*, (the Senior being taken on the right hand) as did the Earl of^p *Arundel* and *Vic. Rochester*, *an. 9 Jac. Reg.* and the Earl of^q *Rutland* and Sir *George Villars*, *an. 14 Jac. Reg.* Howbeit *Charles Duke of York*, being elected at the same time, went in the *Proceeding* next before the *Prince* his Brother, then the *Sovereigns Lieutenant*.

When the *Proceeding* is arrived at the *Choire Door*, the *Alms-Knights*, *Prebends*, and *Officers of Arms*, the *Knights-Companions* and *Officers of the Order*, enter with usual Ceremony, and take their several Stations, as on the *Eve*; and lastly, the *Sovereign*, if present. The *Elected Knight* also enters in *tourn* as he proceeded, and is placed by *Garter* next before the lowest Stall; or if there be two newly Elected, and both proceed to the *Chappel*, the one is placed under the lowest Stall on the *Princes* side, the other under the lowest Stall on the *Sovereigns*. But if any great State pass in the *Proceeding*, he then is placed before such Stalls as is designed for him; and so was^r *Charles Duke of York*, *an. 9 Jac. Reg.* to wit, before the Stall next below the *Princes*.

Being thus placed, they are there to stand all *Service* time; for so did the Earl of^s *Suffolk*, *an. 3 Car. 1.* the Earl of^t *Northampton*, *an. 4 Car. 1.* and the Earl of^v *Northumberland*, *an. 9 Car. 1.* nor are they to make any more *Reverences* than at their^x coming into the *Choire*, and passing out, unless a *Stool* be brought in and they permitted to sit down, and then are they obliged to make their *Reverences* upon all occasions, when they either sit or rise.

Nevertheless, by reason of the length of the Ceremonies, and in case of Age or Infirmary, the *Knights Elected*, have obtained Licence from the *Sovereign*, or his *Lieutenant*, to sit down and be covered. So, for like cause, the Lord^a *Burleigh* in *Queen Elizabeth's* Reign, and the Earl of *Southampton*, *an. 13 Car. 2.* were permitted to sit. The like indulgence had the Earls of^b *Dunbar* and *Penbroke*, *an. 6 Jac.* from the *Prince*, (then the *Sovereigns Lieutenant*) and also the Earl of^c *Rutland*, and Sir *George Villars* from the *Sovereign*, *an. 14 Jac. Reg.* and lastly *James Duke of York*,^d *an. 17 Car. 1.* But, though the favour of reposing at this time is allowed, the^e *stool* may not to be brought into the *Choire*, before the *Sovereign* has been pleased, by some publick signal, to give him leave to sit down, and then to be called for and not before; though it ought to be in readiness, in some place near and unseen.

k Ex. Co. G.
R. C. Cl. fol.
vid. etiam MS.
pen. E. W. G.
1 MS.

m MS. fol. pen.
W. D. N. fol.
26. b.
n Ibid. MS.
fol. 2. b.
o Ibid. fol. 6.

p MS. penes
q. E. W. G.

r Ex. Co. G. A.
V. W.

s MS. penes E.
W. G. fol. 149. b.

t Col. G. A.
V. W.
w Lib. R. p. 35.
x Ibid. p. 46.
y Ibid. pag. 50.
z MS.
* MS.

b MS. penes
c E. W. G.
fol. 147. b.

d Palm. large
Journ. pag. 422
e MS.

SECT. III.

Of the Ceremonies performed at Divine Service.

AND now to pass on: When the *Sovereign* hath ascended his Royal Seat, The *Knights-Companions* in due order take their Stalls. The *Officers of the Order* their Seats; and then The *Prelate* (with the *serjeant of the Vestry* before him) goes up to the Northside of the *Altar*, and begins the *Morning Service*.

F fff

After

After him, the *Verger* of the *Colledge* proceeds up before two *Prebends*; who put on their *Copes* on the Southside of the *Altar*, and assist in the Divine Offices.

But whereas the late *Sovereign King Charles* the First, of ever Blessed Memory, had throughout all his *Raign*, a *Sermon* preached before him, on every *Tuesday Morning*, it sometimes fell out that this latter *Feast* day, hapned to be on a *Tuesday*, (as it did *an. 8.* of the same *Sovereign* at *Whitehall*) and thenⁱ at such time as the *Prelate* was otherwise to proceed up to the *Altar*, the *Pulpit* was brought into the *Choir*, and placed in the^g middle of the lowermost *Haut Pas*, and immediately the *Sermon* began: which being ended, it was removed, and forthwith the^h *Prelate* proceeded up to the *Altar* as usually, and began Service.

In this Morning Service (before the Reformation of our *Church*) was theⁱ *Mass* of *Requiem* solemnly sung by the *Abbot* of *Tower-hill*, for the *Souls* of the *Knights-Companions* and all faithful *souls* departed; and this was taken care for by the^k *Statutes*.

As also, that at the Celebration thereof, ^l all the *Knights* at the *Feast* should be present, unless any one were hindered by some reasonable cause, or in special manner Licenced by the *Sovereign*.

At this Celebration were the deceased *Knights-Companions Achievements* also offered, with solemn Ceremony; concerning which we shall discourse at large^m anon.

Another Ceremony belonging to the service of this Morning, is the *Offering* of *Gold* and *Silver*, which when the first *Sentence* of the *Offertory* hath been pronounced, is again performed by the *Sovereign* (or his *Lieutenant*) and *Knights-Companions* present.

The Ceremonies and Circumstances appertaining thereunto at this time, are the same throughout in all particulars, as are set down to be observed at the like *Offering* on the *Feast Day*; and therefore for avoiding Repetition, we shall refer the *Reader* to the place where that is treated onⁿ before.

After all the before-mentioned Ceremonies in the *Chappel*, and Divine Service are ended, the *Prelate* descends from the *Altar* to his *Form*; Whereupon all prepare to go out of the *Choir* (which is exactly performed in the usual order, as on the *Eve* of the *Feast*) from whence, the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* most commonly proceed to the *Chapter-House*, where being entred, they immediately^p put off their *Mantles*, and therewith the Ceremonies of this *Grand Feast* take ending.

Heretofore, when the *Feast* was held at *Whitehall*, the *Sovereigns Lieutenant* and *Knights-Companions* were accustomed, to put off their *Mantles* without the *Chappel-Door*, as soon as they returned from *Morning Service*. But *an. 13 Car. 1.* at the finishing of this *Morning Service*, the^r Proceeding went back before the *Sovereign* to the *Presence-Chamber*, so also *an. 19 Car. 2.* and in like manner *an. 17 Car. 1.* it marched before the *Sovereign* in order, from the *Cathedral Church* in *York*, to the *Sovereign Palace*, before they put off their *Mantles*.

SECT. IV.

The Diets at some of the Grand Feasts.

WE were unwilling to interrupt the Course of the Ceremonies relative to this *Grand Feast*, with what some will esteem perhaps improper, if not trivial: nevertheless since others judge it may contribute to the setting forth the Grandeur and Magnificence of it, if the particulars of the *Diets* be made known, we shall add for *Corollary*, an account of some of them here.

ⁱ Collett. W.
^g le N. Cl.
^h

Mas of Re-
quiem.
ⁱ Lib. N. p. 109.
^k E. 3.
^l H. 1.
Stat. Art. 14.
H. 8. Stat.
Art. 12.

^m Chap. 25.
Offering of
Gold and Sil-
ver.

ⁿ Chap. 21.
S. 1. §.
Proceeding
out of the
Choir.

^p MS. pen. W.
D. N. fol. 16. b.
^q MS. penes
E. W. G. de an.
15. Jac. R. vide
pms Lib. R.
pag. 20. & 30.
MS. pag. 14.
^r Ex cod. MS.
penes W. D. N.
f. 3. b. & 26. b.
vide etiam
Collett. W. le N.
Cl. de an. 10.
Eliz. Et MS.
penes G. O. T.
pag. 113.
^s Lib. R. pag.
126.
^t Pal'm. Journ.
pag. 45.

An Ordinance for the King, the Queen, and the Knights of the Garter Lib. MS. penes Rob. Com. Arlebury, fol. 1.
at Windsor, for Saturday Supper and Sunday Dinner, the 28. and 29.
days of May, an. 11. Reg. Henrici octavi.

Saturday Supper
first Course.

Canell. Soppus to Potage.
Organs of Ling Standerd.
Salmon Calver.
Pyke in Erblade.
Plece.
Bremes mar.
Cunger gr.
Solles in solemsauce.
Moletts in grave.
Tenches in Grefell sawce.
Carpe in sharpe sawce.
Creves mar.
Dowsetts desire.
Tart covered.

Second Course.

Mainemy Royal.
Halebut in engrailed.
Freshe Sturgeon.
Bafe.
Sowre Moletts.
Bremes aque dulc.
Perches in foyle.
Eliis gr. rost.
Chines of Salmon r.
Porpos in Armor.
Creves-----dozen.
Orangs bak.
Tart melior.
Leche Cumforte.

Sunday Dinner
first Course.

A George on Horseback.
Chikins in brewel.
Pestel of Hert for gr. sh.
Capons in Erblade.
Cignets.
Carpes of Venison.
Capons of halt gr.
Hérons.
Pyke in Latum sawce.
Salmon Calver.
A made Dish.
Pies of Paries.
Custard planted with Garters.
A Tart closed with Arms.
Fritor Lion.
Prenne Orangs.
Uno eq. per pero
Leche.

Second Course.

A sotelte.
Jely Tprocas.
Kind Kid.
Fesants.
Brewes, or Mewes.
Godwits.
Birds of the Nest.
Chikens.
Peions.
Rabets.
Peres made.
Sturgeon r.
Creves dd.
Quales.
Venison in past.
Tart party.
Orangs bak.
Leche.

For the Knights Dinner on Sunday.

ibid. fol. 2.

First Course.

Chikins in brewel.
Pestels or gr. schare.
Capon in Erblade.
Cignets or Green-Geese.
Part of Venison or Veal.
Hérons or Gullys.

Second Course.

Jely Tprocas.
Kyd or Lambe peru.
Fesaunts.
Quales.
Chikins.
Pigeons.

F fff 2

Pyke

Pyke or Lampre p.
salmon Calver.
Pies of Paris.
Custard Plancyd.
Fryttors.

Rabets.
Sturgeon r.
Creves dd.
Venison in past.
Tart party.
Bawdrets or Orangs bak.
Leche.

This Fare followeth the *Knights* at the *second Table*.

First Course.

Second Course.

Pottage.
Gr. Schare.
Capon boiled.
Green Geese.
Veal roasted.
Pies or Custard.
Lampre pr.
Frittor or Leche.

A Viande.
Lambe.
Chikins or Pigeons.
Venison bak. or Tart.
Creves dd.
Leche or Frittor.

This Fare is for the *first Hall*.

First Course.

Second Course.

Pottage.
Gr. Schare.
Capon boiled.
Green Geese for 12 or 16 Mefs.
Veal.
Pies or Custard paru.
Frittor.

A Viand.
Lamb.
Chikins or Pigeons.
Venison bak.
Leche or Frittor.

Ibid. fol. 3.

Waste to be given by the great Officers Cxx, Mefs.
Beef, Veal, Geese, and Capon.

Waste to be dealt at Gate, viz. CCCC. Mefs.
Beef, Veal, and Bakements, Venison or other.

This course for giving Waste, was continued until an. 12. Car. 2. that the *Privileges* and *Provisions* for the *Kings Household*, were taken away by *Act of Parliament*.

Ibid. fol. 4.

A Proportion made for the foresaid Feast of St. George.

Beef	24	Kyds	14
Moulton	92	Lambs Sukkers	14
Veales.	74	Lambs gr.	96
Pykes	24	Young Cranes	3 doz.
Lampre pr.	240	Dottrells	5 dd.
Cygnets	3 doz.	Quails	15 dd.
Green Geese	18 dd.	Creme	16 gall.
Hérons	8 dd.	Crude	60 g.
Fesants	4 dd.	Milk	60 g.
Brewx or Gullys	6 dd.	Butter and Eggs plenty.	
Goddwitts	5 dd.	Peacocks with their Tails	16
Birds of the Nest	200.	Pastry.	
Pigeons	50 dd.	Creme	24 g.
Chikins	52 dd.	Crude	80 g.
Rabits	36 dd.	Milk	76 g.

Capon

Capon of gr.	12.	Apples	200.
Capon k.	8. dd.	Oranges.	300.
Capon cos.	16. dd.	Butter }	to serve the said Feast.
Hens.	40. dd.	Eggs }	

	l.	s.	d.
The charge of the whole came to	43	1	03 09. $\frac{1}{2}$

For the Feast of St. George, held at Whitehall, on Munday the 22. and Tuesday the 23. days of April, in the 19. year of the Reign of our Sovereign Lord King Charles the Second, *An. Dom.* 1667.

The supper for the Sovereign on the Eve (being Munday night) was prepared and set upon the Table in the Banqueting-House, two by two, beginning at the East end of it, and the rest of the Dishes were set upon the other Dishes, as Riders in the middle.

First Course.

- | | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Ducklings boyled xij. | 21. Petty Patties. | 2. Veal Arago. |
| 3. Salmon boyled j. cafe. | 22. Rabbits fried xij. | 4. Pidgeon Pye. |
| 5. Green Geese xij. | 23. Sallet. | 6. Gammon Bacon with |
| 7. Pike with Prawns, | 24. Capon good per Sallets iiij. | iiij Pullets great course. |
| Cockles, and Oysters. | 25. Rabbits marrionated | 8. Bisk Pigeons xij. |
| 9. Venison Pye. | 26. Halhed sallet. | 10. Chines Mutton and |
| 11. Chickens boyled xij. | 27. Cold Sparagrass. | Veal iij. |
| 13. Carps Great iij. | 28. Pickled sallets. | 12. Hens with Eggs |
| 15. Tongues and Odders | 29. Sweet breads Arago. | halbt vj. |
| iiij. | | 14. Oyster Pye. |
| 17. Kid j. cafe. | | 16. Capons boyled ij. |
| 19. Beatilia Pye. | | 18. Pullet a Granow iiij. |
| | | 20. Capons Eat. v. |

Second Course.

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. Veal Soult ij. | 21. Tongues iiij. | 2. Salmon col. |
| 3. Pullets Great vj. | 22. Leich. | 4. Tongue Pye. |
| 5. Ducklings xij. | 23. Anchovis, Caveare, | 6. Leverets vj. |
| 7. Lobsters vj. | and pickled Oysters. | 8. Chickens fat xij. |
| 9. Pbeasants with Eggs | 24. Eggs of Portugal. | 10. Skerret Pye. |
| vj. | 25. Blamange. | 12. Turkey Chicks xij. |
| 11. Partridges xij. | 26. Creame Pistache. | 14. Tarts forts. |
| 13. Crabs buttered vj. | 27. Sparragrass. | 16. Pigeons tame xij. |
| 15. Gammons Bacon ij. | 28. Jelly. | 18. Lamprey Pye. |
| 17. Chickens marrionated xij. | 29. Prawnes. | 20. Sallet. |
| 19. Pullets Soult vj. | | |

Four Mefs of Fare served to Supper on the Eve to the Knights-Companions Tables, viz. one to the Duke of Yorks Table, and three to the other six Knights then present, and one Mefs of the same fare to the Prelate and the other Officers of the Order.

First Course.

Capons boyled ij.
Wildboar Pye.
Kid j. cafe.
Carpes great iij.

Second Course.

Pullets great vj.
Gammon Bacon ij.
Ducklings xij.
Carpes Soult ij.

Chicken

Chicken Pye roasted.

Gammon Bacon with 4. *Pallets*
great.

Bilk of Shellfish.

Venison Pye.

Bilk Pigeons xij.

Tongue and Vadders iiij.

Pike great.

Capons fat iiij.

Turkey Pye.

Jegot Mutton first.

Veal Arago.

Green Geese x.

Beatilia Pye.

Chickens boyled xij.

Sweet Breads Arago.

Sallets.

Partridges viij.

Lamprey Pye.

Oyster Pye.

Turkey Chicks xij.

Prawnes.

Pidgeons tame xij.

Tongues iiij.

Chickens fat xij.

Tongue Pye.

Rabbets xij.

Anchovis *Caveare* and pickled *Oysters.*

Leich.

Lobsters vj.

Sparagraft.

Tarts Sorts.

Jelly.

Sallets.

Blamange.

The Sovereigns Dyet on St. Georges Day Dinner.

First Course.

1. *Wild-Boar Pye.*

3. *Chine* of Beef.

5. *Beatilia Pye.*

7. *Ducklings* boyled xij.

9. *Chines Mutton* and
Veal iij.

11. *Venison* boyled.

13. *Carpes* great iiij.

15. *Venison Pye.*

17. *Thurbut.*

19. *Turkey Pye.*

21. *Line Veal* larded and
col. iiij.

22. *Cold Sparagraft.*

23. *Hasht Sallets.*

24. *Almond Pudding.*

25. *Sweet Breads.*

26. *Sallet.*

27. *Petty Pattyes.*

28. *Puddings* white and
Black.

29. *Rabbets* fryed xij.

2. *Veal Arago.*

4. *Haggest Puddings.*

6. *Capons* fat v.

8. *Gammon Bacon* and
Pigeons.

10. *Capons* boyled ij.

12. *Pikes* roasted ij.

14. *Pigs* roasted ij.

16. *Green Geese* xij.

18. *Chicken Pye.*

19. *Chickens* marrionated xij.

Second Course.

1. *Pallets* Soult vj.

3. *Salmon* col.

5. *Rabbets* roasted xij.

7. *Pheasants* with Eggs vj.

9. *Chickens* roasted xij.

11. *Oysters, Sherets,* and
Sweet-Breads.

13. *Tart* sorts.

15. *Gammon Bacon.*

17. *Lamprey Pye.*

19. *Salmon* boyled j.
cale.

21. *Pickle* *sallet.*

22. *Tongues* iiij.

23. *Eggs* Portugal.

24. *Sbardoones.*

25. *Leach.*

26. *Luke Olives.*

27. *Sparagraft.*

28. *Pickeld Oysters.*

29. *Prawnes.*

2. *Tongue Pye.*

4. *Blamange.*

6. *Crabs* butter'd vj.

8. *Pidgeons* tame xij.

10. *Bilk shell fish.*

12. *Ducklings* roasted xij.

14. *Lobsters* roasted vj.

16. *Piggs* soult.

18. *Veal* hasht.

20. *Peacock Pye.*

Four Mefs of Fare served to the *Knights-Companions*, and one Mefs to the
Prelate, &c. on St. Georges Day Dinner.

First Course.

1. *Sallet.*

3. *Loin* of *Veal* larded
with coll.

17. *Green Geese* x.

18. *Carpes* great iiij.

19. *Haggest Pudding.*

2. *Chickens* boyled xij.

4. *Turkey Pye.*

6. *Salmon* j. cale.

5. *Piggs*

- | | | |
|--|------------------------------|---|
| 5. <i>Piggs</i> ij. | 20. <i>Beatilia</i> Pye. | 8. <i>Venison</i> Pye. |
| 7. <i>Chine Beef</i> . | 21. <i>Pullets</i> great vj. | 10. <i>Shoulder Mutton</i> in blood with <i>steakes</i> . |
| 9. <i>Gammon Bacon</i> and
<i>iiiij. Pullets</i> great. | 22. <i>Sallett</i> . | 12. <i>Capons</i> fat <i>iiiij</i> . |
| 11. <i>Bisk Pidgeons</i> xij. | | 14. <i>Kid</i> j. <i>case</i> . |
| 13. <i>Chicken</i> Pye frosted. | | 16. <i>Veal</i> Soult. |
| 15. <i>Wild Boar</i> Pye. | | |

Second Course.

- | | | |
|--|-------------------------------|---|
| 1. <i>Sallet</i> . | 17. <i>Leach</i> . | 2. <i>Piggs</i> Soult. |
| 3. <i>Gammons Bacon</i> ij. | 18. <i>Sparagras</i> . | 4. <i>Salmon</i> col. |
| 5. <i>Ducklings</i> xij. | 19. <i>Crabs</i> butter'd vj. | 6. <i>Chickens</i> fat xij. |
| 7. <i>Oysters, Skerrets, and</i>
<i>Sweet-bread</i> . | 20. <i>Lamprey</i> Pye. | 8. <i>Bisk Shells</i> sh. |
| 9. <i>Pidgeons</i> tame xij. | 21. <i>Jelly</i> . | 10. <i>Lobsters</i> vj. |
| 11. <i>Rabits</i> xij. | 22. <i>Blamange</i> . | 12. <i>Tarts</i> forts. |
| 13. <i>Peacock</i> Pye in <i>Pride</i> . | 23. <i>Sallet</i> . | 14. <i>Pullets</i> soult. |
| 15. <i>Dried Tongues</i> <i>iiiij</i> . | | 16. <i>Anchovis, Caveare,</i>
and <i>Pickled Oysters</i> . |

The Banquet served at the Feast of St. George, the 22. and 23. of
April an. 19 Car. 2.

Supper on the Eve.

For the *Sovereigns Table*, 8 *Basons*, 20 *Boxes* in each *Bason*, one pound in each *Box*. *Preserves* 4 *Dishes*, two pound in a *Dish*. *Creams* 2 *Dishes*, and one pound of *Eringoes*, and one pound of *Rocks* to garnish each *Bason*.

For 4 *Mefs* of the *Knights-Companions*, and one *Mef* for the *Prelate*, &c. to each *Mef* 2 *Basons*, 16 *Boxes* in a *Bason*, 3 quarters of a pound in a *Box*. 2 *Dishes* of *Preserves*, 2 pound in a *Dish*, and 2 *Dishes* of *Creams*, and half a pound of *Eringoes*, and half a pound of *Rocks* to garnish each *Bason*.

The like for Dinner on St. Georges Day.

After Dinner and Supper, when the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* wash, 6 *Bouls*, one for the *Sovereign* of 6 pound of *Comfits*, and 5 other *Bouls* for the *Knights-Companions* and *Prelate*, &c. 4 pounds in each *Boul*, garnished with *Eringoes*, and *Rocks* and *Violet Cakes*, half a pound of each to each *Boul*.

We have seen several *Bills* wherein the *Diets* belonging to the *Officers of Arms* are set down, both for their *Supper* on the *Eve*, and *Dinner* on the *Feast Day*, which were not less than 20 *Dishes*, and sometimes 24 *Dishes* besides the *Banquet*: These *Bills* were usually given to the *Junior Pursuivants*, by the *Clearks* of the *Kitchen*, by which they called for the *Dishes*.

Among the memorialls of the *Grand Feast* held an. 19 Eliz. it is noted, that on the * *Eve*, the *Heralds* had at *Supper* the *Diet* as was accustomed, viz. || 16 *Dishes* at the first Course and 8 at the second: but see here their *Diets* at the *Grand Feast* at *Whitehall*, an. 19 Car. 2.

* MS. penes
|| G. O. X.
pag. 113.

Monday Supper 22 April.

First Course.

Sallets.
Veal and *Capon* boyled.
Chickens boyled viij.
Mutton roasted.
Veal Roasted.

Second Course

Pullets great iij.
Chickens fine viij.
Pidgeons fat. xij.
Rabbits vj.
Lobsters *iiiij*.

Turkey.

Turkey.
Capons good ii.
Lamb, fide.
Pigeon-Pye.
Stump-Pye.
Green Geese vi.

Prawns CCC.
Turkey-Pye.
Tart Sorts.
Sparagraz CC.
Gamon Bacon.
Tongues ii.
Jelly.

Manchets fine x.
Cheate fine vi.
Courfe x.
Beer • viij Gallons.
French Wine ii. Gallons.
Sack ii. Quarts.
Ale iiij. Bottles.

The same served the next day *Dinner*, only the roast *Veal* was exchanged for boiled *Beef*.

For *Supper* on *Sunday* night, at *Windsor*, the 28. of *May* 1671. being the *Eve* of the *Grand Feast*, there was prepared for the *Sovereign*, the *Dyet* hereafter mentioned, and set upon his *Table* in *St. George's Hall*, in the order following, two by two, beginning at the *South* end of the *Table*; which being fill'd, the rest of the *Dishes* were set upon *stands* in the *midst*.

First Course.

- | | | |
|--|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Chickens</i> boiled xii. | 21. <i>Petty Patties.</i> | 2. <i>Salmon</i> boiled. |
| 3. <i>Veal</i> Arago. | 22. <i>Rabits</i> fryed viii. | 4. <i>Lamb</i> stewed. |
| 5. <i>Umble Pye.</i> | 23. <i>Sallet</i> of Herbs. | 6. <i>Bisk Pigeons</i> xii. |
| 7. <i>Green Geese</i> vi. | 24. <i>Mullets</i> soult vi. | 8. <i>Pikes</i> with <i>Pawnes</i> , |
| 9. <i>Chine Mutton & Veal</i> iv. | 25. <i>Rabits</i> marrionated viii. | <i>Oysters</i> , and <i>Cockles.</i> |
| 11. <i>Ducklings</i> boiled xii. | 26. <i>Hafst Sallet</i> , with iv <i>Capons.</i> | 10. <i>Venison Pye.</i> |
| 13. <i>Hens</i> hafst vi. | 27. <i>Soales</i> marrionated two pair. | 12. <i>Carpes</i> great iii. |
| 15. <i>Venison</i> boiled q. | 28. <i>Sallet</i> of Pickles. | 14. <i>Turkies</i> aladob vi. |
| 17. <i>Capons</i> boiled ii. | 29. <i>Sweet breads</i> arago. | 16. <i>Bisk Shells</i> ß. |
| 19. <i>Beatilia Pye</i> with <i>Patties.</i> | | 18. <i>Pullets</i> a granoul vi. |
| | | 20. <i>Capons</i> fat v. |

Second Course.

- | | | |
|---|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Pullets</i> fat roasted vi. | 21. <i>Tongues</i> iv. | 2. <i>Veal</i> and <i>Pigs</i> soult. |
| 3. <i>Cold Salmon.</i> | 22. <i>Pease.</i> | 4. <i>Ducklings</i> x. |
| 5. <i>Tongue Pye.</i> | 23. <i>Anchovis</i> Caveare & pickled <i>Oysters.</i> | 6. <i>Leverets</i> vi. |
| 7. <i>Chicks</i> fat xii. | 24. <i>Egs</i> of Portugal. | 8. <i>Lobsters</i> rost vi. |
| 9. <i>Pheasants</i> with <i>Egs</i> vi. | 25. <i>Blamang.</i> | 10. <i>Turkey Chicks</i> xii. |
| 11. <i>Gaudwits</i> x. | 26. <i>Creame Pistaches.</i> | 12. <i>Crabs</i> buttered vi. |
| 13. <i>Quails</i> xxiv. | 27. <i>Scollops.</i> | 14. <i>Pigeons</i> tame xii. |
| 15. <i>Tarts</i> sorts. | 28. <i>Jelly.</i> | 16. <i>Gamons Bacon</i> ii. |
| 17. <i>Crawfish</i> butter'd. | 29. <i>Prawnes.</i> | 18. <i>Egg Piër.</i> |
| 19. <i>Ruffs</i> xii. | | 20. <i>Pullets</i> soult vi. |

Seven Mefs, or feveral Services of Fare, served on the Eve of the Feast to the *Knights-Companions*; each *Knight* having a feveral Mefs to supper, and one Mefs of the same fare to the *Prelate, &c.*

First Course.

<i>Capons</i> boiled ij.	<i>Crabs</i> vi.	<i>sallets</i> Pickles.	<i>Chickens</i> boiled xij.
<i>Fikes</i> great ij.	Jegget <i>Multon</i> ferst.		<i>Chicken</i> Pyc,
<i>Buck</i> baked q.	<i>Rabbets</i> fryed viij.	<i>Pullets</i> hasht iv.	<i>Salmon.</i>
	<i>Capons</i> fat iv.		

Second Course.

<i>Quails</i> xviii.	<i>Tarts</i> sorts.	<i>Jelley.</i>	<i>Turkey</i> Pyc.
<i>Tongue</i> Pyc.	<i>Carpes</i> large iij.	<i>Blamang.</i>	<i>Rabets</i> xij.
	<i>Anchovies, Cavcare</i>		
	and pickled <i>Oysters.</i>		
<i>Chicks</i> fat xij.	<i>Lobsters</i> vi.		<i>Pullets</i> great vi.

The *Sovereign's* Diet on the Feast day, when the Table being made les, the Diet was reduced as followeth.

First Course.

1. <i>Wild Boar</i> Pyc.	15. <i>Sallet.</i>	2. <i>Salmon.</i>
3. <i>Chine</i> of Beef.	16. <i>Sweet-breads.</i>	4. <i>Haggest Puddings.</i>
5. <i>Beatilia</i> Pie with <i>Patties.</i>	17. <i>Almond Pudding.</i>	6. <i>Gamon Bacon</i> with xij tame <i>Pigeons.</i>
7. <i>Ducklings</i> boiled xij.	18. <i>Petty Patties.</i>	8. <i>Chickens</i> boiled xij.
9. <i>Chine Multon</i> and <i>Veal</i> iv.	19. <i>Hasht sallet</i> with 4 <i>Capons.</i>	10. <i>Fikes</i> roasted ij.
11. <i>Buck</i> baked q.	20. <i>Chicks</i> marrionated.	12. <i>Green Geese</i> vi.
13. <i>Carpes</i> great iij.		14. <i>Chicken</i> Pyc frosted.

Second Course.

1. <i>Pullets</i> soust vi.	15. <i>Sallets</i> of Pickles.	2. <i>Tongue</i> Pyc.
3. <i>Rabbets</i> roasted xij.	16. <i>Eggs</i> of Portugal.	4. <i>Cream</i> Tarts.
5. <i>Pheasants</i> with <i>Egs</i> vi.	17. <i>Jelly.</i>	6. <i>Crabs</i> buttered vi.
7. <i>Quails</i> xxiv.	18. <i>Luke Olives.</i>	8. <i>Pigeons</i> tame xij.
9. <i>Lobsters</i> vi.	19. <i>Pease.</i>	10. <i>Chicks</i> fat xij.
11. <i>Gamon Bacon</i> with ij <i>Tongues.</i>	20. <i>Prawnes.</i>	12. <i>Ruffs</i> xij.
13. <i>Tarts</i> sorts.		14. <i>Ducklings</i> xij.

Seven Mefs, or feveral Services of Fare served to the *Knights-Companions*, and one Mefs to the *Prelate, &c.*

First Course.

<i>Ducklings</i> boiled xii.	<i>Rabbets</i> fry'd viij.	<i>Carpes</i> great iij.	<i>Chicks</i> boiled xii.
<i>Chine</i> of Beef.	<i>Gamon</i> of Bacon with iiij <i>Pulletts</i> great.		<i>Buck</i> baked q.
<i>Wild Bore Pye.</i>	<i>stump</i> Pye.	<i>Sallets</i> of Pickle.	
	<i>Shoulder</i> of <i>Mutton</i> in blood with <i>Steaks</i> .		<i>Capons</i> fat iiij.

Second Course.

<i>Pheasants</i> iiij.	<i>Artichokes.</i>	<i>Anchovis</i> Caviare and pickled <i>Oysters</i> .	<i>Quails</i> xviii.
<i>Chicks</i> fat xii.	<i>Tarts</i> sorts.		<i>Ducklings</i> vi. and <i>Green Geese</i> vi.
<i>Gamon</i> Bacon with ii <i>Tongues</i> .	<i>Lamprey</i> Pye.	<i>Jelly.</i>	
	<i>Pigeons</i> tame xii.		<i>Red Dear</i> Pye.

A Diet served to the *Lords*, that attended the *Sovereign* at *Supper*,
on the *Eve* of the said *Feast*.

First Course.

Capons boiled ij.
Chicks boiled xij.
Crabs buttered vi.
Sallets of Pickle.
Pikes Great ij.
Jegget *Mutton* ferst.
Chicken Pye.
Rabbets fryed viij.
Pulletts Hasht iv.
Buck baked q.
Capons fat iv.
Salmon.
Veal.
Soals large ij pair.

Second Course.

Quails xvij.
Turkey Chicks x.
Tarts sorts.
Jelly.
Tongue Pye.
Carpes large iv.
Rabbets xij.
Anchovies Caviare,
and pickled *Oysters*.
Blamang.
Chickens fry'd xij.
Lobsters vi.
Pulletts greese vi.
Ducklings xij.
Pigeons tame xij.

For the same *Lords* *Dinner* on the *Feast* day.

First Course.

Ducklings boiled xij.
Chicks boiled xij.
Rabbets fryed viij.
Carpes great ij.
Chine Beef.
Gamon Bacon with
iv *Pulletts*.
Buck baked q.
stump Pye.

Second Course.

Pheasants iv.
Quails xvij.
Artichokes.
Anchovies Caviare and
Pickled *Oysters*.
Chickins fat xij.
Tarts sorts.
Ducklings vi. and *Green Geese* vi.
Lamprey Pye.

Sallets

<i>Salletts</i> of Pickles.	<i>Jelly.</i>
<i>Wild Boare Pye.</i>	<i>Gamon Bacon.</i>
Shoulder of <i>Mutton</i> in blood	<i>Tongues</i> ii.
with <i>Veal.</i>	<i>Pigeons</i> tame xii.
<i>Capons</i> fat iv.	<i>Red Deer Pye.</i>
<i>Veal.</i>	<i>Crabs</i> buttered vi.
<i>Pullets</i> of Greefe iv.	<i>Blamang.</i>

The Banquet served at the said Feast.

The *Sovereign's Table* on the Eve.

One Charger of *China Oranges*, containing 50.
 Seven Chargers of *Confections*, in each Charger 20 Boxes; in each Box one pound of dried Confections.
 Two Plates of *Duke Cherries*, 4 pound in each Plate.
 One Plate of *Red Strawberries*, containing one Gallon.
 One Plate of *White Strawberries*, containing two Gallons.
 One Plate of *Ice Cream*.
 Three Plates of *liquid Sweetmeats*, in each Plate 3 pound.
 The same for the Feast day at Dinner.

To each of the 7 Tables for the *Knights-Companions*, on the Eve.

Two Chargers of *Confections*, in each Charger 14 Boxes.
 One pound of dried Confections in each Box.
 One Plate of *Duke Cherries*, containing 2 pound.
 One Plate of *Red Strawberries*, containing 1 Gallon.
 One Plate of *liquid Sweetmeats*, containing 3 pound.

The same for the Feast day.

For the *Prelate* of the *Garter*, &c. on the Eve.

Two Chargers, 14 Boxes in each Charger.
 One Plate of *Duke Cherries*, containing 2 pound.
 One Plate of *Red Strawberries*, containing 1 Gallon.
 One Plate of *liquid Sweetmeats*, containing 3 pound.

The same Service to the *Lords* who attended the *Sovereign*,
 And so the same to the *Prelate* and *Lords* the next day.

One Charger of *Confections* for the *Heralds*, containing 10 Boxes each Meal.

The *Dyets* provided for the *Officers of Arms* at Supper and Dinner,
 were at each Meal 20 Dishes:

The same Diet served in the same manner.

To the <i>Prebends</i> xx Dishes.	To the <i>Alms-Knights</i> xx Dishes.
To the <i>Petty Canons</i> xx Dishes.	To the <i>Choristers</i> xx Dishes.

The Diet served to the *Officers* of his Majesty's Board of *Greencloth*
 was xiv Dishes.

To the Chief Clerk of the Kitchen } vii	To the Officers of the Jewel-house } iiij
To the Gentlemen of the Chappel } xiv	To the Yeomen Ushers } x
To the second Clerk of the Kitchen } vii	To the Children of the Chappel } vi
To the Vestry } iiij	To the Officers of the Confectionary } iii

Dishes.

The Total of the *Proportions* of Provisions for the foresaid *Feast*.

<i>Beef</i> xx Mels.	<i>Salmons</i> xiiij.
<i>Chines Beef</i> ix.	<i>Soals</i> large xxiiij. pair.
<i>Mutton</i> xvij. Cafes.	<i>Lobsters</i> large Cxxxvj.
<i>Veal</i> x. Cafes.	<i>Crabs</i> large Cxviiij.
<i>Tongues and Udders</i> xxxij.	<i>Mullets</i> Lx.
<i>Piggs</i> xlv.	<i>Prawnes</i> xij. M.
<i>Lambs</i> xx.	<i>Cockles</i> viij. Quarts.
<i>Capons</i> fat lxxx.	<i>Scollops</i> iiij. C.
<i>Capons</i> good ix doz.	<i>Lamprey Pies</i> xij.
<i>Fullets</i> fat xx doz.	<i>Sturgeon</i> xxij. Mels.
<i>Hens</i> and <i>Pullets</i> course vj. doz.	<i>Whelks</i> vj. Quarts.
<i>Chickens</i> fat xx. doz.	<i>Pikes</i> great xiiij.
<i>Chickens</i> fine Lviiij. doz.	<i>Carpes</i> great Lxxx.
<i>Pidgeons</i> tame xxiiij. doz.	<i>Trouts</i> large xxiiij.
<i>Green Geese</i> xv. doz.	<i>Crawfish</i> MD.
<i>Ducklings</i> xxxv. doz.	<i>Oysters</i> xij. Quarts.
<i>Turkey Chickens</i> ix. doz.	<i>Westphalia</i> Gammons Lxx.
<i>Gandwits</i> ij. doz.	<i>Dried Tongues</i> C.
<i>Quails</i> xxx. doz.	<i>Pickled Oysters</i> xvj. Barrels.
<i>Ruffs</i> xxiiij.	<i>Anchovis</i> xijl.
<i>Pheasants</i> iiij. doz.	<i>Caveare</i> viijl.
<i>Leverets</i> vj.	<i>Butter</i> CCCLxxl.
<i>Rabbits</i> xxxv. doz.	<i>Eggs</i> MM.
<i>Kids</i> xvij. cafes.	<i>Barberies</i> ij. Gallons.
<i>Cocks-Combs</i> and <i>Stones</i> ij. doz.	<i>Onions</i> xij. Ropes.
<i>Peas</i> xx Bushel.	<i>Cream</i> ij. Gallons.
<i>Sparagraft</i> vj. M.	<i>Milk</i> vj. Gallons.
<i>Artichokes</i> CC.	
<i>Beef</i> for Gravy, CCxlix l.	
<i>Mutton</i> ij. Cafes.	
<i>Veals</i> iiij.	
<i>Pork</i> j. cafe.	
<i>Bacon</i> Lxxiiij l.	
<i>Lard</i> Cxxiiij l.	
<i>Sweet Breads</i> xviiij. doz.	
<i>Lambstones</i> xx. doz.	
<i>Pallats</i> x. doz.	
<i>Marrow-bones</i> vij. doz.	
<i>Sheeps Tongues</i> ix. doz.	
<i>Veal Cauls</i> xiiij.	
<i>Haggis bags</i> xij.	
<i>Calves Caldrons</i> xviiij.	
<i>Ox Suet</i> Lxviiij l.	
<i>Sheeps-feet</i> vj. Gang.	
<i>The small Guts</i> of an Ox.	
<i>Neats-feet</i> vj. Gang.	
<i>Cauls</i> and <i>blood</i> vj.	
	<i>Bake-meats</i> for the said <i>Feasts</i> both hot and cold.
	Hot. { <i>Steak Pyes</i> xiiij.
	<i>Stump Pyes</i> xxj.
	<i>Umble Pye</i> j.
	<i>Beatillia Pyes</i> with <i>Patties</i> vj.
	<i>Venison Pyes</i> xviiij.
	<i>Petty Patties</i> ij. Dishes.
	<i>Tarts</i> sorts xxxviiij.
	<i>Single Tarts</i> xx.
	<i>Egg Pyes</i> ix.
	<i>Chicken Pyes</i> frosted ix.
	<i>Cream Tarts</i> j.
	<i>Tongue Pyes</i> xxvij.
	<i>Capon Pyes</i> xxvij.
	Cold { <i>Lamprey Pyes</i> xij.
	<i>Wild Boar Pyes</i> xij.
	<i>Red-Deer Pyes</i> xij.

The whole charge of this *Grand Feast* amounted to ---- l. s. d.
2394 17 08.

CHAP. XXIII.

THE
OBSERVATION OF THE
Grand Feast
BY
Absent Knights.

SECT. I.

Absent Knights enjoined to observe the Grand Feast.

With what state and magnificence, and in what solemn order, the *Grand Feast* of St. George hath been, and ought to be observed, by the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions*, either at *Windsor Castle*, or any other place, where the *Sovereign* then happens to keep his Court, hath been already laid down at large; yet were not all the honors due to this high Festival, paid to those places alone, but communicated sometimes (though in a less measure) to such other, where any of the absent *Knights* resided at that time, and had obtained the *Sovereign's Letters of Dispensation*, for non-attendance with the rest of the *Knights-Companions*.

We have also shewn how strictly the *Statutes* oblige the *Knights-Companions* to appear annually at the *Grand Feast*, and what severe penalties they inflict upon such as are absent: Yet lest the honor of the *Order* might receive diminution, from too small an appearance at its publick Solemnities, when perhaps some of the *Knights* might then be employed in the *Sovereign's* service, both in remote parts of the Kingdom and beyond Sea, or others sick, or not without a reasonable excuse: it was further at the *Institution* of the *Order* Decreed, ^a That none of them should depart out of the Kingdom, without first acquainting the *Sovereign*, and obtaining his special leave and license. Nevertheless such as disposed themselves to undertake any military Expedition, or other honorable design in the service of Foreign Princes, whence any glory of *Knighthood* might be

^a E. 3. Stat.
Art. 28. H. 5.
Stat. Art. 29.

^b *Ibid.* be hoped for, upon such renowned undertakings, the ^b *Sovereign* of his special grace, and for his favour towards and confidence in the *Knights-Companions*, was wont to give them preference before the rest of his Subjects, and grant them *License* to go beyond Sea.

But whatsoever the occasion of absence might be, it was then also ordained, ^c *Act. II.* *That wheresoever any of the Knights-Companions resided, during the said Feast, they should wear their Mantles of the Order, from the hour of the first Vespers, on the Eve of St. George, till the second Vespers on the Feast day were finished: as they should have done, had they been present in person with the Sovereign or his Deputy, during the whole celebration of the Feast (in case they were not deprived of their Liberty), the^d Prorogation of the Feast notwithstanding.*

^d *H. 6. Stat. Art. II.*

SECT. II.

More particular directions for their observation of it.

BUT per'ance, because the custom of these Celebrations at home began to be neglected, at least seemed indifferent to the absent *Knights-Companions*, either to observe or not to observe them, it was thought needful by King Henry the Eighth to revive, as also to enlarge the Law in this particular, and therefore in the 11. year of his Reign, first in explanation of the said 11. *Article* of the *Statutes of Institution*, He declared, and enjoined the wearing of the whole *Habit* upon the *Eve* of *St. George*, viz. the 22. day of *April*, whether it should happen to fall within the *Feast* of *Easter*, or without, if the *Knight-Companion* were at liberty, and not under restraint. Then he enumerated the times for wearing it, to wit, on the *Eve*, at all times of *Divine Service*, *Dinner*, and *Supper*; and all this to be observed, unless in case of *War*, *Sickness*, *Journey*, or other just impediment, when if the absent *Knight* did wear the *Garter* and *George*, either in a Gold Chain, or Silk Ribband, it should be accounted sufficient.

About three years after, when the same *Sovereign* made a general reformation and explanation of the *Statutes*, he enjoined some other particulars to be done and observed by the absent *Knights-Companions* (whether, by ^e *License* or otherwise, any of them were in his own House, or any other place, and not under restraint) that is to say, he should be bound to prepare a *Capital Stall* in the *Church* or *Chappel*, where he designed to hear Service, to the honor of the *Sovereign*: In which *Capital stall* should be set up the *Arms* of the *Order* within a *Garter*.

^f *Col'cl. W.*
^g *le N. Cl.*
ⁱ *k*

He should be likewise bound, to erect another ^f *Stall*, that should be as far in distance (according to the proportion and length of the said *Church* or *Chappel*) from the *Stall* of the *Sovereign*, and on the same side, as was the said absent *Knights Stall* in the *Castle of Windsor*, and therein should place his own *Arms*. Moreover he should wear the ^g whole *Habit* of the *Order*, and should hear ^h *Divine Service*, such as by the *Church* is ordained for the said time; aswell the *Even*, the *Morning*, as the *Afternoon* on the *Feast day*. Then, that he should first do ⁱ *Reverence* towards the *Altar*, in the honor of *God*, and after towards the *Stall*, wherein was fixed and set up the *Arms* of the *Sovereign*, aswell and as often at his coming in, as at his going out of the said *Church* or *Chappel*, as also as often as he should pass before the said *Arms*. But ^k *Emperors*, *Kings*, *Princes*, or *Electors*, are excepted, who may in this case so place their *Seats*, and *Stalls*, as it shall seem most convenient to them.

In which Decree (being still in full force) we may observe, first the Injunction upon an absent *Knight*, that doth oblige him to celebrate the *Feast* of *Saint George*, wherever he shall be, even then when the *Sovereign* and the rest of the *Knights-Companions* hold the same; and next, the manner and order thereof, that

that being at large set down, both in reference to the preparations made in the Church, and his own deportment during the whole Ceremony. In relation to which, it is to be understood, that much of the ordering and adding to the glory of the Festival, and the absent Knights peculiar Honor, is left to his own pleasure and disposal; as namely,

1. The 'adorning the Church or Chappel with Arras, or other rich Hangings, and furnishing the Sovereign's Stall; nevertheless with this caution, that it be always prepared on the right hand the entrance into the Choir, but if there be no Choir, then ought a partition of Hangings to be made, reserving an entrance in the middle, and on the right hand a Cloth of State, whereon to be fixed the Sovereign's Arms (impaled with those of St. George) and Stile, the Seat furnished with Cushens, and a Carpet and long Cushen, to lye on the Desk before it.

1 Coll. A. V.
W. vide MS.
pen. Arch. Com.
Anglesey, fol.
237. a.

2. In placing his own Stall (with his Arms over it) at its just distance from the Sovereign's; to which purpose it is necessary, that Garter send him a Scheme of the Stalls on both sides the Choir.

3. In proceeding to the Church, both at 3 a Clock on the Eve of the Feast (where, habited in full Robes, he must behave himself in all things, as if he were at Windsor) and all other times while the Solemnity continues. That he be attended by a convenient number of Gentlemen before him, well habited, with the Officers of his Household, and also his inferior Servants in Liveries; two and two together, according to their Qualities and Degrees, bare-headed; who are to return in the same order as they go; the Gentlemen-Officers also are to go bare-headed, and the Herald, if present, to take place next before the Knights person.

4. In his Dinner on the Feast day, that it be noble, and his Attendance at the Table suitable; and that he dine and sup alone at all times, unless there happen to be a Knight-Companion with him.

5. In his Offering of money, that he make it not only on the Feast day in the morning, but the next morning also, as soon as the first sentence of the Offertory is pronounced.

6. That at Evening Prayer on the Feast day, and also at the Supper following, he observe all things, as on the Eve.

7. In wearing his Habit of the Order, until after Supper on the Eve, and all the Feast day, until supper be ended at night.

8. That on the Morrow after the Feast, he proceed to the Church in his Mantle only, and when Divine Service is finished, then to put it off at the Church door.

And if any thing else, in the before recited Article seem short or obscure, the large account in the Preparations for the Grand Feast, and course to be observed in the celebrations thereof (before laid down and handled) will sufficiently clear and explain, without the assistance of any further Comment.

But here we must note, that though the Statutes seem not to oblige the absent Knights-Companions, to hold the Ceremonies of the Feast, longer than the Evening on the Feast day, yet by the practice of ensuing years, they were extended to the Morrow after, and consequently observed by the absent Knights, so long as the Sovereign and Knights-Companions performed them at Windsor, or elsewhere.

If the absent Knight be a person of eminent Degree, he is to be attended by a Herald, or Pursuivant at Arms, or both, during the Solemnity of the Feast; to add the greater lustre thereto. Thus was ^m Prince Arthur an. 15. H. 7. attended at Hereford; and the like honor was designed to the Earl of Leiceſter, when he kept the Solemnity of the Feast in the Low Countries, and had been performed, but that the Herald dyed before St. George's day.

m Lib. N. pag.
173
n Coll. W. 1e
N. Cl.

The nature of this Officers Employment on such an occasion, will partly appear out of the Instructions, given by ^o Sir Gilbert Dethick Garter (pursuant to the directions of the Statute) to Henry Rees alias Berwick, Pursuivant at Arms, the 3. of April an. 1565. which were to this effect.

o Ex Autogr.
p pen. Rob.
Com. Aylesbur.

1. That he should see a Capital Stall provided for the Sovereign (though not there) with a Cloth of State, and before it a Carpet and Cushen, with

with a Scutcheon of the *Sovereign's Arms*, impaled with those of *St. George* fixed thereon.

2. That the *Knight's Stall* should be decently trimmed, with a Scutcheon of his own *Arms*, fixed at the back of it, and that this Stall should be placed a good distance from the *Sovereign's Stall*, according to the largeness of the *Chappel*.

3. That he should go before the *Knight-Companion*, to and from the *Church*, both on the *Even* of the *Feast*, and *Feast* day, in his *Coat of Arms*; using such Reverence as is meet and convenient, and sit on a Form before the *Sovereign's Stall*.

4. That on the *Feast* day at *Dinner*, after the second *Mess* shall be served up (having on his *Coat of Arms*) he shall proclaim the said *Knight's Stile* in *French*.

5. And lastly, when the *Knight* puts off his *Mantle*, either in the *Church*, or where Service is said, then he to put off his *Coat* also, and return home (in his ordinary Apparel) with him.

SECT. III.

How to be observed in case of Sickneſs.

BUT in case of *sickneſs*, and such as hath confined the absent *Knight* to his Bed, or would not permit him with safety to go out of his Chamber; the custom was to prepare a *Capital stall* for the *Sovereign* of the *Order*, with a Cloth of State, Carpet, Cushens, and a Scutcheon of the Arms of the *Order*, impaled with the Arms of the *Sovereign*, and his *Stile* underneath, in the ^a Chamber where he lay; as also another Stall for himself, placed according to the before mentioned directions, which were there to remain during the *Feast*. In which Room also were the *Divine Offices* celebrated, both on the *Eve*, the *Feast* day, and the *Morrow* after. And if the ^a absent *Knight* were so sick that he kept his Bed, then was his whole *Habit* of the *Order* laid thereon, during the time the rest of the *Knights-Companions* are enjoined to wear theirs, ^c according to the ancient Custom and statutes; and upon this account, *Ambrose* Earl of *Warwick* falling ill at *Greenwich*, when *St. George's* day was there celebrated *an. 30. Eliz.* retired to his Chamber, and there ^d sat in his Robes.

^a Ex MS. per-
gum. pones Jo-
hannem Vin-
cent gen.

^r Ib. see also
Rowes Journ.
pag. 10
^s More Majo-
rum, Lib. C.
pag. 119.

^c Collect. W. le
N. Cl.

SECT. IV.

In what manner the Feast hath been observed by absent Knights.

IN relation to the Celebrations performed by absent *Knights*, the *Black Book* gives us a punctual account in a considerable Precedent; namely, of the *Feast* of *St. George* holden in the Palace of *Hereford*, by ^b Prince *Arthur*, *an. 15. H. 7.* he being then in the Government of his Principality of *Wales*, and had with him Sir *Richard Pool*, one of the *Companions* of the *Order*, then his Highness Chamberlain; this worthy *Knight* took care, that all those things, which the Solemnity of the *Feast* required, and the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* did observe, according to the form of the statutes and accustomed manner, should be most exactly performed; and indeed ^d there was nothing intermitted in the *Mass*, in the first and second *Vespers*, which solemn custom required should be done,

^b Lib. N. p.
123.

done, in Censing, Fuming, Proceeding and Offering, aswell the *Prince* as the said *Sir Richard*, but it was undertook and performed with much exactness.

Besides, the *Princes sword* was born and held before his Stall, and his *Herald* performed his Service with all diligence ; also the *Sovereigns Herald* stood all the while before the *sovereigns* Stall, which was adorned with accustomed Ornaments : and lastly, the ^k *Bishop*, who celebrated Divine Service, had his Seat ^k *Ibid.* p. 174; erected near to the high *Altar*.

But the publick memorials of Sir Henry Sydneys holding two severall Feasts of St. George, the one at *Shrewsbury*, and the other at *London*, is worthy of a place here; since these two Corporations, have caused them to be conspicuously recorded in their *Town Hall*; and from whence I made Transcripts, when I accompanied *William Dugdale* Esq; Norroy King of Arms, in his Visitation of *Shropshire*, An. Dom. 1663.

That at *Shrewsbury*, being written in large Letters, upon a pair of Waincot over the Chimney, in the Chamber of *Concord*, in the *Town-Hall*, is as followeth.

Be it remembred, that in the Year of our Lord 1581. and in the 23d. Year of the Reign of our most dread Sovereign Lady Queen Elizabeth, the Feast of the most noble Order of the Garter, was right honourably kept, in the good and right renowned Town of Salop, by the Right Honourable Sir Henry Sidney, then Lord President of the Council, established in the Principallity of Wales and Marches of the same, one of the Companions of the same Order: the Arms of the Sovereign and others, Kings, Princes, and Nobles, then Installed, in the said Noble Order, were fixed in the Church of the same Town, during the Service and Ceremonies, belonging to the same Order.

Be it further remembred, that at that time then was Elec^ted but not Instal-
led, theſe Princes following, Rudolphus the 2d. of that name Emperor of the
Romans, King of Hungary and Bohemia, Arch-Duke of Aultria, Henry
the 3d. French King, Chriſtian King of Denmark, and the moſt Noble
Prince John Caſimire Duke of Bavaria and Palatine of the Rhien; then be-
ing Bailiffs, William Jones, and William Hering, who together with the
Chieftains of the ſeveral Companies of that good Town, did in moſt decent
ſort attend upon the ſaid Lord Preſident, during the ſaid Feaſt, together
with the Aldermen and Bailiffs, Peers, in their Scarlet Robes, and other
Chieftains.

In the *Gallery* of the *New-House* at *Ludlow* are yet remaining, the several *Scutcheons* of those *Knights-Companions*, which were set up in the Chancel of *St. Lawrence Church* in *Ludlow*, in the 24. Year of *Queen Elizabeth*, when the *Fest* of *St. George* was solemnized there; before which the following memorial is also fairly written.

Be it remembered, that in the Year of our Lord God ----- and in the 24th Year of the Reign of the most Excellent and Famous Princeſs, Elizabeth by the Grace of God, Queen of England, France, and Ireland; The Feaſt of the moſt antient and moſt Noble Order of the Garter, was honourably kept in the Town of Ludlow, at the uſual days for keeping of the ſaid Feaſt, by the Right Honourable Sir Henry Sydney Knight, Lord Preſident of the Council eſtabliſhed in the Principality of Wales and Marches of the ſame, and one of the Companions of the ſame Order. The Arms of the Sovereign, and all the Princes and Nobles, being Companions of the ſame Noble Order, and Enſtalled, were fixed in the Church of the ſaid Town; and there remained during the Ceremonies. And be it further remembered, that before the ſame Feaſt there were Eleſted and not Enſtalled, theſe Princes whoſe names follow, Rudolphus the Second Emperour of the Romans, King of Hungaria and Bohemia, Arch-Duke of Aultria, Henry the Third the French King, Chriſtian King of Denmark, and the moſt Noble Prince John Caſimire Duke of Bavaria,

H h h h

and

and Palatine of the Rhien, ----- manifestly fixed in the Church -----
----- then Bailiffs in their own persons did honour the Feast, with
their attendance.

Moreover the Town of Ludlow, to shew their due respects to Sir Henry Sidney, and readiness to contribute to the Triumphs of this Solemnity, met and drew up the following Order, which we found entred in the Town Register.

10th day of March 1581. an. 24 Eliz.

IT is agreed upon by this Assembly, that Mr. Bayliffs shall call before them, the six persons undernamed of their Brethren, as soon as conveniently may, and they all to confer and lay down a place, how my Lord President shall be gratified by the Town, towards the keeping of St. George's Feast, if it be kept here, and the said Bayliffs and their Associates, have Commission upon their meeting, to call afore them at convenient time, two out of every Occupation in the Town, and confer with them how the charges may be levied, and the same two to be of this Company, or other of the best sort of every occupation.

Thomas Blashfield.
Richard Farr.
Thomas Cauland.
William Poughnell.
Richard Rascoll.
Thomas Langford.
Richard Bayly.

In pursuance of which we also found, there was delivered out of the Treasury to Mr. Bayliffs, the very same day, 10l. and the 18 of April fol. 10l. 19s. 2d. more, towards defraying the charges of such Preparations, as the said Town made, upon that solemn occasion.

1 Grimst. m's
H. R. of the Ne-
therlands, pag.
982.

As to the manner used at the observation of the Feast by a Knight beyond Sea, we have an instance in Robert Earl of Leicester, Lieutenant for Queen Elizabeth, Governour and Captain General of the United Provinces, who kept the Celebration of St. Georges Feast in the Netherlands An. Dom. 1586. of which we have met with these broken Memorials.

m. 5 Collett. W.
n. 1 le N. Cl.

He had a ^m Scutcheon of the Order impaled with the Sovereigns Arms, fixt to the front of his House, so also upon the back of her stall in the Church; and his own Arms at the back of his stall.

o See Wevers
funeral Monu-
ments, p. 676.
Co. 682. Co. MS.
f. 4. penes E. W.
G. fol. 144.
p. 1 Collett. W.
q. 1 le N. Cl.
r.

He Proceeded on Horseback to the Church, William Seager, then Portcullis Pursuivant at Arms, (by his appointment) riding before him wearing a ^o King of Arms Coat, which John Cocke Lancaster Herald, (both of them ^o employed to attend the said Earl) had brought over thither, for that days service, but it seems he dyed a little before St. Georges Day.

After Sermon, Portcullis proceeded before him to the ^p Offering, which the Earl made for the Sovereign and returned, and stood a little while before the Sovereign's stall, and then Offered for himself; which done, he returned by the lower end of the Desk to his own stall, with his due obeysances.

f. 7. l. 3. de
rebus gestis So-
lorum, Lib. 9.
p. 439. R. m.
1578. quarto.
f. 1.
In suis lumini-
bus novae pra-
sentationis ad
parietem, lumi-
nibus.

Service being ended, he returned to his own Lodgings, and there dined.

At the ^q second Course, Portcullis went up before it, between the Gentleman Usher, and proclaimed only the Sovereign's Stile and retired; during which Proclamation, the Earl (sitting at a Table alone, on the left hand of the state) and divers eminent persons (who sat at a side Table) stood up and were bare.

The Sovereign's Trencher was laid under the State, and the whole Service performed to that, with due Reverence, by divers of her Servants there present, and the Earl took his meat therefrom, as by the by.

Lastly, a learned ^c Scotch Historian takes notice, that King James the Fifth, having

having been honored, not only with the *Order of the Garter* by King Henry the Eighth, but next with that other *Order of the Golden Fleece* (by the Emperor Charles the Fifth) and not long after of St. Michael (by the French King Francis the First) kept the several *Feasts* of the *Patrons* of those *Orders*, with great Solemnity an. 1534. And to signify to the several *sovereign's*, as also to proclaim to the world, the great account he made of those *Honors*, he not only adorned himself on those solemn Festivals, with the *Ensigns* of each *Order*, but fixed on the Gates of his Palace at *Lithgow* his Royal Arms, encompassed with the *Collars* of each of them, together with that of St. Andrew, Patron of the Kingdom of Scotland.

SECT. V.

Dispensation for Absence granted during life.

Sometimes upon special favour of the *Sovereign*, and where Age or Infirmitie of any of the *Knights-Companions* hath been made known to him by *Petition*, they have obtained *Letters of Dispensation* for absence, not only from the *Feast* approaching (of which we have before discoursed) but also during life. Such indulgence was granted to the Lord^u *Dacres* an. 26. H. 8: and to the Earl of Derby an. 14. Car. 1. both which *Precedents* we have thought fit to insert in the^w *Appendix*. The like with that to the said Earl of Derby, was likewise granted to the Earl of *Montgrave*, and under the same date, but both upon the following conditions, as they are contained in a Decree passed in *Chapter*, the 18. of April an. 13. Car. 1. which was this,

** That no Dispensation shall be granted, but with condition, that the absent Knight shall send to Garter King of Arms, for his Scutcheons, at the same time that he sends his excuse, and Petition for Dispensation. And shall solemnly keep in his own House or abiding, the Feast, with all the sacred Rites and Ceremonies, in his Robes and other Ornaments, if health permit; and in case of Sicknes, upon his Bed, according to the ancient Statutes.*

This Act was thought of so great importance to be observed, that the then Chancellor was commanded to transcribe and send it (with the *Sovereign's* pleasure) to each of the *Knights-Companions* within the Realm, not only to remind those, who were present at making the Decree, but also to inform the rest of the *Fellowship*, who were absent, of what had been done.

The execution of which command was accompanied with a^z *Postscript* of a Letter, whereby he acquainted them with the *Penalties* they should be liable to, for their neglect and omission of due observation.

And we find, that in the following year, when the *Sovereign* (being at *Berwick*) had prorogued the *Feast* to *Windefor*, the *Letters of Notice*, which Sir *James Palmer* (then Deputy Chancellor) issued out, to the *Knights-Companions*, contained a Clause to the foresaid purpose; ** That those Knights-Companions, who could not then come to Windefor, should take notice of the prorogation, and solemnize the said Feast at their own Houses.*

CHAP. XXIV.

THE
 Degradation
 OF A
 Knight-Companion.

SECT. I.

Of the Degradation of a Knight-Batchellor.

SO heinous an Offence as that of *High Treason*, hath been thought deserving the loss, not only of *Life* and *Estate*, but *Honor* also: and thereupon when Sentence hath been to be given against a *Knight*, for so great a Crime, sometimes *Degradation* from his Degree hath preceded: and this as our Learned *Selden* saith, is done ^a as a respect of Honor to Knighthood in general; lest so much ignominy as accompanied the Judgment for such an Offence, should lye on any that were a Knight, when he suffered it.

^a *Titles of Honor*, pag. 787.

^b *Pag.* 788.

^c *MS. in Offic. Arm. L. 15.* fol. 33.

^d *Honr. Milit. & Civil Lib. 2.* c. p. 13.
^e *Lib. 2. C. 4.*

In the Example of *Sir Andrew Harclay*, created Earl of *Carlisle* by King *Edward* the Second, whose Degradation is reported in the ^b *Titles of Honor*, it may be observed, that the principal part of the Ceremony was, a solemn taking from him his *sword*, and chopping off his *spurs*, the chief *Ensigns* of his Honor. And in that of *Sir Ralph Grey*, *an. 4. E. 4.* (one of whose Crimes was for ^c betraying *Sir John Astley*, a Knight of this Order, into the hands of the Kings Enemies, where he remained Prisoner for many years) besides the striking off his *spurs*, the tearing his *Coat of Arms* from his Body, and putting on another Coat, whereon his Arms were reverse, was appointed to be done; but by the Kings favour, the Judgment was not pronounced: To these, *Sir William Segar* adds the ^d bruising every piece of the *Knights Armor*, and casting it aside: beside which, some ^e other Ceremonies of Degradation are mentioned by him, to have been more anciently used.

SECT.

SECT. II.

The manner of Degradating a Knight-Companion of the Garter.

THE *Ensigns* of this Noble Order, are not to be withdrawn from a *Knight-Companion* so long as he lives, unless he be found guilty of some of those points of *Reproach*, set down in King Henry the Eighth's *Statutes*, to wit, *Herese*, *Treason*, or *flying from Battel*: We also find, that *Prodigality* was made a fourth Point, where a *Knight* had so wasted his *Estate*, that he was not able to support his *Honor*. And the not being a *Gentleman of Blood*, both by Father and Mother, was the pretence, for devesting William Lord Paget, an. 6. E. 6. But *Fellony* comes not within the compass of this *Statute*, as not being particularly specified among the *Reproaches* there reckoned up, and so it was adjudged in a *Chapter* held the 6. of July an. 14. Jac. R. in the case of *Robert Earl of Somerset*, then lately condemned for that Fact; whereupon his *Hatchments* were not removed.

When a *Knight-Companion* is found guilty of any the Offences mentioned in King Henry the Eighth's *Statutes*, he is usually degraded at the next *Chapter* after; and therefore, where the *Sovereign* intends to have this Ceremony put in Execution, after he hath acquainted the *Knight-Companions* therewith, he commands *Garter* to attend such of them, as are appointed to go to the convict *Knight*, who in a solemn manner, first takes from him his *George* and *Ribband*, and then his *Garter*. And at the following *Feast* of St. George (or sooner if the *Sovereign* appoint) Publication of his Crimes and degradation is made by *Garter* (a *Warrant* in the mean time issuing out to him, for taking down the *Achievements* of the *Knight*) in the ensuing order.

First *Garter*, in his *Coat of Arms*, (usually before *Morning Prayer*, if the *Grand Feast*, or *Feast of Installation* be then held) standing on the highest step ascending to the *Brazen Desk*, placed in the middle of the *Choir* in St. George's *Chappel* at *Windefor*, the *Officers of Arms* standing about him, and the *Black Rod* also present, reads aloud the *Instrument* for Publication of the *Knight's Degradation*; a Precedent whereof we have placed in the *Appendix*.

In which form, run all other *Instruments* in this kind, that have come to our view, and only varied in the *Preamble*, where the nature of the Offence is particularly set down for which he hath deserved Degradation.

This being read, one of the *Heralds* deputed thereunto (a Ladder being raised to the backside of the convict *Knight's Stall*, and he, in his *Coat of Arms*, placed there before hand) when *Garter* pronounceth the words, *Expelled and put from among the Arms*, &c. ^m takes his *Crest*, and violently casts it down into the *Choir*, and after that his *Banner* and *Sword*, and when the Publication is read out, all the *Officers of Arms* spurn the *Achievements* out of the *Choir* into the Body of the Church, first the *Sword*, then the *Banner*; and last of all the *Crest*, so out of the *West-Door*, thence to the *Bridge*, and over into the *Ditch*, and thus was it done at the degradation of *Edward Duke of Buckingham* the 8 of June, an. 13 H. 8.

In reference to the degradation of *Thomas Percy Earl of Northumberland*, he was first *Proclaimed Traitor* (the 26 of November an. 12 Eliz.) at *Windefor Castle*: which *Proclamation* was directed to the *Constable* of the *Castle*, and made by sound of a *Trumpet* and the voice of an *Herald*, other of his *Fellows* assisting: and on the day following, the *Sentence* of his degradation was published, and *Chester Herald* (after *Rouge Croix Pursuivant* had read the *Sentence*) threw down the *Achievements*, first his *Banner*, next his *Sword*, then his *Crest*, and lastly his *Helm* and *Mantlets*, which *Garter*, assisted by the *Officers of Arms*, spurned out of the *West-Door* of the *Chappel* into the *Castle Ditch*.

But in the case of *Robert Earl of Essex* (25 of May, an. 43 Eliz.) his *Achievements*

g MS. penes E.
W. G. fol. 153.

* Appendix,
Num.

CLXXXIII.

h Lib. N. pag.
316. vide Col.
168. A. V. W.

i MS. vet. pen.
G. O. F. f. 71. b.

k Num.
CLXXXIV.

l Lib. N. loco
citat.

m Colles: A.
V. W.

o MS. in Offic.
Arm. [M. 6.]
fol. 85.

p Ibid.

q Lib. C. p. 143.

^r *Ibid.* pag. 153. *chievements* were only thrown down; and those of ^r Henry Lord Cobham (12 Febr. an. 1 Jac. Reg.) only spurned out of the Church Door, but by the Kings Clemency not into the ^r Ditch.

But Degradation was not alone thought sufficient, and therefore an. 32 H. 8. it was considered in Chapter, ^r what course should be taken with the Names of such of the Order, as were convicted of High Treason, and whether they should remain in the Registers, or be razed out; for it seemed just, that Traitors, who had deserved to have their *Atchievements* disgracefully thrown down, should also have their *Actions* and Names extinguished, and the Books wherein they were entred, to be esteemed as polluted.

^u *Ibid.* This being debated before the Sovereign: He, keeping a mean between both extreams, determined, ^u That wheresoever the *Actions* and Names of such Offenders should be found, these words [*vah Proditor*] should be written in the Margent; by which means the Registers would be preserved fair, and not defaced with razures and blots.

SECT. III.

Of Restauration into the Order after Degradation.

^w *Reg.* 285; ^{cy} 287. SOME of the *Knight's Companions*, who have injuriously suffered Deprivation of the *Ensigns*, and Degradation from the Order, have lived to enjoy the Honor of Restauration, and both re-elected and re-invested, and their *Atchievements* again set up, as were the Lord Pagits, an. 1 Mar. and the Marquess of Northampton's, an. 1 Eliz. whose Cases we have ^w before Reported.

Another Instance there is of Thomas Howard Duke of Norfolk, who being Degraded by King Edward the Sixth, was, upon Queen Maries's coming to the Crown, restored into this Noble Fellowship, as will fully appear by the Order for his Restauration, which was this,

By the Queen.

Trusty and wellbelovéd we greet you well; And whereas our Right Trusty and right entirely beloved Cousin and Councillour the Duke of Norfolk, for the good and valiant service by him of long time done to the King our Father, of most famous memory King Henry the Eight, as well here within the Realm as abroad with Foreign Princes, both in Peace and in War, and in respect of other his good qualities and vertues, was by our said Father elected into the Company of the most Honourable Order of the Garter, and duly invested in the same, from which nevertheless afterward, in the time of our late Brother King Edward the sixth, whom God assail, the said Duke was by our said late Brother and other the Companions of our said Order of the Garter, through wrong information and accusation cleerly expelled and removed, and his Hatchments to his no small slander and dishonour openly cast down, and taken from the Stall appointed for him in our Chappel at Windsor. We let you wet, that we, minding to do Justice to all men, have sithence our coming to the Government of the Realm, called a Chapter for the redress of the Injuries aforesaid, and such like, and at the same holden at our Mannor of St. James the 27. day of Sept. last, by the advice and consent of the Companions of our said Order, have restored the said Duke of Norfolk to his former room and place, among other the Companions of our said Order, as one that was injuriously put from the same, wherefore like as we have willed him to use and wear the Garter, Collar, George, Robes, and other the Apparel of our said Order, in such sort as he was wont to do before his said wrongful deprivation. So have we also thought

thought good to will and require both you the Register of our said Order, to cancel and utterly to put out of your Register all Writings, Records, or other mynynments making mention of the said deviation: And you also Garter King of Arms for our said Order, to see his Hatchments honourably set up in the place appointed for them, and his Banner to be of such Arms as his Father bare and had set up aforetime, being late Knight of the said Order, there to remain and continue among the Hatchments of other our Companions of our said Order, according to the ancient Ordinances and laudable usages heretofore accustomed, at the setting up whereof, our Pleasure is these our Letters shall be openly read, for a more plain Declaration of our pleasure in the premises. And these our Letters shall be to you and either of you, for the doing of the premises, and every part thereof a sufficient Warrant and discharge. Given under our Signet of our said Order, at our Palace of Westminster the 7. of March, the first year of our Reign.

To our Trusty and Well-beloved the Dean of our Chappel at Windsor, Register of our Order of the Garter, and Sir Gilbert Dethick alias Garter Knight King at Arms for our said Order, and to either of them.

CHAP. XXV.

Honors

PAID TO DECEASED

Knights-Companions.

SECT. I.

Of the celebration heretofore of Masses, for the deceased Knights-Companions.

WE observe it to have been the Custom in all Religious, and most Military Orders, that, *when any of the Knights departed this life, the several Members of them should contribute their devotions, for the benefit of their departed Souls, according to their different qualifications; some in celebrating Masses, or causing them to be celebrated; and others in the recitation of Divine Offices, and

*a A. Mendo
Disq. 16. n. 2.
9. &c.*

and *Alms-giving*; as it were to satisfy the World of the honor they had, from their being enrolled in their several *Fraternities* and *Societies*.

But the *Order* of the *Garter* hath outv'd all others in this particular; for as the reputation which the *Knights-Companions*, while living, derived from their admission into so renowned and illustrious a Body, specially *Knights-Subjects*, who were thereby advanced to a Fellowship with their *King* and *Supreme Lord*, and made *Companions* to *Emperors*, *Kings*, and *Princes*, was very great; so were the several Honors paid to their memory after their decease, particularly in the Royal Chappel of *St. George* at *Windefor*, very remarkable; not including the Solemnities at their publick *Funerals*, many times hapning elsewhere; and these we find reducible to five heads. (1.) The number of *Masses* celebrated for their Souls departed. (2.) The fastning *Plates* of their Arms, at the back of their *Stalls*. (3.) Offering up their *Achievements* at the *Altar*, and (4.) Depositing *Mantles* in the *Chapter-house* at *Windefor*.

As to the celebrating of *Masses* for the deceased *Knights-Companions*, though it might suffice to say, that it was done consonantly to the perswasion of those times, yet we shall not think it much to give the reasons thereof, as we find them laid down in the *Preface* to the *Black-Book* of the *Order*, in direct relation to this solemn Ceremony performed for them.

^b It was the general opinion then, That *Monasteries*, *Convents*, and *Colledges*, were founded out of this motive, that, among devout, charitable, and well disposed *Christians*, there should be a continual harmony of Prayer, as well for the living as the dead. For the *Living*, that, in Peace and War, they might manage all their Affairs with piety, prudence, and good success: For the *Dead*, that having obtained remission, they might reign together in eternal bliss. ^c And not knowing what dangers might surround them, the living thought themselves obliged the more fervently to assist them with their Prayers; supposing it uncertain, whether they were in glory or torment. ^d That by pious Prayers, they might endeavour to turn Gods vengeance, due for the many sins committed in this life, into clemency; inasmuch as continual supplication was indeed very prevalent, and might reach the ears of the Almighty. That this kind of commemoration moved the greatest *Princes*, to be so expensive in sumptuous Structures, for the assembling such as should continually pray therein, as also inferior persons, according to their abilities, to promote their own and others salvation. And that the *Princes* reflecting on the uncertainty of their own lives, and considering, that many were in their Services cut off, amidst the hazards of War, and how doubtful such a departure was, endeavoured to assist them in the next World, since they could no longer do it in this; which, if by any thing, was to be performed by Prayer. Out of these perswasions, that this was available, they had their recourse thereto, and so began to institute persons and places, for the making of Prayers to that end.

With what hath been delivered concerning the motive of this Office for the dead, it may be also observed, that the *Founder* of the *Order* admitted into its Institution, the commemoration of the departed Souls of the *Knights-Companions*; and thereupon it came to be ordained, ^e That assoon as the Sovereign should have true and certain intelligence brought him of the Death of any of the *Knights-Companions*, he should cause to be celebrated for the Soul of a Defunct Knight a thousand Masses.

And that all the rest of the *Knights-Companions* might (upon like notice) contribute to the relief of the Soul of their deceased Fellow and Companion, the Proportions were in like manner stated in the same Article of the *Statutes*, thus.

A Stranger King	800.	} Masses.
The Prince	700.	
Every Duke	600.	
Each Earl	500.	
Every Baron	400.	
And a Knight Bachelor	100.	

Afterwards

^c *Stat.*
H. 5. Art. 17
Lib. N. pag.
223.

Afterwards, when the Titles of *Marquess* and *Viscount* were introduced among us, the proportion of *Masses* imposed upon the former was 450. as being a Degree of Dignity between those of a *Duke* and an *Earl*, on the latter 250. And the numbers of all these *Masses* were rated proportionable to the *Fees*, enjoined to be paid, for setting up the *Knights-Companions Achievements* over their *Stalls*.

Now to prevent the neglect in performance of this duty incumbent upon the *Sovereign*, and surviving *Knights-Companions*, by this Article of the *Statutes*; it was thought fit to set down for penalty, a compleat & doubling of the number of those *Masses*, to which at first they were enjoined (according to their qualities and Degrees) if they were not celebrated within three Months, after notice given of the deceased *Knights* Death, as aforesaid. And if the neglect extended to half a year together, they were obliged, to quadruple their number, and so from time to time, until the years end. But if after all this, they should not within the whole year perform what they were so enjoined; the *Statute* further bound them, to double the *Masses* from year to year, after the aforesaid manner.

But to provide against any omission of the *Sovereigns* part, it was added to the *Registers* Duty, an. 31 H. 8. to put the *Sovereign* in mind, of giving Order herein, if at any time it should happen, to be forgotten by him; to the end he might forthwith take care to have the *Masses* celebrated, according to the said Injunction.

And because it was at length thought convenient, to withdraw this burthen from *stranger Kings* and *Princes*, that branch of the *Statute* relating to them, was made null, and in a *Chapter* held at *Windefor*, the 8. of *May*, an. 13 H. 6. the same was by the *Sovereign* placed upon himself and his Successours, *Sovereigns* of this most Noble Order.

But because all the surviving *Knights-Companions*, might the better perform this Injunction, and cause the full number of *Masses* to be celebrated, care was taken by the *Sovereign* to send *Letters* to every one of them, (at first, as well to *Knights-Strangers* as *Subjects*) immediately after the decease of any *Knight*, to signify the time of his Death, and put them in mind of the Injunction, which the *Statutes* laid upon them. Of which *Letters*, some *Precedents* may be seen in the *Appendix*.

The difference between those *Letters* sent to the *Knights-Companions* beyond Sea, and these at home, was only this, that in these directed to the latter, (in regard of their nearness to the Court, and consequently in greater readiness to appear at an Election.) The *Letters* contained a summons also, to come to the Election of a new *Knight*, on such a day as the *Sovereign* had therein appointed.

And it seems it was the custom for those *Religious Houses*, whether the *Sovereign* sent directions, to celebrate either part or all the *Masses* due to each deceased *Knight*, to make a formal return in writing, under their Common Seal, of what they had done therein: which *Certificates*, were, also by the *Register*, reported in *Chapter* to the *Sovereign* or his *Lieutenant*. For an. 18 H. 8. we find him acquaint the *Sovereigns* *Lieutenant*, with several such *Certificates*, signifying the Celebration of 1000. *Masses* (upon the *Sovereigns* account) for each of these *Knights* defunct; namely the *Earls* of *Arundel*, *Shrewsbury*, *Essex*, and *Rutland*, the *Viscount Fitz-walter*, and *Lord Abergavenny*, and at other times, (sitting the *Chapter*) there were brought in such like authentick *Letters*, certifying the celebration of the *Masses*, for the Souls of other defunct *Knights*.

This course of celebrating these *Masses* for defunct *Knights*, was constantly observed and so continued, until the 32d. year of King *Henry* the Eighth; at which time, upon a motion made concerning those suffrages for the Dead, in a *Chapter* held in his Palace at *Westminster*, on the 24th of *May*, in the aforesaid year this Decree passed. That every one of the *Knights-Companions*, in lieu of the said *Masses*, should for the future, after the Death of any of their Brethren, according to the rates of their Degrees hereafter mentioned, and immediately upon

g (E. 3. Stat.
h) Art. 17.
i) H. 5. Stat.
k (Art. 17. &
Lib. N. p. 223.

l Lib. N. pag.
109.

n Numb.
CLXXXV.
CLXXXVI.
CLXXXVII.

o Numb.
CLXXXVIII.
p Lib. N. pag.
254.
q Lib. N. p.
254. &
Regist. Char-
ter. fol. 65.

r Ibid. p. 171.
268. & 272.

s Lib. N. p.
u 283. See
also H. 8. Stat.
in English. Art.
18.

demand made for the same, by the Register and Dean of Windsor, or one of them, pay the several sums of money here specified.

	l.	s.	d.
" The Sovereign,	c3	c6	c8.
A Stranger King,	06	08	04.
The Prince,	c5	16	08.
A Duke,	05	00	00.
A Marquess,	03	16	00.
An Earl,	02	10	00.
A Viscount,	01	01	c8.
A Baron,	01	13	04.
A Batchellor Knight,	00	16	08.

The monies collected upon this Account (called *Obit monies*) were by the
 v. Lib. N. p. 283. aforesaid Decree, appointed ^w to be distributed and employed in *Alms Deeds*; of which sort, (as they are there mentioned) are the ^x reparation of High-ways, the relief of the Poor, and other things of like nature, as the Sovereign should from time to time limit and appoint.

y Ibid. And of the ^y receipt of these sums, and their disbursements, it was also decreed, That the Dean and Register, or either of them, should yearly in Chapter, present his Account to the Sovereign under the penalty of Ten pounds, to be imposed, for such like use, for every such default. And, ^z that Knight-Companion whose portion did appear to be then unpaid, should by way of penalty or fine, add unto his former duty, another third part of the same; and so for every year that he should be behind, to pay a third part more, than he was at first enjoined to pay, according to the rate before set down.

This charitable distribution, in a Chapter held at Greenwich, the 24. of April, an. 5. E. 6. was enlarged to the ^a relief and succour of the Poor, where most need was, in the Town of Windsor, and other Towns, Villages, and Places, at and by the discretion of the Dean of Windsor, ^b he advising with some honest men, who could best give an account of such as were truly poor and indigent.

To the bringing in of these Collections, the Sovereigns have sometimes vouchsafed to cast their eyes, and an. 1. & 2. Ph. & Mar. by an Order in Chapter, a ^c Scedule was appointed to be made, of all the monies due and in arrear, upon the decease of Knights-Companions, to the end they might be employed to publick and pious uses.

d Lib. R. p. 87. But though the foresaid Decree was confirmed by ^d King Edward the Sixth, Queen Mary, and Queen Elizabeth, yet for many years, had the Collection of these *Obit monies* been neglected, even till the 9. of King Charles the First;

e Ibid. pag. 85. and then the noble Earl of ^e Portland, inflamed with zeal, for the restoring of so pious a work, did in full Chapter held at Windsor, on the ^f 5. of Nov. in the aforesaid year, put the Sovereign in mind of the Decrees, anciently made in this case. Whereupon it was ordained by the Sovereign, with the consent of all the Knights-Companions present, ^g That the said Constitution, so honorable and charitable in it self, and to which they were allsworn, at their entrance into the Order, should be revived, and put in practice, and for ever hereafter observed, under the penalty contained in the statutes, both towards the Knights that were to pay the same, and towards the Dean of Windsor, who was to collect it: And further,

h i Ibid. p. 87. ^h That the same should begin for the five Knights, whose Achievements were as that Feast offered: that is to say, for the King of Sweden, the Prince Elector Palatine, the Earls of Northumberland, Banbury, and Rutland. And concerning ⁱ Stranger Princes, it pleased the Sovereign to express himself, That, as by the Statutes they are left to perform these payments by themselves, if they would, so, if the same were not done by them, that then, and thenceforward the same should be paid by the Sovereign himself.

The Sovereign, whose total for these five deceased Knights, amounted to 129 l. 3 s. 4 d. caused the same to be paid to Doctor Christopher Wren, the then Register

Register of the Order: so did the Earls of Arundel and Surrey, Salisbury, Dorset, Holland, Berks, Portland, and Lindsey, the Total of each of theirs amounting to 12l. 10s. But from the rest, (as the said Register himself complained in his Letters to Sir Tho. Rowe, the then Chancellor of the Order) all his endeavours could not obtain their proportions.

^k Dated 24.
May 1637.

Afterwards, all the Sums of money, to be collected by vertue of this Decree, (together with the Knights-Companions duties, at their first entrance into this Order) were employed, towards the providing Plate for the Altar, within St. George's Chappel in Windesor Castle; of which we have^m already treated.

^l Ex Coll. B.
Dr. H. Chr. Wren
super Ord. Re-
gist.
^m Chap. 19.
Sect. 6.

SECT. II.

Of fixing on the Stalls, Plates of their Arms, and Stiles.

THE next thing, provided for by the Statutes of Institution, was the deceased Knights Honor; in commemoration whereof, among other things conducting thereunto, it was ordained, * That when any one of the first Founders should dye, there should be made in metal a Scutcheon of his Arms, with his Helme or Crest, and fastned at the back of his Stall, for a mark of Honor to him that bore them. ^b And in like manner, that their Successors, should have a like Scutcheon fixed on the backs of their Stalls; and to difference them, from those of the first Founders, they were appointed to be made in bigness, ^c less than theirs, and to be placed somewhat underneath them.

^a R. 3. } Stat.
H. 5. } Art. 23
¹ Ord. Stat. in
Bibl. Hatton.
Art. 23.
^b E. 3. }
H. 5. }
Stat. Art. 23.

But this Article relates only to the Knights-Companions, not to the Sovereigns of this most Noble Order; nor do we find, that any of them had Plates of their Arms and Stiles set upon the back of their Stalls, in manner as is before prescribed, to the rest of the Knights-Companions.

King Henry the Eighth in his Body of Statutes, alters this Article in three particulars; first, as to the time of setting up their Plates, he appoints it to be (not after their death, but) ^d within a year after the Installation of every Knight-Companion: Secondly, as to the nature of the Metal, that it may be such ^e as the Knight shall please himself: And lastly, as to the size, though he also restrains the Knights Subjects to a lesser, than those of the first Founders, yet gives he liberty to Knights Strangers, to use their Plates and fashions at pleasure.

^d Art. 25.
^e f

As to the first of these, we find not, but that it hath been duly observed. But the last (the size of the Plates) as will appear upon sight, hath been little regarded: For the very Plates of those Knights, who were installed soon after the confirmation of these Statutes, and thence downwards, are bigger than those of the first Founders. As to the other, relating to the Metal they are off, it is to be acknowledged, that the succeeding Knights-Companions, did prudently follow the example of their Predecessors, who appointed their Plates to be of Copper, and thereby unexpectedly defeated the design of Avarice and Rapine. Of which we have an instance in the Duke of Wirtemberg's Plate, for that being of Silver and large withal, gave so great a temptation, that in the late Wars it was forced from the back of the Stall whereto it was fixed, with some difficulty sure, since they could not get it thence, without carrying away some part of the Waincot along with it.

But if the Metal of these Plates, were of small value, the workmanship about them, was extraordinary, especially of late; the Plate it self being gilt over, and the colours of the Armory and Supporters richly enamelled: all which, though it added much lustre to the Shield, yet did it nothing contribute to the advantage of the Thief.

In tract of time, many of these noble and remarkable Memorials were by sacrilegious hands torn off and imbezelled; which the late Sovereign of ever

pious memory having taken notice of, and desirous to put a stop to a mischief, not in his power to prevent, as also to preserve the remembrance of the precedent *Knights-Companions*, commanded the Dean of *Windsor* to describe the Stiles of those that remained in a *Book*, which he accordingly did, and laid it up in the *Colledge*. But what became of this *Book*, our most diligent enquiry, could never find out. So that in *May, An. Dom. 1659.* by the civil permission of Colonel *Whichcott*, then Governour of *Windsor Castle*, all we could do, was, to draw the *Arms* and *copy* out the *Stiles*, engraven on the *Plates*, then remaining (whilst Mr. *Wineflans Holler* was employed by us to take several *Profpects* of the *Castle* and *Chappel*) from which, we have drawn these following observations.

g MS. in Offic.
Arm. M. 14.
fil. 49. b.

First, That for many years after the *Institution* of the *Order*, the *Plate* whereon the *Shield* was engraven, bore no other *Inscription*, but the deceased *Knights* name set at the foot thereof, under the *Scutcheon* of his *Arms*. Afterwards his *Chief Title* of *Honour* began to be added, though now and then in these first and elder times, both were omitted, as also their *Crests*. But about the beginning of King *Henry* the Eighth's Reign, not only the *Knights* chief *Title*, but all other his *Titles* of *Dignity*, whether *Honorary*, or *Officiary*, (and every thing in that kind due) were drawn together in one *Inscription*, concluding with that of *Knight* of this most Noble *Order*, and which, about the same time, the *Knights-Companions* used to insert into both publick and private *Instruments* of writing, wherein any of them were concerned, a custom observed by the *Knights* of other *Sovereign Orders* abroad. For in an *Instrument*, dated at *Bulloign*, the 20th of *Febr. an. 1549.* by the *Noblemen* and others that were appointed to treat of a *Peace*, between King *Edward* the Sixth, and the French King *Henry* the Second, we find, that such of them, as were *Knights* of the *Orders* of either *Kingdom*, had the additions of their *Orders*, (as also the *Register* of the *Order* of *St. Michael*, that title of his *Office*) joyned to their other *Titles*, in this manner.

John Earl of *Bedford*, *Knight* of the *Order*.

William Pagit, *Knight* also of the *Order*.

Francis de Mountmorency Seignior de *Rocheport*, *Knight* of the *Order* of *France*.

Gaspard de Colligny Seignior de *Chastillon*, *Knight* also of the *Order*.

Guillame Rochetell Seignior de *Saffy*, one also of the French Kings Council, chief Secretary, and *Regisler* of the *Order*.

At first, the *Knights-Companions* gave their *Paternal Coats of Arms*, singly and without any *Quarterings*, but towards the beginning of King *Henry* the Fifths Reign, they began to add their *Quarterings*, as may appear from the *Scutcheons* of *Hugh* Lord *Burnell*, who died *an. 9 H. 5.* Sir *Lewis* Robessart Lord *Bourchier*, *Robert* Lord *Willoughby*, and others.

b Lib. N. p. 67.

Yet was not the same generally used, but left to the pleasure of the *Knights-Companions*: But of latter times, this very thing was thought of such concernment, and honour, that where a *Knight* hath been elected, who wanted *Quarterings*, the *Soveraigen* hath been pleased to grant him another *Coat of Arms*, to quarter with his *Paternal Coat*, lest otherwise his *Banner* (which ought to hang over his *Stall*) should seem too naked: as in the Case of *Robert* Viscount *Rochester*, and *Thomas* Earl of *Kelley*, in the Reign of King *James*.

Shortly after the beginning of the Reign of King *Henry* the Eighth, the *Knights* compassed their *Shields*, with the *Royal Garter*; and thereon (if *Noblemen*) placed the *Coronet* belonging to their *Dignity*, continuing the use ever since. Thus adorned do we find the *Scutcheon* of *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, elected in the Reign of King *Edward* the Fourth, and yet we do not observe it used in all the Reign of King *Henry* the Seventh. For though a *Plate* for *Franke* van *Hall*, (a *Knight* elected by the *Founder*) is hitherto standing in his *Stall* at *Windsor*, surrounded with a *Garter*, yet is not this *Plate* the workmanship of that Age, but engraven and set up of late times; as may easily be observed, from the work it self.

As touching *Supporters*; tis true, we observe two *Plates* to which *Supporters* are

are added, the one of *John Beaufort* the first Duke of *Somerset* of that name, elected an. 20 H. 6. the other of *Anthony Woodvill* Earl *Rivers*, elected an. 5. E. 4. and besides these, until the Reign of King *Henry* the Eighth, there is not one other example. But then it grew into a common usage; as also the engraving their peculiar *Mottoes* or *Devises* upon the Plates.

SECT. III.

The Offering of Atchievements.

A Third honour done to the defunct *Knight*, is a most solemn Offering up of his *Atchievements* at the High *Altar*, according to the magnificence of so great an *Order*; namely the *Banner* of his Arms, his *Sword*, his *Helmet*, and *Crest*, with its *Mantlings*: all which had been set up over his *Stall*, when he was Installed.

The Ceremony of Offering these *Ensigns*, does not appear to have been so Ordained at the Institution of the *Order*, but rather an additional honor, instituted by King *Henry* the Fifth, and the manner and order thereof, set down in the 14th Article of his body of *Statutes*.

This solemn Ceremony is local to the *Chappel* of *St. George*, within the *Castle* of *Windefor*, and not to be celebrated, until certain notice be given to the *Sovereign* of the *Knights-Companions* Death, or that he shall receive a *Certificate* thereof. This appears in the case of the Duke of *Ferrara*; where at the Feast of *St. George*, an. 20 H. 7. the vulgar report run for current, that he was dead, nevertheless^a because the *Sovereign* had not then received any *Certificate* of the same, his *Atchievements* were not Offered up at that Feast.

There fell out a question, at the Feast of *St. George* held at *Windefor*, the 23d. of *May*, an. 1 E. 6. which held some debate, viz.^b whether the *Atchievements* of King *Henry* the Eighth, which yet hung over the *Sovereigns Stall*, should be taken down and Offered at the *Mass* of *Requiem* ensuing, or not? in regard his *Banner*, *Sword*, *Helm*, and *Crest*, with *Mantles*, had been offered up the 16th of *Febr.* before, at his Interment within that *Chappel*: whereupon it was determined, c That the said *Atchievements* should not again be Offered, but remain over the *Sovereigns Stall* for his Son King *Edward* the Sixth.

The *Relator* for justifying the legality of this determination, saith, there was found a like Precedent, in the case of King *Henry* the Sixth, who lyeth buried in that *Chappel*; but we suppose him mistaken, and that instance (being in truth much different from that of King *Henry* the Eighth,) not well considered by him: For the case was this; When King *Edward* the Fourth came to the Crown, he thought it unfit, that the *Atchievements* of King *Henry* the Sixth (who could not be accounted *Sovereign* of this most Noble *Order*, because no longer King of *England*) should be continued over his Stall. They therefore by the express command of King *Edward* the Fourth, signified by^d Letters sent to his *Deputy* and the *Knights-Companions*, were by *Garter* taken down and carried^e out of the *Choir* into the *Vestry*, and, in their place were set up the new *Atchievements* of King *Edward* the Fourth, and this was done at the Feast of *St. George* held at *Windefor* an. 1. E. 4. and long before the Death of King *Henry* the Sixth, which when it hapned, he was first buried at *Chertsey Abbey* in *Surrey*, and by King^f *Richard* the Thirds Command Reinterred on the Southside of the High *Altar*, in *St. Georges Chappel* at *Windefor*, and therefore this cannot sute with King *Henry* the Eighths Case, whose *Atchievements* were not taken down at all.

But when the *Sovereigns* of this most Noble *Order* are not interred at *Windefor*, then are their *Atchievements* offered up at the next ensuing Feast, according to the usual manner, as were those of Queen *Elizabeth*, which the

Blow
Book

^a Lib. N. p. 178.
See also Tho.
Wriothesley's
old MS. penes
W. le N. Cl.
pag. 7.
^b 5 Collet
^c 7 prefat. W.
le N. Cl. Vide
etiam MS. A.
penes E. W. G.
fol. 12.

^d Lib. N. pag.
e 126.

^f Concilia Bri-
tann. Vol. 2. f.
712. & 713.

* Lib. C. p. 152
H. 8. an. 25.
† M. penes E. W.
G fol. 155.

g MS. pen Ed
Fauconbridge
gen.

h Lib. N. p.
i 66, vide
H. 8. Stat. Art.
12.

k H. 5. Stat.
Art. 14. vide
porey Collect.
W. le N. Cl. &
MS. in Offic.
Arm. [H. 2.
fol. 8. b.]

l Lib. N. p. 67.

m Ex Collect.
n R. C. Cl.
fol. 29.

o 75. pag. 33.
p vide etiam
lib. C. p. 111.
111. 1. 1. 155.
140. 164.

q Lib. C. p.
r 90.

t MS. fol. penes
prof. W. le N.
Cl. fol. 12.
u MS. f. 18. b.

v Ex Collect.
prof. R. C. Cl. f.
25. fol. an. 14.
F. 17.

w MS. f. l. pen
E. W. G. Ex
Lib. C. p. 173.

Book notes to be done at * Morning Prayer, the 11. of July, an. 1. Jac. R. The Lanner being offered by the Earl of Nottingham Lord Admiral (then the sovereign's Lieutenant) and the Lord Buckburgh, Lord Treasurer; the Sword by the Earls of Shrewsbury, and Cumberland; and the Helm and Crest, by the Earls of Northumberland, and Worcester; and also of King James her Successor, an. 1 Car. I. both these Sovereigns being buried at Westminster.

As to the time for performing this Ceremony, it was ordained to be on the Morrow after the Feast, when the Mass was sung, for the soul of the Knights-Companions, and of all the Faithful deceased; and before the Offering of Money. Thus was it ordered even, in the first precedent we have of this solemn Ceremony, and so was it duly and constantly performed in succeeding times, till that of the Reformation, at which the Mass of Requiem being abolished, this Solemnity was nevertheless performed in the Morning Service on the Morrow, immediately after the Offertory. But after Queen Elizabeth had removed the Feasts of St. George from Windsor, and left those of Installation only to be held there, that Solemnity was commonly dispatched in one day, and the Achievements of the defunct Knights offered, before they went out of the Choir, as in the 16. year of her Reign, at the Installation of the Earls of Derby and Pembroke, when as soon as the Morning Service was ended, in which the Ceremony of Installation was performed, the Commissioners, appointed for that Solemnity, came down from their Stalls, and offered the Achievements of the Earl of Derby, Lord William Howard of Effingham, and Lord Chandos.

And this was the first time, we observe this Ceremony to have been translated from the Morrow after the Feast of St. George, to any other time; and the ancient rule (as to the time) being thus broken, was never after restored, but generally thence forward, the Offring of the defunct Knights Achievements was performed the very same Morning, wherein the Elect-Knights were Installed. For the Installation being fully completed, towards the end of the second Service, viz. at the time of the Offertory, the Achievements were offered, after which, succeeded the Offring of Money.

And yet once, when the Solemnity of Installation was celebrated at Evening Prayer, being that of Frederick the Second King of Denmark, and John Casimire Prince Palatine of the Rhyne, the 12. of January an. 25. Eliz. immediately after their Proctors had taken possession of their Stalls, and an Anthem been sung, the Achievements of Maximilian the Emperor, Emanuel Duke of Savoy, Francis Duke of Montmorency, Henry Earl of Arundel, and Walter Earl of Essex, were with wonted honor, as the Statutes of the Order required, severally Offered; but not without the sad and sorrowful view of all the Standards by.

Sometime before the day was thus changed, an intermixture of both the Offerings together, viz. of Money and Achievements began to be introduced; when after the Offertory was read, the Sovereign's Lieutenant descended from his Stall, and proceeded to the Altar, and there Offered both Gold and silver for the sovereign, and so returned to his Seat; after which, the Offering of the defunct Knights Achievements began, and that Ceremony being ended, the Sovereign's Lieutenant proceeded again to the Altar, and there offered Money for himself; and lastly, all the rest of the Knights-Companions present offered Money in order. Thus we find these Ceremonies managed an. 5. Eliz. at the Offering of the Achievements of the Lord Grey, and an. 6. Eliz. when the Achievements of the Earls of Westmerland and Rutland, and the Lord Piget, were offered; the Earl of Arundel being the Sovereign's Lieutenant at both these Feasts. But not long after, this course was altered in part, and the Lieutenant Offered not for the Sovereign, till after such time as the Achievements of the defunct had been completely offered.

And albeit the day was thus changed, for performance of this Ceremony, yet was not the Ceremony it self begun till after the Installation was finished, that Solemnity having at all times the precedency; until an. 9. Jac. R. when he, observing a kind of incongruity in the order of the Ceremony, namely to Install a new

a new Knight (and who, being thus installed, frequently became one of those Knights, that offered part of the defunct Knights *Atchievements*, as may be seen in divers and sundry Examples) before his Predecessor had been fully discharged of his Stall, gave order for Offering the *Atchievements* of * Sir Henry ^{x Ibid.} Lea, the Lord Scroop, Viscount Bindon, and the Earl of Dunbar, first, and before the Instalment of the Elect Knights, Charles Duke of York, Tho. Earl of Arundel, and Robert Viscount Rochester, which was accordingly performed; as also at the Installation of ^y Frederick Count Palatine of the Rhine, and Henry Prince of Orange, an. 10. Jac. R.

And two years after, at the Installation of the Earl of Rutland, Sir George ^{a Ibid.} Villars (afterwards created Duke of Buckingham) and Viscount Lisle, the Lord ^b Admiral going out of the Chaire, to fetch in the said Earl of Rutland, to his Installation (according to the old manner, before the Offering of the *Atchievements*, and as had been done the year before) the Sovereign remanded him, ^{c Lib. C. p. 1} and again ^d ordered, That the *Atchievements* of the Earl of Shrewsbury should ^{d MS.} be first Offered, before any of the Elect Knights should be Installed.

Not long after, it was thought convenient, to perform this Ceremony on the Eve of the Feast, presently after the first Vespers begun, and next to proceed on with the Installation of the Elect Knight, whereby as much as possible, the Stalls of the Knights-Companions might be supplied, and consequently the places among them filled up, in all the rest of the Solemnities of the Feast: Thus was it ordered, at the Installation of ^e Marquess Hamilton, an. 21. Jac. R. when the ^{e Lib. 3: f} *Atchievements* of the Earl of Exeter were Offered. In like manner, the following year, were the *Atchievements* of the ^f Duke of Lenox first offered, and an. 4. ^{f Ibid. pag. 18} Car. I. those of the ^g Duke of Brunswick, and the Earls of Suffolk and Leicester, before the King of Sweden, Prince of Orange, and Earl of Suffolk were installed; and at ^h all times afterwards during that pious Kings Reign, the Offering of *Atchievements* was the first Ceremony performed on the Eve of the Feast, next after the decease of a Knight, though no Installation followed; as were those of the Earl of Carlisle, an. 13. Car. I. and of the Earl of Kelly, in the 15. year of the same Sovereign. ^{h Ibid. pag. 61} ^{84. 127. vide etiam Palmers Journ. pro an. 1639. pag. 19.}

But if at that time any of the Elect-Knights were introduced into the Chaire, before the Offering of *Atchievements* began, they were appointed to stand there, ^{i Lib. R. p. 90.} under the Stalls designed for them, till that Ceremony was finished. ^{sub finem.}

Thus the practice continued, of Offering the defunct Knights *Atchievements*, before the Ceremony of Installation began; from the 9. year of King James until an. 15. of the present Sovereign, when it was performed, at the time anciently accustomed; for the Prince of Denmark (by his Proctor Sir George Carteret) and the Duke of Monmouth were both Installed, before the first Vespers began, and the *Atchievements* of Bernard de Foix Duke of Espernon, and Edward Count Palatine of the Rhine, were not Offered till the Morrow after the Feast day, immediately before Divine Service began; so also was it observed at the Feast held an. 23. Car. 2.

As to the manner and order of this Ceremony, among other Institutions of King Henry the Fifth, it is thus appointed, ^m That, as often as through the vacancy in H. 5. Stat. of any Stall, the Swords, Helms, with the rest of the *Atchievements* ought to be ^{Art. 14. unde} Offered, the Sword of the deceased Knight shall be first Offered, being carried up ^{port. Lib. N. pag. 65.} to the high Altar, by two of the Knights-Companions, whom the Sovereign or his Deputy shall assign to that purpose, and afterwards the Helm, with the Crest and Mantlings (for which we sometimes find one general word [*Insignia*] used) ^{n Lib. N. pag. 101. & C. pag. 131. 140. & 169.} by two other Knights-Companions, named also by the Sovereign or his Deputy; and this Offering is to be made for them, ^o in the order as they were Installed, not as they died. ^{o Lib. R. p. 84.}

But of the Offering of a defunct Knights Banner, we find no express mention, till the 18. year of King Henry the Seventh, at which time the ^p Banner of the Lord Brook was Offered, by Sir Edward Poynings, and Sir Richard Pool; his Sword by the Earl of Surrey and Lord Strange; and in the last place his Helm, with its Appendices, by the before named Sir Edward Poynings, and Sir Richard Pool:

^{p Lib. N. p. 175.}

Foot: But afterwards the direction for Offering this *Ensign* of the defunct Knights honor, was taken into King *Henry* the Eighth's body of *Statutes*.

q Art. 12.

r Ibid.

r s Lib. R. p. 18.

And note, that since the *Offering* of the *Banner* was introduced, it was (in the order of *Ceremony*, and according to the before mentioned *Precedent*) to be offered first, and so hath it been observed; only once we find this course inverted, viz. an. 22. Jac. R. (but upon what account there is no mention) where, at the *Offering* of the Duke of *Lenox* his *Atchievements*, the *Helm* and *Crest* were offered in the first place, the *Sword* in the second, and the *Banner* in the third.

Immediately after the entrance of the before mentioned *Constitution* of King *Henry* the Fifth, in the *Black Book*, a *Precedent* for the order of this *Ceremony* doth also follow, which extended it self to future times, and was thus, w Lib. N. p. 67. w On the *Morrow* after the *Feast* of *St. George* (an. 9. H. 5.) the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* assembled according to custom, to celebrate the *Mas* pro defunctis, at which time the *Sword* of *Thomas Duke* of *Clarence* (who was slain at s Tussell Hist. p. 92. s Bouz-y-bridge, in his return out of *Anjou*, on 1 Easter Eve preceding) was born to the *Altar* and offered up, by *John Duke* of *Bedford*, and *Humfrey Duke* of *Gloucester* (Brothers to the defunct Duke) but his *Helm* with its *Appendices*, were offered by the hands of the *Sovereign*, and the said Duke of *Bedford*.

Besides this honor, thus paid to the deceased Duke of *Clarence*, there past the like at that time, upon several other defunct *Knights-Companions*, namely on 2 Sir *John Grey*, whose *Sword* was offered up by *Sir Thomas Erpingham*, and *Sir Walter Hungerford*, and his *Helm* and *Crest* by *Richard Earl* of *Warwick*, and the *Lord Fitz Hugh*; and next on the 3 Lord *Burnell*, whose *Sword* was offered by *Sir Lewis Robessart*, and *Sir Simon Felbrig*; and his *Helm*, &c. by *Sir John Cornwall*, and *Sir John Robessart*. In the fourth place, the *Sword* of the 4 Lord *Cameux*, was offered up by *Sir Lewis Robessart*, and 5 Sir *Here Tank Clux*, and his *Helm* by *Sir John Cornwall*, and *Sir John Robessart*.

d Ibid.

This solemn *Ceremony* being finished, in the order as is set down; the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* presently after decreed; a That the *Rites* to be observed at the *Offring* of *Atchievements*, should for the future be in the foresaid manner performed.

e H. 5. Art. 14. Lib. N. pag. 66.

f Art. 12.

The appointment of the *Statute* is before noted to be, e that the *Sovereign* shall nominate and assign the *Knights-Companions*, who are severally to perform this *Ceremony*; and so is the direction set down in f King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes*. But generally heretofore, so few of the *Knights-Companions* have used to attend the *Feasts* of *Installation* (at which time most commonly were the *Atchievements* of the defunct *Knights* offered) that there hath not been much choice, nay, for the most part not enough for the interchange of all the *Atchievements*, but that those who have offered the *Banner*, have been constrained to assist at the *Offering*, if not of the *Sword*, yet of the *Helm* and *Crest*.

Nay, yet less, for the *Feast* of *St. George* an. 1. E. 4. was solemnized at *Windsor*, by two *Knights-Companions* only, viz. Viscount *Bourchier*, the *Sovereign's* *Deputy*, and the *Lord Berners*, at which time there being the *Atchievements* of six deceased *Knights* to be offered; namely the *Dukes* of *York* and *Buckingham*, the *Earls* of *Salisbury* and *Shrewsbury*, of Viscount *Beaumont* and the *Lord Scales*, these 2 two *Knights-Companions* performed the whole *Ceremony*, according to the ancient *Custom*.

g Lib. N. pag. 126.

h Ibid. p. 111.

i Ibid. p. 112.

Moreover, an. 32. H. 6. there were but b three *Knights-Companions* that then held the *Feast*, namely the Duke of *Buckingham* *Deputy* to the *Sovereign*, the *Lord Sudely*, and Viscount *Bourchier*; the 1 two latter of which offered both the *Sword* and *Helm* of the *Earl* of *Salisbury*, the Duke of *Buckingham* not interchanging.

k Ibid. p. 171.

l H. 8. Stat. Art. 14. & Lib. N. pag. 171.

But notwithstanding these *Examples*, at another time, viz. an. 8. H. 7. k because the number of the *Knights-Companions*, present at the *Feast*, were fewer than the 1 *Statute* required; therefore the *Offering* of *Atchievements* was then *prorogued*; *John Lord Denham*, then *Lord Treasurer* of *England*, being *President*, and only the *Lord Scroop* joined with him.

Again,

Again, when the number of *Knights-Companions* present, have been sufficient to perform all the Ceremony severally, yet do we not observe the same anciently executed by *Knights-Companions*, according to the series of their Stalls, which is an argument, that the Rule of the *Statute* took place, and that the *Sovereign's* choice and nomination, rather than the *Knights* seniority in the *Order*, was observed. But since the beginning of *Queen Elizabeth's* Reign, the *Knights* have generally proceeded to this *Offering*, according to their ^m seniority, and where the course ended, then the Seniors began again: Besides, there is variety of Examples, where the *Sovereign's* Deputy or *Lieutenant* have joined in the Ceremony (though the instances where they have not, are more numerous) so that thence it appears to be no diminution to their Honor, to assist the other *Knights*, if it be also considered, that they are *Companions* and *Fellows*, in all the concerns of the *Order*; nor was it anciently thought otherwise, as is manifest from the Example which King ⁿ Henry the Fifth gave, at the performance of this Ceremony, to the memory of the Duke of *Clarence*, by himself and the Duke of *Bedford*, who then bore his *Helm* and *Crest* up to the high *Altar*, and there offered it.

m Lib. R. p. 18.
vide Coll. W. le
N. cl. & A.
V. W.

n Lib. N. p. 67.

There is a memorial entred in the ^o *Red Book* of the *Order*, an. 9. Car. I. which chargeth it as an error, that the Earl of *Holland* was more than once joined with the Earl of *Berkshire* (who then wanted his opposite Companion) in *Offering* the then defunct *Knights Achievements*; and withal, implies, that it had been more rightly done, if the Earl of *Berkshire* had gone alone (in the last place) to offer the remaining *Ensign*. But, with submission, this direction was not only contrary to the ^p *Article* of the *Statute*, which positively enjoins, That every part of the *Achievements* should be offered by two *Knights-Companions* (not by any one singly or alone) but also to constant practice: For there is not one Example throughout all the *Registers* of the *Order* (excepting this now mentioned) or any other authority we have ever met with, where a *Knight* proceeded singly to the *Offering* of *Achievements*. On the contrary, when a *Knight-Companion* happened to want his opposite Fellow, commonly the next junior *Knight* present (how much lower soever his Stall was placed) was joined with him, in assisting at this solemn Ceremony, and of this there are many Examples; though we acknowledge it to be otherwise, both in the direction and practice at the *Offering* of *Gold* and *Silver*.

o Ibid. pag. 84.

p H. 5. Stat.
Art. 14. & Lib.
N. pag. 66.

By what hath been delivered, we see the principal persons concerned in this solemn action, are the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* of the *Order*: Nor may a *Proxie* or *Deputy* be admitted, to perform any part of the Ceremony (though in the *Offering* of *Money* he ought) as is clear from the Examples ^q of *John Thomas* & *Angust*, Proctor for *Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*, an. 1. & 2. Ph. & Mur. and of the *Deputies* to *Frederick* the Second King of *Denmark*, and *John* Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*, an. 25. Eliz. who descended not from the Stalls of their *Principals*, with the rest of the *Knights-Companions* into the *Chaire*, at the time of *Offering* the *Achievements*; but remained therein during that Ceremony. Sir *Thomas Scroop*, Deputy also for the Installation of his Father the Lord *Scroop*, an. 26. Eliz. intermeddled not in this *Offering*, though he came down and stood below in the *Chaire*, before the Stall of his *Principal*, till the Ceremony was finished, and then returned up again into it, in his due order.

q MS. in Offic.
Arm. [H. 2. f.
8. b.]
r Collect. A. V.
W.
s Collect. H. R.
t G. Cl. f. 31.

u Ibid. fol.
w 33.

We shall now proceed to the duties of the *Prelate* of the *Order*, the *Prebends* of the *Colledge*, and the *Officers* of *Arms*; as their services severally or jointly relate to this Ceremony.

First then the ^x *Prelate*, and two of the *Prebends*, ought to proceed up to the *Altar*, immediately before *Garter* summons down the *Knights-Companions* to the *Offering*, and there stand ready to receive the *Achievements*, as they are severally offered up.

x Lib. R. p. 40.
& 84. vide etiam
MS. penes
E. W. G. &
Collect. A. V. W.

It is next the duty of the *Provincial Kings* and *Heralds*, to conduct the *Knights-Companions*, when they proceed up to the *Altar*, bearing any part of the defunct *Knights Achievements*, the whole of the Ceremony is briefly thus: (the *Sexton* having beforehand taken down the *Achievements*, and made them

y MS. fol. 18. b.

K k k k

clean,

clean, and (before service begin) placed them in readiness on a Form or Stool, set directly under each defunct *Knights* Stall)

*z. Collet. R. W. le
R. Ch.*

First, *Garter* riseth from his seat, and proceeds into the middle of the *Choire*, where after his usual obeysances, he summons the *Knights-Companions* to descend; who forthwith in their accustomed order, and with the usual Reverences, come down and place themselves before their Stalls; whereupon *Clarenceux* and *Norrey* (or in the absence of either, the senior *Herald*, or of both, the two eldest *Heralds*) pass down from the Steps of the *Altar*, into the body of the *Choire*; in the interim, *Garter* takes the *Banner* of the eldest defunct *Knight* into his hands, (for its a general rule, that all the *Knights Achievements* be offered, according to the seniority of their Instalment) and presents it a half rolled up to the two senior *Knights-Companions*; the two Provincial *Kings*, being by this time come near to the two senior *Knights*, there make their double obeysances, and afterwards another to the *Knights-Companions*, and then step a little aside: in the mean time, the *Knights* having took the *Banner* between them, make their double Reverence, and (preceded by the *Kings*) pass up to the *Altar*, bearing it with the lower end of the Staff foremost, and at the first *Haut Pas* make another double Reverence. The Provincial *Kings* being arrived at the uppermost *Haut Pas* before the *Altar*, after an humble obeysance, divide themselves to make way for the *Knights-Companions* to offer, and bowing to the said *Knights* as they pass by, the *Knights* forthwith raise the point of the *Banner* upwards, and (after a single Reverence towards the *Altar*) present it upon their knees, to the *Prelate* of the Order, who forthwith receives it from them, and delivers it to the two *Canons* (standing on each side him) and they deposite it upon Cushens laid before the *Altar*.

*a. Collet. R. C.
Cl. fol. 29. 69
Collet. A. V. W.*

This done, the two Provincial *Kings*, conduct the foresaid *Knights-Companions* back into the *Choire*, who with usual Reverences retire to their Stations, under (b not to) their Stalls, and the Provincial *Kings* to their places, on either side the *Altar*.

*b MS. fol. pen.
R. W. G.*

Next, the two senior *Heralds* pass down into the *Choire*, as did the Provincial *Kings*, while *Garter*, taking up the *Sword*, presents it also to the two next senior *Knights*, who proceed up to the *Altar* with the said two *Heralds* before them, in the same order as did the former *Knights-Companions*, and bearing the *Sword* between them, offer the same with the Pomel or Hilt upward, and then return to their Stations below in the *Choire*, conducted as before.

In the third place, the two next senior *Heralds* go down as before, *Garter* in the mean time presenting the *Helm* and *Crest*, to the two next senior *Knights*, who likewise proceed to the *Altar*, and there offer it in the same manner, and with like Ceremony, as had been the *Banner* and *Sword*. And if there be more *Achievements* of defunct *Knights* to be offered than one, the *Knights-Companions* present, by course, two and two, perform the rest, in manner before described; but the *Pursuivants* at *Arms* do no part of this duty, only the Provincial *Kings* and *Heralds*, each in their turns and by couples. When there are the *Achievements* of several *Knights* to be offered, and that the junior *Heralds* have done their duty, the Provincial *Kings* begin again, and so continue the course, till all the *Achievements* be offered; the *Organs* playing while the *Offering* lasteth.

In the before mentioned order, were the *Achievements* of the Duke of *Espernon*, and Prince *Edward* offered, at the *Grand Feast* of *St. George*, celebrated at *Windeſor* an. 15. Car. 2. and the Provincial *Kings* and *Heralds*, as their turns came to officiate, took each of the *Achievements* and presented them to the *Knights-Companions*.

The Duke of *Espernon*'s *Banner*, was offered by the Duke of *York* and Prince *Rupert*, being conducted to the *Altar* by *Clarenceux* and *Norrey*.

His *Sword*, by the Dukes of *Buckingham* and *Albemarle*, attended by *York* and *Lancaster*.

And his *Healm* and *Crest*, by the Earl of *Oxford* and Duke of *Richmond*, brought up by *Windeſor* and *Richmond*.

Prince *Edward*'s *Banner*, *Sword*, and *Helm* were likewise severally offered,
by

by the very same *Knights* who offered the Duke of *Espernons Achievements*, each pair being conducted to the *Altar*; by the foresaid *Officers of Arms*.

Heretofore we find, that *Garter* hath not only begun this Solemnity, and presented the *Banner* to the first pair of *Knights-Companions*, but also conducted them up to the *Offering*; for so was the *Banner* of the Lord *Grey*, delivered by *Garter* to the Lord *Loughborow*, and Viscount *Mountague* an. 5. *Eliz.* and by him were they brought up to the *Altar*. c MS. fol. penes W. le N. Cl. fol. 13.

He also performed the like service to the Earl of *Penbroke* and Lord *Clinton*, when they offered the *Banner* of the Earl of *Westmerland*, the following year; and to the Lord *Admiral* and Earl of *Ormond*, an. 34. *Eliz.* at the *Offering* of the *Banner* of John Count *Palatine* of the *Rhyne*. And at the Solemnity celebrated for the Earl of *Derby*, to the Lord *Howard* of *Effingham*, and Lord *Chandos* an. 16. *Eliz.* *Garter* himself, and no other *Officer of Arms*, conducted the *Knights-Companions* to the *Altar*; the like did he an. 30. *Eliz.* at the *Offering* of the *Hatchments* of the Duke of *Holfbien*, Earl of *Bedford*, Sir *Henry Sidney*, and the Earl of *Rutland*. d MS. fol. 18. b. e MS. fol. penes G. O. T. p. 206. f Colles. R. C. Cl. f. 29. g Colles. W. le N. Cl.

It was also the usage heretofore, for the *Prelate* to deliver the offered *Achievements*; to some of the *Heralds*, before appointed to receive them, which they immediately deposited upon (and sometimes near) the *Altar*.

In this manner *Clarenceux* and *Norroy*, an. 5. *Eliz.* (who stood on either side the *Prebend*) received the Lord *Greys Achievements*, and placed them near the *Altar*. h MS. fol. penes W. le N. Cl. fol. 13.

Clarenceux, and *Somerfet*, received likewise the *Achievements* of the Earls of *Westmerland*, *Rutland*, and the Lord *Pagitz*, from the hands of the *Prelate*, and laid them on a *Form*, set beside the *Altar* for that purpose. i MS. fol. 18. b.

And an. 34. *Eliz.* *Norroy*, and *Windsor*, assisted to receive all the *Achievements*, of John Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, the Earls of *Shrewsbury*, and *Warwick*, and Sir *Christopher Hatton*; which they deposited upon the *Altar*. But the present *Sovereign*, (an. 15. *Car.* 2.) gave command, that the *Achievements* should then and after be laid below before the *Altar*; judging it indecent to place them, where the sacred *Mysteries* of the *Body* and *Blood* of our *Saviour* are with great reverence consecrated. He also commanded at the *Feast* held an. 23. *Car.* 2. that when the Ceremonies of *Offering* were ended, the *Achievements* should be disposed, part on the *South*, and other part on the *North-side* of the *Altar*, till *Service* was finished. k MS. fol. penes G. O. T. p. 206. l Lib. Carol. p. 47.

Besides these things already noted, there is nothing further observable, but what relates to the *Achievements* themselves, as they are become by this Ceremony of *Offering* them in so solemn a manner, parcel of the goods of the *Chappel*, and included within the words of the Statutes of the *Colledge*, whereby the *Sovereign* granted to the *Dean* and *Canons*, all *Oblations*; concerning which, we have already spoken, when we treated of the *Offering* of *Gold* and *Silver*. m Art. 33. vide etiam Lib. N. pag. 126. n Chap. 21. Sect. 5.

Hereupon, because they could not be alienated or sold, they were commonly deposited, by the *Dean* and *Canons*, in the *Chapter-house*: and there an. 8. *R. 2.* upon the taking of an *Inventory*, of all the *Vestments*, *Ornaments*, &c. of the *Chappel*; we find among them three *Swords*, one of the *Founder's* King *Edward* the Third, another of the Earl of *Suffolke's*, and the third of Sir *Thomas Baniſter's*, as also six *Helms*. We also find more afterwards added, viz. the *Swords* of King *Richard* the Second, of King *Henry* the Fourth, when he was Earl of *Derby*, of John a *Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaster*, and the Earl of *Salisbury*. o Ex Rot. Pet. Cam.

But the *Helms* and *Swords*, because they were at first forged, (for this very purpose) of an extraordinary greatness and size, therefore have they been commonly redeemed, that they might serve again afterwards. p Autogr. in Arar. Coll. Windsor.

And because it belongs to *Garter*, to provide the *Achievements* for the new installed *Knights*; he usually hath compounded with the *Dean* and *Canons*, for the defunct *Knights-Achievements*: To which purpose, (among other compositions) there was an *Agreement* drawn up in writing, dated the 20th of *May*, 1606. between *William Segar Garter*, and *Giles Thompson* then *Dean* of *Windsor*. q Ex alio Autogr. in eodem Arar.

¹ Ibid.

for, William Wilson, Erasmus Webb and Henry Beaumont, three of the then *Canons*, to this effect, ' That *Garter* should pay to them or their Successors, when it should happen, for the *Helmets, Crests, Swords, Mantles, and Banners*, of the deceased *Knights*, the sums following; viz. for those of all *Bachelors-Knights, Barons, Earls, and Dukes*, the sum of twenty Shillings; but of *Kings*, and absolute *Princes*, being imbroidered, the sum of three pounds.

¹ Hen. Stat. Art. 12.

We shall conclude this *section*, with another kind of *Offering*, ordained also to be made in honor of the deceased *Knights-Companions*, and Registered in King Henry the Eighth's Body of *Statutes*; which as it begun not many years before our Reformation in Religion, so was it of no long continuance, but then took ending, the words of the *statute* are these. ' That if any Knight-Companion shall decease, the year before (the Celebration of St. George's Feast) then every Knight being in the Castle of *Windefor*, at the Mass of Requiem, shall offer a *Taper*, armed with a little *Escutcheon* of the Arms of the Knight deceased; and if there be more than one deceased, that there be made for every of them, an *Escutcheon* of Arms, and a *Groat*, set nigh to the light of the *Taper*; which *Escutcheon* and *Taper*, shall be made at the cost and charges of the *Knights* of the said Order.

SECT. IV.

Of depositing the deceased *Knights* Mantles, in the Chapter-house.

^a Ex antogr. Sacraments D. Ch. Wren nuper Ord. Regist. attestatur, 12. Mar. 1651. b s Colled. c l pref. D. Chr. Wren.

Here past a Decree, an. 9 Eliz. ^a That the *Knights-Companions* should be bound by their Oath, to take care by their last Will, that after their decease, all their Ornaments, which they had received, should be restored, the Robes to the Colledge, the Jewells to the King that gave them. Hereupon ^b Sir Christopher Hatton sometime before his Death, commanded that his *Mantle* should be delivered to the *Dean* and *Canons*, and accordingly it was sent to *Windefor* after his decease. But the ^c *Mantle* of Sir Henry Lea, being left to the disposal of others, and not sent to the Colledge, hapned at length, to come into the hands of *Brokers*, and openly exposed to sale in *Long-lane*, to the great dishonor of the Order.

This Decree was in after-times but slackly observed; and therefore, (in a Chapter held at *Windefor* the 24. of September, an. 4. Car. 1.) the *Knights* were admonished, ^d That where the Sovereign should vouchsafe to bestow upon a Knight the *Mantle* of the Order, the said Knight should take care at his death to have it sent to the Chappel [at *Windefor*] according as the *Statutes* do provide.

But this taking little effect, the same Sovereign thought fit to restore to life and vigour the Law in this particular, by a Decree made in Chapter held also at *Windefor* the 18. of April in the 13. year of his Reign, which obliged all the *Knights-Companions* receiving the *Ensigns* of the Order from the Sovereign, ^e to take care (according to the obligation of their Oath) that these (together with the Book of *Statutes*) should be restored into the hands of the Sovereign, after their Death. And a command was therewithal given, That certain Books, Mantles, and Surcoats then lying at *Whitehall*, should be delivered to the Register of the Order, to be laid up at *Windefor*, in honorable memory of them to whom they belonged.

In observance of these Decrees, where the *Habit* or *Ensigns* of the Order, were either wholly or in part bestowed by the Sovereign, order was taken (in either case) to send for them in, after such *Knights* decease. Accordingly at a Chapter held the 10. day of October, an. 15 Car. 1. the ^f *Garter* and *George* of the Lord Treasurer *Weslon*, being sent back, was then presented to the Sovereign

^f Palmer's Journ. pro an. 1639. p. 36.

raign (by whom it had been accustomed) and affirmed to be all that the *Sovereign* had given the said *Earl*, whereupon the same was accepted, and delivered to the *Dean* and *Chapter* of *Windsor* to be preserved. And at the same *Chapter* it was ordered that the *Earl of Kelley's Robes and Ornaments* of the *Order*, should be sent for by the *Chancellor*: as having been given him by the *Sovereign*; to wit, the *Garter* and *George* immediately after his *Election*, and the *Mantle* and *Surcoat*, against the *Installation* of the present *Sovereign*.

These former *Decrees* were yet thought needfull to be confirmed by the present *Sovereign*, and therefore in a *Chapter* held in the *Yellow-Chamber* at *Whitehall*, the 4. of *Febr.* 1669. it was decreed, That the *Mantle* of each *Knight-Companion* (so also the *Book of Statutes*) should be sent to *Windsor* immediately after their *Death*; and that the *Chancellor* of the *Order*, should be obliged by *Lettres* to their *Heirs* and *Executors*, to put them in mind of sending them thither.

Nevertheless it is to be understood, that where the *Mantle* hath been provided at the *Knights* own charge, there lyes no obligation for sending it to *Windsor* after his *decease*. And it appears upon the *Death* of *Philip Earl of Penbroke* and *Montgomery*; that the *Trustees* for fail of the late *Kings* Goods, having sent and made demand of his *Mantle*, and *Surcoat*, his *Executors* making it appear, that they were bought with his own money, of *Sir Peter Richant*, by the then *Sovereign's* command, signified (not only to him but the rest of the *Knights-Companions*) an. 14. *Car. I.* they desisted, from further prosecution.

There is a memorable Instance in the return of the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, being sent back in a solemn Embassy from *Christina* Queen of *Sweden*, his Daughter and Successor to that Crown.

k Lib. R. pag. 105.

The Reception of which, having been ordered with considerable State and Ceremony, will most fitly be here remembred.

Saturday the 18. of *April*, an. 11. *Car. I.* was the day appointed, for the resigning them up into the *Sovereign's* hands; on the Afternoon of which day, *John Baron Skitte*, Ambassador from the said Queen, came to *Whitehall*, and was conducted to the *Council Chamber*, to retire himself, till he was sent for into the *Chapter*.

The *Chapter* was upon this occasion held in the *Presence-Chamber*, where as soon as they were set, the *Sovereign* assigned the *Earls of Penbroke*, and *Arundel*, (attended by *Garter* and *Black Rod*) to go for the said Ambassador, who was conducted to the *Chapter*, in the order following.

First, the Ambassadors Followers, two and two.

The Officers of Arms in their Coats, two and two.

Garter, carrying on a Velvet Cushion, the deceased Kings *Mantle*, *Surcoat*, *Hood*, *Garter*, *Collar*, and great *George*, and the wearing *George*.
Earl of *Arundel*. The Ambassador. Earl of *Penbroke*.

The Ambassadors Followers, and the Officers of Arms, having proceeded in this order as far as the *Presence-Chamber* door, there divided themselves on each side, and made a stand, *Garter* going before, and the Ambassador between the said two *Knights-Companions* entrèd the *Chapter*, making the usual Congies in coming up to the *Sovereign*. Then *Garter* kneeling down, held the *Ornaments* and *Jewells* of the *Order* on the Cushion, whilst the Ambassador made the following Oration in *Latin*.

Serenissime, Potentissimeq; Rex, Domine clementissime.

Nemini potest esse obscurum, quod ab omni ævo, omnibus omnino Populis & Nationibus in more & usu positum fuerit, homines ob præclara facta, variis premiis atq; honoribus afficere; tum ut fortitudinem acuerent, & virtutem conservarent, tum ut robur & disciplinam mererentur; Quà quidem re procuratum videmus, ut Equestris etiam dignitas inde, & ex hæc occasione originem ceperit, & postmodum per omnes ferè ætates validissimo roboris incremento aucta, & amplificata fuerit,

rit, ac licet in tantâ ejusdem copiâ & varietate difficile videatur judicare, quæ species alteri prævalere debeat, & quasi palmam præripere. Siquis tamen paulo altius hoc ipsum ponderaverit, deprehendet veterum illorum honores dignitates, ac privilegia cum Garterio Ordine non esse comparanda. Permite mihi Serenissime Rex, ut in Augusta & Nobili hac coronâ Ordinis Periscelidis decora accuratius contempler, & quid mihi insuper in mandatis sit datum humilimè referam.

Edwardi tertii incredibilem virtutem atq; fortitudinem omnis posteritas in hunc usq; diem est admirata semper, qui cum à vetustissimis Angliæ Regibus Originem traxerit, nulli veterum tum rerum gestarum gloria, tum invictissimi animi magnitudine tum summæ felicitatis admiratione videtur esse postponendus; ab hoc inquam Heroë laudatissimo & fortissimo cum Ordo hic Garterius excogitatus sit, & inventus, quid tanto Insituto potest esse Nobilius? quid præclarius? Summa quoq; dignitas huic Ordini ex eo aboritur, quod non modo præcipuè Nobilitatis viri, Potentissimi Duces, ac Principes, verum etiam Imperatores, Reges eorumq; liberi pulcherimo hâc honore semper fuerint cumlati Magnificentiam dicti Ordinis commendavit tum quod candidatus egregiis & admirandis Ornamentis investitur, installetur, & amicitur, tum quod ipso die Georgii honorificentissimo, Superiorum & inferiorum concursu mirificè condecoretur, illustretur. Quemadmodum verò sacra vestra Regia Majestas, evidentibus rationibus commota, clementissime meæ Regina parentem, Inviçissimum Heroem hoc ipso Periscelidis splendore cumlandum judicavit ita exhibitio illa vel hâc nomine longè fuit clarissima, quod spectante universo penè exercitu, inter vehementissimam bellicorum tormentorum dispositionem per vestros deputatos, & quidem in ipsius Dorustæ visceribus facta sit, ad omnem itaq; posteritatis memoriam commendatissimum erit quod licet exiguum tum temporis extiterit intervallum, inter nostrum & hostilem exercitum adeo ut convenientius tanto Heroi fuisse nonnullis visum fuerit de corporis defensione, quam de honoris alicujus accessione cogitare, rejectis tamen omnibus periculis passus sit, sibi, & tribui honorem condignum & in Ordinis hujus clarissimi Societatem se cooptari. Nec facile dixerim utrum huic accessioni plus dignitatis illatum, ex eundem Ordinem efferente, an verò recipiente. Ita enim utrarumq; vestrum Majestatum dignitas hic elucet, ita æquabili lanci inmittitur, ut discrimen non facile attendatur ac licet immensus mihi jam porrigatur Campus, in laudes utriusq; Serenissimæ vestræ Regiæ Majestatis expatiandi, cum tamen ita comparatum sit, ut quò quisq; laude dignior est, eò minus patiatür laudes suas celebrari, non velificabor impresentiarum tantis Majestatum vestrarum virtutibus, sed ea tantum referam, quæ sine summâ ingratæ animi notâ non possunt præteriri. Successit sacra vestra Regia Majestas parenti suo gloriosissime recordationis, in tot regnorum administrationem, & quidem ita successit, ut non solum paternis vestigiis ludabiliter inhereat, verum etiam paternarum virtutum dignissimum se ostendat heredem; pacem, rem beatissimam, omni studio complectatur, subditis suis & quietem & omnium rerum affluentiam benignissimè procuret, & quid sit quod Serenissimam vestram Regiam Majestatem infinitis hominibus amabilem magis reddere possit, quam omnium bonorum de eadem singulare judicium? Etenim cum omnibus pateat, eandem naturali & prope divinâ quâdam propensione in eas virtutes & ornamenta quibus vita hæc humana fulcitur ferri: & ab omnibus iis vitiis quibus contaminetur, seridè abhorreere; cumq; vita vestra omnis sit candoris, integritatis, castitatis & honestatis plenissima, non potest mihi vitio verti, si oblatâ hâc occasione illud ipsum jam commemorare aparteq; dicam nullum præter Serenissimam vestram Regiam Majestatem tum extitisse excellentiorem Regem, & digniorem qui ista amplissimorum & à proavis fortissimis acceptorum honorum ornamenta tanto Regi tribuere & conferre poterit. Regis deinde hujus incomparabilis qualitates si accuratius contemplati fuerimus, nemo inficiabitur quin omni honorum genere fuerit dignissimus. Habuit is Patrem & Avum qui indefesso studio ea semper consilia tractârunt quæ non solum ad pacis tranquillitatem, togæq; felicitatem in antiquissimis Suecorum & Gothorum Regnis conservandam, verum etiam ad armorum benè gerendorum gloriam, bellicarumq; rationum & militaris disciplinæ administrationem fovendam pertinent. His cum Progenitoribus ortus esset, industria & labore incredibili, atq; adèd brevi temporis spatio eò pervenit, ut non solum illis pax verum etiam longè clarior & celebrior fuerit,

fuerit. Cumq; horrenda cujusdam virtutis amore, inter omnes mortales teneretur, talem se in vita sua exhibuit, ut omnes virtutes numeros quoad ejus ab homine fieri potuit, explere conatus sit, & tanta quidem constantia iis sudoribus & vigiliis ut eum à tam laudabili proposito, nec rei magnitudo deterreere, nec ulla voluptas avocare potuerit ab incunabilis, præclarissimarum artium & linguarum studio, ita vehementer invigilavit, ut postquam ad adultiorem etatem pervenisset, ad miraculum usq; se iis oblectaret, nec bonorum & optimorum authorum lectione, in ipsis Castris atq; aded in hostium suorum quasi conspectu abstinere. Tantus præterea in hoc Heroe fuit amor, & sollicitudo conservande Religionis & libertatis in Germaniâ; ut cum ejusdem Principes in tolerando quodam servitutis jugo præmerentur, eos non solum adversus hostium ferociam tutatus est, verum etiam in avitos ducatus, unde expulsi fuerant, magnâ suâ gloriâ, magnâ ipsorum lætitiâ, magno cum hostium dedecore, per vim fortissimè reduxerit, pristinaq; dignitatem reddiderit, quam si iidem jam voluerint deferere sibi suâq; socordie in posterum imputabunt, ac licet præter ipsam Dei benignitatem aliæ etiam possint exhiberi rationes quibus Heros hic innixus tam arduum opus aggredi voluit, nulla tamen accommodatio & certior constitueretur quam scientia rei Militaris & fortitudo quædam invicta. Etenim cum post mortem laudatissimi Parentis triplici bello putâ Danico, Polonico & Muscovitico distineretur, ita se ballisticis artibus totum consecravit, ita mancipavit ut cum summis Imperatoribus non immerito fuerit comparandus. Ad hanc rem promptius expediendum ita cum Deus & natura finierant, ut visis hostibus vel in summo vite periculo constitutus, nunquam trepidavit, nunquam expalluerit, nunquam ansugerit, quin potius exigua Militum manu sæpe hostibus se objecerit, eos sustinuerit, iisdem maximas Clades intulerit, & Strages horrendas confecerit, atq; adeo nobilissimas provincias, incredibili robore extortus, Regno Suecorum (per se longe amplissimo) gloriosissime adjecerit. Excimâ hæc Militaris Disciplinæ administratione, ita orbi terrarum innotuit, ut & Reges Principesq; complures, infiniti præterea homines ad eum amandum & colendum sint inflammati. Non inficiaberis, Serenissime Rex, quin cum ob alias rationes, tum potissimum ob rei bellicæ gloriâ Ordinis Garterii decora illi tribueris. Serenissimo Daniæ Regi placuit filium suum Uldaricum Gustavo huic Magno de meliori notâ commendare, quo sub illius ductu in Dorussâ tyrocinia militaria addisceret. Serenissimo item Regi Bohemiæ commodum valde fuit in castra hujus Herois pervenisse, ut eo citius provincias sibi ereptas recuperaret. Vladislavus Rex Poloniae, licet hostis, eam de agnato suo fortitudinis Militaris conceperat opinionem, ut nisi humanis rebus creptus fuisset Magnus hic Gustavus, operâ illius uti voluerit, in sopiendis dissidiis inter se, & Magnum Muschoviz Ducem. Idem verò Muschoviz Dux, cum patre Patriarchâ, quem Muschoviz sanctissimum appellant, tanti aestimavit Regis nostri bellicæ rationes, ut eos haud præderit, eodem uti Ductore. Quorum quidem Principum benevolentia in Regem Gustavum tam vehementer apparuit, ut cum iidem accepto nuncio de Lipsensi pugnâ immensos triumphos in ejus honorem per Imperium Muschoviticum instituisent, ab omni ævo tale quid in ejusdem visceribus contigisse, vix, ac ne vix quidem, sit animadversum. Et quæ res alia Christianissimum Gallie Regem Ludovicum XIII. commovit, ut huic Heroi ætissimo fœderis, & amicitie vinculo copularetur, quo Austriacæ Domus, omnibus Regibus ac Principibus potentium reformidandam comprimeret, & afflictæ Germaniæ succurreret, nisi quod eum fortissimum, & ad tantam Provinciam obeundam accommodatissimum esse, suo etiam suffragio comprobaret, totiq; terrarum Orbi declararet? Fœdera quæ Rex noster inerat cum præpotentibus Ordinibus Belgii, cum Principibus & Rebus publicis Germaniæ, quid aliud testantur? quam summam in eo extitisse animi magnitudinem, & robur convictum ut interim silentio involvam Bethlemi Gaboris, Transylvaniæ Helvetiorum, & quorundam Italiæ Principum in eundem propensionem singularem; Magnus ille Præcopiensium Tartarorum Chamus, triginta hominum millia in usum Regis nostri, se ex sinibus suis educturum obtulerat, si iis uti voluisset. Fando deniq; exprimi non potest quomodo incomparabilis hujus Regis fama, per Othomancum Imperium fuerit peragata. Acquisivit Suecis ac Gothis, hæc ipsâ, ut eos & à contemptu aliorum Populorum vindicaverit & effecerit simul, ut pro fortissimis militibus ab ipsis hostibus agniti, & celebrati fuerint. Tot itaq;

Et tanta cum fuerint Magni Gustavi Regis ornamenta, cum nomen ejusdem per infinita terrarum spatia incluserit, cum deniq; facta illius tot hostibus debellatis ac prostratis, Suehici nominis gloriam ubiq; circumtulerint, nonne dignissimus iudicabitur, cui hic honos, hic splendor conferri debuerit? Verum enimvero cum Deo visum sit, invictissimum hunc Regem, & cujus parem septentrio nunquam vidit, bellatorem, Triumphatorem, perpetuum rebus humanis eripere, eumq; Ordinis Garterii statuta jubcant, ut post excessum unius cujusq; signa & ornamenta remittantur, in mandatis idcirco mihi dedit Serenissima mea Regina, ut non solum Legibus præscriptis satisfacere, verum etiam moram excusarem. Agnovit abundè Serenissima sua Regia Majestas eum gente Suecorum universà Serenissimæ vestræ Regiæ Majestatis, in deferendis hisce honoribus, affectionem inusitatam, & benevolentiam singularem nunquam intermittet, & procurare, quæ ad vestrum & Britannicæ gentis splendorem amplificandum conducent. Inter alia sacra sua Regia Majestas exoptat à Deo immortalis, ut quemadmodum hic Ordo, ab exiguis initiis, in maximum dignitatis culmen ascendit, ita etiam per longissima annorum spacia, felicissimo & duraturo incremento ad omnem posteritatem, roboretur, conservetur, propagetur.

When the Ambassador had done speaking, Garter delivered each particular Ornament to him, which he forthwith presented to the Sovereign, who put them into the Chancellors hands, and he having received them, in answer to the Ambassadors Oration, made this other in French.

Le Roy mon Maître (Souverain de l'Ordre de la Jarrière) m'a commandé de vous dire, qu'il recoit de vostre main, avec fort grand regret, ces Enseignes de l'Ordre. Elles renouvellent à sa Majesté, & luy font resouvenir la grand perte qu'il a faite, en la personne du Roy de Suede, son bon frere. Il estoit Prince dont l'amitié estoit fort chere à sa Majesté comme celuy qui pour la rendre plus estroite, avoit montré un desir affectionné d'estre receu au nombre des confreres de cet Ordre. Durant la vie de ce grand Roy, vostre Majesté, sa Majesté a fait une grand, & digne estime de sa personne. à l'égal de son merite, & de ces vertues, qui furent vrayement Royales, & depuis sa mort, sa Majesté a fait le mesme de sa memoire. Et a fin que la posterité peult aussi prendre cognoissance de l'amitié & affection qui a esté entre sa Majesté, & ce grand Prince, le Roy a donné un commandement expres, qu'aux Archives de l'Ordre sa memoire fust conservée au rang des plus grands, & des plus valeureux Princes, qui l'ont devancez, & qui ont rendu par tant de Siecles cet Ordre si Auguste.

C'est (Monsieur) le Sommaire de ce que j'avois à vous dire de la parte du Roy mon Maître le Souverain de l'Ordre pour ce qui est des autres confreres, & principalement de Messieurs les Chevaliers icy presents, sa Majesté m'a donné permission de vous dire de leur part, qu'ils regrettent avec le Roy leur Maître, la perte d'un si grand Prince comme a esté le vostre, & tascheront pour le dernier devoir qu'ils doivent à sa vertu, de rendre à sa memoire autant de respect, & d'honneur qu'ils eussent volontiers rendu à sa personne. Et pour mon particulier, la custume qui est observée en telles occasions, me commandoit de dire quelque chose à la louange de ce grand Roy, qui étant confrere de l'Ordre est mort victorieux entre les armes. Mais quand je considere que vous l'avez desja si bien faite, par vostre belle oraison (qui a esté par tout remplie d'autant de verité que d'eloquence) qu'il me seroit impossible d'en parler apres sans faire tort à moy mesme, & sans grand prejudice à une si haulte vertu j'ay pensé doncques qu'il seroit convenable tant pour le Subjet, que pour mon devoir, de laisser entierement à la renommée, ce qui m'est tellement impossible d'exprimer en paroles.

This Speech being ended the Chapter broke up, and the Sovereign departed in the order he came thither, having first * Knighted Sir James Skjtte the Ambassadors Son, Sir John Krue, Sir Gustavus Eanir, and Sir Gabriel Oxensterne, who were of his followers. But the Ambassador and the two Earls Conductors returned in the same order as they came to the Council-Chamber, and there took leave.

* Lib. R. p. 106.

leave. And in *May* following, the said Sir *John skytte* junior (whom I find styled Baron of *Buderos*, and Colonel of a Regiment of *Scots* in *Sweden*) was sworn a Gentleman of the *Sovereign's Privy-Chamber* extraordinary.

After the *Chapter* was ended, the *Sovereign* * commanded the *Jewels* to be delivered to the *Master* of his *Jewel-house*, and the *Robes* to be sent to the *Dean* of *Windsor*, to be deposited there.

Notwithstanding which Command, yet was not the * *Mantle* brought thither, till the *Instalment* of the present *Sovereign*, at which time, by order in *Chapter*, and the *Sovereign's* liberal donation, not only the *Mantle*, but the *Garter*, *Collar*, and Great *George* of the foresaid King, (the value whereof we have before noted) were ordered to be committed to the custody of the *Dean* and *Chapter* of *Windsor*, and accordingly then brought down from the Court (in the *Castle*) by Mr. *Josee*, Mr. *Maxwell*, and some others belonging to the *Sovereign's* Bed-Chamber, and delivered to them to be laid up in their *Treasury*, for a perpetual memory of that renowned King, who died in the field, wearing some of those *Jewels*; to the great renown of the *Order*, and as a true martial Prince and Companion thereof.

The *Diamonds*, set in the *Garter* and *George*, at the humble request of Doctor *Christopher Wren*, the then *Register*, were Ordered to be viewed and numbred, by Sir *James Palmer* Deputy *Chancellor*; which being done, an *Inventory* was made, the 24. of *May* following, and a *Duplicate* thereof being drawn, the one part was signed by the *Dean* and *Prebends*, which remained with the *Deputy Chancellor*; the other by the *Deputy Chancellor*, and left in the *Treasury* with the *Jewels*; the number upon the great *Garter* and *George*, amounting to 498 *Diamonds*.

And in the Floor of the said *Treasury* did these *Jewels* remain (hid there by the said *Register*) till about the beginning of *March*, an. 1645. that Colonel *Ven*, the then *Governor* of that *Castle*, took them thence, and it should seem, they were afterwards delivered unto Colonel *Whitchcott*, who succeeded him in that Government; for I find, that Mr. *John Hunt* Treasurer to the *Trustees* (appointed by the *Long Parliament*, for Sale of the late *Kings Goods*) did receive them from the hands of the said Colonel *Whitchcott*.

m Lord Cham:
berl. Book of
Warrants ab

an. 1634. ad
annum 1641.
pag. 58.

* Lib. R. pag.

106.

* Collec. Chr.

Wren nuper

Ord. Regist.

n Chap. 7.

Sect. 1. & 7.

o Palm. large

Journ pag. 212

& 22.

p Ex Collec.

prad.

q Execd. Journ.

loco cit.

r Ex Collec.

s prefat. D.

t Chr. Wren.

CHAP. XXVI.

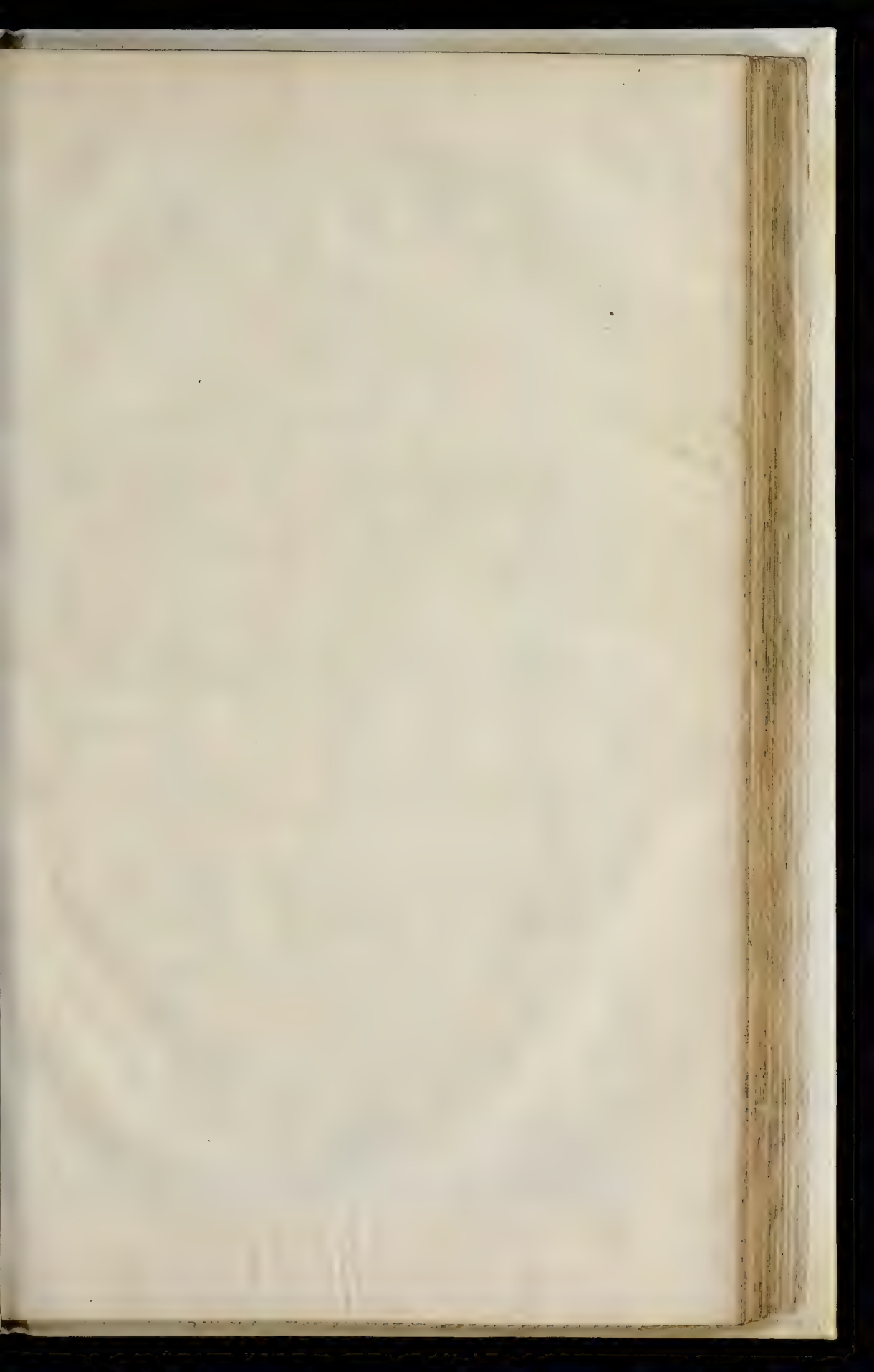
OF THE
 Founder, THE FIRST Knights-
 Companions,
 AND THEIR
 Successors.

SECT. I.

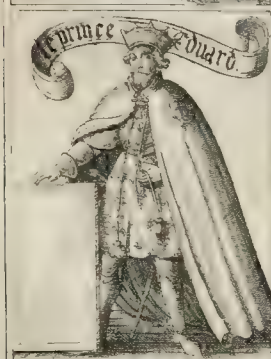
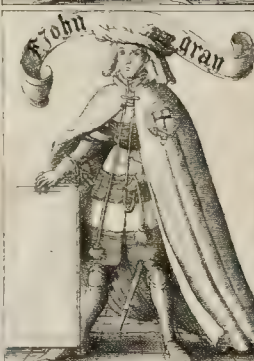
Of what Number the Institution consisted.

THE main part of our design, relating to the *Institution, Laws, and Ceremonies* of the most Noble Order of the Garter, is now brought to a period; what else we intend, with the end of our journey, lies now within our prospect, and concerns the *Founder* the first *Knights-Companions* and their Successors. For King Edward the Third having Instituted the said Order, and set down *Rules and Statutes* for the government and regulation thereof, he ^a next resolved to Elect from among the flower of his own Chevalry, 25 noble and valiant *Knights*, who, together with himself should make up the number of 26. (for of so ^b many doth the Order, by his appointment, consist) and indeed that Age furnished him with large choice of gallant men, made famous by martial Exploits, performed in the Battels of *Sluce, Crecy, and Durham*.

The first that he Elected into this Noble Order, was *Edward*, his eldest Son, who had already in part deserved, and afterwards obtained the title of a valiant and renowned Prince; and the rest of those accomplished Collegues were these that follow, and thus placed in their Stalls.



The
 PORTRAICTVRES
 of King EDWARD the 3.
 with the first 28
 KNIGHTS COMPANIOS
 in the HABIT of the
 ORDER
 and SVRCOATS of their
 ARMES.







On the Sovereign's side.

2. Henry, Duke of Lancaster.
3. Piers, Capitow de la Bouch.
4. William, Earl of Salisbury.
5. Sir John Lisle.
6. Sir John Beauchamp.
7. Sir Hugh Courtney.
8. Sir John Grey.
9. Sir Miles Stapleton.
10. Sir Hugh Wrottesley.
11. Sir John Chandos.
12. Sir Otes Holland.
13. Sir Sanchet Dabrichcourt.

On the Prince's side.

2. Thomas, Earl of Warwick.
3. Ralph, Earl of Stafford.
4. Roger, Earl of March.
5. Sir Bartholomew Burghersh.
6. Sir John Mohun.
7. Sir Thomas Holland.
8. Sir Richard Fitz-Simon.
9. Sir Thomas Wale.
10. Sir Nele Loring.
11. Sir James Andeley.
12. Sir Henry Eam.
13. Sir Walter Pawcley.

c Lib. N. p. 38;

We once intended a full and entire History of the *Lives* of these Noble Founders, and to that purpose made a large and chargeable Collection out of the *Records* in the *Tower of London*, and elsewhere, of all that we could find worthy to be remembered of them: in which we spent most part of the years 1657. 1658. and 1659. But this our design being afterwards represented to the present Sovereign and Knights-Companions, by the late Chancellor of the Order, through the wrong end of the Perspective, we thereby received so great discouragement, as caused us to wave it, and indeed resolved wholly to lay it aside. Nevertheless, upon other thoughts (here being a proper occasion) we are content to let in a glimpse, of what may be improved to a far greater light; and, from that stock of *Collections*, drawn out some few things relating to the Founder and first 25 Knights-Companions, particularly their Honors, Marial Employments, famous Exploits, Matches, Illues, and Death; therein laying down only matter of Fact, and Materials for *History*, without deductions or observations. All which we shall deliver with the plainness there found, being unwilling to add other Rhetorical flourishes, lest we might withal cast some blemish upon the native beauty of Truth.

And in this undertaking, the Reader may see what Furniture (though it lye dispers'd) our *Publick Records* will afford for *History*; and how plentifully our own may be supplied and improved, if pains were taken therein: for what is hitherto made publick, hath been collected, chiefly out of old *Annals*, and they filled with few things but such as were very obvious, nay the *Annalists* themselves (for the most part residing in *Monasteries*) too often byas'd with Interest, and Affection, to Times and Persons: But on the contrary, in our publick *Records* lye matter of Fact, in full truth, and therewith the Chronological part, carried on, even to days of the Month. So that an industrious Searcher may thence collect considerable matter for new *History*, rectifie many mistakes in our old, and in both gratifie the world with unshadowed verity.

d 20. Febr. an.
14. Car. 2.

SECT. II.

A short view of the Founder's Wars.

TO begin then with the Founder, the most Noble King Edward the Third; He was eldest Son of King Edward the Second, and Isabel Daughter to Philip the Fourth, King of France, whose Sons Lewis, Philip, and Charles, (all Kings of France one after another) dying without Issue Male, this Prince challenged the Crown of France, as the next Heir male to it.

L III 2

He

e Claus. 6. E. 2.
m. 22. Dorfo.

He was born in *Windefor* Castle, the 13. day of *November*, being *Monday* next after the Feast of *St. Martin*, the Bishop in *Winter*, (and the day of *St. Brice*, Bishop, and Disciple of *St. Martin*) in the year of our Lord God 1312. an *Astrological Scheme* of whole Nativity, hath been long since painted in *Glass*, in one of the Windows of the *Prebends Lodgings* at *Windefor*, belonging to the Reverend and Worthy Divine, Doctor *Hever*, late one of the *Canons* of that *Colledge*. Whence it appears, that he was born at 40 minutes after five in the morning of the said day, the 6. Degree of the Sign *Scorpio* Ascending, and the 18. Degree of *Leo* Culminating. The places of the Planets, as there posited, followeth.

gr.		gr.	
$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} 12 \\ 2 \\ 3 \\ 4 \\ 5 \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} 5 \\ 27 \\ 21 \\ 28 \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} 9 \\ 5 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} 18 \\ 8 \\ 8 \\ 26 \end{array} \right\}$
in	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} 27 \\ 21 \\ 28 \end{array} \right\}$	in	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} 18 \\ 8 \\ 8 \\ 26 \end{array} \right\}$

f Ibid.

g Tho. Wal-
singh. sub an.
1312.

h 24. Nov.
Chart. 6. E. 2.
m. 21. & n. 44.

i Claus. 7. E. 2.
m. 1. Chart. 8.
E. 3. m. 2.

k Pat. 6. E. 2.
par. 2. m. 5.

The *Thursday* after his birth, he was Christned in the Chappel, then of *St. Edward*, in *Windefor* Castle, by *A. Priest* Cardinal, by the Title of *sancta Prisca*, and his Godfathers were *Richard* Bishop of *Poitiers*, *John* Bishop of *Bath* and *Wells*, *William* Bishop of *Worcester*, *Lewis* Earl of *Eureux*, the *Queens* Brother, *John de Britannia* Earl of *Richmond*, *Aymer de Valence* Earl of *Penbroke*, and *Hugh le Despenser*.

Within a few days after, the King his Father granted him the *County* of *Chester*, except the Mannors of *Atekklesfield*, and *shotwryke*, to hold to him and his Heirs Kings of *England* for ever. And likewise the *County* of *Flint*, and Cantred of *Englefield*, with the Castles of *Flint* and *Rothelan*, to hold as before, except the Mannor of *Overton*, the Lands of *Mailor*, *Seynsnoke*, and the Castle and Mannor of *Holt*; after which he was thus stiled by the King, *Edwardus Comes Cestrie filius noster Charissimus*.

So pleasing to his Father was the birth of this Prince, that the 16. of *December* following, he gave to *John Lunge* Valet to the Queen, and to *Isabel* his Wife, and the longer liver of them, for bringing to him so desirable News, 24*l.* per annum, to be paid out of the Farm of *London*. But leaving his Infancy, we will now proceed to his youth, and the occurrences that attended his ripen years.

King *Edward* his Father, having been often summoned to the Court of *France*, to do homage for the Dukedom of *Aquitaine*, and other his Lands held in that Kingdom, and still delaying, till the French King had seized thereon, it was at length concluded, that he should give to this Prince that Dukedom, who then should do the Homage, and enjoy the Lands. Hereupon preparation was made for his passing into *France*, and a little before at *Langedon Abbey*, near *Dover*, the King on the 2. of *September* in the 19. year of his Reign, first gave to him, his Heirs, and Successors Kings of *England*, *jure hereditario imperpetuum*, the *Counties* of *Ponthieu*, and *Monstroile*; and on the 10. of the same month (at *Dover*) granted to him the *Dukedom* of *Aquitaine*, and all the Lands he had, or ought to hold, in the Kingdom of *France*, *Habendum* as before; a two days after, this new Duke took shipping at *Dover*, thence passed into *France*, and made his Homage: in which Journey it was likewise thought fit, that the Queen should accompany him, in regard her Lands in that Kingdom had also been seized on.

Shortly after his return into *England*, he was unanimously chosen *Custos* of the Kingdom in his Fathers absence (then fled into *Wales*, with *Hugh le Despencer* the Son, *Robert Baldock* and others) by divers of the Bishops, Nobility, Barons, and Knights, *de assensu totius Comitatus dicti Regni ibidem existentis*, and at *Martley*, the *Great Seal* (sent from the King) was delivered to him.

Not long after, his Father resigned his Crown, upon which, great preparations were made for this young Prince's Coronation, which was solemnly performed at *Westminster*, by *William* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, on a Sunday after the Conversion of *St. Paul*, being the 1. of *Feb. an.* 1327.

His

o Claus. 20.
E. 2. m. 3.
Dorfo. 20. Off.
p 16. 25. Nov.
q Claus. 1. E. 3
pars prima
membr. 2. 25. 12.
Kalendas Febr.
Her. Knighton
in Hist. Anglie.
Script. Col.
2550.

His first Martial Attempt, but unsuccessful, (for more then what appertains to his Wars we shall not here discourse off) was the ^r raising an Army to march against the *scots*: For Robert Bruce King of Scotland, having sent him a defiance about *Easter* next following his Coronation, shortly after invaded England, notwithstanding the Truce between the said King Robert, and King Edward the Second, was yet on foot, and an agreement for further Treaty of Peace (to be held in the *Marches*) on Sunday next before *Ascension* day then next comming.

The Kings Army was appointed to Rendevouz at ^r Newcastle upon Tyne, on Monday next before the *Ascension* of our Lord, though ^a Sir John Froissard saith it was at *Tork*, upon *Ascension* day, whence about three weeks after *Trinity Sunday*, he marched towards the Enemy; but the ^w *scots* (having exceedingly waited the Northern parts, and declined to fight) slipt from him at *Stanhop* Park in the Bishoprick of *Durham*, and withdrew towards their own Country: nor could the King engage them, though he endeavoured it for 24. days together.

I confess the first Actions of Princes are looked upon by all Eyes, and not seldom, with many Observators, taken as the Radix, whence to calculate their future, either Successes or Miscarriages. If, at these undertakings, a full Age entitle them to the sole management of Affairs, we are inclined to think a judicious Eye may partly discern the strength of their Fortune: But while they reside within Tutorage, and their designs are carried on under the conduct of others, the Event of things will manifest a dependency upon the strength or weakness of the Genius of those persons, who are the chief managers of their Concerns. And this was fully made good in this Prince, whose Martial undertakings were very unsuccessful, specially while the Government of the Kingdom was committed to others (and sometimes afterwards, when he was tyed up and hampered by his Allies in *Flanders*) but he no sooner arrived at full Age, but his Affairs shewed themselves as if disposed by his own Genius; and the first remarkable experiment was verified even upon the *scots* themselves, from whom before, he had received some affronts and indignities.

For having sent Ambassadors to the ^r *Custos*, and chief Nobility of Scotland, He demanded the Homage of *David Brus* their King (and these were probably *Ralph Lord Basset* of *Drayton*, and *William de Denum*, for it appears ^y they were employed thither the 14. of Decemb. an. 6 E. 3. ^z touching the Affairs of the King and Kingdom) and the doing of Homage denied. He forthwith raised an Army, in assistance of *John Balioll*, Son of *John Balioll*, sometime King of Scotland, against *David Brus* the then King: which being appointed to meet at ^a Newcastle upon Tyne, on *Trinity Sunday*, an. 7 E. 3. King Edward entered Scotland, and waited the Country as far as *Scone*, for six months together: Infomuch that the *scots* were forced to fly to their Fastnesses in the Forest of *Gedworth*, where they abode for many years, and as the King returned, he encountered an Army of theirs at *Hallidown Hill*, which he defeated, and killed about ^b 32000. common Souldiers, 7. Earls, 90. Knights and Bannerets, and 400. Esquires.

In memory of this great Victory (happning on the ^c Eve of St. Margaret the Virgin, being the 13. of July) he repaired the Church and Convent of *Nuns*, near the place where the Battel was fought, (upon that occasion destroyed and burnt) and caused an Altar to be therein erected, and dedicated to that Virgin. He further granted to those *Nuns*, and their Successors, 20l. per annum, out of the Issues of the Town and County of *Berwick*, until Lands to that value should be conferred upon them; to the end, that annually on the Eve and day of St. Margaret for ever, they should commemorate the goodness of God for his so prosperous success.

On the ^d Morrow after this great Victory, the King had the Town and Castle of *Berwick* surrendered to him, and on the ^e 19. of June, in the following year, did *Edward Baliol*, King of *scots*, make Homage and Fealty to him at *Newcastle*, as to his Superior and Chief Lord of the Realm of Scotland, who then granted to the King, and annexed to the Crown of England, for ever, the Counties next adjoining to England, namely, *Berwick*, *Roxburgh*, *Pepler*, and *Dunfer-*

^r Chronie. 70.
Froissard mih.
L. 1. c. 15.

^c Claus. 1. E. 3.
p. 1. m. 2. dorso.

^r Rot. Scotia
1. E. 3. m. 9.
u Loco supra
cit.

^w Claus. 1. E. 3.
par. 2. m. 15.
dorso.

^x Froiss. Chronie.
L. 1. c. 26.
^y Rot. Pat.
27. 6 E. 3. p. 3. m. 3.

^a Claus. 7 E. 3.
m. 19. dorso.

^b Hollinsb.
Chron. pag.
350. a.

^c Rot. Scot. 7;
E. 3. m. 2.

^d Hollinsb.
Chron. pag.
350. a.
^e Ib. a. 8. E. 3.

the

the Towns of *Haddington* and *Gedworth*, with the Castle and Fortrefs of *Silkirke*, *Etherick*, and *Gedworth*.

f 1b. p. 351. By the assistance, which King *Edward* afforded to *Edward Baliol*, ^e he gained the most part of *Scotland*: nevertheless divers Castles refused to surrender, which occasioned the King to make another expedition thither, and about *All-hallontide*, he arrived at *Newcastle* upon *Tyne*, and thence marched into *Scotland*, towards the end of *November*, and at *Christmas* entred *Ethrick Forest*: but the *scots* were fled, whereupon having prosecuted his design as far as he thought good, he returned into *England*.

g 1b. an. 9 E. 3. The next year, ^s he raised new Forces, and himself from *Carlisle*, and *Edward* King of *Scots* from *Berwick*, both entred *Scotland* on the 12. of *July*, burning and wasting the Country on both sides, beyond the *Scottish* Sea. This Expedition brought the Earl of *Atholl*, and divers of the *Scotch* Nobility, to a Submission; upon which the King came back into the Northern parts, where he wintered, and kept his *Christmas* at *Newcastle*.

h 1b. an. 1 E. 3. About ^h *Twelfth-tide*, he was provided to pass again into *Scotland*, when Ambassadors from the Pope and King of *France*, found him at *Berwick*, ready to enter that Kingdom, and by their earnest sollicitation (about *Candlemas*) obtained of both Kings a Truce till *Midlent* following: but no Peace ensuing, *Edward* King of *Scotland*, and divers of the *English* Nobility (at *Whitfontide*) entred *Scotland* again: and finding *St. Johns Town* slighted by the *scots*, they fortified it. Shortly after this, King *Edward* followed them thither, and thence passed with his Army unto *Elgen* in *Murrey*, and *Inverness*. In his return, he took *Aberdeen*, and burnt divers Towns, and destroyed the Country. About which time the Earl of *Cornwal* entred *Scotland* also, and destroyed the Western parts, and met the King his Brother at *St. Johns Town*, where the King stayed not long, but marched to *Striveling*, built the Fortrefs called the *Pile*, and returned home. About the Feast of *St. Luke*, he marcht again with a fresh Army into *Scotland*, and repaired *Bothnail-Castle*, and returned into *England* before *Christmas*, leaving *Edward* King of *Scots*, at *St. Johns Town*, settled in the Government of that Kingdom.

The Affairs of *Scotland* being thus quieted for some years, gave King *Edward* the leisure to look towards *France*; which Kingdom afterwards became the Scene of all his Martial Glory. For *Robert d Artois*, Earl of *Beaumont* in *France*, being discontented at the Sentence wherein *Philip* King of *France* had given the Earldom of *Artois* from him, to *Maud* Countess of *Burgundy*, let fall some dangerous words, and they being laid hold on, forced him to fly into *England*, where he was kindly received by King *Edward*; who after he had been here sometime, ⁱ afforded him the use of the Castles of *Guilford*, *Wallingford*, and *Somerton*; whensoever he pleased to retire thither for his recreation, and afterwards assigned him ^k 800*l.* per annum for his support; the one moiety to be received out of the Revenues of certain *Priories* Alien, seised into the Kings hands, and the other moiety, out of his *Exchequer*.

l 1. c. 28. Soon after his coming over, he advised the King to ^l set on foot his claim to the Crown of *France*; whereto the King was willing enough to hearken, and to be perswaded by him; but the Affair being of so great concern, his Council advised him, to take the opinion of his Father-in-Law, the Earl of *Henault*, before he attempted any thing therein: Hereupon (a ^m Comet with long and terrible streams, ushering in this grand Affair) he employed thither, with all privacy, ⁿ *Henry Burgherssh*, Bishop of *Lincolne*, with two Banerets, and two Doctors, to gain him to his party (with all other persons of note, as they should find inclinable to assist the King) who laying before the Earl, King *Edward*'s pretensions to the Crown of *France*; he not only approved of his design, but advised the King to contract other Alliances, and gain to his party some of his neighbouring Princes thereabouts.

o 15 Dec. Pat. Encouraged by this advice, and the assurance of his assistance, he by a Commission ^o constituted the said Earl (therein stiled, *Guilielmus Comes Hanoniae, Hollandia & Selandia, ac Dominus Frisie socer noster*) his Proctor, to treat and agree

i 23 April. Pat.
11 E. 3. p. 2.
m. 5.
k 26 Mar. Pat.
12 E. 3. p. 1.
m. 18.

l 1. c. 28.

m Holinsht.
Chron. p. 353.

n Froiss. ut
supra.

o 15 Dec. Pat.
13 E. 3. p. 2.
m. 6.

agree with such Noblemen, persons of note, and others, as he should think best, touching both Alliances and Retainers. With this, Commissions with like power, and under the same date, were likewise sent to ^r William Earl of Juliers, the ^p *ibid.* Kings Brother-in-Law, to Sir John de Montgomery, Knight, and to Mr. John Waweyn, Canon of Derlington.

In April following, a like Commission was issued to ^r Henry Bishop of Lin- ^q 19. April colne, William Earl of Salisbury, and William Earl of Huntingdon, and they im- ^{Pat. 11. E. 3. p. 1. m. 11.} mediately dispatht into Flanders, where they found business so well prepared by the Commissioners before named, that by the 24. of May ensuing, ^r they had ^r Rot. Alman. 11. E. 3. m. 9. 10. 11. fully engaged divers of the Nobility and others in Henault, Geldres, and the Marquisate of Juliers, to appear in the Kings assistance against the French, and withall settled the proportion of Men and Arms, each of them were to furnish the King with in that Service, together with the stipends and wages to be paid them in lieu thereof. This done, the said ^r Bishop went to Gaunt, and there ^r Froiss. Chron. Lib. 1. cap. 29. won so much upon the humour of Jaques Dartuelt, that he gained him also to the Kings party.

Within a few days after ^r Renaut the Second Earl of Guildres, and Zuitphen ^r Rot. Alman. 11. E. 3. m. 10. (who had married Leonora, the Kings Sister) and William Marquess of Juliers (^r Husband to Joane Sitter to Queen Philippa) entered into the Association, and next ^r Rupert, Count Palatine of the Rhyne, Duke of Bavaria, signed an Agree- ^r Ritterstadium in Tab. Com. Hollandia & Seland. ment at Frankesford, whereby he obliged himself to assist the King, for the re- ^r Utr. Junii Rot. Alman. 11. E. 3. m. 9. covery and maintenance of his Inheritance, against all persons whatsoever, ex- ^r *ibid.* cept Lewis the Emperor, his Uncle (which several Contracts, made by the fore- said Ambassadors with these Princes, were ^r confirmed by the King under the Great Seal of England, the 26. of August following.)

Between this ^r Emperor and the King, and their Heirs, past also an Union ^r *ibid.* m. 11. and Confederacy, which obliged them to use all their power particularly against Philip de Valois (who carried himself as King of France) and his Successors in that Kingdom, for the recovery and defence of their Honors, Inheritances, and Possessions.

The 12. of July was ^r John Duke of Loraine, Brabant, and Lemburgh retained ^r *ibid.* m. 8. for the King, and with the assent of the Emperor, was the Confederation made with ^r Lewis his eldest Son, there stiled Marquess of Brandenburg Count Pala- ^r 2. Sept. 16. tine of the Rhyne, Duke of Bavaria, and Arch-Chamberlain to the Emperor. ^{m. 6.}

With these, the King retained, for his intended Expedition into France, sever- ^r *ibid.* m. 9. al other Noblemen of those Countries, as namely ^r Adolph Earl of Monte (who having made Fealty and Homage to the King, he in reward thereof, settled on him a Pension for life, of 1200 Florens of Gold per annum, out of his Exche- ^r *ibid.* m. 6. quer) ^r Everhard, eldest Son to Thideric Earl of Lymborg; ^r Adolph, Earl of Mar- ^r *ibid.* m. 5. lia; ^r Robert de Tounburgh, Lord of Warnich; ^r Theodorick, Earl of Lossen and ^r Heuseberg, and Lord of Blatikenburgh; and Theodorick de Montjoy, Lord of Val- ^r *ibid.* m. 5. kenborgh: besides divers valiant Knights, and Commanders of eminent note.

But Philip de Valois was so alarm'd at the report of these Alliances, that he used all endeavours to interrupt the foresaid Ambassadors, in their passage home, both by ^r placing a Garrison in the Isle of Cogaunt, and setting out se- ^r Froiss. Chron. Lib. 1. cap. 30. veral men of War to Sea: Of which the King having intelligence, directed his Writ to ^r John de Ros, Admiral of the Fleet, from the River of Thames North- ^r 20. Junii ward, to fit up a Convoy of 40 stout Ships well mann'd, to be at Dort in Hol- ^r Rot. Vasc. 11. land, on Monday after Midsummer-day, to secure their return, where they lay ^r E. 3. m. 20. & 22. vide Rot. ready for their coming. ^r Franc. 11. E. 3. m. 30.

And whereas these Ambassadors, in making these Alliances and Retainers, upon the Kings account, had obliged themselves to pay sundry great sums of money; the King ^r indemnified them, their Heirs, and Executors, of all those ^r Rot. Alman. 11. E. 3. m. 4. sums, and other things whereto they were so engaged.

This great Affair, of strengthening the King with Alliances and Friends in Germany and Flanders, was again set on foot, and to that purpose, another ^r Commission was issued to the said Bishop of Lincoln, and Earl of Salisbury, to ^r 2. Off. Rot. whom was added Robert de Ufford Earl of Suffolk, and John Darcy Steward of ^r Alman. 11. E. 3. m. 10. the

the Kings Houshold, with power to any three of them, to treat thereupon with *Lewis* the Emperor. Another¹ Commission of the same date, was made out to them, and to *Richard de Winkle*, *John de Offord*, *Paul de Monteflorum*, *John de Montgomery*, and *John Wauwyn*, empowering them to treat with, and retain all persons, aswell Nobles as others, for the Kings Service.

And as the King did endeavour by these means to gain assistance, for the recovery of his right to the Crown of *France*, so did he not neglect all methods of Peace: among which he thought fit to^m constitute the foresaid Bishop of *Lincolne*, the Earls of *Salisbury* and *Sussex*, and *John Darcy*, his Agents, to treat *cum magnifico Principe Domino Philippo Rege Franciæ illustri*, or his Deputies, touching his right to the said Crown; to wit, whether it ought to remain to him, or King *Edward*: And by another Commission, they were empowered to treat upon all Controversies and Demands whatsoever, relating to the Dukedom of *Aquitaine*, or other parts beyond Sea, and also of a happy and perpetual peace.

The same day, heⁿ constituted *John Duke of Brabant* and *Lorraine*, his Lieutenant, Captain, and Vicar General in the Kingdom of *France*: where it is worthy note, that the King in this Commission (challenging the Crown of *France*, as devolved to him by right of succession, and consequently become his lawful Inheritance) did assume the Title of that Kingdom, and stiled himself, *Edwardus Dei gratiâ Rex Angliæ & Franciæ, Dominus Hiberniæ, & Dux Aquitanie*: And by another Commission bearing even date, made of these Officerly Dignities to the said Duke, he put *France* in the first place, thus, *Edwardus Dei gratiâ Rex Franciæ & Angliæ, &c.* but it was not long ere he voluntarily laid this Title of *France* aside, nor did he solemnly assume it again, till the 14. year of his Reign over *England*.

By several other^o Commissions of the same date (wherein the Titles of *England* and *France* were so transposed) did the King constitute into the same Dignities, *William Marquess of Juliers*, *William Earl of Henault*, his Father-in-Law, and *William Eobnn Earl of Northampton*; and by another then dated and directed to the Archbishops, Bishops, Dukes, Marquesses, Earls, Barons, and all other persons in the Kingdom of *France* (having therein the Titles of *England* and *France* transposed as before) they are commanded to receive the said Duke, as if it were the King in his own person, as also the Marquesses and Earls. And further, the said Marquesses and the Earls were by other Commissions severally constituted the Kings special Ambassadors, to make known his said Title to all whom it should concern, to challenge and prosecute his right, to require every unjust detainor, to render to the King whatsoever he so withheld from him, to displace and punish such as they should think meet; and lastly to do and execute all other things, which should be most necessary for the recovery and preservation of his right.

The King of *France* had in the beginning of this year sent Forces into^p *Gascoigne*, and seized upon many of the Kings Castles and Fortresses; upon notice hereof the King gave^q command to arrest 20 Ships in the Port of *Southampton*, and thereabouts, and to press men to be ready at *Portsmouth*, to set forward for *Gascoigne* on *Whitson-Eve* following; for he had raised a great Army to send thither. (It may not here be forgotten, what is recorded of^r *Reymond Cornely* Lord of *Abertha* a *Gascoigner*, who made an offer to the King of *France*, to fight in defence of King *Edward's* right to those Countries; for which^t he sent him very great and particular thanks.) But withall made several applications, by his Ambassadors, to the Court of *France*, for restitution of what had been seized on, and prevention of a War. His Offers were these.

1. "To marry his eldest Son the Duke of *Cornwall* to the King of *France's* Daughter, without Dowry.
2. "The marriage of his Sister, the Countess of *Geldres* to his Son, with a great sum of money.
3. "The marriage of his Brother the Earl of *Cornwall*, with any of the Blood Royal.

4. "To make restitution for any dammage, he tendered him as much money as he could in reason demand.

5. "He also proffer'd to take a Voyage to the *Holy Land* with the King of *France*, if he would restore his Lands to him.

6. "To go the Voyage, if he would restore but half, or some of those Lands.

7. "To take the Voyage with him, if he would make restitution after his return; or lastly,

8. "To take the Voyage singly himself, so that at his return, he would restore him his right.

These Overtures with many others, which the King or his Council could think off, were offer'd to the King of *France*, in order to a Peace, with this general proposall beside; That if any one could think of any other way tending thereunto, he would be ready to accept thereof. But all in vain; for, on the contrary, King *Philip* excited and maintained the *Scots* against him, and his Navy also did great mischiefs at Sea.

Whereupon the Pope perceiving that the War was likely to proceed, sent into *England* P. Priest Cardinal of *St. Praxid*, and B. Deacon Cardinal of *St. Mary in Aquiro*, to use their best endeavours, to compose the differences now growing high between the two Kings. Upon whose mediation with King *Edward*, though Peace could not be obtained, yet that things relating to Peace might the better be effected, a Truce was agreed on, to the Morrow after *Candlemas* day, *an. 12. E. 3.* and thence prorogued to the first of *March*, and lastly, a further enlargement of it to *Midsummer* following, in case the King of *France* should consent to it, and give Security that it should be observed; but he it seems refusing, the King was advis'd to revoke this later cessation (which he did the 6. of *May*) and to take a Journey into *Flanders*, personally to confer with his Allies, in pursuance of his design against *France*, and thereupon he took shipping at the Port of *Orewell* the 16. of *July*, and went to *Antwerp*: But before he went, upon the Cardinals further importunity, a Commission issued to J. Archbishop of *Canterbury*, R. Bishop of *Durham*, R. de *Ufford* Earl of *Sussex*, Sir *Geoffry le Scrop* Knight, and Mr. *John Ufford* Archdeacon of *Ely*, with power to treat and agree, touching all things in difference between them, in reference to a full and final Peace. And by another Commission, bearing the same date, the Duke of *Brabant*, Earl of *Hanow* and *Guelldres*, the Marquess of *Juliers*, and Sir *William Dunort* Lord of *Oustrehout*, Knight, are added to them. These Commissions were double, and of two several Stiles; in the one, the King calls *Philip de Valois Consanguineus noster Franciæ*, only; and in the other, *Excellentissimus Princeps, Dominus Philippus, Rex Franciæ, illustris Consanguineus noster charissimus*.

At *Antwerp* the confederate Princes gave the King a meeting, and here he expressly revoked all the powers he had given the forementioned Commissioners, to treat with *Philip de Valois*, as King of *France*. At length it was resolved, that the Duke of *Juliers* should be sent Ambassador, from the King to the Emperor; which Embassy obtained a promise to the King, of the Vicar-generalship of the Empire; whereupon, about the beginning of *September* he took a Journey to *Coleu*, where the Emperor publicly defied the King of *France*, and constituted King *Edward* his Vicar-General, who at his return into *Flanders*, entered upon the execution of that Office.

In the 13. year of this Kings Reign, at the instance of the foresaid Cardinals, John Archbishop of *Canterbury*, Richard Bishop of *Durham*, Henry Bishop of *Lincolne*, the Earls of *Derby*, *Salisbury*, and *Sussex*, and some others, were impowered to treat with *Philip de Valois*, or his Deputies, upon the Dignities, Honors, Lands, and Rights, belonging to King *Edward*, and all other controversies whatsoever. The Deputies on the other part, were the Archbishop of *Rouen*, the Bishops of *Langres* and *Beauvais*, and the place for treaty, *Arras*; but nothing of Peace being thereby effected, the King prepared effectually for War; having some time before, made an alliance with *Albert* and *Otho*, Dukes of *Austria*, *stiria*, and *Karinthia*; and received Homage as King of *France*, from

u Rot. Franc.
11. E. 3. m. 2.
Dors.
w Rot. Ali.
x 1 man. 12.
E. 3. p. 1. m. 35.
vide Pat. de
ed. an. p. 1.
m. 24.
y Ibid. m. 16.

z 21. June Rot.
Alman. 12. E. 3.
p. 1. m. 51

a Ibid.

b 22. July Rot.
fals. apud Ant-
werp. 12. E. 3.
m. 7. cy 3.
c Froiss. Chron.
lib. 1. cap. 32.

d Walsingb. sub
an. 12. E. 2.

e Froiss. lib. 1.
cap. 34.
f Primo Julii
Pas. concess. ho-
minib. Angl. &
Vasc. 13. E. 3.
m. 17.

g Halliash.
Chron. p. 355.
h 16. Febr. Pa-
rentes inter Re-
gem Angl. &
diversos Mag-
nates German.
de an. 13. E. 3.
m. 2.

i § 16. m. 4.
k

l Sub an. 13.
E. 3.

m Froiss.
Chron. l. 1.
c. 34.
n Ibid. c. 35.

o Knight in
Hist. Angl.
Script. Coll.
2574.

p 4. OH. Pat.
concess. homi-
nib. Angl. &
Vass. 13 E. 3.
m. 82.

q Knighton loco
cit.

r Froiss. Chron.
l. 1. c. 42.

s Knighton
Hist. Angl. Coll.
2575.
t 15. Nov. Pat.
inter Regem
& diversa
Magnat. Ger-
man. 13. E. 3.
m. 3.
u 16. Dec. B.
m. 2.

v Froiss. l. 1.
c. 43.

x Claus. 14. E.
3. p. 1. m. 42.
dors.

y 21. Febr. 15.
m. 33. dors.

from *Reiginald*, Duke of *Guedres* and Earl of *Zutphen*, for which he afterwards granted him ⁱ 1000*l.* sterling per Annum, for his life. He likewise made alliances with other Princes, who were to furnish him with men, to be employed in his intended expedition into *France*: as also with ^k *Lewis* the Emperour: after which, he sent a Letter from *Antwerp* to the Pope, asserting his claim to the Crown of *France*, which is to be seen in ^l *Thomas Walsingham's History of England*.

All things for War being now in readines, the King (with the assistance of his Allies) first besieged *Cambray* (an Imperial City, and then in the hands of the *French*) but it being too well fortified and provided, to be suddenly taken, he raised his Siege, and passed into *France*, first ^m sending his defiance to *Philip de Valois* (then at *Paris*) by the Bishop of *Lincoln*. Sir *Walter Manny* was the first, who, after the defiance made, ⁿ entred *France* with 40. Horse, burnt *Mortaigne*, took the Castle of *Thyne*, garrisoned it, and returned to the King at *Mechlin*.

The King having passed the River *Skell*, entred *France* upon ^o *St. Matthews* Day, and burnt the Country before him. And not long after, at the request of the Duke of *Brabant*, to admit of a Treaty of Peace, the King, at *Markeyne*, ^p grants the said Duke power, in his name, to give safe conduct to such persons as he should think fit, to meet at any place within two or three Leagues from his Camp, to treat of Peace, the same to continue till *Friday* following, and all that day; but nothing was effected.

The ^q *Saturday* before *St. Lukes* Day, the King with his Army passed the River *Oyze*, and marching forward till he came between *Vronfosf*, and *Flamengery*, the two Armies drew near each other, where the Day of Battel was agreed on to be the *Friday* after. But in the interim a ^r Letter of advice was brought to the *French* King, from *Robert* King of *Sicily* a famous Astrologer, to dissuade him from fighting, since he had by his Science found, that if he fought with the King of *England*, he should be vanquished, and loose the day. This Letter so prevailed with the King of *France*, that though he had the greater power, and that both Armies stood ranged for Battel, yet was there not a blow struck on the appointed Day. The *Munday* following, intelligence was brought to the King, ^s that the *French* were dispersed, and returning homewards, whereupon he withdrew his Army, and marched back into *Brabant*.

At his return to *Antwerp*, he ^t issued out another Commission, to *John* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, *R.* Bishop of *Durham*, *H.* Bishop of *Lincoln*, *W.* Earl of *Salisbury*, Sir *Bartholomew Eurgherfs*, and Sir *Geoffry le Scrop*, Knights, and *John de Offord* Archdeacon of *Ely*, to treat of Peace with *Philip de Valois*, or with Commissioners from him, and a ^u month after this Commission was renewed, upon adding *Robert de Ufford*, Earl of *Suffolk*, to the before-named Commissioners.

Here also, the King was advised to ingage the ^v *Flemmings* to his further Assistance, who were willing enough (for, by the means of *Jaques D'artnell*, he had gained a great influence upon them) but considering they stood ingaged in the Pope's Chamber in two Millions of *Florens*, not to make War against the King of *France*, they proposed, that the King would quarter the Arms of *France* with those of *England*, and call himself King of *France*, as he ought of right to do, and then they would take him to be the rightful King of *France*, and receive from him a discharge of that Obligation, and afford him their assistance. To this proposal the King agreed, and solemnly assumed both the Arms of the Kingdom, and Title of King of *France*. He also caused his Great Seal to be changed, and brought it with him at his return to *England* (landing at ^x *Orewell* the 21. of *Febr.* at 9. a Clock in the Morning) and the first of *March* delivered it to Sir *John de St. Paul*, in a Chamber called the *Cage Chamber* at *Westminster*. The old Great Seal, was then delivered up to him by the said Sir *John*, which he gave to *William de Kildesby* to be kept in his Wardrobe: But, that the New Seal might be made more publick, he caused ^y Impressions thereof, and of his Privy Seal, to be made and sent to all the Sheriffs in

in England, to be published in the several Counties, in regard he intended at the meeting of the Parliament on the *Wednesday* next after *Midlent Sunday*; to acquaint them with the cause, wherefore he had added to his Stile, the title of King of France.

That day being come, he under his New Great Seal, as King of France, ^a vacated all Papal Procefies made at the instance of the French King, against the Inhabitants of *Flanders*; and granted to the Earl of *Flanders*, his Heirs and Successors for ever, the Towns of *Lysle*, *Doway*, *Bethune*, and *Orchies*, with the County of *Artois*, and City of *Tournay*, and to their Inhabitants, divers Priviledges. And by another Instrument of the same date under the said Seal, with the consent of the Parliament, he granted, ^b that the staple of Wools should be setled at *Bruges*.

A little before his return into England, he wrote a ^c Letter from *Gaunt* (which bore Teste the 8. of *Febr.* in the first year of his Reign over France, and 14. over England) to the Prelates, Peers, and Commons of France, thereby signifying, that *Charles*, late King of France, his Mothers Brother, being dead, that Kingdom was fallen to him by manifest Law; and that *Philip de Valois*, Son to the Uncle of the said King, had by force intruded into it in his Minority, and yet detained it. Lest therefore he should seem to neglect his own right, he thought good to own the Title of France, and take on him the Defence and Government thereof, and having offered the said *Philip* divers friendly conditions of Peace, to which he refused all condiscention, he was therefore necessitated to defend himself, and recover his right by force of Arms; and therefore all such Subjects as would submit to him as true King of France, by *Easter* then next ensuing, should be received into his grace and protection.

Having dispatch his Affairs with the Parliament, which had given him a ^d great Supply, to go on with this War, and wherein an Act passed ^e that he might, with the assent of his Allies, condescend to any reasonable terms of Peace: And having created the Marquess of *Juliers*, ^f Earl of *Cambridge*, and given him 1000*l.* per annum until he were provided for of so much Land of Inheritance, He got in readines an Army to go beyond Sea, and prepared his Navy to transport it, and on the 22. of *June* (*hora diei quasi prima*) set sail from *Orewell*.

The French King had laid ^g 120. great Ships, beside *Genoeses*, *Normans*, and *Picards*, Manned with 40000. Men, to intercept his passage; But after a fierce and bloody fight on *Midsummer Eve*, the ^h King got the Victory, before *Sluce*, destroying most of the Enemy, and taking the greatest part of their Fleet: and on *Midsummer* day landed at *Sluce*, and went forthwith to *Gaunt*. Of this Signal Victory an account, by ⁱ Letter was sent from the King to the Bishops and Prelates, by the Earl of *Arundel*, and Sir *William Trussell*.

Not long after the ^k King held a Council with his Allies at *Villenort*, where it was resolved, that the King should besiege *Tournay*, before which he brought 120000. Men. ^l Thence, he sent a Letter sealed with his Great Seal, to *Philip de Valois*, signifying, that he had fairly requested him to render him his lawful right to the Crown of France, but perceiving he meant to persist in detaining it, without returning him any answer, He was therefore entred *Flanders*, as Sovereign Lord thereof, to pass through that Country, for recovery of his Inheritance so detained; yet to avoid the effusion of Christian blood, and determine the right, he challenged him to fight body to body, or else 100. chosen Souldiers on each side, or if both were refused, then to pitch upon a day for both Armies to fight neer *Tournay*; But the French King returned no answer to this Letter.

The Siege continued eleven weeks, wanting three days, in which time, by the mediation and effectual endeavour of *Jane de Valois*, the French Kings Sister, a Treaty was set on foot, ^m *John*, King of *Bohemia*, *Adolph*, Bishop of *Leige*, *Reynel* Duke of *Lorraine*, *Am* Earl of *Savoy*, and *John* Earl of *Arminiack*, being Commissioners for the French King, the Dukes of *Brabant*, and *Guedres*, the Marquess of *Juliers*, and *John* of *Henault* Lord *Beaumont* for King *Edward*;

M m m m 2

who

n Wallingh.
Pag. 136.

o Clauf. 14.
E. 3. pag. 2.
m. 12. dorfo.

p Froif. lib. 1.
cap. 63.

q 9. April Rot.
Alman. 15. E. 3.
m. 27.
r 24. May Ib.
m. 20.

f 21. Aug. Ib.
m. 19. vide
Clauf. 15. E. 3.
p. 2. m. 38. dor-
fo.
* 14. Sept. Ib.
m. 12.
† Ibid. m. 7.
u Rot. Alman.
15. E. 3. m. 13.

w Froif. lib. 1.
cap. 56. Knight-
ton Hift. Angl.
Script. Coll. 258.

x Primo Aug.
Rot. Scot. 15.
E. 3. m. 9.
y Ibid.

z Rot. Scot. 16.
E. 3. m. 12.

a Ibid. m. 9.
b Knighton
Hift. Ang. Scrip.
Coll. 2581.

c Rot. Scot. 17.
E. 3. m. 4.

who on the 25. of September agreed upon a Truce, between both Kings, to endure till *Midsummer* following (of which publication was made in *England* the 6. of October) and thus both Armies retired. But this was much against the Kings Will, though not against those of his Allies, who were very desirous to return home. The Siege being raised, the King went to *Gaunt*, and thence returned into *England*, where he arrived (at the Tower Wharf) on the 9. Feast of St. Andrew about Midnight.

At this Treaty before *Tournay*, it was among other things agreed, that another Treaty should be held at *Arras*, within that year, whither both Kings and the Pope should send Commissioners; but that meeting produced only another year to be added to the Truce. The Kings Commissioners were the Bishops of *Lincolne* and *Durham*, the Earl of *Warwick*, Sir *Robert d'Artois*, Sir *John Henault*, and Sir *Henry of Flanders*. This year produced some other Overtures for the amicable compofure of all Controversies, and concluding a Peace between the two Kings; to which purpose a Commission issued to R. Bishop of *Durham*, Hugh Earl of *Gloucester*, William Fitz Warren, Nicholas de *Elisco*, and William Trussell. Another Commission issued to John Duke of *Brabant*, Reinold Duke of *Guelldres* and *Zuthphen*, William Marquess of *Juliers*, and Earl of *Cambridge*, and William Earl of *Hanaw*, and John de *Hanaw* Lord *Beaumont*, to treat and agree with Philip de *Valois*, upon a Truce, to the Feast of the decollation of St. John Baptist then coming on, which it seems became to far hopeful, as to produce a prorogation till the Feast of the Exaltation of the Holy Cross, and thence till *Midsummer* in the following year. Another Commission was made forth to William Earl of *Huntingdon*, Bernard Dominus de le Brett, Bartholomew de *Burglerfs*, John de *Offord*, Archdeacon of *Ely*, and Michael de *Elisco*, to treat with the said Philip de *Valois*, aswell touching the Kingdom and Crown of *France*, as divers other questions and controversies between them, and to compose the differences by a full Peace, or otherwise a Truce; and one of these Commissions was to treat, by the advice of John Duke of *Brabant*, and other the Kings Allies in *Flanders*.

While the King lay at the Siege of *Tournay*, the Scots (excited by the French King) invaded *England*, and passing by *Berwick* marched into *Northumberland*, and thence to *Durham*, foraging the Country still as they went, and after returned home. In this incursion they recovered all the Castles formerly lost, except those of *Edenburgh*, *Strivling*, and *Roxborough*, the first of which, within a short time after, was taken by stratagem. But in the Truce made at *Tournay*, the Scots were by a particular Article included, and so all hostility ceased during that Truce; yet after the expiration thereof, and some new provocations given the King, he raised an Army to enter *Scotland*, but being engaged in the War with *France*, could not go with it himself, and therefore constituted Edward, King of *Scotland*, his Captain and Lieutenant of his Army: and in another Commission of the same date, gave him power nevertheless to treat with the Scots, and to admit them to Peace, and pardon their offences. In these Commissions the King styles him, *Magnificus Princeps, Edwardus Rex Scotie, fidelis & consanguineus noster charissimus*.

The following year he was again constituted the King's Captain and Commander in chief, of the Army designed against *Scotland*, for defence of the Kingdom of *England*, and destruction of his Scotch Enemies; and further commissioned to raise men in all the Counties beyond *Trent*, aswell within Liberties as without, for that Expedition. Upon which preparation, a Truce was made for one year; before the ending of which, the Truce concluded at *Vannes* in *Britagne*, between the King and his Adversary of *France*, took commencement, being to hold from *Michaelmas* 17. E. 3. for three years: And in the mean time the Bishop of *Durham*, and others, were appointed by the King to treat and conclude with the Scots, touching the manner, form, and conditions appointed by the said Truce, and the mutual commerce of the Subjects of both Kingdoms, as also to reform and punish the breakers of the Truce.

The Truce made with the French at *Tournay*, and enlarged at *Arras*, gave the King

King time to see his Allies in *Flanders*, aimed chiefly at the accomplishment of their own designs by his hands, rather than the advancement of his interest in *France* by their assistance; and the two fruitless Expeditions, in attempting to enter that Kingdom through *Flanders*, shewed they would do little for him; besides, he now judged it a more easie and advantagious passage thither through *Britagne*, which he hoped to gain, by laying hold of the occasion offered him, to protect and assist *John Earl of Montfort*, Duke of *Britagne*; whose Title to that Dukedom, and the occasion of the War between him and *Charles de Bloys*, are set down at large by ^d Sir *John Froissard*.

This ^e *John Montfort* being taken Prisoner at *Nants*, by *Charles de Bloys* (whom the French King had assisted with an Army to enter *Britagne*) was sent to *Paris*, and there died in Prison, his Widow (^f *Joane of Flanders* being of a manlike courage) nevertheless maintained the War, and, to gain further aid and supplies from *King Edward*, proposed (by ^g Sir *Emere de Clifton*, a Nobleman of *Britagne*) to marry her Son to one of his Daughters, which taking effect, the King sent ^h Sir *Walter Manny* (in November) with 3000 Archers into *Britagne*, who though they wandred 40 days at Sea, by distress of weather, yet came timely to her assistance.

The King in the 16. year of his Reign raised a great Army, and, by ^k Proclamation made, appointed his Souldiers in all Counties of *England*, except *Torkshire*, *Northumberland*, *Cumberland*, and *Westmerland*, to be in readines by *Midsummer* following, to go along with him, and after directed his Letters to the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, and the Bishops, for publick Prayers to be made, and the divine goodness sought to, for a blessing upon his Armies, which now he designed both against *France* and *Scotland*.

The ^m 4. of *October* following he took shipping at *Sandwich*, in a Ship called the *George*, and sailing towards *France* met with the French Fleet, where after a fierce Encounter, they were separated by Tempest; at length he landed neer *Vannes* in *Britagne*, and laid Siege thereto; and here, leaving the Lord *Stafford*, he marched to *Remes* and *Nantes*, laying Siege to both Towns, as also to ⁿ *Dynan* and took it; after which he returned to *Vannes*, and then drew off his Forces from *Nantes* thither: and there the ^o Bishop Cardinals of *Peneztrina* and *Tusculan*, sent from *Pope Clement* the Sixth, obtained of him (19. Jan. 1343.) a Truce for ^p 3 years, which the King gave way to, in hope of an honorable Peace. This done, the King returned into *England*, and set forth a Proclamation, to give publick notice of this Truce.

But the Truce expiring, the War was again renewed, between *Charles de Bloys* and the Countess of *Montfort*, to whose assistance the King sent Sir *Thomas Dagworth*, from the Siege of *Calais*, with a supply of men; and the English having *Rochedaren* surrendered to them, *Charles de Bloys* laid Siege to it, to relief of which, the Countess sent Sir ^q *Thomas Dancorne*, and Sir *John Artwell* who (^r 20. June 1347.) took *Charles de Bloys* with the *Britagne* and *Norman* Lords, that were on his part, Prisoners, and raised the Siege; which ^s *Charles* was sent into *England*, where he remained in custody a long time.

The ^t 24. of *February*, an. 17. E. 3. the King summoned a Parliament to be held die *Lune proximo post Quindena Pasche*, wherein Sir *Bartholomew Burgherish*, present at the making of the Truce neer *Vannes*, declared that the King consented thereto, ^u provided it might be honorable and advantageous for his Allies, and was content to have the Peace made before the *Pope*, as before a Friend, but not as a Judge; otherwise he would pursue his Quarrel. And that as the King did not undertake this War without the assent of Parliament, so without it he would conclude no Peace, and therefore it rested, whether it were best for the King to take this Offer, and send Ambassadors to the *Pope* instructed for this Affair, before *Midsummer*, or not? Hereupon both Lords and Commons answered, That it was good to pursue the Peace, and to send Ambassadors, as was proposed.

Those who were first sent to the Popes Court upon this Affair, were ^v *Hugh de Despenser* Lord of *Glamorgan*, *Ralph Lord Stafford*, *William de Norwich*, Dean

d Lib. 1. c. 64.

e Froiss. Chron. lib. 1. cap. 72.

f Pas. 16. E. 3. p. 1. m. 25.

g Hollinsh. Chron. p. 362.

h Rot. Alman. 15. E. 3. m. 4. c. 7. vide

Froissard. li. 1. cap. 79.

i Froiss. lib. 1. cap. 81.

k May 20. Claus. 16. E. 3. m. 20. dorso.

l Ibid. p. 3. m. 28. dorso.

m 16. p. 2. m. 23. dorso.

n 29. Nov. Hollinsh. Chron. pag. 364.

o Froiss. lib. 1. cap. 96.

p Ibid. cap. 97.

q Rot. Parl. 17. E. 3. n. 8. vide etiam Claus. de eod. an. p. 1. m. 25. dorso.

r Kingdon Col. 2583.

s Claus. 16. E. 3. p. 1. m. 31.

t Froiss. lib. 1. cap. 142.

u Ibid. c. 143.

v Hollinsh. Chron. p. 376.

x Froiss. c. 147.

y Claus. 17. E. 3. p. 1. m. 25. dorso.

z Rot. Parl. de eod. an. n. 8. j

a 20. May Rot. Franc. 17. E. 3. m. 12.

Dean of *Lincoln*, Sir *William Trussel*, and *Andrew de Offord*, a Civilian. The Authority given them was to Treat in presence of the Pope, not as a Judge, but private Person and Friend to both parties, with the Agents of his Cousin the Lord *Philip de Valois*, upon the Kings Right to the Crown of *France*, as also upon whatsoever Dominions, Dignities, Honors, Lands, Possessions, Places, and Rights appertained to him, concerning which any controversy had risen between them, or was like to arise. After this another ^b Commission issued containing the same powers, to *Henry of Lancaster* Earl of *Derby*, *Thomas de Beauchampe* Earl of *Warwick*, *Robert de Ufford* Earl of *Suffolke*, *Hugh le Despenser* Lord of *Glamorgon*, *Ralph de Nevill*, *Bartholomew de Burghersh*, *John le Grey de Ruffyn*, *Reginald de Cobham*, and *Thomas de Brodifston*, *Batons*, *William de Norwich* Dean of *Lincoln*, *John de Offord* Archdeacon of *Ely*, *Robert Herward* Archdeacon of *Taunton*, and *Andrew de Offord* Professor of the Civil Law, or to any 12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, or 3, of them. But this Treaty had only the effect of continuing the Truce, yet that so ill kept on the *French* side, that the following year it occasioned a solemn complaint, sent from the King to the Pope, by *John Offord*, Dean of *Lincoln*, *Hugh de Nevill*, and *Nicholas de Elisco*, to require reformation, and security for the observance of the said Truce, until the time it was to end, and in case that were not done, then they to surrender it into the Popes hands, and defy *Philip de Valois*, as the Kings Enemy.

It seems, the desires of the King met with a dilatory answer, for the ^d 20 of *October* following, *William* Bishop of *Norwich*, *John de Offord* Dean, and *John Thoresby* Canon of *Lincoln*, Sir *Hugh Nevil*, and Sir *Ralph Spigurnell* Knights, and *Nicholas de Elisco* were commissioned to declare before the Pope, in what particulars the Truce had been broken, and to demand reparations: but after all this, no satisfaction being given to the King, and the Truce manifestly and notoriously violated, the King gave ^e Commission to *William de Bohun*, Earl of *Northampton* to defy *Philip de Valois*, as a Violator of the Truce, an unjust Usurper of his inheritance in *France*, and his Capital Enemy. And ^f shortly after, he set forth a Manifesto touching the dissolution of the Truce, wherein the causes were declared at large: being the same with the ^g Letters sent from him to the Pope and four Cardinals, the 26. of *May* preceeding.

This being done, the King with all diligence ^h provides an Army to enter *France* the following year, and the ⁱ 5. of *July* in the 20. year of his Reign, took Shipping at *Southampton*; but instead of sailing towards *Gosfoigne*, whether he at first intended, (upon the advice of Sir *Geoffry de Harecourt*) he diverted his course, and made towards *Normandy*, and landed at *Hoges saynt Wast*, in the *Isle of Constantine* not far from *St. Savours le Vycount*, the ^k 12. of *July* after.

Upon his arrival he ordered his Army in ^l three Battels, the one marched on his right hand along the Sea-side, the second on his left; both which exceedingly enriched themselves with the spoils of the Country: and himself with the third in the middle. This Battel consisted of 3000. men at Arms, 6000. Archers, and 10000. Common Souldiers.

The first Town he took was ^m *St. Lo*, in *Constantine*, rich in Drapery, and next ⁿ *Caen*; the plunder of it, and other places, consisting of Cloth, Vessels of Silver and Gold, Jewels, and more than 60. Knights and 300. Burgeses, made Prisoners, were sent to the Ships, and transported into *England*. After this the King marched on, wasting and burning the Country and entred *Lisieux*, the Chief City of *Normandy*, for Wealth and Merchandize, and plundered it. And hence, he gave ^p Letters of Protection and safe conduct to the Cardinals of *Tusculan*, and *St. John*, and *St. Paul*, sent from the Pope to mediate a Peace. From thence he marched into the Country of *Eureux*, and spoiled it, and leaving *Roan*, he passed to *Gaillon*, and burnt it, with *Vernon*, *Pont de Lache*, and all the Country thereabouts, and went over the River *Seyne* to *Poissy*. Hence (having thus overrun and wasted *Britagne* and *Normandy*) the *English* Marshalls rode towards *Paris*, and burnt *St. Germain en Laye*, *Mountjoy*, *St. Clou*, *Pety Bolayne* near

b 19. Aug. Ib.

c 4. Aug. Rot. Franc. 18. E. 3. m. 3.

d 16. m. 2.

e 24. April Rot. Franc. 19. E. 4. p. 1. m. 24. f 14. June. Ib. m. 10.

g Rot. Rom. 19. E. 3. m. 2. n. 4.

h Froissard Chron. l. 1. c. 121. i Stones Chron. p. 241. b.

k Cart. & Pat. falsa in Franc. 20. E. 3. m. 1. l Froissard Chron. l. 1. c. 122.

m Ib. c. 123.

n Ib. c. 124. o Ib. c. 125.

p Rot. Normann. 20. E. 3. m. 21.

neer Paris and the *Bourg la Reine*, which caused the *French King* to retire to *St. Denis*. Sir *Godfrey de Harecourt* encountered a considerable party of the *Burgesses of Amiens*, going to the assistance of the *French King*, of whom he kill'd 1200, and defeated the rest, and took their Carriages and Baggage.

About this time the *French King* had sent notice to *King Edward*, that he would give him Battel, the *Thursday, Saturday, Sunday, or Monday* after, between *St. Germain de Preez*, and *Valgirt de la Paris*, or between *Franconville* and *Ponthoife*; in answer to which, (from *Antes 15. Aug.*) the *King* sent him word, that he was come thither, to put an end to the War by Battel, but that the said *French King* had broken down all the Bridges, so that they could not come at each other. That he had come to *Poissy*, and repaired that Bridge, and there stayed three days expecting him, and that the *French Forces* might have come on, either on the one side or the other, at his pleasure. But forasmuch as they did not, he could not then give him Battel, and therefore now resolved to pass further into the Kingdom, and there stay till he had ended the War, or advantaged himself, and disabled his Adversaries: Nevertheless if he would combat him, to save those which he challenged for his Subjects, upon notice of the Hour, he should find him ready for the Encounter, and this he principally desired for the benefit of Christianity, since he had refused to accept of, or propose any reasonable way for effecting Peace.

This answer was not liked by the *French King*; therefore the *King* having stayed at *Poissy*, and there kept the Feast of our Lady in *August*, marched thence into the Country of *Beauvoisin*, burning and destroying all before him. One night having lodged in an Abbey, and next morning after his departure, looking behind him, he saw it on fire, but he hanged 20 of his Souldiers, that had done the mischief; because at his first entrance into *France*, he had caused Proclamation to be made throughout his Army, that no man, upon pain of death, should violate a Church, or burn a Religious House.

As he passed by *Beauvois*, he fired the Suburbs, and went thence to *Granvillers*. He also took and fired the Castle of *Angers*, and the Town of *Pork*, and the two Castles; and drawing near to *Abbeville*, he endeavoured to pass the River of *Somme*, but sounding several places found no Ford; at length one *Gobyn a Grace* (a Prisoner) brought him to *Blanch-taque*. This Ford was guarded on the other side by 12000 men, commanded by Sir *Godmar du Foy*; here the *King* forced his passage, and defeated Sir *Godmar*, and after he had passed his whole Army over, he marched to *Crescy* in *Ponthieu*, where he formed his Army into three Battels, the first of which was led by the Prince of *Wales*, accompanied with divers of the *English Nobility*, the second by the Earl of *Norhampton*, and the third by the *King* himself.

And here, before the Battels joined, he created 50 Knights, among whom were *Robert de Maule*, *Guy de Brian*, *John de Ravensholm*, *Peter de Brewes*, *Thomas de Lancastre*, *Henry Dengayne*, and *John the Son of Guy de Beauchamp*; to whom the *King* gave annual Penfions for their lives, to support these Honors.

The Battel was fought between *Eray* and *Crescy*, on *Saturday* the 7. of the Calends of *September*, viz. the 26. of *August an. Dom. 1346.* and the Victory fell to *King Edward*. There were kill'd on the *French* part, the *King of Bohemia*, the Duke of *Lorraine*, the Earls of *Alanson*, *Flanders*, *Harcourt*, *Almor*, *Bloys*, *Auser*, and *St. Paul*; but the *French King* fled to *Bray Castle* with 5 Barons only, and thence to *Amiens*. On the day after the Battel, there were four times as many slain (coming to the assistance of the *French King*, but knew nothing of his defeat) as on the day on which the Battel was fought.

After this Battel, the *King* forthwith carried his Army towards *Calais*, and sat down before it the 7. day of *September*, continuing his Siege all the Winter ensuing. The next Summer the *French King* came down with an Army of 200000 men to raise the Siege, and on *Monday* after *St. James's day*, drawing neer to the Castle of *Guisnes*, and finding the *King* so strongly intrenched, that he could not attempt him; he, on the 2. of *August*, returned; whereupon the

Town

q Rot. Norm. 20. E. 3. m. 21. Duf.

r Froiss. Chron. loco cit.]

s Froiss. lib. 1. cap. 126.

t Ibid. cap. 127.

u Ibid. c. 128.

w Cart. Pat. Rege existente in Fra. 20. E. 3. m. 21.

x Froiss. lib. 1. cap. 130. y Ex Lib. Monast. de Lacock in Com. Wilts.

z Froiss. c. 131.

a Ibid. c. 132.

b Knighton

Hist. Angl.

Script. Coll.

2495.

c Stowes Chron.

pag. 244.

^d Knighton loco cit. Town was surrendered to the King's mercy, the ^d 4. of August following; and the King having settled his Affairs there, returned into England the ^c 14. of October.
^e Stowe loco cit. The ^f 7. of October an. 20. E. 3. which was within a Month after King Edward had laid Siege to Calais, David King of Scots invaded England, with 50000 men. The Queen being then at York raised an Army to oppose him, and marched towards Newcastle, neer which, on ⁱ St. Luke's Eve she encountred the Scots, flew 15000 of them, and vanquished the rest. Their King was taken Prisoner at ^k Meryngton, by John Copland, an Esquire of Northumberland, and (according to the Kings command signified to ^l Thomas Rokely, high Sheriff of Yorkshire, who had received him by Indenture from Monsieur Ralph Nevill) was delivered by Indenture, dated the ^m 2. of January after, unto John Darcy Constable of the Tower of London, there to be kept in safe custody. After this Victory, the English entred Scotland, and took the Castles of ⁿ Roxburgh and Hermitage, and subdued the Counties of Anandale, Galloway, Mers, Trivdale and Ethrick Forest, extending their March as far as Cockburns Peth, and Somtray hedge, Tralnilips, and Crofs Cave.

Shortly after the defeating of the King of Scots, upon the mediation of the Cardinal of Naples and Clermont, a ^o Commission was made out to William Marquess of Juliers, William de Bohun Earl of Northampton, Constable of England, Thomas Beauchamp Earl of Warwick, Marshal of England, Bartholomew de Burghersh, Richard Talbot Steward of the King's House, Thomas Bradewardyn Chancellor of London, John de Thoresby, Canon of Lincolne, and Andrew Offord Canon of York, or any 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, or 3 of them, to treat of, and conclude with the said Cardinals, upon all Quarrels and Controversies depending between the King and Sir Philip de Valois, and their Allies; but this meeting came to nothing.

Nevertheless, after Calais was taken, the Earls of Lancaster and Huntingdon were ^p commissioned to treat of a Peace, with the said Sir Philip de Valois, which upon the interposition and mediation of the foresaid Cardinals, produced a Truce, to endure from Michaelmas Eve an. 21. E. 3. to the Quinzeme of St. John Baptist next ensuing.

Lewis of Bavaria the Emperor being dead, about this time Henry Archbishop of Mentz, Arch-Chancellor of the Empire in Germany, Rudolph and Rupert Counts Palatine of the Rhine, and Dukes of Bavaria, Lewis Marquess of Brandenburg and Lusatia, and the Dukes of Saxony assembled at Collen, whence they sent Ambassadors to King Edward; with the offer of Electing him Emperor of Germany; in return of which he sent to them Sir Hugh Nevil, and Ivo de Glynton Canon of St. Pauls London, with full information of the Kings intention, which contained a refusal of that Imperial Dignity, but with ^q great thanks for the honor they designed him.

The Truce made at Calais as aforesaid, now growing towards an end; the King was prevailed with, upon the Popes Letters, to ^r depute Thomas Fastolf, Arch Deacon of Wells, John Carleton Canon of Wells, both Doctors of Law, and Fryer John de Reppes of the Order of Mount Carmell, who had Commission to prorogue the Truce, and to treat of a final Peace, the former of which was concluded on for ^s 6 weeks in Picardy, Normandy, Artois, Boloigne, and Flanders, and to commence the ^t 12. of September an. 22. E. 3. But the King well seeing the delay, and unwillingness of the French to close with him, either for Truce or Peace, drew down his Forces in October to ^u Sandwich, intending to pass the Sea; which quickned the French to ^v agree to the prorogation of the Truce, from the 18. of November till the first of September, an. 23. E. 3. upon which he returned to London.

No sooner was this Truce concluded, but the ^x Lord Geoffry Charney attempted to corrupt Sir Amery de Pavy, an Italian, then Governor of Calais, to betray the Town to him for 20000 Crowns, of which the King having notice, came privately the night before the delivery was agreed on. The Lord Geoffry had paid his money, and expected the surrender of the Town, when the King issued out, disguised under the Banner of Sir Walter Manny, and fought on foot among

among the Common Souldiers; and within a while he encountred the Lord *Eustace of Rybemont*, a Valiant Knight, who having struck him twice on his Knees, was at last Mastered by the King, and made his Prisoner.

The encounter being over, and the King desirous to view the Prisoners, caused a great Supper to be prepared for them, at which time he came in, wearing a Chaplet of Pearls, and passing to Sir *Eustace of Rybemont*, took the Chaplet off his own head and placed it upon the head of Sir *Eustace*, with the commendation of a valiant Knight, and one that had performed best in the late Action, and with all forgave him his ransom.

Thomas of Wallingham placeth this famous exploit to the year 1349. and consequently to be done in the 23^d year of King *Edward the Third*. But we rather judge Sir *John Froissard* to be in the right, since we find Sir *John Beauchamp* made Captain of *Calais*, the 1st of January an. 22. E. 3. which according to *Froissard's* Account, was the next day after this defeat of Sir *Geoffry Charney*: And though the French Writers affirm, that Sir *Aymery de Pavy*, discovered the design to the King, yet *Froissard* saith not, tell the King had otherwise first heard of it, and therefore not unlike, but there might rest so much suspicion upon Sir *Aymery*, as induced the King to appoint a new Governor of the Town, before he went thence.

It having been agreed on at the last Truce, that Commissioners on both sides should meet at *Boloyne* on Sunday, in medio *Quadragesime* following, the King appointed *William* Bishop of *Normich*, *William Bohun* Earl of *Northampton*, *William Clynton* Earl of *Huntingdon*, *Regnold de Cobham*, *Robert de Bourghcher*, and *John de Carleton*, Doctor of Laws, his Commissioners to Treat of and conclude a Peace (or prorogation of the Truce) and League of perpetual friendship, between him and his Adversary of *France*. But no final Peace could be agreed on, while *Philip de Valois* lived, nor after, till King *John*, his Son and Successor, was taken Prisoner at the Battel of *Poitiers*, only several Truces were made from time to time, and the last consented to in February an. 28. E. 3. to hold till *Midsummer* following.

While these Truces were on foot, endeavours were made for the Release of *David* King of *Scots*, the Kings Prisoner, and at length it was agreed, that upon the coming into *England* of *John*, the Son and Heir of the Steward of *Scotland*, and several other young Noblemen Hostages for the said King (who when they came, were disposed into the Castles of *Tork* and *Notingham*) King *David* should be permitted to go into *Scotland*, and upon his return back, the Hostages should be delivered. The Kings Letters as well of safe conduct to the Hostages, as of power to receive them, and to take King *David's* Oath for his return, and the Command for his safe Custody at *Newcastle* till the Hostages were come, bear Teste the 5. of September, an. 25. E. 3. to continue unto the *Quindena* of the *Purification* next following, and the 3. of November after, were they renewed to the Feast of *St. Philip* and *Jacob* ensuing.

It seems King *David* returned back into *England* about half a year after; for the 28. of March, an. 26. E. 3. a Command was sent to the Sheriff of *Tork-shire* to conduct the Hostages to *Berwick*, to be there in *Quindena Pasche*, it being the day set for King *David's* return to that Town.

On the same 5. of October, a command was sent to *John Coupeland*, Sheriff of *Northumberland*, who had then the Custody of the said King, to deliver him to the Bishops of *Duresm* and *Carlisle*, *William* Earl of *Northampton*, *Henry de Percy*, and *Ralph Nevil*, or to any 4, 3, or 2. of them: and likewise another command issued to them, to deliver him upon the conditions, and under the form agreed on.

Whilst the foresaid Truce, agreed on in February an. 28. E. 3. was on foot, the Pope undertook to do what he could, to further the effecting of a Peace, and to that purpose he sent again to both Kings, to obtain their Authority to bring it about; but it doth not appear, that any thing was done before *Midsummer* while it was in being. Nevertheless, we find, that whereas in the Treaty between them held at *Ghynnes*, among other things, it was agreed, that Ambassadors

a *Froissard* c.
52.

z *Rot. Franc.*
22 E. 3. m. 1.

b 10 Mar. *Rot.*
Franc. 23 E. 3.
m. 7.

c *Froissard*
Chron. l. 1. c.
154.

d *Rot. Scotie*
25 E. 3. m. 3.

* *Ibid.*

e *Rot. Scotie*
26 E. 3. m. 3.

i *Rot. Scot. 29*
E. 3. m. 3.

k 28 Aug. *Rot.*
Franc. 28 E. 3.
m. 2.

sadors from King Edward should be sent to Pope Innocent in Kal. Octob. following; the King did accordingly impower William, Bishop of Norwich, Henry Duke of Lancaster, and some others, his special Ambassadors, to treat with his Adversary of France, or his Deputies, touching a final Peace between them; but they returned without effecting any thing, all, but the Bishop of Norwich, who died at Avignon, and was there buried.

Towards the latter end of the following Summer, the King having intelligence, that John the French King was drawing down with an Army towards St. Omers, in the beginning of November passed over to Calais with Lyonel of Ulster, and John of Gaunt his two Sons, and a considerable Army, where he arrived the 2. day of November, and immediately marched against him; but upon notice of his approach, King John retired, (breaking down all the Bridges behind him) whom King Edward followed as far as Heyden, and the Country being wasted by the French, he, for want of Provision for his Army, returned to Calais, and thence into England.

And whilst in his absence, the Scots had broke out and taken the Town (but not the Castle) of Berwick he immediately marched thither, and (13. January) recovered the Town, passing further into Scotland, and on the 25. of the same Month, being then at Roxbrough, King Edward Baliol there made a solemn resignation of his Crown and Kingdom to him by his Letters Patent; after which, he marched with his Army to Hadington, burning and wasting the Country on each side as he went; and having laid it waste, returned into England, and took Edward Baliol along with him.

The King having notice in the precedent year, that John the French King had given to Charles Dauphin of Viennois the Dukedom of Aquitaine, constituted the Prince of Wales his Lieutenant in that Dukedom, and sent him with an Army thither, where he fought that memorable Battel at Poitiers, and took John the French King Prisoner, whom he brought into England in May following.

King John was lodged at the Savoy, and there continued all the Winter, and in the Spring after was removed, from thence to Windsor Castle, where he and his youngest Son spent their time in Hawking and Hunting, and towards Winter returned to the Savoy. And it appears, that the 12. of December, * an. 32. E. 3. He was (again settled at this House) under the Custody of Roger Beauchamp, and several Knights, Esquires, and other Attendants, appointed for his Guard.

The French King had not been long in England, ere the Pope sent hither Tularand, Bishop of Alba (commonly called the Cardinal of Pyergort) and Nicholas Priest Cardinal, by the Title of St. Vital, to assist at the Treaty of Peace to be held about Midsummer, an. 31. E. 3. the Kings Letters of safe conduct for them, and their Train, consisting of 200 Horse, were dated the 3. of June that year. The Bishop of St. Gen de Maurienne in Savoy came also hither to the Treaty, having like Letters for himself, and a Train of 30 Horse, dated the 26. of May preceding; and though a final Peace was not concluded, yet several Truces were made one upon another, in hopes of it, till Midsummer an. 33. E. 3.

Before this, there had been great endeavours used for the Release of David King of Scots, the Kings Prisoner, and several addressees made to the King from King David himself, as also the Prelates, Peers, and Commons of Scotland, seconded by the zealous solicitations of Joan his Queen, Sister to King Edward. But this affair (though often treated of) came not to an issue, till the 3. of Octob. an. 31. E. 3. when, at a meeting of Commissioners on both sides at Berwick, namely John Archbishop of York, Thomas Bishop of Duresme, Gilbert Bishop of Carlisle, Henry de Percy, Rauf de Nevile, Henry le Scrope, and Thomas Musgrave deputed by King Edward on the one part, and William Bishop of St. Andrews, Thomas Bishop of Catness, Patrick Bishop of Brechin, Chancellor of Scotland, Patrick Earl of March, Robert de Irskyn, and William de Levington Knights, Deputies of Robert Steward Guardian of Scotland, the Prelates, Lords, and Commons of Scotland on the other party, it was agreed, * that King David should be delivered out of Prison, and ransomed for the

1 Stow, p. 294.

m Walsing. sub an. 29. E. 3.

n Knighton Hist. Angl. Script. Coll. 2610.

o Ibid.

p 10. July. Rot. Vasc. 29. E. 3. m. 16.
q 19. Sep. Clauf. 30. E. 3. m. 3. Dorfs.

r Hollinsf. p. 390.

x Rot. Liberata 32. E. 3. m. 1.

y Pat. 31. E. 3. p. 2. m. 25.

z Rot. Scot. 25. E. 3. m. 3. Cr Rot. Scot. 26. E. 3. m. 3.
a Rot. Scot. 28. E. 3. m. 6.
b Hollinsf. pag. 391.
c Rot. Scot. d 31. E. 3. m. 2. dorfs.

* Ibid.

the sum of 100000 Marks Sterling, to be paid by 10000 Marks annually at *Midsummer*, the first payment to begin at *Midsummer* following. It was also agreed, that the Truce should be kept and observed in *England*, *Scotland*, and the Isle of *Man*, until the money was paid, and that *Edward de Baliol*, and all the Kings Allies should be comprised in the said Truce. That for payment of the said sum, King *David* should leave 20 Hostages (who are named in the conditions set down for their delivery) that King *David*, the Peers, Bishops, and Prelates of *Scotland*, should be obliged by writing and oath, for payment of the said Ransom, and observing the Truces: That if there were a failer of payment, they should be also obliged after the foresaid manner, to render the Body of King *David* within three Months after failer, of any term, and he to remain Prisoner till the sum due at the said term were paid; and for the true payment thereof 20 Hostages were to be left in *England*; besides which there were several other conditions agreed upon, that made up the consideration of his Release.

The Truces between *England* and *France* being expired, as aforesaid, without obtaining Peace, and all endeavours of others becoming ineffectual, the two Kings themselves began to confer, and fell at length upon such terms, as it was hoped would produce a Peace; of which an account was sent into *France*, but the *French* determined rather to let their King lye in Prison, than to agree to them: upon notice of which refusal, the King resolved upon a War, and the following Winter to enter *France*, and either make an end of the War, or obtain Peace and honor at his pleasure. And having designed his Expedition, he next provided for the security of the Kingdom in his absence, and issued out Writs to the Sheriffs of the several Counties, to summon both Knights and Burghesses to treat with his Council at *London*, as also with certain Bishops and Earls in other parts of the Kingdom, how that might best be done.

He next caused all the *French Prisoners* to be disposed into several safe places: and the *French King* having been secured in the Castle of *Hereford*, under the custody of *Roger de Beauchamp*, was afterwards by the advice of his Council, sent to the Castle of *Somerton* in *Lincolnshire*, on Monday the 29. of July, and conducted thither by *William Degncourt*, *William Colvill*, *John Kirketon*, *John Degncourt*, and *Saier de Rocheford*, with a strong Guard of Horse and Foot. Nevertheless upon the first of March following, upon a spreading rumor that the *French* were at Sea, with a design to deliver their King from Imprisonment, command was given that King *John* and all the *French Prisoners* should be removed thence to *Berkhampsted*, and *John de Buckingham* Keeper of the Privy-Seal to *Thomas the King's Son*, Custos of *England*, and *Ralph Spigurnell* were appointed to conduct them thither. But it seems *John de Buckingham* went not as was designed, for it appears by a Writ of assistance, directed to all Mayors, &c. That *Thomas de Baddely* was put in his room; nor afterwards was either of them employed in this Service, nor *Berkhampsted*, but *London*, the place whither King *John* was brought, for we have met with a later Writ, whereby *William de Ayremynne*, *John de Buscy*, and *Thomas de Meaux* were commanded to be at *Somerton*, on Friday the 20. of March, to bring the said King to *Grantham*, and the like Writs were sent to others, to conduct him from place to place, till he was brought to *London*, to wit, the 21. of March to *stanford*, the 22. to *Higbam Ferrars*, the 23. to *Woodburn Abby*, the 24. to *St. Albans*, and the 25. to *London*.

The King, having raised his Army, first sent over to *Calais* *Henry Duke of Lancaster*, and himself presently followed, taking Shipping at *Sandwich*, in the 28. day of October, *inter auroram diei & ortum solis*; with him went the Prince of *Wales*, and his other Sons *Lyonel* and *Edmund*, and many of the Nobility, and landed that Evening at *Calais*, *circa horam Vesperarum*. This Army (then which never before departed from *England*, one greater or more gallant) marched through the very heart of *France*, and laid all waste before it: for the *French*, not daring to encounter the King in all his March, kept themselves within their fortified Towns, and relinquished the Country to the spoil of this Army: and to the end, the Reader may observe the course of this Expedition, we will here set down from *Froissard* the most notable places it passed through.

p Holinsh. p.
392. Froiss.
l. i. c. 209.

q Ib. c. 210:

r Ib. c. 211.

f Holinsh. pag.
393.

t Ib. l. i. c. 211.

u f Slew pag.
w l. 264.

z Rot. Cales
y l. de Negotiis
communibus
an. 34 E. 3.
m. 6.
z Rot. Franc.
34 E. 3. pars
unica m. 11.
dors.

a Rot. Cales
de Negot. com.
an. prad. m. 6.

From Calais (on the 4. of November) he marched through the Country of Artois, by Arras, and so to Beauvois thence into Thierach, and so to Reims, to which he laid Seige for 7. weeks, but provision growing scarce thereabouts, he departed towards Chaalons in Champaigne, and thence towards Troyes, Tonnerre, Noirs, Mont-royal and so to Avallons, where he stayed from Ash-Wednesday to Midlent. During this time the young Duke of Burgoigne sent some Noblemen to the King, who made a Composition with him to preserve his Country from plundering, for 3. years: after which the King dislodged his Army, and marched towards Paris, and sat down within two Leagues of it at Bourg la Reyne.

The King of Sicily was not the only Astrologer that prognosticated of King Edward's success; but one Fryer John de Rochaylade (as Froissard calls him) whom Pope Innocent the Sixth kept Prisoner, had foretold many notable things, which about that time came to pass, among others (being demanded an account of the War) he affirmed, that all the misery that had been seen, was not like that to come, and for the wasting of France, assigned the years 1356, 1357, 1358, and 1359. which hapned right enough: for so great desolation and devastation was made by the Sword and Famine in those years, that when King Edward entred France an. 1359. he met with exceeding great scarcity of provision of all kinds, and in all places where he passed.

While the King lay at Bourg la Reyne, he sent his Heralds to Paris, to demand Battel of the Duke of Normandy (eldest Son to King John, and then Regent of France) to which he would not consent; whereupon the King dislodged, and went to Manto le berry (where he arrived on Tuesday before Easter, being the last of March) intending to enter the Country of Beausse, and stay part of that Summer in Britagne, and about August to return, and besiege Paris: but the Pope sending into France, the Abbot of Clugny, and Simon de Lengres, Provincial of the Friars Preachers, with Hugh de Geneve Knight, Seigneur d'Auton, the Duke of Normandy dispatcht them to King Edward, to propose a Treaty of Peace, who required things so great, they could not be yielded to. Howbeit they still followed the King to Chartres, where a meeting for Commissioners, on both sides, was consented to, and they brought demands to such moderation, that, (with the Duke of Lancasters effectual perswasion) the King was content to accept of Peace. But what inclined the King to hearken thereto (as Froissard tells the story) was this; That while the Commissioners on both sides were upon Treaty, and the King wholly untractable, there fell in the Kings Army so great a Tempest of Thunder, Lightning, Rain, Hail, and Stones of such bigness, that kill'd both Men and Horses; at which time the King, beholding the Church of our Lady of Chartres, vowed devoutly to condescend to Peace. This prodigious storm hapned on Easter Munday, which falling that year on the 14. of April, neer a Month before the conclusion of the Treaty, was from its dismal effects, called Black Munday, which name it retains to this day.

The Treaty was managed between Edward Prince of Wales, and Charles Regent of France, their Proctors and Agents, in the name of both Kings, these two Princes, and all the Subjects of France. Those deputed on the English part, were Sir Reginald de Cobham, Sir Bartholomew Burghers, Sir Francis Hale, Bannerets, Sir Miles Stapleton, Sir Richard la Vache, and Sir Neel Loring, Knights, and others of the Council of the King of England. Those other on the French side were the Ellect of Beannes, his Chancellor Charles Lord Momorency, Monsieur John le Meingre Marshal of France, Monsieur Aynart de la Tour Lord of Vivoy, Monsieur Ralph de Ravenal, Monsieur Simon de Bucy, Knights, Monsieur Stephen de Paris, and Peter de la Charite, his Councilors, with many others of his Council deputed by King John and Himself.

At first a Truce was agreed on (the 7. of May, An. Dom. 1360. in the 34. year of King Edward over England) to continue till Michaelmas following, and thence till Michaelmas an. 35 E. 3. which upon the return of the King into England, was, by Writs bearing Teste the 24. of the same Month, commanded to be

be published throughout all the Sea-Ports in *England*; and by a like Writ, notice was given to the Duke of *Lancaster*, to proclaim it in *Gascoigne*. And the next day (*viz.* 8. of *May*) were the Articles referring to a final Peace, agreed to on the behalf of both *Kings*.

This was that Famous Treaty of *Renunciation*, of both *Kings*, so much spoken of by Writers (to which their eldest Sons were parties) in regard the *King* of *France* renounced the Sovereignty of several Territories to *King Edward*; and he in like manner renounced his Title to *France*, and some other Places, all which we shall here briefly mention.

First it was agreed, ^b that *King Edward* with what he held in *Aquitaine*, and *Gascoigne*, should hold perpetually to him and his Heirs, in the same manner as the *King* of *France* or his Son, or any of his Ancestors held the same, (to wit, that in Sovereignty, in Sovereignty, and that in Demain, in Demain) the City, Castle, and County of *Poitiers*, with the Fees of *Thouars*, and Land of *Belleville*, the Cities and Castles of *Xaintes*, *Agen*, *Pierregort*, *Lymoges*, *Caours*, *Tarbe*, *Angolemois*, and *Rodeis*, and the Land and Countries of *Poyton*, *Xaintonge*, on this and the furthest side of the River of *Charente*, with the Town and Fortres of *Rochell*, *Agenois*, *Pierreguis*, *Lymosyn*, *Caorsyn*, *Tarbe*, *Bigorre*, *Gaure*, *Angolemois*, *Rovergue*, the Counties of *Pierregort*, *Bigorre*, *Gaure*, and *Angolemois*. And that such Earls or Lords, as had Lands within the fore-mentioned places, should do their Homages and Services to him.

^b Rot. de
Traditu Pacis
Francie, an.
34 E. 3. m. 10;

^c The Names
of Towns and
Countries are
here written
as in the Re-
cord;

That *King Edward* should have in Demain, all that any of his Predecessors anciently held in the Town of *Monstreul*, on the Sea; As also all the County of *Ponthieu* (with some few exceptions) the Town and Castles of *Calais*, the Towns, Castles, and Lordships of *Merk*, *Sangate*, *Coloigne*, *Hames*, *Wale*, and *Oye*, with their appurtenances, as likewise all the places lying within the Jurisdictions and bounds following; that is to say, from *Calais* to the border of the River before *Gravelinges*, and so by the same River round about *Langle*, and by the River that runneth beyond the *Poil*, and by the same River that falleth into the great Lake of *Guyner* to *Freton*, and thence by the valley about *Calculy* Hill, inclosing that Hill, and so to the Sea: with *Sangate*, and all the appurtenances, that the *King* should have the County of *Guyner*, with all the Lands, Towns, Fortresses, Places, Men, Homages, Lordships, Woods, Forests, and Rights thereunto belonging, in as ample manner as the then late Earl of *Guyner*, or his Predecessors held the same; and likewise all the Isles adjoining to the Lands aforesaid, and all other Isles he then held.

That the *King* of *France*, and his eldest Son the Regent, should before *Michaelmas* 1361. give and deliver to the *King* of *England* his Heirs and Successors, all the Honors, Obediences, Homages, Liegances, Subjections, Fees, Services, Recognizances, Rights, and all manner of Jurisdictions high and low, Reforts and Saveguards, Advowsons and Patronages of Churches, and all Lordships and Sovereignities, with all the right they had and belonging to them, by any Cause, Right, Title, or Colour, or to the Crown of *France*, in the said Cities, Counties, Castles, Towns, Lands, Countries, Isles and Places, and of their appurtenances and appendencies, without holding any thing to them, their Heirs or Successors, or Crown of *France*. And also to give notice to all Archbishops, Bishops, and Prelates, and all Earls and other Noblemen, and Citizens, By Letters-Patent in all the said places, to yield obedience to the *King* of *England*, his Heirs and Successors, in the same manner as they had obeyed the *Kings* and Crown of *France*, and thereby also to quit and absolve them of all their Homages, Fealties, Oaths, Obligations, Subjections, and Promises made to the *Kings* and Crown of *France*. And that the *King* of *England*, his Heirs, and Successors, should have and hold all the forementioned Cities, Counties, Castles, Lands, Places, and Persons, perpetually and freely in their Lordship, Sovereignty, Obedience, and Subjection, as the *Kings* of *France* had or did hold them in times past, and all the Countries with their appurtenances in all Freedoms and Liberties perpetually, as Lords and Sovereigns, and as Neighbors to the *King* and Kingdom of *France*, without any acknowledgment of Sovereignty,
or

or making any Obedience, Homage, Resort, or Subjection, Service, or Recognition in time to come, to the Kings or Crowns of *France*, of the Places or Persons aforementioned, or any of them.

The Renunciation on the *King of England's* part, was as to the Name and Right to the Crown and Kingdom of *France*, to the Homage, Sovereignty, and Demain of the Dutchies of *Normandy* and *Thouraine*, of the Earldoms of *Anjou* and *Maine*, to the Sovereignty and Homage of the Dutchy of *Britagne*, and Earldom and Country of *Flanders*, and all other demands that *King Edward* made, or might make to the *King of France*, for what cause soever, except such things as by the said Treaty ought to be delivered to him and his Heirs.

It was also agreed, that the *King of France* should be brought to *Calais*, within three weeks after *Midsummer* following, and should pay for his Ranfom three Millions of Escuts of Gold; two of which should be worth one Noble *English*. And that there should be paid to *King Edward* 600000 Escuts of Gold, within four Months, accounting from the time of the *King of France's* arrival at *Calais*, and within one year ensuing 400000 Escuts more; and from that year, every year following, 400000 Escuts, till the said three Millions were paid. And it after appears in the same Roll, that *King Edward* had received 400000 Escuts (part of the first 600000) the 24. of *October* 1360. and for payment of the other 200000, he gave time till *Christmas* and *Lady-day* following.

Furthermore, that certain of the Nobility of *France* (aswel of those who were made Prisoners at *Poitiers* as others) should remain Hostages in *England* for the *King of France*, namely, *Lewis* Earl of *Anjou*, *John* Earl of *Poitiers*, both Sons to *King John*, the Duke of *Orliens* his Brother, the Duke of *Burbon*, the Earl of *Blois*, or his Brother the Earl of *Alanfon*, or the Lord *Peter* of *Alanfon* his Brother, the Earls of *St. Pol*, *Harecourt*, *Pontieu*, *Valentinois*, *Brene*, *Vaudemont* and *Forest*, the Viscount *Beaumont*, the Lords of *Consy*, *Fienles*, *Preaux*, *St. Venant*, and *Gavenciers*, the Dauphin of *Auvergne*, the Lords of *Hangeft* and *Montmorency*, Sir *William* of *Craon*, Sir *Lewis* of *Harecourt*, and Sir *John* *Ligny*. And the Names of the Prisoners were these, Lord *Philip* of *France*, the Earls of *Eu*, *Longueuil*, *Pontieu*, *Tankerville*, *Jeigny*, *Sanscurre*, *Dampmartin*, *Ventadour*, *Salebruche*, *D'aucurre*, and *Vendosme*, the Lords of *Craon* and *Deruabe*, the Marshal *Dodenham*, and the Lord *Daubynny*.

Besides these, the *King of France* was obliged to deliver at *Calais*, within three Months after he departed thence, in further pledge for the accomplishment of this Treaty, four Persons of *Paris*, two of each of the Towns here named, to wit, *St. Omer*, *Aras*, *Amiens*, *Beauver*, *Lisle*, *Douay*, *Tournay*, *Reims*, *Chaalons*, *Troies*, *Chartres*, *Thoulouse*, *Lyons*, *Orliens*, *Compeigne*, *Rowen*, *Caen*, *Tours*, and *Bourges*, and these to be of the most sufficient and best Burgeffes of these Towns.

It was moreover agreed, ^d That the *King of France*, and his Heirs *Kings of France*, should quit the Alliances they had with the *Scots*, and never give to that *King*, Kingdom, or Subjects, present or to come, any aid or assistance against the *King of England*, his Heirs or Successors, his Realm or Subjects, nor make any alliance with the *Scots*, in time to come, against the *King* and Realm of *England*. And the like Article was agreed to by the *King of England*, in reference to his Alliance with the *Flemmings*.

There were divers other particulars agreed to, on the behalf of both *Kings*, and set down in this Treaty of Peace, which we (designing brevity) do omit; but these are the main and principal to our present purpose.

All things thus finished, *King Edward* immediately left *France*, and ^e landed at *Rye* the 18. of *May* following in the Evening, and thence the next day came to *Westminster*. And shortly a Writ ^f issued to Sir *John Beauchamp* then Constable of *Dover*, forthwith to arrest and fit up a sufficient number of Ships, to carry over *King John* and his Family to *Calais* within the time agreed on, and whither he was conducted the 8. of *July* after.

The ^h 9. of *October* *King Edward* followed, where the foresaid Treaty, with some few alterations, was there ratified and confirmed by Oath of both *Kings*, and

^d Rot. de Traill.
Fech Fr. 34.
E. 3. m. 9.

^e Rot. Clauf.
34. E. 3. m. 30.
dorfi.
^f 17. Junii Rot.
Franc. 34. E. 3.
m. 6.

^g Hollinghed,
h pag. 394.

and several Instruments relating to the full accomplishment of the several Articles thereof, were drawn up and sealed, with the Great Seals of both Kings; all bearing date at Calais the 24. day of October, an. Dom. 1360.

Here also were the *Renunciations*, on either side both absolute and conditional, to all the Towns, Castles, Countries, &c. to the Resort and Sovereignty, &c. comprehended in the Articles of Peace, drawn up, sworn to, and sealed, at the same time, but not exchanged; because the King of France was as yet in Calais, and Prisoner to King Edward, and the Towns, &c. not as yet delivered. But it was then nevertheless agreed and promised, that they should be surrendered to the special Deputies on both sides, by *Midsummer* following, if it might be; and the *Renunciations* sent at the *Assumption of our Lady* next ensuing, to the Church of the *Augustine* Fryars at *Bruges*, to be delivered to those Deputed to receive them. Or if they were not surrendered till *Albollantide* after, then the *Renunciations* were to be delivered in the said Church, on *St. Andrews* day following, at which time and place, both Kings engaged to send thither, and cause to be delivered to the Deputies on both sides, theirs, and their eldest Sons *Renunciations* likewise; but if they were not accordingly mutually delivered, then not any thing agreed on was to take effect.

But it seems, things were not made ready against *Midsummer*, the first of the appointed times for completing these matters, for the 15. of November following, King Edward constituted Sir Thomas Uvedale Knight, and Thomas de Dunclent, Licenciante in the Laws, his Agents (whom he sent to *Bruges*) with power to make request to the King of France, for the effectual accomplishment of all things concluded on as aforesaid, and to require that He and his Son should make the *Renunciations* and *Transports*, according to all the foresaid Agreements made at Calais, and upon reception of which, he was thereby enabled to give Acquittance in King Edwards name. But there was another Instrument dated at Calais the said 24. of Oct. 1360. whereby

i Rot. de Traill.
Paci Fran. 34.
E. 3. m. 8.
k Ibid. m. 7.

i Rot. Franc.
35. E. 3. m. 3.

King Edward was obliged to deliver up to the French King on this side *Candlemas*, an. 35. E. 3. the Castles and Fortresses, which he held in other parts of France, than in those, surrendered to him by the French King, viz. (as they are written in the Record.)

m Rot. prad.
de Traill. Paci
Franc. m. 5.

In *Champaigne*, and in *Brie*.

Bursant and *Joinville* upon the *Aarn*, *Bourt* in *Champaigne*, *Ochie*, *Sye* upon the *Seine*, the *Mote de Trieferne*, *Brugelemens*, and all other Fortresses taken in these Countries.

In *Nivernois*.

Cornallour, *Gueillons*, *Anlesy*, *Villers*, and *Mont Epy*.

In *Ancenrois*, and *Burgoigne*.

Regennes, *Legny*, *Malecorne*, and the *Mote de Chauloye*.

In *Aurelenois* and *Gastinois*.

The New Castle upon *Loire* and *Mereau au Boys*, and all other Fortresses in *Orlenois*, in *Gastinois*, in *Messien*, in *Beaufe*, and in *Wenguesin le Francois*.

Within a month following, the County of *Ponthieu* was to be surrendered to King Edward, or else Hostages.

King Edward was also to deliver up the New Castle in *Tynerois*, *Beaumont*, *le Choistif*, *Nogent*, *le Rotron*, and the *Ferte de Ville Nevill*, and all other Fortresses in France, and in the Country of *Perche*, and of *Chartain*, and of *Drouais*.

And then all the County of *Montfort* to be surrendered to King Edward, within a Month after. Or otherwise Hostages.

In *Berry* and *Bourbonois*.

The Fortresses of *Brifanssoys*, of *St. Torete le Priague*, also *Chabries*, *Espunell*, *Beamen*,

Beamein, Briance Masbres, the Abbey of Diverlaks, Thos, Ernyll, Ameron, Pierfon, Maufey, Boursfront, the Roche Inay, Blotures, Villers, Montemphy, Beauuoirs, Beau, Jen, Voderon.

In Tourrayne.

Liste, Bouchart, the Roche of Fowsey, Piry, Milieres, Roulet, Piergu. Veres de Desfrubay the Pleyffers Dinone, Langere, Ofem, Palnan, and all other Fortresses in the party of Auvergne, of Bourbonnoys, d'Amascon, of Lyon, of Berry, and of Touraine.

And within a Month after, the French King was to deliver up the Country of Angoulesmois; or Hostages.

In Normandy, Anjou, and Mayne.

The Fortresses de Donefront in Passais, Neuim, Mirabel upon the Loyre, the Toures de Villers, Saintwaft, the Brois Demaine, Conde upon Noire, and another Fortress thereby called Messe, Tynchebray Annillers, the new Boure, the Ferte fresnel, the Roche Doryvall, the Morle Racul, the Tower of St. Christopher, Villeraie Hufon, Honnesfeth, Triscenay, the Vicount of Fleffoy, Euret la Rouche, dire le Port, Jonlein, la Flefche, Willie, Viez, Paf-favant, Rouffailles.

And within one Month, the French King was to surrender santes, and the County of Santoigne; or Hostages.

And all the Fortresses in Pierregort, Courfin, and Agenoys.

For the surrender of all which, the King made forth Commissions to several persons, bearing date as aforesaid at Calais.

n Ibid. m. 6.

The two Kings then also made a League for them, their Heirs, and Successors, of perpetual friendship, and alliance, to become faithful friends, to assist each other, against all persons whatsoever, except the Pope and the Emperor; and moreover made a solemn Renunciation to all Wars against each other, their Heirs, and Successors, Realms, and Subjects; to both which League and Renunciation, their eldest, and other Sons signed, and divers of the Nobility on both sides were sworn.

A Proclamation then also issued from King Edward, directed to Thomas Holland, Earl of Kent, and all other Captains of Towns, &c. held for the King in France, to give notice (to all places within their Command) of this Peace and final accord made as aforesaid.

o Ibid. m. 3.

All things relating to this Peace being thus concluded, and the French Hostages arrived at Calais, King Edward entertained King John at a great Supper in the Castle, where the Kings Sons, the Duke of Lancaster, and other of the chief Nobility of England, served the Kings bare-headed; and when Supper was ended, both Kings took leave of each other. The next morning King John, and his Attendants, went a foot on pilgrimage to our Lady of Bouloigne, the Prince of Wales and his Brothers accompanied him thither, where, in the Church of our Lady, they all made their Offerings, and thence went to the Abby, and having taken leave of King John, they returned to Calais the next day: Soon after, King Edward, the Prince, and French Hostages took shipping for England, where they arrived on the Eve of the Feast of All-Saints.

p Bakers Chro.

q Hollingshed.

18 148. 396.

The Peace thus settled, endured all the life of King John, who took all possible care to have it entirely preserved, and himself ever after kept good correspondence with King Edward, to whom he gave all evidence of affection and love; inasmuch, that about the end of the year 1363. he came into England only upon a visit to King Edward. After his landing, he rode first to Eltham, and there dined with the King (24. Jan. 37. E. 3.) and thence that afternoon to the Savoy in the Strand, where he lodged, and was entertained with all possible kindness; but about the beginning of March following he fell sick, and dyed the 8. of April,

April, an. 38. E. 3. for whose death the Kingⁱ appointed solemn obsequies in divers places, and conducted his Body out of England with a Royal magnificence.

About these times, the Reputation of the King grew so great, that several foreign Kings and Princes came hither to his Court, either to visit him, or congratulate his Victories, or to obtain his assistance and relief: and these were the foresaid King John, Peter King of Cyprus, and David King of Scots, ^{t an. 37. E. 3.} as also ^t Waldemer King of Denmark, and Albert Duke of Bavaria, his Letters of safe Conduct being dated the ^w 6. of Dec. and to continue in force till Midsummer after.

But Charles King Johns Son, and Successor (who had sworn to, and sealed the Treaty at Chartres) was soon perswaded to violate the Peace, though with great artifice he dissembled his intentions for some time. For though he readily gave ear to the Complaints of some of the discontented Nobility of Gascoigne, who, quitting their Homage to the Prince, fled to Paris, and complained to him as their Supreme Lord of the *Fonage* imposed on that Country by the Prince, pretending that King John had not power to release them of their Homage to the Crown of France, or deliver over their Country to the King of England: Yet he forbore laying hold on this occasion, at least for one year after their complaint. But then, all of a sudden, King Edward, not suspecting any fraud, but thinking himself sufficiently secured by the Treaty of Peace made at Britagne, the French King sent him a defiance, and by the time it was thought to be delivered, ^y Guy Earl of St. Paul, one of the French Hostages (who ^z had slipped out of the Kingdom, without taking leave, as had also the Duke of Anjou, and some others of them) and Sir Hugh de Castillon, entred Ponthieu with an Army, and were received into Abeville, afterwards took St. Valery and Crotot, and immediately all Ponthieu revolted.

Hereupon the King assembled a Parliament at Westminster, and about the ^b end of May, the Lords and Commons declared, ^c That whereas the French King had broke the foresaid Peace (in not delivering the Countries, nor paying the monies agreed on there) and had usurped the Refort and Superiority, which ought to appertain to the King of England and his Heirs, in the Lands surrendered to him by the foresaid agreement, by summoning the Prince and some of the Nobility of the Kings Allies, to answer certain Appeals at Paris, and surprized and taken divers Castles, &c. in Ponthieu and Gascoigne, and was setting forth a Fleet to invade England, contrary to his Oath and the form of the Peace; therefore with their whole consent it was agreed, That the King should resume the name of King of England and France, as he had done before the Peace, and for the future so call himself in his Letters, and under his Seals. Hereupon on Monday (being St. Barnaby's day) there were several new Seals provided, in one of which was inscribed *Edwardus Rex Angliæ & Franciæ*, &c. and in another *Edwardus Rex Franciæ & Angliæ*, &c.

Shortly after, he ^d sent an Army under the Command of the Earls of Cambridge and Penbroke into Aquitain, who landing in Bretagne, past through that Country to Angoulesme, where the Prince lay with 3000 men, and entred the Country of Piergart, and over-ran it. He sent also a Letter to the Nobility of Gascoigne, wherein he acquainted them with the reasons why he re-assumed the Name and Title to the Kingdom of France, as he used it before the Treaty of Peace to which he condescended, not without a manifest diminution of his right.

^f John, Duke of Lancaster, and several others of the English Nobility, were sent with another Army into France about Midsummer, who landed at Calais, of which the French King receiving advertisement, called back his Forces designed for the Sea to invade England (to meet with whom, as also to secure Southampton, the Isle of Wight, and Garnsey, King Edward had set forth a considerable Fleet) and sent them under the Command of the Duke of Burgoigne, to oppose the Duke of Lancaster: but upon report of the ^h Earl of Warwick's coming by Sea, to the Duke of Lancaster's assistance, the French withdrew.

The following year, the ⁱ French King raised two Armies, and sent them into Aquitaine, one under the Command of the Duke of Anjou, to enter Guyen, by

O o o o

Reol

^f Ex versis
Cod. de Episc.
by Priorib. Du-
nelm. Ecclesiæ.

^t Hollinsb. loca
cit.
^u Pat. 38. E. 3.
^p 1. m. 37.
^w Pat. 39. E. 3.
^p 2. m. 7.

^x Earls of Ar-
magnaco and
Comminges
and Visc. Cor-
main. Baker.

^y Froiss. lib. 1.
cap. 247.
^z Hollinsb.
pag. 401.

^a Claufr. 43. E.
3. m. 18. dorso.
^b Walsingham.
^c Rot. Parl. de
cod. an. n. 2.

^d An. 42. E. 3.
^e Froiss. lib. 1.
cap. 249.

^e Rot. Vasc. 43.
E. 3. m. 2.

^f Walsingh. sub
an. 43. E. 3.

^g Froiss. lib. 1.
cap. 247.

^h Hollinsb. pag.
404.

ⁱ Ib. cap. 275.

Reol and *Bergerac*, and the other under the Duke of *Berry*, to enter that Country by *Lymoges* and *Quercy*, and both Armies to meet at *Angoulême*, to besiege the *Prince*, then in those parts.

^k *King Edward*, considering the unsettledness of these Countries, raised likewise two Armies; That for *Aquitaine* was Commanded by the Duke of *Lancaster*, of which we shall make further mention, when we speak of the *Prince* and the other designed for *Ficardie*, by Sir *Robert Knowles*. In relation to which latter expedition, ^l Proclamation was sent forth, That all Souldiers designed for *Normandy* and other parts of *France*, under Sir *Robert's* Command (being ^m constituted the Kings Lieutenant in those parts of *France*) should be at *Southampton*, in the Octaves of *St. John Baptists* following, ready fitted to take Shipping there with him.

Nor was the King slack in strengthening himself by Allies from abroad, and therefore ⁿ Sir *John atte Wode*, and Mr. *Robert de Wykford* Archdeacon of *Winchester*, and Doctor of Laws, were sent beyond Sea, having power to treat with *Wenceslaus* Duke *Brabant* and *Lorraine*, Marquess of the Empire, about furnishing the King with Men and Arms, to serve him in these Wars. He also secured the back Door, to wit, *Scotland*, by a ^o Treaty of Peace for 9. years, in which nevertheless the *Scots* were at liberty to serve either *English* or *French*, without breaking the Peace, and lastly ^p confirmed the Treaty with the Earl of *Flanders* and the Towns of *Gaunt*, *Bruges*, and *Ipres*.

Sir *Robert Knowles* with ^q 12000. Men being landed at *Calais*, and resting there 7. days, forthwith took the Field, and, marching through the Country of ^r *Guyenes*, and *Fauconbridge*, came to *Turwin*, and thence into *Artois*, drawing near *Arras*, and so to *Vermendoir*, wasting the Country all the way he went. He thence marched to the City of ^s *Noyen*, and into *Champaigne*, and turned to *Bry* and so on the ^t 24. of September, to *Paris*; before which he stayed a day and two Nights. After this, ^u (Sir *Bertrand de Guesclin*, having defeated a stragling party of his) he marched to *Dorvel Castle* in *Bretagne*: This Army, ^w so long as it submitted to their General prospered, but towards Winter, some of them growing disobedient, and slighting his Commands, became a prey to the *French*, whilst his policy and prudence preserved those safe who stuck to him, in his march into *Bretagne*.

This year the ^x *Flemmings* set upon part of the Kings Navy, under the Command of Sir *Guy de Bryen* at *la Bay* in *Bretagne*, but he got the Victory, and took 25. of their Ships with their Captain Sir *John Peterson*, and many other Prisoners, whom he brought with him into *England*; which caused the King ^y to set forth a Navy against the *Flemmings*, but the Towns of *Bruges*, *Ipres*, and *Gaunt*, hearing of his preparations made such applications to the King, that they obtained Peace.

The Fortune of the War in *Aquitaine* at this time standing fair on the *English* side, the following Winter the King designed ^z two fresh Armies to enter *France*, yet indeavoured before (upon the *Popes* request, both by Letters and Messages) to lay hold of an honourable Peace, to which end ^a power was given, to treat thereon, to *Simon* Bishop of *London*, *Guy de Bryene*, *Roger de Beauchamp*, Bannerets, Sir *Arnold Savage* Knight, *John Appleby* Dean of *London*, and *John de Branketre* Treasurer of *Tork*; and the ^b next day he granted Letters of safe conduct for the Ambassadors of *France* to come and treat about that Affair. One of the foresaid Armies were designed for the defence of ^c *Aquitaine*, and the other to land at *Calais*, whence the Duke of *Lancaster* and Earl of *Cambridge* were appointed to enter *France* by the Plains of *Picardy*. But *John* Earl of *Penbroke* (^d constituted the Kings Lieutenant in *Aquitaine*) was ordered to go into *Poitou*, and, in pursuance of that design, took Sea and arrived at *Rockell*, the 22. of *June*, 1372. where he found the ^e *Spanish* Fleet, who fought him two days, and at last took him Prisoner, the ^f *Rockellers* having refused to assist him: and in that engagement the Ship, which carried a ^g great Treasure to pay the *English* Army, was unfortunately sunk.

The King designing also the relief of *Thonars*, raised an Army of 3000. Men of

¹⁴ May. *Claufr.*

⁴³ E. 3. m. 15.

²⁷ f.

^m *Roi. Franc.*

⁴⁴ E. 3. m. 14.

ⁿ 18. May.

^{Pat.} 44 E. 3.

^p 1. m. 8.

^o *Froiss. l. 1. c.*

²⁷ 8.

^p 4. Aug. *Pat.*

⁴⁴ E. 3. p. 3.

^m 1.

^q *Holinshed p.*

⁴⁰ 5.

^r *Froiss. l. 1. c.*

²⁷ 8.

^f 16. c. 281.

^t *Holinshed.*

^p 404.

^u *Froiss. c. 285.*

^w *Walsingham*

^{sub an.} 44 E. 3.

^x *Froiss. l. 1. c.*

²⁹ 2. but *Wal-*

^{singham} plac-

^{eth} this *Adi-*

^{on} to an. 46.

^E 3.

^y 16. c. 293.

^z 16. c. 295.

^a 19 *Febr. Rot.*

^{anc.} 46 E. 3.

^m 47.

^b 16. m. 48.

^c *Froiss. l. 1. c.*

²⁷ 8.

^d *Rat. Vasc.*

⁴⁶ E. 3. m. 4.

^e 1. m. 13.

^f 1. m. 13.

^g 1. m. 13.

of Arms, and 1000. Archers, and with the Prince took Shipping at Sandwich, on ^b Monday the 30. of August, about nine a Clock, in a Ship called the *Grace de Dieu*, directions having been given for making publick Prayers in all Churches for good success in this Voyage; and so sailing towards *Rockell*, the Winds and Tempests kept him at Sea 9. Weeks, and when he saw he could not arrive in France by Michaelmas, being the time limited for relief, or otherwise surrender of the Town (he returned to England, and had the Wind at will. The consequence of this improsperous Voyage (with the miscarriage of the Earl of *Pembroke*) was the loss of all the Country of *Poitou*, *Xantoigne*, and *Rochell*.

After these misfortunes, a Treaty of Peace was again set on foot, and ^k Simon Bishop of London, Edmond Earl of March, Richard de Stafford, Roger de Beauchamp, Rauf de Ferrieres Bannerets, Simon de Molton Doctor of Law, and John de Branketre Treasurer of York, were constituted the Kings Commissioners for the management of this Affair; and ^l Letters of safe conduct granted (the same day) to the Cardinal of Beauvez (and other Agents from France) who with the Cardinal of Canterbury were by the Pope commissioned to be the chief managers of this Treaty.

The Duke of Lancaster (^m publick Prayers having been made also for his good success) arrived at Calais (in ⁿ July an. 47. E. 3.) with 3000 men of Arms, and 10000 Archers, which he divided into three Battels, and marched by Land through France to Bourdeaux, and there he arrived about Christmas; in which Voyage, though the French durst not fight him, and all the way avoided the hazard of a Battel, yet through the scarcity of Victuals many dyed, not to mention the loss of ^o 30000 Horse. About the beginning of the following Summer, at the ^p Pope's instance, a Truce was made by this Duke and the Duke of Anjou, to continue till the last of August; wherein it was agreed, that in the beginning of ^q September there should meet in Picardy, on the English part, the Duke of Lancaster and other Commissioners, to treat of Peace with the Duke of Anjou; and others on the French part, where also the Popes Legate should appear as Mediatour; and in pursuance thereof the Duke of Lancaster took Shipping the 8. of July, an. 48 E. 3. after whose departure ^r all Poitou and Aquitaine fell from their Allegiance, except Bourdeaux and Bajon.

In this year the Earl of Cambridge, and the Duke of Bretagne were ^s constituted the Kings Lieutenants in France, after which, ^t Commands were sent forth to arrest Ships for their passage thither, to be at Dartmouth and Plimouth with all speed. But notwithstanding these preparations, yet they went not till the following ^u Spring, having then in their retinue many of the English Nobility, and for whose good success ^v publick Prayers were appointed to be made. In this Expedition the ^w Duke recovered many of his Towns; but being ^x included in the Truce made by the Duke of Lancaster, he was thereby obliged to lay down his Arms.

For upon the mediation of the Bishops of Roan and Carpentras, the Pope's Nuncios, there had been a ^y Treaty set on Foot at Eruges in Flanders this Year, managed chiefly by John Duke of Lancaster, who, with ^z Simon Bishop of London, William Earl of Salisbury, Sir John Cobham, Sir Franke de Halé, Sir Arnold savage, Mr. John de Shepeye, and Mr. Simon de Molton, were ^a commissioned to carry on that Affair on King Edwards part; and by Philip Duke of Burgundy, on the behalf of his Brother Charles the French King: which though it brought not forth a compleat Peace, yet in effect it put an end to the present War, for ^b it produced a Truce, to hold for a year, viz. to the last of June, an. 50 E. 3. to give notice of which to the English Subjects, a Proclamation was ^c set forth. And ^d a quarter of a year before its expiration, at another meeting at the same place, this Truce was enlarged to the first of April, an. 51 E. 3. and thereupon another ^e Proclamation issued to make it known. But it appears that the French were gotten to Sea, ^f sometime before the expiration of this latter Truce, and had done much hurt upon the Sea-Coasts.

Of this design of theirs the King had timely intelligence, and therefore he endeavoured

^h Claus. 46 E. 3. m. 12. dorso.
ⁱ Froiss. c. 305.
^j Walsing. p. 183.

^k 8. of Jan. Rot. Franc. 46 E. 3. m. 2.

^l Ibid. p. 5.

^m 16. June Claus. 47 E. 3. m. 25. dorso.
ⁿ Holinsh. pag. 408.

^o Walsingh. p. 183.
^p Holinsh. loco cit.

^q Ibid. p. 409.

^r Walsingh. sub an. 48 E. 3.

^s Rot. Franc. 48 E. 3. m. 6. t 18 Nov. m. 7.

^u Claus. 49 E. 3. m. 46.
^v 8. May Ibid. m. 26. dorso.
^w Froiss. l. 1. c. 313.
^x Walsingham sub cod. an.

^y Rot. Franc. 49 E. 3. m. 2. t 16.

^z Ibid. m. 24. b 20 Feb. Ib. c 27. June Ib. m. 16.

^a 15. July. Claus. 49 E. 3. m. 20. dorso.

^b 12. March Rot. Franc. 50 E. 3. m. 16. t 21.

^c 7. Aug. Claus. 50 E. 3. p. 1. m. 3. dorso.

^d Vide Rot. Vast. de cod. an. m. 8. t Rot. Franc. m. 10.

^e Claus. 51 E. 3. m. 16.

h 20. Febr.
Ro. Franc. 51
E. 3. m. 7.

i Holinsh. pag.
411

k Rot. Franc.
51 E. 3. m. 3.

l Holinsh. l.
co. cit.

m Le grand
Campaigne.

n Knighton
Hist. Angl.
Script. Coll.
2629.

endeavoured to enlarge the Truce, to which end he^h empowred *John* Bishop of Hereford, Sir *John de Cobham* of Kent, *John Montacute* Bannerets, and *John Shepege* Doctor of the Laws, to Treat with the Earl of *salebruch*, Monsieur *Chatillon*, and *Philebert le spoit*, where the Pope's Legats were also present as Mediators. But nothing was done thereupon; only theⁱ Legate proposed a Marriage between *Richard* Prince of Wales, and the Lady *Mary* Daughter to the French King; which begot a private meeting shortly after at *Montrevile* by the Sea, and there Sir *Richard Dangle*, Sir *Richard Stan*, and Sir *Geoffry Chawcer*, Commissioners for King *Edward*, with the Lord *Coucey*, and other Commissioners for the French King, spent the time chiefly to sound one anothers intentions, and so departed without any other effect, saving that of Proroguing the Truce to My day following.

The^k 26. of April, another Commission was made for the same purpose, to *Adam* Bishop of St. Davids, *John* Bishop of Hereford, *William* Earl of Salisbury, *Robert de Ashton* the Kings Chamberlain, *Guichard Dangle* Banneret, *Ambrey de Vere*, *Hugh de segrave* Knights, *Walter skirlow* Dean of St. Martins le Grand, and the foresaid *John Shepege*, which gave them power to treat and compose all differences, Wars, and contentions. They thereupon came to *Calais*, and the^l Lord *Coucey*, and Sir *William Dormer* Chancellor of France came to *Montrevile*; but by reason of the suspicion the Commissioners had of each other, they could not agree of an indifferent place to meet at, and so the time limited by the Truce spinning on, absolutely expired. And in this posture the Affairs relating to France stood (to wit in open hostility) till the Death of King *Edward*.

Thus we see, that from the breach of the Treaty, and Entry upon King *Edwards* Territories, to the time of his Death, he all along steered against the Tide of adverse Fortune, and what with Invasions, Revolts, and disastrous accidents (though no pitch'd Battel was fought) nothing of his great Conquests remained to him, but only *Calais*, and the small Territory adjoining.

But of the strange unsuccessfulness of these sublequent years, there might be three main causes: First, the loss of so many stout and well disciplin'd Souldiers, as, upon their disbanding after the Peace made near *Chartres*, joyned themselves to the^m Companions, and marcht into *Spain*, *Italy*, and *Germany* (to which number may be added those who perished in the Princes expedition into *Spain*, of whom scarce theⁿ fifth man returned) a sort of people so inur'd to War, and such as had gained so great experience therein, that the very Common Souldiers among them were men of good conduct. The French King knew well enough, how much King *Edwards* power was weakened, through the want of those men, and that, as to such as might be raised a-new (few of them having been trained up in the former Wars) he thought he might the better deal with them, in regard that many of his own disbanded Souldiers, were still within his Kingdom, and lay ready at his service.

A second cause might be, that the King declining in years, and the Prince of *Wales* growing daily worse and worse of a lingering sickness, without hope of Recovery, the French King took the more heart, and began now not to fear, either them or their Fortunes, which before had proved so terrible to France. And therefore he supposed if he could make a shift but to keep his Forces on Foot, against their declining power, he might deal well enough with those who should succeed them: none of King *Edwards* other Sons, having given such proof of their success in martial affairs as to be feared by him, and much less was any such thing to be expected, when an Infant King was likely to succeed.

Lastly, His supplies of Money from his subjects, who before had freely enough opened their Purfes to carry on the War, began to fail him: For being tyred out, with the prosecution of it, they complained of Poverty; and thence it came, that the Forces raised to recover what was lost, were inconsiderable, in comparison of the former Royal Armies levied for his own and the Princes expeditions.

During

During the Minority of this King, there were several Matches proposed for him, though none took, but the last: and first, his Father designed to marry him to the Lady *Margaret*, Daughter of *William* Earl of *Hanow*, *Holland*, *Zeland*, and Lord of *Frisia*; who, being in the third degree of Consanguinity, a Letter was dispatched to the Pope, dated the 10. of December, in the 12. year of his Fathers Reign, for obtaining his Dispensation, because of their nearness of blood.

Secondly, with the Lady *Sibilla*, Daughter to *Robert* Earl of *Hanow* and *Zeland*, Lord of *Frisia*, as appears from a like Letter to the Pope, dated the 2. of November in the following year.

Thirdly, with the Daughter of *James*, King of *Arragon*, for which affair were commissioned *Alexander* Archbishop of *Dublin*; *Edmund* Earl of *Kent*, King *Edward* the Second's Brother, and *William de Weston* Canon of *Lincoln*, Doctor of Laws: the Commission bore Teste the 30. of March, an. 17. E. 2. It appears by the Kings Letters of the 16. of February following, that her name was *Jolant*, and King *James* her Father styled, *Rex Aragonie, Valencie, Corsice, Comes Barch. & Sancte Rom. Ecclesie Vexillarius, Admirallus & Capitaneus Germanalis*, to whom the King then also sent Sir *Edmund* Bacon, Sir *Robert* Thorpe, Mr. *John* Heldefley Canon of *Chester*, to proceed further in this matter.

Fourthly, with the Lady *Alonar*, Sister to *Alphonfus* King of *Spain*, to which purpose, *John* Stoner, *William* de *Berne*, Lord of *Lesne*, *William* de *Weston*, Canon of *Lincoln*, and *Peter* de *Galicano*, Canon of *Raan*, were impowered by a Commission dated the 6. of April an. 18. E. 2. as also to treat and conclude a marriage between the said King *Alphonfus*, and *Elianor* King *Edward*'s Sister.

Besides these, the King of *Portugal* sent Ambassadors over hither, to propose a marriage between this Prince and his Daughter, to whom the King by Letter, dated the 15. of April an. 19. E. 2. directed thus, *Magnifico Principi, Domino Alfonso Dei gratia Portugaliæ & Algarbiæ Regi illustri, amico suo charissimo*, acquainting him with the Treaty of marriage begun, between his Son and the King of *Spain*'s Sister, and that because of nearness of blood, he had dispatched a Letter to the Pope for his Dispensation; that he had received no account as then, of the issue of that Affair; that his Son was gone into *France*, to do Homage for the Dukedom of *Aquitaine*, during all which, it was not fit for him to begin any new Treaty: but if that succeeded not, he would then confer with his Ambassador in this particular.

But last of all, in the following year, the Queen and Duke having left *France*, went to the Earl of *Henault*'s Court, where a Contract past between him, and one of the Earls Daughters, and, not long after his Coronation, the marriage was consummate; in reference to which, R. Bishop of *Coventry* and *Lichfield*, was constituted the King's Ambassador, to contract either espousals or marriage in the King's Name, with *Philippa* that Earls Daughter, who forthwith took his Journey to *Valenciens*, and (the Popes Dispensation being gained) she was there married to King *Edward* by Proxie.

By this Lady he was Father to 7 Sons, all (except two that dyed young) Children men of great renown in that Age; namely, *Edward* Prince of *Wales* and *Gwynne*, signally famous all over Europe, and commonly called the *Black Prince*; *William* of *Hatfield*, *Lyonell* of *Antwerp*, Duke of *Clarence* and Earl of *Ulster*, *John* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaster* and *Aquitaine*, King of *Castile* and *Leon*, *Edmund* of *Langley*, Earl of *Cambridge*, and Duke of *York*, *William* of *Windsor*, and *Thomas* of *Woodstock*, Earl of *Buckingham* and Duke of *Gloucester*. His Daughters were five, *Isabell* Wife to *Ingelram* de *Coucy*, Earl of *Bedford*; *Joan* married by Proxie to *Peter*, eldest Son to *Alphonfus* King of *Castile* and *Leon*, but died in her journey thither; *Blanch* died young, *Mary* Wife to *John* *Montford*, Duke of *Britagne*, and *Margaret* Wife to *John* de *Hastings*, Earl of *Penbroke*. Besides these, he had a natural Son named *Nicholas*, who was Abbot of *Westminster*, and lies buried in *Westminster*, before the Altar of *St. Blase*.

His Queen fell sick at *Windsor* Castle, and there dyed before him, viz. on the day of the Assumption of our blessed Lady, an. 43. E. 3. whose Exequies and Interment

His Wife.

o *Rat. Roma*
12. 13. & 14.
E. 2. m. 10.

p *Ibid. m. 71*

q *Rat. Vasc. 17.*
E. 2. m. 5. n. 9.

r *Pat. 18. E. 2.*
p. 1. m. 19.
[*Clau. 18. E. 2.*
m. 12. dorso.

s *Pat. 18. E. 2.*
p. 2. m. 22.

u *Clau. 19. E. 2.*
m. 9. dorso.

w 8. 08. *Pat. 1.*
E. 3. p. 3. m. 15.

Children

x *Cod. MS.*
Miscel. R. Glou-
ver. Samersf.
fol. 134.

y *Freiss. lib. 1.*
cap. 267.
z *Walsingham,*
pag. 179.

Interment he caused to be solemnized with great magnificence.

and Death.
Ib. pag. 189.

He himself dyed the * 21. of June, at his Mannor of *Shene* in *Surrey*, after he had reigned 50 years 4 Months and 28 days, and lies interred on the South side of *St. Edward's Chappel* in *Westminster Abbey*, under a stately Monument, having thereon his Portraiture at full length.

SECT. III.

Some account of the first 25 Knights-Companions.

(1.)

Edward Prince of Wales.

a Ex Chron.
Ib. de la Mare.

THIS Noble and Valiant Prince, was born at * *Woodstock*, the 15. of June, *An. Dom.* 1330. at ten a Clock in the Morning, in the *Scheme* of whose *Nativity* (found among the Collections of that famous Mathematician *Mr. Thomas Allen* of *Gloucester-Hall* in *Oxford*) the 9. degree of *Virgo* ascends, the 3. of *Gemini* culminates, and the Planets are thus posited.

Gr.			gr.		
h	16	♂	1	18	♂ R.
♂	12	♂	1	10	♂
♂	11	♂	♂	22	♂
♂	1	♂	♂	22	♂
♂	19	♂	♂	19	♂

b 4. Febr. Pat.
5. E. 3. p. 1.
m. 33.
c 15. Apr. Pat.
10. E. 3. p. 1.
m. 30.

a Ibid.

So welcome to his Father was the News of his Birth, that he b granted to *Tho. Priour* who brought it 40 Marks *per annum*, out of his Exchequer for life, until he should setle on him Lands to that annual value. Afterwards, he c gave to *Joane de Oxenford*, this Prince's Nurse, 10 l. *per annum* out of his Exchequer during her life, until he or his Heirs should setle that yearly value in Lands or Rents upon her. And the d next day a yearly Pension of 10 Marks out of his Exchequer also for life, on *Matilda Plumpton Beratrix*, or *Rocker*, to this young Prince, till Lands of that value were in like manner provided for her.

e Pat. 4. E. 3. p.
2. m. 42. Rot.
Liberat. 5. E. 3.
m. 8. Clauf. 10.
E. 3. m. 26. &
12.
f Cart. 7. E. 3.
m. 41.

Before he was three years old, the King intending to make some considerable provision for him (though he had e before made him an annual allowance for the expences of his House, and several Gifts, did by his Charter dated 18. May, in the 7. year of his Reign, f grant to him by the Title of *Edward* his most dear and eldest Son, the County of *Chester*, the Castles of *Chester*, *Boston*, *Rothelan*, and *Flynt*, and all his Lands there, as also the Cantred and Land of *Englefeld* with their appurtenances, to him and his Heirs *Kings* of *England*, together with all Knights Fees, Advowsons, Liberties, Royalties, and all other things belonging to the said County, Castles, Lands, and Cantreds, aswell in *England* as in *Wales*, and the Marches thereof, as fully and under the same conditions, as himself received them before he was King: And thence forward he had the Title of *Earl* of *Chester* added to his Stile.

g Pat. 7. E. 3.
p. 1. m. 13.

But intending to provide yet better for him, the next day he g gave him all the Corn, as well in *Granges*, as growing on the Ground, as also the *Arms*, *Vivalls*, *Cattel*, *Goods* and *Chattels* in all the said *Castles*, *Lands*, and other places to him before granted, together with the Debts, Arrerages of Accounts, and other Services due to himself.

h Chart. 11.
E. 3. n. 55.

In the Parliament held at *Westminster*, *an.* 11. E. 3. he was created Duke of *Cornwall*, as appears by his h Charter of Creation, bearing date the 17. of March

SECT. III. Of the Founder and Knights-Companions.

671

March the same year, and invested by the Sword only; and this is the first Precedent for the Creation of the Title of Duke with us in England. Herewith also, the King settled on him divers *Manors* and *Franchises*, expressly set down in the said *Charter*, for the better support of the State and Honor of Duke; all which, though some lay in other *Counties*, were thereby made part of the Dutchy of *Cornwall*. And further, by Letters Patent dated the same day, he granted to him the ⁱ *Stannaries* in *Cornwall*, together with the Coinage of *Tin*, and all the issues and profits thence arising; as also the profits and perquisites of the Courts of the *Stannaries*, except only 1000 Marks formerly granted to *William Mountague* Earl of *Salisbury*, and his Heirs, out of the Issues thereof, till Lands were provided for the said Earl, of that yearly value; and afterwards * granted, That all the Castles, Honors, Mannors, Lands, and Tenements, belonging to the Dukedom or Earldom of *Cornwall*, which were held in Dower or for term of life or years, whose Reversions belonged to the King, should remain to this Prince as Duke, still as they fell, and to the eldest Sons of him and his Heirs, as Dukes of the foresaid Dukedom.

In the Parliament held an. 17. E. 3. the King^k created him Prince of *Wales*, and invested him with a Coronet, a Gold Ring, and a Silver Rod: and the better to support his State as Prince of *Wales*, gave him several Lands, which are all particularly enumerated, in a ^l Writ directed to *William de Emeldon*, to deliver them unto this Prince or his Attorney, with this Dignity: The King also^m gave him all Debts and Arrears of Foreign Rents due to himself, for what cause soever, in *North Wales* and *South Wales*, to the time of his being created Prince of *Wales*, as also all Victuals, Arms, Horses, Oxen, Cows and other things in all the Castles and Lands which he held by the King's Grant.

He was constituted ^a *Custos Anglie* divers times, when the King had occasion to be absent out of the Kingdom, to which the Title of *Locum tenens Regis* was sometimes added; and in his younger years, the King appointed the ^o Archbishop of *Canterbury* to be the chief of his Council, to direct him in all Affairs; the powers belonging to this Great Officer being recorded in *Rot. Pat. de an. 14. E. 3. pars 2. m. 28.*

The first time this Prince entred upon the Stage of War, was at the beginning of his 16. year of age, at which time he accompanied his Father into *France*; where at his landing at ^p *Hoges* in *Normandy*, he received the honor of a ^q *Knighthood*, from that martial Kings hands. Thence he marched in the body of the Army with the King toward *Cressy*, at which Battel (fought an. 20. E. 3.) he led the ^r *Van*, and after a fierce encounter with the *French*, was somewhat distressed from the Enemies breaking in among his Archers, but the rest of his men timely advanced to their Assistance; nevertheless notice of his condition being sent to the King (who commanded the Reer) he asked if the Prince were dead or wounded, the Messenger said no, but stood in need of his Assistance; well said the King, *return, and bid them send no more to me, so long as my Son lives, for I will have him this day win his spurs, since I design him the honor of this Expedition*: and it cannot be denied, but the compleatness of the Victory then gained, fully conferred it on him, so also did his Fathers acknowledgment; for after the Battel was ended, he embraced the Prince and kist him, and said ^t *fair Son, God give you resolution to pursue Honor, you are my dear Son, and have acquitted your self nobly, you are worthy to govern a Kingdom.*

The following year, a Truce being agreed on at *Calais*, was spun on by several Prorogations, but without effecting any thing of Peace, till an. 29. E. 3. in which year both Kings provided for War. Hereupon the King^u constituted this Prince his Lieutenant in the Dukedom of *Aquitaine* and other places in *France*, whither he should happen to march, both for Reformation of the State of that Dukedom, and other places in *France*, and the recovery of his Lands and Right posselt by the Rebels. And by another Commission of the same date, he^v gave him power to make Alliances with all persons, of what Nation, Dignity, or Condition soever, to retain men, and pay them Wages and Rewards. A third Commission^w gave him Power (in the King's stead and name) to receive

Homage

Homage and Fidelity, from the Nobility and others within this Dukedom, and the Kingdom of France.

^y Ex Lib. Miscellan. R. Glover, Somerset, fol. 29.
^z Rot. Franc. 29 E. 3. m. 12.
Armed with their Powers and accompanied by the Earls of ¹ *Warwick*, *Oxford*, *Salisbury*, and *Suffolk*, and a good Army attending him, he took Shipping and safely arrived in *Gascoigne*: for whose passage thither the King had before assigned ² *Richard de Cortenhale*, and *Robert de Baidon* Serjeants at Arms, to arrest, array, and equip all the Ships of 20. Tun and Upwards, in all Ports and Places from the River of *Thames* unto *Lynn*, as well within Liberties as without, to furnish them with men and other necessaries, and to bring them to *Southampton* by *St. Barnib's Day* at the furthest; as also to Prefs Mariners for the Voyage at the Kings Wages; and had given Commission to ^{*} *Thomas de Hoggeshaw* Lieutenant, to *John de Beauchamp* Admiral of the Sea Westward, to carry him over: with power to hear and determine all Crimes and Transgressions committed on Shipboard, and to punish them according to Maritime Law, and to do all other things appertaining to the Office of Admiral.

^y 27. May. B.

^a Froissard c. 155. See the Names of all the places they marched through in Stow's Chron. 256. Cc.

Having entred the River ^a *Garonne*, he marcht into the South-part of *Languedock*, and burnt the Great Town of *Carcassone*, situate near the *Mediterranean Sea*, thence passed to *Narbon*, burning and wasting the Country; after which, he returned to encounter the French Forces which marcht out of *Toulouse*, under the Command of the Marshall *Cleremont*, and Earl of *Armaignac*; but upon his approach they retyred, and so in November after 8. Weeks he returned to *Bordeaux* with great store of Pillage and Prisoners.

A more particular account of which Voyage, with the Towns and Castles taken and destroyed, and several other actions done after the Prince's Return to *Bordeaux*, to the 21. of January following, are reported in Sir *John Wingfield's Letters*, Printed in ^b *Hollinshead's Chronicle*.

^b Ib. p. 384. 385.

^c An. 30 E. 3.

^d Froiss. c. 157.

^e Hollinsb. p. 387.

^f Froissard c. 158.

^g Ib. c. 159.

Intelligence of the Prince's taking the Field the following Summer, being brought to King *John*, he resolved to fight him, for now the Prince (with about 8000. Men) had entred the Country of *Berry*, as far as *Iffoudun*, *Bourges*, *Vierzon*, and *Remorentin*, which two last Towns and their Castles the Prince took by Assault: and passing into ⁱ *Anjou*, and *Touraine*, (having wasted all the Country where he past) intended to return for *Bordeaux*.

^g Ibid. c. 62.

But after this long and wearisom Voyage, drawing near to *Poitiers*, he was informed, that the ^h French Army was not far from him, (and here the Cardinal of *Piregort* used means to have brought both sides to some composition, but the French being high in their demands, his endeavours took no effect.) The Prince thereupon fitted himself for fight, and the Battels joining (in the Fields of ⁱ *Beaumont* and *Malpertuis*) after some space, they broke the Van of the French Army, when the main Body, led by the Duke of *Normandy* coming on, and finding the other routed, fell into disorder also. This incouraged the Prince to fall in upon the Rear led by the King, at whose approach, the main Body of the French Army left the Field, as their Leader himself did, with *Charles*, *Lewis*, and *John*, the Kings Sons, the Earls of *Poitiers* and *Tourayne*. King *John* behaved himself very valiantly, and maintained the fight for some time, but was at length taken Prisoner by ^k Sir *Denys Morbeck* a Knight of *Arthois* (to whom the Prince gave afterwards ^l 2000. Nobles to support his Estate) whilst the chace continued to the Gates of *Poitiers*, and a compleat Victory obtained, the particulars whereof are related by *Froissard*.

^m Hollinshead

ⁿ Chron. p. 385.

The French Kings Army consisted of ^m 60000. fighting men, whereof there were above 3000. Knights. The Prince had but ⁿ 8000. whereof 3000. were Archers, though *Froissard* in one place saith 6000. in another 4000.

^o In Hist. Angl. Script. Coll.

^p 2613. Cc. 2614.

^q Vide Stow p. 262.

^r Hollinsb. loco cit.

^s Froiss. c. 166.

The names of some of the Prisoners of Note, and those that were slain, are mentioned by ^o *Knigh-ton*: in a word, the Flower of France fell here, and so many Noblemen were there slain, or made Prisoners, that there were but few left to manage the Affairs of France; the Souldiers had ^p twice as many Prisoners as themselves were in number, nay divers of them 4. or 5. Prisoners a piece, all which they put to ransom in the Field, upon promise to return before *Christmas* with their Ransoms to *Bordeaux*. The spoil was exceeding rich, so were also

also the Arms they took, and whatsoever the Booty was, it remained to him that took it. The ^a Prince bought of the *Gascoigners* for ready money those of ^q *Ibid. c. 169.* the *French Nobility*, whom they had taken: And of these, namely *Philip* Son to King *John*, the Earl of *Sanceir*, and the Lord *Craon*, he sold to the King afterwards for 20000*l.*

This Battel was fought the ^t 19. day of *September, an. Dom. 1356.* it beginning in the Morning and ending at Noon; but it was night e're they returned from the Chase.

When it was ended, the *Prince* (who saith *Froisard*, was therein courageous and cruel as a *Lyon*, and took great delight in the Fight and Chase) commanded his *standard* to be pitched on a high Bush, as a signal to the dispersed Forces to retire to him thither; and then sent out the Earl of *Warwick*, and Sir *Reynold Cobham*, to make enquiry after the *French King*, who in a short time brought him Prisoner to the *Prince*. The ^u *Prince* entertained this Noble Prisoner at a Supper, at which himself, with all respect, served him; nor could be prevailed upon to sit down at the Table.

The next day the *Prince* dislodged his Army, and marched through *Poitou*, *Santonge*, and at *Blaye* passed the River *Garonne*, and so to *Eordeaux*, where in one part of the Abby of *St. Andrew* he lodged his Royal Prisoner, and in the other himself; and upon the News of this great Victory and Success, the King appointed ^v publick thanks to be given to God throughout *England*.

In ^w *April* following, the *Prince* took shipping for *England*, and brought along with him the *French King* (and divers other Prisoners of quality) the ^x 5. of *May* he arrived at *Plymouth*, for whose reception there, *John Dabernoun* Sheriff of *Devonshire*, was ^y commanded to make provision of Victuals, and Carriages, and Horses, and attend him in all parts through that County. The ^z 24. of *May*, the *Prince*, in a stately Cavalcade, rode through *London*, his Royal Prisoner by his side, on a White Courser, and himself on a Black Hobby, and so proceeded to ^a *Westminster-Hall*, where he presented King *John* to his Father, and from whence King *John* was conducted to his Lodging; but within a short time, the *Savoy* was furnished for his entertainment.

After some few years, the King (^{an. 33. E. 3.}) preparing for another Expedition into *France*, this ^b *Prince* went along with him (so also his three Brethren) and commanded the Rear of that Army, which making its way through the Bowels of *France*, at *Bretigny*, neer *Chartres*, a Peace was concluded, in which this *Prince* (and some other of the Kings Council) on the Kings part, having treated with the *French Lords*, on the part of the Dauphin of *Viennois* Governor of *France*, brought all controversies, touching that Realm, to a happy composition. The King (desirous to proceed to the effect and accomplishment of that Treaty) gave him another ^c *Commission*, with authority to treat further upon any thing that concerned or was comprised therein, either in general or special; to demand and receive the Hostages, Money, Castles, Cities, and Fortresses, and what ever else was to be delivered to the King, by virtue thereof; with a general Clause, to add and supply the power granted, if any solemn or substantial thing should be omitted, through much business or otherwise, or were expedient or advantageous, as to the premises.

After the confirmation of this Peace, and King *Edward* in possession of a considerable part of the Territories, both of his own inheritance, or invested in him by the said Peace (which he was to enjoy without resort or Sovereignty to the Crown of *France*) The Nobility of these Provinces desiring to be governed by a *Prince* of their own, rather than by the Kings *Lieutenants* as before; they addressed themselves to the King, to confer the Government thereof on this *Prince*, and send him thither, where he had so great Possessions and Revenues to maintain his State and Dignity. Hereupon the King ^d Created him *Prince* of *Guyenne*, and gave him *Guyenne* and *Gascoigne* by the name of a *Principality* during his life: and also granted to him those other Countries, Towns, and Castles near adjoining (delivered into the Kings possession, by vertue of the foresaid Treaty) together with the Government of them also, retaining nevertheless the

P p p

Resort

r 22. Off. Pat.
33. E. 3. p. 3.
m. 14.
t Rn. de Traff.
Pacis Franc.
34. E. 3. m. 9.
vide Claus. 36.
E. 3. m. 3. d. 150.

t Froiss. c. 168.

u 10. Off. Ob.
Claus. 20. E. 3.
m. 2. d. 150.
w Hollinsh. pag.
390.
x Walsingh.
pag. 144.
y 20. March
Pat. 31. E. 3.
m. 3. d. 150.
z Walsingh. l. 10.
c. 1.
a Hollinsh. l. 10.
c. 1.

c Rot. Calest. de
Negotio com-
muniu 34. E.
3. m. 6.

d 19. July Rot.
Vass. 36. E. 3.
m. 16.

Refort and Sovereignty over all, thereby given and granted to himself.

This done, he forthwith prepared for his Voyage thither, taking along with him his ^c Lady the *Princess*, with whom, being arrived at *Rochel*, they were both joyfully received. Thence he went to *Poitiers*, whither the ^f Barons and Knights of *Poitou* and *Santonge* repaired, doing him Fealty and Homage; then he departed for *Bordeaux*, thither the Nobility and Knights of *Gascogne* came to wait on him: after which he settled English Officers in all places of his Principality, and there kept his Court with great state and magnificence.

Immediately after the Election of Pope *Urban* the Fifth, ^g *Peter* of *Lusignan* King of *Cyprus* and *Jerusalem*, came to *Avignon*, and there engaged *John* King of *France* in a *Crusade*; he thence went to the Emperor at *Prague*, and afterwards into *Flanders* and *England*, whence after he had been nobly entertained, ^h he returned to King *John* then at *Amiens*, and ⁱ thinking he had not yet seen any thing, till he had seen the *Prince* of *Wales*, took a Journey to *Poitiers*, and so to *Angoulesme*, where the *Prince* held a Royal Jufts of 40 Knights, and as many Esquires, in honor of the birth of his Son *Edward*; and here the King of *Cyprus* was received with great honor, and nobly feasted while he stayed.

Not long after, this Noble *Prince* was induced to re-establish ^j *Don Peter* King of *Castile*, who had ^k made a personal application to him in so great distress, being driven out of his Kingdom by his *Bastard* Brother *Henry*, with the assistance of some part of the late disbanded Army, called the *late Comers*, or *Companions*, under the command of Sir *Bertrand de Guefclin*, and some English and Breton Forces that went along with them, commanded by Sir *Eustace Dabrichecourt*, and other Knights: Hereupon the *Prince* first sent his Letters to remand them back, and after (which strengthened his undertaking) ^l he received aid from the King his Father, commanded by *John* of *Gaunt* his Brother.

James Son of *Ferdinand*, King of *Mojorca* (whom the King of *Aragon* had imprisoned at *Barcelona*, and there put to death) made also address to the *Prince* for assistance in the recovery of his Realm; which the *Prince* promised after his return out of *Spain* (whither he was then engaged) and towards which he began his Voyage the ^m Sunday after *Epiphany*, an. Dom. 1366.

Upon his ⁿ entry into *Castile* (with 30000 Horse and Foot) *Don Henry* prepared to give him Battel with 86000, the Armies joined between ^o *Navarr* and *Naveret*, on Saturday the 3. of April, ^p an. 40. E. 3. and here the *Prince* got a Victory, which re-established *Don Pedro* in his Kingdom: thereupon *Don Pedro* went to *Sevill*, and promised to return the *Prince* money to pay his Army, but after four Months stay and expectation, the *Prince* was constrained to return into *Aquitane* without any; so forgetful was *Don Pedro* of the courtesies he had received from him. This Victory got the *Prince* great renown throughout the Empire, and the repute of being the valiantest Prince in that Age, even worthy to govern all the World; but in this Voyage he contracted a sickness he never recovered, which his Physicians and Surgeons judged to be an incurable Dropsie; others, that he was poisoned.

In an Instrument dated about this time, to wit 8. October 1366. (whereby he granted to his Brother *John* of *Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaster*, the Village and Castellaine of *Roche sur Ion*, to him and his Heirs males) I find him thus stiled: *Edward ainsue filz du Roy de France & d'Engleterre, Prince d'Aquitaine & de Gales, Duke de Cornwall, Conte de Cestre, Seigneur de Biscaie, & de Castre de Dordiales*, but after he had resigned the Principality of *Aquitaine*, his Titles were these only, *Edwardus Regis Angliæ & Franciæ primogenitus Princeps Walliæ, Dux Cornubiæ, & Comes Cestriæ* 6. Feb. 49. E. 3. to an. 47. E. 3. vide Lib. Miscell. R. Glover *Somerſet*, p. 111.

Some time after his return into *Aquitaine*, the discontented *Gascoigners* and ^w French (taking occasion to rebel upon raising a Subsidy, called *W Fousage*, for 5 years, consented to by most of his Subjects, viz. the *Poitouins*, and they of *Xan-Gonge Limosin, Rouergue*, and *Rockell*, but other parts of *Guine* refused) entred (in a hostile manner) the Princes Territories, whereupon Sir *Hugh Caurel* coming out of *Aragon* to the *Prince*, was made Captain of the *Companions*, whom he had

^f Cod. MS. in Offic. Ducat. Lancast. sub titulo de partibus transmarinis.
^g Ex alio Cod. MS. sub Tit. Com. Cestr. cap. 24.
^h Froiss. c. 141.

ⁱ Ibid. cap. 231.
^k 39. E. 3. Holinsh. Chron. p. 897.

^l Froiss. c. 233.
^m Ibid. c. 234.
ⁿ Ibid. c. 237.
^o Ibid. c. 238.
^p Walsingh pag. 176.
^q Froiss. c. 239.
^r Ibid. c. 245.

had sent for out of *Normandy*, and ordered to ^a march with them into the ^x *Ibid.* c. 249 Country of the Earl of *Armaignac*, and the Lord *d'Albret* (two of the great Ring-Leaders of the Rebellion new begun) to wast those parts. He also had sent before a body Commanded ^y by Sir *John Chandos* to *Montauban*, and a ^y *Ibid.* c. 245 third under the Command of the ^z Earl of *Cambridge*, and *Penbrooke*, into *Peri-z* *Ibid.* c. 250 gort, and which took *Bourdeilles* after 11. Weeks Siege.

After this, the *Prince* ^a receiving Intelligence that two Armies under the con- ^a *Ibid.* c. 277 duct of the Dukes of *Anjou* and *Berry*, were design'd to enter *Aquitaine*, and besiege him in *Angoulesme*, resolv'd his Enemies should not find him there; and therefore summon'd in the Nobility, and appointed a *Rendevouz* at *Cognac*, leaving his Princess at *Angoulesme*, but taking his young Son *Richard* with him.

The *King* of *England* (having upon this great rupture of the Peace concluded at *Bretigny*, resumed his Name and Title to the Crown of *France*) ^b sent ^b 19. *Jun. Rot.* forthwith to the *Prince*, to give him notice that the *Parliament* at *Westminster* had ^{Vasf.} 43. E. 3. Ordained, that all his Subjects of what Nation or condition soever, should maintain his Interest against his Enemies in the Realm of *France*, to recover and conquer the same. And likewise directed his Letters to the ^c Nobility of ^c *Ibid.* m. 2. *Gascoigne*, desiring their assistance herein. The year following, he sent over *John Duke of Lancaster* his third Son, to the assistance of this *Prince*, and gave him ^d Commission to receive into favour, and wholly pardon, such of his Cities, ^d 1. *July Rot.* Castles, Towns, and Inhabitants, as well in *Aquitaine* as other parts of *France*. ^{Vasf.} 44. E. 3. as should return to his Obedience, and to do and exercise all powers given in his said Commission, with the consent of the *Prince*, if present, and in his absence, what the *King* could do in his assistance, if personally there. And that care might be taken in Civil Affairs, the *King* (having reserved to himself the Sovereignty and resort in those Territories) sent a blank ^e Commission for the *Prince* to insert the names of such as he should think fit to appoint for Judges or Delegate, to hear all Causes as well Criminal as Civil, upon Appeals from the *Princes Courts*. ^e 10. *June preceding Ibid.*

^f The Duke of *Lancaster* shortly after arrived at *Bordeaux*, and came to the *Prince* ^f *Froiss.* c. 279 at *Cognac*, but the Duke of *Anjou* thought better to withdraw his Forces into *Garrisons*, than to fall into action. The Duke of *Berry* took ^g *Ibid.* c. 280 *Limoges*, which the *Prince* ^h retaking, put the Inhabitants to the Sword, and burnt the Town. ^h c. 283, 284 But the *Prince's* disease growing daily upon him, he was ⁱ advised by his Phy- ⁱ *Ibid.* c. 287 sicians and Chirurgeons, to return into *England*, for the recovery of his health; which caused him to assemble the Nobility of *Aquitaine*, *Gascoigne*, *Poitou*, and *Santonze*, at *Bordeux*, to whom he communicated his intentions, and withal that he would leave the Duke of *Lancaster* in Chief Command behind him, to whom they did fealty and Homage in the *Princes* presence, and kist his mouth. The Affairs of these Countries being thus Ordered, the *Prince* and *Princess*, their young Son *Richard*, the Earls of *Cambridge*, and *Penbrooke*, took Shipping for *England*, and arrived at ^k *Plimouth* about the beginning of *January*, whence they rode to the *King* at *Windsor*, where after some stay he took his leave and retired to his own House, and about two years after ^l *surrendered* ^k *Walsingh. sub an. 44. E. 3. pag. 181.* the Dignity of *Prince* of *Guyenne*, and his whole right therein, to his Father ^l *Rot. Vasf.* 46 E. 3. m. 2. *King Edward*.

While he was yet in Minority, there were several matches designed for him, as first, being but a year old, ^m a Commission was given to *John Darcy*, and *William Trussell* Knights, to treat and agree with *Philip King of France*, or his ⁿ *Deputies*, upon espousals and Matrimony between this young *Prince* and *King Philips* Daughter; but the quarrel breaking out afterwards with that *King*, there was no further progress made in his Affair. ^{Of his Wife and Children.} m 15. *July Par.* 5. E. 3. par. 2, m. 28.

The next proposal was for *Margaret*, one of the Daughters of *John Duke of Brabant* and *Lorraine*, to which purpose a ⁿ Commission was made out to *Henry* ⁿ 12. *May Rot.* Bishop of *Lincoln*, and *William de Bohun* Earl of *Northampton*, to treat with the said Duke or his *Deputies* upon this matter, and for which, in regard they were both within the third Degree of Consanguinity, the *Popes* Dispensations was ^p *Alman. 12. E. 3. p. 1. m. 17.*

Rot. Rom.
14 E. 3. m. 2.
15 E. 3. m. 2.
16 E. 3. m. 2.
17 E. 3. m. 2.
18 E. 3. m. 2.
19 E. 3. m. 2.
20 E. 3. m. 2.
21 E. 3. m. 2.
22 E. 3. m. 2.
23 E. 3. m. 2.
24 E. 3. m. 2.
25 E. 3. m. 2.
26 E. 3. m. 2.
27 E. 3. m. 2.
28 E. 3. m. 2.
29 E. 3. m. 2.
30 E. 3. m. 2.
31 E. 3. m. 2.
32 E. 3. m. 2.
33 E. 3. m. 2.
34 E. 3. m. 2.
35 E. 3. m. 2.
36 E. 3. m. 2.
37 E. 3. m. 2.
38 E. 3. m. 2.
39 E. 3. m. 2.
40 E. 3. m. 2.
41 E. 3. m. 2.
42 E. 3. m. 2.
43 E. 3. m. 2.
44 E. 3. m. 2.
45 E. 3. m. 2.
46 E. 3. m. 2.
47 E. 3. m. 2.
48 E. 3. m. 2.
49 E. 3. m. 2.
50 E. 3. m. 2.
51 E. 3. m. 2.
52 E. 3. m. 2.
53 E. 3. m. 2.
54 E. 3. m. 2.
55 E. 3. m. 2.
56 E. 3. m. 2.
57 E. 3. m. 2.
58 E. 3. m. 2.
59 E. 3. m. 2.
60 E. 3. m. 2.
61 E. 3. m. 2.
62 E. 3. m. 2.
63 E. 3. m. 2.
64 E. 3. m. 2.
65 E. 3. m. 2.
66 E. 3. m. 2.
67 E. 3. m. 2.
68 E. 3. m. 2.
69 E. 3. m. 2.
70 E. 3. m. 2.
71 E. 3. m. 2.
72 E. 3. m. 2.
73 E. 3. m. 2.
74 E. 3. m. 2.
75 E. 3. m. 2.
76 E. 3. m. 2.
77 E. 3. m. 2.
78 E. 3. m. 2.
79 E. 3. m. 2.
80 E. 3. m. 2.
81 E. 3. m. 2.
82 E. 3. m. 2.
83 E. 3. m. 2.
84 E. 3. m. 2.
85 E. 3. m. 2.
86 E. 3. m. 2.
87 E. 3. m. 2.
88 E. 3. m. 2.
89 E. 3. m. 2.
90 E. 3. m. 2.
91 E. 3. m. 2.
92 E. 3. m. 2.
93 E. 3. m. 2.
94 E. 3. m. 2.
95 E. 3. m. 2.
96 E. 3. m. 2.
97 E. 3. m. 2.
98 E. 3. m. 2.
99 E. 3. m. 2.
100 E. 3. m. 2.

several times endeavoured to be obtained by Letters sent from the King; but he could not be induced to do any thing therein.

Another match was proposed with a Daughter of the King of Portugal, and thereupon the King Commissioned Mr. Andrew Offord, Richard de Sobam, and Philip de Barton, to treat of a Marriage, not only between the Prince, but any other of his Sons, and any one of the Daughters of the said King; That also taking no effect, there was another Commission issued to Robert de Stratton Canon of Chichester, and Richard de Sobam, to treat with the said King concerning a marriage between the Prince and his Daughter Leonora.

But none of these which were of others providing took effect, but at length an. 35. E. 3. he married with a Lady of his own choice, namely Joan Countess of Kent, Sister and Heir to John Plantagenet Earl of Kent, and the Relict of Sir Thomas Holland (one of the first Founders of this most Noble Order) commonly called (for her Excellent Beauty) the fair Maid of Kent. And because the Prince had married her, notwithstanding nearness of Kindred between them, and of his Christning her eldest Son, it was thought requisite to have a Papal Absolution from Excommunication, and Dispensation for Marriage; both which were obtained from Pope Innocent the Sixth, in the 9. year of his Popedom.

By her he had two Sons, namely Edward the Eldest, born at Angoulême, in Feb. 1365. (Leland saith 1364.) who dyed in Gascoigne, at 7. years of Age; and Richard the second Son born at Bordeaux, on Twelfth-Day being Wednesday, at three a Clock in the Afternoon, * 1366. and had three Kings to his Godfathers, viz. 1 of Spain, Navarre, and Portugal.

Besides these he had two Natural Sons, John Sounder, and Sir Roger de Clarendon, to the latter of these he gave by his Will a Silk Bed, with all thereunto belonging; This Roger was after made one of the Knights of the Chamber to King Richard the Second, to whom the said King * the first of October, 13. R. 2. gave for life 100 l. per annum, out of the Issues of his Subsidies in the Counties of Bristol, Gloucester, Somerset, Dorset, and Cornwall.

His Disease contracted in Spain grown now incurable, and he drawing near to his end, made his Will in the Kings great Chamber at Westminster, the 7. of June, an. 50. E. 3. and disposed of his Body to be buried in the Cathedral Church of the Trinity in Canterbury. And such was his care of those who had done him service, that he charged his Son Richard by his Will, to continue the payment of those Pensions which he had given them. The Executors nominated therein were his Brother of Spain the Duke of Lancaster, William Bishop of Winchester, John Bishop of Bath, William Bishop of St. Asaph, Robert de Walsingham his Confessor, Hugh de Segrave Steward of his Lands, Aleyn de Stokes, and John de Fordham.

The next day after his Will was made (being Trinity Sunday) this Noble Prince (the Flower of Chevalry and delight of the English Nation) departed the World; his body being embalmed, was wrapt in Lead and kept till Michaelmas (the Parliament being then to meet) to be interred with greater Solemnity, which was performed at Canterbury, near the Shrine of Thomas Becket, over whose Grave a stately Monument was erected for him, which yet remains undisturbed.

(3)

Henry Earl of Lancaster.

THE second Stall on the sovereign's side, was assigned to Henry then Earl of Lancaster and Derby, Son to Henry Earl of Lancaster (Brother and Heir of Thomas Earl of Lancaster Beheaded at Pontefract, on Monday before our Lady-Day, an. 15. E. 2.) and Maude Daughter and Heir to Sir Patrick Cadurces (or Chaworth) Knight, Lord of Kidwelly and Ogmore in Wales.

The

The first considerable Military Honor conferred on him, was that of ¹Commander in Chief of all the King's Forces sent into *Scotland* ^{an. 10. E. 3.} for the ⁵Truce with the *Scots* having been upon the request both of the Pope and King of *France*, and earnest solicitation of their *Ambassadors*, several times prorogued, between the 23. of *Nov.* ^{an. 9. E. 3.} and the Sunday next after *Ascension* day following, it then expired; before which, the King had intelligence of their confederacies abroad, and great preparations for War, and being engaged to assist and defend *Edward Baliol* King of *Scots*, who had done him Homage for that Kingdom, he thereupon raised an Army for that purpose, and gave this noble Knight command thereof, by the name of *Henry de Lancaster* only, though I find him in another place relative to this employment, called *Henry de Lancastre* Banneret. And by another Commission he gave him power to receive to Faith and Peace, the *Scots* or their adherents, and to grant them pardon.

Shortly after, ¹he and *Tho. Beauchamp* Earl of *Warwick*, *Henry de Bellomont* Earl of *Bogham*, and *William de Bohun* had Commission given them, to treat with *Sir Andrew Murrese* a Scotch Knight, about a Truce between the King and his Subjects in *Scotland*, and the said *Sir Andrew* and other the *Scots*, to hold till *Midsummer* following.

Towards the latter end of this year, ¹*David Bruns* (then in *France*) had obtained that Kings assistance, and gotten together a great Navy, with which he did much mischief to the Merchants about the *Ile of Wight*; besides, he had entred the *Isles* of *Gerusey* and *Jarsey*, and killed divers of the Inhabitants. The King therefore gave Commission to the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, and others, of whom this *Henry* was one (himself being then at *Bothenill* in *Scotland*, so busied in the War, that he could not be at the meeting appointed) to treat on his behalf, with certain Prelates and others, whom he had commanded to meet at *London*, on Wednesday after *Newyears* day following, upon the defence and safety of the Kingdom, repulsion of the Enemies, and other things relating to the State of the King and Kingdom; as also seriously and fully to acquaint them with the King's intentions, to ordain and do all things referring thereunto, and to his honor, as if he were there personally present.

The following year he was created Earl of *Derby*, and invested by girding him with the Sword, his Father yet living; by the Charter of his Creation did the King grant to him and his Heirs, an Annuity of Honor of 20 l. out of the Farm of the County of *Derby*; and to the end he might better maintain the State of an Earl, he also granted him an annual Pension of 1000 Marks during his Fathers life, out of the Customs in *London*, *St. Butolphs*, and *Kingston upon Hull*, until the King should provide for him 1000 Marks per annum in Lands or Rents; and in case the issues of the said Customs fell short of that annual sum, then was it provided, that it should be made up out of the Exchequer, and for more surety out of the Custody of his Wards.

The third of *October* following, the King granted to him the Manor of *Wygh-* *ton* and Hundred of *Northgrenebo*, with their appurtenances, in the County of *Norfolk*, as also the Mannor of *Laghton* in *Morthynges*, with its appurtenances, in the County of *Tork*, which *Ralph* Earl of *Eu* had lately held, and were then seised into the Kings hands, to hold also during the life of his Father, at the annual value of 72 l. 7 s. 6 d. q. (at which rate they were extended) in part of satisfaction of the said annual Pension of 1000 Marks.

But the Letters Patents of the 18. of *March*, were resigned up to be cancelled the 24. of *October* ^{an. 13. E. 3.} and the King thereupon, by other Letters Patent, dated the 20. of *September* preceding, granted him (during his said Fathers life) all the Issues of the small Customs in *London*, for the payment of 891 Marks 5 s. 9 d. q. above the extent of the Mannors and Hundred aforesaid (both which sums made up the foresaid annual Pension of 1000 Marks) and in case the small Customs fell short of 891 Marks 5 s. 9 d. q. then, what they wanted was to be paid him out of the great Customs of the said City; but if they exceeded that sum, then the surplusage to be paid into the Exchequer: which Lands and Pension out of the small Customs, reverting to the King upon the death of this Earls Father;

17. April Rot.
Scot. 10. E. 3.
m. 28.
g Ibid. m. 30.

h Claus. 11. E.
3. p. 1. m. 22.
10. Apr. Rot.
Scot. 10. E. 3.
m. 28.
k 4. May Rot.
Scot. 10. E. 3.
m. 26.

1 Rot. Scot. 10.
E. 3. m. 30.

m 11. Dec. 16.

n 16. Mar.
Chart. 11. E. 3.
m. 25. n. 50.

o 18. Mar. Pat.
11. E. 3. p. 1.
m. 27.

p Pat. 11. E. 3.
p. 3. m. 26.

* Pat. 13. E. 3.
p. 2. m. 20.

q 26 Sept. Rot. Father, were then granted to the Queen, for the support and maintenance of her Children, until the King should otherwise provide for them.

In the 11. year of King Edward the Third, the King having sent over the Bishop of Lincoln, and others, into Flanders to make Alliances for him with Flemings, the French King had laid a Garrison in the Isle of Cagaunt, with design to take these Commissioners in their return home; but they having notice thereof, and the friendship and assistance of Jacques Dartuel, took their way to Dort in Holland, and so escaped that snare. And the King resolving to clear that Island of this Garrison, designed for this Service the Earl of Derby, who raised part of his men in Staffordshire, a Country where he was exceedingly beloved, in which his Father had then great Possessions, that after his death descended to him, and of which for the better conservation of the Peace there, the King made him high Sheriff during life. These men, levied by the King's Writ, he was commanded to have in readiness with himself at London, on the Feast of St. Margaret the Virgin next ensuing.

At the arrival of the English in the Haven, they found the Town of Cagaunt well garrison'd, and therein divers stout Commanders chosen by the Earl of Flanders for its defence, well arm'd, and ready to forbid their Landing, so that with great difficulty and some loss they got ashore; and here our Earl pressing on, and fighting for his passage, was struck down to the ground, but relieved by the Lord Manny.

In fine, the Town (on Sunday before the Feast of St. Martin) was taken by the English, and above 3000 Flemmings slain; after which, they plundered and burnt it, and brought their Prisoners to their Ships, among whom was Sir Guy the Bastard of Flanders, who after made Fealty to the King, and sided with him in the War.

The 16. of February an. 13. E. 3. he was put in Commission with others, to array men in the County of Leicester, against the Invasion of Enemies; and the 23. of July after made one of the 8 Commissioners to treat with Philip de Valois, upon all Controversies between the King and him: and also one of the 5 Commissioners constituted the second of January following, to treat with the said Philip, as also with the Cardinals of St. Praxide, and St. Mary in Aquiro upon the same Affair.

The 6. of March an. 14. E. 3. he had Commission given him, to raise men in the Counties of Derby, Leicester, Staffordshire, and Lancashire, to pass over Sea with the King or himself, at the Kings next Voyage beyond Sea.

This Earl attended the King in his first Expedition into France, and had Command, in the Battel ready pitcht, to fight the French neer Vyronsfoss, as also at the Battel of Sluce an. 14. E. 3. and the 10. of August the same year, command issued to Robert de Morley, Admiral of the Fleet from the Thames towards the North, to send forth 10 Ships to Orewell, to take in his Troops of Horse, that were to pass over into Flanders after him.

In the following year He, and Henry de Percy, Ralph de Nevil, and Robert de Dalton had Commission given them to treat with the Bishops, Earls, and all other persons, as well Ecclesiastick as Secular, in the Northern parts, touching the defence of the Kingdom against the Scots; and to sollicite them, who had Lands in those parts, to dwell there, or otherwise to assign other persons there to remain in their stead.

He was again made the Kings Lieutenant in the North parts of England and in Scotland, as also General of the Army sent against the Scots, who had invaded England; having power given him to defend the Marches; to march into Scotland, to create Stewards, Constables, Marshals, and other Officers necessary for the Government of the Army, and three days after had a Commission given him, and power to treat and agree with the Scots about a Cessation of Arms, to admit such of them as were willing, to the Kings Peace, to receive their Fealty, to grant them pardon, and restore their Lands.

The 3. of April in the following year, he and 6 other, whereof he was to be one, were commissioned to treat with David Bruce, and other Scotchmen his

f Extrafl. Denat. 19. E. 3. m. 2.
t 28. June Rot. Vase. 11. E. 3. m. 23.
u Froiss. c. 31.

w Hollingsh. Chron. p. 354.

x Rot. Alman. 13. E. 3. m. 16. Dorst.
y Pat. Concess. b-minib. Angl. Cy Vase. 13. E. 3. m. 17.
z H. Bishop of Lin. H. Earl of Derby. W. Earl of Salisb. W. de Exon. Cy Alex. de Oneby.

a Rot. Alman. 14. E. 3. m. 29. Dorst.
b Froiss. cap. 41.
c Ibid. cap. 50.
d Rot. Alman. 14. E. 3. m. 8.

e 27 July Pat. 15. E. 3. p. 2. m. 29.

f 7. Off. Rot. Scot. 15. E. 3. m. 4.
g Ibid. m. 5.
h Rot. Scot. 16. E. 3. m. 14.
i R. Bishop of Durham, Hon. Earl of Derby, Ralph de Nevil, John de Strivelin, Will. de Carewell Governor of Berwick, W. de Creyk, Rob. de Mavers.

his Adherents upon a final Peace or Truce, as also upon all debates and differences whatsoever between the King and them, and amicably to compose them. And the same day he had power likewise given him to grant to * Adam Bishop of Brechin, ^{* Rot. Scot. 16. E. 3. m. 14.} to Patrick Earl of March, Sir William de Douglas, and Sir Thomas de Carnato, Knights, and William Bullock, and other Scotch Men, as he should see cause, the the King's special Letters of safe Conduct and Protection for so long time, as this Earl thought fit, to come into England, with as many Horse as he should appoint, to treat either of a Truce or Peace with this Earl, and others deputed thereto by the King.

Having in this expedition undertaken upon certain conditions, the Custody of the Marches of Scotland, the King ^k gave him in reward, the 1000. Marks which Jo. de Weseham stood engaged to pay the King for Wooll. ^{k 10. Offob. Extrall. do. nat. 16. E. 3. m. 10.}

He went over with the King in his Voyage into ^l Bretagne, having under his Command 5. Bannerets, 50. Knights, 144. Esquires, and 200. Archers on Horseback. The daily Wages allowed him for himself was 8 s. for each Banneret 4 s. each Knight 2 s. each Esquire 1 s. and each Archer 6 d. At the Siege of Vannes he was ^m constituted one of the Kings Commissioners (the other being the Earls of Northampton, and Salisbury, the Lord Stafford, Burghershe, Cantelowe, Cobham, Manneys, and Berkley, and Mr. John Ufford Archdeacon of Ely) where a Truce was concluded for three years. ^{l Rot. Franc. 16. E. 3. m. 20. Cy 2. Clauf. de eod. an. p. 2. m. 31. m Hollinshead Chron. pag. 3. 264.}

The ⁿ 24. of March, an. 18. E. 3. The King by his Letters Patent constituted this Noble Earl, and Richard Earl of Arundel, his Lieutenants in the Dukedom of Aquitaine, and the Countries adjoining, to govern and defend those Territories, to demand and receive the possession of the Castles, Places, and Rights, unjustly detained from him, to recover and retain the same by force of Arms, if need should be, and to receive such as should return to their Obedience, to the grace and favour of the King, as also the Homage and Fidelity from whomsoever in those parts due; and generally to do all things for defence and recovery of the Kings Rights, and good Government of those Countries and his Subjects, with Command to the Archbishops, &c. to yield Obedience to them. ^{n Rot. Vasc. 18. E. 3. m. 9.}

And whereas the King upon false suggestions, had been deceived in many of his Grants and Donations in that Dukedom; He by other ^o Letters Patents of the same date, gave him power to seize into his hands all the Castles, Lands, Liberties, and Profits, formerly granted by him, and those that should appear to have been obtained upon untrue suggestions, to retain without Restitution, but upon true, to restore entirely. A like ^p Commission was given them which extended to the grants made by his Father King Edward the Second, upon like pretences, as well as by himself. ^{o Ibid. p Ibid.}

They also had a General Commission ^q to treat and conclude with all persons of whatsoever state or condition, Kingdom or Nation, for the settling of Alliances, and mutual Assistance between the King and them, to retain men for the Kings Service, and to agree about Fees, Wages, and Rewards to be paid unto them. ^{q Ibid.}

By other ^r Commissions of the same date, these two Earls had power to treat and conclude with Alphonfus King of Castile, (there stiled Alphonfus Rex Castilia, & Legionis, Toleti, Galicia, Sivilie, Cordubie, Murcie, Gyennii, & Algarbie, & Comes Molme) or his Deputies upon all differences arising between their Subjects, especially Mariners, and amicably to compose them, as also of a perpetual League of Friendship between them, &c. their Subjects, and to afford each other their mutual assistance, with Power to make Substitutes in their stead. ^{r Ibid.}

The said Earls had like ^s Commissions, with the same Power, to treat with the King of Portugal, therein stiled, Alphonfus Rex Portugalie & Algarbie. And with the King of Aragon, stiled therein, Petrus Rex Aragonie, Valencie, Majorce, sardinii, & Corsice, Comes Barthon. ^{s Ibid.}

Sir ^t John Froissard tells us, that some of the Gascoigne Lords came hither about this time, to acquaint the King, with the weak condition of that Country and City of Bordeaux, and to desire relief, and that in this Earls company went also the Earls of ^{t Cap. 102.}

of Penbroke and Oxford, the Lord Stafford, Sir Walter Minney, the Lord Frank de la Hall, and divers others of note, being about 500 Knights and Esquires, and 2000 Archers, and having landed at Bayon the 6. of June * 1344. went thence to Bordeaux.

His first attempt was upon the * Town of Bergerac, which surrendered to him, and next * Longo Castle and le Lake, Mandurant he took by assault, so also the Castle of Mountysse, Punache, and the Castle de la Lewe, Forsathe, and Pondryre, he won with little opposition, and the great Town of * Laylloes after three days, the chief Town appertaining to the Earl of Laylle (who lived as King in those parts of Gascoigne) was delivered to him after some dispute.

After this success he marched to * Bonu, this he assaulted and took, he also took the Castle of Auberoche, and the Town of Libourne yielded themselves to him. Auberoche being presently after besieged by 12000 French, this Earl on St. Laurence Eve assaulted the Enemy in their Tents with 300 Spears and 600 Archers, and took the Earl of Laylle, and 8 other Earls and Viscounts, and 200 Knights, and so many Esquires, and other Soldiers, that each Englishman had 2 or 3 Prisoners, many of whom they let go upon their paroll to return to Bergerac or to Bordeaux on a certain day, and others they carried with them to Bourdeaux; and by this valiant Exploit having relieved the Castle, he afterwards disposed of his Army into Winter Quarters, and returned into England.

Upon these great successes, the King * made him his sole Lieutenant and Captain in the Duchy of Aquitaine, and the parts adjacent, with power to do and execute all things that belonged to that Command: and gave command to all Archbishops, Earls, Barons, Viscounts, Castellans, and other persons throughout that Dukedom, and adjacent Countries, to yield obedience to him as the Kings Lieutenant.

* Five days before, the King gave him Commission with power to treat and conclude with all persons of whatsoever state or condition, Kingdom or Nation, for settling firm alliances and mutual assistance between the King and them, as also to retain men for the King's Service, and to agree about their Fees, Wages, and other Rewards.

The * 11. of June following, Command was sent to the Sheriff of London, that sofarasmuch as the Earl had shipt most of his Horse at Southampton, and was ready to depart, to make proclamation, that all the men at Arms, Archers, and others who were to go with him, should march to Southampton with all possible speed.

* Immediately after his arrival in Gascoigne he took the Field, and laid Siege to Bosyll which surrendered to him. The Castle of Rochemyllone being well fortified, he took by assault, and slew all but those that fled into the Church: the next day he laid Siege to the Town of Mountsegur, and battered it with great Engines for 15 days together, and at length it was * yielded to him upon Composition. After this the strong Castle of * Aguilon was yielded up to him, and then he laid Siege to * Reole, which surrendered on mercy, but the Castle stood out 11 weeks, and then also * surrendered.

After his taking of Reole, he marched to * Mountpesance Castle which he took by Storm, and then he sat down before Mauleon, and took it by the stratagem of an Ambush: He took also the Ville Franche in Agenois, with its Castle by assault, after which he marched through the Country, and took many other Towns and Castles, with little difficulty.

At the end of three days Siege * Myremont yielded to him, and some of his Forces took * Thomynes on the River Garonne, and the strong Castle Damajan. Last of all * Angoulesme yielded to him after a Months Siege, and thence he retired to his Winter Quarter at Bordeaux.

This Winter the Duke of Normandy entred * Gascoigne, with 100000 men, and shortly after Christmas took the Field; in this Expedition he regained several places from the English, and sat down before Aguilon; but after the * Batel at Cressy, being sent for back by the French King, he was constrained to raise his Siege.

Shortly

^m Shortly after the retreat of the Duke of Normandy, this Earl (the King having sent to the ⁿ Prior of the Order of the Friars Preachers in London, to offer up Prayers, that God would please to protect and defend him, and give his Forces Victory over his Enemies) with 1200 men at Arms, 2000 Archers, and 3000 Foot passed the River Garonne towards Xantonge and took ^{*} Myrabel by Storm, as also the Town and Castle of ^{*} Alsay, and Surgeres and Benon. He likewise took Mortagne on the Sea side in Poitou by assault, and burnt Lusignen, and took the Town and Castle of Taillebourg; at length he lay Siege to St. Jean d'Angely, which surrendered to him upon Conditions, after which he took Maxineut by assault, and won the ^o Town of Monstreuil Bonnin; he thence marched to Poitiers, and that he took by Assault, where 700 of the Inhabitants were slain, and some Churches spoiled, and more had been, but that this pious Earl commanded the contrary on pain of death: Nevertheless they plundered the Town, and left it desolate, and here the Soldiers got so great Wealth, that nothing was of value but Gold, Silver, and Feathers for the Troops. From hence he returned to St. Jean d'Angely, and thence to Bourdeaux, and in this Expedition, he gained so great esteem, that he was reported to be the Noblest Prince that ever rode on Horseback.

Having behaved himself so gallantly and faithfully in prosecuting and recovering of the King's right in these parts, the first of Febr. an. 21. E. 3. the King sent for him, back to be near unto himself for the future, upon all occasions, and to direct and assist in his Martial and other Affairs, whereupon he returned into England, and because King Edward understood: that the French King was making great preparations to draw down to Calais about Whitsonside, he enjoined him speedily to repair to his assistance, in reference to whole passage, ^q Command was sent to Jo. de Montgomery Admiral of the Fleet Westward, to provide Ships in readiness at Sandwich and Dover, for the Transportation of the Army he had raised, with all speed; and immediately upon his coming thither, and consideration had of his victorious successes and good Services, done the King in the Dukedom of Aquitain and parts adjoining, the King granted to him and his Heir Males by Charter, the Castle, Town, and Place of Brageriac (in Diocess. Peragorionensis) with the whole Castellany and all Jurisdiction high and low, Royal Authority, absolute and mixt, as also the Coinage of Money there. To which he afterward added a grant of the Examination of the Assay, with both the Criminal and Civil punishment of all Offenders for coyning Money.

And because this Town and Castle stood upon the Frontiers of the Enemy, the King granted, that during the War, there should remain in that Garrison 100 men of Arms, and 200 Foot at the King's pay, subject nevertheless to the Command of the Steward of Gascoigne, to be drawn out upon occasion by him, leaving sufficient strength to defend the same.

This Earl having taken divers Prisoners at the Town of St. John d'Angely, and reduced it to the obedience of the King, he therefore granted to him all the Lands, Tenements, Vines, and other Goods of those Prisoners, until their Ransoms were fully paid. And a little after granted unto him and his Heirs for ever, the Houses, Lands, &c. of Bernard Barram Burges of that Town, to hold by the Service, of rendering to the King and his Heirs one Rose annually at Midsummer.

Moreover, on the 10. of November following, he had further granted the Castle of Horston with the appurtenances in the County of Derby, and 40 l. per an. out of the Farm of the Town of Derby, to him and his Heirs Males, then the same to revert to the King and his Heirs. All these Grants were made to him upon the account of his good and grateful services formerly performed.

Upon the French King's coming towards Calais (in July before) with design to relieve it, the King appointed him to keep Nemland bridge, for by securing that passage, the French could not pass on that side, unless through the Marches, which were not to be attempted without danger. His order in keeping this place was much commended by the four French Commissioners, who passed

m Froiss. c. 136.
n 6. May Clauf.
20. E. 3. p. 1.
m. 11. dorso.
vide Rot. Franc.
20. E. 3. p. 2.
m. 2.
Myrembeau.
Aunay Hol-
linsh.

o Hollinsh. pag.
375.

p 14. May Rot.
Fr. 21. E. 3.
p. 1. m. 10.
q 19. May Ibid.
m. 6.

r Primo Junii
Rot. fact. apud
Calais 21. E. 3.
m. 13.

s 14. Mar. Rot.
Vas. 23. E. 3.
m. 8.

t 17. Junii Rot.
Calais 21. E. 3.
m. 16.

u 3. Oct. Ibid.
m. 4.

w 8. Oct. Ibid.
m. 1.

x Enivall. Do-
nat. 21. E. 3.
m. 10.

y Froiss. c. 144.

z Ibid. c. 145.

by it when they came from their King to King Edward, to demand a place to fight in.

^a Hollings p. 48.
377.

At this time the ^a Pope having sent two Cardinals to the King, they obtained his condescension to treat with King Philip, whose Commissioners were the Dukes of Burgoyne and Bourbonne, the Lord Lewis de Savoy, and the Lord John of Henalt, otherwise called Lord Beaumont; and on King Edwards part were the Noble Earls of Derby and Northampton, the Lords Cobham and Mannie: but three days being spent without coming to any conclusion, the Treaty broke up, and the Cardinal Mediators departed.

^b 5. Sept. Rot.
Franc. 23. E. 3.
m. 11. do. fo.

He was after made choice of by the King, and Ralph Earl of Eu and Guynes, Constable of France by the French King, to agree upon a Truce, in hopes of a Peace to hold for 6. Weeks, throughout Picardy, Normandy, Artois, Boulogne, and Flanders, to commence the 13. of the same September.

^c Rot. Franc.
22. E. 3. m. 1.
Vide Claus. 22.
E. 3. p. 2. m.
8. do. fo.
d 11. OH. Ibid.
m. 4.

The ^c 25. day of September following, he was constituted the Kings Lieutenant, as well in the parts of Flanders and Calais, as elsewhere in the Kingdom of France, and therein power was given him to treat and agree with any of the Kings Adversaries, or their Adherents, or other persons whatsoever. And after, by a particular ^a Commission, he and William Bishop of Norwich, the Earls of Suffolk and Huntington and others, were impowred to Treat and agree with the Earl of Flanders and his Allies, touching any difference between the King and them; and it seems their Endeavours took so good effect, that an Agreement was made with that Earl the ^c 10. of December following: whereupon he was sent to Denemere, and there received the said Earls Fealty and Homage.

^e 15. m. 3. do. fo.

As to his transactions relating to France, ^f He with the Bishop of Norwich, the Earl of Suffolk, and Sir Walter Manny agreed to the Prorogation of the Truce from the 12. of November, to the first of September following.

^f 18. Nov. Rot.
Franc. 23. E. 3.
m. 10. do. fo.

Upon the Death of his Father, which fell out ^g an. 19. E. 3. he succeeded him in the Titles of the Earldoms of Lancaster and Leicester; and, for that a great part of the Lands, sometimes the Earl of Lincolns, were come to his possession, the King ^h Created him also Earl of Lincoln. He had by his Charter of Creation granted unto him the Creation annuity of 20 l. to be paid him by the Sheriff of Lincolnshire for the time being, in lieu of the third penny of that County for ever, as Thomas late Earl of Lincoln his Uncle had, to enjoy whilst he lived.

ⁱ Rot. Vaso. 23.
E. 3. m. 3.

^k Pat. 23. E. 3.
part 2. m. 6.
fo. 7.
^l Ibid. 18. OH.

^m 6. Mar. Pat.
25. E. 3. part
1. m. 18.

About 8. days after, the King renewed his Commission for being his ⁱ Captain and Lieutenant in Aquitain, and the parts adjacent, with all Powers requisite for the better Government of those Dominions, ^k whether he shortly after pass'd. And by other Letters Patent he ^l constituted him his Captain and Lieutenant in Poitiers, with full power to exercise all things which appertained to that Command.

But for further increase of Honor, the King ^m Created him Duke of Lancaster, and granted, that during life he should have within that County his Chancellor and Justice, as well to the Pleas of the Crown as other Pleas whatsoever, to be held according to Law, and the Executions of them; and likewise all other Liberties and Royal Jurisdiction to a County Palatine appertaining, as freely and wholly as the Earl of Chester was known to enjoy in the County of Chester; the tenths and fifteenths, and all other payments granted by the Clergy or Canons, and pardons for life and members to the King, excepted.

ⁿ Rot. Franc.
25. E. 3. m.
15.

The ⁿ 8. of March ensuing, he was constituted Admiral of the Fleet from the mouth of the River Thames Westward, and two days after the King Assigned him several Lieutenants; namely, Reginald de Ferers on the River Thames and Medway, Robert Ledred Serjeant at Arms within the Cinque-Ports, Philip de Wetton, and Walter de Harewell Serjeants at Arms in the Port of Seford, and in every part and place thence by the Sea-Coast to Fowy, Richard Lengles in the Port of Fowy, and thence to Bristol, and there, and in the Port of Chepstow, and River of Severn, and Ralph de Lullebrock in all places and Ports, from Chepstow to Chester, and there; and in all Parts and Maritime places in Wales.

Upon a Rumor that the French had provided an Army and Navy to invade England, among the Maritime Counties on the South of England, Hants, Wilts, Somerset,

Somerſet, and *Dorſet*, were ° committed to this Duke to ſecure and to reſiſt the Enemy. So alſo was the ° Maritime parts of *Lancaſhire*. And becauſe the King had occaſion to raiſe men for Land Service, he ° gave him Commiſſion to array 300. Archers within that *Dutchy*, before the *Quindena* of the Holy *Trinity* then next following, to be ready to march in the Kings Service.

o 14. *June* Rot.
Franc 26. E. 3.
m 5.
p *Ibid*.
q 24. *May* 1b.
m 8.

The Scots alſo deſigning to invade *England* the following year, this Duke had ° Commiſſion to array all able men in *Lancaſhire*, between the Age of 16 and 60 to march againſt them, in caſe they ſhould preſume to enter the Kingdom. The like ° Commiſſion was given him the 26. of *February* an. 29. E. 3.

r 30. Off. Rot.
Scot. 27. E. 3.
m 1.
f Rot. Scot. 29.
E 3. m 13.
t Rot. Franc.
29. E 3. m 6.
u *Ibid*.

The 14. of *ſeptember* an. 29. E. 3. this noble Duke was conſtituted *Lieutenant* for the King, and *John* Duke of *Bretagne*, then under age. And by other ° Letters Patent of the ſame date, Command was given to *Sir Thomas Holland*, the Kings late *Lieutenant*, to deliver up to him all the Caſtles, Forts, Cities, Towns, and other Places, Lands, Tenements, and Rents in the ſaid Dukedom under his cuſtody, with all the Corn, Viſuals, Money, and Iſſues of the ſaid Dukedom, as alſo all Viſuals, Engines, Arms, and other Ammunition in the ſaid Caſtles, &c. which belonged to the King in *Bretagne*. The ° 8. of *Auguſt*, an. 30. E. 6. he was by the Kings Letters Patent conſtituted *Lieutenant* and *Captain* in the Dukedom of *Bretagne* and parts adjacent, for the good Government thereof, both for the King and the ſaid *John de Montford* Duke of *Bretagne* then under age, and in the Kings cuſtody, from *Michaelmas* following for one year.

w *Ibid*. 30. E. 3.
m 1.

* *Froiffard* ſaith, this Duke was in *Normandy*, and with him the Lord *Philip* of *Navarre*, and the Lord *Godfrey* of *Harecourt*, carrying on the War in that Country, under the Title of the King of *Navar*, at ſuch time as the Prince was foraging of *Berry*, and uſed all endeavour to have joined his Forces with the Prince at *Poitiers*; but the paſſages being ſo well kept on the River *Loire*, he could not paſs, and having heard that the Prince had got the Victory there, he returned into *England*.

x *Cap*. 170.

In ° this Voyage, being 4000 ſtrong, they marched to *Liſieux*, to *Orbec*, to *Ponteau*, and relieved that Caſtle, beſieged above two Months; but the Enemy hearing of the approach of the *Engliſh*, raiſed their Siege in ſuch haſt, that they left behind them their Enſigns and Artillery.

y *Hollinſh* pag. 386.

This Duke then marched to *Breteuil* which he relieved, next to *Vernelil* in *Perche*, took both Caſtle and Town, and burnt a great part of it. Upon the information of which, the French King raiſed a mighty Army, with deſign to fight him, but he withdrawing to *Laigle*, and the King being come within two Leagues of it, found the Foreſt ſo thick and hazardous, that he thought it not ſafe to paſs further; and in his return took from the *Navarrois* the Caſtles of *Tilliers* and *Breteuil*, and ſo marched forward towards the Prince, then harraſſing *Berry*.

About the ° middle of *May* an. 31. E. 3. he took the Field in *Bretagne* with 1000 men at Arms and 500 Archers, and laid Siege to *Rennes*, * which though well defended, was at length ſurrendered; and the ° 25. of *July* his Commiſſion of *Lieutenancy*, both for the King and Duke of *Bretagne*, was renewed for another year, to commence at *Michaelmas* following; but the ° 8. of *Auguſt* before the expiration thereof, *Sir Robert Herle* and *John de Buckenham* Clerk, were appointed to ſucceed him, being jointly and ſeverally conſtituted *Captains* and *Lieutenants* both to the King and Duke for the following year, from *Michaelmas* then next enſuing. ° At that time *Tho. Douvedale* was the Dukes *Lieutenant* in that Dukedom, to whom command was given; dated the ° 5. of *Auguſt* preceding, to deliver up all things in his cuſtody there, and belonging to the King, to ſuch as the King had appointed to receive them; in like manner as they were formerly delivered up to the Earl by *Sir Thomas Holland*, late *Captain* there.

z *Froiff*. c. 175.
* *Hollinſh*
Chron. p 391.
a Rot. Franc.
31. E. 3. m 10.
b Rot. Franc.
31. E. 3. m 8.

c *Ibid*.
d *Ibid*.

In the Expedition made by the King into *France*, in the 33. year of his Reign, this Duke ° was ſent before to *Calais*, with 400 Spears and 2000 Archers, where being arrived, he took with him thoſe Lords of the Empire, and other Commanders, who there waited the Kings coming to *Calais*, and marched to *St. Omars*, *Cambray*, and other places; waſting all the Country as he paſſed, until he heard of the arrival of the King, and then returned to *Calais*.

e *Hollinſh*. pag. 392.

This Voyage with the King into *France*, was the last Martial Employment this Great Duke undertook; and as he had manifested to the World, the wisdom and valour of a great Commander, and succeeded happily in Martial Affairs, so was he no Enemy to Peace, but as ready to lay hold of it on fair and honorable terms, as he was forward to draw his Sword in defence of the Kings honor and right: And this was most evident at the Treaty of *Bretagne* near *Chartres*, where though the King was very unwilling to accept of a Peace, upon terms offered by the *French*, yet moved by the perswasive Arguments of this worthy Duke, he condescended thereunto. It was also upon his motion, both to the King and King *John* of *France*, that the Truce made at *Rennes* between *Charles de Blois*, and the Earl of *Montfort*, which was to expire the first of *May*, was enlarged to *Midsummer* following, in hopes of a final Peace to be by that time made between them.

f *Feiff. c. 211.*
g *Itid. c. 213.*

He married ^a *Isabel* Daughter of *Henry* Lord *Beaumont*, Cousin-german to Queen *Isabel*, Wife to King *Edward* the Second, and by her had two Daughters and Heirs; *Maud* his eldest Daughter, was Wife ^{*} first to *Ralph*, Son of *Ralph* Earl of *Stafford*, and next to ⁱ *William* Duke of *Bavaria*, Earl of *Henault*, *Holland*, and *Zeland*, Lord of *Frisland*, stiled also Earl of ^k *Leicester*; and *Blanch* the youngest, to *John* of *Gaunt* created Duke of *Lancaster*, an. 36. E. 3.

His Wife.
h *Broke in Lancaster.*
i *Claufr. 21.*
E. 3. p. 2. m. 6.
i *Efc. 35. F. 3.*
r. 1. 2.
k *Pat. de eod. an. p. 3. m. 19.*

His Will was made in his Castle at *Leicester* the 15. of *March* 1360. in which he is stiled Duke of *Lancaster*, Earl of *Derby*, *Lincolne*, and *Leicester*, Steward of *England*, Lord of *Bergerac* and *Beaufort*: and by which he appoints his Body to be interred in the Collegiate Church of our Lady at *Leicester*, where his Father was buried.

His Death.
l *Lib. in Offic. principal. Cantuar. vocat. Hup. fol. 172.*

He dyed within few days after, viz. on ^m *Tuesday* next before *Easter* an. 35. E. 3. and was buried at *Leicester*, according to the appointment of his Will.

m *Efc. 35. E. 3.*
n. 122.

(4.)

Thomas Beauchamp Earl of Warwick.

His noble Earl was eldest Son to *Guy* Earl of *Warwick*, and *Alice* Sister and ^a Heir of *Robert* Toney. He was born in ^b *Warwick* Castle, and had to his Godfathers ^c *Thomas* Earl of *Lancaster*, *Henry* his Brother, and *Thomas de Warington* Prior of *Kenilworth*.

a *Rot. Fin. 3.*
E. 2. m. 7.
b *Rot. Joh. c. 1.*
c *Rot. 3.*
d *Claufr. 3.*
e *E. 3. m. 35.*

On ^d *New-years* day, in the second year of King *Edward* the Third, he was made *Knight*, though then within age; and the ^e 20. of *February* following, having made his Homage, had *Livery* of his Fathers Lands. In the fifth year of the same King, the Government of the Isles of ^f *Gernsey*, *Sark*, and *Aureney* was conferred on him. About two years after, he attended ^g King *Edward* the Third, in that famous and successful Expedition against the *Scots*; and in ^h *Christmas* Holy-days, an. 8. E. 3. he and the Earl of *Oxford* were sent with *Edward* King of *Scots*, to secure *Carlisle*, and defend the *West Marches* of *England*: who, with some Forces raised in *Lancashire*, *Westmerland*, and *Cumberland*, entred *Scotland* about *Twelvetide*, wasted *Galloway*, and returned to *Carlisle*. He attended the King again into *Scotland*, ⁱ an. 9. E. 3. when King *Edward*, by *Carlisle*, and *Edward* King of *Scots*, from *Berwick*, entred again that Kingdom: after which he was one of those Noblemen to whose trust the King committed the ^k *Guardianship* of the *Marches*. The following year ^l he and other of the Nobility of *England*, entred *Scotland* about *Whitsontide*, and passed as far as *St. Johns Town*, which they fortified; and in this Kingdom he ^m remained all the year.

f *Pat. 5. E. 3.*
p. 2. m. 2.
g *Claufr. 7. E. 3.*
m. 16. d. 10.
h *Rot. Joh. c. 1.*
Chon p. 351 a.

i *Rot. Scot. 9.*
E. 3. m. 27.
k *Walsing. pag. 111.*
l *Hollinsh. pag. 25.*
m *Rot. Scot. 10.*
E. 3. m. 27.
n *Rot. Joh. c. 1.*
353.

About the beginning of ⁿ *Sept.* an. 11. E. 3. he again entred *Scotland* with an Army by *Berwick*, whilst the Lords *Wake* and *Clifford* entred by *Carlisle*; and within two days both their Forces united, whereupon they wasted *Tividale*, *Mosfeidale*, and *Nidefale*, whilst *Anthony* Lord *Lucy* wasted *Galloway*; but not being able to prosecute their Voyage, by reason of the great Rains, they returned within twelve days to *Carlisle*: and so much to the satisfaction of the King did he behave himself in this Expedition, that the ^o 19. of *March* following, he made Letters obligatory to him for ^p 500 Marks as a gift, to be paid him at *Michaelmas* following.

o *Pat. 11. E.*
p. 2. m. 10.

When

When the King undertook his first Expedition into France, *an. 13. E. 3.* (by the way of Flanders) he likewise attended him thither, and had a Command of 9 Froiss lib. 1. a Wing in the field pitch'd between *Vronfoss* and *Flumengery*, in which, among others were the Earl of *Penbroke*, the Lords *Berkley*, and *Moulton*. cap. 41.

He went over with the King into Flanders, when by the way, that memorable Naval fight hapned before *Sluce*, where the King obtained a signal Victory against the French: and was one of the Commissioners nominated at the Treaty agreed on at the Siege of *Tournay*, to be sent to *Arras*, in order to a further Treaty; where after 15 days debate, nothing was agreed on, but the Surrender of the County of *Poitou* (seized on by the French King the preceding year) and a prolongation of the Truce for two years. (Froiss. lib. 1. cap. 63.)

An. 16. E. 3. he was one of the Commissioners nominated to treat with the Kings Allies in *Erabant* and *Flanders*, about his designed Expedition into France: in which, he after attended the King with 80 men at Arms, 1 Banneret, 18 Knights, 60 Esquires, and 100 Archers on Horse-back; for whose passage a Writ issued to *John de Montgomery*, Admiral of the Fleet Westward to provide Ships. At *Nantes* in *Bretagne* (to which the King had laid Siege) he behaved himself so gallantly upon a Sally made by the Town, that they were forced to retreat with great loss. (Rot. Franc. 16. E. 3. m. 39. u. Claus. 16. E. 3. p. 2. m. 32. w. 20. Aug. Rot. Franc. 16. E. 3. m. 20. dor. x. Froiss. lib. 1. cap. 95.)

Not long after his return into England, he marched into Scotland, with Henry of Lancaster Earl of Derby, to raise the Siege laid against *Loumbaban Castle*, whereof the Earl of *Northampton* was Governor; and when he came back, was employed with the said Earl of Derby, and some others to the Pope, to treat about King Edwards right to the Crown of France, which produced nothing but an enlargement of the Truce. The following year he was constituted Marshal of England during pleasure. (Y. Tho. Walsing. pag. 150. z. 19. Aug. Rot. Franc. 17. E. 3. m. 12.)

In that great Expedition first designed for *Gascoigne*, *an. 20. E. 3.* he was made Admiral of the Fleet; but the King altering his course upon the advice of Sir Godfrey de Harecourt, took into his own Ship the Admirals Colours, and sailed towards *Normandy*. Where landing at *Hoges*, this Earl made the first attempt with one Esquire and six Archers, against 100 Normans, whereof 60 were slain upon the place, and, by this valiant action, made way for the Kings Army to land. Upon this he was constituted one of the Marshals of the Kings Army, and Sir Godfrey de Harecourt the other. And upon the Kings advance to *Cressy*, he was one of the Commanders under the Prince of Wales, who led the Van of his Army in that famous battel. He attended the King at the Siege of *Calais*, with 2 Bannerets, 61 Knights, 160 Esquires, 154 Archers on Horse-back: and upon its surrender, he with the Earl of *Stafford* and Sir *Walter Manny* had the Keys of the Town delivered them by the King, and were appointed to take possession of it for him. And for his great services in this Voyage into France, the King gave him 1366 *l. 11 s. 8 d.* and after assigned him 1000 Marks per annum for life, out of the Customs of *London*, *Lynn*, and *St. Botolphs*; and these, partly in recompence for his great services, and partly for wages due for attendance on his person with 100 men at Arms, according to certain Indentures of Covenants made betwixt them. He was also in that Naval fight against the Spanish Fleet near *Winchelsea* *quarto Calendas Septembris*, *an. 24. E. 3.* where the English took 26 of their best Ships, the rest fled or were sunk. (i. 15. Dec. Pat. 21. E. 3. p. 3. m. 13. k. Pat. 22. E. 3. p. 2. m. 5. l. Na-1 Stow p. 250. m. Walsing. pag. 160.)

King Edward having received intelligence, that the French King threatened an Invasion, this Earl was constituted Admiral of the Sea, from the River *Thames*, Westward, and Philip de Winton made his Lieutenant. The same year he was constituted one of the Commissioners assigned for the Araying all able men, as well Knights and Esquires, as others within the Counties of *Warwick*, *Leicester*, and *Worcester*, for defence of the Realm. (n. 23. Feb. Rot. Franc. 26. E. 3. m. 13. o. Ibid. m. 5. p. Rot. Vasc. 29. E. 3. m. 7. q. Ibid. 30. E. 3. m. 4. r. Ibid. 31. E. 3. m. 16. f. Rot. Franc. 32. E. 3. m. 13.)

The Prince being constituted the King's Lieutenant in *Aquitaine*, he attended him thither: and there staid with him that year, and the year after. And that the Town of *Vannes* in *Bretagne* might be made defensible, he had command to take care of the fortifying it, and to furnish the Magazin with stores. In

^t *Freiff. lib. 1. cap. 162.* In the Battel at *Poitiers*; the ^r French King and his eldest Son encountred the Battel of the *English* Marshals, led by the Earls of *Warwick* and *Sussex*: And after the Victory, the Prince sent this ^r Earl and Sir *Reignold Cobham*, to discover what was become of the *French* King, who after some time espied a Company of Souldiers together, and riding towards them, found the *French* King on foot in great danger, between the *English* and *Gascoigners* (for they had taken him from Sir *Denis Morick*, to whom the King first yielded himself, and in token thereof had given him his right *Cauntlet*) there being above 10 Knights and Esquires among them, who challenged him for their Prisoner; but this Earl entering the throng, commanded the Souldiers to fall back, and brought King *John* to the Prince.

^v *Pat. 2. R. 3. p. 1. m. 25.* In this Battel, the Earl himself took *William de Melleun* Archbishop of *Seinz* Prisoner (for whose Ransom he after received ^w 8000*l.*) and therein behaved himself most valiantly, and got great renown; having fought so long, that his ^r hand was galled with the management of his Sword and Poleax.

^x *MS. in Bibl. Bod. J. Cantuar. f. 84. 123.* This Earl was in the ^r *Gascoigne* War, *an. 31. E. 3.* he also attended the King in his Expedition into *France*, *an. 33. E. 3.* And after the Peace was agreed upon at *Brenghy* near *Chartres*, and the King returned to *England*, he gave this Earl the ^r Command of all the Forces he left behind him in *Guyenne*, or any other place on that side the Sea.

^y *Rot. Vass. 31. E. 3. m. 16.* ^z *Hist. Angl. p. 394.* ^a *An. 36. E. 3.* he marched in the Retinue of ^b *John* Duke of *Bretagne*: The following year he attended the ^c Prince of *Wales* into *Gascoigne*, and had an allowance of ^d 452*l.* in recompence of his expences and loss sustained, by stay of himself and Men at Arms at *Southampton*. After he had been a while in *Gascoigne* he began his ^e Travels into other Countries, having a Train of 300 Horse, consisting of Knights, Esquires, Archers, and Servants. In this Journey he spent ^f 3 years, having made great proof of his Valour in the East Countries against the Pagans; and in his return for *England*, brought along with him the King of *Lithuania's* Son, to whom, being ^g christened in *London*, this Earl was Godfather, and named him *Thomas*.

^h *MS. in Bibl. Bod. J. Cantuar. f. 84. 123.* His Commission for ⁱ *Marshal* of *England* was renewed to him *an. 40. E. 3.* and the following year ^j he and the Bishop of *Durham*, and some others, were empowered to supervise the Marches of *Scotland*, and to treat with *David de Bruys* about the rupture of the Truce formerly made at *Berwick*, and several injuries done by the *Scots*.

^k *MS. in Bibl. Bod. J. Cantuar. f. 84. 123.* He married ^l *Katherine*, one of the Daughters of *Roger Mortimer* Earl of *Atrech*, who dyed some few weeks before him. He had by her these ^m Children; *Guy* his eldest Son, who died in *France*; *Thomas*, who succeeded him in his Earldom; ⁿ *Reynburn*; *William* Lord *Bergweny*; and *Roger*. His Daughters were *Maud*, the Wife of *Roger* Lord *Clifford*; *Philippa*, of *Hugh* Earl of *Stafford*; *Alice*, of *John* Beauchamp of *Hich*; *Joane*, of *Ralph* Lord *Basset* of *Drayton*; *Isabel* of *John* Lord *Strange* of *Blackmere*; *Margaret*, of *Guy* de *Montfort*; *Agnes*, of *Coksey*; *Julian*, and *Katherine*.

^o *Efc. 43. E. 3. p. 1. n. 19.* This noble Earls last action was in the Isle of *Caux*, *an. 43. E. 3.* for ^p passing over to *Calais* in assistance of the Duke of *Lancaster* (as is mentioned) the *French* having intelligence of his coming, presently withdrew in great confusion from *Chilke-hill* where they had pitcht their Tents; and upon his arrival, understanding that the *English* had only faced the *French*, and not fought them, he could not forbear to condemn their slackness, and out of a high sence and indignation thereof, said, *I will go on and fight, before the English bread which we have eaten be digested*; and forthwith past into the Isle of *Caux* in *Normandy*, which he entred with Fire and Sword: but returning to *Calais*, he fell sick of the Pestilence (then vulgarly called the Third Mortality) and died on the ^q 13. of *November*. His Body was brought over into *England*, and interred in the middle of the Choir of the Collegiate Church at *Warwick*; the Sculp of whose Monument is to be seen in the ^r *Antiquities* of *Warwickshire*.

^s *Page. 318.*

(5)

Piers Capiton de la Bouch.

We are yet to seek who this person was, notwithstanding there hath wanted no pains in the search. That his name was *Peter* is most evident from the Inscription under his Plate, yet remaining in *Windsor* Chappel, in these very Syllables, *Le Capiton de la Bouch Monsieur Piers*: But whether *Peter de Greilly* Viscount *Benanges*, mentioned in the following Pedigree be the same person is some question.

For first, in all those Records, where he is remembred, the Title of *Capiton de la Bouch* is not given him.

Secondly, we cannot trace him beyond the 22. year of the Reign of King *Edward* the Third; and the Order of the *Garter* was not Instituted till the following year.

Thirdly, *John* his Son is called *Capitan de Bouch*, Jan. 5. E. 3. and so till he died. And if he should prove the person (as some do take him to be) it is a strange mistake committed in the Engravement of the Plate, which seems to be as ancient as any of the rest, set up in the Chappel at *Windsor*.

Of this *John Capitan de Buch*, there are many things noted by Sir *John Froissard*, relating to both his taking King *Edward*'s side against the *French*, and his valiant actions in those Wars: But in regard we doubt of his being one of the first *Knights-Companions* of the *Garter*, we have thought fit (for the present) to wave the Historical account of him, and intreat the Reader in lieu of it, to content himself with that of some part of the descent, whereby he may guess at the greatness, yet unsuccessfulness of our pains, in endeavouring to ascertain the person.

Johannes de Greilly dominus Benanges, Senescallus totius Aquitanie. Rot. Vasc. 6. & 7. E. 1. m. 9.

Claramonda filia & heres Galliardi de Mota domini de Landirons. Rot. Vasc. 6. & 7. E. 1. m. 9.

Petrus de Greilly miles. Rot. Vasc. 14. E. 3. m. 2.

(r) *Katherina de Greilly Domina Locorum St Blasii & de Landirons. Rot. Vasc. 14. E. 3. m. 2.*

Petrus de Greilly Vicecom. Benangiarum & Castellionis. Rot. Vasc. 14. E. 3. m. 2. & 16. E. 3. m. 13. & 22. E. 3. m. 25.

Affalita soror & heres Petri de Burdegali. Rot. Vasc. 5. E. 3. m. 24.

(r) She by her Will, made her Brother *Peter*, and *John* his Son her Nephew, the Captain de *Buch* her Heirs. *Rot. Vasc. 14. E. 3. m. 2. & 17. E. 3. m. 11. dorso.*

(s) *Johannes de Greilly ac Capitaneus de Buch. Rot. Vasc. 5. E. 3. m. 24. 14. E. 3. m. 2. 16. E. 3. m. 13. & 29. E. 3. m. 6.*

Blanch de Long.

(s) *Petrus de Burdegali dominus de puypanlini* and *Petrus Amaneus* Captain de *Buch*, were Uncles to this *John. Rot. Vasc. 5. E. m. 7.* he was heir to them both, and Executor of their Testaments. *Rot Vasc. 2. E. 3. m. 4.* this *John*'s Will is dated the 6. of March. 1368. *Rot. Vasc. 7. R. 2. m. 10.*

Archambaud de Greilly Capitalis de Bogio ac Vicecomes Benangiarum & Castellionis, (t) ac dominus de Podiopaulini, & Castri novi, in Medulco. Rot. Vasc. 7. R. 2. m. 10.

(t) It appears in this Roll that *John* his Father used these Titles also.

(6.)

Ralph Earl of Stafford.

THis Noble Earl was Son unto *Edmund Lord Stafford*, first summoned to Parliament, ^a *an. 27. E. 1.* and ^b *Margaret*, ^c Daughter to *Ralph Lord Bassett of Draiton*: His Father dyed ^d *an. 2. E. 2.* and ^e *an. 17. E. 2.* being of full age he did his Homage, and had Livery of his Fathers Lands.

The first military imployment that he undertook, was *an. 1. E. 3.* being summoned to be at *Newcastle upon Tyne* on *Monday* next before *Ascension day*, to go against the *Scots*.

The ^f *12. of February*, *an. 10. E. 3.* the King sent his Writ directed to him, *Philip Chetwynde*, and *Philip Somervill*, to raise in *Staffordshire* (*Lichfield* excepted) 60 Hobelars, and 200 Archers, and to bring them to *Berwick upon Tweed*, before the following Octaves of *Easter*.

In his absence it seems there was some attempts made, to seize upon his Lady, and carry her away; but making his complaint to the King, he received her under his protection, and ^h directed his Writ to the Sheriff to protect her, so long as her Lord remained in his service.

I find this noble Lord was *an. 15. E. 3.* ⁱ Steward of the Kings House, and one of those who went over ^k into *Bretagne* ^l *an. 16. E. 3.* with *Robert d'Artois*, to the assistance of the Countess of *Montfort*. He behaved himself bravely in the Sea-fight near the Isle of *Gernsey* with the *French* and *Genoeses*, who endeavoured to interrupt their passage thither: but after they had been a while engaged, a violent storm parted the two Navies, and the *English* landed safely; the first Town taken by them being *Vannes*, and that by ^m assault.

Soon after, this Town was ⁿ re-taken by *Sir Henry de Leon*, and the Lord *Cliffson*; but ^o the latter end of the Summer, King *Edward* landed with an Army, and laid a new Siege to it, and perceiving the Country was much wasted, he left the Earl of *Arundel*, with this Lord, before it, and went to *Rennes*. ^p It happened that one day upon an assault, this Lord ventured so far, that he was got between the City Gate and the Bars, and there taken Prisoner, but at another side of the Town, *Sir Henry de Leon* and the Lord *Cliffson*, were both taken Prisoners by the *English*, and so ^q he was afterwards exchanged for the Lord *Cliffson*. In this Expedition he had Wages allowed him for ^r 50 men at Arms; viz. himself, two Bannerets, 16 Knights, 31 Esquires, and 50 Archers on Horseback.

An. 17. E. 3. was a year of much action, for first, this Earl with the Earl of *Lancaster*, and other Noblemen, went into ^s *Scotland*, to raise the Siege laid by the *Scots* to the Castle of *Louhmban*; and being returned, was joined in ^t Commission with *Hugh le Despenser*, Lord of *Glumorgan*, *William de Norwich* Dean of *Lincolne*, *Sir William Trussell*, and *Andrew de Offord*, to treat in the Pope's preface with the Agents of *Philip de Valois*, concerning the Kings right to the Crown of *France*; but we suppose he went not on that Embassy, for the ^u 19. of *August* there was another Commission for that Affair, made out to *Henry of Lancaster*, Earl of *Derby* and others, wherein he and *Sir William Trussell* were omitted, and they the ^v first of *July* preceding, with *Philip de Weston* Canon of *York*, and *John Wawayn*, were sent to treat with the Noblemen, Burgomasters, &c. in *Flanders*, about the settlement of the Staple of Wool there, and touching the Coyning of Gold and Silver, such as might be current both in *England* and *Flanders*; and whatsoever by any 3 or 2 of them should be agreed on, this *Ralph Earl of Stafford* being one, the King promised to ratifie. ^w They had another Commission, wherein power was granted them, to treat with the Princes, Nobles, and People of *Almaine*, upon Alliances between the King and them, and to gain their assistance for him.

The following year he went in the Expedition into ^y *Gascoigne*, with the Earl of *Derby*; and ^z commanded the Party that assaulted *Bergerac* by Water, who behaved themselves so valiantly, that through their Valour the Town was forced

a Claus. de esd.

an. Dorſ.

b Fin. levat.

O Rob. Mich. 27.

E. 1. War.

c Eſc. 14. R. 2.

n. 9.

d Eſc. 2. E. 2.

n. 63.

e Claus. 17. E. 2.

m. 2. 6.

f Claus. 1. E. 3.

p. 1. m. 2. dorſ.

g Rot. Scot. 10.

E. 3. m. 31.

h 23. Off. Ibid.

m. 6.

i Extraſſ. Do-

not. 15. E. 3.

n. 5.

k Freiff. lib. 1.

c. 1.

l Rot. Franc.

100. E. 3. m. 32.

m Ibid. cap. 92.

n Ibid. cap. 93.

o Ibid. cap. 94.

p Ibid.

q Ibid.

r Ibid.

s Ibid.

t Ibid.

u Ibid.

v Ibid.

w Ibid.

x Ibid.

y Ibid.

z Ibid.

A Ibid.

B Ibid.

C Ibid.

D Ibid.

E Ibid.

F Ibid.

G Ibid.

H Ibid.

I Ibid.

K Ibid.

L Ibid.

M Ibid.

N Ibid.

O Ibid.

P Ibid.

Q Ibid.

R Ibid.

S Ibid.

T Ibid.

U Ibid.

V Ibid.

W Ibid.

X Ibid.

Y Ibid.

Z Ibid.

A Ibid.

B Ibid.

forced to surrender to the Earl. ^aHe was very active in this Gascoigne War, ^a17. c. 104. and almost in continual Service: and in ^bscaling the Walls of Mountpesat Castle, ^b107. 109. & 111. Richard Pennenort an English Gentleman that bare his Banner was slain. ^bc. 112.

For his Great Services in this War (after his return into England) he was made seneschal of Gascoigne, and had the Kings Letter sent to the Prelates and Nobility of that Country, to obey and submit to his Authority, while he continued in that Office. Within ^aa few days after, the King directed his Writ to Richard Earl of Arundel, Admiral of the West-parts, to arrest 13. stout Ships, each of 80. Tun Burthen at least, to bring them to Bristol, before the Octaves of Easter, for the passage of this Lord, his men at Arms, and Archers, into that Country. ^c25. Feb. Rot. Vasc. 19. E. 3. m. 8. d 1. Mar. Rot. Franc. de cod. an. p. 1. m. 33.

After a years enjoyment of this great Office, he became desirous to resign it, and to that purpose made an address to the King, who ^csent directions to the Earl of Derby, to confer with him about his continuance in it, to which, if he could not be persuaded to consent, then he gave the Earl power to take his resignation, and substitute some other fit person in his room to hold it, during the Kings pleasure. ^c15. May. Rot. Vasc. 20. E. 3. m. 2.

This Spring ^cJohn de Valois Duke of Normandy, laid Siege to Aiguillon, of which Town this Lord was Governor, and then within it; and though the Earl of Derby relieved him, yet had the Duke so strongly intrenched himself, that he could not raise the Siege, so that it was continued by the Duke, to the Decollation of St. John Baptist in August; at which time, being called away to assist King Philip his Father against King Edward, who had entred France with a puissant Army, he raised his Siege. Upon which, the Lord Stafford falling out of the Town, fell upon his Rear, cut off a great part of it, and having joined his to the Kings Forces, he had given him a Command in the Van of the Army under the Prince, at the Battel of Cressy. And after the Victory ^bwas sent with Sir Reynold Cobham, and 3. Heralds, to view the slain, who made report of 11. great Princes, 80. Bannerets, 1200. Knights, and above 30000. Common Souldiers. ^eFroiss. l. 1. c. 128. h 15. c. 132.

When Calais was surrendred, he was one of those appointed to take possession of it for the King: and had ⁱmany fair Houses given him in that Town, to place Inhabitants in. Shortly after the rendition, the Cardinals of Naples and Cleremont, mediated a Peace between both Kings, whereupon this Lord, with Reynold de Cobham, Jo. Darcy, and Robert de Bourghcher, were ^knamed by the King to treat of a Peace, or Truce, between them, their Subjects, Allies, and Adherents. ^k25. Sept. Rot. Calais. 21. E. 3. m. 4.

And for his good Services done to the King in France, He ⁱgave him a Pension of 600. Marks for life, out of the Customs of London and St. Eutolphs. The King also bestowed on him as a gift ^m573 l. towards his expences in his service beyond Sea. ^l6. Sept. Rot. Pat. 22. E. 3. p. 3. m. 37. m 15. p. 2. m. 25.

He was with the King, in the Encounter with Sir Geoffry Charney at Calais. And went into Gascoigne with the Earl of Lancaster, and other Lords, to stop the Progress of the Duke of Normandy made there with his Army. ⁿFroiss. c. 151. o Stow p. 247.

And growing more and more in the Kings favour, by his meritorious Services, he advanced him to the Dignity of an Earl; and for the better support of that Honor, and towards the defraying of his charge, in attending the King with certain men at Arms, both in Peace and War, he granted him a Pension of 1000. Marks per Annum, during life, out of his Customs in London, till he could settle on him the said annual sum in Lands or Rents. ^pf 5. Mar. q 2 Chart. 25. E. 3. m. 31.

The next day he was constituted the Kings Lieutenant and Captain in the Dukedom of Aquitaine, and parts adjacent; and the 3d. of April following, the King gave him power to appoint a seneschal of Gascoigne, and a Constable of Bordeaux; and these to be such persons as he should think fit, to enjoy those Offices, during the Kings pleasure. ^l6. Mar. Rot. Vasc. 25. E. 3. m. 7. h 15. m. 4.

The next year, the King empower'd him by a Commission to treat and agree with all persons of what Kingdom, Nation, or Degree soever, upon a firm friendship and mutual assistance, between the King and them, and to retain them ^u8. Mar. Rot. Vasc. 26. E. 3. m. 6.

R r r

against

against all men, to agree with them, upon Fees, Wages, and rewards, to receive security from them, and give the like to them, and what he did herein, the King obliged himself and his Heirs to observe and perform.

Being ready to take another Journey into *Gascoigne*, a Writ ^w issued to *Thomas Beauchamp* (Earl of *Warwick*.) Admiral towards the West, to arrest all Ships of 50. Tuns and upwards, for this Earls passage thither, and to bring them to *Sandwich*, by *Quindena Trinitatis* following; and upon his Entry into that Country he ^z defeated the *French* that sallied out of the Fortreſſes of *Gagent*: and among them was taken seven *Knights of the Star*.

^z Rot. Franc. An. ^z 29. E. 3. he went over with the King to *Calais*, at the latter end of Summer, and marched along with him in pursuit of King *John* as far as *Heyden*.

^a Rot. Franc. And ^a an. 33. E. 3. he attended him in his Voyage into *France*, which terminated with the Peace agreed on at *Bretigny* near *Chartres*.

^b Rot. Pat. 35. E. 3. p. 2. m. 7. Two years after he was designed for ^b *Ireland*, in the Company of several other persons of Quality upon the Kings Service. But after this Voyage being much broken with Age, and wasted with Sickness, he became incapable of publick Employments.

^c Efc. 16. E. 3. This Noble Lord Married ^c *Margaret* Daughter and Heir of *Hugh de Audeley*, Earl of *Gloucester*, and *Margaret* his Wife, who died the 7. of *September*, an. 21. E. 3. and by whom he had Issue, ^{*} *Ralph* his eldest Son, who married ^{||} *Maud* Daughter of *Henry de Lancaster* Earl of *Derby*, but died about 21. E. 3. ^d *Hugh*, who succeeded him in his Earldom; and ^e *Sir Richard Stafford* Knight; ^f *Beatrix*, the Wife of *Maurice fitz Maurice* Earl of *Desmond*; ^g *Joan*, of *John Charleton* Lord *Powes*, and ^h *Margaret*, of *John Stafford*, Patron of the Church of *Bromhall* in *Staffordshire*.

^h He died the ⁱ last of *August*, an. 46. E. 3. and lies buried at *Turnbridge* in *Kent*.

(7.)

William Montacute Earl of Salisbury.

^k Brooke in ^l *Salisbury*. This Earl was Son unto ^k *William Montacute*, first Earl of *Salisbury*, of that Family, and ^l *Katherine*, one of the Coheirs of *William* Lord *Grantſon*.

^m (Efc. an. 18. E. 3. n. 51. o) He was born the ^m Morrow after *Midsummer* day, an. 2. E. 3. for at the Death of his Father (found to be the ⁿ 30. of *January*, an. 18. E. 3.) he was ^o 15. years old the *Midsummer* before.

^p Rot. Franc. The ^p 24. of *May*, an. 20. E. 3. the Wardſhip of his body was committed to *John de Somerton*, and *Thomas Waryn*, until *Chriſtmaſs* following, and then ^q renewed till *Whitſontide*, and thence till *Michaelmas* enſuing: and being within ^r 16. p. 1. m. 11. Age, he ^r attended the King in that memorable expedition into *France*, an. 20. E. 3. So alſo did his younger Brother ^s *John*.

^t Stow's Chron. He was in the ^t Sea Fight againſt the *Spaniards*, near *Wincheſſey*, an. 24. E. 3. and going into *Gascoigne*, in the ^u retinue of the Prince of *Wales*, an. 29. E. 3. he obtained ^w Letters directed to the *Seneschal* there, with Command, that he should not be ſued or moleſted, for any of his own or Anceſtors debts, during the ſpace of two years.

^x Friſſ. 620. ^x An. 33. E. 3. he attended the King in his Royal expedition into *France*, and from that time to the 43. of *Edward* the Third, we find little mention of his Martial employments; but that year, he went over with ^y *John* Duke of *Lancaster*.

^y Holinſh. pag. 404. in his Voyage into *France*, againſt whom the Duke of *Burgoyne* was ſent with ſo great an Army, that the ^z *Engliſh* were but as a handful to them, and having pitched his Tents near *Calais*, within a Mile of the *Engliſh* Army, after 19. days ſtay he diſlodged and went to *St. Omars*, not with much honor as ſome obſerve. After whoſe departure the Duke of *Lancaster* returned to *Calais*, and having reſreſhed his Army for three days, and marched thence to ^a *St. Omars*, and the County of *St. Paul*, then paſſed the River *Some*, and entred the Countries of

of *Ve xin* and *Ewe*, within the Archbishoprick of *Roan*, thence to *Deepe* and *Harflew*, with design to burn the *French* Fleet which lay there, but the Earl of *St. Paul* was entred the Town before, and so secured the Haven. Whereupon he returned through *Ponthieu*, where, before *Abeville*, Sir *Hugh de Chastelton* Master of the Crossbows in *France*, was taken, who with the Earl of *St. Paul* had before entred *Ponthieu*, and took it from the King of *England*; and having wasted the Country with Fire and Sword as they past along to *Calais*, staid there a while, and then took shipping for *England*, where he arrived about the Feast of *St. Martin* the Bishop in Winter.

This Earl^b attended the King, when he took his Voyage to relieve *Thouars*,^b *Froiss. l. i. an. 46. E. 3.* who directing his course towards *Rochel*, was not able to land by reason of contrary Winds and Tempests, but forced to return after nine weeks being tossed upon the Sea.

The year following, he, with *William Nevil*, and Sir *Philip Courtney*, was sent to Sea, upon a rumour that *Jehan*, Prince of *Wales*, Son of Prince *Aymon*, was upon the English Coast with 6000 men, designing to land. The Earl had 40 Sail of Ships besides Barges, and 2000 men of Arms, besides Archers, and departing from *Cornwall* sailed to *Bretagne*, and coming to *St. Malo*, burnt seven great Spanish Ships in that Haven. Thence they sailed to *Brest*, and there relieved the Garrison (where Sir *Robert Knolls* was besieged by the Constable, Sir *Bertrand de Guesclin*) with men and provisions; which having done, they took shipping, with design to keep the Frontiers of *Bretagne* and *Normandy*, about which time the King had recruited them with 1000 men of Arms, and 2000 Archers. Hereupon he again went to *Brest*, with a resolution to fight the *French* that lay before it; but before he got thither, the Constable had withdrawn most of his men, to other Sieges, upon a Composition made with the Garrison, to surrender in case they were not relieved within 40 days, for performance of which they had taken Hostages. Upon the^d Earls arrival, he sent to the Constable either to fight, or to return the Hostages, but he refused both; so the Earl having victualled the Castle departed to Sea, and kept the Marches and Frontiers as before.

In the 50. year of King *Edward's* Reign, he was^c constituted Admiral of his Fleet, from the River *Thames*, towards the Western parts. And the following year, a^f Commission issued to him and some others, to Array all able men from 16 to 60 years of Age in the County of *Dorset*, to be ready on occasion, to withstand an Invasion, and defend the Kingdom, there being apprehensions that the *French* would land.

The first year of King *Richard* the Second, the *French* being on the Sea, this Earl was assigned to secure the Sea Coasts in the Counties of *Southampton* and *Dorset*; to which purpose, a Command was sent to the Knights and Gentry of those Counties, to be assistant to him. It appears also, that he was this year employed in^h Sea service, and an. 2. R. 2. constituted Governour of *Calais*.^h An. 8. R. 2. he, with divers others of the Nobility, had^k Summons to appear at *Newcastle* upon *Tyne*, the 14. of *July* with Horse and Arms, thence to march against the *Scots*.

The custody of the Isle of *Wight* and Castle of *Carbroke*, with the whole Demesne thereunto belonging was granted to him during his life, with all the profits, liberties, and advantages, as the King enjoyed them, without rendering any thing therefore; only, that he should maintain the Castle, and undergo all Charges of the Isle and Castle, as the Governors thereof usually had done.

He designed to marry *Joane* Daughter to *Edmund Plantagenet*, Earl of *Kent*, and gained a Contract from her; but Sir *Thomas Holland*, in his^m Petition to Pope *Clement* the Sixth, alledging a precontract from her with him, upon which carnal copulation followed, and being after in Foreign parts, this Earl contracted with her again, and unjustly withheld her from him, thereupon the Pope gave judgment against the Earl, who complying therewith, married another noble Lady, namely, *Elizabeth* eldest Daughter, and after one of the three

Co-heirs of *John Lord Mohun* (another of the Founders of this most Noble Order) who outlived her Lord, and had her Dower assigned *an. 21. R. 2.*

By this Lady he had *William*, his only Son and Heir, unfortunately slain at *Windsor*, *an. 6. R. 2.* by his own hand, in a Tilting; a place fatal also to his Father, who at the 9 Juits held there, *an. 18. E. 3.* was so sorely bruised, that he dyed soon after; so that *John Mountacute*, his Cousin and Heir, Son and Heir of his Brother *John*, succeeded him in his Earldom.

This Earl dyed the 3. of *June an. 20. R. 2.* having survived all the first Founders of this most Noble Order.

(8.)

Roger Mortimer Earl of March.

HE was the Son of *Edmund Mortimer* (Son and Heir of *Roger Mortimer*, first Earl of *March*) and *Elizabeth* his Wife, Daughter of *Bartholomew de Badlesmere*, Baron of *Leeds*, (who after her Husbands death was married to *William Mohun* Earl of *Northampton*) born *w* towards the latter end of the first years Reign of King *Edward the Third*.

In the Voyage which this King made into *France*, in the 20. year of his Reign, he attended him, being yet under age; but before he went, the King^a admitted *Sir Peter de Grandison*, and *William de Newenham* Clerk, to be his Guardians, and to prosecute and defend his Suits in any of the King's Courts.

Upon his *y* Petition in Parliament, *an. 28. E. 3.* he obtained a revocation of the Judgment against his Grandfather (attainted of and executed for Treason, *an. 4. E. 3.*) and thereupon was restored in Blood, and to the Earldom of *March*, and to all his said Grandfathers Lands, Honors, and Possessions.

The next year he was made *z* Custos of the Castle of *Dover* and the *Cinque-Ports*, for life; and afterwards went beyond Sea in the Kings Service, in the Voyage which *John of Gaunt* made into *France*, upon the French Kings drawing down an Army towards *Calais*.

And in the Kings Expedition into *France*, (*an. 33. E. 3.*) upon which a Peace ensued, he^a attended him with 500 men at Arms, and 1000 Archers.

He married *b* *Philippa* Daughter of *William Mountacute*, first Earl of *Salisbury*, and Sister to *William* Earl of *Salisbury*, one of the first Founders of the Garter, whose Will bears date the first day of *November*, *an. Dom. 1378.* in which she appoints her body to be buried, in the Conventual Church of the Holy Trinity, in the Priory of *Bispleham*, vulgarly called *Eyesham Mountagu* in *Berkshire*; where *an. 1381.* she was accordingly interred.

He dyed at *d* *Roverly* in *Burgundy* the 26. of *February* *c an. 34. E. 3.* as the King was upon his march in those Countries; and his^e body, afterwards brought into *England*, was buried at *Wigmore* with his Ancestors.

(9)

Sir John Lisse.

SIR *John Lisse*, was the *s* Son of *Robert* Lord *Lisse* (first summoned to Parliament *an. 5. E. 2.* by the Title of *Robert de Lisse de Rubemont*) and of *h* *Margaret*, the Daughter of ----- *Peverell*.

His Father *Robert* being disposed to give to him 400 Marks per annum of Land, to serve the King with 6 men at Arms in his War, the King to gratifie the said *Robert*, and the better to support his Son, granted that the said *Robert* might give him his Mannor of *Harwood*, with its appurtenances in *Yorkshire*, with other Lands to the annual value of 400 Marks, during his life, but afterwards to return to the said *Robert* and his Heirs: and some years after, his Brother *Robert* released to him and his Heirs, all his right in the said Mannor, and in the Advowson of the Church there.

Being

Being thus provided for, he attended the King in his first Voyage into France, by the way of Flanders, an. 13. E. 3. and as Sir John Froissard observes, ^{1 Hist. l. 1. c. 41.} was in the Battel designed to be fought near Vironsoffe. Two years after he went into Aquitaine in the King's Service. And the year ensuing, he attended the King in Bretagne, where he was one of the Commanders left at the Siege of Nantz in Bretagne, while the King foraged the Country, and laid Siege to Dinant. ^{m Rot. Vasc. 13 E. 3. m. 15. n Rot. Franc. 16. E. 3. m. 27. o Froiss. l. 1. c. 94.}

For his good services done the King, he granted him a Pension of $\text{p } 200 \text{ l. per annum}$ for his life, to support his Degree of Banneret. This Pension was first appointed to be paid him out of the Exchequer, until a Provision of Lands or Rents, to that yearly value, were made for him: but after there was assigned to him out of the Priory of St. Neats, then of Stoke nigh Clare, and of Eye, to wit, 120 l. per annum out of the Priory of Stoke, and 80 l. per annum out of that of Eye. Then 100 Marks was taken out of the Rent charge upon the Priory of Eye, and laid upon the Issues of the Counties of Cambridge and Huntingdon. And lastly, it came to be thus settled, viz. That he should receive out of the Issues of these two Counties 200 Marks per annum, and out of the issues of the Counties of Bedford and Bucks, the remaining sum of 100 Marks per annum. And having given him besides, for like services, another Pension for life of 40 l. a year out of his Exchequer also, he appointed the payment of it out of the Farm of the Priory of St. Neats, during the War. ^{p 26. Aug. Rot. Pat. 20. E. 3. p. 3. m. 29. q Ibid.}

An. 25. E. 3. the King made him Sheriff of the Counties of Cambridge and Huntingdon, and granted him the Custody of the Castle of Cambridge for life. He had by Maud his Wife two Sons, Sir Robert Lisle Lord of Rougemont and Wilbraham (whose Heir male hath now his dwelling (as I am informed) at Wilbraham in Cambridgeshire) and Sir William Lisle Lord of Cameldon and Shefford, who died without Issue. ^{r Pat. 20. E. 3. p. 1. m. 21. s Pat. 29. E. 3. p. 1. m. 29. t 4 Feb. Ibid.}

In the Prince's Expedition into Gascoigne, an. 29. E. 3. he attended him, and had Command given him in the main Body of the Army: But in the three days march into the Enemies Country, he was unfortunately hurt with a Quarrel or Bolt shot out of a Cross-bow, of which he dyed the 14. of October in the same year, his Son Robert being then about 22 years of age. ^{u Extra. do. nat. 20. E. 3. m. 6. w Extra. 1 x Donat. 25. E. 3. m. 2. y Colles. 2 A. V. W.}

(10.)

Sir Bartholomew Burghersh.

SIR Bartholomew Burghersh was Son to Bartholomew Lord Burghersh (frequently distinguished by the Title of Senior) and Elizabeth one of the Daughters and Co-heirs of Theobald de Verdon. His Father was first summoned to Parliament, an. 1. E. 3. a person of great Council, and Valour, which laid a strong foundation for his Sons Honour, having been several times constituted Constable of Dover, and the Cinque-Ports, he was also made Seneschal and Custos of Ponthieu and Monftriell, Admiral towards the West, Chamberlain to the King, Lieutenant of the Tower of London, one of the Custors of England, and frequently employed in Embassies, and by some (through mistake) made one of the first Founders of the Garter. But among these, enumerated in the preamble to the Statutes, both of Institution, (with their Exemplars) and those of King Henry the Fifth, he is called Bartholomew de Burghersh filius, and Bartholomew de Burghersh le filz. (and so in divers places of our publick Records) though we have seen some transcripts of these statutes, wherein the point hath been at the end of the Surname, and filius (so also le filz) joined to Dom. Johannes de Beauchamp. But this was a plain mistake of the Transcriber, since this John was never married. ^{f Rot. Fin. 20. E. 2. m. 3. Pat. 1. E. 3. p. 3. m. 20. Pat. 19. E. 3. p. 1. 22. E. 3. p. 1. m. 32. 23. E. 3. p. 1. m. 17. 25. E. 3. p. 3. m. 1. g Pat. 5. E. 3. m. 7. h Rot. Vasc. 11. E. 3. Rot. Vasc. 12. E. 3. m. 15. i Pat. 21. E. 3. p. 2. dorso. m. 24. k Pat. 28. E. 3. p. 3. l Pat. 29. E. 3. p. 2. m. 11. m Camb. Brit. 227. n Rot. Franc. 16. E. 3. m. 27. o Rot. Franc. 20. E. 3. p. 1. m. 6. p Rot. Franc. 21. E. 3. p. 1. m. 6. q Rot. Pat. 22. E. 3. p. 2. m. 33.}

His first martial Service was, when the King went into Bretagne, an. 16. E. 3. Next he went with the Prince in the Kings Expedition into France, an. 20. E. 3. where he staid with him at the Siege of Calais. And for recompence of his Expences, in this Voyage, the King granted him the Custody of all the Lands and

and Tenements, which had belonged to *John de Loueyne* deceased, till his Heir should come of Age, without rendring any thing therefore.

r Rot. Inf. 23.
E. 3. m. 1.
f Rot. Inf. 29.
E. 3. m. 8.
t Shaw p. 256.
u Froiss. l. 1. c. 157.
w Ib. c. 208.
x Ib. c. 209.
y Ib. c. 219. The 23. year of King *Edward*, he went along with him into *Gascoigne*. And again ^f thither with the Prince of *Wales*, an. 29. E. 3. and had ^a command in the main body of the Princes Army. The following year, as the ^a Prince retired from forraging the Country of *Berry* and was got near *Romerentyne*, this Knight (whom *Froissard* in several places calls the Lord *Bartholomew Breches*, Sir *Bartholomew de Bounes*, de ^x *Brennes*, and de ^r *Brunes*, but such mistakes are too frequent in that Author in this and other mens names, as also in the names of Places) was set upon by a French Ambushment, but he and his Troops so gallantly behaved themselves, that they kept the French in play, till the Prince drew near, upon the sight of whom they fled to *Romerentyne* (pursued by the English) and got into the Castle, which the Prince commanded Sir *John Chandos* to Summon; but they refusing to yield, after two desperate but fruitless assaults, the English set it on fire, which caused them speedily to surrender.

z Ib. c. 207. He ^a attended the King in his expedition into France, an. 33. E. 3. and towards the end of the year, an. 37. E. 3. ^a He and divers other Knights of the Court were sent to *Dover*, to wait upon *John King of France*, who, coming over to visit King *Edward*, landed there the 4. of January, and was conducted by them to *Canterbury*, where having offered a rich Jewel at the Shrine of *Thomas Becket*, he after rode to *Eltham* to the King, and thence to the *savoy*, where he was honorably entertained.

b 22. Janir.
Liberate 27. E.
3. m. 3. Half a year before this, we find the ^b King appointed the Treasurer of his Chamber to give him 200 l. upon the Debt due to him from the King, for the Count de *Vendecour* his Prisoner.

c 5 Claus. 9. E.
d 13 m. 27. He had two Wives, the first was ^c *Cecily* Daughter and Heir to *Richard Weyland*, by whom he had divers Lands in the ^d Counties of *Norfolk*, *Suffolk*, *Cambridge*, *Huntingdon*, *Essex*, and *Hertford*; by her he had ^e *Elizabeth* his Daughter and Heir, married to ^f *Edward le Despensers*.

e 2 Claus. 43.
f E. 3. m. 1.
Vide Efc. 2.
R. 2. n. 12.
g Ex Collett.
h Claus. 18.
R. 2. m. 21. His second Wife was ^g *Margaret*, Sister to Sir *Bartholomew Badlesmere*, whom he left a Widow; but she afterwards married ^h *William de Burcester*, and dyed about the 18. year of King *Richard* the Second.

i Efc. 43. E. 9.
p. 1. n. 14. The ⁱ 5. of April, an. 43. E. 3. he dyed, leaving *Elizabeth* his Daughter and Heir, then about 24 years of age.

(11.)

Sir John Beauchamp.

k Rot. Jo. Row
dorfo.
l Rot. Alman.
12. E. 3. p. 1.
m 7.
n Froiss Chron.
l. 1. c. 41.
o Ibid. c. 50.
p Claus. 14.
E. 2. p. 1. m. 39.
q Rot. Franc.
20. E. 3. m. 5.
r Pat. 25. E. 3.
p. 1. m. 21.
s Rot. Franc.
21. E. 3. p. 1.
m. 29.
t Primo Jan.
Rot. Franc. 22.
E. 3. m. 1.
u Rot. Franc.
23. E. 3. m. 1.
w 24 Mar.
Rot. Franc. 25.
E. 3. m. 11.
x Knighton, in
Hist. Angl.
Script. Call.
26. 2. HE was a ^k younger Son to *Guy Earl of Warwick*, by *Alice* his Wife, and Brother to *Thomas Earl of Warwick*, one of the Founders of this most Noble Order of the Garter. He attended King *Edward* the Third into ^l *Flanders* in the 12. year of his Reign, and was in the ^m Battel pitch between *Vyronfisse* and *Flamengery*, an. 13. E. 3. So also the following year in the ⁿ Naval fight at *Sluce*.

An. 15. E. 3. I find him stiled ^a *Banneret*; towards the support of which Dignity, he had a considerable Pension given him.

He attended the King in his Voyage into ^r France, an. 20. E. 3. and, at the Battel of *Creffy*, ^q carried the Kings Standard Royal. The following year, he continued with the King at the Siege of *Calais*, till it was taken: And an. 22. E. 3. he was ^t constituted Captain of that Town. The next year made ^u Admiral of the Kings Fleet, from the River of *Thames* Westward. And having his Commission again ^w renewed for the custody of *Calais* to commence the first of April, an. 25. E. 3. he marched out of the Town with a Party of ^x 200 Archers, and 300 Men at Arms, and forraged the Country for 10 miles round: where meeting with 2000 Men at Arms, commanded by the Lord *Bealren*, encountered them, and slew the said Lord. But fresh Supplies coming in to the assistance of the French, they overpow'd the English, and took this noble Knight Prisoner, who was exchanged within a short time after.

This

This year the ^y Constableship of the Tower of London being resigned to him by *John Darcey*, who had a former Grant of it for life, the King confirmed the resignation to him, and for the Custody thereof, allowed him ^z 100 *l.* per annum.

He was again ^a constituted *Captain of Calais*, an. 29. E. 3. and of the Castle of *Guynes*, the Forts of *Merk*, *Colne*, *Eye*, and *Sandgate*; as also ^b *Admiral* from the River *Thames* Westward.

An. 31. E. 3. he had his Commission again ^c renewed for Custody of *Calais*, *Guynes*, and those before mentioned Forts.

Two years after, he ^d attended the King in his Voyage Royal into France, and, upon the death of *Roger Earl of March*, was ^e constituted *Constable* of *Dover-Castle* and the *Cinque-Ports*, the Kings Letters Patent bearing Teste ^f primo *Martii* apud *Goillioun* in *Burgundia*. This year he was made ^g *Constable* of the Tower of London, and also ^h *Admiral* of the Seas, for the South, North, and West Coast of England.

He was a man of eminent esteem with the King, and by his services deserved so well, that he confer'd on him both considerable Pensions, and several gifts, and from an. 24. E. 3. so long as he lived, received ⁱ Summons to Parliament.

The first donation we have met with, was ^k an. 10. E. 3. when the King bestowed on him the Marriage of *Margaret*, the Relict of *John de Bohun Earl of Hereford*.

An. 19. E. 3. the King granted him a Pension of ^l 30 *l.* per annum out of his Exchequer, towards his expences in his service, (over and above 20 *l.* per annum formerly given him) till he should have Lands settled on him to that yearly value.

The ^m following year, the King gave him the Mannor of *Oddingle*, which *Thomas de Haukeston* held for life, after whose death it was to remain to this Sir *John*, and his Heirs for ever.

An. 22. E. 3. he had the ⁿ custody of the Lands of *Allan la Zouche* granted him, till his Heir came to full age, without rendring any thing theretofore.

The King had also given him out of the Exchequer a Pension of ^o 180 *l.* per annum, to support his Degree of *Banneret*, beside 20 *l.* per annum out of the Customs, until he should have 200 *l.* per annum in Lands, or Rents provided of that yearly value for his life. And upon his resignation of several Letters Patent of Pensions amounting to 280 *l.* per annum, he had the same annual sum ^p granted to him out of the Customs of London and St. Botolphs for his life also.

The next year, the King ^q granted to him the *Bailiwick* of *Cors* in *Gloucestershire*, till the full age of the Heir of *Edward le Dispenser* Knight, Cousin and Heir of *Hugh le Dispenser* then deceased.

And lastly there being an Arrear of 50 *l.* at *Michaelmas* before he dyed, of the said 280 *l.* per annum formerly granted to him out of the Customs, as aforesaid, a Writ ^r issued to the Collectors of the Customs of St. Botolphs, to pay the same to *John*, the Son of *Giles Beauchamp* his Executor.

He lived a Batchellor, and dyed the ^s 2. of Dec. an. 34. E. 3. and was buried ^t on the South side of the Body of the Cathedral of St. Paul London; a Sculp of whose Monument is yet preserved in the ^u History of St. Pauls, by *William Dugdale* Esq; now *Norroy King of Arms*; which vulgarly (but falsely) was called Duke *Humfry's Tomb*.

(12)

Sir John Mohun.

HE was Son to *John Mohun* and ^w *Sibyll*, the Daughter of *John de Segrave*, which *John* his Father dyed before his Grandfather, in Scotland, an. 4. E. 3. and lies buried at *Tork*. Shortly after his Grandfather, *John Lord Mohun* ^x died, at which time he was about 10 years old; the custody of all his said Grandfathers Lands (he being by Inquisition found to be his Cousin and Heir) ^y

y Pat. 34. E. 3. p. 1. m. 45.

z Liberate 26. E. 3. m. 2.

a Rot. Franc. 29. E. 3. m. 2. b 5 Mar. Ibid. m. 14.

c Rot. Franc. 31. E. 3. m. 18.

d Rot. Vasc. 33. E. 3. m. 8. e 2 Rot. Franc. f 34. E. 3. m. 45.

g Pat. 34. E. 3. m. 6. p. 1. m. 35. h Rot. Franc. de cad. an. m. 6.

i Clauf. de iisdem an. dorso. k 21 Mar. Pat. 10. E. 3. p. 1. m. 31.

l 26 Off. Pat. 19. E. 3. p. 2. m. 12.

m 18 Dec. Pat. 20. E. 3. p. 2. m. 31.

n 18 Mar. Pat. 21. E. 3. p. 1. m. 19.

o Pat. 22. E. 3. m. 12.

p 17 Mar. Pat. 25. E. 3. p. 3. m. 24.

q Pat. 23. E. 3. m. 24.

r Clauf. 39. E. 3. m. 7.

s Efc. a. 34. E. 3. m. 34.

u Pag. 52.

w Clauf. 4. E. 3. m. 9.

x 2 Efc. 4. E. 3. m. 34.

as

^a Pat. de eod.
an. p. 1. m. 4.
^b Claus. 18.
E. 3. p. 1. m. 2.

as also of his Marriage, was granted to ^a Henry Burghersh, Bishop of Lincoln, till he came of full age; the ^b 28. of May an. 18. E. 3. he did homage to the King, whereupon he had Livery of the said Lands.

c Rot. Fr. 16.
E. 2. m. 24.
d Rot. Fr. 19.
E. 2. p. 1. m. 13.
e Rot. Fr. 20.
E. 2. p. 1. m. 14.
f Rot. Franc. de
eod. an. p. 2.
m. 11. q Rot.
Franc. 21. E. 3.

In the 16. year of King Edward the Third, he went over in the Kings Service into Bretagne, with Sir ^c Bartholomew de Burghersh; as he did also with the said Sir ^d Bartholomew, an. 19. E. 3.

p. 1. m. 13.
q Rot. Fr. 22.
E. 3. m. 19.
h Rot. Vajc. 29.
E. 3. m. 2.
k Claus. de hif.
dem an. dorj.
^l Efc. 6. H. 4.
n. 33.

The following year he attended the ^e Prince of Wales, when King Edward entred France by Normandy, and ^f continued in service at the Siege of Calais; and the ^g following year was again sent into France.

The last Martial service we find him employed in, was ^h an. 29. E. 3. when he attended the Prince of Wales into Gascoigne.

An. 16. E. 3. which was soon after he came of age, he was summoned to Parliament, from whence the summons were ^k continued till an. 47. E. 3.

He married Joane, Daughter to Sir Bartholomew Burghersh the elder, Sister to Sir Bartholomew Burghersh, one of the Founders of this most Noble Order (who died on ^{*} Saturday next after the Feast of St. Michael an. 6. H. 4.) and had by her three Daughters and Co-heirs, namely Elizabeth, Wife to William Mountague Earl of Salisbury, another of the Founders of the Order; Philippa, Wife to Edmond Duke of York and Albemarle; and Maude, Wife of John Lord Strange of Knocking; whose Son Richard came to inherit a large Estate after the death of his Aunts, Elizabeth and Philippa, they dying without Issue.

(13)

Sir Hugh Courtney.

l Monast.
m Angl. vol.
1. p. 6. 789. a.
n Efc. 51. E. 3.
n. 6. q Efc. 15.
R. 2. n. 10.
o Monast. Angl.
loco cit.
p Rot. Fin. 20.
E. 3. p. 1. m. 13.
q Rot. Fr. 20.
E. 3. p. 1. m. 13.
r Comput. feb.
Coke Cler. mag.
Gardrob. R. in
Stace. penes
Remem. Regu.
s Efc. 51. E. 3.
n. 6.
t MS. in Bibl.
Bodl. K. 84.
(inter Cod.
Cant. p. 147. b
u Efc. 48. E. 3.
n. 7.
w Efc. 51. E. 3.
n. 6.

This Hugh Courtney, was eldest Son of Hugh Courtney, second Son of Hugh Courtney, first Earl of Devonshire of that name (his eldest Son ¹ John having taken on him a religious life, was made ^m Abbot of Tavestock) and ⁿ Margaret (^o Daughter of Henry Bohun, Earl of Hereford) his Wife. He was born 11. Cal. Apr. an. 1. E. 3. and commonly called ^p Hugh Courtney junior, in regard his Father was living.

He ^q attended the King in his Expedition into France, an. 20. E. 3. and in the following year, being among other brave Martialists in the Tournament at Eltham, he had ^r given him by the King a Hood of White Cloth, embroidered with men in the postures of dancing, button'd with large Pearls.

He had a Son named ^s Hugh, who married Maude, Daughter to Thomas Holland Earl of Kent, one of the Founders of the Garter, but had no Issue by her; and the after his death became Wife to ^t Waleran Earl of St. Paul.

He died ^u an. 40. E. 3. and his Son also died; Hugh Courtney second Earl of Devonshire, Father to the former, and Grandfather to the later, surviving both; after whose death, ^w Edward, Son to his Brother Edward, Nephew and Heir to his Father, succeeded him in the Earldom.

(14)

Sir Thomas Holland.

a Colles. AY. W
b Claus. de eod.
an.
c Cod. MS. Misf.
cel. R. Glover
Somerf.
d Froiss. lib. 1.
cap. 90.
e Rot. Fr. 17.
E. 3. m. 13.
f 21. Oth. Claus.
19. E. 3. p. 2.
m. 10.

HIS Father was Robert Lord Holland of ^a Holland in Lancashire, first summoned to Parliament ^b an. 8. E. 2. and he his second Son by ^c Maude, Daughter and Heir of Alan la Zouche.

An. 16. E. 3. he, with ^d Sir John Dartnell were sent to Bayon, with 200 men at Arms, and 400 Archers, to keep the Frontiers; the ^e following year he went again into France. The King having granted to him 40l. per annum, for his good service, till Lands of that yearly value were provided for him, ^f appointed it to be paid him out of the Farm Priory of Hayling, during the War with his Adversary of France.

The

The next year he gave his Mother *Maud* license to infeoffe him of the Manors of *Hals*, *Brackeley*, and *Kyngsutton*, to hold to him and his Heirs for ever. And shortly after^b he attended the King into *Normandy*, where he had a command under the^c Earl of *Warwick*: At the taking of *Caen* (in this Expedition) the^d Earl of *Eu* and *Guynes*, Constable of *France*, and the Earl of *Tankerville* (who defended it for the *French*) seeing this Knight (whom *Froissard* notes to have but one Eye) as having formerly known him in *Prussia*, *Granada*, and other places, called to him, and yielded themselves and 25 Knights his Prisoners. After he had secured them, he again took Horse and rode into the Streets, where he preserved the lives of many Ladies, Maidens, and Religious Women. Afterwards the King bought of him the said Earl of *Eu*, for 80000 Florens de *Scuto*, six of which went to a Pound *English* money.

Not long after, when the^e Army left *Poissy*, he with Sir *Reginald Cobham* having command of the Rear, upon the Townsmens revolt, and killing some few of the *English* Souldiers that stayed behind, returned, and burnt the Town, razed the two Castles, and slew most of the Inhabitants. At the Battel of^f *Cressy* he had command in the *Van*, under the Prince of *Wales*; and was at the Siege of *Calais*.

The^g 24. of *August*, an. 26. E. 3. the King granted to him and *Joane* his Wife an annual Pension of 100 Marks out of his *Exchequer*, towards her support during her life; but in case her Brother *John* Earl of *Kent* died without Issue, and she enjoyed his Estate, then the payment of the said Pension to cease.

An. 27. E. 3. he was summoned to *Parliament*: and the next year^h constituted the Kings Lieutenant and Captain in the Dukedom of *Bretagne*, and in the parts of *Poitou* adjoining to that Dukedom, and of all other places belonging to *John* Duke of *Bretagne* then a minor, and under the Guardianship of the King; and towards his expences and the maintenance of his Army while he stayed there, he had allowed him all the profits and issues of the said Dukedom, without rendering any account or profit to the King. The 11. of *November* following, this Commission was renewed, and thereupon he continued in *Bretagne* all that Winter; and theⁱ 8. of *February* following it was again renewed to him, to hold from the^j 13. of *April* then next coming for one whole year; but before half that time was expired, *Henry* Duke of *Lancaster* was constituted the Kings Lieutenant there, and the said^k *Thomas* command to surrender to him or to his Deputy, all that was within his command.

It appears, that his servants, making provision at *Totnes* in *Devonshire*, for his, and his Ladies passage for *Bretagne*, were robbed of as many of his Goods as were valued at 200 *l.* which accident retarding his passage, the King upon his complaint, sent forth his Writ to *John de Stonford*, *John de Ferers*, Knights, and *Roger Pyperell*, to enquire into the matter.

Afterwards, he had^l granted to him the custody of the Fort and Place of *Cruyck* in *Normandy*, part of the Kings late Conquests, with all the Revenues and Profits thereto belonging, to hold during pleasure: and a command was given to *Donald Aflbrig*, *Lewis Clifford*, and *Walter Mewe*, to deliver them up to him or his Lieutenant.

An. 32. E. 3. he and his Lady went into *Normandy*, and the ensuing year the custody of the Castle and Fort of *St. Saviours le Viscount*, and of all the Castles, &c. that were Sir *Geoffry de Harecourts* was committed to him; as also that of *Barstu* in *Normandy*. And shortly after, *Philip* of *Navarre* Earl of *Longueville*, Lord of *Casell*, and this Noble Lord were^m constituted the Kings Lieutenants and Captains in *Normandy*, conjunctim & divisim during pleasure: But theⁿ following year these Dignities were committed to him alone.

He married *Joane*, Daughter of *Edmund* of *Woodstock* Earl of *Kent*, Sister and Heir of *John* Earl of *Kent*, in whose right he sate in^o *Parliament* an. 34. E. 3. as Earl of that County; after whose death *Edward* Prince of *Wales* married her, whose Widow she remained till an. 9. R. 2. and then^p died.

By this Lady he had Issue, two Sons; *Thomas* Holland Earl of *Kent*, and *John* Holland Earl of *Huntingdon* and Duke of *Excester*; as also two Daughters, *Joane* and *Elizabeth*.

g 28. June Pat.
20. E. 3. p. 2.
m. 28.
h Rot. Fr. 26.
E. 3. p. 1. m. 3.
i Froiss. c. 122.
k Ibid. c. 123.
l cap. 124.

1 Rot. fashu
m apud Ca.
les. 21. E. 3.
m. 8.

n Ibid. c. 125.

o Ibid. c. 128.

p Rot. Fr. 21.

E. 3. p. 1. m. 1.

q Pat. 26. E. 3.

p. 2. m. 13.

r 18. Mar.

Rot. Franc.

28. E. 3. m. 8.

t Ibid. c. 32.

u Rot. Fr.

E. 3. p. 1. m. 1.

w 29. E. 3.

m. 14.

x Ibid. m. 6.

y Rot. Fr. 29.

E. 3. m. 14.

z 26. Mar. Pat.

28. E. 3. p. 1.

m. 18. dorso.

a 18. Nov. Rot.

Franc. 31. E. 3.

m. 5.

b Rot. Fr. 32.

E. 3. m. 7.

c 7. Febr. Rot.

Fr. 33. E. 3.

m. 19.

d 6. Oct. 16. m. 7

f 28. Oct. Rot.

Franc. 33. E. 3.

p. 2. m. 6.

q Rot. Fr. 34.

E. 3. m. 5.

r Efc. 25. E. 3.

n. 54.

h Claus. 34. E.

3. m. 4. dorso.

i Efc. 9. R. 2.

n. 54.

j Booke in Kent

of Huntingdon

k Pat. 39. E. 3. Joane and ^k Mande, the later was Wife to *Hugh Courtney*, eldest Son to Sir *Hugh Courtney*, one of the *Founders* of this Order, *an. 39. E. 3.*
3. n. 14. & Efc. 51. E. n. 6. This noble Earl, after the performance of many brave acts in the Kings Service, died the 26. of December, *an. 34. E. 3.* *Thomas* his Son and Heir being then much about the tenth year of his age.
l Efc. 35. E. 3. n. 104.

(15)

Sir John Grey of Codnore.

m s Claus. 11. n. 1. E. 3. p. 1. m. 21. dorfo. o Rot. Vasc. 6. E. 3. m. 1. p Rot. Scot. 7. E. 3. m. 31. q s Claus. 9. E. 3. m. 8. Dorfo. f Rot. Scot. 9. E. 3. m. 33. t Rot. Scot. 11. E. 3. m. 4. u Rot. Alman. 12. E. 3. m. 6. w Rot. Alman. 14. E. 3. m. 6. x Rot. Scot. 15. E. 3. m. 2. y Rot. Scot. 18. E. 3. m. 9. **H**E was ^m eldest Son of *Richard* Lord Grey of *Codnore* in *Derbyshire* (by ⁿ *Jane* his Wife) who had been ^o Senefchal of *Gascoigne*, in the Reign of King *Edward* the Second.

In that notable and famous Expedition made into *Scotland*, *an. 7. E. 3.* he had Command, where his valour was so far taken notice of, that not long after, the King in ^a part of recompence thereof, and of his ^a great expences in those Wars, acquitted him of all such debts as he then owed unto his Exchequer.

Towards the end of the ^r 9. year of *E. 3.* he went again to the Wars of *Scotland* (being of the Retinue of *Hugh Audley*) and ^t two years after, in another Expedition then made thither.

An. 12. E. 3. he ^u attended the King into *Flanders*, and ^w *an. 14. E. 3.* went over thither, when by the way, that famous Naval Fight hapned neer *Sluce*. The following year he undertook employment in the ^x *scotish* Wars. *An. 18. E. 3.* he with *Nicholas de Langford* and *Edward de Chandos* were assigned to Array all able men in *Derbyshire*, from 16 to 60 years of age, and to have them in readines to march with them, or others whom the King should appoint, within three days warning against the *scots*, then ready to invade this Kingdom.

z Rot. Fr. 19. E. 3. p. 1. m. 15. The following year, he went in the ^z Retinue of *Henry* Earl of *Derby* into *Gascoigne*; and in regard he stayed there the next year in the Kings Service, his ^a Lands in *Kent* were exempted from finding men for guarding the Sea-Coasts. With this Earl he returned to *England*, and went to *Calais* in his Retinue, ^b *an. 21. E. 3.* and stayed there the following year.

b Rot. Fr. 21. E. 3. m. 8. There being an Invasion threatned by the *French an. 26. E. 3.* he was ^d joined in Commission with the Lord *Deyncourt*, to Array all able persons in *Derbyshire* and *Nottinghamshire*, and to conduct them to such places, as might stand in need of them, for defence of the Realm.

c Rot. Fr. 29. E. 3. m. 5. f Rot. Fr. 33. E. 3. m. 6. g Rot. Fin. 33. E. 3. m. 9. He went in the Expedition which the foresaid ^e Earl made into *Bretagne*, *an. 29. E. 3.* And after attended the ^f King in his Voyage royal into *France*, *an. 33. E. 3.* and the same year was ^s constituted Governour of the Town and Castle of *Rocheſter* for life.

More of his Military Services we find not, before he obtained the Kings Licence ^h *an. 39. E. 3.* to go on Pilgrimage. And *an. 45. E. 3.* being grown ⁱ very aged and not able to endure Travel, he obtained a special ^k Dispensation (wherein his many and great Services performed with much fidelity and valour, are by the King acknowledged) to exempt him from coming to Parliaments (to which he had received Summons, from the time of his Fathers death, which hapned ^l *an. 9. E. 3.*) and Councils; and charging him with setting forth of Soldiers in the Wars for the future.

h Pat. 39. E. 3. p. 1. m. 7. i Pat. 45. E. 3. p. 1. m. 16. He married ^m *Alice de Insula*, by whom he had ⁿ *Henry* his eldest Son, who married ^o *Joane* Daughter of *Reginald Cobham* of *Sterborough*, but died before his Father, and *John* his second Son, who both went in the ^p Retinue of *John* of *Gawnt*, Duke of *Lancaster*, in his Expedition into *France*, *an. 43. E. 3.* and *Alice*, a Daughter, Wife of ^q *William*, Son of Sir *Adam de Everingham*, of *Laxton* in the County of *Nottingham*.
l Efc. 9. E. 3. n. 45. m Coll. H. W. n D. N. p Rot. Fr. 45. E. 3. m. 13. q Coll. R. Glou. Somersf.

(16.)

Sir Richard Fitz Simon.

WE have met with little concerning this Noble Knight; but that he had command under ^r Henry of Lancaster Earl of Derby, in *Gascoigne*, ^{an.} 19. E. 3. The following year he went with ^r Robert Ufford Earl of Suffolk, when he attended the King in his Expedition into *France*, ^r An. 21. E. 3. he was employed in the Kings Service beyond Sea; and lastly, he was in command under the ^a Prince of Wales; ^{an.} 22. E. 3. and in these Expeditions he performed so great Services, that he was thought worthy to be Elected one of the first Founders of this most Noble Order.

(17.)

Sir Miles Stapleton.

THIS Sir Miles Stapleton was Son and Heir to Sir Miles Stapleton, of Bedall in the County of *York* Knight.

His first employment in the Wars, was, when King Edward the Third made his Expedition into ^w *Bretagne*. He also attended the King in his Voyage Royal into *France*, ^{an.} 20. E. 3. and lay at the Siege before *Calais*. ^r An. 23. E. 3. about the Month of July he was employed in the Kings Service beyond Sea; and the like ^a *an. 29. E. 3.*

In the 30. year of King Edward the Third, ^b Philip, Brother to the King of *Navarre* (taken Prisoner by the *French* King the year before) came over into *England*, and obtained assistance for recovery of his Lands in *Normandy*: whereupon the King joyned to him this Sir Miles Stapleton, a man of great integrity and in martial affairs very skillful, as *Froissard* Characterizeth him. These two, with 2000. men passed through *Normandy*, and, as they marched, took and burnt several Towns and Fortresses, till they came within 9. Leagues of *Paris*, and did not retreat, till they had forced the *French* to enter into Truce for a Year. For this Expedition the said Philip of *Navarre*, was constituted the Kings Captain and Lieutenant in the Dutchy of *Normandy*.

In consideration of the ^d constant fidelity and eminent valour of this Noble Knight, as also his great service in the Wars, the King granted to him a Pension of 100*l.* per annum out of his Exchequer for life, until he had that annual value in Lands or Rents provided for him. And shortly after, Upon information that several injuries and damages had been done to the *French* by the *English*, after and against the Truce taken near *Chartres*, the King, desirous that it should be kept without violation, and the infringers thereof punished: constituted him with Sir Nele Loring, and Sir Richard Stafford, his Commissioners, to inform themselves of the way and manner how these injuries might be discovered and repaired, and gave them power to arrest and imprison, to seize and confiscate their Estates, and to punish them according as they deserved.

He married ^h Joane the Daughter and Heir of Oliver de Ingham, and ⁱ Relict of Roger le Strange; and dyed on ^k Wednesday next before the Feast of St. Nicholas, ^{an.} 38. E. 3. leaving his Son Miles, then about 20 years of age. The Custody of his Lands was granted to the Queen, who granted it to Bryan Stapleton Knight, John de Boys, and Roger de Boys, till his said Son came of age; which Grant the King confirmed the same day by his Letters Patent. He and his Wife were both buried at the House of ^a Ingham founded by his Mothers Ancestors.

(18.)

Sir Thomas Wale.

HE was the Son of ^o Sir Thomas Wale, and ^p Lucy his Wife; which Lucy held the Mannor of *Wedon-Pinkney*, in the County of *Northampton*, with its appurtenances, in her Demesne as of Fee of the King in *Capite*, as of the Fee *Pinkney*.

* *Ibid.*

ney, by the service of one Knights Fee: and long before her death she settled the said Mannor on this Sir Thomas and his Heirs, as appears by the * Inquisition taken after her death, wherein the said Sir Thomas is found to be her next Heir, and then about 40 years of age.

q Rot. Alman.
12. E. 3. p. 1.
m. 3.
r Rot. Fr. 16.
E. 3. m. 36.
f Rot. Fr. 18.
E. 3. m. 23.
t Efc. 25. E.
u 2. n. 21.
w N. rib.
x bnd.
y Hist. Tho. de
la Mare, vide
Stow. Chron. p.
253.

He attended the King into ^a Flanders, an. 12. E. 3. and had command under William de Bohun Earl of Northampton, in the Expedition which the King made into Bretagne, ^r an. 16. E. 3. so also beyond Sea in the Kings service, with Richard Earl of Arundel, ^t an. 18. E. 3.

We find not that he had any issue by his Wife ^t Nichola, who out-lived him; but that his three ^s Sisters were his Heirs, namely, ^w Margaret, the Wife of----- Malorre; Alice, of Thomas Chamberlain; and Julian.

He dyed in Gascoigne, on ^x Tuesday next after the Feast of St. Michael the Archangel, an. 26. E. 3. being a Knight of great vertue and worthiness: so that, of all the Stalls of the first Founders, his first became void; into which succeeded Reginald Lord Cobham, of Sterborough.

(19.)

Sir Hugh Wrottesley

a Ex. Autogr.
pener Wall.
Wrottesley in
Com. Staff. Ba-
ronet. 9. Apr.
1663.
b Pat. 8. E. 3.
c Rot. Alman.
12. E. 3. m. 3.
p. 1.
d Rot. Chart.
Cy Pat. apud
Calef. 21. E. 3.
m. 5.
f Rot. Pat. 23.
E. 3. p. 3. m. 33.
g 16. Off. Pat.
24. E. 3. p. 3.
m. 17.
h 20. May Pat.
25. E. 3. p. 2.
m. 21.

SIR Hugh Wrottesley was Son to ^a Sir William Wrottesley of Wrottesley in the County of Stafford Knight.

It appears, that ^b an. 8. E. 3. he designed a Voyage to the Holy-Land, and to that end had obtained the Kings Letters for appointing Peter de Hoe and Thomas de Cheney his Attornies, during his absence, to prosecute his Suits in any Court of England.

An. 12. E. 3. he went in the Kings Service into ^d Flanders, when the King went over thither to confer with his Allies. And at the ^e Siege of Calais, he had the Kings Licence to inclose his Wood at Wrottesley, and make a Park. ^f Two years after, for his good service, he granted to him the Custody of the Lands and Tenements which were William de Pilatenhall deceased, till his Heirs came of age, with the marriages of them, without rendering any thing theretofore.

An. 24. E. 3. the King ^g granted him a Pension of 40 l. per annum out of his Exchequer, for his life; upon the surrender of which Letters Patent, he ^h granted him 40 l. per annum to be thus received, viz. 16 l. 4 s. 4 d. out of the Farm of the Villages of Mere and Clent, 11 l. 10 s. out of the Farm of the Village of Swinford, 11 l. out of the Farm of the Village of Kinesfare and Tetenbale, and 1 l. 6 s. 8 d. out of the Farm of the Foresters Fee of Tedesley, to hold for life, or till he had 40 l. per annum in Lands or Rents, settled on him for life; yet to be answerable for the overplus being 1 s. 8 d. These last Letters Patent were

i 127. Jan. Pat.
1. R. 2. m. 31.
k Efc. 43. E. 3.
l S. Eardswicks
view of Staf-
fordshire.
m Ex. ipsi Au-
togr. pener praf.
Wall. Wrottes-
ley.
n MS. in Offic.
Arm [C. 10.]
fol. 126.
o Efc. 4. R. 2.
n. 61. Heref.

confirmed to him by King Richard the Second, in the first year of his Reign.

He married ^k Mabill, the Daughter of Sir Philip ap Rees, and Joane his Wife, by whom he had issue ^l John, whose heir male in a direct line is Sir Walter Wrottesley of Wrottesley, in the County of Stafford, Baronet, now living. He also had to his second Wife ^m Isabel, Daughter of ⁿ John Arderne of Aldeford, Aderlegb, and Edds. And dyed the ^o Monday after the Feast of St. Vincent, an. 4. R. 2.

(20.)

Sir Nele Loring.

q Vide Co-
mun. de
Ter. Trin. 15.
E. 3. m. 2. dorj.
r Pat. 31. E.
3. p. 3. m. 6.

AT the Naval Fight before Sluce, his Valour was so remarkable, that it gained him the Honor of Knighthood, to which the King immediately added a Donation of 20 l. per annum, to him and his Heirs males, for the better support of that Dignity, till Lands of the like annual value were provided for him and then: These Letters Patent bear Teste at Sluce, ^r 26. of June, in the 14. year of the Kings Reign over England, and his first of France.

In the Kings Expedition into ^f *Bretagne*, he attended him thither, and *an.* 18. ^f *Rot. Fr.* 16. E. 3. went beyond Sea in his Service. In the beginning of the following year, ^f *E. 3. m. 24.* he and *Michael Northburgh*, Canon of *Lichfeild* and *Hereford*, were sent to the ^f *Rot. Rom.* 19. Pope's Court, with the Kings Letter (dated 23. Feb. *an.* 19. E. 3.) to obtain a Dispensation for the marriage of the Prince of Wales, with the Daughter of the Duke of *Brabant*. At his return he went with ^f *E. 3. m. 4.* *Henry de Lancaster* Earl of *Derby*, into *Gascoigne*, where he ^w stayed the following year: After which coming over into *England*, he within a short time ^a returned to his Commands in *Gascoigne*. *An.* 29. E. 3. he ^r attended the Prince of Wales in his Expedition into *Gascoigne*, and being ^s specially assigned to attend his person in the Battel at *Poitiers*, he performed his duty so well, that he received both ^a acknowledgments and rewards from the Prince, for that days service. He was afterwards ^a appointed by King *Edward*, to be one of his Commissioners, for receiving the possession of all Countries, Cities, Forts, &c. that by the Treaty of Peace near *Chartres* were to be delivered to him.

When the Prince of Wales was created Prince of *Guyenne*, he ^b attended him thither again, and there ^c continued four years; whence returning into *England* he stayed not long, but ^d went back again, and remained there three years. After which, coming into *England*, and being again sent into *Aquitaine*, ^e Writs were directed to *Robert de Ashton*, Admiral towards the West, for the passage of him and Sir *John de la Haye*, their Soldiers and Retinue; and this year he was one of those Knights of the Prince's Retinue, sent to meet ^f Sir *Robert Knolls*, at his coming out of *Bretagne*, whom they met at *Quercy*, and assisted at the Sieges of ^g *Durmel* and *Domme*, both which, though they thought fit to break up, yet marching further into the Country, they took *Ganaches*, *Freins*, *Rochmador*, and *Ville Franche*, upon the marches of *Tholonze*.

He was an active man, and did King *Edward* great services, which induced him to confer many favours on him, in recompence thereof; as first, he ^h granted him a Pension of 5 *l.* a year, during his life, to be paid him by the Abbets ⁱ *h. 6. Oct. Pat. 9.* of *Burnham*, out of the 15 *l.* per annum she was to pay into the Exchequer, for the Fee Farm of the Mannor of *Bollestrade*. Next, he ⁱ granted him a Pension of 20 Marks per annum for his life, out of his Exchequer, until Lands of the yearly value of 10 *l.* should be settled on him. The following year he ^k granted him all the Lands and Tenements belonging to *John*, the Son of *Henry de Morff*, in *Almetheley* in *Shropshire*, which, by forfeiture of the said *John* Elcheated to the King, to hold to him and his Heirs for ever. Besides these, the Prince having retained him in his service, as well in Peace as for War, granted to him for life a Pension of 50 *l.* per annum, and that it might be more certainly paid, he after granted to him his Mannors of *Neugn* and *Purchely* in *North Wales* for life, which the King ^l confirmed.

Afterwards, *Henry* Earl of *Lancaster*, the Kings Lieutenant in *Aquitaine*, for the good service this Knight had formerly done the King in *England*, *Scotland*, and elsewhere, and also to himself in *Gascoigne*, by Letters Patent dated the 12. of November *an.* Dom. 1346. gave him for his life *Pedatium sancti Macharii*, with all the profits thereto belonging; which grant the King ^m confirmed to him, *an.* 22. E. 3.

This noble Knight was Son and Heir of ⁿ *Roger Loring* and ^o *Cassandra*, Daughter of *Reginald Perot*. He married ^p *Margaret*, Daughter and Heir of Sir *Ralph Beauple* of *Cnubeston*, in *Devonshire*, by ^q *Elizabeth* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Alan Bloyho* (the relict of *Stephen Tinterne* Esq;) by whom he had Issue, two Daughters and Heirs, namely ^r *Isabel* Wife to *Robert Lord Harington*; and ^s *Margaret* Wife to ^t *John Peyore* of *Tuddington*, in the County of *Bedford*.

He died *an.* 9. R. 2. and was buried in the ^v Priory of *Dunstable*, to which he had been a great Benefactor.

21. Sir *fol. 78.*

(21.)

Sir John Chandos.

THE first Martial Action of his, was at St. *Quintins*; for while King Edward (in the 13. year of his Reign) lay at siege before *Cambray* (being the first Town he fate down before, upon his first entrance into *France*) the Earl of *Henault* made an assault upon St. *Quintins*, where this Esquire (so then called by Sir *John Froissard*) fought valiantly with *John de St. Dager* an Esquire of *Vermandois*, between the Bars and the Gate, both manifesting great Courage and Gallantry. And in this Expedition, he was ranged in the ^b third Battel, led by the King, which was pitch'd between *Vironseffe* and *Flamengery*, to encounter the *French*.

For his Valour shewn in this Expedition, the King bestowed on him the honor of Knighthood, and at his return to *Antwerpe*, ^c granted him 20 Marks per annum out of his Exchequer, to support that Dignity, till he should settle on him Lands to that yearly value for his life.

When the King led another Army into *Flanders*, designed also against the *French*, he attended him, and fought valiantly in the Naval Engagement before *Sluce*.

He was in the Voyage Royal made into *Normandy*, *an. 20. E. 3.* and in its march at *Poissy*, he and Sir-----*Basset*, preserved two of the Lord of *Poissy*'s Daughters from violation, and brought them to the King; who caused them to be safely conducted to *Corbe*, whither they desired to go.

At the Battel of *Cressy*, he commanded in the *Van*, led by the Prince of *Wales*; and when this Prince was ^b constituted the Kings Lieutenant in *Aquitaine*, he attended him in that Expedition; and by his command, summon'd the Castle of *Romorentine*, which held out a while, but was at length forced to surrender.

Marching on with the Prince, the Battel of *Poitiers* approached, and on the day before, (a Truce for that day being obtained by the endeavours of the Cardinal of *Pierport*) this valiant Knight coasted about to make discovery of the *French* Army, as did also the Lord *Cleremont*, one of the *French* Marshals; and as they returned, they met, and observed that both of them bore the same device, to wit, a Lady in blue, irradiated with the Sun-beams. *Cleremont* demanded how long he had born his device, *Chandos* answered, you bear mine; I deny that, replied *Cleremont*; and did not the Truce hinder, I would make it good. To morrow, said *Chandos*, you shall find me ready to justify it to be mine as well as yours, and so they parted.

The next day the Fight begun, during which St. *John* ¹ never parted from the Princes side; and when he perceived that the *French* Marshals was discomfited, he advised the Prince to advance towards the Kings Battel, telling him there was all the hazard and the glory; which he accordingly did. At the end of this famous Battel, when no more *French* Banners were left in the field, he prevailed with the Prince to set up his Standard in a Bush near him, to give a signal to his dispersed Army to rally, while he took some refreshment.

An. 33. E. 3. he attended the King in his Expedition into *France*, and being at the siege of *Rheims*, he and Sir *James Audeley*, and the Lord *Mucident*, a *Gascoigne*, with their Troops, rode near to *Chalons* in *Champagne*, and drawing near to *Chargny*, in *Dormois*, where was a strong Castle, they gave an assault to it, at which the Lord *Mucident* being slain, they in revenge made a resolution to take it ere they went away, which they did, putting all to the Sword, and demolishing the Castle. He was constituted Captain and the Kings Lieutenant in the Dukedom of *Normandy*, and the parts of *France*, and had power given him to grant Pardons for Treason, Murder, &c. and whatsoever he did in this case, the King promised to ratify under his Great Seal.

After the Peace near *Chartres*, Sir *John Chandos* was ^e constituted one of King *Edward*'s

^a Froiss. Chron. lib. 1. cap. 38.

^b Ibid. cap. 47.

^c 15. Nov. Patentes concessi. hominib. Angl. & Vasce. 13. E. 3. m. 10.

^d Froiss. cap. 5.

^e Ibid. c. 121.

^f Ibid. c. 125.

^g Ibid. c. 128.

^h An. 29. E. 3.

ⁱ Froiss. c. 158.

^k Ibid. c. 161.

^l Ibid. c. 162.

^m Ibid. c. 207.

ⁿ Ibid. c. 208.

^o 4. Feb. Rot. Franc. 25. E. 3. m. 18.
^p Prima July Rot. Vap. 35. E. 3. m. 8.

Edward's Commissioners to take possession of the Dutchy of *Aquitaine*, where Sir James de Bourbon^a delivered him the possession of divers Lands, Towns, Cities, Castles, and Fortresses, whereupon he received the Fealty and Homage of all the Nobility and others.

Shortly after he was^a made Captain and Commander in chief of the Castle and Town of *Rochel*, and all the Country of *Xantonge*, and a command was therewithall sent to^a John de Mont^e Ferandi, Custos of the said Castle and Town, to deliver them up to him, with all the Arms, Provisions, and other the King's Stores in his possession. And the following year, when the Prince of Wales (now created Prince of *Guyenne*) took a Voyage thither, he was made^a Constable of *Aquitaine*, and Sir Guischa^d d'Angle Marshal.

When the King of Cyprus came into *Aquitaine*, upon a visit to the Prince, he was^a sent to receive and conduct him to *Angoleme*, where the Prince kept his Court: He also waited on him through^a *Xantonge* and *Poitou*, to *Rochel*, to view the Country, whence he returned to *Angoleme*; where having taken leave of the Prince, he yet attended him to the confines of the Principality.

^a Charles de Blois, having gained new strength from the King of France, and entered *Bretagne*, this Sir John with some few Forces left *Aquitaine*, and came to the assistance of John Earl of Montford, who received him with great joy, having so great an opinion of his Valour and Conduct, that he conceived no misfortune could fall upon him while he stayed with him. By his advice and valour (as all acknowledged) the French were defeated, Sir Bertrand de Guesclin, taken Prisoner by an English Esquire under Sir John's Standard, Charles de Blois there slain, and the Enemy pursued 8 Leagues, even to the Gates of *Rennes*. This Battel was fought on^a Michaelmas day an. 38. E. 3. where were taken two Earls, 27 Lords, and 1500 men at Arms. The news of the Victory being brought to the King (then at *Dover*) by a Pursuivant of Arms, who had been in the Battel, the King for his good service, created him a Herald by the name of *Windefor* (there was also an Herald who had the addition of^b Chandos given him in honor of this noble Knight, whom he employed in *Aquitaine*, upon several occasions.) This good success begat a Treaty, which settled the Earl of Montfort in the Dukedom of *Bretagne* by the King of France, to whom he did Homage, as the Dukes before had done.

In the Prince's Voyage to Spain he had command in the *Van*, led by the Duke of Lancaster, and immediately before the joining of the Battel, this noble Knight was created^a Banneret; which honor was not only well bestowed, but by his valiant carriage in the Fight, as well deserved; for^a he and his men hapning to encounter Sir Bertrand de Guesclin (who had been ransomed from his former imprisonment at 100000 Franks) and the Marshal Sir Arnold Dandreben, they took them both Prisoners, and defeated their Battel.

After his return out of Spain, he obtained leave to reside at St. Saviour le Viscount; but when the French invaded *Gascoigne*, the Prince sent for him back, and employed him in the conduct of that War, wherein he behaved himself most valiantly, and in a word^a recovered and kept *Aquitaine*, the particulars of whose famous actions from hence to his death may be seen in^b Sir John Froissard, out of whom we are loth to cloy our Reader with too much of transcription, and shall therefore only note, that in this time he was made^a Constable of *Poitou* and^a Marshal of *Aquitaine*.

He had the^a Barony of St. Saviours le Viscount, of Domvers and Dongeville, and the Lands and Tenements of St. Mary de Monte de Farsellis, and de Romelly, and all the Lands which were formerly Sir Godfry de Harecourts in Normandy, given him and his heirs for ever, by King Edward (to whom the said Sir Godfry had sold them, to be possessed after his death) which being not comprised in the^a Treaty of Peace near Chartres, the Homage for them became due to the King of France; but there having passed so great Testimonies of affection and respect, between King Edward and King John, the latter, at the request of King Edward, before he went from Calais, sealed to Sir John Chandos, a confirmation of King Edward's grant to possess them as his inheritance for ever. Whereupon command was sent

q Froiss. c. 21

i 30. Julij

12 Rot. Vass.

35. E. 3. m. 5.

r Froiss. c. 217.

u Ibid. c. 218.

w Ibid. c. 219.

x Froiss. c. 224.

y Ibid. c. 226.

z Walsingh. p. 174.

a Froiss. c. 227.

b Ibid. c. 257.

260 & 264.

c Ibid. c. 229.

d See before

p. 42.

e Froiss. c. 237.

f Ibid. c. 238.

g Ibid. 270.

h Lib. 1. c. 245.

251. 256. 258.

264. 265. 268.

270.

i Froiss. lib. 1.

cap. 253.

k Vide Pat. 48.

E. 3. p. 1. m. 7.

l 12. May Pat.

34. E. 3. m. 35.

m Froiss. cap.

n 213.

to

o Pat. 34. E. 3. to Sir Thomas Holland, then Captain and Custos thereof, forthwith to deliver the
 p. 1. m. 35. Castles, Baronies, and all the Lands and Tenements to the said John. And here-
 p Pat. 35. E. 3. upon he was sometimes stiled *Baro Sancti salvatoris le Viscount*, and at other,
 m. 3. *Vicecomes Sancti salvatoris in Normania*.

q Pat. 48. E. 3. The last martial action of this most famous Knight, and which proved fatal
 par. 1. to him, was near to St. *Salvin*, an Abbey in *Poitou*, which having been be-
 r Froiss. c. 270. trayed to the French by a Monk who hated the Abbot, he endeavoured to re-
 s Ibid. cover it the last of December in the night, an. 44. E. 3. but missing of his de-
 t Walsingham sign, and intending to return to *Poitou*, he encountred a party of the French at
 p. 181. *Insuch-bridge*, where the way being slippery, he fell down, and as he was rising
 one *Jaques de St. Martyn* an Esquire, struck him under his Eye into the brain
 w Froiss. loc. cit. with a Glave; for having * lost the sight of that Eye five years before, as he was
 hunting a Hart near *Bordeaux*, he saw not the blow come. The French knew
 him by his Surcoat of Arms, and endeavoured to get his body, but his Uncle
Edward Clyfford befriended him, and defended it; and other relief coming in, the
 French men were taken Prisoners. He was thence carried to *Mortimer Fort*-
 tress, where he lay a day and night speechless, and then died, and lies there
 buried.

His death was exceedingly lamented by all, and when the French King
 u Walsing. loco heard of it he was very much troubled, saying, "there was now no Knight left
 cit. alive, that was able to make Peace between the Kings and Kingdoms of France
 and England; so much was he feared, so highly esteemed, and so generally
 beloved.

He was never married, but we find he had three Sisters; w Elizabeth, who
 w Communia died 9. R. 2. *Alionora*, the Wife of *Roger Colinge*; and *Margaret*.
 Ter. Mich. an. 3. H. 5.

(22.)

Sir James Audeley.

His noble Knight was Son and Heir of *Nicholas* Lord *Audeley*, and of *Jane*,
 Sister and Heir of *William* the Son of *William Martyn*, and was born an.

x Collect. W. * 7. E. 2.
 D. N.

He was no sooner come of age, but he entred upon Martial Employments,
 wherein for several years he became engaged in the Wars against the *Scots*, and
 there did the King so great service, that in recompence thereof, and the great
 charge he had been at in supporting himself in those Wars, he forgave him the
 sum of 10000 Marks, which he was engaged to pay *Roger Mortimer*, Earl of
 y Pat 9. E. 3. *March*, by whose attainder it became forfeited to the King.
 p. 2. m. 13.

z 14. Ang. Rot.
 w 1. Scot. 16.
 E. 3. m. 10.

An. 16. E. 3. he was made * Custos of the Town of *Bermick* upon *Twede* during
 pleasure; and by other Letters Patent of the same date, constituted the
 Kings * Justice of the said Town, and of all other the Kings Lands in the parts
 of *Scotland*, to execute all things appertaining to that Office, according to the
 Law and Custom of *Scotland*.

Not long after, he was engaged to go beyond Sea, in the Kings Service, with
Nicholas Audeley Earl of *Gloucester*, and thereupon the Kings Letters of Pro-
 tection were a obtained for him, to hold till *Easter* following.

a 4. Sept. Rot.
 Franc. 16. E. 3.
 m. 25.
 b Ibid. m. 11.

The b 20. of December after, the Kings special Letter was directed to him, to
 provide 20. Men at Arms, and 20. Archers, to be sent to *Portsmouth* by the first
 of *March* ensuing, and thence to pass in the Kings Service with the Earls of
Arundel and *Huntingdon*.

c Rot. Fr. 18.
 E. 3. m. 19.
 d Rot. Fr. 19.
 E. 3. m. 4.

An. 18. E. 3. he went into c *Gascoigne* with the Earl of *Derby*, in his Expedi-
 tion thither. The following year he received Command, personally d to at-
 tend the King, and to serve him with his Retinue, for defence of this Kingdom
 against the French, at the Kings charge.

e Froiss. Chron.
 l. 1. c. 121.
 f 2. Apr. Rot.
 Franc. 21. E. 3.
 p. 1. m. 17.

And when the King made his Royal Voyage into France, an. 20. E. 3. he
 attended him thither. He was sent over from the Seige of *Calais*, with f Com-
 mand to raise what Forces he could, and to bring them to *Sandwich*, by *Ascen-*
sion-Day,

son-Day, well arm'd, to pass over to *Calais*, in regard the *French King* was drawing together a vast Army, with intention to raise the *Seige*.

In the *Prince of Wales's Expedition into Gascoigne*, an. 29. E. 3. He attended him thither, and at the *Battel of Poitiers*, gained everlasting Fame. For immediately before the *Battels* joined, he acquainted the *Prince*, that he had served his *Father* and him faithfully, and had made a vow, to give the onset, or dye in the attempt, at the first *Battel* that the *King* or any of his *Sons* should personally be engaged in, and therefore beg'd his *License*, to place himself there, where he might be in the best capacity to accomplish his *Vow*; which the *Prince* giving way to, he put himself into the *Front* of the *English Army* (accompanied with his 4. *Esquires*, (*viz.* *Dutton of Dutton*, *Delves of Doddington*, *Fowlehurst of Cren*, and *Hawkeston of Wrinehill*) who had obliged themselves to stick close to him) and encountred with *Sir Arnold Dindrehen*, who commanded in the *French Marshalls Battel*, and was forely wounded by him, but taken *Prisoner* by others; for this valiant Knight and his *Esquires* refused to take *Prisoners*, but spent their time in execution: In this *Battel* he was most dangerously wounded, in the *Body* and *Face*; and at the end of it his 4. *Esquires* brought him out of the *Field*, and laid him under a *Hedge*, to refresh him, where they took off his *Arms* and bound up his *Wounds*.

His valour and stout performances were greatly wondred at by the *French Commanders*, as they acknowledged the following night, when they sat at *Supper* in *Poitiers*, and it is reported by *Walsingham*, that by his extraordinary courage he brake through the *Enemies Battel*, and made great slaughter among them.

As soon as the *Prince* had sent to find out the *French King*, he enquired after this Knight, and being told where he lay wounded, he sent to know if he could be brought to him, otherwise he would come to visit him: this being told *Sir James*, he caused 8. of his *Servants* to carry him in his *Litter* to the *Prince*, who took him in his *Arms* and kist him, acknowledging he ought to honor him, for by his valour he had gain'd great renown; and to enable him to pursue martial affairs, he retained him to be his Knight, with 500. marks *Land* of *Inheritance*.

Sir James being departed from the *Prince*, sent for his Brother *Sir Peter Audeley*, with some other of his nearest *Relations*, and called before them his 4. *Esquires*, to whom he declared, that seeing the honor he had that day gain'd was by his *Esquires* valour, he gave them the said 500. marks *per annum* as freely as the *Prince* had bestowed them on him.

This generous action the *Prince* being acquainted with, sent for *Sir James*, who being brought to him in his *Litter*, the *Prince* told him, that he had been inform'd of his *Gift* to his *Esquires*, and would therefore know, whether he liked his kindness? or why he gave it away? To whom he gave a particular account of their fidelity and services, which he thought himself obliged to reward, affirming it was by their assistance he accomplished his *Vow*, and had his life preserv'd, and therefore humbly desir'd pardon for doing it without his knowledge. Herewith the *Prince* was so well satisfied, that he afterwards gave him 600. Marks *per annum* more, in like manner as he had done the former; this grant was confirm'd to him by the *King*, during life, and for a twelve Month after, to be received out of the *Coynage* of the *Stanneries* in *Cornwall*, and the *Kings Lands* in that *County*.

This valiant Knight did afterwards attend the *King* in his *Royal expedition into France*, an. 33. E. 3. And was in the action with *Sir John Chandos*, and the Lord *Mucident*, when the strong *Castle of Dormoys* was taken by assault.

When the *Prince* undertook a voyage into *Spain*, to restore *Don Pedro*, he constituted him *Governor of Aquitaine* in his absence, and afterwards made him great *Seneschal* of *Poitou* about this time he raised a great Army there, and marched to *Berry*, and wasted that *Country*, and thence passed to *Tourayn*, keeping the *Field*; and then to the Lord of *Chauignys* Country

Country (he being lately revolted to the French) and destroy'd it; afterwards he took the Town of *Brense* by assault, and burnt it, and so returned to *Poitiers*. He was with Sir *John Chandos* at the Siege of *Dome*, and of the strong Castle of *Roche sur Ion* in *Anjou*, which at length was surrendred, and thence he retired to fresh Quarters in the County of *Fontney*.

And here Sir *John Froissard* puts a period to his life, and saith he was buried at *Poitiers*: but he mistakes *James* the Father for *James* the Son, who in truth died in *Gascoigne*, an. *x* 43. E. 3. which was near about *Froissard's* time, after whom his Father lived many years; having received Summons of Parliament, an. 4. E. 3. and thence to all ensuing Parliaments, to the time of his Death.

This Noble Lord married to his first Wife, *Joan*, Daughter to *Roger Mortimer* Earl of *March*, by whom he had *Nicholas*, his Son and Heir, *Roger*, and *Rowland*, who died without Issue, and two Daughters, *Joan* the Wife of *John Tochet*, and *Margaret* Wife of *Roger Hillary*, who upon their elder Brothers Decease also without Issue, became Heirs to a fair Patrimony, but the Barony came to *John Tochet*, Son to the eldest Daughter.

By his second Wife, *Isabel*, he had *James*, and *Thomas*, who died without Issue, and *Margaret* the Wife of *Fulk Fitz-Waren*. And having lived to a very great Age, he died the first of *April*, an. 9. R. 2. leaving *Nicholas* his Son and Heir, then 50. years of Age, having a little before made his Will at *Heligb Castle*, by which he appointed his Body to be buried in the Choir of his Abbey of *Hilton*, before the high Altar in case he should dye in the *Marches*, but if in *Devonshire*, or *Somersetshire*, then in the Choir of the Friars Preachers, at *Excester*, before the high Altar.

(23)

Sir Otho Holland.

HE was one of the younger Sons of *Robert* Lord *Holland*, and Brother of Sir *Thomas Holland*, one of the first Founders of this Noble Order.

c Term. Trin.
24. E. 3. rot.
32. Angl.

The Earl of *Ewe*, Constable of *France*, being Prisoner of War to the said *Thomas*, the King bought him of him for a certain sum of Money, and afterwards by Indenture deliver'd the said Earl to the Custody of the said Sir *Otho Holland*, under condition, that the Earl should not go out of *England*, nor wear Arms publicly, until he had paid his full Ransom to the King. But it seems Sir *Otho* took the Earl with him to *Calais*, where he went up and down armed; upon which, information being given to the King, Sir *Otho* was brought to the Kings Bench Bar, before the Chancellor, Treasurer, the Earls of *Arundel*, and *Huntingdon*, Sir *Bartholomew Burgherss*, Mr. *Nicholas Northburgh*, Clerk of the Kings Seal, *William Tuffet*, and other the Kings Justices, and being not able to deny the premises, he put himself upon the Kings favour, and was thereupon committed to the Custody of *John de Long Marshal* of the Kings Bench.

We have met with little else concerning this Knight, save that he went over into *Bretagne*, with his said Brother *Thomas*, an. 29. E. 3. and had been Governor of *Cernsey*, *Jarvey*, *Sark*, and *Aurney*. We also find, that a Fine was acknowledged at *Westminster* on the morrow after the Purification of our Lady, an. 33. E. 2. between him and the said *Otho Querent*, and *Robert de Holland* the elder, Knight, and *Robert de Holland* the younger, Deforcients, of the Mannor of *Tokesdale*, and the Advowson of the Church there, to the use of the said *Otho* for life, and after his death to return to the said Sir *Robert* the elder, and *Robert* the younger, and the Heirs of the said Sir *Robert*. But he lived not to enjoy the benefit of it long, for he dyed in *Normandy* the 3. day of September following, being seized also for life of the Mannors of *Kersey* in *Suffolk*, *Talenorth* in *Surrey*, and *Chesterfield* in *Derbyshire*, and these of the gift of his Brother *Thomas*, and the Lady *Joane* his Wife; as also of the Mannor of *Dalberg* in the said County of *Derby* for life, by the Grant of *Robert de Holland*.

Sir

(24.)

Sir Henry Eam.

ALL we have met with relating to this noble Knight, is only what the following Instrument (made to him by the Prince of Wales, of an Anquity of 100 marks, and confirmed by the King) doth inform us of: whereby it appears, that he was a Native of *Brabant*, and received the Honor of Knighthood from the said Prince's hands.

no Rex omnibus ad quos, &c. Salutem. Inspecimus Literas Patentes dilecti & fidelis nostri Ewardi, Principis Wallie, Ducis Cornubiæ, & Comitis Cestrie, filii nostri Charissimi in hæc verba. Edward eisné filz au Noble Roy d'Engleterre & de France, Prince de Gales, Duc de Cornuail, & Comte de Cestre. A tous ceux qui cestes Lettres verront ou orront, Saluz. Sachez que come nostre tresher & bien ame Monseigneur Henri Eam au temps qil avoit pris de noz meins l'Ordre de Chivaler, se offrist & premist de su franche volonte, desire entendant à noz servoies à terme de sa vie, & qeu temps qe nous luy ferrions suffisamment garnir, d'aler ovesqe nous queu part que nous vourrions, aueissi bien pur la pees, come pur la guerre, & desre armes od nous à noz volontez coudre toute gent surpris le Duc de Brabant son seigneur lige en la defense de ses terres propres: Nous acceptantz celles offre & premesse & voillanz pour son dit service avoir, & qil soit le plus tennz à nous servir devant nul autre, tiel regard faire à luy dont il se purra le mieltz contenir à l'avenance de son estat, lui avons doné un annuele rent de Cent marcs à terme de sa vie, à recevoir de nostre Manoir de Bradenath en Comte de Deveneshire chescun an à les termes de Pasques & de Seint Michel per oucles porcions per les meyns des gardens de mesmes le Manoir qi pur les temps ferront les offre & premesse dussusditz en tontz pointz tennz & gardez, & volons que à quele heure, & à quant des soitz son dit paiement soit adervier en partie, ou en tout à nul terme assigné, il lise au dit Monseigneur Henri destreindre en le dit Manoir, & les destresses tenir tanqil soit pleinement paieiz de quange lui serra à derriere, come dessus est dit. En Tesmoignance de quel chose, nous avons fait faire cestes noz Lettres overteiz. Donné souz nostre Seal à Westm. le xviij. jour de Jeneuer, l'an du Regne nostre trescher Seigneur & Pere le Roy d'Engleterre vintisme primer, & de France octisme. Nos autem concessionem prædictam ratem habentes & gratam, eam pro nobis & heredibus nostris quantum in nobis est præfuto Henrico ad totam vitam suam, tenere præsentium concedimus, & confirmamus, sicut Literæ prædictæ rationabiliter testantur. In cujus, &c. Teste Rege apud Westmonasterium xxviij. die Junii.

*in Pat. an. 23.
Edw. 3rd par. 2.
m. 24.*

Per ipsum Regem.

(25)

Sir Sanchet Dabrichcourt.

SIR John Froissard takes notice, that Queen Isabel, Wife to King Edward the Second, being driven out of France, was courteously entertained at the Castle of Amberticourt, in Henault, by a Knight of that name, whose then it was, and that thereupon the Queen and the Prince brought him, his Lady and Children, over with them, where they all received advancement in the Court of England. 'Tis very probable then, that this Sir Sanchet might be Son to that Knight; and yet Ralph Brooke, York Herald, makes him to be the Son of Eustace Dabrichcourt, and Elizabeth, Daughter of the Duke of Juliers, the Relict of the John Plantagenet, Earl of Kent. But this is a great mistake, and overseen by Augustine Vincent, Winderfor Herald, in his correction of Brooke. For it is clear, that, after the death of that Earl, his Widow vowed chastity in the Monastery of Waverly, where she continued some years, and that on Michaelmas day

*o Ex Lib. in
Offic. principal.
Canuar. voc. 21
ilhp. j 166.*

T t t t 2

day *an. Dom.* 1260. which was above 11. years after the Institution of this Order of the Garter, he was clandestinely married to *Eustace de Abridgecourt*, by one *John de Ireland*, and therefore he could not be Son of these two persons, whose marriage was so long after the Institution of that Order, whereof he was one of the first Founders.

p. Pat. 19. E. 3. We find mention of a gift, which King Edward the Third made to this Knight, of all the Chattels belonging to *John Wardedien*, who had fled for killing of *Robert Poteman*, but nothing else.

(26)

Sir Walter Paveley.

q. Coll. H. A. **T**His Sir Walter was Son and Heir of *Walter Paveley*, and *Maud*, Daughter and Heir of *Stephen Burghersh*: His said Father died, *an. 1. E. 3.* at which time he was about 8 years old. He was also Cousin and next Heir to *Henry Burghersh* Bishop of *Lincolne*.

u. R. 1. Fr. 16. He went into *Bretagne* in the Kings Service, with Sir *Bartholomew Burghersh* senior, *an. 16. E. 3.* so also the following year; and again *an. 19. E. 3.*

w. R. 1. Fr. 17. The 20. of King Edward the Third, he went with him in the Expedition the King made into *France*, and therefore had his Lands in *Northamptonshire* and *Wiltshire* discharged from finding men at Arms, &c. to serve the King in that Expedition. And the next year it seems he had command abroad under a Sir *Bartholomew Burghersh le fitz*: So also *an. 23. E. 3.*

E. 3. m. 24. Two years after, the Duke of *Lancaster* being made Admiral, he went to Sea in the Fleet: Afterwards he went with the Prince of *Wales* into *Gascoigne*; and *an. 32. E. 3.* into *Bretagne*.

E. 3. m. 2. These were the Expeditions this noble Knight made, which sufficiently denote his being continually employed abroad in the Kings Service.

E. 3. m. 4. He died 28. of June *an. 49. E. 3.* leaving *Edward Pavely* his Son and Heir.

d. R. 1. Vasc. 29.
E. 3. m. 8.
E. 3. m. 32.
E. 3. m. 4.
E. 3. m. 17.
E. 3. m. 21.

SECT. IV.

A Catalogue of their Successors, with Scutcheons of their Arms.

Knight elected in the following part of the Reign of King Edward the Third, as the Stalls became void.

27. Richard of Bordeaux, afterwards King of England, of that name the Second.
28. Lionel of Antwerp Earl of Ulster, and Duke of Clarence.
29. John of Gaunt Duke of Lancaster, after created Duke of Aquitaine.
30. Edmund of Langley Earl of Cambridge, after Duke of York.
31. John de Montford Duke of Bretagne, and Earl of Richmond.
32. Humfry Bohun Earl of Hereford, and Constable of England.
33. William Bohun Earl of Northampton.
34. John Hastings Earl of Penbroke.
35. Thomas Beauchamp Earl of Warwick.
36. Richard Fitz Alan Earl of Arundel and Surrey.
37. Robert Ufford, Earl of Suffolk.
38. Hugh Stafford, Earl of Stafford.
39. Ingleram de Coucy, Earl of Bedford.
40. Guiscard d'Angolesme, Earl of Huntingdon.
41. Edward Spencer, Lord Spencer.
42. William Latimer, Lord Latimer.
43. Reynold Cobham, Lord Cobham of Sterborough.
44. John Nevil, Lord Nevil of Raby.

45. Ralph



King Edward the 3^d
Sovereign 1



Edward Prince
of Wales, 2



Henry Duke of
Lancaster, 3



Pierre Capitow
de la Bouch, 5



William Earle
of Salisbury, 7



Thomas Earle
of Warwick, 4



Ralph Earle
of Stafford, 6



Roger Earle
of March, 8



St. John
Lyole, 9



St. John
Beauchamp, 11



St. Hugh
Courtney, 13



St. Bartholomew
Burghewt, 10



St. John
Mohun, 12



St. Thomas
Holland, 14



St. John
Grey, 15



St. Miles
Stapleton, 17



St. Hugh
Wrotesley, 19



St. Richard
Fitz-Simon, 16



St. Thomas
Yale, 18



St. Nele
Loringe, 20



St. John
Chandler, 21



St. Otto
Holland, 23



St. Sancho
Dabrichcourt, 25



St. James
Audeley, 22



St. Henry
Eum, 24



St. Walter
Pavley, 26



Richard of
Burdetax, 27



Lionell Duke
of Clarence, 28



John Duke of
Lancaster, 29



Edmund Earle
of Cambridge, 30



John Duke of
Britaine, 31



Hunfrey Earle
of Hereford, 32



William Earle
of Northampton, 33



John Earle of
Peveshoke, 34



Thomas Earle
of Warwick, 35



Richard Earle
of Arundell, 36



Robert Earle
of Suffolke, 37



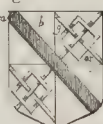
Hugh Earle of
Stafford, 38



Malerant Earle of
Bedford, 39



Gasard Earle of
Huntingdon, 40



Edward Lord
Spencer, 41



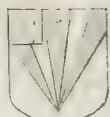
William Lord
Latimer, 42



Reynold Lord
Cobham, 43



John Lord
Vevill, 44



Ralph Lord
Basset



S. Walter
Manny 46



S. William
Fitz Warren 47



S. Thomas
Thonk. 48



S. Thomas
Elton 49



S. Francis
van Hall 50



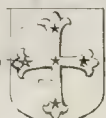
S. John
Fitz Warren 51



S. Allan
Boxhall 52



S. Richard
Pemburce 53



S. Thomas
Trought 54



S. Thomas
Banister 55



S. Richard
de la Roche 56



C. Guy de
Brian 57



Thomas Earle
of Buckingham 58



Henry Earle
of Derby 59



William Duke
of Gelderland 60



William Earle
of Aversant 61



Thomas Earle
of Kent 62



John Earle of
Huntingdon 63



Thomas Earle
of Wintonham 64



Edward Earle
of Rutland 65



Michael Earle
of Suffol 66



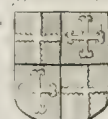
William Lord
Aresop 67



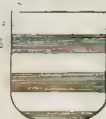
William Lord
Berouren 68



John Lord
Bermon 69



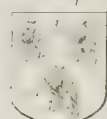
William Lord
Willoughby 70



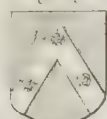
Richard Lord
Grey 71



S. Nicholas
Sarnesfield 72



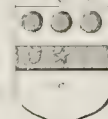
S. Philip de
la Roche 73



S. Robert
Knolls 74



S. John
Burley 75



S. John
d'Eureux 76



S. Brian
Stapleton 77



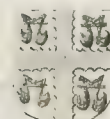
S. Richard
Burley 78



S. Peter
Courtney 79



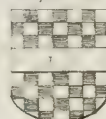
S. John
Burley 80



S. John
Bouchier 81



S. Thomas
Gandon 82



S. Lewis
Clifford 83



S. Robert
Dunstovill 84



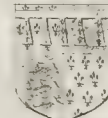
S. Robert
Namur 85



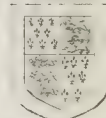
Henry Duce
of Wales 86



Thomas Duke
of 87



John Duke
of 88



Thomas Duke
of 89



Thomas Earle
of Derby 90



Robert Duke
of 91



John Lord
of 92

45. *Ralph Bassett*, Lord Bassett of Drayton.
46. *Sir Walter Manny*, Bannert
47. *Sir William Fitz Waren*, Knight.
48. *Sir Thomas Ufford*, Knight.
49. *Sir Thomas Felton*, Knight.
50. *Sir Franc Van Hall*, Knight.
51. *Sir Fulk Fitz Waren*, Knight.
52. *Sir Allan Boxhull*, Knight.
53. *Sir Richard Pemburge*, Knight.
54. *Sir Thomas Utreight*, Knight.
55. *Sir Thomas Banester*, Knight.
56. *Sir Richard de la Vache*, Knight.
57. *Sir Guy de Bryan*, Knight.

Knights Elected in the Reign of King Richard the Second.

58. *Thomas of Woodstock*, Earl of Buckingham, after Duke of Gloucester.
59. *Henry of Lancaster* Earl of Derby, afterward King of England, of that Name the Fourth.
60. *William Duke of Gelderland*.
61. *William of Bavaria*, Earl of Ostrevant, after Earl of Holland, Henault, and Zeland.
62. *Thomas Holland* Earl of Kent, after Duke of Surrey.
63. *John Holland*, Earl of Huntingdon, after Duke of Excester.
64. *Thomas Mowbray*, Earl of Nottingham, after Duke of Norfolk.
65. *Edward* Earl of Rutland, after Duke of Albemarle.
66. *Michael de la Poole*, Earl of Suffolk.
67. *William Scrope*, Lord Scrope, after Earl of Wiltshire, and Lord Treasurer of England.
68. *William Beauchamp* Lord Bergaveny.
69. *John Beaumont*, Lord Beaumont.
70. *William Willoughby*, Lord Willoughby.
71. *Richard Grey*, Lord Grey.
72. *Sir Nicholas Surnesfeld*, Knight.
73. *Sir Philip de la Vache*, Knight.
74. *Sir Robert Knolls*, Knight.
75. *Sir Simon Burley*, Knight.
76. *Sir John de Evereux*, Banneret.
77. *Sir Bryan Stapleton*, Knight.
78. *Sir Richard Burley*, Knight.
79. *Sir Peter Courtney*, Knight.
80. *Sir John Burley*, Knight.
81. *Sir John Bourchier*, Knight.
82. *Sir Thomas Granston*, Knight.
83. *Sir Lewis Clifford*, Knight.
84. *Sir Robert Dunstwill*, Knight.
85. *Sir Robert de Namur*, Knight.

Knights Elected in the Reign of King Henry the Fourth.

86. *Henry Prince of Wales*, after King of England, of that Name the Fifth.
87. *Thomas of Lancaster*, Earl of Albemarle, and Duke of Clarence.
88. *John Earl of Kendal* and Duke of Bedford, after Regent of France.
89. *Humfry*, Earl of Penbroke and Duke of Gloucester.
90. *Thomas Beauford*, Earl of Dorset, and after Duke of Excester.
91. *Robert Count Palatine*, Duke of Bavaria, after Emperor of Germany.
92. *John Beauford*, Earl of Somerset, and Marquess of Dorset.

93. *Thomas*

93. *Thomas Fitz Alin*, Earl of *Arundel*.
94. *Edmund Stafford*, Earl of *Stafford*.
95. *Edmund Holland*, Earl of *Kent*.
96. *Ralph Nevil*, Earl of *Westmerland*.
97. *Gilbert Roos*, Lord *Roos*.
98. *Gilbert Talbot*, Lord *Talbot*.
99. *John Lovell*, Lord *Lovell*.
100. *Hugh Burnell*, Lord *Burnell*.
101. *Thomas Morley*, Lord *Morley*.
102. *Edward Charleton*, Lord *Fowis*.
103. Sir *John Cornwall*, Knight, after Lord *Fanhope*.
104. Sir *William Arundel*, Knight.
105. Sir *John Stanly*, Knight.
106. Sir *Robert de Umsfrevill*, Knight.
107. Sir *Thomas Rampston*, Knight.
108. Sir *Thomas Erpingham*, Knight.
109. Sir *John Sulbie*, Knight.
110. Sir *sandich de Trane*, Knight.

Hitherto we have ranked the *Knights* of this most Noble *Order*, as they are placed in other *Catalogues*, and according to their greatest *Dignities*, because the certain years of their *Elections* cannot be found : but these that follow, are marshalled in an exact series of their *Elections*.

Knights Elected in the Reiga of King Henry the Fifth.

111. Sir *John Dabrichcourt*, Knight.
112. *Richard Vere*, Earl of *Oxford*.
113. *Thomas Camoys*, Lord *Camoys*.
114. Sir *Symon Felbryge*, Knight.
115. Sir *William Harington*, Knight.
116. *John Holland*, Earl of *Huntingdon*.
117. *Sigismund* Emperor of *Germany*.
118. ----- Duke of *Briga*.
119. Sir *John Blount*, Knight.
120. Sir *John Robessart*, Knight.
121. Sir *William Philip*, Knight, after Lord *Bardolf*.
122. *John* King of *Portugal*.
123. *Ericus* King of *Denmark*.
124. *Richard Beauchamp*, Earl of *Warwick*; after Lieutenant General and Governor in *France* and *Normandy*.
125. *Thomas Montacute*, Earl of *Salisbury*.
126. *Robert Willoughby*, Lord *Willoughby*.
127. *Henry Fitz-Hugh*, Lord *Fitz-Hugh*.
128. Sir *John Grey*, Knight, Earl of *Tankerville*.
129. *Hugh Stafford*, Lord *Bourchier*.
130. *John Mowbray*, Lord *Mowbray*, Earl Marshal.
131. *William de la Poole*, Earl of *Suffolk*; after Marquess and Duke of *Suffolk*.
132. *John Clifford*, Lord *Clifford*.
133. Sir *Lewis Robessart* Knight, after Lord *Bourchier*.
134. Sir *Hoer Tank Clux*, Knight.
135. Sir *Walter Hungerford* Knight, after Lord *Hungerford*, and Lord Treasurer of *England*.
136. *Philip*, Duke of *Burgundy*.

Knights Elected in the Reign of King Henry the Sixth.

137. *John Talbot*, Lord *Talbot*, after Earl of *Shrewsbury*.
138. *Thomas Scales*, Lord *Scales*.
139. Sir *John de la Poole*, Knight.
140. *John de la Poole*, third Son of *John* the First, King of *Portugal*.
141. *Humphrey*

					
Thomas Earle of Arundell 95	Edmund Earle of Stafford 94	Edmund Earle of Kent 98	Ralph Earle of Hereford 96	Gilbert Lord Reas 97	Gilbert Lord Talbot 98
					
John Lord Lovell 99	Hugh Lord Burnell 100	Thomas Lord Morley 101	Edward Lord Powis 102	St. John Cornwall 103	St. William Arundell 104
					
St. John Stan ler 105	St. Robert Pinfetle 106	St. Thomas Compston 107	St. Thomas Erpyngham 108	St. John Sulby 109	St. Sandrich de Hane 110
					
St. John Dabrich Court 111	Richard Earle of Oxford 112	Thomas Lord Camoy 113	St. Simon Felbryge 114	St. William Earington 115	John Earle of Huntingdon 116
					
Sigismund Emp. of Germany 117	Duke of Briga 118	St. John Blount 119	St. John Swepst 120	St. William Philipp 121	John King of Portugal 122
					
Ericus King of Denmark 123	Richard Earle of Warwick 124	Thomas Earle of Salisbury 125	Robert Lord Willoughby 126	Henry Lord Fitz Hugh 127	St. John Grey 128
					
Hugh Lord Bouyachier 129	John Earle Marshall 130	William Earle of Suffolke 131	John Lord Clifford 132	St. Lewis Robert 133	Heer Antre Chus 134
					
Walter Lord Langaeisford 135	Philip Duke of Burgundy 136	John Lord Talbot 137	Thomas Lord Scales 138	St. John Pastolf 139	Peter Duke of Coimbra 140

					
Humphrey Earle of Gloucester 141	John Ratcliff 142	John Earle of Arundell 143	Richard Duke of Yorke 144	Edward King of Portugal 145	Edward Duke of Braganza 146
					
John Lord Grey of Ratcliff 147	Richard Earle of Salisbury 148	William Lord Fauconbridge 149	Albert Emperor of Germany 150	John Earle of Somerset 151	Ralph Lord Neville 152
					
Henry Duke of Beaufort 153	John Viscount Beaumont 154	Gaston Earle of Foix 155	John Earle of Kent 156	John Lord Beaumont 157	Alphonso King of Portugal 158
					
Albro Earle of Hereford 159	Thomas Lord Howard 160	St. Francis Surien 161	Alphonso King of Aragon 162	Casimiro King of Poland 163	William Duke of Brunswick 164
					
Richard Lord Rivers 165	John Duke of Norfolk 166	Henry Viscount Rochford 167	St. Philip Wentworth 168	St. Edmund Earl of Kent 169	Frederick the Great 170
					
John Lord of Hereford 171	John Lord of Wells 172	Thomas Lord of Hereford 173	Edward Duke of Wales 174	Lupo Duke of Pembroke 175	Anne Duke of Anjou 176
					
John Lord of Hereford 177	John Lord Beaumont 178	Richard Earle of Warwick 179	William Lord Bonville 180	John Lord Wenlock 181	St. Thomas Earl of Kent 182
					
John Earle of Worcester 183	John Earle of Worcester 184	John Earle of Worcester 185	John Earle of Worcester 186	William Earle of Worcester 187	William Earle of Worcester 188

141. *Humfrey Stafford*, Earl of *Stafford*, after Created Duke of *Buckingham*.
142. Sir *John Ratclyff*, Knight.
143. *John Fitz-Alan*, Earl of *Arundell*.
144. *Richard*, Duke of *York*, the Kings Lieutenant in *France* and *Normandy*.
145. *Edward*, King of *Portugall*.
146. *Edmund Beaufort*, Earl of *Moriton*, after Earl of *Dorset*, and Duke of *Somerset*.
147. Sir *John Grey*, Knight.
148. *Richard Nevil* Earl of *Salisbury*, after Lord Chancellor of *England*.
149. *William Nevil*, Lord *Fauconbridge*, after Earl of *Kent*.
150. *Albert*, Emperor of *Germany*.
151. *John Beaufort*, Earl of *Somerset*, after Duke of *Somerset*, and Earl of *Kendall*.
152. *Ralph Butler* Lord *Sudeley*, after Lord Treasurer of *England*.
153. *Henry* Duke of *Viseo*, fourth Son of *John* the First King of *Portugal*.
154. *John Beaumont*, Viscount *Beaumont*, after High Constable of *England*.
155. *Gaston de Foix*, Earl of *Longeville*, and *Benanges*, Captan de *Buch*.
156. *John de Foix*, Earl of *Kendall*.
157. *John Beauchamp*, Lord *Beauchamp* of *Pomik*, and after Lord Treasurer of *England*.
158. *Alphonfus*, the Fifth King of *Portugal*.
159. *Albro Vasques d'Almada*, Earl of *Averence* in *Normandy*.
160. *Thomas Hoo*, Lord *Hoo*.
161. Sir *Francis Surien*, Knight.
162. *Alphonfus*, King of *Aragon*.
163. *Casmire* the Fourth, King of *Poland*.
164. *William*, Duke of *Brunswick*.
165. *Richard Widvile* Lord *Rivers*, after Created Earl *Rivers*.
166. *John Mowbray*, Duke of *Norfolk*.
167. *Henry Bouchier* Viscount *Bouchier*, after Lord Treasurer of *England*, and Earl of *Essex*.
168. Sir *Philip Wentworth*, Knight.
169. Sir *Edward Hall*, Knight.
170. *Frederick* the Third, Emperor of *Germany*.
171. *John Talbot*, Earl of *Shrewsbury*.
172. *Lionell Wells*, Lord *Wells*.
173. *Thomas Stanley*, Lord *Stanley*.
174. *Edward*, Prince of *Wales*.
175. *Jaspar* Earl of *Penbroke*, after Duke of *Bedford*.
176. *James Butler*, Earl of *Wiltshire*.
177. *John Sutton*, Lord *Dudley*.
178. *John Bouchier*, Lord *Berners*.
179. *Richard Nevil*, Earl of *Warwick*.
180. *William Bonvill*, Lord *Bonvill*.
181. *John Wenlock*, Lord *Wenlock*.
182. Sir *Thomas Kyriell*, Knight.

Knights Elected in the Reign of King Edward the Fourth.

183. *George*, Duke of *Clarence*.
184. Sir *William Chamberlayne*, Knight.
185. *John Typtoft* Earl of *Worcester*, after High Constable of *England*.
186. *John Newel* Lord *Montague*, after Earl of *Northumberland*, and Marquess *Montague*.
187. *William Herbert*, Lord *Herbert*, after Earl of *Penbroke*.
188. *William Hastings*, Lord *Hastings*.

189. *John*

189. *John Scrope*, Lord *Scrope*.
190. Sir *John Astley*, Knight.
191. *Ferdinand* King of *Naples*, Son of *Alphonfus* King of *Aragon*.
192. *Francis Sfortia*, Duke of *Milan*.
193. *James Douglas*, Earl of *Douglas*.
194. *Galeard*, Lord *Duras*.
195. Sir *Robert Harcourt*, Knight.
196. *Anthony Widvile*, Lord *Scales* and *Nucelles*, after Earl *Rivers*.
197. *Richard* Duke of *Gloucester*, after King of *England*, of that name the Third.
198. ----- Lord *Mountgryson* of *Apulia*.
199. *John Mowbray*, Duke of *Norfolk*.
200. *John de la Poole*, Duke of *Suffolk*.
201. *William Fitz-Alan*, Earl of *Arundell*.
202. *John Stafford*, Earl of *Wiltshire*.
203. *John Howard*, Lord *Howard*, after Duke of *Norfolk*.
204. *Walter Ferrars*, Lord *Ferrars* of *Chartley*.
205. *Walter Blount*, Lord *Mountjoy*.
206. *Charles*, Duke of *Burgundy*.
207. *Henry Stafford*, Duke of *Buckingham*, after Constable of *England*.
208. *Thomas Fitz-Alan*, Lord *Matrevers*, after Earl of *Arundell*.
209. Sir *William Parr*.
210. *Frederick*, Duke of *Urbin*.
211. *Henry Percy*, Earl of *Northumberland*.
212. *Edward* Prince of *Wales*.
213. *Richard* Duke of *Tork*, second Son to King *Edward* the Fourth.
214. *Thomas Grey*, Earl of *Huntingdon* and Marquess *Dorset*.
215. Sir *Thomas Montgomery*, Knight.
216. *Ferdinand*, King of *Castile*.
217. *Hercules*, Duke of *Ferara*.
218. *John*, King of *Portugal*, Son to *Alphonfus* the Fifth.

Knights Elected in the Reign of King Richard the Third.

219. Sir *John Coniers*, Knight.
220. *Thomas Howard*, Earl of *Surrey*, after Lord Treasurer of *England*, and Duke of *Norfolk*.
221. *Francis* Viscount *Lovell*.
222. Sir *Richard Ratcliff*, Knight.
223. Sir *Thomas Burgh*, Knight, after Lord *Burgh*.
224. *Thomas Stanley*, Lord *Stanley*, after Earl of *Derby*.
225. Sir *Richard Tunstall*, Knight.

Knights Elected in the Reign of King Henry the Seventh.

226. *John Vere*, Earl of *Oxford*.
227. Sir *Giles d' Aubeny*, Knight, after Lord *d' Aubeny*.
228. *Thomas Fitz-Alan*, Earl of *Arundell*.
229. *George Talbot*, Earl of *Shrewsbury*.
230. *John Wells*, Viscount *Wells*.
231. *George Stanley*, Lord *Strange*.
232. Sir *Edward Wydevile*, Knight Banneret.
233. *John Dynham*, Lord *Dynham*, Lord Treasurer of *England*.
234. *Maximilian* the First, Emperor of *Germany*.
235. Sir *John Savage*, Knight.
236. Sir *William Stanley*, Knight, Lord *Chamberlain*.

					
John Lord Scrope 189	S. John Arley 190	Ferdinand king of Naples 191	Francis Sfortia Duke of Milan 192	James Earle Douglas 193	Gervase Lord Ducas 194
					
S. Robert Harcourt 195	Anthony Lord Scalas 196	Richard Duke of Gloucester 197	Lord Mountgryson 198	John Duke of Norfolk 199	John Duke of Suffolk 200
					
William Earle of Arundell 201	John Earle of Wiltshire 202	John Lord Howard 203	Walter Lord Ferraris 204	Walter Lord Montgoy 205	Charles Duke of Burgundy 206
					
Henry Duke of Buckingham 207	Thomas Lord Matrevers 208	S. William Parr 209	Frederick Duke of Urbino 210	Henry Earle of Northumberland 211	Edward Prince of Wales 212
					
Richard Duke of York 213	Thomas Marquess Dorset 214	S. Thomas Montgomery 215	Ferdinand king of Castile 216	Hercules Duke of Ferrara 217	John king of Portugal 218
					
S. John Conyers 219	Thomas Earle of Surrey 220	Francis Viscount Louell 221	S. Richard Ratcliff 222	S. Thomas Burgh 223	Thomas Lord Stanley 224
					
S. Richard Tunstall 225	John Earle of Oxford 226	S. Giles d'Aubenev 227	Thomas Earle of Arundell 228	George Earle of Shrewsbury 229	John Viscount Welle 230
					
George Lord Stridage 231	S. Edward Wydevile 232	John Lord Penham 233	Maximilian the 1 st Emperor 234	S. John Sa- vage 235	S. William Stanley 236

					
St. John Cheacy 237	Alphonsus Duke of Calabria 238	Prince Ar- thur 239	Thomas Marquis Dorset 240	Henry Earle of Northumberland 241	Henry Earle of Essex 242
					
St. Charles Somerset 243	Robert Lord Brook 244	St. Edward Ryming 245	St. Gilbert Talbot 246	St. Richard Poole 247	Edward Duke of Buckingham 248
					
Henry Duke of Yorke 249	Edward Earle of Devonshire 250	St. Richard Wulford 251	Edmund Earle of Suffolke 252	St. Thomas Lovell 253	St. Reginald Bray 254
					
John King of Denmark 255	G. Phaulo Duke of Urbin 256	Gerald Earle of Kildare 257	Henry Earle of Wiltshire 258	Richard Earle of Kent 259	St. Rys ap Thomas 260
					
Philip King of Carille 261	St. Thomas Bruden 262	Charles Prince of Spaines 263	Thomas Lord Darcey 264	Edward Lord Dudley 265	Emanuel King of Portugal 266
					
Thomas Lord Howard 267	Thomas Lord la Ware 268	St. Henry Marmen 269	George Lord Abercromby 270	St. Edward Howard 271	St. Charles Brandon 272
					
Julian de Melicay 273	Edward Lord Montogla 274	Thomas Lord Dacres 275	St. William Sanders 276	Henry Earle of Devonshire 277	Ferdinand Prince of Spaine 278
					
Richard Lord Bull 279	St. Thomas Bullen 280	Walter Lord Torrance 281	Arthur Viscount Lisle 282	Robert Viscount FitzWalter 283	William Earle of Brundell 284

- 237. Sir John Cheney, Knight Baneret.
- 238. Alphonſus, Duke of Calabria.
- 239. Arthur, Prince of Wales.
- 240. Thomas Grey, Marqueſs Dorſet.
- 241. Henry Percy, Earl of Northumberland.
- 242. Henry Bouchier, Earl of Eſſex.
- 243. Sir Charles Somerſet, Knight Baneret, after Earl of Worceſter.
- 244. Robert Willoughby, Lord Brook.
- 245. Sir Edward Poyning, Knight.
- 246. Sir Gilbert Talbot, Knight Baneret.
- 247. Sir Richard Poole, Knight.
- 248. Edward Stafford, Duke of Buckingham.
- 249. Henry Duke of York, ſecond Son to King Henry the Seventh, after King of England, of that name the Eighth.
- 250. Edward Courtney, Earl of Devonſhire.
- 251. Sir Richard Guildford, Knight Baneret.
- 252. Edmund de la Poole, Earl of Suffolke.
- 253. Sir Thomas Lovel, Knight Baneret.
- 254. Sir Reginald Bray, Knight Baneret.
- 255. John, King of Denmark.
- 256. Guido Ubaldo, Duke of Urbin.
- 257. Gerald Fitz Gerald, Earl of Kildare.
- 258. Henry Stafford Lord Stafford, after Earl of Wilſhire.
- 259. Richard Grey, Earl of Kent.
- 260. Sir Rys ap Thomas, Knight Baneret.
- 261. Philip, King of Caſtile.
- 262. Sir Thomas Brandon, Knight Baneret.
- 263. Charles, Arch-Duke of Auſtria, Prince of ſpaines, after Emperor of Germany.

Knights Elected in the Reign of King Henry the Eighth.

- 264. Thomas Darcy, Lord Darcy.
- 265. Edward Sutton, Lord Dudley.
- 266. Emanuel, King of Portugal.
- 267. Thomas Howard, Lord Howard, eldeſt Son to Thomas Duke of Norfolk.
- 268. Thomas Weſt, Lord la Ware.
- 269. Sir Henry Marney Knight, after Lord Marney.
- 270. George Nevil, Lord Abergavenny.
- 271. Sir Edward Howard Knight, ſecond Son to Thomas Duke of Norfolk.
- 272. Sir Charles Brandon, after Duke of Suffolke.
- 273. Julian de Medices, Brother to Pope Leo the Tenth.
- 274. Edward Stanley, Lord Mountcagle.
- 275. Thomas Dacres, Lord Dacres of Gyleſland.
- 276. Sir William Sandes Knight, after Lord Sandes.
- 277. Henry Courtney, Earl of Devonſhire, and after Marqueſs of Exceter.
- 278. Ferdinand, Prince and Infant of ſpain, Arch-Duke of Auſtria, after Emperor of Germany.
- 279. Sir Richard Wingfield, Knight.
- 280. Sir Thomas Bullen Knight, after Viſcount Rochford, and Earl of Wilſhire and Ormond.
- 281. Walter d'Euereux, Lord Ferrars of Chartley, after Viſcount Hereford.
- 282. Arthur Plantaginet, Viſcount Liſſe.
- 283. Robert Radcliff, Viſcount Fitz Walter, after Earl of Suffex.
- 284. William Fitz-Alan, Earl of Arundel.

U u u u

285. Thomas

285. *Thomas Mannors*, Lord *Roos*, after Earl of *Rutland*.
286. *Henry Fitz Roy*, after Earl of *Nottingham*, and Duke of *Richmond* and *Somerset*.
287. *Ralph Nevil*, Earl of *Westmerland*.
288. *William Blount*, Lord *Montjoy*.
289. *Sir William Fitz Williams* Knight, after Earl of *Southampton*.
290. *Sir Henry Guildford*, Knight.
291. *Francis the French King*.
292. *John Vere*, Earl of *Oxford*.
293. *Henry Percy*, Earl of *Northumberland*.
294. *Anne*, Duke of *Montmorency*.
295. *Philip Chabot*, Earl of *Newblanche*.
296. *James*, the Fifth King of *Scotland*.
297. *Sir Nicholas Carew*, Knight.
298. *Henry Clifford*, Earl of *Cumberland*.
299. *Thomas Cromwell*, Lord *Cromwell*, after Earl of *Essex*.
300. *John Russell*, Lord *Russell*, after Earl of *Bedford*.
301. *Sir Thomas Cheney*, Knight.
302. *Sir William Kingston*, Knight.
303. *Thomas Audley*, Lord *Audley of Walden*, Lord Chancellor of *England*.
304. *Sir Anthony Browne*, Knight.
305. *Edward Seymour*, Earl of *Hertford*, after Duke of *Somerset*.
306. *Henry Howard*, Earl of *Surrey*.
307. *Sir John Gage*, Knight.
308. *Sir Anthony Wingfield*, Knight.
309. *John Sutton* Viscount *Lisle*, after Earl of *Warwick*, and Duke of *Northumberland*.
310. *William Paulet*, Lord *St. John of Basing*, after Earl of *Wiltshire*, and Marquess of *Winchester*.
311. *William Parr*, Lord *Parr of Kendall*, after Earl of *Essex*, and Marquess of *Northampton*.
312. *Sir John Wallop*, Knight.
313. *Henry Fitz-Alen*, Earl of *Arundell*.
314. *Sir Anthony St. Leger*, Knight.
315. *Francis Talbot*, Earl of *Shrewsbury*.
316. *Thomas Wriothesley*, Lord *Wriothesley*, after Earl of *Southampton*.

Knights Elected in the Reign of King Edward the Sixth.

317. *Henry Grey*, Marquess *Dorset*, after Duke of *Suffolk*.
318. *Edward Stanley*, Earl of *Derby*.
319. *Thomas Seymour*, Lord *Seymour* of *Sudely*.
320. *Sir William Paget*, Knight, after Lord *Paget* of *Beaufort*.
321. *Francis Hastings*, Earl of *Huntingdon*.
322. *George Brook*, Lord *Cobham*.
323. *Thomas West*, Lord *LaWare*.
324. *Sir William Herbert*, Knight, after Lord *Herbert* of *Cardiff*, and Earl of *Penbroke*.
325. *Henry*, 2. the *French King*.
326. *Edward Fynes*, Lord *Clynton*, after Earl of *Lincolne*.
327. *Thomas Darcy*, Lord *Darcy* of *Chiche*.
328. *Henry Nevil*, Earl of *Westmerland*.
329. *Sir Andrew Dudley*, Knight.

Knights Elected in the Reign of Queen Mary.

330. *Philip*, Prince of *Spain*, after King of *England*.
331. *Henry Radclyff*, Earl of *Suffex*.
332. *Emanuel Philibert*, Duke of *Savoy*.

					
Thomas Lord Roos. 285.	Henry Fitz Roy. 286.	Ralph Earle of Westmerland. 287.	William Lord Mountjoy. 288.	S. William Fitz Williams. 289.	S. Henry Guildford. 290.
					
Francis the first French king. 291.	John Earle of Oxford. 292.	Henry Earle of Northumberland. 293.	Anne Duke of Montmorncy. 294.	Philip Earle of Neublance. 295.	James the 5. king of Scotland. 296.
					
S. Nicholas Carew. 297.	Henry Earle of Cumberland. 298.	Thomas Lord Cromwell. 299.	John Lord Russell. 300.	S. Thomas Chener. 301.	S. William Kingston. 302.
					
Thomas Lord Audley. 303.	S. Anthony Browne. 304.	Edward Earle of Hertford. 305.	Henry Earle of Surrey. 306.	S. John Wager. 307.	S. Anthony Wager old. 308.
					
John Viscount Lisle. 309.	Will. Paulet Lord of John of Basing. 310.	William Lord Parr. 311.	S. John Wallop. 312.	Henry Earle of Arundell. 313.	S. Anthony Leger. 314.
					
Francis Earle of Arundisbury. 315.	Thomas Lord Wrothley. 316.	Henry Marques Dorset. 317.	Edward Earle of Derby. 318.	Thomas Lord Seymour. 319.	S. William Paget. 320.
					
Francis Earle of Huntingdon. 321.	George Lord Cobham. 322.	Thomas Lord la Ware. 323.	S. William Herbert. 324.	Henry the 2. French king. 325.	Edward Lord Clinton. 326.
					
Thomas Lord Davy. 327.	Henry Earle of Westmerland. 328.	S. Andrew Dudley. 329.	Philip Prince of Spaine. 330.	Henry Earle of Sussex. 331.	Emanuel Duke of Savoy. 332.

					
William Lord Howard 335	Anthony Viscount Mountagu 334	S ^r Edward Hotham 335	Thomas Earle of Sussex. 336	William Lord Howard 337	S ^r Robert Rochester. 338
					
Thomas Duke of Norfolk. 339.	Henry Earle of Rutland 340	S ^r Robert Dudley. 341	Adolph Duke of Holstein. 342	George Earle of Shrewsbury 343	Henry Lord Hunsdon. 344
					
Thomas Earle of Northumberland 345	Ambrose Earle of Warwick. 346.	Charles the 9 th French King. 347	Francis Earle of Bedford. 348.	S ^r Henry Sidney 349	Maximilian the 2 ^d Emperour. 350.
					
Henry Earle of Northumberland 351	William Earle of Worcester 352	Francis Duke of Montmorency 353	Walter Viscount Hereford 354	William Lord Burghley. 355.	Arthur Lord Grey 356.
					
Edmund Lord Chandos 357.	Henry Earle of Derby. 358	Henry Earle of Pembroke 359.	Henry the third French King. 360.	Charles Lord Howard 361	Rodolph Emperour of Germany 362.
					
Frederick the 2 ^d King of Denmark 363	John Count Palatine 364.	Edward Earle of Rutland 365.	William Lord Cobham 366	Henry Lord Scipio 367.	Robert Earle of Essex 368
					
Thomas Earle of Ormond 369	S ^r Christopher Hatton 370	Henry Earle of Suffolk 371	Thomas Lord Buckhurst 372	Henry the 4 th French King 373	James the 6 th King of Scotland. 374
					
Gilbert Earle of Shrewsbury 375	George Earle of Cumberland 376	Henry Earle of Northumberland 377	Edward Earle of Worcester 378	Thomas Lord Bury 379	Edmund Lord Sheffield 380

333. *William Howard*, Lord Howard of Effingham.
 334. *Anthony Browne*, Viscount Mountague.
 335. *Sir Edward Hastings*, Knight, after Lord Hastings of Loughborough.
 336. *Thomas Radcliff*, Earl of Sussex.
 337. *William Grey*, Lord Grey of Wilton.
 338. *Sir Robert Rochester*, Knight.

Knights Elected in the Reign of Queen Elizabeth.

339. *Thomas Howard* Duke of Norfolk.
 340. *Henry Mannors*, Earl of Rutland.
 341. *Sir Robert Dudley*, Knight, after Earl of Leicester.
 342. *Adolph*, Duke of Holstein.
 343. *George Talbot*, Earl of Shrewsbury.
 344. *Henry Carey*, Lord Hunsdon.
 345. *Thomas Percy*, Earl of Northumberland.
 346. *Ambrose Dudley*, Earl of Warwick.
 347. *Charles 9.* the French King.
 348. *Francis Russell*, Earl of Bedford.
 349. *Sir Henry Sidney*, Knight.
 350. *Maximilian*, the second Emperor of Germany.
 351. *Henry Hastings*, Earl of Huntingdon.
 352. *William Somerset*, Earl of Worcester.
 353. *Francis*, Duke of Montmorency.
 354. *Walter d'Eureux*, Viscount Hereford, after Earl of Essex.
 355. *William Cecil*, Lord Burghley, after Lord Treasurer of England.
 356. *Arthur Grey*, Lord Grey of Wilton.
 357. *Edmund Bruges*, Lord Chandos.
 358. *Henry Stanley*, Earl of Derby.
 359. *Henry Herbert*, Earl of Pembroke.
 360. *Henry 3.* the French King.
 361. *Charles Howard*, Lord Howard of Effingham, after Earl of Nottingham.
 362. *Rodolph*, Emperor of Germany.
 363. *Frederick*, the Second King of Denmark.
 364. *John Casimire*, Count Palatine of the Rhine, Duke of Bavaria.
 365. *Edward Mannors*, Earl of Rutland.
 366. *William Brook*, Lord Cobham.
 367. *Henry Scroop*, Lord Scroop of Bolton.
 368. *Robert d'Eureux*, Earl of Essex.
 369. *Thomas Butler*, Earl of Ormond.
 370. *Sir Christopher Hatton*, Knight, after Lord Chancellor of England.
 371. *Henry Radcliff*, Earl of Sussex.
 372. *Thomas Sackville*, Lord Buckhurst, after Lord Treasurer of England, and Earl of Dorset.
 373. *Henry 4.* the French King.
 374. *James*, the Sixth King of Scotland, after King of England, France, and Ireland.
 375. *Gilbert Talbot*, Earl of Shrewsbury.
 376. *George Clifford*, Earl of Cumberland.
 377. *Henry Percy*, Earl of Northumberland.
 378. *Edward Somerset*, Earl of Worcester.
 379. *Thomas Burogh*, Lord Burogh of Gainsborough.
 380. *Edward Sheffield*, Lord Sheffield, after Earl of Mulgrave.

- 381. Sir Francis Knolles, Knight.
- 382. Frederick, Duke of Wirtemberg.
- 383. Thomas Howard, Lord Howard of Walden, after Earl of Suffolk, and
° Lord Treasurer of England.
- 384. George Carey, Lord Hunsdon.
- 385. Charles Blount, Lord Montjoy, after Earl of Devonshire.
- 386. Sir Henry Lea, Knight.
- 387. Robert Radcliff, Earl of Sussex.
- 388. Henry Brooke, Lord Cobham.
- 389. Thomas Scroop, Lord Scroop of Bolton.
- 390. William Stanley, Earl of Derby.
- 391. Thomas Cecill, Lord Burghley.

Knights Elected in the Reign of King James.

- 392. Henry, Prince of Wales.
- 393. Christiern, the Fourth King of Denmark.
- 394. Lodowick Stewart, Duke of Lenox, and after Duke of Richmond.
- 395. Henry Wriothesley, Earl of Southampton.
- 396. John Erskin, Earl of Marr.
- 397. William Herbert, Earl of Pembroke.
- 398. Ulrick, Duke of Holstein.
- 399. Henry Howard, Earl of Northampton.
- 400. Robert Cecill, Earl of Salisbury.
- 401. Thomas Howard, Viscount Bindon.
- 402. George Hume, Earl of Dunbarr.
- 403. Philip Herbert, Earl of Montgomery.
- 404. Charles Stewart Duke of York, after Prince of Wales, and King of England,
by the Title of Charles the First.
- 405. Thomas Howard, Earl of Arundell and Surrey, after Earl of Norfolk.
- 406. Robert Carre, Viscount Rochester, after Earl of Somerset.
- 407. Frederick, Count Palatine of the Rhine, Prince Elector of the
Empire, and after King of Bohemia.
- 408. Maurice, van Nassau, Prince of Orange.
- 409. Thomas Ereskin, Viscount Fenton.
- 410. William Knolles, Lord Knolles of Grayes, after Viscount Walsingham, and
Earl of Banbury.
- 411. Francis Mannors, Earl of Rutland.
- 412. Sir George Villiers Knight, after Baron of Whaddon, then Earl and Mar-
quess of Buckingham, and lastly Earl of Coventry, and Duke of Buck-
ingham.
- 413. Robert Sidney, Viscount Lisle, after Earl of Leicester.
- 414. James Hamilton, Marquess Hamilton, and Earl of Cambridge.
- 415. Esme Stewart, Duke of Lenox.
- 416. Christian, Duke of Brunswick.
- 417. William Cecill, Earl of Salisbury.
- 418. James Hay, Earl of Carlisle.
- 419. Edward Sackville, Earl of Dorset.
- 420. Henry Rich, Earl of Holland.
- 421. Thomas Howard, Viscount Andover, after Earl of Berkshire.

Knights Elected in the Reign of King Charles the First.

- 422. Claude de Lorraine, Duke of Chevreuse.
- 423. Gustavus Adolphus, King of Sweden.
- 424. Henry Frederick van Nassau, Prince of Orange.
- 425. Theophilus Howard, Earl of Suffolk.
- 426. William Compton, Earl of Northampton.
- 427. Richard Weston, Lord Weston of Neyland, Lord Treasurer of England,
and after Earl of Portland.
- 428. Robert Barty, Earl of Lindsey.

429. William

					
St. Francis Knollas 381	Frederick Duke of Wendenbergh 382	Thomas Lord Howard 383	George Lord Hudson 384	Charles Lord Mounsey 385	Henry Lord 386
					
Robert Earle of Sison 387	Henry Lord Cobham 388	Thomas Lord Scrope 389	William Earle of Derby 390	Thomas Lord Bughley 391	Henry Prince of Wales 392
					
Christern the King of Denmark 393	Lodowick Duke of Lenox 394	Henry Earle of Southampton 395	John Earle of Marr 396	William Earle of Pembroke 397	Ulrich Duke of Holstein 398
					
Henry Earle of Northampton 399	Robert Earle of Salisbury 400	Thomas Viscount Boudon 401	George Earle of Dunbar 402	Philip Earle of Montfomey 403	Charles Duke of Wirke 404
					
Thomas Earle of Arundell 405	Robert Viscount Porchester 406	Frederick Count Palatine 407	Maurice Prince of Orange 408	Thomas Viscount Fenton 409	William Lord Kneller 410
					
Francis Earle of Rutland 411	St. George Villars 412	Robert Viscount Lisle 413	James Marquis Hamilton 414	Eme Duke of Lenox 415	Christian Duke of Brunswick 416
					
William Earle of Salisbury 417	James Earle of Carlisle 418	Lord Earle of 419	Henry Earle of Holland 420	Thomas Viscount Andover 421	Claude Duke of Chevereux 422
					
William Lord of 423	Henry Prince of 424	Theophilus Earle 425	William Earle of Northampton 426	Richard Lord Warton 427	Robert Lord 428

					
James Earl of Hamilton 420	James Viscount Hamilton 420	Charles Count Palatine 420	James Duke of Lennox 420	James Earl of Argyll 420	William Earl of Mar 420
					
James Earl of Argyll 420	Charles Prince of Wales 420	Thomas Earl of Marlborough 420	James Duke of York 420	Rupert Count Palatine 420	Prince of Wales 420
					
Bernard Duke of Saxe 441	Maurice Prince of Orange 442	James Duke of York 442	Louis Duke of Prussia 444	George Duke of Brunswick 448	William Duke of Hamilton 440
					
Thomas Earl of Southampton 447	William Marquis of Newcastle 448	James Marquis of Montrose 448	James Earl of Derby 450	George Earl of Bristol 451	Henry Duke of Gloucester 452
					
Prince Prince of Denmark 453	William Prince of Orange 454	Frederick Elector of Brandenburg 454	John Casper Count of Marburg 455	George Prince of Monaco 457	St. Edward Mountaine 458
					
William Marquis of Montrose 459	Robert Earl of Oxford 460	Charles Duke of Richmond 461	Montagu Earl of Lindsey 462	Edward Earl of Manchester 462	William Earl of Stafford 463
					
Christopher Prin ce of Denmark 465	James Duke of Cambridge 466	James Duke of Cambridge 466	Charles King of Sweden 468	John Duke of Strathmore 469	Christopher Duke of Atholmarle 470
					
John Duke of Lauderdale 471	James Duke of Cambridge 472	Henry Earl of Argyll 473	William Earl of Bedford 474	Henry Earl of Argyll 475	Thomas Earl of Argyll 476

- 429. *William Cecill*, Earl of *Exceter*.
- 430. *James Hamilton*, Marquess *Hamilton*, Earl of *Cambridge* and *Arran*.
- 431. *Charles Lodowick*, Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*, Prince Elector of the *Empire*, and Duke of *Bavaria*.
- 432. *James Stewart*, Duke of *Lenox*, after Earl of *March*.
- 433. *Henry Danvers*, Earl of *Danby*.
- 434. *William Douglas*, Earl of *Morton*.
- 435. *Algernon Percy*, Earl of *Northumberland*.
- 436. *Charles*, Prince of *Wales*, now King of *England*, *Scotland*, *France*, and *Ireland*, of that name the Second, and present Sovereign of the most Noble Order of the *Garter*.
- 437. *Thomas Wentworth*, Earl of *Strafford*.
- 438. *James Stewart* Duke of *Tork* and *Albanie*, second Son to King *Charles* the First.
- 439. *Rupert*, Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*, and Duke of *Bavaria*, after Earl of *Holderness*, and Duke of *Cumberland*.
- 440. *William van Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*.
- 441. *Bernard de Foix*, Duke d' *Fspernon*.

Knights Elected in the Reign of King *Charles* the Second.

- 442. *Maurice*, Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*, and Duke of *Bavaria*.
- 443. *James Boteler*, Marquess of *Ormond*, since Earl of *Brecknock*, and Duke of *Ormond*.
- 444. *Edward*, Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*, and Duke of *Bavaria*.
- 445. *George Villers*, Duke of *Buckingham*.
- 446. *William Hamilton*, Duke of *Hamilton*.
- 447. *Thomas Wriothesley*, Earl of *Southampton*, after Lord Treasurer of *England*.
- 448. *William Cavendish*, Marquess of *New-Castle*, since Duke of *New-Castle*.
- 449. *James Graham*, Marquess of *Montrose*.
- 450. *James Stanley*, Earl of *Derby*.
- 451. *George Digby*, Earl of *Bristol*.
- 452. *Henry Stewart* Duke of *Gloucester*, third Son to King *Charles* the First.
- 453. *Henry Charles de la Tremoille*, Prince de *Tarente*.
- 454. *William Henry van Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*.
- 455. *Frederick William*, Prince Elector of the *Empire*, Marquess of *Brandenburg*.
- 456. *John Gaspar Ferdinand de Marchin*, Count de *Gravil*.
- 457. Sir *George Monck*, Knight, after Duke of *Albemarle*.
- 458. Sir *Edward Mountague*, Knight, after Earl of *Sandwich*.
- 459. *William Seymour*, Marquess of *Hertford*, after Duke of *Somerset*.
- 460. *Aubrie de Vere*, Earl of *Oxford*.
- 461. *Charles Stewart*, Duke of *Richmond* and *Lenox*.
- 462. *Mountague Barty*, Earl of *Lindsey*.
- 463. *Edward Mountague*, Earl of *Manchester*.
- 464. *William Wentworth*, Earl of *Strafford*.
- 465. *Christiernæ*, Prince of *Denmark*, since King of *Denmark*.
- 466. *James Scot*, Duke of *Monmouth* and *Bucclogh*.
- 467. *James Stewart*, Duke of *Cambridge*.
- 468. *Charles* the Eleventh, King of *Sweden*, *Goths*, and *Vandals*.
- 469. *John George* the Second, Duke of *Saxony*, *Juliers*, *Cleves*, and *Monts*, and Prince Elector of the *Empire*.
- 470. *Christophher Monck*, Duke of *Albemarle*.
- 471. *John Maitland*, Duke of *Lauderdale*.
- 472. *Henry Somerset*, Marquess of *Worcester*.
- 473. *Henry Jermyn*, Earl of *St. Albans*.
- 474. *William Russell*, Earl of *Bedford*.
- 475. *Henry Bennet*, Earl of *Arlington*.
- 476. *Thomas Butler* Earle of *Osbery*.

Remarques

Remarques upon some of the preceding Scutcheons of Arms.

IN divers of the Plates, set up at the back of the Stalls in the Chaire of St. George's Chappel at Windsor, the Quarterings appertaining to the Knights-Companions are also added; in some of which, so many are taken therinto, they could not well be comprehended in the size of the Scutcheons here allowed, and therefore we chose to represent only the first Coat in each Plate: but because those were not always their Paternal Arms, lest our Reader should think us guilty of mistake, we add, That now and then the Knights-Companions liked to have their Wives Arms, such as were Heirs, marshalled before their own, whereupon it falls out that these (not their Paternal Arms) appear in some few of the preceding Scutcheons, nevertheless in such case the whole Quarterings in the Plate follow. For instance; Richard Nevil, who married Elinor Daughter and Heir of Thomas Montacute Earl of Salisbury, being created Earl of Salisbury after his Father-in-Laws decease, bore Montacute and Monthermer quarterly in the first Quarter, and Nevil in the second. And his eldest Son having married Anne, Sister and sole Heir of Henry Duke of Warwick, marshall'd first^b her Arms, next his Mothers, and both before his own. In like manner William Nevil, that married Joane Daughter and Heir of Thomas Lord Fauconbridge, placed^c her Arms in the first Quarter, and his own in the second. And upon the same account in^d Sir John Blount's Plate, is Sanchet set before Blount; and in^e another, Ayela first, Sanchet in the second, and Blount in the third Quarter. So also in^f Thomas Lord Stanley's Plate, we find Latham placed in the first, and Stanley in the second Quarter: and so some others.

Sometimes the Knights-Companions have born their Wives Arms (when Heirs) upon a Scutcheon of Pretences; for so did^g John Lord Montacute, ^h George Lord Strange, and others. And lastly, it appears thatⁱ Sir Charles Somerfet impaled his Wife's Arms with his own.

But now and then, the Knights have forborn to make use of their Paternal Coats, and used those of Heirsses, from whom they were descended; as appears in the Plate of^j John Mowbray Earl Marshal, where only the Arms of Thomas of Brotherton appear, and was so born by his^k Son and Grandchild. And we see, that Sir Thomas Bullen, who at his Installation set up a Plate whereon were the Arms of^l Bullen quartered with Ormond, Hoo, Rochford, and Scintomer, when afterwards he was created Earl of Wiltshire and Ormond (being Son and Heir to Sir Thomas Bullen, and Margaret his Wife, Daughter and one of the Heirs of Thomas Butler Earl of Ormond) changed his Plate, and placed therein, the^m single Coat of Ormond, with this Motto *Rotu Tibus*. So also the paternal Coat of William Lord Willoughby is omitted in his Plate, and those ofⁿ Ufford and Beak born quarterly. The like is done by some of his^o Descendants.

Add to these, the Arms on the Plates of some Stranger-Princes: and among them, Emanuel Philibert Duke of Savoy, in his first Quarter marshals Weisphalic in the first part, Saxony-modern in the second, and in point Angrie. The Prince of Tarant placeth Aragon-Sicile in his first Quarter, and bears Tremoille [Or a Chevron Gules, between three Eaglets Azure, beaked and membered of the second] in a Scutcheon of Pretence. Lastly, the Duke of^p Saxony bears Thuring in the first, and Saxony-modern in the second quarter. In these, and others of like nature, and for like reason, we have taken the first Coat in each Plate, and placed them in the Scutcheons relating to the precedent Catalogue.

To close up all, here follows a Catalogue of the Officers of this most Noble Order.

Prelates of the Order.

William de Edyngton, Bishop of Winchester, Lord Treasurer, and after Lord Chancellor of England.

William de Wykeham, Bishop of Winchester, Lord Chancellor of England.

Henry Beaufort, Bishop of Winchester, Priest Cardinal of St. Eusebius, and Lord Chancellor of England.

William de Waynfleet, Bishop of Winchester, and Lord Chancellor of England.

Peter Courtney, Bishop of Winchester.

Thomas Langton, Bishop of Winchester.

Richard Fox, Bishop of Winchester, and Lord Privy Seal.

Thomas Wolsey, Bishop of Winchester, Priest Cardinal of St. Cecily, and Lord Chancellor of England.

Stephen Gardiner, Bishop of Winchester.

John Poynt, Bishop of Winchester.

Stephen Gardiner restored, and made Lord Chancellor of England.

John White, Bishop of Winchester.

Robert

Robert Horne, Bishop of Winchester.
 John Watson, Bishop of Winchester.
 Thomas Cooper, Bishop of Winchester.
 William Wykham, Bishop of Winchester.
 William Day, Bishop of Winchester.
 Thomas Bilson, Bishop of Winchester.
 James Mountague, Bishop of Winchester.
 Lancelot Andrews, Bishop of Winchester.
 Richard Neyle, Bishop of Winchester.
 Walter Curle, Bishop of Winchester.
 Brian Duppa, Bishop of Winchester.
 George Morley, Bishop of Winchester.

Chancellors of the Order.

Richard Beauchamp, Bishop of Salisbury, and Dean of Windsor.
 Lionel Woodeville, Bishop of Salisbury.
 Thomas Langton, Bishop of Salisbury.
 John Blyth, Bishop of Salisbury.
 Henry Dean, Bishop of Salisbury.
 Edmund Audely, Bishop of Salisbury.
 Sir William Cecil, Knight, Principal Secretary of State.
 Sir William Peters, Knight, Principal Secretary of State.
 Sir Thomas Smith, Knight, Principal Secretary of State.
 Sir Francis Walsingham, Principal Secretary of State.
 Sir Amyas Paulet, Knight, Privy Counsellor.
 Sir John Woollee, Knight, Secretary for the Latine Tongue.
 Sir Edward Dyer, Knight.
 Sir John Herbert, Knight, Principal Secretary of State.
 Sir George More, Knight.
 Sir Francis Crane, Knight.
 Sir Thomas Rowe, Knight.
 Sir James Palmer, Knight and Baronet.
 Sir Henry de Vic, Baronet.
 Seth Ward, Bishop of Salisbury.

Registers of the Order.

John Coringham, Canon of Windsor.
 John Deepden, Canon of Windsor.
 James Goldwell, Canon of Windsor, and Secretary of State.
 Oliver King, Canon of Windsor, Secretary to Prince Henry Son of King Henry the Sixth, to King Edward the Fourth, to King Edward the Fifth, and King Henry the Seventh.
 Richard Nix, Canon of Windsor.
 Christopher Drswick, Dean of Windsor.
 Thomas Wolfey, the Kings Almoner.
 William Atwater, Canon of Windsor, after Bishop of Lincoln.
 Nicholas West, Dean of Windsor.
 John Vesey, Dean of Windsor.
 Richard Sydnor, Canon of Windsor.
 Robert Aldridge, Canon of Windsor.
 Owen Ogletborp, Dean of Windsor.
 John Boxall, Dean of Windsor, and Principal Secretary of State.
 George Carew, Dean of Windsor.
 William Day, Dean of Windsor.
 Robert Benet, Dean of Windsor.
 Giles Tomson, Dean of Windsor, and Bishop of Gloucester.

Anthony

Anthony Maxey, Dean of Windsor.
Marc Antonio de Dominis, Archbishop of Spalato, Dean of Windsor.
Henry Beaumont, Dean of Windsor.
Matthew Wren, Dean of Windsor.
Christopher Wren, Dean of Windsor.
Erunc Ryves, Dean of Windsor.

Garters, Kings of Arms.

Sir William Brugges, Knight.
John Swert.
Sir John Writh, Knight.
Sir Thomas Wriothesley, Knight.
Sir Thomas Wall, Knight.
Sir Christopher Barker, Knight.
Sir Gilbert Detbick, Knight.
Sir William Detbick, Knight.
Sir William Segar, Knight.
Sir John Borough, Knight.
Sir Henry St. George, Knight.
Sir Edward Walker, Knight.

Ushers of the Black-Rod.

William Whitehorse.
John Gray.
Thomas Sye.
John Athelbrig.
William Evington, and Edward Hardgill.
Robert Marleton.
Ralph Ashton, and Hugh Denny.
Sir William Compton, Knight.
Henry Norresse, Esquire.
Anthony Knyvet, Esquire.
Sir Philip Hobby, Knight.
John Norres and William Norres, Esquires.
Anthony Wingfield, Esquire.
Richard Coningsbye and George Pollard, Esquires.
James Maxwell, Esquire.
Peter Newton, Esquire.
Sir John Ayton, Knight.
Sir Edward Carteret, Knight.

APPENDIX.

The Statutes of Institution of the most Noble Order of the Garter.

AD honorem omnipotentis Dei, Sanctæ Mariæ Virginis gloriôsæ & Sancti Georgii Martyris, Dominus noster Supremus Edwardus tertius Rex Angliæ, anno regni sui post conquestum xxiii. Ordinavit, stabilivit, & fundavit quandam Societatem sive Ordinem militarem, infra Castrum suum de Wyndesore, in hunc modum. Primo seipsum statuit dictæ Societatis sive Ordinis Superiorem, filium suum seniores Principem Walliæ, Ducem Lancastriæ, Comitem Warwici, Capitaneum de Buche, Comitem Staffordiæ, Comitem Sarum, Dominum de Mortimer, Dominum Johannem Lisle, Dominum Bartholomeum Burgherth filium, Dominum Johannem de Beauchamp, Dominum de Bohun, Dominum Hugonem de Courtenay, Dominum Thomam de Hollande, Dominum Johannem de Grey, Dominum Richardum de fitz Symond, Dominum Milonem de Stapulton, Dominum Thomam Wale, Dominum Hugonem de Wirtellay, Dominum Nelelatum Loryng, Dominum Johannem Chandos, Dominum Jacobum Daudle, Dominum Otonem de Hollande, Dominum Henricum de Em, Dominum Sanctetum Dabrichecourt, & Dominum Walterum Pavelay.

I. Concordatum est quod Rex Angliæ, qui pro tempore fuerit, in perpetuum erit Superior hujus Ordinis Sancti Georgii, sive Societatis Garterii.

II. Item, concordatum est, quod nullus eligatur in socium dicti Ordinis nisi generose progenis existat, & miles, carent opprobrio, quoniam ignobiles aut reprobos Ordinis institutio non admittit.

III. Et xxvii. Commilitones & Consocii hujus Ordinis prenominati deferent mantella & garteria apud dictum castrum ordinata quociens ibidem presentes fuerint, videlicet quilibet vice quâ capellam intrant Sancti Georgii aut domum Capitularem, pro capitulo celebrando, aut aliquid statuendo quod ad Ordinem pertinebit. Et simili modo incedent in vigiliâ Sancti Georgii, per modum processionis, proficiscentes cum Superiori Ordinis, aut suo Deputato, de magnâ camerâ regiâ usq; ad Capellam, vel domum capitularem, & eadem serie revertentur. Sederunt itaq; cum Mantellis & Garteriis in dictâ vigiliâ tempore cene tam illi qui canare volunt, quam etiam alii non canantes, quousque de magnâ camerâ predictâ consuetum tempus fuerit separandi. Sic etiam induti incedere debent in crastino versus dictam Capellam, & abinde revertentes, ac etiam tempore prandii & postea, quousque Superior, aut suus Deputatus sive Ordinis insignia

deposuerit. Sic etiam proficiscentes ad secundas vesperas & revertentes (a) nec nec tempore cene & postea, sicut in vigiliâ induuntur, quoad usq; Superior Ordinis tempus esse decreverit separandi.

IV. Et ordinati sunt xliii. Canonici seculares, qui tempore Institutionis sue aut infra annum proximum teneantur ad sacerdotium promoveri, sic etiam xliii. Vicarii, qui tempore admissionis sue erunt Sacerdotes, aut saltem tempore proxime collationis Ordinum extunc sequentis, celebraturi continuè pro animabus omnium fidelium defunctorum. Isti autem prenominati Canonici presentabuntur per fundatores Ordinis supra dictos, viz. quilibet fundatorum modernorum Castodi Collegii suum Canonicum presentabit. Ita tamen quod si quis Canonicorum moriatur, nec ipse qui cum ultimo presentabat nec quispiam alius Sociorum Garterii postea presentabunt, sed solus Superior Ordinis ad eundem Canonicatum extunc in ante pro perpetuo presentabit. Et sic est unanimiter concordatum de presentationibus omnium aliorum Canonicorum (b) solo Superiori Ordinis reservandis.

V. Item concordatum est, quod predicti Canonici habeant suam mantellam de panno coloris purpurei, cum unâ circumferenciâ Armorum Sancti Georgii.

VI. Item Ordinatum est quod xxvi. Milites veterani, non habentes unde vivant, ibidem ad honorem (c) do & beati Georgii competentem habebunt exhibitionem, continuè Deo in orationibus servituri. Et de electionibus eorum veteranorum ordinatum est modo simili sicut & de presentationibus Canonicorum predictorum, sic quod veteranorum electiones quemadmodum Canonicorum presentationes soli Superiori Ordinis reservabuntur.

VII. Item concordatum est, quod dicti Milites veterani habebunt suâ mantella de rubeo cum uno Sauto Armorum Sancti Georgii carente tantum tamen Garterio.

VIII. Item concordatum est quod si Superior hujus Ordinis, sive Societatis, fortassis esse non poterit apud solemnizationem festivitatis Sancti Georgii, Capitulum tenebitur, horâ terciarum ad solemnizandum festivitatem in Crastino, sumptibus Superioris Ordinis. Sed novas observancias aut Ordinationes non faciet deputatus hujusmodi: Corrigere tamen & reformare sibi licebit transgressores Statutorum Ordinis que sequuntur.

IX. Item singulis annis in vigiliâ Sancti Georgii fit una congregatio omnium consociorum

(a) forte nec non. (b) s. soli superiori. (c) s. Dei.

a

Ordinis

APPENDIX.

Ordinis Sancti Georgii apud dictum castrum de Wyndesore, five sint infra Regnum Angliæ, five extra, dum tamen illic commodè venire valeant, & ibidem debent apud servitium ecclesiasticum interesse, & sua mantella tempore celebrationis divinarum deferrent seriatim in suis stallis existentes. Et quilibet eorum habebit in capella supra Stallum suum galeam & ensim quæ in sui memoriam & ecclesiæ tuicionem ibidem pro tempore vite suæ remanebunt, quemadmodum militaris Ordo nobilis hoc exposcit. Sed in casu quo festiuitas Sancti Georgii contigerit infra quindecim dies proximos post diem Paschæ, sit dicta festiuitas Sancti Georgii prorogata usq; ad illam diem dominicam quæ semper erit dies quinta decima post diem Paschæ, ad finem quod quilibet sociorum Ordinis illic valeat apud dictam festiuitatem rationabiliter commorari, non equitando per aliquem trium dierum proximo sequentium diem Paschæ.

X. Item quod conveniat in dictum locum in vigiliâ Sancti Georgii horâ tertiâ, & si qui non veniant huiusmodi tempore assignato (d) ne habeant excusationem Superiorem Ordinis aut suo Deputato acceptabilem, per Superiorem Ordinis & Capitulum taliter puniri debent, quod propter huiusmodi negligentiam, non intrabunt ad Capitulum illâ vice, sed foris ad hostium expectabunt, nec vocem habebunt in aliquo quod in dicto Capitulo fieri (e) contingere illâ vice. Et si qui ad vespas ante Principium non veniant, sua Stalla nullatenus tunc intrabunt, sed in basso, ante Stalla sua, in consueto Loco Ceroferariorum se constituent, durantibus vespis supradictis, ad quas non venerant tempestive. Et pena similis statuitur contra non venientes ante incubationem Missæ sollemnæ aut vesperrum in crastino. Et quisquis est qui ad celebrationem festiuitatis non veniat, non habens excusationem Superiorem Ordinis acceptabilem, sibi precipiatur nomine pænæ quod stallum suum non intrabit festiuitate proximâ tunc sequente, sed se tenebit ante & extra stallum, in loco quo supra tempore primarum vesperrum, & tempore processionis in crastino per ante tres cruces processionales transibit, & rediendo in chorum stabit in loco basso quo supra toto tempore Missæ usq; ad Offertorium, novissimè oblaturus. Et huiusmodi pænitiis sic peractis, incriminatus tunc ante stallum Superiorem aut sui Deputati superinde vocem petiturus. Et deinde dictus Superior aut suus Deputatus cum ad Stallum suum & primævum statum restituet. Quod si à secundo festo Sancti Georgii anno proximo tunc sequente absq; excusatione Superiorem acceptabilem, aut ejus Deputato, denno se absente existens infra regnum Angliæ, ex tunc Stallum suum non intrabit, quoad usq; infra dictam capellam apud Altare Sancti Georgii unum locale optulerit valoris xx. marcarum Monete Anglicanæ. Et ex tunc singulis annis inantea ipsam multam, donec reconciliatus fuerit, duplicabit.

XI. Item quod omnes Confocii Ordinis, ubicumq; locorum constituti, deferant Mantella sua de blodio singulis annis, ab horâ primarum vesperrum in vigiliâ Sancti Georgii, usq; ad fe-

(d) Nec. (e) Contingit.

cnudas vespas in crastino inclusivè, quemadmodum facturi essent, si cum Superiorem Ordinis aut suo Deputato personaliter interessent, toto tempore huius festiuitatis celebrande, dum tamen sint in loco ubi gaudeant propriâ libertate.

XII. Item, concordatum est quod si quis dictæ societatis incedat publicè sine Garterio, quantum fuerit exinde ammonitus aut notatus, custodi & Collegio solvet dimidiam marcam, sicut alii ante solverunt qui in eadem culpâ fuere constituti.

XIII. Item, concordatum est, quod, tempore Offertorii apud altam Missam, semper duo ex sociis qui sunt in suis stallis oppositi simul ad offerendum incedant. Et si ex eis quenquam contigerit absentari, socius suus, qui sibi deberet esse oppositus, solus & per se ad offerendum transibit. Et notandum quod Superior Ordinis tempore Processionis in dictâ capellâ transibit retro totam sociorum committivam.

XIV. Item, concordatum est, quod, in quolibet crastino Sancti Georgii, antequam socii mutuo separantur aut recedant, celebretur una missa de Requie, pro animabus omnium fidelium defunctorum, & quod tota societas sit tunc ibidem integraliter, si non fuerit eorum aliquis rationabiliter prepeditus, vel si non habeat licentiam Superiorem Ordinis aut sui Deputati, antequam ab illic recedat.

XV. Item, concordatum est, quod quilibet sociorum dimittat ibidem suam clamidem, pro accessibus huiusmodi repentinis, & pro observandis preceptis & monitis salutaribus Superiorem prædicti.

XVI. Item, conventum est, quod si quenquam ex dictâ societate sine Ordine per dictum Castrum de Wyndesore iuvenerare contigerit, pro honore loci intret, si commodè poterit, nec sit ex iustâ & rationabili causâ prepeditus. Et quod antequam capellam ingreditur, omnino clamide se induat, ita quod non nisi clamide indutus intret, & Canonici per tunc ibidem presentes sibi venient in obviam, & ipsum in capellam devotè conducent. Et si fortassis ipsum contigerit illic accedere horâ Missæ, expectet ad honorem Dei & Sancti Georgii, & audiat ipsam Missam. Quod si post meridiem veniat, intret modo & forma expressatis, & tunc expectet donec Canonici semel dixerint Psalmum de Profundis, pro animabus omnium fidelium defunctorum, & ibidem offerat, Psalmo dicto. Siquis autem ex dictâ societate per medium ville equitaverit & Capellam non intret & offerat veluti concordatum existit, quilibet vice quâ hoc non faciat pedester transeat, virtute Obedientiæ, unum miliare versus dictam capellam, & offerat unum denarium, ob honorem Sancti Georgii.

XVII. Item, concordatum est, quod Superior Ordinis, incontinenti postquam mors alicujus Sociorum sit sibi cognita, faciat celebrari pro animâ ipsius mortui Mille Missas, & quilibet Rex francus pro animâ illius mortui faciet celebrari DCCC. Princeps Walliæ DCC. quilibet Dux DC. quilibet comes CCC. quilibet Baro CC. & quilibet Miles Bacallarius C. Missas. Et si Superior Ordinis aut alius quispiam hoc fieri non faciat, infra unum quaterium anni postquam sit certificatus de morte, numerum missarum in toto

ad

APPENDIX.

ad quas ab initio juxta status sui conditionem tenebatur, duplicare, & si medietas anni sic a retro sit, etiam eodem modo duplicare debet, & ita de tempore in tempus usque in finem anni, & si infra annum fieri non faciat, annos eodem modo duplicabit.

XVIII. Item, concordatum est, quod quociens aliquis confociorum Ordinis fuerit sublati de medio, Superior Ordinis aut suus Deputatus certificato sibi de merito faciat omnes confocios existentes infra regnum suum Angliæ qui accedere poterunt, per suas literas admoneri, quod pro eligendo novo Confocio, coram eo conveniant, infra sex ebdomadas postquam certificati fuerint de morte in loco ydoneo quem Superior ad hoc duxerit assignando. Quibus omnibus sic congregatis, aut sex eorum ad minus præter Superiorem aut suum Deputatum, quilibet eorum qui præfens in electione fuerit juxta de sufficientioribus, quos omni ignominia & opprobrio crediderit expectes, si de subditi Superioris Ordinis aut alii foranei, sibi non subiecti, dum tamen partem dicto Superiori adversantem non faveant aut defendant, nominabit, viz. tres Comites aut de statu sublimiori, tres Barones, & tres Milites Bacallarios, & istas denominationes scribet Principalis Prælati Ordinis, scilicet Episcopus Vintonienfis qui pro tempore fuerit, & in sua absentia Decanus Collegii, vel Registrator, & in (f) eos absentibus antiquior Recendiciarius Collegii supradicti, & denominationes sic factæ per omnes Confocios aut sex eorum ad minus in præfentur, per eum qui eas scripsit, Superiori Ordinis aut suo Deputato monstrabit, qui de nominatis hujusmodi eum præleget & admittet cui major vocum pluralitas suffragatur, & quem sibi ad honorem Ordinis & utilitatem regni & Regis magis videbitur expedire. Et in casu quo nullus sociorum ad electionem veniat modo sequenti, veniet penitendus saltem si non iusta de causa fuerit impeditus. Si tamen causam absentie iustam & probabilem allegaverit, per Superiorem, aut suum Deputatum debet approbari. Quod si causa absentie reperta forsan fuerit minus iusta, & accitus ad electionem non veniat, ut præfentur, concordatum est, quod custodi & Collegio, nomine pene solvas unam marcam, & cum proximo fuerit in Capitulo sedebit ante Superiorem Ordinis aut suum Deputatum, & totam societatem, in medio Capituli super terram, quousq; per Superiorem aut suum Deputatum & societatem fuerit reconciliatus.

XIX. Item, concordatum est, quod in casu quo aliquis Milium dictæ societatis Garterii moriatur, & in ejus locum alius eligatur, quantocius post electionem electus habebit Garterium, in signum quod est unus sociorum Garterii, & habebit Mantellum sibi pro suo habitu liberatum, quando in stallum suum inducetur, & non ante. Et in casu quo moriatur priusquam fuerit installatus, non nominabitur unus fundatorum ex quo non habet plenariam possessionem sui status, ymmo habebit medietatem Missarum prædictarum, pro eo quod habuit liberatam Garterii, & penitus nichil magis. Et si talis electus non veniat ad dictum locum cum omni celeritate accommoda-

post receptionem Garterii, ut installetur, & signanter infra annum post ejus electionem, si sit habitans infra regnum Angliæ, & non habeat excusationem Superiori aut suo Deputato & societati Garterii acceptabilem, electio de eo facta sit prorsus irrita & inanis, & exinde Superior Ordinis aut suus Deputatus, una cum societate, ad novam electionem procedat. Et nec ensis nec galea alicujus electi quousq; veniat infra Castrum supra stallum suum figentur, sed exterius ante suum stallum; ad finem, quod si ipse electus ad Castrum non veniat, ut præfentur, ensis suus & galea non indecenter erunt deposita de sublimi, sed ut Militaris honor servet (g) illibatus, removebuntur extra eorum curialiter & honeste, & remanebunt extunc ad opus publicum & usum Collegii supradicti.

XX. Item, concordatum est, quod omnes foranei qui in societatem dicti Ordinis Garterii elligentur (h) per Superiorem Ordinis de sua electione certificentur, & Garterium atq; Mantellum & Statuta Ordinis, sub communi Sigillo, cum omni celeritate accommoda sumptibus tamen Superioris Ordinis, transmittantur; Et omnia (i) certificentur foranei infra quatuor menses continuos à tempore electionis de se factæ; Ad finem quod deliberare valeant ex tenore Statutorum, si electioni hujusmodi voluerint consentire. Et etiam quod omnes hujusmodi foranei, sic electi, cujuscumq; conditionis status aut dignitatis existant, infra spacium octo mensium post certificationem sibi electionem per Superiorem Ordinis aut suum Deputatum & receptionem Garterii, mittant unum Procuratorem sufficientem, secundum quod statui electi hujusmodi videbitur convenire; provisum tamen quod Procurator hujusmodi, installandus in locum suum, sit Miles, expertus omnis opprobrii, qui tempore sui adventus ex causa hujusmodi secum deferat ex parte mittentis unum Mantellum Ordinis, de serico bladio, & etiam ensis & galeam, penes Collegium ipsius renascentia. Quod quidem Mantellum ponetur super brachium dextrum Procuratoris hujusmodi, per Superiorem Ordinis aut suum Deputatum, tempore installationis sue supradictæ, et illud tenebit super dictum brachium suum ad horas Canonicas proximas post installationem accipiendam, nomine Domini sive Magistri sui supradicti. Dicitur autem Procurator installatus Mantellum hujusmodi postea non portabit, nec debet Capitulum intrare, nec ibidem vocem habere, virtute cujuscumq; potestatis sibi attributæ. Et sciendum est quod hujusmodi favor Installationis per Procuratorem solis foraneis exhibetur, qui quidem non poterunt hæc de causa personaliter advenire, ad finem quod sint participes Missarum & devotarum Orationum Ordinis, quarum mediate (k) carerent, si installati non essent antequam morentur.

XXI. Item, concordatum est, Quod si aliquis Comes, Baro, aut Miles Bacallarius dicti Ordinis decedat, Ipse qui successurus est in locum suum, sive sit Comes, sive Baro, aut Miles Bacallarius, tenebit idem stallum quod tenuit suus

(f) Eorum absentia. (g) Servetur. (h) Elegentur. (i) Omnino. (k) Medietate.

APPENDIX.

Prædecessor, cujuscunque fueris dignitatis, nec ullus eligendus hanc seriem mutabit, præter Principem Valliæ, qui semper tenebit stallum ex opposito Superiori Ordinis, postquam fuerit electus, Ita quod ex casu Comes occupare potest stallum Militis, & e contrâ. Et istud est Ordinatum, ut sciatur qui fuerint Primævi Fundatores Ordinis.

XXII. Item, concordatum est, quod quilibet Sociorum Ordinis, primo tempore sui ingressus, dabit aliquid certum, secundum eminentiam sui status, in sustentationem Canonicorum & pauperum Veteranorum Militum, ibidem commorantium, ac etiam in augmentum elemosinarum, quæ inibi perpetuo Ordinantur; scilicet Superior Ordinis xl marcas. Rex foraneus xx libras; Princeps Walliæ xx marcas; quilibet Dux x lib. quilibet Comes x marcas; quilibet Baro, centum solidos, & quilibet Miles Bacallarius v. marcas. Et ista donaria pia sunt ideo constituta, ut ingrediens hunc Ordinem Militarem per hoc dignus optineat nomen, titulum, & privilegium unius fundatorum. Dignum enim & conveniens arbitrat, ut qui aggregatur numero Fundatorum (l) aliquid hujus rei se nominis in tutu largiatur. Et quosque summe hujusmodi pecuniarum per quemlibet juxta divisionem istam in primo ejus (m) intractu sint soluti, nec galea nec ensis ingredientis hujusmodi supralatum figentur. Et est sciendum quod Superior Ordinis tenebitur solvere pro sumptibus introitus cujuslibet Extranei qui eligetur, tempore installationis suorum Procuratorum.

XXIII. Item, Concordatum est, quod quantocius quo aliquis societatis sive Ordinis hujus, ex primævis Fundatoribus moriatur, Scutum unum Armorum suorum factum de Metallo, & galea sua, sint fixa retro tergum in stalli suo. Et alii Fundatores qui postea succedunt habebunt scuta sua & galeas modo conformi situate; subius tamen aliquantulum primævos Fundatores. Sua etiam Scuta & galeæ non erunt (n) præcie ita magno, sicut primorum Fundatorum.

XXIV. Item quod quilibet ingrediens promittat & juret personaliter, vel per Procuratorem ydoneum & sufficientem, nomine suo installandum, de bene & fideliter observando pro viribus statuta Ordinis. Et advertendum est, quod nullus, per Procuratorem installationem recipiet nisi duntaxat Foranei, qui ob hanc causam commode accedere non poterint in personis.

XXV. Item, concordatum est, quod in casu quo Superior Ordinis sit extra regnum suum Angliæ tempore Installationis alicujus sociorum Garterii, vel forsan peragere non poterit personaliter, quæ tunc sibi ex officio incumbunt, committere possit uni Sociorum ejusdem Ordinis suas vires (o) ad plenariam in hac parte potestatem, ea perficiendi & exequendi, quæ, si presens esset, suo proprio ministerio pertinerent.

XXVI. Item, concordatum est, quod fiat commune Sigillum, quod erit in custodia illius quem Superior Ordinis ad hoc voluerit assignare.

XXVII. Item quod quilibet Conlociorum prædicti Ordinis, de cetero habeant Statuta Ordinis, sub communi Sigillo supra dicto. Et quod Origina-

nale Statutorum sit cum eodem consignatum, quod infra (p) thesaurum dicti Collegii imperpetuum remanebit, & post mortem cujuscunque Conlocii Ordinis supradicti teneantur sui executores ipsa Statuta Ordinis Collegio remittere, & Gardiano Collegii liberare.

XXVIII. Item, concordatum est, quod nullus Militum Ordinis Sancti Georgii & de societate Garterii exeat Regnum Angliæ, absque (q) situ & licencia dicti Superioris. Et est idem concordatum, quod si aut aliqua expeditio Militaris contingat, aut aliquid aliud quod ad honorem Militarem cedere conficitur, Superior Ordinis, de sua gratia, Conlocios Ordinis hujusmodi actibus Militaribus ceteris quibuscunque, tenebitur anteferre.

XXIX. Item quod nullus Sociorum Ordinis contra alium Conlocium levet arma, nisi in guerra Domini sui legi, vel in propria iusta querela. Et si contingat quod aliquis Sociorum Ordinis retineatur cum aliquo domino, aut alicujus domini partem teneat vel querelam, & pars adversa postea forte desideret aliquem alium sociorum Ordinis ad defensionem sue causæ contraria secum retinere: nullus talis Socius secundariè desideratus ad hoc consueciat, sed semetipsum teneatur excusare pro eo quod Conlocius suus primitus ex parte adversa retentus fuerit vel armatus; & tenebitur propterea quilibet Sociorum Ordinis, quando cum aliquo retinetur, excipere & pacisci, quod de omni servicio guerre movende aut exercende absolutus sit penitus & quietus si & quatenus aliquis Conlociorum suorum societatis Garterii sit perantea cum adversa parte retentus & ibidem armatus. Et si ipse secundariè retentus non cognovit, (r) aliquis Sociorum suorum Garterii fuerat primitus ex parte adversa retentus, vel armatus, quantocius hoc ad ejus noticiam deveniret, teneatur omne hujusmodi Servicium penitus relinquere, & seipsum tot aliter excusare.

XXX. Item, omnes licentiæ Commilitonibus dictæ Societatis concedende terras circuire volentibus, honoris adipiscendi gratiâ, per exercituum actuum militarium, & etiam omnia alia scripta tam Certificatoria quam præceptiva, quæ Ordinem (s) coservare videbuntur, per Superiorem Ordinis emanare debent, sub communi Sigillo, quod remanebit in custodia unius Sociorum Ordinis ad voluntatem Superioris prædicti. Et si ille qui Sigillum custodit de presenciâ Superioris ex causâ rationabili se transferat, dimittet ipsum Sigillum in custodia alterius Sociorum ejusdem Ordinis, presencis tamen cum Superiore, quem idem Superior ad ipsius Sigilli custodiam duxerit assignandum. Ita quod Sigillum commune nullo unquam tempore sit de presenciâ Superioris ablatum, quamdiu ipse Superior fuerit infra Regnum suum Angliæ. Et simili modo in absenciâ Superioris Ordinis cum prædicto Sigillo fieri faciet suus Deputatus.

XXXI. Item, concordatum est, si aliquis alius Miles dictæ Societatis sive Ordinis, ductus devo-

(l) Aliquid hujus rei seu nominis intuitu. (m) Introitu. (n) Præcie ita magno. (o) Ac. (p) Thesaurum. (q) Scitu. (r) Quod aliquis. (s) Concernere.

APPENDIX.

tionis spiritum desideret apud dictum Castrum de Wyndesore continuè trahere suam moram, pro necessariis vite sue & suæ habitatione de proprio peculio faciat ordinari.

XXXII. Item, concordatum est, quod in casu quo aliquis Miles qui non est dictæ societatis Garterii, aut persona alia quevis donare velit aliquod annuum xlii aut amplius, dicto Collegio, ad participandum orationum suffragia ibidem fiendarum: nomen Datoris huiusmodi intulabitur in Kalendarî Benefactorum (ut Canonici & Milites veterani pro eo valeant in perpetuum) deprecari.

XXXIII. Item, concordatum est, quod si aliquis Canonicoꝝ moriatur, & Superior Ordinî sit extra Regnum suum Angliæ, Gardianus sive Custos Collegii, qui pro tempore fuerit, exinde mittet literas suas ad Superiorem Ordinî,

& Superior quem velit ad eundem Canonice valeat presentare.

XXXIV. Item sit unus Registrator Ordinatus per Superiorem & Societatem Ordinî, qui inter ceteros de Collegio sit sciencior, & interesse debet in quolibet Capitulo Ordinî celebrando, ad registrandum & inactitandum Electiones singulas, & nomina Electorum, punitiones inflictas, & punitionum causas, ad dictum Ordinem pertinentia, de Capitulo in Capitulum annuatim. Et sit dictus Registrator juratus in receptione sui officii de fideliter registrando, Et quæ in Principio cujuslibet Capituli in Vigiliâ Sancti Georgii annuatim celebrandi, sint omnia Registrata anni præcedentis ibidem publicè lecta, coram Superiore & Societate Ordinî; Ad finem quod siquid sit malè conceptum & correctione dignum, valeat in formam debitam reformari.

An Exemplar of the Statutes of Institution remaining in the Lord Hattons Library.

AD honorem Dei, Sanctæ Mariæ Virginis gloriose, & Sancti Georgii, Rex Angliæ, Dominus noster Edwardus tertius post conquestum anno regni sui 23. Ordinavit, stabilivit & fundavit unam Societatem in Castro suo de Wyndore sub formâ quæ sequitur.

In primis, ipsemet constituitur Superior Committive, deinde senior ejus filius princeps Walliæ, Dux Lancastriæ, Comes Warwici, Piers Capital de la Bouch, Comes Staffordiæ, Comes Sarisburie, Dominus de Mari-mortuo, Dominus Johannes Lisle, Dominus Bartholomeus de Bourghier Filius, Dominus Johannes de Beauchampe, Dominus de Mahune, Dominus Hugo de Courtney, Dominus Thomas de Holande, Dominus Johannes de Gray, Dominus Ricardus Fitz Simond, Dominus Milo de Stapilton, Dominus Thomas de Wale, Dominus Hugo de Wrottelley, Dominus Neel de Loring, Dominus Johannes Chandoyse, Dominus Jacobus Audley, Dominus Otho de Holand, Dominus Henricus Erme, Dominus Sanchett D'abrigecourt, Dominus Walterus de Pavely.

I. In primis, est Statutum & pro perpetuo ordinatum, quod Dominus noster Rex Angliæ prædictus, & heredes sui Reges Angliæ superiorem perfuerunt Committive prædictæ.

II. Item, est decretum quod in prædictum Ordinem & consortium nullus admittetur, nisi qui prædictus fuerit irreprobato cingulo militiæ, sanguinisque generositate dotatus ex origine.

III. Et xxvi. Milites prænominati, quotiens præsentati fuerint in castro prædicto, portabunt pro habitu Mantellos & Garteros ordinatos ad hoc ibidem, scilicet quotiescunque contigerit eos Capellam intrare Sancti Georgii, seu domum Capituli pro Capitulo celebrando, vel quicquid

aliud faciendo ibidem, quod Ordini pertinebit. Et consimiliter illi induentur insignis vigiliâ Sancti Georgii, egrediendo cum Superiore, vel cum suo Deputato, de Magnâ Camerâ per modum processions usque ad Capellam prædictam, seu domum Capitularem, Et ex post facto eodem ordine revertentes continuè sic induti, tam videlicet in Cenâ, hi qui cenare decreverunt, quam ceteri non cenantes, usque dum Superior, seu ejus Deputatus, sumptis speciebus & vino, cunctis decreverit valescere, consimilem modum in omnibus observantes, de mane veniendo ad Capitulum, & revertendo ad prandium, & continuè usque dum Superior, seu suus Deputatus, singula compleverit, quæ suo statuti, pro tunc ex congruo pertinent observari. Ac etiam iterum veniendo ad secundas vespertas, & revertendo ad cenam, & usque dum completa fuerit & le voyde finita.

IV. Item ordinati sunt ibidem tredecim Canonici, qui in suis receptionibus, vel saltem infra annum posterius sacerdotes erunt. Tredecim, erunt etiam ibidem Vicarii, qui in introitu illorum Sacerdotes fore obligantur, vel ut in ordinibus proximis ad Sacerdotii gradum valeant promoveri, qui divina celebrabunt ibidem pro animabus omnium fidelium defunctorum. Qui quidem Canonici per prædictos fundatores erunt presentati. Ita viz. quod unusquisque eorundem suum presentabit Canonicum Custodi Collegii, Sic quod postquam aliqua vacaverit posterius præbenda, neque ille qui prius præsentaverat, nec aliquis alius ex tunc alium ad illam presentabit, sed solus Superior ex post facto sui habebit quemcumque præsentandi quæ ad hoc decreverit limitandum, & sic de singulis vacaturis earundem unanimiter est decretum.

V. Item, concordatum est, quod Canonici præfati habebunt Mantellos nuntii coloris, cum

APPENDIX.

una figurâ rotundâ, viz. una roundleita de Armis Sancti Georgii.

VI. Item, Ordinati sunt ibidem xxvi. Milites aduersitate fortune ad tantum vexati, quod de propriis minimè valeant sustentari, qui in collegio prædicto conveniens percipient emolumentum pro suis devotis effundendis precibus, ad Laudem Dei, & honorem Sancti Georgii, & quod ad eorum electionem eodem modo ordinatum est per omnia, quo prius refertur de admissi-
onibus Canonicorum, sic quod omnis posterior electio perpetuo remanebit penes Ordinis Superiorum.

VII. Item, Statutum est, quod singuli Pauperes Milites præfati suos portabunt Mantellos de colore rubro, cum uno Scuto de Armis Sancti Georgii absq; aliquo Gartero in ejus circuitu.

VIII. Item, concordatum est, quod si Superior in solemnitate Sancti Georgii præsens esse non poterit, per suas Literas, suum faciat Deputatum, qui Capitulum bonâ tertîâ teneat in vigiliâ, ac in die singulâ studeat adimplere quæ ad festum pertinent, pro tempore, sumptibus Superioris; Ita quod interim nullâ novâ presumat affirmare Statuta, immò potestatem plenariam habeat corrigendi & reformandi singula puncta Capituli quæ sequuntur.

IX. Item, quilibet anno, in vigiliâ Sancti Georgii, convenire habent ex Statuto, apud Castrum de Windfore omnes Milites prædicti Sancti Georgii, qui viz. infra regnum fuerint, vel alibi accedere valentes, ad effectum quod ibidem Divina insimul solemnizent, portando Mantellos durante servicio interim ordinatim præfati in festo, si per quæ uniusquisq; præfata habeat suam galeam, cum Crestâ, & gladiu directè subpendentem, quæ ibidem statuitur permanere ad tempus suorum possessorum, unumquodq; viz. in signum & honorem ipsa deferentium, & etiam in signum defensionis Ecclesie, secundum quod vota deposcunt Ordinis Militaris. Verumtamen in casu quo festum Sancti Georgii infra quindena Paschæ contingit evenire, prorogari debet usq; in illam diem dominicam quæ continuè dies xv. paschæ fore computabitur, ut sic unusquisq; Ordinis consocius opportunitatem accedendi habeat ad festum prælibatum, absque hoc quod equitare arceatur aliquo dierum illorum trium solemnitati Paschæ festivæ annexæ.

X. Item, quod singuli & uniti simul in vigiliâ prædictâ ac bonâ & loco prius deputatis convenire minimè postponant. Quod si tempus neglexerint veniendi & horam, penam subibunt ex concordâ Capituli inferius limitatam, super quo extat decretum, quod illâ vice capitulum non intrabunt, immò expectabunt foras ad hospitium, nullam habituri vocem in Capitulo, cuius valituram, in re expediendâ ibidem, illâ scilicet vice tantum. Et si ad initium primarum vesperrarum quis illorum negligat accedere, de factò ad tunc Stallum suum intrare non presumat, sed expectabit in loco illo Chori, quo Choristæ residere solebant; scilicet coram Stallo proprio, usq; ad finem illarum. Et idem Ordinatum est de negligentibus venire, ante principium aliæ Missæ,

& vesperrarum in dei Sancti Georgii. Et si quis non veniat ad festum prædictum, absq; hoc, quod causam suæ absentiæ allegaverit, à Superiore acceptandam, penam subibit hanc, viz. Quod proximo festo celebrando stallum suum non intrabit, sed totaliter tenebit se in imo, quò prius dictum est, de negligentibus prævenire principium vesperrarum & Missæ in die. Quod si ita fuerit negligens, quòd ad proximum festum celebrandum minimè accesserit, nullam interim causam suæ tardationis Superiori significans acceptabilem, pena sua erit, quod stallum suum non intrabit in proximo festo celebrando, immò residet in basso modo quo prius statuitur, & ultra hoc, in processione tunc fiendâ, tenebit se totaliter ante tres Cruces ibidem deportandas. Et in regressu se reponet in loco basso priori usque ad tempus Offertorii, & offeret solus postremò per se. Ac post has sic præfatas penitentias, se convertet ad stallum Superioris, seu sui Deputati, ibidem de Commissis humiliter sibi petens pardonari. Quo factò, quisvis illorum interfuerit ipsum commendabit ad stallum, Statum prædictum sibi restituendo & gradum. Quod si ad secundum festum Sancti Georgii, minimè accesserit, dummodò in regno permanserit, nullam interim significans causam sui impedimenti, à Superiore, vel suo Deputato, meritò allocandam, & factò posteriore stallum suum nunquam intrabit, quoad usq; obtulerit altari Sancti Georgii, in Capellâ prædictâ, jocale aliquod valoris xx. Marcarum seu verum valorem ejusdem. Quod si de anno in annum permanserit sic culpabilis, secundum lapsum temporis, multiplicabit & sumptus, usq; dùm de commissis fuerit reconciliatus.

XI. Item, cadit sub Statuto, quod singuli Milites societatis prædictæ Mantellos portabunt ordinis prædicti de colore blodio, omni anno, scilicet à primis vespers usq; post secundas in festo Sancti Georgii, ubicunq; pro tempore illo conginget ipsos residere, ac si præfates forent pro tunc cum Superiori Ordinis in loco ad hoc specialiter deputato, dummodo sibi unâ occurrerint temporis opportunitas & Libertas rotiva.

XII. Item, Statuitur, quod si quis de Comitibus prædicti invenitur in aperto absq; usu Garterii debito, & consuetò, quàm citò de hoc sibi veraciter fuerit obiectum, noverit se firmitèr astricturn per Statuta, ad persolvendum, hanc de causâ, Custodi & Collegio, dimidiâ marcâ, modo quo consimiliter defectivè solvere consueverunt.

XIII. Interim, est decretum, quod singuli de Comitibus in aliâ Missâ Sancti Georgii se disponant ad offerendum, unusquisq; viz. cum suo socio sibi directè opposito, & hoc ordinatum secundum quod in suis stallis reponi dinoscuntur, ita quod si cujuscuq; consors absens ab hoc actu fuerit, consocius ex opposito offeret per se. Ita quod in omni processione fiendâ ibidem in Capellâ prædictâ Ordinis, Superior postremus incedat, cunctos subsequendo per se Ordinis consocios.

XIV. Item, concordatum est, quod in Crastino solemnitatis Sancti Georgii, priusquam Societas prædicta decreverit inter se mutuo valescere, Deput-

APPENDIX.

Decantari facient unam Missam de Requie, pro animabus suorum Conſodalium, qui de hoc ſeculo deceſſerunt, & omnium fidelium defunctorum, in cuius celebratione ſinguli qui preſentes prædicti exiſterint, tementur intereſſe, niſi forte quis cauſa ad hoc mouente rationabili fuerit per Superiorem in ſpeciali licentiaſus, ſeu excuſabiliter aliando turbatus.

XV. Item, decretum eſt, quod uniſquiſque Sodalium Ordinis ſepediſſi, relinquit ibidem unum mantellum, ad effectum quod in ſingulis ſubſtantiæ acceſſibus & inſperatis, illum paratum inueniat, pro obſervandis ſtatutis in hac parte, ſinguliſque Superioris Juſſis & decretis.

XVI. Item concordatum eſt, quod ſi quis de ſocietate prædicti itinorandi equitaverit per Caſtrum prædictum, ob reverentiam Locis ſe debet diſponere ad intrandum Capellam præſatam, ſumendo ſibi primitias ſuum Mantellum, ſine quo illum niſquam intrare præſumit. Cui ad obviandum ſe diſponere habent Canonici reſidentes, ad ipſum conducendum deſuntis quo noverint, in capellam prædictam. Et ſi intraverit pro tempore alte Miſſæ, expectare tenetur ad finem ejuſdem, ob honorem Dei, & Sancti Georgii. Et ſi poſt nonam ipſum contingat introire, expectabit uſque dum Canonici præſentes diſcorint de profundis, pro animabus omnium fidelium defunctorum, & obulerit ibidem. Quod ſi quis de Sociis prædictis per medium equitaverit villæ, & reſuſciter capellam intrare præſatam, ad offerendum, modo quo præſertur per Statuta, Noverit ſe ſub pena ſuæ obediencie ſtrictius aſtrictum, ad proſeſcendum peregre & pedeller totius quotiens de Caſtro, unum militare uſque ad Capellam prædictam, ob honorem Sancti Georgii, & pro quilibet vice quæ ſe fecerit & fuerit deſilius, offerre tenetur unum denarium.

XVII. Item, diſſiniſtum eſt, quod quam cito ad veram & indubiam Superioris pervenerit notiſſiam, de deceſſu cuiuſcuſque Conſortis Comitæ prædicti, ipſe faciet celebrari, pro animâ ſe defuncti, mille miſſas; unus Rex extraneus celebrari faciet centenas Miſſas; Princeps ſeptingentas; quilibet Dux, ſexcentas; quilibet Comes trecentas; quilibet Baro, Ducentas; quilibet Miles, Centum. Et ſi iſtas non compluerit intra quaterium anni, ſeu compleri fecerit, poſt notiſſiam mortis habitam, præſertur duplicabit quaterium integri totius. Et ſi per dimidium anni à reſcō permansiſſet, de eiſdem tenetur ad duplum, ut præſertur. Et ſic de tempore in tempus uſque ad finem anni. Et conſimilitur de anno, ſi ad tantum permansiſſet deſilius, & de anno in annum ipſos duplicabit.

XVIII. Item concordatum eſt, quod ſiquis deceſſerit de præſatâ comitiâ, Superior, ſeu ejus Deputatus, habita de hoc verâ notiſſiâ, cunctis ſociis Comitæ in regno conſentiſſentibus, per ſuas Literas ejuſdem ſuper eo directas, ſuâ veritatem ſignificare tenetur, ſingulos interim accedere valentes præmiſſi, quatenus infra ſex ſepitmanas poſt huiſmodi citationem præhabitam in loco idoneo quocuſque quem ad hoc dixerit limitandum, ſe diſponant convenire. Qui quidem omnes & ſinguli ſic uniti, ita viz, quod ad mi-

nus ultra Superiorem, vel ſuum Deputatum, ſint ibi ſex alii Ordinis Conſocii, novem Militaria Ordinis perſonas nominabunt, & quilibet eorum nominabit pro ſe, juxta videre proprium, qui præſens pro tunc fuerit, honorabiliores ac ſufficientiores quos noverit Milites, in ſuis famis minimè violatos, irreprobatos undique & ſubjectos Superiori, ſeu alios, dummodo partem ejus adverſam naſcantur non favere, viz. tres Comites, ſeu tres alios majoris dignitatis, tres Barones, & tres Milites. Quas quidem denominationes una cum votis ſingulorum reportabit, & ſcribet Prælatus Ordinis, viz. Episcopus Wintonienſis exiſtens pro tempore, ſeu in abſentiâ ſuâ, Cultos Collegii, ſeu Regiſtrarius deputatus ad hoc, vel ſenſor Reſidentarius Collegii prædicti, in abſentiâ eorundem; Ac denominationes prædictæ & vota per omnes, ſed ad minus per ſex illorum factas, ut præſertur, poſtquam reportaverit & ſcripſerit incontinentiter oſtendere tenetur Superiori ordinis, qui ipſum eligere debet Militem, ſeu denunciare pro electo, quem pluribus viderit Eligentium vocibus abundare, & honorabiliorum judicaverit, ſibiſque ac corona ſuæ, ac regno ex veriſimili in poſterum decreverit magis vulturum. Et ſiquis de Comitibus prædictis voluntariè ſubtraxerit ab electione huiſmodi, abſque hoc, quod cauſam haberit juſtiorum, puniatur ſub ſcâ que ſuſcitur, cauſam inſuper ſuæ tardationis jurtam, ſi quam allegaverit, debite allocando. Quod ſi nullam valeat oſtendere jurtam ſui impedimenti, ſeu quod non venerit citationi parendo prius exhibitæ, decretum eſt, quod tunc ſolvat Cuſtodi & Collegio unam marcâ, ad effectum, quod ipſi orent pro animâ ſocii defuncti, & in proximo ſuo adventu ad Capitulum prædictum, ipſe expectabit ſuper terram in medio Capituli, coram Superiore, & totâ præſente Comitibus, uſque dum per ipſos fuerit reconciliatus.

XIX. Item, decretum eſt, quod cum contigerit aliquem Militem præſatæ Societatis in ſua decedere, ac deinde alium per electionem ſuccedere in locum ſuum, ſic electo tranſmittetur Garterus, in ſignum quod ipſe eſt unus de prædicto conſortio Ordinis Garteri; Et quam cito deſceſſerit poſſeſſionem recipere ſui Stalli, tunc primò & non ante recipiet Mantellum Ordinis pro ſuo habitu. Et in caſu quo deceſſerit priusquam ſuo habitu indui videatur, nequaquam tunc nominabitur ut unus fundatorum, eo quod ſibi deficiat plenitudo poſſeſſionis ſuæ & ſtatûs, veruntamen medietatem percipiet miſſarum prænominarum, cauſâ liberati Garteri, ſibi ſic tranſmiſſi, ut ſtatuitur, abſque pluribus. Quod ſi ſic electus poſt ipſius Garterii ſuſceptionem, omnem congruam non adhibuerit diligentiâ, quatenus inſtallari valeat, ita ſpecialiter quod inſtalleretur infra annum ſuæ electionis, ſi fuerit Miles expectans infra Regnum, ſi de hoc minime cauſam assignare voluerit, à Superiore, & totâ Comitibus merito allocandam, eo factò caſſa judicabitur electio illa & vana, in tantum quid liceat ei, ex tunc, ad novam celebrandam procedere electionem; Et medio tempore, ſua galea cum Cruſtâ & gladio nequaquam ſigî debent ſu-

per

APPENDIX.

per stallum sibi limitatum, sed ambo reponi debent, usque ad adventum cuiusvis sic electi, ad Castellum predictum, ne si ipsum, ut prefertur, infra tempus limitatum accedere non contingat, nova facta electione ipsa insignia militaria detestari iudicabitur meritis, seu deponi, sed potius sic in uno posita honestis & secretis de choro exportari, deinde ad opus Collegii perpetuo conservari.

XX. Item, concordatum est, quod omnes Extranei in hanc electionem Comitum, de suis electionibus certificari debent per Superiorem, quibus interim transmitti debent, sumptibus Superioris. Garterius cum Mantello, & Statuis Ordinis, signatis Sigillo ipsius communi, & hoc omni celeritate congrua, ita quod, ad ultimum, notitiam tale habeat infra quatuor menses post electionem, ad finem, quod visis statutis Ordinis, se aversare valeant, antequam ipsam recipere decreverint seu resutent. Quam si receperint Extranei predicti, cuiusvis dignitatis fuerint, extraneos per hunc modum ad transmittendum, infra octo menses proxime tunc sequentes, tunc per litteras in eadem, transmittantur. Item, si statum sue dignitatis, sic ad minus quod sit Miles irreprobus, qui nomine suo valeat installari, qui sciam adducere tenetur unam Mantellum sicutum de blodio colore Ordinis, ex parte ipsam transmittentis, interim galeam cum cresta, & uno gladio, que continuo posterius morabuntur in Collegio. Qui quidem Mantellus, tempore installationis ipsius Procuratoris, nomine Domini seu Magistri sui, per Superiorem transmittitur super latus dextrum, quem retinere tenetur ibidem usque finem hore divine, & tunc ibidem proinde celebrande, potestatem, nomine Domini, seu Magistri sui, fuerit installatus, ita quod posterius ipsum non portabit, neque tunc aliquam habeat in Capitulo, neque illuc intrare presumet, in absentia transmittentis ipsum. Et est sciendum, quod tantus favor Extraneis sic electis ab eis preberi iubetur, qui in suis personis minime valeant installari, quod tunc valeant per suos Procuratores quatenus ipsi particeps effici mereantur Missarum & Orationum integritatem Ordinis prelati, quarum medietate privarentur, si, priusquam ipsos installari contingat, viam ingrederentur universae capite.

XXI. Item, statuitur, quod siquis Comes, Baro, seu quivis Miles in fata decesserit, ipse qui post ipsum venturus est, cuiusvisque conditionis fuerit, seu Status, ipse tenebit eundem Stallum, in quo ipse fuit Predecessor, absque mutatione, nisi solummodo ratione Principis, qui Comitibus obtinebit stallum primum ex opposito Superioris, quam cito electus fuerit ipse. Et sic in casu contingat, quod unus Comes succedet uni Militi in stallum suum, & etiam de converso. Et hoc ideo permittitur sic fieri, quatenus per hoc, primi Ordinis Fundatores ab aliis valeant discerni.

XXII. Interim Statutum est, quod unusquisque predictae Societatis, in introitu suo primo, aliquid administrabit de bonis suis, unusquisque viz. iuxta substantiam sue dignitatis, in relictamen

Canonicorum, pauperum Militum, & elemosinarum ibidem pro perpetuo ordinarum, viz. Superior Ordinis 40. Marcas, unus Rex extraneus 20 l. Princeps 20 Marcas, quilibet Dux 10 l. quilibet Comes 10 Marcas, quilibet Baro 100 solidos, & quilibet Miles, quinq. Marcas solvere tenetur. Et quousque unusquisque illorum iuxta statum suum has persolverit summas, galea sua cum gladiis nequaquam erigi permittentur supra stalla sua, pro quo sciendum, quod Superior Ordinis tenetur ad satisfaciendum in his pro quolibet Extraneo sic electo, viz. tempore installationis sue per Procuratorem suum; Et ista Dona pro tanto ordinantur, ut omnes hunc intrantes Ordinem, digniores reddantur ad habendum sua nomina intulata ac privilegiata, velut Fundatores Ordinis predicti.

XXIII. Interim est statutum quod quam cito aliquis primorum Fundatorum debitum solerit nature, fieri debet de Metallo Scutum Armorum suorum, & galea cum Cresta ejusdem, que figi statuantur in dorso sui stalli, in signum gentis ipsa. Et consimiliter eorum Successores, Scuta Armorum suorum cum galeis & crestis fixa habebunt, in dorso stallorum suorum subius prima tamen, que etiam de Metallo erunt, vernuntamen ad differentiam primorum fundatorum, minoris erunt.

XXIV. Item unusquisque prefatum Ordinem ingressurus promittere habet personaliter ac jurare, seu per Procuratorem quem suo nomine, ut prefertur, contingerit installari, se observaturum iuxta posse fidelius quo valebit, statuta omnia & singula Ordinis prelati. Et de cetero nullus installari permittetur per Procuratorem, nisi fuerit extraneus, qui, ut in propria persona installatur, accedere non valet tempore limitato.

XXV. Item, in casu quo Superior de regno fuerit absens seu alibi, ita quod commodum in persona propria accedere non valeat, ad perimplendum ea que ad installationem Militis sic electi dignoscuntur ex congruo pertinere, sibi licebit vices tunc suas in hac parte committere cuiusque duxerit socio predictae Comitue, qui cuncta suo nomine huic alii pertinentia valebit autoritatemque peragere.

XXVI. Item concordatum est, quod ad hunc Ordinem pertinere debeat nunc commune Sigillum, in presentia Superioris continue permanens, vel in custodia illius quemcumque ad hoc duxerit limitandum.

XXVII. Item, unusquisque de cetero Ordinis predicti habere tenetur penes se Statuta prefata, signata Sigillo prefato, quorum Originale pro perpetuo remanere statuitur infra Thesaurariam Collegii sepedicti, predicto Sigillo prius debite consignatum.

XXVIII. Item, post decessum cuiusvis Militis Ordinis Garterii Executores ejus firmiter asstringuntur ad remittendum Collegio predicto Statuta prefata suis Dominis & Magistris tradita, prius ut prefertur, Custodi tradenda Collegii pro tempore existenti.

XXIX. Item concordatum est, quod nullus de cetero Miles Ordinis Sancti Georgii regnum exire presumat, absque Superioris licentia specialis

APPENDIX.

ciali petitâ super hoc pariter & obtentâ, super quo communiter est decretum quod si aliquod Militare viagium seu aliud quoddam honorificum, per Superiorem fieri disponatur, quod Ordinis militarem famam possit promovere, Superior, ex sua gratiâ speciali, adperagendum dicti Ordinis Commisiones præ cæteris subditis dignabitur anteferre.

XXX. Item, Statutum est, quod nullus Militum prædictorum contra alium presumat militare, nisi solum in casu quo à suis & superioribus Dominis idem & ex iussu legis facere arceatur, seu in propriâ causâ iustâ. Quod si sic eveniat quod aliquis eorundem cum quocunque Domino, seu cum favente suam partem stipendiis retineatur, ad Arma militaribus, & ejus pars adversa alium Ordinis Garterii militem optaverit retinere; in isto casu ipse qui sic secundo fuerit requisitus, eò quod noveris sui Ordinis Commisionem præviè præparari cum adversâ parte, de requisitione hac ultimâ tenetur excusari. Ad insuper in quibuscunque suis hujusmodi retentionibus ad Arma obligari satis arctè ad specialiter præcipiendum, cum ad hoc primo fuerint inclinati. Quod si quem de Ordine suo Garterii cum adversâ parte ipsius retinentis ipsam præviè contingat retinere, quod tunc ille secundo sic retentus, habitâ hujus rei perfectâ notitiâ, isto non obstante, suas liberè valeat habere exercere, ac de hujusmodi retentione ad guerram penitus absolvi eo facto. Quod si in hujusmodi ut præfertur, retentione ipsum secundariè sic retentum non consiterit, de aliquo sui Ordinis consocio cum parte retento adversâ, sed posterius si devenit ad notitiâ, incontinenti se noscat firmiter obligatum ad se excusandum erga dominum seu Magistrum suum, Et ad querelam suam & quamlibet hujusmodi penitus relinquendum.

XXXI. Item quod omnes & singule Licentiæ literales consortii Militibus de cætero concedende per Superiorem, ad finem quod mare pertransiant, ut fines visitent alienos, & exterarum nationes, pro honoribus militiæ quoquo modo perquirendis, ac insuper & Literæ mandatorie, seu aliâs certificatorie, quovis modo Ordini pertinentes cuicunque transmittende, prius debite consignentur prædicti Ordinis communi Sigillo, quod manere statuitur penes aliquem de Ordine, quem ad hoc Superior viderit assignandum. Quem si ex rationabili causâ de præsentâ Superioris recedere contingat, tunc Sigillum post se relinquet, cum illo quem ad hoc Superior decreverit limitare, ita quod Sigillum prædictum, extra suam præsentiam, dummodo infra regnum expectaverit,

minimè relinquatur. Quod etiam omnino observandum fore statuitur, ab incerto pro Superioris in absentia ejus Deputato, quoad Sigillum prelibatum.

XXXII. Item statuitur, quod si quis Miles Ordinis prædicti, ob devotionem propositum receperit infra Collegium prædictum continuè permanendi, quod ipse de suis propriis & non Collegii se disponat interim sustentari.

XXXIII. Item si quis Miles alius extraneus ab ordine ob devotionem etiam ibidem optaverit residere, juxta decretum Superioris Ordinis & ipsius Comitatus, pro ejusdem morâ poterit provideri.

XXXIV. Item conceditur ex decreto, quod si quis Miles, vel quævis alia persona, ab hoc Ordine, ex devotione tribuere decreverit x l. annui redditus, seu terrarum, vel magis, ad effectum quod participes valeat fieri omnium precum devotarum ibidem fundendarum, pro benefactoribus præcipuis Collegii sæpediti, nomen suum eo facto inscribi statuitur inter nomina ibidem benefactorum ejusdem, quatenus pro ipso inter cæteros ab ipsius ministris continuè in speciali valeat deprecari.

XXXV. Interim est decretum, quod si aliquis de Canonicis prædicti Collegii in absentia Superioris decesserit in fata, custos tunc Collegii ejus decessum Superiori significare tenetur ex statuto, per suas literas, ad effectum, quod ipse alium, quem ad hoc decreverit limitandum, in locum ipsius valeat subrogare.

XXXVI. Item, deputandus est interim, per Ordinis Superiorem & ejus Comitativam, minus Registrarius, qui viz. scientior ad hoc fore existimatur Canonico ibidem in Collegio residentium, qui præsens esse poterit in omni Capitulo Ordinis celebrando, ad fidelitèr reportandum, insuper & registrandum, electiones fiendas ac nomina electorum, penas infligendas, & causas penarum, reconciliationes punitorum præviè delinquentium, cum singulis actibus aliis & causis eorundem Ordini pertinentibus, & hoc de Capitulo in Capitulum, & de anno in annum, super quo præfatus Registrarius, in sua primâ receptione ad officium suum, Juramentum tenetur prestare, ad delitèr registrandum materias ibidem ministrandas, modo quo præfertur. Quæ omnia, ut inactuantur, in principio Capituli proximo sequentis, in vigiliâ Sancti Georgii, coram Superiore & totâ Comitativâ integrè debet recitare, ad effectum, quod, si quæ occurrant corrigenda, pro tunc, juxta rei exigentiam, dignè valeant emendari.

APPENDIX.

Another Exemplar of the said Statutes, entred in the Black Book of the Order.

I. Quisquis in Angliâ Regni solio potitur, is ipse perpetuis ab hinc temporibus hujus illustrissimi Ordinis Supremus & erit, & appellabitur.

II. Nullus in hanc clarissimam societatem ascribetur nisi qui generis ac militiæ nomine dignus fuerit, ut qui moribus ac famâ splendidus, & Eques aut ut minimùm auratus; ignobiles autem & improbi repulsam hic omnino patientur. Improbis etenim & probra hæc prohibitatis & honorifice virtutis Ordo minis admittet, aut sustinebit.

III. Commilitones egregii hujus Ordinis & ornatissimi Collegæ viginti sex erunt: qui Trabes ac Subligaria apud Windesorum habeant, in usum & splendorem Ordinis aptè parata, ut quoties utendum sit, his illic utantur. Utendum autem quotiescunq; Divi sui Georgii Sacellum ingrediuntur, seu domum sue suorumq; Sacerdotum consultationi dedicatam, vel ad conventum ibi celebrandum vel quid aliud agendum, vel constituendum, quod Societatis hujus interesse poterit; eodem habitu celebris ornatu, sub vesperis vigiliæ Divi Georgii, ante meridiano Crastine diei solemnè, & secundis deinde vesperis, cum Supremo, vel in locum ejus assignato de magno Regis Cubiculo, ad Sacellum & domum, quam de rebus consulturi subintrat, ibunt ac redibunt. Trabes itidem ac subligariis illic suis induti considebunt, tam in praudio diei Divi Georgii, quam in Cæna vigiliæ ejus, pariter & diei, comedentes simul ac abstemii, neq; se illis exuent, donec ipse Supremus ejusve loco constitutus exuerit, exuendive tempus esse decreverit.

IV. Et quia Militiæ decus honore Divino nititur, & quæ geruntur, oratione pia fulciuntur: illis viginti sex Equitibus, totidem infra Deo dedicandi respondebunt Canonici seculares tredecim, Vicarii totidem; jam jam Sacerdotes, vel brevi post futuri. Canonici nimirum intra annum subsequenter, Vicarii vero proximo deinceps Ordinationis tempore. Horum intererit pro Regis ac Regni ac singulorum in eo conviventium, presertim hujus Ordinis felici Scutu, proq; defunctorum animabus jugiter ac suppliciter exorare. Presentabuntur autem Canonici, per Fundatores Ordinis, ut suum quisque Canonicum Custodi jam Collegii presentet. Quod si quis eorum moriatur, nec ipse qui proximè presentavit, nec alius quisquam Sociorum Ordinis ultra presentabit: sed convenit omnibus unanimiter, ut impolterum omnium presentatio Canonicatum uni Supremo reservetur.

V. Omnes Canonici suum purpurei subrubrice coloris pallium habere debent, insignium Divi Georgii, hoc est Sanguineæ Crucis circulo, dexteris subinde brachiis superinducto.

VI. Si forte Supremus non poterit interesse solemnitati Divi Georgii, Deputatus ab eo locum ejus supplëbit, & consilium nullo minis

borâ tertiarum iuribus, Crastinaq; festivitas de more servabitur, idq; sumptibus ipsius Supremi. Verum ab eo designatus ille, novas interim observationes aut institutiones haud faciet. Statutorum autem transgressores corrigere, & malè facta resarcire licebit.

VII. Annis singulis vigiliâ Divi Georgii fiet una congregatio Sociorum omnium hujus Ordinis in Castro Windesoriensi, si vè tum sint in Angliâ ipsi, si vè foris: modò commodè valeant advenire; ubi tum divinis intererunt, feriatim coassidentes, in Sedili quisq; suo, Trabes & ceteris insignibus ornati. Supra unuscuiq; Sedile, Galea atq; Ensis cum appendicibus, ad ornatum Ecclesiæ, nobilissq; viri condignam memoriam, quoad Superstes erit, propendebunt; prout Ordo Militaris efflagitat. Si vè festivitas illa Divi Georgii intra quindecim à Paschate dies obigerit, deferretur ad quintam decimam post diem & quæ circiter erit Dominicam; Ut nullus Sociorum iustè causam absentie prætere debeat, nec equitare cogatur sub aliquo trium dierum, soleme Pascha proximè subsequente.

VIII. Prefatæ vigiliæ borâ tertiarum simul ibidem aderunt, si qui vè designato tempore non venerint, nec, quod Supremo vel ejus Vicem gerenti iustè ac probabiliè excusent, habeant, pro tempore illo prohibebuntur ab introitu Consilii, neq; suffragii conferendi facultatem habebunt in ullis rebus, quæ tum fient, aut stantur in Consilio. Sin ad nitarumq; vespertinum & solemnissimè principium non accesserint, à suis exclusi sedibus, infra stabunt, ubi Ceroterarii solent: donec illa sacra de more finita fuerint. Quisquis autem ad eam celebritatem non veniet, nec habet quod jure causari possit, quod & Supremus approbabit, eadem anni sequentis festivitate Sedili suo deprivatus tempore primarum vespertinarum ut supra, ante id Sedile substabit, dum solemniter in Crastino Chorus procedet, tres processionarias Cruces antecedit: & reversus in eodem infimo loco persistabit, usq; ad eam, Missæ partem, quâ ritè offerunt, tumq; ipse novissimus offerre debet. Post humilem istiusmodi pene tolerantiam: vè vestigio veniet ad clarum Sedile Supremi sui, vel in ejus loco constituti, veniam oraturus. A quibus Statui priori restitutus, remittetur ad Sedile proprium. Si vè remanens intra Regnum, altero nihilominus anno supra memoratæ celebritati citra excusationem hujusmodi laudabilem, abesse non formidabit, à Sedili proprio consue prohibebitur, donec intra Sacellum ante Altare Divi Georgii unum Donarium viginti Marcis probatè in Angliâ Monetæ, valens obtulerit. Et singulis deinceps annis quoadusq; reconciliatus ipse fuerit ea multa geminabitur.

IX. Omnes Socii, ubicunq; locorum extiterint, quotannis in illa Divi Georgii festivitate carules

APPENDIX.

ceruleas suas trabecæ ab exordio primarum vigiliæ vespertinarum usque ad secundarum diæ terminum cum res poscat induentur, perinde ac si cum ipso Supremo vel ejus Vicemgerente, quoad ea festivitatis agitur, presentes essent; nisi forsitan libertate tunc sua defuturi fuerint.

X. Si quis Socius absque nobilitate Subligaculo publicitatis incedat, inde notam incurret, & ammonitus Custodi ac Collegio dimidium Marcæ persolvat, sicut persolvendi mos semper ante fuit.

XI. In supremo Sacrificio, quæ sit sollemniter offerendum, Socii, quemadmodum in sedibus suis & regione consistant, ita bini procedant ad offerendum, si vero quæquam abesse contigerit, Socius ejus qui sedet ex opposito, solus ad offerendum ibit.

XII. Quando solemniter Processio fiet in Sacello, postremus omnium Supremus incedet.

XIII. Postridi Divi Georgii, priusquam Socii vale sibi dicant invicem, una sollemnis Missa celebrabitur pro defunctis: à qua nemo Sociorum aberit, nisi necessarium impedimentum ostendens, Supremo vel ejus Vicemgerente recedendi copiam impetrit.

XIV. Trabecam suam seu Clamidem Socius unusquisque Windesorei relinquat: ut ibi paratam semper inveniat, si repente forsitan accesserit, aut aliquod ex salutari moniti præceptoque Principis adimplendum acciderit.

XV. Si quisquam & Socii, iter ingressus, Windesorei Castrum forte præterebatur, ob honorem loci, (nisi legitima causa prædixerit) divertat illuc. Prius autem quam eadem introeat, Clamidem induat. Indatum Canonici, qui tunc afferant obviam venientes, in Chorum reverenter adducunt. Si Missæ celebrari tunc instet, ad honorem Dei, Sanctique Georgii, venerabundus illam audiat. Sin alius accesserit, tantisper immoratus, dum Canonici cum reliquis sacrificiis Psalmum De profundis, pro defunctis absolverint, ibidem offerat. Quod si quis mediam urbem transiens haud diverterit in eadem oblaturus, quoties id ita prætermiserit, ut obedientem se demonstrat, unum milliæ pedes illuc accedet, vel unum denarium offert.

XVI. Supremus Ordinis, ubi primum significata sibi fuerit mors alicujus & Socii, pro salute anime ejus mille Missas celebrari faciet, Rex externus, qui de numero fuerit, Olingentas; Princeps Walliæ, Septingentas; Dux unusquisque sexcentas; Marchio, quadringentas quinquaginta; Comes, Trecentas; Vicecomes, Ducentas quinquaginta; Baro, Ducentas; Eques alius quisque Centum. Quod si Supremus, aut Eques alius id, intra tres menses postquam certior fuerit factus, non persceverit, numerum Missarum ad quas ante tenebatur conduplicabit. Sin medium annum id ipsum omiserit, rursus congeminari debet. Et pari formâ de tempore in tempus usque ad anni finem. Quod si intra annum integrum, quod debet, non impleverit, annos eodem modo duplicabit.

XVII. Quoties Sociorum aliquis ab hac vita exceverit, Supremus, aut ab eo designatus, certior inde factus, alios omnes qui tunc fuerint

intra Regnum accedere valentes, literis actum commonebit; ut intra sex hebdomadas post, in locum ab his sibi statuendum conveniant, ad electionem novi Socii. Quibus omnibus ita congregatis, vel (ad minimum) sex eorum, ultra Supremum aut ab eo Deputatum, presentium quicque novem de magis idoneis, ut quos ignominia probroque vacare crediderit; seu sint de Supremo subditis, seu quibus exteri (dummodo non sint ipsius adversarii, vel adversariorum ejus fautores, aut ultroci defensores) nominabit, tres viz, Comites, aut excelsores Conditionis homines, tres Barones, & totidem Bachalauros Equites. Ipsi hæc autem nomina conscribet Ordinis Prelatus, scilicet Wintonienensis tum Episcopus, sin abfuerit ipse, Collegii Decanus, vel Scriba Ordinis. Quin immo si nullus horum interfuerit, & residentibus antiquissimus id effectum ibi dabit. In hunc modum conscriptos qui scripsit ad Supremum, aut ab eo Designatum afferens ostendet; Is vero de nominatis cum preeligerit, cui plura suffragia consenserim, & quem sibi Regnoque sciet aptiorem atque utiliorem fore. Si quis (ut oportuit) præmonitus, ad electionem tamen non advenit, punietur: nisi justam absentiae causam, & Supremo vel ejus locum implenti probatam præstenderit. Si causam minus approbandam attulerit, nec vocatus tamen adesse curavit, multabitur, ut unam Collegio marcæ persolvat, & inito proximè Consilio super terram ante Supremum seu Designatum ab ipso, totamque societatem in medio sedebit, quousque cum eis rediens in gratiam restitutus fuerit.

XVIII. A morte cuiusvis Equitum, electus in eam societatem illico prænotabilis Subbuli usque donabitur: quo fiet ut Sociorum unus habeatur. Trabecæ vero sibi necessariæ non prius ornabitur, quam in Sedile suum fuerit introducendus. Si que is ante mortem quam fuerit in sede propria collocatus, haud fundatorum unus appellabitur, eo quod plenam status sui possessionem non habuerit. Attamen Missarum de quibus diximus, medietas illi debebitur, quod ornamentum Subligaris obtinuerat. Sin autem Electus non celeriter accedat ut Sedile suum occupet, vel saltem intra Annum non iter arripit ut illud ipsum adimpleat, modò manserit in Regno, nisi Supremo seu gerenti vicem ejus, totique societati, gratam ac sufficientem excusationem apposuerit, inanis erit illa prior electio, nec quid erit impedimento, quo minus inde Supremus aut ab eo designatus, cum ceterâ Societate liberè procedat ad novam electionem. Ensis ejus atque Galea non ante supra Sedile suum affiguntur quam venerit ad Arcem; sed ante sedile foris, ob id nimirum ut dedecori nulla detur occasio, que sic utique vitari non possit, si de locis editoribus subito tollerentur. Verum ut Equestri honor servetur illibatus, extra Chorum, modo, quo poterunt, bonis removebuntur, ad opus publicum & utilitatem Collegii remansura.

XIX. Socii de finibus remotis atque externis eligendi de sui electione per Supremum certiores fieri debent, celeritè missis ad eos sub Sigillo communi, illustri Subligaculo, & ceruleâ Trabecâ, cum Statutis Ordinis ipsius, certè Supremi sumptibus

sumptibus. Intra quatuor autem menses ab electione facta, de hoc sunt certiores: ut perpendere possint è Statutis electionem illam gratam ac ratam, anone velint habere. Tum huiusmodi omnes, qualiscumque conditionis & honoris electi, postquam certò id intellexerint, & grater acciperint, prout honor conditionis exigit, idoneum remittant Procuratorem, qui sibi sedem occupet. Idem interpretatur qui vitâ famâq; sit incorruptus, nec antea notatus, sed irreprehensibilis. In cerealeam è serico Trabeam, Ensem atq; Galeam, Windsorium scutum affert, ut ibidem ea permancat. Adducta vero Trabea pmetur à Supremo vel Vicem ejus gerente, super dexterum Procuratoris humerum, quando sub nomine Domini sui in sedem introducitur; nec inde dimovebit post clari sedilis ingressum, usq; dum Canoniarum horarum celebratio terminatur. Ultra vero non gestabit eam, neq; Consilium introibit, aut suffragium ullum ibi conferet, ullius auctoritatis aut potestatis argumento. Ea sanè facultas per Vicarium occupantem sedis, solis est exteris concedenda: quod illuc hii commodè satis baud possent advenire. Fit autem hæc potestas illis ea præsertim de causâ quo Missarum orationumq; piarum, quarum aliqui dimidio privarentur, jam in vestigia parti ipse essent.

XX. Si Comes, Baro, vel Eques Bacchalaureus obierit; qui succedet, sive Comes, Baro, vel Eques tantum existerit, eandem omnia sedem quam & prædecessor obtinebit. Nec eligendus quisquam seriem istam interrumpet, aut demutabit, præter unum Walliæ Principem, qui sedile Supremi semper è Regione suam tradidit. Itaq; fieri potest ut Comitum sedem Eques, & huius è diversi Comes occupet jurâq; teneat. Sic nimirum est institutum, ut qui fuerint primarii Fundatores Ordinis intelligamus.

XXI. Unusquisq; Sociorum in ingressu Ordinis, dabit in Eleemosynas imperpetuum illic institutas, & insistentationem Canoniarum, pauperumq; Milium, Supremus scilicet. Quadraginta Marcas, Extraneus Rex, viginti libras, Princeps Walliæ, viginti Marcas, quisq; Dux, decem libras, Comes totidem Marcas, Baro centum solidos, & Eques Bacchalaureus quinque Marcas. Iussu sunt hæc ideo donari, ut qui donat, unus è fundatoribus merito nomen accipiat. Rem dignam etenim & iustam arbitrabantur, ut fundatori huic commodi tantillum adderet, quisquis privilegii nomen obtinens, numero fundatorum accederet. Nec alicujus Ensis aut Galea supra sedile suum ante defigetur, quàm ista pecunia fuerit rite persoluta. Externi reverà quod debent ob introitum, pendunt id à Supremo.

XXII. Ut primum è primævis Fundatoribus illius expiraret, Scutum è metallo in quo nota compingentur Armorum, cum Galea, fixum extabit, in sedili proprio, post tergum sedentis. Et qui succedent, Scuta cum Galeis atq; armis simili modo collocant: tamen sub illis primævis Fundatorum. Neq; etiam ipsorum hæc omnino tam magna fient, quam erant illa primorum Fundatorum.

XXIII. Ingressurus jam dignitatem hujus insignissimi Ordinis, vel ipsemet pollicebitur, vel

eius nomine Procurator, & jurabit, quòd hæc Statuta fideliter atq; integre pro viribus observare vellet. Procuratores autem loco suo statuendi facultas, solum (uti diximus) exterorum erit.

XXIV. Si quando Supremus Regnum peregrè vel aliter exiens absuerit, quo tempore Socius aliquis in sedem suam est sollemniter introducendus, ut (quæ suæ partes sunt) perficere non possit, unicuique è Sociis potestatem suam ex arbitrio committat, qui, quidvis exequi perficereq; debeat, quod & Supremus ipse, si jamjam presens esset.

XXV. Fiet unum Commune Sigillum Ordinis, quod illius, quem Supremus assignarit, custodie commendabitur.

XXVI. Omnes Statuta sibi descripta Sigilloq; communi consignata, quisq; Sociorum habeat. Originale vero Statutorum eodem Sigillo munitum permancbit in erario Collegii, diligentissime reconditum. Defuncti nimirum Socii heredes ex asse, Statuta quæ vivens apud se retinuit, remittent ad Collegium, & Prelidi seu Decano reddenda curabunt.

XXVII. Nullus istorum Equitum Regnum exhibet, nisi premonito Supremo, qui exequendi potestatem faciet. Si qua vero Militaris expeditio contingat, vel quid ejusmodi, sub quo glorioseratur Equitris, suis hic istius Ordinis Equitibus clementissimus Rex Supremus beneficus & gratissus erit; ut quos in altis istiusmodi decoris, quibusvis aliis antefere debeat.

XXVIII. Nullus Equitum hujus Ordinis contra Sociorum ullum Arma movebit, nisi vel Supremi sui, vel propria causa iuste compulerit. Siq; Sociorum aliquis in alicujus Domini famulitium acciderit, ejusq; partes sibi defendendas assumpserit; Et postmodum adversarius alium ex eisdem Sociis Lateri suo conjungere cupiat, qui posterior expetitur baud ullo pacto consentiet. Quisquis itaq; Sociorum ab ullo petiit ut sibi militet: initi pacisci debet, quòd eatenus sua conventio non stabit. Si Sociorum aliquis antea cum adversâ parte militare ceperit, sique jam retentus ad militiam ignoravit, quòd alter Sociorum sub adversâ parte prius ad arma descenderit: Ubi primum id resciverit, servicium abdicans, illud excolet.

XXIX. Omnes Equites hujus Ordinis, qui terras circumcurfare volent, honoris inveniendi gratiâ per facinora Militaria, Literas in id scriptas habere curabunt: quæ quidem & omnes aliæ spectantes ad hunc Ordinem Sigillo Communi consignari debent, quod custodiet unus Sociorum, quem ex arbitrio Supremus assignabit. Eum quem si causa fecerit absentem à Supremo, Sigillum illud interea Sociorum alteri relictum ibit, quem viz. & Supremus ipse nominabit; ita quidem, ut Sigillum id commune nullo antiquam tempore de Supremo præsentia tollatur, quamdum Supremus intra Regnum Angliæ remanserit. In ejus autem absentia, faciet illud ipsum cum Sigillo, designatus à Supremo.

XXX. Si cui Equitum hujus Societatis pietatis in hoc statu, apud Arcem Windsoriensem commorari velis, suis illis impendiis vivere debet.

APPENDIX.

XXXI. Si quis etiam alius præter hujus Societatis Equites aliquid annuum, decem viz. libras aut eo amplius, Collegio donare voluerit, ut orationum ibi dicendarum particeps esse, queat; nomen ejus numero benefactorum ascribatur, ut perpetuum cum eis memoria commendetur.

XXXII. Quando Canoniorum aliquis moritur, si Supremus intra Regnum non sit, Collegii Custos ad eum Literas emittet, ut quem voluerit, ad Canoniatum illum nominet.

XXXIII. E Canonici, unus, moribus & scientiâ maximè conveniens, per Supremum ac Societatem eligetur, qui Consiliis inter eos celebrandis interesse debet; ut electiones, & electorum nomina, punitiones & causas earum, ceteraq; in Consiliis illis administranda, probè, ac fideliter annotet, & tanquam in indicem redigat. Cumq; sit admittendus, jurabit quod officium in hisce

rebus suum fideliter exequetur; Principio sanè ejusq; Consilii vigiliâ Divi Georgii quorannis incundi, cunctis superioris Anni gesta fideliter annotata coram Supremo Societateq; recitabuntur. Quod si quid haud bene sit conceptum, & correctionis egeat, revocabitur ad incudem, & sue reddetur perfectioni.

In consummatum.

XXXIV. Et quoniam Eleemosyna Orationis conjuncta multum juvat ad salutem Animæ, clarissimis illis Equitibus totidem veterani Milites egerit substituentur, ad orandum, habituri quidem illic, cum de suo nequeant, inde vivere potuerint. Horum autem Electio, sicut & anteposita Canoniorum spectabit ad Supremum. Habebunt item isti Milites sua palliola rubra, Scuti Divi Georgii similitur affuro.

The Statutes established by King Henry the Fifth.

A l'honneur de Dieu, Sainte Marie La glorieuse Vierge, & Saint George. Si a le Roy d'Angleterre nostre Seigneur Edouard troisieme apres la Conqueste d'Angleterre, l'an de son regne vingt & trois, ordonné & establi & fondé une Compagnie en son Chasteau de Windefore, en la maniere qui s'en suit.

Premierement luy mesme Souverain, son aîné filz le Prince de Galles, le Duc de Lancastre, le Comte de Warwyk, le Capitaine de Bouche, le Comte de Stafford, le Comte de Salesbury, le Sire de Mortimer, Monsieur Jehan Lisle, Monsieur Bartholomeu de Bourgherth le filz, Monsieur Jehan de Beauchamp, le Sire de Mahun, Monsieur Hugh de Courtenay, Monsieur Thomas de Holand, Monsieur Jehan de Grey, Monsieur Richard le Filz Simon, Monsieur Miles Stapelton, Monsieur Thomas Wale, Monsieur Hugh de Wriottesley, Monsieur Nele Loring, Monsieur Jehan Chandos, Monsieur James d'Audeley, Monsieur de Holland, Monsieur Henry Emc, Monsieur Sanchet de Prichecourt, Monsieur Walter de Pauley.

I. Il est accordé, que le Roy, & ses heirs, Rois d'Angleterre seront pour tousiours Souverains de la dite Compagnie.

II. Item est accordé, que nul ne soit eleu Compagnon du dit Ordre, s'il n'est Gentilhomme de Sang, & Chevalier sans reproche.

III. Item, que les xxvi. dessus nommez porteront les Manteaux & les Gartiens ordonnés au dit lieu, quand ils seront presens audit Chastel, c'est assavoir à toutes les fois qu'ils entreront dans la Chapelle de Saint George, ou au Chapitre, pour tenir Chapitre, ou illec faire aucun aîe appartenant à l'Ordre. Et semblablement porteront leur manteaux dès la veille Saint George, avec le Souverain ou son Deputé en maniere de procession, de la grande Chambre, jusqu'à la Cha-

pelle, ou au Chapitre, en retournant en semblable maniere, & aussi les porteront au souper de la dite Veille, ceux qui souper voudront, & les autres aussi jusques apres laver. Et le lendemain en venant en ladite Chapelle & retournant au dîner, & apres, tant que le Souverain, ou son Deputé, aura tenu son estat; Et en venant aux secondes vespres, & en retournant, & au souper, tant que la Vuide soit faicte. Et que chacun des xxvi. Compagnons dessus nommez, chacun à leur entrer dedans le Chœur, ils devotement obeiront, premierement à l'autel, en l'honneur & maniere des gens de Sainte Eglise; & apres au Souverain, ou à son Estat, en son absence, devant qu'ils entreront en leur Estals, & pareillement en leur departir d'icelle.

IV. Et seront ordonnez xiii. Chanoines Secculiers, qui seront Prestres en leur entrée, ou dedans l'an prochain ensuivant; Et xiii. Vicaires, aussi Prestres à leur entrée, ou aux prochains Ordres, chantant pour toutes ames Chrestiennes, lesquels Chanoines seront presentez par les Fondeurs dessus dits; C'est assavoir, chacun des Fondeurs, qui à present est, presentera son Chanoine au Gardien du College; ainsi que si aucun de Chanoines meurt, celui qui le presenta ni nul autre presentera, mais le Souverain du dit Ordre pour tousiours apres. Et en telle maniere est accordé pour tous autres Chanoines.

V. Item est accordé, que les Chanoines auront leurs Manteaux de Murrey, avec un Rondelet des armes de Saint George.

VI. Et sont ordonnez xxvi. pauvres Chevaliers qui n'ont dequoy vivre, pour avoir en celle maison leur sustentance convenable pour leur bonne priere, à l'honneur de Dieu & de Saint George; Et de l'election est ordonné des presentemens des Chanoines dessus nommez, ainsi que l'election remaindra toujours par devers le dit Souverain.

APPENDIX.

VII. Item est accordé, que les poutres Chevaliers auront leurs Manteaux de Rouge, & un Effusson des armes de Saint George, sans Gardier.

VIII. Item est accordé, que si le Souverain ne peut estre à la Feste, qu'il fasse son Deputé par ses Lettres, pour tenir, en la veille de Saint George, le Chapitre, à l'heure de Tierce, & le iour de Saint George, pour tenir, aux costages du Souverain, ladite Feste, pour le temps dessus-dit, sans autres nouvelles ordonnances, aiant pouvoir de corriger & radresser les points de Chapitre qui enseruent par ainsi que le Souverain aura acis que le nombre des Compagnons de l'Ordre avecques luy requis par les Estatuz, affin que telle election soit valable. Et si en celuy temps y a aucune vuidance des Compagnons, qu'adonques l'election appartiendra audit Souverain, & d'icelle sera le dit Deputé suffisamment certifié par ledit Souverain. Et parailleurs que le dit Deputé signifie au Souverain des vuidances si aucunes soient en Angleterre : affin que si pour le temps de la dite vuidance en la presence du Souverain n'est trouué le nombre desdits Compagnons comme dessus est dit, que ledit Deputé en soit certifié par le dit Souverain, & des merites & noms des gens d'armes & d'honneur, qui selon l'advis du dit Souverain seront aucunement dignes, à cause de leur vaillances, d'estre nommez pour estre de ladite Compagnie ; & adonques l'election appartiendra audit Deputé selon la forme des Estatuz.

IX. Item, que chacun an, la veille de Saint George soit faite une assemblée de tous les Compagnons de Saint George dessus nommez, au dit Chastel de Windesore qui sont dedans la terre, qui tenir y pourront, & illec auront leur service de Saint George, & auront leurs Manteaux durant le service, estant ordonnement en leurs Estalz, & chacun aura son Heaulme & son Espée par dessus son Estal, qui à tout leur vivant demourront à la Chapelle illecque en signification de celui qui les porte, & de sa foy de Sainte Eglise, comme l'Ordre de Chevalerie le veut. Mais en cas que la Feste Saint George vienne dedans xx. iours prochains apres Pasques, soit prorogée jusques au Dimanche, qui à toutesfoi sera le quinziesme iour apres le iour de Pasques, affin que chacun Compagnon dudit Ordre puisse estre à la dite Feste sans Chevauchier trois iours prochains ensuiuant le iour de Pasques, par ainsi que le iour de la Feste dessus dite ne soit ordonné ni assigné les xxiv, xxv, xxvi^{me} ni le derrain iour d'Avril, ni sur les iiij. premiers iours de May, à cause de l'impediment du Service divin ordonné par Sainte Eglise, pour doubles Festes de Saint Marc, Philippe, & Jacob, & de Sainte Croix nostre Seigneur Jesu Christ. Et si la Feste Saint George vienne entre les Pentecostes, ou au milieu entre Feste Pentecostes ordonnée par Sainte Eglise, dont les premieres ou secondes vestres par telles ordonnances.

X. Item, qu'ilz viennent audit lieu, la veille de Saint George, à l'heure de Tierce ; & s'ils ne viennent au temps assigné, ils auront leur penance selon l'accord du Chapitre. Et accordé est, qu'ils

n'entreront point au Chapitre à celle fois, mais se tiendront par dehors à l'huiz, & n'auront point de voix en rien qui sera fait audit Chapitre, à celle fois tant seulement. Et s'ils ne viennent aux vestres deuenement au commencement, ils n'entreront point en leurs Estalz, mais se tiendront au bas desdits Estalz, aux lieus des Choristes durant les dites Vestres. Et semblable penance est accordée pour les non-venants par temps devant la haute Messe & Vestres le iour de Saint George. Et s'ils ne viennent à la dite feste, sans excusation acceptable par ledit Souverain, ou son Deputé, la peine sera qu'il n'entrera en son Estal la prochaine feste apres, mais se tiendra tout en bas, comme dessus, les premieres vestres, & ira à la Procession tout devant les trois Croix, & se tiendra tout en bas, comme dessus, toute la Messe, jusqu'à l'offrande, & offrira le derrenier. Et apres ces penances ainsi faites, il viendra incontement devant l'Estal du Souverain, ou son Deputé, & demandera pardon. Et apres, ledit Souverain, ou son Deputé luy commandera d'aller en son Estal, à son premier estat. Et s'il ne vient à la seconde feste, & soit demeurant au Royaume sans excusation alouable au Souverain, ou a son Deputé, il n'entrera en son dit Estal deslors en avant, jusques qu'il aura offert un joyau à l'Autel de Saint George dedans ladite Chapelle, de la value de xxx. Marcs ; & deslors en avant il doublera la peine chacun an, tant qu'il soit reconcilié.

XI. Item, que tous les Compagnons dudit Ordre porteront leurs Manteaux du Bleu dudit Ordre à l'heure des premieres vestres jusques apres les secondes, en la feste de Saint George chacun an, quelque part qu'ils soient, en telle maniere comme ils seroient, s'ils estoient presens en la feste avec ledit Souverain ou son Deputé, par ainsi qu'ils soient en lieu à leur liberté, non obstant la prorogation de la feste.

XII. Item est accordé, que si aucun de ladite Compagnie soit trouué en apert sans Gardier, qu'il paye, tantost apres la chalange, au Gardien & College, demy Marc, excepté quand il est bousé pour Chevauchier, que adonques il sera tenu porter, sous son bousé, en signification du Gardier, un fil bleu de soye ; & pourveu aussi que nul Chevalier dudit Ordre dorenavant entre au Chapitre sans Gardier.

XIII. Item est accordé, que les Compagnons de Saint George voient pour offrir à la haute Messe chacun avec son Compagnon à l'opposite de luy, ordonnement comme ils sont mis en leurs Estalz ; Et s'il advient que l'un ne soit à la journée, son Compagnon, qui est à l'opposite de luy, ira par soy à l'offrande ; Et que le Souverain, ou son Deputé voise derriere toute la Compagnie, tant que Procession soit faite en allant à ladite Chapelle.

XIV. Item est ordonné, que chacun an, lendemain de la feste Saint George, devant le departement de la Compagnie, avant dite, une Messe de Requiem sera la chantée pour les ames des Compagnons, qui sont morts, & tous Chrestiens ; Et que toute la Compagnie soit illecque, sinon que aucun soit deslourbé raisonnablement, ou qu'il ait congé

APPENDIX.

congié du Souverain ou de son Deputé, devant son departir. Et quand il advient qu'à cause des voidances des Compagnons soient aucuns Heaulmes, Tymbres, & Espees qui doivent estre offerts, que devant l'offrande des Monnoyes, les Espees soient offertes premierement, par deux Compagnons, que le Souverain ou son Deputé voudra nommer; & depuis, le Heaulme, avecques le Tymbre, pareillement, par deux autres de l'Ordre, par ledit Souverain, ou son Deputé, assignez.

XV. Item est accordé, que chacun de ladite Compagnie laissera son Manteau illecques pour telles fondaines venues, & pour les point tenir du commandement du Souverain.

XVI. Item est accordé, que si aucun de ladite Compagnie vienne en cheminant près le dit Chastel, qu'il soit dedans, pour l'honneur de ladite place, s'il pourra bonnement, & s'il ne soit destourbé à juste cause, & qu'il preme son Manteau avant qu'il entre en ladite Chapelle; par ainsi qu'il n'y entre point sinon qu'il ait son Manteau sur luy. Et illecques les Chanoines, qui y sont, viendront à luy, pour l'encomrer, & le mener en ladite Chapelle devotement; Et s'il soit à l'heure de Messe, qu'il demeure là pour oïr ladite Messe, en honneur de Dieu, & de Monsieur Saint George, Et si c'est apres Nonne, d'entrer en la maniere dessus dite, & oïr ung De profundis des Chanoines, pour les ames de tous Chrestiens, & offrir illec. Et si aucun des dits Compagnons, chevauche parmy la ville, & ne veulle offrir comme accordé est, que sur son obediens, par chacune fois qu'il faudra, qu'il soit à ladite Chapelle, en l'honneur de Saint George, une lieue à pied, & aussi chacune fois qu'il faut donner à l'offrande.

XVII. Item est accordé, que au plustot que la mort soit cogneue de qui soit de la Compagnie dessus dite, que le Souverain fera chanter, pour l'ame de celuy qui est mort, mille Messes; ung Roy estranger, huit cens Messes; le Prince, sept cens Messes; chacun Duc, six cens; chacun Comte, trois cens; chacun Banneret, deux cens; & chacun Bachelier, cent Messes. Et s'il ne face iceulx dedans un quartier d'an apres la mort certifiée, qu'il double le quartier de l'entier; Et si demy-an soit au derriere, soit doublé, comme dit est. Et ainsi de temps en temps jusques à la fin de l'an, & s'il n'est accompli en l'an durant, soient les ans doublez.

XVIII. Item est accordé, que si aucun de ladite Compagnie meure, que ledit Souverain, ou son Deputé face, apres sa mort à luy certifiée, garnir tous les Compagnons estans en Angleterre, par ses Lettres, qui pourront venir, qu'ils soient devant luy, ou que s'il luy plaira assigner lieu convenable dedans six semaines apres la certification de la mort dessus dite. Lesquels tous ainsi assemblez, ou au moins six, outre le Souverain, ou son Deputé dessus dit, chacun d'iceulx, qui sont venus à l'election, nommera neuf des plus suffisans Chevaliers sans reproche qu'il connoist, subiectz du dit Souverain, ou autres, pourveu qu'ils ne tiennent son adverse partie; c'est assavoir, trois Contes, ou de greigneur estat, trois Bannerets, & trois Bacheliers. Lesquelles nominations escriira

le chief Prelate du dit Ordre, c'est assavoir, l'Evêque de Winchester pour le temps estant, du en son absence le Dean, ou Registreur, ou le plus avant Residencier, en leur absence du dit Colliege; Et la nomination ainsi faite par tous, ou six au moins, sera, par luy, qui l'aura écrite, moustrée au Souverain, ou à son Deputé, lequel escriira celuy des nommez qui aura le plus de voix, & qui luy semblera le plus honorable au dit Ordre, & profitable à sa Couronne, & au Royaume. Et en cas que aucuns de ladite Compagnie ne vienne à l'election, s'ils ne sont destourbez par juste cause, & ladite cause signifiée dessous leurs seaux d'armes, acceptée par le Souverain, ou son Deputé; si ladite cause ne soit juste, ou ne vienne aux sermons dessus dits, est accordé qu'il paye au Gardien & Colliege, pour chanter pour celuy qui est mort, ung Marc; & à sa prochaine venue au Chaptre, sera devant le Souverain, ou son Deputé, & la Compagnie sur la terre, au milieu du Chaptre, tant qu'il soit reconcilié par le Souverain, ou son Deputé & la Compagnie.

XIX. Item est accordé, que en cas si aucun des Chevaliers de ladite Compagnie meure, & ung autre est elen, il aura tantost apres l'election le Jarrier, en signifiens qu'il est ung des Compagnons du Jarrier, & le Manteau luy sera delivré pour son habit, quand il sera mis en son Estal, & non devant. Et en cas qu'il meure devant qu'il ait receu son habit, il ne sera mie nommé pour ung des Fondeurs, puisqu'il default avoir plenièr possession de son estat. Mais il aura la moitié des Messes dessus nommez pour la liurée de son Gardier, & rien outre cela. Et si celuy elen ne vient en toute bonne haste, apres la reception du Gardier, au dit lieu pour estre estallé, & par especiall dedans l'an de son election, s'il soit Chevalier demourant dedans le Royaume, s'il n'a excusation acceptable au Souverain, ou à son Deputé & la Compagnie, soit l'election voidée de celuy, & soit le Souverain, ou son Deputé, & la Compagnie à nouvelle election; Et ne seront l'Espee ni le Heaulme, mis sur son Estal, devant la venue de l'esten dedans le dit Chastel, afin que s'il ne vient comme dessus, que ses dits Espee & Heaulme ne soient abatus ny devallez, mais honestement mis hors du Chœur, & remairdront à l'usage du dit Colliege.

XX. Item est accordé, que tous Estrangers, qui seront esleuz Compagnons du dit Ordre, seront certifiez par le Souverain de leur election, & que leur Gardier, leur Manteau, & les Estatutz de l'Ordre, sous le commun Seel, leur seront envoyez au costages du dit Souverain, en toute bonne haste, & au plus tard soient ils certifiez dedans quatre mois apres l'election, afin qu'ils se peussent par les dits Estatutz aviser, s'ils veulent recevoir le dit Jarrier, ou non, & que tous tels Estrangers de quelque dignité, estat, ou condition qu'ils soient, envoient, dedans sept mois apres ladite certification à eulx faite par le Souverain, & la reception de la Jarretiere, un Procureur suffisant, selon l'estat de son Seigneur & Maître, pourveu qu'il soit Chevalier, & sans reproche, pour estre estallé en son lieu, qui apportera avecque luy ung Manteau de sive bleue de l'Ordre, de par celuy qui

APPENDIX.

qui l'envoyera, & son Heaume, son Tymbre, & son Espée, pour demourer au Collège pour toujours ; lequel Manteau par le Souverain, ou son Deputé, au temps que ledit Procureur sera estallé, luy sera mis sur son bras dextre, à le tenir sur son dit bras, à l'heure divine prochaine, apres qu'il sera estallé au nom de son dit Seigneur & Maître, sans plus le porter en aucun temps, & sans avoir voix en Chapitre, ou y entrer, en l'absence de celui qui l'envoyera. Et est assavoir, que cette faveur est faite aux Estrangers, qui ne peuvent bonnement venir en leurs propres personnes, qu'ils peuvent estre estallez par Procureur, afin qu'ils soient participans ez Messes & Prières entières du dit Ordre, car ilz failleroient de la moitié, s'ils n'estoient estallez devant la mort. Et pareillement est ordonné des gens du dit Ordre estuez de nouveau estants en la guerre du Roy, ou ailleurs, de son commandement, de recevoir le benedice du dit estat en ce qui appartiendra seulement à leur Estallation.

XXI. Item est accordé, que si aucun des Contes, Bannerets, ou Bacheliers, meurt, celui qui viendra en son lieu, soit il Conte, Banneret, ou Bachelier, tiendra le mesme Estal que son Predecesseur tenoit, & ne changera point, fors prins le Prince, qui tiendra le premier Estal, à l'opposite du Souverain, si tost comme il sera esteu ; ainsi que par ce cas, ung Conte tiendra l'Estal d'un Bachelier, & le Bachelier d'ung Conte : & c'est pour cause de sçavoir qui furent les premiers Fondateurs.

XXII. Item est accordé, que tous les Compagnons du dit Ordre, à leur premiere entrée, donneront chacun ung certain prix selon son estat, en maintenance des Chanoines & poveres Chevaliers demourans au dit lieu, & des aumosnes qui y sont perpetuellement ordonnées illec ; C'est assavoir, le Souverain, quarante Mares ; ung Roy estrange, vingt Liures ; le Prince, vingt Mares ; chacun Duc, dix Liures ; chacun Conte, dix Mares ; chacun Banneret, cent Solz ; & chacun Bachelier, cinq Mares. Et ne seront leurs Heaulmes ny leurs Espées mises sur leurs Estalz, jusques qu'ils auront payé à leurs entrées les sommes dessus dites, selon l'estat de celui à qui il appartient. Et est assavoir, que le Souverain sera tenu de payer pour l'entrée de chacun Estranger esteu à l'estalllement de son Procureur. Et ces dons pour ce sont ordonnez, afin que chacun qui entre en cet Ordre soit le plus digne d'avoir le nom, titre, & privilege d'un des Fondateurs du mesme Ordre.

XXIII. Item est ordonné, que si tost que l'ung de la Compagnie soit mort, que son Escu fait de metal de ses Armes, & son Heaulme soient fichez au dos de son Estal ; & les autres Fondateurs qui viendront apres auront leurs Escus & leurs Heaulmes en la mesme maniere dessous les premiers Fondateurs. Mais leurs Escus ny leurs Heaulmes ne seront pas si grands comme ceulz des premiers Fondateurs.

XXIV. Item est accordé, que chacun entrant au dit Ordre promette par luy, & jure par son suffisant Procureur, qui sera estallé au nom de luy, de loyaument garder & observer les Estatuz du

dit Ordre, à son loyal pouvoir ; Et ne sera nul estallé par Procureur s'il n'est Estranger, qui bonnement ne peut venir en sa propre personne pour estre estallé.

XXV. Item est accordé, qu'en cas que le Souverain soit hors du pais, ou qu'il ne pourra en propre personne faire ce qui appartient à l'estallation, qu'il pourra donner pouvoir à l'ung des Compagnons, pour faire la mesme chose en son nom.

XXVI. Item est accordé, que ung commun Seel soit fait, lequel demourra en la garde de celui que le Souverain voudra nommer & assigner.

XXVII. Item, que chacun des Compagnons du dit Ordre dorenavant ait les dessus dits Estatuz sous le commun Seel avant dit ; & que l'Original soit scellée avec le dit Seel, & demeure en la Tresorerie du dit Collège à tousjours.

XXVIII. Item, & apres la mort de chacun Compagnon du dit Ordre, ses Exceuteurs seront tenus de renvoyer les Estatuz du dit Ordre au dit Collège, & les delivrer au Gardien d'iceluy pour le tenir estant.

XXIX. Item est accordé, que nul des Chevaliers de Saint George, de la Compagnie du Gardier, ne voise hors de la terre, sans le sceu & congie du Souverain. Et pour ce est aussi accordé, que si aucun voyage se fait, ou autre chose quelconque, qui appartient à l'honneur de Chevalerie, le Souverain du dit Ordre, de sa grace, preferera les Compagnons du dit Ordre devant tous autres.

XXX. Item, que nul du dit Ordre ne soit armé l'ung contre l'autre, si ce n'est en la guerre de son Souverain Seigneur, ou en son droit & juste querelle. Et s'il advient que aucun du dit Ordre soit retenu avec son Seigneur, ou tenant sa partie & querelle, & la partie adverse desire avoir aucun autre Compagnon du dit Ordre avecque luy ; Ence cas ne sera tel Compagnon retenu, mais sera tenu de soy excuser tout ointrement, à cause de ce que son Compagnon est armé de l'autre costé, & fut retenu devant luy. Et sera chacun Compagnon du dit Ordre tenu d'excepter quant il sera sa retenue qu'il soit deschargé tout entierement de son service de guerre, si aucuns des Compagnons sont paravant retenus ou tenants la partie adverse ; Et si celui qui est secondement retenu aucunement ne cognoisse aucun de ses Compagnons soit devant luy retenu, ou armé avec sa partie adverse ; soit tenu l'avant dit Compagnon à la premiere cognoissance qu'il en pourra avoir, de soy excuser envers son Maître, & laisser celle querelle.

XXXI. Item, que toutes les Licences des Chevaliers de l'Ordre qui iront hors pour acquerir honneur, & toutes Certifications, ou Mandementz, a faire touchant le dit Ordre dorenavant par le Souverain, seront faits sous le commun Seel, lequel remaindra en la garde d'un des Compagnons du dit Ordre, à la volonté du dit Souverain. Et si celui qui l'aura en garde depart pour cause raisonnable, hors de la presence du dit Souverain, qu'adonques il laissera le dit Seel en la garde d'un autre Compagnon du dit Ordre, estant present avec le Souverain, & par son assignement. Ainsi que le dit Seel ne soit nulle fois hors de la presence du dit Souverain, tant qu'il sera dedans
le

APPENDIX.

le Royaume : Et pareillement en son absence sera son Deputé avec le dit Seel. Et si ainsi est que le dit Souverain pourpose de soy absenter, & aller hors du Royaume pour cause raisonnable, il est ordonné par assent de la dite Compagnie, qu'il aura vng Signet convenable a l'Ordre du Gardien pour mettre au dos du commun Seel de l'Ordre, qui sera avecque luy ou qu'il soit, & sera mis en tous les Actes qui seront faits dehors par le dit Souverain, en difference de ceulx qui seront faits en Angleterre.

XXXII. Item est accordé, que si aucun Chevalier de la dite Compagnie par devotion veult demourer en la dite maison continuellement, qu'il ordonne pour son viure, & pour sa demeure, du sien propre.

XXXIII. Item, si aucun autre Chevalier qui ne soit mie dela dite Compagnie y veult demourer par devotion, soit ordonné pour sa demeure selon l' accord du dit Souverain & dela dite Compagnie.

XXXIV. Item est accordé, que si aucun Chevalier, ou autre personne veult donner aucunes terres ou rentes, pour estre participans de toutes les bonnes Oraisons & prieres qui seront faites en la dite maison, son nom sera entré, & les Chanoines & pources Chevaliers prieront pour luy perpetuellement : parainsi que le dit Gardien &

les Chanoines du dit Colliege dorenavant ne prendront sur iceluy Colliege aucune charge, sans l' advisement du dit Souverain, ou son Deputé, & les Compagnons de l'Ordre presens avecques en l' absence du Souverain.

XXXV. Item est accordé, que si aucun des Chanoines meure, & le dit Souverain soit hors du pais, que le Gardien, qui pour le temps sera, enverra ses Lettres au dit Souverain pour vng autre, que le Souverain voudra nommer & y ordonner.

XXXVI. Item sera fait vng Registre, de par le Souverain & la Compagnie, qui soit le plus seachant du dit Colliege, pour estre present en chacun Chapitre de l'Ordre, & en registrer loyaument les Elections, & les noms des esleux, les peines, & causes des peines, les reconciliations des punis, & tous autres actes & leurs causes, appartenans audit Ordre, de Chapitre en Chapitre, & d' an en an. Et soit le dit Registre loyaument sermenté de loyaument registrer a la reception de son office, & que au commencement de chacun Chapitre la vigille de Saint George, soit le Registre de P an precedent leu devant le Souverain, ou son Deputé, & ladite Compagnie, assés qu'il puisse estre corrigié, si besoin en estoit.

The Statutes established by King Henry the Eighth, recorded in the Black Book of the Order.

U B I clarissimus, invictissimus, & inter fortunatissimos hujus Mundi Principes meritisimè numeratus, Edoardus Tertius, Anglie Rex & Francie, Dominus Hibernie, &c. Ad honorem Omnipotentis Dei, beatissime virginis Mariæ, præclari Martyris Divi Georgii, nobilissimi Regni Anglorum insignissimi Patroni, & Sancti Edoardi Confessoris, ob stabilitatem atque incrementum Catholice fidei, bonorum morum augmentum, & omnigenæ virtutis exercitium, intra Castrum Windesori, viginti sex nobilium ac fortium Equitum societatem atque ordinem instituit, quem, à prælustri Subligaculo cognominatum, Divo quoque Georgio nuncupavit, & ad tutamen decus, atque complementum ejusdem laudabiles Ordinationes ac Statuta condidit, à Collegiis & coordinatis illis inviolabiliter observanda, in quibus obscura quedam, ambigua, & lucide explanationis atque interpretationis egena extiterunt, quedam verò addenda atque amplificanda visa sunt : potentissimus, invictissimus, atque excellentissimus Princeps Henricus Octavus, auctore Deo, Rex Anglie & Francie, Defensor fidei, Dominus Hibernie, &c. hujus Ordinis optimo jure Supremus, per eum amorem, quem erga Militiæ statum & nunc habet, & semper habebat, cujus splendorem indices auctum iri ardentissimè desiderat, & ob frequens Sociorum ejusdem Ordinis desiderium, consilium, & assensum, vicesimo quarto die Aprilis, Anno gratiæ Millesimo quingentesimo vicesimo secundo, Regni

verò sui quarto decimo, obscuritates istas quorundam in quibusdam è Statutis illis Articulorum atque ambiguitates interpretatus est, & elucidavit, quedam insuper (ut res ferebat) adiciens atque amplificans. Quæ profecto statuta, Ordinationes, interpretationes, declarationes, reformationes, & explanationes, cum additamentis, secundum verum ac germanum sensum à Supremo cum Collegis omnibus ejusdem Ordinis imposteriorum observari debent, juxta modum qui subsequitur.

I. Decretum inprimis est, quod Rex, heredes, & Successores ejus, Anglie, post eum, Reges, erunt imperpetuum præfati Ordinis & amicissime Societatis Supremi. Ad quos deinceps pro suo cuiusque tempore declaratio, interpretatio, decisio, correctio, solutio, & dispensatio Statutorum, si cubi nodus extiterit, aut ambiguitas animos indifferens traxerit, omnino spectabunt.

II. Nemo deligetur in Socium hujus Ordinis, nisi qui nomine, Armis, ac sanguine generosus, & eques irreprehensus existat, nec aliquis collega hujus Ordinis abbine eum (dum electio suscipitur) nominabit, quem ex animo notà non vacare judicat. Generosus autem nomine, Armis, & sanguine, is intelligitur, qui, præter Patrem ac Matrem, avos & proavos quoque generosi sanguinis habuerit. Irreprehensus & sine notà judicatur qui nullum ex tribus hiis sequentibus incurrisse probatur. Prima nempe species est, si quis Eques condemnatus hereticà pravitate fuerit,

APPENDIX.

nec talis item dies quo Festum Ascensionis, Penthecostes, aut alioqui sollemniter institutum primis aut secundis suis vesperis possit destitui vel interurbari.

IX. Quod si qui tempestive (quomodo presignatum est) non advenierit, neque satis idoneam absentie causam habeant, quam Supremus aut deputatus ab eo probabilem esse iudicabit, vel nisi Supremus absentiam ejus temporis illis condonaret, literis suis ob id ipsum eo destinatis, in quibus eorum nomina cum causis absentie contineantur: penas ea de re lunct arbitrio presidis & Concilii tum collecti. Formula Supplicii talis erit. Non ingreditur quisquis ita dereliquit concilii suscepti locum, sed in hostio foris expectabit, neque suffragii in ullâ reconferendi facultatem habebit eo tempore. Sin ad Principium vesperarum non affuerint, ad sedes suas ingredi non licebit, sed subus ante sedes suas in locis Choristarum stabunt, donec ille vesperæ sint finitæ par pena manebit iis qui ad solennem dici Missam & posteriores vespertas tempore non accesserint. Siquis autem sine probabili causâ à toto festo abesse presumpserit, is anno sequente, dum festivitas agitur, à sede sua prohibebitur, & statim interim, ut presatum est, dumq; procedens chorus supplicabit, tres cruces, quæ feruntur, antecedit, & subus deinceps, ut antea, persistat, usq; dum ad offerendum Ordo descendat, ubi hic postremus offeret. Quæ peractâ penitentia, veniet è vestigio ad Supremi sedem aut ab eo designati, totum rogaturus. Tumq; Supremus, aut ab eo Deputatus, remittet eum ad sedem suam, ut antiquum jus ibi retineat. Si verò deinceps altero festo abesse non formidavit, manens intra regnum, nec legitimam aliquam excusationem habens, per Supremum aut ab eo designatum approbandam (ut prænotatum est) ad sedem illam suam haud introibit, donec apud Supremum Altare Sancto Georgio dictatum, monumentum unum argentum viginti marcarum obtulerit, & deinceps annuatim idem adgeminebit, usq; dum reconciliari procuraverit.

X. Quisquis Equitum istorum palam foris incedens subligar suum tybia non circumligarit, ubi primò deprehensus fuerit per quemvis quinque Officialium Ordinis, aut Rectorum Collegii, duas aureas illud monitori dependet; nisi cum ad Equum oreis indutus se accinxerit. Tunc enim sat erit si filum cerulei coloris è serico subter oream ad subligaris indicium habeat: par omnino supplicium infligitur ei qui citra subligar obpeditum tybie Concilii domum introibit. Quisquis autem Officialium aut Decanus delictum istiusmodi compererit, ad eum ipsum precium penè pertinebit.

XI. Quoties Equites isti de more trabes induentur, Supremum bini procedent, eo ipso ordine quo è regione confident. Si quis illinc abfuerit, Socius qui è Regione sedet, solus incedet. Id quod observari oportet tam in processu ad supplicandum, quam temporibus & locis aliis. At quum sit offerendum, Supremus aut ab eo designatus, primus omnium ascendet, & ceteri deinceps, Officiali autem eundo Ordinem suum usua-lem observabunt in omni processu, tam intra

Sacellum & Concilium, quam in quibusvis locis aliis. Nimirum Equites cum sit epulandum, omnes insimul ex una parte mensæ recumbent, eo Ordine quem & in Templo sedentes aut stantes habent, & non secundum natalitie dignitatis gradum aut honoris, nisi filii Regum sint, Regum fratres, Principes, aut Duces externi, qui loca sortientur ex dignitate sui præclari Status. Et consurgentes eodem Ordine constabunt, quo & antè sedebant.

XII. Postridie festivitatis, ad honorem Divi Georgii, Windesori servate, Commilitones, antequam in discessu valeant, in hostio Concilii Trabes quibus solent indumentis aliis superinduent, & deinde Missam pro defunctis sollemniter in sacello percantandam audient, pro defunctis inquam omnibus Christianis, sed præsertim illis, qui antè fuerant hujus Ordinis, simul omnes interesse debent, nisi forsitan aliquis probabilem absentie causam habeat, vel à Supremo aut ejus Deputato potestatem abeundi præbuerit. Et cum contingat per mortem alicujus ipsorum, ut vexillum, gladius, & Galea cum appendiciis veniant offerenda, ante pecuniam offerri debent. Ordo nimirum offerendi talis erit, ut vexillum inprimis à duobus Commilitonibus per Supremum, aut ab eo designatum, assignandis offeratur, mox Ensis similiter à duobus aliis. Postremo Galea, cum annexis similiter, à duobus. Siquis autem anno precedente obierit, qui tunc Equitum Windesori aderant, in eâ Missâ pro defunctis singularem cereum unum offerent, cum Scutello, in quo pingentur insignia defuncti. Si plures uno mortui fuerint suum cuiq; Scutellum affigatur, habens argenteam laminam quatuor denariorum prope lumen appositum. Qui quidem cerei cum Scutellis sumptu ipsorum Equitum conficiuntur.

XIII. Decretum est insuper ut in hoc Windesoriensi Collegio sit imperpetuum Decanus unus, cum duodecim Canonicis Secularibus, quos Sacerdotes oportebit esse cum ingreditur, vel (ut melius) intra annum sequantur. Eorum præterea tredecim Sacerdotes alii, quorum pars una Canonici minores, altera Vicarii vocabuntur. Qui si Sacerdotes in ingressu non fuerint, citra omnem excusationem, intra annum erunt. Erunt iidem Clerici tredecim totidemq; Choristæ, qui cum Canonicis minoribus & Vicariis, de quibus antè diximus, quotidie in choro ministrabunt, canentes & orantes, ut tempus & res ipsa postulabunt. Nimirum omnes tam Majores quam minores Canonici, Vicarii, Clerici, & Choristæ, precari tenebuntur, ut Supremus cum cunctis Commilitonibus hujus Ordinis vivat, valeat, & omnia feliciter agat, neque defunctorum Equitum anime in pace requiescant. Præsentatio verò Canonicorum ubi contigerit, ad Supremum solummodo spectabit. Cumq; Commilitonum aliqui Windesorum veniunt intra eborum ad sedem suam ex more se receperit, Canonici reliquisq; Chorus stabunt in suis infra sedibus, ubi in festis Divi Georgii solent. Dum absint Equites, bene licebit Canonicis & ceteris è choro Sacerdotibus, superiores sedes occupare.

XIV. Unus-

APPENDIX.

XIV. Unifquisq; Socius hujus Ordinis Trabeam unam relinquit intra Collegium Windesori, ob diversas occasiones que possent obvenire, viz. ut observare queant atq; adimplere si quas Ordinationes precepta & mandata Supremus excoGITarit, & excoGITata proposuerit in Concilio: qui consensu sex Commilitonum presentium poterit, quando & ubi libebit, concilium instituere in causas singulas que sibi vise fuerint.

XV. Quinq; Ministri Officiales ad hunc Ordinem speciatim attinentes erunt; Prælati, viz. Cancellarius, Scriba, Rex Armorum, cui est à Subligari cognomen additum, & Hostiarius, qui à Nigella virga, quam gestabit, agnomen habebit; qui cum recipiendi sint Sacramento obviabunt, quod, velut à secretis, fideles ac taciturni erunt, in omnibus que spectabunt ad hunc Ordinem negotiis. Horum Juramenta requiruntur expressis in Libello, qui Ordinationum inscribitur.

XVI. Stabulantur ibidem Pauperculi tredecim Equites, qui minus alioquin habent unde vivant, habituri victum competentem & vestitum. Qui solum ad hoc obligabuntur ut in honorem Dei, beate Mariæ, Divi Georgii, omniumq; Sanctorum, & pro salute animarum, quotidianas ibi preces fundant. Horum impense necessarie cum privilegiis eorum infra describuntur, post prædictas Ordinationes. Sanè Electio ipsorum, ut & profata Canonicoorum, omnino referetur ad Supremum. Habebunt Equites ipsi pauperculi Colobea coccinea rubrice coloris cum Scutello Divi Georgii super humerum, sed sine subligari quocunq;.

XVII. Si quis Sociorum hujus Ordinis intra duo passuum Millia Castello appropinquet, illud ipsum introibit, ad honorem loci, modo possit, nec aliud iustum habeat impedimentum. Intrantem autem sacellum induitur ante Trabeam, sine qua non licebit ullo pacto introire. Introentem Canonici presentes accipient, & reverenter in Sacellum adducunt. Quod si celebrande Missæ tempus extiterit, eandem ipse audiet, ad honorem Dei, Sanctiq; Georgii; sin post meridiem, aut aliàs advenerit, chorum (ut præfatum est) introibit, ubi Canonici, cum ceteris, Psalmum pro defunctis absolvent, dum ipse offeret & ad sedem sese suam recipit. Quod si quisquis illorum pertranscat oppidum, nec ingreditur, ut offerat, uti præfixum est, tñ sub obedientie vinculo, quoties ita deliquerit, à Scutello ad eum locum pedester ibit, & Statherem offeret. Distantia certè non amplior intelligitur quam duorum duntaxat milliarium, ut ostensum antea.

XVIII. Ubi primùm mors alicujus horum Equitum certè significata fuerit, mox Supremus unum Missurum mille anime defuncti celebrari efficiet. Rex externus, octies centum; Princeps, septies centum; Dux unusquisq; sexcentas; Marchio, quadringentas & quinquaginta; Comes, trecentas; Vicecomes, Ducenas quinquaginta; seu Baro, seu Baronettus, Ducenas; Bacchalaureus Eques, Centum. Signis autem, post mortem eandem Regiis Literis indicatam, ante tres menses exactos non id ipsum

perfici curavit; quantam partem prædictæ summe geminabit; si non ante medium anni præteritum missas adduplicabit; siq; deinceps in finem anni. Quod si intra annum minus absolverit, in hanc formam annos adgeminabit.

XIX. Ubi primùm Supremus, aut ab eo designatus, certior factus fuerit de morte istiusmodi, illico literas emittet ad Commilitones omnes hujus Ordinis, qui fuerint intra regnum Angliæ, ut omnino secum affint in loco congruo si biq; viso, ante sex hebdomadas post significationem hanc ad se faciant. Qui quidem omnes ita congregati, vel (ut minimum) sex eorum, cum Supremo, aut ipsius Deputato, Ordine quisque suo, nominabunt novem è dignissimis atq; electissimis Equitibus, qui Supremo fuerint subditi, vel ei nullatenus adversarii; tres viz. primos, Duces, Marchiones, aut Comites, vel hii Conditione Superiores; tres alios Barones aut Baneretos; tres sanè postremos Bachalauicos Equites. Nomenclaturas hinc summus Prælati, Episcopus scilicet Wintoniensis, si præfatus fuerit: sin abserit, Cancellarius, Decanus, Scriba, vel maximè Senex è residentibus conscribet: & conscriptas Supremo, vel ejus Gerenti vices, quæ oportet reverentiâ commensurabit. Is vero deinceps illum pronuntiabit electum qui pluribus suffragiis admittatur, seu quem Supremus ipse digniorem, honorabiliorem, utiliorem, Regnoq; suo & Coronæ magis idoneum esse judicabit. Si quis autem Equitum hujus Ordinis admonitus haud assuerit, nisi justam absentie causam habeat, quam & sub Sigillo insignium suorum significatum ioverit, adeo justam inquam & rationabilem, ut Supremus eam, vel ab eo designatus, approbaret, & talem esse iudicaret, ut approbati debeat, penas dabit. Nam si minus justam aut idoneam esse causam, Supremus aut Deputatus existimabit, Decano ac Collegio persolvat viginti solidos legalis monete, quos in celebrationes pro defuncto oportebit impendi. Itaq; cum proximè venerit ad Concilium, ibidem in medio catæ coram Supremo procumbet, donec per Supremum aut Deputatum, & reliquum omne Sodalitium reconciliatus fuerit.

XX. Quando post mortem alicujus istorum Equitum alter in defuncti locum surrogatur, è vestigio qui eligitur ornate Subtubuli decorabitur, in planum argumentum quod debinc illius Ordinis Equestris sit unus habendus. Deinde cum ad id facta Commissio in Concilio Windesori lecta fuerit, coram Supremo, vel ipsius vicem gerente, ceterisq; eâ de causâ congregatis, Trabea cum Humerali inferetur. Mox ipse deducetur medius duobus Equitibus aliis ejusdem Ordinis, quos Officiales antecedant, & alii Nobiles atq; obsequiis stipabunt, Trabeam autem gestabit ante eum Commilitonum unus, vel Garterus Rex Armorum, donec veniat ad locum sedis occupanda. Infra quam accepto Juramento, indutus Trabeâ revertetur ad Concilium, ubi de manu Supremi, vel ejus Deputati, Torque coornabitur. Sleq; pleno insignis habitu cum ceteris incedet, sedebit, stabit.

Ceterum magni Principes externi benè poterunt (uti jam ante consueverunt compendii causâ) amicum

APPENDIX.

amicum integrum intra concilium indui. Quod si quis ante mortuam quam habitum hunc acceperit, minime fundatorum reus denominabitur, eo quod plenam statum sui possessionem haud obtinuerat. Habebit autem Miliarum medietatem, qui Subligaris ornamentum ante susceperat, & nihil supra. Electus vero, Subligaculoq; donatus (quod in se est) sustinabit ad locum, ut in sedem sibi debitam introducatur. Si intra annum minis advenierit, & in Regio manserit, nec excusationem aliquam condignam, & à Supremo vel ejus Deputato, probandam habuerit: ejus electio prædicta non valebit, sed irrita manebit; & Supremus aut ab eo designatus cum reliquo Commilitonum caui novam electionem inchoabit. Quapropter vexillum, ensis, & Galea, cum appendicibus ejus, ut prius electi, non appendentur Sedili suo intra Castellum, usq; dum eo venerit, ea propter quod si non advenierit, Ornamenta prædicta tanquam non citra dedecus haud deponantur, sed extra eborum honeste deponantur, ad utilitatem & emolumentum Ordinis & Collegii remanentia.

XXI. Exteri quique, ad præclaram hanc Societatem admissi, certiores inde fieri debent per Supremi literas, que fignanter ad eos diriguntur, cum statim sub Sigillo communis Ordinis, Supremi nimirum impensis, ut multum intra quatuor menses ab electione certi fient, ut iidem Principes perlectis illis literis deliberare queant, Ordinem illum nec ne suscipere liceat, aut expediat, nisi forsitan idem Supremus, interea temporis, per res aliqui graves atq; arduas impedimentum habeat. Tunc enim poterit istam electionis hujus significationem in aliud tempus ex sententia prorogare. At ubi significatio certa facta, & ei ad quem missa fuerit grata atq; accepta intelligitur, ibi Supremus, per Oratores suos, amicum integrum cum Subligari & Torque designabit ad eundem. Ipsi vero sic electi & donati, cuiuscuq; Conditionis status aut honoris existerint, intra septem menses postquam prefata susceperint insignia, & illud ipsum quod agitur sibi perquam gratum fore significationem iocent, Procuratorem remittent idoneum, Mijestati suæ honoris sui Domini bene respondentem, ut debitam eidem suo Domino sedem præoccupet, eiq; possidere incipiat. Prefixum est sane ut Eques omnino sit irreprehensus, nec illaudatus, qui Trabeam secum afferet ostreæ cerulei Coloris, à Domino suo cum Vexillo, Ense, Galeb, & appendicibus, ut suis in locis intra Collegium quandiu Dominus ille suus superstes fuerit, honorifice remaneant. Trabea vero sic allata quando vice Domini sui in sedem illius est introducendus, per Supremum, aut ab eo designatum, in brachium illi dexterum imponitur: Inde per duos Equites ejusdem Ordinis ab hostio Concilii deducitur, ad sedile Domini, infra quod persistent, nomine prefati sui Domini, Sacramento vincitur & paulo mox in sedem illam introducitur, in qua sedens, stans, aut procumbens quanto tempore divina celebrantur, Trabeam illam super eadem dextera gestabit. Quam nunquam getare debet, nec ullum in concilio suffragium conferet, aut abente Domino suo illic introibit. Sin autem intra septem hos menses

Procuratorem suum non miserit (ut presinitum est) neque sufficientem excusationem Supremo, illiusve Deputato, satis acceptabilem habeat: tunc illius electio præmissa evanescit, nisi forsitan Eques ille præ magnis arduisq; rebus aliis irretitus esse comprobetur. In hoc enim articulo, intra unum adhuc mensem post, ad Supremum, aut ab eo designatum, excusationem emitte licet. Sin itaque talia causari posset impedimenta que Supremus aut ab eo Deputatus honesta, laudabilia, necessariave judicabit, quatuor ultra Mensium mora concedi poterit. Intra quos si minis advenierit, ejus vicis electio omnino vacabit. Ceterum hic est animadvertendum quod iste favor est Extraneis exhibendus, qui non possunt ipsi adventare, sed necesse habent Procuratores suos mittere, ut sedes ipsorum vice possideant. Idque imprimis est ea de causa constitutum, ut Miliarum & Oratorum aliarum, que defunctis Ordinantur, plenè participes evadant. Mediâ namq; parte privarentur, si non ante mortem suam in suas sedes introducti forent. Sed nec extranei solum eo privilegio gauderunt, verum illi etiam qui dum eliguntur extra Regnum sunt Regis jussu belligerantes, aliusve negotii intenti: Hii quantum ad sedis sue possessionem captandam, simile cum extraneis privilegium vendicabunt.

XXII. Si quis Ducum, Marchionum, Comitum, Vicecomitum, Baronum, (a) Baranetorum, aut Bacchalaureorum hujus Ordinis, obierit, qui succedet ei, cuiusvis harum Conditionum existierit, eam duntaxat sedem obtinebit, quam Predecessor suus ante possederat, nec demutabit illam citra peculiarem Supremi concessionem, nisi forsitan Imperatorum aut Regum aliquis, vel Princeps Regni fuerit, quorum unusquisq; juxta sublimitatem suam, sedem Supremo proximam accipiet. Quo pacto Dux aut Comes interim in sedem Bacchalaurei reponi poterit, atq; è diverso, ad Argumentum manifestum forme per primores ibi fundatores inchoate sinceriter observare.

XXIII. Et si quando sedes ulla vacarit, Supremus bene poterit ad eam quemlibet horum Equitum ex arbitrio promovere, superior autem esse debet ea sede, quam ante tenuerat. Nimirum semel in vitâ suâ poterit Supremus generalem omnium sedium translationem ex sententia perficere, solis Caesarum, Regum, Principum, & Ducum sedibus exceptis, que permanent immutabiles; nisi fortasse superius ulli sedile contingat. In ea profectio translatione generali, longitudo durationis in hoc Ordine, decus ac claritudo gestorum, laus Equitum, & præstantia meritorum perpendi ac considerari debet, ut bonos virtutis respondeat. Omnes autem Equites isti quoties Trabeis ornati sedebunt, stabunt, aut simul incendent, ordinem illum observabunt, quem per sedes suas in choro teneant, neq; tamen generis aut nobilitatis rationem ullam habebunt, nisi quatenus ante monstratum est.

XXIV. Equites singuli, quando ad ordinem hunc illustrem admittentur, certam pecunie summam Collegio numerabunt, in usum Canonorum Deo servientium & pauperum colorum Mi-

(a) Banneretorum.

APPENDIX.

litum, ibi commemoratum; Supremus certe quadraginta Marcas legalis monete Angliæ, Rex externus, viginti Libras; Princeps, viginti marcas; Dux, decem libras; Marchio, octo libras, sex solidos, & octo denarios; Comes, decem Marcas; Vicecomes, quinq; Libras, sexdecem solidos, & octo denarios; Baro seu (b) Baronectus, quinq; Libras; Bachalaureus Eques, quinq; marcas. Eleemosine vero hujus Statutum esto perpetuum. Vexilla sinè, Enses, & Galce, cum annexis non antè propendebunt in locis suis, quàm prefixas, suam quisque profanis honore summas persolverint. Quod ad Externos attinet, pro hiis Supremus respondere constituit. Et hæc munera atq; Eleemosine propter id ita conceduntur, ut Eques unusquisq; qui deveniet in hunc Ordinem antè dignior imentatur, ut qui titulo, nomine, ac privilegio Fundatori hujus Ordinis exornatur.

XXV. Eques unusquisq; istius Ordinis, intra annum primum sedis acceptæ, faciet post tergum ubi sedem habet, laminam cujus voluerit metalli, in qua cum scuto ac cæteris annexis sua compingentur insignia: Et omnes deinceps successuri similiter efficient, nisi quod sua lamina curtiore & minuitior esse debet, quàm quæ primorum Fundatorum; exterorum laminis cum rebus aliis istiusmodi duntaxat exceptis, quæ, quales ac quante voluerint, fieri poterunt.

XXVI. Nullus horum Sodalium per Procuratorem est admittendus atq; in sedem introducendus, nisi duntaxat Extraneus, qui nequit ipse interesse, vel qui negotiis Regiis occupatus ac retentus fuerit, aut cui deniq; Supremus id vel perreperit vel permisit, uti prædictum est.

XXVII. Unusquisq; in ingressu suo fidelitèr & sub juramento promittet se velle conservare hos Articulus qui sequuntur.

Primum, jurabis quod quamdiu vixeris, & istius Ordinis unus esse perduraveris, pro viribus adjuvabis Supremi & sustentabis honorem, jura tuibitur, & querelas ejus omnino defendet & perspicitur.

Deindè quod omni conatu hunc Ordinem, in quem ascitus est, juvare, augere, atque ornare parabit. Siq; aliquid contra tentatum, aut excogitatum iri senserit, pro virili resistet & defendet.

Præterea singula Statuta, & Statutorum Articulus fidelitèr adimplebit. Pro hiis inquam omnibus sinceritèr explendis generale juramentum in adfessione sua præstabit, per sacrosancta Evangelia, & primo vel ejus gerenti vicem, quod etiam tam benè sit observaturus quòd si putaret atq; articulatum vim sibi perlegerentur, & juramento quidem tanget atq; exosculabitur oblatis sibi crucem.

Quo facto in hunc modum electus Eques prænotabile subligar perquam reverenter accipiet, quod in sinistram ejus Tybiam Supremus, aut ab eo designatus inducet, ista verba dicens, Domine, amicitissimi Socii hujus Ordinis a Subligaculo nominati te nunc in amicum sibi fratrem, ac collegam, admiserunt. In cujus rei fidele signaculum, hoc & tibi Subligar impar-

(b) Baronectus.

tiunt ac condonant, quod det Deus ut meritò suscipiens, ritè conteras, ad Dei gloriam, ad honorem præclari hujus Ordinis & tui.

XXVIII. Quod si Supremus Regnum exierit, aut alià de causâ nequeat interesse, quatenus hoc ipsum ipse perficiat, duas aut eo plures hujus Ordinis Equites sufficere benè poterit: quibus plenam in istiusmodi introductione sui potestatem atq; auctoritatem committat, ut eam suo nomine exerceant.

XXIX. Commune Sigillum paritèr ac signaculum Ordinis insignibus exornata fieri debent, & in custodia Cancellarii Ordinis, vel ejus Equitis ac Commilitonis, quem Supremus nominare voluerit remanebunt. Si vero qui Custos est assignatus viginti Milliaris vel eo amplius abierit à Supremo quatenus de causâ, Sigilla Supremo tradet, ante recessum, vel ejusmodi Commilitoni aliæ persone, quam Supremus ad id eodem tempore designabit; eam ob rem certe, quo Sigilla prædicta minis absint à Supremo, quamdiu manet intra Regnum. Sin foris esse contigerit, signaculum solum sufficet interim ad acta quæq; consignanda, & degerenda, quæ spectabunt ad hunc Ordinem.

XXX. Commilitones hujus Ordinis semper impofterum apud se Statuta retinebunt, collata prius cum Originali per Scribam Ordinis, & Communi Sigillo signata. Si vero quis eorum insignia quævis appingit disponitq; voluerit in eo Libello, Regi Armorum reddetur, ut is quod suū interest apè ritèq; perficiat. Originale quoq; in Erario Collegii perpetuò remansurum Sigillo communi consignabitur.

XXXI. Post obitum cujusq; Sociorum hujus Ordinis, heredes ex affe (quos & Executores appellant) obligabuntur ad reportanda intra tres menses Statuta præsentis Ordinis, quæ donata sunt ei per Supremum aut ipsius impendio. Reportabuntur autem ad Decanum Collegii vel Scribam, aut alioqui præcipuum ejus loci Officiale.

XXXII. Nullus Eques hujus Ordinis Divo Georgio dedicati Supremi sui Regnum, terram, aut Dominium exhibet, nisi prius exeundi impetratâ copâ. Quapropter unanimi consensu decretum est, quod si gerendarum rerum illustrium iter ullum appetat, unde Militaris honor & Equestris gloria sperari possit, Supremus, ex suâ gratiâ singulariq; favore, quem erga Commilitones hujus Ordinis in peiore semper habebit, illos istiusmodi stratagemmatibus, honorificisq; negotiis aliis viris omnibus anteponeat.

XXXIII. Horum Equitum nemo contra ullum suum Commilitonem Arma induet, nisi fortasse propugnandum Supremi jus impendat, aut ipsius alioqui justam causam defendendi oporteat. Sin autem acciderit aliquem hujus Ordinis à quoquo Principe, seu Duce, teneri, & Adversarius illius alium ejusdem Ordinis ad parem sui defensionem habere postea desideret: si qui posterior exoptatur, omnino sic retineri detestabit, nec aliam excusationem obidet, quàm quòd collega suus antèa retentus in adversâ parte depugnât. Horum etiam unusquisq; quando incipit ab aliquo teneri, hæc solummodo conditione

APPENDIX.

ditione se ieneri velle promittet, si nullus Commilitonum antea retentus in adversariâ parte fuerit, aliqui se in eo vinculo minime perman- surum. Sin antea retentus fuerit quàm impedi- mentum huiusmodi resciverit, postea tamen ubi primum intellexerit, unum aut alterum è Sociis suis in adversâ parte militare, & ad militan- dum ibi prius obviatum, proponet excusationem suam apud eum Dominum qui se conduxerat quod ultra ipsi militare non poterit, ejusve cau- sam defendere.

XXXIV. Omnes facultates Equitibus conce- se & Regnum exeant, ad inquirendum honorem, & gloriam procurandam, omnes Literæ, man- data, ceteraq; scripta ad hunc Ordinem attinen- tia, altero Sigillorum imperpetuum configu- rari debent.

XXXV. Si quis horum Commilitonum, pie- tate ac Religione permotus, sedem sibi deligere volet intra Castellum Windesori, Domus in quâ poterit immorari signabitur à Supremo; vicinus autem illius suis sumptibus atq; impensis propriis providebitur.

XXXVI. Si quisquam Eques alius quàm sit hujus Ordinis causâ Devotionis animum habue- rit ibi commorandi, sedes ex arbitrio Supremi eidem assignabitur, consensu Commilitonum an- tecedente.

XXXVII. Si quis horum Equitum, aut alius quisquam, terras, hereditates, redditus, aut pro- ventus impartire, donareve volet, ut pecunia il- larum quæ dicuntur ibidem particeps habeatur: ejus nomen in Registrum ascribetur, & Cano- nici ceteriq; Ministri cum Militibus pauper- culis, semper in futurum pro eo deprecabuntur. De- canus autem aut Custos & Canonici nunquam

Collegio novum pondus aut curam imponent, cõ- tra Supremi consensum, aut ab ipso designati, & ceterorum Commilitonum in suscepto tenendi, manifesto Concilio.

XXXVIII. Denique, quò Discrimen Equitum hujus Ordinis, à ceteris qui non sunt ejusdem, tantò clariùs eluceat: Supremus, ex consensu Commilitonum omnium, vult, Ordinari, & in- stituere, ut abhinc imperpetuum, quicumq; fuerit Eques istius Ordinis circum cervicem utatur au- reo Torque triginta unciarum Trojani Ponderis, nihil supra. Conficietur autem ille Torques è laminis in formam Subligaris, una laminarum duas intus rosas habeat, alteram rubram, superi- orem albam, altera inferiorem albam, & su- periolem rubram. In fine verò Torquis illius pendebit Imago Divi Georgii. Quo Supremus & omnes Ordinis hujus Equites uti tenebuntur, præsertim in maximis & præcipuis Anni solen- nitatibus. Aliis autem diebus Cathenula utan- tur Aurea, quæ Divi Georgii gestabit imaginem in fine: nisi geratur bellum, aut gerendum in- gruât, ægritudo urgeat, aut longum iter incen- dum sit. Tunc etenim sufficiat uti Fibulâ fer- ricâ, quæ Divi Georgii donatæ imaginem in fine pendulam habeat. Si vero Torques resar- ciendus sit, tradi poterit aurifici, ut emendetur. Nec debet ille Torques stipari gemmis aut di- tari, nisi forsitan id Imagini fiat, quæ bene pote- rit, ex arbitratu illius Equitis, gemmis aut ali- ter exornari. Cavendum autem ne Torques hu- jusmodi vendatur, mutuo tradatur, aut alienetur ullo modo, seu doneatur, ex ullâ causâ vel necessi- tudine, sed ad corroboramentum Ordinis & Equitis Ordinari conservari debet.

Here follow the same Statutes as they were put into English shortly after their Establish- ment; wherein some of the Articles are transposed, and the 18. Article wholly changed. But in all the Copies of them given forth since the beginning of Queen Elizabeth's Reign, King Henry's Title of *Supream head of the Church of England in Earth under Christ*, is omitted, and some few words (noted with an Asterisk) altered to those inserted at the foot of the Pages, whither the Asterisk directs.

The Statutes and Ordinances of the most Noble Ordre of Saint George, named the *Gartier*, Reformed, explained, declared, and renewed by the moost High, moost excellent, and moost puissant Prince Henry the viii. by the Grace of God Kyng of England and of Franunce, Defensor of the Faith, Lorde of Ireland, &c.

WHereas the moost famous, moost hap- piest, and victorious Prynce, Ed- warde, the thirde of that name, his Noble Progenitour somtyme Kyng of England and of Franunce, and Lorde of Ireland &c. To th' onnoure of almighty God, and of the blessed and immaculate Virgyn Marie, and the blessed Martir Sainte George, Patron of the right noble Realme of England; and of

Sapnt Edward, Kyng and Confessor; To the exaltation of the holy Faith Catholique Wedpned, Establisshed, created, and founded, within the Castel of Wyndesore, a company of xxvi. Noble and Worthi Knyghtes, for to be of the said moost Noble Ordre of Sapnt George, named the Gartier, and for the hono- rable continuance, augmentation, and in- terterpyng of the same:

The

APPENDIX.

The said most victorious King did devise and institute divers honorable Statutes, and laudable Ordinances for to be observed and kept by the brethren and confreres Knights and Companions of the said most Noble Order; among the which Statutes been certeyne doubtis and ambiguities, to which to be more plainly declared, interpreted, and extended, it is thought right necessary and expedient. And that certeyne other new Ordinances and Articles be to the said Statutes added and adjoined. Wherefore the said most excellent and victorious Prince Henry the viii. King of England and of France Defender of the Faith and Lord of Ireland, and Sovereigne of the said most Noble Order, and for the right singular love, good zeal, ardent and sincere affection, that his royal Majestie hath and beareth to the said most Noble Order, and to the estate of Chivalrie and Knighthood: And for the honorable continuance and encreasing of the same: And also at the humble requeste and instante desire of the Knights and Companions of the said Noble Order, And by their advice, counsell, and assent, the xxiii. day of April, in the year of grace M.D.XXII. and of his most noble reign the viii. yere, made interpretation and declaration of the Obscurities, doubtis, and ambiguities of the said Statutes, Ordinances, Interpretations, declarations, reformacions, with their additions aforesaid, after the true intencion of them, shall be from henceforth observed, kept, and ensued, by the Soverayne and the Knights Confreres and Companions of the said Noble Order, in manner and fourme following.

I. Firste, It is Ordained and accorded, that the King, and his Heires and Successors Kings of England, shall be for evermore Soveraynes of the said most Noble Order, and amiable Companie of Saynt George, named the Garder, to the which Soverayn, and to his Heires and Successours shall appertain the declaration, solucion, determination, interpretation, reformacion, and disposicion of all causes concerning and touching any thing of obscuritie or doubtie concerned in the Statutes of the said most Noble Order.

II. Item, it is accorded that none shall be elected and chosen for to be Fellow or Companion of the said most Noble Order, excepte that he be a Gentleman of blood, and that he be a knight, and without reproche. And that the Knights of the said Noble Order from henceforth shall not name any person in their Election to be Fellow or Companion of the said Noble Order, in whome they shall thinke or extrem in their conscience to have spotte of Reproche: And as touching the declaration of a Gentleman of blood, it is declared and determined, that he shall be descended of three decentis of Noblesse, that is to say, of name and of armes, bothe of his Father's side, and also of his Mother's side,

and as touching or concerning any matter of reproche, toasmuche as there be divers and many sundry pointis of reproche, there shall be here declared but three pointis of them only, as is declared in manner and fourme following.

The first point of Reproche ys, that if any Knight, (as God defende) be contemned, or attainted of error against the Christen Faith Catholique, or had for any such Offence suffered any payne or punition publique.

The second point of Reproche is, that if any Knight (as God defende) had bene arraigned, convicted, or attainted of High Treason.

The third point of Reproche is, that if any Knight departe, or flee away from battle, or journey, being with his Soverayne Lord, his Lieutenant or Deputie, or other Capetayne, having the King's power Royal and autoritie; and whereas Banners, Standards, or Pennons have bene displayed, and that they proceeded to fight, he that then veniously and cowardly flieth or departeth away from them, ought to be esteemed and judged to have reproche, and never worthie to be electe Knight, or Fellow of the said Company. And if it fortune, that any Knight of the said Company (as God forbidde) do committe any such reproche, that then he shall be departed and disgraced of the said Order, at the next Chapter ensuing, if it so shall please the Soverayne and the Company.

III. Item that every yere, upon the higill of Saynt George, that is to say, the xxii. day of the moneth of April, on what day soever it fall on, and though no service of Saynt George be celebrate or done, all the Knights of the said Company, being in any place or places of their liberties, in what places soever it be, shall be bounde for to were the hole habit of the said Order. That is to wit, Robe, Mantell, Huddle, and Coller, from the above of the first Chensonge at the above of tierce, that is, at three of the Cloke at afternone, untill the said Chensonge and other debyne service, souper, and boydance, be done and accomplished; And likewise on the morrow, on Saynt George's day at matens, procession, * mass, and the seconde Chensonge, and all the said day, untill that souper and boydance be done, as ys aforesaid.

IV. Item, that if for any causes, it shoulde please the said Soverayn to prozoge the said Feast and solemnitie of Saynt George, or that the said Feast shuld be prolonged and prozoged, to another day, that all the Knights of the said Order, that shall be within the Realme of Englande, shall give their attendance the even and the day of Saynt George, on the parson of of the said Soverayne, and shall synde themselves in his company, in what place soever he be within

* Morning Service.

APPENDIX.

the said Realme of England; and they to gyveing their attendance upon his said parson, the saide eben and day, shall obserbe and kepe the serbye of Saynt George, if the Wydenance and commaundement of hys Church doth suffre and permit it. And if th' wydenance of the Church doth not permit it, in this behalfe, they be bounde to tary with the Soverayne, and heare such serbye as shall be than limited and ordered by the holy Church to be done and celebrated the said eben and day of Saynt George, in obserbyng and keeping, during the said daies, of all other ceremonies, aswell in going to the Chapter upon the said eben, before Eben-song at afternone, and the said day of Saynt George at afternone, before the laste Eben-song; As also in weying their hole habit, and every knyght being in his clove stall, in keeping the debyne serbye from the tyme of the first Eben-song of the said even, matens, and * Masse, unto the last Eben-song of the said day, and the morowe after ensuyng, before the * Masse of Requiem, they shall take their Mantells, upon suche Cowones as shall please them, and shall enter into the Chapter, if there be any election or other great affaires, before the said * Masse of Requiem in usyng such Ceremonies to this accustomed, as though they were present in the said Castell of Wyndesore. And in case that the said Soverayne be come and entred into the said Chapter, and that some of the said Felows of the said Wyder be not entred, or come with hym and shulde tary behynde, in case they that have not gyben and done dewy attendance upon hym, shall abide withoute the dores of the said Chapter, withoute entreng in to it, during all the tyme that the said Soverayne and other knyghtes shall be in the said Chapter for that tyme. And if so be that any of the abovenamed knyghtes come to late to the first Eben-song of the said eben, or Matens, * Masse, or laste Eben-song, the saide day of Saynt George, he shall have for penance, that during the tyme and space of suche debyne serbye, he shall knele or stande before his stall, in the Place of the Queresters; and if he come not to gybe attendance upon the parson of the said Soverayne, the said eben and day of Saynt George, as is aforesaid; And that he have no lychence or other reasonable excuse, and that it be acceptable to the said Soverayne for his absence in this case; the said knyght, that soo shall have done, for his penance, shall not come in his stall at the next Feast ensuyng in the presence of the Soverayne, nor in his said stall in the said College of Wyndesore. And farthermore shall pay x^l. for to be collected and bestowed to the use of the ornaments of the said College.

V. Item if it chaunced that any of the knyghtes of the said Wyder, by leaue or lycens or otherwise, were in his house or in any other place, at his liberte and franchise,

* Divine Service, * Divine Service, * Divine Service.

the said eben and day of Saynt George, he shall be bound to cause to be prepared a Capitall Stall, in the Church or Chappell, in the which he shall heare debyne service. In the Capitall Stall shall be sett and elevated the Wyder of Saynt George, named the Gardier, being within a Carter; and his propre arms within the Carter, also shall be set at a Stall, that shall be almoeche in disface, after the proportion and quantite of the said Church or Chappell, from the Stall of the said Soverayne, as is his Stall in the Castell of Wyndesore, and shall weare his said habit hole, and shall heare the debyne service, suche as by the holy Church is ordered and limited for the said day, aswell the first eben-song, Matens, * Masse, as the latter eben-song. In doyng by hym first Reberence to the Altar in the hono^r of God, and after to the Stall where is fixed or sett up the Armes of the said Wyder, as well and as often at his coming in as at his going oute of the said Church or Chappell; And also as often as he shall passe before the said Armes, althep excepte the Emperours, Kynge, Princes, Electors, The which may in this case to ordeyne their Seates and Stalles as yt shall seme them best, and at their pleasure.

VI. Item if yt were so that withoute any proportion the said Feast and Solempnyte of Saynt George were kept and celebrated the said day and eben of Saynt George, in the said Castell of Wyndesore, and if it were not the pleasure of the said Soverayne for to be present, or that conveniently he may not be there in parson, the said day and Feast, at his said Castell of Wyndesore, That in this case, in what place that his pleasure shall be teryng within this his Realme of England, his Majestie may appoynte and commaunde suche knyghtes of the said Wyder, as best shall seme hym, there for to kepe Company and geve attendance upon the parson, and to kepe all and lyke Ceremonies as though they were at the said Castell of Wyndesore; And they doyng the thynges abovesaid shall be excused for their absence of the Feast of Saynt George holden at the said Castell of Wyndesore for that pere.

VII. Item, it is agreed, that if the Soverayne cannot be at Saynt George's Feast, that he shall make his Deputy, by his Letters, for to kepe the Chapter upon Saynt George's eben, at the hore of tierce, the which is at thre of the Clocke at after none, and on Saynt George's day for to kepe the said Feast, at the costes of the said Soverayne, for the space abovesaid, withoute any new Wydenance to be made, having power to correcte and redresse all poyntes of the said Chapter, as for then shall seme necessary.

VIII. Item, that every one on Saynt Georges eben, that is to wit, the xxii. day of April, a gathering together shall be made of all the knyghtes of Saynt George within the Castell of Wyndesore, That is to wit, of

* Divine Service.

APPENDIX.

all them that shall be within this Realme, of Englands, or without, that conveniently may come. And there they shall have the service of Saynt George, and also shall wear their holy habit of the said Order, during the said service, being ordinarily in their stalls; And every of them shall have his Banner, sword, with his Helme, and Crest above his stall, the which during his life shall abide in the said Chappel, for his honor, and in signe and knowledge, that he be in defence of holy Church, as the Order of Knighthood requirerth. But in case that the said Feast of Saynt George happen to fall within xv. dayes after the Feast of Easter, or upon any Fyfte-dage, or Fast-day, then it shall be proposed and prolonged at the Soveraynes pleasure, as above is said, if so be that the day of the said Feast be not assigned ne ordered to be kepte the xxiv. xxv. xxvi. nor the last day of April, nor upon the foure firste dayes of May, for by cause of the impediment or let of debyne service ordered by holy Church for the double Feastes of Saynt Marke, Philipp and Jacob, and the Invention of the Holy Crosse of our Lord Jesu Chryste, nor at such dayes as shall fall the Ascencion, or the Feast of Penthecoste, or any other Feast of Solempnitye, as is ordered in holy Church, whereby the first or seconde Chensonge by such Propositions myght be letted and distorbed.

IX. Item that all the Knights of the said Order shall come perely in the said place of the said Castell of Wyndesore on Saynt George's Euen at th'houre of tierce, the which is at three of the Cloche at after-noon, as it is abovesaid. And if they come not at the tyme assigned without having a iuste and reasonable excuse, that may be acceptable to the said Soverayne or to his Deputie, or otherwise pardoned by the said Soverayne of their absence by special Letters of excuse, in the which Letters their names and causes shall be written, or otherwise shall have their penance after th'ordenance and agreement of the said Chaptre. And the said Ordinance is such that they shall not entre into the Chaptre for that tyme, but shall abyde withoute the doore. And shall have no voyce in any thyng that is done in the said Chaptre, at that tyme alone. And if they come not to Chensonge, before the beginning of the said Chensonge, they shall not enter into their Stalles but shall abyde belowe above the said Stallis in the Quersters places during the said Chensonge. And like penance is ordered for them that come not to the high masse betyme and at Chensonge on Saynt George's dape. And if there be any that come not to the Masse, and have not a reasonable excuse, towaerd the Soverayne or his Deputie, as it is above declared, his penance shall be that he shall not enter within his Stall the next Feast after, but shall abyde belowe as

* Morning Service.

it is said at the first Chensonge, and shall goe in the procession before all the * three Croffes. And shall sit belowe as above is said all the * masse tyme until the Offring. And he shall offre laste. And after his penance is done, incontinent he shall come before the Soveraynes Stall or his Deputie, and there he shall aske pardon. And after that the Soverayne or his Deputie shall commaunde hym to goe unto his Stall in his first estate, and if he come not at the seconde Feast, and be dwelling within the Realme, without having any excusacion allowable to the Soverayne or to his Deputie, as is abovesaid, he shall not entre in his Stall from thenceforth, until the tyme that he have gyven and offered a Retwell unto Saynt George's Altar within the said Chappell of the bawle of xx markes of Sylver of Troye, and from thenceforth he shall double every pere the Penaltie, unto the tyme he be reconciled.

X. Item it is agreed, that if any Knyght of the said Compaign be founde in apperte withoute his Carter, that he pay anon after that the challenge be made to hym by any of the five Officers of the Order or of the Warden of the said College, a marke of Pounp. Except he be boted for to ryce, that then it shall suffice to waere under his bote a blew Ribande of Sylke, in signifying of the Carter, and also prohibited that no Knyght of the said Order from henceforth do entre into the Chaptre without his Carter upon the payne abovesaid. And whosoever of the said Officers or Warden shall make the first challenge shall have the penaltie for his labor.

XI. Item it is agreed, that the Knights of the Order of St. George, alwey and as often as they shall wear their mantels, they shall goe before the Soverayne every of them with his Felow, that is for a newrist him, ordinarily as they be sett in their Stalles: And if it shoulde happen that any of them were not there present, his felow for a newrist hym shall goe alone. The which Order shall be kepte and observed as well in going in procession as ellis where in other places. But at the Offring the Soverayne or his Deputie shall goe before all the Compaign, and the ordinarie Officers of the said Order shall goe as they have bene accustomed, when any procession shall be done in the Chaptre, Chappell, or ellis where. And for the ordre of the said Knights for to sitt at the Table, for to take their refection by it, at Diner at or Souper, they shall sit all along on one side after their Stalles, and not after their stee, except Children and Wetherie of Kinges, Princes, and Dukes that be Strangers, the which shall kepe their places and remove after their estate; and at their voiding and going out shall abide and goe in order so as they sat at the Table.

XII. Item it is agreed, that every one of them, at the Castell of Wyndesore on the morow after the Feast of Saynt George,

* Quersters. * Service.

belowe

APPENDIX.

before the departing of the Company, that the said Knighthood, upon such Colours as shall please them at the Chapter doze, shall take their Mantels and shall goo into the said Chapter, and after that shall goo and here a * mass of Requiem, the which shall be solemnly songe for the souls of all the Fellowes of the said Order, which be departed and deceased, and for all Christen sowles, and that all the Company be there present, without eny of them be lett bi a reasonable cause, or have licence of the Soberayne or his Deputie before the departing. And when it happens that for any cause of the bording of eny of the said Fellowship, there shall bee certayne Banners, Swords, Helmes, and Crestes, the which ought to be offered up before the offering of eny Spilber; the said Hachements ought to be offered, first the Banner, by two of the said Fellowshipe such as the Soberayne or his Deputie shall appointe or name, and after that the Swords shall be offered by two other, and likewise his Helme and Crest by two other Knighthoodes of the said Order, assigned by the Soberayne or his Deputie, and if any Knighthood of the said Order should decease the pere afore, then ebery Knighthood being in the said Castell of Wyndesore, at the said * mass of Requiem, shall offer a Taper armed with a little Scuchion of the arms of the Knighthood departed. And if there were moze then one deceased, that then be made for ebery of them a Scuchion of Arms and a groze sett nye to the light of the tapre, the which Scuchions and tapers shall be made at the coste and charge of the Knighthoods of the said Order.

XIII. Item, it is agreed, that all strangers, that shall be electe Fellowes of the said Order, shall be certified by Letters of the Soberayne of their election. The which letters of Certification, with the Statutes of the said Order, under the common Seal shall be sent unto them at the coste and charges of the said Soberayne, in all diligence, and at the fardest they shall bee certified of this within foure moneths after the said Election, to thende that the said Electe may addepte them by the said Statutes, if they will receyve the said Order, or no. But if the said Soberayne have greates and high lettres and busyness, that then he may deferre the certification of the said Election at his good pleasure, unto tyme of opportunitie and convenient. After that the Certification have ben delibered, and that the Soberayn shall be certifie, that the said Electe will receyve the said Order; Then the Soberayne shall sende unto the said Electe, by his Ambassadors, his hole habit, with the Carter and Coller. And that all suche strangers, of what estate, dignitie, or condition that they be of, shall sende within vii. moneths after the reception of the said Carter, Coller and Habit, and that he have certified the Sober-

* Divine Service.

rayn to have receyved these thyngs, a sufficient Deputie or attornee after the estate of his Lord and Paister, to be that he be a Knighthood without Reproche, to be stalled in his place, the which shall byng with hym a Mantell of blew Welbert of the order of that which he shall sende hym, and also his Banner, Swords, Helme, and Crest, for to be and abide within the said College during his lyfe. And that the Paister in the tyme that the said Deputie or Attornee shall be stalled, by the said Soberayn or his Deputie, put upon his right arme for to holde the said mantyll upon his arme, and shall bee accompanied and ledde by two of the Knighthoods of the said Order, from the doze of the Chapter unto the stall, and there bopeng shall make his orbe, and shall bee stalled for and in the name of his said Lord and Paister, and the said Mantell abovesaid, the said Attornee or Deputie shall here it upon his right arme during the debyne service, being sett in the stall of his said Paister and Lord, without beryng of it at any tyme after. And to have no manner of hope in the Chapter, or to come in it, in the absence of hym that hath sent hym. And if he send not his said Attornee within vii. moneths abovesaid, without having a reasonable excuse which shall bee acceptable to the Soberayne or his Deputie, the election shall be hope of hym. Except so be that the said Knighthood be lett and desozbed bi great affaires. Then he may send his excuse to the said Soberayne, or to his Deputie, within a moneth after, and after his excuse is, as the Soberayne or his Deputie will allowe it or accepte it, that then the said Soberayn or his Deputie may geve on to hym foure moneths moze of respite, and if he come not or sent not his Attornee before that the tyme of the foure moneths be spent, that then in this case the election shall be hole hope from hym for that tyme. And it is to be knowen, that this labour is done and shewed to the strangers, the which may not well come in their proper parsons, that they might be stalled by Attourneys. To thende that they may be parte takers of the * masses, and all the prayers of the said Order, for they shulde faple of the half pf they were not stalled before their deathe. And likewise it is ordered for them that be new chosen and electe of the said Order, being in the Kings Warres by his commandement, for to enioye of the benefites of the said Statutes, to that that shall appertayne alonly to their stallacion.

XIV. Item there is also ordered a Dean and Warden with xii. Canons seculars, the which shall be priests at their entryng in, or els within a pere nexte following; and also viii. Pericanons, and xiii. Vicars, also prestes at their entryng in, or els at the gpyng of the next Orders, or at the furdest within a pere after their presentation. Also xiii. Clerkes, and xiii. Quersers, for to sing

* Divine Service.

and

APPENDIX.

and pray unto God for the prosperitie of the Soberaigne and all the knyghtes of the said Order lyvynge, and also for the soules of all the knyghtes of the said Order departed, and for all Christen soules, and the presentation of the said Cannons shall belonge alway to the Soberaigne of the said Order. And the said Canons when any knyght of the said Order is there present, within the quere of the said Chappell, shall sitt in the lowermost seates, where they be wonte to sitt at the Feastes of St. George. And in the absence of the said knyghtes the said Canons may sitt in the high seates nexte unto the stalles of the said knyghtes.

XV. Item there bee ordened v. Officers appertaynyng to the said Order, That is to witte, Wylliam, Chaunceler, Register, and King of Armes, named Cartier, and an buynder at Armes, named the Blaque Rod. The whiche shall bee receyved and sworne to be of the Councell of the said Order, the secretes with alsoo their charges and privileges shall expressly be declared in the Booke of the Ordinances of the said Officers.

XVI. Item it is also ordened, that xiii. poore knyghtes, that have not wherewithall to lyve, for to have in that place their lyvynge and sustentation conveniently, for their good prayers in the honoz of God and Saynt George, of the whiche the charges and privileges hereafter shall be declared folowynge the Ordinances of the Officers, and of their election is ordened as of the presentation of the Canons, so that alwey the Election shall adve to the said Soberaigne. And it is agreed, that the poore knyghtes shall have their Mantells of Scarlett, and a feuchion of the armes of Saynt George withoute a Cartier.

XVII. Item it is agreed, that every knyght of the said Company shall leave his Mantell within the said College, for any sodayne chaunces that myght happen for to kepe, holde, and observe all suche Ordinances, Preceptes, and commaundements, whiche may be adde in Chaptre by the said Soberaigne. The whiche Soberaigne by the consent and agreement of vi. knyghtes of the said Order may, at all tymes and places, at his pleasure, summon and make to be kepte Chaptre, for all suche causes, as it shall please to the said Soberaigne to name touching the said Order.

XVIII. Item, it is agreed, that if it fortune, that any of the said Company shoulde come within ii. myle of the Castell, that he shall goo in, if he may, for the honoz of the place, if he be not busyed or lett by some juste cause, and that he take his Mantell before he entre within the said Chappell. And alsoo that he entre not in, but he have his Mantell upon hym. And the Canons there beynge present for that tyme shall come to receyve hym, and debowly shall bring hym into the said Chappell; and if it be in tyme

of * Masse, he shall tary and keere * Masse in the honoz of God and of St. George; and if it be at alternone, he shall come in in manner abovesaid: And there shall be said by the Canons De profundis, for all Christen soules, and there shall offer and retourne unto his stall. And if any of the said Company ride thorough the Towne, and myll not offre as it is agreed, that, upon his obedience for every tyme that he sailerh, he shall goo one myle on fote from the said Chappell, unto the said place, in honoz of Saynt George; And also for every tyme that he shall so sayle, he shall gyve a grote for his Offrpyng. The whiche distaunce, for to com nygh unto the said Castell, is two myles alonny and no more.

XIX. Item it is accorded, the xxxii. yere of our Soberaigne Lorde King Henry the Eight, by the grace of God King of England and of Fraunce, Defensour of the Faith, Lord of Irland, &c. upon Seynt George's day, the xxiii. day of Aprill, at a Chapter holden at the Paleys of Westminster, by the Soberaigne and the Companions of the said Noble Order then there assembled; That as sone as the deeth of any of the Company of the saide Order shall be certepnly knowne, every of the rest, beynge no strangers, shall accordynge to the rates of their Degres hereafter specified, immediately upon a demaunde to be made for the same by the Register, and the Dean, or one of them, to be by one of them employed in Quilmes dedde, as in mending of High wayes, or suche other woorkes of charite, as the Kinges Majestie from tyme to tyme shall mynde and appoynte, the liberal somes of Money unspynge: First the Soberaigne viii l. vi s. viii d. A King of another Realme, vi l. xiii s. iv d. The Prince, v l. xvi s. viii d. A Duke, v l. A Marquesse, iii l. xv s. An Erle, ls. A Viscount, xli s. viii d. A Baron, xxxiii s. iv d. A Scheker knyght, xvi s. viii d. Of all whiche somes thus to be receyved, the said Dean and Register, or either of them, shall perely at the Chapter present his accompte to the Kinges Majestie with this true and just declaration of the dysbursynge agayne and defrayynge of the same. In that cause the partie, whose Bozefon shall apere to be unpayde, shall in the name of a Payne adde unto his former dutye another thirde parte of the same, and so for every yere that he shall be behynde, to pay a thirde parte more than he shuld paye, if he shuld satisfye his ordinary accordynge to the rate before expressed. And if the Dean or Register or any of them shall not at every suche Chapter present the Certificate of the Receipts and Payments in fourme aforesaid, whereby the same may apere to the Soberaigne and Companions of the Order then present, or at the next he in whome the default shall rest, shall in the name of a payne contente and paye immediately, to be employed abovote like pur-

* Divine Service.

APPENDIX.

pose as afore the some of x^l. for every such default.

XX. Item it is agreed, that if any of the said Company die, that the Soberayne or his Deputie after that they shall have certification of his death, shall be bounde for to send and give knowledge by their Letters to all the Fellowship of the said Order being within England, for to come and be with the said Soberayne or his Deputie in what place soever it be, where it shall please him to assigne conveniently within vi. weeks after the certification of the death or decease of the said Knight. The which also assembled or at the least vi. with the Soberayne or his Deputie above said, every of them that there shall be present come to the election shall name ix. of the worthiest and sufficient Knights without exception that he shall knowe subjects to the said Soberayne or others, so be that they holde no contrary partie or be against him. That is to witte, three Dukes, iii. Marqueses, Erles, or of greater estate, iii. Barons, or baronettis, and iii. Bachelers. The which denominations the chief prelate of the said Order shall byprie, that is to witte the Bishop of Wyndesore for the time being, or in his absence the Chancellor, or the Dean or Register or the moost auncient Recorder of the said College in their absence, and the denomination soe done by all, or vi. at the least, by him that shall be written shall be shewed to the said Soberayne, or to his Deputie, that then shall chose of them that be named, he that shall have the moost votes, and also he that the Soberayne shall extreme to be moost honorable to the sayde Order, and moost profitable to his Crowne and to his Realme. And if there be any Knight of the said Order that doth sayle for to come to the said Election, if he be not lett by a just cause; and that the said cause of his excuse shewed under his seal of armes be founde by the Soberayne or his Deputie to be juste and reasonable, then his excuse to be accepted and allowed, and that if his cause be not juste, and that he come not to the ceremonies above named, it is agreed that he shall pay to the Warden of the College for to sponge for him that is departed xx s. sterling, and at his nexte coming to the Chapter, he shall be before the Soberayne or his Deputie and the company, and shall kneele upon the grounde in the myddes of the Chapter, untyll the tyme that he be reconciled by the Soberayne or his Deputie, and the said Company.

XXI. Item it is agreed, that if any Knight of the said Company shoulde departe, and another is chosen and elected, he shall have sone after his election the Garter, in signifying that he is one of the Knights and Fellowes of the Order of the Garter, and his Robe and Hood shall be delivered him in the Chapter-house incontinently, after that his Commission hath bene red be-

fore the Soberayne or his Deputie and the Company; and after that shall be led by two Knights of the said Order accompanied with the other noble-men, And the Officers of the Order shall also be present, and his Mantell shall be borne before him by one of the Knights of the said Order, or by the King at Armes of the Order. The which Mantell shall be delivered to him for his habit, after that he shall have made his othe before his Stall and not before. And this done he shall retorne unto the Chapter house, where he shall resceyve by the Soberayne or his Deputie, The color, and soe he shall have the full possession of his habit holey, except great Princes straungers, the which may receyve their habit holey within the Chapter house, as it hath been used and accustomed in tymes past, for the shortening of tyme. And if he die before he have receyved his habit, he shall not be named one of the Founders, saying that he lacketh to have full possession of his estate. But he shall have the one halfe of the * Masses above named, for the deliverance of the Garter, and none other thinge above it. And if he soe chosen come not in all good diligence after the reception of the said Garter in the said place for to be stalled, and in specially within the yere of his Election, if he be a Knight dwelling within the Realme, and hath no excuse reasonable, allowable, and acceptable to the said Soberayne or to his Deputie, and the Company, Then the Election shall be void of him, and the Soberayne or his Deputie and the Company shall goo and make another new election, and neither the Banner, the Sworde, nor the Helmet, nor Crest of him to chosen be put upon his Stall within the Castell before his coming. To the ende that if he come not, his said Habementis, as Banner, Sworde, Helmet, be not taken down nor abated, but honestly put out of the Quyer, and the rest of other things shall abyde to the profit and use of the sayde Order.

XXII. Item it is agreed, that if any of the Dukes, Marqueses, Erles, Viscountes, Barons, Banerettis, or Bachelers die, That he that shall come after, and succede in his place and name, be he Duke, Marques, Erle, Viscount, Baron, Banerett, Bachelor, or any of the estates above named, he shall have the selfe same stalle that his Predecessor had, and shall not change it without he have speciall licence or Warrant of the said Soberayne, alltimes all Emperours, Kings, and Princes be excepted, the which shall kepe and holde their Stalles after their estate, and very nexte unto the Soberayne. And then by this meane a Duke shall take the stall of a Bachelor, and a Bachelor the stall of a Duke, in signe and knowledge of the first Founders.

XXIII. Item, if there be any place or stall borde, the Soberayne at his pleasure may

* Divine Service.

APPENDIX.

advance and translate, by his special licence, any Knight of the said Company, in the said Hall, to be it that he be more hys then the Hall that he was in afore. Also the Soberayne onys in his lyffe may, if it please hym, make a general translation of all the states at his pleasure, excepte of Emperours, Kynge, Princes, and Dukes. The which allsoy shall kepe ther places and stalles, if not that they be translated in more hys ronne and Hall, in the which translation the long continuance in th' Order, and the prayles, worthynes, and meytis of the Knyghtes ought to be considered and remembred. The which Knyghtes from hensforth in going and sytting at all tymes, that they shall were their Pantels, shall kepe their places after the Order of their stalles, and not after their assatis, as is aforesaid.

XXIV. Item it is agreed, that all the Felows abovesaid at their first coming in shall gyve chery of them a certayne somme, after their estate, for the entertayning and manutenance of the Canons and Poor Knyghtes dwelling in the said place, and for the almes dedes that is there perpetuallly requyred. That is to witt, the Soberayne xl. markes, a straunger King xxl. The Prince xx markes, chery Duke xl. chery Marques viii l. vi s. viii d. chery Erle x. markes, chery Viscounte cxvi s. viii d. chery Baron and Baneret c s. chery Bacheler v. markes, and their Baners, Pelmetts, Crests, and Smerdis shall not be sett ober their stalles, untill the tyme that they have payed at their entering the aforesaid sommes, chery one after his estate and degree to bere of he is. And it ys to witt that the Soberayne is bounde to pay for chery straunger that shall be chosen and electe, whan he shall be stalled in his propre parson, or by procurement, or attornay, and these gyftes be gyven to th'entent that chery one of them that shall entre into th' Order be more worthy to have the name, title, and pryvilege, of one of the Founders of the said Order.

XXV. Item it ys agreed, that chery Knight within the pere of his stallation shall cause to be made a Scouchon of his armes, and hachementis in a plate of metall suche as shall please hym, and that it be suerly sett upon the backe of his stall. And the other that shall come after shall have their Scouchons and hachementis in like maner; but their plates of metall nor there hachementis shall not be soo large nor soo greatte as then of the first Founders were, excepte strangers, which may use their plates and fashions at their pleasure.

XXVI. Item it ys agreed, that no Knight chosen and electe for to be Fellow of the said Noble Order shall nott be stalled by procurement or attornay, excepte he be a straunger, and may not well come hyther in his propre parson for to be stalled, or other that is busied withoute the Realme for the affaires of the Soberayn, or by his

commaundement and licence as it is abowe declared.

XXVII. Item that chery Knight, entering in the said Order, shall promys and sweere faithfully to observe and kepe the popntis and articles that here followeth, That is to witt, that to his trelow potow he shall helpe, during his lyffe, and during the tyme that he shall be Felow of the said Order, for to kepe, defende, and sustayne the honoz, quarrelles, rightes, and lordshippes of the Soberayne of the said Order.

Item that with all his potow he shall enforce hymselfe, and take payne honorably to entertayne and augment the said Order. And if it happen hym for to knowe any thyng that were pmagined or procured to the contrarie of the defence and reffidence of this, with all his trelow power he shall put hymself in more gretter endebment.

Item that well and trelowly he shall accomplish and entertayne all the Statutes, popntis, and ordynances of the said Order, and of all this shall make a generall othe, all and so as though it were redde unto hym fro popnt to popnt, and article to article, and shall make the said othe to the Soberayne of the said Order or his Deputie, in sweyng and promysing upon the holy Gospellis for to kepe them and entertayne them, withoute any fraude or delacion. And upon this he shall toweche the Boke and hyffe the Croffe.

Item this done the said Knight soo chosen with beso reverence shall receyve the Charter, the which the Soberayne or his Deputie shall put it aboute his lyffe leg in sayng these wordes, "Sir, the loyng Company of th' Order of the Charter hath receyved you thery Brother, lover, and fellow, and in token and knowledge of this they gyve you and present you this present Charter. The which God wyl that you receyve and were from hensforth to his praise and pleasure, and to th' exaltacion and honour of the said Noble Order and of your selfe."

XXVIII. Item it is agreed, that in case that the Soberayne be out of the Contre, to the which he can not in propre parson do that shall appertayne to the stallation, he may gyve power and autorite, by his Letters of Commission, to two of the Felows, or to dyverse for to exercise it in his name.

XXIX. Item it is agreed that a common Seal, a signet of the armes of the Order, be made, the which shall rest in the custodi and keeping of the Chancellor of th' Order, or of suche a Knight and Felow of the said Order, as shall please the Soberayne to name and assigne; and if he that shall have the Seales in keeping or custodi shulde departe or goo forth for any cause, xx miles farre from the Soberayne, then he shall deliver the said Seals to the Soberayne, or to suche Knight of th' Order, or to any other persone, that it shall please the said Soberayne for to ordeyne and appoynnt. To th'entent that at

APPENDIX.

no tyme the said Seals be oute of the presence of the said Soberapne, he being within his Realme. And if he be oute of his Realme, The signet shall suffice for to seal all suche actes and writinges, touching the said Order, that there may be concluded and made.

XXX. Item it is agreed, that every Fellowship of the said Order from henceforth shall have the Statutes of the said Order, first collected and oversene by the Register, and after that sealed with the common Seal aforesaid. And if the Knighth shall have any armes depycted, or cognisance made within the Boke of the said Statuts, then the said Boke shall be delivred to the King at Armes of th' Order, for trespit to ordayne of it as it shall appertayne. And the original to be by the said signed and sealed, the whiche shall abyde in the Treasorie of the said College for evermore.

XXXI. Item it is agreed, that after the death of any of the Knights of the said Company, his Executors shall be bounde for to sende againe, and to delivrer the Statutes of the said Order, within three monethes after, if so be that the Statutes hath been delibered unto hym by the Soberapne, or to his charge. The which Statutes shall be delibered againe to the Warden or Register of the said College, or to one of the principall Officers for the tyme being.

XXXII. Item it is agreed, that none of the Knights of Saynt George, of the said Company of the Garter, shall not goo oute of the Contre nor Dominion of the Soberapne, without having leaue and licence of the Soberapne: And therefore it is agreed, that if any biage be made, or any other notable acte appertaining to the honor of Knighthood, The said Soberapne, of his grace, for the great love, favor, and confidence that he beares towardes the Knights of the said Order, will pferre, adavance, and present the said Fellowes and Knights of th' Order of Saynt George before all other.

XXXIII. Item that none of the Knights of the said Order shall not arme themselves the one against the other, but in the Warres of his Soberapne Lorde, in his right and justie quarell, and if it shoulde happen, that any of the said Order were retayned with any Lorde, and holdyng his partie and quarell, and th' adberfari partie desireth also to have another Fellowe of the said Order with hym: In this case, suche a Knight and Fellow shall not be retayned, but may excuse hym from all suche thynges, because his Fellowe is armed against hym on the other side, and was retayned before hym, and every Knight of the said Order shall be bounde to excepte when he shall be retained, that he may be holysly dyscharged from his fyerce of Warre, if any of the Fellowship before hym retayned or holdyng the contrary and adberfari partie: And if he that

is the second retayned know that any of his Fellowes be retayned before hym, and armed with his adberfari partie, Then he that is seconde retayned, at the syde knowledge that he shall have thereof, shall be bounde to excuse hym toward his Maister, and leaue that quarell.

XXXIV. Item that all the licences gyven to the Knights of the said Order, that goo oute of the Realme for to seke and obtayne honor, and all certifications, or sendinge letters and writinges concerning the said Order, from henceforth, shall be sealed with one of the Seales of the said Order.

XXXV. Item it is agreed that if any Knight of the said Order, for his debocion, will dwell within the said Castell continually, There shall be ordered for hym a dwelling place convenient, by th' assignement of the Soberapne, and he of his propre goods and at his costes and charges shall provide for hym lyfelong.

XXXVI. Item if any other Knight, not being of the said Order, have any will to dwelle there for his debocion, there shall be ordered for hym a dwelling place, after the will and pleasure of the said Soberapne, and with the contentement of the said Company.

XXXVII. Item it is ordered, that if any Knight, or other parson, will give any Landes, heritage, or rentes, for to be participant of all the good ozacions and prayers that shall be said in the sayde place, also his name shall be Registered, and the Canons and pore Knights shall pray perpetually unto God for hym, and also the said Deane, Warden, and Canons of the said College from henceforth shall not take any manner of charge upon the said College, withoute the adbyse and consentment of the said Soberapne, or his Deputie, and the Fellowship of the said Order, in presence, and by them contented and agreed in playne Chapter.

XXXVIII. Item for to have better knowledge of the Knights that shall be of the said Order, the Soberapne of it himself and ordered by the Willes and consentment of all the hote Company, that from henceforth, that every Knight of the said Order shall have and were apertly and openly a Coller of golde about his necke, weyng thyrty ounces of Troy weyght and not above, the whiche Coller shall be made by pieces in fashion of Garters, in the myddes of which Garters shall be a double Rose, the one Rose of Red, and the other within white, and the other Rose white, and the other Rose within rede, and at the ende of the said Coller shall be put and fastened the Pmage of Saynt George. The whiche Coller the said Souerapn, his Successours, and amiable Companie of the said Order shall be bounde to were, and in especiall, in principall and solempne Feastes of the yere, and in other dayes of the yere shall be holden to were a small Chapayne of Gold with the Pmage

APPENDIX.

Image of Saynt George depending at the ende of the said Chayne, excepte in tyme of Warre, sickenes, longe biage: When it shall suffice hym to beere alonge a lase of sylke with the said Image of Saynt George. And if the said Collier have any need of reparacion, it may be put in the handes of the Golde-smith and workeman unto the tyme that it

be repared, the whiche Collier also may not be made more richer with stones or other thynges, reserbing the said Image: The whiche may be garnished and enryched at the pleasure of the saide Kinghte: Also the said Collier may not be solde, engaged, aliened, nor gyben, for any neede, cause, or necessity whatsoeuer it be.

The Constitutions relating to the Officers of the Order. Lib. N. p. 232.

CAP. I.

HOrum primus erat Prælati Ordines. Quisquis autem Præsul Wintonienſis, ac Southamptoniæ Comes &c. eo tempore fuerit, is & Prælati esse debet. Qui cum præsens sit, denominationes electionum Equetrum appositè conscribet, Et quod reliquum fuerit, ibi defungetur Officio. Id quod illo absente Cancellarius, Decanus, aut Scriba (quemadmodum est præstentem) explebit.

Quoties Supremo ipsi visum fuerit solemnitatem Divi Georgii servare Windesori, tenebitur & Prælati simul adesse, ut Divina celebret. Quod si volens prætermiserit, viginti marcas eâ de causâ Collegio persolvet, nisi rationabilem & justam absentiam, & Supremo ac Sodalitio bene probabilem causari possit, quæ conferentur ad reparationes inibi faciendas.

Item Prælati habitum superinduct, cujus exterior facies subrubri coloris è serico villosa, interior autem albi serici, quod Taffeta vocant, circumpositis (ut Supremo videbitur) sumptuosius insignibus & scuto super humerum, quod Ordinis intra prælustre subligar habebit insignia. Fibula vestimenti, quæ de pectore propendebit, partim aurei fili, partim cerulei serici debet esse.

Eodem habitu tenebitur uti singulis vigiliis festivisque diebus Divi Georgii, ubi modo liber extiterit. Aliàs item, ut dum celebre concilium, quod & Parliamentum, agitur maxime, vel in aliis festivitibus, ad libitum uti poterit. Qui propter honorem & Prælationem hujus Ordinis summum inter Episcopos nostros ubique locum vendicabit, Archiepiscopis duntaxat concedent, quibus sedium suarum præminencia constabit, utq; tantò magis honoretur, poterit idem Prælati illustre Subligaculum suis semper insignibus circumponere. Et quoties proceditur, prout habitu prædicto rectus Supremum antecedere, Cancellarium Ordinis sibi sinistram habent. Habebit etiam intra Castrum nostrum Windesori sibi locum designatum ad manendum, quoties illuc accesserit. Cumque illic advenit vel ad alium quencumq; locum ex jussu Supremi, ut Divi Georgii festivitatem observet, vel ut alia conscribat, aliavè quencumq; peragat, quæ spectabunt ad hunc Ordinem, intra Atrium

nostrum pro se sibiq; ministrantibus habebit ad vicium, quæ per nostrum præceptum Comites in Aula residentes habere solent.

CAP. II.

Officium Cancellarii, quoniam prænobile est, ac permagne Curæ, exigitur in id administrandum vir præclari nominis, tantq; dignus honore. Quamobrem Supremus vult & instituit, quod nemo provehatur ad id Officium, nisi vel Prælati Ecclesiæ fuerit, velut Archiepiscopus, Antistes, aut notabilis aliqui dignitatis: vel si vir laicus, Eques omnino non ignoti sanguinis, expertus, doctus, & bonâ famâ notus. Ad hanc spectabit Concilii suscipiendi manifestatio, ac declaratio, sub eâ formâ quam Supremus & Sodalitius Ordinis præconceperint, omni tempore quo conveniet aut oportebit, ad honorem, utilitatem, atq; incrementum ejusdem Ordinis. Idem quotannis solemnitate Divi Georgii in Concilio proponet, atq; enarrabit acta egregia laudèq; digna ipsorum Equitum hujus Ordinis, quorum ita meriti sunt: qui verò contra commoverunt & illorum quoq; probra, si qua fuerint, reconficit, ut Scriba tanto facilis ea sub scriptis redigat in memoriam nunquam destitutam. Habebit hic itaq; scilicet cum Prælato intra Castrum nostrum Windesori mansionem, scilicet habitum, & omnino similem villâ assignationem. Cancellarius apud se commune Sigillum Ordinis, cum Signaculo, servabit, ad Statuta, Commissiones, facultates, certificationes, mandata, suffragiorum literas, aliasq; causas ad prædictum Ordinem attinentes, suo quasque tempore consignandas. Si verò, legitimam ac rationabilem causam habens, ultra decem millaria recesserit à Supremo, relinquet interim ea Sigilla, prout Supremus assignabit in custodia unius è Sodalibus, qui commorabitur in Aulâ cum Supremo. Habebit hic ipse Cancellarius annum stipendium, Officii sui nomine, Centum libras Legalis Monetæ Angliæ, vel in feodis, Officii, alijsq; promotionibus tantandem, hiis de quibus ante diximus nihil hic obstantibus.

CAP. III.

Erit insuper hujus Ordinis unus Scriba, qui si vir Ecclesiasticus extiterit, Literatus erit, & Theologicæ

APPENDIX.

Theologia vel alterius Juris, Canonici aut Civilis Professor, habens itaque dignitatem aliquam in Ecclesia Cathedrali, quem Supremus etiam ad Prebendam intra Sacellum suum Windesori curabit sublimandum, & veluti decebit eo nomine promovebit. Si verò Secularis aut Laicus ipse fuerit, vir honestus atque insignis erit, & Eques, experientia doctrinaque nomine commendatus. Qui stipendium habebit annuum quinquaginta libras monetae legalis Angliae, vel in feodis, Officiis, aut emolumentis aliis tantundem. Quoties item Eques aliquis in hunc Ordinem accessus ad sedem suam introducatur, ab eodem Equite, Scriba recipiet tredecim solidis cum quatuor denariis & habitum. Oportebit autem hunc Scribam duos conscribere Libellos, sive Indices, aut potius Annales, è Pergamento, in quibus Ordinationes & Statuta ceteraque causae spectantes ad Ordinem conscribentur. Quorum alter Windesori recondetur in Archivio, ubi perpetuo manebit: alter verò in custodia Scribae, quem nobilet Supremo, si quando poscat, sit ostentior. Prior appellabitur Index Windesoriensis, posterior Aulae Registrum. Huius intererit Electiones factas, & Electorum nomina, stratagemmata, res gestas, & acta notata fidei, digna tam Supremi, quam Commilitonum Ordinis, prout per seipsum suasque scrutandi diligentia, vel per industriam Regis Armorum intelligere poterit, & habere comperta describere & redigere in memoriam. Primitus, ut singulis annis accideret, annotabit, & scriptis commendabit, quae in eo quod proximè suscipiuntur concilio legentur Equitibus ibi congregatis, ut si quicquam correctionis aut emendationis indigeat, ibi corrigatur, similiter iterum in altero concilio, & deinde venièntè conscribenda curabit in praedictis libris aut annalibus ad perpetuam sui memoriam.

CAP. IV.

His accedet Rex Armorum unus, qui Garterus Rex Armorum Angliae vocabitur, quem Supremus & Commilitones, ob dignitatem Ordinis, virum generosi sanguinis, honesti nominis insignia gerentem, intra regnum Angliae natum, & ceteris Armorum Officialibus, qui nobili Coronae Angliae subiecti sunt, superiorem esse voluit. Habebit hic à Supremo stipendium annuum quadraginta libras monetae legalis Angliae; praeterea unusquisque Sociorum pro sui status honore singulis annis donabit eidem, Dux, quatuor libras; Marchio quinque marcas; Comes, quatuor marcas; Baro, quadraginta solidos; & Eques Bachalaureus, viginti sex solidos atque octo denarios, ut tanto honorificentius ad decus Ordinis vitam agat, & Officium administret. Quoties autem Creatio Principis, Ducis, Marchionis, Comititis, Vicecomitis, aut Baronis obtinet, idem Garterus vestes ejus vendicabit quibus utetur priusquam togam illius dignitatis & praecleari status accipiat.

Ad eundem spectabit correctio Armorum atque insignium quorumcumque, quae usurpantur, & gestantur injustè, auctoritas insuper & potestas

Arma huiusmodi atque insignia concedendi talibus qui per Acta fortia ac laudabilia, virtutesque & status, honores merebuntur juxta antiquam consuetudinem, Literis ipsi Patentes super ea re faciendi. Is ubique quando Supremus solenniter incedet, Ensem ejus proximus antecedit, nemine intercedente; nisi forsitan Contabularius & Marschallus, qui virgas illas ad Officium suum attinentes ipsi gestabunt. Per eum quoque vel ab eo designatum juramentum ministrabitur omnibus Armorum Officialibus, Supremo Subjectis, recepturum ob id quod consuetum est.

Habebit itidem habitum Scribae similem, & Baronis Ferculum in Aula, cui post Decanum Sacelli nostri mensa ponetur, & ferculum inferretur, ceteraque sui vitia, ut mos fuit, & datum cubandi Windesori intra Castrum notum accepturus. Cumque sollemnitatis Divi Georgii celebretur, & Supremus assit, idem Garterus portabit albam virgam, cuius ambo fines deaurabuntur, & vexillum modicum insignium Ordinis supra.

Quando Dominus etiam ingreditur Cubiculum nostri Parliamenti, ipse locum ei designabit juxta dignitatis & clari status honorem ex antiquo more recepturus, ob id uti Dominus illi visum fuerit. Et quotienscumque mittitur aut legibitur in Supremi negotiis, quinque Equos habens recipiet pro laboribus accipiendis, singulis quibusque diebus decem solidos.

Idem Garterus, Rex Armorum, diligenter ac sedulo perquiret acta fortia ac fortunata praeclearaque gesta tam Supremi, quam Commilitonum huius Ordinis, quae fideliter ac verè referet Scribae, quatinus in scripta per eum aeternamque memoriam opportunè redigi possint.

Hic Garterus etiam perferet, aut curabit perferendas omnes Literas, quae spectabunt ad Contratos & Sodales huius Ordinis: & significatum ibit Supremo vel Scribae mortem cuiuslibet Equitis istius Ordinis, ut literae suffragiorum conscribantur ac deportentur, quemadmodum oportet, deferret & deferri faciet Electiones eorum qui nominati fuerint, & ipsorum responsa reportabit. Denique faciet, aut fieri procurabit, quicquid spectans ad hunc Ordinem Supremus vel Praelatus, aut Cancellarius: qui praecipui sunt Officiales) faciendum injunxerit.

CAP. V.

Postremò debet esse unus Hostiarius, quem Supremus ac Commilitones volunt esse generosum, Armis ac Sanguine clarum, & in ditione ipsius Supremi progenitum, is qui pro dignitate Ordinis atque honore omnium Hostiariorum ipsius Regni summus erit. Habebit itaque curam & custodiam & custodiam preheminentiam penetralium nostrorum, Domus ubi Concilium agitur, & omnium hostiorum ubi concilium inibi, tam in sublimi Curia quae Parliamentum appellatur, quam in quibusque locis aliis, Cuius Annum stipendium erit Tringinta Librarum. Quid si jussu Supremi ac Commilitonum, quem huius Ordinis Equitem nigrà virgà

APPENDIX.

tetegerit, & reum egerit sceleris admitti, propter quod sit abdicandus ab hoc Ordine, quinque libras eo facto percipiet: si levioris offensæ causâ quem admonuerit, ex præcepto Regis & Concilii, vendicabit ab eodem eâ de causâ viginti solidos. Et quondocunque quis Electus in sedem introduciatur, decem solidos accipiet; intra Castrum nostrum Windetori cubandi locum sibi selectum, ejusdem Castri & duorum saltuum coadjacentium custodiam habebit. Habebit etiam habitum Scribæ & Garteri Regis Armorum, scilicet, ferula Baronum & reliquum vitium attinentem in Aula. Qui si non fuerit Eques in ingressu, tum fieri debet. Utroque verò singulis annis Supremus extiterit in Festo Divi Georgii, die vel festivitatis sequente, ante eundem Supremum aut Deputatam, virgam nigellam aut ipse deferet, vel alius ab eo sufficienter assignatus. Et supra virgam Leo stabit, Anglorum insigne. Virga, nimirum loco clave gestabitur, cujus & auctoritatem habebit, hiis modò deserviens qui deliquerint & in Ordinationes ac Statuta peccaverint.

Hii tres hujus Ordinis Officiales, Scriba videlicet, Garterus Rex Armorum, & Holtiarius ab atrâ virgâ nuncupatus, ipsi cum suis tam rebus quàm ministris in suis Officiis permanentes, sub perpetua Supremi protectione ac propugnaculo securè durabunt. Unde si quævis injuria seu violentia ipsis inferatur, vel ab eis qui Supremo subiecti sunt, vel exterius, quoties causas suas arbitrio Supremi submittent, ipse cum Sodalibus exhibebit eis justitiam, aut exhibendam ex æquo & congruo procurabis. Si verò pars adversa causam suam Supremo submittere detrectabit, ipse cum Commilitonibus eum erga Officiales hos animum habebit, ut ipsorum causam quoad justum atq; æquum erit cum debito favore tueri velit.

Intra Chorum prædicti Sacelli, dum solennia peraguntur, ante Sedem Regiam præterea statuentur Sedilia duo, unum ante alterum, in quorum altero sedebunt Prælati & Cancellarius Ordinis; in altero, Scriba, Rex Armorum & Holtiarius.

The Names of the first Founders, and other Knights-Companions, who succeeded in their Stalls, after the ancient manner; as they are exemplified in two TABLES remaining in the Chapter-house at Windsor.

TAB. I.

1. Le très noble Roy Edward tiers, & premier Fondeur.

Apres luy vint le Roy Richard, filz, Edwarde le Prince de Galles. Apres luy vint le très-noble Roy Henry, filz de Johan Duc de Lancastre. Apres luy vint le noble Prince & vaillant, le Roy Henry 5. Heritier & Regent de France, & Conquerueur de Normandic. Apres luy vint son filz Henry de Windesore le 6. couronné à Paris Roy de France. Apres luy & en son temps, entra en son droit tiltre, le très-noble Roy Edward 4. la fleur de Chivalerie. [* Apres luy vint le Roy Richard le 3. Apres luy vint le très-noble Roy Henry le 7.]

* Note that all put within *Unus's* at the end of each Stall, is added in the Tables by a later hand.

2. Le Duc de Lancastre, Henry, & Premier Fondeur.

Apres luy vint le Seigneur Despenscr, Edward; Apres luy vint le Conte de Stafford, Hugh; Apres luy vint Monsieur Nichol Sarnesfeld; Apres luy vint Monsieur William D'arundell; Apres luy vint le Roy de Portugal, Jehan; Apres luy vint le Roy de Portugal Edward;

Apres luy vint le Duc de Gloucestre, Humfrey; Apres luy vint le Roy de Portugal, Alfonso; [Apres luy vint son Filz le Roy de Portugal.]

3. Le Capton de Buch, Pierre, & premier Fondeur.

Apres luy vint le Conte de Derby, qui apres fuit Roy D'Angleterre Henry le 4. Apres luy vint Messire Philipp la Vache. Apres luy vint Messire Gilbert Sire le Talbot. Apres luy vint Messire Jehan Grey. Apres luy vint le Conte Marechalle Jehan. Apres luy vint le Duk D' York, Richard. Apres luy vint le Conte de Warwick, Richard. [Apres luy vint le Noble Prince Charlois Duc de Burgoyne. Apres luy vint le Roy Don Ferdinando le la grant Cecile & de Naples, par l'ordonnance du Soverain & la Compagnie.]

4. Le Conte de Saresbury William, & premier Fondeur.

Apres luy vint le Conte d' Arundell, Thomas. Apres luy vint le Conte de Huntington, qui apres fut fait Duc D'Excestre. Apres luy vint le Duc de Norfolk, Jehan. Apres luy vint le Conte de Worcestre, Jehan, Grand Constable D' Angleterre. Apres luy vint le Duc de Norfolk Jehan. [Apres luy vint le Marquis Dorset, Thomas, filz de la Roynie Elizabeth.]

5. Monsieur

APPENDIX.

5. Monsieur Jehan de Lisle, & premier Fondeur.

Après luy vint Messire Richard la Vache ; Après luy vint Messire Edward, Sire de Powys. Après luy vint Her Tangke Clux. Après luy vint Messire le Duc de Gloucestre Freire au Roy Edward quart. [Après luy vint le Count de Ox. Jehan.]

6. Monsieur Johan Beauchampe, & premier Fondeur.

Après luy vint le Duc le Clarence, Leonel. Après luy vint le Seire de Basset, Rauf. Après luy vint le Duc de Gheldren Will. Après luy vint le Conte de Stafford. Après luy vint le Conte de Kent, Edmund. Après luy Messire Robert Doumfravile. Après luy vint le Conte de Satisbury Richard. Après luy vint Monsieur de Montague, Jehan, apres Conte de Northumberland. [Après luy vint le Counte D'A-rundell William.]

7. Monsieur Hugh Courtenay, & premier Fondeur.

Après luy vint le Conte de Northampton, William. Après luy le Duc de Eborum, Conte de Cantebriegie, Edmund. Après luy vint Monsieur Jehan, filz du Roy Henry 4. Duc de Bethford, Regent de France. Après luy vint Monsieur Jehan Grey, de Ruthya. Après luy vint le Conte de Somerset, Jehan, apres Duc de Somerset. Après luy vint Dom. Alver Dalmadaa Conte D'everence, Capitaine de Portugal. Après luy vint le Viscount Bouchier, Henry, apres Conte D'Essex. [Après luy vint Count de Arundell Thomas.]

8. Monsieur Johan Grey, & premier Fondeur.

Après luy vint Monsieur Wautier Manny. Après luy vint Monsieur Gaichard D'anguillein. Après luy vint le Duc de Gloucestre, Counte de Buckingham, Thomas. Après luy vint le Conte Palatyn Duc de Bavayre, Robert. Après luy vint le Roy D'antmarch. Après luy vint Messire Antony de Wideville, Sieur de Seales & de Neuvelles, freire de la Roine Elizabeth. [Après luy Messire Jehan Conyers Bancret. Après luy le Conte de Sarry Thomas.]

9. Monsieur Miles de Stapelton, & premier Fondeur.

Après luy vint le Conte de Hereford, Humfrey. Après luy vint le Conte de Warwick, le filz Thomas. Après luy vint Monsieur Thomas Erpengham. Après luy vint le Conte de Stafford, Humfray, apres Duc de Buckingham. Après luy vint Monsieur de Soroup, Johan.

10. Monsieur Hugh de Wrotelleghe, & premier Fondeur.

Après luy vint Monsieur Thomas de Felton. Après luy vint le Sire de Willoughby, William. Après luy vint Monsieur William Harrington. Après luy vint Messire Rauf Boteller, Seigneur de Sudley. [Après luy vint Messire Thomas Seigneur Mautravers.]

11. Monsieur Jehan Chaundos, & premier Fondeur.

Après luy vint Monsieur Guy de Briene. Après luy vint le Conte de Oftervant, William, qui apres fut remué à l'autre part à l'estal du Duc de Bretagne, Jehan. Après luy vint Monsieur Humfry, filz du Roy, Henry Duc de Gloucestre, qui apres fut remué à l'estal du Roy de Portugall, Edward Jehan. Après luy vint le Capitain de la Bouche, Conte de Longeville. Après luy vint Monsieur Jehan Sire de Dudley. Après luy Seigneur William Stanley. [Après luy le Count de Northumberland Henry. Après luy le Conte de Sirewesbury George.]

12. Monsieur Otes Holand, & premier Fondeur.

Après luy vint Frank van Halle. Après luy vint Messire William Beauchamp. Après luy vint le Seigneur de Morley, Thomas. Après luy vint le Sire de Willoughby, Robert. [Après luy vint Messire Walter Blount, Sire de Mountjoye. Après luy vint le Conte de Urbyne.]

13. Monsieur Sanchete D'abrichecourt, & premier Fondeur.

Après luy vint Monsieur William Fitz Waryn. Après luy vint le Sire Latimer, William. Après luy vint Monsieur Symond de Burley. Après luy vint Monsieur Jehan Devros. Après luy vint Monsieur de Beaumont Jehan. Après luy vint le Conte de Somerset, Jehan. Après luy vint Monsieur Jehan de Cornvaile. Après luy vint Monsieur Thomas Hoo. Après luy vint le Sire de Stanley, Thomas. Après luy vint Messire Johan Astley.

TAB. II.

1. Le Prince Edward, & premier Fondeur.

Après luy vint son filz Richard, Prince de Gales. Après luy vint Jehan Duc de Lancastre, par l'ordonnance du Soverain & la Compagnie. Après luy vint Monsieur Philipp la Vache, qui apres fut remué à l'estal du Conte Derby, par le Soverain & la Compagnie. Après luy vint le Prince Henry, filz du Roy Henry. Après luy vint Messire Jehan D'abrichecourt. Après luy vint Sigismund, Empereur. Après luy vint le Prince Edward, filz du Roy Edward le quart. [Après luy vint le premier filz du tres-noble Roy Henry le 7.]

2. Le

A P P E N D I X.

2. Le Conte de Warwick, Thomas, & premier Fondeur.

Après luy vint le Conte de Pembroke, Jehan. Après luy vint le Duc de Breteign, Jehan. Après luy vint le Duc de Holand. Après luy vint Monsieur Johan Robellart. Après luy vint George Duc de Clarence, freire puisné du Roy Edward 4. [Après luy le Duc de Bedford, Jasper. Après luy le Roy de Grande Cecile, Alphons.]

3. Le Conte de Stafford Rauf, & premier Fondeur.

Après luy vint Monsieur Alain Bukesull. Après luy vint Monsieur Brian de Stapelton. Après luy vint Monsieur William Scroop. Après luy vint le Conte de Westmerland, Rauf. Après luy vint Monsieur Johan de Fastolf. Après luy vint le Roy Dom de Fernando de la grante Cecile & de Naples, qui après fit renné à l'estal du noble Prince Charlois Duc de Bourgonge. [Après luy vint le Duc de Ferrare, Hercules.]

4. Le Conte de March Roger, & premier Fondeur.

Après luy vint Monsieur Thomas Ulford. Après luy vint Monsieur Richard Pembruge. Après luy vint le Conte de Suffolk, William. Après luy vint Monsieur Richard de Burle. Après luy Monsieur Edward, filz de Duc de Yorke. Après luy vint le Conte de Oxentord, Richard. Après luy vint Monsieur Jehan Blount. Après luy vint Monsieur William Philippe, Seigneur de Bardolf. Après luy vint Messire Jehan Beauchamp. [Après luy vint le Duc D'Yorke Richard, filz du Roy Edward le quart. Après luy le Duc de Bokyngham.]

5. Monsieur Bartholomew Bourgherft, & premier Fondeur.

Après luy vint le Sire de Neufville, Jehan. Après luy vint Monsieur Pierre Courtenay. Après luy vint le Sire Lovell Johan. Après luy vint le Sire Fitzhugh Henry. Après luy vint le Sire de Sealles, Thomas. Après luy vint Monsieur de Halting, William. [Après luy le Conte de Derby Sire de Stanley Thomas.]

6. Monsieur de Mohun, & premier Fondeur.

Après luy vint le Conte de Kent, Thomas. Après luy vint le Conte de Dorset, Thomas, Duc de Excestre. Après luy vint Dom Petre filz du Roy de Portugal, Duc de Quynbre. Après luy vint Johan Bourlcher. Sire de Berneres. [Après luy vint Duc de Bukyngham Henry. Après luy le Sire de Strange, George.]

7. Monsieur Thomas Hollande, & premier Fondeur.

Après luy vint le Duc de Lancastre, Jehan, qui après fut renné à l'estal du Prince Richard.

par le Soverain & la Compagnie : Es en son lieu vint Messire Johan de Burle. Après luy vint Monsieur Thomas Moubray, Conte de Notyng-ham. Après luy vint Thomas de Lancastre filz du Roy Henry 4. Après luy vint le Conte de Suffolk William del Pool, après Marquis & Duc de Suffolk. [Après luy vint son filz Jehan Duc de Suffolk. Après luy le Sire de Dynham, John.]

8. Monsieur Richard Fitz Symond, & premier Fondeur.

Après luy vint le Conte de Suffolk, Robert. Après luy vint Monsieur Robert Namurs. Après luy vint Monsieur Jehan Bourgcher. Après luy vint Monsieur Thomas Rammiton. Après luy vint Monsieur Sire Burnell. Après luy vint Monsieur Lowes Robellart Sire de Bourgcher. Après luy vint le Conte Jehan D'arundelle. Après luy vint le Conte de Morteigne, Edmund, qui après fut Marquis de Dorset, & Duc de Somerset. Après luy vint Monsieur de Herbert, William. [Après luy vint Jehan de Buckyngham Conte de Wiltshire. Après luy vint le Conte de Northumberland, Henry. Après luy le Viscount Lovell Frauncois. Après luy Messire Edward VVodeville. Après luy le Viscount VVel-lis, Jehan.]

9. Monsieur Thomas Wale, & premier Fondeur.

Après luy vint Monsieur Reynard de Crebeham. Après luy vint Monsieur Jehan Sully. Après luy vint le Conte de Warrewyk Richard. Après luy vint le Sire de Fancemberge, après Conte de Kente. Après luy vint le Conte de Douglas. [Après luy vint le Sire de Broke, Robert.]

10. Monsieur Neel Loringee & premier Fondeur.

Après luy vint le Conte D'Arundell, Richard. Après luy vint Sire de Grey. Après luy vint Monsieur Hugh Statford, Sire de Bourgcher. Après luy vint le Sire de Hungerford, Wauter. Après luy vint le Sire de Riviers, Richard, après Conte de Riviers, & Piet de Roigne Eliz. Après luy vint Messire Jehan le Seigneur Howard. [Après luy Messire Thomas de Borough. Après luy Messire Charles Somersfet Baneret.]

11. Monsieur James D'aucele, & premier Fondeur.

Après luy vint Monsieur Thomas Grantfon. Après luy vint Monsieur de Roos. Après luy vint le Sire Camus, Thomas. Après luy vint Monsieur Jehan Sire de Clifford. Après luy vint le Sire de Talbot, Johan, après Conte de Cherobery. Après luy vint son filz, Johan Conte de Cherobury. Après luy vint le Sire de Wen-loke. Après luy vint Messire, William Parr. [Après luy Messire Richard Dunfall. Après luy Messire Edw. Poynings.]

12. Monsieur

APPENDIX.

12. Monsieur Henry Em, & premier Fondeur.

Après luy vint Monsieur Thomas Ughtrede. Après luy vint le Conte de Bethford. Après luy vint Monsieur Lewis Clifford. Après luy vint Monsieur Johan Stanley. Après luy vint le Conte de Sarisbury, Thomas. Après luy vint Monsieur Johan de Radcliff. Après luy vint le Viscount de Beaumont, Jehan. Après luy vint Monsieur Robert Harecourt. [Après luy vint Monsieur Walter Deveros Sire de Ferres. Après luy vint Monsieur Johan Cheny Baneret.]

13. Monsieur Walter Pavely, & premier Fondeur.

Après luy vint Monsieur Thomas Banestre. Après luy vint Monsieur Sandich de Trane. Après luy vint Monsieur Symund Felbrigger. Après luy vint Henry filz du Roy de Portingall, Duc de Vison. Après luy vint le Sire de Duras. Après luy vint Messire Thomas Montgomery. [Après luy vint Messire Gylbert Talbot Baneret.]

k

King

APPENDIX.

NUMBER I.

King Edward the Third's Letters Patent for founding St. George's Chappel in Windeſor Caſtle.

Pat. an. 22. E. 3. par. 2. m. 6.

EDwardus, &c. Univerſis preſentes Literas inſpecturis, ſalutem. Magnificenciam decet Regiam in piis ſemper actibus delectari, ut cum ante tribunal ſteteris ſummi Regis, apud quem non eſt acceptio perſonarum, ſed unusquiſque prout geſſit in corpore recipit, ſive bonum fuerit ſive malum, inter bonos à dextris aſſidere valeat & non piger vel inutilis cum reprobis judicari. Nos quidem varia vite noſtræ ſtudia & exilia merita noſtra cum amaritudine recolentes ſollicitè, divinâq; nobis præſtita beneficia, gratias & honores, quibus præ cæteris miſericorditèr Altiffimus nos prævenit, meritò contemplantæ de bonis nobis à Deo collatis & ſupra modum multociens inanièr diſpenſatis gravitèr ſuſpiramus, nec aliud nobis reſtat, niſi ad Chriſtrum & matrem ejus Virginem glorioſam, quæ nobis nunquam patrocinari deſiſſit, ſed in variis periculis conſtitutos ſuis beatis precibus proteſtari hætenus, & adjuvare feliciter, convertere totalitèr mentem noſtram, & ſibi pro gratiis, gratias reddere & pro deliciis veniam poſtulare. Et quia bona eſt negotiatio per quam tranſitoria declinantur & æterna felici commercio ſubrogantur, Capellam quandam apte pulchritudinis oſtæ Canonicoꝝ ſecularium in Caſtro noſtro de Wyndelore in qua Aquâ ſacri Baptiſmatis abluti fuimus ſitutam, in honore Beati Edwardi Confeſſoris per progenitores noſtros nobilitèr inchoatam, quibus pro ipſorum ſervitiis ac quædam ſervitia præſtante pro eorum voluntate & de proprio theſauro in Elemoſinam tribuerunt, in honorem Omnipotentis Dei, & ſuæ Genitricis Mariæ Virginis glorioſæ, Sanctorumq; Georgii Martyris & Edwardi Confeſſoris, noſtris Regis ſumptibus fecimus conſumari. Summis deſideriis aſſilantes & efficaci operam adhibentes, ut prædicti Canonici inibi Divini ſervitii tam redituum incrementis, quam aliorum Canonicoꝝ & Miniſtrorum ac ſervitiarum auxilio inchoarent. Et in ea Capella prædictâ cultu latiori Divini Nominis gloria exaltetur, prædictis oſtæ Canoniciſ annuam Cuſtodem, præſidentem eiſdem, & quindecim adhuc alios Canonicos, viginti & quatuor Milites pauperes, de ſe imponentes, ſeu vergentes ad inopiam, & de bonis dictæ Capellæ perpetuò ſuſtentandos, & alios dictæ Capellæ Miniſtros ſub ipſius Cuſtodis imperio, & ſuæ ſervitiis ſuperaddere, & ibidem tam Canonicos & Milites quam alios dictæ Capellæ Miniſtros ut præmittitur recipi facere dignum ducimus, firmitèr ſtatuiſmus, & inviolabiliter ordinaviſmus, & auctoritate noſtrâ Regiâ, quantum in nobis eſt, perpetuò ſtabilimus. Volentes quod dicti Canonici & Miniſtri divina Officia celebrent pro nobis, & progenitoribus, & ſucceſſoribus noſtris, in partem ſatisfactionis eorum de quibus in extremo judicio rationem erimus reddituri, celebraturi imperpetuum ſecundum formam Ordinationis noſtræ inde plenè faciendæ,

quibus jura patronatus & advocaciones Eccleſiarum de Wyrardesbury Lincolnie, Southtanton, Exon, & Uttoxhatre Coventrie & Lichfeldie Dioceſis, quas nuper acquiſivimus ex hac cauſâ, pro nobis & heredibus noſtris dedimus & conceſſimus, damus & concedimus. Habend' & tenend' iſſis & ſucceſſoribus ſuis in liberam, puram, & perpetuam Elemoſinam ab omni exactione ſeculari, liberis, penitis & quietos imperpetuum. Conceſſimus etiam eiſdem, pro nobis, & heredibus noſtris, & licentiam dedimus, quod iidem Caſtro & Canonici dictas Eccleſias appropriare, & eas ſic appropriatas in proprios uſus tenere poſſint, ſibi & ſucceſſoribus ſuis imperpetuum. Si autem de terris & tenementis ad manum mortuam non ponendis, edito non obſtante. Volumus etiam dictis Caſtodi, & Canoniciſ, Militibus & aliis dictæ Capellæ Miniſtris inibi ſervituris tantum de theſauro noſtro Annis ſingulis elargiri, quod, cum Emolumento de prædictis Eccleſiis provenientes, ad eorum vitium & ſupportationem onerum ſibi innumbentium juxta concedentiam ſtatutis ſui interrim videbitur ſufficiens, & honeſtum quoviſq; de bonis immobilibus, terris, beneficiis ſeu redditibus ad ſufficientiam congruam & honorem noſtrum, uſq; ad ſummam mille librarum annuatim per nos contigerit provideri. Quæ omnia promittimus & pollicemur pro nobis & heredibus noſtris nos efficaciter impleturos. In cujus rei teſtimonium has Literas noſtras fieri fecimus Patente. Test. noſtra ad Wintoniam Sexto die Auguſti, Anno Regni noſtri Angliæ viſuſmo ſecundo, Regni verò noſtri Franciæ nono.

N. II.

A Bull impowring the Archbiſhop of Canterbury and Biſhop of Wincheſter to Inſtitute the Colledge of Windeſor.
Ex ipſo Autogr. in Arar. Colleg. Windeſor.

Cletmens Epicoꝝ Servus ſervorum Dei, venerabilibus fratribus Archiepiſcopo Cantuarienſi & Epicoꝝ Wintonienſi, ſalutem & Apoloſicam benedictionem. Eximie devotionis affectus, quem chariſſimus in Chriſto Filius noſter Edwardus Rex Angliæ illuſtris, ad nos & Romanam Eccleſiam gerit, permoveat, ut patribus ejus, quantum cum Deo poſſimus, in his præſertim quæ Divini cultus augmentum & animarum ſalutem reſpiciunt, favorabiliter annuamus. Petitio ſiquidem pro parte dicti Regis, nobis nuper exhibita continebat, quod ipſe Rex Zelo piæ devotionis accenſus, cupiens terræna in celeſtia, & tranſitoria in æterna felici commercio commutare, in Capellâ Caſtri de Windeſore ejusdem Regis, Sarisburienſis diœceſos, fundata

APPENDIX.

ad laudem Beate Mariæ Virginis & S. Georgii martyris ac Edwardi Regis & Confessoris bonorem, & divini cultus augmentum, ac pro sua, & aliorum fidelium animarum salute, unum Collegium Canonicorum, Presbyterorum, Clericorum, nec non Militum Regni Angliæ, ad inopiam vergentium, ac Ministrorum qui in eodem Capellâ perpetuo Domino famulantur; & certum numerum ipsorum ordinare & canonicè fundare, ac de bonis suis propriis sufficienter dotare proponit. Quare pro parte ipsius Regis, suis nobis humiliter supplicatum, ut e. bis ordinandi ac statuendi, Autoritate nostrâ huiusmodi Collegium, & alia ad hoc pertinentia, ac etiam opportunitatem facultatem de benignitate Apostolicâ concedere dignemur. Nos itaq; ipsius Regis pium in hac parte propositum in Domino commendantes, ac plenum de vestrâ circumspectione in Domino fiduciam obtinentes, huiusmodi dicti Regis supplicationibus inclinati, ordinandi, ac statuendi, & deputandi, hâc vice, autoritate Apostolicâ, in dictâ Capellâ, per dictum Regem, dote prædictâ prius ut præmittitur assignatâ, prout vobis hoc secundum Deum expedire videbitur, super quo vestram conscientiam oneramus, certum numerum Canonicorum, Presbyterorum, Clericorum, Militum ac Ministrorum prædictorum inibi, ut præmittitur, Domino famulantium perpetuo observandum. De quibus quidem Canonicis seu Presbyteris unus per vos autoritate eadem deputetur qui Custos eorum perpetuo nuncupetur eisq; inibi præseat; alios etiam Canonicos, Presbyteros, ac Clericos, Milites, & Ministros ejusdem Collegii & Capellæ, ac singulos ipsorum, ac bona eorundem regat pariter & gubernet; statuendi & ordinandi autoritate eadem Ordinationes congruas & honestas juxta quas Custos, Canonici, Presbyteri Clerici, Milites, & Ministri Collegii prædicti & ipsorum singuli vivere debeant, & eque teneantur perpetuo summiter observare, Parochialis Ecclesiæ & cujuslibet alterius in præmissis omnibus, nec non patronatus Canonicorum, Presbyterorum, Clericorum, Militum & Ministrorum, ac Capellæ prædictæ, postquam ipsi deputati & ordinati inibi fuerint ut præfertur, eidem Regi ejusq; hæredibus & successoribus, jurebus semper salvis ac perpetuo reservatis quibuscumq; Apostolicis statutis, & consuetudinibus contrariis nequaquam obstantibus vobis & cuilibet vestrum autoritate prædictâ, de speciali gratiâ, plenam & liberam concedimus facultatem. Dat. Avinionæ pridie Kalendas Decembris Pontificatus nostri anno nono.

N. III.

A Bull exempting the Colledge of Windsor from the Jurisdiction of Archbishopps, &c.

Ex ipso Autogr. ibidem.

Clemens Episcopus servus servorum Dei venerabilibus fratribus Archiepiscopo Cantuariensi & Episcopo Wyntonienſi salutem & Apostolicam benedictionem. Ad ea libenter inten-

dimus per quæ persone Ecclesiæ liberè in tranquillitate pacis valeant Domino famulari. Nuper siquidem vobis ad charissimi in Christo filii nostri Edwardi Regis Angliæ illustris, supplicationis instantiam ordinandi & statuendi auctoritate Apostolicâ in Capellâ Regis ejusdem in Castro de Wyndelore Sancti Dionisii fundatâ Collegium & certum numerum Canonicorum, Presbyterorum, Clericorum, Militum, ac inopiam vergentium, & Ministrorum inibi Domino perpetuo famulantium, quorum unus eis præseat, qui Custos perpetuo nuncupetur, nec non ordinationes congruas & honestas, juxta quas Collegium, Custos, Canonici, Presbyteri, Clerici, Milites & Ministri prædicti vivere debeant facienda sufficienti dote per dictum Regem de bonis propriis ejusdem Capellæ & Collegio ad vestrum seu vestrum alterius arbitrium primitus assignatâ, plenam & liberam per nostras certi tenoris literas concessimus facultatem prout in ipsis Literis plenius continetur. Nos itaq; volentes Capellam ac Collegium huiusmodi uberiori gratiâ prosequi & favore ipsius Regis supplicationibus inclinati, utinam perpetuo auctoritate eadem, juxta modificationem inferius annotatam, Capellam, Collegium, Canonicos, Presbyteros, Clericos, Milites & Ministros prædictos, postquam ipsi in eadem Capellâ recepti & sufficienter dotati fuerint, ut præfertur, ab omni ordinariâ jurisdictione, Dominio, & superioritate quâlibet Archiepiscoporum, Episcoporum, Archiepiscoporum & aliorum quorumlibet Judicum & Officialium ipsorum Ecclesiasticorum, illaq; omnia ad jus & proprietatem beati Petri, & sub protectione Sedis Apostolicæ & nostrâ suscipiendi & nihilominus concedendi hac vice auctoritate prædictâ, ut Custos dictæ Capellæ qui pro tempore fuerit habeat perpetuo jurisdictionem Ecclesiasticam in Capellam Collegium, Canonicos, Presbyteros, Clericos, Milites, & Ministros prædictos, & eorum Successores, & singulos ipsorum & curam animarum etiam eorundem constitutionibus Apostolicis & Statutis ac consuetudinibus Provincialibus & Synodalibus & aliis quibuscumq; contrariis nequaquam obstantibus, vobis & vestrum cuilibet auctoritate eadem plenam & liberam concedimus facultatem. Volumus autem quod Custos dictæ Capellæ qui pro tempore fuerit curam animarum prædictarum à loci Diocesano recipere teneatur, & in hiis quæ ad ipsam curam pertinent perpetuo ei subditus sit, ad judicium verò perceptarum exemptionis & libertatis prædictarum. Volumus quod ipsi Custos & Collegium unam Marcam sterlingorum in Festo Sancti Georgii, in cuius honore dicta Capella fundata existit, Camere Apostolicæ annis singulis solvere teneantur. Nos enim irritum & inane decernimus, siquid contra præmissa à quoquam quâvis auctoritate scienter vel ignoranter contigerit attemptari. Date Avinionæ ii. Idus Februarii Pontificatus nostri Anno nono.

IV. A

N. IV.

A Patent for Institution of the Chancellor's Office.

Pat. de an. 15. E.4. par. 3. m. 18.

Edward per la grace de Dieu, Roy D'angleterre & de Fraunce & Signeur Hurlande; à tous ceulx qui ces presentes verront ou orront, Salutz. Come entre le Offices de nostre Ordre de la Gartier, Il ny ait null Office de Chancelleir per les primer Estatuz d'icelleux Ordre, le quell Office est bien licite & necessarie au dit Ordre, Volons & Ordonnons, que pur l'axaltation & bien dudit Ordre en icelleux aura ung Officer nomme Chancelleir. Et pur tant, que l'Office est grande, & de grande charge, & requiert avoir ung notable personne, volons, que null ne soit in icelleux Office, s'il n'est in dignite ecclesiastique, Come Eveque. Considerans en outre que la Chappell de Saint George en nostre Castell Royall de Windesore, ou le Ordre est fondé & effise, & establie dedens le diocese de Salisbury, Et nous aians regart aux vertuz, prudence & diligence de Reverent Pere en Dieu, nostre chier, & bien ame Consyn Rychart Beauchamp, à present Eveque du dit diocese de Salisbury, qui pur l'amour du dit ordre s'empere de jour en jour vaquier & attendre a l'avaucement & bone profecion de la belle oeuvre per nos commences au dit Castell de Windesore, sur la largeur de la dit Chappell avons icelleux Reverent pere in Dieu, Ordonné & establie, Ordonnons & establissons pur la terre de sa vie Chancelleir de la dit nostre Ordre de la Gartier. Et apres sa vie, volons & ordonnons que ses Successeurs Eveques de Salisbury à tous jours aient & occupent le dit Office de Chancelleir tant ainsi, que cest nostre concession per l'avis de Confreres Chivaliers du dit Ordre sit mis in execution sans prejudice de L'evesque de Winchester ense que touchant le dit Ordre per les primers Estatuz len en doit appartenir. Et ausi, volons & ordonnons, que le dessusdit Chancelleir & les Successeurs Eveques du dit Salisbury auront en garde le Grand Seale de la dessusdit nostre Ordre de Gartier, du quell Seale, Ils ne pouront Seclere nulles Lettres, se non per le forme & la maniere, Come Il est Ordonné per les estatuz dudit Ordre, ou per commandement especial de nous & nous Successeurs Souverains du dit Ordre. In testimoine de quel chose cestes nosres Lettres avons nous faictes Patentes. Testimoine nous mesmes à Westminster, x. jour Octobre, L'an de nostre Reigne quinziesme.

N. V.

The Letters for Institution of the Office of Garter.

Ex Antogr. in Biblioth. Hatton.

A Tous ceulx qui ces presentes Lettres verront ou orront, Nous Humfrey Duc de Glocestre, Richard de Beauchamp, Conte de

Warwick, Robert Seigneur de Willuby; Henry Seigneur fitz Hugh. Loys de Robessart, Seigneur de Bourchier; Johan Comwaylle, Thomas Herpingham, Gualtier Hungerford, Johan de Robessart, Synon Fulberg, Gaillime Philippe, Hartoulx Clux, Chivaliers, partie du nombre de la Compaignie des Confreres de la Noble Ordre du Jartier, fondee en l'honneur Dieu, nostre Dame, & de Monsieur Saint George, dedens la sainte Chapelle du glorieux Saint dessusdit assise au Chastell Royal de Windesore, Salutz. Comme ja pieca, tres-excellent Prince de Noble memoire le Roy Henry le quint nostre Souveraigne Seigneur, qui Dieu absoille, en son vivant par bone & meure deliberation contemplant à la Noble contemplacion de la dit Noble Ordre, come Souverain d'icelle, ou plaine Chapitre de la dite Compaignie & confraternite, per l'aduz & consentement de tous les Confreres, & present Reverend Pere en Dieu Henry, Eveque de Wincestre, Prelat de la dit Noble Ordre, voulut, ordonna, & constitua en accroissant le nom de la dit Noble Ordre, & pour estre entendant au service de ladit Compaignie les confreres d'icelle & de toute gentillesse ung servan d'armes. Lequel pour la dignite de le dit Ordre vult qu'il fust Souverain dedans l'Office d'armes, sur toutes les autres Servans d'armes du tres-noble Royaume d'Angleterre. Et en confirmant la dit Ordre fut nommé Jartier, Roy d'armes des Angloys. Apres le quel honorable propos fait & accompli, le dit Servan d'armes nommé Jartier, Impose au nom de la dit Ordre à pleu a nostre createur mettre hors de ceste mortelle vie, nostre Souveraign Seigneur, avant que ordonnance de sustenance fust ordonné ad servir Jartier, pour la supplantation de son petit frere. Quells ch ses confideres, & veu l'entente de nostre dit Souveraign Seigneur en l'Ordre tant fructueux & glorieux en vertu & honneur, desirans pour honneur & Reverence de la dit Noble Ordre au dit Serviteur estre pourveu de raisonnable subsistance parente nous, pour meulx maintenir son petit Estate, parquoy Il en puisse plus honorablement soy contenir à l'honneur du service de la dit Noble Ordre, Jusques au temps que nostre dit Souveraign Seigneur le Roy Henry le vi. qui a present est Jeune, soit a parfait aage, & que par son noble aduz & Conseil à cels temps soit plus largement ordonne de presente d'ung commun assentement nous dessusdiz, present le dit Reverend Pere en Dieu & Prelat de la dit Ordre, l'Evesque de Wincestre, confyaus es honneurs & gentillesces des compaignons confreres absens, en dedens le Chapitre de ladite confraternite, luy avons assigné & ordonné a avoir & percevoir de chescun de nous annuellement, à chescune Feste de Saint George, certaine pension selon la fourme & maniere que cy apres s'ensuyt. Cest assavoir, du dit Reverend Pere en Dieu & Prelat de la dit Ordre. la somme de v. marcs par ann; & de chescun Duc Compaignon & Confrere vi. Nobles par ann; & de chescun Baron ou Banneret Compaignon & Confrere quatre Nobles; & de chescun Bachellier, Chivailler, Compaignon & Confrere deux Nobles par ann; Desquels Pensions es Sommes

APPENDIX.

Sommes deffusditz au commencement pour la premier annee à la faizans de cestes l'avons contente, & voulons, & luy accordons annuellement ens & par la fourme & maniere que dit est, jusques au temps que nostre dit Souverain Seigneur comme dit est, soit aparfait aage, pryant & requerant tous & chescun les Compaignons Confreres de la dit Noble Ordre, absens au fait de ceste ordonnance, que benigneement & pour honneur de la dit Ordre à cese vueillent consentir, & icelle ordonnance à louer, Et pour ceste presente annee, chescune selon est at luy destribuer selon la fourme deffusdit. Et pour aproovance que selon nostre intencion ces presentes procederont selon la voye de honneur & gentillesse les avons faites sceller du scel de la dit Noble Ordre. Donne au lieu de Wyndesore au Chapitre de la dit Confraternite, en la feste de Monsieur Saint George, Lan de Grace Mille CCC. XXII.

N. VI.

The Oath taken by the Prelate and Chancellor of the Order.

Juramentum Prælati & Cancellarii Ordinis, quod scriba eisdem exhibebit, in præsentia Supremi, aut ab eo Deputati.

Ex Libro Nigro, p. 313.

Jurabis, quod sicubi sufficienter fueris promotus, ipsimet Conciliis celebrandis intereris; quod nullo ducaris affectu, favore, vel odio, sed nec timore; quo minus in rebus omnibus quas tibi Supremus injunget, quod verò habet, sinceriter enarres.

Quod quoties presens aderis, nominationes Equitum creandorum veraciter accipies; & accepta, Supremo presentabis.

Jurabis itaq; quod cum ad consilium voceris, & à secretis ibi fueris, bene fidelis, ac taciturnus eris, nec ulla persues, si quid secretò tenendum audias.

Quodque servabis ac sustentabis honores hujus Ordinis, atq; omnium qui in eo sunt; & si datum fuerit ut possis, pro viribus augmentabis.

Si verò quid excogitatum aut intentatum contra fuerit, si quò resciscere poteris aut intelligere, pro viribus obtabis, & revelatum, ubi oporteat, è vestigio curabis, ut suppetie quantumcunq; servamur, &c.

Per simile Juramentum Decani, quando admittitur, & Scribæ erit, quorum id alter exhibebit alteri. Sui alter absuerit, Caduciaor Regius eo fungetur munere.

N. VII.

The Oath taken by Garter Principal King of Arms.

Juramentum Garteri præcipui Regis Armorum, scriba id coram Supremo Sociisq; præsentibus exhibente.

Ex lib. N. p. 314.

Jurabis quod obedies, Supremo imprimis Deinde ceteris hujus eminentissimi Ordinis Equitibus, & Officiis in eo gerentibus, in hiis præsertim rebus quæ ad te spectabunt, nec rationi pugnabunt.

Et quoniam ad Consilium admissus tanquam à Secretis eris Jurabis quod fidelis ac taciturnus eris, nihil illinc effutiers.

Jurabis itidem, quod si quis Equitum hujus illustissimi Ordinis ab hic luce subtrahatur fuerit, Supremo significatum id illico curabis, & max alius superest omnibus.

Quod omnia fidei tue curæ, credita, & quæcumq; mandata atq; internuncia bene ac fideliter exequeris & perimplebis.

Jurabis item, quod diligenter inquires de præclaris ac nobilibus Actis uniuscujusq; Equitis hujus illustissimi Ordinis, & intellecta si rita veraciter expones, ut ipse describens non minori diligentia reponat, dignaq; memorie commendet.

Deniq; Jurabis in summâ, quod officium tuum fideliter exercebis in omnibus, quæ tuâ intererunt, sicut & tu Dei ac Sancti hujus Evangelium sperabis auxilium.

N. VIII.

The Oath taken by the Gentleman-Usher, named the Black-Rod.

Ex MS. 4. penes Guil. le Neve. Eq. Aur. nuper Clarenc. R. Armor.

You being chosen and named by the King's Majesty to be Gentleman-Usher of the Black-Rod, shall promise and swear by the holy Evangelists, by you bodily touched, truly and faithfully to observe and keep all the points of the Statutes of the said Order, and every Article in them contained, as to you belongeth and appertaineth; as God help you and this holy Evangel.

N. IX.

A Warrant for providing and delivering the Liveries of the Prelate and Chancellor.

Ex ipso Autogr.

Charles R.

OUR Will and Pleasure is, that you provide and deliver to the right reverend Father in God, the Bishop of Winchester, Prelate of

APPENDIX.

of our Order of the Garter, and to Sir Richard Fanshawe Knight, our deputed Chancellor of our said Order, for their Livery for the same, and to each of them one Robe of Purple Velvet, containing 18 yards, and 10 yards of white Taffaty for lining thereof; as also two Scutcheons of St. George, within two Garters wrought with Letters and Purles of Damask, Gold, and Pearls, with Laces, Buttons, and Tassels of Purple Silk and Venice Gold, together with a Purse of blue Velvet richly embroidered, according to the usual form, with Strings and Tassels to the later, for carrying the Seals of our said Order. And for so doing these our Letters shall be your sufficient discharge. Given under the Signet of our said Order at our Court at Whitehall, the 19. day of February in the 13. year of our Reign 1660.

To our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin and Councillor Edward Earl of Sandwich, Master of our Great Wardrobe, or in his absence to his Deputy.

X.

A Warrant for providing and delivering the Liveries of the Register, Garter, and Black Rod.

Ex ipso Autogr.

Charles R.

OUR Will and Pleasure is, that you forthwith prepare and deliver to our trusty and well-beloved Doctor Bruyn Reeves, Dean of Windsor, and Register of our Noble Order of the Garter, To our trusty and well-beloved Sir Edward Walker Knight, Garter, Principal King of Arms, And to our trusty and well-beloved Servant John Eyton Esquire, Usher of the Black Rod, for their Liveries, and to every of them eighteen yards of Scarlet Satten for one Robe, and ten yards of white Taffats for lining of the same, with an Escutcheon of St. George, placed on the left shoulder, as also Laces, Buttons, and Tassels of Scarlet Silk, and Venice Gold: and for so doing, these shall be your sufficient Warrant and Discharge. Given under our Signet of our said Order, at our Court at Whitehall the 20. day of February in the 13. Year of our Reign, 1660.

To our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin and Councillor, Edward Earl of Sandwich Master of our Great Wardrobe, or in his absence to his Deputy.

XI.

Letters Patent for assigning 1200 l. per annum to the use of the Order.

Pat. 12. Car. 1. pars 25.

CAROLUS Dei gratiâ Angliæ, Scociæ, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ Rex, Fidei Defensor, &c. Omnibus ad quos presentes Literæ pervenerint, salutem. Cum juxta Prædecessorum & Progenitorum nostrorum Regalium morem, Clarissimi & Nobilissimi Ordinis Garterii Fundatores & ad honorem ejusdem Ordinis magis augendum & ampliandum, Annuitatem sive annualem pensionem Mille & ducentarum librarum per annum, ad usum & servicium dicti Ordinis, per manus Cancellarii nostri heredum & successorum nostrorum dicti Ordinis pro tempore existente recipiendam, & de tempore in tempus, ut inferius in hiis presentibus mentionatur expendendam, stabilire & assignare decrevimus. Scitis, quod nos de gratiâ nostrâ speciali, ac ex certâ scientiâ & mero motu nostris, volumus, ac per presentes, pro nobis, heredibus, & successoribus nostris declaramus, ordinamus, apponimus, & assignamus, quod prædicta Annuitas, annuális pensio, vel summa Mille & ducentarum librarum legalis monete Angliæ, modo & formâ inferius limitatis, dilecto & fideli nostro Thomæ Rowe Militi, modo Cancellario dicti Ordinis Garterii nostri, nec non Cancellario ejusdem Ordinis pro tempore existente annuatim soluta fuerit de Custumis & Subsidiiis aut monetis in loco Custumos, Subsidia & Impositiones recipi apponituro vel apponituro, de & pro omnibus & omnimodis vinis quibuscumque ad Portum Civitatis London de tempore in tempus adducendis, per manus Firmariorum sive Collectorum nostrorum, heredum & successorum nostrorum eorundem Custumorum, Subsidiorum, Monetarum, & Impositionum pro tempore existente ad festa Annunciacionis beate Mariæ Virginis, & Sancti Michaelis Archangeli, per equales portiones singulis annis imperpetuum solvenda: Primâ solutione inde incipiendâ, & fiendâ ad festa Annunciacionis beate Mariæ Virginis proximè sequentia post datum presentium. Quare volumus, ac pro nobis, heredibus & successoribus nostris, firmiter precipimus, & mandamus præfatis Firmariis, & Collectoribus nostris, heredum & successorum nostrorum pro tempore existentibus, prædictorum Custumorum, & Subsidiorum, aut Monetæ in loco Custumos, Subsidia, & Impositiones recipi apponituro vel apponituro, de aut pro omnibus & omnimodis prædictis vinis quibuscumque ad prædictum Portum Civitatis London, de tempore in tempus ut præfertur adducendis: Quod ipsi & eorum aliquis, vel aliqui de Redditiis, Reventionibus, Profectionis, & denariis summis de eisdem Custumis & Subsidiiis & cæteris præmissis infra Portum Civitatis London emergentibus & provenientibus ac in manibus suis de tempore in tempus remanere continuentibus, prædictam annuitatem, sive annualem pensionem,

APPENDIX.

penſionem, vel ſummam Mille & ducentarum librarum bonæ & legalis Monetæ Angliæ per annum præſato Thomæ Rowe Militi, Cancellario dicti Ordinis noſtri Garterii modo exiſtenti: nec non Cancellario ejuſdem Ordinis qui pro tempore fuerit pro & durante termino quo in eodem Officio Cancellarii dicti Ordinis premanſerit, in formâ prædictâ, ſolvent, aut ſolvi facient, ſecundum veram intentionem harum literarum noſtrarum patentium, abſq; ulteriori variano à nobis, heredibus, vel ſucceſſoribus noſtris, in ea parte procurando, aut obtinendo. Et hæc Literæ noſtræ Patentis, vel Irrotulamentum earundem, erunt annuatim, & de tempore in tempus, tam præſatis Firmariis & Collectoribus quam omnibus aliis Officiariis, & Miniſtris noſtris, heredum vel ſucceſſorum noſtrorum, quibus pertinebit, ſufficienti Warrantum & exoneratio in hac parte. Et ulterius volumus, ac per præſentes, pro nobis, heredibus & ſucceſſoribus noſtris, ſimiliter injungendo, præcipimus & mandamus tam Theſaurario, Cancellario, Sub-Theſaurario & Baronibus Scaccarii noſtri, heredum & ſucceſſorum noſtrorum quam omnibus aliis Officiariis & Miniſtris noſtris heredum & ſucceſſorum noſtrorum ejuſdem Scaccarii pro tempore exiſtente, Quod ipſi, & eorum quilibet, ſuper ſolam demonſtrationem harum literarum noſtrarum patentium, vel Irrotulamenti earundem, plenam, Integram, debitamq; allocationem, & exonerationem manifeſtam de omnibus & ſingulis denariis ſummis, quæ prædicti Firmarii vel Collectores noſtri heredum vel ſucceſſorum noſtrorum prædictorum Cuſtomorum & Subſidiorum ac cæterorum præmiſſorum, præſato Thomæ Rowe modo Cancellario dicti Ordinis Garterii, nec non Cancellario ejuſdem Ordinis qui pro tempore fuerit, ſecundum veram intentionem præſentium aliquo tempore impoſterum ſolvent, eiſdem Firmariis, & Collectoribus & eorum cuilibet reſpectivo, pro tempore exiſtente, ſuper Computa ſua in Scaccario noſtro, heredum vel ſucceſſorum noſtrorum vel alibi reddenda facient, & de tempore in tempus fieri cauſabunt: Et hæc literæ noſtræ patentis, vel Irrotulamentum earundem erunt, tam præſato Theſaurario, Cancellario, Sub-theſaurario & Baronibus Scaccarii noſtri prædicti, quam omnibus aliis Officiariis & Miniſtris noſtris, heredum & ſucceſſorum noſtrorum ejuſdem Scaccarii pro tempore exiſtente, ſufficienti Warrantum & exoneratio in hac parte. ac inſuper volumus, ac per præſentes, intentionem & beneplacitum noſtrum, pro nobis, heredibus, & ſucceſſoribus noſtris, declaramus: Quod præſatus Thomas Rowe, modo Cancellarius prædicti Ordinis Garterii noſtri, nec non Cancellarius dicti Ordinis qui impoſterum pro tempore fuerit, prædictam annuatim ſive annualem penſionem vel ſummam Mille & ducentarum librarum per annum impendet, & de tempore in tempus impendi faciet & cauſabit ad annuaia & Ordinaria feoda, penſiones & ſolutiones quibuſdam perſonis ſolubilia, & ſolvenda, juxta Conſtitutiones, per Supremum dicti Ordinis & Milites ejuſdem in eorum pleno Capitulo, ordinandas. Magnosq; Sigillo ejuſdem Ordinis firmandas. Ac in caſibus extraordinariis, per Warrantum

ſpeciale Supremi Ordinis, manu ſignandum, & Sigillo dicti Ordinis ſigillandum. Eademq; ſolutiones per prædictum Cancellarium Ordinis prædicti pro tempore exiſtente faciende ſine feodo aut vadiis in ea parte capiendis: Quodq; præſatus Thomas Rowe, modo Cancellarius dicti Ordinis, & Cancellarius ejuſdem Ordinis qui pro tempore fuerit, de prædictâ annuitate, annuali penſione, vel ſummâ Mille & ducentarum librarum de tempore in tempus ſic ut præſertur recipiendâ & expendendâ in feſto Sancti Georgii viceſimo tertio die Aprilis annuatim exiſtente, aut in die per prorogationem pro eodem feſto appropinquando verum ac debitum Computum per dictum Cancellarium ſubſcribendum annuatim faciet & reddet. Qui quidem Computus annuatim ſic reddendus infra quatuor dierum ſpaciū poſtea, per totum Capitulum aut per tres vel plures Milites dicti Ordinis examinatus fuerit, ac poſt huiusmodi examinationem & approbationem ejuſdem per ſubſcriptionem nominum eorum eideſdem Computo allocabitur, quorum prædictio Cancellario dicti Ordinis pro tempore exiſtente heredibus, Executoribus, & Adminiſtratoribus ſuis plenaria fuerit exoneratio in hac parte. Cum tamen acciderit quod præſati Firmarii prædictorum Cuſtomorum, Subſidiorum, ac cæterorum præmiſſorum, pro tempore exiſtente, ad occaſiones noſtras neceſſarias accommodandas, Redditus ſive firmarias ſuas pro præmiſſis, aut parte eorundem ſolubiles, pro quodam tempore adhuc venturo, præ manibus ſolverent: Ita quod prædicta annuaia penſio Mille & ducentarum librarum totaliter per ipſos ſecundum veram intentionem præſentium ſolvi non poterit: Tunc volumus ac per præſentes pro nobis, heredibus & ſucceſſoribus noſtris beneplacitum noſtrum declaramus per præſentes: Quod interim, ac in huiusmodi caſibus, Theſaurarius Angliæ ſummus noſtri, heredum vel ſucceſſorum noſtrorum, pro tempore exiſtente, dictam penſionem, de aliquibus aliis Cuſtomis, Subſidiis, & Impoſitionibus, nobis & heredibus & ſucceſſoribus noſtris, pro bonis & Merchandizis in Regnum Angliæ importandis, & de eodem exportandis ſolubilibus, præſato Cancellario dicti Ordinis pro tempore exiſtente, ſecundum tenorem & veram intentionem præſentium ſolvi ordinabit, faciet, & cauſabit. Et hæc Literæ noſtræ Patentis vel Irrotulamentum earundem præſato Theſaurario noſtro, heredum vel ſucceſſorum noſtrorum, pro tempore exiſtente, plena exoneratio & warrantum fuerit in ea parte: Eo quod, expreſſa mentio de vero valore anno, aut de certitudine præmiſſorum, vel eorum alicujus, aut de aliis donis, ſive Conceſſionibus per nos ſeu per aliquem Progenitorum ſive Predeceſſorum noſtrorum, præſato Thomæ Rowe, ante hæc tempora factis, in præſentibus minime facta exiſtit, aut aliquo Statuto, Alui, Ordinatione, Proviſione, Proclamatione ſive Reſtrictione in contrarium inde antehæc habito, factio, edita, ordinata ſive proviſa, aut aliqua alia re cauſâ, vel materiâ quâcumq; in aliquo non obſtante. In cujus rei teſtimonium, hæc Literæ noſtras fieri fecimus Patentis, Teſte meipſo apud Weſtmonaſterium viceſimo tertio die Januarii, Anno regni noſtri tertio decimo. XII.

APPENDIX.

N. XII.

A Commission for payment of Fees,
Pensions, Salaries, &c. relating to
the Order.

Sir Tho. Rowe's Journal, p. 40.

Charles by the Grace of God, King of Great Britain, France, and Ireland, Sovereign of the most Noble Order of the Garter. To our truly and well-beloved Servant Sir Thomas Rowe Knight, and Chancellor of our said most Noble Order. Whereas in augmentation of the honor of our Order, and for the expences thereunto belonging, we have of our own Royal bounty settled, given, and granted by our Letters Patents, bearing date at Westminster, on the 23. day of January, in the 13. year of our Reign, one yearly Pension and Revenue of 1200 l. unto and upon our Order, to be received and disbursed by you, our present Chancellour, and your Successors in the same Office, according to such rules and limitations, as in our said Letters Patents more at large do and may appear: We do by this our Commission signifye our Will and Pleasure; and declare, and give unto you our Chancellor full power and authority to pay, or cause to be paid out of the said Revenue of 1200 l. in your receipt, all and every the annual and ordinary Fees, Pensions, Salaries, and other Payments, usually paid to any of our Officers, Alms-Knights, or others, who do their yearly duty and service any way unto our said Noble Order appertaining, either by Charter, Grant, or Assignment under our Prizy Seal, or Signet, or by any other lawful way whatsoever, taking and receiving from them, and every one of them, an acquittance, and receipt under their hands for your discharge; which shall be good and available in Law, to be pleaded against us, our Heirs, and Successors for the same. And in particular, we do by this our Commission give you full power and order to pay, or cause to be paid unto your self, as our Chancellor for the time being, the sum of 100 l. yearly: and to the Register of our Order for the time being 50 l. yearly: and to Garter, our Principal King at Arms, for the time being 50 l. yearly; and to our Ulster called the Black Rod, for the time being 50 l. yearly: and to every one of our Poor or Alms-Knights, being 13. at our Castle of Windsor, for the time being, yearly 18 l. 5 s. in manner and form following. That is to say, every of the said Pensions quarterly upon the Feast of St. John Baptist, St. Michael the Archangel, the Nativity of our Lord, and the Annuntiation of our blessed Lady the Virgin Mary, by even and equal portions and payments. The first payment whereof to begin at and upon the Feast of St. John Baptist, next and immediately ensuing after the date hereof, in full discharge of any, and all the said Fees or Pensions to them formerly by us given or paid. As also to pay or cause to

be paid any other annual and usual charge, to any other inferior Officer or Servant, for their service or attendance. And this our Commission shall be to you a sufficient Warrant, to pay any, and all the said annual and ordinary Fees, Pensions, Payments, and other Charges, whether named, or not named, having been usually due, and paid, whatsoever, upon account thereof to be made and given, and Acquittances produced as aforesaid for the Receipts, to be presented and shewen to us, or to so many of the Knights of our most Noble Order, as we have or shall depute in Chapter to take, liquid and allow your said Disbursements according to the tenor hereof, under their hands in writing, and according to the directions, and limitations in our said Letters Patents, and order and provision therein made, and had for your discharge: which said allowances shall also be a sufficient discharge against us, our Heirs, and Successors, to be pleaded in any of our Courts of Record within our Highness Dominions. Given under the Seal of our said most Noble Order, the 3. of May at our Court at Whitehall, in the 14. Year of our Reign, 1635.

N. XIII.

A Letter of Summons for Electing a
Knight, upon the death of the Lord
Fitz-Hugh.

Registrum Chartarum, f. 12. b.

De par le Roy, Souverain de l'Ordre du
Fretier.

T Rescher & soiall &c. Pour ce que le Sire Fitz-Hugh Henry, n'agairs un de nos compaignons au Sire de Garter, la Nixion de l'Ordre d'icelle passe a Dieu commun, que Dieux assoile, nous vous certifions clerelement selonc la tenure de lez estatuz pour faire vostre devoir dex messiez par la mortte du quele en ycell est un place vacante, a le quel il coviente par lez ditz estatuz estier un autre compaignon en son lieu, deus sy semaines apres la certification de la mortte susdite que nous au presente ne purons bonement parformer, au cause resonable que nous destourba; Et pour taunte nous volons & vous chargeons que sur lez peines de les estatuz susditz sanz excusacion soies ou nous a Wyndesore en vostre propre persone la veille de Seinte George procheine venante, a le Chapitre a le oure de tierce, pur accomplere ceo q'appartindra a lez estatuz susditz en cez cassez, si non que vous nous signifiez le jour & lieu susdit clerelement de soubz vostre seal de vous armee cause jouste de vostre destowrdier digne destre allowe, &c. Don, &c.

Another

APPENDIX.

NUM. XIV.

*Another upon the death of Sir Robert
Dumphreville.
Ex eodem Registro.*

De par le Roy, Souverain de l'ordre de
Jarretier.

TReschier & bien ame. Pour ce que feu Sire
Robert Dumphreville, que Dieux ab-
saille, en son vivant un de nos compaignons de
l'ordre Jarretier a la de vie a trespas le darrain
jour de Januer darrain passé, & que selon lez
estatuz du dit Ordre sommes tenez en advertir
aux cheusun des Compaignons, vous certifions
son dit trespas, ad fin que facies vostre devoir des
messes, & prieres les quelles estes tenez faire,
dire, & celebrer, pour le salut de son ame. Par
le mort du quel est un place vacant, & convient
selon les ditz estatuz, aultre eslier en son lieu,
dedans syz sepmaines apres la certification du
dit trespas, si bonnement faire se peut, vel que
bonnement au present faire ne pourrons: Si vou-
lons & nous mandons sur lez peines contenues es
ditz estatuz, qe soies avec nous la vaigle Seint
George, à l'eure de tierce prochain, venant
pour faire & accomplir en ce que dit est come
per les ditz estatuz appertendra. Et si estre ny
poves, nous signifies souz vostre seell la cause de
vostre empeschement, par quoy vostre excusation
puissions congnaitre & Pavoir agreable, s'ainsi
est quelle soit digne desre accepté, & ny faites
faulx. Treschier & bien ame, &c.

NUM. XV.

*A Dispensation for Installation of the
Duke of York and Prince Rupert;
till Windsor Castle should return to
the Sovereign's possession.
Ex ipso Autogr. penes præf. Jac. Palmer.*

Charles R.

CHARLES by the grace of God King of
England, Scotland, Fancee, and Ireland,
Defender of the Faith, &c. and Sovereign of
the most Noble Order of the Garter. To all
and singular unto whom these our Letters Pa-
tent shall come greeting. Whereas by the Sta-
tutes of our said most Noble Order, all Knights
elected to be Companions of the same are (accord-
ing to usual form and Ceremony) to be installed
at the Stalls of the Order, in the Chappel of our
Royal Castle of Windsor, before they can be ad-
mitted to have their Stalls, Places, and Votes
amongst the rest of the Companions there. And
whereas our dearly beloved Son James Duke of
York, and our intirely beloved Nephew, Prince
Rupert, Count Palatine of the Rheyne, Duke of
Bavaria and Cumberland, and Earl of Holder-
ness, were in a Chapter held at York, the

twentieth day of April in the eighteenth year
of our Reign, elected and chosen Companions of
our said most Noble Order; but, by reason of the
succeeding distractions and Rebellions in this our
Kingdom, their Installations at our said Castle
of Windsor, could not according to the Statutes
aforesaid be celebrated and performed, by rea-
son the same hath been ever sithence, and still is
in the possession of the Rebels. Know ye, that
we as Sovereign of the said most Noble Order
(unto whom the power of dispensing with any of
the said Statutes is reserved) have thought fit
to dispence (in regard the not performance of the
Statutes hath not been by the default of those
elected Knights) and by these presents do accord-
ingly dispence with the Installations of our afore-
said Son and Nephew, both for time and place,
when and where those Installations are and ought
to be made, willing and ordaining that they
and either of them, shall by virtue of this our
Dispensation, at all times hereafter, be held,
reputed, and taken to be Companions of our said
most Noble Order; And shall have, possess, and
enjoy all manner of Titles, places, prebeminen-
cies, Votes, Ornaments, and Priviledges of the
same, as if they or either of them had been form-
ally and actually installed at our said Castle
of Windsor; any Law, Statute, or Ordinance
made to the contrary in any wise notwith-
standing. Provided always, and we do hereby
declare, that our said most dear Son, and our en-
tirely beloved Nephew, shall (notwithstanding
these our Letters of Dispensation) first take the
Oath usually taken by the Knights at their In-
allation, and hereafter act and perform all
such Rights and Ceremonies as are accustomed at
the Installations of the Companions of our said
most Noble Order of the Garter, when it shall be
thought fit, and possible for them to perform the
same at our Castle of Windsor aforesaid. And
that this our Dispensation made upon such most
weighty and urgent necessities shall not be drawn
into consequence or example in time to come. Given
under the Great Seal of our Order, and our hand
first subscribed thereunto, at our Palace at Ox-
ford, this seventeenth of January, in the twen-
tieth year of our Reign, 1644.

NUM. XVI.

*A Dispensation for want of a full num-
ber of Knights to constitute a Chap-
ter of Election; And their entring
the Chapter without Mantles.
Palmer's large Journal.*

Charles R.

CHARLES by the Grace of God, &c. So-
veraign of the most Noble Order of the
Garter. To all the Knights and Companions
of our most Noble Order, Greeting: Whereas
we have determined upon the death of divers of
our Knights, and vacancy of their Stalls, to
hold a Chapter of Election here in our City of
York,

APPENDIX.

York, and because there are not now attending on our person a sufficient number of 6 Knights, and being now in our Army they have not their Mantles ready (in which case by the ancient Statutes of our Order there could be no Election, nor any Knight ought to enter into the Chapter so without our Royal Dispensation) We of our Supreme power and authority, as Sovereign of our Order, do by these our Letters dispence with both the said Statutes of want of Number, and entring the Chapter without Mantles; and do hereby give leave to all our Knights attending our presence, to hold a Chapter of Election, by giving their Votes according to Custom in other Scrutines. Given under the Great Seal of our Order the 12. of September in the sixteenth year of our Reign 1640.

NUM. XVII.

A Dispensation for the not appearing of the Knights with their Robes at the three Chapters held before the 15. of April 1661. and want of a competent and usual Number of Knights.

Ex Collect. E. W. G.

Charles R.

WHereas by the ancient and evermore observed Statutes of the most Noble Order of the Garter, it is expressly provided, that not less than the Number of six Knights or Companions of the same, besides the Sovereign or his Lieutenant, should make up a compleat Chapter, and that none of the said Knights and Companions should enter into the said Chapter without having on their long Mantles, or upper Robes of the Order; We having designed the 15. 16. and 17. days of April next for the Instalment of divers Eleit Knights in the place of the deceased, and for the celebration of the Feast of St. George, at our Castle of Windsor, upon which occasion, and for the resolving upon sundry preparatories to the same, being to deliberate with the ancient Knights of the Order, who are neither in number sufficient to make up a Chapter, or all of them provided with Robes by reason of the late troubles; to supply both defects both in the present and other subsequent Chapters, which we may have occasion to assemble before the said Instalment and Festival: We as Sovereign of the said Order, have and do dispence with the Statutes of it, as to those particulars, and are graciously pleased, that, those two defects notwithstanding, the aforesaid present and ensuing Chapters shall be as legal, and of as much force and validity as if the number of the Companions required by the Statutes were full and compleat, and the Companions that do or are to compose them, had their Mantles or upper Robes on them. Given under our Signet of the Order, at Whitehall the 29. day of March 1661.

NUM. XVIII.

A Letter signifying Election, and a Summons to receive Investiture with the Garter and George.

MS. penes W. le N. Cl.

Right trusty and well beloved, we greet you well: Ascertaining you, that in consideration as well of your approved truth, and fidelity, as also of your courageous and valiant acts of Knighthood, with other your probable merits experientially known in sundry parties and behalf: We with the Companions of the Noble Order of the Garter, assembled at Election holden this day, within this our Mannor of Greenwich, have elected and chosen you amongst others to be one of the Companions of the said Order, as your said merits condignly require. And therefore we will that with convenient diligence upon the sight thereof, ye address you unto our presence, to receive such things as to the said Order appertaineth. Given under our Signet at the Mannor of Greenwich the 24. day of April.

NUM. XIX.

A Letter signifying Election, sent with the Garter and George.

MS. 4. penes Arthur. Com. Anglesey, p. 131. b.

Right trusty and well-beloved, we greet you well, giving you to understand, that in consideration as well of your approved fidelity, in the service of Us and our Realm at all times shewed, and for the increase of Honor and Virtue in you, We with the Companions of our Noble Order of the Garter assembled at the Election holden the 24. day of April last past, within our Palace at Westminster, have elected and chosen you among others to be one of the Companions of our said Order, as your merits condignly do require; Wherefore we have sent unto you by our trusty and well-beloved Servant Sir Gilbert Dethick, Knight, Garter, King of Arms, Our said Order of the Garter, the same to use as to this Election of you appertaineth: wishing that God may increase you in virtue and honour, as amply as any other that hath been elected and placed in the same. Given under the Signet of our said Order at our Honor at Greenwich, the 5. of May in the 26. year of our Reign.

To our right Trusty and Well-beloved, the Lord Cobham, Lord Warden of the Cinque-Ports, Knight and Companion of our most Noble Order of the Garter.

APPENDIX.

NUM. XX.

A Letter signifying Election, when the present Sovereign was beyond the Seas.

Ex Collect. E. W. G.

Charles R.

CHARLES the Second by the grace of God King of England, Scotland, France, and Ireland, Defender of the Faith, &c. and Sovereign of the most Noble Order of the Garter. To our right trusty and entirely beloved Cousin and Councillor James Marquess of Ormond, our Lieutenant in the Kingdom of Ireland Greeting. Whereas our Royal Progenitors, the Kings of England, have in all times since the institution of the most Noble Order of St. George, called the Garter, by our most noble and victorious Ancestor King Edward the Third, elected and chosen into the Fellowship thereof such Princes and other eminent persons, as well Strangers, as of their own Subjects, as have for nobility and greatness of their births, accompanied with heroic virtues, especially in martial actions, been thought worthy of the same. We therefore considering that since the late horrid Rebellion in that our Kingdom, many of the Companions thereof are dead, and that some others, contrary to their honor and Oaths, have deserted their allegiance, and are no more worthy to be esteemed Companions of so noble an Order, and finding how necessary it is for our Service, and the honor of the said Order, to elect others in their places vacant, who for their birth, courage, and fidelity, may be fit to be admitted thereto. Know you therefore that we duly weighing the eminence of your birth and Family, and above all the great and most extraordinary services done by you for many years past, and still continued in the condition of our Lieutenant in that our Kingdom, together with your singular courage and fidelity, have thought it fit by our power, as Sovereign of the said Order (dispensing with the usual Ceremonies) to elect and chuse you our said right trusty and entirely beloved Cousin James Marquess of Ormond, to be Fellow and Companion of the said most Noble Order of the Garter, and do herewith send unto you the George and Ribband, part of the Ensigns thereof, by our trusty and well-beloved Servant Henry Seymour Esq; one of our Bed-Chamber (in regard Sir Edward Walker Knight Garter, Principal King of Arms, the proper Officer, is at present employed in our Service) the which we do hereby will and authorize you to wear. And because it is not possible at present to have all other Ceremonies and Additions incident to the same fully perfected, We do further will and authorize you to wear and use the Garter or Ribband on your left Leg, the Glory or Star of Silver with St. George's Cross embroidered within a Garter, upon your Cloak and upper Garments, as likewise

the Great Collar of the Order upon such days as are accustomed to use the Garter about your arms, and to style your self Knight and Companion of the said most Noble Order of the Garter, in as ample manner as if you had been installed in our Castle of Windsor; where (when it shall please God to restore us to the possession thereof) you shall formally be invested, & receive the habit and all other the above recited Ornaments of the said most Noble Order. And We no way doubt, but as you have hitherto with singular courage, fidelity, and ability, served us, so you will still continue to do the same, as becomes a Knight and Companion of so Noble an Order. Given at the Castle of St. Germans en laye, this eighteenth day of September, in the first Year of our Reign.

NUM. XXI.

A Letter signifying Election, sent to Sir John Falstolf.

Registrum Chart. fol. 14.

De par le Roy Souverain de l'Ordre de la Jartier.

Notre ame & seel, nous vous saluons. Et came apres le trespassement de nostre trefchier & seel Cousin le Conte de Westmerlande, dont dieux ait l'ame, que estoit un de nos Compaignons de l'Ordre de la Jartier, Nous enstions ordonné que nouvelle election fust fait par avoir un autre Compaignon en son lieu, come la maniere si est, & que le contenu des estatuz du dit Ordre le porte, vous signifiens que a la darraint feste de Saint George, en nostre Chapitre du dit Ordre, tenuz a Wyndesore le xxii. jour d'Avryll, darraint passé, veille de la dite feste, nostre Compaignie du dit Ordre esteantz adonques au dit Chapitre: Considerant tant les bons, leaux, & honorables services que avez de piecé faiz en service de nostre tres redouté Seigneur & Pier, que dieux assaille, & que fairesz continuellement ennire, come plusieurs autres desertes d'amour, que dieux a souffert estre en vous, en tollerant tousjours, comme bon & seel subiet, lez paines & travaux de guerre pour nostre bon droit, & juste querelle sustener, vous a esleu un de nos Compaignons du dit Ordre en lieu de nostre dit Cousin, esperant, que dieux vous donne tousjours grace & valeur de faire toudis de bien en maulx, vostre devoir, pourquoy a la delivrance de ceffez nautz avons chargie par nos lettres nos trefchiers & seaulx Cousins lez Countez de Salisbirs, de Warwyke, & de Soulfolk, qui sont nos Compaignons du dit Ordre, ou l'un d'eulx de qui vous serrez plus pres, quil vous monstront, & delivrent lez estatuz du dit Ordre, Et yentz par vous receuz prengnent vostre serement en tel cas acoustume a faire, que bien & lealment tendres & ferez, si avant que Dieux vous donnera puissance, tout le contenu es dix estatuz, en vous baillant l'ordre de la Jartier. La quelle chose faire, volonz que vous ordonnez en tout haulte raisonnablement possible vostre Heaulme & Espee, & un honorable Chivalier sanz reproche en lieu de

APPENDIX.

de vous, pour prendre vostre esalle come voz veirez que les dizs estatuz du dit Ordre le requierent. Et en cas que le dit Ordre ne voudrez accepter pour aucun cause a vous semblant raisonnable, le nous certifiez dedeinz deux mois apres la doubte de cestez, & en ceo n'ais point de faute. Donne a Leicestre, soubz le Seall du dit Ordre le viii. jour de May.

NUM. XXII.

A Commission to take Sir John Falstolf's Oath, at his Investiture with the Garter. Ibidem.

De par le Roy Souveraine de l'Ordre de la Jarrier.

Treschiers & feaulx Cosins, Nous vous saluons fovent, & pour ce que a la feste de Sainte George darraïne, tenus en nostre Chastell de Wyndesore, nostre Compaignie de l'Ordre de la Jarrier faisant alorsque Chapitre la veille de la dit feste, a esleu nostre chier & feall John Falstolf Chevalier un de nous Compaignons du dit Ordre, en lieu de nostre treschier Cosin le Counte de Westmerland, dont dieux ait l'ame, nous vous envoions lez estatuz de cellui Ordre enfeallez du selle du dit Ordre, pour lez presenter, & bailler au dit Monsieur John Falstolf. Si voulons & vous mandons, que vous, ou l'un de vous, a qui primerement cez presentez seront monstrez, ou exhibez, presentiez, & bailles audit John Falstolf lez dizs estatuz pour lez voier, & visiter, & savoir que sont tenus de faire ceux qui sont de dit Ordre. Et en cas q'il accepta le dit Ordre Resseivez son serement entel cas accoustumé a faire en luy baillant l'Ordre du Jarrier, en le manere accoustumé. Treschiers & feaulx Cosins, dieux soit garde de vous. Donne a Leicestre soubz le Seel du dit Ordre, le viii. jour de May.

A nos treschiers & feaulx Cosins, lez Countez de Warwyk, de Sarisbury, & de Sulfolk, nous Compaignons de la Jarrier, & a un chescun d'eulx.

NUM. XXIII.

A Warrant for allowance of Garter's Charges, when sent to signifie an Election.

MS. 4. penes W. le N. Cl. fol. 59.

These shall be to require you, of such her Majesties Treasure as remaineth in your hands, to pay or cause to be paid, to Sir Gilbert Dethick Knight, King of Arms, being sent by her Majesties Commandment, to our very good Lords the Earl of Rutland in the County of Lincoln, and to the Lord Scroop in the County of Cumberland, to signifie unto them the

Election made of them into the Order of Knights of the Garter, for his pains and charges in that voyage expended, the sum of Twenty pounds; and this shall be your sufficient warrant and discharge in that behalf. At the Court at Richmond the 10. of June 1584.

T. Bromley. W. Burghley. Ed. Clynton.
Ch. Howard. James Crofts.
Chr. Hatton. Fran. Walsingham.

To our very loving Friend, Sir Thomas Heneage Knight, Treasurer of of her Majesties Chamber.

NUM. XXIV.

A Commission to the Sovereigns Lieutenant, to Install an Elect-Knight. Registr. Chartac. fol. 64.

Henry R.

Henry the Eighth, by the Grace of God King of England, and of France, Defender of the Faith, and Lord of Irland, Souverain of the most Noble Order of the Garter; To our right trusty and right entirely well-beloved Cousin, the Duke of Northfolk, our Lieutenant at our Fet of the glorious Martir Saint George, Patron of the said Noble Ordre, our right trusty and right well-beloved Cosins the Marquis Dorset, the Marquis of Exeter, Th^e Erle of Northumberland, and our trusty and well-beloved the Vicounte Lille, th^e Vicount Fitz-water, and the Vicount Rochford, the Lord Ferrers, Lord Bergaveny, and the Lord Dakers, Companions of the said Noble Order, Greeting. For as moche as we with you, and other Companions have elected our right trusty, and right entirely beloved Son Henry, Duke of Richmonnt and of Somerset, and Erle of Nottingham, our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin, th^e Erle of Arundel, th^e Erle of Westmerland, and th^e Erle of Rutland, Companions of the said Noble Ordre: We therefore will and autorise you, by these presents, that ye the said Duke of Northfolk, with the assistance of such other as our said Noble Ordre be aforementioned, shall not only accept, and admit the said Duke and Erles into the said Ordre, and receive their Othes, and install them, but also further do therein, as to the laudable Statutes and Ordinances of the said Ordre apperteigneth. And these our Letters shall be your sufficient Warrant, and discharge in this behalf, at all times hereafter. Given under the Seal of our said Garter, at our Palais of Brydewell, the xviii. day of June in the xvii. year of our Reign.

NUM.

APPENDIX.

NUM. XXV.

Another.

Ex Collect. Johannis Vincent, Gen.

Elizabeth R.

ELIZABETH by the Grace of God Queen of England, Fraunce, and Ireland, Defender of the Faith, and Sovereign of the most Noble Order of the Garter, To our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin and Counsellor the Erle of Penbroke, one of the Companions and Knights of the said Order, by us assigned and deputed to be our Lieutenant at the Feast of the glorious Martyr St. George, Patron of the said Order, to be kept within our said Castell of Windesore, the 4. of June next ensuing, and others the Companions of the said Order that then shall be present, Greeting: Whereas we with others the Companions of the said Noble Order assembled, at a Chapitre holden at our Palace of Westminster the xxiv. day of April last, have elected and chosen, among others, our right trusty and right entirely beloved Cousin the Duke of Norfolk, our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousen and Councellor, the Marquess of Northampton, our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousen the Erle of Rutland, and our trusty and right well-beloved the Lord Robert Dudley, Master of our Horse, to be Knights and Companions of the said Order: We will, and by these presents authorize you, not only to accepte and admit them into the said Order, and receive their Oaths, and install them accordingly, but also further to do therein as to the Statutes and laudable Customs and usage of the said Noble Order appertaineth. And these our Letters shall be your sufficient warrant and discharge in this behalf. Given under the Seal of our said Garter, the first of June, in the first year of our Reign.

NUM. XXVI.

A Commission to other Knights-Companions, for the Installation of an Elect-Knight.

Regist. Chartac. fol. 61. b.

Henry R.

HENRY the Eighth, by the Grace of God, King of England and of France, Defender of the Faith, and Lord of Island, Sovereign of our Noble Ordre of the Garter. To our right trusty, and right entirely beloved Cousin, the Marquess Dorset; And also to our right trusty, and right well-beloved Cousins, the Erle of Devon, and the Erle of Kent, Companions of our said Noble Ordre, Greeting. Forasmuche as we with you, and other Knights and Companions of our said Noble Ordre assembled at the

Chapitre holden at our Manoir of Grenewich, the xliii. day of July last passed, have elected, and chosen Walter Devereux, Lord Ferrers, to be Knight and Companion of the said Ordre: We therefore will, and, by vertue of these presents, authorize you not only to accepte and admit the said Walter Devereux, Lord Ferrers, into the said Ordre, and receive his Orbe, and install him, but also further to do therein as to the Statutes and laudable usages of the said Noble Order it appertaineth: And these our Letters shall be your sufficient warrant and discharge in this behalf. Given under our Seale of our said Garter, at our Castell of Windesore, the xxi. day of August, the xv. year of our Reign.

NUM. XXVII.

Another.

Ex Collect. J. V.

Elizabeth R.

ELIZABETH by the Grace of God Queen of England, France, and Ireland, and Sovereign of the most Noble Order of the Garter. To our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousen and Counsellor, Francis Earl of Bedford, and to our right trusty and right well-beloved Anthony Viscount Mountague, Companions of our Noble Order of the Garter: Forasmuch as we for divers reasonable causes cannot be present at our Castell of Windesore on the 19. of June next ensuing, where we have determined to have installed our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousens William Earl of Worcester, and Henry Earl of Huntingdon, as Knights of our said Order of the Garter: We therefore, by these presents, name, constitute, appoint, and ordain you to be our Deputies, giving you full power and authority, to admit and install our said Cousens of Worcester and Huntingdon, and to do and accomplish every thing which thereunto belongeth, and hath been accustomed, for the due admittance and installing of the said Earls of Worcester and Huntingdon; willing and commanding, by the tenor hereof, all and every the Companions and Officers of the said Order, to be to you in the executing of this our authority obeying and attending, as shall appertain. Given under the Seal of our said Order, at our honor of Hampton-Court the 12. of June 1570: in the 12. year of our Reign.

NUM. XXVIII.

Another.

Ex ipso Autogr. Ærar. Coll. Wind.

Charles R.

CHARLES by the Grace of God King of Great Britain, France, and Ireland, Defender of the Faith, and Sovereign of the most Noble Order of the Garter. To our right trusty

APPENDIX.

Right well-beloved Cousin and Counsellors, William Earl of Salisbury, and Henry Earl of Holland, Knights and Companions of our said Order, Greeting. Whereas we with you and others the Knights and Companions of our said Order assembled, in a Chapter holden at our Palace of Westminster, the 24. day of April (being the morrow after the day of St. George last past) did elect and chuse our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin Algernon Earle of Northumberland, to be a Knight and Companion of our said Order: And whereas we have appointed the 13. day of this present Month of May for the time of his Installation at Windsor; We do therefore let you know, that we have named and assigned you the said Earls of Salisbury and Holland, and by these presents do name, assign, and appoint you two to be Commissioners for the Installation of our said Cousin the Earl of Northumberland as aforesaid, And accordingly we do hereby give unto you full power and authority, not only to accept and admit him into our said Order, and to take his Oath, but also to do and accomplish whatsoever else is needful to be done for his full Installation, according to the Statutes, Rules, and Customs of our said Order. For which purpose it is our pleasure, that you make your repair to our Castle of Windsor, so as you may be there on Wednesday at night, being the 13. of this present May, to the end that you may then proceed to the said Installation, according to this our Commission. Given under the Seal of our said Order at our Palace of Westminster, the 11. day of May 1635. and in the 11. year of our Reign.

NUM. XXIX.

Another.

Ex Colled. W. le N. Cl.

Philip and Mary, &c. To our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin the Earl of Huntingdon, and to our right trusty and well-beloved the Lord Clynton, Companions and Knights of the Noble Order of the Garter, Greeting. Forasmuch as we with other Companions of the said Noble Order assembled, at a Chapter holden at our Honour of Hampton Court, the 24. of April last past, have elected and chosen our right trusty and right well-beloved the Viscount Mountague, to be Knight and Companion of the said Noble Order; We therefore will, and by these presents, authorise and license you, not only to accept and admit the said Viscount Mountague into the said Order, and to receive his Oath and install him accordingly, but also further to do therein, as to the Statutes and laudable Customs of the said Noble Order appertaineth: And these our Letters shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge in this behalf. Given under the Seal of our said Order, the 12. of October, the 2. and 3. year of our Reign.

NUM. XXX.

A Letter of Summons to the Commissioners appointed for Installation.

Ex Colled. J. V.

By the Queen.

Right trusty and well-beloved, we greet you well, and whereas we have appointed you, together with our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin and Counsellor the Earl of Lincoln, to be in Commission for the Installation, in our Castle of Windsor, of our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousins Henry Earl of Derby, and Henry Earl of Pembroke, being lately chosen Knights of our Order of the Garter: We have thought it good not only to give you knowledge hereof by these our Letters, but also to require you to make your repair to our said Castle of Windsor, so as you may be there on Wednesday the 19. day of this Month, to the end that upon Thursday the 20. day of this present Month of May, they may proceed to their Installations accordingly. Given under our Signet at our Palais of Westminster, the 17. day of May in the 16. year of our Reign.

To our right trusty and well-beloved, the Viscount Mountague, one of the Companions of our Order.

[The like Letter (*mutatis mutandis*) was, under the same date, directed to the Earl of Lincoln, joined in Commission with him.]

NUM. XXXI.

A Letter of Summons to an Elect-Knight for his repair to Windsor to be Installed.

Ex ipso Autogr.

Charles R.

Right trusty and well-beloved Cousin, We greet you well. Whereas in consideration of your approved fidelity, and extraordinary services performed by you for us, We lately elected and chose you to be one of the Companions of our most Noble Order of the Garter, and in token thereof did send unto you the George and Ribband, part of the Ensigns of our said Order, and having at a Chapter held at Whitehall the 14. day of January last past, appointed to celebrate the Feast of St. George at our Castle of Windsor, upon the 15. 16. and 17. days of April next ensuing: We do hereby require you to make your repair to our Castle of Windsor, so as you be there on Monday the 15. of April next, by Noon, that in the Afternoon of the said day you may proceed to your Installation,

APPENDIX.

lation, according to the Statutes of the said Order. Given under our Signet of our Order at Whitehall, the 19. of February 1660. and in the thirteenth year of our Reign.

To our right trusty and entirely beloved Cousin and Councillor the Marquess of Ormond, Steward of our Household.

NUM. XXXII.

A Warrant for the Livery of the Order.

Ex Lib. N. p. 317. sub finem.

Henry R.

HENRICUS Dei gratia Rex Angliæ, ac Franciæ, Dominus Hiberniæ, Defensor Fidei, & Supremus Ordinis Dni Georgii, fidei & benedictio nobis à Conciliis Domino N. magni vestuarii nostri Custodi, salutem. Ubi nos cum aliis ejusdem Ordinis elegimus, benefidelem, ac predilectum Consiliarium nostrum N. in Societatem hanc nostram præclarissimam: Nos ideo volumus & præcipimus, ut huic Tabellioni virgæ octodecim subrubri ostii de more tradas, cum tanto albo serico, quanto vestimentum inde conficiendum infulciri poterit, pro liveratâ (quam vocant) sua, quando in sedem suam introducendus Windesorum adveniet, mense ac die constitutis, quemadmodum & Equites antè solebant habere. Et he nostre Literæ tibi tutelares erunt semper impofterum N. sub Sigillo nostra, mense ac die, &c.

NUM. XXXIII.

Another.

Ex MS. in Bibl. Cotton. [sub effigie Julii F. II.]

By the King.

WE will and command you to deliver, or cause to be delivered to our trusty and well-beloved Councillor Sir John Wallop Knight, which is now elect one of the Companions of the Noble Order of the Garter, for the Livery of the same Order 18 yards of Crimson Velvet, for one Gown, Hood, and Tipper, and 10 yards of white Sarcenet for lining the same: And these our Letters shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge in this behalf. Given, &c.

To our trusty and well-beloved Sir Ralph Sadler Knight, Master of our great Wardrobe.

NUM. XXXIV.

A Warrant for providing and delivering of Mantles.

Ex ipso Autographo.

Charles R.

WHEREAS we have appointed the 15. 16. and 17. days of April next ensuing hereof, for the solemnization of the noble Feast of St. George, and Instalment of Knights-Companions already elected at our Castle of Windesor, Our will and pleasure is, that you provide to be delivered for that Solemnity xvii upper Robes, and xvii under Robes of special good Velvet, That is to say, every upper Robe to contain the number of xviii yards of blew Velvet, and every under Robe the number of x yards of Crimson Velvet, and special good white Taffety, to the value of CCLXXXII yards for lining of the same, allowing to every upper and under Robe xvi yards; as also xvii Garters of Velvet, wrought with Letters and Purles of Venice Gold and Pearls, to place on the left shoulder of every one of the said upper Robes, with xvii paire of large string Buttons, and Tassels of blew Silk and Venice Gold: And for so doing this shall be your Warrant, requiring you further to certifie us at soon as you may what number of the premises we may depend upon to be ready by the time prefixt. Given, &c.

To our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin and Councillor Edward Earl of Sandwich, Master of our Great Wardrobe, or in his absence to his Deputy.

NUM. XXXV.

A Warrant for providing and delivering of Collars.

Ex ipso Autographo.

Charles R.

WHEREAS we have appointed the 15. 16. and 17. days of April next ensuing the date hereof, for the solemnization of the Noble Feast of St. George, and Instalment of Knights, at our Castle of Windesor, Our will and pleasure is, that you provide to be delivered for that Solemnity, as we shall hereafter direct, Collars of Gold to the number of xvii. every of them containing xxvi Garters with white and red Roses enamelled in the midst of every one of them, and xxvi Knots, each Collar weighing xxx Ounces Troy weight, as also for each a rich George on horseback, with a Dragon to be fastned and pendent thereto, and the same number of Garters of the Order to a proportionable value: And for so doing this shall be your sufficient

APPENDIX.

cient Warrant, requiring you further to certify us, as soon as you may, what number of the premisses we may depend upon to be ready by the time prefixed. Given under our Signet of the Order at our Court at Whitehall the 19. of February in the 13. year of our Reign.

To our trusty and well-beloved
Sir Gilbert Talbot Knight, Master
of the Order.

NUM. XXXVI.

The ancient Forms of Admonition used at the Investiture of Knights Subjects, with the Garter, Surcoat, Mantle, and Collar.

MS. penes G. O. R. p. 44.

LA Sovereigne & L'amyable Compaignie dez Chevaliers de L'ordre de la Jarretiere, vous ont receu & eueys pour leur Amy, frere, & Compaignon. Et en signe & cognoissance de ce vous presentent & donnent ceste Jarretiere, la quelle Dieu le veulle que vous recevez & portez d'oresenavant, a louange & plaisir, & a l'exaltation & honneur du dit Noble Ordre & de vous.

Prenez cest habillement a l'acroissement de vostre honneur & Ensigne que vous avez receu. Et par cez considerer que non seulement de vous valliantement & hardiment Combattre, mais aussi pour despendre votre sang a la defense de la foy Chrestienne, la Liberte de la Sainte Eglise, de Justice, & de ceulx qui sont oppressez & en necessite.

Prenez ce Mantau de ceste tres-noble Ordre, lequel est garni d'un Escu, avec une Croix, par lequel vous pouvez passer parmy voz Ennemis & les Confondre. Si que apres avoir valiantement guerroye en ce monde, au regard de voz dignes & Nobles aïeulx, vous pouvez parvenir a les Eternelles & Triumphantz joyes Caelestes.

Vous Porterez ce Collier avec L'image de St. George, a l'acroissement de vostre honneur, & de ce tres-noble Ordre, Ensigne de passer toutes choses prosperes ou adverses, si que les ayant valiantement vaincuz, vous pouvez en ceste vie obtenir l'honneur & renom de Noble & preux Chevalier. Et apres recevoir l'eternel gauden de la vie.

NUM. XXXVII.

The forms of Admonition used at the Investiture of Strangers.

Lib. N. p. 310.

AD laudem atq; honorem Omnipotentis Dei, intemerate Matris ejus, & Sancti Georgii Martyris, cinge tibiam tuam hoc insigni Subligaculo, id circumferens in augmentum honoris

tui, & in signum & memoriam illustissimi Ordinis, usquam oblivioni daturus, aut omisurus quod eo moneris; ut valeas, inquam, & velis in justo bello, quod solum inibi, stare firmiter, agere fortiter, & feliciter omnia vincere.

Capito vestem hanc purpuream, ad incrementum honoris, & in signaculum Ordinis accepti: quâ munitus non vereberis pro fide Christi, libertate Ecclesiæ, pro jure, & oppressorum atq; indigentium necessariâ tuitione, sanguinem etiam fundere, nedum fortiter ac strenuè dimicare.

Accipe Clamidem hanc calici coloris, in signum Clarissimi hujus Ordinis, & in augmentum etiam honoris tui, rubeo clypeo Dominicæ Crucis, ut cernis, insignitam: ut ejus virtute semper ac vigore proteclius per hostes tutus abeas, eos ubiq; superare valeas, & pro clarissimis deniq; meritis, post egregiam hanc hujus temporis miliciam, ad æterna verèq; triumphalia gaudia pervenias.

Torquem hunc in Collo deseres, ad augmentum honoris, & in signum quoq; Clarissimi Ordinis a te suscepti, cum imagine sanctissimi Martyris, & Christi Militis, Georgii: Cujus presidio suffultus Mundi hujus tam prospera quàm adversa sic pertranscas, ut anime pariter ac corporis hostibus hoc strenuè devictis, non temporariæ modo militiæ gloriam, sed & perennis victoriæ palmam denique recipere valeas. Amen.

NUM. XXXVIII.

The Oath taken by a Knight at his Installation, in the Reign of King Edward the Fourth.

Lib. N. pag. 312.

EGO N. nominatus atq; Electus unus egregiorum Equitum illustissimi Ordinis hujus Militari, promitto, & per Sacrosancti Evangelia Dei, que tango hic manifestè, juro, quòd omnia Ordinis istius Statuta & Articuli in hiis contentos, quantum ad me spectabunt, inviolabiliter observabo. Nec non Collegii Sanctissime Virginis, & Divi Martyris Georgii, in quo prenobilis Ordo fundatus est, pro virili libertates & jura propugnabo.

The same Oath we find put into English, and entred at the end of the Regiss. Chartaceum, under the 2. year of Hen. 8.

INchofen and named to be one of the honourable Company of the Order of the Garter, promise and swear by the holy Evangelists by me bodily touched, truly and faithfully to observe and keep all the points of the Statutes of the said Order, and every Article in them contained, as far as to me belongeth and appertaineth. And all the liberties and Franchises belonging of right to this Colledge of our Lady and S. George I shall defend to my power, as God help me and these holy Evangelists.

XXXIX. The

APPENDIX.

NUM. XXXIX.

The same *Oath*, as it was pronounced by the the Register.

YOU being chosen to be one of the Companions of the most honourable Order of the Garter, shall promise, and, by these holy Evangelists by you manifestly touched, swear, truly and faithfully to observe and keep all the Statutes of the said Order, and every Article in the same contained, for so much as to you belongeth and appertaineth: And further that you shall help to defend and maintain, so much as in you lieth, the rights and liberties of the Colledge of our blessed Lady and St. George the Martyr, wherein the honourable Order of the Garter is founded.

NUM. XL.

The *Oath* formerly taken by the Prince of Wales.

Ex Lib. Nig. pag. 312.

EGO, N. Princeps Guallie, Dux Cornubiæ, & Comes Cestrise, primogenitus Excellentissimi atq; invictissimi Dei gratiæ Regis Angliæ & Franciæ, Domini Hiberniæ, & hujus Ordinis meritò Supremi, jam nominatus atq; electus ad eundem Ordinem venerandum, Promitto & do fidem, quòd verè & fidelitèr pro viribus observabo cuncta Ordinis illius Statuta, & Statutorum Articulos, quatenus nullo modo me contingant, juxta vim, formam, & effectum eorundem, nec non Collegii, in quo is Ordo fundatur, jura tuebor.

NUM. XLI.

The *Oath* taken in King Henry the Eighth's Reign.

Ex veteri Codice MS. penes G.O.T.f.70.b.

YEE shall swear, that to your power yee shall help, keep, defend, and sustain, during your lyfe, and during the tyme that you shall be Companion of the Order of the Garter, the honor, quarrels, rights, and Dominions of the King our Sovereign Lord, Sovereign of the said Order, you shall enforce you, and do all your diligence to entertain and augment the said Noble Order, and in case you shall have knowledge of any thing to be imagined or procured to the contrary, with all your true power you shall resist thereunto, Also you shall well and truly accomplish, and keep, and entertain all the Statutes, points, articles, and Ordinances of the said Order, as if they were read unto you from point to point: so help you God, and Holydome, and by these Evangelists by you corporally touched.

NUM. XLII.

The *Oath* used in the Reign of King Edward the Sixth.

Ex Libro Nig. pag. 303.

YOU, being chosen to be one of the honourable Company of the Order of the Garter, shall promise and swear by the holy Evangelists by you bodily touched, to be faithful and true to the Kings Majesty, and to observe and keep all the points of the Statutes of the said Order, and every Article in them contained, the same being agreeable, and not repugnant to the Kings Highness, & other goodly proceedings, as far as unto you belongeth and appertaineth, as God help you and the holy Evangelists.

NUM. XLIII.

The Form of the *Oath* settled in Queen Elizabeth's Reign.

QUum jam electus es in honoratissimum societatem nobilissimi ordinis Garteri, tu promittes & jurabis, per sacrosancta dei Evangelia, per te nunc tacta, quod scieris & voluntarie non violabis aliquod prædicti ordinis statutum, aut aliquos articulos in eis contentos, præsertim si non scientes sint, & non repugnent Dei omnipotentis & hujus regni legibus, quatenus personam tuam concernunt, seu ad te pertinent, sicut te deus adjuvet, per Jesum Christum, hoc sacrosancto Dei Evangelio annuntiatum.

The same in English.

YOU being chosen to be one of the honourable Company of this most Noble Order of the Garter, shall promise and swear by the holy Evangelists, by you here touched, that wittingly or willingly you shall not break any Statute of the said Order, or any Articles in them contained; the same being agreeable and not repugnant to the Laws of Almighty God, and the Laws of this Realm, as far forth as to you belongeth and appertaineth: So God help you and his holy Word.

NUM. XLIV.

Letter to obtain License for Installing a Knight-Subject by his Proxy.

Ex Lib. Nigro, p. 60.

Joannes Dux Bedfordiæ, cum cæteris in celebritate Georgianâ jam proximè conjunctis, Regiæ Majestati vestræ salutem & obedientiam. Quoniam, invictissime princeps & metuentissime Domine, vestræ Celsitudinis ea magnanimitas est in suscipiendis Bellis, & in gerendis felicitas,

APPENDIX.

at ipsorum jam fama per orbem undique volitet, nos id vestre Majestati gratulamur, Deo gratias nunc immensas agentes, qui quicquid est boni ac felicitis eventus, solus concedit. Ubi vero Regia Majestas vestra, quia bella durant, strenuos quosdam Equites ex hiis qui vobiscum modo militant in socios Clarissimi vestri Ordinis assumere decrevit, ex consensu Commilitonum aliorum qui nunc isthic assunt, idque nobis significare non refugit; nos isthuc ipsa voluntate vestra & Commilitonum assensu subnixi, & quia nolumus ut quisquam per nos aut in Curia nostra privetur eo fructu qui percipi possit, saltem dum spectet ad salutem Animæ, si subito contingeret obire, (quod fere fit hiis qui variis bellis casibus agitantur) Dominum Joannem Gray, Dominum Johannem Robertsk, & Dominum Boucer virtute Literarum in quibus procuratores sibi nominarunt, in sedes suas Windesori permisimus intruduci: ne si per bellorum infortunia, quibus eos isthic quotidie videmus oblectos, ante plenum possessionem interirent, Missarum suffragiis destituerentur, sicut quosdam nuper (id quod dolemus) nimia morâ preventos intelleximus. Rursum quia de tali procuratorio minus cautum in Statutis esse perpendimus, in eo facto non parum habitamus, verum nimio facere prius quam arcte feceris. Statutum observantiam condonatum iri sperantes, libenter in partem patientiorem (ut est visa) concessimus. In quo tamen vestre nos gratie correctionisq; submittimus, si quid in hac ipsa re delinquimus, modo (quo possumus) humilimo supplicantes, ut prudentissima Majestas vestra omnem abhinc scrupulum è Statutis auferat, & absolute pronunciet, ut hic posthac fieri oporteat. Ut Equites videlicet vestri cum celsitudine vestra, vel in bellis vel alibi missis vestro commoratis (meritis exigentibus) eodem privilegio, quod exteris in electione receptioneq; sui per Procuratores est concessum, congaudere possent, vestro tamen in omnibus iudicio semper salvo, serenitatem autem vestram cum insigni victoriæ celebriq; triumpho & plenâ conservatâ multitudinis & Commilitum gloriâ reducat in Regnum; & ibi diurne pacis bono perfui concedat ille Rex Regum Christus Ihesus, qui Capitales hostes nostros sub vexillo Crucis edomuit, & moriendo devicit. Windesori ab Arce vestra, Kalendis Maii.

NUM. XLV.

A larger Letter to the same purpose.
Registrum Chartac. fol. 6. b.

Vltoriosissime Princeps, & metuendissime Domine, Humilima Recommendatione premissa, de magnificis vestris Regalibus, guerrarum victriciis eventibus gratias, eandem auctori, qui suo sub munimine vobis totiens contulit felicitis triumphare, obsequiosa mente, gratiarum referimus actiones vestre Regie celsitudinis, insuper omnimodas reddentes odas debitas, & eo magis, quod volumus, quod nostro humilimoq; motivo de Militibus per vestram Re-

giâ pietatem durantibus, vestris bellicis exercitiis creandis interim in Militis Societatis Ordinis Garterii, & per Procuratores more exterorum installandis Aures vestre magnificentie Regalis dirigere voluistis, ad tantam exauditionis gratiam, ut Regiam vestram benevolentiam ad hoc & unanimum assensum Commilitonum Ordinis vestro lateri Regio quam strenuè assistentium, nobis, licet indignis, significare decrevissit, Ad effectum quid & noster assensus ille nostro matre mediante vim futuris temporibus statuti contineret, super cuius significationis gratia, & virtute assensus, Dominum Willielmum Philipp, per procuratorem suum sufficienter constitutum installavimus, Dominos vero Johannem Grey, Johannem Robofarde, virtute Literarum suarum missuvarum, in quibus suos solummodo nominarum Procuratores, Dominum d. Boucer, virtute Literarum ejusdem deprecatorie per Dominum Comitissam de Stafford, Desputato transmissis, promissimus installari, eo potius quod de sufficientia procuratorii hujusmodi in Statutis expresse non cretetur, ac præterire volentes, ac per dubiosa infortunia guerrarum, quibus ipsos in vestra Regali presentia indices exponi perpendimus, de tam meritorii suffragiis huic annexis, præ defectu plenitudinis sui juris, relicti, præ nostrâ vacillatione sub dubio, privati possent, seu veritas cistem carere, quid absit, prout jam tardè contigit, quod dolemus referimus, præ nimia morâ præpotentis viri ante plenitudinem morte preventi. Piè sperantes nobis potius de vestro favore nimio pardonari, quam de severâ, & strictâ observatione Statutorum in hac parte laudari ex condigno, persatis circumstantis ac animis presumentium super quo tamen humiliter inclinati quo minus perire cœmus, reman petimus, omnimodè vestre Regie correctioni nos penitus submittentis, supplicantes devotius quod valeamus quatenus omnimodum incertitudinis scrupulum in premiis Regia celsitudo dignetur de cetero cautius abolere, ac nostri pretextu motivi statuere, ut singuli subditi vestri Milites, aliorum suis meritis exigentibus, in hanc eligendi committam, qui vel in vestra presentia Regali seu alibi extra Regnum, dummodo ex mandato inibi militaverint Regali, pro perpetuo gaudere valeant privilegio nobili exterorum, Regali vestro iudicio meliori in omnibus semper salvo. Et serenitatem Regie celsitudinis cum Coronâ victoriæ, servatâ strenuâ procerum multitudine, cum bono pacis felicitè, reducat ad Regnum invictissimus Rex ille, qui in suo sanguine nostros dignatus est inimicos mortales sub vexillo Crucis moriendo devincere.

NUM. XLVI.

Sir John Grey's Letter Missive to Sir
John Lisle his Proctor.
Registrum Chartac. fol. 6.

A mon trescher & bien ame Monsieur Jehan Lisle.

Wachpissil Sir, A grete pou wele, de
siring to here, ac. And weete ye,
that

APPENDIX.

that the King of his gracious Lordshippe, God peld him, have chosen n.e. to be onne of his Wertheine, of the Kneghtes of the Garter; And I have chosen you, to be myne Attournepe, to take my Stalle, in my name, what tyme that my Lorde of Bedforde, &c. And I pray you, that ye wille do so moche for me, at this tyme; as I may do thyng to your plesaunz in tyme comyng, &c. Writen befoze Roone, the xi. day of November.

John Grey.

NUM. XLVII.

The Countess of Bristol's Deprecatory Letter.

Ex ipso Autogr.

SIR,

PResuming from what I have been told of former times, that my Husband the Earl of Bristol, with many others, being by his Majesties appointment to be installed Knights of the Garter, at Windfor, the next month, he may receive that honor by Proxie, at my request and nomination on his behalf, because himself is at present beyond the Seas, my desire to you hereby is, that, acquainting his Majesty herewith, you would be pleased, with his Sovereign permission and approbation, to appear and all at that Solemnity in quality of my Lord's Proxie, according to the accustomed forms in such cases, wherein I assure my self you will perform a very acceptable service to my Lord, and therein oblige very much,

Your affectionate friend
to command,

Queens-street,
March the 13.
1660.

A. Bristol.

Supercribed,
For Sir Richard Fanshawe
Knight thefe. dd.

NUM. XLVIII.

The Sovereign's Nomination of a Proxy thereupon.

Ex ipso Autographo.

Charles the Second by the Grace of God King of England, Scotland, France, and Ireland, Defender of the Faith, and Sovereign of the most Noble Order of the Garter, To our trusty and well-beloved Servant Sir Richard Fanshawe, Knight, Greeting; Whereas we have appointed our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin George Earl of Bristol, lately elected into our said most Noble Order, to be installed (together with others) at the approaching solemnization of the Noble Feast of Saint George, in our Castle at Windfor, on the 15. 16. and 17. days of

April next ensuing the date hereof. And whereas the said Earl cannot be there personally present, being detained in Foreign parts upon our special service (in which case he is privileged alike with Foreigners by ancient Statute of our said Order, to receive his installation by Proxie.) Know ye, that we of our particular grace and favour to you our said Servant, and finding in you all the statutable qualifications required for such a Deputation, have nominated and appointed, and by these presents (at the request and nomination of the Countess of Bristol, in the behalf of the Earl her Husband) do nominate, appoint, and authorize you the said Richard Fanshawe, for and in the name of the said Earl, to possess his Seat in our Colledge at Windfor, and to take the Oath in such case accustomed, and to do and perform all other things which the Statutes require, and we do further by these presents will, authorize, and require all persons whom it may concern, as well Knights as Officers, not only to admit this Proxie or Deputy of the said Earl, but also to do and perform in his regard all other things, which shall appear requisite according to the Statutes and laudable Customs of our said most Noble Order. For all which these our Letters shall be to you and them sufficient Warrant on that behalf. Given under the Seal of our Order, at our Court at Whitehall, the sixteenth day of March 1661. and in the 13. Year of our Reign.

NUM. XLIX.

Sir William Philipp's Letters of Procurator, to Sir Andrew Butreley and Sir John Henington.

Ex Libro Nigro, pag. 62.

OMnibus presentes Literas inspecturis audituris, Gulielmus Phyllipp Eques insignitus, salutem. Noveritis, quod ubi supremo nostro Ordinisq; nostri Galliae pariter atq; Angliae Regi, complacuit ad id honoris ac gloriae me provehere velle, ut in famigeratissimam Societatem illam me unum intromitteret, & insuper ex abundantia suae gratiae, secum reputans quemadmodum in his transmarinis & bellicis rebus suo secum jussu distineor, potestatem mihi foret sedis occupandae, ceterosq; ritus peragendi per idoneum procuratorem, Equitem (ut minus) auratum, insignibus donatum, & boni atq; irreprehensi nominis: Ob id ego prudentia ac virtute dilectissimorum mihi, Domini Andreae Butreley, & Domini Johannis Henington, in quibus (ni fallor) quod ad strenuissimos Equites attineat nil desideres: eos vel eorum (ut res feret) alterum, in vicem meam statuo & deputo, & quicquid in me facultatis est, erga istam mei causam tribuo. Quibus tamquam mihi ipse impero, ut pro me, ac nomine meo Locum in Choro ac Concilio mihi praenotatum ingrediantur Wyndfori, intra regale Castrum, ubi Claritas Ordinis fundata relucet, Clamidem meam, Galeam atq; Ensem susceperis, illic Offerant, ut ex more propendamus;

APPENDIX.

... et in his auctoritate committunt, omnium
legitimum atq; bonorum iuramentum quod po-
stulabitur ultra prestant, & summam omnia
vicia mea sic exhibeant ac compleant, atq; si pre-
sens ipse forem. In cuius rei testimonium Si-
gillum meum ab Armis hic affixi. In obsidione
Rothomagi, Novembris xi.

NUM. L.

Sir John Fastolf's Deputation to Sir
Henry Inghouse, and Sir William
Breton.

Fr. Regr. fol. 14. b.

A tous ceulx, qui ces Lettres verront ou or-
ront, Johan Fastolf Chivalier salut. Sa-
voir veuilles que come il ait plen a nostre Sove-
rain Seigneur le Roy de France & D'engle-
terre, come Soverain & primer de L'ordre Mon-
sieur Saint George, de la Compaignie du Jartier,
me faire tant de honneur que de me veuiller
estier & recevoir en un des Compaignons du dit
Ordre du Jartier, & en oultre de sa tresabun-
dante grace considerant que je suis occupé, pour
le present, en son tres-honorable service perdecé,
m'a donné congé d'estre enstailé, & d'avoir touz
autres choses que en cas appertienent fetes &
fournies par procureur; mais toutevoies qe ce
soit per Chivalier de nom & d'armes, & sanz
reproche, pour ce est il, que singulierement con-
fiant es sens & tresages discreions & prendom-
mie dez tresbonnours Seigneurs, & mes tres-
chiers & grauns amys messieur Henry Inghouse
& Guillaume Breton Chivaliers, esquelz a ce
que je tiens riens ne fante que aux vaillans Chi-
valiers doit appartenir, ay faite, ordeiné, constitué,
& depute, & par ces presentes face, ordonne,
constitue, & depute lez ditz Messieurs Henry &
Guillaume, & checum deux par luy mesmes, vrais,
certains, & especiaux procureurs, & a eux, ou
L'un d'eux ay donné, & donne pouvoir general &
especial mandement es meilleurs fourme & ma-
niere que je sçay ou puis, pour & en nomme de
moy demander, recevoir, & obtenir L'estall en le
chore, & lieu en le Chapitre, en la Chapelle ou
Collage du Roy nostre dit Seignur, dedens son
Chastell de Wyndesore, ou quel est le dit Ordre
faundé, & establez vacans, & qui pour moy y sont
ou seront assignez, & y offrir mon manteau,
mon hearme, & mon espee, & les y attacher se-
lonc la custume & maniere du dit Ordre, les cau-
tes, & les autres choses qui sont & ont esté
licite & honeste, que de Custume y sera requise,
en l'ame de moy faire & donner, & generalment
tout ce faire, exercer, & expedier, que es choses
desusditz sera aucunement necessaire & besoig-
nable, & ma person de tout representier, si comme
je y fuisse mesmes en persone. En testimoigne de
la quelle chose jay scellé ces presentes du Seel de
mez armes, & signe de ma maine, Donne à Lan-
com iii. jour de fevrier.

J. Fastolf.

NUM. LI.

A Commission for Installation of Sir
John Fastolf by Sir Henry Inghous his
Proctor.

Ex Regist. Chartac. fol. 14. b.

Henry par la grace de Dieu Roy D'engle-
terre & de France, Seigneur D'yrlande
& Soverain de L'ordre du Jartier, a nostre bien
ame Johan Robessart Chivalier, lun de noz Com-
paignons du dit Ordre, Salut. Come par le
trespassé de sien nostre tres-chier & ame cosyn, le
Comte de Westmerlaunde, dont dieux ait
l'ame, en son vivans l'un de noz Compaignons du
dit Ordre, au Chapitre tenuz en nostre Collage
& Chapelle de nostre Castel de Wyndesore, le
xxii. jour d'Aurel derreine passé veille de la
Feste Monsieur Saint George, nostre amo John
Fastolf Chivalier, pour consideration dez servi-
cez q'il avoit faiz le temps passé a sien nostre
tres-redouté Seigneur & Pere le Roy, que dieux
assoile & depuis a nous comme uncore fait de jour
en autre pour reduire & mettre en nous mains
nostre Royaume de France, & autres noz Seig-
neuries de par de là, en regarde aux grauns sens,
vaillance, & prendommie d'armes qui sont en sa
personne par lez Compaignons du dit Ordre te-
nans lors le dit Chapitre, sanz quelque con-
tradiction & dun commun accord ait estre choisy
& eslieu on lieu de sien nostre dit Cosyn un des
Compaignons de dit Ordre, & de present soit
tielment occupé en fait de noz guerres quil ne
puist pardecà venir, ne repaier, pour en sa per-
sonne entrer en sa possession, ains par nostre congé
& licence ait faite & constitué son procureur
nostre ame Henry Inghous Chivalier pour & en
nomme de luy en recevoir la possession, confians
a plain de voz sens, prendommie, loyauté, & bon-
re diligence, & nous mandons en commettant par
ces presentes que si tost que par le dit Inghous,
serres deurement requis, & vous apperra du po-
voir a luy donne par le dit Fastolf, vous trans-
portez en nostre dit Chastel de Wyndesore, &
en noz Collage & Chapelle de iceluy & pour &
en nom du dit Fastolf mettez illec de par nous
en possession le dit Henry Inghous son procureur,
en la maniere accoustumee, avec dez beneficez,
bonneurs, prerogatives, Franchises, & libertez
ad ce appartenantz, en luy assignant l'estal en
cuer & lieu en Chapitre, tielz que nostre dit Co-
sijn en son vivans soloient tenir & occuper,
Recevez aussi son mantel & sez beaume & espee,
et les autres choses qui sont & ont esté
licite & honeste, que de Custume y sera requise,
en l'ame de moy faire & donner, & generalment
tout ce faire, exercer, & expedier, que es choses
desusditz sera aucunement necessaire & besoig-
nable, & ma person de tout representier, si comme
je y fuisse mesmes en persone. En testimoigne de
la quelle chose jay scellé ces presentes du Seel de
mez armes, & signe de ma maine, Donne à Lan-
com iii. jour de fevrier.

Donné

APPENDIX.

Donné en nostre Chastell de Walingeforde, sous le seel du dit Ordre le xxv. jour de Fevrier L'an de grace mil quatre cens vingt & six, & de nostre Reigne le cinquiesme.

NUM. LII.

Another Commission for *Installation* of the Earl of Worcester, and other *Knights-Subjects* by their Proctors.

Ex lib. vocat. Denton. fol. 100. b.

Edward par la grace de Dieu Roy D'Angleterre & de France, Seigneur d'Irlande, & Souverain de L'Ordre du Garter, a nostre treschier & tresamey Cousin Henry Comte D'Essex, & a nous treschiers & bien aymes, Johan Sire de Berners, & Johan Sire de Wenlok, nous confreres de mesme L'ordre, ayons entre les autres eslen nostre treschier & tresamey Cousin Johan Comte de Worcester & nos treschiers & chiers & bien aymes William Sire de Hastings, nostre Chamberlain, John Sire de Montacu, William Sire de Herbert, & Messieur Johan Astley Chevalier, & nous confreres de la dit Ordre, & soit ainsi que en les estatuz en cedit nostre Royaulme seront establis personnellement dedens certain temps apres la reception de la Gartier, coment plus au plain est declarez en icelles estatutz, savoir faisons, que pour aucunes considerations nous a ce speciallement moyennes, & mesmement que nostre dit Cousin de Worcester & les autres Seigneurs & Chevaliers dessusdits sont de present, & seront encorres, tellement occupez entour nostre personne & nostre service pour le bien de nous & de nostre dit Royaulme qu'ils ne puissent estre installez personnellement au temps que voudrions a nous ordonnez & deputer, ordonnons & deputons par ces presentes vous jointement & severallement & ace donnons plain pouvoir & autorité, de admettre, recevoir, & establis en toute bonne haste que faire ce pourra iceluy nostre cousin de Worcester & les Seigneurs & Chevaliers dessusdits, & chascun d'eulx, par leur procureur ou procureurs par eulx en ceste partie constitués & deputer en les installer a chescun deulx en nostre College de Seinct George, dedens nostre Chasteau de Windesore, assignés ainsi & par telle maniere, que ung & chascun d'eulx y fussent adoncques presentz en leur propres personnes, aucunes ordenances ou estatuz faiz ou ordonnez au contraire non obstantz. Entesmoing de la quelle chose nous avons fait faire cestes, nous Lettres sous le Seel de la dit Ordre Patents, Donne a nostre Cyte de Lincoln le 21. Jour de Mars, L'an de nostre Reigne le second.

NUM. LIII.

Another for the *Installation* of the Earl of Warwick,

Ex Collect. Johannis Vincent.

Elizabeth R.

ELIZABETH by the Grace of God Queen of England, France, and Ireland, Defender of the Faith, and Sovereign of the most Noble Order of the Garter, To our trusty and right entirely beloved Cousen and Counsellor the Duke of Norfolk, one of the Companions and Knights of the said Order, by us assigned and deputed to be our Lieutenant at the Feast of the glorious Martyr Saint George, Patron of the said Order, to be kept within our Castell of Windesore, the xxii. of May next coming, and others the Companions of the said Order that then shall be present, Greeting. Whereas, We with others the Companions of the said Noble Order assembled, at a Chapter holden at our Palleys of Westminster the xxiv. of Apprell last, have elected and chosen, among other, our right truly and right well-beloved Cousen the Earl of Warwik to be Knight and Companion of our said Order, and forasmuch as our said well-beloved Cousen, for divers services which by him is to be done for us in our affairs beyond the Seas, cannot conveniently repair unto our Castell of Windesore personally to be installed, in the Collegiate Chapter of that Order, and to perform other Ceremonies, wherunto by the Statutes of the said Order he is bounden, and for that cause hath by our special license appointed our trusty and well-beloved Sir Henry Sidney Knight sufficiently authorized, as his deputy and procurer, to be installed in his name, and to receive his Oath, and to perform all other such things and Ceremonies for him, as by the Statutes and Ordinances of the said Order be requisite, We therefore in consideration of the premisses will and by these presents give unto you full power, licence, and authority, not only to accept and admit the said Sir Henry Sidney to be Deputy and procurer for our said well-beloved Cousen the said Earl of Warwick, and to install him in the behalf of the said Earl, but also further to do therein as to the Statutes and laudable usages of the said Noble Order in this case appertaineth: And these our Letters shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge in this behalf. Given under the Seal of our said Order at our Palleys of Westminster the 20. day of May in the fifth Year of our Reign.

APPENDIX.

NUM. LIV.

A Letter giving notice to the Sovereign's Commissioners of the day of Installation of a Knight-subject by his Proxy.

Ibidem.

By the Queen.

Right trusty and right well-beloved Cousen, we greet you well, And whereas we have appointed you, together with our right trusty and well-beloved Counsellor the Lord Hastings of Loughborow, our Lord Chamberlen, to be in Commission for the stallment, in our Castell of Windesore, of our right trusty and well-beloved the Lord Grey of Wilton, being lately chosen to be of the Fellowship, and a Companion of our Noble Order of the Garter. And forasmuch as the same Lord Grey is presently Prisoner with the French King, and therefore cannot be installed in his own person, Our pleasure is, that he shall be installed by Sir Humfry Radclyffe, Knight, whom we have appointed to be his Deputy in that behalf. And therefore have thought good not only to give you knowledge thereof by these our Letters, but also to require you to make your repair to our said Castell of Windesore, so as you may be there by Tuesday at night being the 19. of this present month, to the end that upon Wednesday next, being the xx. of this same month, he may proceed to the said Installation accordingly. Given under the Seal of our said Order at our Mannor of Greenwich, the xvi. of April, the fourth and fiftib years of our Reigns.

To our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousen Th' Erle of Huntington, Companion and Knight of our Noble Order of the Garter.

NUM. LV.

The Oath given to Sir John Robesart's Proxy.

Ex Regist. Chartac. fol. 5. a.

MOT Thomas Barr, Chivaler, procureur a mon Maister, Sire John Robesart, esliex d'estre de l'honorable compaignie du Garter, promette & jure, en l'alme, & en nomme de mon dite Maister, de loialment garder, & observer les pointes queconqueuz, de lez estatutz, du dite Ordre, en cea, que a luy pertiendra, selonc le forme, & effeile dez estatutz susditz, & selonc son luy prier.

NUM. LVI.

The Oath given to the Lord Scroope's Proxy.

Ex Collect. J. v.

YOU being Deputy and Procurer for the Lord Scroope of Bolton, named and chosen to be one of the Companions of the most honourable Order of the Garter, shall in the said Lords name promise and swear by the holy Evangelists by you here touched, that the said Lord, wittingly and willingly, shall not break any Statutes of the said Order, or any Article in them contained, the same being agreeable, and not repugnant to the Laws of Almighty God, and the Laws of this Realm, as far forth as unto him belongeth and appertaineth, As God you help and his holy Word.

NUM. LVII.

The Certificate of Election to the French King Henry the Second.

MS. quart. penes W. le N. f. 109. b.

Tresbault & trespuissant Prince, trescher & tresamé bon frere & Cousin, tant & si affectueusement que faire pouvons, a vous nous recommandons. Comme par la tresgrande noblesse, promesse, & aultres grandes vertus & merites de vostre tresnoble personne tant approuvés, que jutelement la fame en est par tout connue, & outre ce pour tant plus augmenter & faire accroistre, la bonne & fraternele amitié & confederation d'entre vous & nous, nos Royaumes & Subjects, avons assemble en deué Collegiale & ancienne maniere avec les Chevaliers de nostre Ordre du Jarretiere, au Chapitre tenu & celebré en nostre manoir de Greenwich, le xxiv. jour D'avril dernière passé, avons tous ensemble & d'un Commun & unanime consentement & vouloir esleu, choisi, & nommé vostre tresnoble personne au nombre de nostre dit amiable Compaignie, & Ordre du Jarretiere, de la quelle Election il nous a semble bon, vous advertir par cestes, vous priant trescordialement, tresbault & trespuissant Prince, trescher & tresamé, bon frere & Cousin, de faire cest honneur a nous & toute la dite Compaignie, de consentir a la dite Election, en acceptant pour l'amour de nous, & comme par ce vous nous feres chose tres-agreable; ainsi nous estimerons nostre dit Ordre d'autant plus garni & decoré, come entendres plus amplement par nos Ambassadeurs, qui pour ceste cause sont prests a partir par devers vous. Parquoy nous ne vous tiendrons ny plus long propos, Ains prions le Createur (tresbault & trespuissant Prince, trescher & tresamé bon frere & Cousin) vous avoir en sa tressainte & digne garde. Exscript a nostre Manoir de Greenwich, le---jour de May 1551.

NUM. LVIII.

APPENDIX.

NUM. LVIII.

*A Credential Letter sent to Emanuel
Duke of Savoy, with the Habit and
Ensigns of the Order.*

Ex MS. A. penes W. le N. Cl. fol. 110.

Tresault & tres excellent Prince, trescher & bien aimé Cousin, a vous bien affectu-
ensement nous nous recommandons. Comme sur
l'advertissement que nous vous fîmes de vostre
Election icy au nombre & amiable Compaignie
de nos confreres Chevaliers, & Compaignons, de
nostre Ordre de la Jarretiere; vous avez signifié
depuis vostre bonne & prompte acceptation, & sin-
gulier contentement de la dite Election, si desi-
rant affectueusement, qu'elle pregne son due ef-
fect, Nous avons promettant à ce despeché devers
vous nostre tresfeal & bien aimé le Sieur de Clin-
ton & Say, Chevalier & Compagnon du dit Or-
dre, & nostre feal & bien aimé Garterie, Roy
d'Armes de l'Ordre; avec ample pouvoir &
Commissiion non seulement pour vous presenter,
bailler, & donner de par nous la Jarretiere, man-
teau & autres ensignes appartenantes au dit Or-
dre, mais aussi faire tout autre chose en tel cas
accoustumé & requis, come serions si nous y fus-
sions en personne, vous priant, trescher & bien
aimé cousin, de les accepter d'aussi bonne vouloir
que desirons l'accroissement, par ce, de vostre bon-
neur & renom: Et outre ce d'adjouster foy a tout
ce que nos dits commissaires vous diront & fe-
ront, en nostre endroit, touchant leur Commissiion,
ainsi que series a nous mesmes: Que sera la fin
de cestes pour la present, & ainsi tresault &
excellent Prince, trescher & bien aimé cousin,
Dieu vous ait en sa digne tutiion. Escrips a
nostre Palaisce de Westminster le 17. jour de
Octobre, 1554.

NUM. LIX.

*Another to Frederick Duke of Wir-
temberg.*

Ex Eq. aurat. Anglo-Wirtemb. p. 120.

Quandoquidem, mi Domine Consanguine
(intelligit serenissimus Rex Angliæ Du-
cem illustrissimam Wirtembergiæ, Fre-
dericum) liquido nobis constat, quod, ut opti-
mam affectionem erga Regnum hoc à TE semper
ostensam, demortua Regina p. m. dilecta nostra
soror agnosceret, ac vicissim suam in te benevo-
lentiam peramicam contestaretur: elegerat te ac
nominarat, ut Equestris Ordinis Garterii, sive
Cruralis falcis consors esses: quod tamen ob cau-
sas aliquas in actum deducere distulit ac procras-
tinata est: Nos autem obligationi prompte tue
voluntati successimus, & ejus per Legatum tuum,
nuper adeo hinc profectum, certum testimonium
& confirmationem accepimus; eam nobis con-
servare, ac predictæ nostræ dilectæ sororis ami-
citiz, laudabilis erga te proposito satisfacere

desideramus. Quod ut effectum jam modò suum
obtineret, hunc ipsum in finem presentem Baro-
nem Spencerum ad te Legatum elegimus, qui
preter amicam nostram salutationem, nostrum
quoque Garterium Ordinem tibi adferat ac tra-
dat. Quamobrem hisce rogamus, ut cum ab il-
lo accipias, firmiterque credas hunc ipsum Ordi-
nem unum esse de precipuis signis ac Testimoniis,
quodcumque nos externo Principi, ad nostram in
ipsum amicissimam declarandam voluntatem, &
de ipso existimationem, in quâ merita ipsius &
virtutes habeamus, tribuere possimus: Ita ut hæc
ratione re ipsâ & ipso facto quotiescunque se offerret
occafio, quâ nobis tibi commodè gratias fa-
ciendi facultas erit, bene nos affectu, promptos,
ac paratos sis inventurus & experturus. Sicut
idem sanè prænominato Spencero pluribus &
latis tibi coram significandi dedimus manda-
tum. Quis de causâ fidem huic ut habetas, ora-
mus; certoque de nobis tibi persuadeas id, quod
interim sumus & manebimus semper. Datæ Win-
celtre, 18. Sept. 1603.

NUM. LX.

Another to Maurice Prince of Orange.

*Ex Continuat. Thuan. pag. 331. Edit.
Francf. an. 1628.*

Mi cognate, virtutum tuarum fama, &
egregia fortitudinis documenta, quæ tum
in Provinciarum Unicarum Belgii, jampridem
firmo federe regnis nostris junctarum, tum in re-
ligionis, quæ nobis cum Provinciis illis communis
est, defensione edidisti, jamdudum in nobis desi-
derium inveniendi occasionem quâ quanti te feci-
mus testaremur, excitavit, convocatis igitur
Equitibus & fratribus Ordinis aureæ Perice-
lidis, & in eorum numerum alleclo cognato & fu-
turo genero nostro, Electore Palatino, visum est
ex consensu totius Collegii, ut te ipsi socium ad-
jungeremus hac Electione ex voto nostro factâ, tibi
more majorum nostrorum insignia Ordinis mitti-
mus, & Winwodo Equiti ac Legato nostro man-
davimus ut ea tibi exhibeat, iisque te amicitia:
Insper Garterio, sociatum nostrorum principi, ne-
gotium dedimus, ut, quod sui muneris est, execu-
tetur. Habe hoc à nobis sincerè affectus testimo-
nium: quem deinceps, quoties occasio se dabit,
pluribus aliis argumentis declarare parati sum-
us. Ex Arce nostrâ Weltmonasterienh 9. Kal.
Jan. 1612.

NUM. LXI.

*Another to Frederick William, Elector
of Brandenburg, with the Garter
and George.*

Ex Collect. E. W. G.

MON Frere, l'assurance, que j'ay de von-
stre Amitié par plusieurs témoignages,
que vous m'en avez donnez m'oblige a rechercher
tous les moyens qui seront capables de l'enre-
tenir,

APPENDIX.

tenir, & de la conserver; Et pour ce sujet j'ay trouue à propos, comme Souuerain du tresancien & tres-noble Ordre de la Jarretiere, de vous eslire l'un des Cheualiers, paers, & Compagnons du dit Ordre, estimant par là de faire une plus étroite Amitié avec vous, & d'augmenter le bien & la prosperité de cette tres-noble société, laquelle par plusieurs siècles a eu non seulement les Roys D'Angleterre nos predecesseurs pour Souuerains, mais aussi l'honneur d'avoir plusieurs Empereurs, Roys, & Princes Estrangers pour Compagnons: Comme aussi de vous donner par là une marque evidente de mon affection, & de la haute estime que j'ay de vos merites, & de vostre personne, & pour confirmation de la dite Election je vous envoie par le Sieur Chevalier de Walker Jarriere, Roy d'Armes, la Medaille dite le George, la Jarriere & l'Etoile, pour les Porter a la maniere accoustumée: Assavoir la Medaille autour du Corps, la Jarriere à la Jambe gauche, & l'Etoile sur le Coste gauche de la Casaque ou du Manteau. Le dit Sieur de Walker vous assenera de ma part, que je desire avec passion de vous tesmoigner, que je suis,

Mon frere,

A Paris le 23. de
Januier 1554.

Vostre bien affectionné
frere & Cousin.

A Mon frere Monsieur
le Marquis de Brande-
burg P. Electeur du
Saint Empire.

C. R.

NUM. LXII.

*A Commission for delivery of the Habit
and Ensigns of the Order, to Charles
Duke of Burgundy.*

*Ex amplo Codice Ms. penes præf.
Johannem Vincent, fol. 175.*

Edward, par la Grace de Dieu, Roy D'Angleterre & de France, & Seigneur d'Irlande, Souuerain de L'Ordre de la Jarretiere, A tous ceulx qui ces presentes lettres verront, salut: Comme tres-hault & puissant Prince, nostre tres-ame frere, Charles, Duc de Bourgoigne, pour les glorieux merites de ses vertuz, haultesse, & Noblesse, dont la Renommee s'est par tout Respandue, a esté nadguaires par nous & nos confreres Cheualiers, & Compagnons du dit Ordre, en nostre Palais de Westmonstier assemblez, esleu Chevalier & Compagnon d'icelluy Ordre, en lieu lors vacant, si comme par nous autres lettres a nostre oit frere adrestés en signifiant la dite election est contenu plus a plain, voulans & desirans tresaffectionnement la dit election sortir son due effect, & perfection, scavoir faisons que nous confians es feaultez, discretions, & diligences de nostre feal & bien amé Messr Galliard, Seigneur de Duras, Chevalier & Compagnon dudit Ordre, Et de nos feaulx & bien amez conseillers Messire Jehan Scott, Chevalier, controleur

de nostre hostel, Thomas Vahan, Tresorier de nostre Chambre, Maistre Jehan Russell Docteur es Descretz, archidiacre de Barkshire, & Jarretiere, Roy d'Armes, les cinq, quatre, trois, ou deux, dont le dit Seigneur de Duras soit toujours l'un, avons ordonné commis & député, Ordonnons, Commettons, & Deputons, par ces presentes, nos Ambassadeurs Procureurs & Messagers especiaux, & leur donnons pouvoir, autorité & mandement especial, d'eulx transporter par devers nostre dit frere, & de luy presenter, bailler, & donner de par nous la Jarretiere, le mantell, & autres enseignes par nous presentement a luy envoyes, avec toutes les ceremonies & solempnitez deues & acoustumées d'estre presentes, bailliez, on donnez en tel cas, Et outre de Recevoir de nostre dit frere le serment, selon la forme & maniere des estatuz du dit Ordre, Et autres choses faire & exercer & expedier, que a eulxsembleront estre necessaires en ceste partie, tout ainsi que faire deurions & pourrions, si y estions en nostre personne. En tesmoign de ce, a ces presentes nos lettres nous avons fait mettre le Seau du dit Ordre du Jarretier, Donné en nostre Palais de Westmonstier le x. jour de Januier l'an M. CCCC. LXIX.

NUM. LXIII.

Another for delivery of them to Ferdinand Arch-Duke of Austria.

Ex Ms. fol. penes E.W. G. f. 18.

Henry le huitiesme, par la grace de Dieu, Roy D'Angleterre, & de France, Defenseur de la Foy, Seigneur d'Irlande, Souuerain de la tres-noble Ordre de Saint George, nomme la Jarretiere, A tous ceulx, qui ces presentes Lettres verront, Salut. Comme tres-hault, excellent & puissant Prince, nostre tres-ame Cousin & bon Neveu, Don. Fernando, Infante de Castille, Archiduc d'Austrich, Conte de Tyrol, &c. Lieutenant du Saint Empire, pour les grans merites de ses vertus, haultesse, & noblesse, dont la renommée, s'est par tout espendue, a esté naguerres par nous & nos Confreres Cheualiers & Compagnons du dit Noble Ordre, en nostre Manoir de Richemont assemblez, esleu Chevalier & Compagnon d'icelluy Ordre de Saint George, en lieu vacant, voulans & desirans tresaffectionnement la dit election sortir son due effect & perfection; Savoir faisons, que nous confians es feaultés, discretions, & diligence de nostre feal & bien amé Messire Henry, Seigneur de Morley, & aussi de nos feaulx & bien amez Maistre Edward Lee, Docteur en Theologie, Archidiacre de Colchester, nostre Aulmonier, Messire Guillaume Hufey, Chevalier, & Messire Thomas Wriothesley, Jarretiere, nostre Principal Roy d'Armes, nostres Conseillours, les quatre, trois, ou deux, dont le dit Seigneur de Morley soit toujours l'un, avons ordonné, commis, & Deputé, Ordonnons, commettons, & deputons, par ces presentes, nos Ambassadeurs, procureurs, & messagers especiaux, & leur donnons pouvoir, autorité

APPENDIX.

Et mandement especial, d'eulx transporter par devers nostre dit Cousin & bon Nepueu, & de luy presenter, baillier, & donner, de par nous, la Jarretiere, l'habit, & autres Enseignes par nous presentement a luy envoyées, avec toutes les solempnitez & Ceremonies deües & accoustumées d'estre presentées, baillées, ou données, en tel cas; Et oultre de recevoir, de nostre dit Cousin & bon Nepueu, le serment, selon la forme & maniere dez Estatuz du dit Noble Ordre, & autres choses faire exercer & expedier, que a euxsembleront estre necessaires en cest partie, tout & ainsi que faire deürions ou pourrions, si y estions en nostre personne. En tesmoigne de ce, a ces presentes noz lettres, signées de nostre main, nous avons faict metre le Seau du dit Noble Ordre de Saint George nommé la Jarretiere. Donné en nostre Chateau de Wyndesore, le xviii. jour d' Aooust, L'an de Grace M. D. XXIII. Et le xv. An de nostre Regne.

Pexfill.

NUM. LXIV.

Another for their delivery to Emanuel
Duke of Savoy.

Ex Collec. Gul. le N. Cl.

Philippe & Marie par la grace de Dieu Roy & Roïne d' Angleterre, France, Naples, Jerusalem, & Irlande, Desseigneurs de la Foy, Prince & Princesse d' Espagne, & Sicille, Archiduc & Archiduchesse d' Autriche, Duc & Duchesse de Millain, Burgoigne, Brabant, Conte & Comtesse de Flanders, Hasburg, & Tyroll, &c. A tous ceulx qui ces presentes Lettres verront, Salut. Comme tresault & tresexcellent Prince Emanuel Philibert, Duc de Savoy, Chablais, & Auguste, Prince & Vicar perpetuel du Saint Empire, Marquis en Italie, Prince de Piemont, Conte de Geneve, &c. Lieutenant & Capitain General pour nostre trescher pere L' empereur, pour ses grandes merites & prouesses, noblesse, & autres vertus, dont la renommee s'est par tout divulgee & esparse, ont esté naguieres par nous & nos confreres Chevaliers & Compagnons, de nostre Ordre de la Jarretiere, en nostre Chateau de Windesore assemblees, eleu Chevalier & Compagnon d' icelluy Ordre en lieu là vacant, comme par nos autres lettres, a nostre dit Cousin adressées, en signifiant son Election est contenu plus a plain, voulans & desirans affectueusement la Election sortir son deu effect & perfection, Seavoir faisons, que nous, confians es fialtie, discretion, & diligence de nostre treschal & bien aimé le Seigneur de Clinton & Saye, Chevalier & Compagnon de nostre Ordre, & de nostre seel & bien aimé Jarretiere, Roy d'armes d' icelluy Ordre, avons Ordonné, Commis, & député, Ordonnons, Commettons, & deputons, par ces presentes, nos Ambassadeurs, procureurs, & Messagers especiaux, & leur donnons pouvoir autorisé & mandement especial, d'eulx transporter au aimé nostre Cousin, & a luy presenter, baillier, & donner de par nous

la Jarretiere, & le manteau, & autres enseignes par nous presentement a luy envoyées, avecque toutes les Ceremonies & solempnitez, deües, & accoustumées d'estre presentées, baillées & données en tel cas, & oultre de recevoir, de nostre Cousin, le Sacrement, selon la forme et maniere dez estatuz du dit Ordre, & toute autre chose faire & expedier que a eulxsembleront necessaires en cest endroit, tout ainsi que faire deburions & pourrions, si y estions en nos personnes propres. En temoign de ce, avons souscript de nostre main propre ces presentes lettres, & y faict metre le Seel du dit Ordre de la Jarretiere; Donné en nostre Palais de Westminster le xvii. jour de Octobre 1554.

NUM. LXV.

Another for their delivery to the
French King, Charles the Ninth.

Ex ipso Autogr.

Elizabeth par la grace de dieu, Roïne d'Angleterre, France, & Irlande, Desseigneur de la foy, &c. a tout ceulx, qui ces patentes Lettres verront, Salut. Come tresault, tresexcellent, trespuissant Prince, nostre trescher & tresamé frere, & Cousin, le Roy treschrestien Charles de France, tant pour ses tresgrandes noblesse, dons, & vertus singuliers, dont Dieu l'a orné, & la renommee s'en est par tout divulguée, & esparse, & que pour tant plus augmenter, & establir la bonne amitié, & intelligence qui est entre nous, & nostre dit bon frere, ait esté naguieres par nous & nos confreres Chevaliers & Compagnons de nostre Ordre de Jarretiere, en nostre Chateau de Windesore assemblez, eleu Chevalier & Compagnon d' icelluy Ordre, en lieu là vacant, voulant & desirant affectueusement la ditte election sortir son deu effect & perfection; seavoir faisons que nous confians es feaultés, discretions, & diligences de nostre trescher & bien aimé Cousin, le Sieur de Hunfdon, Chevalier, & Compagnon de nostre Ordre, & de nos feaulx & bien aimés Messieurs, Thomas Smith, Chevalier, nostre Ambassadeur residant aupres nostre dit bon frere, & Messieur Gilbert Dethick, Chevalier, Roy D'armes d' icelluy Ordre, les avons ordonné, commis, & député, ordonnons, commettons, & deputons, par ces presentes nos ambassadeurs, procureurs, & messagers especiaux, & leur donnons pouvoir, autorité, & mandement especial d'eulx trouver, devers nostre dit bon frere, & de luy presenter & donner, de par nous, la Jarretiere, & le manteau, & autres enseignes par nous presentement a luy envoyées, avecques toutes les Ceremonies, & solempnités deües, & accoustumées d'estre presentées, baillées, & données en tel cas, & oultre ce, faire, & expedier, toutes autres choses, que a eulxsembleront necessaires en cest endroit, tout ainsi que faire deburions, & pourrions, si y estions en nostre propre personne. En tesmoing de ce, avons souscript de nostre main propre ces presentes, & y fait metre le Seel du dit Ordre de la Jarretiere; Donné a nostre maison de Richmond le

APPENDIX.

xxviii. jour de May, Pan de grace, mil cinq cens, soixante & quatre, & de nostre regne le sixiesme.

NUM. LXVI.

Another for their delivery to *Maximilian* the Emperor.

Ex Collect. Gul. le N. Cl.

Elizabetha, Dei gratiâ, Angliæ, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ Regina fidei Defensor, &c. Omnibus ad quos presentes Litteræ sine perventura, salutem. Cum invictissimus & potentissimus Princeps, frater & consanguineus noster, Clarissimus Maximilianus, Romanorum Imperator, &c. non solum ob dignitatis suæ fastigium, doctq; ac virtutes animi heroicas, quibus illum ita cumulatè ornavit ac illustravit Deus Optimus Maximus, ut earum per universum Orbem fama dimanaverit, verum etiam ut amicitie ac intelligentie arctioris vinculum inter nos firmetur ac stabilizetur, Ex nostro nostrorumq; Confratrum, Equitum ac sociorum Ordinis Garterii assensu & consensu, nuper in dictum Ordinem nostrum Garterii electus & susceptus fuerit: Ut hanc electionem, prout par est, absolvamus, & ad effectum perducamus, notum facimus, quod prudentie & dexteritati pernobilis & per dilecti consanguinei nostri Thomæ, Comitis Suffexiæ, &c. unius Equitum Sociorum dicti nostri Ordinis, ac dilecti nostri Gilberti Dethick, Militis, & Regis Armorum, plurimum confidentes, illos Legatos, Procuratores, & nuncios nostros speciales ordinavimus, deputavimus, & constituimus, prout per presentes Ordinamus, Deputamus, & Constituimus, iisq; potestatem, auctoritatem, ac mandatum speciale damus, non solum sese versus dictum Imperatorem conferendi, & illi nostro nomine presentandi Garterium, pallium, aliq; insignia quæ in presentia illi à nobis mittuntur, verum etiam omnes Cereemonias ac Solemnitates peragendi, quæ, in hac parte, ex usu & consuetudine fieri & peragi solent, omniq; reliqua expediendi, quæ ad hoc negotium spectant, quæq; illis videbuntur necessaria, haud minus ac si nos ipsi presentes facere & expedire vellemus. In cuius rei testimonium has litteras fieri fecimus patentes, nec non illas manu nostrâ subscriptas, Sigillo dicti Ordinis communiri iussimus. Datum in Regiâ nostrâ Westmonasteriensi xx. die Maii Anno Domini 1567. regnorum verò nostrorum nono.

ELIZABETHA.

NUM. LXVII.

Another for *Delivery* of them to *Fredrick* the Second, King of *Denmark*.

Ex Autogr. in Eiblot. Hatton.

Elizabetha Dei gratiâ Angliæ Franciæ & Hiberniæ Regina, fidei Defensor, &c. uni-

versis & singulis presentes has litteras nostras visuris, inspecturis, & auditis, salutem. Cum serenissimus Princeps, frater & consanguineus noster charissimus Fredericus, Dei gratiâ Daniæ, Norwegiæ, Gothorum, Vandalorumq; Rex, &c. plurimarum Heroicarum Virtutum splendore & gratiâ nobilitatus, Orbem Christianum sanctæ nominis sui impleverit, eq; jam ante annos aliquot animum nostrum accenderit, ut eam amicitiam in personâ ejus melioribus quibus potuimus officiis cultiorem redderemus, quam hereditario quodam jure sanctissime memoriæ nobilissimi Majores & Antecessores nostri nobis commendârunt, nullis autem officiis erga tam charum Principem satisficientes nobis, cum nuper elegerimus, conspirantibus omnibus omnium Commilitonum suffragiis, in illustrissimi Ordinis Garterii nobilissimam societatem, quo arctiori benevolentie vinculo, si fieri posset, cum in dies singulos nobis magis magisq; conjungeremus, utpote Principem verè Christianum, in cuius amicitia vel maximè cupimus consequere, summoq; desiderio avenes ut quod non nisi auspiciatissime incepimus, ad optatum finem perducatur: Sciatis, quod nos, de fidelitate, prudentiâ & diligentiâ pre nobilis viri plurimum nobis chari, Domini Peregrini, Domini de Willoughby, & Ersby, & speculabilis Viri Gilberti Dethick Equitis, Regis Armorum Ordinis, plurimum confidentes, ipsos nostros veros, & indubitatos Ambasciatores, Procuratores, & Oratores speciales, assignavimus, fecimus, & constituimus, assignamus, facimus, & constituimus, per presentes, dantes eis potestatem, auctoritatem & mandatum speciale ad presatum Fratrem & Consanguineum nostrum charissimum proficiscendi, eq; defendendi & donandi, nostro nomine, & pro nobis, Subligaculum, & Trabeam, & reliqua Insignia Illustrissimi Ordinis nostri Garterii, per nos ad presens ad illum transmissa, ceteraq; peragendi quàm officiosissime, & religiosissime poterunt, quæ ad honoratissimi illius Ordinis decus & ornamentum quoquo modo putabant pertinere, haud aliter atque ipsi faceremus, si presentes essemus. In cuius rei testimonium has Litteras nostras manu nostrâ subscriptas, Sigillo dicti Ordinis Garterii communiri fecimus. Data è Regiâ nostrâ Grenewici 27. die Mensis Junii, anno salutis Humane supra millesimum quingentesimum, octuagesimo secundo, regni verò nostri vicesimo quarto.

ELIZABETHA.

NUM. LXVIII.

Another for delivery of them to *Henry* the Third of *France*.

MS. 4. penes Arthur. Com. Anglesey. p. 63. b.

Elizabeth, by the grace of God, Queen of England, France, and Ireland, Defender of the Faith, &c. To all those to whom these presents shall come, *Greeting*. Forasmuch as the

APPENDIX.

the right high, right excellent, and right mighty Prince, our right dear and right well-beloved Brother, and Cozen, the most Christian King, Henry of France, as well for his right great Nobility, gifts and virtues singular, wherewith God had endued him, the renown whereof is dispersed and divulged throughout, and that the more to augment and establish the good unity and intelligence which is between us and our said good Brother, he hath been not long since by us and our fellow Brethren the Knights and Companions of our Order of the Garter, in our Castell of Windesore assembled, chosen Knight and Companion of the same Order, in place there vacant. We willing and desiring affectionally the same Election to take its due effect and perfection, give to understand, that We, trusting in the fidelities, discretions, and diligence of our right dear and well-beloved Cozen, the Earl of Darby, Knight and Companion of our said Order, and of our faithful and well-beloved, Sir Edward Stafford Knight, our Embassadors resident with our said good Brother, have ordained, committed, and deputed, and do ordain, commit, and depute them by these presents our Embassadors, Procurators, and Messengers especial. And we give them power, authority, and especial charge to go unto our said good Brother, and to present and give him from us the Garter, the Mantle, and other Ensigns by us presently sent unto him, with all the Ceremonies and Solemnities due and accustomed to be presented, given, and delivered in such case: And furthermore to do and dispatch all other things, which unto them shall be thought necessary in that behalf, even so as we our selves ought and might do, if we were there in our own proper person: In witness whereof we have subscribed these presents with our own proper hand, and therunto caused the Seal of our said Order of the Garter to be put. Dated at our Mannor of Greenwich, the xx. day of January, the year of our Lord 1584. and of our Reigne the 27.

ELIZABETH.

NUM. LXIX.

Another for Delivery of them to Henry the Fourth of France.

Ex Collec. W. le N. Cl.

Elizabeth, par la grace de Dieu Roynne d'Angleterre, France, & Irlande, Defenseur de la Foy, &c. A tous ceuz qui ces presents verront, salut. Comme le treshaute, tresexcellent, & trespuissant Prince, nostre trescher & tresame frere, & Cousin, le Roy treschrestien Henry de France & de Navarre, tant pour sa treshaute noblesse, dons, & vertus singuliers, dont Dieu l'a orné & l'a renommé, s'en est par tout divulgué & esparse, que pour tant plus augmenter & établir la bonne amitié & intelligence, qui est entre nous, & nostre dit bon frere, air este n'aguarer par nous & nos Confreres & Compagnons de

nostre Ordre de la Jartiere, en nostre Chasteau de Windesore assemblez, eslen Chevalier, & Compagnon d'icelluy Ordre, en lieu là vacant, voulans & desirans affectionnement la dite Election sortir son due effect & perfection, Sçavoir faisons, que Nous confians es feantes, discretions & diligences de nostre trescher & bien aimé Cousin, le Comte de Shrewsbury, Chevalier & Compagnon de nostre dit Ordre, & de nostre seal & bien aimé Guillaume Dethick Jartier, nostre premier Roy d'Armes, &c. d'icelluy Ordre, les avons Ordonne Commis & Deputé, Ordonnons, Commettons, & Deputons par ces presentes, Nos Ambassadeurs, procureurs, & messagers specials, & leur donnons pouvoir autorité & mandement especial, d'eux trouver vers nostre dit bon frere, & de luy presenter & donner, de par nous, la Jarretiere, Robe, Manteau, & Collier, & les autres enseigner par nous presentement a luy envoyées, avecques toutes les Ceremonies & Solemnités desies & acoustumées d'estre presentées, baillées, & données en tel cas. Et oultre ce, faire & expedier toutes autres choses que a iceux sembleront necessaires en cest endroit, tout ainsi que faire deburions & pourrions, si y estions en nostre propre personne: En tesmoign de ce, avons soubsescriit de nostre propre main ces presentes, & y fait mettre le Seal du dit Ordre de la Jartiere. Donné a nostre maison de Greenwich, le 6. jour de Septembre, L'an de grace Mil cinq cens quatre vingts & seize, & de nostre Reigne, le xrente huitiesme.

ELIZABETH.

NUM. LXX.

Another for their Delivery to Christian the Fourth, King of Denmark.
Ex Collec. W. le N. Cl.

Jacobus, Dei gratiâ, Angliæ, Scotiæ, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ Rex, Fidei Defensor, &c. Universis & singulis, Patentes hæc litteras nostras lecturis & inspecturis, salutem. Cum multe iustissima sint causæ, cur nos serenissimo Principi, fratri, & consanguineo nostro charissimo, Christiano, Dei gratiâ, Daniæ, Norvegiæ, Gothorum, Vandalorumq; Regi, Omnia benevolentie atq; amicitie Officia præstare, atq; honores (quantum in nobis est) maximos atq; amplissimos tribuere debeamus; & ob eas causas (more institutisq; Majorum, qui maximis principibus & nobilissimis, atq; eximia virtute præditis hominibus, hunc honorem semper habuerunt) Regem illum propinquitate atq; amicitia nobis conjunctissimum in eorum numerum asceverimus, totiusq; societatis consensu elegerimus, qui celeberrimo atq; illustrissimo Garterii (ut appellatur) Ordine apud nos honorantur; idcirco notum atq; testatum omnibus esse volumus, nos pro fide, prudentiâ, & diligentia Nobilissimi viri, Cognati nostri, Rogeri Comitis Rutlandiæ, itemq; spectabilis viri Gulielmi Segar, armigeri, Regis Armorum Ordinis, nobis spectatâ atq; exploratâ, illos assignasse,

APPENDIX.

assignasse, fecisse, & constituisse, perq; hæc litteras assignare, facere, & constituere, certos & indubitatos Ambasciatores, procuratores, & Oratores nostros, iisq; potestatem, auctoritatem & speciale mandatum dedisse ad præfatum Regem, fratrem, & consanguineum nostrum proficiscendi, eiq; nostro nomine & pro nobis Subligaculum & Trabeam, & reliqua illustrissimi Ordinis nostri Garterii insignia, hoc tempore à nobis ad illum transmissa, deferendi, tradendi, atq; donandi, ad omnia denique (quàm poterunt officiosissime ac religiosissime) præstanda & peragenda, quæ ad honoratissimi illius Ordinis decus & Ornamentum, spectare videbuntur, perinde atq; ipsi faceremus, si præsentem essemus. In cuius rei testimonium, hæc litteras nostras Patentes, propria manu nostra subscriptas, Sigillo prædicti Ordinis nostri communiri fecimus. Datæ è Regiâ nostrâ Grenevicenâ die 23. Junii, Anno Christi 1603.

JACOBUS.

NUM. LXXI.

Another for delivery of them to Frederick Duke of Wirtemberg.

Ex Lib. Coll. Æ. Tho. Row Eq. Aur. Ord. Canc. f. 206.

Jacobus Dei gratia, Angliæ, Scotiæ, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ Rex, fidei Defensor, &c. Universis & singulis præsentem hæc litteras nostras visurû, inspecturû, vel auditurû, salutem. Cùm illustrissimus Princeps, ac Dominus, Dominus Fredericus Dux Wirtembergensis, & Teckensis, Comes Montis belegardi, Dominus in Haydenheim, Consanguineus, & Affinis noster charissimus, plurimarum Heroicarum virtutum splendor, & gratiâ Nobilitatus, Orbem Christianum famâ nominis sui impleverit, eaq; jam ante aliquot annos animum nostrum accenderit, ut eam amicitiam in personâ ejus, melioribus quibus potuimus Officiis, cultiorem redderemus, quam hereditario quodam jure Sanctissimæ memoriæ Nobilissimi Majores & antecessores nostri nobis commendarunt, Nullis autem Officiis erga tam clarum Principem satisfactores nobis, cùm imper egerimus (conspirantibus omnibus omnium suffragiis) in illustrissimi Ordinis nostri Garterii Nobilissimam Societatem quo artiori benevolentiæ vinculo (si fieri posset) eum in dies singulos nobis magis magisq; conjungeremus, utpote Principem vere Christianum, in cuius amicitie vel maxime cupimus conquisicere, summoq; desiderio avenes, ut quod non nisi auspiciatissime incepimus ad optatum finem perducatur. Sciat, quid nos de fidelitate, prudentiâ & diligentia prænobilis viri, plurimum nobis chari, Domini Roberti Spencer de Wormleiton, & speculabilis viri Gulielmi Dethick Equitis, Garteri, Regis Armorum Ordinis, plurimum confidentes, ipsos nostros veros & indubitatos Legatos, Procuratores, & Oratores speciales assignavimus, fecimus,

& constituimus, assignamus, facimus, & constituimus per præsentem, dantes eis potestatem, auctoritatem, & mandatum speciale, ad præfatum consanguineum nostrum charissimum proficiscendi, eiq; deferendi, & donandi, nostro nomine & pro nobis, Subligaculum & Trabeam, & reliqua vestimenta, insigniaq; illustrissimi Ordinis nostri Garterii, per nos ad præsentem ad illum transmissa, ceteraq; peragendi, quam officiosissime religiosissimèq; poterunt, quæ ad honoratissimè illius Ordinis decus, & ornamentum quoquo modo putabunt pertinere, haud aliter ac si ipsi faceremus, si præsentem essemus. In cuius rei testimonium hæc litteras nostras, manu nostra subscriptas, Sigillo prædicti Ordinis nostri Garterii communiri fecimus. Datæ Munerio nostro de Woodstock, decimo octavo die Mensis Septembris, Anno regni nostri Angliæ, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ primo, & Scotiæ 37. 1603.

JACOBUS.

NUM. LXXII.

Another for their delivery to Maurice, Prince of Anrange.

MS. in Bibl. Hatton. f. 227. b.

Jacobus &c. Cum nihil magis Officium Regale deceat, quàm viri virtutes & fortitudinis famâ illustrissimi honores maximos & amplissimos tribuere; Quorum in numero, singulari virtute emicuit, hæc nostra ætate, illustrissimus consanguineus noster, Mauritius, Princeps Auriaci, Comes Nassoviæ, &c. Nos more institutos Majorum, qui tantis viris, quæ apud ipsos charissima sunt honoris Monimenta, communicare soliti sunt, prædictum principem Mauritium cùm amicitia nobis conjunctissimum, tam propter merita sua dilectissimum, in eorum numerum ascripsimus, totiusq; Societatis consensu elegimus, qui celeberrimo atq; illustrissimo Garterii (ut appellatur) Ordine apud nos honorantur. Idcirco notum atq; testatum omnibus esse volumus, nos pro fide, prudentiâ, & diligentia nobilissimi Radolphi Winwood, Equitis Aurati, nostriq; apud federatas Belgii Provincias Legati; Itemq; speculabilis viri Gulielmi Seagar, Garterii, nomine, Principis apud nos Armorum Regis, à nobis speculati, atq; explorati, illos assignasse, fecisse, & constituisse, perq; hæc litteras assignare, facere, & constituere certos & indubitatos Ambasciatores, Procuratores, & Oratores nostros, iisq; potestatem, auctoritatem, & speciale mandatum dedisse, ad præfatum principem Consanguineum nostrum proficiscendi, eiq; nostro nomine, & pro nobis, quædam Garterii insignia (ceteris suo tempore postea præstandis) hoc tempore à nobis ad illum transmissa deferendi atq; donandi, ad omnia deniq; quàm poterunt officiosissimè, & religiosissime & peragenda, quæ ad honoratissimè illius Ordinis decus & Ornamentum spectare videbuntur, perinde atque ipsi faceremus,

fi

APPENDIX.

si presentes essemus. In cuius rei, &c. Data
Palatio nostro Westmonasteriensi, vicesimo quar-
to die Decembris, Anno Domini 1612.

NUM. LXXIII.

Another for their Delivery to *Gustavus*
Adolphus King of Sweden.

Ex Lib. Collee. pref. Tho. Row. fol. 207.

CAROLUS, Dei gratiâ, Magnæ Britannię, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ Rex, fidei Defensor, &c. Universis & singulis hæcæ literas nostras lecturis aut inspecturis salutem. Cum serenissimus ac potentissimus Princeps, frater, & consanguineus noster charissimus *Gustavus Adolphus, Dei gratiâ, Suecorum, Gottorum, Vandalorumq; Rex, virtutis sue, ac nobilitatis splendore, rerumq; gestarum gloriâ, ac nominis sui famâ Orbem Christianum impleverit: ad nostrum officium pertinere putavimus, illi non solum omnia benevolentia, atque amicitie officia, tanquam principi nobis conjunctissimo, & amicissimo præstare, sed etiam honores (quantum in nobis est) maximos atq; amplissimos tribuere, eiq; imprimis quibus militaris in summo duce virtus solet decorari: pro more igitur & instituto Majorum nostrorum Regum Angliæ, qui maximis Principibus, & eximia virtute ac nobilitate præditis hominibus hunc honorem habuerunt, Nos Regem illum, communibus omnium Sociorum suffragiis, in celeberrimi Ordinis Garterii (ut vocatur) collegium elegimus. Et proinde notum & testatum omnibus esse volumus, Nos pro fidelitate, prudentiâ & diligentia nobilissimi viri de Conclavi nostro, *Jacobi Spenci de Wormston, Equitis aurati, & spectabilium virorum Petri Yong armigeri, unius ex nobilibus nobis in cubiculo presentie nostræ ministrantibus, & Henrici Saint Georgii, Armigeri, unius ex Heraldis nostris ad Arma, nobis spectatâ atq; exploratâ, illos assignasse, fecisse, & constituisse, perq; hæcæ Literas assignare, facere, & constituere, certos & indubitatos Legatos, Oratores, & Procuratores nostros, ijsq; potestatem, auctoritatem, & speciale mandatum dedisse, ad præfatum Regem, fratrem, & consanguineum nostrum proficiendâ, eiq; nomine nostro, & pro nobis, Subligaculum, & Trabeam, & reliqua illustrissimi Ordinis nostri Garterii insignia, jam à nobis ad illum transmissa, deferendâ, tradendâ, atq; donandâ, ad omnia deniq; (quam poterunt officiosissimè ac religiozissimè) præstandâ & peragendâ, quæ ad honoratissimâ illius Ordinis decus, & Ornamentum pertinere videbuntur: perinde atq; ipsi faceremus, si presentes essemus. In cuius rei testimonium hæcæ Literas nostras Patentes, propriâ manu nostrâ subscriptas, Sigillo dicti Ordinis nostri Garterii communiri fecimus. Data è Palatio nostro Westmonasteriensi, vicesimo quarto die Junii, Anno Domini 1627. Sti-
lo Angliæ.**

NUM. LXXIV.

Another for Delivery of them to *Charles*
Prince Elector.

Ibidem, fol. 213.

CAROLUS, Dei gratiâ Magnæ Britannię, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ Rex, fidei Defensor, Periscelidis Ordinisq; Georgiani Supremus, &c. universis & singulis hæcæ literas nostras lecturis, aut inspecturis salutem. Cum nos omnesq; & singuli, illustrissimi Ordinis Garterii Socii, Equites, decimo octavo die Aprilis, Anno regni nostri novo, apud Palatium nostrum Albæ Aulæ Westmonasterii Capitulariter congregati, charissimum nostrum Nepotem, unice, & dilectissimæ Sororis nostræ modò filium natum maximum, *Carolum Principem Imperii Electorem, Comitem Palatinumq; non solum propter Regii nostri Sanguinis communionem, & propinquitatem, sed etiam ad fovendas, & excitandas incuntes etatis virtutes, mirifice, cum admiratione, & spe totius Orbis Christiani pullulantes, tam in sui Principatus administratione, quam in rei militaris scientiâ more, & instituto majorum nostrorum Regum Angliæ (quibus solenne fuit nobilissimos quosque, & summa virtute præditos Principes, hoc honore decorare) communibus suffragiis, in celeberrimum nostri Ordinis Garterii Collegium & Societatem co-optavimus, & elegimus: Proinde notum esse volumus, Nos pro fidelitate, prudentiâ, & diligentia, spectatissimi viri *Gulielmi Botwell armigeri, procuratoris nunci Regiorum in Belgia negotiorum, assidue vigilantissimi; Nec non Johannis Philipoti Armigeri, Schinnerflet, unius ex Heraldis nostris, in hæcæ mysteriis eruditii (jam vice & munere Garterii Armorum Regis, propter ejus debilitatem & invaliditatem fungentis) nobis cogniti, & exploratâ, illos assignasse, fecisse, & constituisse, perque hæcæ literas assignare, facere, & constituere certos, & indubitatos Legatos, Oratores, & Procuratores nostros: ijsq; potestatem, auctoritatem, & speciale mandatum dedisse, ad præfatum Principem, & Nepotem nostrum proficiendâ, eiq; nostro nomine, & pro nobis Periscelidem, & inauratam gemmisq; distinctam Sancti Georgii imaginem, & symbolum, duo præcipua illustrissimi Ordinis nostri Garterii insignia, jam à nobis ad illum transmissa deferendâ, tradendâ, donandâ, & induendâ, modo & formâ institutioni illius Ordinis maxime congruentibus, & ad omnia deniq; quàm poterunt officiosissimè, & religiozissimè præstandâ, & peragenda, quæ ad honoratissimâ illius Ordinis decus & Ornamentum in hac parte pertinere videbuntur. In cuius rei testimonium hæcæ literas nostras Patentes, propriâ manu nostrâ subscriptas, Sigillo dicti Ordinis Garterii communiri fecimus. Data apud Palatium nostrum in Civitate nostrâ Eboracensi, vicesimo octavo die Mensis Maii, Anno regni nostri Magnæ Britannię, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ novo, Annoq; Domini 1633.**

APPENDIX.

NUM. LXXV.

Another for their Delivery to Charles King of Sweden.

Ex ipso Autogr.

Carolus Secundus, Dei Gratia, Angliæ, Scotiæ, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ Rex, fidei Defensor, atq; Prenobilis Georgiani Ordinis, vulgò à Periscelide Nuncupati, Supremus Magister, Omnibus ad quos presentes hæc literæ pervenerint, Salutem. Cum Serenissimus ac Potentissimus Princeps ac Dominus, Carolus, eadẽ

Rex, & Princeps hereditarius, Magnus Princeps Finlandiæ, Dux Sconie, Elthoniæ, Livoniæ, Careliæ, Breitiæ, Verde, Stetini, Pomeraniæ, Cassubiæ & Vandaliciæ, Princeps Rugiæ, Dominus Ingricæ & Wiltmaricæ, nec non Comes Palatinus Rheni, Bavaricæ, Julicæ, Clivicæ, & Montium Dux, Frater, Consanguineus, ac Amicus noster

& eximia illa, quæ in eo conspiciuntur supra etatem, virtutes, quàm propter habitum ad præclaram rem quæ à serenissimo & potentissimo Principe

Rege sunt gesta, à quibus non parum honoris præfati Nostro Georgiano Ordini accessit, utpote qui ipse erat Commilito, ut deniq; sanctior illa amicitia quæ inter Regios utriusq; Nostros Prædecessores feliciter intercessit, magis excolatur atque

Ordinem fuerit in pleno ejus Capituli electus & cooptatus. Omnibus quæ illud inferendum & notissimum Notarum duximus esse partium. Hæc de causâ, atq; ad magis honorificam ejusdem

ad consummandum hoc tam gratum opus perimpendantur, ejusdem Ordinis integrum habitum, Ornatum, & Insignia per manus per dilecti & perquam fideli Consanguinei & Consilarii Nostri Caroli Comitis Carholentis, Vice-Comitis Hollandiæ, &c.

Locum-tenentis Nostri Generalis in Comitibus Westmorlandiæ & Cumbriæ, Nostrique jam ad præfatum Serenissimum & Potentissimum Princi-

Legati Extraordinarii, Et spectabiles Viri, Domini Henrici St. George, è primariis officialibus Nostri ad Arma nostras, vulgò Richmond Herald curatim transferenda, Dantes & Concedentes ejusdem Nostri in hæc parte Plenipotentissimus, plenum & omnimodam facultatem & Mandatum speciale, ut ad præfatum Serenissimum & Potentissimum Regem Saccorum, &c. Fratrem Consanguineum, & Amicum Nostrem, se conferant ei supra memorata Insignia, Ornatum habitumq; Nostri præfati Ordinis, à nobis & ex Nostra parte, peramanter offerant. Illi ipsum induant, iurjurandum in verba Statutorum dicti Ordinis ab eo accipiant, ceterâq; præsent omnia quæ ad Nostri Ordinisq; datus in similibus inaugurationis solemnibus fieri assolent, & adeo ritè & hõno-

rificè exequenda magis inservire judicabunt, non secus atque nostros mandare aut perficere possimus, dato quod illic coram adessent. Dabantur in Palatio Nostro Albæ-Aulæ apud Westmonasterium, Vicesimo nono die Mensis Novembris, Annoq; Domini 1668.

NUM. LXXVI.

A Warrant for delivery of the Duke of Savoy's Habit to Garter.

Ex Cod. MS. in Offic. mag. Guardrob. Reges voc. Warr. Dormant tempore Hen. 8. &c. p. 17.

WE will and command you, to deliver to Sir Gilbert Dethick, Principal King at Arms, for the Livery of the Order of the Garter, to be carried by him to our dear and well-beloved Cousin the Duke of Savoy, newly elected and chosen to be one of the Companions of the said Order, One Mantle of Blue Velvet, lined with white Tassata, and one Kirtle, lined with white Sarcenet, with one Robe-lace of Silk, and Gold, and Silk Riband for the said Robes, and as much Crymson Velvet as will cover one Book of the Order of the said Garter, with Silk Lace to the said Book, one Case to be made, covered with Crymson Velvet, garnished with passamain Lace of Gold, lined with Crymson Satten, and quilts of the same Satten, for the carriage of one rich Collar of Gold, of the Order of the Garter, one pair of trussing Sheets, two great Coffers covered double with Hide Leather, double lined, and bound with Plater, with great Girths of Leather to them, one Pack-Saddle, with all things necessary to the same, for carriage of the said Robes. And these our Letters, &c. Given at our Pallace at Westminster the 19. day of October in the first and second years of our Reign.

To our trusty Sir Edward Waldgrave Master of our Great Wardrobe.

NUM. LXXVII.

A Warrant for the Delivery of the Habit of Frederick the Second King of Denmark.

Ex Codice MS. in Offic. Mag. Gardrob. Regis vocat. Lib. quart. Warr. particular. p. 446.

Elizabeth R.

WE will and command you to deliver to the Lord Willoughby, for the Livery of the Garter, for the King of Denmark, 20 yards of Purple Velvet for his Robe, and 18 yards of Crymson Velvet for his Kirtle, and also 26 yards of White Sarcenet for lining of them. Item, a Scutcheon richly embroidered with Da-

APPENDIX.

mask Gold and Pearls, one Lace for the same Robe of Silk and Gold, with Buttons and Tassels of Silk and Gold.

NUM. LXXVIII.

A Warrant for Delivery of the Habit and Hatchments of the French King, Henry the Third.

Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.

Elizabeth R.

WE will and command you immediately upon the sight hereof, to deliver, or cause to be delivered, for the several uses hereafter ensuing, the parcels following: that is to say, first, for a Livery of the honorable Order of the Garter, for our dear Brother, Henry the French King, one Kirtle, Hood, and Tippet, containing 18 yards of Velvet Crimson, one Mantle containing 20 yards of Velvet Purple, and twenty six yards of Taffata White, to line them, one Cussen of Velvet Purple, with Fringes, Buttons, and Tassels of Gold, and Purple Silk, with a Pillow of Fustian stuffed with Down, one double Banner containing 16 yards of Velvet Crimson, and Blue, embroidered on both sides with the Arms of France and Poland, with Cloth of Gold, Cloth of Silver, Venice Gold, Silver and Silk, one Banner Staff painted in Oyle Colour, one Helm of Steel, all gilt, and Mantles to the same Helm, containing two yards and a half of Cloth of Gold, lined with one yard and an half of Satten, white, two knoppes of Wood gilt with burnished Gold, for the same Mantle, with silk Tassels to them, a Crown of Wood, with the Crest carved, and gilt with burnished gold. A Sword having the Pomel, and Hilt all gilt, one Scabbard for the same with a gilt Chape, and a Girdle, both being covered with Cloth of Gold, containing one yard, one Book of the Statutes of the Order aforesaid illuminated, covered with Velvet Crimson, and edged with gold Lace, three great Elcocheons, whereof one of our Arms, another of the French Kings Arms, both within the Garter, under Crowns Imperial painted, and gilded with fine Gold in Oyl, upon fine Holland Cloth set in Frames of Wainscot, likewise painted and gilt, and the third of the Arms of our right trusty, and right well-belov'd Cousin, and Counsellor the Earl of Derby, likewise painted and gilt in like Holland Cloth, and set in a like Frame, all placed in the Chappell, wherein the said King was installed, one Plate of the said Kings Arms, engraven in Copper, gilt, and enameled, fixed within his Stall, within our Chappell, at Windsor. And that ye content, and pay, as well for the making, imbroidering and painting of the premises, as also for the carrying of the Hatchments of the said King, to our Castell at Windsor, and also that you deliver two Trunks for the Carriage of the Parcels aforesaid into France, &c. And these our Letters shall be your sufficient Warrant, and discharge for delivery of all the premises. Given under our Sig-

net, at our Mannor of Greenwich the 22. day of April, in the 27. year of our Reign, Anno 1582.

To our trusty and well-beloved
Servant, John Fortescue Esquire,
Master of our great Wardrobe.

NUM. LXXIX.

A Warrant for Delivery of the Habit of Christierne the Fourth King of Denmark.

Ex Collect. E. W. G.

James R.

WE will and command you to deliver, or cause to be delivered, to our most dear and well-beloved Brother the King of Denmark one Robe of Purple Velvet of our Noble Order of the Garter, and one Kirtle, Hood, and Sarcoat of Crimson Velvet of our said Order lined with White Taffata, bordered with Fustian, and sewed with Silk, with a long String, Button, and Tassel to the same, in such manner and firm as to the said Robes belongeth, and also one Garter to set upon the shoulder of the same Robe, richly embroidered upon Blue Velvet, with sundry sorts of Pearls, Pearls, Plates, Venice Twists, and Silks. And these our Letters signed with our own hand, shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge in this behalf. Given under our Signet at our House of Hampton Court, the 10. day of September in the fourth year of our Reign, of England, France, and Ireland, and of Scotland the fortieth.

To our trusty and well-beloved
Servant Sir Roger Aston Knight
Master of our Great Wardrobe.

NUM. LXXX.

A Warrant for Delivery of the Ensigns of the Order to be sent to the Emperor Maximilian the Second.

Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.

Elizabeth R.

By the Queen.

Right trusty, and right well-beloved Cousin, we greet you well. And whereas we have now resolved to send forthwith our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin the Earl of Suffex, unto our good Brother and Cousin the Emperor, and have also appointed Sir Gilbert Dethick Knight, alias Garter, Principal King at Arms, to attend upon our said Cousin of Suffex, in the presenting unto the said Emperor the Robes of our Order of the Garter, and such other things as belong thereunto. We will and command you to deliver, or cause to be delivered, unto the said Garter, all

APPENDIX.

such things, as you have by our Order given heretofore unto you, caused to be prepared for this purpose, that is to say, the great Collar of Gold, with the little George, the Garter, the great George with the little Chain, and all other things that you have made ready to be sent in this Journey. And these our Letters with a Bill of the said Garter's, testifying the receipt of the same, shall be your sufficient Warrant in this behalf. Given under our Signet at our Palace of Westminster, the XX. of May, the ninth year of our Reigu 1567.

To our right trusty, and right well-beloved Cousin and Counsellor, the Marquess of Winchester, our high Treasurer of England.

NUM. LXXXI.

A Warrant for Delivery of the Collar and George to Edward Prince Palatine.

Ex lib. vocat. The Book of Warrants in the Jewel-house.

Charles R.

OUR will and pleasure is, that you deliver to the use of our entirely beloved Cousin Edward Prince Palatine one of the Companions of our most Noble Order of the Garter, one Collar of Gold, containing 26 Garters with Red Roses enamelled in the midst of them and 26 Knots, the Collar weighing 30 Ounces Troy weight; As also one rich George on horseback, with a Dragon to be fastned and pendant thereto, And for so doing this shall be your Warrant. Given under the Signet of our said Order at our Court at Whitehall, this 17. of June, in the 13. year of our Reigu.

By his Majesties the Sovereign's special command.

To our trusty and well-beloved Servant, Sir Gilbert Talbot Master of our Jewel-house.

De Vic.

NUM. LXXXII.

A Warrant for the Delivery of the Collar, George, and Garter for Charles King of Sweden.

Ex eod. Lib.

Charles R.

Whereas we have named and appointed our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin and Counsellor Charles Earl of

Carlisle our Ambassador extraordinary to our good Brother the King of Sweden, and our trusty and well-beloved Henry St. George Esq; one of our Officers at Arms, to invest our said good Brother, lately Elected Knight of our most Noble Order of the Garter, with the whole Habit, Ensigns, and Ornaments of the same. These are to will and require you to deliver unto our said Cousin, and our said Officer at Arms, or to either of them the great Collar, George, and Garter, and what other things you may have provided on our former Warrant for that occasion, And this with a Note under their or either of their hands, mentioning the particulars to be delivered by you, and acknowledging the Receipt of them, shall be your sufficient discharge. Given under our Signet Manual the 29. of November, 1668.

By the Sovereign's special command.

De Vic.

To our trusty and well-beloved Sir Gilbert Talbot Master of our Jewel-house, and our other Officers of the same.

NUM. LXXXIII.

A Warrant for Delivery of the Collar, George, and Garter, for John George Duke of Saxony.

Ex Libro pred.

Charles R.

Whereas we have named and appointed our trusty and well-beloved Sir Thomas Higgons Knight, our Envoy extraordinary into Germany and Tho. St. George Esquire, one of our Officers at Arms, to carry to and invest our dear Cousin the Elector of Saxony, late Elected Knight of our most Noble Order of the Garter, with the whole Habit, Ensigns, and Ornaments of the same, These are to will and require you to deliver unto the said Sir Thomas Higgons, and Tho. St. George, or to either of them, the great Collar, George, and Garter, and what ever other things you may have provided on our former Warrants for that occasion; And this with a Note under their or either of their hands, mentioning all the particulars so delivered by you, and acknowledging the Receipt of them, shall be your sufficient discharge. Given under our Signet manual this 29. of November, 1668.

By the Sovereign's special command.

De Vic.

To our trusty and well-beloved Sir Gilbert Talbot Master of our Jewel-house, and our other Officers of the same.

NUM. LXXXIV.

A P P E N D I X.

NUM. LXXXIV.

A Receipt given to the Jewel-house upon delivery of the Ensigns of the Order for Charles King of Sweden.

Ex Lib. vocat. The Day-Book in the Jewel-house, p. 321.

DECEMB. 31. 1668. Delivered unto Henry St. George Esq; one of his Majesties Officers at Arms, by virtue of his Majesties Sign Manual, bearing date the 29. of November last past, viz.

Imprimis, 1 Onix George of the Order set round with 38 large Rose Diamonds, & 4 smaller Rose Diamonds on a Loop to the said George. Also one Garter of the Order set with 202 Rose Diamonds in the Letters, 6 between the words, and 24 about 4 Ilot holes. Also on the Buckle of the said Garter 11 great Rose Diamonds, and 10 small ones, and on the Tab 3 large Rose Diamonds, and 23 smaller. Also one Collar and George of the Order, Gold enamelled, weight 30 ounces 10 penny weight 6 grains, with three Cases of Crimson Velvet, fringed with Gold Lace. All which is acknowledged to be received by me

Hen. St. George.

NUM. LXXXV.

Another Receipt given for the Ensigns of the Order sent to John George Duke of Saxony.

Ex Lib. vocat. The Day-Book in the Jewel-house, p. 324.

FEBR. 26. 1668. Delivered to Sir Thomas Higgons according to his Majesties Warrant, bearing date the 29. of Novemb. 1668.

Imprimis, One Collar of the Order of the Garter, consisting of 21 Roses, and 21 Knots, poize 30 ounces 16 penny weight. As also one rich Aggot George set about with 32 rich Diamonds, and three Sparks in the Ring; Also a rich Diamond Garter, all the Letters of Diamonds, and at the Buckles end 9 fair Faucet Diamonds, and at the Loop end 9 very fair Faucet Diamonds, and 8 smaller Diamonds. Also one enamelled George, poize one Ounce. All these I have received out of his Majesties Jewel-house, with Cases to them,

Tho. Higgons,

NUM. LXXXVI.

A Warrant to provide Necessaries for Transportation of the King of Sweden's Robes.

Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.

THese are to pray and require your Lordship, that you cause to be provided with all speed, these Necessaries following for the Transportation of the King of Swedens Robes, and other things belonging to the Order of the Garter; namely, one pair of fine Holland Sheets of two breadths and a half, and three ells long; Two Trunks for the packing up, and transportation of the Robes, Collar, and Georges, and two Sweet Bags of Taffaty, to lay amongst the said Robes: for the doing whereof this shall be your Lordships Warrant.

Whitehall this 27. of April, 1627.

To the Right Honorable the Earl of Denbigh, Master of our Great Wardrobe.

NUM. LXXXVII.

A Warrant to provide several particulars for the Investiture of the Duke of Saxony.

Book of Warrants in the Great Wardrobe, commencing at Michaelmas 1667. fol. 25.

THese are to signify unto your Lordship, That it is his Majesties express pleasure, That you do provide or cause to be provided in part of the Habit of the most Noble Order of the Garter, which his Majesty is now sending unto the Elector of Saxony Knight Elit of the said Order, and towards the furnishing of the Officer of Arms, who is to go upon that Employment both with a Robe for himself, and such other necessaries as are to be used for his Majesties honor and service on that occasion; the following particulars.

One Black Velvet Cap and Feather, such and of the same fashion as the Knights of the Order do wear on St. George's day, when the Feast is kept and solemnized.

One Girdle and Hangers of Crimson Velvet.

One large Cushen of Blue and Purple Velvet, with Buttons, Fringe, and Tassels of the like coloured Silk and Gold.

Fine Holland Sheets to fold the Habit in.

Two Trunks to carry them.

One Mantle for Garter or the Officer of Arms that goes in his place, to officiate upon that occasion. The said Mantle to be made up of 18 yards of Scarlet Satin, and 10 yards of White Deux Caps Taffaty to line the same, and to have an embroidered Scutcheon on the left shoulder,

APPENDIX.

shoulder, and Laces and Tassels of Silk and Gold, alike in every respect unto that Mantle which Garter wears upon St. George's day, and at the Chapters of the Order.

One Scutcheon with the King's Arms in a quarter of the Order, and a handsome gilded Border or Frame.

Two other Scutcheons without arms, having only the Garter about them, to put in them the Elector of Saxony's arms, in a handsome gilded Frame. And these shall be your sufficient Warrant, dated at Whitehall this 17. of July 1663.

E. Manchester.

To the Right Honorable Edward Earl of Sandwich, Master of his Majesty's Great Wardrobe, and to the Officers of the same.

NUM. LXXXVIII.

A Warrant for the Habit of the Order, and other Neccessaries, to be used at the Investiture of Charles King of Sweden.

Ibidem, fol. 29. b.

Charles R.

OUR will and pleasure is, That you prepare or cause to be prepared for the King of Sweden now Knight Elect of our Order of the Garter, the whole Habit of our said Order, together with a Mantle for the Officer of Arms, whom we shall appoint to go therewith, and all other Neccessaries as you had them specified in a Warrant lately directed unto you for the Habit to be sent to the Elector of Saxony, and besides one yard and half of skie colour Velvet, wherewith to cover two Statute Books of the Order, And for so doing this shall be your Warrant. Given under our Sign manual this 30. of August, 1668.

By the Sovereign's Special Command.

To our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousen and Councillor, Edward Earl of Sandwich, Master of our Great Wardrobe, or in his absence to his Deputy:

De Vic Chancellor of the Garter.

NUM. LXXXIX.

A Warrant for allowance of Dyet and Reward to Garter, in a Legation with the Habit and Ensigns of the Order.

Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.

By the King.

Trusty and well-beloved, we greet you well, willing and commanding you, that of such our Treasure, as remaineth in your custody to our use, ye deliver to our trusty and well-beloved Servant, Sir Gilbert Dethick Knight, alias Garter, Principal King at Arms, attending by our commandment upon our right trusty, and right well-beloved Cousin and Councillor, the Lord Marquiss of Northampton, in his Embassage to our good Brother, the French King, ten shillings by the day for his Dyet, and also by way of our Reward ten shillings by the day, amounting in the whole to twenty shillings by the day, and to allow him for the Postage and Transportation both outward and homeward, as well of himself and his train, as also of certain Robes of our Order, and other things necessary for that Voyage, such sums of Money as by his Bill subscribed with his own hand, he shall signify unto you to have employed in that behalf, as also further to allow him, for the Dyet of Chester Herald after the old rate, that is to say five shillings by the day, and five shillings in reward by the day, and for the Dyet of Rouge-dragon Pursuivant two shillings and six pence by the day, and two shillings six pence in reward also by the day, and also for their posting Money, according to the tenor aforesaid, beginning the 28. of April last past, until the return of our said right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin and Councillor. And these our Letters shall be your Warrant sufficient in that behalf. Given under our Signet, at our Manor of Greenwich, the eleventh of May in the fifth year of our Reign.

To our trusty and well-beloved Councillor, Sir William Cavendish, Knight, Treasurer of our Chamber.

E. Somerset.
W. North.
J. Bedford.
J. Warwick.
E. Clinton.
Jo. Gato.

NUM. XC.

Another.

Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.

Elizabeth R.

Elizabeth, by the Grace of God Queen of England, &c. To the Treasurer and Chamberlains of our Exchequer greeting. We will

APPENDIX.

will and command you, of such Treasure as is or shall come into the Receipt of our said Exchequer, to deliver or cause to be delivered, to our trusty and well-beloved Servant Sir Gilbert Dethick Knight, alias Garter, Principal King of Arms, attending by our commandment upon our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin, the Earl of Suffex in his Embassy, now to our good Brother the Emperor, the sum of 10s. by the day for his Dyet, and also by way of our Reward other 10s. by the day, amounting in the whole to 20s. by the day; the said allowance of 20s. by the day to begin 7 days before his arrival at the Sea side, when he shall pass over the Seas in his Journey, and so to continue until his return unto our presence, upon the end of his Voyage. Willing you further, for his better furniture in this Journey, to advance unto him beforehand his said Dyets and Rewards after the rate of 20s. by the day, for two Months. And also to allow unto him upon his return, for the posting and transportation both outward and homeward, of himself and his men, and for certain Robes of our Order, and other things necessary for his Voyage, such Sums of Money as by his Bill subscribed with his own hand, he shall signify unto you to have been by him disbursed in that behalf; And these our Letters shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge in that behalf. Given under our Privy Seal at our Mannor of Richmond, the 14. day of June in the ninth year of our Reign.

To the Treasurer and Chamberlains of our Exchequer.

NUM. XCI.

Another for like Allowances to Garter and Somerset.

Ex Collect. A. V. W.

Order is taken this present-----of Anno 1582. that of such the Queens Majesties Treasure as remaineth in your custody, you shall make payment unto Gilbert Dethick Knight, alias Garter, Principal King of Arms, and to Somerset Herald of Arms, the sum of Clix l. in full payment of a Bill of CCv l. signed by them for their Dyets, Rewards, Transportations, and Posting Charges, going with the Lord Willughby of Eresby, to Frederick the Second, King of Denmark, and in their return again, according to a Privy Seal granted unto them for the said Allowances. Dated at Greenwich the 28. day of June, Anno 24. of the the Queens Majesties Reign. And these shall be your sufficient Warrant for the payment thereof; Written the said day and year.

To our loving Friends Mr. Stonley, and the four Tellers of the Queens Majesties Receipt.

NUM. XCII.

A Privy Seal for like Allowances to Clarenceux and Somerset.

Ex Collect. A. V. W.

Elizabeth R.

Elizabeth, &c. To the Treasurer and Chamberlains of our Exchequer greeting, Whereas we have appointed our well-beloved Servants Robert Cook, alias Clarenceux, one of the Kings at Arms, and Robert Glover, alias Somerset, one of our Heralds at Arms, to pass at this present into France with our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin the Earl of Derby, by us sent in special Ambassade to our good Brother and Cousin the French King, for certain our affairs of importance, and have been contented to allow unto the said Clarenceux for his Dyets, ten shillings by the day, and ten shillings more by the day in Reward. And to the said Somerset five shillings by the day for his Dyets, and five shillings more by the day in Reward. We will and command you of our Treasury at the Receipt of our said Exchequer, not only to pay or cause to be paid unto the said Clarenceux and Somerset, and to either of them, or their assigns, their said several Dyets and Rewards, from the 17. day of January in this present 27. year of our Reign, until they return to our presence, but also to advance unto them presently imprest out of their said several Dyets and Rewards beforehand, the sum of one hundred pounds, viz. to Clarenceux one hundred Marks, and to Somerset xxxiii l. vis. viii d. And further to pay unto them hereafter, all such Sums of Money as they shall signify unto you, by their several Bills subscribed with their several hands, to have been by them severally disbursed for the Charges of their posting and transportation in this their Journey. And these our Letters shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge in this behalf. Given under our Privy Seal, at our Mannor of Greenwich, the 28. day of January, in the seven and twentieth year of our Reign.

NUM. XCIII.

A Warrant for like Allowances to Garter.

Ex Collect. E. W. G.

James R.

James by the Grace of God, &c. To our Commissioners for the Office of High Treasurer of England, Greeting, Whereas We do send over to Prince Maurice of Nassau, our Servant William Segar Esq; Garter King of Arms, to carry the George and Garter to the said Prince: We have assigned to him for his Charges, an allowance of 30 s. by the day, whereof we will and command

APPENDIX.

command you of our Treasure in the Receipt of our Exchequer, to pay or cause to be paid to the said Garter or his Assigns, the said allowance of 30 s. by the day, to begin from the 24. day of this Month of December, and to continue to the day of his return to our presence. And our further pleasure is, that you advance unto him by way of imprest, the sum of fifty pounds, to be defalked upon his said entertainment. And these our Letters shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge in this behalf. Given under our Privy Seal at our Palace of Westminster the 26. day of December, in the 10. year of our Reign, of England, France, and Ireland, and of Scotland the six and fortieth.

NUM. XCIV.

Another.

Ex Collect. H. le N. Cl.

Order is taken this 15. of May 1627. by virtue of his Majesty's Letters of Privy Seal, dated the 8. of the same, that you deliver and pay of such his Majesty's Treasure, as remaineth in your charge, unto Sir William Seagar Knight, alias Garter, Principal King of Arms, employed by his Majesty's Commandment for the carrying over the Order of the Garter to his Majesty's entirely beloved Cousin, Henry Prince of Orange, the sum of threescore pounds by advance, upon his allowance of xvs. per diem for his Dyet, and xvs. per diem by way of Reward, to be afterwards defalked upon his said Dyet and Reward, And these together with his acquittance, shall be your discharge herein.

Marlburgh.
Rich. Welton.

NUM. XCV.

A Privy seal for Allowances of Entertainment and extraordinary expences to Richmond Herald.

Ex ipso Autographo.

Charles the Second by the Grace of God King of England, Scotland, France, and Ireland, Defender of the Faith, &c. To the Commissioners of our Treasury now being, and to the Treasurer and Commissioners of our Treasury for the time being, Greeting. Whereas we have appointed our trusty, and well-beloved Henry St. George Esq; Richmond Herald, to attend our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin and Counsellor Charles Earl of Carlisle, our Ambassador extraordinary into Sweden, there to perform the Ceremonies at the delivering of the Garter unto our good Brother the King of Sweden. And have also thought fit to allow unto him 30 s. by the day for his entertainment during the service, to commence from the day of the said Earl of Carlisle's de-

parture from, and be continued till his return into our presence inclusive. Our will and pleasure therefore is, and we do hereby authorize and require you, out of such our Treasury as now is, which hereafter shall be and remain in the Receipt of our Exchequer, to pay or cause to be paid unto the said Henry St. George, or his Assigns, the said allowance of 30 s. by the day, advancing unto him the sum of 250 l. to be accounted and adjudget at his return, according to the rate of 30 s. by the day. And you are also to pay unto him or his Assigns, such extraordinary expences in that service as one of our Principal Secretaries of State shall approve of, And these our Letters shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge in this behalf. Given under our Privy Seal at our Palace of Westminster the 30. day of November in the xx. year of our Reign.

NUM. XCVI.

A Privy seal for Allowances of constant entertainment, and extraordinary expences to Somerset Herald.

Ex ipso Autogr.

Charles the Second by the Grace of God, King of England, Scotland, France, and Ireland, Defender of the Faith, &c. To the Commissioners of our Treasury, Treasurer, and under-Treasurer of our Exchequer now and for the time being, Greeting. Whereas we have employed our trusty and well-beloved Sir Thomas Higgons Knight, to go in quality of our Envoy Extraordinary to the Elector of Saxony, and to carry with him the Order of the Garter to that Prince, Our will and pleasure therefore is, and we do hereby require and authorize you, out of such our Treasury as now is or hereafter shall be remaining in the Receipt of our Exchequer, to pay or cause to be paid unto the said Sir Thomas Higgons or his Assigns, the sum of three pounds by the day of lawful Money of England, for his entertainment in the service aforesaid, to commence from the day of his departure from our presence, and that you advance and pay unto him the said Sir Thomas Higgons or his Assigns, in part and upon account of the said Allowance, the sum of 300 l. of like lawful English Money. And our further will and pleasure is, and we do hereby likewise authorize and require you, out of such our Treasury as aforesaid, to pay or cause to be paid unto Thomas St. George Esq; Somerset Herald at Arms, whom we have also employed to attend the performance of the Ceremony to be used in this service, the sum of 30 s. by the day, for his constant entertainment in our said service, to commence from the day of his departure from our presence. And that you also advance and pay unto the said Thomas St. George, or his Assigns, in part of the said allowance of 30 s. by the day, the sum of 150 l. of lawful Money of England, which said several sums of 3 l. by the day, and 30 s. by the day, are to be

APPENDIX.

be continued unto them unto the day of their return unto our presence respectively, and to be received without account, impress, or other charge, so be set upon the said Sir Thomas Higgon, and Thomas St. George, or either of them their Executors, Administrators, or Assigns for the same. And we also direct, that such further allowance be made unto the said Sir Thomas Higgon, for his extraordinary expence in this our service, as you our Commissioners of our Treasury now being, or our Treasurer, under-Treasurer, and Commissioners of our Treasury for the time being shall think fit, and that such allowance be likewise made, for the extraordinary expence of the said Thomas St. George in our service, as shall be thought fit and approved by one of our Principal Secretaries of State. And these our Letters shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge in this behalf. Given under our Privy Seal at our Palace of Westminster the fifteenth day of August, in the 20. year of our Reign.

NUM. XCVII.

A Warrant for Post-horses, &c. for
Garter's use.
Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.

WHereas the Bearer hereof, William Seagar, Garter, Principal King at Arms, is upon some special occasions, concerning his Majesties service, to make his speedy repair into the Low Countries, and in his Journey to the Sea side, shall have need of Post-horses, for himself and others employed in that service, and when they come to the Port of their embarking, shipping, for transportation: These are therefore in his Majesties name, to will and command you, and every of you, to whom it may appertain, to see the said William Seagar, furnished from place to place with six able and sufficient Post-horses, And likewise also to give your assistance for getting of convenient shipping for their transportation, and to suffer them quietly to imbarque together, with such Trunk, and other necessaries as they shall have use of, without lett, hindrance, or other molestation; hereof you may not fail, as you will answer the contrary: From the Court at Whitehall this 30. of December 1612.

To all Mayors, Sheriffs, Justices of Peace, Vice-Admirals, Customers, Comptrollers, Searchers, Officers of the Ports, Post-masters, Bailiffs, Constables, Headboroughs, and all other his Majesties Officers and loving Subjects to whom it may appertain.

J. Northampton.
J. Suffolk.
E. Worcester.
E. Wotton.
J. Cafar.
E. Zouch.
C. Edmonds.

NUM. XCVIII.

A Warrant for Post-horses, for Somerset
Herald.
Ex Collect. A. V. W.

WHereas there is appointed to attend on the Earl of Derby, for her Majesties service into France, Robert Glover, alias Somerset, one of the Heralds of Arms, who is to repair with all diligence unto the Port of Dover, there to imbarque with the said Earl of Derby: These are to will and require you, and in her Majesties name, strictly to charge and command you, and every of you, to whom it shall appertain, to see him provided of four good and able Post-horses, for himself, his Servants, and Carriages, with a Guid from place to place unto Dover aforesaid, and at his return likewise from thence to the Court, as also of all such other things necessary, as he shall require at your hands, for the better accomplishing of his Voyage, at prices reasonable, and accustomed in her Majesties like services. Whereof fail you not, as you will answer to the contrary at your perils. From the Court at Greenwich the 20. of January, 1584.

To all Mayors, Sheriffs, Justices of Peace, Bailiffs, Constables, Headboroughs, and to all other her Majesties Officers and loving Subjects, to whom it may appertain, and to every of them.

NUM. CI.

Instructions given to the Sovereign's
Ambassadors, sent with the Habit and
Ensigns of the Order to Julianus de
Medici, Brother to Pope Leo the
Tenth.

Ex Collect. Jac. Ware's Eq. Aur.

First, the due recommendation and presentation of the Kings Letters, with a brief Oration to be made touching the laud of the said Order of the King Sovereign of the same, and also of the virtues and notable deeds of N. that shall receive it.

And after the proposition so said, to present their Commission and cause it openly to be read, where they shall require him to make his Oath, as followeth.

Ego Julianus Dei gratia, &c. honorificentiſſimæ ac approbatissimæ Ordinis Garterii Miles, & Confrater electus, Juro ad hec Sancta Dei Evangelia per me corporaliter tacta, quod omnia & singula Statuta, Leges, & Ordinationes ipsius dignissimi Ordinis bene, sincere, & inviolabiliter observabo, ita me Deus adjuvet & hec Sancta Dei Evangelia.

Which

APPENDIX.

Which Oath given, Sir E. P. shall deliver the Garter unto him, and cause the same in good and honorable manner to be put about his Leg, the said Doctor so saying audibly these words following.

Ad laudem & honorem summi atq; Omnipotentis Dei, intemeratę Virginis & Matris sue Marię ac gloriosissimi Martyris Georgii hujus Ordinis Patroni, circumcinge tibiam tuam hoc Garterio, ut possis in isto bello firmiter stare & fortiter vincere in signum Ordinis, & augmentum tui honoris.

Which thing so done, the said Sir E. P. shall deliver unto the said I. the Gown of Purple Colour, and cause him to apparel himself with the same, the said Doctor so saying these words following, at the doing over of the same.

Accipe velum huius purpuream, cui semper munus non verearis pro fide Christiana, libertate Ecclesię, & oppressorum tuitione fortiter dimicare & sanguinem effundere, in signum Ordinis, & augmentum tui honoris.

And then following, the said Sir E. P. shall cause the said I. to do upon him the Mantle of Blue Velvet, garnished with the Scur and Cross of Saint George, and the Doctor so saying these words.

Accipe Clamidem celestis coloris Clipeo Crucis Garteri insignitę, cuius virtute tuęque vigilię semper protectus hostes superare & præclarissimis tuis meritis gaudia tandem celestia promereri valeas, in signum Ordinis, & augmentum tui honoris.

And when the said I. shall be so apparelled with the Ornaments aforesaid, the said Sir E. P. shall put the Image of Saint George about his neck, the Doctor so saying these words.

Imaginem gloriosissimi Martyris Georgii hujus Ordinis Patroni, in collo tuo desera, cuius fulvus presidio huius Mundi prospera & adversa sic pertranseas, ut hostibus Corporis & anime devictis non modo temporalis militię gloriam, sed perennis victorię palmam recipere valeas, in signum Ordinis, & augmentum tui honoris.

NUM. CII.

Instructions to the Sovereign's Ambassadors, sent upon a like Embassy to James the Fifth King of Scots.

Ex Antogr. in Bibl. Hatton.

THE said Lord William shall within five or six days next after he hath been with the said King of Scots, for his first Ambassade, and resort to Court thence, and in most reverend fashion deliver unto the King of Scots the Letter mistie of Certification of his Election into the Noble Order of the Garter, from the King our Sovereign Lord his Highness, with due commendations from his Highness. The Letter read, and be consenting to the reception of the said Order, then incontinent the Book of Statutes to be delivered unto him, and a day appointed as well for to have his consentment on the Articles of the

said Statutes, and in the mean time his Oath to be prepared by his consent and advice. On which day being at the least Sunday, and he agreeing to receive the same honorable Order, he must be in a place convenient.

First they shall present their Commission unto the said King, and cause the said audibly and distinctly to be read, and so followingly shall in good and reverent manner require him to make his corporal Oath, for the inviolable observing of the same, like as by the tenure of the Statutes every Knight of that Order is bound to do in form following.

The Oath.

We James by the grace of God King of Scots, promise and swear by our Faith, and Honor, and holy Evangelists by us presently touched, that we shall accomplish and keep truly unto our power, all the Statutes, Points, and Ordinances of the right Noble Order of Saint George named the Garter, from point to point, and from Article to Article, as is contained and declared in the Book thereof to us delivered, the which we have accepted and do accept, as if that we read them now presently [Note, if he will make any exceptions they must be here rehearsed] the which Articles we promise now again to keep, hold and entertain, without breaking: So God help us, and all the Saints. Yeoven, &c.

Which Oath given, the Lord William shall put the Garter, in due and reverent manner, about his left Leg, and in this doing, Garter shall say.

Sir, the Sovereign and honorable Company of the Order of the Garter have received you as their Brother and Companion, and in knowledge and token thereof, they give and present you this Garter, the which God give you grace to wear to his laud and praise, to the honor of the blessed Virgin Mary, and the glorious Martyr Saint George, Patron of that Noble Order, and to the augmentation of your honor.

Which thing so done, the said Lord William shall deliver unto him the Gown of Crimson, and cause him to apparel himself with the same, the said Garter saying these words following, at the doing on the same.

Te take this Garment, wherein God give you grace strongly to stand in the true Faith of Christ, and depressing the Enemies of Saints, in token of the said Order, and to the augmenting of this Order, and your honor.

And then lovingly the said Lord William shall cause the said King to put on the Mantle of Blue Velvet, garnished with the Arms of St. George, environed with a Garter, the said Garter saying as followeth.

[Note the Hood to be put on the right shoulder]

Take ye this Mantle of heavenly colour, with the shield of the Cross of Christ garnished, by whose strength and virtue ye always be defended, and by virtue of it you may overcome all your Enemies, and so through your most noble desert, may worthily come to the joye everlasting, in token of the said Order, and increase of your honor.

And

APPENDIX.

And when the said King shall be so apparelled with the adornments aforesaid, the said Lord William shall put the Coller of the Order, with the Image of Saint George about his neck, the said Garter saying,

Take ye and bear this Coller, with the Image of the most glorious Martyr Saint George, Patron of this Order, about your neck, by the help whereof you may the better pass through both the prosperity and adversity of this world, so that your Enemies both of body and soul may be overcome, ye then may receive not only glory of temporal Chivalry, but also the rejoycing of everlasting victory, in sign and token of this Order, and increase of your honor.

Which things thus fully ended, the King to go to some solemn Church, and there to hear a solemn Mass, and so to return, and so to his Lodging, where if he dine abroad, to wear the said whole Habit, during the dinner time, and after to do his pleasure.

Then Garter to remember to purchase and sollicite a Certification of the Reception of the said Order by him, and also his Oath, both under the said Kings Seal. Also to advertise him the manner of the coming of his Procurator for his Installation within seven Months; he to bring with him a Procurator under the Kings Seal for his Installation, with all other things necessary, as the said Garter knoweth by his old Presidents in such case accustomed.

All these things thus duly and in reverent order done, with other the Kings Affairs there, the said Lord William and the said Garter to return to the Kings Highness.

NUM. CIII.

A Letter signifying Election, to Edward Count Palatine of the Rhine.

Ex Colle^t. E. W. G.

Charles R.

Charles the Second, by the Grace of God, King of England, Scotland, France, and Ireland Defender of the Faith, &c. and Sovereign of the most Noble Order of the Garter. To our right dear and entirely beloved Cousin Edward Count Palatine of the Rhine, Duke of Bavaria, &c. Greeting. Whereas our Royal Progenitors, the Kings of England, have in all times, since the Institution of the most Noble Order of Saint George, called the Garter, by our most Noble and Victorious Ancestor King Edward the Third, elected and chosen into the Fellowship thereof, such Princes and other eminent persons, as well Strangers as their own Subjects, as have for the greatness of their Birth, and other Heroick virtues, especially in martial actions, been thought worthy of the same; We therefore considering, that since the late horrid Rebellion, in that our Kingdom, that many of the Companions thereof are dead, and that others contrary to their Honor and Oaths, have deserted their

Allegiance, and are no more worthy to be elected Companions of so Noble an Order; and finding how necessary it is for our honor and service, to elect others in the places vacant, who for their birth, courage, fidelity, and affection to us, may be worthy to be admitted thereunto have therefore thought fit by our power, as Sovereign of the said Order (dispensing with the usual Ceremonies) to elect and chuse you our said right dear and entirely beloved Cousin Edward Count Palatine of the Rhine and Duke of Bavaria, to be Fellow and Companion of the said most Noble Order of the Garter, and do herewith send unto you the George and Ribband, part of the Ensigns thereof, by our trusty and well-beloved Servant Sir Edward Walker Knight, Garter, Principal King of Arms, which Ensigns we do hereby will and authorise you to wear, assuring you when it may conveniently be done, you shall have all other Ceremonies and additions incident to the same, fully perfected. And we no way doubt but that you by your Noble Virtues, Courage, and endeavours in military actions, and your affection and fidelity to us, will shew your self worthy thereof, and that you will faithfully, and with honor serve and assist us in all our just and warlike enterprises, as becomes a Companion of so Noble an Order. Given at the Castle of Saint Germain's on lay, this 19. day of September, in the first year of our Reign, 1649.

NUM. CIV.

A Letter authorising Edward Count Palatine of the Rhine, to use the Ensigns, and stile himself Knight of the Garter, as if he had been installed.

Ex Colle^t. E. W. G.

Charles R.

Charles the Second by the grace of God, &c. and Sovereign of the most Noble Order of the Garter. To our right dear and entirely beloved Cousin, Edward Count Palatine of the Rhine, Duke of Bavaria, Greeting; We having duly considered the eminence of your birth, your near relation to us in blood, and the great hopes and expectation that we have of your courage, affection, and inclination to serve and assist us, were pleased upon Sunday the 19. of September past, to send unto you the George and Ribband, part of the Ensigns of the said most Noble Order of the Garter, by our trusty and well-beloved Servant Sir Edward Walker Knight, Garter, Principal King of Arms, together with our Letters, declaring that we had chosen you Fellow and Companion of the said most Noble Order, and authorising you to wear the same. And having since duly considered, that it is not possible at present to have all other the additions and Ceremonies fully perfected; we have, as Sovereign of the said Order, thought it fit to dispence

APPENDIX.

dispenſe with the ſame, and do therefore hereby further will and authoriſe you, to wear and uſe the Garter or Ribband on your left Leg, the Glory or Star of Silver, embroidered with St. George's Croſs within a Garter, upon your Cloak and upper Garments, as likewiſe the great Collar of the Order upon ſuch days as are accuſtomed; to uſe the Garter about your Arms, and to ſtile your ſelf Knight and Companion of the ſaid moſt Noble Order of the Garter, as fully as if you had been inſtalled in our Caſtle of Windſor, where (when it ſhall pleaſe God to reſtore us to the poſſeſſion thereof) you ſhall formally be inveſted and receive the Habit, and all other the above recited Ornaments of the ſaid moſt Noble Order. Given at our Court in the Caſtle Elizabeth, in our Iſland of Jerſey, this ſixteenth of October, in the firſt year of our Reign 1649.

NUM. CV.

A Letter ſignifying Election, &c. ſent to Count Marchin.

Ex præſ. Collect.

Charles R.

Charles by the grace of God King of England, Scotland, France, and Ireland, Defender of the Faith, &c. and Sovereign of the moſt Noble Order of St. George called the Garter. To our right truſty and right well-beloved John Gaſpar Ferdinand de Marchin Earl of Gravelle, Marqueſs of Clairmont d'Antrague, Baron of Dunes, Marchin, Mezers and Modane, Captain General for the ſervice of his Catholick Maſteſty, and Lieutenant General of all our Forces both by Sea and Land in all our Dominions, Greeting. Whereas our Royal Progenitors and Predeceſſors Kings of England, have in all times ſince the Inſtitution of the ſaid moſt Noble Order, by our moſt victorious Anceſtor King Edward the Third, elected and choſen into the Fellowship thereof many Emperors, Kings, and Sovereign Princes, and other eminent and illuſtrious perſons, as well Strangers as their own Subjects, who for the nobleneſs of their Extradition, accompanied with heroick virtues (eſpecially in Military Enterpriſes) have been held worthy and capable thereof. Whereupon we having duly conſidered the nobleneſs of your Birth, and Extradition, with the eminent and famous actions performed by you, in the ſeveral Military Commands you have for many years been employed, together with your great zeal and affection to engage your ſelf in our ſervice and cauſe, for the recovery of our juſt rights, have thereupon held it fit and agreeable by ſome ſignal teſtimony of our favour, to evidence the great value and eſteem that we have both of your perſon, merit, and affection. To which end, theſe are to certify you, that we by our power, as Sovereign of the ſaid moſt Noble Order (and by the conſent of all the Companions thereof here preſent) have

elected and choſen, and do elect and choſe you our ſaid right truſty and right well-beloved John Gaſpar Ferdinand de Marchin, Earl of Gravelle, &c. Fellow, Peer, and Companion of the ſaid moſt Noble Order, and do herewith inveſt you with the Garter and George, the moſt peculiar Enſigns of the ſame. And becauſe at this time ſome other Additions and Ceremonies incident thereunto cannot be fully performed, we do hereby for the preſent, by our Sovereign power diſpenſe therewith, and do will and authoriſe you at all times hence forward, to wear the Garter about your left Leg, the Image of St. George hanging about your Neck, the Star or Glory of Silver with St. George's Croſs embroidered within a Garter upon your Cloak or upper Garment, at likewiſe to uſe the Garter about your Arms, and to ſtile your ſelf Knight and Companion of the ſaid moſt Noble Order, in as ample manner as if you had been formally inſtalled in our Caſtle of Windſor, the proper place for that Solemnity; we no way doubting, but that by your future, as well as precedent, actions you will fully declare your ſelf to be highly worthy of the honour of being Knight and Companion of ſo Noble an Order: And theſe our Letters of Election and diſpenſation ſhall be to you for the ſame your ſufficient and full authority. Given under our Signet at our Court in the City of Antwerp, this twenty ſixth day of February 1658. in the tenth year of our Reign.

NUM. CVI.

A Warrant to Garter, for delivery of the Garter and George to William Prince of Orange.

Ex eod. Collect.

Charles R.

Truſty and well-beloved, we greet you well, Whereas we have made choice of our moſt dear Nephew the Prince of Orange, to be a Companion of the moſt Noble Order of the Garter; we do hereby authoriſe you, according to your Office, to deliver unto our ſaid moſt dear Nephew the ſaid Order, and our Letters, with ſuch Ceremony as is uſual, and as may be performed in the place where he is: And for ſo doing this ſhall be your Warrant. Given at the Palace Royal in Paris the 25-day of April, 1653. in the fifth year of our Reign.

To our truſty and well-beloved Sir Edward Walker, Knight, Garter King of Arms.

NUM.

APPENDIX.

NUM. CVII.

The Sovereign's Letter sent with the Garter and George to the Prince Elector of Brandenburg.

Ex eod. Collect.

MON Frere, L'assurance que j'ay de vostre Amitié, par plusieurs témoignages que vous m'en avez donnez, m'oblige à rechercher tous les moyens qui seront capables de l'entretenir & de la conserver. Et pour ce sujet j'ay trouvé à propos, comme Souverains du tresancien & tresnoble Ordre de la Jartiere, de vous eslire l'un des Chevaliers, Pairs, & Compagnons du dit Ordre, estimant par la de faire une plus estroite Amitié avec vous, & d'augmenter le bien & la prosperité de cette tresnoble Societé, laquelle par plusieurs siecles a eu non seulement les Roys d'Angleterre, nos Predecesseurs pour Souverains, mais aussi l'honneur d'avoir plusieurs Empereurs, Roys & Princes Estrangers pour Compagnions, comme aussi de vous donner par la une Marque evidente de mon affection, & de la haute esteime que j'ay de vos merites, & de vostre personne: Et pour confirmation de la dite Election je vous envoie par le Sieur Chevalier de Walker, Jartiere Roy d'Armes, la Medaille dite le George, la Jartiere & l'Estoille pour les porter a la maniere accoustumée: assavoir la Medaille autour du Corps, la Jartiere à la Jambe gauche, & l'Estoille sur le coste gauche de la Casaque ou du Manteau. Le dit Sieur de Walker vous assurera de ma part que je desire avec passion de vous tesmoigner que je suis,

A Paris le 23. de
Janvier 1654.

A mon Frere Monsieur
le Marquis de Branden-
burg, P. Electeur du
Saint Empire.

Mon frere

Vostre bien affectionné
Frere & Cousin,

Carolus R.

NUM. CVIII.

A Warrant to Garter to deliver the Garter and George to the Prince Elector of Brandenburg.

Ex eod. Collect.

Charles R.

TRUSTY and well-beloved we greet you well. Whereas we have made choice of our good Brother the Marquis of Brandenburg to be one of the Knights, Peers, and Companions of the most Noble Order of the Garter: These are to require you to repair with what convenient haste you can to the Court of the said Marquis, and there to deliver unto him our Letters signifying our said Election (which we herewith send you) together with the Garter, and other

Ensigns of the said Order. And that you perform the same with such Ceremony as is usual, and as that place can afford: And for so doing this shall be your Warrant. Given at the Palace Royal in Paris the 23. day of January 1654. in the fifth year of our Reign.

To our trusty and well-beloved
Sir Edward Walker Knight, Gar-
ter, King at Arms.

NUM. CIX.

A Warrant for delivery of the Collar for the Prince Elector of Brandenburg.

*Ex Libro vocat. The Book of War-
rants in the Jewel-house.*

Charles R.

OUR will and pleasure is, that you forthwith deliver unto our trusty and well-beloved Servant Sir Edward Walker Knight, Garter, Principal King of Arms, one great Collar of our Order of the Garter, with a George appendant thereat, to be by him sent and delivered unto the Prince Elector of Brandenburg, formerly elected a Companion of our most Noble Order of the Garter: And for your so doing, this shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge. Given at our Court at Whitehall the 25. of February 1662.

Ex mandato.

To our trusty and well-
beloved Servant Sir Gil-
bert Talbot Knight, Ma-
ster of our Jewel-house,
and to the Officers thereof.

De Vic Cancell.

NUM. CX.

A Warrant for Garter to send the Habit to the Elector of Brandenburg.

Ex Collect. E. W. G.

Charles R.

TRUSTY, &c. Whereas we have formerly elected our good Brother and Cousin the Elector of Brandenburg, to be Knight and Companion of our most Noble Order of the Garter, and have by you sent him our Letters, together with the Garter and Image of St. George, authorising you to deliver the same. And now seeing by our happy Restauration, we have had the opportunity together with the Companions of our said Order, to perform the Ceremonies of Installation, and to solemnize the Feast of St. George in our Castle of Windelot, the proper place for doing thereof, and have now two years past ordered you to place the Achievements of the said Elector of Brandenburg, over his Stall in the Chapel of our said Castle, and did then

APPENDIX.

in respect of the shortness of our time, and other important affairs, dispence with the formal Installation of the said Elector and other Princes, with Declaration that it should not hereafter be brought into example. We therefore intending to compleat our favour, have caused the full Habit of our said Order to be delivered unto you, together with the great Collar of the Order; all which We do hereby will and authorise you, to send and convey, together with our Letters unto the said Elector of Brandenburg, We at this time dispensing with the sending an Ambassador and your self Garter King of Arms, to deliver the same according to former Precedents. And for your so doing, this shall be your sufficient Warrant. Given, &c. the 8. of April, 1663.

To our trusty and well-beloved
Sir Edward Walker Knight,
Garter, Principal King of
Arms.

NUM. CXI.

Sir Edward Walker's Letter to Prince Maurice of Nassau, sent with the Habit for the Prince Elector of Brandenburg.

Ex Collect. E. W. G.

Monseigneur,

J'AY receu avec les Lettres de sa Majesté le Roy mon Maistre tout l'habit du tresnoble Ordre de la Jarriere, pour son Altesse le Prince Electeur de Brandenburg, avec Ordre, de les envoyer a votre Altesse, que par vos moyens soient adressez a son Altesse Electoral a contient une pair au corps de velour cramoisi, une manteau de velour bleu, le grand Collier du tresnoble Ordre d'or, avec l' image de St. George emmaillee pesante 30 onces, & un bonnet de velour noir. Comment on se doit porter le Papier donna plus de satisfaction a son Altesse Electoral, Quoy que l' Habit n'est jamais porté si non qu' a la Feste de St. George, mais le grand Collier s'est porté par le Souverain & Compagnons, pendant les Prières du matin sur tous les jours mentionez dans le papier pour le liure des Statutes de l' Ordre, quand ils seront reformez. Je tascherai avec tout soin de les envoyer en attendant j'ay envoyé tout l'habit a mon cher amis le Chevalier Guillaume Davidfon de les envoyer a vostre Altesse de qui vous receurez cela, & la lettre de sa Majesté & je n'en doute point bien tost tout le reste & puis je prie humblement vostre Altesse de les adresser a son Altesse Electoral, avec les tres-humbles & obeissantes seroices de luy, qui fera toute sa vie, de son serenissime Altesse Electoral & de vostre

Monsieur

De Londres le x. jour
d'Avril, 1663.

le tres-humble & tres-
obeissant Serviteur,

Ed. Walker, Garter.

NUM. CXII.

Prince Maurice of Nassau his Letter to Sir Edward Walker, upon the Receipt of the Habit for the Prince Elector of Brandenburg.

Ex eod. Collect.

Monseigneur,

*J'AY receu la vostre du 10. d'Avril, que m'a-
vez fait l'honneur de m'escire dans la
quelle vous me donnez advisement, que vous
envoyeres tout l' Habit du tresnoble Ordre de la
Jarriere a Monsieur Baronet Davison, lequel ha-
bit je viens de recevoir de luy a ce moment, Je
suis assez persuade, qui n'a pas tenu a vous, de
ne l'avoir pas envoyé plus tost j'ay ne pas man-
qué d'envoyer la vostre ainsi bien, que celle de sa
Majesté a son Altesse Electoral de Branden-
bourg, & ne manqueray pas non plus, d'envoyer
le subdit habit avec la premiere occasion a sub-
dite son Altesse, je suis assure que tout cecy sera
tres-agreable a son Altesse Electoral, & qu'elle
en sera fort rejouye de le venir, d'autant qu'elle
la desiré long temps, Quant a moy, je vous re-
mercie de la peine prise, & vous assure, que je
seray a jamais,*

Monsieur,

A la Hay ce 10.
de Juin 1663.

Vostre tres-humble
Serviteur,

Maurice P. de Nassau.

A Monsieur
Monsieur E. Walker Jarriere
Premier Roy d'Arms, a Londres.

NUM. CXIII.

A Letter to the Sovereign from the Prince Elector of Brandenburg, acknowledging his Receipt of the Habit of the Order.

Ex ipso Autographo.

Monseigneur mon tres-honoré Cousin,

A Tant toujours estimé, comme je dois, l'hon-
neur que vostre Majesté m'a fait autre-
fois de me recevoir dans la Societé de son Ordre
de la Jarriere, Je ne scaurois reconnoistre, qu'a-
vec un respect extreme, le present de l'habit tout
entier de cet Ordre, qu'il luy a plu de faire ad-
dresser à mon Cousin Monsieur le Prince de Nas-
sau, & par lequel Elle a voulu achever entiere-
ment les obligations infinies que je luy ay d'estre
du nombre d'une si illustre compagnie. Je suis
en impatience de recevoir cette chere marque d'af-
fection & de bien veillance de vostre Majesté la
suppliant de croire, que j'en conserveray eternelle-
ment la memoire, & que je n'auray de plus
forte

APPENDIX.

forte passion au monde, que de confirmer de plus en plus la confiance dont Elle me donne toujours tant de nouveaux témoignages, & de faire voir en toutes sortes d'occasions combien je suis

Monseigneur mon tres-honore
Consin,

De Konigsberg ce 4. De vostre Majesté
Juin, l'an 1663. Le tres-humble &
obeissant Serviteur

Frederick-Guillaume Electeur de
Brandebourg.

A la Majesté le Roy de
la grande Bretagne.

NUM. CXIV.

A Certificate from Charles Duke of
Burgundy, of his receiving the Order
of the Garter.

Ex amplo Cod. penes Johannem Vin-
cent, gen. fol. 175.

Charles, par la grace de Dieu, Duc de Bourgoigne, de Lantrun, de Braban, de Lembrogh, & de Lucembourg, Conte de Flandres, d'Artois, & de Bourgoigne, Palatine de Hennault, de Hollande, de Zelande, & Namur, Marquis du Saint Empire, Seigneur de Frieze, de Sallins, & de Mallins, Certifions & faisons scavoir a tous, que par les mains de Messire Galinard, Seigneur de Duras Chevalier, Thomas Vaghan, Tresorier de la Chambre, Maistre Jehan Russel, Docteur en decret, Archidiaque de Berckshire, & Jarretiere Roy d'Arms, conseillers & Ambassadeurs de tres-hault, & tres-puissant Prince, nostre tres-honouré frere le Roy d'Angleterre, Souverain de l'Ordre de la Jarretiere, pour ce envoyés devers nous, nous avons aujourd'hui receu son dit Ordre de la Jarretiere, ensemble le Manteau, & autres Ornaments, & choses, au dit Ordre appartenans, & acoustumes. Et avec ce, avons en leurs mains fait le serment a ce requis, & pertinent, selon les estatuz d'icelluy Ordre, le tout soubs les conditions, & modifications sur ce advisees, & faictes, entre luy & nous; Donnée en nostre ville de Gand, soubs nostre grant Seal, le 4. jour de Fevrier, l'an de grace, Mil cccc. lxix.

Par Monseigneur le Duc.

NUM. CXV.

Another from Ferdinand Prince of
Spain.

MS. penes E. W. G. f. 16. b.

Ferdinand, par la grace de Dieu, Prince & Infante des Espagnes, Archiduc d'Aulric, Duc de Bourgoigne, d'Etlic, de Carnice, de Carmole, &c. Certifions, & faisons scavoir a tous, que par les mains de Messire Henry

Seigneur de Morley, Maistre Edoward Lee, Docteur en Theologie, Archidiaque de Colchester, Autmosiner, Messire Guillaume Huyfey Chevalier, & de Messire Thomas Wnothelley, Chevalier, dit Jarretier, Principal Roy d'Armes des Angloys, Ambassadeurs, & Conseillers de tres-hault, tres-excellent & tres-puissant Prince, nostre tres-honorable Seigneur, & Oncle, le Roy d'Angleterre, &c. Defenseur de la Foy, Seigneur d'Irlande, & Souverain de le tresnoble Ordre de Saint George, nommée la Jarretiere, pour ce envoyés devers nous; Avons ce jourd'hui viii. de Decembre, jour de nostre Dame, receu son dit Ordre de Saint George, nommé la Jarretiere, ensemble les Jarretiere, Manteau, Habit, Colier, & autres ornemens, au dit Ordre appartenans, & acoustumes. Et avec ce, avons en leurs mains, fait le serment, a ce requis & pertinent, selon les Statutz d'icelluy Ordre de Saint George, le tout soubs les conditions, & modifications sur ce advisees, & faictes entre le dit Seigneur le Roy & nous; C'est assavoir, de porter les Colier, & Jarretiere, aucunes fois en l'an a nostre plaisir. Item, quant seront en quelque lieu, ou place, non convenable, Ou que n'aurons loy d'oyr matynes le jour de Saint George, les pourrons par ung Prestre faire dire, en nostre presence. Et si pour aucun bien grant affaire, ou empeschement, que nous pourrois survenir, nous estions occupé le dit jour Saint George, En ce cas, ne serons tenu porter le dit habit, si non durant le service divin, Lequel achevé, pourrons incontinent oster & devestir icelluy, sans attendre jusques apres le dîner & souper. Toutefois, si pour les causes dissuadées, ne pourrons porter, le susdits habiiz, le dit jour Saint George entier, Lors voulons & promettons les porter a ung autre jour solempnel dedens l'an. Donnée en la ville de Newremberg, soubs nostre Nom, & Seal, le dit viii. jour de Decembre, l'an de grace, Mil, Cinq; Cens, ving, troys.

NUM. CXVI.

Another from the French King Francis the First.

Ex Orig. penes Camer. Scacchar.

Francçois, par la grace de Dieu, Roy de France, Seigneur de Genuës, Souverain du tresdigne Ordre de Monseigneur Saint Michel. A tous ceulx qui ces presentes lettres verront, salut: Comme Messire Arthur Plantaginet; Viconte de Lisle, Chevalier du tresdigne Ordre Monseigneur Saint George (Maistre Jean Tailleur, Docteur en loix, Archidiaque de Boukingham, Vice-chancellier d'Angleterre, Messire Nicolas Carew grant Escuyer d'Angleterre, Messire Anthoine Browne Chevalier, & Messire Thomas Wriothesley Jarretier, Chevalier, Premier Roy d'Arms du dit Ordre, Ambassadeurs commis & deleguez de la part de tres-hault, & tres-puissant Prince, Henry par la mesme grace, Roy d'Angleterre, Seigneur d'Hibernie, & Defenseur de la Foy, nostre trescher, & tresame frere,

APPENDIX.

frere, Cousin, perpetuel, allié, considéré, & bon compere. Nous ayant exhibé & présenté certaines Lettres Patentes, datées du xxii. jour d'Octobre Mil, Cinq, Cens, vingt & Sept, Signées Sampson : & scellées en cyre Rouge, du Seau du College d'icelluy tresdigne Ordre de Saint George, dit de la Jarretiere, par la teneur desquelles que avons fait lire pardenant nous & les Chevaliers de nostre Ordre Saint Michel estans les nous apparissoit les dissusdits Ambassadeurs avoir plain pouvoir, faculté & puissance de nous signifier, & presenter de la part de nostre dit trefcher frere & Cousin, Souverain d'icelluy tresdigne Ordre Saint George. (Et aussi de l'amiable association d'icelluy l'ellection, uniquement faicte de nous, par iceulx Souverain & Chevaliers d'icelluy tresdigne Ordre) Et de nous prier & requerrir icelle ellection accepter, & prendre le Manteau, Collier, & autres insignes de Chevalerie, du dit tresdigne Ordre, & faire le serment selon les Articles contenuz au livre des statutz du dit Ordre, & que ont acoustumé de jurer & promettre les Chevaliers d'icelluy. Et si la forme des dits sermens, ne nous estoit agreable, leur estoit donné pouvoir de nous dispenser de faire les dits sermens, ou partie d'iceulx, telz qu'il appartiendroit, soy contenant de nostre simple foy & parolle. Savoir faisons, que nous ayans esgarde & consideration a la trefcordialle, & trefchierie amour, alliance indissoluble, & confederation perpetuelle, qui est entre nostre dit trefcher & trefame Frere, Cousin, Allié perpetuel, & bon compere & nous, Et que de sa part il a accepté l'ellection par nous, & noz freres faicte de sa personne au tresdigne Ordre Saint Michel, du quel nous sommes Souverain, Avons pour ces causes, & autres a ce nous mouvans accepté, & acceptions icelluy tresdigne Ordre de Saint George, dit la Jarretiere (& ce fait nous sommes revestuz, & affiblez des Manteau & autres Insignes du dit Ordre a nous presentez & livrezz par les dissusdits Ambassadeurs) Et apres les remercyemens en telz cas requiz, avons fait le serment en la forme, & maniere qui sensuyt.

"Nous Francoys par la grace de Dieu Roy de France, Seigneur de Genes & Souverain de l'Ordre de Saint Michel, promettons en parolle de Roy, de garder, observer, & a nostre pouvoir, entretenir les Statutz, & Ordonnances du tresdigne Ordre Saint George, nommé de la Jarretiere ; En ce qu'ilz sont compatibles non contraires, ne defroians a ceulx de nostre dit tresdigne Ordre de Saint Michel, & pareillement des Ordes, que par cy devant pourroions avoir eus le nosre Prince. En tesmoing de ce nous avons fait mettre, le Seau du dit Ordre aux presentes signées de nostre main. Donné a Paris le xx. jour de Novembre, l'an de grace Mil, Cinq, Cens, vingt & sept, & de nostre Regne le treziesme.

NUM. CXVII.

Another from Emanuel Duke of Savoy.

Ex Colloq. Ed. Bysshe Clarencieux.

JE Francois Rossier Savoysey, Secretaire de tresbault, puissant, & excellent Seigneur, & Prince, Monseigneur Emanuel Philibert, par la grace de Dieu, Duc de Savoy Re. general, & Lieutenant de l'Empereur, atteste, fait foy, & certifie, Comme Monsieur de Clinton & Say, Chevalier de l'Ordre, d'Angleterre, qu'on dit de la Jarretiere, & de Compagnie le Sieur Jarretiere Roy d'Arms du dit Ordre, Ambassadeurs, Commisshonneurs, & Procureurs speciaux du Roy, & de la Roynie d'Angleterre, ont ce jourd'uy presente, baillé, & donné de par leurs Majestés, la Jarretiere, & le Manteau, & autres Enseignes & correspondants a mon dit Seigneur le Duc de Savoy, avec toutes les Ceremonies & Solempnités deues & acoustumées. Et de plus ont receu du dit Seigneur Duc, le serment, jouxte la forme, & maniere des Statutz, du dit Ordre, & des Lettres de pouvoir, qu'ils ont apporté, soubs-escrites des mains propres d'iceulx Roy & Roynie d'Angleterre, seellées du Seel du dit Ordre de la Jarretiere, Données en leur Palais de Westminster, le dix sepiesme d'Octobre 1554. lesquelles Lettres leues l'ay par Commandement de mon dit Seigneur, & Maistre a haulte voix, & a louange public, quant faicte s'est la susdite presentation, & le dit serment, presents a ce assistans & appellez baults & puissans Seigneurs le Prince d'Oranges, les Comtes de Lalaing, & d'Arceberg, & le Seigneur de Bossu, eulx trois des Chevaliers de l'Ordre de la Toyson, les Seigneurs Antoine Doria, Marquis de Saint Estienne de Lavanto, du Conseil de l'Empereur, & general Capitaine des ses Galleres, & Antoine de Drungua, & plusieurs autres tesmoings, fait au Camp & ailleurs d'aussy dans la Chambre de mon dit Seigneur le Duc, le sixiesme jour de Novembre l'an de grace prins a la nativité Mil, Cinq, Cens, Cinquantequat.

Rossier.

NUM. CXVIII.

Another from the French King Henry the Third.

MS. penes Arthur. Com. Anglesey, p.4.

HENRY by the grace of God, King of France, and Poland, to all those to whom these Presents shall come, Greeting. We give you to understand, that forasmuch as it hath seemed good to the Queen of England, our right dear and right well-beloved good Sister and Cousin, Chief and Sovereign of the Order of the Garter, and to the Fellow-Brethren, Knights, and Companions

APPENDIX.

Companions of the same Order, for the confirmation of the mutual and brotherly amity between us and our said good Sister, to chuse and associate us into the Company of Knights of the same Order, and for that effect hath deputed towards us our dear and well-beloved Cousin the Earl of Derby, Knight, and Companion of the same Order, to whom, and Sir Edward Stafford Knight her Ambassador resident with us, she hath given power by her Letters Patens of the 20. day of January last past, to present and give unto us, on her behalf, the Garter, the Mantel, and other Ensigns of the same Order, which she hath sent us, which they have done with the Ceremonies and Solemnities in such case requisite and accustomed: For these causes, liking the said Election and Association, We have accepted and do accept the said Order of the Garter with honor, and do promise to keep the Statutes thereof, which also have been given us in writing upon the same assurance, that the said Lady the Queen our good Sister hath them given Us, and the Declaration and Protestation which we have made, that we be not constrained and bound unto things contrary and derogatory to our Religion Catholick, Greatness, and Majesty Royal, and to the Statutes and Ordinances of our two Orders of the blessed Holy Spirit and of St. Michael, as it is contained in the All of our Oath, which thereof we have made and given. In witness whereof, we have signed these presents with our hand, and thereunto caused to be put our Seal. Given at Paris the 12. day of March in the year of our Lord 1585. and of our Reign the 11.

Henry.

NUM. CXIX.

Another from *Gustavus Adolphus* King of Sweden.

Sir Tho. Rowe's Journal, p. 208.

Gustavus Adolphus Dei gratiâ Suecorum, Gothorum, & Vandalorum Rex, Magnus Princeps Finlandiæ, Dux Esthoniæ & Careliæ, Ingricque Dominus, &c. Omnibus hæc litteras lecturis vel audituris, Salutem. Quandoquidem complacuit serenissimo, ac potentissimo Principi Domino Carolo, Dei gratiâ Magnæ Britannici, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ Regi, Fidei Defensori, fratri, consanguineo, & amico nostro charissimo, nobilissimi Ordinis Auræ Periselididis Magistro, reliquosq; inchocto cæui Equitum ac Commilitonum illustrissimi hujus Ordinis in expressissimam amoris tesseram, ac mutuam inter nos initam amicitiam artioribus necessitudinis vinculis, devinciendam & confirmandam, Nos etiam eligere, & associare in Collegium Equitum hujus Ordinis, atque in bene finem Oratores, Procuratores, & indubitatos Legatos suos constituere atque ablegare ad nos, Nobilissimum virum de conclavi suo Dominum Jacobum Spens de Wormeston, Equitem auratum & spectabiles

vivos Petrum Young Armigerum, ex Nobilibus in Cubiculo presentie suæ ministrantibus unum, & Henricum Saintgeorgium Armigerum, ex Heraldis suis ad Arma unum, plenariis ipsis potestate concessis ac diplomate suo abinde ipsis fide adstruâ & munitâ publico Sigillo Ordinis, dato vigesima quartâ Junii jam elapsi, deferendi, donandi, atque tradendi nobis ipsam auream Periselidem, Torquem rosatum, Sancti Georgii Imagunculas, reliquasq; vestes trabecas in solenni harum Cereemoniarum, celebratione debite requisitas, & a suis serenitate ad nos transmissas. Idcirco hæc omnia ab ipsis ritè administrata & peracta agnoscimus & fatemur, ac presentium Literarum tenore omnibus testatum volumus, nostri electionem & assumptionem in hujus Collegii sudalitiū nobis gratissima fuisse, ac fore: Nosq; Insignia Ordinis decenti cum honore suscepisse, ac sancte in leges, ac Statuta ejus per procuratores nostros, loco ac tempore præstituti, juratos, ea ipsâ cautione, quæ a sue serenitatis deputatis nobis scripto exhibita fuit, videlicet, Nos religiose observaturos Articulos hujus Ordinis in omnibus quæ Religioni à nobis professæ, dignitati, ac Majestati nostre Regiæ nullatenus derogarent, aut aliis Articulis, & ordinibus quos antehac suscepimus adversarentur, atque hanc ipsissimam juramenti nostri formulam esse cupimus, quando solennis conestatio per procuratores nostros nostro nomine futura est, & quando ejus exemplar in acta referri contigerit. In cuius rei testimonium presentes proprii nostrâ manu subscriptas Sigilli Regii appositione communiri jussimus. Alium in Castris nostris ad Wormdit, die sextâ Mensis Octobris, Anno supra Millesimum sexcentesimo vigesimo septimo.

Gustavus Adolphus.

NUM. CXX.

Another from *Charles* King of Sweden.

Ex ipso Autographo.

Carolus Dei Gratiâ Suecorum, Gothorum, Vandalorumq; Rex & Princeps hereditarius, Magnus Princeps Finlandiæ, Dux Scaviæ, Esthoniæ, Livoniæ, Careliæ, Bremæ, Verde, Stetini Pomeraniæ, Castubiæ, & Vandaliciæ, Princeps Rugiæ, Dominus Ingrici & Vismariæ nec non Comes Palatinus Rheni, Bavarici, Juliaci, Cliviæ, & Montium Dux.

Omnibus hæc lecturis vel audituris salutem, Quandoquidem complacuit serenissimo ac potentissimo Principi, Consanguineo, Amico & Federato nostro charissimo Domino Carolo, ejus nominis secundo, eadem gratiâ Magnæ Britannici, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ Regi, Fidei Defensori, & Nobilissimi Ordinis Auræ Periselididis Magistro, reliquosq; inchocto cæui Equitum ac Commilitonum, illustrissimi hujus Ordinis in expressissimam Amoris tesseram & mutuam inter nos initam amicitiam artioribus necessitudinis vinculis devinciendam & confirmandam, Nos etiam eligere & associare in collegium Equitum hujus Ordinis

x

atque

APPENDIX.

atque in hunc finem Oratores & indubitatos Procuratores suos constituere & oblegare Legatum suum extraordinarium Conciliarumq; suum Illustrum nobis sincerè dilectum Dominum Carolum Comitem Carlholensem, Vice-Comitem Howard de Morpeth, Baronem Dacre de Gililand, locum tenentem generalem in Comitatibus Westmorlandiæ & Cumbriæ, & spectabilem virum Dominum Henricum St. George & primariis officialibus suis ad Armarum, vulgo Richmond Herald, plenariâ ipsis potestate concessâ ac fide ipsis abunde astructâ, Diplomate publico Sigillo Ordinis, datâq; in Palatio Alb-aule apud Westminsterium vicesimo nono die Mensis Novembris Anno Domini nuper præterito Millesimo, sexcentesimo, sexagesimo octavo deferendi, donandi atque tradendi Nobis ipsam auream Periscelidem, torquem rosatum Sancti Georgii imaginuculas, reliquisque vestes trabecatas in solenni harum ceremoniarum celebratione debite requisitus & à Majestate suâ ad nos transmissas; Idcirco hæc omnia ab ipsis ritè administrata & peractâ agnoscimus & fatemur, ac presentium literarum tenore omnibus testatum volumus nostri Electionem & Assumptionem in hujus Collegii sodalium Nobis gratissimum fuisse ac fore. Nosq; insignia Ordinis decenti cum honore suscepisse, ac sanctè in Leges & Statuta ejus per procuratores nostros loco ac tempore præstituti juraturos eâ videlicet cautione, Nos religiose observaturos articulos hujus Ordinis in omnibus quæ Religionis à nobis professæ dignitati, ac Majestati nostræ Regiè nullatenus derogarent aut aliis Articulis & Ordinibus quos antehac suscepimus adversarentur: Quam ipsissimam juramenti nostri formulam esse cupimus, quando solennis contestatio per Procuratores Nostros Nostro Nomine futura, & quando ejus exemplar in acta referri contigerit. In cujus rei testimonium hæc honoratissime & charissime Matris nostræ, nec non ceterorum nostrorum Tutorum Regniq; Nostri Administratorum manibus subscriptas, Sigilloq; Nostro Regio communiri iussimus. Dabantur in Arce nostrâ Holmensi die 17. Augusti, Anno Millesimo sexcentesimo sexagesimo nono.

Hedcuig Ellenora R. S.

Petrus Brahe Comes in Wiflingsborg
R. S. Drotzetus.

VanderLinde loco R. S. Mariscal.

Gustaff Otto Steenbook R. S.
Archichalaf.

Magnus Gabriell de la Gardie
R. S. Cancellar.

Johan Gabriell Steenbook, loco
R. S. Thesaurarius.

NUM. CXXI.

Letters of Procoration to Peregrine Lord Willoughby of Eresby, from Frederick the Second King of Denmark.

MS. quarto penes W. le N. Cl. f. 25. b.

NOS Fridericus secundus, Dei gratiâ, Daniæ, Norwegiæ, Vandalorum, Gothorumq; Rex; Dux Slesvici, Hollatiæ, Stormariæ, ac Dietmarsiæ; Comes in Oldenburg, & Delmenhorst; Omnibus & singulis, ad quos hæc præsentis Literæ pervenerint, salutem: Cum placherit serenissime Principi, ac Domine, Domine Elizabethæ, dei gratiâ Angliæ, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ Regine, Fidei defensori, &c. Charissime consanguineæ, sorori, & confederatæ nostræ, suprema Principi, nobilissime, & antiquissime Societatis Militaris, quam Garterii Ordinem appellant: unâ cum ceteris omnibus, laudatissimi illius Collegii fratribus, & Commilitonibus, Nos in eundem numerum ascribere & copiare, atque ad magis honorificam ejusdem rei declarationem, mittere ad nos plenum habiitum, & ornatum predicti Nobilissimi Ordinis, per Clarissimum Dominum, Peregrinum, Baronem de Willoughby & Eresby, & celeberrimum virum, Gilbertum Dethick, Equitem auratum, Regem Armorum hujus Ordinis, Serenitatis suæ Legatos, & vicarios in eâ parte: quorum de manibus, nos eundem Ordinem, non minus grato animo, quam est nobis, à serenitate suâ delatus accepimus: Cumq; antiquissima ejusdem Ordinis Statuta ac Decreta, postulent, ut in propriâ personâ installerem, siue in aliquâ sede nobis destinatâ, collocemur in Collegiatis Sacello ejusdem Ordinis, intra Castellum Windlesorianum: quod quidem, cum commode, proficisci non possimus, ratione Regaliæ Majestatis, ad quam summo beneficio divini numinis evecti sumus, elegimus & sublimimus præfatum nobilissimum, & nobis imprimis dilectum virum, Dominum Peregrinum, Baronem de Willoughby & Eresby, Procuratorem nostrum, qui suppleret vices nostras in illâ parte, eaque perageret, quæ ad honoratissimi illius Ordinis, Decus, & Ornamentum, quoquo modo videbuntur pertinere, hæud aliter, atque ipsi faceremus, si præsentem essemus. Et quodcumque idem nobilissimus vir, ibi in hoc genere, nostrâ causâ præstiterit, tenemus & approbamus, ut ratum & Legitimum per præsentem, non minus, ac si nos ipsi in propriâ personâ præstitissemus. Salvâ tamen declaratione nostrâ, quæ ejus Regine serenitatis Legatis, quorum supra mentio est facta, in illâ traditione, sub manu, & Sigillo nostro tradita est. In cujus rei majorem fidem, & testimonium evidentiis, Literas hæc nostras patentes, & subscriptione, & Sigillo nostro firmavimus. Datæ in Castro nostro Croneburgâ, die decimo nono Mensis Augusti, Anno ab incarnatione Domini, ac Redemptoris nostri Jesu Christi, supra Millesimum quingentesimum octingentesimum secundo.

NUM.

APPENDIX.

NUM. CXXII.

John Count Palatine of the Rhyne, his
Letters of Procuracy to Sir Philip
Sidney.

Ex eod. MS. f. 124.

JEan Casimire, par la grace de Dieu, Conte
Palatin de Rhin; Duc de Baviere, &c. A
tous ceulx, qui ces presentes Lettres verront, Sa-
lut : Comme la treshaute, trespuissante, & tres-
excellente Princeesse, Elizabeth, Roynie d'Angle-
terre, France, & Irlande, Souveraigne du tres-
noble Ordre de la Jarretiere, de sa grace & fa-
veur speciale, par l'adviz, & consentement de
Conferes Chevalliers, & Compagnons, du dit
tresnoble Ordre, nous a esleu Chevalier, & Com-
pagnon d'iceluy Ordre, en son Palais à Westmin-
ster, l'huitiesme jour de ce present mois de Febru-
rier ; Nous voulans, & desirans tresaffectionne-
ment la dite Election sortir son due effect, & que
tout ce soit fait, touchant les Ceremoines de
notre Installation à Windesore, à quoy nous som-
mes tenus, par les Ordonnances, & Chapitres du
dit Ordre. Et neantmoins, par les grandes oc-
cupations, & affaires, qu'avons presentement n'y
puissions bonnement comparoître en personne,
Comme toutes fois, nous voudrions, & desirons ;
pour ce est il, que nous confians en la feauté, dis-
cretion, diligence & grand preudhomme de nostre
bien aimé, Messire, Philippe Sidney Chevalier,
lequel avons aymé de long temps & aymons,
avons ordonné, commis, & député, Ordonnans,
Commissions, & Deputons, par ces presentes,
notre Procureur, & Deputé especial, pour de par
Nous, & en nostre Nom comparoître à Windesore, à
la prochaine assemblée des Chevalliers du dit
Ordre, & à y estre installé, tenir lieu pour nous,
faire des offrandes & solempnités dues, & ac-
costumées en tel cas. Et en outre de faire à la
dite Souveraigne, le Serment selon la forme, &
maniere des Statuts du dit Ordre, & tous au-
tres choses accomplir, exercer, & expedier, que à
luy semblera estre necessaires en ceste partie, tout
ainsi que faire devrions, & pourrions, si present
y estions en nostre personne ; Promettons tenir
ferme, & agreable tout ce qu'il fera, ou dira,
touchant nostre Installation. En Tesmoignage
de quoy à ces presentes Lettres, avons fait mettre
notre Seau le xii. jour de Fevrier, l'Année de
Grace 1579.

NUM. CXXIII.

Letters of Procuracy to the Sieur de
Chartes from the French King Henry
the Fourth.

Ex Colle. W. le N. Cl.

HENRY, par la grace de Dieu, Roy de France,
& de Navarre, à nostre cher, & bien aimé,
le Sieur de Chartes, Commander de L'Ormetau,
Conseilleur en nostre Conseil d'Etat, Capitaine

de Cinquante hommes d'Armes de nos Ordonna-
ces; Gouverneur de nostre Ville de Dieppe, &
l'un de nos Lieutenants Generalls au Gouverne-
ment de Normandie, Salut : Comme par les
Statuts de l'Ordre de la Jarretiere, auquel de l'an
mil, Cinq cens quatre vingt seize, nous avons
esté associés par la Roynie d'Angleterre, nostre
treschere, & tresamie, bonne Soeur, & Cousin, Il
soit porté que Estrangers Chevalliers du dit Ordre
debuent envoyer, apres la reception de la dite
Jarretiere, & du Collier, & Habit que leur est en-
voié, par la Souverain du dit Ordre, & qu'ils an-
ront certifié avoir le dit Jarretiere, Collier, &
Habit, un suffisient Deputé & Procureur, selon
l'estat de son Seigneur, & Maistre, moyennans,
qu'il soit Chevalier sans reproche, pour estre mis
en sa place ; & y estant faire son serment, & y
estre admis, par & au nom de son dit Seigneur,
& Maistre : Scavoir vous faisons, que nous de-
sirans, pour le respect, que nous portons à la Roynie,
notre dite Soeur & Cousine, & l'estime que nous
faisons du dit Ordre, satisfaire, qu'a nous est,
au contenu des diis Statuts, en ce que touche
la dite prise de possession, & prestation de ser-
ment & recognoissance, que pour cest effect nous
ne pourrons faire meilleur, ou plus convenable
election, que de vostre personne pour les bonnes, &
louables qualitez qui sont en vous, & les tes-
moignages que vous avez rendus, en divers oc-
casions, de vostre affection au bien, & avantage
de nos affaires & service, vous avons Commis,
& Deputé, Commissions, & Deputons par ces
presentes signées de nostre main, pour vous tran-
sporter en Angleterre, & vous trouver a la pro-
chain ceremonie, qui se fera du dit Ordre, pour
prendre possession de nostre place en iceluy, selon
la forme ordinaire, & si besoigne est, faire le
serment en nostre Nom, ainsi que l'on a accous-
tumé de faire, gardant au surplus les solempni-
tes en tel cas requises & generalment faire
tout ce, que vous adviserez necessaire pour l'effect
dessus, ores qu'il y eust chose qui requist mande-
ment plus special qu'il n'est contenu en ces diis
presentes, par lesquelles de ce faire, vous avons
donné, & donnons plain pouvoir, puissance, au-
thorité, commission, & mandement special, Car
tel est nostre plaisir. Donné à Paris le vingti-
esme jour de Avrill, l'an de grace mil six cent,
& de nostre Reigne, le onziemesme.

Dunquille.

Henry.

NUM. CXXIV.

A Precedent of a Commission for In-
stallation of an Elect-Knight.

Ex lib. Nig. p. 315.

HENRICUS Dei gratiâ, invictissimus Rex
Angliæ & Franciæ Fidei Defensor, Do-
minus Hiberniæ, & Ordinis Divi Georgii supre-
mus, fidelibus ac prædilectis Cognatis nostris,
N. S. D. P.

Quoniam intelligimus, quod illustrissimus,
ac potentissimus Princeps, N. vel Dominus, ant
vir

APPENDIX.

vir inclutus N. quem nuper in Socium nostri Ordinis elegimus, non possit ipse commodè advenire, ut in Collegio nostro, de more, in sedem suam introducatur, & alias ibi Ceremonias ritè perimplet, juxta quod ex Statutis ipsis obligatur, & ob id virum bene nobilem ac honorandum N. misit, ut sedem nomine suo possideat, juramentum præstet, cæteraque perficiat, quæ Statuta requirunt. Nos idè nobiscum ista reputantes, Volumus & virtute presentium, eam vobis auctoritatem addimus, ut hunc procuratorem ejus, ac deputatum non solum admittere, sed & cætera quæque facere valeatis quæ ad Statuta, consuetudines ac laudabiles usus attinerent. Et hæc literæ nostræ vos tuebuntur. Sub Sigillo nostri Ordinis. N. die Mensis N. Anno regni nostri N.

NUM. CXXV.

A Commission for the Installation of
Guido Ubaldus Duke of Urbino.

Ex Collect. W. D. N.

HENRY, by the grace of God, King of England and of France, and Lord of Ireland, Sovereign of the Noble Order of the Garter. To our right truly and right well-beloved Cousins, the Marquess of Dorset, The Earl of Surrey our Treasurer of England, and the Earl of Shrewsbury, Steward of our Household, Companions of the said Order, greeting. Forasmuch as we understand, that the right noble Prince Gwe de Ubaldus Duke of Urbino, who was heretofore elected to be one of the Companions of the said Noble Order, cannot conveniently repair into this our Realm, personally to be installed in the Collegial Church of that Order, and to perform other Ceremonies, wherunto by the Statutes of the said Order he is bound; But for that intent and purpose, hath sent a right honorable personage Balthasar de Castillione, Knight, sufficiently authorized as his Proctor, to be installed in his name, and to perform all other things for him, to the Statutes and Ordinances of the said Order requisite, and appertaining. We therefore in consideration of the premisses will, and by these presents give unto you license, full power and authority, not only to accept, and admit the said Balthasar, as Proctor for the same Duke, and to receive his Oath, and install him in the lieu and place, and for the said Duke, but also farther to do therein, as to the Statutes and laudable usages of the said Order it appertaineth, and this our writing shall be to you, and every of you sufficient discharge in that behalf. Given under the Seal of the said Noble Order of the Garter, at our Manor of Grenewiche, the vii. day of Novembre, the xxii year of our Reign.

NUM. CXXVI.

Another for the Installation of Emanuel Duke of Savoy.

Ex Collect. A. V. W.

PHILIP and Mary, by the grace of God, King and Queen of England, France, Naples, Hierusalem, and Ireland, Defenders of the Faith, Princes of Spain and Sicily; Archdukes of Austria; Dukes of Millayne, Burgundy, and Brabant; Counts of Halspurg, Flaunders, and Tyroll, and Sovereigns of the Noble Order of the Garter: To our right truly and well-beloved, the Lord Clynton, and the Lord Paget, Knights and Companions of the said Noble Order, Greeting. Forasmuch as we understand, that the right high and mighty Prince, and our entirely beloved Cousin, Emanuel Philibert, Duke of Savoy, and Prince of Piemont, &c. and our right truly and well-beloved Counsellor, the Lord William Howard of Effingham, high Admiral of England, were heretofore elected to be Knights and Companions of the said Noble Order of the Garter, which Emanuel Duke of Savoy, Prince of Piemont, &c. cannot conveniently repair unto our Castle of Windefore, personally to be installed in the Collegiate Chappel of that Order, and to perform other Ceremonies wherunto by the Statutes of the said Order he is bound; and for that cause hath sent a right noble personage Johan Thomas L'angusto des Contes de Stropiane sufficiently authorized as his Deputy and Proctor, to be installed in his name, and to receive his Oath, and to perform all other such things and Ceremonies for him, as to the Statutes and Ordinances of the said Order be requisite, and appertain. We therefore in consideration of the premisses, will, and by these presents give unto you, full power, license, and authority, not only to accept and admit the said Johan Thomas L'angusto des Contes de Stropiane, to be Deputy and Proctor for our said entirely beloved Cousin, the said Duke of Savoy, Prince of Piemont, &c. and to install him in the lieu of the said Duke, but also further to do therein, as to the Statutes and laudable usages of the said Noble Order, as touching a Proctor it appertaineth. And in semblable wise we will, authorize, and license you to admit, accept, and install, our said right truly and right well-beloved Counsellor, the Lord William Howard of Effingham, high Admiral of England; and further to do for his installing as to the Statutes of the said Noble Order it belongeth: And these our Letters shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge in this behalf. Given under the Seal of our Garter, at our Palace of Westminster the 29. day of January in the first and second year of our Reign, 1554.

NUM.

APPENDIX.

NUM. CXXVII.

* Another for the Installation of the
French King Charles the Ninth.

Ex eod. Collect.

Elizabeth, by the grace of God, &c.
To our right trusty, and right well-beloved
Cousin the Earl of Suffex, our right trusty and
right well-beloved Cousin and Counsellor the
Earl of Leicester, Master of our Horse; our right
trusty and well-beloved the Viscount Mounta-
gue; with our right trusty and well-beloved the
Lord Clynton, our high Admiral of England,
Knights and Companions of our Noble Order of
the Garter, Greeting. Forasmuch as We, with
other the Companions of the said Noble Order
assembled, did lately elect and chuse our dearest
and most entirely beloved Brother, the French
King, to be Knight and Companion of our said
Noble Order; and forasmuch as our said dear
Brother cannot, for divers causes, conveniently re-
pair to our collegiate Chappel, within our Castle
of Windesore; and for that cause hath sent a
right noble personage, the Lord Rambouillet one
of his ordinary Chamberlains, Knight of the
Order of Saint Michael, and Captain of fifty
ordinary men of Arms; sufficiently authorised
at his Deputy and Procurer, to be installed in his
name, and to receive his Oath, and to perform
all other such things and Ceremonies for him, as
to the Statutes and Ordinances of the said Or-
der be requisite and appertains. We therefore,
in consideration of the premises, will, and by
these presents give unto you full power and au-
thority, not only to accept and admit the said
Procurer; but also further to do therein as to
the Statutes and laudable usages of the said No-
ble Order, as touching a Procurer it doth ap-
pertain. And these our Letters shall be your suf-
ficient Warrant and discharge in this behalf.
Given under the Seal of our Order, at our Pa-
lace of Westminster, the 14. day of January in
the 8. year of our Reign.

NUM. CXXVIII.

Letters of notice to the Commissioners
appointed to Install the Duke of
Holstein by his Proxie.

Collect. A. V. W.

By the Queen.

Right trusty and well-beloved, We greet you
well; and whereas we have appointed
you, together with our right trusty, and well-
beloved, the Lord Hastings of Loughborow, to
be in Commission for the Instalment, in our Castle
of Windesore, of our dearest and most entirely
beloved Cousin, the Duke of Holstein by his Pro-
curer, the Viscount Hertford, being lately cho-
sen to be one of the Fellowship and Companions

of our Order of the Garter; We have thought
it good, not only to give you knowledge hereof by
these our Letters, but also to require you to make
your repair to our said Castle of Windesore, so as
you may be there on Saturday, the 14. day of
this month, to the end that upon Sunday next
the 15. day of this present Month of December,
he may proceed to the Installation of him by his
Procurer accordingly. Given under our Signet
at our Palace of Westminster the 12. day of De-
cember, in the third Year of our Reign.

To our right trusty and well-
beloved the Lord Pagit of
Beaufort, one of the Com-
panions of our Order.

The like Letter was directed to the Lord
Loughborow, the other Commissioner ap-
pointed for this Installation.

NUM. CXXIX.

Letters of notice to the Commissioners
for Installation of the French King
Charles the Ninth.

Ex eod. Collect.

By the Queen.

Right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin,
we greet you well. And whereas, we
have appointed you, with others the Compani-
ons of the most Noble Order of the Garter, to be
in Commission for the Installation in our Castle
of Windesore, of our dearest and most entirely be-
loved Brother the French King, by his Procurer
the Lord Rambouillet, being lately chosen to be
one of the Fellowship, and Companions of our Or-
der of the Garter; We have thought it good, not
only to give you knowledge hereof by these our
Letters, but also to require you to make your re-
pair to our said Castle of Windesore, so as you
may be there on Tuesday next the 15. day of
this present Month of January, to the end, that
on Wednesday he may proceed to his Installation
accordingly. Given under our Signet, at our Pa-
lace of Westminster the --- day of January in
the eight year of our Reign.

To our right trusty and
right well-beloved Cou-
sin the Earl of Suffex, one
of the Companions of
our Order.

The like Letter to the Earl of Leicester.
Viscount Mountague.
and Lord Clinton.

y

NUM.

APPENDIX.

NUM. CXXX.

A Warrant for materials for the Banner of the French King Henry the Second.

Ex Collec. E. W. G.

By the King.

Edward.

WE will and command you, that unto our trusty and well-beloved Servant Sir Gilbert Dethick Knight, alias Garter King at Arms, ye deliver or cause to be delivered, upon fight hereof, without delay, three yards of Cloth of Gold, two yards of Cloth of Gold Tissue, and 16 yards of Blue Velvet, which shall be for the Banner, for the Mantles of the Helmet, and the linyng of the same, for the Installation of Henry the French King, and that you content and pay for the Stuff, workmanship, and the embroidering of the said Banner. And these our Letters, &c. Given under our Signet at our Mannor of Greenwich, the 10. of May in the fifth year of our Reigne.

To our trusty and well-beloved Counsellor Sir Rans Sadleyere Knight, Master of our Great Wardrobe, or to his Deputy there.

NUM. CXXXI.

A Warrant to deliver Garter money to provide the Achievements of the said King.

Ex Collec. W. le N. Cl.

THE King's Majesty's pleasure is, that of such his Treasure as remains in your custody, to his Majesty's use, ye deliver unto Sir Gilbert Dethick Knight, alias Garter, King at Arms, for the provision of an Helm, garnished with fine Gold, a Crown of Copper gilt, an arming Sword, and Girdle to the same, and a Plate of metal, with the Arms of the French King engraven; which are for the Installation of the King's Majesty's good Brother, Henry the French King, the sum of twenty pounds; and these our Letters shall be your sufficient Warrant in that behalf. From Greenwich the 11. of May 1551.

Your loving friends

E. Somerset.	J. Warwick.
J. Bedford.	W. North.
E. Clinton.	W. Paget.
W. Herbert.	J. Gate.
W. Cecil.	

NUM. CXXXII.

A Warrant for the delivery of the Duke^e of Chevereux his Achievements to Garter.

Ex eod. Collec.

Charles R.

WE will and command you, forthwith to deliver, or cause to be delivered, unto our trusty and well-beloved Servant Sir William Seagar Knight, Garter, Principal King of Arms, for the installation of our well-beloved Cousin the Duke of Chevereux, these particulars hereafter mentioned; that is to say, one Helmet of Steel gilt with fine Gold, his Highness's Crest carved, and gilt, a pair of Mantles of Cloth of Gold lined with White Sattin, and spotted with Ermines, two Knobs and Tassels of Silk and Gold, a Sword, the Hilt, Pomell, and Chape gilt, the Scabbard and Girdle, Cloth of Gold, a great Banner of his Highness's Arms, wrought in Metal and in Oyl, a Cushion of Crimson Velvet fringed, and Tassels of Silk, one Dozen of Scutcheons on Paper in Metal, of his Highness's Arms, within a Garter, a Staff for the great Banner painted in Oyl, a Plate of Copper gilt, graven, and enamelled with his Highness's Arms, to be set upon his Highness's Stall at Windefore; and this our Letter shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge in this behalf, Given under our Signet, &c.

NUM. CXXXIII.

Another for the Achievements of Gustavus Adolphus King of Sweden.

Ex eod. Collec.

Charles R.

These are to will and command you to provide and deliver, or cause to be provided and delivered; to the use of the high and mighty Prince, Gustavus King of Sweden, against his Installation, these parcels following; viz. A great embroidered Banner of his Arms, of coloured Velvet, cyriched with Cloth of Gold, and Cloth of Silver, and Twilt of Venice Gold, Plates, and Purple, two yards and half of rich Cloth of Tissue for Mantles for his Helm, Scabbard, and Girdle, two yards of Cloth of Silver to line those Mantles, two yards and half of Purple Velvet for a Cushion with Fringe, and Tassels of Purple Silk and Gold, to bear his Robes upon, two Tassels also, with Knobs gilt, to hang at the ends of the Mantles; an arming Sword gilt, an open Helmet, with a royal Crown, and an Orb, and Cross on the top thereof gilt, with his Crest; a Book of Statutes of the Order, and a Plate of his Arms, and Stile to be set up in his Stall at Windefore: And these our Letters shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge in this behalf.

NUM.

APPENDIX.

NUM. CXXXIV.

A Warrant for delivery of materials for the *Atchievements* of the French King Charles the Ninth.

Ex lib. Warr. Dorm. in magno Gard-rob. Regis, tempore Eliz. Reg. p. 364.

Elizabeth R.

WE will and command you, to deliver to our well-beloved Servant David Smith, our Embroiderer, as much Blue Velvet, Cloth of Gold yellow with work, and Purple Cloth of Gold tissued with Silver, as shall suffice for the making and furnishing of one great double Banner, to be richly embroidered on both sides with the Arms of France, together with the Mantle, Helmet, Crest, Sword, and Scabbard, futable to the same Banner, for the installing of our right well-beloved Brother, Charles the Ninth French King; and that ye pay unto the said David Smith, as well for his workmanship, in the embroidery of the premises, as also for all such Fringe of Silk, and Gold, with Buttons and Tassels of like Silk and Gold, and for Venice Gold and Silk for the embroidering of the premises. Given at Westminster the last day of November, in the eighth year of our Reign.

To our well-beloved J. Fortescue, Esq;
Master of our Great Wardrobe.

NUM. CXXXV.

Another for the *Atchievements* of the French King Henry the Third.

Ex lib. Warr. particul. in pred. Gard-rob. tempore Eliz. Reg. p. 179.

Elizabeth R.

DELIVER to our well-beloved Servant Sir Gilbert Dethick, alias Garter King at Arms, as much Blue Velvet, Cloth of Gold yellow with work, and Purple Cloth of Gold, tissued with Silver, as shall serve to make one large Banner, richly embroidered on both sides, with the Arms of France, to make Mantlets, and cover the Scabbard, also the Helmet, Crest, Sword, and other Furniture of the same; and that ye pay for the embroidering of the same Banner, for Furls of Damask Gold, and for Venice Gold Fringe, and Passamain Lace of Gold with Silk, and all other necessaries, for the installing of the French King. Item, one Standard of Crimson and Blue Tassaty painted and gilded, with our Arms, and Cognisance, with Gold and Silver laid in Oyl, and for Silk Fringe for the same. Given at Westminster the 12. of June, in the 14. year of our Reign.

To our trusty J. Fortescue Esq;
Master of our Great Wardrobe.

NUM. CXXXVI.

A Warrant for the delivery of the *Atchievements* for the Prince of Denmark.

Ex Collect. E. W. G.

Charles R.

OUR will and pleasure is, that you forthwith deliver, or cause to be delivered, unto our trusty and well-beloved servant Sir Edward Walker Knight, Garter Principal King of Arms, or by his order, the several particulars herewith sent and signed by him, to be used and made up into Hatchments for the Installation of the Prince of Denmark, lately elected a Companion of our most Noble Order of the Garter, and after that you cause payment to be made for the painting and making thereof, according to former precedents; and for your so doing, this shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge. Given, &c. the 12. of February 1662.

To our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin and Counsellor, Edward Earl of Sandwich, Master of our Great Wardrobe, or to his Deputy there.

NUM. CXXXVII.

A Warrant for delivery of Materials to Garter, for the *Atchievements* of Charles King of Sweden, and the Prince Elector of Saxony.

Book of Warrants in the Great Wardrobe, commencing at Michaelmas, 1667. fol. 93.

Charles R.

OUR will and pleasure is, and we do hereby require you, forthwith to cause to be provided and delivered unto our trusty and well-beloved servant Sir Edward Walker Knight, Garter Principal King of Arms, or to such person as he shall appoint to receive the same, the several parcels of Cloth of Gold, Sattin, Damask and Tassaty, and other Necessaries mentioned in the Bills herewith sent, and signed by the said Garter, to be made up into Banners and *Atchievements* to be hung up in our Chappel at Windesore, against our next Feast of the Order, which we intend to hold there in April next, over the Stalls of Charles King of Sweden, and the Prince Elector of Saxony, who are by their Proxies to be installed there; and that you cause payment to be made for the same accordingly, and for your so doing, this shall be your sufficient Warrant.

Given

APPENDIX.

Given at our Court at Whitehall, the 28. day of February 1669.

To our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin and Counsellor, Edward Earl of Sandwich Matter of our Great Wardrobe, or in his absence to his Deputy.

By the Sovereign's special command.

De Vic. Canc.

Id. 1. 1. 35. b.

Necessaries to be provided and delivered out of his Majesty's Great Wardrobe, in pursuance of his Majesty's Warrant of the 28. of February, for the Installation of Charles King of Sweden by his Proxie at Windsor, in April next 1670.

An embroidered Banner upon Satten and Cloth of Gold, according to his Colours.

A Fringe of Blue Silk and Gold for the same.

Two yards of Fustian for the Sockt of the Banner.

A Crest carved and gilt.

A Staff for the Banner.

Two yards and a half of Cloth of Gold for the Mantles.

Two yards of Cloth of Silver to line the Mantles.

Two large Tassels of Blue Silk and Gold.

Two Knobs gilt with Gold.

An Helmet of Steel gilt.

A Sword with a Cross Hilt gilt.

A Plate of his Arms and Stile.

Three Scutcheons of his Arms, painted on Paper in Metal, and his Stile underneath.

Ed. Walker, Garter.

1. Mar. 1669.

Necessaries to be provided and delivered out of his Majesty's Great Wardrobe, in pursuance of his Majesty's Warrant of the 28. of February, for the Installation of the Prince Elector of Saxony by his Proxie at Windsor in April next 1670.

Four Ells of rich Taffaty for the great Banner.

Eight yards of Silk Fringe, according to the Colours.

Three yards of Fustian for the Sockets for the Banner.

A Crest carved and gilt.

Two yards and a half of Cloth of Gold for the Mantles.

Two yards of White Satten to line the Mantles.

Two large Tassels of Silk and Gold.

Two Knobs gilt with Gold.

A Helmet of Steel gilt.

A Sword with a cross Hilt gilt.

A Plate of his Arms and Stile.

Three Scutcheons of his Arms, painted on Paper in Metal, with his Stile underneath.

1. Mar. 1669.

Ed. Walker, Garter.

NUM. CXXXVIII.

A President of an Emperor's Oath.

Ex lib. Nig. p. 311.

NO S, No summa Dei benignitate ac gratia Caesar semper Augustus. aut Rex N. promittimus in verba Regio, & fidem damus, sub honore nostro, Sacrosanctis Evangelis per nos impresentiarum talis: quod fideliter ac vere pro viribus observabimus Statuta Clarissimi Ordinis Militaris in Anglia Divo Georgio nuncupati, qui & de prenobili atq; insigni Subligaculo nomen accepit, idq; de Article in Articulum, prout scriptum in libello ad nos misso continetur, saltem quatenus observari possunt ac debent, & dummodo contrarii non fuerint aut derogantes his in quos jam ante nomen dedimus ac juravimus, & conditionibus aliis, de quibus preconceptum est, semper salvis.

NUM. CXXXIX.

A President of an Emperor's or King's Proctor's Oath.

Ex lib. Nig. pag. 311. & 312.

EGO, N. Eques, & Procurator serenissimi atq; illustrissimi Principis ac Domini mei, Domini N. Caesaris semper Augusti vel Regis N. nominati atq; electi ad insignem atq; honorandam societatem Ordinis a prenobili Subligaculo nuncupati: vice ac nomine predicti Domini mei, veraci animo ac fide, promitto ac juro eundem illustrissimum bene & fideliter adimplendum ac servaturum, omnia & singula Statuta, Ordinationes, & decreta Ordinis illius, juxta vim, formam, atq; effectum, ad ipsum quoquo modo pertinentia: Salvis conditionibus inter cum & Ordinis Supremum preacceptis.

NUM. CXL.

A President of an Oath of a Proctor for a Prince, Duke, &c.

Lib. N. p. 312.

EGO, N. Eques ac Procurator Inclyti Principis, Archiducis, Ducis, Marchionis, Comitiss, Vice-Comitiss, Baronis, Domini, vel (ut minimum) Equites Ausrati N. ad preclarissimam Ordinis Divi Georgii Societatem jam nuper nominati atq; electi, vice ac nomine ipsius Domini mei, veraci animo integras fide promitto, & juro, prefatum Dominum meum Statuta hujus Ordinis, & singulos ipsorum Articulos bene & fideliter observaturum ac perimplendum, juxta vim, formam, atq; effectum eorundem: Saltem, quatenus Supremi dispensatio moderabitur & declarabit.

NUM.

APPENDIX.

NUM. CXLI.

The Oath of Philip King of Castile.

Ex Lib. N. p. 184.

NOS Philippus Dei gratia Rex Castiliae, Legionum, & Granado, Archidux Ostriae, & Dux Burgundiae, promittimus, & sub fide nostra ac honore Regio, per haec sancta Evangelia Dei, Canonem Missae, & hanc veram Dominicam Crucem portionem, quae coram hic statuuntur, & manibus huius nostris modo tangimus, iuramus: quod omnia praesentis Ordinis Statuta, juxta quod continentur in libello nuper ad nos missio, atque a nobis accepto, perinde ac si quisque Articulorum hic nobis recitaretur observabimus, & de Articulis in Articulum adimplebimus, tam fideliter ac prompte quam nos Dei ipsius & Sanctorum eius auxilium expectamus.

NUM. CXLII.

The Oath of Ferdinand Prince of Spain, &c.

MS. penes E. W. G. fol. 17. b.

NOS Ferdinando, par la grace de Dieu, Prince & Infant d'Espagne, Archevêque d'Austriche, Duc de Bourgogne, de Steier, de Carinche, de Carnirole, &c. Promettons & Jurons sur nostre foy, & honneur, & les Saints Evangelles, par nous manuellement touchés, que nous accomplirons, & entretiendrons loyalement, à nostre pouvoir, tous les Statutz, Pointz, & Ordonnances de le tres noble Ordre de Saint George, nommé la Jarretiere, de point en point, & de Article en Article, selon qu'il est contenu & déclaré dedens le livre, qui nous a esté baillé, lequel avons accepté, & acceptons, aussi bien que si nous lisions tout au long à ceste heure présente chascun Article; Excepté de point porter les Collier & Jarretier sinon aucunes fois l'an à nostre plaisir. Item, quant serons en quelque lieu ou place non convenable, ou que nous n'ayons loysir d'avoir Matines le jour Saint George, les pourrons par ung prestre faire dire en nostre presence. Et si pour aucun bien grant affaire ou empeschement qu'il nous pourroit survenir, estions occupé le dit jour Saint George, En ce cas ne serons tenu porter les dit Collier, Jarretier, & autres habits, y pertinans si non durant le divin service, lequel achevé, pourrons incontinent oster & devestir iceulx sans attendre jusques apres le dîner & souper, toutesfoys si pour les causes dessusdites ne pouvons porter le susdit habit le dit jour Saint George entier, lors voulons & promettons les porter en ung autre jour solennel dedens l'an; lesquels Articles promettons derechef tenir & garder entierement sans enfreindre; Ainsi nous ayde Dieu & tous les Saints; Donné en la ville de Neurenberghe, sousz nosz nom & seal le viii. jour de Decembre, l'an de grace Mille Cinq Cens Vingt & Troy.

NUM. CXLIV.

The Oath of Emanuel Duke of Savoy.

Ex Collect. W. le N. cl.

NOS Emanuel Philibert, par la grace de Dieu Duc de Savoy, Chamblye, & August, Prince & Vicaire perpétuel du saint Empire, Marquis en Italie, Prince de Piedmont, Conte de Genevet, Genevoys, Bargas, Vaudemont, &c. Lientenant & Capitain general pour l'Empereur, promettons, & jurons par nostre foy & honneur, & les Saints Evangelles par nous manuellement touchés, que nous accomplirons, entretiendrons, & observerons loyalement tous les Estatutz, Pointz, & Ordonnances du tres noble Ordre de la Jarretiere en Engleterre, & ce de point en point, & d'article en article, selon ce qui est contenu au livre qui nous a esté envoyé, ou pour le moins si avant que les dits Estatutz puissent bonnement estre observés & gardés de nous, & qu'ils ne soyent contraires à ce en quoy au paravant nous nous avons obligé par nostre foy & serment, & pourveu aussi que ne soyons point tenus de partir la dite Jarretiere, l'habit, & autres enseignes du dit Ordre, sinon quand nous verrons & aurons la commodité de le faire, & non autrement, lesquels articles nous promettons derechef garder & tenir entierement comme avant est dit, ainsi que nous ayde Dieu, & tous les Saints. Donné au Camp de l'Empereur, & fait dans l'Eglise, dessus le sixieme jour de Novembre, l'an mil cinq cens cinquante & quatre.

Emanuel.

Rossier.

NUM. CXLV.

The Oath taken by the Proctor to the French King Francis the First.

Ad Calceum Regis. Charac.

JE Adrien Tercelin, Chevalier, Seigneur de Brosse, Poisse, & Caillerie, Bailly Capitaine de Gisors, l'un des Chamberlans de tresault & trespuissant Prince, Francois, par la grace de Dieu, treschrestien Roy de France, premier de ce nom, comme Procureur, & ayant pouvoir expres de la part de mon dit Seigneur, prometis, & jure sur sa parole, & sur son honneur, qu'il observera, gardera, & entretiendra les Statutz du tresnoble Ordre de mon Seigneur, Saint George en ce, qu'ils ne sont contraires, ne derogant aux Statutz du tresnoble Ordre de Monseigneur Saint Michel, & autres Ordres, que mon dit Seigneur Roy aye cy-devant prins à d'autres Princes.

A. Tercelin.

APPENDIX.

NUM. CXLVI.

The Oath of the French King Charles the Ninth.

MS. penes G. O. T. pag. 221.

NOus promettons & jurons en parole de Roy, que nous observerons, garderons, & maintiendrons les estatuts & ordonnances, de l'Ordre de la Jarretiere en tout ce, & si avant qu'elles ne foyent contraires ne derogatoires à nostre grandeur Royale aux estatuts de nostre Ordre de Monsieur Saint Michell, ni aucun autre serment que nous avons fait auparavant.

NUM. CXLVII.

The Oath of the Emperor Maximilian.

MS. quarto penes W. le N. Cl. f. 99. b.

NOus promettons & jurons en parole d'Empereur, que nous observerons, garderons, & maintiendrons les Statuts & Ordonnances de l'Ordre de la Jarretiere en tout ce, & si avant qu'ils ne sont contraires, ni derogatoires à nostre grandeur & Majesté Imperiale, ni aux Statuts d'aucun autre Ordre ou serment que nous avons prins auparavant.

NUM. CXLVIII.

The Oath of his Proctor.

MS. fol. penes E. W. G.

EGO N. Procurator Sacerdotissimus & Iuvencissimus Principis ac Domini mei Maximiliani Caesaris, & semper Augusti, electi, & nominati ad honorabilem societatem Ordinis Garterii, vice, nomine, fide, & in animo predicti Domini mei, promitto & juro, supra Sacrosancta Evangelia per me manualiter tacta, eundem illustrissimum Principem ac Dominum meum bene & fideliter adimpleturum & observaturum omnia & singula Statuta & Ordinationes predicti Ordinis secundum vim, formam, & effectum, ipsum quovismodo concernentia & spectantia.

NUM. CXLIX.

The Oath taken by the French King Henry the Third.

MS. quarto penes W. le N. Cl.

NOus Henry, par la grace de Dieu Roy de France & de Polougne, Jurons, Vouons, & Promettons solennellement sur nostre honneur en parole de Roy, Que nous observerons, garderons, & maintiendrons les Statuts & Ordonnances du tremble Ordre Monsieur Saint George, nommé la Jarretiere, en ce qu'ils ne se

trouveront contraires à nostre Religion Catholique, grandeur & Majesté royale, ni aux Statuts & Ordonnances de nos deux Ordres, du Benoist Saint Esprit, & de Monsieur Saint Michel, En tesmoing de quoy avons signé la presente de nostre propre main, & icelle fait sceller de nostre Seel du Secret. A Paris, le dernier jour de Fevrier, l'an mil cinq cens quatre vingts cinq.

Henry.

NUM. CL.

The Oath of the French King Henry the Fourth.

Collec. W. le N. Cl.

NOus Henry, par la Grace de Dieu, Roy de France & de Navarre, Jurons, Vouons, & Promettons solennellement sur nostre honneur en parole de Roy, Que nous observerons, garderons, & maintiendrons les Statuts & Ordonnances du tremble Ordre Monsieur Saint George, nommé la Jarretiere, en ce qu'ils ne se trouveront contraires à nostre Religion Catholique, grandeur & Majesté royale, ny aux Statuts & Ordonnances de nos deux Ordres, du Benoist Saint Esprit, & de Monsieur Saint Michel, En Tesmoing de quoy nous avons signé la presente de nostre propre main, & icelle fait sceller de nostre Seel du Secret. A Rouen le----- jour d'Octobre, l'an mil cinq cens quatre vingts & seize.

Henry.

NUM. CLI.

The Oath taken by the Proctor to the French King Henry the Fourth.

Ex eod. Collec.

JE le Sieur de Chastes, Chevalier de l'Ordre de Saint Jean de Jerusalem, Conseiller de Roy en son Conseil d'Etat, Capitaine de Cinquante hommes d'Armes de ses Ordonnances, & l'un de ses Lieutenants generaux en Normandie, Vice-admiral de France, & Gouverneur de la Ville de Dieppe, Procureur pour le Roy tres-chrestien, Henry quatriesme Roy de France & de Navarre, Chevalier du tremble Ordre de la Jarretiere, promets au nom, & sur l'honneur de mon dit Roy & Seigneur qu'il observera, gardera, & maintiendra les Statuts & Ordonnances du dit Ordre, selon la forme cy devant jurée par sa Majesté, & sous les conditions acceptées entre sa dite Majesté, & la Roynie Souveraine du dit Ordre.

M. Chastes.

NUM.

APPENDIX.

NUM. CLII.

The Oath of Frederick the Second
King of Denmark.

Ex lib. MS. in Bibl. Hattôn.

NOs Fridericus summâ Dei benignitate Daniæ, &c. Rex, promittimus verbo regio, & fidem damus, sub honore nostro, sacrosanctis Evangelis per nos impresentiarum tactis, quod fideliter ac verè pro viribus observabimus statuta clarissimi Ordinis militaris in Anglia, qui de prenobili atque insigni Subligaculo nomen accepit, de Article in Articulum prout seriatim in libello Statutorum ejusdem prenobilissimi Ordinis continentur, saltem quatenus observari possunt ac debent, & dummodo contrarij non fuerint aut derogantes hijs in quos jam ante nomen dedimus ac juravimus, & conditionibus alijs, de quibus preconvenerunt, est, semper salvis.

NUM. CLIII.

The Oath taken by his Proctor.
MS. penes W. le N. Cl. fol. 126. b.

I Sir Peregrine Bertie, Knight, Lord Wiltoughby of Eresby, Deputy, and Procurator for the right high, right Excellent, and mighty Prince, Frederick King of Denmark, named and chosen to be one of the Companions of the most honorable Order of the Garter, do, in the said high and mighty Princes name and stead, truly and faithfully promise and swear, that the said high and mighty Prince will well and faithfully fulfil and keep all and singular the Statutes, Ordinances, and Decrees of that honorable Order, according to their true force, effect, and meaning, so far forth as they concern him, and shall be agreeable with the Word of God.

NUM. CLIV.

The Oath of the Proctor to Christian
the Fourth King of Denmark.

Ex ipso Autogr.

EGo Henricus Ramelius, Serenissimi ac Potentissimi Principis. Domini Christiani Quarti, Daniæ, Norvegiæ, Vandalorum, Gothorumque Regis, Ducis Slesvici, Holstatiæ, Stormariæ, & Dithmariæ, Comitum in Oldenburg, & Delmenhorst, nominati atque electi ad insignem atque honorandam societatem Ordinis à prenobili Subligaculo nuncupati Domini mei Clementissimi, Legatus, ejusdemque Serenissimi Regis & incliti Regni Senatorii Ordinis Consiliarius, in Wulterwitz & Beckeskow Dominus hereditarius, jussu, vice, ac nomine predicti Domini mei, veraci animo ac fide promitto, & in Majestatis ipsius animam juro, eundem Serenissimum Regem bene ac fideliter adimpleturum ac servaturum omnia & singula Statuta, Ordinationes, & Decreta Ordinis illius, juxta vim, formam, atque effectum, ad ipsum quoquo modo pertinentia:

salvis patris & fœderibus, quibus ante hoc tempus Majestas ipsius obstricta tenetur.

NUM. CLV.

The Oath taken by Frederick Duke of
Wurtemberg.

Erhard. Cellius in Eq. Aur. Anglo. Wir-
temb. pag. 153.

NOs Fridericus Dei gratiâ Dux Württembergicus, & Teccius, Comes Montispelegardi, Du. in Heidenheim, &c. Sacri Romani Imperii Princeps, pollicemur sub fide nostrâ principali, Statuta & Ordinationes Nobilissimi Ordinis Garterii, nos scdulo observaturos, quatenus illa sacri Romani Imperii constitutionibus, & fidei nostre, quam Imperatori Romano, eidemque Imperio debemus: nec non promissionibus, alijs Ordinibus & amicis nostris antehac factis, non adversantur & repugnant: Et tali quidem modo, ut Supremus, si necesse fuerit, fidelitatem, socij verò candidum amicum ex nostrâ affectione & opera experiri queant. In cujus rei testimonium hæc literas propriâ manu subscripsimus, & Sigilli nostri majoris appensione munire curavimus. Datum in sede nostrâ Ducali Stutgardie 8. Idum Novembris, Anno à partu Virginis 1603.

NUM. CLVI.

An Attestation granted by the Sove-
rign, of the Installation of the
French King Henry the Fourth.

Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.

ELizabeth par la grace de Dieu, Reine d'Angleterre, France, & Irlande, Desseigneur de la foy, &c. Souveraine du tresnoble Ordre de la Jarretiere, A tous presents & a venir salut. Seavoir faisons que ayant esté le Roy treschrestien Henry quatrième Roy de France & de Navarre, nostre trescher & tresame bon Frere & Cousin esleu & associé en nostre dit Ordre des l'an mil cinq cens nonante six, & en consequence de la dite Election prins & receu la Jarretiere, Collier, & autres Habits d'iceluy, & fait le Serment accoustumé de faire par les Chevaliers & Compaignons du dit Ordre pour observation des Statuts & Ordonnances d'iceluy par les quelles sont tenus entre autres choses les Chevaliers Estrangers associés au dit Ordre d'envoyer apres la reception de la dite Jarretiere, Collier, & Habit un suffisant Deputy ou Procureur selon leur Estat ou Chasteau de Windsor pour y estre mis & receu en leur place en la Chapell Collegial de Saint George avec les Ceremonies & Solemnites y appartenantes: Iceluy Roy treschrestien voulant faire faire aux Statuts du dit Ordre, & nommement au sus mentionné, & montrer par le respect qu'il nous porte, & l'estime que du dit Ordre il fait, auroit envoyé devers nous le Seigneur de Chastes, Chevalier de l'Ordre de Saint Jean,

Comman-

APPENDIX.

Commandeur de l'Ormetau, Conseiller en son
Conseil d'Etat, Capitaine de Cinquante hom-
mes, & d'Armes, & d'Ormes, & d'honneur de
sa Ville de Dieppe, & l'un de ses Lieutenants
generaux en son Gouvernement de Normandie,
avec pouvoir & Lettres Procuratoires signées de
sa main, & de son sceau, & d'iceux d'iceux
avoir à luy commis, le dit Seigneur de Challes fu-
par nostre Commandement conduit au dit Chasteau
de Windfore, le 26. jour du mois d'Avril de
dernier passé par nos trezebers & seaulx Consus
Charles Conte de Nottingham, Baron de Elin-
ham Conseiller en nostre Conseil Privy, & Ad-
miral d'Angleterre, Gilbert Conte de Shrews-
bury, Baron Talbot, &c. Henry Conte de Nor-
thumberland, Baron Percy, &c. Thomas Ho-
ward Baron de Walden, Chevaliers & Com-
pagnons du dit Ordre, à ce par nous commis,
par pouvoir fons le Seel de nostre dit Ordre, &
le jour susdict, a'javoir le 27. du dit mois, si-
gné par les dits Chevaliers & Compagnons en
la dite Chapel de Saint George au dit lieu de
Windfore, & alloué en siege compent, au reug
& bonneur de nostre dit Frere le Roy tres Chre-
stien nrs en possession de place, vestu de Manteau
de l'Ordre, & affies au nom du dit Roy au reug
à luy appartenant. Toutes lesquelles Ceremonies
& autres Solemnites requises le dit Seigneu-
r de Challes executa selon les Statuts de nostre
dit Ordre, & mesmes fist au nom du Roy le Ser-
ment accoustumé de faire, & en bailla Attesta-
tion signé de sa main, le tout en due forme
convenable, & en presence de Chevaliers & Com-
pagnons d'iceulx Ordre dessus nommez, qui nous en
ont fait report, dont à la Requisition du dit Sei-
gneur de Challes, Nous avons voulu bailler la
present Attestation signée de nostre main, & scel-
lée du Seel de nostre dit Ordre. Donné à Green-
wich le 3. jour de May, 1600. de nostre Reign
l'an .

NUM. CLVII.

A Report concerning Installation-Fees.

Lib. Carol. pag. 84.

Rec'd. Feb. 5, 1862.

[illegible]

*causa cognoscio predicta Defutato Committionum
vni cum demandata est. Tunc Henrico de
W. hinc Camellan: D. R. Ryves Deca-
no Windeforiensi Scribâ; & Edvardo Walker
Episcopo, Gartero, Conuentu assistentibus, Scriba
Ordinis, hujus rotius causâ narrationem datam
i 6. die Maii, 1665. tunc temporis exhibuit, cui
quatuor Committiones Deputati nomina sua sub-
scripsit, et cum conuenit in eâ dno dno ibidem
qui nomina nostra infra apposuimus. Quâ narra-
tione plenissimis Decani & Garteri rationibus
ad satisfactionem prout Scilicet monitione
habuit reperimus, Feoda illa pro Installatione
Principum externorum quæ narratione illa ex-
primuntur. Illorum decessoribus ab omni mem-
oriâ soluta fuisse; neq; feudis illa sperare quæ
subditi Duces ante Prioribus temporibus, aut
superioribus soluerunt. Quoniam verò Schedula
superiori Capitulo exhibita à Feodis per Supre-
mum solvendi initium sumat, nullo tamen
modo probari possit ullum unquam Supremum
Feoda pro Installatione sua soluisse & aperit
constat paucissimos admodum fuisse Illustrissimi
Ordinis Supremos, qui inaugurati Installationis
Feoda antea non solverant, nos narratione non
Feodi Feodorum ipsorum nullam mentionem feci-
mus. Quod ad Feoda illa attinet, quæ ab ex-
tero Rege solvenda sunt, illa Feodis istis quæ
à Supremâ vestra Majestate, Anno 1638. tunc
temporis Walliæ Principe soluta fuerunt, omni-
niò respondere pro comperto habemus; Installa-
tionis quoq; Feoda Canonici, & Ecclesiæ Win-
deforiensî solvenda, pro multis externis Regibus
à Supremo soluta fuisse, Garterus pro certo
affirmavit. Canonicoz etiam & Ecclesiæ
Windeforiensî Feoda ab omnibus Illustrissimi
Ordinis Committionibus cuiuscuq; fuerint gradus,
sive Ducibus, Marchionibus, Comites, Vice-
comites, Barones, seu Milites, solvi debere,
Scriba Ordinis plenissimis testimoniis confirma-
vit. Garterus insuper affirmavit Feoda pro om-
nibus & idibus jam memoratis Ecclesiæ Win-
deforiensî solvenda illis etiam pro omnia re-
spondere, quæ Elizabethæ Regine, Jacobi Regis,
& Caroli Primi Britannici memorie temporibus,
nec non jam à felicissimo Regie vestre Majesta-
tis reditu, à quam plurimis Honoratissimis Ordinis
Committionibus soluta fere. Hec omnia
enim cum Schedulis annexis ad Supremæ vestre
Majestatis arbitrium humillimè referimus, ita
& omnia hæc vestre Majestatis auctoritate ap-
probata Illustrissimi Ordinis Registro inseri pos-
sint. Quoniam verò Garterus eodem Capitulo
Schedulam Feodorum, tam Decano & Ecclesiæ
Windeforiensî quam sibi, Nigri virgifero, Officiariis
Armorum, & quam plurimis aliis Regie
vestre Majestatis Administris solvendoz exhibuit.
Quibus Feodorum & nunc gratulari
soleat, quæ habitâ ratione graduum atq; digni-
tatum quibus Committiones insigniti sunt, ad
normam illorum Feodorum exiguorum quæ Su-
prema vestra Majestas tunc Walliæ Princeps sol-
venda, nobis omnino consentaneum videtur, ut
sola Feoda Gartero, Nigri virgifero, & Officia-
riis Armorum solvenda approbentur, atq; Il-
lustrissimi Ordinis Registro inferantur: Ut reli-
quæ*

APPENDIX.

qua verò Regia vestre Majestatis Administrorum Feoda Garteri billis inserta ipsius Sigillo munitur, & à quolibet Commilitone quam primum inauguratus fuerit, exigantur, usq; à Gartero cuilibet Officiario secundum gradum suum, prout antiquitus obtinuit solvantur. Humilimè insuper petimus ut (si supreme vestre Majestati ita videbitur) Cancellarius in mandatis habeat, ut Literæ Ordinis mandatorie scribantur, quibus Installationis Feoda à quam plurimis Commilitonibus debita exigantur, & defunctorum Commilitonum Heredes atq; Executores Mantella atq; Illustrissimi Ordinis Statuta Ecclesie Windeforciensi reddere moneantur, quoniam autem quamplurimi Pauperes Milites Absentia veniam per annos integros à Supremâ vestrâ Majestate impetraverunt, humilimè petimus ut Regia vestra Majestas nulli impoterum absentiam indulget, usq; omnes Pauperes Milites sub Statutorum Regimine hâc in re arctè teneantur.

Ormondienfis.
Sandovicæ.
Mancestrensis.

NUM. CLVIII.

A Commission for Prorogation of the Grand Feast of St. George.

Sir Tho. Rowes Journal, pag. 4.

Charles R.

Charles by the grace of God, King of great Britain, France, and Ireland, Defender of the Faith, and Sovereign of the most Noble Order of the Garter, To all the Knights and Companions of Our said Order Greeting. Whereas upon some special reasons we were moved to Prorogue the Celebration of the Feast of St. George, from the 22. 23. & 24. days of April last (being the usual days of that Solemnity) to the 8. 9. & 10. days of July following. And again from thence to the 26. 27. & 28. of September, and from that time unto the 13. 14. & 15. of December. Now forasmuch as by reason of our other great and important Affairs, we cannot conveniently attend the Celebration of the said Feast at the said last appointed days. And considering also the Contagion and Sicknels, dispersed into several places of this Our Kingdom, which by assembling of People, may be most dangerous, both to Our self, and Our loving Subjects. We do therefore by these presents prorogue the Prorogation, and keeping of the said Feast, from the said 13. 14. & 15. days of this present December aforesaid, until and unto the 17. 18. & 19. of April next: willing, and by the tenor hereof commanding all, and every the Knights and Companions of Our said Order, and Officers of the same, to attend Our Person upon the said days, to perform what to them, and every of them shall belong and appertain for the accustomed Celebration of the Feast of Our

most Noble Order. Given under the Seal of the said Order at Our Honour of Hampton-Court, the 11. day of December, in the 12. year of Our Reign, An. Salutis, 1636.

NUM. CLIX.

A Letter of Notice to the Sovereign's Lieutenant to prepare to be at the Grand Feast held by Prorogation.

Ex veteri Codice MS. penes W. le N. Cl. fol. 52.

Henry R.

Right trusty and right welbelovèd Cousin We grete you wele. And for asmoche as the Fest of the glorious Martyr Saint George fallerh this pere within x. days after Eiler, by reason wherof we have according to the Statutes of the noble Order of the Garter deferred the solemnificacion of the same unto the xiiii. day of May next coming, on toryche day we have appointed the said Fest to be kept, and also deputed you to be our Lieutenant at the same. We therefore woli and desire you to prepare and dispose your self soo to be accordingly. Yeven under our Signet at our Universitie of Cambridge the xth. day of April.

NUM. CLX.

A Letter of Notice to a Knight-Companion to be present at the Grand Feast held by Prorogation.

Ex Collect. præf. W. le N. Cl.

Mary R.

Right trusty, &c. And having deferred the keeping of the Feast of the Glorious Martyr St. George, Patron of our most Noble Order of the Garter, until the coming of our most dear Cousin the Prince of Spain, To the intent the said Feast might be also honoured with the Installation of our said dearest Cousin, We let you wit, that we have now resolved to hold and celebrate the same Feast within our Castle of Windsor upon Sunday, the 5. of August next ensuing: Requiring you therefore to put your self in order to make your repair thither for that purpose before the same day, so as you may be present at the Celebration of that Feast, and all the accustomed Ceremonies thereof. Wherefore we pray you not to fail. Yeven under the Seal of our Order, &c.

APPENDIX.

NUM. CLXI.

A Letter from the Chancellor giving a Knight-Companion notice of the Prorogation of the Grand Feast.

Ex Lib. Collect. W. le N. Cl. fol. 45.

Right Honorable,

WHereas his Majesty, Sovereign of the most Noble Order of the Garter, for sundry causes, but especially for the late Death of the high and mighty King, his most dear and most entirely beloved Father, which bringeth unto him cause of grief infinitely more then of triumph, hath not thought meet to keep the Feast of St. George for this year on the days accustomed for the same, that is to say, on the 22. 23. & 24. days of this month of April. His Majesty therefore, under the Seal of the said Order, remaining in my Custody, hath prorogued the keeping of the said Feast for this year, unto the 16. 17. & 18. days of August next: Commanding all the Knights and Companions of the said Noble Order and Officers of the same, then to attend his person, wherein, his Majesties Pleasure, it is my due to make known to your Lordship, which being by these performed, I most humbly rest

7. April
1625.

Your Lordships most ready
to do you service,

George More.

To the right Honorable the Earl of Arundel and Surry, Earl Marshal of England, Knight of the most Noble Order of the Garter, and of his Majesties most Honorable Privy Council.

NUM. CLXII.

Another.

Roxes Journal, pag. 5.

May it please your Lordship,

THE King's Majesty, Sovereign of the most Noble Order of the Garter, having formerly prorogued the Celebration of the Feast of Saint George for this year, from the usual days, upon which it should have been solemnized, unto the 8. 9. & 10. of July following; and by reason of the Contagion spread in many parts of his Kingdom, from thise days, to the 26. 27. & 28. of September, and then also, upon special consideration unto the 13. 14. & 15. of December, by several Commissions under the Seal of his Order, now remaining in my Custody. His Majesty for divers and important Causes, and to avoid the danger of the concourse of much people, during the Infection, finding it not convenient, to celebrate

the Feast at that designed time, hath adjourned the Prorogation thereof, by a new Commission, to me delivered, unto the 17. 18. & 19. days of April next. And thereby given Commandment, to all the Knights and Companions, and Officers of his Order, that they should attend his Royal person upon these last appointed days. Wherefore in discharge of my duty, I do signifie unto your Lordship his Majesties pleasure; praying your Lordship, that you will be pleased, to take knowledge herein of the Sovereign's Order, humbly resting,

Your Lordships

In all due Observance
and Obedience,

Cranford 12. Dec. 1636.

Tho. Rowe.

To the Right Honorable James Marquess Hamilton, Knight and Companion of the most Noble Order of the Garter, and my most Honored Lord.

NUM. CLXIII.

Another to the Register of the Order.

Ibidem, pag. 3.

Reverend Sir,

THE King's Majesty, Sovereign of the most Noble Order of the Garter, having formerly prorogued the Celebration of the Feast of St. George, for this present Year, from the usual days upon which, it should have been solemnized, by several Commissions under the Seal of his Order, now remaining in my Custody: and finding it inconvenient for divers important causes, specially by reason of the Contagion, spread in divers places of his Kingdom, to hold the Feast, at any of those designed times. His Majesty hath pleased by a new Commission, to me delivered, to prorogue the last Prorogation, unto the 17. 18. & 19. of April next: And thereby given Commandment to all the Knights and Companions, and to the Officers of his Order, that they should attend his Royal person, upon those last appointed days. Wherefore in discharge of the duty of my place, I do signifie unto you his Majesties pleasure, desiring that you will take knowledge herein of his Royal Order.

Cranford 12. Dec. 1636.

To the Reverend and my Worthy Friend, Doctor Wrenn, Dean of Windsor, and Register of the most Honorable Order of the Garter.

Your affectionate Friend
to do you service,

Tho. Rowe.

One Duplicate of this was sent to Sir John Boroughs Knight Garter, another to James Maxwell Esq; Black-Rod.

NUM.

APPENDIX.

NUM. CLXIV.

Letters of Dispensation for attending at the Grand Feast.

Ex Collect. A. V. W.

By the Queen.

Right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin and Counsellor, We greet you well: and forasmuch as you are as well Governor of our Town of Barwick, as also Warden of our East Marshes, for and anywise Scotland, and may not conveniently be spared from thence, for certain Affairs there by you to be done, whereby you cannot make your repair hither, to celebrate with us the Feast of St. George, and have thought good upon that respect, to excuse your absence from the said Feast, and do by these presents dispence with you for the same. And therefore these our Letters shall be your sufficient discharge in that behalf. Given under the Signet of our said Order at our Palace of Westminster the ---- day of April, in the seventh year of our Reign, 1565.

NUM. CLXV.

Another.

Ex eod. Collect.

By the Queen.

Right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin, We greet you well, and forasmuch as you are President of our Council established in the City of York, and by reason of your charge and attendance there for our service, you cannot conveniently be present with us to solemnize the Feast of our most Noble Order of the Garter the Even or Vigil of St. George next ensuing. We let you understand, that we are pleased and content to accept your reasonable excuse in this behalf: And by these presents do pardon you for your absence from the said Feast at this present, any Statute of our said Order to the contrary notwithstanding. Given under our Signet of our Order, at our Palace of Westminster the ---- day of April 1575. in the 17. year of our Reign.

To our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin Henry Earl of Huntingdon, President of our Council in the City of York, Knight and Companion of our most Noble Order of the Garter.

NUM. CLXVI.

Another.

Ex Lib. Collect. W. le N. Cl. f. 54.

Charles R.

Right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin We greet you well: Forasmuch as you by reason of your indisposition of health, cannot be present to attend our person on the days by prorogation for this year appointed for celebrating the Feast of our most Noble Order of the Garter (that is to say the 26. 27. and 28. days of this month of April) We let you understand that We are pleased to excuse your absence, and by these presents do pardon, remit and dispence with any fault you may incur thereby. And do give you license to be absent at those days from the said Feast for this year, any Article or Statute of our said Order to the contrary notwithstanding. Given under the Seal of our said Order, at our Palace of Westminster, the 23. day of April, in the second year of the Reign of Great Britain, &c.

To our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin Thomas Earl of Arundel and Surrey, Earl Marshal of England, and Knight and Companion of our most Noble Order of the Garter.

NUM. CLXVII.

Another.

*Inter President. Tho. Rowe Eq. Aur.
super hujus Ordinis Cancellar.*

Charles R.

Right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin, We greet you well: Whereas we have for divers causes, prorogued the celebration of the Feast of St. George for this present year, to the 17. 18. and 19. days of April next following, whereof according to the Customs and Rules of our most Noble Order of the Garter, you have had notice and summons, for your attendance upon those days from our Chancellor; notwithstanding we are pleased to excuse your absence, and by these presents do dispence therewith, and pardon and remit any default you may thereby incur, and do give you license to be absent at these days, from the said Feast for this present year (observing in your own House the Solemnities appointed by the Canons of the Order) any Statute or Article thereof to the contrary notwithstanding: Given under the Signet of our Order at our Palace of Westminster, the 24. day of February in the 12. year of our Reign.

NUM.

APPENDIX.

NUM. CLXVIII.

A Warrant for a Privy Seal to pay Garter for Scutcheons used on Saint George's day.

Ex Autogr. pen. Johan. Vincent gen.

Trusty and well-beloved, We greet you well, and will and command you, that under our Privy Seal being in your Custody, ye cause our Letters to be made forth unto the Treasurer and Chamberlains of our Exchequer in form following, We will and command you, that unto our trusty and well-beloved Servant Garter Principal King of Arms, ye pay or cause to be paid in ready money upon the sight hereof without delay, the sum of 6 l. 1 s. 8 d. for 23 Scutcheons by him provided for the Knights of our Order, on Saint George's day last, in the first and second years of our Reign, whereof 4. for Princes at 6 s. 8 d. the piece, and the rest at 5 s. the piece, and also that ye content and pay more unto the said Garter the sum of 6 l. 11 s. 8 d. for 25. Scutcheons by him provided, and set up at our Mannor of St. James in the second and third years of our Reign for the furniture of the Stalls in our said Chappel, at the rate aforesaid: and these our Letters shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge.

NUM. CLXIX.

A Privy Seal to pay Garter 7 l. per annum for Scutcheons of Arms set up on St. George's Eve.

Collected. W. le N. Cl.

Elizabeth by the grace of God, Queen of England, France, and Ireland, Defender of the Faith, &c. To the Treasurer and Chamberlains of our Exchequer greeting. We will and command you forthwith upon the sight hereof, of such our Treasure as remaineth in your Custody, you content and pay, or cause to be contented, and paid to our trusty and well-beloved Servant Sir Gilbert Dethick Knight, alias Garter, principal King of Arms, the sum of 21 l. for Scutcheons of Arms of the Knights of our Order set up in our Chappel within our Palace of Westminster, as wel on St. George's Eve, in the year of our Lord God 1579. as on St. George's Eve in the year of our Lord God 1580. and also on St. George's Eve last past; and also henceforth during his life to allow him yearly 7 l. to be paid on St. George's day accordingly. And these our Letters shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge in that behalf. Given under our Privy Seal at our Mannor of Greenwich, the 7. day of July, in the 23. year of our Reign.

NUM. CLXX.

Another.

Ex Autogr. penes Wil. Knight.

CHARLES by the grace of God King of England, Scotland, France, and Ireland, Defender of the Faith, &c. To the Treasurer and Under-Treasurer of our Exchequer for the time being, and that hereafter shall be, Greeting. Whereas our late dear Father King James of happy memory deceased, by Warrant under his Privy Seal, bearing date the second day of July, in the sixth year of his Reign of England, &c. did give order for the payment unto William Seagar, alias Garter, Knight, now principal King of Arms, and to any other principal King of Arms, for the time being, upon every Saint George Even, of the sum of seven pounds, for Escutcheons of Arms of the Knights of the Order of the Garter, to be set up in the Chappel at Whitehall, or any other place where the said Feast should happen to be solemnized on every St. George's Eve and Day, as by the said Warrant more at large appeareth: We minding the continuance of the said yearly allowance, do hereby will and command you to cause payment to be made out of such our Treasure at now is, or hereafter shall be in the receipt of our said Exchequer of the said yearly allowance of seven pounds unto the said Sir William Seagar alias Garter, Knight, now our principal King of Arms, and to any other our principal King of Arms for the time being upon every St. George's Eve for the Scutcheons of Arms of the Knights of our Order of the Garter, to be by him or them set up in our Chappel at Whitehall, or any other place where the said Feast shall happen to be solemnized every St. George's Eve and day; And to continue the payment thereof yearly until you shall receive other directions from us to the contrary. The first payment thereof to begin and commence from the time of the last payment thereof unto the said Sir William Seagar alias Garter, our principal King of Arms; And these our Letters shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge in this behalf. Given under our Privy Seal at our Palace of Westminster, the seventh day of February, in the second year of our Reign.

NUM. CLXXI.

Commissional Letters for collecting the Contributions towards furnishing the Altar in the Chappel at Windsor.

Ex lib. vocat. Friith's Regist. p. 139.

CHARLES by the grace of God, King of England, Scotland, France, and Ireland, Defender of the Faith, and Sovereign of the most Noble Order of the Garter; To all and singular, whom these may concern, greeting. Whereas, We wish the Knights and Companions

APPENDIX.

mions of our said Order, in contemplation of the great want of such sacred Furniture, for our Royal Chappel of St. George within our Castle of Windsor, as may be suitable to the honour and devotion of the said Order, have at sundry Chapters there holden, advised and decreed, that a joynt contribution should be made, for provision of the same; And particularly, at a Chapter (together with the Solemnity of the Feast of St. George) holden upon the 6. of this present October, We did again declare and constitute, that We our selves would begin, and that every Lord, which is now of our Realm, a Companion of the said Order, or was at the making of our first Decree, viz. Nov. 24. 1625. should give and confer towards the same, as to him should be thought meet; Provided that it be not under 100*l*. Now know ye, that We have, and do by these presents, give Authority and Command, to our Dean and Canons of our said free Chappel, that they forthwith by any one of themselves, or by their lawful Deputy; under their Common Seal, do ask and receive, as well of our own Officers for our Self, as of every Lord and Companions of the Order, that now is, of our Realm, and of the Heirs, Executors, and Administrator, of any that are deceased, since the time last above mentioned, the said gift and contribution. And that thereof they be accountable unto Us, at our next Chapter, to be holden for the said Order, or at the next Session of the Lords Commissioners for the said Order, which of the two shall first happen. Given under the Seal of our said Order, the seventh day of October, in the sixth Year of our Reign of England, Scotland, France, and Ireland, &c. 1630.

NUM. CLXXII.

The Sovereign's Letter to the Dean and Canons of Windsor, for making use of their Lodgings at Saint George's Feast, an. 7. H. 5.

Ex Lib. vocat. Denton. fol. 69.

TReschers & bien aymés, Nous vous solvons souvent, Et pour ce que grant multitude de gens tant estrangers, que autres qui seront à nostre Chasteau de Windsor, à ceste prochaine solemnité, la feste de Saint George; & à cause de la Venue de l'Empereur, & du Duc de Holand. Nous desirons, & voulons que leurs gens, & autres estans de nostre Compagnie aient la plus grand faveur, & aise que faire se pourra en aucune maniere touchant leur Logemens dedens mesme nostre dit Chasteau; Pour laquelle cause vous envoyons presentement nostre bien aymé Escuier & Huissier de Chambre le porteur de cestes vers nostre dit Chasteau, pour yeur donner contre vostre venue. Si vous prions, que vous veuillez bonnement souffrir nostre dit Huissier serviroyer lez Logemens de vous maisons dedens nostre Colleege, & de y logier autant de personnes come faire se pourra bonnement à ceste foy: tout seulement pour la cause dessus dit. Et ce faisons

vous nous faites ung singulier plaisir. Et n'est pas nostre intention ne vouloir que par colour de ce. Vous en soyés ainsi chargiés plus avint. Et nostre Seigneur soit garde de vous. Donné subz nostre Signet à Lambeth, le 18. jour de May, l'an de nostre Reigue septieme.

NUM. CLXXIII.

A Letter from the Sovereign, to excuse the absence of some of the Knights-Companions from the Grand Feast.

Lib. N. pag. 174.

SUppremus honorando ac pervenerando Patri suo Thomæ Comiti Durb. salvere, ac benè valere. Quoniam ob multa variaq; negotia quæ nostri oneris sunt perdecilius Cognatus noster Comes Salopia, & fideles ac benè meriti nobis à Consiliis Dominus Reginaldus Bray, Dom. Tho. Lovell, Dom. Carolus Somerset, Dom. Richardus Goullford, & Dominus Gilbertus Talbot Socii clarissimi nostri Ordinis non possunt ipsi in Festo Divi Georgii septimo Maii celebrando interesse, sed venia nostra donandi sunt arduis illis rebus impediti; Nos igitur hiis nostris scriptis certiorum inam nobilitatem facimus; Ut has excusationes rationi consonas acceptes, de nulla Statutorum vi dubitaturus, & si contra denotare videatur, cum penes nos sit, ut ipsemet leges jure regantur Richmondie 29. Aprilis.

NUM. CLXXIV.

Another.

Ex Collect. A. V. W.

Elizabeth.

RIght trusty and right entirely beloved Cousin and Counsellor, We greet you well. Forasmuch as our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin and Counsellors the Earls of Arundel and Derby, &c. Companions of the most Noble Order of the Garter, cannot for certain employments, by our Commandment attend at the Feast of the glorious Martyr St. George, to be holden and kept within our Castle of Windsor, the 22. day of May next coming, and they being by Us dispensed with, and pardoned for their absence at that time, like as we have thought good to advertise you thereof; so We will you to accept their reasonable excuses in this behalf accordingly: any Statute of the said Order made to the contrary notwithstanding. Given under the Signet of our said Order, at our Palace at Westminster the 20. of May, in the fifth year of our Reign.

APPENDIX.

NUM. CLXXV.

Another.

*MS. penes Arthur. Com. Anglesey,
fol. 122. b.*

Elizabeth.

Right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin and Counsellor, We greet you well. And forasmuch as our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin and Counsellor the Marquess of Winchester, and the Earl of Derby, and our right trusty and right entirely beloved Cousin and Counsellor the Duke of Norfolk, our right trusty and well-beloved Counsellor the Lord Clynton our high Admiral of England, our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin and Counsellor the Marquess of Northampton, our right trusty and well-beloved Counsellor the Lord Howard of Effingham, Lord Chamberlain of our Household, our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin the Earl of Shrewsbury, our right trusty and well-beloved the Lord Hastings of Loughborough, our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin and Counsellor the Earl of Leicester, our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin the Earl of Warwick, our trusty and well-beloved the Lord Hunsdon, our trusty and well-beloved Sir Henry Sidney, Companions of our Noble Order of the Garter, cannot for certain causes to be executed and done by our Commandment, be at the Feast of the Glorious Martyr St. George, to be holden and kept within our Castle of Windsor, the xiii. day of June next coming, but be by Us pardoned of their absence from the said Feast, like as we have thought good to advertise you thereof; so We will you to accept their reasonable excuse in this behalf accordingly, any Statutes of the said Order made to the contrary notwithstanding. Given under our Seal of our said Order at our Honor at Hampton-Court the ---- day of June, in the xii. Year of our Reign.

NUM. CLXXVI.

A Commission for holding the Grand Feast.

Registr. Chartac. fol. 13. b.

Henry par la grace de Dieu, Roy d'Angleterre, & de France, Souverain de la Compagnie de l'Ordre du Garter, A tous nos Compagnons du dit Ordre, Salut. Comme pour certaines causes que nous movent, ne pourrions estre personnellement à la Feste de Saint George, prochain venant, à nostre Chastell de Wyndesore, & par les Estatutz du dit Ordre, nous est loisible pour commettre, & deputer autre personne pour nous, pour tenir lez Chapitres, corriger, & redresser faire les Eleccions, & de lez approuver, & de faire toutes autres choses, comme il appertendra, solonc la forme & teneur des ditz Esta-

tutz. Pour ce est il, que nous avons commis, & depute, commettons, & deputons par ces presentes, nostre trescher, & tresame Oncle, Jean Regent nostre Royaume de France, Duc de Bedford, pour faire les ditz choses avec leurs circonstances, & dependences quelconques. Mandons & commandons à nous dis Compaignons, que en ce faisant lui obeissent, & entendent diligemment comme à l'ordre appartient pour cest foiz. Donné à Leyccestre la premier jour d'Avril, l'an de nostre Regne quart.

NUM. CLXXVII.

Another.

Ibid. fol. 62. b.

Henry R.

Henry the viii. by the grace of God, King of England, and of France, Defensour of the Faith, and Lord of Ireland. To our right trusty and right entirely beloved Cousin, the Marquess Dorcet, Greeting. Forasmuch as we for divers gret and urgent causes, may not be present at the fest of the glorious Martyr St. George, Patron of our noble Ordre of the Garter, to be holdyn, solempnised and kept in our Castell of Wyndesore, the viii. day of May next commyng. We therefore by these presents name, constitute, appoint, and ordayne you to be our Lieutenant at the said Feast. Giving unto you full power and auctorite to do and accomplishe every thing at the same, which to our Lieutenant there in such case belongeth, and hath been accustomed; Willing and Commanding by the tenour hereof all and every the Companions and Officers of our said Ordre, to be to you in the executing of this our auctorite obeying and attending as schall apperteyne. Given under the Seal of our sayd Garter at our Manoir of Beaulieu, the xxv. day of Aprill, the xvi. yere of our Reigne.

NUM. CLXXVIII.

Another.

Lib. N. pag. 249.

Henry R.

Henricus Dei gratia, Rex Angliæ & Franciæ, Princeps Guallie, & Dominus Hiiberniæ, Fedei Defensor, atq; Illustrissimi huius Ordinis ipse Supremus, unice nobis dilecto, fide probatissimo, & Officio erga nos suo jam undiq; notissimo Cognato nostro Duci Norf. salutem ac feliciter. Nunc quoniam per multa charissime, nos istinc negotia detinent (ut quod optamus) gloriosissimi Martyris Patroni nostri festivitatem presentia nostra non possumus honorare, tuam propterea nobilitatem ad illud ipsum nomine nostro prestandum nominamus atq; instituimus eam tibi dantes auctoritatem quæ suppleat vices nostras unquam alias assuevit, iubentes & iidem ut Sociorum quisquis atq; Officialium tibi, dum mandatum hoc nostrum facessis, obediant, & quantum res ipsa postulabit, ex nutu tuo iussuq; pendeat, Wyndesori sub Ordinis Sigillo, undecimo Junii, & nostri Regni decimo septimo.

NUM.

APPENDIX.

NUM. CLXXIX.

A Letter of Notice to the Assistants of the Sovereign's Lieutenant, to be at the Feast.

Collec. A. V. W.

By the Queen.

Right trusty and right well-beloved, We greet you well. Where we by our Commission under the Seal of our most Noble Order of the Garter, have assigned and appointed our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin and Counsellor the Earl of Arundel, Lord Steward of our Household, and one of the Companions of the said Noble Order, to be our Lieutenant at the Feast of the glorious Martyr St. George, to be kept within our Castle of Windesore the 18. day of May next coming, for the doing of all things there, as to Our Lieutenant appertaineth. And have appointed you, with our right trusty & right well-beloved the Lord Paget of Beaudesert, to be Assistants at the said Feast. We have thought good, not only to give you knowledge thereof by these Our Letters, but also require you to make your repair to Our said Castle of Windesore; so as you may be there at the said Feast accordingly. Given under the Signet of Our said Order at Our Manor of Greenwich, the second day of May, in the third year of Our Reign.

To Our right trusty and right well-beloved, the Viscount Mountague, one of the Companions of Our Order.

The like Letter, and of the same Date was sent to the Lord Paget, the other Assistant.

NUM. CLXXX.

An Order for the fashion and materials of the Sovereign and Knights-Companions Under Habit.

Collec. E. W. G.

Charles R.

IT being most certain, that nothing can be more conducing to the keeping up of that Lustre and Dignity, of our most Noble Order of the Garter, wherein it is at this present, then those very means by which it hath attained unto it constancy and immutability. For these reasons, having at a Chapter held at our Castle of Windesore, the 16. of April last past, resolved upon a review and examination of its Statutes, to see if possibly length of time, and change of Customs, might have introduced any thing in them, which might make them swerve from the ancient Rules, so far as they were not inconsistent with the present

Useance. We have thought it not unworthy our care, to descend unto the particulars of its Clothing: And thereupon having found, that in what concerns the Under-Habits, used by the Companions at the solemnizing of Instalments, or the Celebration of St. George's Feast, they followed too much the modern fashion, never constant and less comporting with the decency, gravity, and stateliness of the upper Robes of the Order. It was resolved in that Chapter, and accordingly we ordain and enjoin, That from this time forwards the Companions shall be obliged, to a certain and immutable form and fashion, as well for their Under-Habits as their Upper-Robes, to be used on those solemn Days and Occasions, that is to say, to the old Trunk-hose or Round Breeches, whereof the Stuff or Material shall be some such Cloth of Silver, as we shall chuse and appoint, wherein as we shall be to them an example, so we do expect they will follow us in using the same, and no other. Given under the Signet of our said Order, this----- day of May, 1661.

NUM. CLXXXI.

A Dispensation for a Knights attendance at the Grand Feast, during life:

Ex ipso Autogr. in Bibl. Hatton.

Henry R.

HENRY the Eighth by the grace of God, King of England and of France, Defender of the Faith, and Lord of Ireland, and Sovereign of the Noble Order of the Garter, To the Lieutenant at the Feast of the glorious Martyr Saint George, Patron of the Noble Order of the Garter, and other Knights and Companions of the same Order, for the time being, to be assembled at any time hereafter at our Castle at Windesore, and to other our Officers, Ministers, and Subjects these our Letters bearing or seeing, Greeting. We let you weet, that We of our special grace, and for certain urgent and great causes, and special considerations concerning the old service done unto us, by our right trusty and well-beloved Counsellor the Lord Darcy, one of the Knights and Companions of the said Noble Order of the Garter, and of his great age and debility, have pardoned and licensed him by these presents at all time from henceforth, during his life, to be absent from the said Feast of St. George, and not to give attendance in any place, Chapter, or other Feast to be holden of the said Noble Order, and that he to sustain no damage by any mean for his said absence any Act, Decree, Ordinance, Oath, or Statute of the said Noble Order of the Garter, now being made, or hereafter to be made to the contrary notwithstanding. Given under the Seal of the Garter of the said Noble Order, the eight and twentieth day of October, the six and twentieth year of our Reign.

NUM.

APPENDIX.

NUM. CLXXXII.

Another.

*Inter Præident. Tho. Rowe Eq. Aur.
nuper Cancell.*

Charles R.

Charles by the grace of God, King of Great Britain, France, and Ireland, Defender of the Faith, and Sovereign of the most Noble Order of the Garter. To our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin Ferdinand, Earl of Derby, Knight and Companion of our said most Noble Order, Greeting. Forasmuch as we are informed by our Chancellor of our Order, upon signification to him made under your Seal of Arms, of your indisposition of health, and of your petition to have licence to forbear your attendance upon our person on the 22. 23. & 24. of May next, being the days appointed by Prorogation for the Celebration of the Feast, of our most Noble Order of the Garter. We give you to understand, that we are pleased to excuse your absence, and by these presents, do pardon, remit, and dispense with any default you may thereby incur. And we do further, in respect of your age, and weakness unable to travel, signified unto us in your said Petition, by these presents, dispense with your attendance on our person upon the said Feast days, during your natural life, observing in your own house the Rites and Solemnities appointed by the Canons of the Order upon the usual days of Celebration, being the 22. 23. & 24. of April, or at such times as shall be hereafter appointed by Prorogation, any Statute, or Article of our said Order to the contrary notwithstanding. Given under the Seal of our said Order, at our Court at Whitehall, the 9. day of April, in the 14. year of our Reign.

NUM. CLXXXIII.

*A Warrant to Garter to take down the
Atchievements of John Dudley, Duke
of Northumberland.*

Collect. W. le N. Cl.

By the Queen.

Trusty and well-beloved, We greet you well, letting you witte, That where the Hatchments of the late Duke of Northumberland attainted of High Treason, and put to Execution for his offence, do remain yet within our Chappel of Windesore, untaken down. Our pleasure is, in respect of his said Offence, through the which his Hatchments deserve not to be in so honorable a place, among the rest of the Knights of our Order; you shall repair to Windesore immediately upon the Receipt of these Our Letters, and in your presence, cause the said Hatchments of the said late Duke to be taken down, in such sort as others in like cases have been, whereof fail you not. Given under our Signet of our Order, &c.

NUM. CLXXXIV.

A Publication of the Degrading of Edward, Duke of Buckingham.

Ex Collect. A. V. W.

Be it known unto all men, That whereas Edward, late Duke of Buckingham, Knight, and Companion of the Noble Order of Saint George, named the Garter, hath lately done and committed High Treason against the King, Sovereign of the said Order of the Garter, in compassing and imagining the destruction of the most Noble person of our said Sovereign Lord the King, contrary to his Oath, Duty, and Allegiance; for which High Treason, the said Edward hath been indicted, arraigned, convicted, and attainted, and for the which detestable Offence and High Treason, the said Edward hath deserved to be disgraced of the said Noble Order, and expelled out of the said Company, and not worthy that his Arms, Ensigns, and Atchievements should remain amongst other Noble Ensigns and Atchievements, of other noble, vertuous, and approved Knights of the said Noble Order, nor to have the benefits of the said Noble Order. Wherefore our Sovereign Lord the King, Sovereign of the said Noble Order of St. George, named the Garter, by the advice of other Knights of the said Noble Order, for his said Offences, and committing of the said High Treason, willet and commandeth, that the said Edward, late Duke of Buckingham, be disgraced of the said Noble Order, and his Arms, and Ensigns, and Atchievements clearly expelled, and put from amongst the Arms, Ensigns, and Atchievements of the other Noble Knights of the said Order; to the intent that all other Noble men, thereby may take Example, hereafter, not to commit any such heinous and detestable Treason and Offence, as God forbid they should.

God save the King.

NUM. CLXXXV.

*The Sovereign's Letters for celebrating
Masses, upon the Death of the Lord
Fitz-Hugh, an. 3. H. 6.*

Lib. N. pag. 81. & 82.

*Exteris & aliis hujus Clarissimi Ordinis
Sodalibus, extra Regnum Commorantibus &
eorum cuilibet, Supremis Salutem.*

Quoniam, Charissime mi Cognate, N. Henricus Dominus Fitzhugh, nuper unus e Commilitonibus nostris excessit ex hac vita, cujus anime propitius esto Deus: Nos id propterea nunciamus. ut vestram commiserationem minime lateat, Missas ex præcepto Statuti pro defuncto celebrandas, ceteraque complenda, quæ vestra in hac parte solet interesse. Vestram vero nobilitatem

APPENDIX.

tem beata Trinitas servet & augeat. Sub Sigillo nostri Ordinis Windesori, &c.

Memento, intra Regnum, sed absentibus ab hac Festivitate Georgianâ, & eorum cuilibet Rex S. P. D.

RICHARDO N. Cognato nostro peridlecto Salutem. Quoniam Henricus Fitzhugh, nuper unus de Sociis nostri Ordinis, sexto Januarii proximo defunctus est. (Cujus anime misereatur Omnipotens.) Nos vestre Nobilitati significamus, ut juxta tenorem Statutorum Missas defuncto curetis celebrandas. Sciitis autem hinc Windesori vacare sedem, quam oporteat intra sex hebdomadas ab altero possideri. Ceterum quia nos alijs jam negotiis impediti, non possumus huic insisteri, mandamus, ut proximâ Divi Georgii Vigiliâ, vos ipsi horâ tertiârum nobiscum Windesori sitis, ad perimplendum quod ista res expostulat, nisi iusta forsan causa faciat, quod minus fieri possit, quæ scriptis ad nos, eisdem die & horâ mitti debet, sub Sigillo vestro ab Armis.

NUM. CLXXXVI.

Another Letter sent upon the Death of Sir Robert Umfrevil, an. 4. H. 6.

Registr. Chartac. fol. 12. b.

De par le Roy Souverain de l'Ordre du Jarretier.

Trescher & tresame Oncle, Pour ce, que après le trespas d'aucun des Compaignons de l'Ordre du Jarretier, le Souverain par les Estatuz du dit Ordre, le doit signifier & faire savoir à tous les Compaignons, ou qu'ilz soyent, Nous come premier, & Souverain d'icelui, vous signifiens, que seu nostre trescher, & bien ame Sir Robert Dumfreville, que Dieu absolve en son vivant un des Compaignons du dit Ordre, est allé de vie à trespas, si faites vostre devoir, & diligence des Messes & Prières, que selonc les diz Estatuz estes tenu faire dire & celebrer pour le repos & salut de son ame, & ny faites aucun faulte, trescher & tresame Oncle, nostre Seigneur. Dieu vous ait en sa sainte Garde.

De par le Roy Souverain de l'Ordre du Jarretier.

Trescher & bien ame, Pour ce, que Sir Robert Dumfreville, que Dieu absolve, en son vivant, un de noz Compaignons de l'Ordre du Jarretier, est allé de vie à trespas le darraîn jour de Januer, darraîn passé, & que selonc les Estatuz du dit Ordre, sommes tenus en advertir ung chescun dez Compaignons, vous certifiens son dit trespas, adfin que facies vostre devoir des Messes & Prières, lesquelles estes tenuz faire dire & celebrer pour le salut de son ame, par le mort du quel est un place vacant, & convient selonc les diz Estatuz, autrre Estier en son lieu dedans syz sep-

maines après la certification du dit trespas, si bonnement faire se puet, que bonnement au present faire ne pourrons: si voulons, & vous mandons, sur les peines contenues es dizs Estatuz que soies avec nous la vaigle Seint George, à l'heure de tierce prochain venant, pour faire & accomplir en ce que dit est, come per les dizs Estatuz appertendra. Et se esre ny poves nous signifier soubz vostre Seel la cause de vostre empechement, par quoy vostre Exinction puissions cognoistre, & l'avoir agreables, si ainsi est quelle soit digne d'esre acceptee, & ny faites faulte, Trescher & bien ame, &c.

NUM. CLXXXVII.

Another sent upon the Death of King Henry the Seventh, and Philip King of Castile.

MS. intituled Henry the Seventh's Proceedings, penes W. le N. Cl. p. 49.

Frasmuch as it hath pleased Almighty God, to call unto his infinite mercy the late King our Fader of most famous memory, whose soule God pardonne, late Sovereign of the Noble Ordre of the Garter, and also the King of Castile, ech Companion of the same Noble Ordre, we therefore advise you thereof, to the intent, that you may cause such Orders and Suffrages, to be said and doon for their souls health, as by the auncient Statutes and Ordinances of the said Noble Order, you be bound to do in that behalf. Given under the Seal of the same Noble Order, &c.

NUM. CLXXXVIII.

A Certificate that the Masses were accordingly Celebrated.

Lib. N. pag. 318.

Noverint universi per presentes Literas, Nos Priorem & Conventum Ordinis Fratrum N. Mandato, ac munere preclaro Illustrissimi Domini nostri Regis HENRICI OCTAVI, nostri, omniumque Christi Pauperum benefactoris precipui, quadringentas Missas, quinque Ceriis in Exequiis, & Missa aliâ solemniori honorifice accensis pro animâ pie Memoria Magnifici Domini N. nuper defuncti celebrasse.

NUM. CLXXXIX.

An Order for reviving the Decree for payment of Obit Monies.

Lib. R. pag. 86.

Carolus R.

In hoc Capitulo, Supremus per D. Comitem Portlandiæ monetur cujusdam Sanctionis, sub Rege Henrico Octavo, lata & in Statuta, singulorum

APPENDIX.

gulorum jure jurando firmata) relate, quâ decretum fuit, ut defuncto ex Commilitonibus ordinis aliquo, certam quandam pecuniarum summam tam Supremus ipse, quam superstites Commilitones singuli solverent, per Decanum Windesoriensem colligendam, atq; in pios usus erogandam, prout visum erit Supremo, & Commilitonibus in Capitulo. Hanc verò sanctionem, quantumvis in se honorificam, usq; confirmatam sub Edwardo Rege sexto, subq; Mariâ, & Elizabethâ Regina nuper, tamen per aliquot retrò annos minùs observatam, Supremus jussit publicè recitari. Pellegente igitur Scribâ apparet, post obitum cujusque Commilitonis ipsi Supremo intrombere summam 8 l. 6 s. 8 d. Regi extero, 6 l. 13 s. 4 d. Principi, 5 l. 16 s. 8 d. Duci, 5 l. Marchioni, 3 l. 15 s. Comiti, 2 l. 10 s. Vice-Comiti, 2 l. 1 s. 8 d. Baroni, 1 l. 13 s. 4 d. Equiti, 16 s. 8 d. addita insuper pona tertie quoque partis in annos singulos cumulanda, quantisper sortem principalem non solverint. Suprema itaq; Majestas, cum assensu Commilitonum omnium præsentium, ordinavit

atque decrevit sanctionem hanc honorificentia, pietatq; reverentissimam, & singulorum juramentis in introitu Ordinis firmatam, restitui oportere, & in perpetuum debinc usum, atq; observationem revocari, idq; sub pœnâ statutâ, non solum Commilitonibus nî solvant, sed & Decano quoque Windesoriensi nisi Officium suum præster. Ordiri autem jussit à 5. Commilitonibus defunctis, quorum Insignia heri obtulerant, ceterum quod ad externos Principes attinet, Supremus significavit, quod si summi istas ipsi (pro se quisque) non exolvant, eadem, & nunc, & in posterum, semper ab ipso Supremo solvantur. Subscribitur porrò huic decreto in hæc verba.

Ad Mandatum D. Supremi.

Decano Windesoriensi incumbit pecunias vi hujus Sanctionis solvendas postulare, & receptarum rationem reddere in proximo Capitulo.

Fr. Crane Cancell.

—Deus nobis hæc Otia fecit.

FINIS.

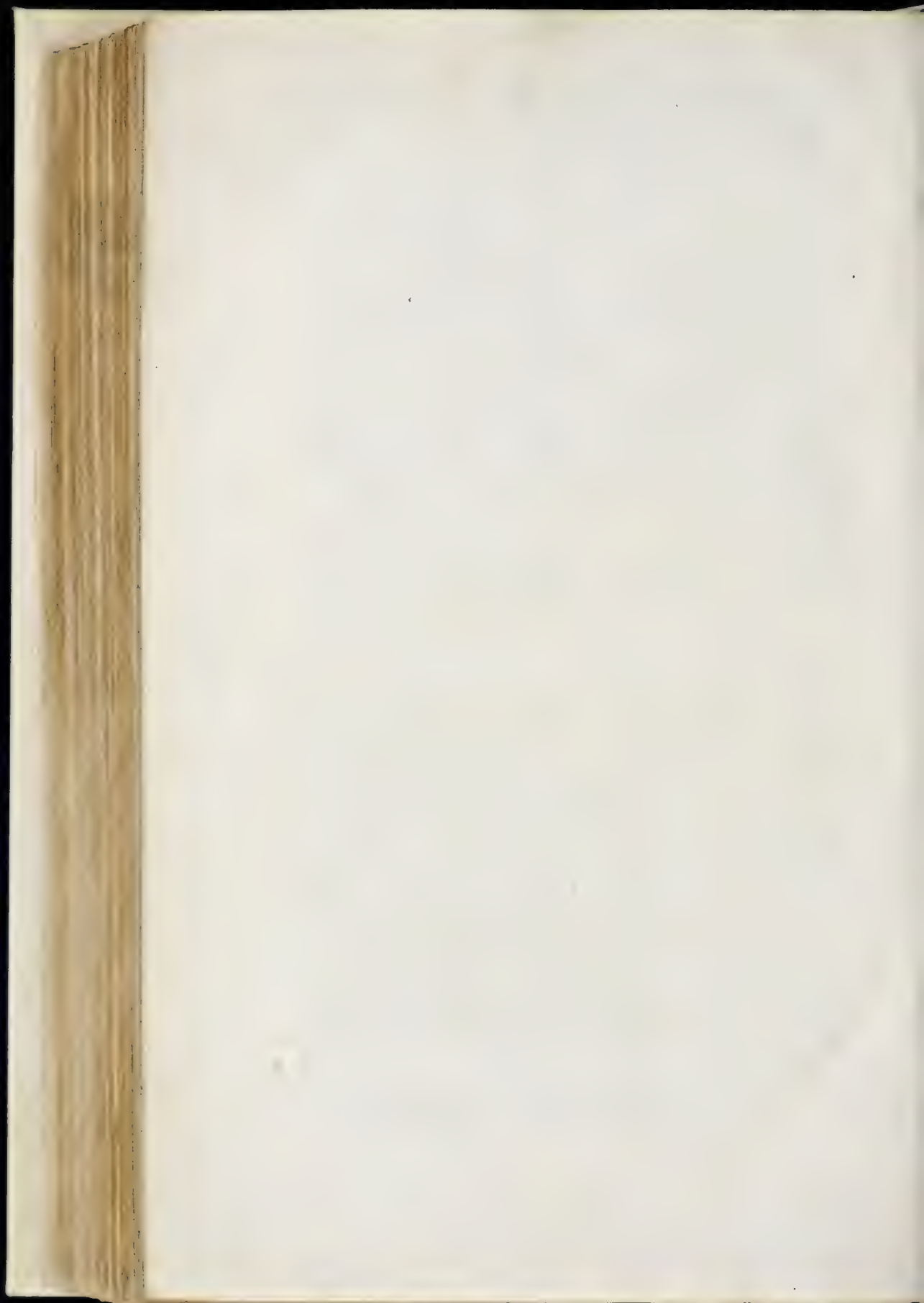
At a Chapter of the Most Noble Order of the GARTER
held in the Chapter-House at *Windsor* the 29th of *May*,
1674. there being then present

The Sovereign,

Duke of <i>York</i> ,	Prince <i>Rupert</i> ,
Duke of <i>Ormond</i> ,	Earl of <i>Oxford</i> ,
Duke of <i>Monmouth</i> ,	Duke of <i>Albemarle</i> ,
Duke of <i>Lauderdale</i> ,	Marquess of <i>Worcester</i> ,
Earl of <i>S^t Albans</i> ,	Earl of <i>Bedford</i> ,
Earl of <i>Arlington</i> ,	Earl of <i>Ossory</i> ,
Earl of <i>Southampton</i> ,	Earl of <i>Mulgrave</i> .

HIS Royal Highness the Duke of York was pleased to represent to the Sovereign, That Elias Ashmole Esq; *Windsor Herald*, had lately, with great Industry and Expence, Composed and Published a large Book in Folio, Intituled, The Institution, Laws, and Ceremonies of the Most Noble Order of the Garter; which Book as it gives Evidence of his great Learning, Industry, and Judgment, so also it tends very much to the advancement of the Honor and Splendor of the Order, and is of great Use to the Sovereign, Companions and others, who have relation thereunto. And his Royal Highness further represented, with what humble thankfulness the said M^r Ashmole did acknowledge the gracious acceptance, which the said Work had found from the Sovereign, and with what great Bounty it had been testified; and also how honorably divers Knights Companions had received the said Work. The Chancellor of the Order represented also, how fair a Reception the said Book had met with among the Kings and Princes Strangers, Companions of the Order; and in particular how bountiful the King of Denmark had been toward M^r Ashmole. Whereupon the Sovereign did recommend to the Companions the said M^r Ashmole, and exhorted them to give some honorable Testimony by their Bounty, of the value of his Person and Work.

Seth Sarum prænob. Ord. Gart. Canc.

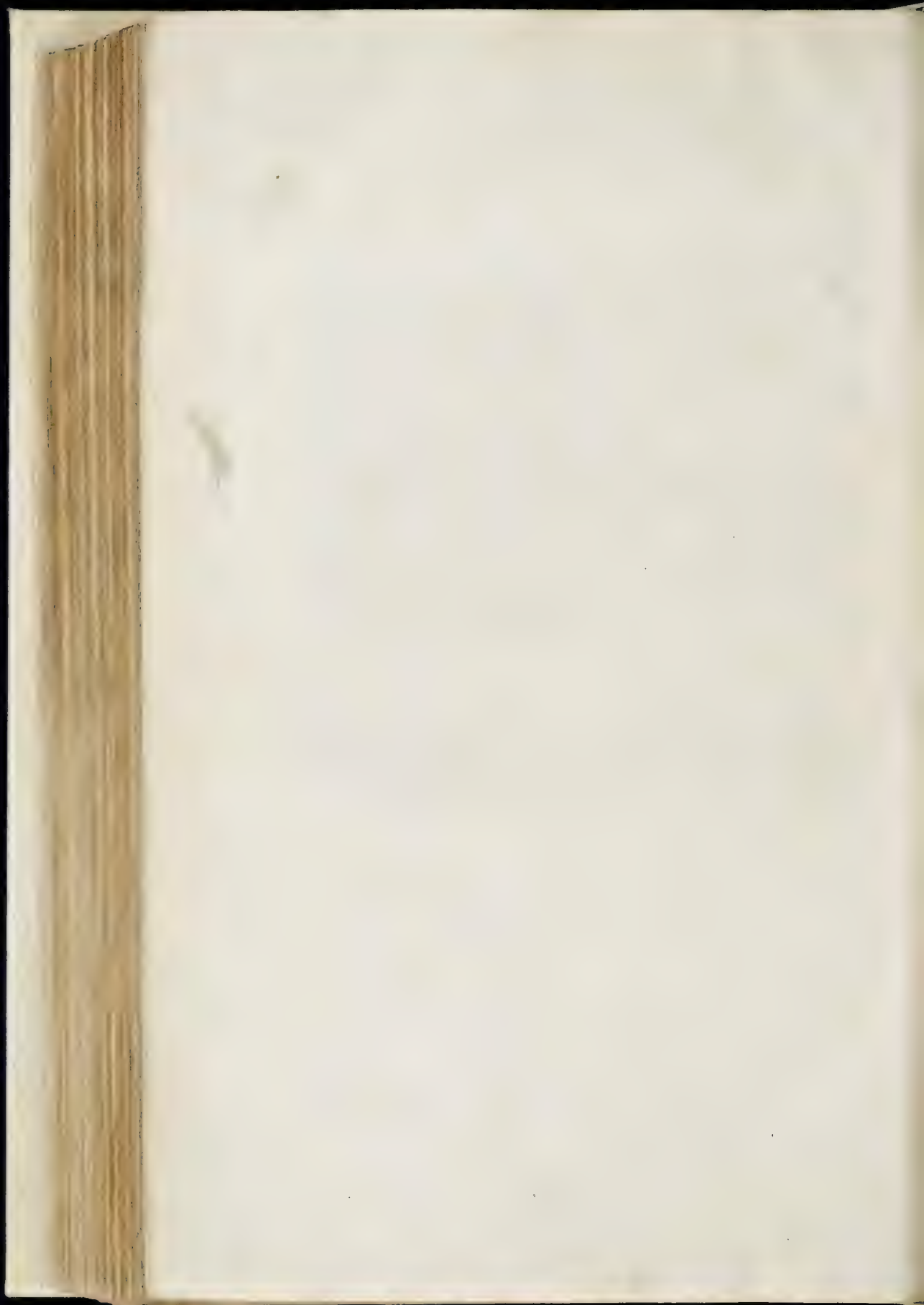


ERRATA.

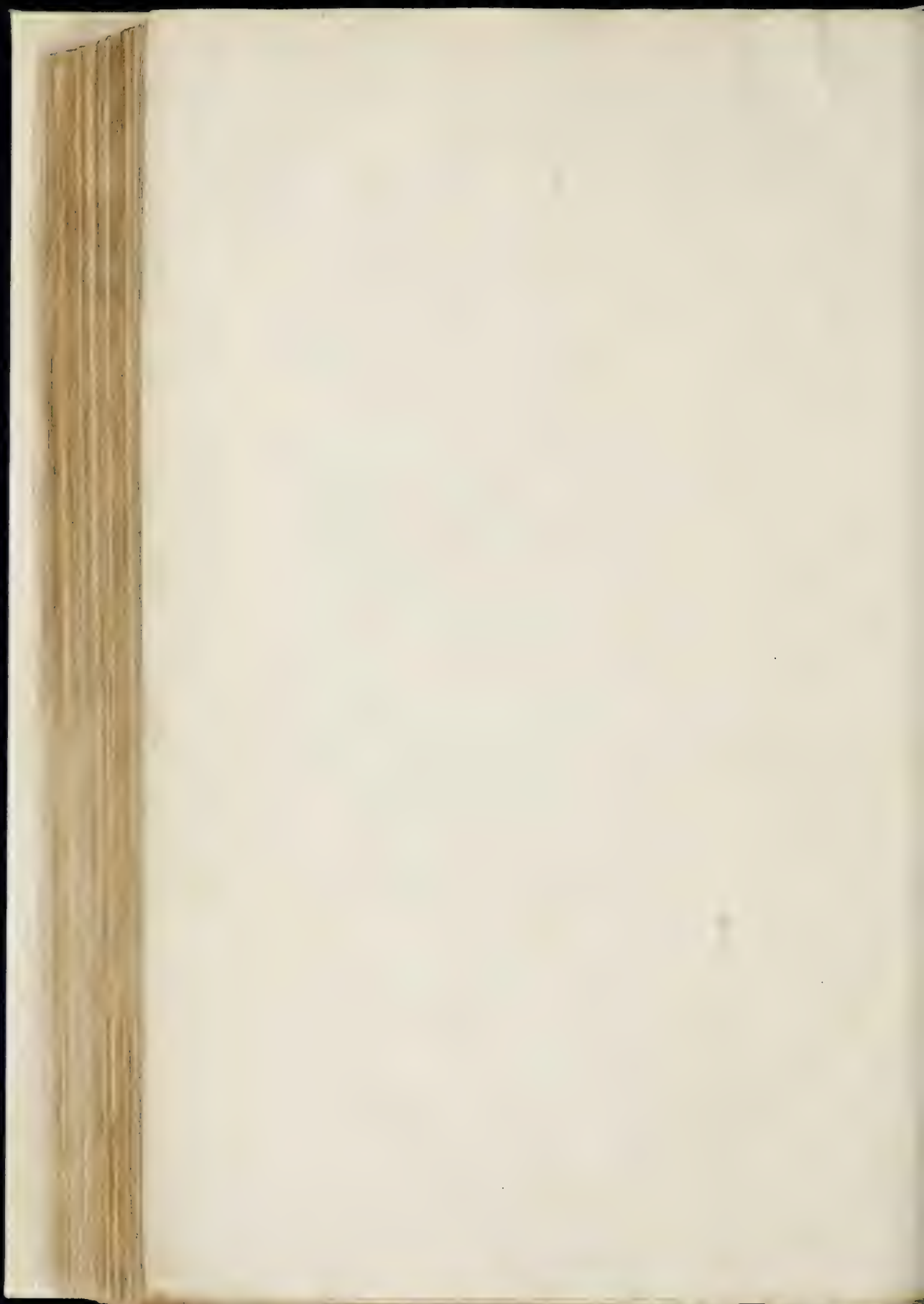
P age 8.marg.(h) r.G.Pancrol.Lib.t.1.p.270.v.33.marg.(o)r.20.libratus terra.p.35.1.32.r.H.g. marg.(u) r.Pat.20.
E.3.p.65.1.8.r.Burgis.p.44.marg.(a)r.H.20.p.31.31.r.Regular.p.41.147.Goz.x.129.f.oral f.1al marg.(n)
r.Pantol 1.4.p.97.r.105.marg.(G) r.Andrada.p.61.1.13.r.Luffigan.p.67.1.8.r.Regular.p.71.1.2.r.Scapular.to p.72.
1.32.p.73.1.40.r.for fuch.p.84.1.47.de [the] p.89.marg.(f) dele [Ciacan].p.91.1.44.r.Sedion.p.96.1.31.r.Juffs.
p.103.1.20.r.Brby.p.106.1.43.in other Medals.p.110.1.4.r.Trunk.p.138.1.6.r.Second Arab.p.149.1.37.r.H.4.p.16
1.20.r.King.in p.15.1.13.r.Meaurio.p.170.1.29.r.Goldclif.p.175.1.57.r.and Camor.p.176.1.57.r.Camors.p.(c) 1.07
p.188.1.48.dele [Sandfi] p.189.1.48.rnine.p.191.1.28.r.H.G.p.192.marg.(t) r.H.5.Stat.p.193.marg.(y)r.Ar.27.
p.206.1.29.r.Robfflar.p.212.marg.(c) rhonorio.p.218.1.0.r.further mention is made of these Literas an.16 E.4.p.224-
1.11.r.daughter of Prince Rupert's Seal.& 1.15.r.d'elpheron.p.238.1.18.enjoyed.p.239.marg.(k) r.pars.3.p.241.1.33.r.
p.253.1.45.r.purple colour'd Ribband.p.257.1.7.r.Lunarick.p.268.1.0.r.were mt.p.274.1.36.Clafis.to p.801.38.
p.286.1.24.r.Exemplars.p.290.1.13.r.Exeter.p.302.1.26.r.appertained.p.308.130.r.Church.p.314.1.24.r.cafe of p.
316.marg.(b) r.Nam.XXXIII.p.326.1.35.r.23 Car.p.353.1.7.r.Bowchier.p.367.1.17.r.wherem.1.21.r.receive his p.
379.1.18.r.Deputation.p.401.marg.(r) r.efficie.p.407.1.29.r.Offins.p.412.1.55.r.Not long.p.424.1.51.r.Rockets.p.429-
1.41.r.Horfe.Luttr.bast pas.p.438.1.18.r.Siewr.1.20.r.Gomyas.p.444.1.27.r.Viscout Dorchester.p.446.1.8.r.Carterer.
p.450.marg.(r) CXLLII.p.451.1.55.r.left arms.p.457.marg.(Z) rlib Carol.p.463.marg.(3) 1.48.r.4731.7.r.
eibexfolemn.1.14.dele [eiber] p.505.1.17.r.futura.p.512 marg.(*) r.Ant Ar. p.513.marg.dele [see Ch.1st. Sedl 3]
fab finem] p.518.1.44.dele and thereat sworn Sir George Moor into the Office of Chancellor to this most Noble Order] p.
521.1.17.dele [an 21. Jan. R.] 18.dele [before the Lieutenants preceding to the Chapel] whereat Sir George Moor
sworn Chancellor of the Order in the same Chamber] 21.dele [before the Eve of the grand Feast held by Proroga-
tion] 15.dele Name in marg. fab bdy c. p.534.1.28.r it occurred p.535.1.27r. Place. p.531.1.51.differenced. [but] p.576.
p.543.1.5.civms. p.544.marg.(f) r MS penes prof. p.574.1.42r. Baudekin p.575.1.9r.but without lb.dele [but] p.576.
1.19.r by p.577.1.14.dele [about n] p.581.1.5.r the Law. p.591.1.14.r.Barners.p.592.1.40 & 51.r. Steir.p.595.1.12
r.to p.601.1.41.dele [79] p.608.1.26.r. Prawnnes.p.616.1.11.r.the Sovereigns Stat.p.624.1.14.r.thre.p.632.marg.
(c) r.H.5.Stat.p.636.marg.(s) dele Hen. p.644.1.pencilr.Walter. marg.(f) Charlt.8.E.2.p.645.1.14.r.stie.p.632.marg.
49.r.King Edward.p.51.56r.Ame.p.652.marg.(o)r part p.653.1.30.r.Rennes.p.654.marg.(c) r.E.3.p.656.1.19.p.648.1
of hfr. p.660.1.50r.Elett.marg.(r) r.li.1.p.663.1.43.r.Orlenois.p.666.1.21.r.Bruegys.1.30.dele [there] marg.(x)
r.Armaigne.p.666.1.16.r.Duke of.p.667.1.1.r.10000.1.22 & 33.r.Bordeaux.p.668.1.19.r.Dorman.p.670.1.25.r.to
Matilda.p.672.1.22.32 & 30.r.Bordeaux.p.678.1.47.r.with the.p.679.1.19.r.Maffey.1.41.dele [fosmer] 1.51.r.Earle.
marg.(in) r pag 364.p.680.1.52.r.Angouleme.p.681.1.31.r.Heirs.1.55.r.Manly.p.683.1.17.r.E.3.p.687.1.45.
E.3.p.691.marg.(m) r.vocat.p.692.1.22 & 21.r.Nostr. & 1.29.r.Irbid.p.694.marg.(f) r.E.3.& k.r.Rower.
p.695.1.30.r.therefore.p.696.1.20.r.Knoeking.1.37.r.48 E.3 & 50.r.of the Priory.p.697.1.19.r.an.1.33.r.had.p.698.
marg.(k) 1.47.E.3.p.699.1.ulr.see of Pinkney.p.700.1.25r.therefore.p.700.1.44.r.Pedagium p.702.1.38.r.Sin.1.39.
r.Marfbati Bavel.1.70.1.12.r.Glave.p.705.1.10.r.in the.p.707.1.16.r.aufil.1.47.dele [he]

To the end the faults escaped in any of the three pages next following each Letter of the Alphabet, carried on at the foot of the Appendix, may with more ease be corrected, there are here added the Figures of 2, 3, and 4. to point out the page exactly.

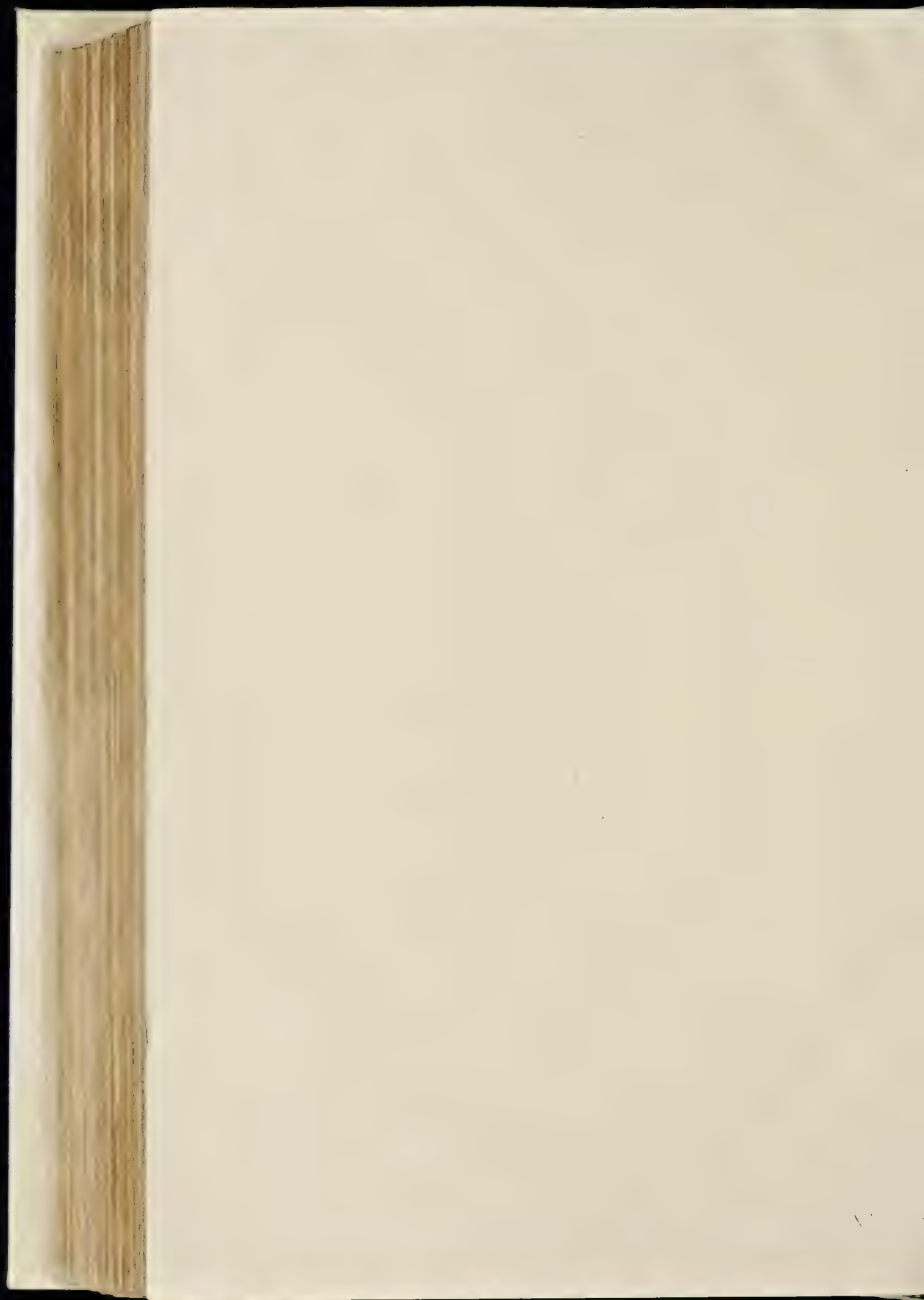
[c] Col.1.1.8.r. annuum.1.57.r.quotiescunque [b] 3.col.1.1.28.r.profundis; col.2.1.9.r.nofcantur.[c] col.1.1.12.r.regio.
[c] 2.col.1.1.25.r.fab. col.1.1.13.r.minusquique.[c] 3.col.1.1.40.r.Supremo.1.40.r.Sacrifici.[d] col.2.1.15.r.commi-des.
[d] 2.col.1.1.55.r.poulet.[c] 1.1.47.r.regis. col.2.1.6.r.que.[c] 4.col.1.1.40.r.quisque.col.2.1.1.r.curari.[i] 3.
col.1.1.13.r.in Regnum.[h] 4.col.1.1.2.r.Ordinis.[k] 2.col.1.2.20.r.Chiffum.[j] 4.col.2.1.16.r.Ou.[q] 4.col.1.
44.r.exm. col.2.1.26.r.virtutis.[r] col.2.1.52.r.peragenda.[r] 2.col.1.1.33.r.Omnisique.col.1.1.11.r.Regis. and [r]
4.col.2.1.41.r.riether.[u] 3.col.1.1.43.r.Carniole. col.2.1.45.r.Scaccar.[x] 2.col.2.1.14.r.quentiesfimo.[x] 4.col.1.
1.13.r.valeat.[z] 5.r. Collegat.[y] 4.col.2.1.6.r.verbo.1.43.r.Equitis.[z] 2.col.1.52 & 3.r.promotions. col.2.1.5.r.
Chablay.[z] 2.col.1.1.4.r.nomme. fic col.2.1.20.r.[aa] 3.col.2.1.21.r.Orr.[bb] col.1.1.45.r.eftangers.[bb] 3.col.1.
1.47.r.immutabilis.







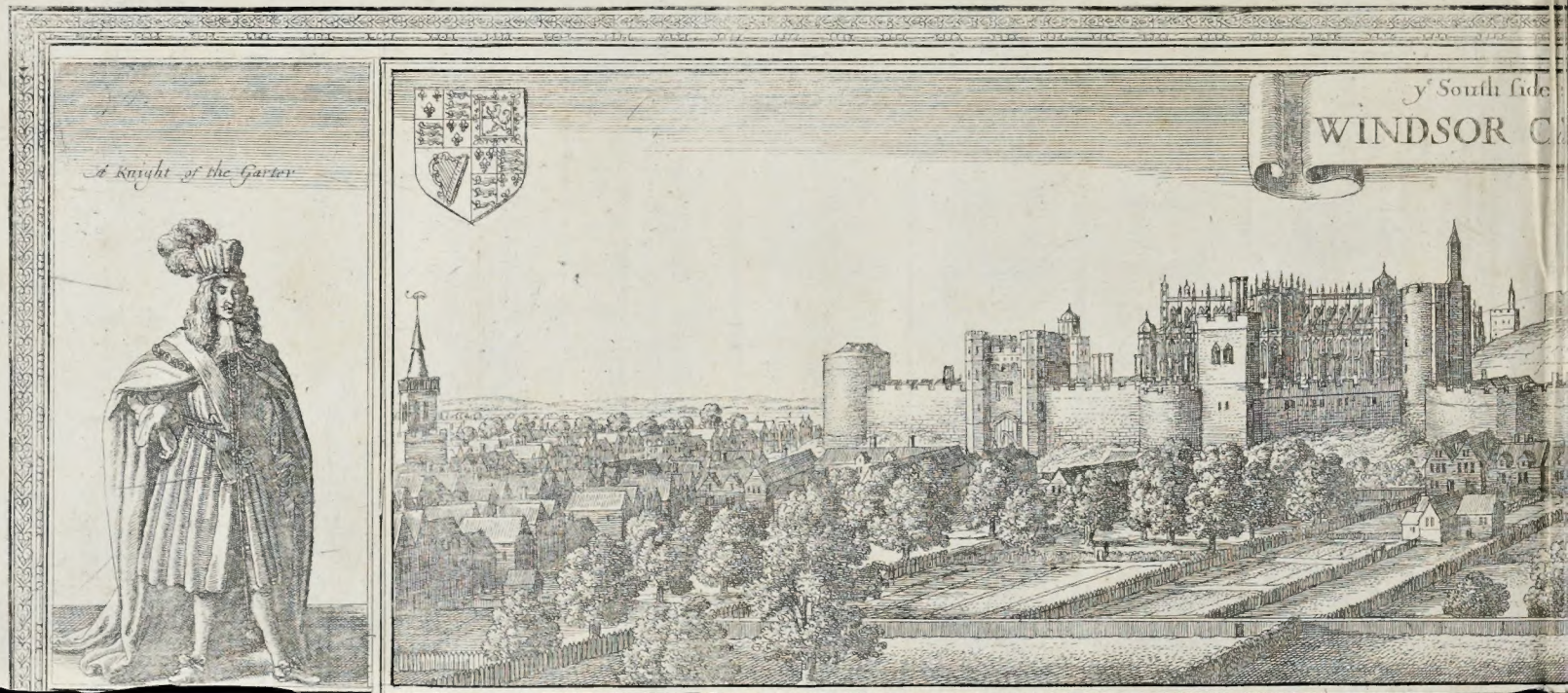




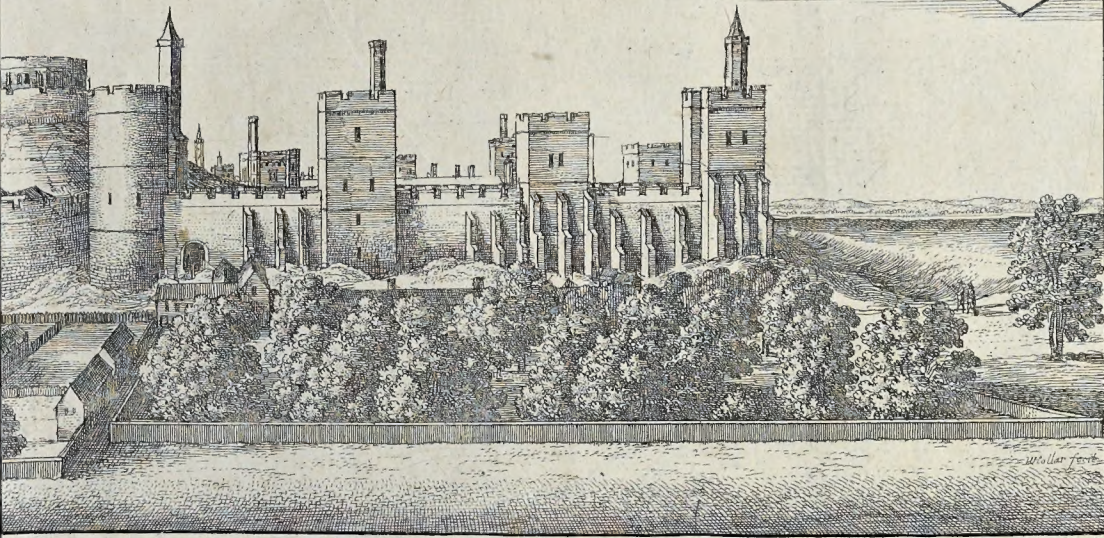
RARE 84-B
FOLIO 31185
CR
4827
A82
1692

THE J. PAUL GETTY CENTER
LIBRARY

source unknown



TITLE



A Knight of the Garter



